Compilation of Indexes to
The Works of St. Augustine
A Translation for the 21st Century

About the Augustinian Heritage Institute

In 1990, the Augustinian Heritage Institute was founded by John E. Rotelle, OSA to oversee the English translation of The Works of Saint Augustine, A Translation for the 21st Century. This project was started in conjunction with New City Press. At that time, English was the only major Western language into which the Works of Saint Augustine in their entirety had not yet been attempted. Existing translations were often archaic or faulty and the scholarship was outdated. These new translations offer detailed introductions, extensive critical notes, both a general index and scriptural index for each work as well as the best translations in the world.

The Works of Saint Augustine, A Translation for the 21st Century in its complete form will be published in 49 volumes.

About New City Press of the Focolare

New City Press is one of more than 20 publishing houses sponsored by the Focolare, a movement founded by Chiara Lubich to help bring about the realization of Jesus’ prayer: “That all may be one” (John 17:21). In view of that goal, New City Press publishes books and resources that enrich the lives of people and help all to strive toward the unity of the entire human family. We are a member of the Association of Catholic Publishers.
The Works of Saint Augustine
A Translation for the 21st Century

Augustinian Heritage Institute

Board of Directors

+John E. Rotelle, O.S.A. (1939–2002), founding director
Joseph L. Farrell, O.S.A.  David Hunter
Joseph T. Kelley  Patricia H. Lo
Jane E. Merdinger  Boniface Ramsey
James Wetzel  Jonathan Yates

Translation Advisory Board

Allan D. Fitzgerald, O.S.A.  Edmund Hill, O.P.
Joseph McGowan  Boniface Ramsey

THE WORKS OF SAINT AUGUSTINE
A Translation for the 21st Century

The Index
Compilation of Indexes to The Works of St. Augustine

A Translation for the 21st Century

Compiled and Edited by

Steven Cordiviola

Original Indexes Prepared by

Michael Dolan
Joseph Sprug
Kathleen Strattan
Jen Weers

New City Press
Hyde Park, New York
PREFACE

In 1990, the Augustinian Heritage Institute, in conjunction with New City Press, began translating Saint Augustine's entire corpus into English. At that time, English was the only major Western language into which the Complete Works had not yet been attempted. Existing translations were often archaic or faulty and the scholarship was outdated. Augustine's writings are useful to anyone interested in patristics, church history, and theology. New City Press is proud to offer the best modern translations available.

Saint Augustine’s complete works will be translated into 49 books (see list of books below or download a pdf from http://www.newcitypress.com/media/downloads/Master_Augustine_Catalog_Final.pdf). To date, 43 books have been translated and published by NCP.

New City Press is one of more than 20 publishing houses sponsored by the Focolare, a movement founded by Chiara Lubich to help bring about the realization of Jesus’ prayer: “That all may be one” (John 17:21). In view of that goal, New City Press publishes books and resources that enrich the lives of people and help all to strive toward the unity of the entire human family. We are a member of the Association of Catholic Publishers.

NEW IN VERSION 2

Added Index of Scripture and General Index to Writings of the Old Testament

Corrected Index of Scripture to Sermons I

NEW IN VERSION 3

Added Index of Scripture and Index of Names and Places to The Donatist Controversy I

Psalm against the Party of Donatus (Psalmus contra partem Donati)
Answer to the Writings of Petilian (Contra litteras Petilian)
Answer to the Letter of Parmelian (Contra epistulam Parmelian)
Baptism (De baptismo)
Letter to Catholics on the Sect of the Donatists
(Epistula ad Catholicos de secta Donatistarum)
USING THIS COMPILATION

This PDF is a simple collection of indexes from each book containing the Works of St. Augustine published by New City Press since 1990. No new indexes were created nor was any index edited except to separate the multiple titles that might appear in a single book. In addition, no effort was made to standardize the indexes so there may appear an obvious difference in some indexes from one book to another. Future editions of this compilation may improve on the over-all appearance if there is a significant number of requests for such an edition. As future books are published by New City Press, their indexes will be added to this compilation.

The indexes are arranged alphabetically by the English translation of the original Latin title. For each index there is a cover page with the Latin title and pertinent information of the New City Press book that contains the work. The index that follows uses the title that appears in the New City Press edition of the books (rather than its original Latin title) and the header, footer, and watermark identify the NCP book containing that index.

Most indexes have 2 parts: Scripture Index and Subject (or General) Index. Although some of the earlier publications may differ slightly, for the most part the first numeral in the Index is the book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers. Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes. Page numbers are never used.

Scripture indexes are usually separated into Old and New Testaments sections. Each has the name of the scripture book as a heading followed by individual lines with biblical chapter and verse and the reference to the section of the work. For example:

Micah
4:1-3  XVIII, 30
5:2-4   XVIII, 30
6:6-8   X, 5

Users should keep this structure in mind when searching for specific scripture chapter and verse. For Sermons, the numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section. In the Exposition of the Psalms, the numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the psalm.

In this compilation PDF, each work has been book-marked for easy navigation. At the beginning of the book marks is a direct link to Advanced Search, a function available on almost all Adobe PDF readers. This feature can also be accessed using Edit→Advanced Search (Shift+Control+F for pc and Command+Shift+F for Mac users). Advanced Search is much more powerful that the simple Find function. The Advanced Search dialog box has an additional Show More Options, where users can select options such as whole-words only. The results of an Advanced Search will provide a quick method to navigate the pdf to the relevant index (see Figure 1).
Figure 1.
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum</td>
<td>Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichee</td>
<td>Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichee</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad Catholicos frates / De unitate ecclesiae</td>
<td>To the Catholic Members of the Church / On the Unity of the Church</td>
<td>To the Catholic Members of the Church / On the Unity of the Church</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad inquisitiones Januarii</td>
<td>Responses to Januarius</td>
<td>Responses to Januarius (Letters 54-55)</td>
<td>Letters 1-99 (Vol. II/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad Simplicianum de diversis questionibus</td>
<td>To Simplicianus, on Various Questions</td>
<td>To Simplicianus, on Various Questions</td>
<td>Responses to Miscellaneous Questions (Vol. I/12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adnotationes in Job</td>
<td>Comments on Job</td>
<td>Comments on Job</td>
<td>Writings on the Old Testament (Vol. I/14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversus Judaeos</td>
<td>Against the Jews</td>
<td>Answer to the Jews</td>
<td>Writings on the Old Testament (Vol. I/14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breviculus conlationis cum Donatistis</td>
<td>A Summary of the Meeting with the Donatists</td>
<td>A Summary of the Meeting with the Donatists</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confessiones</td>
<td>Debate with Maximinus, an Arian Bishop</td>
<td>Debate with Maximinus, an Arian Bishop</td>
<td>The Confessions (Vol. I/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conlato cum Maximino Arianorum episco polo</td>
<td>Against the Skeptics</td>
<td>Answer to the Skeptics</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Academicos</td>
<td>Against Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani</td>
<td>Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum</td>
<td>Against Adversaries of the Law and the Prophets</td>
<td>Answer to Enemies of the Law and the Prophets</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra adversarium legis et prophetarum</td>
<td>Against Cresconius, a Donatist Grammarian</td>
<td>Answer to Cresconius, a Donatist Grammarian</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians II (Vol. I/24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Cresconium grammaticum partis Donati</td>
<td>Against the Donatists, After the Conference</td>
<td>Answer to the Donatists, after the Conference</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Donatistas post conlationem</td>
<td>Against Two Letters of the Pelagians</td>
<td>Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum</td>
<td>Against the “Foundation Letter” of Mani</td>
<td>Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians II (Vol. I/24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti</td>
<td>Against the Letter of Parmenian</td>
<td>Answer to the Letter of Parmenian</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra epistulam Parmenian</td>
<td>Against Faustus, a Manichee</td>
<td>Answer to Faustus, a Manichee</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Faustum Manichaeum</td>
<td>Against Felix, a Manichee</td>
<td>Answer to Felix, a Manichee</td>
<td>Answer To Faustus, A Manichee (Vol. I/20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Felicem Manichaeum</td>
<td>Against Gaudentius, a Donatist Bishop</td>
<td>Answer to Gaudentius, a Bishop of the Donatists</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Gaudentium Donatistarum episcopum</td>
<td>Against Julian</td>
<td>Answer to Julian</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Julianum</td>
<td>Against Julian, an Unfinished Work</td>
<td>Unfinished Work in Answer to Julian</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians II (Vol. I/24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Julianum opus imperfectum</td>
<td>Against the Letters of Petilian</td>
<td>Answer to the Letters of Petilian</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians III (Vol. I/25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra litteras Petili ani</td>
<td>Against Maximinus, an Arian</td>
<td>Answer to Maximinus, an Arian</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Maximinum Arianum</td>
<td>Against Lying</td>
<td>Answer to Lying</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra mendacium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De fide et symbolo</td>
<td>On Faith and the Creed</td>
<td>Faith and the Creed</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De divinatione daemonum</td>
<td>On the Divination of Demons</td>
<td>Demonic Divination</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De doctrina christiana</td>
<td>On Christian Teaching</td>
<td>Teaching Christianity</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De dono perseverantiae</td>
<td>On the Gift of Perseverance</td>
<td>The Gift of Perseverance</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De duabus animabus</td>
<td>On the Two Souls</td>
<td>The Two Souls</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De excidio urbis Romae</td>
<td>On the Sack of the City of Rome</td>
<td>The Sack of the City of Rome (Sermon 397)</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De fide et operibus</td>
<td>On Faith and Works</td>
<td>Faith and Works</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De fide et symbolo</td>
<td>On Faith and the Creed</td>
<td>Faith and the Creed</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De civitate Dei</td>
<td>On the City of God</td>
<td>The City of God</td>
<td>The City of God (books 1-22) (Vol. I/6 &amp; I/7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De continentia</td>
<td>On Continence</td>
<td>Continece</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De correctione Donatistarum</td>
<td>On the Correction of the Donatists</td>
<td>The Correction of the Donatists</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De correptione et gratia</td>
<td>On Admonition and Grace</td>
<td>Rebuke and Grace</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De cura pro mortuis gerenda</td>
<td>On the Care of the Dead</td>
<td>The Care to Be Taken of the Dead</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De doctrina christiana</td>
<td>On Christian Discipline</td>
<td>Dialectic</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De disciplina christiana</td>
<td>On Christian Discipline</td>
<td>Christian Discipline (Sermon 399.2)</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus</td>
<td>Eighty-Three Different Questions</td>
<td>Eighty-Three Different Questions</td>
<td>Responses to Miscellaneous Questions (Vol. I/12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De divinatione daemonum</td>
<td>On the Divination of Demons</td>
<td>Demonic Divination</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De doctrina christiana</td>
<td>On Christian Teaching</td>
<td>Teaching Christianity</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De dono perseverantiae</td>
<td>On the Gift of Perseverance</td>
<td>The Gift of Perseverance</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De duabus animabus</td>
<td>On the Two Souls</td>
<td>The Two Souls</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De excidio urbis Romae</td>
<td>On the Sack of the City of Rome</td>
<td>The Sack of the City of Rome (Sermon 397)</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De baptismo</td>
<td>On Baptism</td>
<td>The Baptism</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De beata vita</td>
<td>On the Happy Life</td>
<td>The Happy Life</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De bono conjugal</td>
<td>On the Good of Marriage</td>
<td>The Good of Marriage</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De bono viduitatis</td>
<td>On the Good of Widowhood</td>
<td>The Good of Widowhood</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De catechizandis rudibus</td>
<td>On Catechizing Beginners</td>
<td>Instructing Beginners in Faith</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De civitate Dei</td>
<td>On the City of God</td>
<td>The City of God</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De agone christiano</td>
<td>On the Christian Struggle</td>
<td>The Christian Struggle</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De animae et eius origine</td>
<td>On the Soul and Its Origin</td>
<td>The Soul and Its Origin</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De baptismo</td>
<td>On Baptism</td>
<td>The Baptism</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De beata vita</td>
<td>On the Happy Life</td>
<td>The Happy Life</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De bono conjugal</td>
<td>On the Good of Marriage</td>
<td>The Good of Marriage</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De bono viduitatis</td>
<td>On the Good of Widowhood</td>
<td>The Good of Widowhood</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De catechizandis rudibus</td>
<td>On Catechizing Beginners</td>
<td>Instructing Beginners in Faith</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De civitate Dei</td>
<td>On the City of God</td>
<td>The City of God</td>
<td>The City of God (books 1-22) (Vol. I/6 &amp; I/7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De continence</td>
<td>On Continence</td>
<td>Continece</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De correctione Donatistarum</td>
<td>On the Correction of the Donatists</td>
<td>The Correction of the Donatists</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De correptione et gratia</td>
<td>On Admonition and Grace</td>
<td>Rebuke and Grace</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De cura pro mortuis gerenda</td>
<td>On the Care of the Dead</td>
<td>The Care to Be Taken of the Dead</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De dialectica</td>
<td>On Dialectic</td>
<td>Dialectic</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De disciplina christiana</td>
<td>On Christian Discipline</td>
<td>Christian Discipline (Sermon 399.2)</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus</td>
<td>Eighty-Three Different Questions</td>
<td>Eighty-Three Different Questions</td>
<td>Responses to Miscellaneous Questions (Vol. I/12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De fide rerum invisibilium</td>
<td>On Faith in the Unseen</td>
<td>Faith in the Unseen</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Genesi ad litteram</td>
<td>On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis</td>
<td>The Literal Meaning of Genesis</td>
<td>On Genesis (Vol. I/13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus</td>
<td>On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis, an Unfinished Book</td>
<td>Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis</td>
<td>On Genesis (Vol. I/13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Genesi adversus Manichaeos</td>
<td>On Genesis, Against the Manichees</td>
<td>On Genesis, a Refutation of Manichees</td>
<td>On Genesis (Vol. I/13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De gestis Pelagii</td>
<td>On the Deeds of Pelagius</td>
<td>The Deeds of Pelagius</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De grammatica</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De gratia Christi et de peccato originali</td>
<td>On the Grace of Christ and Original Sin</td>
<td>The Grace of Christ and Original Sin</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De gratia et libero arbitrio</td>
<td>On Grace and Free Will</td>
<td>On Grace and Free Choice</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De haeresibus</td>
<td>On Heresies</td>
<td>Heresies</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De immortalitate animae</td>
<td>On the Immortality of the Soul</td>
<td>The Immortality of the Soul</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De libero arbitrio</td>
<td>On Free Will or On Free Choice</td>
<td>Free Will</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De magistro</td>
<td>On the Teacher</td>
<td>The Teacher</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De mendacio</td>
<td>On Lying</td>
<td>Lying</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum</td>
<td>On the Catholic and the Manichean Ways of Life</td>
<td>The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De musica</td>
<td>On Music</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De nuptiis et concupiscentia</td>
<td>On Marriage and Concupiscence</td>
<td>Marriage and Desire</td>
<td>Writings on the Old Testament (Vol. I/14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus</td>
<td>On Eight Questions from Dulcitius</td>
<td>Eight Questions of Pulcius</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De octo quaestionibus ex Veteri Testamento</td>
<td>On Eight Questions from the Old Testament</td>
<td>Eight Questions of Pulcius</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De opere monachorum</td>
<td>On the Work of Monks</td>
<td>The Work of Monks</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De ordine</td>
<td>On Order</td>
<td>On Order</td>
<td>Letters 156 -210 (Vol. II/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De origine animae et de sententia Jacobi</td>
<td>On the Origin of the Soul and On a Verse in James</td>
<td>The Origin of the Soul and The Opinion of the Apostle James (Letters 166-67)</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De patientia</td>
<td>On Patience</td>
<td>Patience</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum</td>
<td>On the Merits and Forgiveness of Sins and on Infant Baptism</td>
<td>The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and The Baptism of Little Ones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De perfectione justitiae hominis</td>
<td>On the Perfection of Human Righteousness</td>
<td>The Perfection of Human Righteousness</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De praedestinatione sanctorum</td>
<td>On the Predestination of the Saints</td>
<td>The Predestination of the Saints</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De retorica</td>
<td>The Rhetoric</td>
<td>Rhetoric</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De sancta virginitate</td>
<td>On Holy Virginity</td>
<td>Holy Virginity</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De sermone Domini in monte</td>
<td>On the Lord’s Sermon on the Mount</td>
<td>The Lord’s Sermon on the Mount</td>
<td>The New Testament I and II (Vol. I/15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De spiritu et littera</td>
<td>On the Spirit and the Letter</td>
<td>The Spirit and the Letter</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De symbolo ad catechumenos</td>
<td>On the Creed to Catechumens</td>
<td>On the Creed to the Catechumens (Sermon 398)</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Trinitate</td>
<td>On the Trinity</td>
<td>The Trinity</td>
<td>The Trinity (Vol. I/5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De unico baptismico contra Petilianum</td>
<td>On the One Baptism in Answer to Petilian</td>
<td>The One Baptism in Answer to Petilian</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De utilitate credendi</td>
<td>On the Advantage of Believing</td>
<td>The Advantage of Believing</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De utilitate ieiunii</td>
<td>On the Value of Fasting</td>
<td>The Value of Fasting (Sermon 400)</td>
<td>Morality &amp; Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De videndo Dei</td>
<td>On Seeing God</td>
<td>On Seeing God (Letter 147)</td>
<td>Letters 100 -155 (Vol. II/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 1-32 (Vol. III/15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 33-50 (Vol. III/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 51-72 (Vol. III/17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 73-98 (Vol. III/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 99-120 (Vol. III/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 121-150 (Vol. III/20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enarrationes in Psalmos</td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms</td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enchiridion (De fide, spe, et caritate)</td>
<td>Enchiridion (On Faith, Hope, and Love)</td>
<td>The Enchiridion on Faith, Hope, and Charity</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epistulae</td>
<td>Letters</td>
<td>Letters</td>
<td>Letters 1-99 (Vol. II/1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Commentary on the Letter to the Galatians</strong></td>
<td>Commentary on the Letter to the Galatians</td>
<td>Commentary on the Epistle to the Galatians</td>
<td>The New Testament III (Vol. I/17)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Commentary on Statements in the Letter of Paul to the Romans</strong></td>
<td>Commentary on Statements in the Letter of Paul to the Romans</td>
<td>Commentary on Certain Statements in the Epistle of Paul to the Romans</td>
<td>The New Testament III (Vol. I/17)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proceedings with Emeritus</strong></td>
<td>Proceedings with Emeritus</td>
<td>Proceedings with Emeritus</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expressions in the Heptateuch</strong></td>
<td>Expressions in the Heptateuch</td>
<td>Expressions in the Heptateuch</td>
<td>Writings on the Old Testament (Vol. I/14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memorandum to Augustine</strong></td>
<td>Memorandum to Augustine</td>
<td>Memorandum to Augustine</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Six Questions Against Pagans</strong></td>
<td>Six Questions Against Pagans</td>
<td>Six Questions in Answer to Pagans (Letter 102)</td>
<td>Letters 100-155 (Vol. II/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reconsiderations</strong></td>
<td>Reconsiderations</td>
<td>Revisions</td>
<td>Revisions (Vol. I/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A Sermon to the People of the Church of Caesarea</strong></td>
<td>A Sermon to the People of the Church of Caesarea</td>
<td>A Sermon to the People of the Church of Caesarea</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)</strong></td>
<td>Miscellaneous Sermons -Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Sermons -Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Sermons 1-19 (Vol. III/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sermons (Dolbeau)</strong></td>
<td>Dolbeau Sermons</td>
<td>Sermons (Newly Discovered)</td>
<td>Sermons 20-50 (Vol. III/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sermones ad populum 1–396</strong></td>
<td>Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Sermons 51-94 (Vol. III/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sermones 1-10 (Vol. III/1)</strong></td>
<td>Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Sermons 148-183 (Vol. III/5)</td>
<td>Sermons 94A-147A (Vol. III/4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press  **Index to be published in Volume III/13*
Augustine undertook this greatest piece of writing with the conviction that God wanted him to make this confession. The book in fact is an extended poetic, passionate and intimate prayer. Second Edition includes an annotated bibliography by William Harmless, S.J.

Translation and introduction by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Published by New City Press in:

The Confessions


All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Volume I/1

### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>34(35):3 I, 5, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>35:6(36:5) XIII, 15, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>36(37):23 V, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>40:5(41:4) IV, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>41:3, 4, 11 (42:2, 3, 10) XII, 11, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>47:2(48:1) XI, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>61:2-3(62:1-2) VII, 21, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>68:33(69:32) XIII, 21, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>77(78):39 IV, 15, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22.28</td>
<td>95(96):4 XI, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>100(101): 1IX, 12, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>103(104):24 XI, 9, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>113(115):16 XII, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29-30</td>
<td>121(122):6, 1 XIII, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>129(130):3 I, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>138(139):22 V, 12, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>141:6 (142:5) V, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>144(145):3 XI, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>Proverbs VI, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:11</td>
<td>9:17 III, 6, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>26:5 VIII, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>Wisdom 8:21 X, 29, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2(1)</td>
<td>Sirach 3:19(17) III, 21, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3(2)</td>
<td>18:30X, 31, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-4(2-3)</td>
<td>19:4 VI, 5, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5(4)</td>
<td>23:6 X, 31, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6(5)</td>
<td>39:21 II, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>Isaiah 6:3X II, 7, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8(7)</td>
<td>Jeremiah 23: 24 I, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9(8)</td>
<td>Matthew 3:2 XIII, 12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10(8)</td>
<td>18(19):13 I, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5(19:4)</td>
<td>18:25(26:8) XIII, 25, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):8</td>
<td>1, 18, 28; IX, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):10</td>
<td>V, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Confessions
### The Confessions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
<th>Greek Text References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>XI, 6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>XIII, 12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>IX, 13, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>XI, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7-8</td>
<td>XII, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>XIII, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41-42</td>
<td>XIII, 26, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>VIII, 9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>VIII, 9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>VIII, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:14</td>
<td>I, 19, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>VIII, 12, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>IX, 10, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>VI, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:35</td>
<td>XI, 6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9-10</td>
<td>XII, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24-32</td>
<td>VIII, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:11-12</td>
<td>VI, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:34</td>
<td>X, 31, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-12</td>
<td>VII, 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>VII, 9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>VII, 9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>IV, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>VII, 18, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:33</td>
<td>XI, 13, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>VIII, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>XIII, 7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>VI, 5, 8; VIII, 9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>XIII, 13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13-14</td>
<td>X, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:3</td>
<td>X, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>X, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11-12</td>
<td>XIII, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>XIII, 13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>III, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XII, 25, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>II, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28</td>
<td>II, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:32-33</td>
<td>II, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>X, 31, 45; X, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
<th>Greek Text References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>XIII, 13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54</td>
<td>IX, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>VI, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>X, 43, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>XII, 15, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>XIII, 13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>XIII, 21, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>VIII, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>VIII, 5, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>XI, 31, 45; XIII, 26, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11-13</td>
<td>X, 31, 45; XIII, 26, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>XIII, 26, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15-16</td>
<td>XIII, 26, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>XIII, 26, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>XII, 22, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>III, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>X, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>X, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>VI, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>XIII, 25, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>X, 31, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>XI, 13, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 13, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>III, 6, 10; IV, 15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>IV, 15, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>IV, 15, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>X, 35, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>XIII, 15, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>XII, 7, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Volume I/1
Volume I/1

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprung)

Citations are to book [Roman number], chapter, and paragraph (in parentheses).

A braham, III,7(13)
A braham’s bosom, IX,3(6)
abundance, X,III,26(40)
abyss, XII,21(30), X,III,5(6), X,III,8(9), X,III,12(13), X,III,13(14), X, III,14 (15), X,III,21(30), X,III,23(34)
formless matter, X,II,3(3), X,II,8(8), X,II,17(24,25), X,II,22(31)
A cademics (philosophers), V,10(19)
accidents:
  A ristotle’s categories, IV,16(28)
actors, IV,14(22)
A dam, I,9(14),VIII,9(21), VIII,10(22), IX,13(34), X,III,20(28)
death in, V,9(16)
A deodatus, IX,4(7), IX,6(14), IX,12(29)
admiration: pride, X,36(59)
adolescence, I,12(19), II,10(18), V,III,7(17)
hope for academic success, II,3(8)
lust, II,3(7)
prettended obscenities, II,3(7)
sexual awakening, II,1(1)
sixteenth year, II,3(5,6), II,6(12)
adoption [children of God], X,II,2(4), X,III,13(14)
adultery, I,10(25), II,3(7)
adults: frivolous pursuits, I,9(15)
adversity, X,28(39)
A neas, I,13(21,22)
affection, IV,14(22) p73
tamed to gentleness, X,III,23(34)
temptation, X,36(59)
unclean, IV,6(11)
A frica, VI,15(25), VIII,6(14), IX,3(6), IX,8(17)
allegorical exegesis, X,III,33(48)
almsgiving, X,III,23(34)
A lypius, Bishop of Thagaste, VI,7(11,12), VIII,6(13,14), VIII,8(19), VIII,11(27), VIII,12(28,29), IX,4(7,8)
arrested as a thief, V,1,9(14,15)
baptized, IX,6(14)
chaste; complete continence, V,1,12(21)
Christ as godhead and flesh, VII,19(25)
conversion, VIII,12(30)
dissuades Augustine from taking a wife, V,1,12(21)
integrity, V,10(16)
life after death, VI,16(26)
tentative desire for marriage, V,1,12(22)
ambition (worldly), II,6(13), IV,16(30)
A mbrose, Saint, V,III,3(3)ff
availability, V,1,11(18)
heart, V,1,3(4)
hymn by, X,1,27(35)
Isaiah recommended by, IX,5(13)
meeting in M ilan, V,1,13(23)
monastery in M ilan, V,III,6(15)
M onica and, V,1,1(1)
mourners (hymn), IX,12(32)
offerings at tombs of martyrs, V,1,2(2)
persecuted, X,1,7(15)
prone to hoarseness, V,1,3(3)
secret mouth of his heart, V,1,3(3)
silent reading, V,1,3(3)
S implicianus’ baptism, V,III,2(3)
vision, IX,7(16)
ancestors: cult of, V,1,2(2)
made by the good Creator, V,1,3(5)
M anichean fable, III,10(18), IV,1,1(1)
praise God, V,III,13(19)
ranks of, X,II,22(31)
rebellious, I,17(27)
anger, II,6(13), IV,15(24), V,2(2), IX,4(10), IX,9(21), XIII,14(15)
animals, III,6(10), X,17(26), X,25(36), X,35(57), XIII,21(30), XIII,23(33), XIII,25(38)
astrology, VII,6(8)
beauty, X,6(10)
creation (6th day), XIII,21(29)
domestic; goodness, X,II,21(31)
father of, IX,9(19)
finds some enlightenment, VI,4(5)
grief for death of Monica, IX,12(29)-IX,13(37)
grief: carnal affection, IX,13(34)
health problem (lungs and voice), IX,2(4)
illness in Rome, V,9(16)
Augustine, Saint:
See adolescence.
See catechumenate.
cohabitation with unnamed girl, IV,2(2)
conversion, VII, pages 184-208
disappointed with Faustus, V,6(10)
effect of Cicero's Hortensius on, III,4(7)
experience: attaining That Which Is, VII,17(23)
father of, IX,9(19)
finds some enlightenment, VI,4(5)
grief for death of Monica, IX,12(29)-IX,13(37)
grief: carnal affection, IX,13(34)
health problem (lungs and voice), IX,2(4)
illness in Rome, V,9(16)
See infancy.
Latin and Greek studies, I,13(20)
lost book(s) on beauty, IV,13(20), IV,14(21,27)
lustful habit, VIII,5(10)
See Monica, Saint.
moving to Rome, V,8(14)
need for Christ the mediator, VII,18(24)
one life, with Monica, IX,12(30)
See parents, p73
post-adolescence; entering youth, VII,1(1)
projected marriage, VI,13(23)
punishment as schoolboy, I,9(14)
reputation for wisdom, VII,20(26)
self-taught, I,8(13)
sixteenth year, II,3(5)
son by common-law wife, VI,15(25)
studies (boyhood), I,9(15), I,12(19)
unwilling to learn (boyhood), I,12(19)
urge to excel (as a child), I,19(30)
weeping for Monica, IX,12(33)
authority:
biblical, V,15(8)
judgment and, X,II,23(33,34)
scrapbook, XII,16(23)
over sea creatures, XI,II,20(26)
authors:
intention must be sought, XI,II,18(27)
avarice, See greed.
awareness: mutable, X,II,15(18)
Son of God (in the Beginning), XIII,5(16)
See also under creation.
behavior: demonic, III,3(6)
being(s), X,1(6), X,1(7)
all exists because of God, X,1(5)
collectively all that exists is exceed-
ingly good, VII,12(18)
creation and creator, X,1(4)
defined by God; each particularly,
VII,15(21)
evils as nonbeing, X,1(11)
existence depends on God's knowing,
VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
X,12(31)
spacial dimension, VII,1(1)
three questions, X,10(17)
Being Itself (idipsum), X,4(11)
belief:
earth and sea, XIII,21(29)
See also faith
grace gives power to see,
VII,21(27)
innumerable things held as true,
VII,5(7)
listening with view to action,
XIII,21(30)
parents of Augustine, I,11(17)
waters of unbelief, X,31(20)
existence depending on God's know-
ing, VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
XII,22(31)
spacial dimension, VII,1(1)
three questions, X,10(17)
Beginning:
See also under creation.
behavior: demonic, III,3(6)
being(s), X,1(6), X,1(7)
all exists because of God, X,1(5)
collectively all that exists is exceed-
ingly good, VII,12(18)
creation and creator, X,1(4)
defined by God; each particularly,
VII,15(21)
evils as nonbeing, X,1(11)
existence depends on God's knowing,
VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
XII,22(31)
spacial dimension, VII,1(1)
three questions, X,10(17)
Being Itself (idipsum), X,4(11)
belief:
earth and sea, XIII,21(29)
See also faith
grace gives power to see,
VII,21(27)
innumerable things held as true,
VII,5(7)
listening with view to action,
XIII,21(30)
parents of Augustine, I,11(17)
waters of unbelief, X,31(20)
existence depending on God's know-
ing, VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
XII,22(31)
spacial dimension, VII,1(1)
three questions, X,10(17)
Beginning:
See also under creation.
behavior: demonic, III,3(6)
being(s), X,1(6), X,1(7)
all exists because of God, X,1(5)
collectively all that exists is exceed-
ingly good, VII,12(18)
creation and creator, X,1(4)
defined by God; each particularly,
VII,15(21)
evils as nonbeing, X,1(11)
existence depends on God's knowing,
VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
XII,22(31)
spacial dimension, VII,1(1)
three questions, X,10(17)
Being Itself (idipsum), X,4(11)
belief:
earth and sea, XIII,21(29)
See also faith
grace gives power to see,
VII,21(27)
innumerable things held as true,
VII,5(7)
listening with view to action,
XIII,21(30)
parents of Augustine, I,11(17)
waters of unbelief, X,31(20)
existence depending on God's know-
ing, VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
XII,22(31)
spacial dimension, VII,1(1)
three questions, X,10(17)
Beginning:
See also under creation.
behavior: demonic, III,3(6)
being(s), X,1(6), X,1(7)
all exists because of God, X,1(5)
collectively all that exists is exceed-
ingly good, VII,12(18)
creation and creator, X,1(4)
defined by God; each particularly,
VII,15(21)
evils as nonbeing, X,1(11)
existence depends on God's knowing,
VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
The Confessions

XII,32(43)
meeting the minds of many people,
XII,31(42)
mysteries in, VI,1,5(8)
mystery: growth through study of,
III,5(9)
pick up and read, VIII,12(29)
power to lay pride low, XIII,15(17)
praying for understanding, XI,2(2,3)
refusal to believe scriptures, VI,5(7)
respect for, XIII,16(23)
scripture given as "a vault over-
head," XIII,15(16)
seek God's will in, XII,23(32)
spiritual meaning, VI,1(6)
spring: each draws whatever truth
he can ..., XII,27(37)
submission of intellect to,
XIII,23(33)
Truth communicated to Moses,
XII,32(43)
truth still there to be found,
XII,31(42)
vault provided for us, XIII,18(23)
word remains till end of the world,
XIII,15(18)
birds, III,6(10), X,17(26), XIII,20(26,28),
XIII,21(29), XIII,23(34),
XIII,25(38), XIII,31(47)
birth horoscopes, IV,3(5), VII,6(8,9)
bishops, V,13(23)
blessings, XIII,18(22,23), XIII,25(38)
blindness: glory and, III,3(6)
body and soul,
beauty of the body, XIII,28(43)
body's obedience to soul, VIII,8(20)
creation, VII,1(4)
perishable body weighs down the
soul, VIII,17(23)
seeking God, X,6(9)
soul imparts life; energy, X,6(10)
See also spirit
book, the, the Bible.
books: Alypius tempted by, VI,10(16)
bosom (gospel word), IX,3(6)
bosom of Abraham, IX,3(6)
bread, X,16(22), X,31(46)
bréasts, I,7(11)
brétherly love, X,4(5)
Caesar, V,3(5)
canticles, IX,6(14)
care, X,2(3), XIII,26(39)
Carthage, I,13(22), II,3(5), III,1(1),
IV,7(12), IV,8(13), V,8(14),
VI,7(11), VI,9(14), VI,10(17),
VII,2(3), X,16(25), X,21(30)
Cassiciacum, IX,3(5), IX,4(7)
catechumenate, I,11(17), VIII,2(4),
V,14(25), IX,4(8)
categories (Aristotle), IV,16(28,29)
Catholic Church, I,4(5), VII,1(1),
VII,5(7), VII,11(11), VII,16(14),
IX,13(37)
unconquered, V,14(24)
Catholic doctrine, V,1(7)
Catholic faith, V,10(20), V,14(24),
VIII,3(4), V,11(18)
Catiline, I,5(11)
cattle: chewing cud, X,14(22)
celibacy, VI,3(3), V,12(22)
censers: hearts as, X,4(5)
certainty, VIII,12(29), X,12(14),
XII,16(23), XII,24(33)
chance:
astrology, IV,3(5,6)
horoscopes, VII,6(9) p73
change, I,4(4), I,6(9,10), III,7(13),
IV,15(26), X,14(6), X,7(9),
XII,6(6), X,11(13), X,17(25),
XII,19(28), XII,28(38), XIII,3(4),
XIII,8(9), X,16(19)
beginning/ceasing to exist, X,8(10)
changeable = not eternal, XI,15(18)
dying, or rising to new life, X,7(9)
God "prior" to act of creation,
X,10(12)
no alteration in God, XII,1,11(11,12)
past and future in created things,
X,11(13)
charity, III,2(3), IV,12(19), IV,16(31),
VIII,3(6), IX,2(3), X,34(52),
X,37(61), XII,23(32), XII,25(35),
XIII,6(7)
believes without stint, X,3(3,4)
distributing worldly goods to the
poor, XIII,34(49)
Holy Spirit, IV,4(7)
humility the foundation of,
VII,20(26)
lawful use of the commandment,
XII,30(41)
more than easy provision, XIII,17(21)

Volume I/1
Volume I/1

seeking author’s intention, XI,18(27)
tolerance for ignorance, V,5(9)
way of excellence, XIII,7(8)
chastisement, IX,4(12)
chastity, I,7(15), VIII,7(17), IX,9(19), X,30(41), XIII,23(34)
please, not yet ..., VIII,7(17)
cheating, I,19(30)
cherubim, XII,22(31)
childhood, XI,18(23)
children:
of darkness, XIII,14(15)
desire for harmful objects, I,7(11)
discipline, training, I,8(18), IX,9(22)
of God, VIII,4(9)
ot to remain babies, XIII,22(32)
sensual person as, XIII,18(23)
spiritual, XIII,18(22)
choice:
conflicting impulses in one person, VIII,10(24)
perverse, VI,6(9)
Christ, See Jesus Christ.
Christian life:
live for him who died for us, X,43(70)
Monica’s example, IX,13(34)
teach me, heal me, X,43(70)
Christians:
forbidden to teach rhetoric, VIII,5(10)
Christology, See Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Word of God.
Church, I,11(17), IV,16(31), V,10(19), V,13(23), VI,5(7), VI,11(18),
VIII,1(2), VIII,5(7), IX,4(7), IX,6(14), IX,8(17)
body of Christ, VI,4(5)
heresies and, VI,19(25)
judgment of gifted persons, XIII,23(33)
predestined before time began, XIII,34(49)
spiritual and carnal members, XIII,12(13)
Cicero, III,4(7), III,5(9), VI,6(11), VIII,7(17)
circus, V,7(11,12), VIII,6(15), X,35(57)
city on high, XI,15(20) p73
clay, I,11(18)
clouds, XIII,15(17,18)
cogitating, X,11(18)
coin, lost, X,18(27)
coincidence, IV,3(6)
colors, X,8(13), X,34(51)
colour:
“give what you command; command what you will,” X,29(40), X,31(45)
commendation, X,37(60)
common sense, I,20(31)
communication, I,6(10)
commonplace:
dream of an ideal commune, V,1,14(24)
compassion, III,2(2), XIII,17(21)
composition (songs), III,7(14)
conceit, XII,25(34)
concupiscence, X,12(22), X,30(41,42,43), X,35(54)
council of life:
frivolity and futility, VIII,11(26)
pursuit of created things, X,34(53)
confession(s) (witnessing), VIII,2(3,4), IX,7(16), IX,8(17), IX,13(37),
X,1(1), X,2(2), X,3(4), X,12(3),
XII,16(23), XII,24(33), XII,26(36),
XII,30(41), XII,32(43)
dialogue with God, X,2(2)
love as motive for writing, II,1(1)
motives for, X,2(2)
opening prayer, I,1(1)
people hearing my confessions, X,3(3)
presumption and, V,II,20(26)
shouts of love, X,2(2)
what I am now [as I write], X,3(4), X,4(6)
conscience, I,18(29), V,6(11), VIII,7(18),
X,2(2), X,3(4), X,30(41)
consciousness:
tension; time, X,1,26(33)
consolation:
friends, IV,8(13)
conspiracy, II,8(16)
constellations, X,III,30(45)
contemplation, X,II,12(15), X,II,15(19),
XII,17(24), XIII,18(22,23)
contentment, X,31(45), XIII,26(39)
continence:
fruitful mother of children, V,11(27)

The Confessions
The Confessions

gift of God, VI,11(20), X,31(45)
ordered; God’s gift, X,29(40),
X,37(60,61), X III,26(40)
conversion (of life), X III,2(3), X III,4(5),
X III,10(11), X III,12(13),
X III,22(32)
acknowledging truth, XI,8(10)
let it be now, VIII,11(25)
let me delay a little longer, VIII,5(12)
miracles and, X III,27(42)
converts, VIII,4(9), IX,8(17)
corpse: mangled, X,35(55)
correction: p73
agent of God, without knowing it,
VI,7(12)
unwholesome soul, IX,8(18)
corruption, VII,2(3), VII,4(6), IX,1(1)
counsel: God’s response is clear; not all
hear clearly, X,26(37)
courage, VIII,8(19), IX,11(28)
craftsmen, X,34(53), X,15(7)
created things: transience, IV,10(15)
creation: all good things (substances),
VII,12(18)
all good things; places and times,
VIII,3(8)
al together of beings in, I,7(12)
all manner of beings in, I,7(12)
all together = “exceedingly” good,
X III,28(43), X III,32(47),
X III,34(49)
atitudes toward goodness of,
X III,31(46)
beauty in, II,6(12)
coeternal with God, X II,22(31)
concerted witness to God, V III,1(2)
corporeal nature (earth), X II,28(39),
XII,2(3)
creator: not our God but a hostile intelli-
gence, X III,30(45)
day 2: the vault, X II,13(16),
X III,15(16)
day 3, X III,17(20)
day 4: lamps of wisdom and
knowledge, X III,18(22)
day 5: sea creatures, X III,20(26)
day 6: animals, X III,21(29)
day 7: rest, X III,35(50)
See also earth.
epochs of “time” before, X I,13(15)
eternal, X I,10(12)
eternity of the creator, X I,30(40),
X II,15(18)
exceedingly good; will pass away,
X III,35(50)
failing to find God in, X III,31(46)
Father (“God”), X III,5(6)
filled with God’s infinite being,
VII,5(7)
finding Truth, V,3(5)
First stage: “beginning,” XII,28(39)
Genesis account (“had I been Moses . . .”), X II,26(36)
God acting before creation, X I,30(40)
God looked “seven or eight times,”
XIII,29(44)
God [singular] made man,
XIII,22(32)
God’s goodness, X III,2(2)
God’s will “prior” to act of creation,
X I,10(12)
goodness of all things, VII,5(7),
VII,16(22)
heaven and earth (cover all creation),
X I,12(14), X I,30(40), X II,2(2),
X II,7(7), X II,13(16),
XII,17(24,25)
held to have been created by another,
XIII,30(45)
Holy Spirit poised over, X III,4(5),
X III,5(6), X III,6(7)
in the beginning . . ., X I,3(5), I,9(11),
X I,31(41), XII,7(7), XII,8(8),
XII,12(15), XII,13(16),
XII,15(20), XII,17(24,25,26),
XII,20(29), XII,24(33),
XII,24(36)
primal matter, X II,29(40)
the Trinity, X III,5(6)
increase and multiply, X III,24(35)
intellectual, X II,9(9)
tangible and sensible, X II,20(29)
p73
let there be . . . (thought of in human
terms), XII,27(37)
light, X III,3(4), X III,8(9),
X III,10(11), X III,12(13)
made out of nothing; not from God’s
substance, XII,28(38)
Manichean, X III,61(10)
material thing pre-heaven and earth,
X I,6(8)
matter capable of being formed,
X II,17(26)
no temporality in, X III,29(44)
not a new act of God’s will,
XII,15(18)
not forsaken by God, V,2(2)
only nonbeing (evil) is not from God,
XII,11(11)
order: God’s house, XII,15(19)
praise due to God, I,7(12), V,1(1)
presence of God, I,1(1)
presence in eternity, XII,29(40)
reality of God seen through,
VII,17(23)
seen through the Spirit, XIII,31(46)
series of days, XII,17(24)
seven times: all things made are
XIII,28(43)
sings praise to God, XIII,33(48)
Son (Beginning), XIII,5(6)
souls and bodies, VII,3(4)
spiritual (light), XIII,3(4)
spiritual and corporeal, III,6(10),
XII,2(2), XII,9(9), XII,12(15),
XII,14(17), XII,17(24,26),
XII,21(30), XIII,2(2),
XIII,24(37)
spiritual nature (heaven), XII,28(39),
XIII,2(2,3)
things exist because God sees them,
XIII,38(53)
upper and lower regions, XII,21(30)
waters gathered: dry land,
XIII,17(20)
we see things because they exist,
XIII,38(53)
what words? what utterance? XI,6(8)
whatever you say shall be, comes to
be, XI,7(9)
when matter received form,
XII,22(31)
whole of, imagined, VII,5(7)
Wisdom, XII,19(28), XII,2(2)
Wisdom as the Beginning,
XII,28(39)
Word: all uttered simultaneously,
XII,12(15)
Word: how did you speak? XI,6(8)
Word: how did you speak? XI,6(8)
creatures:
all praise God, VII,13(19)
base love of, X,6(10)
co-eternity, XII,11(11,12), XII,15(19)
cosmic pleasure in God alone,
XII,11(12)
entireness, XII,11(14)
God’s substance, XIII,2(2)
goodness is holding fast to God,
XII,15(22), XIII,2(3)
higher, lower, totality, VII,13(19)
looking for God in, X,6(8)
loved instead of creator, II,3(6)
not pleasing to some, XIII,30(45)
praise for God’s gifts, I,7(12)
pursuit of, forsaking the creator,
X,34(53)
seeing pleasure in, I,20(31)
subject to time, XII,28(38)
tell me something about God, X,6(9)
unaffected by passage of time,
XII,12(15)
credulity, VI,5(7)
Creed, VIII,2(5)
Creusa, I,13(22)
criminal acts, II,5(11), II,7(15), III,9(17),
IV,15(24,25)
crimes against the person; motives,
III,8(16)
cross-beam, XI,26(33)
cup of cold water, XIII,26(41)
curiosity, I,14(23), II,6(13), III,3(5),
X,35(54,55), X,37(60), X,42(67),
XIII,21(30)
customs: transgressions against, III,8(15)
Cyprian (martyr), V,8(15)
Danae, I,16(26)
danger: falling in love with, VI,12(22)
darkness, VI,10(17), VII,20(26),
VIII,10(22), IX,4(10), X,5(7),
X,1(2), X,9(11), X,25(32),
XI,3(3), XI,8(8), XII,10(10),
XII,17(25), XII,21(30), XIII,2(3),
XIII,6(7), XIII,8(9), XIII,10(11),
XIII,12(13), XIII,14(15),
XIII,19(25), XIII,34(49)
powers of; fight, VII,2(3)
realm (Manichean), III,6(11)
David, King, III,7(13), X,34(46)
dawn: prediction, XI,18(24)
day, XI,18(23), XIII,19(25), XIII,24(35)
constitution of: time or movement,
XI,23(30)
whole day includes night, XI,23(30)
death, V,6(9), V,12(22), VII,7(18),
XIII,14(15)
Christ’s body: Augustine’s soul,
V,9(16)
debt annulled by Christ’s death, VII,21(27)
devil presides over, VII,21(27)
earned by sin, X,42(67)
fear of dying, IV,6(11), VI,16(26), VII,5(7)
friend of Augustine, IV,4(8,9)
Incarnation and, IV,12(19)
life tending toward, X,17(26)
mourning for, IX,12(29)
not loving God, I,13(21)
not to see the face of God, I,5(5)
one word dies so next can be heard, IV,10(15)
seeking happiness in realm of, IV,12(18)
undecipherable, V,1(19)
debate: memory, X,9(16)
debauchery, II,3(7)
debts, I,4(4)
deep calls unto deep, XIII,13(14)
delight:
created goods, XIII,31(46)
heavenly calling, X,12(39)
lowest goods; God, II,5(10)
pure heart, XIII,21(29)
demon worshipers, V,II,2(4)
demons, III,3(5), IV,2(3)
desire, II,5(10), III,1(1), IX,8(17), X,36(58), X,1(24), X,9(11), X,12(28), XIII,31(11), XIII,9(10)
prayers, IV,5(10) p73
sensual, X,37(60)
soul dies by craving, XIII,21(30)
for things other than God, VI,6(9)
universal, for happiness, X,20(29), X,21(31), X,23(33)
despair, V,1(1)
destructability: goodness, VII,12(18)
destruction: harmful; it diminishes the good, VII,12(18)
Deus, creator omnium (hymn), X,1,27(35)
development, V,3(3), X,42(67)
origin, V,II,3(5)
seduction; death, VII,21(27)
soul of Victorinus, V,III,4(9)
trounced in relation to strength of his hold, V,III,4(9)
devotion, IX,4(8), IX,6(14), X,33(49), X,11(1)
dialogue: God’s primacy in, X,2(2)
Dido, I,13(21)
dignity, X,31(41), X,III,2(2), X,III,23(33)
disagreement, IV,8(13)
discernment, III,7(13), III,11(19), XII,20(29), XIII,18(23)
will of God, X,III,22(32)
discipline, VI,6(9), IX,9(20)
students in Carthage/Rome, V,8(14)
discord, IV,15(24)
disintegration, IV,15(24)
divination, IV,3(4,6), VII,6(8)
dogs:
astrology, VII,6(8)
academic position, V,14(25)
pre-existence of truth, VII,10(16)
universal, V,10(19)
dragons, VII,13(19)
drama: sadness and pleasure in, III,2(2)
dreams: sexual images, X,30(41)
drinking, X,31(43)
drunkenness, VI,2(2), VII,3(7), X,31(45)
duration, See time.
duties, II,1(2)
Dyad, IV,15(24)
earth, I,2(2), VII,11(27), X,III,23(30), X,III,24(35)
blessings on, X,III,18(23)
created, X,1(4,6), X,1(57)
dominion over, X,III,23(33)
dry, X,III,17(20), X,III,19(24)
endowed with beauty, X,II,2(2)
invisible and unorganized,
lower part of creation, VII,13(19)
made in the beginning, X,II,12(15), X,II,13(16), X,III,5(6)
mutability, X,II,8(8)
primal formlessness, X,II,9(9), X,II,13(16), X,II,17(25) p73
yields its increase, X,III,17(21), X,III,19(24)
earthly goods, See temporal goods.
Eastern Church:
singing of hymns and psalms, IX,7(15)
The Confessions

Volume I/1

eating:
- assimilating the truth of God, VII,10(16)
- necessity, X,31(43)
- pleasure, V,16(23)
- scandal, X,31(46)
- sufficient to maintain health, X,31(44)
- eclipse, V,3(4,6), V,5(9)
- education, I,16(26), V,12(22)
- Egypt, VII,9(15)
- Elect (company of saints in Rome), V,10(18)
- elements: fight against caverns of darkness, II,6(11)

Elijah:
- fed by widow, XIII,26(41)
- meat, X,31(46)
- eloquence, I,16(26), III,4(7), IV,14(21), V,3(3), V,6(10), V,13(23), VII,7(11), VIII,5(10), X,21(30)
- Elpidius, V,11(21)

emotions:
- memory; recall, X,14(21,22), X,17(26), X,25(36)
- pleasure in, III,2(3)
- end of the world, IX,11(28), X,15(18)
- endurance, X,28(39)
- enemy, IV,9(14)
- enjoyment: remembering, X,21(30,31)
- entertainments, I,10(16)
- envy, II,6(13), X,28(39)
- motive for crime, III,8(16)
- Eparphoditus, X,II,26(39)
- Epicurus, V,16(26)
- equality: created goods, VII,12(18)
- error, I,16(26), IV,15(26), X,II,32(43)
- memory, X,13(20)
- Esau and Jacob (twins), VII,6(10), V,II,9(15), X,31(46)
- esteem, IV,14(22), VI,7(11)
- eternal life, I,11(17), V,3(4), VII,7(11), IX,10(23), XIII,21(31)
- Ambrose, V,11(1)
- rest; Sabbath, X,II,36(51)
- rich young man ..., X,III,19(24)
- God’s ever-present eternity, X,13(16)

God’s “today,” XI,13(16)
- joys of, V,III,10(24)
- knowing the truth, VII,10(16)
- no phase of time is coeternal, XI,14(17)
- nothing passes; whole is present, XI,11(13)
- precedence in creation, XII,29(40)
- time preceded by, XII,15(20)
- word: one eternal speaking, XI,7(9)

eucharist:
- fish as metaphor or symbol, XIII,21(29), XIII,23(34) p73
- holy Victim made available to us, IX,13(36)
- sacrament celebrated at martyrs’ shrines, VI,2(2)
- eulogy, IV,14(21), X,37(61)
- eunuch for kingdom of heaven, II,2(3), VIII,1(2)

evangelists:
- God’s spokesmen, X,III,20(26), X,III,21(29,31)
- evangelization: run, holy fires ..., X,III,19(25)

Eve, X,III,13(14)
- evil, See good and evil.
- Evodius, IX,8(17), IX,12(31)
- evolving, X,II,28(38)
- example, X,III,21(30), X,III,25(38)
- converts, VIII,II,4(9)
- exegesis, X,III,23(34)
- existence:
  - beauty and, X,III,2(3)
  - created beings; goodness, X,III,38(53)
  - form and, X,II,6(6)
  - future and past, X,II,17(22), X,II,18(23), X,II,20(26)
  - gift of being, X,III,1(1)
  - gift of God, I,20(31)
  - numbers, X,12(19)
  - presentiments, X,18(24)
  - source, X,II,5(7)
  - three questions, X,10(17)
  - voice proclaiming creation, X,1,4(6)
  - whatever exists is good, VII,12(18)
  - without God, nothing exists, I,2(2)

expectation:
- operation of mind, X,II,28(37,38)
- present of future things, X,II,15(26), X,II,15(18)
- expenses, X,III,26(40,41)

The Confessions
experience, IV, 11(17), X, 32(48), X, 35(54,55), X, 40(65)
craving, X, 35(55)
feelings, X, 33(50)
recalling; memory, X, 8(14)
remembering, X, 14(21)
e xtragavance, II, 6(13), VIII, 10(24)
eye-salve, VII, 8(12)
Face of God:
far from, I, 18(28)
hidden, I, 5(5)
 facts, XII, 23(32)
 faith, II, 3(5), V, 4(7), V, 5(9), VII, 7(11), X, 13(14), X, 14(15), X, 21(29,30)
belief without demonstration, VI, 5(7)
deap of finding truth, VI, 1(1)
gift; medium, I, 1(1)
healing remedies, V, 4(6)
soul transformed by, X, 3(4)
unformed and wavering, VII, 5(7)
weak in faith, VII, 12(30)
fame, I, 12(19)
family, IV, 2(2)
fantasies, XII, 11(14)
fasting, X, 31(43), X, 23(34)
fate: twins, VII, 6(10)
father, II, 3(5)
Faustus (Manichean bishop), V, 3(3)ff
A mbrose and, V, 13(23)
A ugustine disappointed in, V, 6(10)
discretion; limitations, V, 7(12)
natural charm, V, 6(11)
questionings with, V, 6(11)
reading with, V, 7(13)
favor: currying, V, 6(9)
fear, II, 6(13), II, 7(15), II, 10(18), V, III, 2(5), V, VIII, 3(7), VIII, 11(25), X, 4(6), X, 39(64), X, III, 21(30)
chaste, X, 36(59)
memory, X, 14(21,22)
reality of evil, VII, 5(7)
reverential, X, 36(58)
terrified by torture, I, 9(15)
feeding the winds, IV, 2(3)

Volume I/1
Volume I/1


no succession of time in, xii,13(16), xii,15(22)

fornication, I,13(21), II,3(7), II,6(14), XI,22(31), XIII,5(6)

free will, VII,19(25)

friendship, I,20(31), II,2(2), II,5(10), II,9(17), III,1(1), III,2(2,3), VII,7(11), VIII,3(8), VIII,6(13)

consolation at Carthage, IV,8(13)
dear in One who is never lost, IV,9(14)
death of Augustine’s friend, IV,4(8)
emulation, XIII,21(31)
esteem for friends, IV,9(14)
genuine, IV,4(7)
half one’s own soul, IV,6(11)
ideal community, VI,14(24)
kingship with other souls, IV,12(18)
loved for their own sake, VI,16(26)
mortal things, IV,6(11)
signs, IV,8(13)
frivolity, VIII,11(26)
fruit:
flower and, X,II,29(40)
fruit-bearing plants, XIII,17(21)
gift and, XIII,26(41), XIII,27(42)
upright will of the giver, XIII,26(41)

future life:
what we shall be has not yet appeared, XIII,15(18)

future time, See time.

games, I,19(30), II,4(9)
gang-mentality, II,8(16)
garden:
at Ostia, IX,10(23)
struggle in, VIII,8(19)

Genesis, Book of, X,II,14(17), X,II,22(31), X,II,26(36)

allegorical interpretation of Gn 1, X,III,12(13)
guests, VII,9(15), IX,5(13), X,III,20(26), X,III,34(49)
gentleness, VII,20(26), XIII,21(31), X,III,23(34)

Gervasius (martyr), IX,7(16)
gifts:
day and night, X,III,19(24)
fruit and, X,III,26(41), X,III,27(42)
from God, I,20(31)
knowing those bestowed on us by God, X,III,31(46)
spiritual, X,III,18(23)
welcoming, X,III,26(41)
gratidnial entertainments, V,II,8(13)
glory, I,2(2), I,III,3(6)
pride, X,36(59)
gluttony, I,19(30), X,31(45,47)

God:
abiding ever in himself, VII,11(17)
absolute Truth, X,24(35)
Aristotle’s ten predicates, IV,16(29)
arithmetic, creation, IV,15(24)
attributes, I,11(1), V,12(22)
A Augustine’s boyhood, I,9(14)
beatitude, simplicity, XIII,3(4)
beauty, II,6(12), VII,17(23), XII,11(12)
being and living = one reality, I,6(10)
being contained, I,2(2), I,3(3)
bein Itself; unity, IX,4(11), X,II,7(7), X,II,17(25), XIII,11(12)
beliefs about, VII,20(26)
binding soul to ever-abiding God, IV,11(16)
“book” read by the angels, XIII,15(18)
causality, I,6(9)
change and time, I,6(10)
changeless, IV,16(29)
commands in conflict with customs, XIII,8(15)
constancy, X,III,15(18)
See creation.
cultivator of the heart, II,3(5)
devouring fire, V,3(4)
eternal, IV,11(17), X,II,29(39)
eternal Reason, X,18(10)
eternal substance, X,10(12)
eternal “time,” V,11,15(21)
eternally at rest, X,III,38(53)
ever working, ever resting, XIII,37(52)
existence before any “before,” I,6(9)
existence believed, V,15(7,8)
The Confessions

exists in all fullness, X.III,16(19)
extended through space (false notion), VII,14(20), VII,20(26)
failure to find, V.1(1)
Father’s love for us, X,43(69)
fight; powers of darkness, VII,12(3)
filling heaven and earth, I,2(2), I,3(3)
finding (paradox), I,6(10)
fleeing from face of, V,2(2)
foolish not to know God, VIII,1(2)
friends dear in One who is never lost, IV,9(14) p73
friendship with, V.III,6(15)
goodness abides in, IV,16(31), V.III,3(5), X.III,4(5)
goodness and beauty, X.II,4(6)
greatness and beauty, IV,16(29)
happiness, IV,16(29)
He is, X.III,31(46)
healer, IV,3(5), IV,7(12)
highest good, II,6(12), II,10(18), III,6(10)
See Holy Spirit.
hunger for Truth, III,1(1), III,6(10)
See image of God.
imortality, X.II,11(11)
immutability, VII,1(1), VII,3(4), VII,17(23), X.III,12(15)
imperishable, V.II,1(1), VII,9(15)
incorruptible, V.II,2(3), VII,4(6)
indestructible, VII,4(6)
infinite, V,10(20), VII,5(7), VII,14(20)
invisible reality, VII,17(23), VII,20(26)
See Jesus Christ.
joy in, about, because of = happy life, X,22(32)
joy of upright souls, II,5(10)
knowing; calling on, I,1(1), I,2(2)
known in memory, X,24(35)
larger/smaller “parts” of, I,3(3)
law of, ever unchanged, III,7(13)
life of souls, III,6(10)
Light, X,40(65), X.III,3(4), X.II,16(19), X.III,24(36)
looking for, in creatures, X,6(8)
looking for, in himself, X,8(12)
lost because of lie, X,41(66)
loud and clear, X.II,11(11)
materialistic notions about, V.II,1(1)
mounting to, V.II,17(23)
my true life, X,17(26)

not wounded by sorrow, III,2(3)
onimpotence, I,2(2)
onmiscience, I,5(6)
only the Spirit knows the reality of, X.III,31(46)
paradoxes, I,4(4)
particles (Manichean fable), III,10(18), IV,16(31)
passing years, X.III,18(22)
poured into us, I,3(3)
See praise.
prayer:
Ambrose, VI,3(4)
let me know you, X,1(1)
to the Father, X.I,2(4)
turn us toward yourself, IV,10(15)
present always, I,3(3), III,6(11), XI,11(13)
proof; all beings have existence from God, VII,20(26)
See providence.
reality seen through created things, V.II,17(23)
ruler over all creation, III,8(15)
See seeking God.
silence, I,10(29), II,2(2), II,3(7) p73
See Son of God.
speaking about/failing to speak about, I,4(4)
spirituality of, III,7(12)
steadfast permanence, X.II,28(38)
striving to comprehend, VII,1(1)
striving to reach, IV,15(26)
superlative attributes, I,4(4)
supreme substance, VII,16(22)
sweetness that does not deceive, II,1(1)
tempting; signs and wonders, X,35(55)
That Which Is, V.II,17(23)
thought of, as a man, X.II,27(37)
See Trinity.
true Good, X.II,16(23)
true Light, IV,15(25)
truth itself, I,5(6)

Volume I/1
The Confessions

Truth, Love, Eternity, VII,10(16)
truth: promises, XII,1(1)
unchangeable, VII,1(1), VII,17(23), XI,31(41), XII,11(11)
unity, XIII,22(32)
unvarying substance, X,15(18)
voice in my inward ear, XII,11(11)
where are you? XIII,14(15)
what do I love when I love God, X,8(8)
will and power of, V,7(12)
Wisdom, V,8(15), X,7(7), XII,15(20)
See Word of God, you alone are our rest, VI,16(26)

Godhead:
joy, X,11(12)
unchangeable, X,9(10)
godlessness, X,23(33), X,34(49)
false joy, X,22(32)
godliness, IV,16(31)
gods: imitation of, I,16(25)
gold: idolatry, VII,9(15)
good and evil:
confess the source, X,2(2)
conflicting impulses, V,10(24)
deprived of all good = non-existence, V,12(18)
destructibility; harm, V,12(18)
evil as diminishment of good, III,7(12)
evil as non-being, V,13(19)
evil as nonsubstance, IV,15(24), V,10(20), XII,12(18)
existence related to the Almighty will, V,5(7)
free will, V,3(5)
God’s gifts; man’s sin, X,4(5)
good out of evil, IX,8(18)
lower/higher goods, II,5(11)
nonbeing (evil) is not from God, XII,11(11)
origin of evil, III,7(12), V,3(4-7,11)
personal awareness, VIII,8(19)
relativity, VIII,13(19)
seeking origin in an evil way, V,5(7)
students in Rome, V,12(22)

The Confessions

two natures (one person), V,3(5)
villainy = non-substance, V,16(22)
where evil resides, V,4(6)
good life, I,19(30), X,37(60)
good works,VI,2(2), X,37(60), XI,19(24), XIII,23(33), XII,26(39,40)
anticipated; rewarded, XIII,1(1)

Monica, IX,9(22)
goodness:
all created things, XII,7(7)
all good is from God, I,6(7)
animals, X,21(31)
confess: attribute to God, X,2(2)
created things: inner vision, X,38(53)
creation and creator, X,4(6)
derived from God; love, IV,12(18), X,11(1)

fullness of good things, V,12(21)
God’s essence, V,5(7)
inner vision, X,38(53)
lack of in unformed state, V,4(6)

peace; the will, X,9(10)
seeing creation in God’s Spirit, X,31(46)
goods, II,5(10,11)
gospel, X,20(27)
gossip, IX,9(21), X,35(57)
freedom from death-laden body, V,21(27)
give what you command ..., X,29(40)

healing: power to see, V,21(27)
gravity, X,9(10)
Great Bear, V,4(7)
greed, II,5(11), II,6(13), II,9(17), III,8(16), III,9(17), IV,2(2), V,18(8), V,10(24), X,31(44,46), XIII,19(24)
Greek language, X,12(19), X,20(29), XI,3(5)
Greek studies, I,13(20), I,14(23)
grief, IV,5(10), IV,9(14)
grotesque, X,11(6)

The Confessions

Volume I/1
The Confessions

guests, X III, 27(42)
guilt:
  failure to love, IV, 9(14)
  Manichean, IV, 3(4)
  punishment and, III, 3(5)
  rebellious, III, 8(16)
gullibility, VI, 9(14)

habit, I, 7(11), VIII, 7(18), VIII, 11(26), IX, 8(17), X, 40(65)
carnal; tyranny, VII, 17(23)
force of, VIII, 5(11)
hardens into compulsion, VIII, 5(10)
ruined little by little, IX, 8(18)
sexual images, X, 30(41)
truth and, VIII, 9(21)
willing, VIII, 5(12)

happiness (the happy life), VI, 6(9, 10), VI, 11(19), VI, 16(26), VII, 7(17), IX, 3(6), IX, 10(26), X, 20(29), XIII, 4(5)
ardent desire for God; strength lacking, X, 23(33)
obdy senses and perception of, X, 21(30)
experience; remembering, X, 21(31)
everyone aspires to, III, 2(3)
happy life not seen with eye, X, 21(30)
higher goods, I, 5(11)
joy in, about, because of God, X, 22(32)
joy in the truth, X, 23(33)
knowing God, V, 4(7)
made happy by hope for, X, 20(29)
pride = enemy of, X, 36(59)
quest for temporal, XIII, 17(20)
remembering, X, 14(21)
seeking, in realm of death, IV, 12(18)
universal desire for, X, 20(29), X, 21(31), X, 23(33)
unwilling to find joy in God, X, 23(33)

harmony; material forms; beauty, IV, 15(24)

harvest, X III, 18(22)
hatred:
  engendered by truth, X, 23(34)
  perfect, V, 12(22)
healing, V, 1(1), V, 9(16), VI, 4(6), VI, 5(8), VI, 7(12), VI, 9(14), XII, 21(27), VIII, 1(2), VIII, 7(17), VIII, 11(27), IX, 4(8, 12), IX, 8(18), IX, 13(34), X, 3(4), X, 30(42), X, 36(58), X, 39(64), X, 43(69, 70), X, 9(11), X, 31(41), XII, 18(23)

health, I, 11(18), V, 10(18), X, 15(23)
care of self, I, 20(31)
maintaining, X, 31(44)

Hearers (company of saints in Rome), V, 10(18)

hearing, X, 33(49)

heart, I, 5(6), I, 8(13), I, 14(23), II, 3(5), II, 4(9), II, 8(16), III, 4(7, 8), III, 6(10), IV, 4(9), IV, 6(11), IV, 9(14), IV, 11(16), IV, 14(23), V, 1(1), V, 3(3, 5), V, 6(11), V, 9(17), V, 14(24), V, 2(2), V, 3(3), VI, 6(9), VI, 11(20), VII, 11(12, 11), VII, 21(27), VII, 3(1), VIII, 3(6), VIII, 8(19), VIII, 10(24), VIII, 11(25), VIII, 12(28), IX, 1(1), IX, 4(7), IX, 8(17), IX, 10(23, 24), IX, 11(27), IX, 12(29, 31), IX, 13(34), X, 3(4), X, 33(49), X, 34(52), X, 35(56, 57), X, 37(60), X, 37(62), X, 39(64), X, 41(66), XI, 2(3), XI, 11(13), XI, 25(32), XII, 1(1), XII, 6(6), XII, 10(10), XII, 15(22), XII, 16(23), XII, 25(34), XIII, 6(7), XIII, 7(8), XIII, 9(10), XIII, 14(15), XIII, 26(40), XIII, 38(53)

affections and movements of,
  IV, 14(22)
censers, X, 4(5)
dragging heavy hearts along the ground, VII, 6(15)
escaping itself, IV, 7(12)
Monica, IX, 9(22)
presence of God, IV, 12(18, 19)
pure; delight, X, 21(29)
see also soul

treasure, XIII, 19(24)
unquiet until it rests in God, I, 1(1)
word heard in, VII, 10(16)

heaven:
  all creatures praise God, VII, 13(19)
  “containing” God, I, 2(2)
  created, X, 4(6), X, 5(7)
  heaven above our heaven, XIII, 8(9)
made in the beginning, X, 12(15), XII, 13(16), XIII, 5(6)

heaven and earth:
The Confessions

contemplating, XIII,32(47)

Genesis creation account, XII,19(28),
XII,24(33), XIII,2(2)

Head and body of the Church,
XIII,34(49)

potential of formless matter,
XII,19(28), XII,28(39)

primal matter, XII,29(40)

spiritual and corporeal creatures,
XIII,24(37)

heaven’s heaven, XII,2(2), XII,8(8),
XII,9(9), XII,11(12), XII,13(16),
XII,15(20), XII,21(30), XIII,5(6)

heavenly bodies, See stars.

heavens (material), XII,8(8)

Hebrew language, XI,3(5)

hell, I,2(2), III,6(11), IV,12(19),
X,12(14)

heresy, III,11(21), V,II,19(25)

Hierius, IV,14(21)

Hippocrates, IV,3(5)

holiness: love of, VIII,6(15)

holy of holies, XI,22(28)

Holy Spirit, III,4(8), IV,12(19),
V,II,21(27), IX,4(9), IX,7(15),
X,II,15(22), XII,17(24), XII,30(41),
XIII,13(14), XIII,38(53)

broods over all that is mutable,
XIII,10(11)

charity, IV,4(7)

enabling us to love God in what he

has made, XIII,34(49)

Gift (only Person said to be “Gift”),
XIII,9(10)

gifts of, XIII,18(23)

God seeing or saying through,
XIII,29(44)

holiness of, XIII,7(8)

hovering over our inner being,
XIII,14(15)

hovering over the waters, X,II,22(31),
XIII,4(5), XIII,7(8), XIII,9(10)

hovering overhead, XIII,6(7),
XIII,34(49)

insight of intelligent minds,
XIII,23(33)

judgment by person endowed with,
XIII,23(34)

knowledge of God’s gifts to us,
XIII,31(46)

love of God in our hearts, XIII,7(8)

Manichees; name, III,6(10)

persons exercising authority; judg-
ment, XIII,23(33)

rest in, XIII,8(9), XIII,9(10)

resting on people, XIII,4(5)

supereminent love, XIII,7(8)

third person of Trinity, XIII,4(5)

tongues like fire, XIII,19(25)

truth in the Bible, XII,32(43)

Homer, I,14(23), I,16(25)

homicide: motives, II,5(11) p73

honesty:

A Augustine as teacher, IV, 2(2)

proven to be trustworthy, VI,10(16)

honor, I,17(27), I, 18(28), II,6(13),
X,37(61)

parents and children, XIII,19(24)

pride, X,36(59)

hope, VI,6(10), IX,4(11), IX,13(34),
X,II,1(1), X,4(5), X,43(69), X,1,1(1),
X,9(11), X,II,22(28), XIII,13(14),
XIII,14(15)

effects of, IV,6(11)

happiness, X,20(29)

mercy, X,29(40), X,35(57), X,36(58)

rest in God’s holiness, XIII,38(53)

weeping, IV,5(10)

worldly, IX,10(26)

horoscopes, IV,3(5), VII,6(8,9)

house of God: eternal life, XII,15(22)

human(-s; condition; -kind; race),
I,18(29), IX,12(31), XIII,20(28)

abyss, IV,14(22)

acknowledgement of, IX,13(34)

breeding, XIII,24(37)

cherishing as more than human,
IV,7(12)

commanded to increase and multiply,
XIII,24(35)

dominion over the heavenly vault,
XIII,23(34)

dust, X,31(45)

hiding from truth, X,23(34)

image and likeness of God,
XIII,22(32), XIII,32(47),
XIII,34(49)

limited dominion, XIII,23(34)

male and female, XIII,23(33)

one life, one mind, one essence,
XIII,11(12)

questioning; understanding, X,6(10)

relations, see friendship

the word (“human”), I,18(29)
The Confessions

triad: being, knowledge, will, 
XIII,11(12)
humility:
  Alypius, IX,6(14)
  Christ's example, X,43(68)
  God in the heart, XI,31(41)
hunger:
  Jews led to murmur by, X,31(46)
  Paul on, X,13,26(39)
husband and wife:
  Monica's plan for peacemaking, 
  IX,9(19-20)
hymns, IX,6(14), IX,7(16)
  practice of singing established, 
  IX,7(15)
I am who am, VII,10(16)
ideas: of future events, X,18(24)
idolatry, VII,9(15)
ignorance, II,6(13), XI,4(6), XII,5(5), 
  XIX,12(13)
tolerance, V,5(9)
image of God:
  God in form of human body, VI,3(4), 
  VII,11(18), VIII,1(1)
grounds for, III,7(12) p73
  prayer, VI,3(4)
  preserving, VII,7(11)
soul as, VII,9(15)
images:
  sense-impressions, memory, 
  X,8(13,14)
imagination, XI,4(6)
imitation, XIX,21(30)
imitation of Christ, XIX,21(31)
immortality, III,4(7), VI,16(26), 
  V,19(25)
immutability:
  total fulfillment found in, XIX,12(15)
impression: measuring time, X,1,27(36)
impulses: conflicting, VI,10(24)
impurity, III,2(3), X,42(67)
In the Beginning ... See creation.
Incarnation:
  Augustine's early idea of, V,10(20)
  defiled by flesh, V,10(20)
  flesh held as make-believe, IX,3(6)
  human creature, mortal flesh, 
  IV,12(19), V,10(19)
  humility of the Word, VII,18(24)
  mystery of Word made flesh, 
  VII,19(25)
  Photinus on, VII,19(25)
  increase and multiply (command), 
  XIX,24(35-37)
individual differences:
  meeting the minds of many, 
  XIX,31(42)
infancy:
  Augustine learning to speak, I,8(13)
  childish sins, I,19(30)
  described, I,7(7-12)
  desires, I,6(8)
infants, See babies.
information, X,35(54)
inner sense (common sense), I,20(31)
innocence, II,6(13), II,7(15), II,10(18)
inphants, I,7(11)
inspiration:
  personal, V,1,6(10)
  truth, XIX,25(38)
integrity, IV,2(2)
intellect, XIX,34(49)
intelligence, I,9(15), I,17(27), II,6(12), 
  II,15(9), IV,16(30), V,3(4), VI,3(6), 
  VII,13(16), VIII,32(47)
animals, VII,17(23)
  Insight into Spirit of God, XIX,23(33)
intention, IX,8(18), XII,23(32), 
  XIX,26(39)
intoxication, V,1,6(10)
invoking: God unknown, I,1(1)
irreligion: fleeing from God's face, V,2(2)
Isaac, III,7(13), X,34(52)
Isaiah (prophet), IX,5(13)
Israel, IX,10(24), X,34(52)
Italy, IX,6(14)
Jaco, III,7(13), X,34(52) p73
Jacob and Esau (twins), V,6,10(10), 
  VII,9(15)
jealousy, III,8(16), XIX,13(14)
inphants, I,7(11)
Jerusalem (eternal), IX,13(37), X,35(56), 
  XII,16(23), XIX,9(10)
Jesus Christ:
  authority of teaching, V,19(25)
  coeternal with the Father, VII,21(27)
  crucifixion: a phantom, V,9(16)
  devil finds nothing deserving death 
  in, VII,21(27)
  died a true death; intercedes for us, 
  IX,4(9)
The Confessions
The Confessions

knocking, X II,12(15)
knowledge, II,6(13), X III,14(15), X III,20(27)
ability to put into words, X III,18(23)
do not even know what I know,
X I,25(32)
of God, X III,26(40)
knowing all at once, X II,13(16)
perverted, X,35(55)
pretension to, X III,21(30)
puffed up with, VII,20(26)
Spirit of God, X III,31(46)
thirst for, X III,24(37)
triad: being, knowledge, will,
X III,11(12)
vast, X I,31(41)
way of unknowing, X II,5(5)
zeal for, X,35(54)

land, X III,21(29), X III,32(47)
language:
elegant or plain, V,6(10)
learning words, I,8(13)
Latin language, X,12(19), X,20(29),
X I,3(5)
Latin studies, I,13(20)
laughter, I,6(8), I,14(23), II,9(17),
X,12(19)

law:
courts, III,3(6)
doers of; not judges, X III,23(33)
excellent if used lawfully, X II,18(27)
transgressions against human codes,
III,8(15)
law of God, III,7(13), VIII,11(27),
X I,22(3,4)
delight in; V III,5(12)
God’s law is truth, IV,9(14)
God’s law vs law of sin, VII,21(27)
learning, X,10(17), X,13(20), X III,20(27)
Lebanon, V III,2(4), IX,4(7)
legal profession, IX,2(2)
leisure, V IV,14(24)
liberal arts, IV,1(1), IV,16(30), V,3(3),
V,6(11), VIII,2(3)
liberal education, X,9(16), X,17(26)
license: bad habit, IX,8(18)
lie (lying), I,6(6), I,6(9), IX,2(4), X,3(3),
X II,5(4), X III,20(27)
Augustine to Monica, V,8(15)
being thought to be what it is not,

V II,15(21)

idolatry, VII,9(15)
liars, X III,25(38)
life:
body derives life from spirit,
X,40(65)
breathing, into mortal bodies,
X III,14(15)
See also conduct of life.
dying state leading to life, I,6(7)
See also existence.

lived of myself (evil), X II,10(10)
manichean, IV,15(24)
miserable, IV,6(11)
origin of creatures, I,6(10)
power of; tending toward death,
X,17(26)
pre-birth, I,6(9)
soul and, X,6(10)
time of testing without respite,
X,28(39)

triad: being, knowledge, will,
X III,11(12)
wage due to justice, X,43(68)

light, IX,4(11), X,34(51,52), X II,3(3),
X III,13(14), X III,14(15), X III,18
(23), X III,19(25), X III,24(35)
creation, X III,12(13), X III,32(47)
creation, X III,34(4), X III,4(5),
X III,8(9), X III,10(11)
in Light we see light, X III,16(19)

incommutable, X II,10(16)
light and Light, X II,15(20)

listening, X I,8(10), X I,9(11)

literary studies, I,13(22)

literary work, IX,4(7)

literature:
Augustine’s studies, I,13(20)
Christians forbidden to teach,
V III,5(10) p73

memory, X,9(16)

profession, VIII,6(13)

liturgy:
comfort and encouragement in,
IX,7(15)

logic, X,9(16)

logical priority, X II,29(40)

longing, X I,2(3,4)
Lord, See God.

lost objects:
memory and, X,18(27,28)

Volume I/1

The Confessions
love, I,13(22), I,15(24), II,6(13), VII,18(24), IX,4(8,9), X,1(2), XI,14(17), XII,30(41)
adent desire for God; strength lack-
ing, X,23(33)
aruising, II,6(13)
beauty of corporeal things, IV,12(18)
belief and, X,3(3)
carnal; delight in, II,2(2)
command; variety of ways, X,II,24(36)
creatures say: love God, X,6(8)
criminal acts, II,6(12)
death in not loving God, I,13(21)
enamored with idea of, III,1(1)
exhortation, VIII,4(9)
forsoaken, IV,11(16)
glory, V,1(1)
God, what am I loving when I love you, X,6(8)
guilt for failure to love, IV,9(14)
human and divine, I,6(7)
human substitute for God, IV,8(13)
interpretations of words and, X,II,18(27)
late have I loved you . . ., X,27(38)
looking for, III,1(1)
love for loving God, XI,1(1)
loving and being loved, III,1(1)
loving something, not for God's sake, X,29(40)
making light of torments, I,9(15)
mercy of God and, II,7(15)
order of creation, X,II,15(19)
praise, love, and the listener, IV,14(21)
prayer for, VIII,1(1)
prayer: set me on fire! X,29(40)
shapely things, X,27(38)
soul purged by, X,1(2), X,29(39)
time; light; fire, X,II,15(21)
truth and hatred, X,23(34), XII,25(34)
truth; happy life, X,23(33)
two commandments, X,II,25(35)
warring loves in a single soul, IV,14(22)
weight that carries me, X,III,9(10)
what entices and attracts, IV,13(20)
wise man receiving correction, VI,7(12)
worthy of fraternal love, X,4(5)

love of God (our love for God), IV,2(3), XII,10(10), XII,11(12), XII,16(23), X,III,33(48)
gratitude for created goods, IV,12(18)
II, lust opposed to, VIII,5(12)
poured into our hearts, X,III,31(46)
prayer for, X,III,8(9)
pride as impediment, X,36(59)
things He has made for us, X,III,34(49)
whole heart, soul, and mind, III,8(15)
wholly sufficient, X,II,15(19)
love of neighbor, X,III,17(21), X,III,19(24)
lust, I,10(16), I,16(26), I,18(28,29), II,2(4), II,3(6,7), III,1(1), III,2(3), III,8(15), IV,1(1), IV,2(2), V,8(15), VI,12(22), VI,16(26), VIII,5(10), VIII,7(17), IX,1(1), X,35(55), X,III,21(30)
eyes, X,35(54)
love of God and, VIII,5(12)
luxuries, X,34(53)
lying, See lie.

Macedonia, X,III,25(38), X,III,26(40)
Madaura, II,3(5)
magic, X,42(67)
malice, II,4(9), VIII,3(4), VIII,7(17)
Mani, V,3(6), V,5(8), V,7(12,13)
Manichees:
A augustine's early years, III,6(10)-III,12(21)
continence, VI,7(12)
decision to leave, V,14(25)
Elpidius and, V,11(21)
fabulous philosophy, V,10(19)
falsehood, V,14(25)
motive for leaving Rome, V,13(23)
nature myths, V,7(12)
philosophy; evil, V,3(3), V,10(20)
pride, I,4(8)
substances, V,III,10(24)
mankind, See human.
marriage, II,2(3,4), II,3(8), IV,2(2), V,1,11(19), VI,12(22), VIII,1(2), VIII,3(7), IX,3(6), X,30(41)
contract; wives as slaves, IX,9(19)
preroccupations of un/married man, II,2(3)
martyrs:
coercion; ordeal, I,14(23)
offerings at tombs of, VI,2(2)
shrines, VI,2(2)
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
  flesh of her Son, V,10(20)
Mass:
  Monica’s desire, IX,13(36)
materialism:
  massive substances (Manichean), V,11(21)
  spiritual realities, VI,4(6)
mathematicians (astrologers), IV,3(4)
mathematics: memory, X,12(19)
matter:
  bodily things, XII,5(5)
  created formless, XIII,33(48) p73
  formless matter; formlessness.
  itself made from nothing, XII,29(40)
  potential to be formed, XII,19(28)
  prior to what is made of it, XII,29(40)
  unformed seeds of things, XII,17(26)
maturity, XIII,34(49)
measure: cubit, X,26(33)
measuring time, See time.
Medea, III,6(11)
medicine, IV,3(5)
meditation:
  devout reflection, XIII,23(34)
  sleep, VII,5(12)
memory, I,20(31), VII,17(23)
  delight: God is known in, X,24(35)
  effort to remember, X,8(12)
  emotional experiences, X,14(21), X,17(26), X,25(36)
  error, X,13(20)
  fields and vast mansions, X,8(12)
  forgetfulness, X,16,24(25)
God dwelling in, X,25(36)
great faculty, X,8(15)
images captured, stored, recalled, X,9(16), X,10(17,18)
imensity of, X,8(14,15)
knowledge of truth, X,23(33)
life of happiness in, X,20(29)
lost, forgotten items, X,18(27)
memory-pictures, II,6(10)
mind; identity, X,14(21), X,17(26), X,25(36)
mind’s “stomach,” X,14(21)

The Confessions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I,11(14)</td>
<td>X,1(1)</td>
<td>acting through the senses, X,7(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I,16(23)</td>
<td>X,7(12)</td>
<td>beauty in admitting its limitations,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I,25(35)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>bodily members warring against,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,11(12)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>climbing to God through mind,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,13(14)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>commanding the body, V,8(21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,20(27)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>commands itself to will, V,10(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,24(37)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>envisaged by Augustine, V,10(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,31(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>expects; attends; remembers, X,1,28(37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,35(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>experience of happiness, X,21(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,4(5)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>fraternal, X,4(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,5(7)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>God as Lord of, X,5(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,17(26)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>great reality, V,1,1(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,23(33)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>intelligence, X,1,23(33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,31(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>life of, X,1,8(22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,29(40)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>logic, X,1,29(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,10(20)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>Manichean philosophy, V,10(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,17(26)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>measuring time, XI,27(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,21(30)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>memory; identity, X,1,21(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,25(36)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>personal identity, X,1,25(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,27(36)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>power to impose on matter, X,1,27(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,31(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>predictions, IV,3(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,32(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>renewal of, X,1,22(32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,33(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>rent by plethora of objects, V,1,10(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,34(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>richness of, X,1,31(41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,6(10)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>seeking God, X,6(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,17(26)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>selfsame, X,1,17(26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,25(36)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>stripped of the world, V,1,6(15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,35(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>supreme good, IV,1,15(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,36(36)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>understanding; multiple ways, X,1,24(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,15(20)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>wisdom, X,1,15(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,21(30)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>ministers, X,1,21(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,34(49)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>miracles, X,1,34(49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,23(30)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>conversion and, X,1,23(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,34(49)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>Gervasius and Protasius (martyrs), X,1,34(49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,14(21)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>misery, III,2(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,7(12)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>IV,6(11), IV,7(12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,16(25)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,16(25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,21(30)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,21(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,31(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,31(41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,35(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,35(41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,5(7)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,5(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,17(26)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,17(26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,25(36)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,25(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,27(36)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,27(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,31(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,31(41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,35(41)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,35(41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,15(20)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,15(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,21(30)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,21(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,34(49)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,34(49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,23(30)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,23(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,34(49)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,34(49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,14(21)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,14(21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,7(12)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,7(12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,43(70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,8(16)</td>
<td>X,7,5(12)</td>
<td>X,8(16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/1

mockery, I,6(7) p73
Monad, IV,15(24)
monasteries: proliferation, VIII,6(15)
Monica, Saint, II,3(6,7,8)
assured re. “a son of tears like yours,”
III,11(21)
A augustine’s birth in the spirit,
V,9(16)
A augustine’s moving to Rome,
V,8(15)
baptism of Augustine, V,9(16)
beautiful in her husband’s eyes,
IX,9(19)
Cassiciacum, IX,4(8)
comes to Milan, V,1(11)
consolled by a vision, III,1,11(19)
death of, IX,8(17),
IX,11(28)-IX,13(37)
body prepared for burial, IX,12(31)
burial place provided for,
IX,11(27-28)
burial, IX,12(32)
dying, IX,11(27)
forgive her her sins, IX,13(35)
last illness: affection for Augustine,
IX,12(30)
rest in peace, IX,13(37)
devout attitude, IX,12(33)
efforts toward A augustine’s marrying,
VI,13(23)
Eve, V,8(15)
husband of, IX,9(19)
influence of piety, I,11(17)
joy at conversion of Augustine,
VIII,1,12(30)
nursing, I,6(7)
offerings at tombs of martyrs, V,1,2(2)
piety; wine, V,1,2(2)
prayers, V,9(17)
presence of God in, IX,9(22)
revelations and fantasies, V,1,13(23)
safe trip (to Milan) promised in
dream, V,1,1(1)
service to the baptized, IX,9(22)
spelling: ‘Monica’, IX,13(37)
trained by servant, IX,8(17)
tears; prayers, V,7(13), V,8(15),
V,9(17), V,1,1(1)
tribute to, IX,8(17)
V alentinian’s persecution, IX,7(15)
virtues and faith, IX,12(29)
virtues; practices, V,9(17)
The Confessions

vision: rule of faith, VIII,12(30)
visions and assurances, V,9(17)
wine swiller, IX,8(18)
monks: lives of, VIII,6(15)
monstrous sights, X,35(55)
moon, IX,10(24)
mortality, I,1(1)
Moses, III,7(13), XI,2(4), XI,3(5),
VII,11(17), VIII,16(23), VIII,18(25),
IX,31(46), X,25(34,35), XI,30(41),
XII,32(43)
intention: cannot see his thoughts,
XII,25(35), XII,26(36)
mother, III,11(19)
movement: time, XI,24(31)
murmuring, X,31(46)
mutability, See change. p73
mystical experience:
A/uguste and Monica, IX,10(24)
natural philosophy, V,5(8)
nature(s):
extended mass, X,6(10)
matter capable of receiving form,
XII,15(19)
number present in us, VIII,10(23)
Nebridius, IV,3(6), VI,7(11), VI,10(17),
VII,2(3), VII,6(8), VII,6(13,14),
IX,3(5,6), IX,4(7)
life after death, VI,16(26)
necromancy, X,35(56)
needs, X,31(47), XI,2(4,4), XI,31(29)
gifts supplying, XIII,26(41)
gospel, XIII,20(27)
moral sense, II,4(9)
succoring obligation, XIII,17(21)
neighbor:
command to love, III,8(15),
X,37(61,62), XII,26(36)
nest, XI,27(37,38)
never:
meaning; timelessness, X,1,30(40)
New Testament:
Manichean teaching, V,11(21)
night, X,18(23), X,19(25)
Noah, X,31(46)
non-beings, VII,11(17), XII,6(6)
non-existence: deprived of all good,
VII,12(18)
nothingness, VII,1(1), II,6(6), XII,8(8),
XII,12(15), XII,15(22), XII,19(28),
XII,33(48)
numbers:
memory, X,15(23)
principle of, X,12(19)
remembering, X,21(30)
obei, X,9(14), XIII,8(9)
obscurity, I,16(26), II,3(7)
ocean, XII,8(8)
oil poured into water, X,9(10)
old age, IV,10(15)
Old Testament:
A/mbrose’s sermons, VI,4(6)
interpretation, III,7(13)
spiritual sense, V,14(24)
omnipotence, VII,5(7)
parody of, II,6(14)
omnipresence, V,2(2), V,9(16), VI,3(4),
VIII,3(8), IX,8(18)
Onesiphorus, XIII,25(38)
oratory, I,16(25), I,18(29)
ordr, VII,13(19), VIII,3(8), IX,8(18),
XI,9(9), XII,15(19), XIII,9(10),
XIII,17(20), XIII,34(49)
no order where no form exists,
XII,15(22)
Orestes, IV,6(11)
original sin, V,9(16), VIII,10(22)
born to misery, X,20(29) p73
mortality; clothed in skins,
XIII,15(16)
Ostia, IX,8(17), IX,10(23), IX,11(28)
pagans, V,12(2), XIII,21(29)
pain:
curative, VIII,8(12)
human condition, VIII,3(8)
remembering, X,14(21)
will of God, II,2(4)
Paraclete, IX,4(9)
parents, I,9(14), I,10(16), I,11(17),
I,19(30), II,3(6,8), III,4(7), IX,9(22),
IX,13(37)
belief in being born of, V,15(7)
burial place, IX,11(28)
honoring, XIII,19(24)
pas,:
memory: disturbing the soul,
X,14(22)

Volume I/1
past time, See time.
patience, IX,2(4), IX,13(37), XI,9(11), X,25(34)
patriarchs, III,7(14)
Patricius (Monica’s husband), IX,9(19,22), IX,13(37)
Paul, Saint
adapt yourself to me …, X,III,21(31)
Augustine’s discovery of, VII,21(27)
Bridegroom’s friend, X,III,13(14)
hardships, X,III,25(38)
him who strengthens me …, X,31(45)
joy, X,III,26(40)
least of the apostles, VIII,4(9)
letters; Ponticianus, V,III,6(14)
“pick it up and read” (Rom 13:13-14), X,III,12(29)
burning for, after your touch, X,27(38)
comprehending of the Trinity, X,III,11(12)
goodness of will, X,III,9(10)
pen, as tongue, X,II,2(2), X,II,6(6)
peacemaking:
Monica’s gift, IX,9(21)
pear tree, II,4(9), II,6(12), II,8(16)
pearl, V,III,1(2)
Pereliusum, V,III,2(3)
penitence, X,42(67)
person:
deliberating; one soul, X,III,10(23)
perversity:
imitating the Lord, II,6(14)
Philippians, X,III,26(39,40)
philosophers:
Cicero, III,4(7)
Hierius, IV,14(21,22)
Manichees, V,3(3)
natural world, V,3(4) p73
warning against, VIII,II,2(3)
philosophy, VI,12(21), VII,1(1)
Phlolinus, V,II,19(25)
piety, V,5(8), VI,2(2), VII,20(26), X,33(49)
pigs, II,4(9), III,6(11)
pilgrimage, X,II,2(4)
pity, IX,13(35), X,6(8), X,II,9(11)
place and time, VIII,15(21), X,26(37)
things seek rightful places, X,III,9(10)
planning: real being, X,III,8(23)
Platonists:
books of, VII,9(13), VII,20(26), VIII,2(3)
play: love for, I,19(30)
pleasure, I,20(31), II,2(4), IV,1(2), IV,7(12), IV,11(17), VIII,3(7,8), X,31(43), X,37(60,61), X,II,2(4)
bodily senses, IX,10(24)
emotions, III,2(3)
hearing, X,33(49,50)
fortunes of others, III,8(16)
sadness in theater, III,2(2)
sensual, X,35(55)
temporal life, IX,10(26)
in theft, II,6(12,14), II,8(16), II,9(17)
pluralism, XII,31(42)
poems, X,27(36)
length of lines, X,26(33)
memorized, X,28(38)
stanzas and syllables, X,28(38)
poetry:
art of, III,7(14)
contest, IV,2(3)
Ponticianus:
re. Antony of Egypt, V,III,6(14-15), V,III,7(16,18)
poor:
rich and, V,III,4(9)
sell your possessions …, X,III,19(24)
possessions:
all received from God, X,III,14(15)
appropriating what is for all to enjoy, X,II,25(34)
ideal community, VI,1(24)
sell, give to the poor, X,III,19(24)
potter’s wheel, X,12(23)
power, I,1(1)
powers of darkness, VII,2(3)
praise, I,1(1), I,6(9,10), I,7(12), I,17(27), I,19(30), III,11(21), IV,1(1), IV,10(15), IV,12(18), V,1(1), V,7(12), VIII,1(1), VIII,2(3), IX,1(1), IX,4(12), IX,7(16), IX,9(22), X,6(8), X,34(52,53), X,35(57), X,37(60,61,62), X,38(63), X,43(70), X,1(2), X,1(5,7),
Praise:
all creatures praise God, V,13(19)
love for man praised, IV,14(21)
out of the mouths of infants . . .
XIII,15(17)
praiseworthy, IV,14(22) p73
pride, X,36(59)

Prayer(s):
in boyhood, I,9(14)
desire in, IV,5(10)
God hears plea of Monica's heart,
III,11(19)
Monica's prayer apparently not answered,
VIII,8(15)
Monica's, for Augustine, III,11(20),
V,1(2)
petitions, XI,1(1)
for understanding scriptures,
X,1(2,3)
priests, I,1(1), X,III,21(29)

Preaching:
Ambrose, V,13(23)
purpose, X,III,23(34)

Precedence: order of choice, X,II,29(40)

Prediction:
astrology, IV,3(5), VII,6(9)
future events; present causes or signs,
X,II,18(24)
seer; future events, X,II,18(23)
pregnant women, I,6(9)
Presence of God, II,6(14), III,6(11),
IV,2(2), X,II,12(2), X,III,14(15)
hiding from, X,III,21(30)
larger/smaller portions of space,
VII,1(2)
return to our own hearts, IV,12(19)
presentiment of future events, X,II,18(24)

Presumption:
confession and, VII,20(26)
exegesis; Moses' intent, X,II,25(34)

Pride:
I,1(1), I,4(4), I,11(17), I,13(20),
II,2(2), II,6(13), III,5(9), IV,3(4),
IV,25(31), IV,15(25), VII,6(9),
V,10(18), VII,II,7(11), VII,9(13),
VIII,18(24), VIII,II,2(4), VIII,4(9),
IX,4(7,8), IX,12(33), X,30(41),
X,42(67), X,III,15(17), X,III,21(30)

Purity of heart, X,III,21(29)

Vol 1/1
The Confessions

Volume I/1

Pygades, IV, 6(11)
quarrel, IX, 8(18)
rationality:
supreme good/evil, IV, 15(24)
raven:
Elijah and, XIII, 26(41)
reading, I, 8(13), I, 13(20, 21), III, 11(21), IV, 8(13), IV, 16(28, 29), V, 3(3), V, 7(13), VI, 3(3), VII, 21(27), VIII, 2(4), VIII, 6(13, 15), VIII, 10(24)
reality, III, 6(10), III, 7(12), V, 5(9), X, 5(5)
abiding unchangingly, VII, 11(17)
astrology, VII, 6(9)
evil; fear, VII, 5(7)
God’s own Spirit, XIII, 31(46)
held in memory, X, 20(29)
memory, X, 16(24)
mind and sensible things, XIII, 18(22)
mind, VII, 1(2)
spiritual, VI, 4(6)
reason, X, 33(49), X, III, 24(37), XIII, 32(47)
discursive, VII, 17(23)
subject to change, VII, 17(23)
recall, See memory.
reconciliation:
Jesus the mediator, X, 42(67)
Monica’s gift, IX, 9(21)
redemption:
Christ died for all, X, 43(70)
faith (Old Testament) in his future passion, X, 43(68)
he came to save sinners, IV, 12(19)
Monica’s death, IX, 13(36) P33
remembering, See memory.
renewal, XIII, 13(14)
repentance:
re-creation, X, 11(12)
singing and, X, 33(50)
sinners; joy, VIII, 3(6)
reputation; VI, 11(19), VII, 20(26), VIII, 2(2)
research, V, 3(10)
rest, X, 7(8), X, 38(8, 9), X, 39(9, 10)
eternal life, X, 36(51, 52)
in God, IX, 4(11)
restlessness, X, 8(9)
resurrection of the dead, IX, 3(5)
revelation:
authority, XIII, 15(16)
meanings in light of truth, X, 30(41)
Monica’s dreams, V, 13(23)
reverence, V, 5(8), V, 10(20), V, 5(8), VIII, 21(27), VIII, 1(2), VIII, 7(17), IX, 8(17)
reward for welcoming, XIII, 26(41)
rhetoric:
Augustine selling his skills, IV, 1(1)
Christians forbidden to teach, V, 5(10)
learning to excel in, II, 2(4), II, 3(5)
profession, IV, 3(5)
professor; teaching, IV, 2(2), V, 7(13), V, 7(11)
school of, III, 3(6)
teaching in Rome, V, 12(22)
teaching post in Milan, V, 13(23)
Victorinus, VIII, 2(5)
rich: poor and, VIII, 4(9)
rich young man: what must I do …? XIII, 19(24)
riches, See wealth.
righteousness, III, 7(13), X, 2(4), XIII, 2(3), XIII, 18(22)
Romanianus, VI, 14(24)
Rome, VI, 10(16), VIII, 2(4), IX, 3(5)
Augustine moves to, V, 8(14)
Manichees in, V, 10(19)
rule of faith:
vision of Augustine standing on, III, 11(19), VIII, 12(30)
Sabbath, XIII, 36(50, 51)
sacraments, I, 11(17), XIII, 34(49)
sea creatures, XIII, 20(26, 28)
sacrifice, I, 17(27), III, 3(5), IV, 1(1), IV, 2(3), IV, 3(4), IV, 16(30), V, 1(1), V, 3(4), VIII, 12(28), IX, 4(10), XI, 2(3)
praise, X, 34(53)
sadness, X, 37(61)
drama; pleasure in, III, 2(3)
 Enjoying sad feelings, III, 2(3)
love of, III, 2(4)
memory, X, 14(21, 22)
saints, XIII, 20(26)
spiritual gifts, XIII, 34(49)
saints (company of saints in Rome),
V, 10(18) P73
salt, I, 11(17)
The Confessions

salvation, I,5(5), I,11(17), I,18(29), V,11(18), VII,21(27), VIII,3(6), V,I,4(9), IX,1(1), IX,6(14), IX,8(18), X,23(33), X,35(56), X,19(11), XIII,13(14), X,III,14(15), X,III,18(22)
Ambrose's teaching, V,13(23), V,1(2)
Monica's prayers, V,9(17)
proclamation (Victorinus), VIII,2(5)
providence, V,7(13), V,8(14), V,10(18)
scandal: eating, X,31(46)
scriptures, See bible.
sea, XIII,20(27,28), XIII,23(33,34), XIII,24(37), XIII,27(42), XIII,32(47)
bitter unbelief, X,III,21(29)
creation, X,III,17(20)
sea creatures:
day five of creation, X,III,20(26)
seasons, IV,8(13)
seed-bearing plants, X,III,17(21)
seeding, X,III,25(38)
seeking God, III,6(11), X,1,2(4), X,III,21(30)
life of happiness sought, X,20(29)
praise the Lord, I,1(1), X,4,3(70)
question all creatures, X,6(9)
seer: predictions, X,II,18(23)
self:
-abhorrence, V,III,7(17)
-confidence, V,III,18(24)
-control, X,III,34(49)
-deceit, I,5(6)
-esteem, X,38(63)
-importance, X,III,21(30)
-indulgence, I,15(24), X,31(44), X,III,21(30)
-knowledge, X,3(3), X,5(7), X,37(62)
-memory; recall, X,8(14,15)
-mind and, X,17(26)
opinions of others on, X,37(61)
-purification, VII,10(16)
-reliance, V,18(13)
-restraint, X,III,25(38)
-satisfaction, X,39(64)
Seneca, V,6(11)
senses, II,5(10), II,6(12), X,40(65), X,15(7), X,1,18(23), XII,27(37), X,III,23(34)

animal, X,6(10)
apprehension; thought, X,II,5(5)
emancipated by the soul, X,7(11)
enjoyment, X,21(30)
images captured, stored, recalled, X,10(17,18)
impresions in memory, X,8(13), X,15(23)
late have I loved you ..., X,27(38)
memory and, X,8(12,15)
number: use; principle, X,12(19)
pleasure, IX,10(24), X,35(54,55)
remembering eloquence, X,21(30)
seeking God, X,6(9) p73
soul and, VII,17(23)
sensuality, X,32(48), X,33(50), X,III,18(23)
sensuous enjoyment, X,33(49)
saraphim, X,III,22(31)
serpents, XIII,25(38)
servants; service:
ordered to serve, X,4,6
prayer; brothers, X,II,2(3)
serving God, III,9(17), XIII,1,2(1), X,III,27(42)
will of God; best servant, X,26(37)
seventh day, XIII,36(51)
sexuality:
-male and female, X,III,23(33), X,III,32(47)
shadows, X,III,14(15)
shame, VIII,6(15), VIII,10(22), VIII,11(25,27)
sharers, X,III,26(40)
ship:
-lost, X,II,15,21
-strayed, VIII,3(6)
shipwreck, VIII,3(7)
shows, I,1,10,16, I,19,30, IV,1,1, V,II,7(11,12)
sick, VII,16(22), VIII,3(7)
sight:
-concupiscence of the eyes, X,34(51), X,35(55)
language usage, X,35(54)
over-indulgence of the eyes, X,34(51,52)
signs, I,6,8(10), I,13,22, IX,22(32), X,III,18(23), X,III,21(29,30)
multiple ways; understanding, X,III,24(36,37)
Volume I/1

sea creatures, X,13,20(26)
signs and wonders, X,35(55)
silence, V,3(3), IX,10(25), X,2(2), X,34(51), X,127(34,36), XII,3(3), XI,16(23)

Simplicianus, VIII,1(1), VIII,2(3,4), V,11,5(10)
simplicity, II,6(13), IX,4(10), X,11,3(4)
Trinity, X,11,11(12)
action, intention, circumstances, III,9(17)
Augsutine’s excesses, II,3(8)
boyhood, I,13(22)
chastised for, VII,10(16)
chief kinds of, III,8(16)
cleansing, I,5(6)
conceived in iniquity, I,7(12)
effects, X,41(66)
even infants are not free from, I,7(11)
feasting on, II,6(12)
God as disposer of, I,10(16)
God not harmed by, VII,11(11)
God’s anger, IX,4(10)
growing worse, I,19(30)
hate for, VII,7(16)
hidden sins, X,37(60)
incurred after baptism, I,11(17)
just punishment, VIII,5(11)
law of, V,11,5(12)
license, IV,3(4)
love of, II,4(9)
original, V,9(16), VIII,10(22), X,20(29), X,11,15(16)
pleasure; company of others, II,8(16), I,9(17)
pleasure in creatures, I,20(31)
prisoner of law of, VII,21(27)
punishment, X,30(40)
responsibility, V,10(18)
restraints against, I,11(18)
root of, VII,3(5)
spurious mediator, X,42(67)
will moving away from God, X,11(11)
singing, X,33(49,50)
sinner: joy over repentance, VIII,3(6)
sky, X,11,8(8), XI,13,16(16), X,11,21,30(30), X,11,22,31, XII,13,20,26(26), XII,32(47)
slaves, I,6(8), I,19(30), III,3(5)
sleep, III,6(10), VIII,5,12(12), X,30(41,42)
sloth, I,6(13)
sniff, X,32(48)
smiling, I,6(8)
snakes, X,21,30(31)
social order, III,8(15), III,9(17)
Sodomites, III,8(15)
solitude, VIII,12(28), X,43(70)
Solomon, III,6(11)
Son of God:
coeternal with the Father, XI,13(16), XII,5(16)
form of God the Father, VII,9(14)
identical to the Father, in nature, VII,9(14)
our wisdom, V,3(5)
song:
composition, III,7(14)
familiarity with, X,13,11(41)
sound and, X,11,29(40)
soothsayers, X,17(22)
sorrow, IV,5(10), IV,8(13), IV,9(14), IV,15(15), V,8(15), VIII,3(8), IX,4(10), IX,12(32)
battle with joy, X,28(39)
memory, X,14(21)
mercy and, III,2,12(3,3)
sadness and pleasure in theater, III,2(2)
value, III,2(3)
soul, I,13(22), I,15(24), I,17(27), II,4(9), II,5(10), II,6(14), IV,2(3), IV,4,7(9), IV,7(12), IV,11(16,17), IV,12(18), IV,14,23, VI,6,9(10), VII,21(27), VIII,7(18,19), IX,10,25(25), IX,12,30(32), X,1,1(1), X,2,2(2), X,30,42(42), X,1,2(3), X,1,14(15), X,13,21,29(29)
animals symbolize impulses of,
X,1,13,21,30(30)
anxiety, VII,5(7)
air, III,16(19) p73
athirst for God, X,17(21)
bodily death and, V,11(19)
See also body and soul.
clinging to created things, IV,10(15)
condition known in God’s sight,
X,11,23(33)
corruption, V,2(3)

See also}

The Confessions
The Confessions

cure of sickness of, V,14(25)
damaged by vice, III,8(16)
darkness, VII,20(26), XIII,8(9), XIII,12(13)
death of, V,9(16)
devoted to life of the mind, XIII,18(22)
dies by craving, XIII,21(30)
disordered; punishment, I,12(19)
faculties, XIII,32(47)
falling into error, IV,15(26)
forsaking fountain of life, XIII,21(30)
fount of life: God, XIII,16(19)
fullness of Son of God received, VII,9(14)
God entering, I,5(6)
God’s dwelling, XIII,1(1)
God, the life of, III,6(10)
see also heart
healed only by believing, VI,14(6)
healed; redemption, IV,12(19)
hiding from truth; truth hides from soul, X,23(34)
image of God, VII,9(15)
inner power; data from senses, VII,17(23)
instability, VII,19(25)
nature of, IV,15(24)
let God ravish, X,34(51)
life drawn from God, X,20(29)
mounting to God, X,7(11)
maturity, XIII,20(28)
origin, I,6(7)
passions disturbing, X,14(22)
pilgrim-soul, XII,15(21)
poor health of, III,1(1)
rising to God, V,1(1)
sea (analogy), XIII,17(20)
secret deserving inspiration, VII,16(10)
seeking God, X,III,21(30)
self-control, XIII,34(49)
See also spiritual life.
surrendered to God, X,4(6)
tempestuous changes in, XI,29(39)
thirsting for God, XII,11(13), XIII,13(14)
torn apart by two wills, VIII,5(10)
torn by conflicting impulses, VIII,10(24)
transformed by faith, X,3(4)
viciously inclined, IV,15(25)
wholesomeness, VII,14(20)
worldly hankering, XIII,22(32)
sound:
measuring, X,1,27(34,36) p73
memory, X,9(16)
song and, XII,29(40)
sowing, XIII,18(22)
space:
quality, VII,1(1-2), VII,7(11)
truth and, VII,10(16)
speaking:
drawn, X,1,26(33)
hearing; succession of syllables, IV,11(17)
one word dies so next can be heard, IV,10(15)
selling the art of, VIII,6(13)
skills of the tongue, I,9(14)
speech, IX,10(24), XIII,24(36)
spirit, IV,15(24), VIII,8(19), X,34(52), XIII,2(3)
bodies attributed to, VII,5(7)
feeds on joy, XIII,27(42)
flesh lusts against, VIII,5(11)
knows inside of the person, X,3(3), X,5(7)
life of body and, X,40(65)
light of goodness, VI,16(26)
Spirit-filled persons, XIII,23(33)
struggle with flesh, X,23(33)
uncleanness, XIII,7(8)
spiritual direction, VIII,1(1)
spiritual life:
see also God; heart; mind; soul; will
ascend even to God, IV,12(19)
briden, if I am not full of You, X,28(39)
clear sight, V,8(12)
crushed hearts, V,3(3)
distinguishing carnal people, XIII,23(33)
eating; transformation, VII,10(16)
lacking in necessary strength, X,23(33)
toward maturity, XIII,20(28)
spring (of water), X,II,27(37)
spiritual direction, VIII,1(1)
stars:
beauty of, II,6(12)
Mani’s error, V,5(8)
markers of time, X,1,23(29)
stealing, I,19(30), II,4(9), II,6(12), II,9(17)

Volume I/1
The Confessions

Volume I/1

beauty, II,6(12)
pear tree, II,4(9), II,9(17)
perversity, II,6(14), II,8(16)
stomach: memory and, X,14(21)
storm at sea, VIII,3(7)
student years at Carthage (Book III)
Manichees, III,6(10)
sex, III,1(1)
theatrical shows, III,2(2)
students:
bad discipline at Carthage, V,8(14)
Roman depravity, V,12(22)
study:
Augustine’s boyhood, I,9(15), I,12(19) p73
law-court as goal, III,3(6)
stupidity, II,6(13)
substance:
Aristotle’s categories, IV,16(28)
destructability: evil, VII,12(18)
duality, VII,14(20)
imperishable, VIII,1(1)
main genus of, IV,16(28)
matter of idea of, VI,11(1)
matter and form, X,II,19(28)
spiritual, V,14(25), VI,3(4)
villainy, V,16(22)
suffering:
love; making light of torments,
I,9(15)
theater; sadness; pleasure, I,10(23)
sun, VII,1(2), IX,10(24), X,III,18(23)
course in a “day,” X,1,23(30)
stood still (for Joshua), X,1,23(30)
sunrise: prediction, X,1,18(24)
superstition, IV,2(3), VI,7(12), VII,6(8),
VIII,7(17)
supreme good:
indestructability, VII,12(18)
sweetness, X,III,30(45)
syllables, IV,13(17), X,1,27(35)
time, X,1,23(29), X,1,26(33), X,1,27(35)
Symmachus (prefect), V,13(23)
sympathy, I,II,2(3)
talkativeness, VII,6(8)
tantrum, I,6(8), I,7(11)
taste, X,31(43)
Teacher, The, IX,6(14)
teachers(-s; -ing), I,14(23), V,5(9),
V,7(12)
eternal Truth; changeable creature,
X,8(10)
food is owed to, X,III,25(38)
future events, X,1,19(25)
physical strain, IX,2(4)
salaries, I,16(26)
tears, IV,7(12), IV,9(14), V,2(2), V,8(15),
VIII,12(28), IX,6(14), IX,12(29,33),
X,1(1), X,33(50), X,37(60),
XII,11(13), XIII,13(14)
joy, V,III,3(6)
Monica’s prayer, III,11(21)
temporal goods, IX,4(10), X,28(39),
X,III,34(49)
happiness, X,III,17(20)
immortality and, X,VII,19(25)
prosperity, X,III,10(24)
temptation, I,11(18), I,15(24), II,5(10),
V,1,3(3), VI,10(16), X,5(7), X,30(41),
X,31(44,46), X,32(48), X,34(51),
X,35(56), X,37(61), X,38(63),
X,39(64), X,41(66), XIII,20(26)
eyes, X,34(53)
pride, the third great temptation,
X,36(59) ff
put to the test by, X,37(60)
tenses:
memory, attention, expectation,
X,II,20(26), XII,15(18) p73
tension:
consciousness, X,1,26(33)
Terence, I,16(26)
testimony: believing, V,II,5(7)
Thagaste, II,3(5), IV,4(7), IV,7(12)
thanksgiving, I,20(31)
theater:
sadness; tears, III,2(4)
theatrical shows, X,35(56)
thief, See stealing.
Thessalonica, X,III,26(40)
thirst, IX,8(17), XII,17(21)
This is my beloved Son (voice from
cloud), X,1,6(8)
thought, X,11(18)
time, IV,8(13), IX,1,1(1), XII,11(13,14),
X,III,33(48)
abiding providence; place, VII,15(21)
before its creation, X,II,15(20)
being derived from God,
XII,15(20,21)
The Confessions

Bible speaks in terms of time, XI,15(19)
century as "present" time, XI,15(19)
coeternity, XI,15(40), XII,15(19)
creation of God, XI,14(17)
current month as "present," XI,15(19)
day not "present" all at once, XI,15(20)
distinct periods, XIII,18(22)
duration, XI,15(19), XI,21(27), XI,23(29), XI,24(31)
epochs of, before creation, XI,13(15)
extension of, before creation, XI,13(15)
See also eternity

Formless matter and, XII,29(40)
future:
becomes past, XI,13(16)
becomes present, XI,17(22)
event still to come announced, XI,18(24)
non-existent, XI,28(37)
past and, XI,11(13), XII,15(18)
God eternally at work, VII,15(21)
God’s "today" is eternity, XI,13(16)
hour; minutes, XI,15(20)
ignorance of, XI,25(32)
intervals of, XI,16(21), XII,15(18)
looking always on God’s face, XII,15(21)
measure(-ed; ing):
by awareness, XI,16(21)
"extension" of, XI,121(27)
future, present, past, XI,26(33)
impression, XI,27(36)
mensuration, XI,26(33)
periods as they pass, XI,21(27), XI,27(34)
mind expects; attends; remembers, XI,28(37)
movement of a body, XI,124(31), XI,26(33)
movements of heavenly bodies, XI,23(29,30)
mysterious, XI,22(28)
no “then” when there was no time, XI,13(15)
no easy answer to what time is, XI,14(17)
no past/present/future if nothing exists, XI,14(17)
our years; God’s “today,” I,6(10)
passage of, XII,19(28), XIII,32(47)
past and future, XI,11(13), XI,18(23)
past grows as future dwindles, XI,27(36)
past/future as real beings, XI,14(17), XI,18(23)
potential for change, XII,15(21)
precious, XI,12(2)
predetermined plan, XIII,34(49)
See also prediction

present:
as “long” time, XI,15(19,20)
reduced to vanishing-point, XI,15(20)
prior to created wisdom, XI,15(20)
referred to as “long” or “short,” XI,15(18,20), XI,22(28)
segments of, XI,21(27)
strain or tension, XI,23(30)
successions of, XII,13(16), XII,15(22)
successive periods of, XI,19(9)
syllables long and short, XI,23(29), XI,26(33), XI,27(35)
teaching future events, XI,19(25)
temporal seeing, repose after time, XIII,37(32)
tends to non-being, XI,14(17)
tenses: memory, attention, expectation, XI,20(26), XII,15(18)
tension of consciousness, XI,26(33)
three “present” times, XI,20(26)
three tenses, or present only?
XI,17(22)
totality of current year, XI,15(19)
world of, XIII,21(31)
timidity, II,6(13)
tippling, IX,8(17)
Tobit, X,34(52)
tolerance:
ignorance and charity, V,5(9)
tongue, See speaking; speech.
tongues, XIII,18(23), XIII,24(36)
like fire, XIII,19(25)
sign to unbelievers, XIII,21(29)
toothache, IX,4(12)
torture, I,9(15)
touch, II,5(10)
memory, X,9(16)
treasure: heart, XIII,19(24)
trees, XIII,25(38)

Owning; knowing, V,4(7)
triad:
being, knowledge, will, XIII,11(12)
Volume I/1

Trier:
court officials, VIII,6(15)

Trinity:
creation and, XII,7(7), XIII,5(6)
creator of whole created universe,
XIII,5(6)
Holy Spirit poised over the waters,
XIII,9(10) p73
let us make man ..., XIII,22(32)
Persons; mutual relationships,
XIII,11(12)
three coexistent acts, XIII,11(12)
triax within ourselves, XIII,11(12)
understanding, XIII,11(12)
unity, XIII,11(12), XIII,22(32)
Wisdom, XIII,5(6)

Troy, I,13(22)

trust, VIII,11(27)

truth, III,6(10), IV,12(18), IV,14(23),
IV,15(24,25,27), IV,16(31),
V,6(10), V,10(18,19),
V,14(24), VI,1(1), VI,10(17),
VI,11(18), IX,6(14), IX,10(24),
X,1(1), X,34(53), X,37(61,62),
X,40(65), X,1,1(1), XI,3(5), XI,5(7),
XI,7(9), XI,27(34), XII,28(38),
XII,30(41), XII,31(42),
XIII,18(22,23), XIII,22(32),
XIII,23(33), XIII,24(37)
accusing; enlightening, X,23(34)
ardent desire; strength lacking,
X,23(33)
author’s intention, XII,18(27),
XII,23(32)
beauty, II,6(13)
bible as “spring;” each drawing truth
from, X,27(37)
chance, VII,6(10)
common bounty for all lovers of,
XII,25(34)
conversion, X,8(10)
convinced by, V,11,5(12)
devil and, VII,21(27)
dialogue with God, X,2(2)
divergent opinions, XIII,24(36,37)
doubt re. existence of, VII,10(16)
entrusting truth to Truth, IV,11(16)
eternal; unchangeable, V,17(23)
finiteness/infinite space, VII,10(16)
God’s law, IV,9(14)
habit and, VIII,9(21)
happy life, X,23(33)
hatred and, X,23(34)
hearing about oneself; knowing one-
self, X,3(3)
hiding/hidden: the soul, X,23(34)
immutable, XII,25(35)
innumerable things believed as true,
X,1,5(7)
inpiration, XIII,25(38)
knowledge of, VII,10(16), X,23(33)
language: words, X,12(19)
longing to be certain, VI,4(6)
love for, X,23(33)
memory and, X,10(17), X,23(33)
modesty, VIII,2(4)
perception uncertain, VIII,5(11)
private property, XII,25(34)
quest for the past, X,17(22)
true Teacher, XI,8(10)
uncertainty, VIII,7(18)
twins: astrology, VII,6(10)
unbelief, See: belief; faith.
unbelievers, XIII,34(49)
uncleanness, X,31(46)
understanding, VIII,13(17), XIII,20(27),
XIII,22(32), XIII,23(33), XIII,38(53)
true power to question, X,6(10)
multiple ways; mind, XIII,24(36)
seeking, XIII,10(11)
underworld; I,2(2)
union with God, I,9(15), XII,11(12)
unity, IV,15(24)
true bond of friendship, II,5(10)
human powers, XIII,11(12)
universe:
creation, X,1,5(7), XIII,32(47)
first formless, then formed,
XII,29(40)
primal matter, X,11(29)
term: heaven and earth, XII,17(25)
Trinity and the creation, XIII,5(6)
vainglory, X,38(63)
Valentinian (boy-emperor), IX,7(15)
vandalism, V,12(22)

The Confessions
The Confessions

vanity, III,4(7), IV,11(16), IV,15(26), V,5(8), VI,11(18), VII,16(22), VIII,2(4)
vault of heaven, X,15(16,17,18), X,18(22), XIII,19(25), X,20(27), XIII,21(29), X,23(33,34), XIII,24(35), X,32(47), XIII,34(49)
veneration: temptation, X,36(59)
verbal skills, III,4(7)
verbosity, I,4(4)
Vercundus (convert), VIII,6(13), IX,3(5,6)
vice, II,6(12,13), III,9(17), IV,15(24,25)
damage to the soul, III,8(16)
punished, III,8(15)
Victorinus:
conversion, VIII,2(3-5), VIII,4(9)
devil and soul of, VIII,4(9)
proclamation of faith, VIII,2(5)
reading scriptures, VIII,2(4)
translator, VIII,2(3)
Victorious emperor, VIII,3(7)
villainy, VIII,6(13)
Vindicianus, VII,6(8)
vindictiveness, III,9(17)
violence, III,6(6)
Virgil, I,14(23)
virgin birth, VII,19(25)
virginity, VIII,11(27)
dedicated, VIII,6(15)
virtue, IV,15(24), X,39(64) p73
feigned, VI,7(12)
vision(s):
future life: seeing God as He is, X,15(18)
Monica’s re. Augustine, III,11(19)-III,11(20)
pledges bearing God’s signature, V,9(17)
vocation, IX,8(18), XI,29(39)
voice, X,1,27(34)
word(s) of creation, X,1,6(8)
waste, VI,7(11)
waters, X,12(15), XIII,21(29), XIII,32(47)
above the vault, X,13,15(18)
Holy Spirit hovered over, X,12,22(31)
oil and, X,9(10)
sea creatures, X,12,20(26,27)

way of life, I,2(2)
weakness, X,3(4), X,4(6), X,35(57), XI,2(2), XII,23(32), XII,27(37), XIII,15(18), XIII,17(21), XIII,19(25)
wealth, I,12(19), V,12(22), IX,1(1)
used for concupiscences, X,37(60)
weeping, IX,12(33)
comfort, IV,4(9)
hope and, IV,5(10)
relief to the wretched, IV,5(10)
weight: proper place, X,3(9)
welcoming, X,26(41), X,27(42)
well-being, X,3(1)
whales, X,20(26), X,23(27)
wheel: time, X,13(29)
wholesomeness (of soul), VII,14(20), IX,8(18)

wickedness, X,19(24)
wife abuse, IX,9(19)

wild beasts:
living soul, X,1,21(31)
symbols, X,1,21(30)

will:
conflicting impulses, VIII,10(24)
contradictory wills, VIII,10(23)
crippled by struggle, VIII,8(19)
evil = free decision of will, VII,3(5)
faculty to act; will to act, V,1,8(20)
lust = perverted will, VIII,5(10)
mind commands, VIII,9(21)
repetitive, X,15(18)
sin: moving away from God, X,11(11)

triad: being, knowledge, will, X,11(12)
two wills:
one carnal, one spiritual, V,3(9)
partial non-willing, VIII,9(21)
two natures, V,10(22)
villainy, V,16(22)
upright; and welcoming, X,11,27(42)
wholehearted, V,11,10(22)

willing is already the doing, V,13,8(20)

willing that a certain volition exist, V,13,9(21) p73
will of God:
conversion, IX,1(1)
discerning for ourselves, X,13,22(32)

Volume I/1
Volume I/1

eternal, XI,6(8), XIII,15(18)
freedom for humans, XI,1(1)
give what you command ..., X,29(40), X,31(45), X,37(60)
identical with God, XII,28(38)
only once and all together and eternally, XII,15(18)
pain used to make known, II,2(4)
powerful, IX,4(12)
your best servant ..., X,26(37)
prior to act of creation, X,10(12)
searching for, XII,23(32), XII,24(33)
unchangeable, XIII,4(5), XIII,16(19)
wind, XIII,19(25)
wine, VI,2(2), IX,8(17)
problem drinking, IX,8(18)
wisdom, I,1(1), V,3(5), V,5(8), VI,10(17), V,11(18), V,19(25), VIII,6(8), VIII,9(14), VIII,19(25), VIII,20(26), VIII,6(13), VIII,7(17), IX,3(6), IX,10(24,25), XI,9(11), XII,17(25), XIII,15(17), XIII,19(24,25), XIII,20(27), XIII,23(33), XIII,24(36)
creation, XII,28(39)
eldest of created things, X,II,15(20)
eloquence, V,6(10)
exhortation to, III,4(8)
first of all creatures, XII,15(20)
gift of speaking with, XIII,18(23)
living in accord with, XIII,2(3)
love of, III,4(8)
quest for, III,4(7)
reverence, VIII,1,12)
wisdom and Wisdom, XII,15(20)

wise man:
            correcting; love, VI,7(12)
wives:
            subservient status, IX,9(19)
woman/women:
            equality, XIII,32(47)
            learning from, I,6(10)
            subordinate to man, XIII,32(47), XIII,34(49)
wonders, XII,8(8), XIII,21(29)
Word of God, V,3(5), V,II,2(3), IX,10(25)
abides forever, X,II,6(8), XIII,15(18)
born of the Father, VII,9(14)
coeternal with the Father, X,II,7(9), X,II,20(29)
creation shaped and conformed, XIII,2(3)

eternal life, XIII,21(31)
eternal Word as "the Beginning,“ X,II,8(10)
God creates in his Word, X,II,5(7)
immutability, VII,19(25)
in the beginning ..., VII,9(13)
inner ear attuned to, X,II,6(8)
Jesus the mediator, X,43(68)
Light, VII,9(13) p73
maker of all things, X,II,2(4)
no cessation or succession, X,II,7(9)
remoteness; incarnation, X,II,43(69)
silent, in eternity, X,II,6(8)
speaks to us (in Jesus), X,II,8(10)
untouched by time, XIII,29(44)
Wisdom, VII,18(24)

words, IV,11(17)
influence, I,16(26)
learning to speak, I,8(13)
sacramental power, XIII,20(28)
trained in use of, I,20(31)
thought, X,12(19)
voiced (?) words of creation, X,II,6(8)

works:

God's providential abiding, VII,15(21)

God's works are done through humans, XIII,37(52)
good because they are God's gift, XIII,36(51), XIII,38(53)
See also good works.

works of mercy, XIII,17(21), XIII,18(22), XIII,24(37), XIII,25(38), XIII,34(49)

world:

creation; form, X,II,4(4), X,II,17(25), X,III,32(47)
endowed with beauty, X,II,2(2)
figuratively called a sea, XIII,17(20)
made from formless matter, X,II,8(8), X,II,17(25)
philosophy, V,3(3)
presence of God who made it, IV,12(19)
questioned; seeking God, X,6(9)
worldliness, VI,10(17), VI,11(19), X,28(39), XIII,13(14), XIII,21(30,31), XIII,22(32)
attachment to, XIII,21(29), XIII,22(32)
enslavement, VIII,6(13)
world affairs, II,2(3)
worship, V,3(5), V,III,5(10), XIII,15(17)
commanded; bounty granted, X,III,1(1)
joy; reward, X,II,22(32)
worth:
totality of higher/lower creatures, VII,13(19)
pleasure in, II,6(14), II,8(16)
“wreckers” (students), III,3(6)
wrongdoing, X,36(59), XIII,38(53)
depraved actions, I,16(25)
presence of God, IV,12(18)
right thing done unwillingly, I,12(19)
year:
current; present time, X,II,15(19)
yoke, X,36(58)
zeal, X,III,24(37), XIII,34(49)
Index from
Life of Saint Augustine
Possidius, Vita s. Augustini
(Life of Saint Augustine)

Published by New City Press in:
Revisions

Translation, notes and introduction by Boniface Ramsey, Roland Teske, SJ, editor,
Boniface Ramsey, series editor

Composed in his old age, Augustine reviews nearly all his writings, summarizing, correcting, and
even expressing regret on occasion. Includes an appendix with the Indiculus of Possidius.

Volume I/2
Books/Autobiographical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-360-6, 6 x 9 in., 227 pp., 2010

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-360-6, 6 x 9 in., 227 pp., 2010

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.

ebook available

New City Press of the Focolare
202 Comforter Blvd.
Hyde Park, NY 12538

www.newcitypress.com
orders@newcitypress.com
1-800-462-5980
**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>73:28 I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15.24</td>
<td>74:23 I, 19, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16.25</td>
<td>104:26 I, 15, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:19 LXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:9 I, 19, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:18 I, 19, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:19 I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:35 LXX I, 10, 2; I, 22, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:18 LXX II, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:19 Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:22 I, 19, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:2 I, 7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:7 I, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:8 I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wisdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13 I, 21, 2; I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:7 I, 7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sirach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:9 I, 10, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:14 I, 21, 2; I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:25 I, 21, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59:2 I, 5, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65:17 I, 4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66:22 I, 4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:5 I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Revisions**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21-22</td>
<td>I, 22, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>I, 3, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 7, 5; I, 19, 3; I, 19, 6; II, 18; II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26-28</td>
<td>II, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>I, 19, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I, 19, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>I, 19, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>I, 22, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:36</td>
<td>Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>I, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>I, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:10</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15</td>
<td>I, 22, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:46</td>
<td>II, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>I, 8, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>I, 15, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>I, 26, 2; II, 55, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>I, 22, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>II, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>I, 19, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-2</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>II, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>I, 19, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>II, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:37</td>
<td>I, 22, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>I, 4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>I, 4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:36</td>
<td>I, 3, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 11, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 23, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 23, 1; I, 26, 2; II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>I, 9, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>I, 9, 5; I, 15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
<td>I, 15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>I, 23, 1; II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>I, 23, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>I, 22, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>I, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12-13</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13-14</td>
<td>I, 23, 2; I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>I, 23, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:29</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>I, 13, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>II, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>I, 19, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>II, 15, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>I, 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>I, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>I, 7, 4; I, 14, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14</td>
<td>I, 13, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:45</td>
<td>I, 10, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/2

Revisions

15:50 I, 17; II, 3
15:52 II, 33
15:53 II, 3
15:54 I, 23, 1
15:54-56 I, 26, 2
15:55 I, 19, 2
2 Corinthians
  3:6 I, 14, 1; II, 37
  3:18 I, 26, 2
Galatians
  1:1 I, 24, 1
  3:19 I, 24, 2; II, 24, 2
  4:5 I, 22, 3
  5:6 I, 26, 2
  5:17 I, 9, 5; I, 24, 2
  5:18 I, 24, 2
  6:2 I, 26, 2
Ephesians
  2:3 I, 10, 3; I, 15, 6
  3:17-18 II, 36
  5:25,27 I, 7, 5
  5:27 I, 19, 9; II, 18
  5:29 I, 26, 2
  6:23 I, 23, 2
Philippians
  2:7 I, 26, 2
Colossians
  1:14-15 I, 26, 2
2 Thessalonians
  1:11 II, 31
1 Timothy
  1:13 I, 9, 5
  2:5 I, 11, 1; I, 19, 8; I, 24, 1
2 Timothy
  1:9 II, 31
  2:20 II, 18
Hebrews
  12:16 I, 26, 2
  12:29 I, 7, 5
James
  1:1 II, 32
  1:19 Prol. 2
  2:20 I, 26, 2; II, 45
  3:1-2 Prol. 2
2 Peter
  3:13 I, 4, 3
1 John
  5:16 I, 19, 7
Jude
  19 II, 27
Revelation
  21:1 I, 3, 2; I, 4, 3
Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the commas are the Chapter, then the Section numbers.
(In Chapter I,26, in A Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions, these are also followed by Question numbers.)

A aron, sons of, II,43(70),2; II,55(82),2
abomination, I,1,2
A braham, II,16(43); II,22(49),2
sacrifice of, II,43(70),2
sons of, I,22(21),3
Academica (Cicero), I,1,4
Academics, I,1; I,1,4
A dam, I,1,2; II,24(51),2
See also original sin
made into a living soul, I,10(9),3
A dimansus, I,22(21)
adoption, II,7(34),2
adultery, I,19(18),6
See also fornication
adulterous marriages, II,57(84)
advantage of believing, I,1,4
afflicted: On account of you we are being afflicted, I,7(6),2
A frican councils, II,50(77)
A fricanus, julius, II,7(34),2
Against Lying, I,27(26)
Against the Party of Donatus, II,5(32)
ages of human race, I,26(25),2,44
A lari, king, II,43(70),1
Al bina, II,50(77)
A mbrose, St., I,21(20),1; II,1(28),1; II,4(31),2
angels, II,28(55)
angelic bodies, I,26(25),2,47
But of the day and hour no one knows, I,26(25),2,60
the devil and his, I,15(14),7; II,14(41)
highest and lowest, I,26(25),2,67
“holy angels,” the term, I,11(10),4
ordained by angels in the hand of the mediator, II,24(51),2
souls of, I,11(10),4; I,16(15),2
as spirits, II,14(41)
anger, I,19(18),4
animals, I,10(9),2; I,26(25),2,13
See also specific animals, e.g., sheep
the animal man, I,27(54)
body as animal, I,10(9),3;
I,13(12),4
irrational, and happiness, I,26(25),2,5
lowest angels and, I,26(25),2,67
Anne, II,22(49),1
anointing, I,26(25),2,61
Answer to the Academics, I,1,2
Answer to an Adversary of the Law and the Prophets, II,58(85)
Answer to Centurius, One of the Donatists, Presented, II,19(46)

Volume I/2
Answer to a Certain Donatist, II,28(55)
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean, II,55(82),3
Answer to Hilary, II,11(38)
Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean, II,10(37)
Antioch, I,13(12),3
Apollinarians, I,26(25),2,80
apostles; apostolic writings, I,19(18),2; I,22(21),1–2
See also Paul as truthful, I,24(23),1
Arians, II,52(79)
Ask and you shall receive, I,19(18),9
astonishment, I,3,2
astrology, I,8(7),2; I,26(25),2,45
Augustine:
confessions of, II,6(33)
“rendering an account to myself,” I,8(7),3
self-description, II,43,1
Aurelius, bishop of Carthage, II,15(42),1; II,21(48)
authority:
believing and, I,14(13),3
of the Old Testament, II,4(31),2
baptism, I,13(12),7; II,18(45)
See also rebaptism
competentes, I,17(16)
and concupiscence, I,15(14),2
Donatists and, II,18(45); II,34(61)
the “good thief,” I,26,62; II,18; II,55,3
of infants, I,15(14),2; II,33(60);
II,37(64)
by Jesus, I,26(25),2,62
John the Baptist, I,26(25),2,62
Keep away from alien water, II,19(46)
The One Baptism, II,34(61)
beauty:
changeable, I,11(10),4
of images, I,26(25),2,78
love and, I,26(25),2,36
love of (philocalia), I,1,3
lowest, I,11(10),4
and members of the saints,
II,7(34),3
beetles, I,7(6),6; II,15(42),2
believable things, I,26(25),2,48
believing
See also faith advantage of, I,14
and authority, I,14(13),3
birds, I,10(9),2; II,15(42),2
Consider the birds of the air and
the lilies of the field, II,21(48)
bird, I,19(18),5
bishops, I,17(16)
boasting, II,1(28),1
body; bodies
See also specific topics, e.g.,
resurrection of the body;
senses
angelic, I,26(25),2,47
as animal, I,10(9),3
body of death, I,26(25),2,66
as from earth, I,1,3
earthly and heavenly, I,17(16)
as from God, I,26(25),2,10
and soul, I,1,3
when the soul departs, I,11(10),4
Boniface, bishop of Rome, II,61(88)
born: “him who has always been
born,” I,26(25),2,37
breadth and length and height and
depth, II,36(63)
burdens: Bear one another’s burdens,
I,26(25),2,71
Caecilian, I,21(20),3; II,27(54);
II,28(55); II,34(61)
Caesarea, II,51(78)
calling, I,26(25),2,68; II,31(58)
the called and the chosen, 1,23(22),3
In the womb I sanctified you, 1,26(25),2,68
Canaan, II,7(34),3
Carthage, I,21(20),3; 1,23(22),1;
II,11(38); II,15(42),1;
II,17(44); II,21(48);
II,31(58); II,36(63)
See also Conference of Carthage councils of, II,50(77)
Casae Nigrae, I,21(20),3
Catholic Church; catholica, I,14(13),6
See also Church; specific topics
truth of, I,10(9),1
unity of, II,59(86)
as universal, II,17(44)
Catholic Way of Life, I,7
Cicero, I,1,4; I,26(25),2,31
See also Academics
circumcision, I,10(9),2; I,14(13),1
city of God, II,43(70)
City of God, the book, I,17(16);
I,26(25),2,47; II,16(43);
II,41(68); II,43(70),1
two cities, II,43(70),2
Cicero, I,1,4; I,26(25),2,31
See also Academics
circumcision, I,10(9),2; I,14(13),1
city of God, II,43(70)
City of God, the book, I,17(16);
I,26(25),2,47; II,16(43);
II,41(68); II,43(70),1
two cities, II,43(70),2
Colossians, Epistle to, I,26(25),2,74
commandments, I,19(18),3–4
See also law
competentes, I,17(16)
concubines, I,26(25),2,55
concupiscence, I,15(14),2;
I,23(22),1; I,24(23),2;
II,7(34),3
See also desire; flesh
conduct, I,3,3
Conference of Carthage, II,28(55);
II,33(60); II,38(65)–40(67);
II,46(73); II,59(86)
A Summary of the Conference, II,39(66)
Conscriptions, II,6(33)
consecrated virgins. See under
virginity: consecrated
Constantine, “The Emperor,” II,34(61)
corpses, I,26(25),2,51
corruption; corruptible things,
I,22(21),3
creation, I,15(14),1; I,26(25),2,19
See also world; specific topics
and equality, I,26(25),2,41
freed from slavery to destruction,
I,26(25),2,67
man and, I,26(25),2,30
And thus it was done, II,54(81)
twofold, I,13(12),2
Cresconius (Donatist grammarian),
II,26(53)
crimes
See also punishment
and free choice, I,9(8),3
and God’s justice, I,9(8),3
cross, I,26(25),2,25
See also thief
my God, why have you forsaken
me, II,36(63)
Cyprian, I,1,3; II,1(28),1; II,18(45);
II,28(55)
Dardanus, Claudius Postumus,
II,49(76)
darkness, II,36(63)
David, King, I,26(25),2,61;
II,1(28),2; II,16(43)
death, I,19(18),5
See also resurrection of the body
care to be taken of the dead,
II,64(91)
corpses, I,26(25),2,51
as from God, I,26(25),2,21
God did not make death,
I,26(25),2,21
“God seeks the death of no one,”
I,21(20),2
grieving death of a friend,
II,6(33),2
life after, II,43(70),1
necessity of dying,
I,26(25),2,66
and procreation of children,
II,22(49),1; II,53(80)
sin and, I,13(12),4; I,19(18),7;
I,26(25),2,66;
I,26(25),2,70
swallowed up in victory.
I,23(22),1; I,26(25),2,70
“they will not sense death,”
II,33(60)
Where, O death, is your strife?,
I,19(18),2
deformity, II,62(89)
demons, I,13(12),6
demonic divination, II,30(57)
Deogratias, II,31(58)
desire
See also concupiscence; lust;
sexual relations
marriage and, II,53(80)
devil, I,15(14),7
Book of Job, I,15(14),7
and his angels, I,15(14),7; II,14(41)
dialectic, I,6
diet. See food
discipline: knowledge and, I,5,2
discipline (punishment). See
punishment
disciplines, I,6
See also liberal disciplines
Donatists, II,5(32); II,36(63)
See also Conference of Carthage
answer to “certain Donatist,”
II,28(55)
and baptism, II,18(45)
Centurius, II,19(46)
correction of, II,48(75)
Cresconius, II,26(53)
Donatus, answer to, I,21
Emeritus, II,46(73); II,51(78)
Gaudentius of Thamugadi,
II,59(86)
and Maximianists, II,29(56);
II,35(62)
Notice to the Donatists about the
Maximianists, II,29(56)
and one baptism, II,34(61)
Parmenian, II,17(44)
proofs and testimonies in answer to, II,27(54)
psalm against, I,20(19)
dove, I,26(25),2,43
Dulcitius, II,59(86); II,65(92)
earth
See also creation; world

new heaven and the new earth,
I,4,3
Easter, I,26(25),2,81; II,30(57)
Ecclesiasticus, Book of, I,21(20),3; II,4(31),2
Egyptians, I,26(25),2,53
Eight Questions of Dulcitius, II,65(92)
Eighty-three Questions, Miscellany of, I,26
“elect” (Manicheans), II,10(37)
Eli, II,55(82),2
Elijah, I,19(18),3; II,1(28),2
Elisha, I,19(18),3
Emeritus, Donatist bishop, II,46(73); II,51(78)
Enchiridion, II,63(90)
enemies, I,19(18),5
enjoyment: use and, II,15(42),2
error, I,9(8),5; I,10(9),1; I,13(12),2
See also heretics; sin; specific topics and groups,
e.g., Manicheans; Maximianists
Esau. See also Jacob: and Esau
eternal fire, I,7(6),6
eternal law, I,16(15),2
eternal times, I,26(25),2,72
evangelists: agreement among, II,16(43)
evil, I,26(25),2,3–4; I,26(25),2,6
See also sin
the evil that I hate is what I do,
I,9(8),5
and free choice, I,9(8),1–2
and God as creator, I,26(25),2,21
and loving bodily things,
I,15(14),7–8
Manichean views and, I,9(8),2;
I,15(14),7
nature of, I,15(14),7
and nature of the good, II,9(36)
“no evil is natural,” I,10(9),3
origin of, I,9(8),2; I,16(15),1
sin as voluntary, I,13(12),5
souls and, I,15(14),6
source of, I,15(14),3
Sufficient for the day is its own evil, I,19(18),9
Excellence of Marriage, II,22(49),1
Expressions from Genesis, II,54(81)

faith
See also Christianity
advantage of believing, I,14
as among God’s gifts, I,23(22),2
calling as preceding, I,26(25),2,68
calling as preceding, I,26(25),2,68
charity with, I,23(22),2
and the creed, I,17
hope, and charity, II,63(90)
instructing beginners in, II,14(41)
and knowing, I,14(13),3
without works, I,26(25),2,76
and works, I,23(22),3; II,38(65)

Faith and Works, II,38(65)
false things, I,1,4
See also lying
the Father, I,26(25),2,23
See also God
But on the day and hour no one knows, I,26(25),2,60
Son as likeness of, I,18(17)
and Son as one, I,4,3
fathers, II,55(82),3
See also under Joseph: having two fathers
Faustus, a Manichean, II,7(34);
II,25(52); II,55(82),3
fear, I,26(25),2,33–34; I,26(25),2,77
Felix, a Manichean, II,8(35)
Revisions

Felix of Apthungi, II,27(54); II,34(61)
fire, II,59(86)
eternal, I,7(6),6
I am a consuming fire, I,7(6),5
firmament, II,6(33),2
fish:
loaves and fishes, I,26(25),2,61
one hundred and fifty-three, I,26(25),2,57
flesh
See also body; concupiscence; desire
Flesh and blood will not possess the kingdom of God, I,17(16); II,3(30)
The flesh lusts against the spirit, I,9(8),5
spirit and, I,9(8),5; I,24(23),2; I,26(25),2,66; II,1,28(28),1
The Word was made flesh, II,36(63)
Fonteius of Carthage, I,26(25),2,12
food, I,19(18),9; I,26(25),2,39
in the Book of Genesis, I,10(9),2
manna, I,20(47)
old law and, I,37(64)
foolishness, I,14(13),4
force, I,5(32)
foreknowledge, I,23(22),2
forgiveness
See also remission of sin
Forgive us our debts, I,19(18),3; I,19(18),6; II,18(45); II,33(60)
fornication, I,19(18),6; I,26(25),2,83; II,15(42),3
See also adultery
For Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillanists and the Origenists, II,44(71)
fortitude, I,7(6),3
See also virtues
Fortunatianus, bishop of Sicca, II,41(68)
Fortunatus, II,8(35)
debate with, I,16
fortune, I,1,2; I,3,2
The Foundation (Mani), II,2(29)
four-footed flying creatures, II,15(42),2
free choice, I,9(8); I,26(25),2,2; II,1,28(1); II,8(35)
See also sin; will
evil and, I,9(8),1–2; I,16(15),1
grace and, I,9(8),2; I,9(8),6; II,66(93)
Free Choice, I,9(8); I,13(12),5; I,14(13),4
fruit, I,10(9),2; I,22(21),4
Galatians, Epistle to, I,24(23)
“gather together again,” I,13(12),9
Gaudentius of Thamugadi, II,59(86)
Genesis, Book of:
An Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis, I,18(17)
Expressions from Genesis, II,54(81)
On Genesis against the Manicheans, I(13)12,8
literal meaning of, I,15(14),7; II,24(51)
The Literal Meaning of Genesis, I,18(17); II,24(51),1
Manicheans, two books against, I,10
unfinished literal commentary, I,18
genitals, I,7(34),3
gentiles, I,10(9),2
gift of the Holy Spirit, I,23(22),1–3
glory, I,19(18),9; I,26(25),2,67
God, I,26(25),2,19–20
See also Father; specific topics, e.g., creation; mercy
city of, I,43(70)
created spirits and, I,26(25),2,54
inheritance of, I,26(25),2,75
it is good for me to cling to God,
I,26(25),2,54
knowledge, God's, I,26(25),2,17
knowledge of (knowing God), I,2;
I,4,3; I,26(25),2,35
and man's highest good, I,1,4
nature of, II,49(76)
as not subject to necessity,
I,26(25),2,22
our love for, I,7(6),4–5
presence of, II,49(76)
seeing God, II,41(68)
as spirit, II,41(68)
talking back to, I,26(25),2,68
temple of, II,49(76)
and true religion, I(13)12,1
gods, pagan, II,43(70),1
gold, I,26(25),2,53; II,18(45)
Gomorrah, II,1(28),1
good:
accomplishing/done, I,22(21),4;
I,23(22),2,3
changeable and unchangeable,
I,9(8),3
eternal, I,9(8),3
ever as coeternal with (Manichean
view), I,15(14),7
good will as great good, I,9(8),3
I do not do the good that I will,
but the evil that I hate,
I,9(8),5
major, middle, minor, I,9(8),4;
I,9(8),6
man's highest, I,1,4
nature of, II,9(36)
sin, a good person and, I,15(14),2
good works. See merit; works
See also specific topics and
topics, e.g., loaves and
fishes
lack of trust in, II,16(43)
questions on, II,12(39)
Goths, II,43(70),1
Grace, I,9(8),6; I,15(14),8;
I,26(25),2,66; II,36(63)
enemies of, II,37(64)
and free choice, I,9(8),2; I,9(8),6;
II,66(93)
If the Son has set you free, then
you will truly be free,
II,8(35)
and justification, II,33(60)
and the law, I,23(22),1–2; II,1(28),1
and merit/works, I,23(22),2;
II,31(58)
nature and, I,15(14),8; II,42(69)
and original sin, II,50(77)
and peace, I,24(23),2; I,25(24)
Pelagian positions and, I,9(8),3–4
rebuke and, II,67(94)
and regeneration, II,38(65)
A remnant was saved through
Grace's choosing,
I,23(22),2
and sin unto death, I,19(18),7
Grace and Free Choice, II,66(93)
Grammar, I,6
Greeks; Greek language, I,7(6),3;
II,7(34),3; II,17(44);
II,63(90)
See also specific topics, e.g.,
Septuagint
grief, II,6(33),2
guilty, I,15(14),2; I,15(14),5–6
See also sin

Hadrumentum, monks at, II,66(93)
hair, long, II,21(48)
Ham, II,7(34),3
happiness; happy life, I,1,2–4;
I,2; I,9(8),3; I,14(13),4;
I,26(25),2,5
the greatest happiness, I,14(13),2
and hope, I,4,3
love and, II,15(42),2
and loving spiritual things,
I,15(14),8
the soul and, I,4,3

Volume I/2
Revisions

hate

No one ever hates his own flesh,
I,26(25),2,36
for parents and children
(explanation of),
I,19(18),5
The pride of those who hate you,
I,19(18),8
“hearers” (Manicheans), II,10(37)
heaven
See also specific topics, e.g.,
resurrection of the body
Jesus in, I,26(25),2,42
new heaven and the new earth,
I,4,3
returning “more safely” to, I,1,3
today you will be with me in
paradise, I,26(25),2,62
Hebrews, Epistle to, II,22(49),2
Hebrews (people), II,16(43)
Heli, II,7(34),2
hell, I,7(6),6
See also punishment
Heptateuch:
seven books of questions,
II,55(82)
seven books on expressions,
II,54(81)
heresy; heretics, II,28(55)
See also error; schism; individual
names/groups, e.g.,
Donatists; Jovinian
heretics, “recent.” See Pelagians
high priests, II,55(82),2
Hilary, II,11(38)
Holy of Holies, II,55(82),2
Holy Spirit, I,23(22),2; I,24(23),2
as dove, I,26(25),2,43
gift of, I,23(22),1–3
sin against, I,25(24)
honor, II,18(45)
Honouratus, I,14(13); II,36(63)
Honourius, Emperor, II,26(53);
II,51(78)

hope:
faith, charity and, II,63(90)
happiness and, I,4,3
by hope we have been saved,
I,26(25),2,67
soul and, I,4,3
human beings
See also man; specific topics, e.g.,
death
as either foolish or wise,
I,14(13),4
superior to animals, I,26(25),2,13
human nature, I,13(12),8
human race, ages of, I,26(25),2,44
hymns, II,11(38)
ideas, I,26(25),2,46
ignorance: I obtained mercy because
I acted in ignorance,
I,9(8),5
image of God, I,18(17);
I,26(25),2,51; I,26(25),2,67
A dam and, II,24(51),2
image of the invisible God,
I,26(25),2,74
the Son as, I,18(17)
images, beauty of, I,26(25),2,78
immortality, I,22(21),3
See also under soul: immortality of
of Christ, I,24(23),1
incense, II,55(82),2
incorruption, I,22(21),3
infants
See also under baptism; original sin
Pelagian beliefs regarding,
I,15(14),2; I,15(14),6;
II,33(60)
infinitnity, I,26(25),2,32
Innocent, bishop of Rome, II,50(77)
intellect, I,26(25),2,15
See also knowledge; mind
intelligible world, I,3,2
invisible things, I,11(10),1
image of the invisible God,
I,26(25),2,74

Revisions
Revisions

Isaac, II,1(28),1
Israelites, I,10(9),2; I,26(25),2,49;
I,26(25),2,53
Jacob (father of Joseph husband of
Mary), II,7(34),2
Jacob (Old Testament);
and Esau, I,23(22),2;
I,26(25),2,68
putting rods in the water,
II,55(82),1
James, Epistle of, II,32(59)
phrase of, II,45(72)
Januarius, II,20(47)
Jeremiah, II,4(31),2
Jerome, St., II,45(72)
Jesus Christ
See also Son of God; specific
topics, e.g., cross;
resurrection of the Lord
and ages of human race,
I,26(25),2,44
body of, I,26(25),2,14
as born of woman, I,26(25),2,11
and Christianity existing before;
I,13(12),3
as in his mother's womb and in
heaven, I,26(25),2,42
as immortal, I,24(23),1
priesthood of, I,26(25),2,61
second coming of, I,19(18),9
as wisdom of God, I,26(25),2,42
as "wise man," II,16(43)
Jews, I,22(21),3
See also Hebrews; Israelites
Job, II,13(40)
Book of, I,15(14),7
John the Baptist, I,26(25),2,58;
I,26(25),2,62
Jonah, II,31(58)
Joseph (husband of Virgin Mary):
having two fathers, II,7(34),2;
II,12(39); II,16(43);
II,55(82),3
Joshua, II,54(81)
Jovinian, II,22(49),1
Judges, II,54(81)
Julian of Eclanum, II,53(80);
II,62(89)
justice:
commandments of, II,33(60)
God's, I,9(8),3
wisdom as teaching, I,7(6),3
justification, II,33(60)
kingdom:
Flesh and blood will not possess
the kingdom of God,
I,17(16)
My kingdom is not of this world,
I,3,2
thy kingdom come, I,3,2
Kings, Book of, II,1(28),2;
II,55(82)
kingship, I,26(25),2,61
knowledge
See also intellect; learning; mind;
truth; understanding;
wisdom
and discipline, I,5,2
faith and, I,14(13),3
God's, I,26(25),2,17
knowing God, I,2; I,4,3;
I,26(25),2,35
reason and, I,14(13),3
senses and, I,14(13),3
lambs, II,55(82),1
Latin, I,1,3; I,3(30); I,7(6),2–3;
I,13(12),9; I,20(19);
II,24(51)
Laurence, II,63(90)
law
See also Old Testament; specific
topics, e.g., food
eternal, I,16(15),2
fulfilling, I,26(25),2,71
given through Moses, I,22(21),2
grace and, I,23(22),1–2;
II,1(28),1
observation of, I,10(9),2

Volume I/2
a person is subject to the law for as long as he lives, I,26(25),2,66
reason for, I,24(23),2
spirit and, I,14(13),1; I,24(23),2
as spiritual, I,23(22),1;
I,26(25),2,66; II,1(28),1
“under the law we were like children,” I,26(25),2,44
Whoever observes the whole law but goes against it in one part, II,45(72)
law and the prophets, I,22(21),1–2; I,25(24); II,58(85)
Lazarus, I,26(25),2,65
learning
See also knowledge; truth as remembering/recalling, 1,8(7),2
the soul and, 1,8(7),2
Lent, I,26(25),2,81
letter, spirit and. See under spirit: and letter
liberal disciplines, I,3,2; I,4,4; I,6
libido, I,22(49),2
life, I,15(14),1
See also creation: man after death, II,43(70),1
as from God, I,21(20),2
likeness of God. See image of God
Literal Meaning of Genesis, I,18(17); II,24(51),1
loaves and fishes, I,26(25),2,61
locusts, II,15(42),2
Lordly Man, I,19(18),8
love
See also charity for another man, I,13(12),8
for enemies, I,19(18),5
for God, I,7(6),4–5
of God and neighbor, I,16(15),2;
I,22(21),2
and happiness, II,15(42),2
of this world, I,11(10),4
what should be loved,
I,26(25),2,35
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
I,26(25),2,82
Luke, Gospel of, I,26(25),2;
II,7(34),2; II,12(39);
II,16(43); II,55(82),3
See also gospels; specific topics
lust. See concupiscence; desire; flesh
lying, I,27; I,27(26); II,60(87)
Against Lying, I,27(26)
On Lying, I,27(26)
magicians, I,26(25),2,79
magnitude of the soul, I,8
maidens, I,26(25),2,55
Majorinus, I,21(20),1
man
See also human beings; human nature; human race
the animal man, II,27(54)
and creation, I,26(25),2,30
found form as a man, I,26(25),2,73
image of God, I,18(17); I,26(25),2,51;
I,26(25),2,67
I regret having made man, I,26(25),2,52
“One man ought not to be loved by another man as blood brothers are loved,”
I,13(12),8
Son of God appearing in,
I,26(25),2,43
what is best in, I,1,2
Manicheans, I,9(8),6; II,7(34),1;
II,62(89)
A dimantis, answer to, I,22(21)
books on Genesis against, I,10
and Catholic way of life, I,7
“elect” and “hearers,” II,10(37)
Faustus, II,7(34); II,25(52);
II,55(82),3
Felix, II,8(35)
Revisions

Fortunatus, I,16; II,8

The Foundation (Mani), II,2(29)

Honoratus, I,14(13)

and nature of the good, II,9(36)

Secundinus, II,10(37)

two natures, I,13(12),1

two souls, I,15

Manichean Way of Life, I,7(6),1; I,7(6),6

Manlius Theodorus, I,2

manna, II,20(47)

Marcellinus, II,33(60); II,37(64)

Marcionites, II,58(85)

marriage:

adulterous, II,57(84)

conjugal chastity, II,53(80)

and desire, II,53(80)

excellence of, II,22(49)

love for wives, I,26(25),2,36

original sin and, II,53(80)

renouncing, I,26(25),2,83

Marriage and Desire, II,53(80)

martyrs

See also individual names

of Milan, I,13(12),7

Mary, the Virgin, II,12(39)

mathematicians, I,26(25),2,45

M athan, II,7(34),2

M athew, Gospel of, I,19(18),1;

II,7(34),2; II,12(39);

II,55(82),3

See also gospels; specific topics

M auritania Caesarea, II,51(78)

M aximinists, II,26(53); II,29(56);

II,51(78)

book on (in answer to the

Donatists), II,35(62)

measure:

God does not give the Spirit

according to measure,

I,19(18),3

In the measure that you have

measured out, II,31(58)

medicine, I,8(7),2

Melania, II,50(77)

M elchi, II,7(34),2

mercy, I,15(14),8; I,26(25),2,68

and faithfulness, I,23(22),4

I obtained mercy because I acted

in ignorance, I,9(8),5

merit, I,15(14),8

See also works

and calling, II,31(58)

faith and, I,23(22),3; II,38(65)

grace and, I,23(22),2–3; II,31(58)

Milan, martyrs of, I,13(12),7

M ilevis, council of, II,50(77)

mind, human

See also intellect; knowledge;

thoughts

and man’s highest good, I,1,4

as understood, I,5,2

and what is best in man, I,1,2

miracles, I,13(12),7; I,14(13),5

A brahan’s sacrifice as,

II,43(70),2

by Pharaoh’s magicians,

I,26(25),2,79

mirror: We see now through a mirror

in obscurity, I,14(13),2

Miscellany of Eighty-three

Questions, I,26(25)

monks, II,21(48)

Valentine and, II,66(93)

moon, II,7(34),3

M oses, I,22(21),2; I,26(25),2,79;

II,54(81)

mothers, II,55(82),3

M ount Sinai, II,4(31),2

M uses, I,3,2

music, I,6; I,11

mysteries, I,14(13),1

N athan, I,26(25),2,61; II,16(43)

nature; natures, I,13(12),8

God as creator of natures,

I,10(9),1

of the good, II,9(36)

Volume I/2
Volume I/2

grace and, I,15(14),8; II,42(69)
human, I,13(12),8
“no evil as natural,” I,10(9),3
origin and, I,15(14),6
sin and, I,1,2; I,15(14),7
souls and, I,15(14),6–7;
I,26(25),2,40
will and, I,15(14),6
Nature and Grace,
I,9(8),3; II,42(69)
necessity: God as not subject to,
I,26(25),2,22
necromancer, II,1(28),2
neighbor, love for. See under love: of
God and neighbor
neo-Platonic philosophy. See
Academics; Plato
erther regions, I,5,3; II,24(51),2
New Testament, I,22(21),2
See also gospels
grace of, I,9(8),2; II,36(63)
Noah, II,7(34),3; II,54(81)
Notes on Job, II,13(40)
Notice to the Donatists about the
Maximianists, II,29(56)
numbers:
immutable, I,11(10),1
of wisdom, I,11(10),2
Numidia, II,40(67)
obedience, I,14(41)
offices, two (kingship and
priesthood), I,26(25),2, 61
old age, I,26(25),2,44
Old Testament, I,9(8),6; I,22(21),2
See also Heptateuch; law; specific
books and topics
authority of, II,4(31),2
Manichean beliefs and, I,9(8),6
the Septuagint, I,7(6),2
“omen,” the word, I,1,2
The One Baptism, II,34(61)
order, I,3
as from God, I,13(12),8
proper, I,15(14),7
and things that fall away, I,7(6),6
Orient, I,47(74)
Origien; Origenists, I,7(6),6; II,44(71)
origin: and nature, I,15(14),6
original sin, I,9(8),6; I,15(14),2;
II,50(77); II,62(89)
See also Adam
and death, I,13(12),4; I,13(12),8
infants and, I,13(12),5–6;
I,14(13),4; I,15(14),5;
II,33(60); II,45(72)
and marriage, II,53(80)
Pelagian view of, I,9(8),6
origin of the soul. See under soul:
origin of
Orosius: For Orosius in Refutation
of the Priscillianists and the
Origenists, II,44(71)
pabulum, I,10(9),3
pagans; paganism, II,43(70),1
See also specific topics, e.g.,
liberal disciplines
and mercy, I,23(22),4
“omen,” the word, I,1,2
six questions explained in answer
to, II,31(58)
paradise. See heaven
parents, I,19(18),5
Parmenian, Donatist bishop of
Carthage, II,17(44)
Passover, I,10(9),2
patriarchs, II,22(49),1
Paul, the apostle, I,3(30); I,14(13),1;
I,23(22),1; II,27(54)
See also specific topics and
epistles
as sent through Christ, I,24(23),1
Paulinus, bishop of Nola, II,64(91)
peace:
grace and, I,24(23),2; I,25(24)
peacemakers, I,19(18),1–2
Pelagians, I,15(14),2; I,23(22)1–2;
II,22(49),2; II,36(63);
II,49(76); II,61(88)
See also individual names, e.g.,
Julian of Eclanum

Revisions
Revisions

baptism of infants, II,33(60)
condemned by bishops of Rome, II,50(77)
and free will, I,9(8),3–6
grace, positions on, I,9(8),3–4
original sin and marriage, II,53(80)
overthrowing, I,23(22),1
punishment and remission of sins,
II,33(60)
“the recent heretics,” I,9(8),3–4;
I,10(9),2; II,22,2; II,33;
II,36; II,53
three books for Marcellinus,
II,33(60)
Pelagius, I,9(8),3; II,33(60);
II,42(69); II,50(77)
deeds of, II,47(74)
perfection, I,19(18),2–3
spiritual, I,7(6),5
Peter, a Spanish presbyter, II,56(83)
Petilian, a Donatist, II,25(52)
book for Constantine on one
baptism, II,34(61)
phantom, I,26(25),2,14
Pharaoh’s magicians, I,26(25),2,79
philocalia, I,1,3
philosophers
See also individual names
piety and virtue, I,3,2
philosophia, I,1,3
Pinianus, II,50(77)
Plato: Platonists, I,4,4; I,4,4;
I,11(10),4; II,4(31),2
intelligible world, I,3,2
soul, idea of, 1,8(7),2
Pliny the Elder, I,7,6
Pollentius, II,57(84)
Porphyry (famous Sicilian), I,4,3;
II,31(58)
Porphyry (philosopher), II,31(58)
prayer, II,33(60)
Forgive us our debts, I,19(18),3;
I,19(18),6; II,18(45);
II,33(60)
vs. rebuke, II,67(94)
predestination, I,9(8),2
pride, prologue, 3; II,14(41)
The pride of those who hate you,
I,19(18),8
priests; priesthood, I,26(25),2,61
high priests, II,55(82),2
priesthood of Christ,
I,26(25),2,61
Priscillianists, II,44(71); II,60(87)
Proofs and Testimonies in Answer to
the Donatists, II,27(54)
prophetic words, I,10(9),3
prophets, I,26(25),2,61
See also individual names
providence, I,26(25),2,27
prudence, I,7(6),3
psalm against the party of Donatus,
I,20(19)
Psalms, Book of, I,11(38); II,36(63)
punishment, I,9(8),3; I,9(8),5;
I,15(14),2; I,23(22),3
ecclesiastical disciplining,
II,17(44)
of sin, I,15(14),2; II,33(60)
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
I,26(25),2,82
of the wicked, I,26(25),2,21
Punishment and Remission of Sins,
II,33(60); II,37(64)
On Purifying the Mind in order to
See God, I,26(25),2,12
Pythagoras, I,3,3
quadragesima, I,26(25),2,81
queens, I,26(25),2,55
quem, I,4,2
Questions on the Gospels, II,12(39)
quinquagesima, I,26(25),2,81
reason, I,14(13),4; I,19(18),1
See also mind
knowing and, I,14(13),3
the soul and, I,5,2
and what is best in man, I,1,2
rebaptism, I,21(20),3; II,26(53)
Rebecca, II,1(28),1

Rebuke and Grace, II,67(94)

“recent heretics.” See under Pelagians: “the recent heretics”

reconciliation, I,25(24)

redemption, I,26(25),2,74

regeneration, I,7(6),5; II,38(65); II,45(72); II,62(89)

religion

See also Christianity; specific topics, e.g., error

binding our souls and, I,13(12),9

perfect, I,13(12),2

two praiseworthy persons in, I,14(13),2

remission of sins, I,26(25),2,74; II,33(60)

remnant: A remnant was saved through grace’s choosing, I,23(22),2

Renatus, a monk, II,56(83)

repentance, I,26(25),2,68

Responses to the Questions of Januarius, II,20(47)

resurrection, II,31(58)

of Lazarus, I,26(25),2,65

of the saints, II,41(68)

resurrection of the body, I,11(10),3; I,17(16)

and eternal law, I,16(15),2

Flesh and blood shall not possess the kingdom of God, II,3(30)

to “pristine stability,” I,13(12),4

resurrection of the Lord, I,22(21),2; I,24(23),1

righteousness, I,19(18),4

rock (Peter as; Christ as), I,21(20),1

Romans, Epistle to, I,23(22); I,25(24); II,1(28),1

Rome, II,43(70),1

Rome, bishops of, II,50(77)

See also individual names

Rufus of Thessalonica, bishop, II,61(88)

sabbath, I,14(13),1

The Sacraments, or Philosophy (Ambrose), II,4(31),2

sacrifices, I,10(9),2; I,14(13),1; II,31(58)

of Abraham, II,43(70),2

of pagan gods, II,43(70),1

in visible fashion, I,26(25),2,49

saints, II,7(34),3

resurrection of, II,41(68)

salvation, II,31(58)

Samaritan woman, I,26(25),2,64

Samuel, II,1(28),2; II,43(70),2; II,55(82),2

sanctification: In the womb I sanctified you, I,26(25),2,68

Sarah, I,22(21),2; II,1(28),1; II,22(49),1

Saul, King, II,1(28),2

schism; schismatics, II,5(32); II,27(54)

See also specific groups, e.g., Donatists

scripture, II,54(81)

See also New Testament; Old Testament; specific books and topics

sea, II,7(34),3

Secundinus, a Manichean, II,10(37)

“seed,” II,24(51),2

selecting (the word), I,13(12),9

senses, bodily, I,1,2; I,3,2; I,4,2–3; I,26(25),2,9

See also specific topics, e.g., beauty

and knowing, I,14(13),3

sensible world, I,3,2

Septuagint, I,7(6),2

Sermon on the Mount, I,19(18); I,22(21),2

Revisions
serpents, I,10(9),2

This serpent which you fashioned to make a mockery of him, I,15(14),7

Sextus (philosopher), II,42(69)

sexual relations, II,22(49),1–2

See also concupiscence; desire; lust

becoming unclean through, II,55(82),2
deformity and, II,62(89)

Increase and multiply, I,10(9),2

procreation of children, II,22(49),1; II,53(80)

and sin, I,10(9),2; I,13(12),8

shamefulness, II,18(45)

sheep: with variegated young, II,55(82),1

silver, I,26(25),2,53; II,18(45)

Simplician, II,1(28)

sin

See also evil; free choice; original sin; punishment; remission; wickedness

and death, I,26(25),2,66;

I,26(25),2,70

difference of sins, I,26(25),2,26

forgiveness/remission of, I,25(24); I,26(25),2,74;

II,33(60)

and God’s mercy, I,26(25),2,68

a good person and, I,15(14),2

grace and, I,25(24); I,26(25),2,66;

II,50(77)

and guilt, I,15(14),2; I,15(14),5–6

against the Holy Spirit, I,25(24)

involuntary, I,13(12),5

and the law, I,26(25),2,70

and loving bodily things, I,15(14),7–8

nature and, I,1,2; I,15(14),7

as outside the body, II,15(42),3

and repentance, I,26(25),2,68

and separation from God, I,5,2

“sin harms one’s nature but one’s own,” I,10(9),3

as voluntary evil, I,13(12),5

and will, I,9(8),3; I,13(12),5;

I,15(14),2–6; I,16(15),2;

I,19(18),3; I,26(25),2,24

sinners: God hearing, I,3,3

sin unto death, I,19(18),7

Sirach, Jesus, II,4(31),2

Sixtus, bishop of Rome, II,42(69)

skepticism. See A cademics

slavery:
to destruction, I,26(25),2,67
slave as master’s friend, I,8(7),4

sobriety, I,7(6),3

Sodom, II,1(28),1

Soliloquies, I,4; I,5,1

Solomon, II,19(46)

See also Wisdom of Solomon

re. the Son of God, II,31(58)

Son of God, I,26(25),2,16;

I,26(25),2,23

See also Jesus Christ

according to Solomon, II,31(58)

But on the day and hour no one knows, I,26(25),2,60

equality of, I,26(25),2,50

and Father as one, I,4,3

as likeness of the Father, I,18(17)

as man, I,26(25),2,43

subjected to the one who has subjected everything to him, I,26(25),2,69

sons

See also Aaron, sons of the term, I,22(21),3

Soranus of Ephesus, II,62(89)

soul; souls, I,26(25),2,1

See also spirit

A dam as made into a living soul, I,10(9),3; I,13(12),4

in an ensouled being, I,26(25),2,7

angels and, I,11(10),4; I,16(15),2

binding our souls, I,13(12),9

and body, I,5,3

conformation of, I,26(25),2,38

happy life and, I,2; I,4,3

Volume I/2
as having one nature, I,26(25),2,40
immortality of, I,4,1; I,5;
I,11(10),4
as incorporeal creature, I,13(12),2
and learning, 1,8(7),2
live or living, I,10(9),3
as made by God, I,16(15),2
magnitude of, I,8(7)
moved by itself, I,26(25),2,8
nature and, I,15(14),6–7
as not evil by nature, I,15(14),6
origin of, I,1,3; I,26(25),2,62;
II,45(72); II,56(83)
reason and, I,5,2
two souls, I,15
virtues of (Cicero), I,26(25),2,31
when soul departs from body,
I,11(10),4
will and, I,15(14),5–6
youth and old age co-existing in,
I,26(25),2,44
speaking: With much speaking
you will not escape sin,
prologue,2
Spirit, Holy. See Holy Spirit
spirit; spirits, I,26(25),2,54
See also under flesh: spirit and
angels as, II,14(41)
God as, II,41(68)
God does not give the Spirit
according to measure,
I,19(18),3
as from heaven, I,1,3
and letter, I,14(13),1; II,37(64)
The spirit returns to God who
gave us, I,1,3
spiritual persons, I,23(22),1
unclean, II,1(28),2
The Spirit and the Letter, I,14(13),1;
II,37(64)
substances, I,10(9),1; I,13(12),8
suffering, I,26(25),2,67
sun, II,7(34),3
superstition, I,13(12),9
Susanna, II,22(49),1
swearing, I,1,4
Syria Palaestina, II,47(74)
the Teacher, prologue,2; I,12(11);
I,26(25),2,44
On the Teacher, I,12(11)
teaching Christianity, II,4(31)
temperance, I,7(6),3; II,22(49),2
Temple: forty-six years building,
I,26(25),2,56
Theodosius, Emperor, II,51(78)
thief: the “good thief,” I,26,62; II:18;
II:55,3
thoughts
See also intellect; knowledge;
mind
seeing, I,26(25),2,47
tongues, speaking in, I,13(12),7
Trinity, I,13(12),1; I,26(25),2,18
fifteen books on, II,15(42)
Trinity, I,4,4; II,24(51),1
ture religion, I,13(12)
truth
See also knowledge; wisdom
body’s senses and, I,26(25),2,9
Catholic, I,10(9),1
“If the truth does not shine out
from them,” I,13(12),6
likeness of the true, I,1,4
purity and, I,4,2
Soliloquies, I,4
unanimity and, prologue,2
two fathers. See under Joseph:
having two fathers
two souls, I,15
Tyconius (Donatist scriptural
exegete), II,18(45)
unanimity: truth and, prologue,2
understanding, I,26(25),2,32
See also knowledge
Unfinished Commentary on the
Epistle to the Romans, I,25(24)
Unfinished Literal Commentary on
Genesis, I,18(17)
universe
Revisions

See also creation; world up or down in, I,26(25),2,29 use: and enjoyment, II,15(42),2


waters, II,6(33),2 weeds, II,28(55) wickedness, I,19(18),7 See also sin Remove the wicked person from among yourselves, II,17(44) widows, II,1(28),2; II,55(82),3 marrying brother’s widow, II,7(34),2; II,12(39); II,16(43) will See also free choice; sin definition of, I,15(14),3 God as readying, I,10(9),2; I,23(22),3 of God to make the world, I,26(25),2,28 good will as great good, I,9(8),3 nature and, I,15(14),6 as in our power, I,9(8),3; I,22(21),4 the power to do something, II,1(28),2 soul and, I,9(8),3; I,15(14),5–6 wisdom See also knowledge; truth as acquired through the mind, I,4,1 “He himself begot the wisdom by which he is called wise,” I,26(25),2,23 of human beings, I,14(13),4 love of (philosophia), I,1,3 of peacemakers, I,19(18),1 as teaching sobriety, justice, and virtue, I,7(6),3 as through Christ, I,4,3 wisdom of God, Christ as, I,26(25),2,42 Wisdom of Solomon (Book of Wisdom), I,7(6),3; II,4(31),2; II,20(47) wives See also marriage; specific topics, e.g., widows love for, I,26(25),2,36 wood, II,18(45) Word of God, I,26(25),2,63 The Word was made flesh, II,36(63) works, I,23(22),3; II,31(58) See also under faith: and works; merit faith without works is useless, I,26(25),2,76 world See also creation as ensouled, I,11(10),4 love of this world, I,11(10),4 My kingdom is not of this world, I,3,2 a new heaven and a new earth, I,3,2 will of God to make, I,26(25),2,28 worlds, two: sensible and intelligible, I,3,2 writing, prologue, 3 youth, I,26(25),2,44 Zosimus, bishop of Rome, II,50(77)

Volume I/2
Index from
The Trinity
De Trinitate
(On the Trinity)

Published by New City Press in:
The Trinity
Translation, introduction and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, editor
In the first seven books Augustine searches the scriptures for clues to understanding the Trinity and then defends the orthodox statement of the doctrine against the Arians. In the last eight books Augustine seeks to understand the mystery of the divine Trinity by observing an analogous trinity in the image of God, which is the human mind; and in so doing, he also suggests a program for the serious Christian of spiritual self-discovery and renewal.

Volume I/5

Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-446-7, 6 x 9 in., 471 pp., 2012
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-610-2, 6 x 9 in., 632 pp., 2012

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture References

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 16:10</td>
<td>II, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>II, 25, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>II, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3,6</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>I, 14; VII, 12; XII, 6; XIV, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>XII, 6, 7, 8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>XII, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>XI, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>II, 17, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>XIV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>IX, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>II, 19; III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>II, 19; III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>II, 19, 34; III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
<td>III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:33</td>
<td>II, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>II, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>II, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1</td>
<td>III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:10</td>
<td>III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>I, 23; III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:15</td>
<td>III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:17</td>
<td>II, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:11</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>II, 27, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:18</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:21</td>
<td>II, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:22</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:17</td>
<td>V, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9</td>
<td>III, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Deuteronomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>V, 12; VII, 8; XV, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>V, 9; XIV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>I, 13; II, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>XIV, 1, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>II, 19, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>XII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>II, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>IX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>XIII, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>VIII, 9, 18; XIV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>XIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:2</td>
<td>XV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2,1</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:11</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:8</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11</td>
<td>XV, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:28</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:29</td>
<td>XII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1,5</td>
<td>IV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:3</td>
<td>IV, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:27</td>
<td>XIV, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Proverbs
- 8:22 I, 24
- 8:25 I, 24
- 9:8 XIV, 2
- 10:19 XV, 51
- 19:21 XV, 38
- 30:15 XV, 15

### Ecclesiastes
- 1:18 IV, 1
- 3:21 XIV, 22

### Song of Songs
- 1:10 I, 16
- 1:11 I, 17

### Wisdom
- 1.7 III, 3
- 1.13 IV, 15
- 2.1 XV, 17
- 3.9 VIII, 11
- 6.7 XV, 8
- 6.24 XIV, 1
- 6.25 I, 8
- 7.7 II, 27
- 7.24 IV, 18
- 7.25 IV, 27
- 7.26 IV, 27, 28
- 7.27 II, 14; IV, 27
- 8.1 II, 7, 25, 30; III, 6; IV, 18
- 9.10 IV, 27, 28
- 9.14-16 III, 21
- 9.15 II, 28; III, 10; IV, 5;
  VIII, 3
- 9.17 II, 21
- 11.20 III, 16; XI, 18
- 12.18 XIII, 21
- 13.1-5 XV, 3
- 16.24 II, 11; III, 6

### Sirach
- 1:5 XV, 20
- 18:7 IX, 1
## Volume I/5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>XII, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:20</td>
<td>XV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:5</td>
<td>I, 10; IV, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:21</td>
<td>XV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:16</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:37</td>
<td>XV, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:6</td>
<td>XV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:1</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1</td>
<td>II, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>XI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>VII, 12; XV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>II, 23; III, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:11</td>
<td>XV, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:10</td>
<td>I, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:16</td>
<td>II, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>II, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9-14</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>VIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:21</td>
<td>III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>I, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>IV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>IV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, 17, 28, 30, 31; VIII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>XV, 20, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>XV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>V, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>XII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>VIII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>IX, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>XI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>XV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:3</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>XV, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>II, 15; IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>XV, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>I, 16; VII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>VIII, 11; IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>VIII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>XIII, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>IV, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:31</td>
<td>XIII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>XIII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>I, 7; II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:7</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:23</td>
<td>I, 24, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>II, 28; XIV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:39</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>VI, 7; VIII, 10; XV, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:19</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:31</td>
<td>I, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:32</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>XIV, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:37</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41.34</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:19</td>
<td>XV, 46, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>I, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>V, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>VIII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>I, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:39</td>
<td>IV, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:42</td>
<td>IV, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>IV, 5; XV, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Trinity

1:17 V, 15
1:34 II, 8
2:14 XIII, 17
3:6 II, 11
4:18 I, 22
5:21 XV, 17
9:60 IV, 5
10:38 I, 20
10:42 I, 31
11:3 V, 15
11:20 I, 22
12:17 XV, 17
12:20 XIV, 19
15:13 IV, 1
18:19 V, 9
20:36 IV, 5
21:18 IV, 6
24:26 II, 31
24:39 IV, 6
24:44 XV, 30

John
1:1 I, 9; II, 9, 27; VI, 3, 4; VII, 4; XV, 19, 20
1:2 I, 9
1:3 I, 12, 14, 22, 26, 31; II, 14, 15, 25, 28; IV, 3, 25, 26; VII, 4; XII, 5, 6; XV, 20
1:3-4 IV, 3
1:5 IV, 3, 28
1:9 VII, 4
1:10 II, 7; III, 3; VII, 5
1:12 II, 7
1:12 V, 17; XIII, 11, 12
1:14 I, 9; II, 9; IV, 4, 28; VII, 4; XIII, 12, 22, 24; XIV, 24; XV, 20, 46
1:29 II, 11; XV, 44
2:19-21 IV, 9
2:21 IV, 9
3:14 III, 20
3:17 IV, 30
4:7 XV, 31
4:7-14 XV, 33
4:10 V, 10, 12
4:13 IX, 14
4:24 V, 12; XV, 27
5:19 I, 11; II, 3, 5; XV, 24
5:21 I, 11
5:22 I, 29, 30; II, 3
5:24 I, 30
5:25 I, 30
5:26 I, 22, 26, 29, 30; II, 3, 4; VII, 4; XV, 47
5:27 I, 30; II, 3
5:28 I, 30
5:36; 14:31 I, 26
5:46 III, 26
6:38 I, 22
7:16 I, 22, 26; II, 4, 5; XV, 48
7:37 XV, 33
7:39 IV, 29
7:38 XV, 33
8:15 II, 9
8:25 I, 24; V, 14
8:31 IV, 24
8:42 II, 9
8:50 I, 29
10:30 I, 17, 22, 25; II, 3; V, 4, 10; VI, 3; VII, 12
10:36 II, 9
11:51 IV, 22
12:28 I, 7; II, 18
12:44 I, 27
12:47 I, 26, 27, 29
12:48 I, 26
12:49-50 I, 26
12:50 I, 26
13:1 II, 29
13:21 XV, 19
14:1 I, 27
14:8 I, 17
14:9-11 I, 17
14:9 IV, 26
14:15-17 I, 18
14:16 I, 19
14:17 I, 19
14:21 I, 18, 28, 30, 31
14:22 I, 18
14:23 VII, 12
14:25 I, 25
14:26 II, 7; IV, 26, 29; XV, 45, 51
14:28 I, 15, 18; VI, 10
14:30 XIII, 18
15:5 XIV, 23
15:13 IV, 17
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>I, 23; XV, 30; II, 5; IV, 29; V, 12, 15; XV, 45; 48, 51; XII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:25</td>
<td>I, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>I, 18; II, 5, 23; XV, 45; 48, 51; XII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:6</td>
<td>I, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>I, 24; II, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>I, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13</td>
<td>I, 18; II, 5, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>I, 20, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>I, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>I, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:27</td>
<td>I, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:28</td>
<td>II, 7; IV, 28, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:1.5</td>
<td>II, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>I, 17, 30, 31; IV, 24; VI, 10; XIV, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>II, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:10</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:19</td>
<td>II, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td>IV, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:22</td>
<td>IV, 12; VI, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:23</td>
<td>IV, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>V, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>III, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30</td>
<td>IV, 16; XIV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>I, 18; IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>IV, 29; XV, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>II, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>II, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>III, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37</td>
<td>II, 31; XV, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>XV, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>III, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>III, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:51</td>
<td>III, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>XV, 35, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>XV, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>V, 9, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38</td>
<td>XV, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:44</td>
<td>XV, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
<td>XV, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:27</td>
<td>IV, 3; VII, 5; XIV, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>IV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:16</td>
<td>XIII, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>XII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 5, 20; XIII, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>II, 25; IV, 21; VI, 12; XIII, 24; XV, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>VI, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>I, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:26</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>I, 24; IV, 5; XIV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>I, 4; IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>II, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>VII, 5; VIII, 10; XIII, 14; XV, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>XIII, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>IV, 2; XIII, 14, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>XIII, 15, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>XIII, 14, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>XIII, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>IV, 15; XIII, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>III, 20; IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>IV, 6; XII, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>XIII, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>XII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>V, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>XIII, 15, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>II, 29; III, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>I, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>XIII, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>XIV, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
<td>IV, 2; XIII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>I, 21; II, 9; XIII, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>I, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>II, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22</td>
<td>XIII, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>XIV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>II, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>XIII, 5; XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
<td>I, 12; II, 25; III, 9; V, 9; VI, 7, 12; XIV, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21 VII, 12; XI, 8; XII, 21;</td>
<td>12:7-11 V, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24 I, 10; VI, 1, 2; VII, 1, 2; IV, 2; XV, 5, 31</td>
<td>12:8 XII, 22, 25; XIII, 24;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25 XIII, 18</td>
<td>12:9 XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30 VII, 4</td>
<td>12:10 III, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume I/5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>I, 14, 22; II, 8, 9, 12; III, 3; IV, 10, 26, 28, 30; XV, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XV, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>IX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>XV, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>III, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>XIII, 5, 26; XV, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>VIII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>VIII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>V, 7; XIII, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>VI, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>XIII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>IV, 17; XIII, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8-11</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>XII, 12; XIV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>XIV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>VII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>IV, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>III, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>III, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>I, 12, 14, 31; II, 3, 20, 28; IV, 4; VI, 5; VII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>I, 14, 18, 20, 21, 22; II, 5, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>I, 22; III, 20 XIII, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>I, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>IX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>I, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>XIII, 19; XV, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15,17</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>I, 24; VII, 5; XIV, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>I, 3; XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XIV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>I, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XII, 12; XIV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>VII, 12; XI, 1; XII, 12; XIV, 23; XV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>IV, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>IV, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>XIV, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>II, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>III, 13, 23; XV, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>I, 2, 10; II, 1, 15, 32, 33, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>VI, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>VII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>I, 14, 18, 20; III, 26; XIII, 13, 23; XV, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>II, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>II, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>I, 14, 16, 20; III, 26;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>IV, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>I, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>XV, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>XIV, 23; XV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>I, 2, 10; II, 1, 15, 32, 33, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>XIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13a</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>III, 19; XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>XIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>XV, 20, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Revelation

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 21, 24</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 21, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 28, 29, 31</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 28, 29, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>VIII, 3</td>
<td>5:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>VIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>XV, 44</td>
<td>14:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>XV, 44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/5
Subject Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprung)
(the numbers refer to the particular book and its section)

A

Abraham:
“Now I know that you fear God,” I:23
voice of the Lord; appearance, II:19
three men at the oak of Mambre, II:19-21, 34; III:25
the Lord (i.e. angel) appeared to, III:24-25

Academics, on knowledge, XV:21
acrobatic feats, IV:14
action/activity:
foreshadowing joy, by Mary and Martha, I:20
temporal things; knowledge, XII:22

Adam and Eve:
Genesis: God walks/talks with Adam, II:17, 18
seeing God with physical eyes, II:18
hiding from God’s face, II:18
punishment of, XII:13
forbidden fruit, XII:17
sin; reconciliation through second Adam, XIII:21, 23

Agriculture, agents in, III:14
Alexandria, VIII:9

Allegory (enigma), XV:15

Angel(s):
sovereigns no longer needed, I:16
theophanies and utterances (O.T.), II:21-22; III:6; III:22-27; IV:30, 31
announcer or messenger, II:23
burning bush; angel of the Lord, II:23
representing God in manifestations, III:4
the making of physical manifestations, III:5
knowledge of our bodily changes, III:5
rebel angels, and wizards, III:13
good, do as God commands; bad, as God permits, III:13
divine limitations on good and bad, III:18
divine prohibition (bad angels), III:18
person of God represented by, III:19
marvelous acts, III:20
speaking in person of God; example, III:20
pillars of cloud and fire, III:21
God works through, even bad, angels, III:21
the “Lord” appeared to Abraham, III:25
sometimes called “men,” III:25
law proclaimed by (Stephen), III:26
mortal men made equal to, IV:12
past and future equally present to, IV:22
wisdom, IV:27
Christ as model for, VII:5
all together do not make one God, VIII:3
time and, XII:10
said to tell God all things, XV:22
see also theophanies

Animals:
outer/inner man and, XII:1 sensing outside bodies, XII:2

Anna, IV:29

Annunciation, date of, IV:9

Apparitions, demonic, IV:14

Appetite, in pursuit of knowledge, IX:18; XII:17

Arians:
substance-wise statements about God, V:4, 7
Christ: power and wisdom of God, VI:1
the Son as not true God, VI:10
ascension: equality with the Father, I:18

The Trinity
The Trinity

attention:
act of recall, XI:6
memory, inner sight, and will, XI:11-12
will, sensation, and memory, XI:14-15
recollection of things in memory, XIV:10
Augustine, Saint:

baptism:
made sons of God by, XII:12
the uncircumcised; the Holy Spirit, XV:35
sent in name of the trinity, XV:51

beauty:
perception of, IX:11
spirit roused by talk of, X:1
knowledge through senses, XIII:4

being:
change and, V:3
as genus or species word, VII:11

birth:
beginnings from hidden seed, III:13
blasphemy: against the Son; against the Holy Spirit, I:22
blind, XI:2
bliss, see happiness

body (-ies):
temples of the Holy Spirit, I:13
perishibility, IV:5
death: being forsaken by spirit, IV:16
size, color, shape, VI:8

covenant with the reader, I:5, 8
tongue and pen driven by Charity, III:1
would rather read than write, III:1
a word to critics, III:2

authority:
holding fast to, IX:1
justice combined with power, XIII:17

awareness, see mind

substance both simple and multiple, VI:8
division; part and whole in, IX:7
its image in our consciousness, IX:16
parts of soul we share even with animals, X:7
part(s) of highest value, X:9
visible; sense of sight, XI:2
limits of sensing set by, XI:14
consciousness, XII:1
tances of spiritual things in, XII:5
sinning against one’s own, XII:15
represented by serpent, not woman, XII:20
live, move, are — in him, XIV:16

see also senses

body and soul:
interaction of, III:15
need of healing and resurrection, IV:5
outer/inner parts of man, XIII:2
books: value of several authors, I:5
buying and selling, XIII:6

Cain, II:18
Carthage, VIII:9
Catholic Church:
judgment day: protection by right faith, I:31
faith: beholding Christ’s back (humanity), II:28
standing on the rock, II:30
cause:
primary and ultimate; example, III:8
visible and changing events, III:8
physical and changing events, III:8
physical species and motions, III:9
generation of animals, III:15, 17

see also knowledge

Volume I/5
chance:  
made by God, without change in God, I:3  
changeableness, and mortality, II:15  
natural causes; will of God, III:19  
the changeable and eternity, IV:24  
being and, V:3  
modifications, V:5  
nothing simple; everything created, VI:8  
“changeable” must not be thought of God, VIII:3  
hope in soul being changeable, XIV:21  

character:  
praiseworthy: memory, understanding, and will, X:17  
charity, see love  
children: memory, understanding, and will, X:17  
Christ, see Jesus Christ  
christian life:  
hidden with Christ in God, I:16  
God inwardly effecting, III:14  
partakers in his divinity, IV:4  
Paul on how one should live, VIII:13  

Christmas: date of [note 31], IV:9  

church:  
body of Christ, IV:12  
house built after the captivity (devil), XV:34  
prefigured: Christ anointed with Holy Spirit, XV:46  

Cicero:  
on the happy life, XIII:8  
on four basic virtues, XIV:12  
on living in philosophy, XIV:26  
circus prodigies, IV:14  
*City of God, The*:  
on the soul, XIII:12  
cogitation, see thought  

commandment(s):  
reward for keeping, I:18  
eternal life, I:26  

common good: self-enjoyment and, XII:17  

consciousness:  
sense knowledge, IX:16  
intention: sense of seeing, XI:2  
power of fabricating, XI:8  

the outer man, XII:1  
raised to highest in spiritual things, XII:1  
not common to man and beast, XII:2, 3  
found only inside self, XIV:8  
faith and, XIV:11  
virtues begin in, XIV:12  
focus of book XI, XV:5  
perceptions through, XV:21, 22  
see also mind; thought  

contemplation:  
mediator will bring us to face to face vision, I:16  
promise: eternal perfection, I:17  
rejoicing in hope, I:17  
reward of faith, I:17  
the clean of heart, I:17  
inseparabity of persons, I:17  
I will show myself to him, I:18  
believers brought to, I:20  
God will be all in all, I:20  
of God; eternal life, I:31  
eternal things; wisdom, XII:22  
wisdom: the light shines in darkness, XIII:2  
courage: Cicero on four basic virtues, XIV:12  

covetousness:  
true love opposed to, VIII:10  
creature loved on its own account, IX:13  
forsaking better things, XI:8  

creation:  
scripture’s words, when referring to God, I:2  
of things in time, I:3  
all things made through the Son/Word, I:9; XV:20  
“all things were made through him” (Jn I:3), I:12; IV:3  
Genesis: person(s) involved in, II:17  
obe obedience to its maker; theophanies, III:6  

God as inmost cause of, III:16  
creator: the one who fashions things in their principles, III:18  
one creation, one life, IV:3  
interlock of, IV:4  
the sixth day, IV:7  

The Trinity
The Trinity

all should bear witness to creator, IV:25
both Father & Son are called origin, V:14
everlastingly lord, V:17
lower creatures; remote likeness to creator, XII:5
knowing the God who made them, XV:3
creator:
his nature more excellent than created natures, XIV:16
ranks above created things, XV:6
creature(s):
eye substance that is not God, I:9
enjoyment of created things, IX:13
all are known by God, XV:22
critics: a word to his readers, III:2
cross: prefigured by Moses’ arms outstretched, IV:20
crucifixion:
the Lord of glory, in form of a servant, I:28
“why have you forsaken me,” IV:6
see also death; Jesus Christ; redemption
curiosity:
distinguished from the studious person, X:3, 4

daniel:
the Son: appearance in physical form, II:33
darkness:
foolish minds of men, IV:3
heart: the light shines in darkess, XIII:2
days: calculation, dark to light, IV:10
death:
serpent stands for, III:20
decay of the outer man, IV:5
body and soul; difference, IV:5
the Lord’s death: model for death of outer man, IV:6
God as cause, IV:15
little fear of, IV:15
man’s inclination: flesh or spirit, IV:15
companionship of Son of God, IV:17
way chosen by God to free us from mortality, XIII:13
death of the Lord and, IV:17
in everlasting fire, IV:18
desire to be worshipped, IV:19
proudest of all spirits, IV:20
handed over to, by original sin, XIII:16
subject to the Almighty, XIII:16
overcome by God’s justice, XIII:17, 18
overcome (and man freed from) by Christ’s death, XIII:19, 22
turned out of hearts; power limited, XIII:20
outdone by a rational creature: the God-man, XIII:22
conquered by second Adam, XIII:23
called “captive which was taken captive,” XV:34
overcome by blood of the Lamb, XV:44
discernment of spirits, III:18
discipline: meanings, XIV:1
divine persons, see persons; Trinity
divinity: not seen by human sight, I:11
doctrine: “my doctrine is not mine,” I:27
doubt:
Augustine’s goal: overcoming, I:4
things the mind knows with certainty, X:14

use of mind’s faculties, X:14
true/false words, XV:24
dove: Pentecostal, II:11
dreams: deluded by images, XI:7

earth:
love for the good things of this earth, VIII:4
Elijah: prayer; drought, III:11
enigma (allegory), XV:15
enjoyment:
use of created things, IX:13
will: things can be enjoyed or used, X:13
using, with actual joy, X:17
equality:
proven from scripture, I:7-13
“did not think it robbery…” I:12; V:4; VI:5
ascension to the Father, I:18
Son hearkens to us with the Father, I:21
the Son in form of God, I:22
belief in Jesus, as we believe in the Father, I:27
the Son’s substance, no lesser good than the Father’s, I:31
scripture: substance of Father and Son, II:3
work of Father and Son is indivisible, II:3
the form-of-God rule, II:4
greater: one who sends; one is sent, II:7
three men at the oak of Mambre, II:20
the one sent (Son) and sender (Father), IV:26
Christ: power and wisdom of God, VI:1
in virtues, VI:6
Father and Son: same substance, VI:6
wisdom and charity in God, VI:7
one is as much as three together, VI:11

no single person is less than the trinity itself, VIII:1
when complete: mind, knowledge, love, IX:4
focus of book I, XV:5
man: in nature never equal to God, XV:26
error:
three types, thinking about God, I:1
remembering sensed thing falsely, XI:17
eternal life:
the Father’s word and commandment, I:26
the Son: begotten to unchangeable life, I:26
“he who listens to my word…” I:30
sight not granted to the wicked, I:30
answer to young man asking about achieving, I:31
contemplation of God; everlasting joy, I:31
to know the one true God, I:31
the changeable and faith, IV:24
truth abides: immortal, imperishable, unchanging, IV:24
truth and faith, IV:24
eucharist:
unique sign, III:10
infants’ knowledge of the celebration, III:21
Eunomius (heretic), XV:38
Eve, see Adam and Eve
existence: no thing brings itself into, I:1
Exodus, The:
theophanies, II:23-27, 32
eyes, see seeing; sight

faith:
vigor of mind, I:4
love: through faith, to sight, I:21

beholding Christ’s back (humanity), II:28

The Trinity
The Trinity

resurrection of Christ gives value to, II:29
temporal/eternal things and, IV:24
things done in time for our sakes, IV:24
becomes truth by seeing, IV:24
following Christ; four stages, IV:24
“unless you believe…,” VII:12
firm assent, even if understanding is unclear, VIII:1
believing (hoping, loving) what it cannot yet see, VIII:6
fabrications of imagination, VIII:7
physical appearance irrelevant to, VIII:7
fabrication; false beliefs, VIII:8
help in knowing and loving God, VIII:13
certitude of, initiates knowledge, IX:1
acceptance of historical events, XIII:2
in things that are false, XIII:3
seen, with certitude, in the heart, XIII:3, 5
meaning not perceived by bodily sense, XIII:4
a thing of heart, not of bodily sense, XIII:5
comes by hearing, XIII:5
each has his own consciousness of, XIII:5
necessary in this mortal life, XIII:10
promise of immortality, XIII:12
necessary for happiness of body and soul, XIII:25
works through love, XIII:26
leads to true happiness, XIV:3
a temporal thing, XIV:3
to be replaced by sight, XIV:4
retaining, observing, loving, XIV:5
in our (temporal only) consciousness, XIV:5
recollection: image hidden in memory, XIV:5
consciousness and, XIV:11
seeking God, XV:2
can have, without love, XV:32
purifies hearts, XV:44
fall of man: happiness not remembered, XIV:21
family, as a trinity, XII:5, 8
fancies:
  desiring covetously, XI:8
  memory and thought in, XI:17
Father:
distinct person, I:7
he alone, addressing his Son, I:7, 8
as greater than the Son, I:14
greater than Son (in form of servant), I:15
Philip, “whoever has seen me…,” I:17
Son shall tell you openly about Father, I:21
the Father’s doctrine is his Word, I:27
all judgment given to the Son, I:29, 30
the getting of being, II:2
“He gave the Son life,” II:4
nowhere said to have been sent, II:8
not sent; physical manifestations, II:12
delusions re texts on the Father
“alone,” II:14-15
appearing visibly to human eyes, II:18
voice at baptism & transfiguration of Jesus, II:18
the invisible and only God, II:20
scriptures: never found as “being sent,” II:22
never appeared to the patriarchs, II:32
never presented in bodily guise, II:34
said to have sent, not to have been sent, III:3
as known by someone in time, IV:28
source of all godhead, IV:29
voice heard, after the incarnation, IV:31
begetter of his own attributes, VI:2-3
wisdom begotten by, VI:2, 3
begetter of greatness, VI:3
as “greater,” VI:5
Arians: only true God, VI:10
Hilary on eternity in, VI:11
called so, with reference to Son, VII:1
question: powerful or wise, taken singly, VII:1
Christ: power of God, wisdom of God (text), VII:1-2, 4
as not wise with himself, but with the Son, XV:12
senses of Word of God and, XV:22
alone is called unbegotten, XV:47
see also God; persons; Trinity

Volume I/5
fear:
senses shrinking from sensible things, XI:7

fire:
Pentecostal, II:11
Mount Sinai manifestation; Pentecost, II:26

flesh (a term for “man”), II:11
form:
observed by eye of the mind, IX:12
ture knowledge of things, IX:12
observing and loving, X:2
begotten by visible object, XI:3

luminous body, changing colors, XI:4
likeness remains in memory, XI:6
things stored in memory, XI:13

friends:
analogy: knowledge and knower, IX:6
future:
philosophers, prophets, and historians, IV:21-22
foretelling: angels and the airy powers, IV:22
philosophers are not to be consulted, IV:23
guess at, from past things, XV:13

G
gesture: a way of speaking, XV:19
gift, contrasted with donation, V:16
giving: from the Father to the Son, I:29
glorification:
Jesus, in form of a servant, I:24
Holy Spirit, the Father also, glorifies Son, II:6
glory: from faith to sight, XV:14

God:
conceived of, in bodily terms, I:1
error: God begets himself, I:1 false ideas about, I:1
scripture’s use of corporeal words, I:2
true immortality, I:2, 10
knowledge of God’s substance, I:3
being God, and being true God, I:10
the Father himself loves us, I:21
face to face seeing, by the clean of heart, I:28
his goodness manifested to the pure of heart, I:31
that one who alone is good, I:31
“no one is good except the one God,” I:31
“who alone has immortality,” II:15
has shown himself only through a created bodily substance, II:16
Moses demands a true spiritual vision of, II:27
substance cannot be physically seen, II:35
power to produce sensible effects through spiritual agents, III:6
his will as ultimate cause, III:8

invisibly produces visible and sensible effects, III:10
the one creator, III:18
physical objects sometimes represent God’s person, III:19
unchangeable substance, therefore invisible, III:21
hearts purified, to see substance of, III:26
longing for God, IV:1
unchangeable: eternity, truth, will, IV:1
extent of his love for us, IV:2
cannot be measured by changeable things, V:1
think about always, V:1
accidental predications [Aristotle’s], V:2
substance or being, V:3
no modifications in, V:3, 5
unchangeable, V:5
nothing said of him modification-wise, V:6
substance-wise references to himself, V:7, 9
“You alone are the great God,” V:9
metaphors of time, place, etc., V:9
the one God is a trinity, V:9
predications about, V:11
his loving “temporally” is unthinkable, V:17
lord of time, V:17
past and future in, V:17
relationship modifications, V:17
said to be “angry,” V:17

The Trinity
The Trinity

Father of power and wisdom, VI:1, 2
virtues: simple multiplicity, VI:6
called great in multiple ways, VI:8
the trinity as only true God, VI:10
greatness of, not separate from being
God, VII:1
cause of his being, VII:2
to be, the same as to be wise, VII:2
truth in thinking/talking about, VII:7
being: I am who I am, VII:10
improperly called substance, VII:10
to be is to subsist, VII:10
able to know what he is not, VIII:3
the good of every created good, VIII:4
the good in which we live, move, are,
VIII:5
beholding permitted only to the pure
in heart, VIII:6
loving related to knowing, VIII:6
inward presence, VIII:11
God is love, VIII:11
cause of not seeing God: not loving
brother, VIII:12
ourselves made better by knowing
God, IX:16
the wish to claim God’s inner beauties
for self, X:7
source of goods making men happy,
XIII:10
his “wrath” is not emotional, XIII:21
supreme wisdom, XIV:1
body and soul: we live in him, XIV:16
memory erased by forgetfulness,
XIV:17
seeking the Lord always, XV:2
incomprehensibility, XV:2
when found, seek more avidly, XV:2
a triad without being triple (book VI),
XV:5
anything said about, also fits the
trinity, XV:7
genuinely immortal, eternal,
unchangeable, XV:7
goodness and justice identical, XV:7
life in, XV:7
sensing and understanding identical
in, XV:7
wisdom, XV:7-9
qualities signifying substance, XV:8
eternal, wise, happy, XV:8-9
enigma: we see now through a
mirror…, XV:16, 44

his knowledge is also his wisdom,
XV:22
simplicity, XV:22
unchangeable, XV:38
see also creation; Father; Holy Spirit;
Jesus Christ; persons; trinity
godlessness:
getting further away from him who
alone can satisfy, X:7
forgetting God, as forgetting one’s
own life, XIV:17
result: weakness, darkness, XIV:18
light in the heart of man, XIV:21
transformed from, XV:14
good and evil:
divine causality, III:14
love for the good things of this earth,
VIII:4
no changeable goods, without the
unchangeable good, VIII:5
failing to love the good that makes
things good, VIII:5
using/enjoying things badly, X:13
likeness to the highest good, XI:8
abstaining from evil, in time, XII:22
wisdom and knowledge, XII:22
God: source of goods making men
happy, XIII:10
devil imitated: devoted to power, not
justice, XIII:17
evils remain, after forgiveness of
[original] sin, XIII:20
making good use of evil, XIII:20
all works together for, for those who
love God, XIII:20
see also happiness; sin
good example:
building up one’s neighbor, II:28
good person:
good things from good treasure of his
heart, I:31
love for, even if never seen, X:1
good will: perversion of, XIII:17
good works:
rest, the eternal reward for, I:20
words from the heart, IX:14
services of mercy, XII:11
government:
chain of beings; hierarchy, III:9

Volume I/5
human affairs in hands of wise men, III:9

grace:
  gratis: voluntary rain, IV:2 sons of God by, XIII:12
  knowledge and, XIII:24

greatness:
  predication, V:11
  the equally true must be equally great, VIII:2


greed: root of all evils, XII:14

Greek works, III:1

guilt: purged by Christ’s death, IV:17

H

good things from good treasure of his heart, I:31
  fancies of, IV:1
  words from the heart, IV:6; IX:14
  justice: light in the heart of man, XIV:21
  seeking the Lord always, XV:2
  what comes from the “mouth” of, XV:18

heaven:
  will of God presiding in, III:9
  direct contemplation of divine persons, XV:45

see also contemplation; eternal life

heretics:
  use of the scriptures, I:6
  only the Father is God, II:23
  unbelievers in the Church, II:30

Hilary, on the trinity, VI:11

historians:
  philosophers and the future, IV:21

history:
  knowledge in awareness of, XIII:2

Holy Spirit:
  distinct person, I:7
  form of a dove, I:8
  problem of begetting of, I:8
  bodies as temples of, I:13
  consubstantial and co-eternal, I:13
  God, not creature, I:13
  Spirit of truth, I:18
  will teach you all truth, I:18
  abode, along with Father and Son, I:19
  advocate to be with you, I:19
  “I shall send him to you,” I:25
  “the Father will send in my name,” I:25
  he will not speak from himself, II:5
  neither a son, nor begotten, II:5
  proceeds from the Father, II:5

The Trinity
The Trinity

abiding in God, XV:31
love which is from God and is God, XV:32
nothing more excellent than this gift of God, XV:32
gifts/endowments given through, XV:32, 34
living water, XV:33
distribution of, XV:34
speaking with tongues, XV:35
co-eternal with the Father, XV:36
not alone in being God-charity, XV:37
best fits name: will of God, XV:38
like him: will, love or esteem, XV:41
given by the Son, XV:45
given through laying on of hands, XV:46
sent from heaven by the Son, XV:46
proceeds from Father and Son, XV:47-48
proceeds from the Father, XV:50
see also Pentecost; persons; Trinity

hope: eternal contemplation of God, I:17
human body, see body

human condition:
weakness; longing for God, IV:1
seeking eternity, truth, happiness, IV:2
men by nature; not just by sin, IV:4
see also death; sin

human mind, see mind humility:
look at self in God’s light, IV:1
love brought to perfection, IV:2
made weak by being humbled, IV:2
Christ vs devil, IV:13
example of the Magi, IV:15
borne on the wood of the cross, IV:20

I

realized in father-mother-child, XII:8-9
man or woman as, XII:9-10
woman with her husband, XII:10
no bodily sex in, XII:12
rational mind as, XII:12
preserved only when facing him, XII:16
attributed to the man only, XII:19
to be found in human soul, XIV:5, 6

image of God:
made by the Father through the Son, VII:5
refashioning, VII:5
let us [plural] make man, VII:12
similarity, not equality, VII:12
seeing the image in ourselves, IX:2
man as image of the trinity, IX:2;
XII:6-8
the outer man (senses), XI:1

The Trinity
glorifying the Father, II:6
the virgin birth, II:9
form of a dove, II:10, 11
created form not assumed by, II:11
sent; physical manifestations, II:12;
III:3; IV:30
as angel, II:23
Mount Sinai manifestation; Pentecost, II:26
sent to the world (where he already was), III:3
gift of knowledge (note 3), IV:1
not the Father’s and the Son’s, IV:29
not yet given (Jn VII:39), IV:29
procession of, IV:29
only person called gift of God, IV:29;
XV:29, 33-36
manifestations, after the incarnation, IV:31
called the gift of God, V:12
Spirit of both Father and Son, V:12,
13; VI:7; XV:27, 37
right to be called origin, V:14
to each is given a manifestation of,
V:14
Father and Son as origin, V:15
Spirit of Elijah, V:15
why not a Son also, V:15
being-gift by being given, V:16
proceeds from eternity, V:16
as gift, and as donation, V:17
unity and equality of substance, VI:7
as wisdom, VII:6
re being called Son, IX:17
as mother of the Son, XII:5
charity of God poured into our hearts,
XIII:14
mission: focus of books II-IV, XV:5
distinctively named charity, XV:29, 31

Volume I/5
The Trinity

reform: turning to the Lord, XIV:22
full knowledge, with full vision,
   XIV:24
from blurred form to clear one, XV:14
being transformed into, XV:14, 21
word of man; Word of God, XV:20
memory, understanding, will, XV:39
see also trinities
images (perceptions):
   mind hooked on bodily images, X:11
   knowledge through senses, XIII:4
   retained in memory, XIV:5
imagination:
   fabricating physical features, VIII:7
   desiring covetously, XI:8
immoderation, IX:15
immortality:
   unchangingness, I:2, 10 partakers in
   life everlasting, I:10 “who alone has
   immortality,” I:11
controversy: Jesus pre-incarnation,
   II:15 invisible and unchangeable
   divine substance, II:16
   happiness and, XIII:11
   human reasoning, XIII:12
   cease to desire; patiently wait, XIII:17
   image of the Son, XIV:24
   perfected on the last day, XIV:25
incarnation:
   the Son alone, I:7, 8
   the Son, same substance as the Father,
      I:9
   everlasting substance prior to, I:14
   form of God not lost in, I:14
   belief in, as Son of God, I:30
   the annunciation, II:8
   working of Father and Son, II:9
   the invisible three produce the visible
   Son, II:18
   participation in the Word, IV:4
   the just man to intercede for sinful
   man, IV:4
   how accomplished, IV:31
   Son of God: remained God, became
   man, XIII:13
   advertises grace of God, XIII:22
   three elements in one person, XIII:22
   conception by believing, XIII:23
   the supreme grace, XIII:24
   individual:
      memory, understanding, love, XV:42,
      43
   infants: soul; senses, XIV:7
inner man, see mind; soul
inquisitiveness, IX:18
intellect: best thing in our nature, V:2
inventio (the word), X:10
irreligion, see godlessness
Isaiah: seek/find God, XV:2

J

Jacob:
   colors of his flocks, III:15; XI:5
   anointed stone stands for Christ, III:20
Jesus Christ:
   human weakness: crucified, I:3
   question of divinity of, I:9
   divinity not seen by the Jews, I:11
   will transfigure body of our lowliness,
      I:15
   handing over kingdom to the Father,
      I:15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 21
   rejoice at my going to the Father, I:18
   as priest, I:20
   acts, in form of a servant, I:22
   text: future time as though it were
      past, I:23
   human power: “it is not mine to
      grant,” I:25
   “it is not I that will judge,” I:26, 27
   he who believes in me…. I:27
   belief in, as we believe in the Father,
      I:27
   “name above every name,” I:29
   form of God, form of servant, II:2
   “my teaching is not mine,” II:4, 5
   all that the Father has is mine, II:5
   “I did not come from myself,” II:9
   held to be mortal pre-incarnation, II:15
   angel of great counsel, II:23
   prefigured: “you shall see my back,”
      II:28
   death and resurrection prefigured,
      III:20
   Moses’ rod; Jacob’s stone, III:20
   proclamation of the law (Moses),
      III:26

The Trinity
true mediator, III:26; IV:12-19
his death as model, IV:6
his death as sacrifice [note 18], IV:6
materialistic thoughts about, IV:6
not to touch, until he has ascended, IV:6
burial; the new tomb, IV:9
death: 3 days in tomb, IV:9-10
consubstantial equality, IV:12
death: amazement of those present, IV:16
true mediator of life, IV:17
effects of his death on mankind, IV:17
devil: scoffing at death of, IV:18
Word made to receive our faith, IV:26
sacrament: Word become flesh, IV:27
God and man, IV:31
whole man: body and soul, IV:31
as wisdom, VII:4
as model, VII:5
emptied himself, VII:5
use of power, VIII:11
chose not to use power to avoid humiliation, XIII:18
death: doing the Father’s will, XIII:18
the devil overpowered by his death, XIII:18
crucified as man, rose as God, XIII:18
death for justice’s sake, XIII:18
power: rising from the dead, XIII:18
sin; reconciliation through second Adam, XIII:21
why should his death not have happened? XIII:21
no sin ever, XIII:23
treasures of wisdom and knowledge, XIII:24
power and wisdom: focus of book VI, XV:5, 9
thought of as blaspheming, XV:17
as man, received the Holy Spirit, XV:46
born of the Holy Spirit, XV:46
see also crucifixion; incarnation; persons; redemption; resurrection; Son of God; Word of God
Job: tested, III:12
John, apostle, evangelist:
on brotherly charity, VIII:12
beginning of his gospel (I:1-14), XIII:2
John the Baptist:
filled with Holy Spirit, IV:29; XV:46
historicity, XIII:2
witness to the light, XIII:4
joy:
foreshadowing by Mary and Martha, I:20
contemplation of God; eternal life, I:31
see also enjoyment
judgment day:
“it is not I that will judge,” I:26, 27
the Lord of glory, crucified, I:28
“I in turn will love him,” I:28
handing over the kingdom, I:28
the wicked will see him in form of man, I:28, 30
the Son of man will/will not judge, I:29
the Son in form of man, I:29, 30
the Son: visible to good and bad alike, I:30
the judge will not seem good to the wicked, I:31
“come, blessed of my Father,” I:31
“go into everlasting fire,” I:31
faith in the Catholic Church, I:31
our supreme good: sight of God, I:31
image of God perfected on, XIV:25
justice:
beauty of mind, VIII:9
knowing what “just” is, VIII:9
definition of a just mind, VIII:9
love men (neighbor) because of justice, VIII:9
form we judge by found in God, VIII:13
one loving perfectly is already just, IX:14
a property of good will, XIII:17
devil imitated: devoted to power, not justice, XIII:17
immortal, XIV:12
divine, XIV:15
meriting happiness, XIV:21
turning from light in the heart of man, XIV:21
justification:
justified in his blood, XIII:15, 18, 21
see also redemption
Volume I/5

K

kingdom of God:
handing over, to the Father, I:15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 21
Daniel: the Father giving, the Son receiving, II:33
know thyself, X:12
knowing oneself: beauty of, X:5
knowledge:
value, IV:1
certainty completed after this life, IX:1
equal with mind, when complete, IX:4
greater than the body known, IX:4
specific or generic, IX:9
a word, or only loved knowledge, IX:15
likeness to the thing known, IX:16
of quality, IX:16
ourselves made better by knowing God, IX:16
knowable, but not yet known, IX:18
preceded by inquisitiveness, IX:18
thing known co-generates knowledge of itself, IX:18
appetite for learning, IX:18
what mind knows, the whole of it knows, X:6
hankering after temporal things, XII:16
of changeable things, XII:17, 25
good within its proper limits, XII:21
necessary for virtue, XII:21
action: temporal things, XII:22
distinguished from wisdom, XII:23, 24;
XIII:2; XIV:11
conscious reasoning; sense images, XIII:4
grace and, XIII:24
of things human, XIV:3
only possible in the mind, XIV:8
needed, in temporal life, XIV:10, 13
knowables beget knowledge, XIV:13
man’s wisdom (Cicero), XIV:26
knowing something as true, XV:17
a word is born from, XV:19
certainty of being alive, XV:21
innumerable numbers, XV:21
two kinds of perceptions, XV:21
human: can be both lost and acquired,
XV:22
for man: not the same to be as to know, XV:24
called word even before being formed,
XV:25
everlasting, in the mind, XV:25
see also trinities

L

language(s):
scriptures speak in common human usage, I:23
negative adjectives, V:8
beauty; usefulness, X:2
studious about learning your own, X:2
to hear nobody as a foreigner, X:2
law: term for Old Testament books, XV:30
learning:
pursuit and acquisition of, IX:18
arousal of interest in studying, X:1, 2
partial knowledge needed for pursuit of, X:3
memory, understanding, and will, X:17

The Trinity
look of the body:
four “looks” brought to light, XI:16
Lot, two angels came to, II:21-22
love:
keeping the commandments, I:18
for us, by the three persons, I:21
through faith, to sight, I:21
building up one’s neighbor, II:28
yearning to behold God, II:28
brought to perfection in humility, IV:2
persuaded of God’s love for us, IV:2
substance of God, VI:7
for God, as being good itself, VIII:4
for good things of this earth, VIII:4
failing to love the good that makes things good, VIII:5
cling to this good (God) in love, VIII:6
loving God before one knows him, VIII:6
believing the trinity which we do not know, VIII:8
what one believes but does not see, VIII:9
form and truth which the one loving sees in self, VIII:9
love men (neighbor) because of justice, VIII:9
loving oneself unjustly, VIII:9
true love vs covetousness, VIII:10
abiding in God, VIII:10
definition of true love, VIII:10
scripture sometimes refers to only one love command, VIII:10
of God and neighbor (commands), VIII:10; XIV:18
cause of not seeing God: not loving brother, VIII:12
charity herself loved, VIII:12

God understood in brotherly charity,
VIII:12
trinity seen in, VIII:12
our brother as ourselves, VIII:12
the two commandments cannot exist alone, VIII:12
unites good angels and men in bond of holiness, VIII:12
three: the lover, being loved, love,
VIII:14; IX:2
what does loving itself mean? IX:2
with mind, one spirit, IX:2
in the knowledge of the lover, IX:8
kindled when hearing of great acts, IX:11
for creatures, related to creator, IX:13
as image or word, IX:17
mind does not beget love of itself,
IX:18
for something quite unknown, X:1, 2, 3, 4
mind loves the very knowing of “know thyself,” X:5
involved with senses of the flesh, X:7
deserving, X:17
of body-seen; alienation, XI:9
of something not known, but only believed, XIII:26
command to love neighbor as self,
XIV:18
straight, when God is loved, XIV:18
for things beneath mind, XIV:20
transferring: temporal to eternal,
XIV:23
God is charity; love is God, XV:27, 28, 31, 37
nothing, if without love, XV:32
primordial function of memory, XV:41
human: likeness to the Holy Spirit,
XV:43
see also covetousness; trinities

M

Magi, IV:15
man(-kind):
cannot see God’s face and live, II:28
light of men: rational minds, IV:3
mortal men made equal to angels, IV:12
definition, XV:11

a triad cannot be called one man,
XV:43
see also body; human condition;
image of God; senses; soul
Martha and Mary, I:20
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
filled with Holy Spirit, IV:29
physical appearance, VIII:7
materialism: notions re God’s Word and Wisdom, II:14
mediator: true: Jesus; false: devil, IV:13-19 see also Jesus Christ; Son of God
memory: images stored in, IX:10, 11 self-awareness of remembering, X:13 image of divine trinity in the mind, X:17-19 thought; recollection, XI:6 memory, inner sight, and will, XI:11-12 gives light on things looked at in thoughts, XI:14 will, sensation, and attention, XI:14-15 remembering sensed thing falsely, XI:17 measure, XI:18 thoughts committed to, XII:23 false memories; dreams, XII:24 knowledge through senses, XIII:4 a confidential file of awareness, XIV:8 as limited to things past, XIV:14 forseeing by (not by foresight), XV:13 knowledge and, XV:40 a likeness to the Father, XV:43 see also trinities
mercy: good works, XII:11 metheglin (the word), X:2 mind: purification necessary, to see God, I:3 vigor through faith, I:4 darkness; foolish minds of men, IV:3 chief part of man, VI:10 its beauty cannot be seen, VIII:9 we know others from knowing our own, VIII:9 we know what (our) mind is, VIII:9 a just mind: seeing the inner truth, VIII:9 loving itself, IX:2 with love, one spirit, IX:2 must know itself in order to love, IX:3 knowledge, when it knows itself, IX:3 love, when it loves itself, IX:4, 6 love and knowledge in, substantially, IX:5, 6 wholeness; knowing/loving itself completely, IX:7 change, with new knowledge, IX:11 word joined to mind with love, IX:15 as cause of its love of itself, IX:17 begets knowledge of itself, IX:18; XIV:7 can know itself as in a mirror, X:5 love, when seeking to know itself, X:5 knows itself to be mind, X:6 commanded to know itself, X:7, 13, 16 thinking of itself as if it were a body, X:8 conceived of as mortal, X:9 looks for things looked for by senses, X:10 used to being with bodily images, X:11 looking for itself as if it were absent, X:11 looking for/finding itself, X:11 things known with certainty, X:14 as substance; as subject, X:15 knows itself, even when looking for itself, X:16 rational performance of bodily/ temporal actions, XII:3 looking for a trinity in, XII:4 image of God, XII:4, 12, 15, 20; XV:5 reaching for the eternal, XII:10 common nature of man, woman, XII:12 awareness: in temporal/eternal matters, XIII:1 awarenesses in, XIV:9; XV:18 inner-memory, -understanding, -will, XIV:10 chief capacity: knowing God, XIV:11 live, move, are — in him, XIV:16, 21 always remembers, understands, loves itself, XIV:18, 19 possessions, treasures, XIV:19 changeable, XV:10 image of the trinity, XV:11 pre-eminent in the soul, XV:11 power to see invisible things, XV:49 see also attention; consciousness; thought; trinities

The Trinity
ministry:
  Paul on how God’s ministers should live, VIII:13

miracles:
  signs of divine power, III:11
  staff of Moses into serpent, III:11
  water into wine, III:11
  wonderful works of God, III:11
  witchcraft, III:12
  tell us something about God, III:19

mirror:
  enigma: we see now through a mirror…, XV:14, 16, 21, 44

missions:
  Old Testament theophanies, II:1-35
  going forth from the Father, into the world, II:7
  greater: one who sends; one is sent, II:7
  sendings of Son and Holy Spirit, II:7-11
  Son/Holy Spirit sent to where they already are, II:8
  sent by the Father; yet, he sent himself, II:9
  form of servant; form of God, II:9
  sent: the one who appeared in the flesh, II:9
  Son sent by Father and his Word, II:9
  outward sights, II:10
  symbolic actions (O.T.), II:11
  questions re Holy Spirit’s physical manifestations, II:12
  O.T., the Son and Holy Spirit, II:13
  from world of spirit into public gaze, III:3
  persons: O.T. manifestations, III:3
  Son and Spirit in Old Testament, III:4

use of physical creatures for bodily guise, III:4
the one sent (Son) equal to the sender (Father), IV:26, 32
Son not sent because Father is greater, IV:27

moderation:
  Cicero on four basic virtues, XIV:12
  modification (the term), V:5
  modifications:
    separable/inseparable, V:5
    whatever can be lost or diminished, V:6
  relationship terms in God, V:17

Moses:
  mission: lead people out of Egypt, II:23
  Mount Sinai: the ten commandments, II:25-26
  the Lord spoke to Moses face to face, II:27
  favor in God’s sight, II:28
  rod into serpent; meaning, III:20
  appearance called both angel and Lord, III:24
  belief in (Christ), III:26
  cross prefigured by arms outstretched, IV:20
  Spirit given to, V:15

Mount Sinai: the ten commandments, II:25-26

mouth:
  word from the heart, IX:14
  man defiled by what comes out of, XV:18
  of the body; of the heart, XV:18
  music: fix in memory, XII:23

natural history:
  study, by philosophers, IV:21
natural phenomena:
  none is independent of God’s will, III:7
nature:
  serves the divine command, III:7
  phenomena as work of God, III:11

N

primary and secondary causes in, III:16-17
normal course of, III:19
sameness of nature and being in, VI:4
contemplation of (Cicero), XIV:12
needs: ministering; good works, I:20
neighbor: scripture on command to love, II:28; VIII:9, 10, 12; XIV:18
numbers, innumerable, XI:12; XV:21
numerical harmony:
- number 3, IV:10
- number 4 & 40, IV:7-8, 10
- number 6, IV:7-8, 10

obedience:
- reward of Christ’s obedience unto death, XIII:22

Old Testament:
- books included in “the law,” XV:30
  - see also prophets; theophanies

omnipotence:
- humility of the incarnation, VIII:7

omnipresence of God, II:7

original justice:
- carnal desires in paradise, XIII:23

original sin:
- handed over to devil’s power, XIII:16
- evils remain, after forgiveness of sin, XIII:20

outer man: recollection, XII:1
  - see also body

paradise: as physical locality, II:18

passover: lamb slain at, III:26

patience: comes to us from God, XV:27

Paul, Saint, apostle:
- his knowledge of the people he taught, I:23
- proclaiming Jesus Christ, III:10
- why we love him, VIII:8, 9, 13
- a just mind, VIII:9
- mission given to, by Christ, XIII:19

Pentecost:
- the Holy Spirit alone, I:7, 8
- a violent wind; tongues as of fire, II:10, 11
- speaking in languages, IV:29
- given from heaven, XV:46

perfection: pressing on intently for, IX:1

persons:
- distinction of, in one God, I:7
- inseparable; work inseparably, I:7-8, 12, 15
- God and human bodies, I:13
- abide with those who love, and keep commandments, I:18
- each suffices by himself, I:18
- scripture shows one is from, not less, than other, II:3
- Holy Spirit, the Father also, glorifies Son, II:6
- presence everywhere (O.T. texts), II:7
- controversy re immortality, II:15
- invisible and unchangeable substance, II:16

voices heard by Adam, II:18
- the name “Lord,” II:19
- burning bush; angel of the Lord, II:23
- Mount Sinai: which person is not clear, II:26
- seeing, with the physical eye, II:27
- having been sent does not affect equality, III:3; IV:32
- acting through angels, III:26
- sender and sent are one, IV:29
- the Spirit of God is one, IV:29
- separate names; cannot be said as one, IV:30
- relationship-wise differences, V:6, 9, 11
- begetter, begotten and unbegotten (terms), V:7, 8
- trinitarian logic, V:8
- adding up in all three, to a singular, V:9
- “I and the Father are one,” V:10
- called both holy and spirit, V:12
- relationship-wise predication, V:14
- “in the beginning was the Word,” VI:3
- always in each other; never alone, VI:9
- supreme equality of, VI:10
- bounded or determined by each other, VI:11
- each in all, and all are one, VI:11
- Father, image, gift, VI:11
- called “Father,” “Son” with reference to each other, VII:2
- one being, one God, VII:6
The Trinity

terminology of Greeks and Latins, VII:7
genus/species names, VII:7-8
inadequacy of human terminology, VII:9
why we say “three persons,” VII:11
no one excels in greatness, VIII:2
partaking in the redemption, XIII:15
on being “greater,” (book VIII), XV:5
memory, understanding, will, XV:12
wisdom, understanding, memory, XV:12
each sees all things together, XV:23
all together: one charity, XV:28
wisdom of God, XV:29
intervals of time in processions of, XV:45
distinguishing generation from procession, XV:48
see also equality; missions; predication; processions; Trinity
Peter, apostle: boldly preaching Christ, II:30
Philip, apostle: “whoever has seen me”..., IV:26
philosophers:
  ridiculing Christ, IV:20-21
historians and the future, IV:21
not to be consulted re the future, IV:23
calling themselves wise..., IV:23
on the happy life, XIII:8, 10
disbelief; without the mediator, XIII:24
the term, since Pythagoras, XIV:2
without faith, insufficient for happiness, XIV:26
piety, XIV:1
pillars of cloud and fire, III:21
plagues of Egypt, III:12
Plato: on the soul, XII:24
pledge (the word), V:13
power:
  taking pleasure in, VIII:11
  devil imitated: devoted to power, not justice, XIII:17
  limited in this life, XIII:17
  desire power over your faults, XIII:17
a triad without being triple (book VII), XV:5
praise:
  flattery, II:1
  wanted by all people, XIII:6
prayer to the trinity, XV:51
preaching:
  both good men and bad men can preach, III:14
predication:
  affirmations and denials, V:8
  substantive and relative, V:8, 11
  of each person by himself, VII:1
  of relationship, VII:2
presumption:
  holders of false presumptions, II:1
pride:
  devil: death, IV:13
  value the devil more than Christ, IV:18
  ashamed of the cross, IV:20
  greatness of this vice, IV:20
  obstacle to cleaving to God, XIII:22
priest: sacrifice for sin, IV:19
private property: greedy for more, XII:14
processions:
  love is God, XV:31
  intervals of time in, XV:45
  timeless, XV:47
  with no change in nature, XV:47
prophets:
  sometimes represent God’s person, III:19
  expression “says the Lord” used by, III:25
  foretelling the future, IV:22
  true piety of, IV:23
  O.T.: can include the psalms, XV:30
psalms: included with the prophets, XV:30
punishment: cause: deserts of the crime, IV:15
pure in heart:
  blessed: they shall see God, VIII:6
purification:
  of mind, to see God, I:3
  by one’s own power, IV:20
  adaptation to eternal things by temporal means, IV:24
Pythagoras, XIV:2

Volume I/5
Volume I/5

Q

quality: positive knowledge of, IX:16

R

reader(s): covenant with, I:5
reason:
role in temporal affairs, XII:13
knowledge of changeable things, XII:17
recollection:
conscious attention to memory, XI:6
will acting on attention, XI:8
memory, inner sight, and will, XI:12
redemption:
Christ died for us, still sinners, IV:2
blood of the just man, IV:4
the many saved by the One, IV:11
chains of many sins broken by Christ’s death, IV:17
God chose to suffer death, XIII:13
reconciliation through death of the Son, XIII:14, 21
the Father did not spare the Son, XIII:15
primacy of justice over power, XIII:17, 18
devil overcome (and man freed from) by Christ’s death, XIII:19
incarnation: way chosen by God, XIII:23
relationship:
each being is something besides the relationship, VII:2
being and subsisting, VII:9
use of the plural, VII:12; VIII:1
remembering:
Sabellius, VII:9
sacrament: Word become flesh, IV:27
sacrifice:
evil spirits and true sacrifice, IV:19
four elements in each, IV:19
offered for purification of human faults, IV:19
one true mediator, IV:19

The Trinity
use of words taken from corporeal things, I:2
heretics’ use of, I:6
language: common human usage, I:23
see also theophanies
security: loss of sense of, X:7
seed: forms of life, III:13
seeing:
most excellent of the senses, XI:1
a trinity in the act of, XI:2
thing seen, the sight, conscious intention, XI:2
will to see has sight as its end, XI:10
see also sight
seeking God:
error: forsaking God’s inward presence, VIII:11
faith seeks, understanding finds, XV:2
self:
not knowing, not thinking, of self, X:7
loving, hating, XIV:18
self-enjoyment: a private good, XII:17
selfsame (the term), III:8
sending, see missions
senses/sensation:
images absorbed by, IX:10, 11
mind looks for things looked for by senses, X:10
sensation divided in five parts, XI:1
analogies of the trinity in, XI:1-17
conscious soul and body senses, XI:2
necessary for memory of anything bodily, XI:14
material things, XII:17
power, in men and in animals, XII:20
knowledge through, XIII:4
the outer man (book XI), XV:5
perceptions through, XV:21
serpent:
stands for death, III:20
sensation represented by serpent, not woman, XII:20
sex: when not required for procreation, XIII:23
sex differences:
head-covering: man, woman, XII:12
man represents mind; woman, sensation, XII:20
sight:
visible form impressed on eyes, XI:2
visible object; seeing subject, XI:3
seeing double flame of candle, XI:4
role of will in sight, XI:5
form of body from which it is produced, XI:9
partly spiritual, XI:9
resting place of the will, XI:10
will, sensation, and attention, XI:14-15
sensation of, from external body, XI:16
remembering sensed thing falsely, XI:17
number, XI:18
brutish, without mind, XIV:19
sign: hearing an unknown sign, X:2
Simeon, IV:29
sin:
few care about not sinning, IV:15
our death; Christ’s death, IV:15
road to death, IV:15
sacrifice for sin, IV:19
weight of love of temporal things, IV:24
words from the heart, IX:14
list of objectives, XII:14
seeks to obtain things sensed through body, XII:15
in thought or in deed, XII:17-18
commission; remission, XIII:16
enemies of justice, XIII:21
singing: harmony, IV:4
Son of God:
distinct person, I:7
life everlasting, I:10
as servant: the Father’s inferior, I:14
equality: the form of God, I:14-21
“emptied himself; form of a servant,” I:14, 18, 20, 21, 22, 31; II:20
the “Father is greater than I,” I:15, 18
the “Son himself shall be made subject…,” I:15, 20
Holy Spirit will teach you all truth, I:18
sufficing us, by himself, I:18
differing in substance, I:20
Jesus, in form of God, I:22
the Spirit of the Lord is upon me, I:22
form of God; form of a servant, I:22, 24
glorifies his saints, I:24
whom he justified, them he also
glorified, I:24
as judge on the last day, I:26
“I speak just the Father told me,” I:26
begotten to unchangeable life, I:26
life in himself, I:26
the word the Son has spoken judges,
I:26
“have not spoken as from myself,”
I:26
texts: the Father has “given” to the
Son, I:29
all judgment given to, I:29, 30
life in himself, I:30
the getting of being, II:2
God from God, II:2
lesser as to changeable human
substance, II:3
birth in eternity (from the Father), II:3
doing only what he saw the Father
doing, II:3, 5
the form-of-God rule: equal to, yet
from, the Father, II:4
in form of servant: can do nothing of
himself, II:5
He was in the world (Jn I:10-11), II:7
mission: made of a woman, II:8
called a rock, II:11
God and man, II:11
lamb of God, II:11
held to be mortal before incarnation,
II:15
said to be visible before incarnation,
II:15
as having appeared to Abraham, II:20
back visible; face invisible, II:31
visible, in form of servant, II:31
appearance to Daniel in physical form,
II:33 sent to the world (where he
already was), III:3
purpose: by faith to lead us to his
truth, IV:24
purpose of his mission, IV:25
mission in this world, IV:30
“begotten” means the same as “son,”
V:8
coeternal with the Father, VI:1, 3
“God from God, light from light,”
VI:3
only the Son is Christ, VI:10
as Word, as Wisdom, VII:3
mercy: became man for us, XIII:12
Word made flesh, XIII:24
mission: focus of books II-IV, XV:5
called the Word, not thought, of God,
XV:25
only person called Word of God,
XV:29
“Son of his charity,” XV:37
begotten by will of God, XV:38
see also Jesus Christ; Wisdom; Word
of God
Son of man:
will judge by his authority as Son of
God, I:28, 30
power to do judgment, II:3
assumed by Word of God, II:11
soothsayers, IV:22, 23
sorrow: longing for God, IV:1
soul:

differing in substance, I:20
spiritual substance; invisible, II:14, 16
divine will uses the just and the bad
for his purposes, III:8
sharing in changeless wisdom, III:8
body’s life; changeable, IV:3
ungodliness as death of, IV:5
godless; returned to life, IV:5
death: why have you forsaken me,
IV:6
lives more when it is wise, V:5
spirit received so as to be man, V:15
time of creation of, V:17
nature not simple but multiple, VI:8
simple; no mass spread, VI:8
whole in any part of body, VI:8
becoming wise, VII:2
expression: a good soul, VIII:4
turning away from highest good,
VIII:5
some parts we share even with
animals, X:7
conceived of as fifth elementary
substance, X:9
pursuing likeness to God, XI:8
the inner man, where reason begins,
XII:13
goal: higher things, not possessed
privately, XII:15
image of God, XIV:6

The Trinity
The Trinity

life immortal, XIV:6
rational and intellectual, XIV:6
of infants, XIV:7
reasoning about temporal things,
XIV:10
called spirit, XIV:22
eternal, XIV:26
image of God, XV:1
mind belongs to, XV:11
Augustine’s soliloquy to, XV:50
see also body and soul; immortality; mind; spirit

speech: vocal sound as sign, XV:19, 20
spirit:
life; faith, IV:5
death: forsaken by God, IV:16
of more value than body, IV:16
by cleaving, made one with God’s Spirit, VI:4
virtues, VI:6
better, by cleaving to creator, VI:9
human: called true/great, VIII:3
each mind is spirit, XIV:22
the term, used in many ways, XIV:22
see also soul

spirits:
angel-messengers, III:9
airy bodies (demonic), IV:14
difficult concept: without bodies,
VIII:3

spiritual life:
cannot see God’s face and live, II:28
dying to fleshly attachments, II:28
renewal; growth, IV:5
put falsehood aside, IV:6
renewal; repentance, IV:6
progress in time; not in this world,
IV:28

the Word is sent to souls knowing him,
IV:28
Word perceived according to one’s progress toward God, IV:28
when the lesser cleaves to the greater, VI:9
imitation (paradoxes), VII:5
mind intent on invisible things, XII:21
failing to live… in him, XIV:16
one spirit: cleaving to the Lord, XIV:20
see also renewal

Stephen, the martyr, III:24, 26
study: love as motivation for, X:2
substance:
argument: Father & Son differ in substance, V:4
hypostasis (Greek term), V:10
in predication, all are called together, VI:3
unity of Father and Son, VI:4
both simple and multiple, VI:8
Father and Son: each is one substance,
VII:2
relationships, VII:2
terminology of Greeks and Latins,
VII:7
predication as relationship, VII:9
changeable things, VII:10
subsisting, VII:10
mind, love, knowledge (in one being), IX:8
memory, understanding, and will, X:18
Father and Son: focus of book V, XV:5
qualitative predications, XV:8
suicide, IV:16
summary of books I-XIV, XV:4-5
symbols: Old Testament phenomena, II:11

T

love of; conception of a word, IX:14
not satisfying, even when gotten,
IX:14
dangerous advances into, XII:10
reason’s role in, XII:13
reasonable use of, XII:21
rational cognizance of, XII:25
needed: knowledge of human affairs,
XIV:10

Volume I/5
no need to tell God our needs, XV:22
temptation: able to endure, XIII:20
ten commandments: Mount Sinai, II:25-26
theophanies (Old Testament), II:1-35
fire in the bush; speaking by the
Father, II:12
ascertaining which person(s) appeared,
II:13
creatures formed for; angels, II:13
Genesis: God walks/talks with Adam,
II:17, 18
Abraham: come away from your coun-
try…, II:19
the name “Lord,” II:19
three men at the oak of Mambre,
II:19-21
burning bush; angel of the Lord, II:23;
III:23
from the book of Exodus, II:23-27, 32
Exodus: pillar of cloud/fire, II:24
which person is not clear, II:24, 26
creature control; visible, perceptible,
II:25
Mount Sinai; the ten commandments,
II:25-26
Mount Sinai: which person is not
clear, II:26
creation serving God’s purposes, II:27
Moses demands: show me your
majesty, II:27
the Lord spoke to Moses face to face,
II:27
“you shall see my back,” II:28
to Moses: you cannot see my face and
live, II:28
soul ravished with desire for, II:28
God manifested in symbolic manner,
II:32
Daniel of the Ancient of Days, II:33
seeing God (persons) with bodily eyes,
II:34
senses of mortal man, II:35
identifying the one who appeared,
III:3
persons in bodily manifestations, III:3
achieved through created objects,
III:22
angels: testimony of New Testament,
III:22
angels as secondary agents of, III:22-27
Son of God, called “angel,” III:23
the Lord (i.e. angel) said to Moses,
III:23
Stephen: angel appeared to Moses,
III:24
the Lord spoke through angels, III:26
manifestations (O.T./N.T.) differ,
III:26
pre-incarnation, work of angels, III:26
 likenesses of Christ, IV:11
seen by the fathers before he was sent,
IV:26
produced by trinity together, IV:30
produced before the incarnation, IV:31

**Theosebeia (the word), XIV:1**

thought:
memory, inner sight, will, XI:6, 12
as sights seen in, XI:13
brought out from things stored in
memory, XI:13
sense experience basic to, XI:14
sight of, formed from internal
memory, XI:16
sinful pleasures, XII:18
formed on image retained in memory,
XIV:5
understanding belongs to, XIV:9
inner-words, XIV:10
word formed in act of thought, XIV:13
as sight of consciousness, XV:16
“they said to themselves… ”, XV:17
awareness, XV:17
utterances of the heart, XV:18
our true word, XV:25

**see also** form; knowledge
time:
Jesus: future time as though it were
past, I:23
the day and the hour, I:23
the Son, begotten before creation, I:24
timelessly contained in eternal
Wisdom, II:9
the sixth age, IV:7
tripartite division of, IV:7
cycles of the year, IV:8
did not begin in time, V:17
God does not see in, XII:10
transformations: by angels, III:5

**treasures:** possessions, and the mind,
XIV:19
The Trinity

Trinities (analogues of the divine trinity):
- Memory, understanding, will, IV:30, X:17-19, XIV:8, 10
- The lover, being loved, love, VIII:14, IX:2
- The mind, its love and knowledge, IX:4, 6, 7, 8, 15, 18
- Analogy: three rings from the same gold, IX:7
- Image, likeness, equality, IX:16
- Disposition, learning, practice, X:17
- Analogies from the outer man (senses), XI:1-17
- Thing seen, the sight, conscious intention, XI:2
- Memory, inner sight, and will, XI:6, 11-12, XIV:12, 13
- Senses, memory, attention, XI:14
- Looking for, in the mind, XII:4
- Family: male, female, offspring, XII:5, 8, 9
- Memory, thought, will, XII:25, XIII:26, XIV:8
- Memory, observation, love, XIV:4
- None deservedly called image of God, XIV:4
- Memory, recollection: will, XIV:5
- Image, attention, will, XIV:11
- The look, awareness, will, XIV:11
- Mind: remembering, understanding, loving itself, XIV:11, 13, 14
- Memory, sight, love, XIV:11, XV:39
- Virtues: retaining, looking, loving, XIV:12
- Memory, understanding, love, XIV:13, XIV:42, 43
- Lover, what is loved, and love, XV:10
- Wisdom, knowledge, and love, XV:10
- Respective sizes, XV:43

Trinity:
- Goal: give people reasons for this teaching, I:4
- Inseparable substance, I:7
- "All things were made through him," I:12
- Awareness of, when persons are referred to singly, I:19
- Indivisible operation of one substance, I:25
- Work of Father and Son is indivisible, II:3
- Voices heard by Adam, II:18
- Thoughts inadequate to object, V:1
- Things-said-about are in singular, not plural, V:9, 11
- "The Lord your God is one Lord," V:12
- Relationships within, V:15
- Fitting traces appear in creation, VI:11
- Whoever understands, even in part, thank God, VI:11
- The question: Three What? VII:7
- "Three persons," why not "three Gods?", VII:8
- Belief in, VII:12
- Comparison of things known to, VIII:8
- Seen in charity, VIII:12
- Remain firm in faith while searching for, IX:1
- Seeking to understand, IX:1
- Man made in image of, IX:17, XII:6-8, XIV:25
- Believe rather than see (unlike trinities), XV:10
- Quite different from image(s) of, XV:42
- Three persons, one God, XV:43
- Seeing, face to face, XV:44
- Believe scriptures, rather than demand proof, XV:49
- See also Father; Holy Spirit; persons; Son of God; trinities

Tropes (figures of speech), XV:15

Trust:
- No trust in our weakened selves, IV:2

Truth:
- Praise/condemnation of the author, I:6
- Holy Spirit will teach you all truth, I:18
- Censure not feared by lover of, I:1
- Wise man submits to eternal truth, III:8
- Divine: unchangeable, IV:1, IX:9
- Abides: immortal, imperishable, unchanging, IV:24
- Eternal life, IV:24
- Nothing is greater, unless more truly, VIII:2
- God is truth: do not ask what truth is, VIII:3
- Searching re what is to be understood, IX:1
- Form; judgment of, IX:10, 11
- Wisdom and, XIII:24

Volume I/5
light in the heart of man, XIV:21
knowing something as true, XV:17

understanding:
anger: people told they are unfit for, I:3
serious study, I:5
difficulties presented by scriptures, II:1
faint glimpse of truth re trinity, VII:9
firm faith, even if unclear, VIII:1
search truth about what is to be understood, IX:1
image of divine trinity in the mind, X:17-19
belongs to thought, XIV:9
as referring to things present, XIV:14
finding God, XV:2
likenesses useful for, XV:16
memory and love in, XV:41

Virgil, XIV:14, 18
virgin birth: working of Father and Son, II:9

virtues:

weakness: knowledge of one’s own, IV:1
widow: the “true” widow (Paul), XII:11
will:
perfecting the soul in good, VIII:5
no voluntary act without previously uttered word, IX:12
calling on, to direct mind, X:11
resting, delighted, in things for their own sakes, X:13
self-awareness of willing, X:13
image of divine trinity in the mind, X:17-19
desire directed to sensible things, XI:7
role in recalling, XI:7, 8
fixed on either inner or outer man, XI:8

role in sight and body-seen, XI:9, 10
its resting place, XI:10
memory, inner sight, and will, XI:11-12
memory, sensation, and attention, XI:14-15
as parent or offspring, XI:18
image in memory, joined to thought, XIV:5
name “will” best fits the Holy Spirit, XV:38
likeness to Holy Spirit, XV:41
see also trinities

wisdom (both divine and human):
the Son speaks with voice of, I:10
divine; unchangeable, II:14

see also trinities
The Trinity

seeing (Christ) with the physical eye, II:25
achieves what she wills, III:6
soul sharing in the selfsame, III:8
wise man: sharing in eternal truth, III:8
interaction of body and soul, III:15
soul is wisdomless when God leaves, IV:5
angels, IV:27
brightness of eternal light, IV:27
outflow of glory of God, IV:27
lost by the unwise, V:5
equal to the Father, VI:7
Christ: power of God, wisdom of God (text), VII:1-2, 4
called wise with reference to itself, VII:2
Father and Son: one Wisdom, VII:3, 4
as begotten or made (in scripture, VII:4
enlightening us, VII:4
the Father utters, to be his Word, VII:4
follow the Son by living wisely, VII:5
the Holy Spirit as, VII:6
feminine gender, XII:5
holding, dear in charity, XII:16
unchangeable, spiritual things, XII:17, 25
contemplation, XII:22
distinguished from knowledge, XII:23; XIII:2, 24
truth and, XIII:24
as worship of God, XIV:1
defined, by philosophy, XIV:3
knowledge and, XIV:11
worship: becoming wise, XIV:15
a triad without being triple (book VII), XV:5
focus of books XII & XIV, XV:5
divine, XV:7
comprehending God’s wisdom, XV:13
we see now through a mirror…, XV:14
see also trinities
wish: unknown: the wishes of others, XIII:6, 7
witchcraft:
   miracles, III:12
   power from above, III:12 wizards:
   and rebel angels, III:13 as creators, III:18
   their serpents stand for the dead, III:20
women:
   touch Christ only after he has ascended, IV:6
   image of the trinity, XII:9-10
   head-covering: man, woman, XII:12
   sensation represented by serpent, not woman, XII:20
Word of God:
   same substance as the Father, I:9
   after judgment day, I:15
   begotten by the Father, I:26
   the Father’s doctrine is his Word, I:27
   without a beginning in time, II:9
   in flesh; being flesh, II:11
   son of man assumed by, II:11
   materialistic ideas re, II:14
   participation in, IV:4
   contemplation in eternity, IV:26
   “and the Word was with God,” VI:3
   Christ: power of God, wisdom of God (text), VII:1
   Father and Son are not together one Word, VII:3
   word of man as likeness of, XV:20
   likeness in works of man, XV:20
   spoken by the prophets, XV:20
   absolutely same as Father is, XV:23
   begotten: the Father uttering himself, XV:23
   truth cannot be false/lie, XV:23, 24
   co-eternal with God himself, XV:25
   distinctively called wisdom of God, XV:25
   form of God, XV:25
   counsel or will of the Father, XV:38
word(s):
   temporal and passing, VII:4
   no voluntary act without previously uttered word, IX:12
   conceived by wanting, born by getting, IX:14
   definition [Augustine’s usage], IX:15
   love with knowledge, IX:15
   rightly disliking things, IX:15
   study of unknown words, X:2
   meanings, sounds, XIII:4
   without thought: no words, XIV:10
   formed in act of thought, XIV:13

Volume I/5
The Trinity

begotten from knowledge, XV:19, 20
sign, XV:19, 20
as likeness of the Word of God, XV:20
knowledge; awareness; truth, XV:20
ture word: beginning of a good work, XV:20
true word begotten from
consciousness, XV:22
human: dissimilar to Word of God,
XV:22
human: false when mistaken, XV:24
human: somewhat like the Word of
God, XV:24
birth; innermost mind, XV:40
work:
works of man: first uttered in the
heart, XV:20
world:
cannot know God by [human]
wisdom, IV:28
see also creation; temporal goods
worship:
wisdom as, XIV:1
becoming wise, XIV:15
writing:
reaction on first-time hearing about,
X:1

Z

Zachary, IV:29
Books 1-10 contain Augustine's critique of the Roman religious, political, and intellectual tradition explaining that Rome's traditional gods were neither able to provide happiness in this life nor in the life to come.

Volume I/6    Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-455-9, 6 x 9 in., 348 pp., 2012
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-454-2, 6 x 9 in., 348 pp., 2012

Books 11-22 offer Augustine's Christian view of history, including the Christian view of human destiny. The Index for Books 1-22 is included.

Volume I/7    Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-481-8, 6 x 9 in., 615 pp., 2013
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-479-5, 6 x 9 in., 615 pp., 2013

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.

ebook available

New City Press of the Focolare
www.newcitypress.com
orders@newcitypress.com
1-800-462-5980
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

*(Prepared by Michael Dolan)*

**OLD TESTAMENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genesis</th>
<th>1:1</th>
<th>XI, 4; XII, 16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>VIII, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>XI, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>XI, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>XI, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>XI, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-5</td>
<td>XI, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4.10.12.18.21.25.30</td>
<td>XI, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>XI, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>XI, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>XI, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10.12.18.21.25</td>
<td>XI, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>XI, 19; XII, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-18</td>
<td>XI, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17-18</td>
<td>XI, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>XIII, 24; XVI, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>XIX, 15; XVI, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>XIV, 22; XVI, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>XIV, 10; XIV, 21; XIV, 22; XXII, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>XI, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>XXII, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XIII, 23; XIII, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>XIII, 12; XIII, 15; XVI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>XXII, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>XIV, 13; XXII, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XIII, 15; XIII, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>XIV, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>XIV, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>XIII, 15; XIII, 23; XX, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>XV, 15; XV, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>XV, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 4:18-22 | XV, 17 |
| 4:25    | XV, 8; XV, 15; XV, 18 |
| 4:26    | XV, 18 |
| 5:1-2   | XV, 21 |
| 5:2     | XV, 17 |
| 5:4-31  | XV, 8 |
| 5:6     | XV, 15 |
| 5:7-8   | XV, 15 |
| 6:1-4   | XV, 23 |
| 6:2     | XV, 23 |
| 6:3     | XV, 23; XV, 24; XX, 21 |
| 6:4     | XV, 23 |
| 6:5-7   | XV, 24 |
| 6:9     | XVI, 12 |
| 6:16    | XVI, 26 |
| 6:19    | XV, 27 |
| 6:20    | XV, 27 |
| 7:10-11 | XV, 14 |
| 7:22    | XIII, 24 |
| 8:4-5   | XV, 14 |
| 9:21    | XVI, 2 |
| 9:25    | XVI, 1 |
| 9:26-27 | XVI, 1 |
| 10:5    | XVI, 3 |
| 10:8-12 | XVI, 3 |
| 10:9    | XVI, 4; XVI, 10 |
| 10:13   | XVI, 3 |
| 10:20   | XVI, 3 |
| 10:21   | XVI, 3 |
| 10:25   | XVI, 3; XVI, 10 |
| 10:31   | XVI, 3 |
| 10:32   | XVI, 3 |
| 11:1    | XVI, 15 |
| 11:1-9  | XVI, 4 |
| 11:5    | XVI, 5 |
| 11:6    | XVI, 5; XVI, 6 |
| 11:7    | XVI, 5 |
| 11:10-11 | XVI, 10 |
| 11:27-29 | XVI, 12 |
| 11:31   | XVI, 13 |
| 11:32   | XVI, 14; XVI, 24 |
| 12:1    | XVI, 15; XVII, 2 |
| 12:1-3  | XVI, 16 |
| 12:3    | XVII, 2 |
| 12:4    | XVI, 15; XVI, 16 |
| 12:7    | XVI, 18 |

The City of God
### The City of God

| 13:8-9 | XVI, 20 | 46:27 | XIV, 4 |
| 13:14-17 | XVI, 21 | 48:19 | XVI, 42 |
| 13:15 | XVI, 21 | 49:8-12 | XVI, 41 |
| 13:16 | XVI, 21 | 49:9 | XVI, 41 |
| 15:4 | XVI, 26 | 49:10 | XVIII, 6; XVIII, 45 |
| 15:6 | XVI, 23 | 49:11 | XVI, 41 |
| 15:7 | XVI, 24 | 49:12 | XVI, 41 |
| 15:8 | XVI, 24 | 50:22-23 | XVI, 40 |
| 15:9-21 | XVI, 24 | 50:23 | XVI, 40 |
| 15:10 | XVI, 24 | | |
| 15:13 | XVI, 24 | | |
| 15:17 | XVI, 24 | | |
| 16:3 | XVI, 34 | | |
| 16:6 | XVI, 25 | | |
| 17:1-21 | XVI, 26 | | |
| 17:5 | XVI, 28; XX, 23 | | |
| 17:5-6:16 | XVI, 28 | | |
| 17:8 | XVI, 26 | | |
| 17:14 | XVI, 27 | | |
| 17:17 | XVI, 26; XVI, 32 | | |
| 18:2-3 | XVI, 29 | | |
| 18:18 | XVI, 29 | | |
| 19:2 | XVI, 29 | | |
| 19:16-19 | XVI, 29 | | |
| 19:21 | XVI, 29 | | |
| 20:12 | XVI, 30 | | |
| 21:6 | XVI, 31 | | |
| 21:10 | XV, 2; XVII, 7 | | |
| 21:12 | XVI, 32; XVI, 34; XVI, 38 | | |
| 21:13 | XVI, 32 | | |
| 22:10-12 | XVI, 32 | | |
| 22:14 | XVI, 32 | | |
| 22:15-18 | XVI, 32 | | |
| 22:18 | X, 32; XIX, 22; XX, 23; XXII, 3 | | |
| 24:2-3 | XVI, 33 | | |
| 24:10 | XVI, 13 | | |
| 25:1 | XVI, 34 | | |
| 25:5-6 | XVI, 34 | | |
| 25:23 | XVI, 35; XVI, 42 | | |
| 25:27 | XVI, 37 | | |
| 26:1-5 | XVI, 36 | | |
| 26:4-5 | XVI, 36 | | |
| 26:24 | XVI, 36 | | |
| 27:27-29 | XVI, 37 | | |
| 27:28 | XVI, 37 | | |
| 27:33 | XVI, 37 | | |
| 28:1-4 | XVI, 38 | | |
| 28:3-4 | XVI, 38 | | |
| 28:10-19 | XVI, 38 | | |
| 46:8 | XVI, 40 | | |

### Exodus

| 3:14 | VIII, 11; XII, 2 |
| 20:12 | XVIII, 41 |
| 20:13 | I, 20 |
| 20:13-15 | XVIII, 41 |
| 20:16 | I, 20 |
| 21:24 | XXI, 11 |
| 22:20 | X, 3; X, 7; XIX, 21; XIX, 23 |
| 31:18 | XVI, 43 |
| 33:13 | X, 13 |

### Leviticus

| 26:12 | XXII, 30 |

### Deuteronomy

| 5:14 | XXII, 30 |
| 33:1 | XV, 27 |

### 1 Samuel

<p>| 2:1 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:1-2 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:1-10 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:2 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:3 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:4 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:4-5 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:5 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:6 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:7 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:8 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:9 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:9-10 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:10 | XVII, 4 |
| 2:27-28 | XVII, 5 |
| 2:27-30-31 | XVII, 5 |
| 2:27-36 | XVII, 5 |
| 2:30 | XVII, 5; XVII, 6 |
| 2:31-33 | XVII, 5 |
| 2:33-34 | XVII, 5 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture Reference</th>
<th>Volume Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40:2-3</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:4</td>
<td>VI, 1; XV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>XVIII, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:5</td>
<td>XX, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:5-8</td>
<td>XVII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:9</td>
<td>XVII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:9-10</td>
<td>XVII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:3</td>
<td>I, 29; XX, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:6</td>
<td>XIII, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:1-9</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:6-7</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9-17</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:10</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:16</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:4-5</td>
<td>XI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:8</td>
<td>XII, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:10</td>
<td>XXII, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47:3</td>
<td>XVII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:1-2</td>
<td>XI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:2</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:8</td>
<td>XI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:11</td>
<td>XV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:12-20</td>
<td>XIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:20</td>
<td>VIII, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:1</td>
<td>IX, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:3</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:3-5</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:4</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:5</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:12-13</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:14-15</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:3</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:16-17</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:8</td>
<td>XV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>XVI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:3</td>
<td>XVI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:4</td>
<td>XVI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:5</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:9</td>
<td>XIII, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:10-11</td>
<td>XVIII, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>XVIII, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:8</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:11-12</td>
<td>V, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67:1-2</td>
<td>X, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:20</td>
<td>XIV, 9; XVII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:9</td>
<td>XX, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:21</td>
<td>XVII, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:22-23</td>
<td>XVII, 19; XVIII, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>XVII, 8; XVIII, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:11</td>
<td>XX, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:13</td>
<td>XX, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:16-17</td>
<td>XX, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:18</td>
<td>XIV, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:20</td>
<td>X, 25; XV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:22-23</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:23-24</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:25</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:26</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>X, 6; X, 18; X, 25; XII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:12</td>
<td>XVII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77:9</td>
<td>XXI, 18; XXI, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77:10</td>
<td>XXI, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:47</td>
<td>I, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:2-3</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6</td>
<td>IX, 23; XV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:4</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:16</td>
<td>XIV, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:2</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:4</td>
<td>XXII, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:10</td>
<td>XVII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87:3</td>
<td>II, 21; X, 7; XI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87:5</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:3-4</td>
<td>XVII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:19-29</td>
<td>XVII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:30-33</td>
<td>XVII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:32-33</td>
<td>I, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:33-35</td>
<td>XVII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:36-37</td>
<td>XVII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:38</td>
<td>XVII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:39-45</td>
<td>XVII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:46</td>
<td>XVII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:47</td>
<td>XVII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:48</td>
<td>XVII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:49</td>
<td>XVII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:49-51</td>
<td>XVII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:50</td>
<td>XVII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:52</td>
<td>XVII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:10</td>
<td>XV, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:4</td>
<td>II, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:11</td>
<td>XIX, 4; XXII, 4; XXII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:15</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:19</td>
<td>XVIII, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:3</td>
<td>IX, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:5</td>
<td>XI, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:6</td>
<td>XVI, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1</td>
<td>VIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1-5</td>
<td>VIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:4-5</td>
<td>I, 29; IX, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:5</td>
<td>XIX, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>XX, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:25-26</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:25-27</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:27</td>
<td>XVII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:1</td>
<td>XXII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:4</td>
<td>XV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:24</td>
<td>XI, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:26</td>
<td>XI, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:8</td>
<td>XX, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:15</td>
<td>XVII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:1</td>
<td>XVII, 7; XVII, 14; XVII, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:2</td>
<td>XVII, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:4</td>
<td>XVI, 22; XVII, 17; XVIII, 35; XX, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:2</td>
<td>XIV, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:1</td>
<td>XXII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:5</td>
<td>VIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:16</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>XXII, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>V, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:15</td>
<td>I, 12; XIII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:16</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:20</td>
<td>XIV, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:81</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:119</td>
<td>XVI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:164</td>
<td>XI, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123:2</td>
<td>XX, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>XVII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:2</td>
<td>IX, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:3</td>
<td>XIV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>XIV, 14; XVII, 11; XX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:15</td>
<td>XIX, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:5</td>
<td>XIII, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:12-14</td>
<td>XIX, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:1-5</td>
<td>XI, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:2</td>
<td>XI, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:4</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>XI, 8; XI, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:8</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:11-12</td>
<td>II, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11-13</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>XIII, 20; XX, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>V, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>XVII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5-10</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>XVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6</td>
<td>XX, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>XII, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>XIV, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16-17</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13-14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>XVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>XV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>XX, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-21</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>XIV, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>XII, 26; XV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13-15</td>
<td>XII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>XXII, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>XIII, 16; XIV, 3; XIX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>XI, 30; XII, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XX, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:26</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>XIV, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>XXI, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>XII, 6; XIV, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>XIII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>XXI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>XVI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:1</td>
<td>XXI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:3</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:5</td>
<td>XXI, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:23</td>
<td>XXI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:24</td>
<td>X, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The City of God</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2-3</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:12</td>
<td>XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:11</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:19</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:14</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:26</td>
<td>XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:1-4</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:4</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:8</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:12-16</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:16</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:13-53:12</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1-5</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:5</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16</td>
<td>XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:21</td>
<td>XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:17-19</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:22</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:12-16</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:14</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:15-16</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:16</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:22-24</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:23</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:24</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:20</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:5-6</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:7</td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-33</td>
<td>XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:26-28</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:36-37</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>XXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:13</td>
<td>XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:15</td>
<td>XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:6</td>
<td>IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:23-24</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:22-24</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:57</td>
<td>XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13-14</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15-16</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17-22</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>XXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-28</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>XXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1-2</td>
<td>XXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1-3</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28-29</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12-13</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:11-12</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obadiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/6 & I/7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XVIII, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micah</td>
<td>4:1-3</td>
<td>XVIII, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:2-4</td>
<td>XVIII, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:6-8</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td>1:14-2:1</td>
<td>XVIII, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>2:2-3</td>
<td>XVIII, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XVIII, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>XVIII, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9-12</td>
<td>XVIII, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XVIII, 35; XVIII, 45; XVIII, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>XVIII, 45; XVIII, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>XX, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:9-10</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew

1:2 XV, 15
1:3 XV, 15
1:21 XVII, 18
1:23 XVIII, 46
3:2 XVIII, 48
4:9 XI, 33
4:17 XVIII, 48
4:19 XX, 30
5:8 XX, 21; XXII, 29
5:16 V, 14
5:19 XX, 9
5:20 XX, 9; XXI, 27
5:23-24 XXI, 27
5:28 XIV, 10
5:35 XVII, 4
5:45 I, 8; IV, 2
6:1 V, 14
6:2 V, 15
6:12 XIX, 27; XXI, 22; XXI, 27; XXII, 23
6:14 XXI, 27
6:14-15 XXI, 22
6:15 XXI, 27
6:19-21 I, 10
6:28-30 X, 14
7:12 XIV, 8
7:20 XVI, 2
8:22 V, 18; XX, 6; XX, 15
8:29 VIII, 23
9:13 X, 5
10:22 XIV, 9; XVII, 4; XXI, 25
10:27 XVIII, 32
10:28 I, 12; V, 18; XIII, 2; XVIII, 50
10:30 XII, 19
10:32 XIII, 7
10:33 V, 14
10:34 XX, 21
10:36 XIX, 5
10:37 XXI, 26
10:41 XXI, 27
11:13 XVII, 24
11:22 XX, 5
11:24 XX, 5
11:29 IV, 16
12:7 X, 5
12:27 XX, 5

12:41-42 XX, 5
13:37-43 XX, 5
13:39-41 XX, 9
13:41-43 XXI, 1
13:43 XXII, 19
13:52 XX, 4; XX, 9
15:24 XX, 30
16:16 VIII, 23
16:25 XIII, 7
18:7 XIX, 8
18:10 XI, 4; XI, 32; XXII, 29
18:15 XV, 6
18:18 XX, 9
18:35 XV, 6
19:4-6 XIV, 22
19:27 XVII, 4
19:28 XVII, 4; XX, 5
19:29 XX, 7
20:22 XVI, 2
21:38 XVII, 20
22:14 XVIII, 45; XVIII, 48
22:29 XXII, 17
22:30 XI, 32; XXII, 17
22:37-39 X, 3
22:39 I, 20; XXI, 27
22:40 X, 5
23:3 XX, 9
23:26 X, 25
24:12 XIV, 9; XIX, 8
24:13 XXI, 21
24:15 XVII, 5
24:21 XVI, 24
24:29 XX, 24
24:35 XX, 24
25:21 XX, 22
25:30 XX, 22
25:31-41 XX, 5
25:34 XX, 9; XX, 24; XXI, 24; XXI, 26
25:35 XVII, 18
25:40 XVII, 18
25:41 XX, 12; XXI, 10; XXI, 23; XXI, 26
25:45 XXI, 1; XXI, 27
25:46 XX, 5; XX, 16; XXI, 23; XXI, 24
26:21 XVII, 18
26:39 XVI, 2
28:19 XIII, 24
28:20 XX, 9

Volume I/6 & I/7
### Volume I/6 & I/7

#### Mark

- 1:2  
  - XV, 23
- 1:24  
  - IV, 21
- 3:27  
  - XX, 7
- 9:43-44  
  - XXI, 9
- 9:45-46  
  - XXI, 9
- 9:47-48  
  - XXI, 9

#### Luke

- 1:28  
  - XVII, 4
- 1:33  
  - XXII, 1
- 1:34  
  - XVI, 24
- 2:14  
  - XIV, 8
- 2:29-30  
  - XVII, 4; XXII, 29
- 3:6  
  - XXII, 29
- 3:8  
  - XXI, 27
- 5:10  
  - XX, 30
- 6:38  
  - XXI, 11
- 11:20  
  - XVI, 43
- 12:4  
  - I, 12
- 12:7  
  - XXII, 19
- 12:9  
  - V, 14
- 16:9  
  - XXI, 27
- 16:24  
  - XXI, 3; XXI, 10
- 20:34  
  - XV, 20
- 20:35  
  - XV, 17
- 21:18  
  - XXII, 12
- 23:24  
  - XVIII, 32
- 24:44-47  
  - X, 32
- 24:45-47  
  - XVIII, 50

#### John

- 1:1-5  
  - X, 29
- 1:3  
  - X, 24
- 1:6-9  
  - X, 2
- 1:9  
  - XI, 9
- 1:14  
  - X, 24; X, 29; XIV, 2; XVII, 4
- 1:16  
  - X, 2
- 1:47  
  - XVI, 38
- 1:51  
  - XVI, 38
- 2:19  
  - XVI, 41; XVIII, 35
- 3:5  
  - XIII, 7; XXI, 27
- 3:8  
  - XIII, 7
- 3:17  
  - XVIII, 32
- 4:24  
  - XIII, 24; XXII, 29
- 5:22  
  - XX, 30
- 5:22-23  
  - XX, 5
- 5:24  
  - XX, 5
- 5:25  
  - XX, 6; XX, 9

- 5:25-26  
  - XX, 6
- 5:27  
  - XX, 6
- 5:28  
  - XX, 23
- 5:28-29  
  - XX, 6
- 5:29  
  - XX, 6; XX, 23; XXI, 1
- 5:44  
  - V, 14
- 5:46  
  - XX, 28
- 6:50-51  
  - XXI, 19; XXI, 25
- 6:51  
  - XVII, 5
- 6:56  
  - XXI, 25
- 6:60  
  - X, 24
- 6:70  
  - XVII, 18
- 7:39  
  - XX, 30
- 8:17  
  - XXII, 2
- 8:34  
  - XIX, 15
- 8:36  
  - XIV, 11
- 8:44  
  - XXI, 3; XIX, 14
- 10:18  
  - XVI, 41; XVII, 11
- 11:15  
  - XIV, 9
- 12:43  
  - V, 14
- 13:18  
  - XVII, 18
- 14:6  
  - X, 32; XIV, 4
- 16:13  
  - X, 31
- 19:30  
  - XVI, 41
- 20:13  
  - XIV, 2
- 20:22  
  - XIII, 24
- 21:15  
  - XIV, 7
- 21:16  
  - XIV, 7
- 21:17  
  - XIV, 7

#### Acts of the Apostles

- 1:6  
  - XVIII, 53
- 1:7  
  - XVIII, 53; XXII, 30
- 1:7-8  
  - XVIII, 50
- 2:17-18  
  - XVIII, 30
- 7:2  
  - XVI, 16
- 7:2-3  
  - XVI, 15
- 7:4  
  - XVI, 15
- 7:22  
  - XV, 27; XVIII, 37
- 9:4  
  - XVII, 9
- 17:28  
  - VIII, 10
- 17:30-31  
  - XVIII, 54

#### Romans

- 1:3  
  - XVII, 8; XVIII, 28
- 1:17  
  - IV, 20; XIX, 4; XX, 26
- 1:19-20  
  - VIII, 10
- 1:21  
  - X, 1
- 1:21-23  
  - VIII, 10; VIII, 23
- 1:21-23.25  
  - XIV, 28
- 1:25  
  - IV, 29
The City of God

1:26 XIV, 23
2:4-6 I, 8
2:15-16 XX, 26
3:7 XIV, 4
3:20 XIV, 2; XIV, 4
3:20-22 XX, 4
3:23 XX, 21
4:3 XVI, 23
4:15 XVI, 27
5:5 XVII, 20
5:12 XIV, 11
5:14 XIV, 11
6:4 XX, 10
6:9 XII, 14; XVII, 11
6:13 XV, 7
6:22 XIX, 11
7:12-13 XIII, 5
7:17 XV, 7
7:25 X, 29
8:3 X, 22
8:6 XX, 21
8:10 XX, 15
8:10-11 XIII, 23
8:13 XXI, 9
8:14 XXI, 15
8:15 XIV, 9
8:18 V, 18
8:24 XIII, 23
8:24-25 X, 25; XV, 18; XIX, 4
8:28 I, 10; XVIII, 51
8:28-29 XIII, 23
8:29 XVIII, 51; XXI, 24; XXII, 12
8:32 XVI, 32; XVII, 4; XXII, 24
8:37 XXII, 23
9:5 XV, 20
9:7 XVI, 34
9:8 XVI, 32; XVI, 34
9:14 XX, 1
9:21 XV, 1
9:22 XV, 2
9:23 XV, 2
9:27 XVIII, 33
9:28 XVII, 5
10:3 XVII, 4
10:17 XVII, 16
11:5 XVII, 5
11:11 XVIII, 46
11:20 XIV, 7
11:30-31 XXI, 24
11:32 XXI, 18; XXI, 24
11:33 I, 28; XX, 1
12:1 X, 6
12:2 X, 6; XXII, 16
12:3 XII, 16
12:3-6 X, 6
12:12 XVIII, 32; XVIII, 51
13:10 XXI, 25
14:4 XX, 10
14:9 XX, 9

1 Corinthians

1:19 X, 28
1:20-25 X, 28
1:25 XVI, 2
1:27 XVII, 20
1:30-31 XXI, 24
1:31 XVIII, 32
2:11 I, 26; XIII, 24
2:11-14 XIV, 4
3:1 XIV, 4; XXII, 21
3:3 XIV, 4
3:4 XIV, 4
3:7 XII, 26; XXII, 24
3:9 XVI, 5
3:11-15 XXI, 21
3:13-15 XXI, 26
3:15 XXI, 26
3:17 XVII, 8
3:20 XIX, 4
4:5 XXII, 29
4:7 XVII, 4
5:12 XX, 9
6:3 XX, 5
7:4 XVI, 25
7:25 XXI, 27
7:31 XX, 24
7:31-32 XX, 14
7:32 XXI, 26
7:33 XXI, 26
8:1 IX, 20
8:5-6 IX, 23
10:4 XIII, 21; XVIII, 48
10:12 XX, 10
10:17 XVII, 5; XXI, 20; XXI, 25; XXII, 18
10:19-20 VIII, 24
11:19 XVI, 2
12:27 XXII, 18
13:9 XIX, 18; XXII, 29
13:9-10 XXII, 29

Volume I/6 & I/7
The City of God

1 Thessalonians
4:4-5 XIV, 16
4:13-17 XX, 20
4:17 XX, 20; XX, 24
5:5 XI, 7; XI, 33
5:14-15 XV, 6

2 Thessalonians
2:1-12 XX, 19
2:6 XX, 19
2:7 XX, 19
2:7-8 XX, 19
2:8 XVIII, 53; XX, 19
2:9-10 XX, 19
2:10 XX, 19
2:11 XX, 19
2:12 XX, 19

1 Timothy
1:5 XIV, 26; XVII, 4
1:17 XV, 1
2:2 XIX, 26
2:5 IX, 17; XI, 2; XIII, 23;
   XV, 26; XVII, 5; XVII, 7;
   XVIII, 47
2:7 XIV, 2
2:14 XIV, 11
3:1 XIX, 19
5:8 XIX, 14
5:20 XV, 6
6:6-10 I, 10
6:17-19 I, 10

2 Timothy
2:9 XVIII, 4
2:19 XVIII, 51; XX, 7; XX, 8;
   XXI, 15
2:25-26 XXI, 24
3:2 XIV, 7
3:7 II, 1
3:12 XVIII, 51

Titus
1:2-3 XII, 17

Hebrews
5:6 XVIII, 35
9:15 XVII, 6
11:11 XVI, 28

11:17-19 XVI, 32
11:19 XVI, 32
13:2 XVI, 29
13:16 X, 5

James
1:2 XIV, 9
1:17 XI, 21
2:13 XXI, 22; XXI, 27
4:6 I; XI, 33; XVII, 4; XIX, 27

1 Peter
2:5 XVIII, 45; XVIII, 48
2:9 XVII, 5; XX, 10
5:5 XI, 33

2 Peter
2:4 XV, 23
2:10 XIV, 13
2:19 IV, 3; XIX, 15
3:3-13 XX, 18
3:7 XX, 18
3:8 XX, 7
3:10 XX, 24
3:11 XX, 24

1 John
1:8 XIV, 9; XX, 17; XX, 25
2:15 XIV, 7
2:17 XX, 24
2:18-19 XX, 19
2:19 XX, 8
3:2 XXII, 29
3:8 XI, 13
3:9 XX, 22
3:12 XV, 7
4:7 XVII, 4
4:18 XIV, 9; XXI, 24

Revelation
3:16 XIII, 24
4:6 XX, 16
14:13 XX, 9
19:16 IV, 15
20:1 XX, 7
20:1-6 XX, 7
20:2 XX, 7
20:3 XX, 7; XX, 8
20:4 XX, 9; XX, 13

Volume I/6 & I/7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Referenced Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>XX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5-6</td>
<td>XX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:6</td>
<td>XX, 9; XX, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:6-7</td>
<td>XX, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:7-8</td>
<td>XX, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>XX, 11; XX, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9-10</td>
<td>XX, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:10</td>
<td>XX, 14; XXI, 10; XXI, 23; XXI, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:11</td>
<td>XX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>XX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13</td>
<td>XX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14</td>
<td>XX, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15</td>
<td>XX, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:1</td>
<td>XX, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2-5</td>
<td>XX, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:4</td>
<td>XX, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers. (Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes.)

Aaron, X:8; XVII:5 and n37
Abel, XV:21 and n107; XVIII:51
See also Cain
Cain and, as earthly city and heavenly city, XV:1, 5, 7, 15, 17–18
Abelard, Peter, XXII:30, n160
Abimelech, XVI:30, 36
aborted fetuses, XXI:12–13
Abraham, I:21, 26; X:8, 32; XVI:12–14
See also Isaac; Keturah; Lot; Sarah birth of, XVIII:2 circumcision of, XV:16 and n76; XVI:23, 26
city of God, and Shem’s line of descent, XVI:10
departure from Haran, XVI:15
God’s first promise to, XVI:16–17, 24
God’s second promise to, XVI:18–20
God’s third promise to, XVI:21
history, from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
Mamre, vision at, XVI:22–24, 29–30
name as changed to, XVI:28
period from Noah to, XVI:1
sacrifice of, XVI:24
and Shem’s line of descent, XVI:10
and Sodom’s victory, XVI:22
sons of, XVI:25–28, 31–33
as symbolizing God the Father, XVI:32 and n125
as turning point, XVI:12–14
Academy, XII:14(13); XIX:1–2
See also Plato
New Academy, XIX:1–3, 18
Old Academy, XIX:1, 3–4
philosophers of, VIII:12
actors, II:4, 6, 25–27, 29; III:19; IV:26, 28; V:12; VI:5–7, 10
the Greeks and Romans on, II:9–14
Adam:
See also Eve; fall; man; original sin; paradise

all die in Adam, XIII:23
blindness of, XIV:17 and n100
disobedience of Adam and Eve, XIII:15; XIV:1, 11–15; XXI:12
and Eve, as children, XV:12 and n51
and Eve, Christ and the Church as prophesied by, XXII:17 and n90
as married to Eve, XIV:10 and n72
and “monstrous races,” XVI:8–9
shame of Adam and Eve, XIV:17
adultery:
as common among the gods, III:3
Paris’s, III:3–5
Troy and, III:6
aediles, II:27 and n93
Aeneas; the Aeneid (Virgil), I:2–3; III:2–3, 5, 13–14; V:12; VIII:5; X:21; XV:19
deified, XVIII:21
the Elysian Fields, XXI:27
household gods, saving, III:11; VI:2; X:16
Italy, arrival in, XVIII:19
mind of, IX:4
as pious, I:3 and n13; III:14
and souls returning to bodies, X:30; XIV:5; XXII:26
Aesculapius, III:12 and n38, 17; IV:21–22, 27–28; VIII:5 and n23, 26; X:16
aether/Aether, IV:10–11; VII:6 and n23; VII:16, 23; VIII:16, 18, 21; IX:7, 13, 16, 18; X:9, 11, 27
action, XV:22 and n114
See also love
Africa, V:18; XVI:6 and n42; XVI:17 and n77
See also specific topics, e.g., Punic Wars

Volume I/6 & I/7
Africanus (Scipio). See under Scipio family
afterlife. See eternal life
Agamemnon, XVIII:18 and n93
age:
long lives of ancients (before the flood), XV:8–14
of sexual maturity, and lines of descent, XV:15
Varro on youth and old age, XXII:15
and n81
ages:
ages of ages, XII:20(19)
biblical, XVI:43 and n185
division of, XVI:24 and n93; XVI:43; XXII:30 and n168
of the human race, X:14 and n69; X:32
agrarian laws: and civil wars, start of,
III:24
air
See also under elements: four airy bodies of demons, III:18 and n113
as province of Juno, X:21 and n100
Alaric, XXII:20 and n104
See also Rome, sack of
Alba:
the palladium, III:18 and n115
war with Rome, III:14 and n53
Alexander the Great (Alexander of
Macedon), IV:4 and n10; IV:7;
VII:5, 27; XIX:12
letter to his mother (spurious), VIII:5 and n22; VII:27; X:11(10)
and n21
allegory, XIII:21; XV:2, 7
the flood, history, and, XV:27
Alypius, XXII:8 and nn34, 36
Ambrose of Milan, V:26 and nn102–103; n110; VIII:11 and n46; X:23 and n110
Gervasius and Protasius, XV:9 and n37; XXII:8
On Virgins, I:26 and n80
Amos, XVIII:27–28
Amphion, XVIII:13 and n73
Anaxagoras, VIII:2 and n11; XVIII:37, 41
Anaximander, VIII:2 and n9; XVIII:25, 37
Anaximenes, VIII:2 and n10; VIII 5;
XVIII:37
Anchises, III:3 and nn10–11
Ancus Martius, III:15
Andromache, III:13 and n48
Anebo, letter from Porphyry to, X:11
angels, I:12; II:19, 26; V:9–19 passim;
VII:32; VIII:24–27; X:1, 7–17
passim
See also demons (evil angels)
apostate, III:5
as blessed, VII:30; IX:15
creation of, XI:9, 32–34; XII:27(26);
XXII:1
demons, distinguishing from, IX:19;
X:9
and evil will, cause of first, XII:6
the fall, angelic, XI:11–13, 28; XII:9;
XXII:1
and the gods, IX:23
as God’s messengers, X:25–26, 30, 32
God’s speech with, XVI:6
good and evil, difference between (not
nature but fault), XII:1–5
good and evil, separation of, XI:19–20
and good humans, VIII:25
good will of good angels, cause of,
XII:9
and happiness, X:2–3
holy, VIII:24–25; IX:5, 14–15, 18–23;
X:7, 29–31
Jacob, angel fighting, XVI:39 and n151
knowledge of, IX:21–22 and n56;
X:7, 29–31
life in, VIII:6
light and darkness, XI:33
and Mamre, God’s appearance at,
XVI:29 and n114
meaning of word, X:25 and n121;
XVIII:35 and n165
miracles performed through, X:8, 12,
16–18
and miseries of social life, XIX:9–10
and Neoplatonists’ “good gods,”
VIII:24 and n97; IX:23
as not creators, XII:25(24), 27(26)
Platonic theory, XII:27(26)
Porphyry on, X:26–27
and sacrifice, X:16–20
separation of holy from fallen, XI:19–20
and sex with women, III:5; XV:22–24
society of, XIX:9 and n24
souls of, VIII:24, 26
and the theurgic arts, X:26–27
Trinity, knowledge of, XI:29
two cities, formation of at level of angels, XI
two kinds of, XI:9–13
and voluntary causes, V:9
wills of, V:9–10
and worship, IX:23; X:15–17, 19–20, 24, 32
anger:
  God’s, IX:5 and n21; XV:25; XXI:24
  and lust, XIV:19
  soul, three-part division of, XIV:19
  and n107
animal body, XIII:23
animals
  See also specific animals, e.g., mules from the ark, on islands, XVI:7
domestic, madness in, III:23
Egyptian cult of, II:22 and n78
and heat, XII:5; XXI:4
human beings transformed into, XVIII:16–19
seven pairs of clean animals, XV:27
and n147
solitary and gregarious, XII:22(21);
  XIX:12
“anointed (one),” XVII:4 and nn34–35;
  XVII:10 and n71; XVIII:33 and
  n156
Antaeus, XVIII:13 and n76
anthropomorphism, XI:8; XV:25; XVII:5
  and n41–42
anthropomorphite error, XII:24(23) and
  n44
Antichrist:
  coming of (Paul’s testimony), XX:19
  Daniel on, XX:23
  last persecution by, XX:8, 13
  the ten persecutions and, XVIII:52 and
  n253; XX:19 and nn56–57
Antiochus, king of Syria, III:11 and n32;
  XVIII:45
Antiochus of Ascalon, XIX:3 and 9
antipodes, XVI:9
Antisthenes, VIII:3 and n16
antitheses, XI:18
apatheia, XIV: summary, 2, 8–9 and n69
Aphrodite. See Venus
Apis, XVIII:5–6
apocryphal books, XV:23 and n127;
  XVIII:36 and n167; XVIII:38
Apollinaris of Laodicea; Apollinarianism,
  X:27 and n129; XIV:2 and n7;
  XIV:9
Apollo, III:17; IV:11, 21; VI:7; VII:2, 16;
  X:13; XVIII:10, 12–13
authority of, II:16
  the Cumaean Sibyl, X:27 and n132
  at Cumae (weeping image), III:2, 11
  and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and n3
  oracles at Delphi, XIX:23 and n83
  Sol (sun) identified with, XIX:23 and
  n87
apostles, V:14; XVIII:49
Apuleius, Lucius, IV:2 and n6; VIII:12
  and n55; XVII:2–24; IX:16;
  X:9–10
on demons, VIII:14–18; IX:3, 6–8,
  10–13; X:27
On the God of Socrates, VIII:14
The Golden Ass, XVIII:18 and n90
on human race as immortal, XII:10
on the passions, IX:3–4
Porphyry compared to, X:27
Aquila, XV:23 and n125; XVIII:43 and
  n199
Aratus of Soli, XVI:23 and n91
Arbogast, V:26 and nn104, 107
Arcadius, III:22 and n129
Archelaus, VIII:2 and n13
Aeopagus, XVIII:10
Argives, the, XVIII:5–6, 15
Arians, XVIII:52 and n255
Arion of Methymna, I:14 and n52
Aristippus of Cyrene, VIII:3 and n16;
  IX:4 and n13
Aristonicus (Eumenes III), III:11 and n31
Aristotle, XI:4 and n1; XII:1 and n1;
  XVI:21 and n84; XVIII:4 and
  n196; XXII:11
in Christian literature, VIII:12 and n52
the four causes, V:9 and n20
Peripatetics, IX:4 and n9; XIX:4 and
  n15
work falsely attributed to, IV:2 and n6
ark, Noah’s, XV:24–27
animals from, on islands, XVI:7
Christ and Church as prophesied by,
  XV:25 and n39
dimensions of, and dimensions of
  human body, XV:26 and n137
hundred years spent in building, XV:27
  and n150

Volume I/6 & I/7
as symbol of Christ and the Church, XV:26–27 and n155; XVI:7; XVIII:38
wood of, as foreshadowing wood of the cross, XV:26 and n136
ark of the covenant/testimony, X:17–18
and n88; XVI:43 and n173
Artemis, XVIII:18 and n93
artists: three things expected in, XI:25
asbestos, XXI:5–6 and n16
ascension of Christ, XXII:5
Asia, XVI:17 and n77; XVII:2
asking, seeking, and knocking, XVII:12
and n76
Assaracus, V:12 and n42
Assyria:
earthly city, as example of, XVIII:2, 27
end of, XVIII:21–22, 27
as “first Rome,” XVIII:2
gods and, IV:6–7
kings of, XVIII:2
the name, XV:3 and n22
as powerful kingdom when Abraham was born, XVI:17
rise and fall of, IV:6–7
astrology; astrological fatalism, XVIII:39
and n188
See also fate “auspicious” days, V:7
case of twins and, V:1–6
falsity of, V:5
astronomy, XVIII:39 and n188
Egyptian, XVIII:40
Athanaric, XVIII:52 and n255
Athena. See Minerva
Athens, XVIII:12, 41
founding of, XVIII:13 and n68
naming of, XVIII:9–10 and n53
Athens, Academy of. See Academy
Atlas, XVIII:8 and nn37–38; XVIII:39
Attic Nights (Aulus Gellius), IX:4–5
Attis, VI:7; VII:25 and n61
Augustus Caesar. See Caesar Augustus
Aulus Gellius, IX:4 and n12
Aurelius, XXII:8 and n35
authority
See also power
divine, and Christianity, XVIII:40
divine, philosophers as lacking, II:7
of the law, X:17
of Scripture, XI:3
avarice. See greed
Aventine Hill, XVIII:21 and n101
Aventinus, XVIII:21
Babylon:
earthly city, as symbolizing, XVIII:51
and n248
founding of, XVI:4–7
meaning of name, XVI:4; XVII:16;
XVIII:41, 51 and n248
Rome as “second,” XVIII:2, 22
Babylon, “western,” XVIII:27 and n137
Babylonian Captivity of the Jews,
XVIII:34, 45
rulers of Rome from Romulus to,
XVIII:24–26
Bacchae; Bacchalian rites, III:17 and
n97; VI:9 and n27; XVIII:13
Bacchus. See Liber
Balbus, Quintus Lucilius, IV:30 and n114
baptism, I:35 and n96–97; XIII:23;
XVIII:48 and n235; XXI:16 and
n70
See also original sin; sacraments
the ark and, XV:25 and n39
On the Baptism of Infants (Augustine),
XIII:4
and being anointed, XVII:4 and n34
circumcision of Abraham as
prefiguring, XV:16 and n76
and cross, signing of, XX:29 and n139
at Easter, XXII:8 and n39
and Eve made from Adam’s rib,
XXII:17 and n90
later in life, I:27 and n82
martyrdom as substitute for, XIII:7–8
and n10
pre-baptismal rituals, XV:20 and n102
and Red Sea crossing, X:26 and n124
the “rush to be baptized,” XXI:27 and
n113
the unbaptized who die for confessing
Christ, XIII:7
baptismal conferral of the Spirit
(confiruration), IV:31 and n123
barbarians. See Rome, sack of
barrenness
See also Sarah
woman who bore seven children,
XVII:4, 20
basilicas, I:7
battle of the gods, II:25
beast, XX:9, 14

The City of God
The City of God

beauty, I:18; V:11, 13; VIII:6–7; X:6, 14, 16–17
See also specific topics, e.g., order
role of proportion/symmetry in, V:11; XI:22; XXII:19, 24, 30
of the universe, XI:18; XII:4
bees, XV:27 and n153
Bel, XVI:17; XVIII:2
Bellerophon, XVIII:13 and n72
Bellona, III:13, 25; IV:11, 21 and n86; IV:24, 34; V:12, 17, 22
rites of, VI:10 and n40
as Roman goddess of war, II:24 and
n88
Berecynthia, II:4
See also Cybele
Bible. See Scriptures, sacred
birds, XVI:24
bishops, XIX:14 and n44; XX:10 and n36
“watchman,” I:9 and n31
blessedness, XI:11–12 and n32
See also happiness
eternal, XXII
if possible for man, IX:14
blindness: of Adam and Eve, XIV:17 and
n100
body; bodies
See also flesh; resurrection of the
body; spiritual body; specific
topics, e.g., death; pleasure
animal body, XIII:23
aspects of human, XXII:24 and n31
and blessedness, ultimate, XIII:16–17
corruptible, XII:16; XIII: summary,
16; XXII:26
and eternal fire/punishment, XXI:2, 9
good of, philosophers’ opinions on,
VIII:8 and n39; XIX:2
of men vs. demons (Plotinus), IX:10
as not evil, XIV:5
in paradise, XIII:20
Platonic view of, XIII: summary, 16,
19–20; XIV:3
resurrected, XIII:22–23; XXII:12
as servant to soul, IX:9
and spiritual body, XIII: summary, 23
body of Christ, X:6 and n36; X:20
body of God
See also world soul
world thought to be, IV:12–13
book of life, XX:14–16
breath, V:9
God’s breathing into Adam/Jesus’
breathing on disciples, XIII:24
bronze serpent, X:8 and n51
Brutus, Junius, I:19; II:17; III:16; V:18
burial of the dead, I:10–13
Cacus, XIX:12
Caelestis, II:4 and n5; II:26
caelicolae, X:1
Caesars:
murder of by Fimbria, III:27
period of, XVIII:24
Caesar, (Gaius) Julius, IX:5
See also under Cato, Marcus Portius:
suicide of
Pompey, war with, III:13, 30
Venus believed to be grandmother of,
III:3
Caesar Augustus, III:21–22; IV:2 and n5;
XVIII:46; XIX:20; XXII:7 and
n29
civil wars in time of, III:30–31
Cain, XV:1
See also Abel
city founded by, XV:8
God speaking to, XV:7 and n18
lines of descent, XV:17–20
sacrifice of, and its rejection, XV:7
Cainan, XVI:3 and n27; XVI:10
Calvary, IV:31 and n123
Camilus, Marcus Furius, II:17 and n50;
III:18; IV:7; V:18
Canaan, land of, XVI:24
fulfillment of God’s promise, XVII:2
God’s second and third promises to
Abraham, XVI:18, 21
candle, Augustine’s poem on the paschal,
XV:22 and n112
cannibalism, XVII:20 and n104; XXII:22
canonical Scriptures, XV:23; XVII:38
and nn183–184
Capitol at Rome, II:12 and n29; II:22, 24;
III:12, 15, 17, 29; IV:9–10, 15,
23; VI:7, 10
Capitoline Hill, III:8
the Capitoline stone, II:29 and n100;
IV:15 and n68
Marcus Pulvillus dedicating temple on,
V:18 and n68
captivity, I:14–15

Volume I/6 & I/7
Volume I/6 & I/7

Carbo, Gaius Papirius, II:22 and n75; III:28

Cardinal virtues, IV:20 and n78; V:20 and n85; XIX:4 and n12; XXII:24 and n129

“carnalities,” XIV:2

Carthage, VII:4 and n20; XVI:8 and n46 destruction of, I:30 and n87; II:18–20

Cataphrygians, XVI:34 and n130

Catholic Christianity:
Augustine’s conversion to, XI:9 and n27
lapsed Catholics, XXI:26–27
sacraments and reality, XXI:20 and n80; XXI:25
those who live evil lives in the Church, XXI:21 and n81; XXI:26–27

catholicity, X:32 and n148

Catiline (Lucius Sergius Catilina), I:5 and n21; II:2
and pagan gods, capriciousness of, I:8 and n26; II:23

Cato, Marcus Portius (Cato the Younger), II:7; V:12 and n39; V:21; XIX:4 and n14
and Carthage, I:30 and n87
suicide of, I:23–24 and n74
on wartime sack of city, I:5
causes:
fortuitous, natural, and voluntary, V:9
the four, V:9 and n20
celibates, XVI:36
religious, XV:20 and n96

Celsus, XXI:2 and n1
centaurs, XVIII:13 and n69
Cerberus, XVIII:13 and n70
Ceres, VII:2; XVIII:13 and n67
rites of, VI:7; VII:20–21
certainty:
Christian, XIX:18
of existence, XI:26
Chaeremon, X:11 and n60
Chaldean Oracles, X:23, 27 and n127
chance, IV:18 and n75, 33 and n125; V:9
as not causing Rome’s greatness, V:1

charity, XIV:7
See also love
right order of, XV:22

Chastity, I:16–19
See also virginity; specific topics, e.g.,
rape
fortitude and, I:18 and n58

Marital, XV:26
of widowhood, XV:26

Childhood:
discipline of, XXI:14–15
punishments of, XXII:22

Children
See also infants
Christians accused of ritual murder of, XVIII:53 and n270
and physical punishment, XXII:22 and n112
plural reference to (Latin), XVI:40 and n160
unborn, resurrection of, XXII:12–13 and n76
children, begetting. See procreation, human
Chimera, XVIII:13 and n72
chrism, XVI:38 and n146; XVII:6 and n46; XVII:16

Christ
See also Jesus Christ
all Christians as Christs, XX:10 and n37
the name, XVI:38 and n146; XVII:6 and n46; XVII:16; XVIII:23 and n113; XVIII:33 and n156
Christians; Catholic Christianity; Church
Augustine’s conversion to (Catholic), XI:9 and n27
certainty of, XIX:18
Christian belief, VII:29–32 and n71
Christian pride, antidote to, V:17–18
Christian times, complaints about, I:30 and divine authority, XVIII:40
emperors, good Christian, V:24–25
end of, XVIII:53 and n268
evils occurring prior to, when gods were still worshiped, III:31
as to last only 365 years (pagan belief), XVIII:54
as not to blame for the fall of Rome, I:1–3
Platonism and, VIII:9–12
public teaching of, II:28

Christians
See also specific topics, e.g., burial of the dead
blamed for disasters, II:3 and n3; III:31
in captivity, I:14–16
false, I:35

The City of God
The City of God

and loss of riches, I:10
and style of life, XIX:18–20
as universal way of salvation, X:32
and n148
why God allows Christians to suffer,
I:28–29
Christ-rep, Christians as, XX:10 and n37
Christus. See “anointed one”
Chronicles (Eusebius of Caesarea). See under Eusebius of Caesarea:
Chronicles
Chrysippus, IX:4–5 and n15
Church
See also Catholic Christianity;
Christianity; prophecies of
Christ and the Church; specific
topics, e.g., ark: as symbol of
the Church; sacraments
as body and fulfillment of Christ,
XXII:18
as city of God, VII:24 and n95; X:21
and n99; XIII:16; XVI:2 and
n16
kingdom of heaven, identified with,
XX:9 and n29
love for Christ, and belief in as divine,
XXII:6–7
the new Jerusalem, XX:17, 21
persecutions of, XVIII:50–53
perseverance in (and immorality of
life), XXI:25
prayers of, XXI:24
reprobates and good people in,
XVIII:49
as sacrament, XVI:7 and n44
sinners, allowing for presence of,
XX:9 and n29
spreading of, XVIII:50–51
churches, Christian: as places of
sanctuary, I:1–2, 7
Cicero, Marcus Tullius, II:8–10, 27;
XIV:8; XVII:24; XXII:6 and
n19; XXII:20
On Divination, III:17 and n110
on foreknowledge and free will, V:
summary, 9
Hortensius, III:15 and n67
on republic/On the Republic, II:9, 12;
21; XIV:23; XIX: summary,
21; XXII:6 and n25–27
on stories about the gods, IV:26
on superstition, images of the gods,
religion of the populace, IV:30
“would-be philosopher,” II:27 and n92
Cinna, Lucius Cornelius, II:22 and n74;
III:27; V:26
circumcision:
of Abraham, XV:16 and n76; XV:23,
26
on the eighth day, XVI:27
cities, two, XI:33
See also city of God; city of man
and angels and women intermingling,
XV:22–24
character of, XIV:28
conflicts between: the flesh and spirit,
XV:5–6
contrast between/delineation of, XI:33;
XIV:28; XXII:6 and n21
course through time, XI–XIV
ends of, merited, XIX–XXII
eternal peace and, XIX:17
first man as beginning of, XII:28(27)
intermingling in this world, I:35
and lines of descent, XV:8, 21
origins of, XI–XIV
temporal goods and temporal evils of
both alike, XVIII:54 and n286
throughout history, XV–XVIII
two loves as having made two cities,
XIV: summary, 28
variety to be found in, XIV:1; XIX:17
city:
masres of social life, XIX:5–6
wartime sack of, I:5
City of God (Augustine):
best-known passage/summary of,
XIV:28 and n123
Book I, summation of, II:2; IV:1
Books II and III, summation of, IV:2
Books XI–XXII, subject/summary of,
I:35 and n98; XI:1
Book XII, XII:11(10) and n20
final chapter in, XXI:30 and n160
purpose of/reason for writing, I:
preface–1 and n3
city of God, II:29; V:15; VI:4; X:6 and
n35
See also cities, two
Abel and, XV:1
among the peoples of earth, XVI:10
as born of grace, XV:2–3
Christ and, XXII:6 and n21
Church as, VIII:24 and n95; X:21 and
Clouds, XVII:4 and n32
Codrus, king of the Athenians, XVIII:19–20
Collatinus, Lucius Tarquinius, I:19; II:17
colonies, XXII:8 and n53
common good, II:21; V:15, 18; XIX: summary
commonplace, the, IV:27 and n104
community, XVI:2 and n15
all things possessed in common, XVIII:54 and n276
Concord: temple of, III:25–26
cupcupiscence. See desire; lust
corporal, X:6 and n35
survival of, XV:27 and n151
supreme good and supreme evil according to, XIX:4
city of man/of this world, I: preface–1; V:1, 14, 16, 18–19; VI:4; X:25
See also cities, two
Assyrians and Romans as examples, XVIII:2, 27
Babylon as symbolizing, XVI:4; XVII:51 and 248
as born of nature, XV:2–3
Cain and, XV:1
characteristics of, XV:4–7
defining, VIII:24 and n95; XIV:28–V:1
first founder of, XV:5
goods of, XV:4–5
civic theology, VI:6–7
implied aim of Varro’s account, VI:8–9
no divinity in, VII:1
as not holding promise of eternal life, VI:12
civil strife, III:23–26
civil wars, Roman, I:30; II:18, 22; III:7, 13–14, 17; IV:23; V:25
Augustus, in time of, III:30–31
before coming of Christ, III:30
as evil internal to the Republic, III:23–26
gods and, II:23–25
Marius and Sulla, II:23–24; III:27–30; V:26
start of, III:24
clemency, I:7
clerics, XX:10 and n36

The City of God
Volume I/6 & I/7

The City of God

the seventh day, XI:6, 8, 31; XV:12; XXII:30
three questions in regard to any creature, XI:21, 23
time and, XI:4–6
traces of the Trinity in, XI:24–28
Creed, the, XVII:4 and n31; XX:1 and n2
Crete, XVIII:13 and n74
cross:
signing of on forehead, XX:29 and n139
trophy of, XVIII:32 and n149
wood of ark as foreshadowing, XV:26 and n136
cult statues/images, VI:7–8, 10; VII:10, 28
Cumaean Sibil, X:27 and n132; XVIII:23 and n116
Cupid, IV:10 and n46
curiosities. See oddities
curiosity: as vice, III:9 and n24; IV:34; X:9, 26–27; XXI:8 and n45
Curtius, Marcus, IV:20 and n80; V:14, 18
Cush, XVI:11 and n65
Cybele (Berecynthia), I:30 and n86; VII:16
See also Attis; Galli; Great Mother; Pessinus
rites of, II:4–6 and n6
temple dedicated to, III:12 and n39
cyclical theories, XII: summary, 14(13) and n26; XII:18(17)
ages of ages, XII:20(19)
refutation of, XII:21(20)
Cynicism; Cynic philosophers, XIV:20 and n108; XIX:1 and n7; XIX:18
Antisthenes, VIII:3
Theòmbrotus, I:22
cynocephalus; cynocephali, II:14 and n37; III:12; XVI:8
Cyprian, VIII:27 and n108
Cyrus the Great, IV:7 and n18
Daedalus, XVIII:13 and n74
damnation, eternal. See eternal punishment
Danae, II:7 and n13; XVIII:13 and n78
darkness:
angels as, XI:33
God as separating light from, XI:19
David:
as lyre player, XVII:14 and n86

from Moses to, XVI:43
prophetic anticipation of Christ, XVII:8–19
reign of, XVII:20
day of the Lord, XX:19
deacons, XX:21 and n76
death
See also fall; specific topics, e.g., martyrdom; punishment as an evil, XIII:6
“before,” “after,” and “in,” XIII:9–11
burial of the dead, I:10–13
corpses, XX:10 and n35; XX:21
cult of the dead, VIII:26
dreadful types of, I:11–13
eternal, and supreme evil, XIX:4
friends’ deaths, sadness at, XIX:7 and n23
inevitability of, I:11
long life same as short one, I:11; XIII:10
meanings of, XIII: summary, 2, 12–15
odor of dead bodies, X:11, 19
as punishment, XIII:3–6
the refrigerium, VIII:27, n109
returns from the dead, XXII:28 and n149
of the saints, XIII:7–8, 20
sea, dead given up by, XX:15
second, XIII:2, 14, 23; XIV:1; XIX:28
of soul and body, XIII:2; XXI passim
threat of, XIII:12–15
as unable to inflict harm on the good, I:11; XV:24
without burial, I:11–13
death, life after. See eternal life; resurrection of the body
Decalogue, XV:20
deception. See lying
Decii, IV:20, 20 and n81; V:14, 18
Decius, XVIII:52 and n253
deity:
deification of men, XVIII passim
and divinity, VII:1; X:1
Demeter. See Ceres
“demon” of Socrates, VIII:14
demons, VIII:24–25; IX–X passim
See also eudaimones (“good demons”)
Apuleius on, VIII:14–18; IX:3
bodies of, III:18 and n113; VIII:15;
IX:9–12
Christian religion as exposing, VII:33
and contamination by human contact, 
IX:16–18
crime, as encouraging, II:25
difference among, VIII:27; IX:1
divinity, as claiming, II:10 and passim; 
XV:16
eternal punishment for, XXI:23
evil mediators, IX:15
fire as punishment for, XXI:10
good angels as not good demons, 
IX:19
good demons as logical impossibility, 
IX:2–3, 13–14
Hermes Trismegistus on, VIII:23
immortal body, vice-ridden soul, 
IX:9–11
Jesus and, IX:21
knowledge of, IX:20–22 and n55
and the martyrs/persecution, X:21–22
re. mediating between gods and 
humans, VIII:18–22; IX:9, 
12–13, 15–16, 23
and miseries of social life, XIX:9–10
as not superior to humans, VIII:15
pagan gods as thought to be, I:31 and 
n90
passions, as subject to, IX:6–8
physical appearance of (in patristic 
literature), XXII:8 and n41
the Platonists on, VIII:14–18
pride of, IX:20–22
promises of, IX:18
re. happiness, IX:9–21
reason as attributed to, IX:3
souls of, VIII:24, 26; IX:6, 9–11
souls of men as, IX:11 and n32
“spirits of this lower air,” XVI:24 and 
n95
wills of, V:9; XI: summary; XII: 
summary
the word, IX:19–20 and n55
demon-worship:
demon-worshippers, IX:19 and n53
Porphyry and, X:26
Radagaisus, V:23 and n96
as wrong, VIII:17, 22; IX:23; X:9
descent, lines of. See lines of descent
Desert Fathers, V:26, n103
desire, XIV:7, 15
See also lust; passions
human misery, role in, XXII:22 and 
n109
Deucalion, XVIII:8 and n43, 10, 12 and 
n61
devil, XI:13–18
binding for a thousand years, XX:7–8
condemnation of, XX:14
eternal punishment for, XXI:17 and 
n76; XXI:23
fall of, XI:13–15; 33; XII:6, 9; XIV:11
Gog and Magog, XX:11
nature of, XIX:13
no salvation for, XXI:23
releasing of, XX:8
Diana, III:11; IV:11; VI:7; VII:2, 15–16 
and n41
di consentes, IV:23 and n94
Dinah, XVI:40 and n159
Diocletian, I:26 and n80; XVIII:52 and 
n253
Diogenes of Apollonia, VIII:2 and n12
Diogenes of Sinope, XIV:20 and nn108, 
110
Diomedes, XVIII:16
Dionysius. See Liber 
disasters
See also specific topics and events, 
e.g., war
as blamed on Christians, II:3 and n3; 
III:31
internal, III:23
pagan gods and, II:3; III:17–18, 20, 31
tears of Apollo’s statue as portent of, 
III:11
disciples, XVIII:49
discipline, God’s, I:8
obedience. See under Adam:
disobedience of Adam and Eve
Dis Pater/Dispater, VII:16 and n43; VII:23
See also Orcus; Pluto
disturbances, VIII:17 and n70
four, XIV:5
of the mind, IX:4–5; XIV:9
divinity: deity and, VII:1; X:1
dog-headed men. See cynocephali 
domination
See also authority; empire; power
and cult of gods used as tool by secular 
rulers, IV:32 and n124
difference between desire for glory and 
desire for domination, V:19
lust for, I: preface, 30–31; III:14; IV:6; 
V:13
Donatists, XXI:20 and n80
Maximus, XXII:8 and n47

The City of God
double predestination, XV:1 and n2; XXII:24
dusii; Dusios, XV:23 and n118

earth
See also under elements: four; world all human life on earth as trial, XXI:14–15
bodies as, XX:24 and n95
each person as carrying his own “earth” around, XVII:4 and n29
eternal (Platonic view), XIII:17
femininity assigned to, VII:28 and n68
Gaia, XVIII:13 and n76
goecentric view of, XV:14 and n59
new, XX:16
earthly city. See city of this world earthly kingdoms. See kingdoms, earthly earthly possessions. See possessions Easter:
baptism at, XXII:8 and n39
miracles at time of, XXII:8 and n63
eclipse of the sun, III:15
Eden, XIII:18 and n29
See also paradise
Edom, XVI:41; XVIII:47 and n230
education, II:3
See also teachers
and conversion to Christianity, XXII:5
of humanity, X:14–15
liberal disciplines, II:8 and n17; VI:2;
XXII:5 and n11
secular, VI:2
the well-educated influencing the less well-educated to hate Christianity, II:3 and n4; IV:1;
VI: preface
eminacy, VII:25 and n64
Egypt, X:8
See also under individual names, e.g., Jacob; specific events
astronomy, Egyptian, XVIII:40
cult of animals, II:22 and n78
Egyptian empire/kingdom, XVI:17
Mizraim, XVI:11 and n64
religion of, VIII:23–24
years, Egyptian, XII:11(10); XV:12
and n50
eighth day: symbolism of, XVI:26 and n103
Eleazar, XVIII:36 and n169; XVIII:42–43
 elect, VII:1
elements:
fifth, XXII:11
the four, IV:9–10 and n33; VIII:5;
 XV:27 and n148
order of, XXII:11
of the universe, Jupiter and, IV:9–10
Eleusinian Mysteries, VII:20 and n54
eleven, the number, XV:20
Eli, XVIII:19
prophecy to, XVII:5–6
Elijah, IV:14 and n67
return of, XX:29
emotions, VIII:14; XIV:6–8
See also passions
the “constant dispositions,” XIV:8
in the first human beings, XIV:10
and future life, XIV:9
will and, XIV:4–6
emperors, V:21
See also individual names
Christian, V:24–25
empire (Roman Empire):
divine gift to Rome of, V:13–17
eternity of, belief in, IV:7 and n20
evaluation of, IV:3–5
God as giver of, V:11
good men and desire to extend, IV:15
Jupiter and, IV:9, 14
Rome’s expansion of, IV: summary, 2–3, 8
empires, history of, XVIII passim
enemies of God, XII:3
enjoyment
See also pleasure
use and, VIII:8 and n40; XI:25; XV:7;
 XIX:13
Ennius, II:21; VII:27 and n67
ennoiai, VIII:7
Enoch, XV:8, 10, 13, 17, 19–21, 23 and n129; XVIII:38 and n182
translation of, XV:19
Enosh, XV:12, 15, 17–18, 21 and n107
ephebophilia, VII:25 and n64
Epictetus, IX:4 and n14
Epicurean philosophers, V:20; VIII:5, 7;
 XIV:2; XVIII:41
Epicurus, VI:5 and n15; VIII:5 and n26; XI:5; XII:12(11) and n23;
 XVIII:41; XIX:1
error; erroneous views, XXI:17–27
Erythraean Sibyl, XVIII:23 and n110
See also Idumeans
kings at time of birth, XVIII:3
Esdras, XVIII:35–36 and n167
essentiala, XII:2 and n6
eternal death: and supreme evil, XIX:4, 28
eternal fire. See under fire
eternal life, XXI–XXII
See also heaven
gift of, XXII:21
and gods, worship of, VI:1
goods of, XXII:24
happiness in, worship of select gods as
not bringing, VII:26–27
mystery of, VII:32
neither angels nor demons to be
worshipped for sake of, IX:23
neither mythic nor civic theology as
holding promise to, VI:12
pagan gods and, VI
of the saints, XXII:29
and supreme good, XIX:4
eternal pain, XXI:2–3
eternal peace, XIX:14, 17
eternal punishment, XXI passim
See also fire; hell; specific topics,
e.g., double predestination;
intercession of the saints
devil and his angels to suffer, XXI:17–23
divine mercy and, XXI:17–22
as eternal, XXI:23
as final end, XXI–XXII passim
heretics and, XXI:19, 25
just correlation of sin and, XXI:11–12
the lost far outnumber the saved,
XXI:21 and n85; XXI:12 and
n57
nature of, XXI:9
and order/beauty of creation, XI:18;
XVII:11 and n73; XXI:12
restoration, doctrine of, XXI:17 and
n76
saints’ knowledge of, XX:22
eternity, XII:21(20) and n34
See also under resurrection of the
body: eternity
“before eternal times,” XII:17(16) and
n30
God as, XI:28; XII:1
time and, XII:15(14)–17(16)
Ethan the Ezrahite, XVII:12 and n74
ethics, VIII:8
eucharist, II:28 and n96; XVI:37 and
n143; XVI:41 and n163; XVIII:49
and n243
See also sacraments
the ark and, XV:25 and n39
the body of Christ, X:6 and n36; X:20
and daily offering of sacrifice, X:20
and n96
eucharistic liturgy, XIV:13 and n81;
XX:9 and n32
and Eve made from Adam’s rib,
XXII:17 and n90
for exorcistic purpose, XXII:8 and n45
and manna in the desert, X:26 and
n124
Melchizedek’s offering and, XVI:22
and n89
place for celebrating, XXII:8 and n45
and reconciliation, sacrament of,
XIX:9 and n33
sacraments and reality, XXI:20 and
n80; XXI:25
saints memorialized in eucharistic
prayer, XXII:10 and n68
eudaemonist position, IV:23 and n95
eudaimones (“good demons”), IX:11 and
n33
as logical impossibility, IX:13–14
Eudoxus of Cnidus, XVI:23 and n91
Eugenius, V:26 and nn104, 107
Euhemerus; euhemerism, VI:7 and n17;
VII:17 and n47; VII:27; XVIII:8
and n39
Eumenes III (Aristonicus), III:11 and n31
eunuchs, VII:25
Euphrates River, XVI:24
Europa, IV:27 and n107; XVIII:12 and
n63
Europe, XVI:17 and n77
Eusebius of Caesarea, V:24 and nn97, 99;
XVI:22 and n88
Chronicles, XII:11(10) and n20;
XVI:16; XVIII passim
Eve
See also Adam; woman
as made from Adam’s side, XII:28(27);
XXII:17
evil, III passim
See also sin; suffering
as antithesis of good, XI:18 and n37;
XVII:11
bringing good out of, XXII:1 and n2
as deprivation of good, XI:9 and n27
faith

See also Christianity; rule of faith
in the incarnation, by righteous of ancient times, X:25
and justice, IV:20 and n78; XX:26 and n106
and the mediator, XI:2–3

Faith (goddess), IV:20
fall:
angelic, XI:11–13, 28; XXII:1
of the devil, XI:13–15, 33; XII:6, 9;
XIV:11
hidden fall, notion of, XIV:13 and n83
human, XIII:1, 14; XIV:11–12
procreation before, XIV:21–22
sexuality before, XIII:24; XIV:23–24
fall of Rome. See Rome, sack of
false gods. See gods, pagan
family, XIX:16 and n56
famine, I:10; III:16–18
fate, V:9
as chain of causes, V:8
as not causing Rome’s greatness, V:1
Faustus the Manichean, XVI:41
fear
See also passions
constraint of, II:18–20
two types of, XIV:9
Feast of Flight, II:6 and n9
Febris. See Fever
felicity. See happiness
Felicity (goddess), IV:18–25 and n73; V:
preface, 16; VII:3
Rome’s late recognition of, IV:23
Virtue and, IV:21
fercula, II:4 and n7
Fever, II:14 and n38; III:12, 25; IV:15, 23
Figulus, Publius Nigidius, V:3 and n11
Fimbria, Gaius Flavius, III:7 and n17
Caesars, murder of, III:27
sack of Troy by, III:7–8
fire, VI:5 and n15
See also under elements: four; eternal
punishment
the body and, XXI:2
of the Chaldeans, XVI:15 and n71
eternal, XI:11 and n32; XII:4; XXI:2,
4–7
evil spirits, as punishment for, XXI:10
of hell, as everlasting, XXI:10–22
positive qualities of eternal, XII:4

The City of God

as emphasizing or distinguishing the
good, XI:18 and n37; XVII:11
end of the wicked, XIX:28
failure to correct, I:9
the good as not hurt by actions of the
wicked, I:10–29; IV:3 and n9
internal to the republic, III:23–26
Isaiah on, XX:21–22
Manichean view of matter as, XIV:5
and n15
mediators, evil, IX:15
and mercy of God, I:8
moral evils, XXII:22–23 and n31
as not natural, XI:17
origin of, XII:4–9
prior to Christianity, when gods were
still worshiped, III:31
separate ends of good and, XX:21–22,
27; XXI:1
and suffering, I:33
supreme, XIX:1, 4, 28
temporal, of both cities, XVIII:54 and
n286
temporal (sack of Rome), I:8–9
this life, evils of, XXII:22
in the universe, XI:22
will, as function of, XI: summary
evil spirits. See demons
evil will, V:1, 8–9; XI: summary; XII:
summary
cause of first, XII:6–9
the first, XIV:11
as preceding the evil act, XIV:13
Evodius, XXII:8 and n60
existence, XI:27–28 and n61
certainty of, XI:26
existing and living, VII:6 and n29;
XV:5, 7
God as supreme being (no being as
contrary to), XII:2
Expositions of the Psalms (Augustine),
XVII:15 and n93
eyes
See also blindness
vision of God, XXII:29 and n152

Fabius (Quintus Fabius Maximus
Varrucus Cunctator), I:6 and
n25
fables of the poets, II:8
Fabricius (Gaius Fabricius Luscinus),
V:18 and nn70, 73

Volume I/6 & I/7
salvation through, XVI:24 and n97; XXI:26
Stoic beliefs regarding, VII:30 and n73; VIII:5 and n25
survival in eternal, XXI:4–7
of this world, VII:30 and n73
worm and, XX:22; XXI:2, 9, 24, 26
fish:
discovering something precious in stomach of, XXII:8 and n51
ichthus, XVIII:23 and n115
fixed rule. See rule of faith
Flaccianus, XVIII:23 and n112
flamens, II:15 and n41; II:20; III:27
flesh
See also body; specific topics, e.g., desire; pain
living according to, XIV:2
meaning of word, XIV:3
nature and properties of, XXI:8
as not evil, XIV:5
and sin, XIV:3
as symbolized by the wife, XV:7 and n24
vs. spirit, XIV:5–6; XXI:15–16
flies, XV:27
flood, the, XV:22
history, and allegory, XV:27
lines of descent from Cain and Seth down to, XV:17–20
long lives of ancients before, XV:8–14
Noah and the ark, XV:24–26
flood, Deucalion’s. See Deucalion
flood of Ogygus, XVIII:8
Flora, Mother, II:27 and n94; IV:8
foreign iniquity, IV:14–17
foreknowledge, divine:
and human freedom, V: summary, 9–10
sin and, XII:23(22); XIV:11, 26–27
form, XI:28 and n61
fortitude
See also cardinal virtues
and suicide, XIX:4
and virginity/chastity, I:18 and n58
fortuitous causes, V:9
Fortuna Barbata, IV:11; V:1
and Jupiter, IV:23, 29
fortune, V:9 and n25
See also chance
Fortune (goddess), IV:18–19
four, the number, XV:20 and n105
four disturbances, XIV:5
four elements. See under elements: the four
four hundred years, XV:8; XVI:24; XX:13
fratricide
See also Abel; Cain; Romulus
Rome and, III:6; XV:5
freedom of will
See also will
divine foreknowledge and, V: summary, 9–10
God’s creation of man with, XIV:11–16
in heaven, XXII:30
and necessity, V:10
sin and, XII:30 and n163
friendship, XIX:8
of angels, XIX:9
frogs, XVI:7 and n43
fungalia (Feast of Flight), II:6 and n9
Furies, III:13 and n47
future life: emotions and, XIV:9
Gaia, XVIII:13 and n76
Galli, II:7 and n11; VI:7, 10 and n40;
VII:24–26 and n58
Ganymede, IV:25 and n99; VII:26;
XVIII:13 and n77
Garden of Eden, XIII:18 and n29
See also paradise
Gauls, II:17; III:17, 31; IV:7, 29; V:18;
VIII:9
devotion to Mercury, VII:19 and n50
invasion of, III:29
Rome saved from, II:22 and n77; III:8
geese:
Rome saved from Gauls by, II:22 and
n77; III:8
as sacred to Juno, II:22 and n77, 29;
III:8
Gellius, Aulus, IX:4–5
Gemini, the two, XVIII:54 and n278
generations. See lines of descent
genius, VII:6 and n24; VII:13
Genius (god), VII:2
and Jupiter, VII:13
gentiles:
three prominent kingdoms of, XVI:17
and translation of Hebrew Scripture into Greek, XVIII:42
Gervasius and Protasius, XV:9 and n37;
XXII:8
The City of God

Getae, XX:11 and n40
giants, III:5; IV:30; XV:9 and n37;
XVIII:13 and n76; XXII:8, 14
and intermingling of angels and
women, XV:23
Nimrod, XVI:3–4, 11
gifts, divine:
and pagan gods, IV:24
seven, of the Holy Spirit, XI:31 and
n68
gladiators, III:14, 26; V:22
revolt of, IV:5
glory:

difference between desire for glory and
desire for domination, V:19
Roman love of, V:12
and virtue, proper end of, V:20
goal: as God, XI:2 and n5
goats, XVI:24 and n92
goatskins, XVI:37 and n141
three-year-old goat, XVI:43
God
See also foreknowledge; Trinity;
specific topics, e.g., mercy;
worship
as all in all, II:21; XIX:20
anger of, IX:5 and n21; XV:25;
XXI:24
body of, IV:12
as creator and sustainer, VII:30
and the gods, demons, and
contamination by human
contact, IX:16–18
as Good, X:3
goodness of, and goodness of creation,
XI:21–23
image of, XII:24(23)
immutability of, IV:31 and n122; XI:
summary, 4–6; XII:2–4
judgment as often obscure, but
nonetheless just, III:1; IV:7
and n20; IV:17; XV:6 and
n16; XVIII:18; XX:2–3, 19;
XXI:13
knowledge, God’s, XI:21; XII:19(18)
knowledge of (knowing God), XI:2;
XXII:2
living according to, XIV:4
as Lord, XII:16(15) and n29
love for, X:3
the one true God and his works,
VII:29–33
power of, XXI:4–7
promises of, XX:21–25; XXII:2–3
seeing face to face, XXII:29
as sole creator, XII:25(24)–27(26)
as supreme being (no being as contrary
to), XII:2
sweetness as hidden, XXI:24
the true, justice and (against
Porphyry), XIX:21–23
visible appearances of, X:12–13
vision of in heaven, XXII:30
will of, XI:21; XII:2–3
as working through humans, XI:8;
XVI:5; XXII:2
God, city of. See city of God
goddesses.
See also under gods, below; individual
names
Felicity and Fortune, IV:18–19
names, meanings of, IV:8 and nn22–27
and virtue/the virtues, IV:20
gods, I–V; II:19; VII passim
See also theology; specific topics, e.g.,
demons: mediating between
gods and humans
angels and, IX:23
and Assyrian rule, rise and fall of,
IV:6–7
banning of sacrifices, I:36
battle of, II:25
capriciousness of, II:23
“certain or uncertain,” III:12; VI:3
and civil wars, II:23–24
and contamination by human contact,
IX:16–18
cult of, IV:32, 34; VI:7–8, 10; VII:10,
28
used as tool by secular rulers, IV:32
and n124
demons, as thought to be, I:31 and n90
descent from, men as claiming, III:4
demons: mediating between
gods and humans
demons as thought to be, I:31 and n90
descent from, men as claiming, III:4
demons, as thought to be, I:31 and n90
descent from, men as claiming, III:4
of earthly kingdoms, from Abraham to
Exodus, XVIII:2–7
of earthly kingdoms at the time of
Moses, XVIII:8
of earthly kingdoms in the period of
the Judges, XVIII:13–15
evil as not stopped by, III passim
and evils occurring prior to
Christianity, III:31
example of, II:25
exhortation to Romans to abandon, II:29
failure to provide moral guidance, II:4–6
failure to save the republic, II:22
functions/specific services of each, IV 8–29 passim; IV:34; VI:1, 9
good and evil divinities, II:11, 29; III:17
in Greece, cult of, XVIII:13
Hermes Trismegistus on, VIII:23–25
and human immorality, II:25
impotence of, VI
and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2
moral guidance, failure to provide, II:4–6
mother of gods, rites of, II:4–6
names, meanings of, IV:11 and nn49–63
names of, different for different functions, IV:11 and n48
naming of, for their gifts, IV:24–25
as of no help, I:14–16
after Numa’s reign, III:12
and Paris’s adultery, III:3–5
plebian, IV:11
Rome, as weakening, I:32–36; II:1–4
Rome, polytheism of, I–V
and Rome, disasters affecting, II:3
Rome’s empire, as incapable of extending/preserving, IV:28
and Rome’s expansion, IV:8
secret moral teaching provided by, II:26–27
temples not respected as sanctuaries, I:4–6
theaters/theatrical shows and, I:31–34; IV:26
three views of, IV:27; VI:5
and Troy, fall of, III:2–5
Varro on, IV:22; VI:2–4
and virtue, public teaching of, II:6–7
what pagans think about their gods, IV:30
withdrawal of, II:22
worship of, for the sake of eternal life, VI
worship of, Romans exhorted to abandon, II:29
worship of, secret, IV:1, 1 and n2
worship of many gods, VIII:13
gods, “good” (Neoplatonist), VIII:24 and n97; IX:23
gods, greater: Jupiter and the elements of the universe, IV:9–10
gods, household. See household gods
gods, select. See select gods
“gods,” the title, IX:23
Gog and Magog, XX:11
good, XI:28 and n61
See also common good; supreme good and advantages, IX:4
evil, bringing good out of, XXII:1 and n2
extrinsic, VIII:8
final, VIII:8
God as, X:3
the good as not hurt by actions of the wicked, I:10–29; IV:3 and n9
goods of this life, XXII:24
greatest, VI:11–12
Isaiah on, XX:21–22
Romans, goodness of, II:17
separate ends of the good and the evil, XX:21–22, 27; XXI:1
as suffering, I:9
temporal, I:8; XVIII:54 and n286
ture, Psalm 73 and, X:25
the upright, great mystery within, XVI:2
why good people also suffered in sack of Rome, I:9
good life, I:11; II:4, 7; VIII:2
t and society, XIX:5–7
goods
See also possessions; riches
advantages, IX:4 and n11
Gospel, XVIII:35 and n165
Gothic Christians, XVIII:52 and n255
Goths, I; III:29; V:23
See also Rome, sack of
Gracchi, II:21–22 and n63; III:26
and civil wars, start of, III:24
grace, divine, I:28; V:14, 19; VII: preface, 5; VIII:10–11, 23; X:6, 22
Augustine’s doctrine of, XV:21 and n110
and death, XIII:4
and demons, freedom from, IV:26, 31; X:10
heavenly city as born of, XV:2–3
and humility, I: preface
laws of, XXI:16
Platonism and, X:28–29
Porphyry and, X:32
as relief from original sin, XXII:22
and sacraments, X:8 and n43
and salvation, XV:1 and n2
and second death, many as rescued from, XIV:1
grammar, XIII:11 and n15
Gratian, V:25–26, 25 and n101
Great Mother (Mother of the Gods), II:4
and nn5–6; IV:10; VII:16 and n44; X:16 and n79
See also Cybele; Tellus
rites/worship of, II:4–5 and n6; V:7
Greece; Greek people
See also philosophers
cult of false gods in, XVIII:13
“fickle little Greeks,” I:4 and n19; IX:5
and n19
“frivolous and licentious,” II:14 and n33
Greeks and Romans on poets and actors, II:9–13
tears of Apollo’s statue as portent of disaster for, III:11
and Troy, I:4
greed, XII:8
insatiability of, VII:12 and n38
Greek language
See also under specific topics, e.g., Scriptures, sacred
dual form of nouns in, XX:23 and n85
superiority of/as highly esteemed, VIII:2 and n3, 10; XVIII:37
grief. See passions
gymnosophists, XIV:17; XV:20 and n97
Hadrian, IV:29 and n110
Hagar, XV:3; XVI:25–26
Ham, son of Noah. See under Noah
Hannah, prophecy of, XVII:4
Hannibal, II:9 and n19; IV:29
the Second Punic War, III:19–21 and n118
happiness, IV:15; X; XII:21(20) and n34
See also blessedness
angelic and human, X:2–3
and angels’ teaching to worship God alone, X:16
and the body, XIII:17
for both good and bad people, I:8–9
and n26; II:23
of Christian emperors, V:24–25
after death, VIII:5; X:1
demons and, IX:9–21
and empire, evaluation of, IV:3
of eternal life, XXII:30
God as giver of, IV:24–26
as greatest good, VI:11–12
hope and, XIX:20
in life after death, worship of select gods as not bringing, VII:26–27
life of, XIX:1–3
one source of, X:1–3
of paradise, XIV:25–26
philosophers re., XVIII:41
Stoics re., IX:4; XIX:1
and supreme good, XIX:1–4
ture, V: preface, 24
ultimate, XII:21(20); XIII: summary
heaven, XXII:30
See also eternal life
Church on earth and, XX:9 and n29
earthly bodies and, XIII: summary, 18;
XXII:4, 11
masculinity assigned to, VII:28 and n68
new, XX:16
saints and the righteous as, XX:24 and n94
souls as, XX:24 and n95
Heber, XVI:3, 10–11
and the Hebrew language, XVI:11
Hebrew, the word, XVI:3 and n28;

 XVI:11
Hebrew language/biblical Hebrew,
 XVI:11 and n60; XX:30 and n122
See also under specific topics, e.g., Old Testament: translations
dual form of nouns in, XX:23 and n85
Heber and, XVI:11
as original language, XVI:11
as written language, XVIII:39 and n186
Hebrew prophets. See prophets
Hebrew Scripture. See under Scriptures, sacred
Hebrews, XVI:3 and n28
See also Jews
Hecate, XIX:23 and n84
The City of God

Volume I/6 & I/7

Hector, III:13 and n48
hedonism, II:20 and n61
heifer, XVI:24
three-year-old, XVI:43
Helen of Sparta (Troy), IV:27 and n106
hell, XX:15
See also eternal punishment; fire
descent of Christ into, XX:15 and n50
eternity of hellfire, XI:11 and n33;
XXI passim
Helle, XVIII:13 and n71
Hera. See Juno
Heraclitus, VI:5 and n15
Hercules, XIV:20 and n110; XVIII:8,
12–13 and n76
Samson compared to, XVIII:19 and
n95
heresy; heretics, V:18; X:24
See also specific heresies, e.g.,
Donatists
argument for existence of, XVI:12
and n8
Church as strengthened by, XVIII:51
and eternal punishment, XXI:19, 25
trouble caused orthodox Christians by,
XVIII:51
hermeneia, VII:14
Hermes. See Mercury
Hermes Trismegistus, VIII:23–26 and
n86; XVIII:39 and n189
the art of making gods and the coming
abolition of the gods, VIII:23
the art of making gods as rooted in
error and unbelief, VIII:24–25
on the demons, VIII:23
lament of, VIII:26
heroes, VII:6 and n24; X:21
the term, X:21
Hesiod, XVIII:14 and n81
Hesperius, XXII:8 and n46
Hesychius of Salon, XX:5 and n13
Hexapla, the, XV:14, n65
Hippocrates, V:2 and n8; V:5; XXII:8
Hippolytus, XVII:21 and n118, XVII:53
and n267
Hippo Regius, XVI:8 and n48; XXII:8
and m48, 53
miracles in, XXII:8 and n63
Hippo Zaratus (Hippo Diarrhytus), XVI:8
and n48; XXII:8 and n48
history:
division into ages, XXII:30 and n168
the flood, allegory, and, XV:27
two cities throughout, XV–XVIII
Holy Spirit
See also Trinity
the number seven and, XI:31 and n68
relation to Father and Son, X:23 and
n110; X:29 and n136; XIII:24
and sacred Scripture, XVI:2 and n17;
XVIII:38
and the Septuagint translation, XV:14
and n66
seven gifts of, XI:31 and n68
and will of God, IX:22 and n62
Homer, III:2; IV:26; 30; V:8; IX:1, 7;
XVIII:14 and n81; XXII:6
Iliad, XV:9; XVIII:16 and n84; XXI:8
homosexuality, VII:25 and n64
Honrorius, XVIII:54 and n286
hope:
happiness and, XIX:20
and reality, XIII:4 and n6; XV:18, 21;
XIX:1, 20
Horace, I:3; V:13
household: and miseries of social life,
XIX:5–6
household gods, I:3
Aeneas and, III:11; VI:2; X:16
human ingenuity, products of, XXII:24
and n31
humbankind; humanity; the human race,
XII:22(21), XIII:1
See also specific topics, e.g., creation;
fall
ages of, X:14 and n69; X:32
all human life on earth as trial,
XII:14–15
common condition of all, I:6 and n24;
III:14
and contamination by human contact,
IX:16–18
as created, and after the fall, XIII:14
creation of, XII:22(21)–24(23), 28(27);
XIV:1; XXII:1
education of, X:14–15
history of, three periods in, XXI:15
and n68
kinship through first parents,
XII:22(21), 28(27)
moral ages of man, XXI:15 and n68
natural state of, and first evil will,
XIV:11
origin of, XII:10–13 and n20
“rational mortals,” IX:13; XII:1 and n1; XVI:8 and n49
social character of, XII: summary, 28(27)
“the whole mass has been
cdemned,” XIV:26 and n122; XV:1, 21; XXI:12
two groups of, XIV:28; XV:1–2
human nature:
Greek philosophers and, II:7
Trinity in, XI:25–29
human person:
body as intrinsic to nature of, I:13 and n43
definition of, IX:13; XVI:8 and n49
human society. See society
humility, XIV:13–14
of Christ, IX:20–22
grace and, I: preface
pride and, X:28–29
hydromancy, VII:35
Iamblichus, VIII:12 and n54
Icarus, XVIII:13 and n115
ichthus, XVIII:23 and n115
idols; idol-worship, VII:23–25
of Jereboam, XVII:22
Idumeans, XV:8 and n33; XVI:35, 42
ignorance: role in human misery, XXII:22
and n109
Ilia, III:5 and n14
Iliad (Homer), XV:9; XVIII:16 and n84;
XXI:8
Ilium. See Troy
image of God, XII:24(23)
immorality, human
See also evil; sin
gods as supposedly divine authority
for, II:25
and perseverance in the Church/
participation in sacraments,
XXI:25
immortality
See also eternal life; resurrection of
the body
demons and, IX:9–11
earthly bodies and, XIII:16–18
immortal beings and ascending order
of created things, XI:16
immutability of God. See under God:
immutability of
impassibility, XIV:9 and n69
See also apatheia
incarnation. See under Jesus Christ:
incarnation of
incubi, XV:23 and n117
individuals: God as granting power to,
V:21–23
infants, XVI:43 and n188; XXI:16
See also original sin
infancy, meaning of word, XVI:43;
XXI:16 and n72
at the resurrection, XXII:14
and sin, XV:1 and n2
infinity; infinite things, XI:5; XII:18–20
iniquity, foreign, IV:14–17
inner man, XVI:2
Innocentius, XXII:8 and n33; XXII:22
and n114
intellect. See mind
intelligible things, X:9
light, intelligible, X:2
sensible, contrast with, VIII:6; IX:17
intercession of the saints, XXI:18, 24
intermediaries. See mediators
Iphigenia, XVIII:18 and n93
Irenaeus: and Adam and Eve as children,
XV:12 and n51
Isaac, I:21; XVI:25–28
See also Rebecca
birth and sacrifice of, XVI:31–33
blessing of, XVI:37 and n144
God’s promise to, XVI:36
kings at time of birth, XVIII:3
as symbolizing Christ, XVI:32 and
n125
twins born to, XVI:35
Ishmael, XVI:25–28
Ishis and Osiris, VI:10 and n41; VIII:26–27
and n105; X:11 and n61
Israel
See also under specific topics, e.g.,
kings
Canaan, land of, XVII:2
as earthly image of heavenly city,
XV:2
Jacob as, XVI:38–41
kingdom divided into Israel and Judah,
XVII: summary, 21
kings of, after Solomon, XVII:21–22
meanings for name, XVI:39 and n152;
XVII:13
substance of, XVII:10
Israelite kings, period of, XVIII:20
Jacob:
- angel who fought, XVI:39 and n151
- birth of, XVI:35
- blessing by Isaac of, XVI:37
- daughter of, XVI:40 and n159
- deceit by, XVI:37 and n142
- and Esau, V:4 and n13; XVI:35 and n135
- four women of, XVI:38
- as Israel, XVI:38–41
- and Joseph, XVI:38–42
- kings at time of, XVIII:3–4, 6
- the ladder, XVI:38
- seventy-five people coming to Egypt with, XVI:40 and n154

Janus, III:9 and n23; IV:11; VI:9 and n36; VII:2–3
- Jupiter and, VII:9–10
- naturalistic interpretation of, VII:7, 9–10
- temple of, III:14 and n59
- two faces of, VII:8

Jared, XV:13 and n56

Jereboam, XVII:22

Jeremiah, VIII:11 and n46; XVIII:33–34

Jerome, XIV:9 and n69; XV:11 and n44; XVI:15 and n71; XVIII: summary, 44 and n203

See also Vulgate; specific topics, e.g., Ogygus: flood of and the Hexapla, XV:14 and n65

Old Testament translation, XV:10 and n40

and Origen, XI:23 and n48

and Rufinus of Aquileia, XIX:5 and n19

Jerusalem, XVII:3, 16; XX:21

See also Temple, Solomon’s capture of, and destruction of Temple, XVIII:25

meaning of name, XIX:11 and n26

Jerusalem, the new, XX:17, 21

Jesus Christ
See also under Christ: the name; prophecy; Trinity: second person of; specific topics, e.g., justice

ascension of, XXII:5

birth of, XVIII:35 and n162; XVIII:46

Church’s love for, and belief in as divine, XXII:6–7

coming of, in fulfillment of prophecy, XVIII:46–49

death and resurrection of, XVII:17, 18; XXII:5–7, 15, 25

disasters affecting Rome prior to coming of, II:3

as God, XX:10

humility of, IX:20–22

incarnation of, IX:17; X:24–25, 29; XVII:11

as judge, XX:24, 30

life of, seeming contradictions in, XXII:5 and n9

as mediator, IX:15, 17; X:20, 24; XI:2

name of, XVII:18 and n106

passion of, XVII:17; XVIII:49 and n243

as perfect man, XXII:18

as physician/healer, V:14 and n56

priesthood of, X:3; XVII:17; XX:10

as principle, X:24

prophetic anticipation of, XVII:8–13 redemption effected by, VII:31

as sacrifice, X:20

as servant, X:20

as substance of Israel, XVII:10

Sibylline prophecies of, XVIII:23

“three incredible things,” XXII:5

Jews; the Jewish people, V:18; X:28; XVII:11 and n72

See also individual names; specific events; specific topics, e.g., priesthood

captivity, end of, XVIII:26

cconversion of, XX:29

dispersion of, XVIII:46

e and Elijah, coming of, XX:29

and the heavenly city, XVIII:47

history of, after the end of prophecy, XVIII:45

Jacob and Esau and, XVI:35 and n135

kingdom of, IV:34

as named for Judah, XV:8

other ancient races, XVIII:47–50

as people of God, XVIII:47 and n229

Seneca on, VI:11

unbelief of, XVII:19

and “You killed Christ” accusation, XX:30 and n125

Johannine Comma, V:11, n27

John of Lycopolis, V:26 and n103

Joseph:
The City of God

Jacob and, XVI:38–42
kings at time of, XVIII:4, 7
two sons of, XVI:42
Jovian, IV:29 and n112; V:25 and n100
joy, XII:1 and n4
See also happiness; passions
Judah, tribe/kingdom of, XV:15; XVII:3; XVIII:6, 22–33 passim, 38, 45–46
Israelite kingdom divided into Israel and Judah, XVII: summary, 21
kings of, XVII:21, 23; XVIII:22, 27
restoration of, XVII:23
sacrifice of, XX:25–26
Judah (son of Jacob), XV:15
blessing promised by Jacob to, XVI:41
Jews as named for, XV:8
Judas Iscariot, XVIII:49 and n241
suicide of, I:16
judgment, divine. See under God:
judgment of
judgment, human: mistakes of, XIX:6
judgment, last, I:8; XX passim
and the book of life, XX:14–16
Christ as judge, XX:24, 30
events of, XX:30
intermingling of righteous and unrighteous until, I:35 and n97
Scripture referring to/foretelling, XX:3–30
and the second resurrection, XX:14–16
separate ends of the good and the evil, XX:21–22, 27; XXI:1
Judgment of Paris. See under Paris:
Judgment of
Julian “the Apostate,” IV:29 and n111; V:21 and nn88–89; V:25; XVIII:52 and n251
Juno, I:3–4; V:12; VI:7; VII:2–3, 16, 24, 28
See also Capitol at Rome; Fever air as province of, X:21 and n100
geese sacred to, II:22 and n77; II:29; III:8
and heroes, the term, X:21
Judgment of Paris, III:25; IV:27 and n106; VII:15 and n42
and Jupiter, III:13; IV:10–11; VII:3, 11, 16, 24, 28
rites of, VI:7
and the Sabine women, III:13
sanctuary in Troy, I:4
and Venus, VII:15
Jupiter, IV:9; VII:2; X:13
See also Capitol Hill
“the Best and Greatest,” II:7, 12 and n30; III:17 and n90
and Danae, II:7 and n13; XVIII:13 and n78
and the elements of the universe, IV:9–10
and Europa, IV:27 and n107
as father and mother, VII:16
and Ganymede, IV:25 and n99; VII:26; XVIII:13 and n77
and Janus, VII:9–10
and Juno, III:13; IV:10–11; VII:3, 11, 16, 24, 28
and Leda, IV:27 and n107; VIII:5 and n23
and Liber, VIII:5 and n23
Mars, Terminus, and Juventas refusing to make way for, IV:23 and n96; IV:29
and Minerva, IV:10 and n34
naturalistic interpretation of, VII:9–10
as the one god in all, IV:11
and other select gods, VII:13
Pecunia, VII:12 and n37
Roman Empire and, IV:9, 14
“Stayer,” III:13 and n50
“the Thunderer,” VII:9 and n31
titles and tasks of, VII:11–12 and n34
and Victory, IV:14, 17
why not worship?, IV:11
and the world soul, IV:11; VII:14
justice
See also cardinal virtues; God:
judgment of
faith and, IV:20 and n78; XX:26 and n106
God’s, and divine mercy, XIX:24–27
God’s, as inscrutable, XX:2–3
God’s, as magnificent, XX:27–29
kingdoms without, IV:4
republic, as necessary to, II:21; XIX:21
right and, XIX:21 and n74
of the Romans, II:17
and Scipio’s definition of a republic, II:21
and soul, three-part division of, XIV:19 and n107
true, II:21; XIX:21

Volume I/6 & I/7
and the true God (against Porphyry), XIX:21–23
as virtue, XIX:4
Justin Martyr, VIII:11, nn46–47; XVIII:32, n149
Justinus, Marcus Junianus, IV:6 and n13
just war. See under war: just
Juventas, IV:11, 29

Keturah, XVI:28 and n112
Abraham’s marriage to, XVI:34
killing: murder and, I:20–21
kingdom of heaven. See heaven

kingdoms, earthly:
God as granting power to, V:21–23
gods at the time of Moses, XVIII:8
gods in the period of the Judges,
XVIII:13–15
gods of, from Abraham to Exodus,
XVIII:2–7
as granted to both good and bad rulers,
V:21–23
Israelite kings, period of, XVIII:20
as not due to chance/fate, V:1
the one true God as giving, IV:33–34
rise and fall of, IV:7
without justice, IV:4
kings, V:12 and n34; XVIII passim
See also individual names; specific
locations
from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
deaths of, III:15
from Exodus to death of Joshua,
XVIII:11–12
expulsion of, III:16–18
Israelite, XVIII:20
kingship, transformation of (Saul and
Samuel), XVII:4, 6–7
period of, XVI:43
Rome liberated from, XVII:26
unjust, tyrants, II:21
kinship relations
See also lines of descent; individual
names, e.g., Noah
of human beings through first parents,
XII:22(21), 28(27)
“kinsfolk,” XVI:19 and n80
and landed property, XVI:20 and n83
polygamy and, XV:16
knowledge
See also wisdom

of angels, IX:21–22 and nn56, 61;
XI:7, 29–31
demons and, IX:20–22 and n55
divine, XII:18(17)–20(19)
and existence, XI:27–28
forms of, and days of creation, XI:7–8
God’s, XI:21; XII:19(18)
knowing God, XI:2; XXII:2
Labdon, XVIII:19
Labeo, Cornelius, II:11 and n26; IX:19
and faith in the resurrection, XXII:28
on gods, good or bad, II:14; III:25;
VIII:13
Labyrinth, XVIII:13 and n74
lamb, paschal, XVI:43 and n176
Lamech, XV:8 and n31; XV:10–11, 13,
17, 20–21
landed property, XVI:20 and n83
languages
See also specific languages, e.g.,
Hebrew language
human, diversity of, XVI:4–7
people as divided by, XIX:7
Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and n3
Larentina/Larentia/Larenta, VI:7 and n19
larvae, IX:11 and n32
last judgment. See judgment, last
Latin language, XX:23 and n85
Latium, kings of, XVIII:20
latreia, VII:32; X:1, 3; XIX:17
Laurentines, XVIII:15
Lavinium, III:11 and n35; III:14; VII:21
and n55
the palladium, III:18 and n115
law
See also Old Testament
authority of, X:17
giving of, X:14–15
old, significance of sacrifices
commanded under, X:5–7
spiritual sense of, XX:27–29
lectisternia, Roman ceremony of, III:17
Leda, IV:27 and n107; VIII:5 and n23
lemures, IX:11 and n32
Levites, XX:21 and n76
libel, Roman law against. See Twelve
Tables
Liber, VI:9 and n26; VII:5 and n23
rites of, VII:20–21 and n55
liberal disciplines. See under education:
liberal disciplines

The City of God
Liber Pater, VII:2
lies. See lying
life, XII:1 and n4
See also existence: good life
all human life on earth as trial,
XXI:14–15
evils of, XXII:22
goods of, XXII:24
living and existing, VIII:6 and n29;
XV:5, 7
long life as same as short one, I:11;
XIII:10
style of, XIX:18–20
life, book of, XX:14–16
life, eternal. See eternal life
lifespan. See age
light:
angels as, XI:33
God as separating from darkness,
XI:19–20
intelligible, X:2
lines of descent:
from Cain and Seth down to the flood,
XV:17–20
of monstrous races, XVI:8–9
sexual maturity and, XV:15
from Shem, XVI:9–10
of the sons of Noah, XVI:3
two, the two cities as represented in,
XV:21
the two cities in lines of descent from
Cain and Seth, XV:8
Linus, XVIII:14 and n81; XVIII:37
liturgy, II:19 and n59, 28 and n96
eucharistic, XIV:13 and n81; XX:9
and n32
liturgical and devotional life in
Augustine’s day, XXII:8 and
n63
Livy (Titus Livius), II:24; III:7
logic. See rational philosophy
Logos. See Word of God
longevity. See age
Lord:
day of the Lord, XX:19
the title, XII:16(15) and n29; XVII:8
and n65
Lord’s Prayer, XXI:22 and n84; XXI:27
Lot, X:8; XVI:19–20 and n80; XVI
29–30
escape from Sodom, XVI:30
rescue of, XVI:22
love, XIV:7
See also charity
action, XV:22
to cherish, XIV:7
for the creator, XV:22
desire, XIV:7
for God, X:3
God as, XI:28; XII:1
God’s great, VII:31
for neighbors/others, XIX:14 and
nn41–42
passions and, XIV:6–8
right order in, XI:28; XV:22
Scriptural terms for, XIV:7
two loves as having made two cities,
XIV: summary, 28
and the will, XIV:6–8
Lucifer (morning star), XXI:8 and n35
Lucretia, I:19–22 and n59; II:17; III:15
Luna, VII:2
Luperci, XVIII:12 and n62; XVIII:17 and
n87
lust, I:9, 16; IV:8; VI:9; VII:24; IX:6;
XIV:7, 15
See also desire; procreation
anger and, XIV:19
fear that someone else’s lust may bring
defilement., I:18–19, 25, 28
and involuntary/guiltless arousal, I:25;
XIV:23–26
Platonists re., XIV:19
and power of will over body, XIV:24
sense of shame and, XIV:16–20, 26;
XV:16
soul, three-part division of, XIV:19
and n107
luxury, cultivation of, III:21
Lycurgus, II:16; X:13
Lydia, IV:6; XVI:17; XVIII:2
lying:
Jacob and, XVI:37 and n142
Sarah as Abraham’s “sister,” XVI:19
and n79; XVI:30
Maccabees (brothers and mother),
XVIII:36 and n169
magic arts, IV:34; VIII:16, 18–20; IX:1;
X:8–9, 16 and n75; X:18; XXI:6, 8
See also sorcery
Apuleius and, VIII:18–19 and nn84–85
The City of God

Volume I/6 & I/7

demons and, VIII:19
Porphyry and, X:11, 26
Magog (Gog and), XX:11
Mamre:
  Abraham’s vision at, XVI:22–24
  God’s appearance at, XVI:29–30
man
  See also Adam; humankind
  Christ as perfect, XXI:18
  complete manhood, XXI:18
  God’s creation of human race from one, XII:22(21)–24(23), 28(27)
  inner, XVI:2
  the name Enosh as meaning, XV:21 and n107
  (or self), living according to, XIV: summary, 4
  woman as made from, XII:22(21); XXII:17
man, city of. See city of man
Manasseh, XVIII:24 and n121
manes, VIII:26 and n100; IX:11 and n32
Manicheans, I:20 and n64; VI:11
  body and soul, view of, XIV:5
  evil nature, belief in, XI:22 and n45
  Faustus the Manichean, XVII:1
Manlius Vulso, Gnaeus, III:21 and n124
Marcellinus, I:1 and n3; II:1
Marius, Gaius, II:22–24 and nn73–74, n79; III:7; V:21
  See also Fimbria
  and pagan gods, capriciousness of, I:8 and n26; II:23
  and Sulla (civil wars), II:23–24 and n83; III:27–30; V:26
marriage
  See also polygamy
  of Adam and Eve, XIV:10 and n72
  chastity, marital, XV:26
  day for, selecting (“auspicious” days), V:7
  God’s gift of, XIV:22
  laws of, XV:16
  mind and flesh as symbolizing, XV:7 and n24
  purpose of, XIV:18 and n104; XIV:23 and n113
  Romans’ first rights of, III:13
  second marriages, XVI:34 and n130
  and sexual pleasure, XXI:26 and n108
sibling marriage, XV:16 and n74
virginity vs., I:9 and n29; XVI:36
  as “weaker” life, I:9
Mars, IV:11, 21, 23, 34; V:17, 22; VI:10; VII:2–3; IX:7
  and Jupiter, IV:23, 29
  and Mercury, VII:14–15
  omen of, IV:29
  and Romulus, II:15, 17 and n48; III:3, 5 and n14
  and Venus, IV:10 and n46
Martialis, XXI:8 and n55
  martyrs; martyrdom, VIII:27; XIII:7–8; XXII:6 and n24
  See also saints
  Christians as not worshiping, VIII:27
  demons, persecution, and, X:21–22
  and divinity, XXII:10 and n66
  Eleazar and the Maccabees, XVIII:36 and n169
  Gervasius and Protasius, XV:9 and n37; XXII:8
  memorial shrines of, VIII:26
  saints and, XXII:9 and n65
  as substitute for water baptism, XIII:7–8 and n10
  the Twenty Martyrs, XXI:8 and n50
  witness of/miracles performed in name of, XXII:9–10
  the word “martyr,” X:32 and n150; XXII:9 and n64
marvels (oddities). See oddities
Mary: virginity before, during, and after childbirth, XXII:8 and n61
massa: “the whole mass has been condemned,” XIV:26 and n122; XV:1, 21; XXI:12
Massagetae, XX:11 and n40
mass production, VII:4 and n20
material goods. See possessions
Maximus, Maximus, Magnus, V:26 and n101
Maximus (former Donatist bishop), XXII:8 and n47
mediator; mediators
  See also under specific topics, e.g.,
  demons: mediating between gods and humans
  Christ as one true, IX:15, 17; X:20, 24; XI:2
faith and, XI:2–3
  good and evil, IX:15
and Scripture, authority of, XI:2–3
Melchizedek, XVII:5 and n89; XVII:17, 20; XVIII:35; XX:21
blessing of, XVI:22 and n89
Christ as priest after order of, XX:10
Melito of Sardis, XVII:5 and n42
Menelaus, III:3 and n11; IV:27 and n106
Mercury, IV:11; VII:2, 19 and n50; VII:26–27
and Mars, VII:14–15
the name, VII:14 and n40
mercy, divine:
the all to whom God is merciful, XXI:24
for both good and bad people, I:8–9 and n26
divine justice and, XXI:24–27
and eternal punishment, XXI:17–22
mercies of old, XVII:12
and repentance, I:8
and Rome’s destruction, I:34
will he hold back his mercies in anger?, XXI:24
mercy, works of. See works of mercy
metamorphosis, of humans into animals, XVII:16–19
Metellus (Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus), II:23 and n81; III:18 and n116; VI:2
and pagan gods, capriciousness of, I:8 and n26; II:23
Methuselah, XV:10–11 and n44; XV:13 and n58; XV:17, 20
Millenarianism, XX:7 and n18
mind, VII:23, 30; IX:6 and n23
as better than anything but God himself, XI:2 and n2
demons as subject to passions, IX:6
disturbances of, IX:4–5; XIV:9
masculine as symbolizing, XIV:22 and n113; XV:7 and n24
and reason, VII:31 and n74
Minerva, I:2 and n10; III:7–8; IV:10–11
and n34; VII:2–3, 15–16, 28
See also Capitol at Rome
Homer’s, IX:7
the Judgment of Paris, IV:27 and n106
and naming of Athens, XVIII:10 and n53
Minotaur, XVIII:13 and n68
miracles
See also oddities
angels, as performed through, X:8, 12, 16–18
ark of testimony, miracles associated with, X:17–18
demons and, XXII:10
in Hippo, XXII:8 and n63
magic arts, attributed to, XXI:6, 8
martyrs as performing, in Christ’s name, XXII:9–10
of the present, XXII:8 and n31
no rational account for, XXI:5
and sacrifice to God alone, X:8
“three incredible things,” XXII:5–7
visible, X:12–13
and visions, X:8 and n40
the world as, XXI:9
“mirror for princes,” V:24 and n97
misery, human, XIX:4–10; XXII:22
human actions, XXII:22 and n31
role of ignorance and desire in, XXII:22 and n109
Mithridates VI; Mithridatic Wars, II:24 and n87; III:22; V:22
massacre of Romans under, III:21–22
Mizraim, XVI:11 and n64
See also Egypt
modesty, XIV:20 and n108
See also shame
monks, XV:20 and n96
monophysitism, X:27 and n129
“monstrous races,” XVI:8–9
moon, VII:15–16 and n41, 45
moral guidance/teaching:
failure of gods to provide, II:4–6
secret, provided by gods, II:26–27
morality, Roman, II:18–20
moral philosophy, VIII:4; XI:25
Platonists and, VIII:8
moral purity, I:16–18
Moses, X:8
earthly kingdoms and their gods at the time of, XVIII:8
law as given to, XVIII:39 and n186
from Moses to David, XVI:43
as Pentateuch author, XVIII:37 and n175
Moses, law of. See law
“mother of the gods.” See Great Mother
Mucius (Gaius Mucius Scaevola). See Scaevola, Gaius Mucius
mules, XV:27 and n154
murder, I:20–21
all killing as not, I:21
ritual, Christians accused of, XVIII:53
and n70
Musaeus, XVIII:14 and n81; XVIII:37
music: and order, XVII:14 and n87
mystery
See also telea: specific mysteries, e.g.,
redemption
“a great mystery,” XVII:6 and n44
sacrament as, XVIII:49 and n242
theurgic consecrations, X:9 and n55
the upright, mystery within, XVI:2
mythical theology, VI:6–7
as not holding promise of eternal life,
VI:12
Nahor, XVI:13
Nathan, XVII:3, 8, 12; XVIII:38 and n184
naturalists; natural philosophy, VII:27–29;
VIII:1, 4; XI:25
Platonists and, VIII:6
Varro and, VII:28
natural wonders. See oddities
nature:
earthly city as born of, XV:2–3
wonders of, XXII:24 and n31
natures, V:9; VII:9, 30; VIII:3–4, 14, 26;
IX:12
as good in themselves, XI:17; XII:1–5
nature and properties, XXI:8
necromancy, VII:35
neighbors:
angels as, X:9 and n24
love for, X:14 and n41–42
Neoplatonists, VIII:4, n18; VIII:12, n54
See also Platonists; Plotinus; Porphyry
Chaldean Oracles, X:23, 27 and n127
“good gods” of, VIII:24 and n97;
IX:23
objection against, X:29 and n137
and the Trinity, XI:29
Neptune, IV:10–11, 34; VI:10; VII:2, 8,
16, 23, 28
and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and n3
wives of, VII:22
Nero, V:19
Antichrist, as thought to be, XX:19
and n57
persecution of, XVIII:52 and n259
New Academy. See under Academy
New Testament, IV:33; V:18; X:1 and
n13; X:23, 32
See also covenants; Scripture
and Old Testament, distinction
between, X:25
Old Testament citations in the, XV:14
and n67; XVIII:42–44
as revealed form of Old Testament,
XVI:26
translators, from Greek into Latin, X:1
and n13
Nigidius (Publius Nigidius Figulus), V:3
Nile River, XVI:24
Nimrod, XVI:3–4, 11
Ninevah, XVI:3 and n21
destruction of, XVIII:44
Ninus, IV:6–7 and n14; XVI:3 and n21,
17; XVIII:2
ambition of, IV:6
Noah, XVIII:38
and the ark, XV:24–27
generations of the sons of, XVI:3
and his sons, prophetic significance of,
XVI:1–2
as image of Christ in his passion,
XV:27 and n9
line of descent, XV:20
and “monstrous races,” XVI:8–9
North Africa. See Africa; Hippo Regius;
Hippo Zarithus
Novatianists, XVI:34 and n130
Numantia, III:21
Numitor, III:5 and n14
nuns, XV:20 and n96
objections: limits on discussion of, II:1
Ocean, XVI:9 and n53
odds, III:31 and n149; XIV:24 and
n119; XV:9, 23; XVI:7–9 and
n45; XVIII:18; XXI:4–8
See also miracles
Oedipus, XVIII:13 and n75
Ogygus, King, X:18 and n34
flood of, XVIII:8
Old Academy. See under Academy
Old Testament, IV:33; X:15, 25
See also covenants; law; Scripture
The City of God

Volume I/6 & I/7
passions, XIV: summary, 8

See also emotions
Apuleius on, IX:3–4
in the city of God/of Christians, XIV:9–10
demons as subject to, IX:6–8
philosophic views of, IX:4–5
Scripture on, IX:5
virtue, as training in, IX:5
the will, love, and, XIV:6–8

Passover, III:15

Paterfamilias, XIX:16 and n56
patience, I:8

patricians: conflict with plebeians, III:17

Paul, the Apostle, XIV:9 and n44
See also Hebrews, Epistle to; specific topics, e.g., spiritual body
on coming of Antichrist, XX:19
on resurrection of the dead, XX:20

Paul of Samosata, XIX:23, n85

Paulinus of Nola, I:1 and n5; I:10 and n34
peace, III:9–11
and the city of God, XIX:26–27
definition of, XIX:13 and n36
earthly, XIX:14, 26–27
 eternal, XIX:14, 17
meanings of, XIX:11; XX:21
of Numa’s reign, III:9–11
and order, XIX:12–13 and n34
origin of, XIX:17
place and, XIX:12 and n35
promised, XVII:13
universal desire for, XIX:12

Pecunia (Pecunius), IV:21; VII:11 and n37
Pegasus, XVIII:13 and n72
Pelagia, I:26 and n80
Pelagianism, XIV:9 and n69
Peleg, XVI:3, 10–11

Penance, sacrament of. See reconciliation, sacrament of

Pentateuch, XVIII:37 and n175
Pentecost, IV:31 and n123
people, a: defining, XIX:24–25
Pericles, II:9 and n20
Peripatetics, IX:4 and n9; XIX:4 and n15
perjury, Laomedon’s, III:2

persecutions:
of the Church, XVIII:50–53
demons, persecution, and the martyrs, X:21–22
final, time of, XVIII:53
the last, XX:11–13
ten persecutions, XVIII:52 and n253

Persephone. See Proserpina
Perseus, III:11 and n32; XVIII:13 and n78
Pessinus, III:12 and n39

Peter, the Apostle:
on the destruction of this world, XX:18
sorcery, supposed act of, XVIII:53–54;
XXII:25

philosophy/philosophers, VI–X; VIII:1–2
and n1; XI:4 and n11

See also individual philosophers; specific philosophies; specific topics, e.g., cycles of time
on good of the body good of the soul
of both, VIII:8 and n39;
XIX:2
the great, VIII:2 and n4

Hebrew prophets and, VIII:11;
XVIII:37 and n171
and human nature, II:7
Italian and Ionian schools of, VIII:2
as lacking divine authority, II:7

natural, rational, and moral parts of,
VIII:4 and n21; XI:25
“philosophy,” the word, VIII:2

platonian division of, VIII:4

Plato’s predecessors, VIII:2
superiority of divine wisdom over,
XVIII:41
“those who wear the philosopher’s cloak,” XIII:16 and n25
three parts of, VIII:4; XI:25

and the Trinity, VIII:4 and n21
and truth, II:7
two types of, VIII:2

“would-be philosophers,” II:27 and n92

Phoebus. See Apollo
Photinus; Photinianism, XIX:23 and n85
Phryxus, XVIII:13 and n71
Picus, XVIII:15
piety, IV:23; X:1
pigeon, XVI:43 and n191
pirates, III:26; IV:4; V:22 and n90
place: and peace, XIX:12 and n35
plagues, III:16–18
ten, XVIII:52 and n253

Plato, II:7, 14; VIII:11–12 and nn46–47
See also Platonists, below
as above pagan gods, II:7, 14

The City of God
The City of God

Aristotle and, VIII:12 and n52; IX:4 and n9
body, self-contradiction in view of, XIII:19–20
on celestial bodies, XXII:26
in Christian literature, VIII:12 and n52
corrections of, X:30
on the corruptible body, XIII:16;
XXII:26
on creation, XI:21–22; XII:25
demi-gods, as ranked among, II:14;
VIII:13
Plotinus and, IX:10 and n30
and Porphyry, contradictions between,
XXII:26–28
predecessors of, VIII:2
Scriptures, familiarity with, VIII:11;
XI:21
and Socrates, VIII:4
on the soul, I:22 and n69; XII:12
soul, three-part division of, XIV:19
and n107
style of, XXII:28
Timaeus, XII:16 and n22; XXII:26
Platonists, VIII–XI passim
See also Neoplatonists; Plato; specific
topics, e.g., body
body and soul, view of, XIV:5
Christianity, closeness to, VIII:9–12
and Christ’s incarnation, X:29
re. contact between men and gods, IX:16
on demons, VII:14–18; IX:7, 11–12
on happiness, X:1
and moral philosophy, VIII:8
and natural philosophy, VIII:6
Plato and, VIII:4 and n18
and polytheism, VIII:12
on punishment after death, XXI:3
and rational philosophy/logic, VIII:7
on resurrection of the body, XXII:11
on souls, IX:11; X:31
superiority/greater wisdom of, VIII:5–8;
X:14, 17
pleasure, XIV:15
bodily, XIX:1
and virtue, proper end of, V:20
plebeians: conflict with patricians, III:17
Pliny the Elder, XV:9, 12 and n.51; 27, n153; XVI:8, n45; XXI:2, n2;
XXI:4, nn8, 10; XXII:28, n149
Plotinus, VIII:12 and n54; IX:17; X:2, 16, 30
See also Neoplatonists
on men and demons, IX:10
Plato, understanding of, IX:10 and n30
on providence, X:14
soul, immobility of, XIV:15 and n95;
XXI:3
on the Trinity, X:23
on vision of God, X:16
Pluto, II:15; IV:10–11; VI:7; VII:28
See also Dis Pater; Orcus
pneuma, XIII:24
poets, X:24
poets:
   fables of, II:8
   the Greeks and Romans on, I:9–13
   Plato on, I:14–16
   slanders of the gods, poets’, IX:7
   theological, XVIII:14, 25, 37
polygamy, XVI: summary
   and kinship relations, XV:16
polytheism, VIII:13
See also pagan gods
Platonists and, VIII:12
of Rome, I–V
Pompey the Great, V:22, 25
Caesar, war with, III:13, 30
Pompilius. See Numa Pompius
Porphyry, VIII:12 and n54; X: summary,
9–32; XX:24; XXII:3, 25
See also Neoplatonists
Anebo, letter to, X:11
on angels and the theurgic arts,
X:26–27
Apuleius, compared to, X:27
on Christ and God of the Hebrews,
XIX:23 and n80
on cyclical theories, XII:21
on eternal life, XIII:19
failure to recognize the truth, X:28–29
inconsistency of, X:9, 26
against (justice and the true God), XIX:21–23
Philosophy from Oracles, XIX:23 and
n82

Volume I/6 & I/7
Plato, corrections of, X:30
and Plato, contradictions between,
XXII:26–28
on the soul, X:29–32; XII:21(20),
27(26); XIII:16–17, 19;
XXII:12, 26
liberation of, X:32
as needing to flee from all bodies to
attain happiness with God,
X:29 and n139; XII:27(26);
XIII:17
principles and purification of,
X:9–10, 23–24
on theurgy, X:9–10, 26–27
and universal way of salvation/soul’s
liberation, X:32
portents (pagan), III:11, 23; IV:23
Poseidon, XVIII:13 and n76
Posidonius, V:2 and n9; V:5
possessions (material goods)
See also riches
eternal and temporal, X:25 and n120
loss of, I:10–13
Possidius, bishop of Calama, XIV:24 and
n120; XXII:8 and n54
Postumius, II:24 and n86
poverty:
advantages of, IV:3 and n8
pagan Roman, V:18 and n70
voluntary, XVIII:54 and n276
power
See also authority; domination; empire
of God, X:28 and n133; XX:7–8
God as granting both to kingdoms and
individuals, V:21–23
of men of God, X:22
praise: lust for, V:13–14, 18
prayer:
Church, prayers of, XXI:24
eucharistic, memorializing saints in,
XXII:10 and n68
the Lord’s Prayer, XXI:22 and n84;
XXI:27
predestination:
Augustine’s doctrine of, XV:21 and
n110
double, XV:1 and n2; XXII:24
presbyters, XX:10 and n36
Priam: and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and
n3
Priapus, II:14 and n36; IV:11 and n65;
IV:23, 34; VI:7, 9; VII:24 and n60
pride, XIV:13–14
See also vainglory
Christian, antidote to, V:17–18
and humility, X:28–29
and sin, XIV:13 and n80
priests; priesthood, XX:10 and n36
of Christ, X:3; XVII:17; XX:10
Christ as priest after order of
Melchizedek, XX:10
and Levites, XX:21 and n76
transformation of (prophecy to Eli),
XVII:5–6
principle, Christ as, X:24
Proclus, XXII:6 and n27
procreation, human:
between the fall, XIV:21–23, 26
lust and, XIV:21; XV:16
as purpose of marriage, XIV:18 and
n104; XIV:22 and n113
prodigies (strange occurrences), III:31;
XIV:24; XXI:4–5
See also oddities
Prometheus, XVIII:8 and nn36, 43;
XVIII:39
promises, divine
See also under individual names, e.g.,
Abraham: God’s promises to
and earthly Jerusalem, XVII:10
will of God and fulfillment of,
XXII:2–3
promises of demons, IX:18
property, landed, XVI:20 and n83
prophecies of Christ and the Church:
in apocrypha, XVII:20
Christ’s coming, in fulfillment of
prophecy, XVIII:46–49
David and Solomon, XVII:8–13
David (Psalms), XVII:14–19
Old Testament, XV:6
Old Testament prophets, XVIII:27–35
Solomon, XVII:20
Sibylline prophecy, XVIII:23
Virgil, X:27
prophecy, II:25; IV:34; VIII:16
antiquity of prophetic wisdom,
XVIII:37–40
to Eli, XVII:5–6
of Hannah, mother of Samuel, XVII:4
Jewish history after the end of,
XVIII:45
and predictions, X:32
Scripture, prophetic witness of, VII:32

The City of God
after Solomon, XVII:21–24
three types of, XVII: summary, 3–4
prophets, XVII:24
age of, XVII:1–3
and the Greek philosophers, VIII:11; XVIII:37 and n171
Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi, and Esdras, XVIII:35–36
Hosea, Amos, Isaiah, Micah, Jonah, and Joel, XVIII:27–30
Jeremiah and Zephaniah, XVIII:33–34
“minor,” the twelve, XVIII:27 and n131; XVIII:29
Obadiah, Nahum, and Habakkuk, XVIII:31–32
proportion. See under beauty: role of proportion in
Proserpina, IV:8, 10–11; VI:7; VII:20 and n54; VII:23–24, 28
prosperity. See riches
prostitution, II:20; IV:10; VI:7; VII:21, 27; XIV:18; XVIII:21; XXI:26
Proteus, X:11 and n58
providence, divine, I:8; X:14–15
all as governed by, V:11
angels and, X:15
and beauty of the universe, XI:18
Plotinus on, X:14
and the Roman Empire, V:21–22
prudence, XIX:4
See also cardinal virtues
Psalms, XVII:14–19
authorship of, XVII:14 and n90; XVII:20 and n111
on death and resurrection of Christ, XVII:18
on end of the world and Christ’s coming as judge, XX:24
Expositions of the Psalms (Augustine), XVII:15 and n93
prayer, use in, XX:21 and n74
Ptolemy, XV:14 and n59
Pulvillus, Marcus, V:18 and n68
Punic Wars, III:16–22
First Punic War, III:9, 18; V:22
Second Punic War, II:18; III:17
destruction of Saguntum, III:20
end of, II:9 and n18
Hannibal, III:19
Third Punic War, V:22 and n91
punishment
See also eternal punishment; judgment, last
death as, XIII:3–6
fire as punishment for evil spirits, XXI:10
the first, XIII:13
of first sin, XIV:15
physical, meted out to schoolchildren, XXII:22 and n112
prescribed by law, XXI:11 and n53
purgatory; purgatorial punishment, XX:25; XXI:13–14, 26 and n105
See also under fire: salvation through purification
See also under soul: purification of Christ as true principle of our, X:24
of men of God, X:22
of Neoplatonists (Porphyry), and true, X:23–24
purity
See also chastity
moral, I:16–18
worship of select gods as not bringing, VII:26–27
Pyrrhus, III:17 and n105; V:18 and n73
Pythagoras, VI:5 and n15; VII:35; VIII:2–4, 9; XVIII:25
Quies, IV:16 and n70
quindecimviri, VI:3 and n13
Quirinus, II:15 and n41
Radagaisus, V:23 and n96
ram, XVI:24
three-year-old, XVI:43
rape, I:16–22
of Sabine women, II:17 and n47; III:13
and suicide, I:17, 19–22, 26; II:2 and n2
and the victim’s character, I:16, 18
why God allows it, I:28
“rational mortals,” IX:13; XII:1 and n1; XVI:8 and n49
rational philosophy/logic, VIII:4; XI:25
Platonists and, VIII:7
rational souls
See also mind
three-part division of, XIV:19 and n107
realism: hope and, XIII:4 and n6; XV:18, 21; XIX:1, 20
sacraments and, XXI:20 and n80; XXI:25
reason:
as attributed to demons, IX:3
mind and, VII:31 and n74
Rebecca:
beauty of, XVI:36
marrying Isaac, XVI:33
twins of, XVI:35
reconciliation, sacrament of, XX:9 and n33; XXI:25
redemption:
effectively by Jesus Christ, VII:31
mystery of, VII:32; XV:7 and n17; XV:17
refiguratum, VIII:27, n109
regeneration, sacrament of. See baptism
Regulus, Marcus Attilius, II:23; III:18, 20; IV:18
fortitude of, I:24
his loyalty to his gods, I:15 and n53; II:23
and pagan gods, capriciousness of, I:8 and n26; II:23
reincarnation, XII:21(20)
religion, X:3 and n27
See also Christianity
Egyptian, VIII:23–24
false, advantage to civil rulers, IV:32
Roman, Varro and his work on, VI:2–4
the term, X:1
vs. superstition (Varro), VI:9
religious celibates, XV:20 and n96
religious terms, X:1
religious women, XXII:8 and n49
reliquaries, XXII:8 and n46
Remus. See under Romulus: and Remus
repentance: and God's mercy, I:8
republic, II:21; V:18; XIX: summary
Cicero on, II:21; XIX: summary
evils internal to, III:23–26
the gods' failure to save, II:22
nature of, XIX:21, 24–25
Scipio's definition of, II:21; XIX:21
Restitutus, XIV:24 and n120
restoration, doctrine of (Origen), XXI:17 and n76
"resurrection": name Seth as meaning,
XV:21 and n107
resurrection, the second, XX: summary,
5–6, 9, 14, 14
resurrection of Christ, XVII:18
miracle of world's belief in, XXII:5–7, 25
"three incredible things," XXII:5
resurrection of the body, XIII passim;
XX:14; XXII
and aborted fetuses, XXII:12–13
all will be made alive in Christ,
XIII:23
and Christ's resurrection ("conformed
to the Son of God"), XXII:15
Daniel on, XX:23
and deformities, XXII:12 and n78
deniers of, XXII:25
eternity (immortality), IX:9–11; 17;
X:29; XIII:16–18
faith in, XIII:18; XXII:11–21 and n102; XXII:30
first and second, XX:5–8, 14–16
heaven, earthly bodies and, XIII:
summary, 18; XXII:4, 11
infants and, XXII:14
as intrinsic to nature of human being,
I:13 and n43
Isaiah on, XX:21
John's Gospel, testimonies from,
XX:5–6
Matthew's Gospel, testimonies from,
XX:5
objections, reply to, XXII:4, 25–28
pagans as mocking belief in, XXII:12
Paul on, XX:20
possibility of, XXII:11
response to questions regarding,
XXII:13, 19–21
the resurrected body, XIII:20, 22–23;
XXII:12–13, 18–21
Revelation, testimonies from, XX:7–8
some to eternal life and some to
disgrace and eternal shame,
XX:21–25; XXII:3
the soul and, XX:10
view that earthly bodies cannot be in
heaven, XIII:18
women's bodies, resurrection of,
XXII:17
retribution. See punishment
Rhinocorura (or Rhinocolura), XVI:24
and n98
The City of God

Riches, II:20
desire for/possession of, I:10 and n33
loss of, I:10
perils of unfettered, I:30–31
right: and justice, XIX:21 and n74

Righteous, struggles of: battle against the vices, XXII:23
rites, pagan. See under paganism
rites, sacred, II:4; VI:7
natural interpretation of, VI:8
ritual murder: Christians accused of, XVIII:53 and n270
River, the, XVII:8 and n64
Romans, XIX:24
extravagance of, I:30–31
love of glory, V:12
morality/moral character of, II:17–20; V:12, 15–16
natural “justice and goodness” of, II:17
temporal reward granted by God to, V:15
Rome, II–III passim
See also empire; kingdoms; specific topics, e.g., pagan gods
Alba, war with, III:14 and n53
as antidote to Christian pride, V:17–18
“conquered gods” of, I:2–3
corruption, and lust for domination, I:30–31
development of, IV
disasters acting, prior to coming of Christ, II:3
earthly city, as example of, XVIII:2, 27
empire, expansion of, IV: summary, 2–3, 8
despair, II:29
false gods, exhortation to abandon, II:29
found of, III:6; XV:5; XVIII:21–22, 27
geese as saving from Gauls, II:22 and n77; III:8
God’s providence and, V passim
greatness of, neither chance nor fate as causing, V:1
history of, V
household gods as not protecting, I:3
and justice, II:21; IV; XIX:21
liberation from domination of kings, XVIII:26
massacre under Mithridates, III:21–22
pagan gods as undermining, I:32–36; II:1–4
polytheism of, I–V
religion of, Varro’s work on, VI:2–4
Rome’s gods as incapable of extending/preserving, IV:28
rulers from Romulus to Babylonian Captivity of the Jews, XVIII:24–26
as “second Babylon,” XVIII:2, 22
Troy and, III:6 and n16
Troy as “mother of the Roman people,” I:4 and n16
as “western Babylon,” XVIII:27 and n137
Rome, Capitol at. See Capitol at Rome
Rome, “first,” XVIII:2
Rome, sack/fall of, I; II:2; III:29 and n147
Alaric, king of the Goths, XXII:20 and n104
cannibalism during, XXII:20 and n104
Christianity and, I:1–3, 36
Christian suffering in, I:7–9
household gods as no protection, I:3
pagan gods and, I:32–36
temples not respected as sanctuaries, I:4–6
why the good also suffered in, I:8–9
Romulus, II:14–17, 20; III:9, 11–15; IV:5, 23; V:17; VI:10; VIII:5; XXII:6 and nn20–21
defied, XVIII:24; XXII:6
founding of Rome, I:34 and n94; III:6; XV:5
parents of, II:15, 17 and n48; III:3, 5 and n14
Quirinus identified with, II:15 and n41
and Remus, I:34; II:14; III:5–6, 12, 14; VIII:5; XV:5
rulers of Rome from, XVIII:24–26
Rufinus of Aquileia:
Jerome and, XIX:5 and n19
and Origen, XI:23 and n48; XIX:5 and n19
rule of faith (regula fidei), X:23 and n111; XI:32–33; XV:26
rulers, secular: cult of gods used as tool by, IV:32 and n124

Volume I/6 & I/7
ruma, IV:11
Rumina (Ruminus), IV:11, 21, 34; VI:10 and n42; VII:11 and n37; VII:14

Sabbath
See also under creation: seventh day perpetual, XX:7; XXI:30
Sabellians, X:24 and n112; XI:10 and n29
Sabine women, seizing and rape of, II:17 and n47; III:13
sacerdotes, XX:10 and n36
sacrament, I:35 and n95–96; IV:31 and n123; X:26; XVI:2 and n15
See also baptism; eucharist; reconciliation
the ark and, XV:25 and n39
ark of the covenant as, X:17 and n88

Augustine’s interpretation (baptism and the eucharist), X:26 and n124; XV:26; XXI:17 and n90
Church itself as, XVI:7 and n44
and Eve made from Adam’s rib, XXI:17 and n90
food of the tree of life, XIII:20 and n41
incarnation of second person of Trinity as, X:24–25 and n113, 117
as mystery, XVIII:49 and n242
participation in (and immorality of life), XXI:25
and reality, XXI:20 and n80; XXI:25
“sacramentally prefigured,” XVI:43 and n191
the term, X:8 and n43
visible, X:15 and n73
sacred rites. See rites
sacrifice, X:20
Abraham’s, XVI:24
angels, sacrifice, and the worship of God, X:19–20
the body of Christ, X:6 and n36; X:20
Christ as true, X:20
daily offering of (eucharist), X:20 and n96
demons as demanding, II:10 and passim; XV:16
as due to God alone, X:3–5, 8; XIX:22
God’s living, X:6; XII:9; XIX:23
miracles and, X:8
old law, significance of sacrifices commanded under, X:5–7
to pagan gods, I:36
physical signs and inner realities, sacrifices as signifying, X:5
pleasing to the Lord, XX:26
righteousness, offering in, XX:26 and n106
the self directed to God in love, X:5–7
true, X:6
visible, reason for, X:19
works of mercy and, X:10; XX:24
saeculum, XVI:21 and n26; XVI:26
safety: and salvation, XXII:6 and n25
Sages, the Seven, VIII:2 and n8; XVIII:24
Saguntum; Saguntines, XXII:6
destruction of, III:20
saints, I:12–14, 24, 28, 35; V:13, 19; X:6, 12
See also martyrs
bodies of, in the resurrection, X:29; XIII:20, 22
death of, XIII:7–8, 20
eternal life of, XXII:29
eternal reign of (Daniel on), XX:23
eucharistic prayer, memorializing in, XXII:10 and n68
felicity of: seeing, loving, and praising God, XXII:30
intercession of, XXI:18, 24
and martyrs, XXII:9 and n65
purification of, and their pure offering to God (Malachi), XX:25–26
reign of saints with Christ, XX:11–13
reward of, V:16
sacrifices of, X:20
thousand-year reign of, XX:9–10
will the saints see God with the eyes of the spiritual body?, XXII:29
Salacia, VII:22
salamander, XXI:4
Sallust, I:5; II:8–10, 17–18, 21–22; III:3, 10, 14, 16–17, 21; V:12, 19; VII:3
on the Athenians, XVIII:2
on body as servant to soul, IX:9
salvation, XVIII:32 and n152
Catholics and, XXI:20–21 and n80; XXII:25–26
Christianity as universal way of, X:32 and n148
of the city of God, XV:27 and n151
and the devil/his angels, XXI:23
of the elect, XII:23(22)
and grace, XV:1 and n2
the lost as to far outnumber the saved,
XVI:21 and n85; XXI:12 and n57
restoration, doctrine of (Origen),
XXI:17 and n76
safety and, XXII:6 and n25
through fire, XXI:26
and works of mercy, XXI:22
Samson, I:21 and n68; I:26
and Hercules, XVIII:19 and n95
Samuel, X:8; XVII:4–5 and n37
and kingship, transformation of,
XVII:6–7
sanctuaries:
Christian churches as, I:1–2, 7
temples of gods not respected as, I:4–6
Sarah, XVI:25
as Abraham’s “sister,” XVI:19 and n79; XVI:30
barrenness of, XV:3
beauty of, XVI:30
chastity as trusted to God, XVI:19, 30
death of, XVI:32
meaning of names Sarah and Sarai,
XVI:28 and n110
son promised to, XVI:26
Sardanapalus, II:20 and n61
Satan. See devil
Saturn, II:15; IV:10–11 and n36; IV:21,
23, 27; VI:7–8 and n24; VII
passim; VIII:5
and Jupiter, VII:13
Varro’s interpretation of, VII:19
Saul, XVI:43
kingship, transformation of, XVII:6–7
Scaevola, Gaius Mucius, IV:21 and n79
Scaevola, Quintus Mucius, III:28
three views of the gods, IV:27
Scholasticism, XXI:20, n80
Scipio family, II:9, 12, 29
Scipio Aemilianus (Scipio Africanus the Younger), III:21; V:22 and n91
Scipio Nasica, Publius Cornelius
(Africanus; Scipio the Elder),
II:4–5 and n6; II:9 and n19;
II:12–13; III:15; X:21
definition of a republic, II:21 and n62; XIX:21
maltreatment of, III:21
against Roman extravagance, I:30–31 and n86–87
Scipio Nasica Corculum (son of P.
Cornelius), I:30–33 and n87–88
scribe: trained for the kingdom of God,
XX:4, 9
Scriptures, sacred, II:28; IV:34; V:19;
X:29, 32
See also apocryphal books; canonical
Scriptures; New Testament;
Old Testament; Septuagint;
specific topics, e.g., creation
as allowing variety of interpretations,
XI: summary
authority of, XI:3
context of scriptural passages, XVII:15
and n92
faith, the mediator, and authority of,
XI:2–3
Greek and Hebrew versions, numerical
discrepancies between,
XV:10–14
Holy Spirit and, XVI:2 and n17;
XVIII:38
obscure passages in, XI:19; XVII:17
and n98; XX:17 and n54
Plato’s familiarity with, VIII:11; XI:21
prophetic witness of, VII:32
spiritual vs. literal meaning, XVI:2
and n18
superiority over human philosophy,
XVIII:41
translation of Hebrew into Greek (the
Septuagint), XVIII:42–44
truthfulness of, over vanity of human
argumentation, XX:1, 30
truth of, X:18
and various legitimate interpretations
of passages, XI:19 and n38;
XI:32
sea: dead given up by, XX:15
second death. See under death: second
Second Punic War. See under Punic Wars:
Second Punic War
Secular Games, III:18 and n111
secular learning, VI:2
secular matters: toleration of diversity in,
XIV:1; XIX:17 and n61
secular rulers; cult of gods used as tool by,
IV:32 and n124
Segetia, IV:8 and n24; V:21

Volume I/6 & I/7
select gods:
- astral interpretation of, VII:15
- indecent acts attributed to, VII:4
- interpreted as the world and its parts, VII:16–18
- Jupiter and other, VII:13
- and their functions, VII:1–3
- Varro’s account of, absurdities and inconsistencies in, VII:3, 28
- Varro’s naturalistic interpretations of, VII:5–6
- worship of as bringing neither purity in this life nor happiness in life after death, VII:26–27

self: living according to, XIV: summary, 4
- self, love of. See pride

Semiramis, XVIII:2
- senate, VII:34 and n78

Seneca, Annaeus, V: summary, 8 and n16
- boldness of (re. civic theology), VI:10 and n37
- on the Jews, VI:11

senses:
- “present” as “before our senses,” XI:3
- as symbolized by the feminine, XIV:22 and n113
- sensible things: intelligible, contrast with, VIII:6; IX:17
- sententia, XI:3 and n7
- Septimus Severus, XVIII:52 and n253
- Septuagint, VIII:11 and n45; XIV:13 and n80; XV:10 and n40; XVIII:42–45

See also under specific topics, e.g.,
- Abraham: and Lot
- authority of, XVIII:43
- gentiles and, XVIII:42
- the Hexapla, XV:14, n65
- the Holy Spirit and, XV:14 and n66
- and Ninevah, destruction of, XVIII:44
- translation by seventy (or seventy-two) translators, XV:11 and n45, 13; XVIII:42–44 and nn198–203; XIX:23 and n86
- Serapis, XVIII:5–6 and n28
- serpent: bronze, X:8 and n51
- servant:
- Christ as, X:20
- leadership as service, XIX:14 and n44

servants of God, XXII:8 and n36
- Servile Wars, III:23, 26; IV:5; V:22 and n92
- servile work, XXII:30 and n167
- Seth, XV:8, 21 and n107
- lines of descent, XV:17–21
- seven, XV:20 and n105
- as perfect number/symbol of perfection, XI:31 and n68; XVII:4; XX:5; XXII:30
- seven pairs of clean animals, XV:27 and n147
- as signifying totality, XX:5 and n7; XXII:30

Seven Sages. See Sages, the Seven
- seventh day. See under creation: the seventh day
- seventy-five people accompanying Jacob to Egypt, XVI:40
- seventy (or seventy-two) translators. See under Septuagint
- seventy-two nations, XVI:3 and n30; XVI:11 and n61
- Severus, Septimus, XVIII:52 and n253
- Severus of Milevis, XXI:4 and n11
- sexual intercourse, VI:9; X:11

See also procreation between angels and women, III:5; XV:23
- marriage and sexual pleasure, XXI:26 and n108
- modesty regarding, XIV:20
- in public, XIV:20
- sexuality, XIV: summary

See also specific topics, e.g., lust
- before the fall, XIII:24; XIV:23–24
- involuntary and guiltless arousal, I:25; XIV:23–26
- lust, sense of, and, XIV:16–20
- sexual maturity: age of, and lines of descent, XV:15
- shame: lust, human sexuality, and, XIV:16–20, 26; XV:16
- Shem: line of descent from, XVI:9–10
- sibling marriage, XV:16 and n74
- Sibylline Books, III:17–18, 17 and nn109, 111
- the quindecimviri, VI:3, 3 and n13
- Sibylline prophecies of Christ, XVIII:23
- Sibyls:
  - Cumaean Sibyl, X:27, 27 and n132; XVIII:23 and n116
  - Erythraean Sibyl, XVIII:23 and n110
The City of God

Sicyon; Sicyonians, XVI:17 and n75; XVIII:2–4, 6–8, 11, 19
Simplician, X:29 and n141
simplicity, divine, XI:10

sin; sinfulness
See also evil; original sin; specific topics, e.g., foreknowledge; punishment
catalogue of sins, XXII:22 and n107
cause of, XIV:3
Christians as sinners, I:9
Church, allowing for sinners in, XX:9 and n29
consequences of, XIV:1–3
corruption resulting from, XIV:3
crimes, XXI:27 and n115
as due to will, not nature, XI:17
enemies, being forced to sin by, I:27–28
of first humans, XIV:1, 11–15
free will and, XXII:30 and n63
goat as symbol of, XVI:24 and n92
one sin as not to be avoided for another, I:25
pride and, XIV:13 and n80
punishment of, XIV:15; XXI:11–12
sinlessness (Pelagian doctrine), XIV:9 and n69
and slavery, XIX:15–16 and n47
suicide and avoiding, I:25–29
temporal, and eternal punishment, XXI:11–12
“the whole mass has been condemned,” XIV:26 and n122; XV:1, 21; XXI:12
six: as perfect number, XI:30 and n65
six days/the sixth day, XX:7
sixth millennium, XX:7
Skeptic: Xenophanes (Xenophon) of Colophon, VII:2
slavery:
punishment and, XXI:11 and n54
sin and, XIX:15–16 and n47
Social Wars, III:23, 26
society:
angels and demons, XIX:9–10
divisions in, XVIII:2
household and city, XIX:5–6
miseries of, XIX:5–10
the world, XIX:7–8

Socrates, VIII:3–4 and n14
“demon”of, VIII:14
On the God of Socrates (Apuleius), VIII:14
and Plato, VIII:4
Sodom, X:8; XVI:22, 29–30 and n114
Sol, VII:2
Solomon:
prophecies of Christ and the Church, XVII:20
prophecy after, XVII:21–24
prophetic anticipation of Christ, XVII:8–13
rule of, XVII:8, 20
on things common to the good and evil alike, XX:3
Solon of Athens, II:16 and n42; VIII:2 and n8
“sons of God.” See angels sophoi, VIII:2; XVIII:24, 25
sorcery
See also magic arts
Peter’s supposed act of, XVIII:53–54; XXII:25
soul, VIII:26
See also under specific topics, e.g.,
demons: souls of angels, VIII:24, 26
body as servant to soul, IX:9
Christ as having, X:27; XIV:2 and n7; XIV:9
and death, XIII:2
demons, souls of men as, IX:11 and n32
and eternal punishment, XXI:9
good of, philosophers’ opinions on, VIII:8 and n39; XIX:2
great, I:22
as having not always existed, X:31
image of God, man’s soul created in, XII:24(23)
immobility of, XIV:15 and n95; XXI:3
intellectual, X:27 and n128
manes, VIII:26 and n100; IX:11 and n32
as not coeternal with God, X:31
pain and, XIV:15; XXI:3
physical suffering and, I:14–19
Plato and, XIV:19 and n107; XXII:12
Platonist arguments regarding, IX:11; X:31
Plotinus on, XIV:15 and n95

Volume I/6 & I/7
supreme good, VIII: 8
Christian view, XIX: 4
the philosophers and, XIX: 1–3
two views, XIX: 2
Varro and, XIX: 1–4
Sylvans, XV: 23 and n 117
symbols: and mystery of Christ’s
redemption, VII: 32
Symmachus, XVIII: 43 and n 199
Syracuse, I: 6 and n 24; III: 14

tabernacle of the testimony. See ark of the
covenant
Tarquin family; Tarquin (“the Proud”),
I: 19; II: 17–18; III: 12, 15–16;
IV: 23, 29; V: 12; X: 16; XVIII: 25
See also Collatinus, Lucius Tarquinius
teachers:
contempt for, II: 19 and n 58
“teacher,” the title, XVII: 8 and n 65
telata, IV: 31 and n 118; X: 9 and n 55; X: 23
and n 107; X: 28 and n 135
Tellus, VII: 2
rites of, VII: 24–26
temperance, XIX: 4
See also cardinal virtues
Temple, Solomon’s, XV: 23; XVII: 3, 5, 8,
10, 22–23; XVIII: 20, 42, 54
destruction of, XVIII: 25–26
rebuilding of, XVIII: 36, 45 and n 221;
XVIII: 48
temples of gods: not respected as
sanctuaries, I: 4–6
temporal goods and evils, I:8
temptation, XIX: 10
ten, the number, XV: 20
ten persecutions, XVIII: 52 and n 253
ten plagues, XVIII: 52 and n 253
Terah, XVI: 14
Terminus, IV: 11, 21 and n 89; IV: 23 and
n 96; IV: 29
Janus and, IV: 11; VII: 7
and Jupiter, IV: 23, 29
Tertullian, II: 3, n 3; XII: 16, n 29; XVI: 35,
n 130; XVII: 17, n 98
and seeming contradictions of Christ’s
life, XXII: 5 and n 9
Thales of Miletus, VIII: 2 and n 8; VIII: 5;
XVIII: 24–25, 37
theaters; theatrical performances, II: 2–6,
8, 22–28; III: 17
See also actors; poets

and the gods, I: 31–34 and n 90; IV: 26
Thebes, XVIII: 13 and n 73
See also Oedipus
Theodosius I (“the Great”), III: 22 and
n 129
as model Christian emperor, V:
summary, 25–26 and nn 102, 110; XVIII: 54 and n 286
Theodotion, XVIII: 43 and n 199
theological poets, XVIII: 14, 25, 37
theology, VIII: 1 and n 2
See also civic theology; mythical
theology
intertwining of mythical and civic,
VI: 6–7
neither mythical or civic as holding
promise of eternal life, VI: 12
Varro’s three types of, VI: 5–10
Theom Zwe, I: 22 and n 69
Theseus, XVIII: 13 and n 68
Thessalonica, massacre at, V: 26 and n 110
theurgy; theurgic arts:
Porphyry on, X: 9–10, 26–27
theurgic consecrations, X: 9 and n 55
thought: sententia, XI: 3 and n 7
thousand years, XX: 7 and n 18
binding of the devil for, XX: 7–8
final, XX: 7
reign of the saints, XX: 9–10
three, the number, XV: 20 and n 105
“three incredible things,” XXII: 5
threskeia, X: 1
Tiberius, XXII: 7 and n 29
Timaeus (Plato), XIII: 16 and n 22;
XXII: 26
time
See also ages; cyclical theories; more
under specific topics, e.g.,
creation; eternity; years
beginning of, XI: 6
course through, XV–XVIII
and creation, XI: 4–6
date of man’s creation, XII: 13 (12)
and divine knowledge, XII: 18 (17)–
20 (19)
end of, XVIII: 53 and n 267
and eternity, XII: 15 (14)–17 (16)
and the immutability of God, XI: 4–6
and infinity, XII: 18 (17)–20 (19)
past and future, Augustine’s view of,
XVII: 4 and n 27
Titus Latinius, IV: 26; VIII: 13

Volume I/6 & I/7
The City of God

Titus Tatius, III:13; IV:23 and n92; VI:10 and n39
Torquatus, Titus Manlius, I:23 and n76; V:18
torture, I:10; XIX:6 and n21
Tower of Confusion, XVI:4–7
Trajan, IV:29 and n110; XXII:8 and n53
transformation, XVII:12 and n75
tree of life: days of, XX:26	trinities, natural (as suggesting the Trinity), V:11 and nn27–28
cause, light and fount, VIII:10 and n43
eternity, truth, and happiness, XII:21(20) and n34
Greek philosophy and, VIII:4 and n21; VIII:10 and n42
life, wisdom, and joy, XII:1 and n4
to live, to have intelligence and to be happy, VII:6 and n29
Trinity, Holy, V:11 and nn27–28; VIII:4 and n21, 6 and n29; IX:15, 22 and n60; X:24 and n113; X:25 and n117; X:27 and n128
angels’ knowledge of, X:29
created (existence, form and order), XI:28 and n61
in creation, XI:24–28
and divine simplicity, XI:10
Genesis 1:26, trinitarian connotation of, XVI:6 and n38
Greek philosophy and, VIII:4 and n21, 10 and n42
in human nature, XI:25–29
Plotinus on, X:23
second person of, IX:22 and n60;
X:24–25 and nn113, 117
three persons of, V:11 and n27; X:23
and n110; X:29 and n136;
XIII:24
uncreated (existence, wisdom and goodness), XI:28 and n61
Trinity, in Neoplatonism, XI:29
*Trinity, The* (Augustine), X:27, n128; XI:24 and n51
Triptolemus, XVIII:13 and n67
Trismegistus, XVIII:39 and n189
See also Hermes Trismegistus
Trogus, Pompeius, IV:6 and n13
Troy
See also under Paris: Judgment of and adultery, III:3–6
fall of, III:2–5; XVIII:16–19
the gods and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2
the gods and Paris’s adultery, III:3–5
household gods as not having
protected, I:3
Juno’s sanctuary in, I:4
“mother of the Roman people,” I:4
and n16
the palladium, III:18 and n115
and Rome, III:6 and n16
sack of, by Fimbria, III:7–8
truth, I:16 and n56; XII:21(20) and n34;
XX:3 and n6
See also wisdom
God as, XI:28; XII:1
Greek philosophers and, II:7
Porphyry’s failure to recognize,
X:28–29
and role of ignorance in human misery,
XII:22 and n109
Scripture, truthfulness of, XX:1, 30
sources of, VIII:9 and n41
Tullus Hostilius, III:14–15; IV:23 and n93; VI:10
turtledove, XVI:43 and n191
twelve, XV:20 and n105
Twelve Tables, II:9 and n21; II:14;
VIII:19
Twenty Martyrs, XXII:8 and n50
twins
See also Esau; Jacob
and astrological fatalism, V:1–6 and n7
different-sex, V:6
Jacob and Esau, V:4
two cities. See cities, two
Tycho, XX:19 and n56
tyrants, II:21
universe:
evil in, XI:22
Jupiter and elements of, IV:9–10
universe, soul of. See world soul
Ur, XVI:15 and n71
use. See under enjoyment: use and
Uz, XVIII:47 and n230
vainglory
See also pride
as keeping other vices at bay, V:13
Valens, V:26 and n109; XVIII:52 and n254

The City of God

Valentinian I, XVIII:52 and n252
Valentinian II, III:22 and n129; V:26 and n102
Varro, Marcus Terentius, III:3–4 and n13; VI–VII passim; XVIII:2 and n5; XXI:8 and n31

See also specific topics, e.g., world soul
on age (youth and old age), XXII:15 and n81
Antiquities, VI: summary, 3–4 and n12
beliefs/views of, IV:31
criticism of, VI:4–6
etymology of, XVIII:5 and n28
and faith in the resurrection, XXII:28
God, view of, IV:31; XIX:22
gods, theories about, VII:17
gods, three views of; IV:27 and n103; VI:5
on gods, function of; IV:22
on gods, images of, and religion of the populace, IV:31–32
Human and Divine Antiquities, IV:2 and n4
on images, IV:9, 31
On Philosophy, XIX:1 and n2
On the Race of the Roman People,
XVIII:2, 8, 13; XXI:8 and n31; XXII:28
on religion, deception in, IV:9
on religion vs. superstition, VI:9
Roman religion, work on, VI:2–4
Saturn, interpretation of; VII:19
on select gods, VII:3, 5–6, 28
Seneca and, VI:10
on supreme good, XIX:1–3
theology of, inconsistency in, VII:28
theology of, three types, VI:5–10
On the Worship of the Gods, VII:34
Venilia, VII:22
Venus, VII:2
and Anchises, III:3 and n10–11
and Cupid, IV:10 and n46
Judgment of Paris, III:25; IV:27 and n106; VII:15 and n42
Juno and, VII:15
and Mars, IV:10 and n46
the planet, XXI:8 and n35
rites of, VI:7
and Vesta, IV:10 and n45
and Vulcan, III:3 and n11; IV:10 and n46
Vesta, III:18 and n114; III:28; IV:10–11 and n45; VI:2; VII:2, 16, 24; VIII:5
Vestal virgins, III:5, 18 and n114; III:28;
IV:10; X:16; XVIII:21 and n103; XXII:11 and n74

See also specific topics, e.g., curiosity battle against, XXII:23
other vices as overcoming, V:13;
XXI:16 and n73
of the Romans, I:33
struggle of virtues against, XIX:4
Victory, goddess, IV:14–17, 21, 24; V:17
Virgil, I:3–4, 16; II:22; III:2, 10–11;
IV:10; V:12, 19; VII:9; VIII:19; X:27
See also Aeneas (the Aeneid)
and Plato, corrections of; X:30
on Saturn, VII:27
virginity, XV:26; XVI:36 and n139
See also celibates; chastity
the difference between virgin and non-virgin, V:6 and n14
fortitude and, I:18
marriage vs., I:9; XVI:36
of Mary, XXII:8 and n61
pride in, danger of, I:28 and n83
virtue; the virtues, IV:20
See also specific virtues, e.g., fortitude
cardinal virtues, XIX:4 and n12;
XXII:24 and n129
earthly reward for earthly, V:13–17
as highest good of the soul (Varro),
XIX:3
and love of praise, V:13
“lover of virtue,” X:28 and n133
passions as training in, IX:5
proper end of: as neither pleasure nor human glory, V:20
public teaching of, II:6–7
Roman, V:12
Stoic understanding of, IX:4; XIX:1,
25 and n94
struggle against the vices, XIX:4
temperance, prudence, and justice,
XIX:4
true religion as necessary for, XIX:25

Volume I/6 & I/7
Virtue (goddess), IV:20–21, 24; V:12; VII:3
visible appearances of the invisible God, X:12–13
visible Church. See Church
“visible gods,” IX:16
visible miracles, X:12–13
visions:
of God, in the world to come, XXII:29 and n152
miracles and, X:8 and n40
Voconian Law, III:21 and n126
volcanoes, XXI:4 and n7
Vulcan, III:3 and n11; IV:23; VI:1, 10, 16; VII:2; VIII:5
and Venus, III:3 and n11; IV:10–11 and n46
Vulgate, XIII:18 and n29; XIV:13 and n80; XVIII:43 and n201
See also under specific topics, e.g., Abraham: and Lot
war, III:16–18
See also civil wars; Rome, sack of: specific topics, e.g.,
sanctuaries; specific wars, e.g., Punic Wars
with Alba, III:14
divine providence, as used by, I:1
durations and outcomes of, V:22
in human history, I:2
just, I:21 and n65; I:26; IV:14–17; XV:4; XIX:7
misery of, XIX:7
peace as desired end, XIX:12
results of Roman, V:17
sack of city, wartime (Cato’s description), I:5
watchman, I:9 and n31
water
See also under elements: four angels and, XI:34
wealth. See riches
wickedness. See evil; sin
widowhood, XV:26
will, V:9–10
See also freedom of will
actions of, V:9
and emotions, XIV:4–6
evil, cause of first, XII:6–9; XIV:11
evil as function of, XI: summary; XII: summary
passions, love, and, XIV:6–8
sin and, XI:17
will of God
and fulfillment of the divine promise,
XXII:2–3
in his creation, XI:21
wisdom, VII:6, 9; XI:28 and n61; XII:1
and n4–5
See also knowledge; truth
angelic and human, IX:22 and n61
and arrogance, VIII:2
God as, VIII:1
superiority of divine wisdom over
human philosophy, XVIII:41
Wisdom of God, IX:22 and n60–61
wise men. See sophoi
witness: of the martyrs, XXII:9–10
woman; women
See also Eve
and angels, intermingling of, III:5;
V:22–24
Augustine’s view of reputation
regarding, III:21 and n126;
XXII:17–18 and n85
as made from man, XII:22(21);
XXII:17
religious, XXII:8 and n49
women’s bodies, resurrection of,
XXII:17
Word of God (Logos):
made flesh, XVIII:46
soul of Christ and, X:27; XIV:2 and n7; XIV:9
and Wisdom of God, IX:22 and n60
work, servile, XXII:30 and n167
works of God, VII:29–33
works of mercy:
and sacrifice, X:6; XX:24
and salvation, XXI:22 and n82;
XXI:27
world
See also creation; earth; specific topics, e.g., order
age of, XII:13(12)–18(17)
beginning of, XI:5–6; XII:13(12)
beliefs regarding, XII:12(11) and n23;
XVIII:41
destruction of this world, XX:18
end of, XX:24
and the impure, VII:26 and n65
innumerable worlds, XI:5; XII:12(11)
and n23; XVIII:41

The City of God
making use of vs. enjoying, VIII:8; XV:7 and n20
and miseries of social life, XIX:7–8
and the origin of humankind, XII:10–12(11)
threefold division of, XVI:17 and n77
visible, VIII:1
worship of, vs. worship of the true
God, VII:27
world cycles. See cyclical theories
world soul, VII:27
God as, IV:12–13 and n66; IV:31
and its permeation of the world,
VII:23–24
Jupiter and, IV:11; VII:14
Plotinus and soul of the universe, X:2
Varro’s belief regarding, VII:6, 23–24
worship of as not worship of the true
God, VII:27
worm and fire, XX:22; XXI:2, 9, 24, 26
worship
See also under specific topics, e.g.,
demon-worship; gods (pagan)
as due to God alone, IV:11, 25; VII:1;
X:1, 7, 16
of God, true, X:3
of God for temporal benefits, as well
as eternal, X:14
of many gods, VIII:13
martyrs, Christians as not worshiping,
VIII:27
miracles, angels, and the worship of
God, X:16
neither angels nor demons as to be
worshiped, IX:23; X:3, 7
sacrifice, angels, and the worship of
God, X:19–20
of the true God vs. world or world’s
soul, VII:27
Xenocrates, VIII:12 and n53
Xenophanes (Xenophon) of Colophon,
VII:17 and n46
years, XV:13–14 and n56
Egyptian, XII:11(10); XV:12
Zedekiah, XVIII:25
Zeno of Citium, IX:4–5 and n15
Zethus, XVIII:13 and n73
Zeus. See Jupiter
Zion, XVII:16 and n94

Volume I/6 & I/7
Index from
On the Divination of Demons
(De divinatione daemonum)

Included in book:
On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, general introduction and introductions by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8  Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005
Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/8

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Demonic Divination

Old Testament

Psalms
2:7-8 6, 13
9:4-7 6, 14
22:16-18 6, 13
22:27-28 6, 13

Isaiah
51:7-8 6, 14

Zephaniah
2:11 6, 11

New Testament

Mark
4:39 6, 10

1 Corinthians
1:20-25 6, 14

On Christian Belief
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

Demonic Divination

admiration, misplaced, 7–8
Aeneid (Virgil), 11
airy bodies, 7–9, 11
angels: good and bad, 10

bodies, airy vs. earthy, 7–9, 11
body language, 9

Christians:
“foolishness” of, 14
persecution of, 13–14
circus performers, 8
curiosity, 7

demonic divination, 9
capacity for, 10–12
god, 1
source of, 10
of temple’s destruction, 1; 10–11
demons
advantage had by, 7–9
human beings and, 7–8
misplaced admiration for, 7–8

nature of, 7
doctors, 7; 9; 10
envy: demons as envious, 8; 10
evil: God as permitting, 2–6
false gods. See idols
farmers, 7; 10
“foolishness” of Christians, 14

God:
evil, as permitting, 2–6
one true God, 12–13
punishment by, 3
upsetting demonic predictions, 10
gods, false. See idols

human beings:
admiration for demons, 7–8
pious, 8
idols, 3
banishment of, 12–13

On Christian Belief
Volume I/8

inventors of mechanical contrivances, 8
Juno, 11
Jupiter, 11
martyrs, 13
miracles, 13
omnipotence of God, 2-6
oracles:
genuine prophecy, 14
truthfulness of, 10
paganism:
decline of, 3; 14
God’s displeasure with, 3
and God’s superiority, 12-14
persecution of Christians, 13-14
philosophers, the great, 12
pontifical books, 5

pride, 8
prophecy
demonic (see demonic divination)
genuine, 10; 14
sacrifice, pagan, 3
sailors, 7; 10
Serapis, 11
temple of Serapis: destruction as predicted, 1; 10-11
truth, quest for, 7
Tumus, 11
Virgil, 11
wisdom: “foolishness” and, 14
Zephaniah, the prophet, 11

On Christian Belief
Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, general introduction and introductions by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005
Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/8

Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Faith and the Creed

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>3:5,6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:14,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:4,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>81:6,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:22,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:27,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:18,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:9,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/8

New Testament

Matthew
5:8 20
12:48 9
22:30 13
23:9 9

Luke
10:27 21

John
1:1 18
1:3 5; 6
1:9 6
1:14 6
2:4 9
3:6 19
4:24 18
10:30 18
14:6 3
14:9 18
14:28 18
16:13 19
20:17 18

Romans
1:9 23
1:17 1
1:23 14
5:5 19
7:25 23
8:15 19
8:22 13
10:10 1
11:36 16; 19

1 Corinthians
1:24 3
1:25 10
2:14 23
3:22-23 19
11:3 18; 19
13:12 20
15:28 18
15:39-40 24
15:44 13
15:50 24
15:51 13
15:52 3; 24
15:53 23
15:54-55 24

Galatians
3:11 1

Ephesians
2:3 23

Philippians
2:6 5; 18
2:6-7 6
2:7 18
2:8 11

Titus
1:15 10

Hebrews
10:38 1

1 John
4:16 19; 20
4:18 19

Revelation
1:8 15

On Christian Belief
Volume I/8

General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

Faith and the Creed

Acts of the Apostles, 15
angelic transformation, 24
Apollinarism, refutation of, 8
apostasy, 23
Arianism, refutation of, 5; 18
ascension of Christ, 12–13
belief; and understanding, 1; 25
birth, 10
birth of Christ, 8–10
body, 23
natural and spiritual, 13
resurrection of, 23–24
soul and, 10
Catholic Church, 1; 20–22; 21
Christianity, 1; 25
Church. See Catholic Church
clean of heart, the, 20
creation, 2; 5
creed, 1; 25
cross, the, 11
death, 24
death of Christ, 11
Docetism, refutation of, 9
dualism: of Manicheans, 2
faith, 1; 25
family of Christ, 9
fear, 19
flesh, 24
forgiveness of sins, 20–22
genitals, non-believing, 13
God
See also Trinity
clean of heart as seeing, 20
as creator, 2
the Father, 3–6; 14; 16–20
in heaven, 14
nature of, 7
omnipotence of, 2–3
Godhead, 19
gods: You are gods, 16
heaven: Christ in, 13–14
heretics and heresies, 1; 21.
See also Apollinarism; Arianism; Docetism; Manicheanism
Holy Spirit, 8; 16–17; 19–20
See also Trinity
human beings: nature of, 8; 23
humility, 6
incarnation, the, 8–15; 18
Jesus Christ, 3
See also Trinity
ascension of, 12–13
birth of, 8–10
death of, 11
family of, 9
in heaven, 13–14
human nature of, 6; 8–15; 18
incarnation of, 8–15; 18
second coming of, 15
Son of God, 3; 5–6; 16–20
Word of God, 3–8; 10
judgment: of living and dead, 15
justification, 1
light, 6
Logos, divine, 4–7
love, 19; 21
Manicheanism, refutation of, 2–3; 9; 10;
13; 19; 23
Mary, the virgin, 8–9; 11
matter: nature of, 2; 19
Moses, 6
non-believing gentiles, 13
Old Testament, 6
original sin, 23
Pneumatomachians, 19
power of God: Word as, 3–4
pride, 6

On Christian Belief
resurrection of the body, 23–24
Revelation, 15

salvation, 1; 8
schismatics, 21

See also heretics and heresies
second coming of Christ, 15
sin

forgiveness of, 20–22
original, 23
Son of God, 3; 5–6; 16–20
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity
soul, 8; 10; 23
spirit, 23
spiritual body, 13

Trinity, 16–20
truth, 19

Word as, 3

unbelievers, 13
understanding: belief and, 1; 25
unity, 19–20

wisdom: and light, 6
wisdom of God:
Word as, 3–4
Word of God, 3–8; 10

---

On Christian Belief
Index from

On Faith and Works

(De fide et operibus)

Included in book:

On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Faith and Works</th>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:3-5</td>
<td></td>
<td>31:17</td>
<td>15:2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 10:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>15:2b</td>
<td>15:2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>15:2c</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>47:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th>3:7-8</th>
<th>13, 19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:16-17</td>
<td>6, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>21, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>25, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:25</td>
<td>19, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:29-30</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:39</td>
<td>17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:26-28</td>
<td>16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:15</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:15-17</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>15, 25; 27, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:18-19</td>
<td>16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:10</td>
<td>17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:37-39</td>
<td>10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:2-3</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:15</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:44</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>3:12-14</td>
<td>13, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:21</td>
<td>21, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>20, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>23, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:38</td>
<td>11, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:38-39</td>
<td>8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:38-41</td>
<td>8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:37-38</td>
<td>8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:38</td>
<td>8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>23, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>14, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>21, 39; 23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>14, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7-8</td>
<td>23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>14, 21; 21, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>21, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11-15</td>
<td>15, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:1-5</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:9-13</td>
<td>2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>12, 18; 15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>12, 18; 15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:32-33</td>
<td>16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>6, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>14, 21; 15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:3-4</td>
<td>10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:21</td>
<td>26, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:28</td>
<td>8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>6, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:10-11</td>
<td>16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>25, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>6:1-2</td>
<td>11, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

## On Christian Belief
On Christian Belief

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>14, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
<td>2:3-4</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>10, 16</td>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
<td>2:3-4</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>10, 16</td>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>10, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>10, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jude</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jude</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>25, 46</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>25, 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/8
Volume I/8

General Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)
Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

Faith and Works

actors, 33
Acts of the Apostles, 12
adultery, 3; 20; 25
baptism and, 2; 8; 13; 15; 18; 25; 31–37; 49
and depraved world, 37
divorce and, 35
unknowing, 10
animals (Noah’s ark), 49
apostles, 11; 31
See also individual names
arguments, 25
Arians, 5
avarice, 25; 33
baptism, 1–8; 9–20; 36; 48; 49
access to, 1; 2; 8; 13; 15; 18; 25; 31–38; 49
and conscience, 25
and divorce, 2; 35
of the dying, 9
and faith, living vs. dead, 21–30
and good living (morality), 1–2; 9–20; 10;
17–18; 31–38; 48–49
of John the Baptist, 19; 34; 37
and new life, 12
the Red Sea, 17–18
and repentance, 12–13; 19
scripture and, 9–20
belief. See faith

believers. See Christians
Bible. See scripture
body, desires of. See carnal desires
Caecilian, 6
Canaanite woman, 30
carnal desires, 15; 43
catamites, 25
catechumens, 9–20; 49
See also baptism
Catholic Church. See Church
charity: love and, 25
See also love
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian behavior. See morality; works
Christian faith, the, 27
baptismal candidates and, 9–20
and good living (morality), 9–20
instruction in, 11
Christians
See also Church; morality; specific topics
converts, 48
lapsed, 35
and sin, 41–49
“the faithful,” 11
Christian unity. See unity
Church:
discipline by, 3–4; 6–7; 32; 34; 48; 49

On Christian Belief
Faith and Works

good and wicked in, 1-8; 31-39; 49
Church unity. See unity
commandments
faith and, 20; 40
the first, 17
the holy commandment, 45-46
to love, 16; 40
rich man and, 20; 27; 49
compassion
See also tolerance
love and, 25
corruption of sin: baptism, preparation for, 8-9
conscience, 25
continence: baptism, preparation for, 8-9
converts, 48
1 Cor. 3:11-15, 27
Creed, the, 14; 36
Cyprian, 15
crucifixion of Christ, 15
cursing, 3; 25
faithful, the, 11
fasting: baptism, preparation for, 8-9
fear: love and, 39
fire:
eternal, 25
purifying, 27
salvation through, 18; 24-28; 42-44; 47
fishermen, 32
flesh, lusts of. See carnal desires
forgiveness of sin:
at baptism, 36
ongoing, 41
fornication, 25; 29
See also adultery
baptism and, 17-18
foundation, Christ as, 24-28
freedom, 45
Gaius, 15
generosity, 25
gentiles, 44
gladiators, 33
gluttony, 25
God
See also Trinity; specific topics
believing in, worshiping, knowing, 41
“gold” and “wood.” See foundation, Christ
as
good, achieving, 41
good and wicked people. See under Church:
good and wicked in
good living. See morality
good works. See works
gospel, preaching, 14
grace, 21; 27; 38
and the law, 43-44
hatred, 25
health, physical: sin and, 36
heaven
See also eternal life
The kingdom of heaven is within you, 39
heresies, 25
See also specific groups and names
Herod, 35
Holy Spirit, 21; 30; 47
See also Trinity: specific topics
homosexuality, 29
idolatry, 3; 17-18; 25; 34
illness, physical: sin and, 36
impurity, 25; 29; 34
intellect: and faith, 9-20
Israelites, 38
James, 21; 23; 30; 46
jealousy, 25
Jesus Christ
See also Trinity
crucifixion of, 15
dwells in our hearts through faith, 27
faith in, 14
as foundation, 24-28
gospel of, 14
as tolerant, 4
Jews, 43-44; 48
the Israelites, 38
John (apostle), 11; 21
John the Baptist, 19; 35; 37
Jovinian, 5
Jude, 21; 46
judging others, 3
judgment, 22; 27
eternal damnation, 42-45
justification, 21-30
and faith, 27
and works of love, 27
kidnappers, 29
kingdom of heaven: The kingdom of heaven is
within you, 39
lapsed, the, 35
law:
faith and, 21-30; 39-40; 45
fulfillment of, 39
love and, 21; 40
sin and, 42-45
those who sin without the law, 42
two commandments and, 40
Letter and the Spirit, The (Augustine), 21
liars, 29
life, Christian. See morality
life, eternal. See eternal life
living faith. See under faith: living vs. dead
Lot’s wife, 47
love:
and charity, 25
commandments, two, 16; 40
and compassion, 25
faith active in, 21-30; 38-39
faith that works through love, 27; 42
faith without, 21; 25
fear and, 39
of God and neighbor, 20
grace and, 38
If I...do not have love, I am nothing, 21
and the law, 21; 39
of possessions, 27
of self and neighbor, 25
and sin, 25
works of, 27
lust. See carnal desires
Manicheans, 5
marriage, 2
chaste, 5
condemnation of, 5
continence in, 8-9
and divorce, 28; 35
as sacrament, 10
with unbelievers, 35
mercy, spirit of. See tolerance
morality (Christian way of life), 22; 41; 42;
46; 49
See also under baptism: morality and
two commandments and, 16; 40
Moses, 3
motivations for action, imperfect, 27
murder, 27; 29; 34
New Testament, 35; 45
Noah, 49
non-believers. See unbelievers
obscenity, 3; 25
Old Testament. See law
Paul, 11; 21; 24; 26-27
See also specific topics
1 Cor. 3, 27
faith and justification, 27
Romans, letter to, 44
unbeliever, as former, 47
penance, 4; 34; 48
perjurers, 29
persecution, 35
Peter, 11–13; 21; 22; 26; 37; 45–46
See also specific topics
Philip, 14; 18
Phinehas, 3
Pimps, 33
Phinehas, 3
poor, charity toward, 25
possessions, 20; 27
prayers of faith, 39
Priscillianists, 5
property law, 10
prostitutes, 25; 33
do not be united to (see under adultery: baptism and)
punishment
See also discipline eternal (see eternal punishment)
fear of vs. love, 39
purgatory, 29
purifying fire. See under salvation: through fire
quarrels, 25
Red Sea, 17–18
repentance, 19; 41
and baptism, 12–13
excommunication and, 34
for works that are dead, 17; 36
resurrection of eternal life, 42
resurrection of judgment, 42
rich young ruler, 27
robbers, 3; 25
Romans, letter to, 44
salvation, 41–49
See also under baptism: and morality; eternal life
baptism and, 1
good works and, 1; 22–23
through fire, 18; 24–28; 42–44; 47
Satan: as envious, 3
schisms, 49
See also heresies; specific groups and names
scripture. See law; New Testament; specific topics
sickness: sin and, 36
sin
See also adultery; baptism; Church: discipline by; Church: good and wicked in

and Christ crucified, 15
Christians and, 41–49
confession of, 8–9
forgiveness of, 36; 41
and grace, 21
and health, physical, 36
of Israelites, 38
last judgment and, 27
and the law, 42–45
love and, 25
marriage and, 28
penance, 4; 34; 48
and punishment, 4; 34; 48
Remove the evil from yourselves, 3
and repentance. 12–13; 41
sinners, hardened: baptism of. See under baptism: access to
sinners in the Church
See under Church: discipline by;
Church: good and wicked in
slander, 25; 33
sleep: While people were asleep, 35
Sodom, 47
sodomites, 25
Stephanas, 25
subordinationists, 5
swindlers, 25
tax collectors, 19; 37
Ten Commandments. See commandments
thieves, 3; 25
tolerance, 4; 6; 49
See also under Church: good and wicked in
Trinity, 5
unbelievers:
Israelites as, 38
marriage with, 35
Paul as former, 47
and repentance, 12–13
and sin, 41; 43–44; 47
unity, 6
virginity: and marriage, condemning, 5
wealth, 20; 27–28
wickedness. See evil; sin
wicked people. See under Church: good and wicked in
Wisdom, Book of, 41
witchcraft, 25
“wood” and “gold.” See foundation, Christ as
works, 17
dead, 17; 36

Volume I/8
Volume I/8

faith and, 21–30
faith without, 21; 25; 40; 49
justification and, 27
of love, 21–30
and salvation, 1; 22–23
world:
desires of, 21

possessions, love for, 27
Tear yourself...from this depraved
world, 37
worthiness, 31

On Christian Belief
Index from
On Faith in the Unseen
(De fide rerum invisibilium)

Included in book:
On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symboło), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Faith in the Unseen

Old Testament

Genesis
22:18 3, 5, 4, 7

Psalms
2:7-8 4, 7
3:6 4, 7
18:4-5 7, 10

21:17-19 4, 7
21:28-29 4, 7
40:7-9 4, 7
40:9 4, 7
40:11 4, 7
44:7-8 3, 5
44:10 3, 5
44:11-18 3, 5
45:9 4, 7
56:12 6, 9

On Christian Belief
# On Christian Belief

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
<th>Volume 1/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>6:22-24, 107:6</td>
<td>6, 9, 4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Is 7:14</td>
<td>3, 5, 4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>16:19, 16:19-20</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
<th>Volume 1/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>6:9, 13:9</td>
<td>3, 6, 8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>6, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>3, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Faith in the Unseen

Abraham, 5
apostles, 10
ascension of Christ, 7
belief. See faith
Bible. See scripture
birth of Christ; 5; 7
Catholic faith. See Christian faith; Church
children, 4
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian faith. See also Church; faith; prophecies
credibility of, 5–10
proof and, 5
signs, and truth of, 2–3; 5
spread of, 10
as unseen, 3
Christians: ill-disposed, 11
Church:
address in voice of, 5–7
as bride of Christ; 11
maternal love by, 5
unity, 11
crucifixion of Christ, 9
deceit, 2
deeds, 2–3
disciples, 10
eternal damnation, 8
eternal life, 8
faith. See also Christian faith
criticism of, refuting, 2–4
in the divine, 4
and human social life, 4
as knowledge, 2–3
necessity of, 2–4
nourishing, 11
opponents of, 1
rejection of, 4
and sense experience, 1
and signs, outward, 2–3
family, 4
friendship, 2–5; 8
future, 8
gestures, 2–3
goodwill. See friendship; love
hell (eternal damnation), 8
heretics, 11
history. See past
Holy Spirit, 10
human mind, 1–2
idolatry, 7; 10
Israel, 5
Jacob, 5
Jesus Christ, 10
ascension of, 7
birth of, 5; 7
crucified, 9
disciples chosen by, 10
Jewish ancestry of, 5
miracles of, 7
passion of, 7
resurrection of, 7
Jews:
On Christian Belief

Jesus, ancestry of, 5
scattering of, 9
writings of, 9
Judah, 5
judgment day, 8

kindness, 4
See also love
knowledge: faith and, 2–3

love, 2–4
maternal, by Church, 5

marriage, 4
martyrdom: of disciples, 10
Mary, the virgin, 5
mind, human, 1–2
miracles of Christ, 7

Old Testament prophecies, 5–11

parents, 4
passion of Christ, 7
past, the, 4; 8
proof: visible, prophecies as, 8
prophecies: fulfillment of, 5–11

resurrection of Christ, 7
resurrection of the dead, 8
scattering of the Jews, 9
scripture: prophecies, fulfillment of, 5–11
sense experience: faith and, 1–3
sight: and the unseen, 1; 3
signs: faith and, 2–3
See also prophecies
temples, 10
tongues, speaking in, 10
tradition. See past
trust, 2–4; 4

unity, Church, 11
unseen things
See also specific topics
Christian religion and, 3
past and future, 8

virgin birth, 5
vision: and the unseen, 1; 3

words, 2–3

Volume I/8
Index from
On the Advantage of Believing
(De utilitate credendi)

Included in book:
On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, general introduction and introductions by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005
Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Volume I/8

## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

The Advantage of Believing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>30</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>32</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:1-11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22-26</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/8

General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

The Advantage of Believing

academics, the, 20; 25
Acts of the Apostles, 7
adultery, 6
Aeneid (Virgil), 10
Alexis (in Virgil's Eclogue 2), 17

Aeneid (Virgil), 10
A lexis (in Virgil's Eclogue 2), 17

allegorical exegesis, 5–9
Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, 20
analogical exegesis, 5–9
Archimedes, 13
Aristotle, 13

On Christian Belief
On Christian Belief

Aper (Latin grammarian), 17
Augustine:
as former Manichean, 2; 13; 17; 20
spiritual journey of, 20; 36
authority, subjection to, 33–35
and being misled, 34
belief and, 25
the Catholic Church, 33
divine authority, 27–28; 34
and truth, acquiring, 2; 20–21
belief, 14–35; 25
See also faith
and authority, 25; 33–35
Catholic Church as demanding, 29
in Christ, 31–32
and credulity, 22–23; 25
and human society, 26–32
and imagined knowing, 22, 25
and knowing, 22, 25
reason and, 22
truth, search for, 14–20; 21–32
belief before insight, 22–32
negative arguments, 26–32
positive arguments, 23–24
Bible. See New Testament; Old Testament;
text
Bible, methods of interpreting, 5–9
error, possible sources of, 10–12
body, 14
pleasures of, 10
Caecilius and Erucus, 16
Catholic Church, 14; 18–20; 31
authority of, 27–28; 33; 34
faith, as demanding, 29
and Old Testament, 4–5
primacy of, 35
and truth, quest for, 19–20
charity, 35
chastity, 35
children, parents and, 22; 26–32
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christianity, 19
See also Catholic Church
Augustine's return to, 20
heretics, 19
Church. See Catholic Church
Cicero, 16; 25
circumcision, 9
Cornutus (Latin grammarian), 17
credulity, 22–23; 25
curiosity, 22
deciefufulness, 23
divine authority. See authority
divorce, 6
Donatus (Latin grammarian), 17
education, 2; 15–17; 22
Epicurus, 10; 13
Erusus, Caecilius and, 16
etiological exegesis, 5–9
evil: origin of, 36
See also sin
exegesis, four methods of, 5–9
explanation. See etiological exegesis
faith. See belief
families, 22; 26–32
fasting, 35
Faustus of M ilevis, 20
foolish people and wise people, 24; 27–28;
33–34
friendship, 23–24
Ganymedes of the Bucolics, 17
generosity, 35
God:
and divine authority, 27–28; 34
human wisdom and, 33
nature of, 36
as truth, 33
wisdom of, 33
grace: the law and, 9
grammarians, Latin, 17
Greek words, 5
gullibility. See credulity
heaven (life after death), 25
heretics and heresies, 19; 21
definition of, 1
manicheans as (see Manicheans)
historical exegesis, 5–9
Holy Spirit, 7
human beings. See people
intelligence: foolish/wise persons, 24;
27–28; 33–34
Jesus Christ, 33–34
as authority, 27–28
belief in, 31–32
as wisdom of God, 33
knowledge:
belief before insight, 22–32
curiosity vs. studiousness, 22
and human intellect (see intelligence)
imagined, 22, 25
and opinion, 4; 25
rational insight and, 26–32

Volume I/8
On Christian Belief

reason and, 20
of truth (see truth, quest for)
Latin grammarians, 17
law. See Old Testament
liberal arts, 16; 22
life after death, 25
light: “passed through,” 3
love:
of God, 33–34
of world, 34
Lucretius, 10
Manicheans, 2; 31
See also specific topics
Augustine as former, 2; 17; 20
Faustus of Milevis, 20
Mani as apostle, 7
position of, 31
rejecting New Testament passages, 7
rejecting Old Testament (see Old Testament)
sun-worship of, 13
martyrdom, 35
Maurus, Terence. See Terence Maurus
mind, human
See also intelligence
defiled, 34
miracles, 34–35
moral purification: and truth, acquiring, 21
“New Academy” (academics), 20; 25
New Testament
See also scripture
Manichean rejection of passages, 7
and Old Testament, 5–9
non-belief, 26–32
Old Testament, 4–5; 12–13; 20; 36
See also scripture
Augustine formerly rejecting, 13; 20
and New Testament, 5–9
truth of, 13
opinion, 4; 25
being opinionated, 25
oratory, 16
parents and children, 22; 26–32
people:
five types of, 25
wise and foolish, 24; 27–28; 33–34
philosophical skepticism (academics), 20; 25
Plato, 17
purification, moral: truth and, 21
rationalism: of Manicheans. See Manicheans
reason
belief before insight, 22–32
faith and, 22
knowledge and, 20
truth and, 20
religion
See also true religion
belief and, 23–24
Rhadamanthus, 10
Sabbath, 6; 9
sacrifices, 9
scripture
See also New Testament; Old Testament; text
four methods of interpreting, 5–9
senses, 1; 28; 34
sin, 27
sincerity, 23
skepticism (academics), 20; 25
soul, 14
students and teachers, 15–17
studiousness, 22
sun-worship: of Manicheans, 13
superstition, 2
suspicion, 22
symbolism, 9
teachers, 15–17; 35
Terence Maurus (Latin grammarian), 17
text, 11
exegesis, four methods of, 5–9
misunderstanding, ways of, 10–12
scripture (see New Testament; Old Testament)
sympathy with author, 13
true religion, 15; 19; 21
See also Catholic Church
and submission to authority, 21
Whoever seeks, will find, 30
truth:
authority and, 2
credibility and, 34
enemies of, 25
five types of people and, 25
God as, 33
ignorant/wise persons and, 24; 27–28; 33–34
of Old Testament, 13
and wisdom, 33
truth, quest for, 14–21
belief and, 21–32
preparing for, 21
unbelief, 26–32
understanding, 25
On Christian Belief

Virgil, 13; 17; 46

wisdom:
  of God, 33
  human, 24; 27-28; 33-34

truth and, 33

world:
  disdain for, 35
  worldly pursuits, 3
  writings. See text
Index from

Enchiridion (On Faith, Hope, and Love)
(Enchiridion (De fide, spe, et caritate))

Included in book:
On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8
Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

### Enchiridion

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 18:20</td>
<td>21, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:5</td>
<td>13, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:14</td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 32:4</td>
<td>13, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 32:31</td>
<td>13, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers 21:7</td>
<td>13, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 5:9</td>
<td>13, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 5:18</td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 14:1</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 28:28</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:7</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 10:3</td>
<td>21, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 23:6</td>
<td>9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:1</td>
<td>22, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 38:9</td>
<td>17, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 43:1</td>
<td>14, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 51:5</td>
<td>13, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 51:10</td>
<td>9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 54:1</td>
<td>14, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 59:10</td>
<td>9, 32; 20, 77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 11:28</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 2:13</td>
<td>30, 114</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### On Christian Belief
### Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity

**Vol. I/8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>15, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>11, 37; 15, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>13, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>21, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>21, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>5, 17; 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:40</td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>19, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>30, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:11-13</td>
<td>30, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>7, 22; 19, 73; 21, 78; 22, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>22, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:14-15</td>
<td>19, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>24, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:26</td>
<td>20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>24, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>19, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>18, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>29, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>11, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:37-41</td>
<td>20, 75; 20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>19, 72; 20, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:42</td>
<td>20, 76; 27, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:61</td>
<td>22, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>10, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>12, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>27, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>10, 34; 11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>15, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>31, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:36</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>14, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>9, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>19, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>20, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>12, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>7, 20; 31, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>10, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>8, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>14, 50; 20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>14, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>14, 52; 31, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>14, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:4-11</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>28, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>31, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>10, 33; 17, 64; 31, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>16, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:11-13</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>9, 32; 25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>25, 98; 25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:19</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:20-21</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>25, 98; 25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13-15</td>
<td>18, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>18, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>19, 74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**On Christian Belief**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4-6</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td>18, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>15, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td></td>
<td>15, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31-32</td>
<td></td>
<td>17, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9.12</td>
<td></td>
<td>16, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td></td>
<td>23, 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50</td>
<td></td>
<td>23, 91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>29, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20-21</td>
<td></td>
<td>13, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>16, 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 79; 21, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>2, 8; 18, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>14, 53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>16, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>10, 33; 25, 98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>16, 63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>15, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td></td>
<td>15, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19-20</td>
<td></td>
<td>16, 62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td>27, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>27, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>24, 97; 27, 103</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>22, 82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Titus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>20, 75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>15, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>2, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>18, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>18, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td></td>
<td>2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Peter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>15, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td></td>
<td>9, 30; 31, 118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>17, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>21, 121</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Stratan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

On Christian Belief

Enchiridion

abortions. See fetuses
A cademics, the, 20
A dam, 104-105; 108
sin of (see original sin)
adultery, 19; 22; 78; 121
Aeneid (Virgil), 8; 11; 44
almsgiving, 70-77
for the dead, 110
angels, 14; 58; 61-63; 90
bodies of, 59
and Christ’s death, 61
and eternity, 100; 111
fallen, 23; 25; 27-29; 57; 61; 94
happiness of, 29
Peter and, 20
saints and, 29
Satan disguised as, 60
anger
See also wrath of God of God vs. of humans, 33
A postles’ Creed. See creed
babies. See infants
baptism, 39; 71
of infants, 97
of Jesus, 49
of John the Baptist, 49
and sin, 42-43; 64
baptismal catechesis. See creed; Lord’s Prayer
believers. See Christians
Bible. See scripture,
birth of Christ, 37
bodies, spiritual, 91
body
See also resurrection of the flesh; senses
death of, 25; 64
ensouled, 91
material of, 88-89
born again. See rebirth; salvation
catechesis, baptismal. See creed; Lord’s Prayer
Catholic faith
See also Christianity; Church

foundation of, 4; 4; 5
charity, 69-70; 117-121; 118; 121
See also almsgiving; 1 Corinthians 13:13;
love; works
faith, hope, and, 7-8
hope and, 114
and worship of God, 2
chastity, 22; 121
children, 46; 93; 161
See also infants
choice, free. See freedom
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian initiation. See creed; Lord’s Prayer
Christianity
See also Catholic faith; specific topics
doctrine, 5
and the natural sciences, 9; 16
requirements of, 3
and sacred scripture, 3
Christian life, 3
Church, 56; 61
See also Catholic faith; specific topics
faith in, 56-63
in heaven, 57
penance, 65
and salvation, 65
Trinity and, 56
Cicero, 16; 17
circumcision, 67
cities, two, 111
concupiscence, 41; 78; 118
continence. See chastity
1 Corinthians 13:13; 3; 122
See also charity; faith; hope
corruption (flesh and blood), 91-92
corruption or contamination, 12-14
See also evil
creation, 9-22
creatures. See angels; humans
creed, 56; 114
Lord’s Prayer and, 7
crime, 64
cross, the:
On Christian Belief

redemption and, 41; 52–53
second crucifixion, doctrine of, 18

damnation, 27; 99–100; 111–113
See also eternal punishment of the lost, 92
punishment of damned, alleviating, 110
death
See also eternal punishment; resurrection of the flesh
of body, 25; 64
second, 92–93
to sin, 52 (see also baptism)
sin and, 106–107
soul after (before resurrection), 109–110
death of Christ
See cross; Jesus Christ: death of deception
See also error and lying, 22
deeds (good works). See works
demons:
faith of, 8
second crucifixion doctrine, 18
desire, 24
desires, worldly, 68
devil, 28
disguised as angel, 60
punishing humans, 49
devils (demons). See demons
doctrine, 4
Donatists, 17; 64
dualism. See Manichean dualism

Enchiridion: as handbook, 4; 6; 122
enemies, 72
love for, 73–74
prayer for, 32
enlightenment, 103
ensouled body, 91
Epicurus, 16
error, 17; 19
See also heresies
evil and, 19; 21
sin and, 20–21
Esau, 98
eternal life, 69; 84–113
See also heaven; resurrection of the flesh
beliefs and, 19
good works and, 106–107
predestination to, 100
eternal punishment, 27; 69; 94; 111–113
See also damnation
beliefs and, 19
for the lost, 92
second death, 92–93
eternity, 111–113
evil, 11
See also good; sin
causes of, 23
corruption or contamination, 12–14
deliverance from, 116
error as, 19; 21
God as permitting, 96
good arising from, 11; 15; 27; 100–102;
104–105
guileless in what is evil, 1
and natural science, 9; 16
as needing good to exist, 13–14
people, 13, 19
two contraries, 14
faith, 2–3; 5; 9–113
See also Catholic faith; 1 Corinthians 13:13
and assent, 20
in Christ as redeemer, 23–55
and Christian doctrine, 5
in the Church, 56–63
definition of, 8
of demons, 8
in forgiveness of sins, 64–83
in God as creator, 9–22
as God-given, 31–32
and good works, 30–32; 67
in the Holy Spirit, 56–63
hope, and love, 3; 7–8
and reason, 4; 4
in resurrection of the flesh, 84–113
faith, confession of. See creed
Faith and Works (Augustine), 67
fall, the. See original sin
fear: hope and, 8
fetuses, 84–86
fire (purgatory), 67–69
flesh, 34
See also humanity
resurrection of (see resurrection of the flesh)
foreknowledge, God's, 100
forgiveness of sin, 64–83; 73–74; 115
almsgiving and (see almsgiving)
forgiving others, 73–74
fornication, 78
foundation, Christ as, 5; 68
four stages of humanity, 118–120
freedom (free will), 16; 25; 30–32; 106
See also God; grace; predestination; will of God
friends, 72
Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity

Gift of God. See Holy Spirit

God

See also grace of God; mercy of God; Trinity; specific topics
as creator, 9–22
and human beings, 2–3
will of, 94–102
worship of, 2–3
wrath of, 33; 112

good
See also evil
all things as, 12
corrupt or contaminated, 12–13
decoration by, 19
evil as needing, 13–14
increasing or decreasing, 12–14
people, 13; 19
two contraries, 14

good will. See love
good works. See works
grace of God, 30; 33; 52; 98–99
freely given, 107
good works and, 32
humanity, four stages of, 118
incarnate, 36; 40; 108
and merit, 106
and predestination, 100

Greeks, 9
guilt, 97

handbooks:
creed and Lord’s Prayer as, 7
Enchiridion as handbook (see Enchiridion)
happiness, 16; 24–25
of angels, 29
heaven, 62
See also eternal life
Church in, 57
heavenly bodies, 58
hell
See also eternal punishment
“sons of,” 39
herbs, 103
heresies, 4–5; 67
See also error; individual groups and names
Holy Spirit, 9; 33
See also Trinity
baptism of Jesus, 49
and Christ’s birth, 37–40
and the Church, 56
faith in, 56–63
as Gift of God, 40; 117
and love, 117; 121
sin against, 83
hope, 114–116

See also 1 Cor13:13; Lord’s Prayer
and charity, 114
faith, and charity, 7–8
fear and, 8
and worship of God, 2
humanity, 99; 103
See also original sin; specific topics
fallen, 7; 25–26
four stages of, 118–120
as good, 13–23
immortality, loss of, 106
saints (see saints)
humility:
of Christian faith, 103
of God, 108
ignorance, 17; 24; 81
illness, 24
incarnation. See Jesus Christ
incorruption, 91; 92
infants, 42–43; 46; 52; 66; 95; 97
See also children
injustice: God and, 98–99
Jacob, 21; 58; 98
James, 8; 67; 78
Jerome, 87; 87
Jerusalem, heavenly, 29
Jesus Christ, 5
See also mediator, Christ as; Trinity;
specific topics
baptism of, 49
birth of, 37
death of, 25; 49; 52–53; 101 (see also cross)
divinity of, 35
as foundation, 5; 68
mysteries of, 53; 108
person of, 35
as redeemer, 23–55
redemptive sacrifice of, 41
resurrection of, 52–53
Job, 33
John the Baptist, 49
John (the evangelist), 36
judgment, 66
of living and dead, 54–55
mercy and, 94; 98–99
and predestination, 100
justice: God and, 98–102; 107
See also judgment; mercy of God
justification, 36; 50

kingdom of God: incorruption, 91
knowledge, secular, 9; 16

Laurence, questions by, 1; 3–4

On Christian Belief
law, 118–120
life
See also humanity
beginning of, 86
life, eternal. See eternal life
Lord’s Prayer, 5; 7; 71; 116
creed and, 7
Luke, gospel of (five petitions), 116
Matthew, gospel of (seven petitions), 115
lost, the
grace and, 98
resurrection of, 92
love, 5
See also charity
for enemies, 73–74
faith, hope, and, 3; 7–8
Holy Spirit and, 117; 121
of neighbor as self, 76
primacy of, 117
Luke, gospel of, 116
lust. See concupiscence
lying, 18; 22
man. See humanity
Manichean dualism: refutation of, 9; 15
Mary, virgin mother, 34; 36–38; 40
massa damnata, 27
Matthew, gospel of, 115
mediator, Christ as, 33; 48; 61; 108; 118
mercy:
almsgiving as, 76
and judgment, 94
vessels of mercy, 112
mercy of God, 30–32; 82; 98–102; 107
merit, 98–99; 106
miracles, 94
moon, 58
Moses, 118
mysteries of Christ, 53
See also birth of Christ; justification
mediation, 108
mysticism, 53
natural sciences, 9; 16
non-believers. See lost, the
Novatians, 83
Old Covenant. See law
Origen, 18; 29
original sin, 7; 25–27; 30; 104–106; 108
See also children; infants
and baptism, 42–51; 64
and mercy, 98
wrath of God, 33
orthodoxy
See also Catholic faith
and heresy (see heresies)
parents: sin of, 46
Paul, 67; 100
See also specific topics
Pauline triad (faith, hope, and charity). See
1 Corinthians 13:13
peace:
of God, 63
humanity, four stages of, 118
Pelagian controversy, 64; 99
See evil: problem of; fall, the; grace:
necessity of; predestination;
salvation: conditions for
penance, 65; 69; 71; 82; 94
penitence, 46
Peter, 20–21; 30; 57; 100
Pharaoh, 99
Pharisees, 75–76
philosophers
See also individual names
“phusikoς,” 9
piety, 2
Porphyry, 86
prayer
See also Lord’s Prayer
for enemies, 32
for everyone, especially upper class,
103
predestination, 100
pride, 28; 108
Priscillianists, 18
punishment
See also eternal punishment; penance
death as, 107
of humans and angels, 100
and sacrifices for the dead, 110
purgatory, 67–69
questions, 1; 3–4
reason, 118
and faith, 4; 4
truth, defending by, 4
Rebecca, 98
rebirth, 46; 50–51; 64; 71
reconciliation, 79
redeemer. See Jesus Christ
redemption, 41
regeneration, 119
religion, 4
See also faith
reason and, 4
repentance. See penance; penitence
resurrection of Christ, 52–53
resurrection of the flesh, 84–113
Volume I/8

of fetuses, 84–86
of the lost, 92
of saints, 29
soul before (after death), 109
righteousness, 41

sacraments. See baptism; penance
sacrifice:
for the dead, 110
sins, as called, 41
saints, 29
bodies of, 91
eternal life of, 29
Sallust, 18
salvation, 118
See also rebirth
conditions for, 97
everyone...shall be saved, 7
by grace through faith, 30
through fire, 67–69
who wills everyone to be saved, 103
Satan. See devil
Savior. See Jesus Christ
schism, 67
See also error; heresies
scripture, sacred, 4; 98
and Christian life, 3
second coming. See judgment
second death, 92–93
senses, bodily, 4; 20
servanthood of Christ, 35
sexuality. See concupiscence
Siamese twins, 87
sickness, 24
sin
See also evil, 37
ancestors, 47
and baptism, 42–43; 64
causes of, 81
Christ and, 41
and crime, 64
death to, 52
and desire (see concupiscence)
and error, 20–21
forgiveness of, 64–83
and free will, 30–32
and grace, 52
habitual, 86
against the Holy Spirit, 83
humanity, four stages of, 118
of parents, 46
and penance, 65; 69; 71; 94
and penitence, 46
sacrifices as called, 41
singular and plural, 44–45
trivial and serious, 78–80
sin, original. See original sin
skepticism, 20
Son of God. See Jesus Christ; Trinity
souls:
between death and resurrection, 109–110
ensouled bodies, 91
spiritual bodies, 91
stars, 58
stealing, 22
suicide, 30; 106
sun, 58
temptation, 115–116
Ten Commandments. See commandments
thief, 22
time and eternity, 111–113
1 Timothy 2:4, 103
tithing, 76
See also almsgiving
tree and fruits, 15–16
Trinity, 9–10, 37; 40
and the Church, 56
truth, 97
defending by reason, 4
and error (see error)
and lying, 18
twins: Jacob and Esau, 98
Siamese, 87
two cities, 111
unbelievers. See lost, the
unfairness: God and, 98–99
unhappiness, 24
vessels of mercy, 112
Virgil, 8; 11; 16; 17; 20; 44
Virgin Mary. See Mary, virgin mother
virtues, theological (three divine). See 1 Corinthians 13:13; faith; hope; love
vision: and Christian doctrine, 5
Volusianus, 34
weakness, 81
wealth and almsgiving, 77
wickedness. See sin
will
See freedom; will of God (below)
will of God, 94–102
and human will, 97–102
wisdom, 1–2
as worship of God, 2–3
witness to Christ, 101
Word of God, 35–36
works
See also almsgiving; charity

On Christian Belief
On Christian Belief

and eternal life, 107
faith and, 30–32; 67
world:
desires of, 68
standards of, 77

worship of God, 2–3
as faith, hope, and charity (see faith,
hope, charity)
wrath of God, 33; 111–113

Volume I/8
Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

### True Religion

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>55, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>49, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>46, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>34, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>34, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>11, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46:10</td>
<td>35, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>77:6</td>
<td>34, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79:39</td>
<td>54, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>21, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>11, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>51, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>21, 41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>4:3-4</td>
<td>38, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>38, 71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### On Christian Belief
On Christian Belief

3:22 23, 44
6:13 44, 82
9:9-10 53, 103
11:3 23, 44
11:19 8, 15
15:51 27, 50
15:55.54 12, 25

2 Corinthians
4:18 3, 4
5:10 31, 58

Galatians
6:8 3, 4

Ephesians
3:15 31, 58

1 John
2:15-16 3, 4, 38, 70
2:16 55, 107
5:21 49, 95

Revelation
21:1 23, 44

Volume I/8
True Religion

Adam and Eve, 22–23; 38; 50; 83–84; 110
addictions. See desires adolescents, 45; 48
allegory, 99
angels, 26; 28; 82; 110
angelic life, promise of, 50
of divine wrath, 75
evil, 107; 111–112
good, 20; 44; 111–112
animals, 53
worship of, 108–109
Arians, 9
art, 55–57; 101
atheism, 69–71
Augustine:
personal experiences of, 20
religion, concept of, 111; 113
authority:
function of, 45–51
reason and, 45–51
trustworthy, 46–47
and truth, uneducated as attaining, 3;
45–51
beauty, 35; 41; 55–57; 59–62; 67–68; 74; 101
of God, 21; 35; 61–62
low forms of, 75
poetic art and, 42–43
of the universe, 44; 76
being and nothingness, 21–29
Bible. See scripture
body, 21–22; 28–29; 40–41
See also pleasure; resurrection of the
body; senses
soul as better than, 109
spirit as better than, 101
as “vanity,” 41
body, ethereal, 30
born again, 44–45
See also salvation
Caesar, 111
cardinal virtues, 29
Catholic Church, 10–12; 47
See also Christianity
chariot, comparison of, 83–85
charity (love). See love
chastity, 5
children, 45; 48
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christianity, 12
See also Jesus Christ; religion; specific
topics
and free will, 19
Platonism, as completing (see under
philosophy: Christ as fulfillment of)
and salvation, 19
“true worship of the true God,” 2
union with God by way of, 111–113
Church. See Catholic Church; Christianity
Cicero, 3; 21
circumcision, 3
commandments:
to love, 24; 84–93; 101–106
concupiscence. See lust; pleasure
coveting, 89–90
See also greed
creation, 35; 68–69
value of, 44

On Christian Belief
worship of creatures, 68
curiosity:
fortune-tellers and oracles, consulting, 5-6
and knowledge, 101
the three desires, 94-100
damnation of sinners, 44
death, 21-22; 49
See also resurrection of the body
abolition of, 23-25
of others, 91
death, second. See second death
deception, 67
See also errors; falsehood
and lying, 61-62
not letting others deceive us, 78
demons:
consulting, 7
worship of, 108
desires, three, 68-106
See also curiosity; pleasure; pride
destroyers, 75
death as temptor, 68-106
divination, 5
divine guidance. See authority
Donatists, 9
dualism. See Manichean dualism
Eden, garden of. See Adam and Eve
effectors, 48
elements, the four, 52
Eleusinian mysteries, 8
enemies, 91
love for, 87; 92
envy, 86; 89-90
See also jealousy
coveting, 89
death as envious, 26
Epicureans, 96
errors (religious), 7-20; 68; 107-111
See also false religion; heresies; individual
groups and descriptions
eternal life, 13; 49; 97
See also resurrection of the body
eternal punishment. See hell
covenancy, 97-99; 101
ethereal body, 30
ebics, completion of, 84-93; 101-106
and Christ's earthly life, 30-31
eucharist, the, 8
Eve, 83
See also Adam and Eve
evil
See also sin; wickedness
definition of, 23
overcoming, 23-25
as perversion of the will, 21-29
as presuming good, 37
the problem of, 21-44
sin and, 48; 75
as substance, 38-40; 44
and universe, harmony of, 35-44
eyes, lust of. See lust; senses
faith, 103; 106
See also Christianity; religion
taken man. See Adam and Eve
false religion, 68; 107-111
See also atheism; error; heresies;
individual
falsehood, 66-67
See also deception; errors; lying
family, 87-89
faultiness. See evil
dieth
See also body
prudence of, 104
dish-bound shapes, 45
form, 35
See also beauty
formula, 74; 79
See also numbers
covination, 105
fortune-tellers, 5-6
freedom, 93; 111
Christianity and, 19
of human will, 27
and love, commandment of, 84-93;
101-106
sin and, 27-28
friends, 91
Gnostics, 9
God, 113
See also Trinity; specific topics
ascent to, 21-44; 49; 52-66; 72-100;
107-113
beauty of, 21; 35; 61-62
coming into world, 45
freedom to serve, 19
Jesus Christ as from, everything else as
through, 81
justice and benevolence of, 29
mercy of, 14; 19; 98
providence of, and all creatures, 74-76
union with, 111-113
worship of, 1-2; 18; 46-47; 112; 113
gods, pagan, 112
good:
evil as presuming, 37
God as author of, 35-26

Volume I/8
lower and higher, 38
matter as, 35
good looks. See beauty
grace of God, 19; 44–45; 103
law and, 50
gratitude, 91
greed, 3; 6; 24; 48; 65; 78
guidance, divine. See authority
happiness, 90–92
finding, 1
the Happy life, 84
harmony, 55–57
See also beauty
evil and, 35–44
healing of humankind, 45–51
healing spirits, 30
heavenly bodies, 109
hell, 48; 101; 105
damnation of sinners, 44
heresies, 8–9; 47
See also errors; individual groups and names
value of, 14–15
Holy Spirit, 8; 98–99; 112
See also God; Trinity
hope, 92; 103; 106
human beings
See also specific topics
ages of, 48–50
expelled from Paradise, 38
free will of (see freedom)
healing of human race, 45–51
human nature, 110
of ill will, 75
in image of God, 82
inner and outer self, 77
value of, 44
idolatry, 2; 47; 66–71; 67
impiety. See sin
incarnation. See Jesus Christ
injustice, 91
intellect
See also reason and knowledge, 3–7
interiority, 72
jealousy, 89–91
Jesus Christ, 28; 81
See also Christianity; God; Trinity;
Wisdom of God; Word of God
as incarnation, 14; 30–32; 45–51
as mediator, 19
philosophy, as fulfillment of (see under philosophy: Christ as fulfillment of)
resurrection of, 14; 32; 72–83
three temptations, victory over, 68–106
as Wisdom of God, 71
Jews, 9–10
John the Baptist, 50
judgments, making, 50; 57–59
justice, 43; 91
exercising of the just, 44
of God, 29
knowledge, 102
and action, 33
curiosity and, 101
intellect and, 3–7
reason and authority, 45–51
striving for, goal of, 94–100
law, 33–34
See also Old Testament; scripture and grace, 50
life, 21–22; 52
eternal and temporal, 97
this life and the next, 102–103
logic, completion of, 94–100
love, 106
the commandments, 24; 84–93;
101–106
for enemies, 87; 92
faith, hope, and, 103
of family, 87–89
for God, 91; 93
lust, 3–4; 39–40; 48; 70–71; 78; 104–105;
107
See also pleasure; three desires
lying, 61
See also falsehood and deception, 61–62
man. See human beings; specific topics
Manichean dualism, 9; 16–17; 96; 108
See also errors; heresies
refutation of, 14; 35; 44
mathematics, 46
See also numbers
matter, as good, 35
mediator, Christ as, 19
medicine, science of, 34
mercy of God, 14; 19; 98
mind:
ascent of from things visible to God,
52–67
making bad use of, 104
soul and, 48
miracles, 31; 47
money. See wealth
mysteries, sacred, 8
Neoplatonism, 4–5

On Christian Belief
true religion

See also philosophy; Plato; individual names
See also scripture
nothingness, 21–22
numbers, 46; 52; 74; 79; 109
old age, 48
Old Testament, 33–34; 99
See also law; scripture
oracles, 5–6
original sin, 39
See also Adam and Eve; sin: origin of
pagan gods, 112
pagan philosophers, 2
See also philosophy; individual names
parables, 104–106
Paradise (garden of Eden). See Adam and Eve
patience, 91–92
perfection of the blessed, 44
philosophy, 7; 8; 12
See also Neoplatonism; individual names
Christ as fulfillment of, 1–11; 30–34;
72–106
inconsistency of philosophers, 1–2
three areas of, 30–34 (see also ethics; logic; physics)
Photinians, 9
physics, 32; 72–83
place and time, 65
Plato, 3–7
Platonism, 84
See also Neoplatonism; philosophy
salvation in terminology of, 101
pleasure, 107
See also senses
the three desires, 72–83
Plotinus, 76
poetic composition, 42–43
Porphyry, 5; 69
possessions
See also greed; wealth
coveting, 89
pride (the three desires), 84–93
punishment, 23–25; 48
See also hell
quarreling, 104
rational life. See reason
rational soul, 82
reason, 52–53
and authority-based belief, 45–51
rationalism, 110
rebirth, 44–45
See also salvation
religion
See also Christianity
false, 107–111
God, union with, 111; 113
and philosophy, 8; 12
true, 12–13; 113
resurrection of Christ, 14; 32; 72–83
resurrection of the body, 11; 25; 50; 82; 103
See also eternal life
riches. See wealth
Romulus, 64
sacraments, 8
Truth and, 33
salvation, 13; 44–51; 101
Christianity and, 19
fundamental principle of, 8
in Platonist terminology, 101
Satan. See devil
schisms, 9; 47
See also errors; heresies; individual groups and names
scripture, 98–99
hidden meanings of, 51
history of, 51
purpose of, 100
Truth in, 33
the two Testaments, 33–34; 99
second death, 50; 101
self, inner and outer, 77
senses, 3; 18; 40; 45; 53–56; 62; 94–100
See also pleasure
beauty and (see beauty)
enslavement to, 31
feeble, 104
making good use of, 106
soul and, 49
serpent, 84
Serpentines, 9
sexual intercourse, 74; 102
“fraternal” manner of, 78
shape, 35
See also beauty
shapes:
flesh-bound, 45
signs, visible, 47
sin, 39
See also evil; punishment; vices;
wickedness
definition of, 48
and free will, 27–28
origin of, 25; 38; 43
and punishment, 23–25
singers, 90
sinners, damnation of, 44
volume i/8

slavery:
of soul vs. body, 110-111

Socrates, 2

Son of God. See Jesus Christ; Trinity
soul, 18-19; 23-25; 28
ascent to God, 45-106
as better than body, 109
Eve as representing, 83
and mind, 48
rational soul, 82
"soulish," 51
spirit and, 25; 51; 85
vices of, 38; 41
the world soul, 22; 68
space, 80
spirit:
as better than body, 87; 101
soul and, 25; 51; 85
Stoics, 96
superstition, 111
swearing (oaths), 2
symmetry, 55-57
See also beauty
talents, parable of, 104-106

temptation:
three temptations, Christ as victor over,
68-106
three desires, 68-106
See also curiosity; pleasure; pride
time, 80
and place, 65
Trinity, 113
mystery of, 12-13
as one true God (see God)
true religion, 12-13, 113
See also Christianity; God; Jesus Christ
Truth, 25; 47; 54-56; 72-73; 111; 113
and inferior representations of, 94-97
judging, unlawfulness of, 57-58
steps leading to, 98-99
true vs., 66-67
uneducated as attaining, 45-51
ugliness, 76
unhappiness, 91
union with God, 112-113
unity, 61
bodily and non-bodily, 59
universe:
beauty of, 44; 76
evil and, 35-44
vanity, 41; 61-62
vices, 83-85; 93; 101
virtues:
cardinal, 29
vices and, 93; 101
warfare, 104
wealth, 31
possessions, 89
wedding feast, parable of, 104-106
weeping and gnashing of teeth, 104-105
wickedness, 21-22
See also evil; sin
will, free. See freedom
wisdom, 110
ture, 8
Wisdom of God, 3; 8; 24; 30; 33; 35; 39;
72; 75; 81; 100; 112
See also Jesus Christ
and allegory, 99
fifth age and, 49
Truth and, 57; 110
Word of God, 4; 28; 30; 45; 66; 79; 81; 113
See also Jesus Christ
world
See also three desires
things of, 39
worm, 77
worship of true God, 1-2; 18; 46-47; 112;
113
worship of wrong things, 2; 39; 47; 68-69;
108-112
See also false religion
wrestling matches, 43
youth, 48

on christian belief
Index from

On Adulterous Marriages

(De adulterinis conjugiis)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine's works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis), and Continence (De continentia).

Volume I/9 Books/Pastoral

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005
Volume I/9

INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Marriage and Virginity
# Volume I/9

## Adulterous Marriages

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>7:3-4</td>
<td>L:21,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>L:17,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>76:11</td>
<td>L:24,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>28:2-5</td>
<td>II:14,15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>II:10,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>L:2,2; L:10,11; L:22,28; L:10,10; L:17,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>L:14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>L:26,33; L:27,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>L:8,8; L:11,12; L:21,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:10-12</td>
<td>L:18,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>L:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>L:11,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11-12</td>
<td>L:9,10; L:9,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>L:21,27; L:22,28; L:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>6:37</td>
<td>L:14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>L:9,10; L:11,12; L:12,13; L:21,27; L:22,28; L:25; L:9,8; L:13,13; L:17,8; L:19,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>L:7,6; L:14,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>L:6,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>L:27,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>L:27,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>L:20,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-13</td>
<td>L:14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2-5</td>
<td>L:2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>L:5,5; L:8,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>L:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>L:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10-11</td>
<td>L:11; L:3,3; L:4,4; L:21,27; L:2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>L:7,7; L:21,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>L:13,14; L:17,19; L:19,23; L:20,24; L:21,25; L:21,26; L:25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>L:21,25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>L:20,24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Marriage and Virginity

1 Timothy
5:12
5:14-15
II,12
II,24,30

James
4:17
I,9,9

1 John
1:8
II,14,14

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [ ] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

Adulterous Marriages

abstinence:
See also celibacy

adultery:
  baptism of adulterers, [166] 28,35
  changing Christ’s law (Pollentius),
  [175] 10,9
  Christ forgives sin of, [171] 6,5
  dissolving a marriage (Pollentius),
  [168] 2,2
  divorce and, [144] 1,1
  divorce as cause of, [145] 2,2
  flesh or spirit, [165] 25
  forcing wife to commit, [183] 17,18
  forgive adulterous spouse, [180] 15
  husbands punish adulterous wives,
  [179] 14,14
  marriage bond (Pollentius), [169] 4;
  [170] 5; [170-171] 5
  marriage bond not broken by, [178]
  13,13
  pity for man forced to live in, [176]
  11,11
  procreation as purpose of, [176] 12
  proof of, [173] 8,7
  second death, for eternity, [176]
  11,11
  sinful spouse regarded as having died,
  [169] 3,3; [169] 4
  spouse is ill or far away, [178] 13,13
  wife may leave husband because of,
  [145] 3
  wife’s celibacy as cause, [146] 4,4
  winning people for Christ, [162] 22
  woman forgiven by Christ, [174] 9,8
  advice, [158] 22; [159] 19,23; [160] 20,24;
  [162] 26
  Antoninus, Emperor, [173] 8,7
  baptism, [171] 6,5
  adulterers (dying), [166] 28,35
  dying catechumens, [165] 26,33;
  [166] 28,35
  excommunication and, [170] 5
  fear for those unable to answer for
  themselves, [165] 26,33
  forgiveness of sins,[181] 16,16;
  [182,183] 17,18
  uncertainty about intention, [166]
  26,33

body and soul:
See also human body

carnal union, See sexual union.
catechumens:
  adultery as impediment, [181] 16,16
  last moments of life, [165-166] 26,33;
  [166] 28,35
  celibacy (celibates),[178] 12
  See also: celibacy; chastity; virginity
  aspiring to perfection, [184] 18,19
  burden is Christ’s, [185] 19,20
  case: wife wants to be celibate, [146]
  4,4
  circumstances preventing intercourse,
  [175] 10,9
  divorce for sake of, [145] 3
  free choice of, [185] 19,20
  gift from God, [184] 18,19
  inability for, [177] 12
  motivation, [184] 18,19
  not compulsory (Pollentius), [174]
  10,9
  possible with God’s help, [184] 19,20
  reconciliation refused, [173] 9,8
  separation for sake of, [175] 10
  See also: sexual union
  vow: break to marry one who prom-
  ises to convert, [164] 24,30

charity:
  law and, [155] 14,15
  staying with unbelieving spouse,
  [158] 22
  chastity (in marriage), [172] 7,6
  difficult for separated women, [183]
  17,18
  help in preserving, [179] 14,14
  honor of earthly city, [173] 8,7
  male standards, [185-186] 20,21; 22
  marital, [185] 19,20; [186] 22
  same rule for men and women,
  [172,173] 8,7
  unbelieving spouse, [157] 20
  vow:
    - free choice, [185] 19,20
    - marriage would not be good,
    - [155] 15,16
    - mutual consent, [164] 24,30

Volume I/9
woman divorced for adultery, [170] 4
children:
  baptism; use of reason, [166] 26,33
  See procreation.
Christians:
  marriage to pagans, [153] 13,14
clergy (clerical state):
  celibacy, [186] 22
  constrained by people to take burden of, [186] 22
  honor; consolation, [186] 22
commandments:
  absolute following of Lord’s commands, [162] 22
  God’s authority, [158] 22
  loving obedience, [155] 14,15
compassion,[155] 14,15; [158] 22; [179] 15
conjugal love, See chastity; husband and wife; sexual union.
consience, [172] 7,6
counsel:
  avoiding marital duty, [145] 2,2
  continence [148] 7,7
  See also self-control
  many forms, [183] 18,19
  separation and desire for, [146] 4,4
conversion:
  marrying one who promises to convert, [164] 24,30
Cyprian, Blessed, [164] 25
David, King, [171] 6,5
death:
  adulterer regarded as having died, [169] 3,3; [169] 4,4; [170-171] 5
  baptism; uncertainty, [166] 28,35
  justification for reconciliation; for baptism, [167] 28,35
  marriage bond, [170-171] 5
  disease, [175] 10,9; [178] 13,13
divorced:
  celibacy as purpose of, [145] 3; [149] 7,7
  chaste wife; husband must remain unmarried, [168] 2,2
  Christ’s law as inhuman, [175] 10
  condition: woman may not remarry, [148] 7,7
  divorced woman is still a wife, [153] 12,13
  nonbelieving spouse, [156] 19,18
Paul advises; the Lord does not forbid, [159] 19,23; 20,24
  Pharisees question Jesus, [152] 11;12
  reasons other than adultery, [182] 17
  reconciliation impossible, [174] 10
  remarriage after, See remarriage.
  right to remarriage, [144] 1,1
  unbelievers, [153, 154] 13,14; [159] 19,23
  unbelieving spouse, [159] 19,23
  divorce and adultery, See also remarriage
  adulterer and adulteress, [153] 12,13
  anyone who divorces and . . . , [174] 9,8; [175] 10
  cause of adultery, [145] 2,2
  commit sin to win a soul for Christ, [163] 23,29
  divorce apart from adultery (Mt 19:9), [149] 8,8
  driven to kill first husband, [182] 17
  everyone who leaves his wife . . . , [183] 17,18
  Jesus added exception, [149] 9,9
  man divorces, then marries another, [163] 22
  marrying a divorced woman, [150] 9,9; [153] 12,13; [162] 27
  Matthew interpreted by other gospels, [151] 11,12; [162] 22
  obligation of chastity remains, [170] 4
  only grounds for divorce, [147] 5,5; [168] 2,2
  Pollentius on, [168] 2,2ff; [182] 17,18
  spouse marrying another, after divorce, [165] 25
  textual variants in Matthew’s gospel, [151] 10,11
  vows must be kept, [163] 24,30
  wife unable to be chaste, [183] 17,18
  woman blamed if man remarries, [147] 6,6
  woman may not remarry, [148] 6,6
  woman’s right to leave husband, [147] 5,5; [148] 7,7
  dogs:
  do not give holy things to . . . , [166] 27,34
things permitted but not good, [156] 16,17
what is lawful may not be good, [155] 15,16

good works:
free offering as more pleasing, [155] 14,15
goodness:
permittable is not always good, [155] 15,16
grace, [157] 20; [183] 17,18
Gregorian Codex, [173] 8,7

heart:
unclean; spiritual understanding,
[166] 27,34

heaven:
eunuchs, [184] 18,19
honor, [186] 22
human body:
authority, husband and wife, [147] 5,5;
[149] 8,8

husband and wife:
adultery allows woman to separate,
[148] 7,7
adultery, celibacy, divorce, [145] 3
authority over one’s body, [145] 2,2;
[146] 4,4; [147] 5,5; [149] 8,8
bound as long as spouse lives, [178] 13,13
case: wife wants to practice celibacy,
[146] 4,4
consent to life of celibacy, [144] 1,1;
[145] 2,2; [146] 3
husband not adulterer, wife cannot
leave, [146] 3
marriage rules apply equally, [149] 8,8;
[172] 8,7
one spouse a nonbeliever, [165] 25
one with faith; the other without,
[153] 13,14
pardon for adultery, [179] 14,14
reconciliation after adultery, [171] 6,5
same religion; stay married to each
other, [160-161] 21,25
same rule of chastity, [173] 8,7
separation from nonbeliever, [155] 15,16
staying with unbelieving spouse,
[157] 21

Volume I/9
Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity

taking life of adulterous wife, [180] 15
wife is bound as long as husband is alive, [162] 27; [170] 4; [170-171] 5; [174] 9,8
wife leaves intending to remain unmarried, [146] 3
wife leaves non-adulterer husband, [148] 6,6; 7,7
wife leaves, should remain unmarried, [168] 2,2
wife should not leave; husband should not divorce, [144] 1,1; [146] 4,4
wife who leaves must stay unmarried, [144] 1,1; [145-146] 3; [162] 27
wives put up with adulterer, [147] 6,6

ignorance: sin, [150] 9,9

Jesus Christ, [181] 16,16; [186] 22
See also Christian life
See Church.
woman who committed adultery and,
[171] 6,5; [172] 7,6
judging others, [165] 26,33
justice, [159] 19,23; [162] 22
salvation and, [158] 22
things permitted but not good, [156] 17,18

kindness, [182] 17

law:
everything unlawful is not good,
[155] 15,16
love; obeying freely, [154] 14,15
Lord’s Prayer: Forgive us our trespasses . . ., [180] 15
love, [179] 13,13
things done freely in, [154] 14,15
unforced goodness of, [156] 17,18
lust, [172] 8,7

marital act, See sexual union.
marrige (married people):
See also celibacy; divorce; husband and wife; separation
See adultery.
better, than to burn, [177] 12; [178] 12
Christians and pagans, [153] 13,14
See fidelity.
institution for sake of children, [177] 12
not a sin to marry (Paul), [164] 25; [177] 12
respectability of, [177] 12
rules apply equally, [149] 8,8; [172] 8,7
spouses of different faiths, [161] 21,25; 26
staying married is permissible and good, [155] 15,16
value = procreation, [178] 12
virginity and, [158] 22
women who cannot be celibate, [155] 15,16

marriage bond:
adultery does not dissolve, [169] 4; [170-171] 5
breaking (cases), [175] 10
broken only by death, [178] 13,13
lasts until death, [170-171] 5
not broken by adultery, [178] 13,13
Pollentius on, [182,183] 17,18
union with others; adultery, [174] 9,8
woman bound as long as husband lives, [176] 10

marriage (Old Testament):
command to divorce foreign wives, [157] 20
duty of having children, [177] 12
forbidden to marry foreigner, [157] 20

men:
chastity equally required of,
[172,173] 8,7
laws of court re chastity, [173] 8,7
standards of chastity, [185-186] 20,21; 22
mercy, [172] 7,6; [179] 14,14
mixed marriages, [153] 13,14
Moses, [157] 20
murder:
accusing Christ, [181] 16,16
led to, by adultery, [181] 17
preventing by allowing divorce and remarriage, [182] 17
taking life of adulteress, [180] 15

nonbelievers, See unbelievers.
Marriage and Virginity

obedience:
See also commandments
Onan, [177] 12

pardon, [179] 14,14
passion, [172] 8,7; [186] 20,21
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
list to, for advice, [164] 25
slave of everyone, [154] 14,15; [157] 19
penance (sacrament), [171] 6,5; [183] 17,18
penitent: living in adultery, [181] 16,16
permissible things:
goodness, [155-156] 15,16-19
perversions, [184] 18,19
Pollentius, [144] 1,1ff; [160] 21,25ff;
[168] 1,1ff; [179] 14,14; [181] 16,16
prayer, [179] 13,13
marital duty and, [145] 2,2
priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
See also children; marriage
purpose of marriage, [177] 12
remarriage for purpose of, [176] 11,11
unnecessary for Christians, [177] 12
reason: sin and, [156] 16,17
reconciliation:
penitent living in adultery, [181] 16,16
refused, must adopt celibacy, [173] 9,8
redemption:
not all are redeemed, [155] 15,16
remarriage:
adultery, [145] 2,2
adultery and the marriage bond, [169] 5,3
desire to marry again, [186] 22
after divorce, [162] 27
divorced women, [183] 17,18
killing, to change adultery to mar-
riage, [182] 17
motive for, [164] 24,30
permanent state of adultery, [181] 16,16; 17; [184] 19,20
procreation as purpose, [176] 11,11
right denied wife who leaves hus-
band, [144] 1,1
scandal, [148] 6,6
when divorce is allowed, [147] 6,6;
[148] 7,7
wife leaves husband adulterer, [168] 2,2
wife of deceased husband, [160] 21,25
wife, not adulteress, divorced, [149] 9,9; [163] 22
wife, who commits adultery, [149] 9,9
repentance, [178] 13,13; [181] 16,16
reward, [154] 14,15
sacraments:
dying catechumens, [166] 26,33
saints, [179] 13,13
salvation, [162] 22; [185] 19,20
hindering that of unbelievers, [158] 22
jeopardizing, [186] 22
Saul, King, [171] 6,5
scandal:
remarriage, [148] 6,6; [158] 22
second marriage(s), [144] 1,1
separation:
celibacy as motive for, [175] 10
celibacy required if no reconciliation, [178] 13,13
chastity difficult for women, [183] 17,18
husband refuses to be celibate, [168] 2,2
temptation, [186] 22
woman must remain unmarried, [178] 13,13
sermon on the mount, [151] 10,11
sexual restraint, See abstinence; con-
ti-

sexual union:
disease preventing intercourse, [175] 10,9
experience; licit and illicit, [184] 18,19
shameful if conception is precluded, [177] 12
spouses of a different religion, [160] 21,25
when wife is intolerable, [182] 17
sin:
See also consent; desire
doing something that is not good to
do, [156] 16,17
Volume I/9

ignorance, [150] 9,9
knowing right thing to do, [150] 9,9
lesser serious, still as sin [150] 9,9
let whoever is without sin . . . , [172]
reason and free will, [156] 16,17
slaves, [165] 26,33
soul, See also body and soul.
spirit:
See also Holy Spirit
adultery of, [156] 19
spouses, See husband and wife.
sterility, [176] 11,11
strictness: encourages violence, [181] 16,16
Syria, [186] 20,21
tax: Christ’s example, [154] 14,15
temporal goods:
promised (O.T.), [157] 20
Trinity: works are indivisible, [158] 21
truth, [179] 14,14
unbelievers:
adultery in the heart, [157] 20
divorce (good) or not (better), [159] 19,23
leaving spouse is not forbidden, [157] 19
marriage to a believer, [153] 13,14
one spouse comes to belief, [161] 21,25; 26
separation and salvation of, [158] 22
understanding:
unclean hearts, [166] 27,34
unmarried woman:
wife who leaves husband, [145] 3
violence:
strictness encourages (Pollentius),
[181] 16,16
virginity:
mariage and, [158] 22
virgins:
advise not to marry, [158] 22; [164] 25
virtue:
honor due to, [186] 20,21
men surpassing women in, [172] 8,7
vow:
damnation; breaking a vow, [164] 24,30
promise to convert, [164] 24,30
unconditional, must be kept, [163] 24,30
wickedness:
See also good and evil
widow (-s; -hood):
free to marry, [164] 25
wives, See husband and wife.
woman (women):
See also husband and wife; unmarried
women; virgins
chaste and loyal wives, [183] 17,18
male standards of chastity, [186] 20,21; 22
weaker sex, [186] 20,21
wrongdoing:
acts contrary to authority of the Lord,
[162] 27
advice re something not forbidden,
[160] 20,24
choice between several wrong acts,
[162] 27
knowing right thing to do, [150] 9,9
not good to do what is not wrong,
[158] 22
zeal, [185] 19,20

Marriage and Virginity
Index from
On Continence
(De continentia)

Included in book:
Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine's works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis), and Continence (De continentia).

Volume I/9 Books/Pastoral

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

## Volume I/9

**(prepared by Michael Dolan)**

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Continence

#### Old Testament

**Genesis**
- 46:27 4,11

**Psalms**
- 14:1 2,4
- 29:7 14,32
- 30:7 14,32
- 34:14 7,17
- 41:4 7,18
- 65:2 4,11
- 66:4 14,30
- 94:19 11,25
- 103:2-3 7,18
- 103:3 11,25
- 119:133 5,12
- 141:3 1,2
- 141:3-4 2,5; 5,13

**Wisdom**
- 8:21 1,1-3; 28; 29
- 9:15 8,21

**Sirach**
- 37:16 2,3

**Jeremiah**
- 17:5 4,10

### New Testament

**Matthew**
- 6:12 5,13; 6:15; 11:25
- 6:12-13 7,18
- 10:22 14,31
- 12:45 14,31
- 15:11 2,4
- 15:16-19 2,4
- 15:18 2,4

**Luke**
- 3:6 4,11
- 12:35 7,17
- 12:36 7,17
- 26:39 10,24

**John**
- 1:14 4,11
- 8:44 4,11
- 17:2 4,11

**Romans**
- 3:20 3,7; 4,11
- 4:15 3,7
- 5:20 3,7
- 6:12-13 2,4
- 6:12-14 3,8
- 6:13 14,31
- 6:14 5,12
- 7:7 3,7
- 7:17 13,29
- 7:18 3,6; 8:19; 9:20; 9:22
- 7:22-23 3,6
- 7:23 9,22
- 7:25 8,19
- 8:10 8,21
- 8:12-14 3,8
- 8:13 3,9, 4,10, 4,11; 5,12
- 8:14 5,12; 13,28
- 12:1 10,24
- 13:1 4,11
- 14:23 12,26

**1 Corinthians**
- 1:13 11,25
- 1:30 11,25
- 1:31 14,32
- 3:1-3 11,25
- 3:3 4,11

---

**Marriage and Virginity**
## Marriage and Virginity

The following verses from various books of the New Testament are relevant to the discussion of marriage and virginity:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:5 4,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>5:22-23 9,23; 5:24 9,23; 5:25 9,23; 5:25-28 9,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>2:13 13,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>2:8 10,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>5:14 6,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:14 7,18; 2:14 14,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>1:8 11,25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section.

Continence

abstinence:
See also celibacy
Adam:
  human nature as created, [208] 21
  adultery, [213] 12,26
  false continence and, [214] 27

Angels, [204] 16
avarice, [216] 29
baptism, [205,206] 18
beauty:
  three orderly pairs, [209] 23
blasphemy, [196] 4

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

body and soul:
created good, [207] 20
future life; qualities, [208] 21
See also human body
weighed down by corruptible body, [208] 21
work to bring harmony in, [206] 8,19; [212] 11,25

change:
created goodness subject to, [208] 21
human nature subject to, [205] 18
charity, [205] 7,17
preservation, [194] 1,1
chastity (in marriage), [217] 31
children:
See procreation.
children of God, [215] 13,28
Christian life:
hidden with God in Christ, [215] 29
risen with Christ, [215] 29
Church:
carnal, [211] 11,25
Christ cares for, [209] 23
Christ’s love for, as model, [209] 9,22
healing of its infirmities, [212] 11,25
Manichee view of, [210] 23; [211] 10,24
no spot or wrinkle, [209] 9,22; [212] 11,25
nourishes and nurtures the flesh, [208] 21; [209] 9,22
persons: spiritual and carnal, [212] 11,25
restrained with corrections, [213] 11,25
subject to Christ, [211,212] 11,25
subordinate to Christ, [209] 23
conscience:
continence of the heart, [194] 2
consent:
desires of the flesh, [207] 8,19; 20
devil’s suggestions, [203] 14
guilt in secret, [196] 4
lapse of the heart, [195] 2,3
mind withholds, [216] 29
consolation, [213] 11,25
continence, [202] 13; [217] 31
See also self-control
battle against human defect, [207] 20
conquering carnal desire, [202] 5,12
devil’s suggestions, [200] 4,10
evil impulses put to death by, [216] 29
faith requires works of, [216] 14,30
gift from God, [194] 1,1; [204] 7,17;
[213,214] 12,26; [217] 32
healing infirmities, [206] 18
justice joined to, [204] 7,17
maintained in the heart, [196] 5
mouth, lips, heart, [194] 2
nothing to do (in eternity), [207] 20
perverse motives, [213] 12,26
referring to reproductive organs,
[196] 5
resisting vices, [210] 23
restrain pleasures in conflict with wisdom, [215] 13,28
restraint (fruit of the spirit), [199] 9
restraint and salvation, [215] 29
ruling over passion and desire, [215] 13,28
spirit and, [214] 13,28
struggle with evil desires, [197] 3,6
suppress some evils to have others,
[214] 13,28
sweetness; pleasurable, [198] 7
trueness, [213] 12,26
true faith and, [214] 12,26
unclean, [213] 12,26
weapons for justice, [199] 8
creation:
origin of all created good, [205] 18
crime, [213] 12,26
e external deeds, [196] 4
darkness:
Manichees, [209] 9,22; [211] 10,24
death:
enemy, [197] 3,6
it is not I who live . . . , [215] 29
living according to the flesh, [201] 11
deeds:
initiated internally, [197] 5
thoughts and, [195] 2,3
demons, [214] 27
desire:
attention paid in shunning evil, [216] 29
carnal, [197] 5; 7; [200] 9; [206] 8,19
in marriage, [214] 27
consent, [207] 20
evil, [197] 3,6; 7
inclination to the improper, [197] 3.6; [212] 11.25
law, [198] 7
limits imposed on carnal, [214] 27
restraint of, [206] 18; [212] 11.25
sinful, [198] 8
tempted by, [206] 18
unwanted feelings, [207] 8.19
devil, [200] 4.10; [201] 11
body of the Church (Manichee), [210] 23; [211] 10.24
sin blamed on, [203] 14; [204] 16
disease, [218] 32
evil as, [208] 21
remarriage after, See remarriage.
divorce and adultery:
See also remarriage
dualism:
evil nature prevails over God’s nature, [203] 14
sin blamed on evil nature, [203] 14
eating:
wash hands before, [195] 4
enemy:
flesh as, [199] 9
envy, [214] 11.25
error, [214] 12.26
eternal life:
sinlessness in, [204] 16
eternal punishment, [208] 21
evil, See good and evil.
faith:
deeds, [216] 14.30
immunity from punishment and,
[217] 31
true continence and, [214] 12.26
work of continence required, [216] 14.30
fate: blamed for sinning, [202] 14
fear, [202] 13; [213] 11.25
flesh:
Christ heals desires of, [212] 11.25
Church nurtures the body, [208] 21;
[209] 9.22
crucified with Christ, [200] 9
death to deeds of, [199] 9
deeds (list), [199] 9; [215] 13.28
desires of, [206] 18
desires opposed to spirit, [197] 5;
[199] 9; [205] 18; [208] 21;
[209] 9.22; [211,212] 11.25;
[217] 31
evil (Manichee), [210] 10.24
goodness does not dwell in, [206] 8.19; [209] 9.22
inferior and earthly, [200] 11
law of sin in, [207] 8.19; [208] 21;
[209] 9.22
living according to, [198] 8; [200] 4.10; 11; [201] 11
loving care for, [207] 8.19
no one hates his own body, [209] 9.22; [212] 11.25
not evil, [209] 9.22
rebellious, cares not for interests,
[210] 23; [213] 11.25
spirit’s struggle with, [206] 8.19
subordinate to spirit, [209] 23
will be spiritual, [212] 11.25
works of, to be put to death, [202] 5.12; 13
forgiveness of sin:
God’s justice and mercy, [203] 6.15;
[205] 18
fornication, [216] 29
free will:
God’s omnipotence and, [204] 6.15
future life:
body and soul in eternal happiness,
[208] 21
no change for the worse in, [208] 21
God:
deeds of humans and, [215] 13.28
goodness undiminished, [205] 18
immune from corruption, [203] 14
neither does nor suffers evil, [205] 18
omnipotence brings good out of evil,
[203-204] 6.15; 16
sin blamed on, [203] 14; 6.15
good and evil:
evil is not a substance, [208] 21
evil persons deny they are evil, [202] 13
evil thoughts in the heart, [196] 4
God makes use of evil persons, [214] 27
God neither does nor suffers evil,
[205] 18
God’s omnipotence, [203-204] 6.15; 16
Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

good not fully accomplished, [207] 20
Manichee teaching, [205] 18; [209] 9,22
not consenting to evil, [197] 3,6
two uncreated natures (Manichee),
[209] 9,22
good works:
justice, [204] 7,17
lamps burning, [205] 7,17
goodness:
desire to do the good, [197] 3,6
does not dwell in flesh, [206] 8,19
failure to bring to completion, [207] 20
origin in God, [205] 18
perfected to supreme happiness, [208] 21
subject to change, [208] 21
superior and inferior: both good,
[210] 23
grace, [198] 8; [199] 9; [201] 5,12; [208] 21; [211] 10,24
bestows what is commanded, [198] 7
living by, [202] 13
loving what the law commands, [199] 8
guilt, [205] 18
refusing to acknowledge, [202] 13
secret; consent, [196] 4
word uttered in the heart, [195] 2,3
happiness:
perfect, [208] 21
harmony: body and soul, [212] 11,25
health, [205] 18; [208] 21; [218] 32
heart:
continence, [194] 2; [196] 5
ever thoughts from, [196] 4; [197] 5
lapsing into malicious talk, [204] 7,17
malicious talk, [202] 13
mouth (the word), [196] 4
what comes from the mouth . . . ,
[195] 4
heaven:
body and soul in eternal happiness,
[208] 21
mind turns to heavenly things, [216] 29
heretics, [214] 12,26
led by, [202] 5,12
hope:
placing, in human beings, [200] 4,10
human beings:
body is members of Christ, [211] 10,24
created with power to sin, [204] 16
deeds of, [215] 13,28
it is not I who live . . . , [215] 29
rational mind; living, [200] 11
soul and body redeemed, [213] 12,26
human body:
God put order in, [211] 10,24
living sacrifice holy and pleasing . . . ,
[211] 10,24
Manichee view vs Scripture, [210] 10,24
natural goodness, [212] 11,25
soul is to imitate body’s harmony,
[211] 10,24; [212] 11,25
spiritual death, [216] 29
weapon of sin, [217] 31
human condition:
trusting in our own powers, [198] 7
human nature:
goodness of, [205] 18
impaired, although created good,
[207] 20
one nature divided because of sin,
[208] 21
humility, [202] 13
husband and wife:
Christ and Church as models for,
[209] 23
flesh not given as model for wives,
[210] 23
husband cares; wife is honorably sub-
dordinate, [209] 23
love wives like their own bodies,
[209-210] 9,22
model: love of one’s own flesh, [209] 9,22
immortality, [197] 3,6
future life, [208] 21
innocence, [195] 2,3
Jesus Christ, [200] 9; [208] 21
See also Christian life
body not real (Manichee), [210] 23
See Church.
Manichee view: flesh not real, [210] 10,24

Volume I/9
Continence

model for husbands, [209] 23
real body: touch and see . . . , [210] 10,24
whole human nature, [213] 12,26
Word made flesh, [200] 11
justice, [198] 7; [199] 8
continence joined to, [204] 7,17
doing good, [204] 7,17
punishment for sin, [203,204] 6,15

lamps burning, [205] 7,17
law:
good commanded but not granted, [198] 7; [199] 8
wrongdoing: power, [198] 7
lips: continence, [194] 2; [196] 4
loins girt, [205] 7,17
Lord’s Prayer:
Forgive us our trespasses . . . , [202] 13; [204] 6,15; [206] 18; [212] 11,25
Lead us not into temptation, [206] 18
love, [199] 8
model: love of the body, [209] 9,22
lust, [205] 7,17; [217] 31
lying, [196] 4

Manichees, [210] 23
blame sin on evil nature, [203] 14
on body of Christ, [210] 10,24
dualism, [205] 18; [209] 9,22
false continence, [213] 12,26
marital act, See sexual union.
See also celibacy; divorce; husband and wife; separation
marriage (married people):
abstaining from, [194] 1,1
marriage (Old Testament):
purpose of sexual union, [214] 27
martyr (-s; -dom), [204] 6,15
mercy, [205-206] 18
mind, [200] 11
body rebels against law of, [197] 3,6
consent to sin and, [216] 29
sensual desires kept in check by, [207] 20
serving law of God in, [207] 8,19;
[208] 21; [209] 9,22
mortality, [197] 3,6
mouth:
continence, [194] 2
guard on, [195] 2,3; [202] 13
heart, [196] 4
obedience:
See also commandments
model for a woman, [210] 23
orderliness, [209] 23
pardon, [202] 13
passion, [213] 12,26; [216] 29
patience, [213] 12,26
peace, [205] 7,17; [208] 20; [211] 11,25
perfection:
not in this mortal life, [207] 20
perseverance, [217] 31
pleasure, [213] 12,26; [214] 27; [215] 13,28
inner self, [197] 3,6
pride, [202] 13; [217] 32
defending sin, [204] 7,17
priesthood, See ordination, procreation:
See also children; marriage
prostitutes, [196] 4
providence, [217] 32
punishment:
God’s justice, [203,204] 6,15
immunity from, because of faith,
[217] 31
purity, [197] 5
clean first the interior, [195] 4
heart and mouth, [195] 2,3
rebuke: walking in a human way, [201] 11
redemption:
body and soul, [213] 12,26
reward, [205] 7,17

Saints, [204] 16
salvation, [205] 18; [208] 21; [211] 11,25;
[215] 29
self-approval, [202] 13
self-control:
motives, [214] 12,26
service of errors, [214] 13,28
sensuality, [197] 3,6; [205] 7,17
desires kept in check by mind, [207] 20
sexual union:
unjust when a spouse refuses, [213] 12,26

Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

sexuality:
  devil’s work (Manichee), [210] 23; [211] 10.24
sin:
  See also consent; desire
  body dead because of, [208] 21
  consenting to bodily desires, [208] 20
  defending with pride, [204] 7,17
  desire and consent; mind and flesh, [207] 8,19
  desire involved in, [215] 13,28
  desires opposed to what is right, [212] 11.25
  dominion by, [201-202] 5,12
  excuses: fate; chance; devil; God; evil nature, [202-203] 14
  humans created with power to, [204] 16
  if we say we are without, [212] 11,25
  inclinations to, [207] 20; [212] 11,25; [215] 29
  interior speech, [195] 2,3
  opportunity denied, [196] 4
  power is the law, [198] 7
  punishment; God’s justice, [203.204] 6,15
  reigning in the body, [217] 31
  ruling the mortal body, [198] 8
  unjust, [204] 6,15
slaves:
  of sin, [216] 29
soul:
  See also body and soul.
  death of the body, [206] 8,19
  term means the whole person, [201] 11
speech:
  internal mouth of the heart, [194] 2
  no word if heart is silent, [194] 2
spirit:
  See also Holy Spirit
cares for the flesh, [209] 23
  clinging to God’s Spirit, [215] 29
  desires of the flesh and, [197] 5;
  [199] 9; [205] 18; [208] 21;
  [209] 9,22; [211,212] 11,25;
  [217] 31
  fruits of the, [199] 9
  struggle with flesh, [206] 8,19
spiritual life:
  hidden in God with Christ, [216] 14,30
  seek the things that are above, [216] 29
spouses, See husband and wife.
sweetness, [198] 7
talk: malicious, [204] 7,17
  thoughts: deeds and, [195] 2,3
vice, [197] 7; [210] 23; [216] 14,30
  virtue, [217] 32
  fighting for, [197] 7
  vomiting, [195] 4
war:
  flesh against spirit, [199] 9
  wickedness:
    two evils pass away forever, [208] 21
    will:
      future life, [208] 21
      wisdom, [215] 13,28
      gift of knowing, [214] 13,28
      love of, [207] 20
wives, See husband and wife.
Word of God:
  incarnate, [200] 11
words: origin of every deed, [195] 2,3
world, [213] 11,25
wrongdoing:
  law and, [198] 7
Index from

On Holy Virginity

(De sancta virginitate)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine's works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis), and Continence (De continentia).

Volume I/9

Books/Pastoral

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Volume I/9

### INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

#### Holy Virginity, pages 62-108

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Old Testament</strong></th>
<th><strong>New Testament</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td><strong>Isaiah</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13,15</td>
<td>56:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30,30</td>
<td>24,34; 30,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job</strong></td>
<td><strong>56:6</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>25,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39,40</td>
<td>66:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>39,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48,48</td>
<td><strong>Daniel</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>3:87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>56,57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td><strong>13:23</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>20,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td><strong>Matthew</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:7</td>
<td>5:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>28,28; 32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>5:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:15</td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40,41</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4</td>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>5:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:11</td>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52,53</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:23</td>
<td>5:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>5:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11,11; 37,38; 54,55</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:11</td>
<td>6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29,29</td>
<td>48,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:2</td>
<td>8:8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1</td>
<td>8:19-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27,27</td>
<td>51,52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:8</td>
<td>9:11-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30,30</td>
<td>36,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:4</td>
<td>9:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td>36,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:5-6</td>
<td>11:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>11:25-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40,41</td>
<td>35,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>11:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32,32</td>
<td>50,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7</td>
<td>11:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td>35,35; 50,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:3-4</td>
<td>11:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td>50,51; 52,53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:8</td>
<td><strong>Mark</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>3:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proverbs</strong></td>
<td><strong>12:48-50</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48,48</td>
<td><strong>12:50</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wisdom</strong></td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>15:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,43</td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sirach</strong></td>
<td>15:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31,31; 33,33</td>
<td>18:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43,44</td>
<td>18:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:10-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,1; 47; 9,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45,46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Marriage and Virginity
### Marriage and Virginity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>39,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:31</td>
<td>48,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34</td>
<td>4,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27-28</td>
<td>3,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10</td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11-14</td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:16</td>
<td>50,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:2</td>
<td>26,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:44</td>
<td>45,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>45,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>36,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>38,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>40,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>38,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:3</td>
<td>37,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>20,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>38,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>40,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-7</td>
<td>40,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>1,1,9,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10-11</td>
<td>15,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>15,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>14,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25-26</td>
<td>13,13,14,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>14,14,21,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>15,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27-28</td>
<td>15,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28</td>
<td>15,15; 16,16; 17,17; 18,18; 19,19; 20,20; 21,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:32</td>
<td>38,39; 44,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:32-34</td>
<td>22,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:34</td>
<td>11,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:38</td>
<td>18,18; 21,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>18,18; 19,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:40</td>
<td>18,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>39,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>40,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>26,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>45,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>31,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>29,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>22,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:41</td>
<td>26,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:41-42</td>
<td>14,14; 26,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>26,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>24,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>7,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>40,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>31,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>38,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>35,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>6,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>36,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>24,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11-12</td>
<td>33,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>33,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>41,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>32,32; 41,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>34; 44,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>53,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-10</td>
<td>49,49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>49,50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Marriage and Virginity

4:8 51,52 4:18 38,39

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section.

Holy Virginity

abstinence:
See also celibacy
earthly advantage, [83] 25,25

Adam, [71] 6,6
adultery, [75] 15,15; [79] 20
divorce and, [81] 23,23

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

angels, [74] 13; [92] 38; [104] 53,54

apostles, [100] 48,48

atonement: Christ and our sins, [101] 50

authority, [105] 56,57

baptism:

forgiveness of sins, [101] 48,48

beatitude:

following Christ, [85] 28,28; [87] 32,32

beauty:

interior, [104] 55,56

bible, [77] 17,17; [78] 19,19; [80,81] 22,22; [83] 25,25

do lies in, [77] 18,18; [79] 20

birds, [102] 51,52

body and soul:

See also

human body

Canaanite woman, [88] 32,32

carnal union, See sexual union

celibacy (celibates), [72] 8,8; [73] 10; [74] 13; [78] 18,18; [95] 40,41

See also abstinence; chastity; virginity

eternal reward, [83] 25,25

eunuchs, [82] 24,24

gift from God, [97] 43

heaven and, [81] 22,22

humility needed by, [89] 33,33

marriage not equal to, [78] 19,19

Paul’s preference for, [80] 22,22

See also sexual union

superior to marriage, [88] 31,31

centurion, [88] 32,32; [91] 36,36

charity, [70] 5,5; [93] 38,39

chastity (in marriage), [72] 8,8; [77] 18,18; [87] 31,31; [90] 34

becoming chaste after being unchaste, [97] 42

conjugal, [72] 8,8; [74] 13

Susanna, [78] 20

life in present world, [80] 22,22

marriage as sin and, [79] 21,21

perpetual, [76] 16,16; [78] 19,19; [80] 21,21

married life and, [87] 31,31

vow, [86] 29,29

suitors and, [78] 18,18

childlikeness, [88] 32,32

children:

Christian education of, [74] 12; [82] 24,24

Church as mother of, [71] 7,7

not born as Christians, [71] 7,7

See procreation.

produced honorably, [73] 12

Christian life:

Christ formed in Christians, [70] 5,5

following Christ, [86] 29,29

living for God, [91] 36,36

married Christians follow Christ, [85] 28,28

Christians:

share in motherhood of Christ, [70] 5,5

Church:

authority, [98] 46

birth of consecrated virgins, [73] 12

chastity of, [100] 48,48

Christ’s mother; Christ’s virgin, [71] 4,6

company of virgins, [92] 37

eternal life, [83] 24,24

holiness, [69] 2,2

Holy Spirit resting over members of, [94] 39,40

kingdom of heaven, [82] 24,24

virgin and mother, [68] 2,2

clergy (clerical state):

clothes, [90] 34

commandments:

disobeying is a sin, [74-75] 14,14

grace and carrying out, [96] 41,42

offerings and, [86] 30,30

confession:

sins forgiven in, [101] 50; [103] 52,53

virgins must confess faults, [101] 49,49

conjugal love, See chastity; husband and wife; sexual union.

conscience, [90] 34

continence,

See also self-control

Crispina, [98] 44,45

damnation, [74] 14,14; [80] 21,21

Daniel, [79] 20

denarius:

wages that everyone receives, [83-84] 26,26

desire, [90] 34
Marriage and Virginity

for gifts, [103] 52,53
devil, [77] 17,17; [87] 31,31; [103] 53,54
devotion, [72] 8,8
disciples, [89] 32,32
divorce, [75, 76] 15,15
authority of God, [81] 23,23
remarriage after, See remarriage.
divorce and adultery:
See also remarriage
envy:
child of pride, [87] 31,31
married Christians, and virgins, [86] 29,29
eternal life, [74] 13; [78] 19,19; [83-84] 26,26
better gifts from God, [99] 46
Church and, [83] 24,24
everlasting name, [83] 25,25
forgiveness of sin, [75] 14,14
eunuchs, [81] 23,23
Christian, [82] 24,24
Isaiah’s prophecy, [82] 24,24
kingdom of God, [92] 37; [100] 47
special place in heaven, [83] 25,25
evil, See good and evil.
experience: strength, [103] 52,53
faith, [71] 7,7; [100] 48,48
family: spiritual, [69] 3,3
fasting, [90] 34
fear, [95] 40,41; [103] 52,53
holy fear(s), [93] 38,39
Old Testament, [94] 38,39
fertility: virginity and, [69] 2,2
flesh, [72] 8,8; [76] 16,16
See also body and soul
food, forgiveness of sin, [75] 14,14
gift of Christ, [93] 38
freedom of choice:
re virginity, [86] 30,30
fruitfulness:
degrees of, [99] 46-47
hundredfold return, [98] 46

gift (s; -from God):
See also grace
desire for, [103] 52,53
eternal life and, [99] 46
fruits: hundredfold, sixtyfold, thirtyfold, [98] 45-46
hidden, [98] 44,45
many; varied, [99] 46
some greater/better than others, [99] 46

glory:
degrees of, [83] 26,26
superior perfection, [79] 21,21
virginal consecration, [74] 14,14
God:
no unfairness in, [95] 40,41
good and evil:
chastity, [72] 8,8
pride afflicts the virtuous, [89] 34
good works, [83] 24,24
goodness:
give thanks for, [88] 32,32
gossipers, [89] 34
grace:
commandments and, [96] 41,42
gift to know God’s gifts, [97] 42
greatness, [103] 52,53
harm and, [102] 51; [104] 53,54
harm proportionate with, [87] 31,31; [89] 33,33; [97] 43,44;
[104] 53,54
hair, [90] 34
health, [84] 26,26
heaven, [74] 13; [80,81] 22,22; [84] 27,27
celibacy and, [81] 23,23
denarius; parable of the vineyard, [83-84] 26,26
earthly life and, [82] 24,24
eunuchs in, [83] 25,25
greater glory in, [74] 14,14
holiness, [86] 29,29
dwells in a humble heart, [94] 39,40;
[102] 51,52
honors, [76] 16,16; [84] 26,26; [100] 47
hope, [84] 27,27
most wretched of people . . . , [81] 22,22
humility:
control over, [104] 55,56
organs, [84] 26,26
human body:
control over, [104] 55,56
organs, [84] 26,26
humility:
Marriage and Virginity

Canaanite woman, [88] 32,32

Christ as model for virgins, [92] 37

Christ’s teaching on, [87] 32,32; [89] 33,33; [102] 51

commandment, [87] 31,31
divine warnings, [95] 39,40
false; a form of pride, [97] 43,44
gift from God, [96] 41,42

great persons, [102] 51

greatness and, [105] 56,57
Jesus as exemplar of, [90] 35,35

love produced by, [103] 52,53
most virtuous people, [101] 50

need for, [87] 31,31
poor in spirit, [87] 32,32

proportionate with greatness, [87] 31,31; [89] 33,33; [97] 43,44; [104] 53,54

spouse of virgins, [104-105] 55,56

whoever does my Father’s will . . . , [69] 3,3

husband and wife: mutual love, [104] 55,56

idleness, [89] 34
imitation of Christ, [85] 27,27
impurity, [92] 38
incorruptibility, [74] 13
Isaiah: prophecy re eunuchs, [82] 24,24

Jesus Christ, [68] 1,1; [72] 9,9; [76] 16,16; [79] 20
See also Christian life
See Church.
contemplate the Savior, [104] 54,55
creator and creature, [104] 54,55
despised by children of human race, [92] 38

family relationships, [70] 5,5

humble of heart, [91] 35,35; [92] 37; [102] 51,52; [103] 52,53

learn of me for I am . . . , [90] 35,35; [92] 37; [102] 51

model of humility, [92] 37

prime example, [90] 35,35

suffering, [98] 44,45

teacher of humility, [87] 31,31; 32,32; [89] 33,33; [102] 51

sinlessness, [93] 38

Son of God; son of man, [85] 27,27; [91] 35,35
spouse of virgins, [104-105] 55,56

virgins betrothed to, [73] 12

whomever exalts . . . , [88] 32,32

husband and wife: mutual love, [104] 55,56

idleness, [89] 34

imitation of Christ, [85] 27,27

impurity, [92] 38

incorruptibility, [74] 13

Isaiah: prophecy re eunuchs, [82] 24,24

Jesus Christ, [68] 1,1; [72] 9,9; [76] 16,16; [79] 20
See also Christian life
See Church.
contemplate the Savior, [104] 54,55
creator and creature, [104] 54,55
despised by children of human race, [92] 38

family relationships, [70] 5,5

humble of heart, [91] 35,35; [92] 37; [102] 51,52; [103] 52,53

learn of me for I am . . . , [90] 35,35; [92] 37; [102] 51

model of humility, [92] 37

prime example, [90] 35,35

suffering, [98] 44,45

teacher of humility, [87] 31,31; 32,32; [89] 33,33; [102] 51

sinlessness, [93] 38

Son of God; son of man, [85] 27,27; [91] 35,35
spouse of virgins, [104-105] 55,56

virgins betrothed to, [73] 12

whoever does my Father’s will . . . , [69] 3,3

John, Saint, Apostle, [84] 27,27
joy, [84] 27,27; [86] 29,29
judgment day: fear of, [93] 38,39
justice, [92] 37; [96] 41,42; [100] 47
justification, [94] 38,39; [105] 52,53

kinship:
physical and spiritual, [69] 3,3

Lamb of God, [84] 27,27; [95] 40,41; [101] 49,49

following Christ, [85] 28,28; [86] 29,29; [95] 40,41
married people following, [102] 51,52
law, [93] 38,39
life: a trial, [101] 48,48

Lord’s Prayer:
Forgive us our trespasses . . . , [100-101] 48,48

love, [68] 1,1; [84] 27,27; [87] 31,31; [92] 38; [96] 41,42; [104] 55,56

fear: loving/not loving, [93] 38,39

forgiven much; given much, [97] 42; [103] 52,53

for greater gifts; love more, [95-96] 40,41

greatest gift, [99] 47
licit; sacrificed, [105] 55,56
martyrdom, [104] 53,54
security, [103] 52,53

three young men (Daniel), [105] 56,57

virginity protected by, [102] 51,52

lust, [90] 34

lying, [77] 17,17; 18,18; [101] 49,49

marital act, See sexual union.

marriage (married people), [78] 20; [87] 30,30

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

afflicts the virtuous, [89] 34
decception revocation, [105] 56,57
false humility, [97] 43,44
insulting sinners, [88] 32,32
virginity and, [68] 1,1
virgins refraining from marriage, [90] 34

priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
See also children; marriage eunuchs and, [82] 24,24
prophets:
descendants, [72] 9,9
marriage (O.T.), [68] 1,1
prostitutes, [91] 36,36
punishment, [94] 38,39
rape, [73] 10
redemption, [75] 14,14; [93] 38; [104] 54,55
repentance, [96] 41,42
reward, [78] 19,19; [84] 26,26; [87] 31,31; [93] 38,39
saints, [84] 26,26
salvation, [75] 14,14; [93, 94] 38,39
Satan, [76] 16,16
scandal, [94] 39,40
self-control, [76] 16,16; [80] 21,21
self-glorification, [103] 52,53
self-satisfaction, [90] 34
sensuality, [92] 38
servant, great persons and, [102] 51
sexual restraint, See abstinence; continence.
sick people, [91] 36,36
sin:
See also consent; desire avoiding, [96] 41,42; [100] 48,48
commandments, [74-75] 14,14
human frailty, [101] 50
if we say we are without . . . , [101] 49,49
mortal; venial, [76] 16,16
never entirely free from, [100] 48,48
pardon sins of others, [103] 52,53
pleasure in confessing, [101] 50
possibility of a sinless life, [102] 51
sinners, [100] 48,48
forgiven, [95] 40,41
humility, [91] 36,36
pride afflicting, [89] 34
prone treatment of, [88] 32,32
slaves, [89] 32,32
buying, to make Christians, [72] 9,9
Son of God:
become a created object, [91] 35,35
form of a slave, [70] 4,4
Son of Man:
no place to lay his head, [102] 51,52
song, [84] 27,27
soul, See also body and soul.
spinster, [89] 34
spirit:
See also Holy Spirit.
hidden strength in, [100] 47

spirituality, kinship, [69] 3,3
spouses, See husband and wife.

sterility, [68] 1,1
strength, experience, [103] 52,53
suffering:
following Christ, [89] 32,32
fruitfulness of, [99] 46
test; martyrdom, [100] 47
superiority, [103] 52,53
Susanna, [78] 20
falsely accused, [79] 20
tax collector:
Pharisee and, [88] 32,32; [93] 38; [97] 43,44
temporal goods:
fear of losing, [93] 38,39
temptation, [100] 47
Thecla, [98] 44,45
torture, [100] 47
truth, [77] 17,17; 18,18; [78] 19,19; [82] 24,24; [83] 25,25; [95] 40,41; [100] 47
unmarried persons:
pleasing the Lord, [80] 22,22
unmarried women:
concert for the Lord, [98] 44,45
free to love God, [95] 40,41
virgins and, [81] 22,22
Marriage and Virginity

vain, [102] 51,52
virgin birth, [71] 6,6
virginity, [76] 16,16
angelic life on earth, [103] 53,54
approved rather than commanded, [70] 4,4
condemning marriage, [77] 18,18
consecrated; honorable, [72] 8,8
counsel, not a command, [75] 15,15
excellence of marriage does not surpass, [71] 7,7
fertility and, [69] 2,2
following Christ, [85] 28,28; [101] 49,49
gift corrupted by pride, [89] 33,33
heavenly immortality, [74] 13
holiness of, [94] 39,40
hundredfold fruit, [98] 46
lost, it does not return, [85] 27,27; [101] 49,49
love; pride, [68] 1,1
marriage and, [68] 1,1; [100] 47
martyrdom ranked higher than, [99] 46
needs of the present time, [74] 13;
[75] 14,14; [78] 19,19; [80] 21,21
not compulsory, [86] 30,30
preservation, [71] 7,7
protected by love and humility, [102] 51,52
superior to physical motherhood, [72] 9,9; 10
willing; company of virgins, [92] 37
virgins:
all women born as, [73] 10
betrothed to Christ, [73] 12
Church’s virginity and, [68] 2,2
commandment and, [75] 14,14
comparison with O.T. fathers and mothers, [68] 1,1
concerned with Lord’s interests, [98] 44,45
consecrated:
Christ’s mothers, [71] 6,6
Church gives birth to, [73] 12
conceiving Christ in the heart, [73] 11,11
consecration makes a virgin, [73] 11,11
greater glory in heaven, [74] 14,14
Mary as model, [69] 4,4
superior perfection, [73] 10
contemplate Incarnate Savior, [104] 54,55
envy of married Christians, [86] 29,29
faults to be confessed, [101] 49,49
follow Christ in humility, [90] 35,35
following the Lamb, [84] 27,27; [84] 27,27; [101] 49,49; [105] 52,53
free to love God, [95] 40,41
fruit of life of, [98] 46
hidden defects, [98] 44,45
holy fear, [93] 38,39
hopeing to marry, [73] 11,11
Jesus as model for, [92] 37
love Christ as spouse, [104-105] 55,56
love more because of greater gifts,
[95] 40,41
pretense of humility, [97] 43,44
sacredness, [105] 56,57
saved from many sins, [96] 41,42
special joy of, [85] 27,27
suitors and, [78] 18,18
superiority over others, [98] 44,45
unmarried women and, [81] 22,22
wanting to marry, [89-90] 34
wise, [97] 42
vocation:
holier calling; pride, [105] 56,57
wickedness, See also good and evil
widow (-s; -hood), [78] 19,19; [80] 21,21; [89] 34
celibacy [78] 18,18
virgins and, [98,99] 46
will of God:
Christians as mothers of Christ, [70] 5,5
wisdom,
gift from God, [97] 42
wives, See husband and wife.
wolves (have holes), [102] 51,52
woman (women), See also husband and wife; unmarried women; virgins
world, [105] 56,57
woe, because of scandals, [94] 39,40
Zebedee, [91] 36,36
Zacchaeus, [91] 36,36
Zebedee, sons of, [88] 32,32
Index from
On the Good of Marriage
*(De bono conjugali)*

Included in book:
Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, Introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine's works: *The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis),* and *Continence (De continentia).*

**Volume I/9**

**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005
**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### The Excellence of Marriage

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:28; 21:12 23,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>48:1; 138:3 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>3:5 13,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>2:24 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>3:18; 26,35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:32; 11:18; 11:19; 19:12 13,15; 21,25; 22,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>10:39 8,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:5; 6:19; 7:4; 7:7 10,10; 7:9; 7:10-11 24,32; 7:14 11,13; 7:28 10,11; 11,12; 18,21; 7:29-34 10,10; 7:34 11,13; 12,14; 22,27; 7:36 10,11; 11,12; 18,21; 13:8 8,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>10:12 26,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:1 22,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>5:12 8,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>4:12 21,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>4:5; 4:17 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:5 10,10; 2:9-10 12,14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Book</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>24,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-7</td>
<td>12,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>8,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>23,31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/9
The Excellence of Marriage

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.
The number in brackets [] indicates the page;the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section

The Excellence of Marriage

Abraham, [50] 22; [52] 24; [59] 35
chastity, [53] 26; [54] 22,27
hand on his thigh, [51] 19
abstinence:
    adultery and, [38] 7
See also celibacy
    complete, [45] 13,15
    disposition of, [52] 21,25
    goodness of, [41] 9,9
    marriage and, [39] 8
    merit, [38] 7
    mutual consent, [35] 3
    permanent, [37] 6
    prayer and, [42] 11
    survival of the race and, [41] 10,10
adultery, [37] 6; [38] 7; [39] 8; [42] 11;
    [43] 11,12; [47] 16,18
    divorce and, [34] 3
    fidelity and, [36] 4,4
    infidelity, [35] 4,4
    intention, [36] 5,5
    putting adulteress wife aside, [38] 7
    separating from husband adulterer,
    [38] 7
animals, [50] 19
Anna (widow), [40] 8; [59] 35
apostles, [48] 16,18
attachment: earthly goods, [52] 21,25
baptism, [49] 18,21
bees, [33] 2
birth control, [36] 5,5
body and soul:
    See also human body
    burying the dead, [51] 20,23
carnal union, See sexual union.
Cato, [50] 18,21
chastity (celibates), [47] 15; [48] 17,19
    See also abstinence; chastity; virginity
    chastity, [54] 22,27
    disposition; O.T. saints, [53-55] 22,27
    marriages (O.T.) and, [51] 24
    married persons, [58] 26,34
    obedience and, [55] 29; [57] 24,32
    obeying the commandments, [56] 31
    service of Christ, [53] 26
    See also sexual union
    state of mind (O.T.), [57] 24,32
    superior to marriage, [50] 19
    virtue of mind, [50] 19
    [52] 21,25; [53] 26;
    [54] 22,27
    virtue of, compared with marriage,
    [55] 23,28
charity, [46] 14,16
chastity (in marriage), [35] 3; [50] 19; [57]
    24,32
    celibate/married persons, [54] 22,27
    Christian wife; holy body, [43] 13
    conjugal, [43] 13; [54] 22,27; [58]
    26,34
    fornication and, [39] 8
    faithful observance of, [57] 24,32
    honorable marriage, [43] 11,12

Volume I/9
The Excellence of Marriage

keeping the commandments, [56] 30
men with several wives (O.T.), [45] 13,15
virginal, [55] 30
children:
  bonding of society, [33] 1,1
carnal desire for, [48] 17,19
chaste childbearing, [37] 5,5
good and bad, [47] 16,18
marriage bond, [38] 7
See procreation.
spiritual, [51] 19
universal purpose of marriage, [48] 17,19
Church:
  churches arising from all nations, [49] 18,21
commandments:
  loving obedience, [56] 30
compassion, [55] 23,28
concubinage:
  desire for children and, [46] 14,16
conduct: devotion shown in, [44] 12,14
conjugal love, See chastity; husband and wife; sexual union.
  See also self-control
creation:
  fill the earth and rule . . . , [33] 2
  goodness of all things created, [50] 19
death:
  purification after burying, [51] 20,23
  symbol of sinfulness, [51] 20,23
death, [34] 2; [46] 15
  marriage bond, [57] 24,32
desire:
  for good things, when needed, [41] 9,9
  sensual, [35] 3
devotion:
  married women, [44] 12,14
dining, [40] 8
disposition: characteristics, [52] 21,25
divorce, [57] 24,32
childlessness and, [46] 15
Gentiles, [39] 8
  husband and wife after, [39] 7
  remarriage after, See remarriage.
  sterile wife, [38] 7
divorce and adultery:
  See also remarriage
  adultery, [34] 3
drunkenness, [55] 29
eating, [40] 8; [47] 16,18; [53] 26
education, [51] 20,23
end of the world, [41] 10,10
Eve, [56] 30
evil, See good and evil.
fault, [40] 8
  unbelieving spouse made holy . . . , [43] 13
fall of man:
  procreation before, [33] 2
fasting, [40] 8; [42] 11
fidelity:
  conjugal love, [43] 11,12
  mutual, [35] 4,4
  power of authority, [35] 4,4
  sexual, [37] 6
first parents:
  mortal in original state, [34] 2
flesh:
  tribulation of, [45] 13,15
food:
  sacrificed to idols, [47] 16,18
fornication, [37] 6; [38] 7; [42] 11; [47] 16,18
free will:
  conjugal love, [39] 8
friendship, [33] 1,1; [40] 9,9
Gentiles:
  divorce, [39] 8
gift (-s; -from God)
  See also grace
glory, [59] 35
glutony, [47] 16,18
God:
  kingdom of God, [59] 35
  many souls subject to one God, [49] 20
  renouncing, [50] 18,21
gods:
  false, [49] 20
  gold and straw, [35] 4,4
  Goliath, [55] 29
good and evil:
  comparative, [39] 8
goodness:

Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

degree of, [55] 23,28

goods:
marriage necessary for, [40] 9,9

habitual disposition, [52] 21,25

health, [39] 8; [40] 9,9; [47] 16,18; [52] 21,25

heart, [44] 12,14

single, turned to God, [49] 18,21

heaven:
perfection of our unity, [49] 18,21

holiness:
concerns of married people, [42] 10,10
unnatural sexual relations and, [43] 11,12

Holy Spirit, [43] 13

homelessness, [40] 8

human body:
authority; husband and wife, [35] 4,4; [37] 6; [57] 24,32
benefit from drinking, [52] 21,25
care of slaves, [40] 8
chaste Christian wife, [43] 13
injury, [34] 2
spiritual, [34] 2
human condition, [34] 3; [41] 9,9
human nature, [33] 1,1
human race, [33] 1,1; [41] 9,9
humility, [44] 12,14; [58] 35

husband and wife:

adultery, [38] 7

authority over one’s body, [35] 4,4; [37] 6; [57] 24,32
bond of human society, [33] 1,1
care for the spouse, [38] 7
chaste sexual union, [40] 8
fidelity; conjugal love, [43] 11,12
holiness; and an unbelieving spouse, [43] 13
lascivious behavior, [46] 14,16
marital restriction, [49] 18,21
mutual fidelity, [35] 4,4
older people; love relationship, [35] 3
putting one’s spouse aside, not lawful, [34] 3
strength of union, [33] 1,1
temporal concerns, [41-42] 10,10
unreasonable insistence on marriage duty, [37] 6

illusion, [39] 8
immortality, [34] 2; [39] 8

Incarnation:
prophecy, [51] 19
womb of a virgin, [33] 2

incontinence, [42] 10,10
infertility, [46] 15

Isaac, [56] 31; [59] 35
Israelites: garments, [34] 2

Jacob, [59] 35
Jerusalem, [47] 16,18
Jesus Christ, [47] 15; [50] 19; [59] 35
See also Christian life
See Church.
Churches subject to, [49] 18,21
giving up possessions for, [40] 8
spiritually subject to, [57] 24,32
universal submission to, [49] 18,21
virtue of restraint, [53] 26

wedding guest, [34] 3
Job: patience, [52] 21,25
John the Baptist, Saint, [53] 26
John, Saint, Apostle, [53] 26

kinship:
bond, [33] 1,1
spiritual, [41] 9,9
knowledge, [39] 8

Lamb of God, [56] 31
law:
signs of the future, [51] 20,23
learning, [40] 9,9
love, [47] 16,18
unfailing, [39] 8
lust, [35] 3; [45] 13,15; [58] 26,34

Manichees, [53] 26; [57-58] 25,33
marital act. See sexual union.
marriage (married people):
See also celibacy; divorce; husband and wife; separation
abstinence and, [39] 8
See adultery.
benefits of, [34-35] 3
better, than to burn, [48] 17,19; [52] 21,25

celibacy superior to, [50] 19
chastity; celibates and, [54] 22,27

Volume I/9
comparison: O.T./N.T., [48] 17,19; [50] 22
concern with pleasing the Lord, [44] 12,14
excellence; does not surpass virginity, [33] 1,1
See fidelity.
first act of intercourse, [46] 15
fornication and, [42] 11
goodness of, [41] 9,9
three elements, [57] 24,32
held dear, [52] 24
holiness in, [45] 13,15
honorable, [43] 11,12
improper union, [46] 17
indissolubility, [38] 7
leaving husband to marry another, [50] 18,21
lesser of two evils, [39] 8
Manichee heresy refuted, [57-58] 25,33
monogamous, [49] 18,21
necessary for sake of other goods, [40] 9,9
not a sin to marry (Paul), [42] 11;
[43] 11,12; [49] 18,21
remedy for sensuality, [37-38] 6
sacred contract, [38] 7
sanctity of the sacrament, [50] 18,21;
[57] 24,32
self-control and, [41] 10,10; [42] 11
sexual union as purpose of, [38] 9,9;
[48] 17,19
sterility and, [46] 15
true, [36] 5,5
virginity and, [55] 29
virtue of celibacy compared with,
[55] 23,28
youthful incontinence and, [35] 3
marriage bond:
inflexible bond, [39] 7
not broken by divorce, [57] 24,32
marriage (Old Testament)
celibacy and, [51] 24
duty of having children, [45] 13,15;
[47] 15,16,18
Levitical purity laws, [51] 20,23
married for Christ, [59] 35
matrimony used in unmatri monial
way, [56] 31
prophetic character, [50] 19; [58]
26,34
several wives, [45] 13,15
taking another woman to have chil-
dren, [46] 15
wives as symbols of future Churches,
[49] 18,21
married women:
devotion to God is rare, [44] 12,14
obedience (Peter), [44] 12,14
temporal concerns, [44] 13
Martha and Mary, [40] 8
martyr (-s; -dom):
virtue of, [52] 21,25
virtue of patience, [53] 26
Mary, Blessed Virgin, [40] 8; [59] 35
merit, [59] 35
Messiah:
prophecy concerning, [50] 19
mind:
development, [34] 2
mistress, [43] 11,12
mortality:
original sin, [33] 2
transformation to immortality, [34] 2
Moses:
divorce, [39] 8
nature:
superiors and subordinates, [48] 20
need:
wanting good things in time of, [41] 9,9
nonbelievers, See unbelievers.

obedience:
See also commandments
 celibacy and the commandments, [55] 29; [56] 31
comparison: wife and virgin, [55] 30
mother of all virtues, [55] 30
virginity and, [56] 30
old age, [35] 3
ordination:
marital restriction, [49] 18,21
prerequisites for, [49] 18,21
purpose, [57] 24,32
original sin:
procreation and, [33] 2
original state: mortality, [34] 2
ownership, [46] 14,16
parents: sensual moderation, [35] 3
passion, [37] 5,5; [45] 13,15; [47] 16,18

Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

Volume I/9
Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity

- trust and, [35-36] 4,4
- singularity: natural love of, [48] 20
- slaves, [40] 8; [48] 20
- society:
  - bonding, in its children, [33] 1,1
  - spiritual kinship and, [41] 9,9
- soul:
  - See also body and soul.
  - many souls, subject to one God, [49] 20
- spirit:
  - See also Holy Spirit
- spirituality, [48] 17,19
- spouses, See husband and wife.
- starvation, [47] 16,18
- sterility:
  - divorce and, [38] 7
  - straw and gold, [35] 4,4
- suffering:
  - quality of the great, [52] 21,25
- Susanna, [40] 8; [59] 35
- temporal goods:
  - use of (paradox), [52] 21,25
- temptation:
  - patience of Job, [52] 21,25
- theft, [46] 14,16
- Timothy (and Paul), [52] 21,25
- trust:
  - sin as purpose of, [35-36] 4,4
  - spiritual good, [35] 4,4
- tyranny, [46] 14,16
- unbelievers:
  - virgins, [40] 8
- unity:
  - marriage as sacrament of, [49] 18,21
  - unmarried women, [42] 10,10
  - concern for the Lord, [44] 12,14
  - despicable; sensuality, [44] 12,14
- virgin birth, [33] 2
- virginity, [40] 8
  - celibate by choice, [45] 13,15
  - counsel, not a command, [56] 30
  - dedicated to God, [58] 35
  - marriage and, [55] 29
  - obedience and, [56] 30
- virgins:
  - consecrated:
    - women who have been violated, [49] 18,21
    - following the Lamb, [56] 31
  - virtue:
    - disposition, [53] 26
    - obedience as mother of all, [55] 30
    - present without being manifest, [52] 21,25
  - times and circumstances, [53] 26
  - virtues of the mind, [52] 21,25
- wealth:
  - knowing how to be wealthy, [52] 21,25
  - welcoming, [40] 8
- wickedness:
  - See also good and evil
  - widow (-s; -hood), [45] 13,15
  - “dead” widows, [44] 12,14
  - wisdom, [40] 9,9
  - justified by her children, [53] 26
  - wives, See husband and wife.
- woman (women):
  - See also husband and wife; unmarried women; virgins
  - made from side of man; sign, [33] 1,1
  - menstruation, [51] 20,23
  - violated, cannot be consecrated to God, [49] 18,21
- world:
  - passing away, [41] 10,10
  - worship, [47] 16,18; [50] 19
- Zacchaeus, [55] 29

Zacchaeus, [55] 29
Index from

On the Good of Widowhood

(De bono viduitatis)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine’s works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis), and Continence (De continentia).

Volume I/9 Books/Pastoral

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
The Excellence of Widowhood

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:10-25</td>
<td>6,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>6,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>19,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:13</td>
<td>19,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>8,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>18,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>17,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>19,23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>17,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>20,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>9,12; 23,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>23,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:29-30</td>
<td>12,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>17,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>2:36-37</td>
<td>13,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:37</td>
<td>14,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>19,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>10,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:5-6</td>
<td>5,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>5,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section

Volume I/9
The Excellence of Widowhood

Abraham, [118] 7
abstinence: See also celibacy
adultery, [117] 6
broken vow of widowhood, [123] 11,14; [129] 17,21
consecrated virgins who marry, [122] 10,13
alms, [133] 21,26
angels, [124] 12,15
Anna (widow), [116] 4; [124] 13,16; [125] 14,17; [127] 16,20
exalted for chaste widowhood, [125] 13,16
recognized Christ in the virgin mother, [126] 18
Ruth and, [120] 7
three factors in merits of, [125] 18
worthy to be Christ’s prophetess, [119] 7

beauty:
interior, [131] 19,23
love keeps fresh, [131] 24
body and soul: See also human body
carnal union. See sexual union.
Cataphrygians, [116] 6; [117] 7
celibacy (celibates), [120] 8,11; [124] 13,16
See also abstinence; chastity; virginity
attraction as gift, [127] 16,20
fruits of, [117] 7
if everyone were celibate . . . , [135] 23,28
lapse from the greater perfection, [121-122] 9,12
loving and preserving, [130] 18,22; 19,23
marriage and, [126] 15,19
See also sexual union
vow must be kept, [121] 8,11; [121-122] 9,12
charity, [114] 1,1; [117] 5
chastity (in marriage), [121] 9,12
beauty of, [131] 24
gift of God, [116] 4; [128,129] 17,21

spiritual pleasures, [133] 21,26
virgins and widows, [136] 29
vow:
to Christ, [122] 10,13
perseverance, [124] 13,16
pleasure that might have been, [123] 11,14
widow’s celibacy is better than, [117] 5
children:
care and education, [125] 18
child-bearing not a duty (Paul), [120] 8,11
heart or flesh, [132] 20,25
See procreation.
Church:
one husband, Christ, [122] 10,13
commandments:
grace and carrying out, [128] 17,21
grace and free will, [128] 17,21
wisdom and chastity, [129] 17,21
compassion, [134] 22,27
conjugal love, See chastity; husband and wife; sexual union.
conscience:
good name, [134] 22,27
continence, [120] 7; [121] 8,11; [121] 9,12; [126] 15,19; [129] 17,21
creation:
everything very good, [118-119] 9
damnation:
vowed to celibacy, desires to marry, [121] 9,12
desire:
restraint of, [132] 20,25
devotion:
widows judged by, [125] 14,17
divorce:
remarriage after. See remarriage.
divorce and adultery:
See also remarriage
encouragement, [114] 2; [135] 23,28
end of the world, [120] 8,11; [135] 23,28
evil. See good and evil.
example, [135] 23,28
excellence, [117] 6
eyes, [118] 9; [133] 21,26
Marriage and Virginity

faith, [115] 3.4  
fasting, [133] 21,26  
Faustus, [127] 15,19  
fidelity, [115] 3.4; [116] 4  
See also body and soul  
fornication, [115] 3.4; [117] 6; [118] 6.8;  
[129] 17.21  
free will:  
  grace and God’s commands, [128] 17,  
  [121] 21; [129] 18,22  
future, [132] 20,25  
gift (-s; -from God), [133] 21,26  
  See also grace  
chasity, [128,129] 17,21  
  choosing not to marry, [127] 16,20  
  each has his own, [116] 5  
  good works, [129] 18,22  
  keeping the commandments, [128]  
  17.21  
  what have you not received . . . ,  
  [128] 16,20  
widowhood, [127] 16,20  
good name:  
  reputation: praise, [134] 22,27  
  good works, [133] 21,26  
  gift from God, [129] 18.22  
  looking good to others, [134] 22,27  
goodness:  
  good (term) meaning “better,” [117] 7  
  totality of created things, [119] 9  
grace:  
  exhortations as effective, [129] 18,22  
  helpful words, [130] 18,22  
  warning against opponents of, [128]  
  17.21  
grandmother, [131-132] 24  
greed, [133] 21,26  

delight:  
  natural, [124] 13.16  
heart:  
  lift up your hearts, [127] 16.20  
  spiritual pleasures, [133] 21,26  
holiness, [132] 24  
  bodies of married women, [118] 6.8  
  holy mind, holy body, [118] 6.8  
Holy Spirit:  
  body as temple of, [118] 6.8  
  gifts of, [127] 16.20  
  honor, [135] 22,27  

desire, [132] 20,25  
human body:  
  made holy by holy mind, [118] 6.8  
  parts; functions, [115] 3.4  
  spirit rules body, [119] 9  
  temple of the Holy Spirit [118] 6.8  
husband and wife:  
  husbands afar a long time, [132]  
  20,25  
  Old Testament, [119] 7  
  wife is bound as long as husband is  
  alive, [123] 12.15  
hymns, [131] 24  
isanity, [126] 15.19  
integrity (the word), [129] 17.21  
Israel: nation as prophet of Christ, [119] 7  
Jesus Christ:  
  See also Christian life  
  See Church.  
  King captivated by beauty of bride,  
  [131] 24  
  passion; ugliness in the Redeemer,  
  [130] 19,23  
  way, truth, and life, [131] 19,23  
Juliana (addressee), [114]  
justice, [135] 22,27  
knowledge:  
  good measure, [114] 2  
  wisdom and, [129] 17,21  
Lord’s Prayer:  
  Lead us not into temptation, [128]  
  17.21  
love, [127] 16.20; [132] 20.25  
  beauty and, [131] 24  
lust, [132] 20.25  
marital act, See sexual union.  
marriage (married people):  
  See also celibacy; divorce; husband  
  and wife; separation  
  See adultery.  
  benefits of, [135] 23,28  
  better than lapsing from virginity,  
  [121] 8,11  
  better, than to burn, [120] 8,11  
  cure for weakness; discomfort, [121]  
  8,11
Marriage and Virginity

desire for, by one vowed to celibacy, [121-122] 9,12
See fidelity.

first and second, [122] 10,13
first marriage should be rejected, [120] 8,11

goodness of, [115] 3,4; [116] 4;
[120,121] 8,11
holy in body and spirit, [118] 6,8
honorable, [117] 7
longing for, [132] 20,25
multiple, [123] 12,15
Paul does not condemn, [126] 15,19
renouncing, as gift, [127] 16,20
resurrection of the dead, [124] 12,15
temporal concerns, [130] 19,23
virginity and [126] 15,19

marriage (Old Testament)
chaste, [127] 15,19
purpose of sexual union, [119] 7
several wives, [45] 13,15; [119] 7
married women:
adulteress, [122] 10,13
free to remarry after husband dies,
[124] 12,15
Mary, Blessed Virgin, [127] 16,20
meditation, [133] 21,26
merit:
widows, [124] 13,16
Messiah:
foreseen by Anna (prophetess), [119] 7
mind:
holy, [118] 6,8
mistress, [122] 10,13
money, [133] 21,26
moon, [118] 9
morality: encouragement, [114] 2
nonbelievers, See unbelievers.
Novationists, [116] 6; [117] 7
obedience:
See also commandments

passion, [132] 20,25
perception: senses, [133] 21,26
perfection:
love for the greater, [127] 16,20
perseverance, [132] 20,25
persuasion, [129] 18,22

Peter, Saint, Apostle, [117] 7
pleasure, [125] 18; [130] 19,23
complacency in carnal pleasure, [133] 21,26

polygamy:
Old Testament, [119] 7
praise:
good name, [134] 22,27
prayer, [133] 21,26; [135] 29
thanks for gifts received, [129] 17,21
priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
See also children; marriage
natural human desire, [121] 8,11
transcending desire for, [121] 8,11
prophets:
Christ and, [119] 7
prostitutes, [118] 6,8

remarriage:
unable to contain oneself, [120] 8,11
reputation:
maintaining a good name, [134] 22,27
resurrection of the dead:
mariages after, [124] 12,15
reward, [135] 22,27
riches: desire for, [133] 21,26
Ruth, [116] 4; [119] 10;7; [120] 7
Sadducees, [123] 12,15
Sarah, [117] 7; [118] 6,8; [119] 10
Satan, [116] 5; [120] 8,11
second marriage(s):
honorable, [117] 5,7
honored less, [116] 6
multiple marriages, [123] 12,15
not condemned, [116] 4
not evil, [123] 11,14
widow is more blessed, [116] 4
senses, [133] 21,26
sensuality, [120] 8,11; [133] 21,26
sexual restraint, See abstinence; continence.
sexual union:
denial of pleasure of, [133] 21,26
exceeding purpose of having children, [116] 4
refusing the marital act, [116] 5
virgins and widows refrain from,
[129] 17,21
women of the O.T., [119] 7

Volume I/9
Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity

sin, See also consent; desire
soul:
See also body and soul.
spirit:
See also Holy Spirit
rules the body. [119] 9
spirituality:
let spiritual pleasure displace carnal,
[133] 21,26
spouses, See husband and wife.
sun, [118] 9
temptation, [131] 24
Tertullian, [116] 6; [117] 7
time, [132] 20,25
unmarried (the word, in Paul), [114] 2
unmarried persons:
extra attention to the Lord, [130] 19,23
honorable state, [117] 7
unmarried women:
concern for the Lord, [115] 2
holy in body and spirit, [118] 6,8
reputation; good name, [134] 22,27
vigils, [133] 21,26
virgin birth:
foreseen by Anna (prophetess), [119] 7
virginity:
born again in the mother, [126] 18
celibacy in widowhood and, [126] 15,19
daughter as virgin, [120] 8,11; [126] 18; [131-132] 24; [136] 29
excellence of marriage does not surpass, [126] 15,19
virgins, [115] 2
consecrated:
marriage as adultery, [122] 10,13
hymns that only virgins can sing
(Apoc.), [131] 24
virtue, [134] 22,27
vow:
failure to carry out, [123] 11,14
wickedness:
See also good and evil
widow (-s; -hood):
better to stay as you are, [124] 12,15
cases, [125] 14,17
celibacy [131] 24
celibacy better than married chastity,
[117] 5
chastity, [115] 3,4; [120] 7; 8,11;
[121] 9,12
Christ as second husband, [122] 10,13
excellence of, [114-136] 1,1-20
gift from God, [127] 16,20
good of, [115] 3,4
judged by religious devotion, [125] 14,17
living life of pleasure, [133] 21,26
Paul's teaching, [114] 2
relative merits among, [124] 13,16
second marriage and, [116] 4,6
vow broken; adultery, [122] 11,14
vow to remain celibate, [130] 19,23
way of life, [114] 1,1
will:
enlarged; strength, [128] 17,21
wisdom:
recognition of gifts, [129] 17,21
wives, See husband and wife.
wolves (have holes),
woman (women):
See also husband and wife; unmarried
women; virgins
Catholics as superior, [126] 15,19
superiority of Catholic women, [126] 15,19
work, [133] 21,26
world, [127] 16,20; [128] 17,21; [130] 19,23
passing away, [132] 20,25
wrongdoing, [134] 22,27
Index from
Teaching Christianity
De doctrina christiana
(On Christian Teaching)

Published by New City Press in:
Teaching Christianity

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, introduction by Prosper Grech, OSA, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
This work is intended to help preachers present biblical teachings in an effective manner.

Volume I/11

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-048-3, 6 x 9 in., 272 pp., 1996
Paperback: 978-1-56548-049-0, 6 x 9 in., 259 pp., 1996

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE
(prepared by Michael Dolan)
(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>75:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26–27</td>
<td>III, 24, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8–9</td>
<td>IV, 26, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9–10</td>
<td>II, 7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>III, 35, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>III, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:32–11:1</td>
<td>II, 13, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18–19</td>
<td>III, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:25</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>2:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>III, 37, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>IV, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>19:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>I, 32, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:19</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>11:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:19</td>
<td>IV, 21, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2–3</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>II, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td>4:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5–7</td>
<td>III, 14, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>I, 23, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>I, 31, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:13</td>
<td>IV, 10, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2</td>
<td>III, 34, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1</td>
<td>II, 16, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:2</td>
<td>III, 35, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:14</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:18</td>
<td>I, 30, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>IV, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7–8</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>2:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>III, 37, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>IV, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eccelesiastes</td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>III, 18, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>4:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>II, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>4:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>II, 21, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>1:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>III, 17, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>III, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:19</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:20</td>
<td>II, 31, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>7:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:12</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:16–17</td>
<td>III, 32, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>II, 12, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10</td>
<td>III, 31, 44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Teaching Christianity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>III, 11, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:30–31</td>
<td>IV, 14, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>I, 22, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:29</td>
<td>IV, 14, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:30</td>
<td>IV, 28, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:11</td>
<td>III, 35, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>36:17–19</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:23–29</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:24.28</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>6:1–6</td>
<td>IV, 7, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:36</td>
<td>IV, 21, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>III, 24, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:19–20</td>
<td>IV, 15, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:42</td>
<td>IV, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:28–30</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>IV, 28, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>III, 35, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:6</td>
<td>III, 24, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>III, 17, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:2</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59; IV, 28, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>II, 16, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:37, 39–40</td>
<td>I, 26, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:51</td>
<td>III, 32, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:26, 27</td>
<td>Prologue, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>I, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:1–3</td>
<td>III, 35, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:31, 30</td>
<td>I, 22, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:29</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:37</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>IV, 21, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>III, 23, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>IV, 18, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:29–32</td>
<td>III, 36, 54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| John       | 1:1–2   | III, 2, 3       |
|            | 1:3     | II, 28, 42      |
|            | 1:10    | I, 12, 12       |
|            | 1:46    | III, 3, 6       |
|            | 2:20    | II, 16, 26      |
|            | 6:53    | III, 16, 24     |
|            | 7:38    | III, 23, 36     |
|            | 12:25   | III, 16, 24     |
|            | 14:6    | Prologue, 8; I, 34, 38 |
|            | 15:8    | IV, 21, 45      |

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:35</td>
<td>III, 16, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>II, 40, 61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 4, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21–23</td>
<td>II, 18, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5–9</td>
<td>III, 11, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5–6</td>
<td>IV, 7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28–39</td>
<td>IV, 20, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33–34</td>
<td>III, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>II, 28, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30</td>
<td>III, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>II, 12, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
<td>I, 5, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6–15</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>III, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:6–8</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>I, 35, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9–10</td>
<td>I, 30, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12–14</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>I, 33, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 28, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>I, 12, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>I, 11, 11; II, 13, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>I, 33, 36; 4, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>Prologue, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7–8</td>
<td>IV, 21, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>III, 31, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1–9</td>
<td>IV, 18, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:34</td>
<td>III, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>I, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passage</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>IV, 21, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>III, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19–20</td>
<td>II, 23, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>I, 39, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>I, 30,31; II, 7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>I, 39, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13,14</td>
<td>II, 31, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:49</td>
<td>IV, 21, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50,53</td>
<td>I, 19, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2–30</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>III, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 4, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>I, 37, 41; II, 12, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>I, 34, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2–11</td>
<td>IV, 20, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1–2</td>
<td>III, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>IV, 28, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:5</td>
<td>II, 40, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>IV, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>III, 24, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>IV, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:16–30</td>
<td>IV, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>IV, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2–4</td>
<td>Prologue, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15–18</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19–22</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>III, 31, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10–20</td>
<td>IV, 20, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21–26</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 24, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>III, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>III, 11, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17–19</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>I, 16, 15; III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>I, 24, 24; I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23, 24</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12–14</td>
<td>I, 34, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>III, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>III, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>I, 26, 27; I, 35, 39; I, 36, 41; I, 40, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>IV, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>IV, 27, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1–2</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>IV, 21, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>IV, 28, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>IV, 28, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1–2</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15–3:1</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philemon</td>
<td>I, 33, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>IV, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>III, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>III, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>III, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>III, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>III, 24, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>III, 36, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>III, 36, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td>III, 24, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>III, 24, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:1</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Citations are to: Prologue (P), Book(s) (Roman numbers), and section numbers

Abraham:
- Paul on, IV:39
- seed of, III:44
action: swayed by grand manner of speech, IV:55
affections: spiritual life, I:16
ambiguities (in the Bible):
- discussion and solutions, III:1
- figurative expressions, III:9
- grammatical construction, III:8
- metaphorical language, III:9
- obscurities, II:7, 14
- phrasing, III:2–5
- pronunciation, III:6–7
- sound/tone of syllables, III:7
Ambrose, Saint:
- equality of the Holy Spirit, IV:46
- Plato and, II:42
- on virginity, IV:48
- on women painting faces, IV:49
Amos (prophet): rhetoric, III:15–21
amulets, II:30
angels:
- apostate, II:35
- hopes in, I:36
- we are commanded to love, I:31, 33
animals:
- food, III:19
- natural to “love” themselves, I:27
- sensitive life, I:8
- signs, II:3
Anthony of Egypt, P:4
Antiphrasis, III:41
Apocalypse:
- angels of the seven Churches, III:42
- number of saints in, III:51
Apollo: temple of, II:27
apostles:
- apostolic sees, II:12
- neither puffed up nor cast down, III:29
arithmetic, II:56
arithmology, II:25
art:
- signs, II:39
- arts and crafts, II:47, 58
- arts and sciences:
  - senses and reason, II:41, 58
  - social life, II:58
assent:
- eloquence and, IV:29
astrologers, II:32–33
astronomy, II:46
audience:
- enduring the various styles of speech, IV:51, 52
- persuasion; three styles of speech, IV:55
- swaying, with the grand manner, IV:58
augurs, II:30, 37
Augustine, Saint:
- reply to fault-finders, P:3
Babel, Tower of, II:5; III:53
ballet, II:38
baptism, II:7; III:13
behavior: judging, III:19
being:
- things and the life that quickens, I:8

Volume I/11
Bible:
See also New Testament; Old Testament
accomplished investigators of, II:12
ambiguities in, See Ambiguities.
astrology and, II:35
authority undermined, I:41
better/truer ideas than we can think up, II:9
canonical scriptures, II:12–13
discovery of meaning; passing to others, I:1
dissemination; translations, II:6
duty of teachers of, IV:6
faith, hope and charity in, II:14
figurative expressions, II:23–24;
III:13, 33, 34
fruitful study of, II:14
Greek Septuagint, II:22
hidden meanings, III:42
intention of the author, III:38
interpretation; fault-finders, P:2
knowledge of the scriptures, II:63
Latin or English signs, II:21
length of times in (Tychonius), III:50
memorizing, II:14
metaphors in scripture, III:14, 39
mistaken understanding, I:41
natural sciences; encyclopedia, II:59
needed for instructing others, I:43
numbers in, II:59
old Itala Latin, II:22
past, present, and future in scripture, III:15
proper meaning of a passage (in translation), II:19
proper numbers, III:51
reading; discretion re ambiguous phrases, III:5
reasons why texts are not understood, II:15
rules for dealing with, P:1
rules of interpretation, III:34
rules of Tychonius, III:42–56
salutary work of the Holy Spirit, II:8
speaker poor in words, rich in use of scripture, IV:8
study: correction of copies, II:21
study: purpose, I:1
summary: love of God and neighbor, I:39, 40
task of searching scriptures, II:62

teaching: insights multiplied when given away, I:1
translations, II:16–19
understanding and communicating, IV:1
understanding obscurities in, P:8; J:14
understanding; three qualities, I:44
universal commands, III:25
value of history in study of, II:42
will of God in, III:1
words and names in (languages), II:59
words understood in several ways, III:38
yielding to authority of, II:10

blood relations, II:17

body and soul:
See also Human body
death of the body, I:18
dignity of the soul, I:20
mistaken ideas, I:24
number metaphors, II:25
soul gives life to body, I:28
soul’s abode in eternity, I:42

books and reading: understanding, IV:23
bread: the five loaves given to hungry crowd, I:1

Caesarea of Mauritania, IV:53
caring: motivation, I:35
Catachresis, III:40
celibacy, III:25
change, I:8
charity: chance, I:29
Christian life: fare for the journey, I:36
Christians: seed: word as sign, II:17
Church:
body/wife of Christ, I:15
building up; gifts of the Spirit, I:14
fishes (153) caught in net, II:25
keys given to, I:17
mixture, III:45
prophets and, IV:22
Teaching Christianity

rules of Tychonius, III:44
saints’ role in, II:7
spiritual death and resurrection, I:14
superstitions and, II:7
Cicero, IV:34
cities, III:47
clergy:
See also Preachers; Teachers
speaking both wisely and eloquently
on scripture, IV:8
clothes: superstitions, II:31
commandments:
figurative, III:24
need: what is above/next to us, I:27
Old Testament, in life today, III:26
ten commandments, II:26
universal (in the Bible), III:25
common life: early Christians, III:10
communication:
See also Eloquence; Preaching; Public
speaking; Sermons
aim to be heard with understanding,
delight, compliance, IV:56
meaning of scriptures, IV:1
compassion, I:31, 33, 35
concupiscence, I:24
conscience: good; hope, I:44; III:14
constellations: animal names, II:32
contraries: virtues and vices, I:13
conversation: understanding, IV:23
Cornelius (centurion), P:6
cosmetics: Cyprian and Ambrose
on, IV:49
counsel, II:11
courage, II:10
crafts, II:47, 58
creation: worship, II:30
creatures: God’s use of us, I:35
crime, III:22
cross: sign, II:62
customs, III:22
Cyprian, Saint, II:61; IV:31, 45
on virginity, IV:47
on women painting faces, IV:49
dates (dating events), II:42
David, King:
psaltery, IV:19
relations; justice, III:30–31
death:
eternal, I:19
fear of God, II:9
remedy for, I:13
see God: die to this world, II:11
definition (logic), II:53
delight:
embellishments of moderate style,
IV:55
enjoy; use, I:37
function of eloquence, IV:27–30
moderate manner of speech, IV:55
pleasing style of speaking, IV:31
demons, II:30, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 58
despair, II:10
devil, I:13; II:36; III:36
rule of Tychonius, III:55
dialectic, II:59
discourse: rules, II:54, 59
discovery, II:8
dress, II:31, 39; III:20
duty, II:47
early Church: Jerusalem, III:10
Egypt, II:61, 62, 63
Egyptians, II:60
Elijah, II:25
eloquence:
See also delight; public speaking;
understanding
Christian authors, IV:10–15
displayed in praising and blaming, IV:54
elocuence without wisdom, IV:7–8
fitting words to topic’s importance, IV:34
functions: teach, delight, sway, IV:27–31, 34, 56
mastery of, IV:4
moderate mode of speech, IV:57
rules of discourse, II:54; IV:20
speaking eloquently but also wisely, IV:61
when a speaker is lacking in, IV:7
youth and age, IV:9
emotions:
arousal by speaker’s style, IV:51
signs, II:3
end of the world: bodily death and resurrection, I:14
enemies: love of, I:30, 31
enjoyment:
audience, IV:34, 56
essence of, I:4
goal, I:4
God’s goodness, I:35
love of God and neighbor, III:16
love of the thing to be enjoyed, I:39
one another in God, I:35, 37
right to enjoy each other, I:34
temporal life; selves, I:21
things eternal and unchanging, I:20
use of this world, I:3, 4, 24
use with delight, I:37
Esau and Jacob, II:33; III:19
Esther, Queen, IV:63
eternal life:
godless and the godly, I:19
journey towards, I:38
life aim: unchanging life, I:21
love; possession of eternal things, I:42
Eucharist
sign, III:13
water mixed with wine, IV:45
Eusebius, II:59
exodus, II:61
faith:
authority of scripture undermined, I:41
breastplate of, III:37
gift, III:46
gives way to sight, I:42
metaphors in scripture, III:14
pretense, I:44
reaching everlasting sight, II:17
resurrection; support; hope, I:14
violation of trust, I:40
works and (Tychonius), III:46
false conclusions, II:49–51
falsehood:
defending truth against, IV:3
definition, II:53
delight in its being revealed, IV:28
fame, III:29
fates, II:46
fear of God: stages on way to wisdom, II:9–11
feelings, See Emotions.
fictions, II:39
fidelity: great, in minimal matters, IV:35
figurative speech, II:23–24; III:9, 13, 14, 23–25, 32–34, 56
Paul’s eloquence, IV:9–14
Set also Metaphors; Tropes.
flesh:
lusts against the spirit, I:25
word as sign, II:17
folly of God…, II:20
forgiveness of sin: keys given to the Church, I:17
fornication (false gods), III:12
fortitude, II:10
future: conjectures about, II:47
Genethliacs, II:32, 46
genus: rules of Tychonius, III:47–48
Teaching Christianity

god:
- clinging to; immortality, I:23
- enjoyment of God alone, I:20
- goodness, I:35
- human thought: God excelling everything, I:7
- I am who I am, I:35
- inexpressible, I:6
- justice, I:35
- Language in praise of, IV:38
- learning about, IV:38
- mind must be purified to see God, I:10
- no other thought is more sublime, I:7
- praise and love of, II:57
- unchanging, I:8, 23, II:10
- unity, II:10
- uses us; does not enjoy us, I:34–35
- wisdom, I:8
- wish to be called neighbor, I:33

gods:
- fornication, III:12
- images made with hands, III:11
- number of, I:7

golden rule, III:22

good and evil: tree of knowledge, III:52

good works:
- Christ’s cross as sign, II:62
- precious ointment, III:18
-gravity, III:8, 40; IV:5
-greed, III:15–17, 26, 27

habit: bad habits; lusts of the flesh, I:25

hands: Christ crucified, II:62

happiness:
- enjoying and using, I:3–4
- perfect; enjoyment, I:34
- truth re the happy life, II:55

hatred:
- lording it over others, I:23
- of self, I:24, 25

healing:
- wisdom incarnate, I:13

Hebrew literature, II:42

Hebrew names, II:23

Hesiod, II:27

Hilary, Saint, II:61

history:
- institution, II:44
- value in study of scripture, II:41

Holy Spirit:
- Ambrose on, IV:46
- bible and, III:13
- translations and, H:22
- early Christians, III:10
- given to us, P:5; IV:11
- preaching and, IV:32
- salutary work on the scriptures, II:8
- teachers and, IV:33

hope:
- gives way to bliss, I:42
- good conscience, I:44; III:14
- Paul on, IV:11
- placing, in human beings, I:36, 37
- resurrection and support of faith, I:14

hosanna (the word), II:16

Hosea, III:18

human beings:
- See also Signs
- both enjoyed and used, I:20
- learning from each other, P:6
- loved on God’s account, I:28
- our “neighbor” includes all, I:32

human body:
- health and safety, I:26
- impossible not to love our bodies, I:22
- instruction on how to love, I:26, 27
- waging war against, I:25

humility: cure of fallen man, I:13

Volume I/11
hypocrisy: giving appearance of being good, IV:62
hyssop, II:24,62

idols:
  pagan veneration, III:11
superstitions, II:36

ignorance: understanding figurative expressions, II:24

immortality:
  body after resurrection, I:25
  health of the spirit, I:23
immutability, II:57

incarnation:
  coming of the Word; purpose, I:38
  Wisdom, the Word of God, I:11–12
  Wisdom's healing art, I:13

inferior things, I:3, 24

institutions: human and divine, II:29, 38, 40, 58, 60
irony, III:41
Isaiah, P:7
Israel, III:48–49

Jeremiah, II:42
Jerome, Saint:
  Latin and Hebrew languages, IV:15
  music, IV:41
Jerusalem, II:63
Jesus Christ:
  See also incarnation
  age questions, II:42
  body; the temple, II:26
  church and, See Church.
  cross; sign, II:62
  crucifixion; effect on past sins, I:16
  enjoy the humanity of, I:34
  feet anointed with ointment, III:18
  his truth proclaimed by the not-truth, IV:59
  learn of me..., II:62

Jesus son of Sirach, II:13

Jews:
  blood relations, II:17
  monotheism, II:42
  slavery; temporal things, III:10

Joseph of Egypt, IV:20

joy, See Delight; Enjoyment.

Julius Caesar, II:32

justice:
  customs and, III:22
  greatness, for speakers, IV:35
  hunger for, II:10
  temple to, II:28

Kedar, camps of, III:45

kindness:
  if your enemy is hungry..., ffi:24
  love profiting one's neighbor, III:16, 21

knowledge:
  illuminating our minds, I:9
  pride in, II:20, 62
  sciences, II:45, 50
  theological virtues, I:41

Lactantius, II:61

languages:
  barbarism; solecism, II:19
  bible study and, III:1, 40
  correctness of speech, II:19
  learning by hearing, P:5
  understanding scriptural signs, II:16

unknown signs (foreign), II:21, 37, 59
Latin language: meaning; word usage, III:7
lawsuits, IV:36
law:
  fulfillment, I:39, 44
  promises; rules of Tychonius, III:46
learning:
  feeding and, IV:26
  secular studies, II:58
  through signs, I:2
  wisdom and, II:57
letter signs [alphabet], II:5
liar. I:40
  See also Falsehood
life:
  beings and the life that quickens, I:8
  changeable vs unchangeable, I:9
  vegetative, I:8
  whoever loves his life…, III:24
lion (devil), III:36
literacy: teaching, P:9
logic:
  defining terms, II:53
  false conclusions, II:49–51
  logical inferences, II:49–51
  relationships, II:52
  rules of, II:50–51
love:
  building up, I:40
  built up by, II:62
  charity continues to grow, I:42
  charity will abide, I:43
  commanded to love angels, I:31, 33
  commands in scripture, III:15
  do not do to another…, III:22
  eternal reward, I:30
  eternal things; acquired/desired, I:42
  for inferior things, I:3, 24
  four kinds of things to be loved, I:22
  God, for God’s sake, III:23
  God and neighbor, I:27, 33, 39, 40; II:10
  God over all others, I:28
  greater care for those closely joined, I:29
  interpreting figurative expressions, III:23
  joy in God and neighbor, III:16
  metaphors in scripture, III:14
  ourselves; our bodies, I:22, 24
  profiling self, III:16
  pure heart, I:44
  right order of, I:27
  things; right order, I:28
  two commandments, II:7, 10
  whole heart, soul, mind, I:21, 27
love of neighbor (Love one another):
  commandment, I:20
  equal love for all, I:29
  favorite actor, I:30
  lording it over others, I:23
  love others for God’s sake, I:21; II:10
  luck: closer contact with some people, I:29
  mutual help; benefits, I:30
  neighbor as/of yourself, I:21, 27, 33; II:10
  perfection in, II:11; III:22–23
lust, III:20, 27, 29, 31, 32
magical arts, II:30
martyrs, I:22
mathematics, II:48
meaning: way of speaking and, III:7
Melchizedek, IV:45
memory: value of, II:14
Mercury (god), II:28
mercy, II:11
metaphors:
  example, III:40
  rules re figurative expressions, III:14
mind:
  effect of signs on, II:1
  rational, II:48
miser, I:26
mood: signs, II:2
moon, II:46
morality:
censures in scripture, III:15
conventional, III:20
metaphors in scripture, III:14
Moses, II:25, 61; IV:59; P:7
Muses (the Nine), II:27
music:
Amos on, IV:19
Jerome and, IV:41
melodious sounds, II:27
number metaphors, II:26

narrative, II:45
natural sciences, II:45, 50, 59
neighbor:
See also Love of neighbor
love does no wrong to, I:32
who is neighbor? I:31
Neptune, III:11
new covenant, III:48
Noah: sons of, III:53
numbers:
fifty, II:25
forty (four times ten), II:25
metaphorical, in scripture, II:25–26, 59
proper, in scripture, III:51
seven, II:25
synecdoche, III:50
ten, II:25, 37
whole time, III:51

obedience:
audience, IV:34, 56
made docile to God, by God, IV:33
obscurities, See Ambiguities.
Old Testament:
commands retained for today, III:26
events literal and figurative, III:32
historical books, II:13
Latin versions to be corrected by
Greek, II:22
prophets, II:13
Optatus, Bishop, II:61
oratory: grand manner, IV:50
ox (sign), II:15
pagans, II:28; III:11
pain, I:26; II:3
paradise, III:52
passover, II:62
Paul, Saint, P:6; I:31, 32, 36
calm manner; style, IV:39–44
demons and, II:35
desire to cast off and be with Christ,
III:4
eloquent wisdom (examples), IV:9–15
grand manner of speaking, IV:42–44
knowledge of, IV:15
peace: wisdom, II:11
Pelagians, III:46
Pentecost, II:25
perfection: present/future life compared, I:43
persuasion:
effects of eloquence, IV:27–30
rhetoric, IV:3
universal task of eloquence, IV:55
Philemon, I:37
Philip, Saint, Apostle, P:7
philosophers, II:60
piety, II:9, 10
pity, I:33
Plato, II:42
Platonists, II:60
polygamy, III:20, 27–29,31
pool of Siloam, II:23

Teaching Christianity
praise: eloquence, IV:54

prayer:
  before preaching, IV:32
  that God put good words in preacher's mouth, IV:63

preachers (-ing):
  help the silent listener, IV:25
  holding attention, IV:25
  importance of lifestyle, IV:59
  pray to God for good words, IV:63
  prayer before, IV:32
  put words in God's care, IV:32
  qualities: eloquence, wisdom, life, IV:61
  saying what they do not do, IV:60
  suggestions and advice for, IV:22–26
  those who cannot compose sermons, IV:62

pride:
  Babel, II:5
  breaking, with hard labor, II:7
  empty fame, III:29
  God withstands the proud, III:33
  hope in created things, I:36
  lording it over others, I:23
  puffed up by knowledge of signs, II:20
  tower of Babel, III:53

problem solving, II:48; IV:39

procreation of children, III:27, 28

pronunciation : scriptural ambiguities, III:6–7

prophecy:
  rules of Tychonius, III:43, 49
  shall cease, I:43
  prophets, II:13; III:21; IV:16
  prostitute, III:20
  providence, divine, I:39; II:60
  Ptolemy, II:22

public speaking:
  See also Eloquence; Preaching; Rhetoric; Teaching
diligent negligence, IV:24
duty: to speak wisely, if not eloquently, IV:8
elegance and feeling, IV:7
kinds of speaking, IV:6
learn speech and pronunciation of speakers, IV:5
minor/middling/grand matters, IV:34–38
Paul's rhetoric, IV:15
teachers of scripture, IV:6

purification:
  for mind to see God, I:10
  purge eyes with which God can be seen, II:11
  understanding: cleaving to truth, II:17

Pythagoras, II:42

Raca (the word), II:16

rational discourse, II:48

reading: rules for, P:9

reason, II:41

recapitulation (rule of Tychonius), III:52–54

redemption: God's Wisdom came and healed us, I:11

remedial charms, II:30, 36

repentance:
  coals of fire…, III:24
  death of previous way of life, I:18

reputation: preachers' personal life, IV:61

resurrection:
  model: Christ and his Church, I:14

resurrection of the body:
  changed for the better, I:18
  false conclusions, II:49, 50, 52
  remodeled on truth, I:20

rhetoric:
  art of persuasion, IV:3
  imitate good speakers, IV:8
  mixing the three styles, IV:51
  pauses, clauses, phrases, IV:11–13, 18, 41
  rhetorical skills, IV:1
  rules, IV:2, 4
self-advertisement, IV:14
wisdom and eloquence, IV:7
rhythm: rhetoric, IV:41
rule of faith, III:2.5

sacrifice: signs: Abraham; Isaac, I:2
saints: cutting people off from errors, II:7
salvation:
homeopathic remedies, I:1 3
ordering of time, I:39
saved by God’s incarnate Wisdom, I:11
Samuel, II:35
Saul, King, II:35
scriptures, See Bible.
seasons, II:32
seed: word as sign, II:17
self:
body and spirit, I:27
hatred, I:24
self-advertisement, IV:14
self-indulgence: several wives, III:27, 28
self-love, I:21, 22, 26, 27, 39
senses:
bodily, II:41
signs, II:4
sensual persons: ideas about God, I:7
Septuagint: bible translation, II:22; IV:15
sermons:
preach those of acknowledge masters, IV:62
preacher who cannot compose his own, IV:62
substance rather than words, IV:61
serpent, II:24; III:36
seventy, See Septuagint.

sexual relations: polygamy, III:27–28
Shem: sons of, III:53
shield, III:37
shorthand, II:40
sight, sense of, I:25

signs:
See also words ambiguous, III:1
ballet, II:38
contraries or diverse realities, III:36
convenient and necessary, II:39
conventional or given, II:3
definition, I:2
evil spirits, II:37
fictions and fables, II:39
handed down by Christ and the apostles, III:13
images; idols, III:11
interpreting in a useless way, III:13
kinds: description, I:1
knowledge of languages, II:16; III:40
letters; languages, II:37; III:40
liberation from enslavement, III:12–13
metaphorical, II:23
mood, II:2
natural, II:2
proper or metaphorical, II:15–16; III:1
puffed up by knowledge of, II:20
remedy for ignorance of, II:16
senses (sight, hearing, etc.), II:4
things and, I:2
things: rule of usage, III:35
treating as things, III:9
uncertain sense, III:36
unknown language signs, II:21, 59
verbal, II:4

simile:
biblical usage, II:24
contraries, III:36

sin:
customs and, III:15
forgiveness of; keys, I:17
spiritual way blocked by past sins, I:16
two categories, III:16

sinners:
love of, I:28
restoration to health, I:13
supporting, III:24
slavery: carnal spirits, III:13
snake, II:24
Solecisms, II:19
Solomon, King, II:13, 63; III:31, 47
songs: three forms, II:27
Soothsayers, II:30, 44
sophisms, II:48
soul, See Body and soul.
speaking: speech, a spoken utterance, I:12; II:19
species: rules of Tychonius, III:47–48
speeches:
  effect of calm, plain speaking, IV:54, 56
  goal is to be believed, IV:56
  grand manner; moderate opening, IV:52
  moderate style; delight for hearers, IV:55
  speaker applauded, IV:53, 56
spells and invocations, II:45
Spirit:
death of, I:18
flesh lusts against, I:25
health of the, I:23
mood betrayed by expressions, II:2
remodeled on truth, I:19
spiritual life:
  figurative expressions, III:25
  way traveled by affections, I:16
stars, II:32, 33, 34, 36, 46
style: lavish speech, IV:31
superstition:
  Church cuts off from, II:7
  folk, II:31
  music; Muses, II:27, 28
  pagan, II:60, 61
  worship in, II:30
swaying:
  See also Persuasion
  function of eloquence, IV:27–30
syllable: right sounding, III:7
teachers (-ing):
  function of eloquence, IV:27–30
  grand words; good personal life, IV:61
  Holy Spirit and, IV:33
  methods/styles of speaking, IV:6
  nature of eloquence in, IV:26
  responsibility; problem solving, IV:39
  speaking to the uneducated, IV:24
  two kinds, II:29
temple of God:
  God answers from his human temple,
P:6
temple of Jerusalem:
  number (forty-six year’s), II:26
temples: pagan, II:28
temporal goods:
  clinging to, I:38
  Jewish people, III:10
  love; possession, I:42
  tied up in love of this world, II:10
ten commandments, See Commandments.
ten-stringed psaltery, II:26
terms: defining, distinguishing, distributing, II:53
things:
  enjoying and using, I:2ff
  given away; increasing and decreasing, I:1
  ourselves as, I:20
  signs and, I:2; II:1
time: ordering of, I:39
Tobias, III:27
translations:
  Hebrew, Syrian, Egyptian names, II:59
  of the scriptures, II:6
  words defying, II:16
Trinity:
each person is God; all are one God, I:5
equality in, I:38
equality; ambiguous phrase, III:3
number metaphors, II:25
teaching the unity of, IV:38
ultimate thing to be enjoyed, I:5, 37
tropes, III:40–41
antiphrasis, III:41
catachresis, III:40
klimax (ladder), IV:11
synedocha, III:50
trust: violation of, I:40
truth:
astrologers, II:32
belongs to God, II:28
cleaving to, II:11, 17
defense of, IV:3
delight in presentation of, IV:28, 29
desire for, I:38
eloquence, II:54, 55
hearer swayed by calm, plain style, IV:55, 56
immutability, II:57
love of truth in words, IV:26
metaphors in scripture, III:14
pleasing, moving, obeying, IV:61
proclaimed by the not-truth, IV:59
seeking, I:25
twins, II:34
Tychonius: seven rules of, III:42–56
understanding:
audience, IV:34, 56
difficulty in, IV:23
everlasting sight, II:17
figurative expressions, II:24; III:13
obscurities in scriptures, P:8
praying for, III:56
preaching and, IV:22, 25
unless you believe..., II:17
universe: sensual persons’ ideas about God, I:7
use:
directed toward God’s goodness, I:35
end of usefulness, III:21
enjoyment; perfect happiness, I:3, 34
essence of, I:4
unlawful; misuse, I:4
useful arts, II:40
Varro, II:27, 28
Venus, II:32
Vergil, II:56
vices: curing; contraries, I:13
Victorinus, II:61
virginity:
Ambrose on, IV:48
Cyprian on, IV:47
give your daughter, III:25
virtue:
interconnectedness of, I:41
temple to, II:28
theological; support, I:43
walking, II:55
water:
cup of cold water, IV:37
sign, III:36
weakness:
boasting about (Paul), IV:12, 13
of man..., II:20
will of God:
discovery of, II:6
seeking, in scriptures, II:14; III:1
Wisdom:
eloquence in scripture, IV:10–21
folly to the godless, I:13
God as unchangeable, I:8
incarnate, I:11–12
public speaking, IV:7–8
stages, after beginning of (fear), II:9–11
world unable to know God, I:12
women: painting faces, IV:49–50
Word of God: See Incarnation; Jesus Christ.

words:
arguing about, IV:61
letter signs, II:5
literal meaning, III:8
love the truth in, IV:26
metaphorical, e.g. “wrath” of God, III:17, 39
proper literal sense, III:9
proper or metaphorical, II:15–16; III:1, 34
signifying thoughts, II:4
signs, I:2
sounded: speech, I:12

work: harrying the body, I:24

world:
dying to this world, II:11
unable to know God through wisdom, I:12
using and enjoying, I:4

worship:
angel, I:36
idols, II:30
spiritual freedom, III:13

wound: healing, I:13
wrongdoing: God’s justice, I:35
Index from

On Eight Questions from Dulcitius

(De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus)

Included in book:

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

Translation, introduction, and notes by Boniface Ramsey, Raymond Canning, editor, Boniface Ramsey, series editor

This volume contains three books: Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions (De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus), Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician (Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus), and Eight Questions of Dulcitius (De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus).

Volume I/12            Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-277-7, 6 x 9 in., 301 pp., 2008

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/12

Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)
The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Eight Questions of Dulcitius

Old Testament

Genesis
1:1 8, 2
1:2 8, 2
1:3 8, 2
1:3-4 8, 2
1:20 8, 3

1 Samuel
28:19 6, 4

Job
7:1 4, 2

Psalms
32:1-2 5, 2
112:1 4, 2
112:2 4, 1
112:3 4, 3

Wisdom
9:15 4, 2

Sirach
27:5 1, 12

Ezekiel
34:23-24 5, 3
37:22-24 5, 3

Hosea
3:4 5, 3
3:5 5, 3

New Testament

Matthew
1:25 1, 1
5:26 1, 1
15:26 1, 8
15:28 1, 8

Luke
19:17 1, 4
19:18-19 1, 6
19:21 1, 6
25:34 1, 13
25:41 1, 4
25:44 1, 4
25:46 1, 4

John
2:14 4, 2

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

Acts of the Apostles
13:21-22 5, 3
13:22 5, 1
13:23 5, 3

Romans
1:30-31 5, 3

1 Corinthians
3:11 1, 6
3:11-15 1, 3
3:15 1, 1
6:9-10 1, 4
6:10 1, 13
6:11 1, 4
7:15 1, 7
13:3 1, 4
13:12 1, 4
15:36 3, 3
15:51 3, 3

2 Corinthians
5:10 2, 3
9:6 4, 3

Galatians
5:6 1, 6; 1, 10
5:19-21 1, 4
6:9 4, 3

Ephesians
3:19 8, 3
5:5 1, 14
5:5-6 1, 14
5:6 1, 14

1 Thessalonians
4:15-17 3, 3
4:17 3, 2

James
1:19 3, 6
2:14 1, 4
2:19 1, 2
2:20 1, 2

1 Peter
3:21 1, 4

Volume I/12
Eight Questions of Dulcitius

Abimelech, 7
Abraham, 7
Adam, 3, 5
adultery, 1, 4; 1, 6; 1, 10; 7
allegory, 3, 4; 8, 2
almsgiving, 1, 10; 1, 13; 2, 4
angels, 1, 4; 3, 3; 6, 3-4
avarice, 1, 4
baptism, 1, 10; 2, 4; 7, 3
sin after, 1
beatitude, 3, 5
beauty: of virtue, 6, 2
Bible. See scripture, sacred
blessed: and offspring of righteous and unrighteous, 4
body, 6, 4
See also resurrection of the body after death, 2, 2-4; 4, 3-5; 4, 2
body of Christ (eucharist), 1, 14
Canaanite woman, 1, 9
Catholic faith, 1, 13-14
charity
See also love teaching and, 3, 6
children: offspring of the righteous, 4
the Church, 1, 10; 2, 2-4
circumcision, 1, 10
commandments, 1, 4
See also law conversion, 7, 2; 8, 2
creation, 8
perfection of, 8, 2-3
creed, 3, 1
rule of faith, 3, 4
cursed: and offspring of righteous and unrighteous, 4
darkness, 4, 2; 8, 3
David, 4-5
death
See also body; resurrection of the body escaping, with body intact, 3
and resurrection, 3
souls of the departed, 2
what happens after, 6, 4
and when the Lord comes, 3
You will be with me, 6, 4
deceit, 6, 4; 7, 4
demons, 1, 2; 1, 5; 1, 9; 6, 4
devil, 1, 4; 6, 2-4
discipline, 1, 14
See also punishment

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

drunks, 1,4

earth
See also creation; world
heaven and, 8,2
the effeminate, 1,4; 1,10
Egyptians, 7,2
Elijah, 3
enemies: enmities, 1,4
Enoch, 3
envy, 4,3
eternal fire, 1,4; 1,6; 1,13
See also hell; punishment
eternal life, 1,2; 1,4; 1,6; 3,3; 4,3
See also heaven
eucharist, 1,14; 2,4
evil spirits. See demons
Ezekiel, 5,3

faith:
and grace, 1,5
and love, 1,5–6; 1,9
rule of, 3,4
and salvation, 1
and works, 1
Faith, Hope and Charity (Augustine), 1,10
Faith and Works (Augustine), 1,10
family: offspring of the righteous, 4
the Father. See Trinity
Faustus the Manichean, 7,4
Felix, 2,2
fire, 1,1; 1,3–7; 1,10–14
See also hell
salvation by, 1,4; 1,6
fornication, 1,4; 1,10; 1,13
foundation, Christ as, 1

generations: the generation of the upright, 4,3
gentiles, 5,3
glutony, 1,4
God. See also Trinity; specific topics
kingdom of, 1
good; goodness:
the beauty of virtue, 6,2
holy, 8,2
grace, 1,5; 1,7; 3,5
greed, 1,4

heart: uprightness of, 4,3
heaven, 1,6; 3,3; 4,3
See also eternal life
and earth, 8,2
hell
See also eternal fire; punishment
as eternal, 1
and sin after baptism, 1

heresy, 1,4; 1,10
Hezekiah, King, 5,3
Holy Spirit, 8
Hosea, 5,3
husband. See marriage

idolatry, 1,4; 1,10
images, 6,3
immortality, 3,2–4; 3,6
impurity, 1,4; 1,14

James, 1,2
jealousy, 1,4
Jesus Christ, 8,2
See also specific topics
David and, 5
as foundation, 1
second coming of, 3
Jews, 5,3; 6,2; 6,4
Job, 4,2; 6,2
judgment, 3,3; 4,2

kingdom of God, 1

law, 1,4
highest, 6,4
of truth, 1,8
learning: teaching and, 1,6; 3,6
lies, lying, 6,4; 7,4
light, 6,2; 7,4; 8,2
love, 8,3
See also charity
faith and, 1,5–6; 1,9
for neighbor, 1,4
for self, 1,4
works of, 1

magic, 6,2
Manicheans, 7,4
marriage, 1,4; 1,7
Mercator, 3,2
mercy, 5,3
See also works
God’s, 4,2
works of, 1,4

names, 6,3
necromancer, 6
neighbor, 1,4

offerings, 2

pagans, 1,6
Paul, 5,3; 6,4
See also specific topics, e.g., faith;
salvation; works
Paulinus, bishop of Nola, 2, 2
peace:
envying sinners’ peace, 4, 3
“of that building in common,” 4, 2
Pelagians, 3, 2
perfection, 1, 6
of creation, 8, 2–3
phantasm, 6, 3
Pharaoh, 6, 3; 7
piety, 3, 6
possessions, 1; 4, 3
prophecy, 5, 3
See also individual prophets, e.g., Samuel
punishment, 1, 1; 1, 3–4; 1, 14; 2, 4; 3, 2; 6, 4
See also eternal fire; hell
discipline, 1, 14
purgative fire, 1, 13
repentance, 1, 4–5; 1, 7; 1, 10; 1, 13; 5, 2–3
resurrection of the body, 2, 4; 3, 2–3; 3, 6
riches, 4, 3
rich young ruler, 1, 6; 6, 4
righteousness:
his righteousness remains forever, 4, 3
and judgment, 3, 4
offspring of the righteous, 4
rule of faith, 3, 4
sacraments, 1, 14; 2, 4
See also baptism
sacred scripture. See scripture, sacred
saints, 2, 2; 3, 2
salvation, 1
faith and, 1
by fire, 1, 4; 1, 6
works and, 1
Samuel, 6
Sarah, 7
Satan. See devil
Saul, King, 6
schism, 1, 10
scripture, sacred, 1, 10
seed, 4, 3
sexual relations, 7
See also adultery
Simplician, bishop of Milan, 6
sin:
after baptism, 1
of David, 5
envying sinners’ peace, 4, 3
grave sinners, 1
and repentance, 5, 2
slanderers, 1, 4
Son of God, 8, 2
See also Jesus Christ
sorcery, 1, 4
souls:
of the departed, 2
unconverted, fluid, 8
Spirit of God above the water, 8
spirits, 6
teaching:
and charity, 3, 6
God and, 3, 6
and learning, 1, 6; 3, 6
temple, 4, 2–3
thieves, 1, 4; 1, 10
Trinity, 8
truth, 1, 14; 6, 2; 6, 4
law of, 1, 8
“The sweetness of truth must attract us,”
3, 6
virtue, 6, 2
water, 4, 3; 8
wealth. See possessions; riches
wicked spirits. See demons
wife. See marriage
Word of God, 8, 2
works:
dead, 1, 7
faith and, 1
and salvation, 1
world
See also creation; earth; possessions; riches
things of, 1, 6; 11–12
Zacchaeus, 4, 3

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Index from
Eighty-Three Different Questions
(De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus)

Included in book:
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

Translation, introduction, and notes by Boniface Ramsey, Raymond Canning, editor, Boniface Ramsey, series editor

This volume contains three books: Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions (De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus), Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician (Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus), and Eight Questions of Dulcitius (De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus).

Volume I/12
Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-277-7, 6 x 9 in., 301 pp., 2008

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**Volume I/12**

**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

**Miscellany of Eighty-three Questions**

Revisions I, 26

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>John</th>
<th>Romans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 6:7</td>
<td>4:1-2</td>
<td>7:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 39:6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>8:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom 1:13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach 11:14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah 1:5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8:21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
<th>Ephesians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 5:32</td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>5:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 23:43</td>
<td>15:54-56</td>
<td>15:54-56</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Responses to Miscellaneous Questions**
### Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Miscellany of Eighty-three Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Old Testament</strong></th>
<th><strong>New Testament</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31 LI, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9 LXV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19 LXV; LXVII, 3; LXVIII, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7 LII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:27 LXXX, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deuteronomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4 LX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8 LXXV, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:5 LXXV, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12 LXVI, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7 LIX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:11 LXII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63:8XLV, 1; LXVI, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:2 LXXX, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28 LV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:6 LIX, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1 LXVIII, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:8-9 LXIX, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123:2 LXIX, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:5 LIX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proverbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19 LXXI, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24 LXX LI, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ecclesiastes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3 LXVII, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Song of Songs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8 LV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wisdom</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1 LXVIII, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1 LIII, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15-18 LIII, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8-9 XLV, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sirach</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14 XXXVI, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Isaiah**       |                  |
| 3:12 LIX, 3      |                  |
| 7:9 LXXI, 2      |                  |
| 53:3 LXIV, 3     |                  |
| **Jeremiah**     |                  |
| 1:5 LXVIII, 6    |                  |

**Volume I/12**
Volume I/12

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responses to Miscellaneous Questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:17 LXVII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18 LXVII; LXVII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19 LXVII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20 LXVII, 3; LXVII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21 LXVII, 1; LXVII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22 LXVII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22-23 LXVII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23 LXVII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-22 LXVII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24 LXVII; LXVII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXIV, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13 LXVIII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16 LXVIII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18-19 LXVIII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20-21 LXVIII; LXVIII, 1; LXVIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:21 LXVIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22 LXVIII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23 LXVIII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1: Corinthians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6 LXVIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11 LI, 4; LXIX, 3; LXIV, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12 LXVIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15 LXVIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2 LI, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22-23 LVII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3 LXIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7 LXVIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7 LXVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-11 LXVII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10-11 LXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11 LXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12 LXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12-13 LXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11 LXXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22 LXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:7 LXIX, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11 LVII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3 LVII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3 LXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12 LXXIX, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27 LXXIX, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30 LXXIX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10 LXVII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12 XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:20 LXI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:20 LXXIX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21-28 LXXIX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:23-24 LXIX, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24 LXXI, 3; LXXIX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:25 LXIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26 LXXIX, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26-27 LXIX, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28 LXIX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:51 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-56 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55 LXVII, 6; LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16 XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16 LXXIV, 1; LXXIV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5 LIX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7 LIXI, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2 LXIX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16 LXXIX, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23 LXIX, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28-29 LXXIX, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6 LXXVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-21 LXXVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21 LXXVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2 LXXI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4 LIXI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14 LXXV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2 LXXIX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8 LXXIV, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3 LXXI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4 LXXI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5 LXXI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-8 LXXI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6 LXXI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7 LXXI, 1; LXXXIII; LXXXIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8 LXXIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14, 16 LXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-15 LXXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2 XXIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2 LIXI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:23 LI, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8 LXVI, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2 LXXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14 LXI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17 LXXV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6 LXXXII; LXXXII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12 LIII, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/12
Volume I/12

1 Peter 1:24 LXI, 3
1 John 3:2 LXVII, 2; LXXV, 1; LXXXI, 2

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions

Aaron, LXI, 2
Abel, LVIII, 2
Abraham, LVIII, 2; LXI, 2; LXV; LVII, 5, 7; LXIX, 10; LXXVI, 1
accident, XXIV
actions
  See also deeds; free choice; habit; vices; virtues
  acting rightly, XXIV
divine, XXIV; LXII and free choice, XXIV
  For I do not do what I want, but I do what I hate, LXVI, 5
  knowledge and, LVIII, 2
  and perfection, LXII, 2
service, LXXIX, 1
Acts of the Apostles, LXXIX, 4
Adam, LVIII, 2; LX; LXXVI, 5-6; LXIX, 2
See also Fall; sin
adolescence. See ages of human existence
adoption, LXII, 2, 6
adulation. See flattery; praise
adultery, LXVI, 1; LXXXI, 2; LXVII, 5
the Samaritan woman, LXI
adulthood (maturity). See ages of human existence, below
ages, two, Christ as symbolizing, LXXIX, 1
ages of human existence, XII, XIII, LII, LXIII
  LXVIII, 1-2; LXIV, 2, 7
See also time
allegory, LIX, 1; LXV
amor, XXXV, 2-XXXVI, 1
angels, LX; LXVII, 7; LXX; LXXX, 3
angelic bodies, XLVII
  angelic life, LXI, 3
of error, LIII, 2
highest, LXVII, 5
anger, XII; LII; LXXI, 2; LXXX, 3
See also enemies; hatred
animals, XXX; XXXIX, 1; LXXXI; L;
LXVII, 5
See also specific animals
bodies of, LXXVIII; LXXX, 1
fleshy or animal person, LXVI, 3
  LXVII, 5
humans as differentiated from, VII; XIII;
  LXI, 3; LXXX
  two-footed, LXXVIII
whether an irrational animal can be blessed, V
Annas, LXII
anointing, holy, LXI, 2
See also baptism
anxiety, XXXIII
See also fear
apocryphal writing, LIX, 1
the Apollinarians, LXXX
apostles. See also, disciples; individual names;
  specific topics and events
Arianism, LXIX, 1
the ark. See Noah
tart, LXXVIII
ascension of Christ, LXVII, 2; LXII; LXXXI, 2
assumption of humanity, Christ's. See Jesus
  Christ: assumption of humanity
astrology, XLV
authority
  See also law; power
  of religion, XXXVI, 1

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

avarice. See covetousness; greed

Babylon, LVIII, 2
bad person/people
See also evil; sin; wickedness
providence by means of, XXVII
baptism, XXVI, 1; LXI; LVII, 2; LXI, 2
See also conversion; John the Baptist;
regeneration; sacraments
Jesus as baptizing more than John, LXII
barley, LXI, 4
bearing one another’s burdens, LXXI
beasts. See animals
beatitude, LXIX, 10; LXXII, 3
beauty, XXIII; XLIV
the body and, XLV, 1
goodness and, XXX
highest, XLIV
of images, LXXVIII
intelligible, XXX
and numbers, LXXVIII
order and, LXXVIII
the soul and, XLV, 1
temporal, XLIV
of virtue, XXXVI, 1
being. See creation; existence; reality
belief
See also faith
believable things, XLVIII
service and, LXXI, 2
and understanding, XLVIII; LXXII, 2
Bible. See scripture, sacred
birds, LXXIV
eggs, LXXIV
birth
See also rebirth
him who has always been born, XXXVII
and our will, LXXX, 4
the virgin birth, LVII, 3
blessedness; blessed life, XLV, 2
being completely happy or blessed,
XXIV
and being wretched, XXXV
whether an irrational animal can be
blessed, V
blindness, XII; LXXV, 5
bodaciousness. See pride
body, LXXI, 1; LXXII, 1
See also corpse; death; flesh; resurrection
of the body; specific topics, e.g.,
health; senses
angelic, XLVII
beauty in, XLV, 1
change and, LV
creation and, LXVII, 1, 5
as creature, LXXVII, 2
eternal, XLVIII
God’s own substance vs., LI
human vs. animal, LI, 3
immutable, XLVII
life and, LV
members of, LXIX, 10
numbers and, LVII, 1–2
perfect, immortal, LVII, 1
reason and, XXX
sacrament enacted in, LVII, 2
and soul, VII; XVII; LI, 3; LV; LVII, 1
universe as bodily, XXIX
whether God has a body, LXXX, 3
whether it comes from God, X
body of Christ, LXIX, 10
See also Church
the Temple and, LV
boldness, XXXI, 1
See also courage
born. See birth; rebirth
bread
See also eucharist; loaves
breaking of, LXI, 3
bride and bridegroom, LX
See also marriage
children of the bridegroom, LXXV, 1
blessed. See one another’s burdens, LXXI

calling, LXV; LXVII
charitas. See charity
Catholic faith, LXIX, 1, 4; LXIV, 1; LXVII, 7;
LXVIII, 1; LXXX, 4
See also Christianity; Church; specific
topics
cattle; cows, LXVII, 5
golden, LXIV, 4
sacrifice of, LXI
chance, XXIV
and foretelling the future, LXV
change, IX; XXIX; LXVII, 2
See also motion; time
and the body, LV
and eternity, XIX
good and, XXIV
habitus, LXXI
and ideas, LXVII, 1
the mind and, XLV, 1
and regret, LI
and the senses, IX
the soul and, LIV
and taking something into oneself,
XXIX
time and, XIX
and truth, LXV, 1
and the unchangeable, XIX; LXVII, 1;
LXII; LXVII, 7; LXXXII, 2–3;
LXXVIII
We shall all arise, but we shall not all be
changed, LX, 3

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

the cross, XXV; LXXI,2
cupidity, XXXV,1
curiosity, LXVIII
See also knowledge; questions
custom; customary law, XXXI,1

damnation, LXVIII,3
See also punishment
darkness, XXXVI,4; LXVI,5
See also evil; sin
David, LVIII,2; LXI
death
See also corpse; resurrection of the body
the body and, LI; LXVI
Death and life are from the Lord God,
XXI
fear of, XXV
God did not make death, XXI
as last enemy, LXVI,2
law of, LXVI,1
and our will, LXXX,4
preparation for, LI,3
sin and, LXVI; LXXI
and the soul, LXVI,6
as swallowed up in victory, LXVII,6;
LXX; LXXXI,1
the wisdom of the flesh is death, LXVI,6
death of Christ. See cross
death penalty, LIII,2
decent, LI
See also lying
decency, XXXI,1
deeds, LXVI; LXV; LXXX,3
See also actions; works
good, XII; XXXI,1; XXXVI,1, 3
grace and, XXV
and history, XLVIII
miraculous, XXXVI,3; LXXIX,3
praise and, LXXI,3
put to death the deeds of the flesh,
LXVII,2; LXXXI,2
temporal and human, LXVIII
deficiency. See evil: as deficiency in being
demons, LXVII
depriety, IV
See also evil; sin
desires, LXVI,1, 6; LXIV,8; LXVI,1-3, 6
See also covetousness; flesh; lust
and continence, XXXI,1
God handed over to them the desires of
their hearts, LXVII,1
love, charity and, XXXVI,1; XXXVI,1
passion and, LXVIII
as perturbation, LXVIII
renouncing, LXVII,2
Satan and, LXIX,2
of sinning, LXVI,1
of spiritual vs. temporal goods, LXVI,6
of taming, XXV,1
things that should be desired, LXI,4
destruction, slavery to. See slavery to
destruction
devil, XII; LXIX,7; LXIX,8; LXXXI,2, 5
devils (demons). See demons
diet. See food
dignity, XXXI,1
dilectio, XXXV,2-XXXVI,1
See also love
disciples, LVI; LXI,3; LXXIX,9
See also apostles; individual names;
specific topics and events
discipline: the number ten, LXXXI,1
discipline (correction), LI,3; LXXXII,1
See also punishment
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
LXXXII
disobedience, children of, LXXIX,2
disorder, XXVII
disposition, natural human, XXXVIII
divine providence. See providence, divine
doctors, LXXIX,3
dogs, LXI,3; LXVII,1
dough, LXVII,3
dove, XLIII
drunkenness, LXVII,2
ears, XXXIX
See also senses
of God, LI
earth
See also creation; world
the earthly, XXXVI,1; LV; LXVIII,3
earthly person, XXXVI,2; LXVIII,2
as elements, LXV
education, XXXV,1
See also teaching
the effeminate, LXVIII,2
eggs, LXIV
Egypt, LXI,2; LXVIII,5
gold and silver taken by Israel, LI
eight, the number, LV; LVII
eighty concubines, LV
elements, LXXVIII
the four, LXV
Elijah, LXVIII,3
Elizabeth, LXVIII,3; LXI,2
emotions, IX; XI; LI; LXXI,3
end:
Christ as, LXIX,7
infinity, XXXII
of the world/ages, LXVII,2; LXXXI,2; LXI,1
enemy: enemies:
death as, LXIX,2, 6

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
See also elements  
first fruits of the spirit, LXVII,6; LXIX,2  
first man. See Adam  
fish:  
one hundred fifty-three, LVII; LXXXI,3  
two, LXI  
five, the number, LIX,2  
five husbands. See Samaritan woman  
five loaves, LXI  
five senses. See senses  
five thousand, LXI,5  
flattery; flatterers, LXXI  
See also praise  
flesh; the fleshly, LXVI,5-6; LXXX,2  
See also body; desire; senses; Word of God (made flesh)  
all flesh is grass, LXI,3  
fleshly Christians, LXI,2  
fleshly goods, LXVI,6  
and the law, LXVI,6  
vs. spirit, LXXI  
works of, LXVI,2  
Fonteius of Carthage, XII  
food, XXXIX; LXXIII,1  
See also bread  
enjoyment of, XXX  
and hunger, LXXI,3  
force, IV  
foresight, XXXI  
foretelling the future. See future: foretelling  
forms, LXVI,2; LXIV,7  
fornication, LXVI,2; LXXXII  
fortitude, XXXI,1-2; LXI,4  
fifty, the number, LXI,1-2; LXXI  
fifty-six, the number, LXI  
four, the number, LXI,2; LXIII,1  
four elements. See elements  
four phases in a single person, LXI,7; LXVI,3-7  
four thousand, LXI,5  
free choice, II; XCV  
See also actions; will and reward/punishment, XXIV  
sin and, XXIV  
freedom. See free choice; liberation  
friendship, XXXI,3; XXXIX; LXI  
See also love; specific topics, e.g., gratitude  
with God, XXX  
fruits of the spirit, LXVII,6; LXIX,2  
future, LXI,8  
See also time  
absence of, XVII  
Church of, LXIII,1-2-3  
the day or the hour no one knows, LX  
foretelling, LXV,2  
future age, LXXI,3  
generations, LXXI,2-3; LXI,2  
See also ages of human existence  
gentiles, XXVII; LXII,2; LXXXI,2; LXII  
gentleness, XXXI,1  
gifts  
See also specific gifts, e.g., healing; righteousness  
of Church’s members, LXXIX,4  
God’s, LIII,2; LXIV,4-5  
the Holy Spirit, LXIII; LXVII,3; LXIV,4-5  
of the new covenant, LXIII,1  
gladness, LXIII,3. See also happiness; joy  
glorification, LXIII; LXIV,4; LXVII,2  
glory, XXXI,1; LXVII; LXIX,9  
See also honor; praise  
seeking, LXI,3  
God, LIII,1-2; LXXI,3; LXXXIII  
See also creator: Father; Trinity; will of God; specific topics, e.g., goodness; justice; knowledge; mercy; righteousness  
as all in all, LXI,7  
and creation, XVIII–XIX; XIX; XXVIII;  
LXIII  
enjoyment of, XXX  
as eternal, XXIII  
and evil, XXXI  
human emotions, describing in terms of, LII  
image and likeness of, LII; LXVII  
inheritance of, LXXV  
invisible, LXXIV  
love for, XXXV,2; XXXVI,4; LXI,4  
man as talking back to, LXVIII  
members of, LXIX,3  
nature of, XXX  
as not subject to necessity, XXIII; LXXXI,4  
onomnipotence of, LXXXII,2-3  
place of, XX  
power of, LII  
presence of, XII; LXIII,3; LXXXIX,3  
gold, XXXV,1; LXXXVII,2  
golden cows, LXIV,4  
good; goodness, XXXI,1-3  
See also free choice; righteousness; virtues  
and beauty, XXX  
and being/existence, VI; XXIV  
and change, XXIV  
enjoyment of good things, XXX  
and free choice, II  
as from God, X  
God as primordially good, LII,1  
God vs. worldly, XXXVII,2  
and the good, XXIII  
highest, XXI; XXIV  
knowing and loving, XXXV,2

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

See also food
husbands
See also bride and bridegroom; marriage; Samaritan woman
and the law, LXVI,1–2
hypocrisy, XXXVI,3

deadlines, XLVI
idolatry, XLIV,4; LXXVI,2
ignorance, XXVI
illness. See sickness
image of God:
image of the invisible God, LXIV
and likeness of God, LV; LI,4; LXVII
loss of, LXVII,4
the Son and, LI; LX IX,1
images:
beauty of, LXXVIII
experiencing even when not present to our senses, IX
false, IX
immortality, XI; LVII,1; LXVI,3; LXIX,6; LXXXIII,2–3
See also eternal life; eternity
perfect and immortal body and soul, LVII,1
the Incarnation, XLII–LIV; LVII,1; LX IX,9
See also under Jesus Christ: assumption of humanity
as sacrament, LVII,2
infancy, LXI,5
See also ages of human existence
infinity, XXXII
inheritance of God, LXXV
injustice, LXXII
See also justice
the inner person, XXXVI,2; LI; LXIV,2
intellect; intelligence, XV; XXXI,1
See also knowledge; mind; rational soul; thoughts; wisdom
divine, XLVI,2
prudence and, XXXI
and the rational soul, XL VI,2
and reason, XIII
truth and, IX
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
invisible God, image of, LXXIV
invisible things, XXX; LXXXI,1
irrational beings, V; XXX; LIII,2
Isaac, LIII
Israel, LXVI,5
See also Jews
children of, XLIX
taking gold and silver from Egyptians, LIII
J acob, LXXIV,2
James, LXXVI,1–2
jealousy, LII; LXXVI,2
Jerusalem, heavenly, LXI,2,7
Jerusalem, temporal, LX I,3
Jesus Christ
See also ascension; cross; Incarnation; resurrection of Christ; Son of God; Trinity; wisdom of God; Word of God; specific topics, e.g., baptism; truth
assumption of humanity, XI; XXV:
LVII,3; LXV; LXIX,1–2; 10
LXXVI,4; LXXXIII,2; LXXVII,2;
LXXIX,5; LXXX,1–2
body and soul of, LXXVII,3–4
body of, XIV
as born of woman, XI
as both divine and human, L XXX
as both in his mother's womb and in heaven, XI,II
boyhood of, LXXV,2
coming of, (re, six ages of human race), XXIV, LVI,4; LXIV,2
as the end, LXIX,7
glorification of, LXII
as head of a man, LVII,1; LXIV,7
the head of Christ is God, LVII,1; LXIV,7
as king, LXI,2
as lacking ignorance, LXV
as not knowing the day and the hour, LX
passion of, LXIX,9; LXXXI,3
as priest, LXI
reign of, LXIX
risen, LXVI,2; LXIX,2; LXXXI,2
second coming of, LXI,8
as second man, LI,1
temptation of, LXI,2
two ages, as symbolizing, LXXXI,3
Jews, XXVII; LVII,2; LXIII,2; LXI,3
See also Israel; specific topics, e.g., law
Job, LXXVII,5
John, gospel of, LXII–LXXV
John the Baptist, LVIII,1; LXII
John the evangelist, LXV,4; LXXXI,2–3
Joseph (husband of Mary), LXI,2
Joseph (Old Testament), LVIII,2; LXVII,5
Joy, LXI,3; LXIX,1; LXXXI,3; LXXXII,1; LXIII,1
See also enjoyment; happiness; pleasure
God's, LXXI,5
Judah (tribe), LXI,2
judgment
and following God's will, LXIX,5
judging others, LXI,5–6
reason and, XXX

Volume I/12
The spiritual person judges all things, but he himself is judged by no one, LXVIII, 2

jug, LXIV, 8
justice, II; XXX–XXXI; LI, 2–4; LXI, 4;
LXII; LXVII, 3; LXVIII, 3; LXXIII, 3
See also law; punishment; reward
love and, XXXI
when God is thought to be unjust,
LXXXII

kingship, LXI, 2, 4
knowledge, XXXV, 1–2
See also curiosity; intellect; questions;
thought; truth; understanding;
wisdom
action and, LVIII, 2
the day or the hour no one knows, LX
God as knowing also when he causes
someone to know, LX
God’s, XVII

human life and, LVIII, 2
humans as not given what it would not be
worthwhile for them to know, LX
I do not know you, LX
as incomplete in this life, LXV
and love, XXXV, 2
and merit, LXVIII, 3
the mind and, XXXV, 2
numbers and, LV
and possession, XXXV, 1
and prudence, XXXI
truth and, LIV; LXVI, 5–6
and what is grasped, IX

lamps, LXI, 2–3
law, LXI
See also authority; commandments;
justice, Old Testament; works
customary, XXXI, 1
faith and, LXVI, 1
the five barley loaves as signifying, LXI
and the flesh, LXVI, 6
and four phases of life, LXI, 7; LXVI, 3–5,
and the fulfillment of, LXI
as good, LXVI, 4
and good will, XXVII
grace and, LXI, 1
as immutable, XXVII
lifelong subjection to, LXVI
of nature, XXXI, 1
sin and, LXVII, LX
statutory, XXXI, 1
Lazarus, LXV; LXVII, 7
learning, LXXIII, 2
See also knowledge; teaching; wisdom
left hand/left side, LVII; LXXXI, 3
Levi, tribe of, LXI, 2
liberation from slavery to destruction, XI;
LXVII, 7
life, LIV
See also eternal life; existence;
human kind; specific topics, e.g.,
necessity; time
all living things, XLVII, 2
and being human, LI, 3
and the body, LIV
Death and life are from the Lord God,
LXI
and existence, LI, 2
human, LXIII, 2
living well, XLIII
perfect, LXVII, 4
and the soul, XIX; LIV
what gives life and what is given life,
LIV
the wisdom of the spirit is life and peace,
LXVI, 6
light, XI; XXXIX; XLVI; XLVII; LXVIII, 3;
LXIII, 2; LXVIII, 7
likeness, XXIII
and equality, LXXIV
and image, LXXIV
of man, LXXIII, 2
likeness of God, LI, 2, 4
See also God: image and likeness of
distinction between image and likeness,
LI, 4
the Son as likeness of the Father, XXIII
living water. See Samaritan woman; water:
living
loaves, LXI
logos, LXIII
the Lordly Man, XXXV, 1; LXVII, 3; LXXIII, 2
Lord’s prayer, LXIX, 4
love
See also charity; friendship
base, XXXV, 1
Bear one another’s burdens in XXIV
and charity, XXXV, 2
for Christ, LXI, 6
for enemies, LI, 3, 4
and eternity, XXXV, 2
fear and, XXXIII–XXXVI; LI, 1
for God, XXXV, 2; XXXVI, 4; LXI, 4
and justice, XXXI
and knowledge, XXXV, 2
and the mind, XXXV, 2
and motion, XXXV, 1
for neighbor, XXXV, 2; LI, 3; LXI, 4
perfect, XXXV, 1–2
and possession, XXXV, 1–2

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

and reason, XXXV,2
and the soul, XXXV,2
of this world, LXV,8 (see also desire)
threethfold, for God, LXXXI,1
what should be loved, XXXV
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
LXXXII
Luke, the evangelist, LXI,2
lust, XXXI,2; LXVI,6
See also covetousness; desire
lying, LXI,4
See also deceit
to cover sin, XXXVI,1
magicians, LXXXIX
magnanimity, XXXI,1
maiden, LV
male sex. See men; sexes, male and female
male, LXXIII; LXXIX,1
man. See humankind
Manicheans, LXVII,7; LXVIII,1
manna, LXI,2
marriage, LIII; LXXXIII
See also bride and bridegroom; husbands;
Samaritan woman; wives
and jealousy, LII
and the law, LXVI,1-2
pagan-Christian, LXXXIII
Martha, LXV
martyrs, XXXVI,2
Mary, XI; XLII; LVIII,3; LXI,2; LXIX,10
mass of sin, LXVIII,3
mathematics, XXXV,1
See also numbers
mathematicians, XLV
Matthew, the evangelist, LVIII,2; LXI,2
maturity. See ages of human existence
medical treatment, LXXXII,3
Melchizedek, LXI,2
memory, XXXI
men
See also humankind; sexes, male and female
Christ as head of, LVII,1; LXIV,7
the head of woman is man, LVII,1;
LXVIII,5
perfect manhood, LXI,5
three kinds of, LVII,2
mercy, LXXIII,3; LXVIII,3; LXVIII
and merit, LXVIII
Our eyes are on the Lord God until he
have mercy on us, LXIX,5
vessels of, LXVIII,4
and will, LXVIII,5
merit
See also punishment; reward; works
faith and, LXVIII,3; LXVI,1
knowledge and, LXVIII,3
mercy and, LXVIII
obtaining, LXVIII,3
righteousness and, LXVI,1
and works, LXVI,1
milk, LIII,4; LXI; LXVIII,3; LXXXI,1
mind, LXXXI; LXXXI,1
See also intellect; knowledge; rational
soul; reason; thoughts;
understanding; specific topics, e.g.,
righteousness
as changeable, XLV,1
and the eternal, XXXV,2
and excellence, XXXV,2
and knowledge, XXXV,2
and love, XXXV,2
pure, XII
soul and, VI; LXVI,2
truth and, IX; XLV,1; LXV
and visible things, XLV,1
and wisdom, XLV,1
miracles, XXXVI,2
as gift, LXIX,1; 3
and greed for honor, XXXVI,3
the loaves and fishes, LXI
performed by wicked spirits, LXXIII,1
of Pharaoh’s magicians, LXXXI
visible, LXIX,1
modality, VI; IX
modesty, XXXI,1; 3; LXIV,3
mortality, LXXXIII
Moses, LXI,1; LXXIX; LXXXI,3
See also law
mother
See also Mary
Church as, LXI,4
motion; movement
See also change
four, the number, LVII,2
linear, XXIX
love and, XXXV,1
passions and, LXXX
and place, III
whether the soul is moved by itself, V
the will and, VIII
mountains, LXI,6
Nathan, LXI,2
nature, XXXVIII
and justice, XXIX,1
law of, XXIX,1
nature, human, XXXVIII
natures: and existence, LXVIII,6
necessity, subject to, LXXX,4; LXXXI,1
God and, XXII; LXXX,4
neighbor, LI,4; LXVII,4
love for, XXXVI,4

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

net, parable of, LVII, 2
new covenant. See covenants, old and new
the new person. See old person and new
person
New Testament, LXI, 3–6; LXXV, 1
See also covenants, old and new; gospel; scripture, sacred
Noah, LVIII, 2
nonbelievers. See pagans
non-existence. See existence: and non-existence
numbers; numerological concerns, XLVIII;
LV–LVII; LXI
See also specific numbers
beauty and, LXXVIII
order and, LXXVIII
oil, LIX, 2–3
old age, IX; XLIV; LIII; LVIII, 1–2; LXIV, 2;
LVIII, 3
See also ages of human existence
old covenant. See covenants, old and new
the old person and the new person, XXXVI, 2;
XLIX; LVIII, 2; LXIV, 2; LXVIII, 2;
LXIX, 2
Old Testament, LXI, 3, 5; LXXV, 1; LXXX, 3
See also commandments; covenants, old and new; law; scripture, sacred;
specific topics
one hundred and fifty-three, the number,
LVII; LXXXI, 3
order, XLVI, 2
beauty and, LXXVIII
and God’s reign, LXIX, 4
numbers and, LXXVIII
and providence, divine, XL; LII; LIII, 2;
LXII
of the universe, XCVII
and virtue, XXX
the outer person, XXXVI, 2; LI; LVIII, 2;
LXIV, 2
pagans; paganism, LXXXIII
parables, LVIII, 2; LIX
See also specific parables
paradise, LXXVIII, 3
the term, LXVI, 3
parents, LXXXIV
See also family
passion of Christ. Jesus Christ: passion of
passions, LXVII
and desire, LXXVII
and movement, LXXX
past
See also time
absence of, XVII
patience, XXX; XXXI, 1; LXVII, 2
See also perseverance
Paul
See also Colossians; specific topics
epistles of, LXVI–LXXV
and faith/works, LXXV, 1
peace, XXVIII; XXXII, 2; LI, 1; LXXVIII, 5;
LXXV, 1
See also fifty, the number
and four phases of life, LXI, 7; LXVI, 3, 7
perfect, LXVI, 6
perpetual, LXIX, 8
the wisdom of the spirit is life and peace,
LXVI, 6
penance, XXVI
perfection, IV; LXXI, 3
See also under Holy Spirit: perfection by;
specific topics, e.g., holiness; pleasure
humans and, LIX, 2; LXI, 1
numbers and, LXVIII, 2–3
the perfect man, LXVIII, 3
a person becoming perfect, LXVII, 6
We speak wisdom among the perfect,
LXVIII, 3
When what is perfect has come, what is partial will be removed,
LXXV, 1
perseverance, XXXI, 1
See also patience
and stubbornness, XXXI, 2
persons. See humankind
persuasion, IV; LXIX, 1
perturbation, LXXVII
Peter, XXXI
phantasm: body of Jesus Christ as not, XIV
Pharaoh, LXVIII, 4, 5
magicians, miracles performed by,
LXXIX
physicians, LXXXII, 3
piety, XXXI, 1; XXXII, 1; LXXIX, 1
pigs, LXVIII, 1
place, VIII; XXX
divinity and, LXII
God’s place, XX
plan of God, LXVII
Plato, XLVI
pleasure, XXX
See also enjoyment; happiness; joy
bodily, XXXVI, 3
childish pleasures, LXX
empty, XXXIII
perfect, LXX
possession: knowledge and, XXXV, 1
possessions: fleshly goods, LXVI, 6
power
as from above, LXXIX, 5
of each soul, LXXIX, 1
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

and suffering of the wicked, XXI
Whom the Lord loves he corrects, LXXXII
purity
See also under specific topics, e.g., soul and impurity, LXXXVII
quadragesima and quinquagesima, LXXXI
questions: three sorts of, XVIII
rational soul, XLVI,2; LIV; LXXXIX,1
See also intellect; mind
reality, LIV
See also existence; substances; truth; allegory and, LXV
reason, VII; XIII; XXX; LIII; LXXX
See also knowledge; mind and the body, XXXVII; creation, XLVI,2; and intellect, XII
perfection, XXX
perversion of, XXXVII,1
and virtue, XXX–XXXI
the word, LXIII
reasons: ideas and, XLVI,2
rebirth, XLIX
See also salvation
struggle with sin after, LXXV; LXVI,5
recklessness, XXXI,2; XXXIV
Red Sea crossing, LXI,2
regeneration, XXXVII,2; LVII,2; LXXXIX,3
See also baptism
regret, LII
reign of Christ/reign of the Father, LXIX
religion, XXXI,1; XXXVI,1; XLVI,2
See also Christianity and superstition, XXXI,2
remission of sins, LXXXVII
repentance, LXVII,2; LXXVII,5
reputation, XXXI,1
revelation, divine, LXIV; XLVI,2; LXIX,2; LXXXI,2
risen Christ, LXVII,2; LXIX,2; LXXXI,2
resurrection of Christ, LXII; LXXXI,3
resurrection of Lazarus, LXV
resurrection of the body, IX; XLVII,2; LXIX,3; LXXXI,1
revelation, divine, LXI,3; LXVII,2; LXXXI,1
See also knowledge; intellect and superstition, XXXI,2
riches. See wealth
righteousness, LXXXI,3
See also goodness and charity, LXVI,1

Volume I/12
and correction, LXXXI
and faith/works, LXXVI
and fear, LXVI,1
as gift, LXXXI
of God vs. human beings, XXIV; LXXXII
law of, LXVI,1
and merit, LXXVI,1
works of, LXXXII,3
right hand/right side, LVII; LXXXI,3
risen body. See resurrection of the body
risen Christ, LXVI,2; LXIX,2
robbery: did not think it robbery to be equal to
God, LXXI,3
Robinson, Epistle to, LXVI–LXVIII
sabbath, LVIII,2
sacraments, XXVI,1; XLIII; LXVI,2; LXXIII,1; LXXIV,1
See also baptism
expression of, LXIV,1
the incarnation of Christ as, LXVII,1
versions of, LXXIX,1
of the Trinity, LXVI,2
sacred scripture. See scripture, sacred
sacrifice, LXVII,6
of an afflicted spirit, XXVI
of cattle, by children of Israel, XLIII
sadness, LXVII,3
See also suffering
saints, XXXVI,2; LXVII,1-2; LXXII,3
and the immutable body, LXVII
scepter, LXVI,2
salvation, LXII,8; LXVIII,1-2; LXXVII,1
See also free choice; redemption
baptism and, LXII
hope and, LXVII
numbers and, LXII,2
the scriptures and, LXXII,3
the Samaritan woman, LXIV
sameness, LXV
See also change
santification, LXVIII,6; LXVII,1-2; LXXVI,2
Sanchez, Seo devil
Sceva, sons of, LXXVI,4
Scheism, LXXVIII,4
See also error; heresy
scripture, sacred, XXXVI,1; LIII,2; LXXIII,7; LXVIII,1
See also New Testament; Old Testament;
specific topics
and salvation, LII,2
truths presented in, LIII,2
second man, LI,1
self-respect, XXXI,1
self-restraint, LXVII,2
senses, five, IX; XXIX; LI,3; LII; LXXIII,1; LXXVII,7-8
the five barley loaves and, LXVII
soul’s ascent from sensible world to God, IX
truth and, IX; LI,2
service, LXXXII,1
seven, the number, LXVI,3; LXVII,1-8; LXXIII,1
seven loaves, LXI,1
sexes, male and female, XI
sexual behavior, LXVII,2
sickness, LXVII,3
See also health; physicians
signs, LXVII,5
See also miracles
silver, LI,3
Simeon, LXII
sin, LXV
See also Adam; error; evil; Fall; free
choice; punishment; redemption;
repentance, vices; wickedness
abortion of, LXIV
creation and, LXVII
and death, LXVI; LXXI
different kinds of, XXVI
ease in committing, LXVI,1-2
and error, LXVII,3
fear and, LXVII
and four phases of life, LXI,1-7; LXVII,3-7
and free choice, LXIV,1-2
I do not do what I want, but I do what I
hate, LXVII,3
image as lost because of, LXVII
and the law, LXVI; LXXI
mass of, LXVIII,3
pardonable, LXVII
and punishment, LXIV
and rebirth, LXV; LXVII,1
remission of, LXVII
and righteousness, LXVII,4; LXXXII,2
secret sinfulness, LXVII,3
from sin he condemned sin in the flesh,
LXVI,6
and slavery, LXVII,5-6
and the soul, LXVI,1
and suffering, LXVII
and transgression, LXVII,1-2, 5
truth and, LXVIII,3
universal, LXVIII,4
and the will, LXVII,2-3, 5
six, the number, LXVI; LXVII,3; LXVIII,1
six ages of human existence, XLIV; LI,3;
LXVI,2; LXVIII,1-2; LXIV,2
sixty queens, LV
slavery, LXVII,4

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

to destruction, XI; LXVII,7
sold under sin, LXVI,5–6
sleep, IX; LIX,3
Solomon, LXI,2; LXXI,1
Son of God, XVI; XXIII
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity
appearing as man, XLIII
equality of, L; LXIX; LXI,3; LXIII,2
everything as made through, LXIX,1
the Father and, XXIII; XXXVIII
image of God, II; LXIX,1
and sons of God, LXVII
subjected to the one who has subjected
everything to him, LXIX
sons of God, LXVII
imperfect, LXVIII,2
sorcery, LXVI,2
sorrow, XXXIII; LXVII,2
See also suffering
soul, LXXX; LXXI,1
See also body: and soul; rational soul;
spirit; specific topics, e.g., emotions;
rebirth; virtues
ascend from sensible world to God, IX
beatitude and, LXXII,3
beauty in, XLV,1
change and, LIV
conformation of, XXXVIII
conversion of, XXXVI
creation and, LXVII,1, 5
as creature, LXVII,2
death and, LXVI,6
and ethereal body, XLVII
fear and, XXXI
God as superior to every soul, LIV
habits of, XXXI,1
immortal, LVII,1
and the law, LXVI,1
life and, XIX; LIV
love and, XXX,2
and mind, LXI,2
and movement/motion, VIII
My soul has clung to you, XLV,1
one nature of, XL
part by which it excels, XLVII,2
perfect, LXII,1
powers of individual souls, LXXIX
pregnant, LXI,3
pure, XX; XLVII,2; LXIII,3
sin and, LXVII,1
teaching and, LXVIII,1
truth and, LXVIII,1
virtue and, XXXI,1
visage, XLVII,2
what the soul should be called in ensouled
beings, VII
whether God has a soul, LXXX,3
whether the soul exists of itself, I
whether the soul is moved by itself,
VIII
the will and, VII; XXXII; XL
space, XX; LXVII
See also universe
species, V; X; XXIII; XLVII,2
spirit
See also first fruits of the spirit
afflicted, sacrifice of, XXVI
flesh vs., LXX
God as superior to every created spirit,
LIV
human, LIV
truth and, LXVII,6
Spirit, Holy. See Holy Spirit
spirits:
creation and, LXVII,1, 5
unclean or wicked (see demons)
spiritual things, XXIX; XXXI,1
stags, LXI,1
stars, IX; XLII,2
statutory law, XXXI,1
stubbornness, XXXI,2
substance, XXXIII–XXXIV; XXXVIII; LXVII;
LIV; LXIII; LXVI,6–7; LXIX,1–2
evil and, LXVII,6
suffering, LXVII
See also punishment; tribulation
all creation groans and is in pain,
LXVII,5–6
creatures and, LXVII,2
passion and, LXVII
sin and, XXXVII
tribulation, XXXVII
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
LXXX
of the wicked, XXI
sun, IX; LXVII,5
stubbornness, XXXI,2; LXIV,7
swine, LXVIII,1
symbolism. See specific topics
talkativeness, LXXI,2
talking back to God, LXVIII
taste. See senses
teachers; teaching, LXIII,1
education, XXXV,1
temperance, XXX; XXXVI; XXXI,1; LXI,4
the Temple in Jerusalem, LIV
temple of God, XX
temporality; temporal things, XXXII
See also desire; world
temptation of Christ, LXI,2
ten, the number, LV; LVII,1; LXXII,1
ten virgins, LXI

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
water
See also baptism; Samaritan woman living, LXIV,4 spiritual, LXIV,7
weakness, LXI,5
bearing one another's burdens, LXXI,2 of the flesh, LXIV,3 and sin, XXVI
wealth, XXXV,1
See also gold
the well. See Samaritan woman
wickedness, XIX,II
See also evil; sin
power of the wicked over the good, LXXIX,5
providence by means of a bad person, XXVII
and sin, XXVI
wicked spirits. See demons
will
See also free choice; necessity; specific topics, e.g., conversion
cause of evil in, III–IV
change of, XL
and divine action, XXIV
mercy and, LXVII,5
sin and, LXVII,2–3
soul and, VIII; XXVII; XL
will of God, III; VIII; XXVIII; LXVIII,1,4; LXXX,4
wisdom, III; XXIII; LI,2–3; LXXXIII,1,2; LXXXIII,1,3
See also intellect; knowledge
beginning of, XXXV,1,4
and change, LXIX,2
completion of, XXXV,4
discipline of wisdom, purpose of, LXIX,1
the mind and, XLV,1
We speak wisdom among the perfect, LXVIII,3
the wisdom of the flesh is death, LXVI,6
wisdom of God, XVI; XXIII; XXV; LXII
and universe, law of, LXXIX,1
wives
See also bride and bridegroom; marriage
husbands' love for, XXXV,1
and the law, LXVI,1–2
women
See also sexes, male and female
and children, LXI,5,8
Christ as born of woman, XI
the head of woman is man, LVII,1; LXVII,5
Word of God, LXI,2; LXII–LXIII; LXVI,3; LXXV,2; LXXX,1–2
See also Jesus Christ; scripture; sacred logos, LXIII
made flesh, LXXIII,2–3; LXXXIII,2
words, XLIII
works, LXI,2–3
See also action; deeds; law; merit
faith and, LXXVI
merit and, LXVII,1
righteousness and, LXVII,1
world, XXVIII
See also creation; earth; forty, the number; universe
divine action and, XXIV
end of, LVII,2; LVIII,2; LXI,2
love of (desire), LXV,8
renouncing, LXV,3
world, love of. See desire
yeast, LXVIII,3
youth, XLIV; LVIII,1
See also six ages of human existence
Christ as coming during youth of human race, XLIV
Zechariah, LXII
zodiac, XLV,2

Volume I/12
Index from
To Simplicianus, on Various Questions
(Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus)

Included in book:
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

Translation, introduction, and notes by Boniface Ramsey, Raymond Canning, editor, Boniface Ramsey, series editor

This volume contains three books: Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions (De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus), Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician (Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus), and Eight Questions of Dulcitius (De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus).

Volume I/12        Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-277-7, 6 x 9 in., 301 pp., 2008

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/12

Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician

Revisions II, 1

Old Testament

1 Samuel
10:10 5
15:11 6
16:14 5
2 Samuel
7:18 8
1 Kings
17:20 9

New Testament

Romans
6:14 2
7:7 2
7:14 2
7:24-25 2
9:10 3
9:29 3
1 Corinthians
4:7 3

The Predestination of the Saints 4, 8

New Testament

Romans
7:7
7:24-25

Old Testament

Genesis
1:2 II, 1, 5
2:17 I, 1, 13
25:23 I, 2, 3
Exodus
2:14, 13, 15, 17 I, 1, 17
1 Samuel
10:9 II, 1, 1
10:9-10 II, 1, 1
10:10 II, 1, 1
10:12 II, 1, 2
15:11 II, 2, 1
15:29 II, 2, 3
16:13-15 II, 1, 4
16:14 II, 1, 1; II, 1, 4; II, 1, 6
16:15 II, 1, 4; II, 1, 7
16:15-16 II, 1, 6
16:23 II, 1, 6

Letter 37, to Simplician

18:10 II, 1, 7
19:20 II, 1, 7
19:23 II, 1, 7
28:19 II, 3, 3
2 Samuel
7:18 II, 3, 4
1 Kings
17:20 II, 3, 5
17:21-22 II, 3, 5
17:24 II, 3, 5
Job
2:5 II, 1, 4
Psalms
5:5 I, 1, 8
6:6 II, 3, 4
24:1 II, 1, 4
34:16 I, 1, 8

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

55:19 II, 2, 5
82:1 II, 2, 3
84:10 I, 1, 10

Wisdom
1:7 II, 1, 5
7:24 II, 1, 1
9:15 I, 2, 18
11:24 I, 2, 8

Sirach
33:10-15 I, 2, 20
33:11 I, 2, 20
33:12 I, 2, 20
33:13-14 I, 2, 20
33:14 I, 2, 20
33:15 I, 2, 20
33:16 I, 2, 20
33:17 I, 2, 20

Jeremiah
23:24 II, 1, 5

New Testament

Matthew
5:6 I, 2, 16
7:22 II, 1, 9
7:23 II, 1, 9
11:30 I, 2, 19
16:17 II, 1, 3
16:23 II, 1, 3
20:16 I, 2, 10; I, 2, 13
25:12 I, 1, 8

Luke
1:6 I, 1, 15
2:14 I, 1, 10
18:13 II, 3, 4
22:31 II, 1, 4
23:43 I, 2, 19

John
1:11 I, 2, 18
1:12 I, 2, 19
1:17 I, 1, 17
1:48 I, 2, 14
1:49 I, 2, 14
3:5 I, 2, 2
3:36 II, 2, 2
8:47 I, 2, 18
13:35 II, 1, 9
19:11 II, 1, 4

Acts of the Apostles
7:55 II, 1, 5

Romans
1:18 II, 1, 2
4:4 I, 2, 3
4:15 I, 1, 3
5:5 I, 1, 17
5:14 I, 1, 4
5:20 I, 1, 15
7:4 I, 1, 15; I, 1, 17
7:5-6 I, 1, 15
7:6 I, 1, 1
7:7 I, 1, 1
7:8 I, 1, 4
7:9 I, 1, 4
7:9-10 I, 1, 4
7:10 I, 1, 4
7:11 I, 1, 5
7:12 I, 1, 6
7:13 I, 1, 6
7:14 I, 1, 7
7:15 I, 1, 8
7:16 I, 1, 9
7:17 I, 1, 9
7:18 I, 1, 10; I, 1, 11
7:21 I, 1, 1; I, 1, 12
7:22 I, 1, 13
7:23 I, 1, 13
7:24-25 I, 1, 12; I, 1, 14
8:16 II, 1, 5
8:26 II, 1, 5
8:33 I, 2, 6; II, 3, 5
9:9 I, 2, 3
9:10 I, 2, 3
9:10-11 I, 2, 1
9:11 I, 2, 4
9:11-12 I, 2, 3
9:12 I, 2, 4
9:13 I, 2, 4
9:14 I, 2, 9
9:15 I, 2, 9
9:16 I, 2, 10
9:17 I, 2, 15
9:18 I, 1, 15; I, 2, 15
9:19 I, 2, 15
9:20 I, 2, 16
9:20-21 I, 2, 17
9:21 I, 2, 20
9:22 I, 2, 18
9:23 I, 2, 18
9:24 I, 2, 19
9:25-26 I, 2, 19
9:27 I, 2, 19
9:28 I, 2, 19
9:29 I, 2, 1; I, 2, 19
10:8-10 I, 2, 19
10:14 I, 2, 7
11:5 I, 2, 22
11:5-7 I, 2, 19
11:33 I, 2, 16; I, 2, 22

Volume I/12
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>I, 2, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>I, 2, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>I, 2, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>I, 1, 7; I, 2, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>I, 2, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>I, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>I, 2, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>I, 2, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-11</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>II, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29-30</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>II, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>I, 2, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>I, 1, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8-9</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>I, 1, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 2, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>I, 2, 3; I, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>I, 2, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>I, 1, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>I, 1, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>I, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician

A braham, I, 2, 3
actions: I do not do what I want, but I do
what I hate, I, 1, 8; I, 1, 11
actors, I, 2, 22
A dam, I, 1, 4; I, 2, 16–17; I, 2, 19–20
adultery, I, 1, 17
A hab, K. ing, II, 6
almsgiving, I, 2, 2
angels, I, 2, 2; II, 1, 8; II, 3, 2–3; II, 6
anger, I, 2, 16; II, 2
animal persons, I, 2, 17
animals, II, 1, 2
See also specific animals
ark of the covenant, II, 4, 4
ass; donkey, II, 2, 2
astrology, I, 2, 3
Baal, II, 1, 7
Balaam, II, 1, 2; II, 1, 9
baptism, I, 2, 2; II, 1, 5; II, 1, 10
beasts. See animals
beauty, I, 2, 20

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

fear:
of God, II, 2, 5
Work out your salvation with fear and trembling, I, 2, 12
the first man, I, 1, 4; I, 2, 17
flesh. See body; desire; Word made flesh
foreknowledge, I, 2, 5
God's, I, 2, 10
and regret, II, 2
forgiveness, I, 2, 17
See also will
future, II, 2
See also foreknowledge

genethliaci, I, 2, 3
gentiles, I, 2, 2; I, 2, 19
gift of the Holy Spirit, I, 2, 21; II, 1, 8;
II, 1, 10–11
God
See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g.,
knowledge
divine vs. human qualities, II, 2
plan of, I, 2, 6
purpose of, I, 2, 6; II, 1,
"the very thing that is called God," II, 2, 3
Gomorrah, I, 2; I, 2, 19
good; goodness:
and conversion, I, 2, 18
and evil, working together for justice,
II, 3, 1.
God as making good use of evil, II, 1, 5
good does not dwell in me, I, 1, 10
grace, nothing good as preceding,
I, 2, 3–14
human power to accomplish, I, 1, 11; I, 1, 14
of the law, I
when I want to do good, evil is close at
hand, I, 1, 12
willing vs. doing, I, 1, 11–12
the will to accomplish good, I, 1, 11
good will, I, 2, 10–13
good works. See works
gospel, I, 1, 16–17; I, 2, 2; I, 2, 22; II, 1, 2, 4–
II, 1, 9; II, 2, 2; II, 3, 1.
See also specific topics
grace, I, 1, 2; I, 2; II, 4
See also calling; chosen
beginnings of, I, 1, 11
and covetousness, I, 1, 3
and desire, I, 1, 9–10
and faith, I, 1, 11; I, 2, 2, 14; I, 2, 19
and free choice of the will, Revisions II, 1, 2
and guilt, I, 1, 2
and human ability, I, 1, 11
and the law, I, 1; I, 1, 6; I, 1, 9; I, 1, 11–12;
I, 1, 15–16
love and, I, 1, 15
and merit, I, 2, 2–3
nothing good as preceding, I, 2, 3–14
the person who is not yet under grace,
I, 1, 7; I, 1, 11–12
and rebirth, I, 1, 7
the remnant, I, 2, 19–20; I, 2, 22
and righteousness, I, 2, 22
and salvation, I, 2, 6; I, 2, 19
truth and, I, 1, 17
and works, I, 2, 2–3
guilt, I, 2, 5 passim; I, 1, 12; I, 1, 15; I, 1, 17;
I, 2, 21
See also sin
habit, I, 1, 10–11; II, 1, 2
hardening of the will, I, 2, 14–18 passim
hate; hatred:
God as hating nothing he has made, I, 2, 8;
I, 2, 18
God's of Esau, I, 2, 8
For I do not do what I want, but I do what
I hate, I, 1, 11
heaven, I, 2, 2; I, 2, 6; I, 2, 14; II, 1, 18; II, 3, 3
See also eternal life
and earth, II, 1, 15
Hebrew language, I, 1, 6–7
hell, II, 2, 3
See also punishment
heresy; heretics, I, 2, 22; II, 1, 10
See also specific groups
holiness, II, 1, 5
perfection of, II, 2, 4
Holy Spirit, II, 1
See also Trinity
gift of, I, 2, 21; II, 1, 8; II, 1, 10–11
The letter kills, but the spirit gives life,
I, 1, 17
humankind
See also man; persons; specific topics,
e.g., grace; sin
animals, as differentiated from, II, 1, 2
changeability of, II, 1, 2; II, 1, 6
divine vs. human qualities, II, 2
human nature, I, 2, 20
natures, first and second, I, 1, 10–11
images, II, 3, 2
injustice, I, 2, 8; I, 2, 16–17; I, 2, 22
See also justice
inner person, I, 1, 16
Isaac, I, 2; I, 2, 1; I, 2, 3
Jacob and Esau, I, 2, 3–14
jealousy, I, 2
Jesus Christ

Volume I/12
See also Trinity: specific topics
law of, I,1,16
Jews, I,2,19
See also specific topics, e.g., law
Job, II,1,4; II,3,1
John the evangelist, I,2,14
Joseph (Old Testament), II,1,1
judgment, I,1,22; II,1,5
justice, I,2,8; I,2,16–17; II,1,6; II,3,1
highest, I,2,16; II,1,4
killing, I,1,17
See also death
Kings, Book of, II
kneeling, II,4
knowledge, II,2
See also foreknowledge
human vs. divine, II,2,3
and wisdom, II,2,3
languages, II,1,8
law, I
See also Old Testament
according to the inner person, I,1,16
administering of death, I,1,17
of Christ, I,1,16
death to, I,1,15; I,1,17
fullness of, I,1,17
goodness of, I
good vs. bad use of, I,1,6
grace and, I,1,16; I,1,19; I,1,11–12; I,1,15–16
highest, II,3,3
the law entered in so that wrongdoing might abound, I,1,16
love and, I,1,15; I,1,17
sin and, I,1,1–6; I,1,17
spiritual, I,1,16
spirit vs. letter of, I
Lazarus, II,5
letter of the law. See law
love, II,1,10
gift of the Holy Spirit and, I,2,21
and good works, I,2,21
grace and, I,1,15
and the law, I,1,15; I,1,17
of neighbor, I,1,17
and prophecy, I,1,8–9
lukewarm Christians, I,2,22
lust, I,2,21
See also covetousness; desire
lying, II,6
See also deceit
man
See also humankind
animal man, I,2,17
meaning of, I,2,17
Manicheans, I,1,16
mercy, God’s, I,2,2; I,2,7; I,2,9; I,2,12–13
See also compassion
and forgiveness/punishment, I,2,17
vessels of, I,2,18–19
mercy, human, I,2,2–3
merit, I,2,2–3; II,6
See also pride; works
grace and, I,2,3–14
milk, I,1,7
mind: soul and, II,1,9
mines, I,2,18
miracles, I,2,14; II,15
modesty, II,2,5
moon, I,2,8
mortality, I,2,19; II,3,3
motion: time and, I,2,14; II,2,2
Nathanael, I,2,14
nature, human, I,2,20
first and second natures, I,1,10–11
Nebuchadnezzar, King, II,1,1
necromancer, II,3
neighbor, I,1,17
New Testament, I,1,17
Old Testament, I,1,16
See also law
oracles, I,2,3
order, I,2,22
original sin, I,1,10
pagans, I,2,5
Paul, I,1,1; I,1,9
See also specific topics
conversion of, I,2,22
Pelagians, The Gift of Perseverance 20,52; 21,551
persons
See also humankind
fleshly and animal, I,2,17
Peter, I,2,14; II,1,18; II,1,3
phantasm, II,3
Pharaoh, I,2,15; I,2,18; II,1,1; II,3,2
Philip, I,2,14
piety, I,1,14
plan of God, I,2,6
as hidden, II,1
pleasure, sensual, I,1,10
possession: What do you possess that you have not received, Revisions II,1,3; The Predestination of the Saints 4,8; I,2,9
power:
as from God, II,1,4

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

human, to accomplish good, I,1,11; I,1,14
prayer, I,2,2; I,2,21; II,4
preaching, I,1,17; I,2,7; I,2,10; I,2,14; I,2,19
the present, 2
pride, I,1,14; I,2,2–3; I,2,6; I,2,9; I,2,17;
I,2,21
prophecy; prophets, II,1; II,1,2; II,1,7
See also individual names
spirit of, I,1
without love, I,1,8–9
prostitutes, I
punishment, I,1,3–6; I,1,10–11; I,1,13; I,1,17;
I,2,16–20; II,1,3; II,1,5; II,2,3; II,3,3
See also discipline; law
and hardening of the will, I,2,14; I,2,18
merit and, II,6
mortality as, I,2,19
purpose of God, I,2,6; II,1
reality
See also truth
divine and human, II,2,3
Rebecca, I,2,1
rebirth, I,1,7; I,2,17
regret, II,2
remnant, I,2,19–20; I,2,22
resurrection of Christ, I,2,14
revelation, II,6
reward, II,6
rich man, II,3,3
righteousness, I,1,14; I,1,17; I,2,3; I,2,6;
I,2,8; I,2,12
and eternal life, I,2,2; I,2,22
faith and, I,2,7; I,2,21
grace and, I,2,22
The righteous hand may wash in the
blood of the sinner, I,2,18
Romans, Epistle to, I
sacraments, I,2,2; II,1,10
See also baptism
saints, I,2,3
salvation, I,1,17; I,2,18–19; I,2,22; II,1,10
See also remnant
grace and, I,2,6; I,2,19
Work out your salvation with fear and
trembling, I,2,12
Samuel, II,1,1; II,1,7; II,3
Sarah, I,2; I,2,1; I,2,3
Satan. See devil
Saul, King, II,1; II,3
I regret having made Saul king, II,2
and the necromancer, II,3
Saul (Paul), I,2,22
See also Paul
senses, I,2,2; II,1,1; II,2,3; II,3,3
Simeon, I,2,14
sin, I,1,11; I,2,18
See also Adam; covetousness; evil; guilt;
punishment; transgression; vice;
wickedness
false sweetness of, I,1,5; I,1,7; I,1,9
and grace, I,1,10
I do not do what I want, but I do what I
hate, I,1,8; I,1,11
and the law, I,1,1–6; I,1,17
The law entered in so that wrongdoing
might abound, I,1,16
original, I,1,10
repeated, I,1,10
sold under sin, I,1,7
transmission of, I,2,19
and the whole human race, I,2,16
Sirach/Ecclesiasticus, Book of, I,2,20
Sodom, I,2; I,2,1; I,2,19
soothsaying spirit, II,3,3
soul, II,1,3
and body, I,2,17
changeableness of, II,1,6
mind and, II,1,9
spirit of the law. See law
spirits, II,1,4–5
See also demons; Holy Spirit
divine spirits, II,1
evil spirit of the Lord, II,1,1; II,1,4–6
fallen vs. sublime and pure, II,6
God as employing, II,1; II,3
good and bad, II,1; II,3
and the Holy Spirit, II,1
most pure, II,6
a person’s spirit, II,1
Saul’s experience of, II,1
spirit of God, II,1
stars, I,2,3; I,2,8
stealing. See theft
Stephen, II,1,5
sun, I,2,8
talents, I,1,10
temple: For the temple of God is holy, I,2,2
thief; thief, I,2,14; I,2,17–19
time
See also specific topics, e.g.,
foreknowledge
and motion, I,2,14; II,2,2
tongues, II,1,8
transgression, I,1,3–6; I,1,12; I,1,14–15;
I,1,14–17
See also sin
Trinity, II,1,5–6
truth, II,3
See also knowledge; reality
grace and, I,1,17

Volume I/12
Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician

Volume I/12

twins, I,2,3
See also Jacob and Esau

unclean spirits. See demons
understanding, II,3,3
See also knowledge
and wisdom, II,2,3

vengeance, I,1,4
vessels of mercy, I,2,18–19
vice, I,3,6; II,3,1
See also sin
virtue, II,3,1
See also good
wages, I,2,3
water, II,1,5
See also baptism
turned to wine, I,2,14
wickedness, I,8; I,2,18
See also hardening of the will; sin
widow, II,5
will, human, I,2,21

See also free choice; good will; specific
topics, e.g., faith
and accomplishing good, I,1,11
as chosen, I,2,22
God as willing that our will be both his
and ours, I,2,10
and God's mercy, I,2,12
grace and, I,2,3–14; Revisions II,1,2
hardening of, I,2,14–18 passim
will of God, I,2,15; I,2,17; II,1,15
wine, I,2,14
I have filled the winepress, I,2,20
wisdom and knowledge, II,2,3
works, I,2,2
See also merit; pride
faith and, I,2,2; I,2,21
grace and, I,2,2–3
love and, I,2,21
wrongdoing
See also sin
The law entered in so that wrongdoing
might abound, I,1,16

youth, II,2,5

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Index from
On Genesis, Against the Manichees
(De Genesi adversus Manichaeos)

Included in book:
On Genesis

Translation, introduction, and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
This volume contains three works on the Book of Genesis: On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees (De Genesi adversus Manichaeos), Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus) and the third and longest, The Literal Meaning of Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram).

Volume I/13 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-175-6, 6 x 9 in., 540 pp., 2002
Paperback: 978-1-56548-201-2, 6 x 9 in., 539 pp., 2004

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genesis</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Deuteronomy</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I, 2, 3; I, 7, 11; II, 3, 4</td>
<td>II, 13, 18</td>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>9:16-17</td>
<td>11:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>I, 3, 5; I, 3, 6; I, 5, 8</td>
<td>II, 13, 19; II, 24, 37</td>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>I, 4, 7; I, 8, 13</td>
<td>II, 15, 22; II, 26, 39</td>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>142:5</td>
<td>II, 16, 26; I, 21, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3.6.9</td>
<td>I, 3, 5</td>
<td>II, 25, 38</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
<td>II, 15, 23</td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-5</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 10, 16</td>
<td>II, 17, 25</td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6-8</td>
<td>I, 11, 17</td>
<td>II, 17, 26; II, 18, 27</td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>I, 11, 17</td>
<td>II, 18, 28</td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>I, 12, 18</td>
<td>II, 19, 29</td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-19</td>
<td>I, 14, 20</td>
<td>II, 21, 31</td>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td>II, 22, 33</td>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td>II, 5, 6</td>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24-25</td>
<td>I, 16, 25</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>II, 2, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:26</td>
<td>I, 17, 27; I, 17, 28</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td>17:5-8</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:26-27</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:27</td>
<td>I, 23, 35; II, 7, 9</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:27-28</td>
<td>I, 19, 30</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28</td>
<td>I, 20, 31</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>I, 2, 4; I, 21, 32; II, 29, 43</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>I, 25, 43</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:32-33</td>
<td>I, 22, 33</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:34</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4—3:24</td>
<td>II, 1, 1-2</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>II, 3, 4; II, 4, 5; II, 5, 6; II, 6, 7</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>II, 5, 6; II, 24, 37</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>II, 7, 8; II, 8, 10</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>II, 10, 13</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>II, 14, 20</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>II, 11, 15</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>II, 11, 15</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>II, 11, 15</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II, 11, 15</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On Genesis
## On Genesis

### Sirach
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>II, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>II, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>II, 9, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>I, 21, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:5</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:25-26</td>
<td>II, 21, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Zechariah
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>II, 8, 11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:34-35</td>
<td>I, 17, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:38</td>
<td>II, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37.39-40</td>
<td>II, 23, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:30</td>
<td>II, 25, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>II, 17, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Luke
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>II, 21, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:8</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:34</td>
<td>I, 19, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### John
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>II, 24, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>II, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 22, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:27</td>
<td>I, 9, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>I, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37.39-40</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>I, 7, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>I, 7, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:28</td>
<td>II, 24, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Acts of the Apostles
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:13-15</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Romans
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>II, 24, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-4</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>II, 19, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>I, 25, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>I, 22, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>II, 23, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Corinthians
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>II, 12, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Corinthians
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>I, 20, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Galatians
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>II, 14, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 22, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II, 13, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II, 26, 39; II, 26, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II, 28, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Philippians
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>II, 24, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Colossians
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Timothy
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>II, 28, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II, 21, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Timothy
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>II, 22, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>II, 26, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Titus
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>I, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Hebrews
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Peter
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>II, 8, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume I/13**
Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The Roman numerals in the Indexes are the chapter numbers.
The Arabic numbers are the paragraph numbers.

On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees

Abraham: in world history, I:36–37
abyss, darkness over, I:6
Adam, II:1(1)–2
See also Eve; human beings; man animals, as naming, II:16
Christ, as prophetic of, II:24(16), 37(24)
“ensouled” and “enspirited,” II:10(8)
explusion of, II:33(22)–34
fall of, II:41(27)
has become like one of us, II:33(22)–34
as needing a helper, II:15(11)–15
in Paradise, II:10(8) (See also Paradise)
punishment of, II:41(27)
sleep of, meaning, II:16(12)–17
in world history, I:35(23)
Adam and Eve:
blaming others, II:25(17)
Christ and the Church, as pointing ahead to, II:37(24)
God, encounter with, II:24(16)
hiding from God, II:24(16)
Manichean vs. Catholic teachings regarding, II:42
nakedness of, II:23–24(16)
relationship between, II:18(13)–19
ages of the world, See under world air
See also heaven (the sky)
cloudy, I:24(15)
the prince of the power of the air, II:20(14)
Albula River, II:13(10)
allegory, I:33(22); II:5(4)
See also specific topics
analogy, See specific topics
angel(s):
an angel of Satan to box my ears,
II:42(28)
the Cherubim and the flaming sword,
II:2, 35(23)–36
a veil over her head, for the sake of the angels, II:40
animals
See also specific kinds
Adam naming, II:16
beauty of, I:25(16)–26
carnivorous, I:31(20)
creation of, I:24(15)–26
feeding of, I:31(20)
God as blessing, I:39
harmful, I:25(16)–26
Kill and eat, I:40
as subject to us, I:28–29(18), 31(20)
anthropomorphism, I:27(17)
apostles, II:5(4)
Paul (See Paul)
art, divine, I:13(8), 25(16)
Assyrians, II:1(1), 14
astrology: curiosity leading to, II:27(18)
Babel, Tower of, I:36
Babylon, I:39
baptism, II:37(24)
beasts, See animals
beauty:
of animals, I:25(16)–26
the darkness as without, I:13(8)
God as craftsman, I:25(16)
of heaven (sky), I:17(11); II:8(7)
Volume I/13

human, I:32(21); II:24(16)
of speech, I:32(21)
beginning:
Christ as, I:3(2)
“In the beginning,” I:3(2)–4
belief, See faith
believers, See Christians
Bible, See New Testament; Old Testament; scripture
language of (See language)
birds, I:40
See also animals
creation of, I:24(15)
blasphemy: avoiding, in exegesis, II:3(2)
body (human)
See also man; soul
animal vs., I:28
“ensouled,” II:10(8)
perishable, II:30(20)
before sin, II:8(7)
soul to be lorded over, II:15(11)
bread: “munch his bread,” II:30(20)
carnivores, I:31(20)
Catholic teaching, See specific topics
cattle, I:40
chaos, I:9
charity
See also love
if I do not have charity, I am nothing, II:36
Cherubim and the flaming sword, II:2, 35(23)–36
childbirth: pain during, II:29(19)
children:
Increase and multiply, I:30(19)
little ones in Christ, I:40
Christ, See Jesus Christ
Christians
See also Church, Catholic; religion
deepling of faith, I:2
as friends of God, I:4, 11(7)
have crucified their flesh, I:31(20)
heretics leading astray, II:38(25)–41(27)
seven stages in lives of, I:42–43(25)
this book as for, II:43(29)
Church, Catholic
See also Christians; faith; specific topics
beliefs of (vs. Manichees), II:42(28)–43(29)
Christ and, I:40; II:37(24)
Eve, as prophetic of, II:37(24)
fault of, II:43
circumcision, I:40(22)
clothes: fig leaves and skin tunics, II:32
cloud(s), II:5(4)
cloudy air called water, I:24(15)
concupiscence, I:40
constellations:
creation of, I:20(14)–23
for signs and for times, I:20(14)–21
cosmos: creation of, I:10(6)
craftsman, God as, I:10(6), 25(16)
creation
See also earth; heaven; specific days (first, second, third...); specific subjects
of the cosmos, I:10(6)
figurative interpretation, II:1(1)–3(2)
from formless matter (See formless
matter)
future events, as predicting, I:41(23)
God saw that all things together were
very good, I:32(21)
historical commentary, I:3(2)–34(22)
out of nothing, I:4, 10(6)
prophetic interpretation, I:23, 35–41
reason for, I:3(2)–4(2)
seven days of, I:43(25) (See also seven
days of creation)
six days of, and six ages of the world,
I:33(22)–42(23)
as sudden, I:3(2)
three main themes, as one of, II:7–8(8),
11
universe, goodness and unity of,
I:33(22); II:43(29)
as “very good,” I:32(21)
and world history, I:23, 35–41
Creator, God as:
dualism vs., I:4(2), 6–11(7)
Manichean arguments regarding,
I:3(2)–7(4)
resting on seventh day, I:33(22)–35(23),
41(23)
creatures
See also specific kinds
as made from nothing, I:4
curiosity, I:40
darkness
See also night
as absence of light, I:7(4), 15(9)
the darkness he called night, I:15(9)
God as not making, I:15(9)
as invisibility, I:12
manichean objections regarding,
I:6(3)–7(4)
On Genesis
On Genesis

as nothing, I:7(4)

David, King, II:37(24)
in world history, I:37–38
day
See also evening; light; morning
dividing day and night, I:20(14)
evening and morning, I:16(10), 20(14), 22–23

demons: by finger of God casting out, I:27(17)
devil, the, See Satan
divination, II:27(18)
dry land: sea and, separation of, I:18(12)
dualism: vs. God as one Creator, I:4(2), 6–11(7)
ettlement:
beginning of, I:5(3)
creation of, I:4
formless matter, as made from, I:10(7)–12
invisible and shapeless, I:5(3)
Let the dry land appear, I:18(12)
eating, See food
Eve
See also Adam and Eve; woman
Church, as prophetic of, II:37(24)
creation of, II:16(12)–17
“Life,” as named, II:31(21)–32

temptation of, II:20(14), 22(15)–23, 42(28)
evening, I:20(14), 22–23
and morning, order of, I:16(10)
evill
See also darkness; Satan; sin
justice of God and, I:4
as lack or absence, I:7(4)
nature of, II:43(29)
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)
exegesis: blasphemy, avoiding in, II:3(2)
eyes, II:23
faith, I:43(25)
deepening of, I:2
Jesus marvelling at, I:14
simple, Catholic as, II:38(25)
understanding, as before, I:17(11)
unfeigned, I:4
faithful, the, See Christians
fall, the, II:38(25)–41(27)
fifth day of creation, I:24(15)
fig leaves, II:23, 32
figurative interpretation, I:19(13), 34(22);
II:3(2)
firmament
See also heaven (sky)
waters above and below, I:17(11)
fish, See animals
food, the, I:35(23)–36
fodder, II:4(3)
food:
Kill and eat, I:40
“munch his bread,” II:30(20)
for the soul, II:12(9)
formless matter, I:10(7)–12
fortitude, II:13(10)–14, 18(13)
fourth day of creation, I:20(14)–23
friends of God, See under Christians
fruit of the Spirit, II:38(25)
future:
creation as predicting, I:41(23)
prophecy, II:3(2)
Ganges River, I:13(10)
Garden of Eden, See Paradise
garments: fig leaves and skin tunics, II:32
On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees

the Christians, as written for, II:43(29)
everyday usage in, I:10(6), 11(7), 34(22)
figurative and literal interpretations in,
II:3(2)
goal of, I:7(4)
historical commentary in, I:3(2)–34(22);
II:3(2), 4(3)–36(23)
prophetic interpretation in, I:23, 35–41;
II:3(2), 37(24)–41(27)
“the simple faithful,” as written for,
I:1(1), 2(2), 5(2), 9(5), 27(17)
symbolic interpretation in, I:23,
42–43(25)
three main themes of, II:7–8(8), 11 (See
also under creation; image of God;
salvation)
Genesis, book of:
as history and prophecy, II:3(2)
literal understanding not always possible,
II:3(2)
mysteries in, I:5(3); II:3(2)
as truth of God, I:7(4)

Volume I/13
Volume I/13

Gentiles: Israel and, I:40(22)
Gihon River, II:13(10)

God
See also specific topics
as craftsman, I:10(6), 25(16)
before creation, I:3(2)–3
as Creator (See Creator, God as)
friends of (See under Christians)
humans as image of (See image of God)
justice of, I:4; II:41(27)
Manichean vs. Catholic teachings
regarding, II:42
nature of, I:29(17); II:43(29)
Old Testament as truth of, I:7(4)
rebellion against, II:42(15)
Spirit of (See Spirit of God)
as Truth, II:24(16)
as unchangeable, II:7(6), 11
will of, I:4
Word of (See Word of God)
good, goodness:
of creation ("very good"), I:32(21)
of God, II:42(28)
God saw the light that it was good, I:13(8)–14
human potential for, II:34
nature of, II:43(29)
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)
Good Samaritan, II:13(10)
greenery of the field, II:4(3)–5, 7(6)

hay, See greenery of the field
heart: of stone vs. flesh, II:17
heaven and earth, II:4(3)
formless matter, as made from, I:10(7)–12

heaven (sky)
See also firmament
beauty of, I:17(11)
creation of, I:4

heaven (God’s abode): Jesus Christ in, I:27(17)
heavenly bodies
See also constellations; moon; stars; sun
as signs for times, I:21
hell, II:30(20)
Satan, doom of, II:25(17)
serpent condemned to eternal fire, II:26

heretics, I:2
See also Manichees

Christians, as leading astray, II:38(25)–41(27)
serpent as signifying, II:38(25)–40
Hexaemeron, the, I:41(23)
history, II:3(2)
creation and world history, I:23, 35–41
historical commentary of creation, I:3(2)–34(22)

hay, See greenery of the field
heart: of stone vs. flesh, II:17
heaven and earth, II:4(3)
formless matter, as made from, I:10(7)–12

heaven (sky)
See also firmament
beauty of, I:17(11)
creation of, I:4

heaven (God’s abode): Jesus Christ in, I:27(17)
heavenly bodies
See also constellations; moon; stars; sun
as signs for times, I:21
hell, II:30(20)
Satan, doom of, II:25(17)
serpent condemned to eternal fire, II:26

heretics, I:2
See also Manichees

Christians, as leading astray, II:38(25)–41(27)
serpent as signifying, II:38(25)–40
Hexaemeron, the, I:41(23)
history, II:3(2)
creation and world history, I:23, 35–41
historical commentary of creation, I:3(2)–34(22)

and prophecy. Genesis as, II:3(2)
seven ages of human, I:35(23)–41
six (or seven) ages of the world,
I:35(23)–41

Holy Spirit
See also Spirit of God
pleading for us, I:34

human beings
See also man; specific topics
animals subject to, I:28–29(18), 31(20)
as changeable (See under God: as unchangeable)
in image and likeness of God,
I:27(17)–28, 40; II:9, 11
spiritual vs. carnal, I:40

idol-worship, I:39
illumination: theory of, II:23–24(16)
image and likeness of God, I:40
humans as, I:27(17)–28; II:9, 11
"In the beginning," I:3(2)
Christ, as reference to, I:3(2)
Manichean fault-finding with, I:3(2)–4
Increase and multiply, I:30(19)
integrity, I:4
invisible things, II:7(6)
Israel: and the Gentiles, I:40(22)

Jerusalem, II:13(10)

Jesus Christ (the Son)
See also Christians; faith; specific topics
Adam as prophetic of, II:22(15), 24(16), 37(24)
as beginning, I:3(2)
and the Church, I:40; II:37(24)
the head of the man is Christ, II:15(11)
Jews as not recognizing, I:39
as made from the Father, I:4
at right hand of God, I:27(17)
second coming of, I:39, 41
as sinless, II:10(8)
as Wisdom of God, II:16(12)
as Word with the Father, I:3(2)
in world history, I:39

Jews:
Abraham as father of, I:37
Jesus, as not recognizing, I:39
in slavery, I:38–39
Judas, II:20(14)

justice, I:4; II:13(10)–14, 41(27)

kings
See also individual names
sins of, I:39
On Genesis

lamps, two, I:20(14)
language:
  beauty of, I:32(21)
  biblical, I:20(14)
  Hebrew, I:18(12)
inexpressible words, II:13(10)
metaphysical and analogical character in, I:20(14)
spoken, our need for after the fall, I:14–15(9)
lies, lying, II:33, 41(27)
See also truth
of Manichees, about Christ, II:39–40
Life: Eve as named, II:31(21)–32
light:
  creation of, Manichean objections regarding, I:6(3)–7(4), 13(8)–14
darkness as absence of, I:7(4), 15(9)
  God as marvelling at, I:14
God saw the light that it was good, I:13(8)–14
  spiritual, I:6(3)
literal interpretation: of Genesis, as not always possible, II:3(2)
love:
  charity (See charity)
commandment, II:36, 41(27)
of God and neighbor, II:36
  God as testing our, I:34
  from a pure heart and a good conscience, I:4
  soul, loving our own, II:17
  whom God loves he disciplines, II:35(23)
lust, I:30(19), 40
  and self-restraint, I:31(20)
Macedonia: Mount Olympus, I:24(15)
man
See also Adam: human beings; woman blowing of spirit of life into, II:10(8)–11
  as glory of God; II:40
  God’s punishment of, II:30(20)
  the head of the man is Christ, II:15(11)
  the head of the woman is the man, II:15(11)
  helper, need for, II:15(11)
  as made from mud of the earth, II:8(7)–9
  mud, as made from, II:8(7)–9
  in Paradise (See Paradise)
spirit of, meaning, II:10(8)–11
woman as glory of, II:40
Mani, teaching of, See Manichees
Manichees, Manicheans
See also heretics
  beliefs of, II:7–8(8), 11, 42(28)–43(29) (See also specific subjects)
Church, teachings of, compared with, II:43(29)
deceitfulness of, II:38(25)
goal of Augustine’s refutation, I:7(4)
  God as Creator, arguments regarding, I:3(2)–7(4)
  as lying about Christ, II:39–40
Old Testament, opposition to, I:1(1)–2;
  II:8(7), 42(28)
mortality: sin, as resulting from, I:19(13)
mother of all the living, II:31(21)
Mount Olympus, I:24(15)
mud: man as made from, II:8(7)–9
  mystery (-ies), I:5(3), 19(13)
in Genesis, I:5(3); II:3(2)
in the mud, II:8(7)–9
  and sacraments, II:17
two in one flesh, II:19
of the universe, curiosity regarding, II:27(18)
nakedness:
  of Adam and Eve, II:19, 23–24(16)
  as displeasing, II:38(26)
New Testament, I:27(17), 33(22)
night
See also darkness
dividing day and night, I:20(14)
lamps, the two, I:20(14), 22
Nile River, II:13(10)
Noah: in world history, I:35(23)–36
numbers: measure, number, and weight, I:26
occult, II:27(18)–28
old age: the fifth and sixth ages, I:39–40
Old Testament
See also New Testament
Manichean opposition to, I:1(1)–2;
  II:8(7), 42(28)

Volume I/13
On Genesis

riddles in, II:3(2)
as truth of God, I:7(4)
Olympus, Mount, I:24(15)
original sin, II:43(29)
good results of, II:42(28)
soul, as imputed to, II:5
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)

parable(s):
the Good Samaritan, II:13(10)
the prodigal son, II:34

Paradise (Garden of Eden)
See also specific topics and events
delights of Paradise, II:12(9)
as incorporeal (possibility), II:20(14)

man (Adam) alone in, II:15(11)–16
man’s work in, II:15(11)
rivers of, II:13(10)–14

parents: A man shall leave father and mother, II:19
Passover, I:40(22)

Paul, apostle, Saint:
on being led astray, II:39
on belonging to Jesus Christ, I:31(20)

chance of God giving them repentance, II:34
on charity (love), II:36
on Christ and the Church, II:37(24)
on the devil, II:20(14)
on fruit of the Spirit, II:38(25)

heart of stone vs. flesh, II:17
on heresies, I:2
Holy Spirit as pleading for us, I:34

inexpressible words, II:14
Manichean praise for, I:3(2)

Manichees deceiving by, II:18(13)
on marriage, II:18(13), 37(24)
on simplicity and chastity, II:19

so that the veil may be taken off, I:33(22)
on spiritual vs. “soulish,” II:10(8)–11
on truth and eternity, I:3(2)

veil may be taken off, I:33(22)

whom God loves he disciplines, II:35(23)
widow who lives for pleasure is dead, II:31(21)
on women, II:40, 42(28)

people, See human beings; man
Pishon River, II:13(10)

plants:
eating, I:40
fruitless and harmful, I:19(13)
greenery of the field, II:4(3)–5, 8(7)

prayer: Holy Spirit pleading for us, I:34
pride, I:40; II:6(5), 25(17), 42(15)
procreation: Increase and multiply, I:30(19)

prodigal son, II:34

prophecy, I:41(23); II:3(2)
and history, Genesis as, II:3(2)

prophet(s), II:5(4)

Law and (See Old Testament)
Sirach, II:6(5)
prudence, II:13(10)–14
purgatory, II:30(20)

questions: God as asking, II:24(16)

rain, I:24(15)

God had not yet rained, II:5(4)
religion: basic questions of, II:43(29)

reptiles, I:40
See also animals
creation of, I:24(15)
rest:
our eternal rest in God, I:33(22)–34
on seventh day, I:33(22)–35(23), 41(23)
riddles: in the Old Testament, II:3(2)
rivers: of Paradise, II:13(10)–14

sabbath, the, I:33(22)
sacraments: mysteries and, II:17

sacrifices: Israel regarding, I:40(22)
salt, II:23
salvation:
creation predicting God’s plan of,
I:34(22), 41(23)

history of, II:7–8(8), 11
Samaritan, the Good, II:13(10)
Satan
See also serpent

an angel of Satan to box my ears,
II:42(28)
doom of, II:25(17)
Eve, temptation of, II:42(28)
Manichean vs. Catholic teachings
regarding, II:42(28)
nature of, II:42(28)
the prince of the power of the air,
II:20(14)
serpent, as represented by, II:20(14)–21

Saul, King, I:37

scripture:
mysteries in, I:5(3), 19(13) (See also
mysteries

various senses of, II:3(2)

seas, I:18(12)
second coming of Christ, I:39, 41
secrets, See mysteries
On Genesis

self-restraint: importance of, I:31(20)
senses, II:30(20)
serpent:
condemnation of, II:26–28
Eve as blaming, II:25(17)
heretics (Manichees), as referring to, II:38(25)–40
non-Christian beliefs regarding, II:24(16), 39
Satan, as representing, II:20(14)–21
success of, reason for, II:22(15)–23
tempting Eve (See under temptation)
woman, enmity with, II:27(18)–28
serpents, I:40
seven days of creation
See also specific days (first, second, third,...)
and seven ages of human history, I:35–41
and seven stages in lives of faithful, I:23, 42–43(25)
seventh day of creation:
allegorical interpretation, I:33(22)–34
God as resting on, I:33(22)–35(23), 41(23), 43(25)
sexual intercourse: Increase and multiply, I:30(19)
sheep
See also animals
little ones in Christ as like, I:40
at Passover, I:40(22)
signs for times: heavenly bodies as for, I:21
simplicity, II:19
sin, II:21
See also darkness
ego, II:42(15)
Eve, temptation of, II:22(15)–23
good results of, II:42(28)
as harming self, II:43(29)
Jesus Christ as sinless, II:10(8)
mortality and, I:19(13)
original (See original sin)
pride, II:6(5), 42(15)
rebellion against God, II:42(15)
and sexual relations, I:30(19)
sinful act, the, II:21(14)
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)
Sirach, II:6(5)
six days of creation, I:35(23)–41
See also creation
and six days in our personal lives, I:43(25)
skin tunics, II:32
sky
See also heaven
beauty of, I:17(11)
slaves, slavery:
I will not call you slaves any longer,
I:11(7)
of Jewish people, I:38–39
snake, See serpent
solid structure of heaven, See firmament;
heaven (sky)
soul (human)
See also body
body, to be lorded over, II:15(11)
food for, II:12(9)
The greenery of the field and the fodder,
II:4(3)
“invisible creation,” II:4(3)
loving our own, II:17
at “midpoint in order of things”, (between
God and body), II:12(9)
My soul is troubled at myself, II:24(16)
original sin imputed to, II:5
pre-existing (theory), II:9–10(8)
spiritual vs. “soulish,” II:10(8)–11
and upright posture of body, I:28
speech, See language
spiritual vs. “soulish,” II:10(8)–11
Spirit of God: water, as borne over, I:8(5)–9, 12, 18(12)
springs coming up from the earth, II:6(5)–7(6)
stars
See also heavenly bodies
creation of, I:20(14)–23
leaders, as representing, I:38
stone: heart of, II:17
sun
See also heavenly bodies
creation of, I:20(14)–23
kingship, as signifying, I:38
true light vs., I:6
swearing: Do not swear, I:27(17)
symbolism, See figurative interpretation
temperance, II:13(10)–14, 18(13)
temptation, II:21–23
curiosity as, II:27(18)
of Eve, II:20(14), 22(15)–23, 42(28)
thorns and thistles, II:41(27)
Tiber River, II:13(10)
Tigris River, II:13(10)
time:
eternity, I:3(2)–4
God as creating, I:3(2)
“In the beginning” (See “In the beginning”)
Volume I/13

times: signs for, I:21
Tower of Babel, I:36
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)
tree of life, II:12(9), 34(22)
   Cherubim and the flaming sword as guarding, II:35(23)–36
trees
   See also plants
   unfruitful, I:19(13)
truth:
   of God, Old Testament as, I:7(4)
   “munch his bread,” II:30(20)
   nature of, II:24(16)
   as unbearable, II:32
Truth (God as), II:24(16)
   as inexpressible, II:13(10)
tunics of skin, II:32
unbelievers: devil at work in, II:20(14)
understanding: faith as preceding, I:17(11)
uneducated readers, this work as for, See Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees
unformed matter, See formless matter
universe:
   goodness of, II:43(29)
   unity of, I:33(22)
veil:
   so that the veil may be taken off, I:33(22)
   woman to wear, II:40
   virago, II:18(13)
Virgin Mary, II:37(24)
virginity: a chaste virgin, II:19
virtues: rivers as signifying, II:13(10)–14
water(s):
   above and below the firmament, I:17(11)
   cloudy air as called, I:24(15)
in creation, I:12
   firmament, as divided by, I:17(11)
gathering of, I:18(12)
   inhabitants, creation of, I:24(15)
   Paradise, rivers of, II:13(10)–14
   reptiles, I:40
   sea and dry land, I:18(12)
   Spirit of God borne over, I:8(5)–9, 12, 18(12)
   spring coming up from the earth,
      II:6(5)–7(6)
weight: measure, number, and weight, I:26
   widow who lives for pleasure is dead,
      II:31(21)
Wisdom of God, II:16(12)
woman, women
   See also Eve; human beings; man
   as glory of man, II:40, 42(28)
   head-coverings for, II:40
   the head of the woman is the man,
      II:15(11)
   as made for man, II:16(12)
   punishment of, II:29(19)
   and serpent, enmity between,
      II:27(18)–28
   a veil over her head, for the sake of the angels, II:40
Word of God, II:5(4)
   Christ as, I:3(2); II:37
words, See language
world:
   ages of, I:35(23)–43(25); II:4(3)
   end of, I:34, 41
   six ages of, six days of creation representing, I:33(22)–42(23)
   world history: creation and, I:23, 35–41
Zion, II:13(10)
Index from

On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis

(De Genesi ad litteram)

Included in book:

On Genesis

Translation, introduction, and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

This volume contains three works on the Book of Genesis: On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees (De Genesi adversus Manichaeos), Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus) and the third and longest, The Literal Meaning of Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram).

Volume I/13 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-175-6, 6 x 9 in., 540 pp., 2002
Paperback: 978-1-56548-201-2, 6 x 9 in., 539 pp., 2004

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael Dolan)
(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

The Literal Meaning of Genesis

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genesis</th>
<th>I:3-4</th>
<th>I:5, 11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I:4</td>
<td>I:7</td>
<td>I:10, 18; I:17, 33; V:3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:5</td>
<td>I:6</td>
<td>II:6, 12; IV:22, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:6</td>
<td>I:7</td>
<td>II:6, 10; IV:22, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:8-10</td>
<td>I:9</td>
<td>II:7, 15; IV:22, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:11</td>
<td>I:12</td>
<td>III:18, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:14-19</td>
<td>I:12</td>
<td>IV:26, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:14-19</td>
<td>I:14</td>
<td>II:13, 26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On Genesis
## On Genesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genesis Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>II, 15, 32; II, 16, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>III, 7, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20-23</td>
<td>III, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>III, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>III, 13, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-25</td>
<td>III, 11, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>VII, 22, 32; XI, 39, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-28</td>
<td>VI, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-28-29</td>
<td>VI, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-31</td>
<td>III, 19, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>III, 22, 34; VII, 22, 33; XII, 15, 3; IX, 17, 31; X, 2, 3; X, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27-28</td>
<td>III, 22, 34; VII, 28, 41; IX, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>III, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>VI, 6, 9; VIII, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>VII, 26, 37; VII, 28, 41; VIII, 6, 12; VIII, 13, 28; XI, 21, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>IV, 1, 1; VI, 11, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>IV, 2, 6; IV, 12, 23; XI, 20, 37; VII, 28, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>V, 3, 5; V, 17, 35; V, 23, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>V, 3, 5; V, 4, 7; V, 5, 16; V, 11, 27; V, 23, 46; VI, 3, 4; VIII, 28, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-6</td>
<td>V, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>V, 2, 4; V, 6, 17; V, 23, 46; VII, 28, 41; VIII, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>V, 6, 19; V, 7, 20; V, 11, 27; V, 23, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>III, 22, 34; VI, 1, 1; VI, 11, 19; VII, 1, 1; VII, 16, 22; VIII, 17, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>VIII, 1, 1; VIII, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8.9</td>
<td>V, 4, 11; VI, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>VII, 28, 41; VIII, 3, 6; VIII, 4, 8; VIII, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10-14</td>
<td>VIII, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>VIII, 10, 19; VIII, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>VIII, 8, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>VIII, 13, 28; VIII, 17, 36; VIII, 27, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>IX, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>IX, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18-22</td>
<td>VI, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>VI, 12, 22; VII, 28, 41; IX, 14, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19-24</td>
<td>IX, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>IX, 13, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>X, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23-24</td>
<td>IX, 19, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I, 1, 1; VI, 3, 4; VIII, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>XI, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25—3:24</td>
<td>XI, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>XI, 2, 4; XI, 29, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>XI, 30, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>XI, 30, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>XI, 30, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>XI, 31, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>VIII, 27, 50; XI, 33, 43; XI, 33, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XI, 34, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>XI, 34, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>XI, 35, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>XI, 35, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>XI, 36, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>XI, 37, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-19</td>
<td>XI, 38, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>III, 18, 28; VIII, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>XI, 38, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>XI, 39, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>XI, 39, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22-23</td>
<td>XI, 40, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>XI, 40, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>IV, 9, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23</td>
<td>X, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27-28</td>
<td>XII, 33, 64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Exodus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exodus Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>V, 16, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-11</td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-18</td>
<td>XII, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-18</td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20-23</td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Numbers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numbers Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>12:6-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Job**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Job Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:5-LXX</td>
<td>VI, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:12-13</td>
<td>V, 15, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:23-25</td>
<td>V, 15, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:19</td>
<td>X, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:19</td>
<td>XI, 20, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Psalms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalms Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XI, 18, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XI, 25, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>VI, 19, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>VIII, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-19.1</td>
<td>X, 18, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:6-7</td>
<td>XI, 5, 7; XI, 34, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:7</td>
<td>XI, 32, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:9</td>
<td>IV, 33, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:15</td>
<td>X, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:8</td>
<td>I, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>X, 35, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:2</td>
<td>VI, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:11</td>
<td>I, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:12</td>
<td>VI, 12, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:12.20</td>
<td>III, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:13</td>
<td>VII, 9, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/13**
Volume I/13

The Literal Meaning of Genesis

51:5 VI, 9, 15 7:24:25 IV, 34, 55; VII, 22, 33
51:10 X, 6, 10 7:27 VIII, 27, 50
55:17 IV, 30, 47 8:1 III, 12, 18; III, 14, 22;
59:9 VIII, 12, 27 IV, 12, 23; IV, 33, 51;
71:19 VIII, 1, 3 VII, 22, 33
73:17 IX, 19, 36 8:19-20 X, 7, 12; X, 17, 30
73:28 VIII, 11, 24; VIII, 12, 27 IV, 6, 13; IV, 32, 49; X, 17,
74:19 VII, 9, 13 30; XII, 35, 68
78:39 X, 9, 16 9:15 XI, 2, 3; IV, 3, 7; IV, 5, 11;
84:2 X, 12, 20 II, 15, 27
85:8 IX, 2, 3 IX, 15, 27
94:15 XI, 22, 29 13:9 V, 16, 34
95:5 VI, 12, 21
102:25 VI, 12, 21
103:14 X, 8, 14
103:18 XI, 30, 38
104:2 II, 9, 21
104:24 V, 14, 31; V, 19, 38 1:4 I, 17, 32
104:26 XI, 20, 27 1:5-6 I, 10, 21
104:29-30 X, 8, 13 1:26 X, 12, 20
106:21 VIII, 1, 3 3:21 XII, 7, 18
107:25 III, 2, 3 10:9 X, 8, 14
111:2 XI, 11, 15 10:12 VIII, 10, 23
118:24 IV, 25, 42 10:13 XI, 15, 19
124:8 IX, 1, 2 12:7 X, 9, 15
136:5 II, 1, 4 18:1 IV, 33, 52; V, 17, 35;
136:6 II, 1, 4 VI, 3, 4; VI, 6, 11;
136:8 L, 1, 21 VI, 9, 16; VII, 28, 41;
136:8,9 II, 15, 32 VIII, 20, 39
136:12 VI, 12, 20
148:1 III, 7, 9
148:4 III, 1, 1
148:4-5 III, 1, 1
148:5 IV, 8, 15; VI, 12, 21 7:16 VIII, 14, 32
148:7 III, 7, 9; III, 10, 14; 14:12-15 XI, 24, 31
V, 21, 42; IX, 1, 2 40:5 X, 12, 21
148:8 III, 6, 8; III, 10, 14; 57:16 X, 6, 9
XII, 7, 18 57:16-17 VII, 3, 5
Proverbs
2:19 IX, 18, 33
3:18 VIII, 4, 8
8:23 V, 19, 38
18:12 XI, 5, 7
Ecclesiastes
3:5 IX, 7, 12
Song of Songs
4:12,15,13 XI, 25, 32
4:12 XI, 25, 32
4:13 XII, 28, 56
Wisdom
4:11 X, 16, 28
6:16 V, 21, 42
7:2 X, 18, 32
7:24 XII, 34, 66
New Testament
Matthew
1:20 XII, 21, 44
2:13 XII, 21, 44

On Genesis
### On Genesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>XII, 28, 56</td>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td>2:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>XI, 22, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>VII, 4, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:10-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>XII, 10, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:13, 19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>I, 20, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td>17:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:28</td>
<td>XI, 24, 31</td>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:52</td>
<td>I, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:3</td>
<td>II, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>1:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4-5</td>
<td>IX, 19, 36</td>
<td></td>
<td>1:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>IX, 6, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>XI, 21, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>VI, 8, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td>5:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:18-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>I, 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>7:22-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>IX, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>7:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>7:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>XII, 6, 15; XII, 11, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td>7:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:40</td>
<td>X, 18, 32</td>
<td></td>
<td>8:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>X, 12, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td>8:10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>VIII, 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>9:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>VI, 27, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td>9:22-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:8</td>
<td>XI, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19-26</td>
<td>XII, 33, 63</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:34</td>
<td>III, 12, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:36</td>
<td>IV, 6, 13; IV, 23, 40; VI, 19, 30; VI, 24, 35; IX, 9, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>XII, 34, 66</td>
<td></td>
<td>12:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>13:12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-1-3</td>
<td>VI, 12, 21; VIII, 27, 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>V, 13, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>I, 2, 6; II, 6, 12; IV, 5, 11; IV, 24, 41; IV, 32, 49; V, 4, 10; XII, 34, 67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>V, 17, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>X, 22, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>XII, 7, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>IV, 11, 21; IV, 12, 23; V, 4, 11; V, 11, 27; V, 20, 40; V, 23, 45; VI, 3, 4; VII, 28, 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>V, 20, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>IV, 12, 23; V, 14, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:70</td>
<td>XI, 24, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>I, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>XI, 16, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>XI, 39, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13</td>
<td>IV, 34, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30</td>
<td>IV, 11, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>X, 5, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On Genesis

Volume I/13
# Volume I/13

- **13:12** — XII, 28, 56
- **13:35** — VIII, 17, 36
- **14:2** — XII, 8, 19
- **14:6** — XII, 8, 19
- **14:14** — XII, 8, 19
- **14:15** — XII, 9, 20; XII, 24, 51
- **14:16** — XII, 8, 19
- **15:22** — VI, 26, 37; VIII, 14, 32; X, 16, 29
- **15:36-38** — V, 20, 40
- **15:41** — II, 16, 33
- **15:44** — VI, 19, 30; XII, 7, 18
- **15:44-49** — VI, 19, 30
- **15:45** — VI, 23, 34
- **15:48** — X, 8, 14
- **15:52** — IV, 34, 55
- **15:53** — VI, 20, 31; XII, 36, 69
- **15:54** — VI, 24, 35
- **2 Corinthians**
  - **5:6.7** — XII, 28, 56
  - **5:10** — VII, 25, 36
  - **11:14** — XII, 13, 28
  - **12:2** — XII, 3, 8
  - **12:2-4** — XII, 1, 1
  - **12:4** — XII, 4, 14
  - **12:7-9** — III, 15, 24
- **Galatians**
  - **2:20** — X, 8, 14
  - **3:19** — IX, 16, 30
  - **3:20-16** — XI, 24, 31
  - **4:9** — IV, 9, 19
  - **5:13** — XI, 37, 50
  - **5:17** — XII, 12; X, 18, 32; XII, 7, 18
  - **5:22-23** — XII, 24, 50
  - **6:1** — VI, 28, 39; XI, 6, 8; XI, 18, 24
- **Ephesians**
  - **1:4** — VI, 9, 14; VI, 17, 28
  - **2:3** — IX, 10, 17; X, 12, 21
  - **2:8-10** — VIII, 12, 27; X, 6, 10
  - **2:9** — IX, 18, 33
  - **3:8-11** — V, 19, 38
  - **3:9** — IX, 18, 34
  - **3:10** — IX, 18, 35
  - **3:19** — I, 7, 13
  - **4:21-24** — VI, 26, 37
  - **4:23** — VI, 24, 35; XI, 42, 58; XII, 24, 51
  - **4:23-24** — III, 20, 30; XII, 7, 18
  - **4:30** — IV, 9, 18
- **5:8** — IV, 23, 40
- **5:27** — IX, 3, 6
- **5:32** — I, 1, 1; VIII, 5, 10
- **6:12** — XI, 25, 32

**Philippians**
- **2:7** — VI, 19, 30; VIII, 27, 50; X, 18, 32
- **2:10** — XII, 33, 63
- **2:12-13** — VIII, 12, 27
- **3:12** — III, 15, 24
- **3:21** — X, 18, 32

**Colossians**
- **1:16** — V, 14, 31
- **2:3** — I, 21, 41
- **2:9-17** — XII, 7, 17
- **3:2** — VI, 12, 22
- **3:9** — X, 8, 14
- **3:9-10** — VI, 27, 38
- **3:10** — III, 20, 30; III, 20, 32; VI, 24, 35; XII, 7, 18

**1 Timothy**
- **1:7** — I, 19, 39
- **2:5** — X, 7, 12
- **2:7** — XII, 28, 56
- **2:13-14** — XI, 42, 58
- **3:16** — V, 19, 39
- **6:10** — XI, 15, 19
- **6:16** — VII, 28, 43; VIII, 19, 38; VIII, 27, 50

**Titus**
- **3:5** — X, 15, 27

**Hebrews**
- **2:7** — VI, 19, 30
- **7:4-10** — X, 19, 34
- **7:9-10** — IX, 18, 34

**James**
- **1:14-15** — XI, 5, 7
- **1:17** — V, 18, 36
- **4:6** — XI, 4, 6

**1 Peter**
- **1:20** — IV, 9, 19
- **2:5** — XI, 25, 32

**2 Peter**
- **1:19** — IV, 23, 40
- **2:20.21.22** — XI, 25, 32

---

**On Genesis**
On Genesis

Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The Roman numerals in the Indexes are the chapter numbers.
The Arabic numbers are the paragraph numbers.

The Literal Meaning of Genesis

Aaron, VI:24; IX:32; XII:55(27)
Abel, VIII:4; IX:19(11)
Abraham, VI:13(8), 20(12); XII:10
bosom of (See bosom of Abraham)
Christ hidden in loins of, X:34(19)–37(21)
God speaking to, VIII:37(18)
Levi hidden in loins of, IX:34;
X:34(19)–37(21)
at oak of Mamre, XI:46
offspring of, IX:19(11), 30; XI:31(24)
abyss: darkness over the abyss, I:3
Adam
See also Eve: man; specific topics
animals, as naming, IX:20(12)–22,
24(14)–25; XI:40(31)
body, “ensouled” and “enspirited,”
VI:30(19)–39(28)
command given to, VIII:28(13)–29
companion for, ideal, IX:9(5)
descendants of, X:19, 22(13), 24, 26(15), 29
disobedience of, X:18(11)–19
estasy, in (and waking from), IX:1(1),
36(19)
Eve made from, IX: X:1(1)–2
eyes opened, VIII:31(14); XI:40(31)–41
God speaking to, VIII:37(18), 49(27)–50;
XI:43(33)–46
has become like one of us, XI:53
helper, needing, IX:5(3)–7, 9(5),
20(12)–22
mortality and immortality,
VI:33(22)–34(23), 34(23)–35(24);
XI:42(32)
Paradise, as cultivator of, VIII:15(8)–22
(See also Paradise)
prophetic utterance of, IX:36(19)
soul of (See Adam—soul of (below))
"the form of the one to come," VII:1(1)
whether created as child or adult,
VI:23(13)–24
woman, as naming, XI:51(38)
Adam—soul of:
breath of God as source, VII:1(1)–6(4);
X:1(1)–2
origin of, X:3(2)
others souls as made from, or not,
X:9(6)–11, 29–36

Volume I/13
and the soul of Eve (See under Eve)

Adam and Eve:
- death and disease, becoming subject to, XI:42(32)
- fall of, XI
- hiding from God, XI:1(1), 44–46
- and history, beginning of, VIII:2(1)
- if they had not sinned, VIII:6, 24;
  XI:10(6)–11

nakedness of (See nakedness)

offspring of (See Abel; Cain; Seth)

Paradise, expulsion from, XI:1(1), 54(40)–55

punishment of, XI:1(1), 40(31)–41, 50(37)–51(38)

sexual relationship of, IX:5(3)–19(11);
  XI:57

sin, making excuses for, XI:47(35)–48

sin of, VIII:31(14); XI:56(41)–57

and the tree of knowledge of good and evil

(tunics of skin, God clothing with,
  XI:52(39)–53

adultery, IX:12(7)–13(8)

agriculture, VIII:15(8)–23

air, the element

See also elements, the four

angels and demons as airy beings,
  III:14(10); XII:34(17)

body, as present in, VII:20(13)

earth as below, II:5(2)

fire as above, II:6(3)

in Genesis, III:4(3), 8(6)

soul, as not in, VII:18(12)–19

soul governing body by, VII:21(15), 25(19)

spirit, as called, VII:30; XII:18

water as below and above, II:7(4)–8

air (the sky)

See also heaven; sky

animals of, as first, III:1(1)

in creation narrative, III:3(4)–5, 8(6)

flood changing to water, III:2(2)–3

Albula River, the, VIII:13(7)

allegorical interpretation, I:2, 34

as figurative (See figurative interpretation)

angelic knowledge, II:16(8)–19;
  IV:40(23)–42(25), 45(28)–51(33)

See also day; evening; morning

of creation, IV:39(22), 46(29)–30;
  V:9–10, 15

of creatures unknown to us, V:36(18)

human mind, in contrast to, IV:49(32)

mysteries of kingdom revealed to,
  V:37(19)–39

of a thing in itself (evening), IV:40(23)

of a thing in the Word of God (day),
  IV:40(23)

of things being known straight from God
  (morning), IV:39(22), 47(30)

time as different in, IV:46(29)–50

in Word of God, IV:40(23)–42(25);
  V:9–10

angel(s)

blessed life of, XI:22(17)–25(19)

bodies of, III:8(6), 15; XII:34(17)

company of as spiritual light, IV:39(22)

creation of, II:17–19; XI:25(19)

the devil as, XI:22(17) (See also Satan)

fallen and wicked, III:14(10)–15;
  IV:41(24), 51(33); XI:29(22), 37
  (See also demons; Satan)

in heaven, 46(29)

“hidden day” of creation, VII:7(5)

and human souls, VII:34(23); X:8(5)

humans, relationship with, VIII:47;
  XI:23(18)–25(19) (See also angels:
  work and ministry of, below)

humans to be equal to after resurrection,
  IV:41(21); VI:35(24)

knowledge of (See angelic knowledge
  above)

of light, evil spirit masquerading as,
  XII:28

a little less than the angels, VI:30(19)

marriage, regarding, IX:15

Peter rescued by, XII:30

revelations of, XII:58(30), 69(36)

and sin, XI:9(7)

supercelestial, IV:56(35); V:10

tree of life, as guarding, XI:1(1), 55

work and ministry of, IX:24(14)–30;
  XI:33(18)–35; XII:69(36)

animals

See also specific kinds

according to their kinds, III:16(11)–20

Adam naming, IX:20(12)–22, 24(14)–25;
  XI:40(31)

of air and waters as first, III:1(1)

angels, ministry of, IX:24(14)–25

beauty of, III:22(14)

blessing given aquatic, III:21(13)

bodies of dead, as eating, III:22(14)–23,
  26(17)

creation of, III:16(11)–20; IX:1(1)–2

dangerous, creation of, III:24(15)

earth, as fashioned from, III:16(11)–17;
  IX:1(1)–2
On Genesis

flying creatures (See birds) harmful to each other, creation of, III:25(16) Increase and multiply, III:21(13) man’s authority over, IX:25 plants and, V:44(23) poisonous, creation of, III:24(15) souls of, VII:13–15 of waters and air as first, III:1(1) Apocrypha: Sirach as apocryphal book (See Sirach) apostle(s), VIII:5(2) See also specific names Paul (See Paul) Assyrians, the, VIII:13(7) astrology, II:29, 31(16), 35(17)–37; XII:46 atmosphere around the earth, See heaven(s); sky avarice, XI:19(15)–10 pride and, XI:18(14) Babel, Tower of, IX:21 babies, See children; infants Babylon, King of, VIII:31(14); XI:31(24) bad, badness, See evil; sin Balaam, IX:32; XI:37 baptism, IV:24(13) infant, X:18(11)–19, 23(14)–29(16), 39(23) Basil of Caesarea (Saint): on waters above the heavens, II:7(4)–8 beauty, See animals; specific kinds beauty of creation, I:14(8); III:37; IV:1(1) of creatures, III:22(14) of nature (gardening), VII:16 of trees, V:11, 44(23) beginning See also time “In the beginning” (See “In the beginning”) Jesus Christ the Son as, I:9(4)–12(6) Belshazzar, King, XII:23 Bible, See also Genesis; Old Testament; scripture; specific topics exegesis, biblical (See exegesis) figurative meaning in, I:1(1); VIII:8(4) natural science and (See under science) revelation over reason, I:40(20) scripture, meanings of (See scripture) studying, I:1(1) two testimonies in, I:1(1) writers, intention of (criteria for interpretation), I:41(21) birds See also animals the birds of the sky, II:7(4) brooding over eggs and chicks, I:36(18) Increase and multiply, III:21(13) waters, as created from, III:9(7)–10, 14(10)–15 blasphemy: by Manichees, VIII:5(2) “blessed life,” XI:22(17)–25(19) Satan missing out on, XI:30(23) bodies, heavenly, See under visions: bodily visions, See under visions: bodily body, God as, VII:30 body (human) See also specific topics brain (See brain) changeable in time and space, VIII:39(20)–44(23) disorders of, VII:25(19) elements present in, VII:20(13) making of, III:34(22); VI:10(12)–24 man’s, creation of, IV:1(1) ours vs. Adam’s, VI:37(26)–35(24) resurrection of (See resurrection of the dead) soul, as embodying, VI:30(19)–39(28); XII:41(19) soul as governing and moving, VII:21(15), 42; VIII:40(21)–43(23) soul as not, VII:25(19)–26(20) bosom of Abraham, VIII:9(5); X:41(25); XII:62(33)–64 brain, VII:20(13) three parts of, VII:24(18) breath of God: and resurrection of the dead, X:8(5) soul of Adam (See Adam, soul of) Bulla Regia, III:12 Cain, VIII:4; IX:8(4), 19(11) carnal pleasures, See lust Catholic Church: origin of, IX:35 Catholic faith, See specific topics charity See also love in our hearts through the Holy Spirit, IV:16(9) children See also infants being like, I:36(18) and history, beginning of, VIII:2(1) procreation of, IX:5(3)–19(11) simple faith of, earth as symbolizing, II:4 and sin, X:22(13) Christians, Christianity

Volume I/13
faith as above reason (science),
I:40(20)–41(21)
self-satisfied, and unbelievers, I:39(19);
II:20(9); V:23(8)
Church, Catholic: origin of, IX:35
city (-ies)
See also specific names
two loves in two cities, XI:20
clothing:
fig leaves, XI:42(32)
"the whole of a garment," V:25(10)
tunics of skin, XI:52(39)–53
cloud(s), I:26–27; II:7(4); III:14
pillar of, XII:9(4)
as water above air, II:7(4)–8
concupiscence, See lust; nakedness
constellations, See heavenly bodies; specific names
conversion, I:3, 7(3), 10(5)–11, 17
corporeal visions, See under visions
cosmos:
elements of (See elements, the four)
inhabitants as not visible, III:8(6)
creation
See also specific creatures and subjects
account of, Holy Spirit as not inspiring complete, V:21(8)
angelic knowledge of, V:9–10 (See also under angelic knowledge)
both faith and reason in, I:28(14)
creatures still unknown to us, V:36(18)
days of (See days of creation; specific days
(first day, second day...))
as defy human understanding of nature, VI:23–25(14)
God as not needing, IV:26(15)–28
God’s love for creatures, I:4(8)
God’s work as continuing (See under God; work)
narration of, explanation, II:16(8)–19
order in (six-day), II:26(13)–27; V:5(3)
(See also under days of creation; specific subjects)
reason for, I:10(6)–14
as simultaneous and/or one by one,
IV:51(33)–55; V:5(3)–6, 35(17) (See also simultaneous creation)
three aspects of, V:28(12)
And thus it was made, God not saying,
III:30(20)–32
of time (See under time)
time and history as beginning with, I:4(2);
V:12(5)–16; VIII:3(1) (See also time)
two moments of, V:27(11)
twofold account of, interpreting, VII:18(11)
Wisdom of God, all life as created through, V:29(13)–33(15) (See also Wisdom of God)
Word of God as source of, II:19(8);
IV:39(22)–40(23); VI:21–22 (See also Word of God)
creatures
See also specific kinds
God’s love for, I:4(8)
known to angels but unknown to us, V:36(18)
plants as earth’s, V:22
relationships among (See specific creatures)
creeping creatures, See reptiles
crops
See also plants
creation of, earth mentioned separately,
II:25(12)
the greenery of the field, V:7(4)–11
primordial reasons as influencing,
VI:17(10)
seeds as from, VI:9(6)
crucifixion, IV:21(11)
Daniel, III:21(15), 24(15); XII:10, 20(9), 23
darkness:
as creatures uniformed, I:32(17)–35
darkness over the abyss, I:3; IV:39(22)
night, as called, IV:37(20) (See also night)
not all darkness as night, I:24(12)
day(s)
See also evening; morning; night
as (angelic) knowledge of a thing in the
Word of God, IV:40(23), 41(24)
(See also under angelic knowledge)
creation narrative, meaning in, II:43(26)
evening and morning, sequence of,
I:24(12)–25
first in six-day account of creation, V:5(3)
heavenly bodies as marking,
II:28(14)–29
interpretation, as not metaphorical/allegorical, IV:45(28)
light as called (See light)
lights in firmament as marking,
II:28(14)–29
and night, alternation of, IV:38(21)
as spiritual reality, IV:45(28)
sun as ruling, II:32(25)
days of creation, IV
See also simultaneous creation
“hidden day,” VII:7(5)
night not mentioned in, II:42(25)

On Genesis
On Genesis

as not normal, solar days, II:44(27); V:4(2)
as one day recurring six (or seven) times, IV:37; V:1(1)–3, 5(3)–6
order in, II:26(13)–27; V:5(3)
and simultaneous creation, both as occurring, IV:55(34)–55; V:5(3)–6, 35(17)
six, the number, as corresponding to parts of, IV:2(2)–6
six days, understanding, IV:1(1)
death:
Adam and Eve becoming subject to, XI:42(32)
bodily disorders causing, VII:25(19)
disease and, IX:17
Elijah and Enoch as avoiding, XI:11
original sin and, VI:34(23)–35(24)
and resurrection of the body (See resurrection of the dead)
sin as bringing about, IX:14(9)–15
the soul at, XII:59(31)–61 (See also heaven (God's abode); hell)
deeds: Genesis as reporting, I:1(1)
demon(s), XII:28
as airy beings, III:14(10); XII:34(17)
angel of light, masquerading as, XII:28
bad angels, XI:37 (See also under angels)
the devil and, XI:31(24) (See also Satan)
power of, XI:35(28)
demon-possession:
demon-possessed men, visions of, XII:35–36
feigned, XII:47
demonic communication, XII:34(17)–38
devil, See Satan
discernment (good and evil, knowledge of), XI:53
See also tree of knowledge of good and evil
disease, IX:17
Adam and Eve becoming subject to, XI:42(32)
divination, XII:27(13)–30
rejecting; II:35(17)–37
unusual cases of, XII:45(22)–48
Divine Word, See Word of God
divorce, IX:12(7)
donkey of Balaam, IX:32; XI:37
dragon(s), III:13(9)
Satan as called, VII:14(10)
This dragon which you fashioned to make fun of him, X:27(20)
dreams, dreaming
See also visions
various kinds, XII:3(2)–5
wet dreams, XII:31(15)
dry land, See earth
dust: men as fashioned from, VII:1(1)–6(4)
earth, element of
See also elements, the four
body, as present in, III:6(4); VII:20(13)
earth (the world; dry land)
See also heaven and earth
air as above, II:5(2)
appearance of, II:24(11)
beasts fashioned from, IX:1(1)–2
creation of crops and trees mentioned separately from, II:25(12)
as element (See earth, element of (above); elements)
formless matter (See formless matter)
heaven, as including, XIII:9(7)–10
as invisible and shapeless, I:3
"last of the elements of the cosmos,"
V:14
place of creation, II:24(11)
simple faith of little ones (symbolizing), II:4
in six-day account of creation, V:5(3)
water as covering (See water)
eating; See food
ecstasy: different kinds of, XII:3(2)–5
Eden, Garden of, See Paradise
Egypt, V:19(6)–20(7), 25(10)
elements, the four
See also air; earth; fire; water
animals, corresponding, III:13(9)
body, as present in, VII:20(13)
five senses in relation to, III:6(4)–7(5)
one changing into another, III:4(4)
weights of, I:39; II:1(1)–8
Elijah, VIII:11; IX:11
Emmanuel, See Jesus Christ
Enoch, VIII:2(1); IX:11
envy, X:18(14)
See also avarice
Esau: Jacob and, II:36; VI: 14(9), 16(9)
eternity:
God as not changeable, VIII:39(20)–44(23), 48(26)
time and, I:6
Ethiopia, VIII:13(7)
Euphrates River, the, VIII:13(7)
Eve
See also Adam and Eve: woman
Adam led into sin by, XI:58(42)–60
Adam naming, XI:51(38)
creation of, IX: X:1(1)–2
as helper, IX:5(3)–7. 9(5)
mother of all living, XI:51(38)
and the serpent, XI:38(30)–39
soul of, X:1(1)–2, 17(10)
evening
See also day; light; morning; morning and evening
as (angelic) knowledge of a thing in itself;
self-knowledge, IV:39(22), 40(23),
47(30), 49(32), V:36(18)
and morning, sequence of, I:23(12)–25
evil
See also Satan; sin
before birth, VI:14(9)
evil people, reason for creating,
XI:10(8)–15
good and, nature of, VIII:31(14)–32
knowing and experiencing, VIII:31(14)–32,
34(16)–35
the love of money, XI:19(15)–20
people, bad as of service to good,
XI:10(8)–13(10)
punishment of wicked as benefiting the good,
XI:14(11)–15
exegesis, biblical:
Augustine’s early efforts at, VIII:5(2)
avoiding rigidity in, I:36(18)
divine words, depths of, I:41(21)
figurative and literal interpretations, I:1(1);
VIII:5(2)
multiple meanings of scripture, I:1(1)
rashness in, avoiding, I:37(18), 40(20);
IV:45(28); VII:42(28); IX:321(1);
XII:1(1)
science and, I:21, 38–39(19)
three criteria of, I:41(21)
eyes:
of Adam, as opened, VIII:13(14);
XI:40(31)–41
eyesight/vision, I:31; IV:54; VII:20(13)
facts that are narrated: literal interpretation as (See literal interpretation)
faith:
creation as matter of, I:28(14)
and reason, as complementary, I:28(14);
VII:35(24); XII:30(14)
rule of (criteria for Biblical interpretation),
I:41(21)
science and, I:39(19)–41(21); II:20(9);
V:23(8); XII:30(14)
simple, of children, II:1
faithfulness: of God (See grace of God)
fall of man, XI
blessedness before, XI:23(18)–24
pride as reason for, XI:7(5)
fall of Satan, See under Satan
farming (agriculture), VIII:15(8)–23
female: and male, “eternal diversity,”
III:34(22) (See also Eve; woman)
fifth day of creation, III:1(1); VII:18(12)
fig leaves, XI:42(32)
figurative meaning and interpretation, I:1(1),
34(17); VIII:8(4)
See also literal meaning; specific subjects
the fall, up until, VIII:2(1)
scripture as both literal and figurative,
I:1(1)
fire: “pure and bright fire of heaven,”
VII:27(21)
fire, element of
See also elements, the four
air as below, II:6(3)
body, as present in, VII:20(13)
soul acting through body by, III:7(5)
firmament, II:1(1)–4, 23(10)
lights in (See lamps in the heavens)
first day of creation, I: I:18(10)–22
fish, III:11(8)–12
See also animals
Increase and multiply, III:21(13)
“reptiles of live souls,” III:11(8)–12
flesh: carnal pleasures (See lust)
flood, the:
changing air to water, III:2(2)–3
heavens as destroyed in, II:2(2)–3
flying creatures, See birds
food:
man, provided for, III:33(21)
trees as providing, V:11
forbidden fruit, See tree of knowledge of good and evil
formless matter, I:2, 9(4), 28–30
heaven and earth as, I:28
as prior not in time but causality,
V:12(5)–16
as prior to things formed from it,
I:29(15)–30
formlessness, spiritual, I:10(5)–11
fornication, IX:12(7)–13(8)
fourth day of creation, II: II:32(25)
sun, function of, I:23(11)
fruit:
forbidden (See tree of knowledge of good and evil)
trees, unfruitful, III:27(18)–28
On Genesis

future:
  revelation as unfolding, IX:23(13)
events that are predicted, figurative interpretation as (See figurative interpretation)

Ganges River, the, VIII:13(7)

Garden of Eden, See Paradise
gardening (agriculture), VIII:15(8)–23

garments, See clothing

Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees, On, VII:5(2)

See also specific topics
correlated to this work, VIII:5(2)
figurative interpretation in, VIII:5(2)

Genesis, book of
See also Bible; Old Testament; specific topics
days of, IV:56(35)
deeds, as reporting, I:1(1)
figurative, meaning as, I:1(1), 34(17)
literal, meaning as, I:1(1), 34(17);
VIII:2(1), 8(4)

Gihon River, the, VIII:13(7)
See also Nile

God
See also Trinity; specific topics
appearance of, IX:3(2)
creative power of, VI:23(13)–26(15)
divine providence (See providence, divine)
as eternal, VIII:48(26)
existence of all things dependent on,
IV:22(12)–23
experiencing face-to-face, XI:43(33);
XII:54–55(27)
I am who I am, V:34(16)
ideal relationship with, IV:39(22)
knowledge of (See under knowledge;
Wisdom of God)
as Light, XII:59(31)
as loving his creation, I:14(8)
as measure, number, and weight, IV:7(3)–8,
11(5)–15
nature of, V:34(16)
as near to us, V:34(16)
as not needing his creation, IV:26(15)–28
the Son as one with, I:9(4)–11 (See also
under Jesus Christ (the Son))
“the Lord God,” VIII:24(11)
as unchangeable, VIII:39(20)–44(23),
48(27)
voice of, I:4(2)–6; VIII:37(18); IX:3(2)–4;
XI:43(33)–44 (See also Word of God)
Wisdom of (See Wisdom of God)
Word of (See Word of God)
work as continuing, IV:22(12)–23;
V:27(11)–28(12), 40(20)–41;
VI:23(13)
work of, I:36(18)–37; IX:29(16)–30
gold, VIII:13(7); X:44(26)
good, goodness:
before birth, VI:14(9)
and evil, nature of, VIII:31(14)–32
And God saw that it was good, I:11,
14(8), 35; III:36(24)–37
people, bad as of service to good,
XI:10(8)–13(10)
punishment of wicked as benefiting,
XI:14(11)–15
good and evil, knowledge of, XI:53
See also tree of knowledge of good and
evil
grace of God, IV:24(13); VII:22;
VIII:25(2)–27; IX:33(18)–35; X:24
See also under light: spiritual
justification (See justification)
My grace is enough for you, III:24(15)
mystery of, IX:34
and overcoming temptation, XI:22(17)
grain: rubbing in hands, I:41(21)
greenery of the field, V:4(2)

Hagar, VII:10
Havilah, land of, VIII:13(7)
hay: as made before it sprang up, V:7(4)–11
head-covering, XI:58(42)
hearing: speech as requiring hearer, I:16
heaven: “heavens of heavens,” I:15(9),
32(17); III:1(1)
heaven (abode of God), XII:59(31)–69(36)
angels in, 46(29)
form and shape as unimportant, II:9(20)
third heaven, XII:1(1)–14,
56(28)–59(31), 65(34)–67
three heavens, if more than, XII:57(29)
truth, as understanding (symbolizing), II:4
heaven and earth, I:1(1)–3, 8; II:27
as formless matter, I:28
second in six-day account of creation,
V:5(3)

heaven (the sky), III:5
See also air; firmament; sky
earth as including, III:9(7)–10
flood, as destroyed in, III:2(2)–3
solid structure of, II:1(1)
water above, II:9(5)
heaven (the starry firmament), II:6(3)
lamps in (See heavenly bodies, below;
lamps in heaven)
The Literal Meaning of Genesis

motion of, II:23
heavenly bodies
See also lamps in the heavens; specific names and kinds
animate or inanimate, II:38(18)
marking seasons, days, and years, II:28(14)–29
“music of the spheres,” I:40(20)
for signs and times (See signs and times)
spirits, if ruled by, II:38(18)
Hebrew (language), I:36(18)
hell, VII:9(5); XII:60(32)–64, 66
and the bosom of Abraham (See bosom of Abraham)
heretics See Manichees; specific topics and theories
hebrew
hermaphrodites, III:34(22)
Hezekiah, VI:28(17)
“hidden day,” VII:7(5)
history
See also time
beginning of, VIII:2(1)
creation as basis of, I:4(2); VIII:3(1)
historical facts as figurative interpretation
(See figurative interpretation)
Holy Spirit
See also Trinity; specific topics
the breath of life, X:8(5)
Do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, IV:18
seven gifts of, 15
The Spirit of God was being borne over the water, I:11–14(8), 36(18)
human beings
See also man; soul; woman; specific topics
angels, relationship with, VIII:46(25)–47;
XI:23(18)–25(19)
body, creation of, III:34(22) (See also body)
God, ideal relationship with, IV:39(22)
God as working and guarding,
VIII:25(12)–27
And God saw that it was good, God not saying about, III:36(24)–37
harmony with creation, achieving, IV:39(22)
knowledge of (See under knowledge)
mind of, vs. angelic mind, IV:49(32)
spirit, creation of, III:34(22)
spiritual element in, XII:49(23)

And thus it was made, III:30(19)–32
immortality, III:20, 33(21); VI:31(20)
In the beginning, I:2
as Word of God, I:2 (See also beginning;
Word of God)
Increase and multiply, III:33(21)
infants:
baptism of, X:23(14)–29(16)
Before I formed you in the womb, I knew you, X:23(14)–24
original sin and, X:22(13)–25
insects, VII:15
creation of, III:22(14)–23
intellect:
intellectual vision as not deceived,
XII:28(14)–30 (See also under vision)
senses as inferior to, VII:20(14)
intelligence, See knowledge
intercourse, sexual, See sexual intercourse
Isaac, VII:10
Isaiah, XI:31(24)
Ishmael, VII:10
Jacob, VII:8(4); VIII:8(4); XII:64
and Esau, II:36; VI:14(9), 16(9)
Jeremiah, VI:14(9)
Jerusalem, XII:56(28)
Jesus Christ (the Son)
See also Trinity
accepting the form of a slave, VI:30(19)
Adam as “the form of the one to come,”
VII:1(1)
as Beginning, I:9(4)–12(6)
in Christ shall all be made alive, VIII:32
as cornerstone, VII:8(4)
crucifixion of, IV:21(11)
a little less than the angels, VI:30(19)
as one with God the Father, I:9(4)–11
as sinless, VIII:32
soul of, X:32(18)–37(21)
as visible member of Trinity, VIII:50
without sin, X:37(21)
as Word of God, I:2, 9(4)–11 (See also
Word of God)
John, V:29(13)
Joseph, husband of Mary, XII:44(21)
Joseph, son of Jacob, XII:20(9)
journalists, XI:35(28)
Judas, XI:34(27)
one of you is the devil, XI:31(24)
justification, VI:26(37)–27, 35(24), 37(26)–38

On Genesis
kings, See individual names

knowledge:
  angelic (See angelic knowledge)
  different ways of knowing things, V:28(12)
  divine (See knowledge, divine (below))
  human, as limited, V:36(18); VI:23–25(14), 27(16)
  knowing God, IV:19; V:34(16)

knowledge, divine:
  foreknowledge, IV:19; V:29(13)–30, 36(18); VI:28(17)
  knowing God, or rather known by God, IV:19

knowledge of good and evil, tree of, See tree of knowledge of good and evil

lamps in the heavens, II:26(13), 28(14)–29
light that preceded, IV:38(21)

land (dry land), See earth

language(s):
  space and time in, I:5; V:34(16)
  Syriac, I:36(18)
  voice of God, I:5 (See also under God; Word of God)

Lazarus (beggar), VII:9(5)

finger of, X:41(25)

Let light be made, I:4(2), 7(3)–8, 15(9)–17, 38(19); II:15(7)
time, question of, I:15(9)–17
Levi, VI:13(8)

Abraham, as hidden in loins of, IX:34:
  X:34(19)–37(21)

life:
  creation of, difficulties understanding, IX:29–30
  of the faithful vs. the corrupt, IV:40(23)
  as through God, II:12; V:29(13)–33(15);
    VII:48(26)
walking now in the newness of life, IV:24(13)
what was made in him is life, V:30–32
life, tree of, See tree of life
Life, woman as named, XI:51(38)
light, I:31–35; II:27

angels, as company of, IV:39(22)
bodily (corporeal), I:7(3)–8, 38(19);
  IV:39(22)
before creation of sun, I:21–22
day, as called, I:20; IV:37(20) (See also day)
diffusion and contraction of, theory,
  I:30(16)–31

as enlightenment of intellectual creatures,
  I:32(17)–35
first in six-day account of creation, V:5(3)

God as, I:3; XII:59(31)
lamps in the heavens (See lamps in the heavens)

Let light be made, I:4(2), 7(3)–8,
15(9)–17, 38(19); II:15(7)
life of the faithful as, IV:40(23)
nature of, I:7(3)–8
soul, as not in, VII:18(12)–19
soul governing body by, VII:21(15),
25(19)
spiritual, I:7(3)–8, 22, 32(17)–35, 38(19);
IV:39(22) (See also grace)
as spiritual reality, IV:45(28)
spiritual vs. corporeal, I:7(3)–8

likeness to God, See image and likeness of God
lion(s), VII:15
Daniel in the lions’ den, III:24(15)
Satan as called, VII:14(10)
literal meaning and interpretation, XI:2
See also figurative meaning; specific subjects in Genesis, I:1(1), 34(17);
  VIII:1(1)–14(7)
scrutiny as both literal and figurative, I:1(1)

The Literal Meaning of Genesis:
Augustine’s method in, I:38(19)–39
literal, exegesis as, I:2(1); VIII:5(2)
questions, meanings stated by way of,
  I:40(20)

Lord: “the Lord God,” VIII:24(11)
love, I:13(7)
dutiful, of God, XI:22(17)
of God for creatures, I:14(8)
holy, XI:19(15)–20
love your neighbor as yourself;
  XII:22(11)
of money (avarice), XI:19(15)–20
two loves in two cities, XI:20
unclean, XI:19(15)–20
Lucan (poet), III:2(2)

Lucifer, See Satan
luminaries of heaven, See heavenly bodies;
  lamps in the heavens; stars
lust, X:32(18); XI:15
See also nakedness; sexuality, human

flesh and spirit lusting against each other,
  X:20(12)–21

“made,” “making,” III:29(19), 30(19)–32, 35(22)
The Literal Meaning of Genesis

The meaning of, II:11–15(7)
And thus it was made, II:10(6)–13
God not saying, III:30(20)–32
meaning of, III:35(22)

male
See also Adam; man
and female, “eternal diversity,” III:34(22)

Mamre, oak of, XI:46

man
See also Adam; human beings; specific subjects
body and soul of (See body; soul)
breath of life given, VII:23(17)
creation of, III:29(19)–32; VI

dust from the earth, as fashioned from,
VII:1(1)–6(4)
the first (See Adam)
as image and glory of God, XI:58(42)
in image and likeness of God (See image and likeness of God)
other creatures, similarities and differences,
VI:20(12)–22
punishment of, XI:51(38)
soul of, VII
And thus it was made, God not saying,
III:30(20)–32
woman as made from, IX; X:1(1)–2
woman causing to sin, XI:58(42)

Manichees, Manicheans:
blasphemy by, VIII:5(2)
On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees
(See Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees, On)
as heretics, XI:17(13)
Satan, not recognizing as of God, XI:17(13)
transmigration of souls, belief in,
VII:16(1)–18
two natures and two wills, doctrine of,
X:22(13)–23

marriage:
absent after resurrection, IX:15
of Adam and Eve (See Adam and Eve)
The Good of Marriage, Saint Augustine’s book, IX:12(7)
value of, IX:12(7)

Marsi, XI:35(28)
Martha, IV:25(14)
Mary, mother of Jesus, XII:44(21)
as Virgin, X:32(18)
Mary, sister of Martha, IV:25(14)
Mary, sister of Moses, XII:55(27)
meaning in the Bible, See exegesis; figurative meaning; literal meaning; specific topics

measure:
without measure, IV:8
measure and number and weight,
III:25(16); IV:7(3)–12, 52;
VI:27(16)
mercy of God, X:24
money: love of, XI:19(15)

moon
See also heavenly bodies
creation, phase of, II:30(15)–32
night, as ruling, II:32(25)
shape of on first day (full or new),
II:30(15)–32
sun and stars, relative brilliance,
II:33(16)–34

morning
See also day; evening; light
phase (in angelic knowledge) of things being known straight from God,
IV:39(22), 47(30)
morning and evening
See also evening
angelic knowledge of creation, as phases in, IV:36(18), 39(22) (See also under angelic knowledge)
sequence of, I:23(12), 24(12)–25
seventh day, morning but no evening as having, IV:36

Moses, VI:20(12)
God revealed to, V:34(16); VIII:37(18);
XII:55(27)–56(28)
rod turned to serpent, VI:24

mother of all living, XI:51(38)
Mount Olympus, III:2(2)
“music of the spheres,” I:40(20)
mystery (-ies):
of grace, IX:34
of the kingdom, revealed to angels, V:37(19)–39
of the Trinity (See Trinity)
nakedness
See also lust; sexuality, human of Adam and Eve, XI:1(1), 3
Adam and Eve realizing, 
XI:40(31)–42(32)
I was afraid, because I am naked, and I hid myself, XI:45(34)–46
sin of Adam and Eve, theories, 
XI:40(31)–41, 56(41)–57

nature
See also specific topics
gardening, VIII:16
human understanding of, as limited,
VI:23–25(14), 27(16)
On Genesis

“The Nature of Things,” VII:16
Nebuchadnezzar, XII:20(9)
New Testament, See Bible; scripture; specific topics
night
See also day; darkness
and day, alternation of, IV:38(21)–39(22)
six days of creation, as not mentioned in, II:42(25)
Nile River, the, V:19(6)–20(7), 25(10); VIII:13(7)
Noah, IX:19(11)
numbers
See also specific numbers
measure and number and weight (See under measure)
six without number, IV:8
six as the perfect, IV:2(2)–6

oak of Mamre, XI:46
Ocean, IV:54
oil, II:2
Old Testament
See also Bible; scripture
Manichean blasphemy of, VIII:5(2)
Olympus, Mount, III:2(2), 3
omnipotence, VI:23(13)–24
original sin, VI:14(9)–16
in Adam all shall die, VIII:32
Christ as without, X:37(21)
and death of the body, VI:34(23)–35(24)
infants and (See under infants)
overcoming, IX:19(11)
the soul and, X:18(11)–19
“the whole batch or lump” of humans contracting, VI:16

pagans, XII:47
See also unbelievers
parables, VIII:13(7)
paradise, heavenly, See heaven (God’s abode)
Paradise (Garden of Eden), V:21; VIII
See also specific topics
account of, three ways of taking,
VIII:1(1)–4
Adam and Eve expelled from, XI:1(1), 54(40)–55
Adam as cultivator of, VIII:15(8)–22
Genesis account as literal (historical),
VIII:1(1)–4
interpretations, different, VIII:1(1)–4, 8(4)
man as put in to guard, VIII:19(10)–23
man as put in to work, VIII:15(8)–17(9)
plants and trees in, VI:5; VIII:6(3)–7
rivers of, VIII:13(7)–14 (See also specific names)
sixth day of creation, regarding, VIII:7
spring watering, V:21–22
as symbol of spiritual reality, VIII:2(1)
third day of creation, regarding, VIII:6(3)
paranormal communication, XII:34(17)–38
Paul, apostle, Saint:
on angels knowing mystery of the kingdom, V:38
on bodies, natural and spiritual,
VI:30(19)
on body embodying soul, VI:30(19)
on charity, I:13(7)
on flesh lusting against spirit, X:20(12)
on head-coverings for women, XI:58(42)
in him we live and move and are, IV:23
knowing God, or rather known by God,
IV:19
on mysteries of the kingdom, V:38
no good or evil before birth, teaching of,
VI:14(9)–16
perfection, as lacking, III:24(15)
on pride and avarice, XI:19(15)
seeing God, XII:56(28)
third heaven, account of, XII:1(1)–14,
56(28)–57(29), 65(34)–67
a thorn in the flesh, as given, III:24(15)
women, regarding, XI:50(37), 58(42)
people, See human beings; man
perfection: Paul admitting lack of, III:24(15)
Peter, XII:24, 61
vision of, XII:24
Pharaoh, XII:20(9)
philosophers: on souls, human and animal,
VII:13–15
philosophy: false, I:41(21)
Fishton River, the, VIII:13(7)
plants, V:44(23)–45
See also specific kinds
creation of, V:7(4)–11
as earth’s creatures, V:22
gardening, VIII:16
the greenery of the field, V:4(2), 7(4)–11
in Paradise, VIII:6(3)–7
Platonic doctrine: transmigration of souls (See transmigration of souls)
poet: Lucan, III:2(2)
Preparation Day, IV:21(11)
pride, XI:19(15)–20
beginning of all sin, XI:7(5), 19(15)–20, 21(16)

Volume I/13
On Genesis
On Genesis

as both literal and figurative, I:1(1)
multiple meanings of, I:1(1)
purpose of, I:40(20)
spiritual meaning in (See figurative
interpretation)
as twofold, I:1(1)
sea(s), I:26
in six-day account of creation, V:5(3)
seasons: lights in firmament as marking,
II:28(14)–29
second day of creation, II
work of, II
seeds, V:44(23)
of body and soul, X:37(21)
as from crops, V:9(6)
material, and primordial reasons,
ifferences between, VI:9(6)
motion, as growing from, V:20(7)
primordial reasons as influencing,
V:44(23)–45; VI:17(10)
senses, IX:25
the five, VII:20(13)
four elements and, III:6(4)–7
intellect as superior, VII:20(14)
as separating men and animals from plants,
VII:22(16)
serpent, VII:21
cleverness of, XI:4(2)
God as permitting devil to use, XI:5(3),
16(12)
punishment of, XI:49(36)
rod turned to, VI:24
Satans and, XI:4(2), 34(27)–37
subtlety of, XI:4(2), 36(29)–37
temptation, reason for use in, XI:16(12)
and the woman, XI:38(30)–39
Seth, VIII:4; IX:19(11)
seven, the number:
Holy Spirit, as dedicated to, V:15
seventh day, IV

as created, or just period of time., IV:37(20)
God as resting on, IV:16–23, 25(14)–28
(See also rest, of God)
God as sanctifying, IV:25(14)–30
morning but no evening, as having,
IV:31(18)–36
sexual intercourse:
immortality and, III:33(21)
Increase and multiply, III:33(21)
original sin and, III:33(21)
Paradise, as not happening in, IX:8(4),
13(8)–14(9), 16(10)–18
for procreation of children, IX:5(3)–7,
12(7), 19(11)

and sin, IX:10(6)–11
sin of Adam and Eve, theories,
XI:56(41)–57
sexuality, human
See also nakedness
Adam and Eve, relationship of,
IX:13(8)–19(11)
and marriage (See marriage)
sexual intercourse (See sexual
intercourse, above)
sin, regarding, IX:5(3)–19(11)
wet dreams, XII:31(15)
signs and times: problems with, II:28(14)–29
silver, X:44(26)
simultaneous creation, IV:51(33)–52;
V:1(1)–3, 5(3)–6
(See also time
creatures as at once completed and just
begun, VI:17(10)–19
ongoing development still as from,
V:27(11)–28(12), 44(23)–45
and six-day creation, both as occurring,
IV:53(34)–55; V:5(3)–6, 35(17)
sin
See also evil; specific sins
Adam led into by Eve, XI:58(42)–60
children and, X:22(13)
Christ as without, X:37(21)
ever people (See under evil)
God as not causing, I:32(17)
and human nature, XI:9(7)
Jesus Christ as without, VIII:32
life if Adam and Eve had not sinned (See
under Adam and Eve)
original (See original sin)
pride as first (See under pride)
of Satan, XI:17(13)–18(14),
21(16)–22(17)
sexuality, regarding, IX:5(3)–19(11)
trying to avoid as bringing its opposite
vice, XI:13(6)
Sirach, book of: on the sun, I:21
six, the number:
“days” of creation, importance in,
IV:1(1)
perfection of, IV:2(2)–6, 13–14, 28,
39(22); V:10
six days of creation, See days of creation
sixth day of creation, IV:1(1)
God addressing people on, VI:13(8)
man created, III:29(19)–32
soul, creation of, VI:12(7)
work of, III
skin, tunics of, XI:52(39)–53
sky

See also air; heaven
the birds of the sky, II:7(4)
rotation or stillness of, II:23(10)
shape of, II:20(9)–22
slave(s), slavery: accepting the form of a slave,
VI:30(19)
solid structure, the, See firmament; heaven
Solomon: women evilly influencing, XI:59
Son of God, See “Beginning”; Jesus Christ;
Word of God

Song of Songs, VIII:2(1)
soul:
of Christ, X:32(18)–37(21)
spirit not meaning the same thing, 
VI:30(10)–39(28)
soul (human), VII
See also specific topics
of Adam (See Adam—soul of)
angels and, VII:34(23); X:8(5)
and animal, VII:13–17
author’s previous books on, X:3(2)
body, as distinct from, VII:25(19)–26(20); 
X:40(24)
body, as governing and moving,
VII:21(15), 25(19);
VIII:40(21)–45(23); XII:41(19)
as body, Tertullian’s belief, X:41(25)–45
the breath of life, VIII:40(21)–43(23);
X:8(5)
causal formula, creation and,
VII:32(22)–34(23)
changeable in time, but not space,
VII:39(20)–44(23)
composition of, VII:7(5)–9(6); 18–24(18)
corporeal (material), as not, VII:18–19,
27(21)–31; X:40(24)
creation of, VII:12(7);
VII
at death, XII:59(31)–61 (See also heaven 
(spiritual); hell)
difficulty of topic, VI:40(29)
“ensouled” and “enspirited” body,
VI:30(19)–39(28); IX:6; XII:18
of Eve, X:1(1)–2, 17(10)
fire, as acting through body by, III:7(5)
Before I formed you in the womb, I knew 
you, X:23(14)–24
I obtained a good soul by lot, X:30(17)–33
lust, as contributing to cause, X:20(12)–21
medical science regarding,
VII:20(13)–25(19)
origin of, three possibilities regarding,
X:4(3)–6, 9(6)–17(10)
philosophers regarding, VII:13–15
pre-existence of (theory), VII:15(9)
reunion with glorified body, XII:68(35)
scripture as nourishment for, I:40(20)
simultaneous creation and,
VII:35(24)–39
spiritual material and composition of,
VII:9(6)–13
transmigration of (See transmigration of 
souls)
what it’s not, X:7(4), 40(24)
woman’s as made from man’s, idea, 
X:1(1)–2

spirit:
air as called, VII:30; XII:18
meaning of, XII:20
soul not meaning the same thing,
VI:30(19)–39(28); IX:6; XII:18
spirit, as immaterial reality (different 
meaning), XII:9(4)
Spirit of God, See Holy Spirit
spiritual, the word, XII:18–19(8)
spiritual formlessness, I:10(5)–11
spiritual light
See grace; light: spiritual
spiritual material (composition of soul),
VII:9(6)–13
spiritual meaning in scripture, See figurative 
interpretation
spring: which watered the whole earth,
V:19–22, 24(9)–26
stars
See also heavenly bodies; lamps in the 
heavens
sun and moon, relative brilliance,
II:33(16)–34
stone(s): rejected by the builders which 
became a cornerstone, VII:8(4)
sun, I:21–22
See also heavenly bodies
day, as ruling, I:23(11); II:32(25)
fourth day, as created on, I:23(11)
moon and stars, relative brilliance, 
II:33(16)–34
mythical beliefs regarding, I:22(11)
nimrod, book of, on, I:21
supercelestial angels, V:10
Syriac (language), I:36(18)
temptation: God as permitting, XI:6(4), 8(6)–9(7), 15
temptation of Adam and Eve, VIII:31(14);
XI:1(1), 6(4)
serpent, reason for use in, XI:16(12)
Tertullian:

On Genesis
On Genesis

Satan envying man, XI:18(14)
soul as body, belief in, X:41(25)–45
traducianism, theory of, X:1(1)
third day of creation, II
plants and trees in Paradise, VIII:6(3)–7
plants created on, II:25(12)
third heaven, XII:1(1)–14, 56(27)–57(29),
65(34)–67
thistles, III:27(18)–28; VII:21
thorns, III:27(18)–28; VII:21
Tiber River, the, VIII:13(7)
Tigris River, the, VIII:13(7)
time, V:35(17)
See also history; specific subjects
angelic knowledge and, IV:46(29)–50
creation as basis of, I:4(2); IV:52, 56(35);
V:12(5)–16; VIII:3(1)
eternity and, difference between (See eternity)
formless matter and, I:29(15)–30;
V:12(5)–16
God as before time, timeless, V:35(17)
God had not rained, V:17(6)–18
heavenly bodies as reckoning, II:28(14)–29
“In the beginning” (See “In the beginning”) and light, creation of, I:15(9)–17
in six days of creation, nature of, V:12(5)–16
voice of God and, I:4(2)–6
world made and ruled in time, V:35(17)
times, signs and, See signs and times
Tower of Babel, IX:21
traducianism, theory of, X:1(1)
transmigration of souls, VII:13(9); XI:37
arguments against, VII:12–18
tree of knowledge of good and evil, VIII:12(6);
XI:41
Adam, command given to, VIII:28(13)–30,
36(17)
historical and allegorical explanations,
VIII:8(4)–11
naming of, VIII:33(15)–35
tree of life, VIII:9(5)–11
angels guarding, XI:1(1), 55
historical and allegorical explanations,
VIII:8(4)–11
trees
See also plants
beauty of, V:11, 44(23)
creation of, earth mentioned separately,
II:25(12)
drew out from the earth...every tree,
V:7(4)–11
unfruitful, III:27(18)–28
trials: self-knowledge as deeper through,
III:24(15)
Trinity
See also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ
and creation of man, III:29(19)
mystery of, I:12(6)–14(8)
persons of, II:10(6)–14
troubles, See trials
truth:
eternal, IX:3(2)
of God (See also grace of God)
revelation over reason, I:40(20)
Satan not grounded in, X:30(23)
tunics of skin, XI:52(39)–53
Tyre, Prince of, VIII:31(14)
unbelievers:
and Christian know-it-alls, I:39
conversion of (See conversion)
way to faith, concern for, I:39(19);
II:20(9); V:23(8)
unformed basic material/unformed matter, See formless matter
vegetation, See plants
vice. See sin
virginity:
Mary as Virgin, X:32(18)
value of, IX:2(7)
visions (sight), I:31; IV:54; VII:20(13)
visions, effect on, XII:42(20)
visions
See also dreams
after resurrection, XII:69(36)
body’s influence as limited,
XII:42(20)–43
of boy in extreme pain, XII:37–38
causes of, XII:39(18)–41(19), 44(21)
of demon-possessed men, XII:35–36
divination (See divination)
God, experiencing face to face,
XII:54–55(27) (See also rapture)
Moses and Paul as experiencing,
XII:55(27)–56(28)
Peter, angel rescuing, XII:30
soul as deceived through, XII:52(25)
third heaven, Paul’s account of,
XII:1(1)–14, 56(28)–57(29),
65(34)–37
visions, three kinds of (bodily, intellectual, spiritual), XII:15(6)–18
bodily (corporeal), XII:29–30
compared, XII:15(6)–17, 15(6)–26,
The Literal Meaning of Genesis

32(16)–33, 50(24)–52(25), 58(30)
gradations in, XII:58(30)–59(31)
heirarchical order of, XII:50(24)–51
intellectual, XII:21(10), 22(11)–26, 28(14)–30, 52(25), 59(31)
spiritual, XII:18–19(8), 22(11)–26, 44(21), 49(23)
voice of God, VI:13(8)
See also under God
Word of God as, I:9(4) (See also Word of God)

water, the element
See also elements, the four
as below and above air, II:5(2), 7(4)–8
water(s)
See also specific descriptions (sea, river, specific names)
above solid structure of sky, II:1(1)–3
above the starry heavens, II:9(5)
animals of, as first, III:1(1)
aquatic animals, blessing given, III:21(13)
birds as created from, III:9(7)–10, 14(10)–15
dry land, as receding for, I:26–27
the flood, III:2(2)–3
gathering of, I:25–26; II:24(11); III:35(23)
irrigation, IX:27
place of creation, II:24(11)
solid structure (firmament) in midst of,
II:1(1)–4
The Spirit of God was being borne over the water, I:11–14(8), 36(18)
spring which watered the whole earth,
V:19–22, 24(9)–26
week(s):
days of, and seven days of Genesis,
IV:44(27)
heavenly bodies as marking, II:28(14)–29
weight, III:25(16)
measure and number and weight (See measure and number and weight)
weight without weight, IV:8
wet dreams, XII:31(15)
wickedness, See evil; sin
widowhood, IX:12(7)
wisdom:
of angels (See angelic knowledge)
tree of life symbolizing, VIII:9(5)–11
Wisdom, book of:
I obtained a good soul by lot,
X:30(17)–33
Wisdom of God, IV:23; VII:10
all things, all life as created through,
V:29(13)–33(15)
what was made in him is life, V:30–32
woman
See also Eve
creation of, IX
formation of, description, IX:26(15)–26
and head-covering, XI:58(42)
image and likeness of God, as made to,
III:34(22)
making of, interpretation, mystical or prophetic, IX:23(13)
Paul’s teachings regarding (See under Paul)
punishment of, X:50(37)
soul as made from man’s, idea, X:1(1)–2
Word, Wisdom of, II:16(8)–19
Word of God, I:10(5)–11; V:29(13)
See also Wisdom of God
all creation made from, II:19(8):
IV:39(22)–40(23); VI:20–22
angelic knowledge in, IV:40(23)–41(24)
creation as from, I:19(8):
IV:39(22)–40(23)
as eternal, I:6
God said, I:8
as how God says everything, I:9(4)
nature of, I:4(2)–6
reason for all creation as in, II:10(6)–14
same as Son of God, I:9(4)–11 (See also Jesus Christ (the Son))
what was made in him is life, V:30–32
work:
of God (See under God)
God as continuing, IV:22(12)–23;
V:27(11)–28(12), 40(20)–41, 44(23)–46; VI:23(13)
humans, God as working and guarding,
VIII:25(12)–27
man as put in Paradise for, VIII:15(8)–16
world, See earth
years: heavenly bodies as marking,
II:28(14)–29

On Genesis
Index from
On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis,
an Unfinished Book
(De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus)

Included in book:

Translation, introduction, and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
This volume contains three works on the Book of Genesis: On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees (De Genesi adversus Manichaeos), Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus) and the third and longest, The Literal Meaning of Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram).

Volume I/13 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-175-6, 6 x 9 in., 540 pp., 2002
Paperback: 978-1-56548-201-2, 6 x 9 in., 539 pp., 2004

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis

### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>4, 11; 4, 13; 4, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>5, 19; 8, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>5, 22; 5, 23; 15, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>6, 26; 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6-7</td>
<td>8, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>10, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>11, 34; 11, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>11, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>11, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>11, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>14, 44; 15, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>15, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>15, 50; 15, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>15, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>15, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>16, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>16, 55; 16, 57; 16, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>16, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:1</td>
<td>4, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:5</td>
<td>14, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:10</td>
<td>14, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5.2</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Sirach        |        |
| 10:9          | 3, 9 |
| 18:1          | 7, 28; 9, 31 |
| 43:30         | 4, 16 |

| Amos          |        |
| 5:8           | 14, 47 |
| 9:6           | 14, 47 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.3</td>
<td>5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>16, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>3, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Romans        |        |
| 11:36         | 4, 13 |

| 1 Corinthians |        |
| 11:7          | 16, 61 |

| 2 Corinthians |        |
| 6:14          | 5, 23 |

| James         |        |
| 3:9           | 16, 62 |
Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The Roman numerals in the Indexes are the chapter numbers. The Arabic numbers are the paragraph numbers.

Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis

abyss: darkness over the abyss, 11(4)–12
aetiology: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
air, 18
ether, 9
humid, lower, 46
nature of, 14
pure, 45
allegory: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
analogy: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
angel(s):
creation of, 7–8; 21
knowledge of, 20; 24; 27
animals
See also specific kinds
land, 53–45(16)
and man, creation of, 55–56
water, 48(15)–50
beasts, See animals
beauty, 58; 59
of creation, 10; 25
of heavenly bodies, 36(12)
of sky, 30

Volume I/13
Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis

beginning
See also “In the beginning” of day and of night, 42

Bible:
human capacity for understanding, 41(13)
interpretation (See exegesis; literal interpretation; specific subjects)
Old Testament (See Old Testament)
birds, 44(14); 48(15)–50
See also animals
body (human): and soul, 8

Christians: “little ones,” 19(5)
Church, Catholic: faith, short summary of, 2–4(1)
cloud(s): Elijah begging for rain, 47
constellations
See also heavenly bodies
creation of, 8
creation
See also specific subjects
beauty of, 10
Creator, as distinguished from, 2
days of, as not ordinary days, 51
Creator, God as, 2(1)
darkness:
the darkness he called night, 26(6)
darkness over the abyss, 11(4)–12
light, as divided from, 23
various meanings of, 24–25
David, King, 47
day(s), 38(13)
See also light; morning and evening
beginning of, 42
of creation, as not ordinary days, 51
evening and morning, 28(7)
and God called the light day, 26(6)–27
and heavenly bodies, 27, 36(12)
dualism: Creator God as excluding, 2(1)
death
See also heaven and earth
God as naming, 33
invisible and shapeless, 11(4); 14
meaning of, in creation, 9
elements, the four, 18
Elijah, 47
Elisha, 47
eternity
See also time
heavenly bodies and, 38(13)
ether, 9
evening, 28(7); 43
See also day
evil:
nature of, 3
substantiality (rejection of Manichean thesis), 3(1)
exegesis
See also specific topics
basic facts necessary to, 6–10(3); 13(4);
18(4); 19–20(5)
“four ways of expounding the law,” 5(2)
human limitations, recognizing in, 19(5);
29(8); 30(9); 41(13)
literal interpretation, problems with,
19(5)
questions, importance of, 1(1); 27(6);
30(9)
rashness, avoiding in, 1(1); 10(3); 19(5);
29(8); 30(9)
of this work (See Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis)

faith: Catholic, short summary of, 2–4(1)
Father: God as, 60(16)–61 (See also God)
fifth day of creation, 52
firmament
See also heaven
waters above vs., 29(8)–31
first day of creation: light made on, 20
fish, 44(14)
See also animals
fruit, 34(11)–35

Genesis, See specific subjects
God
See also Trinity
as craftsman, 16
as Creator (See Creator, God as)
as Father, 60(16)–61
human mind, divine likeness of, 60
image and likeness of, 55–62
the Trinity as one, 2(1) (See also Trinity)
universe, divine likeness of, 59
voice of, 19(5)
Word of (See Word of God)
good, goodness: of things, natural, 3(1)
head-coverings, 61
heaven and earth, 9–13
heaven (sky), 29(8)–31
See also firmament
God as naming, 31
“lamps” in, 36(12)–37

Volume I/13
meaning of, in creation, 9
heavenly bodies, 29; 36(12)–37; 42
See also specific names and kinds
beauty of, 36(12)
day and night before creation of, 27
as “for days,” 36(12)
lamps fixed in the firmament, 36(12)–43
for signs and for times, 38(13)

hell, 25
heretics, 11(4); 24
See also Manichees
history: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
Holy Spirit, 4; 56
See also Spirit of God
in Trinity, 2
human beings
See also man
reason and mind, divine likeness of, 60

Image and likeness of God, 55–62
differences between the Son and humans in, 57
“In the beginning”: the Son as, 6(3)–7; 14
two hypotheses regarding, 6–8(3)

Jesus Christ (the Son), 2; 6(3); 18; 60(16)–61
See also Trinity
as the beginning, 6(3)
humanity made new through, 4
image of God, 55–62
as Word of God (See under Word of God)
lamps: fixed in the firmament, 36(12)–43
light, 19(5)–25
See also day
darkness, as divided from, 23
“from which everything...has its beginning,” 20
and God called the light day, 26(6)–27
the goodness of, 22
heavenly bodies, 37–43
Let light be made, 8; 19(5)–21

literal interpretation:
problems with, 19(5)
“make,” “making”: meaning of, 55–56
man:
and animals, creation of, 55–56
as image and likeness of God, 55–62
Manichees, Manicheans
See also heretics
dualism of (vs. the Creator God), 2(1)
evil, substantiality of (thesis, rejected here), 3(1)
this work as aimed at, 11(4); 22–23(5)
Mary, mother of Jesus, 4
moon, 40
See also heavenly bodies
morning, 28(7); 43
See also day

New Testament: Old Testament (covenant) in relation to, 5(2)
night
See also darkness; day
the darkness he called night, 26(6)
and heavenly bodies, creation of, 27

Old Testament:
four ways of interpreting, 5(2) (See also exegesis)
Olympus, Mount, 44(14)
Paul, apostle, Saint:
on water, 13
on women, 6(3); 61
Phaenon, 29; 38(13)
Phaethon, 38(13)
planets, See heavenly bodies
plants, 34(11)–35
rain: Elijah begging for, 47
reptiles, 44(14); 48(15)–50
See also animals
rivers, 47
Saturn (Phaenon), 38(13)
scripture, See Bible
sea: God as naming, 33
seasons, 38(13)
signs: for signs and for times, 38(13)
sin:
evil and, 3 (See also evil)
punishment for, 3
sky, See air; heaven
Son, the, See Jesus Christ
soul (human):
and body, 8
pre-existing (theory), 3
spirit: the word, 18
Spirit of God:
meaning of, 16–18
water, as borne over, 11(4); 13; 15–17
springs, 47

On Genesis
stars, 42
See also heavenly bodies
sun
See also heavenly bodies
Phaethon, 38(13)
third day of creation: plants as created,
34(11)–35
time:
  God as not needing, 28(7)
  heavenly bodies measuring, 38(13)
  “In the beginning” (See “In the beginning”)
times, signs and, See signs
trees, 14; 34(11)–35
Trinity, the, 2
See also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ
Catholic teaching regarding, 2(1)
man made to image and likeness of, 61

Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis
See also exegesis
Manichees, as aimed at, 11(4); 22–23(5)
Old Testament, four ways of interpreting in,
5(2)
reason and faith both respected in, 1(1)
two methodological principles in, 1(1)
universe: divine likeness of, 59
Virgin Mary, 4
water(s):
  animals of, 48(15)–50
  gathering of, 32(10)–33
  inhabitants of (See fish; reptiles)
Paul on, 13
sea, God as naming, 33
Spirit of God as borne over, 11(4); 13;
  15–17
springs and rivers, 47
waters above vs. firmament, 29(8)–31
as world’s basic material, 32(10)
wind, 15
Wisdom of God: Jesus as, 4
woman, women:
See also Eve; man
Paul on, 6(3); 61
Word of God, interpretations of meaning,
19(5)
world, See earth
years, 38(13)
Index from
Questions on the Heptateuch
Quaestiones in Heptateuchum
(Questions on the Heptateuch)

Published by New City Press in:

Writings on the Old Testament

Translations by Joseph T. Lienhard, Sean Doyle, and Joseph T. Kelley, introductions and annotated by Joseph T. Lienhard, S. J. and Joseph L. Farrell, O.S.A.

This volume contains Questions on the Heptateuch (Quaestiones in Heptateuchum), Expressions in the Heptateuch (Locutiones in Heptateuchum), Notes on Job (Annotationes in Iob), Eight Questions from the Old Testament (Octo Quaestiones ex Veteri Testamento), and Answer to the Jews (Adversus Iudaeos)

Volume I/14 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-557-0, 6 x 9 in., 822 pp., 2017

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Questions on the Heptateuch

INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

Questions on the Heptateuch
(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Roman numeral refers to the book number; the first number after that is the chapter; if the chapter is followed by a comma, the next number is the section. E.g. I,25,1: First Book (Questions on Genesis), chapter 25, section 1.

Old Testament

Genesis

1:1 V, 5
1:2 I, 134; II, 55
1:14 V, 6
1:26 I, 22; I, 153; V, 4
1:27 V, 4
2:7 I, 9
2:24 I, 80
3:19 VI, 24
6:3 I, 23; I, 134; II, 55
6:16 I, 6
7:8-9 I, 8
7:15 I, 9
7:24 I, 11
8:21 I, 15
9:5 I, 16
9:25 I, 153
10:8 I, 18
10:21 I, 24
10:25 I, 19
11:1 I, 20
11:4 I, 21
11:7 I, 22
11:9 I, 22
11:12-13 I, 23
11:32 I, 25, 1
11:26 I, 25, 2
12:12, 14 I, 26
13:10 I, 27
13:14-15 I, 28
13:17 I, 28
14:13 I, 29

15:12 I, 30
15:13 II, 47, 2
15:18 VI, 21, 3
15:18-20 VI, 21, 3
17:8 I, 31
17:16 I, 32
18:2-3 I, 33
18:3 I, 33
18:4-5 I, 34
18:11 I, 35
18:13 I, 36
18:15 I, 37
18:19 I, 38
18:21 I, 39
18:32 I, 40
19:1 I, 41
19:8 I, 42
19:11 I, 43
19:18-19 I, 44
19:24 I, 59
19:29 I, 45
19:30 I, 46; I, 47
20:2 I, 48
20:3 I, 49
20:6 I, 49; V, 52; V, 55
21:10 I, 51
21:12 II, 47, 6
21:14 I, 53
21:15-18 I, 54
21:16 I, 54
21:18 I, 54
21:22 I, 55

Volume I/14
Volume I/14

Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

47:12  I, 158  10:21  II, 38
47:14  I, 159  11:2  II, 39
47:16  I, 160  11:9  II, 40
47:29  I, 161  12:5  II, 42; V, 24
47:31  I, 162  12:10  II, 41
48:4   I, 163  12:14  II, 43
48:5-6 I, 164  12:22  II, 46
48:19  I, 166  12:30  II, 44
49:33  I, 168  12:35-36 II, 45
50:5   I, 170  12:37  II, 47, 1
50:10  I, 171; I, 172  12:40  II, 47, 3; II, 47, 4
50:22-23 I, 173  12:46  II, 41

Exodus
3:2   II, 3  10:7  II, 48
3:4   II, 3  13:9  II, 49
3:8   II, 4  13:17 II, 50
3:9   II, 5  14:13 II, 51
3:22  II, 6  14:15 II, 52
4:10  II, 7  14:16 II, 53
4:11  II, 8  15:8  II, 55
4:12  II, 9  15:10 II, 54; II, 55
4:14  II, 10  15:23-24 II, 56
4:15  II, 10  15:25 II, 57
4:16  II, 10  16:4  II, 58
II, 10; II, 17; II, 31; II, 64; III, 23, 2
4:24  II, 11  16:8  II, 59
4:24-26 II, 11  16:12 II, 60
5:22-23 II, 14  16:33-34 II, 61
6:30  II, 16  16:34 II, 61
7:1   II, 16  16:35 II, 62; II, 63
7:3   II, 18  17:5  II, 64
7:9   II, 19  17:9  II, 65
7:10  II, 20  18:12 II, 66
7:12  II, 21  18:15-16 II, 67
7:22  II, 22  18:19 II, 68
8:7   II, 23  18:19-20 II, 69
8:15  II, 24  19:10-11 II, 70
8:19  II, 25; II, 55  19:1-3 II, 70
8:21-23 II, 26  20:3  II, 71, 1
8:25  II, 27  20:4  II, 71, 1
8:26  II, 28  20:4-5 II, 71, 2
8:32  II, 29  20:5  V, 42
9:7   II, 30  20:11 II, 177, 3
9:8-9 II, 31  20:12 II, 71, 1
9:16  II, 32  20:13 II, 71, 4; II, 71, 5; III, 68
9:20-21 II, 33  20:14 II, 71, 3; III, 68
9:22  II, 34  20:15 II, 71, 3; III, 68
9:30  II, 35  20:16 III, 68
10:1  II, 36; V, 2  20:17 II, 71, 1; II, 71, 2
10:12 II, 38  20:18 II, 72
10:19-20 II, 37  20:19 II, 73; II, 166, 2

Volume I/14
Questions on the Heptateuch
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31:17</td>
<td>II, 139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:18</td>
<td>II, 140; II, 166, 1; V, 15, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:1</td>
<td>II, 149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:2</td>
<td>II, 141</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>V, 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:8</td>
<td>II, 142</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:10</td>
<td>II, 149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:14</td>
<td>II, 143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:15-16</td>
<td>II, 166, 1; V, 15, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:24</td>
<td>II, 145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:25</td>
<td>II, 146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:31-32</td>
<td>II, 147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:35</td>
<td>II, 148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1</td>
<td>II, 149; II, 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1-2</td>
<td>VI, 21, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2-3</td>
<td>II, 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:12</td>
<td>II, 153; III, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:12-13</td>
<td>II, 151</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:12, 17</td>
<td>II, 152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>II, 151; II, 154, 5; V, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:14</td>
<td>II, 154, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:15</td>
<td>II, 154, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:17</td>
<td>II, 154, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:18</td>
<td>II, 154, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:19</td>
<td>II, 154, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20</td>
<td>II, 154, 5; VII, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:21</td>
<td>II, 154, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:21-22</td>
<td>II, 154, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:22</td>
<td>II, 154, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:22-23</td>
<td>II, 154, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1</td>
<td>II, 154, 8; II, 166, 1; V, 15, 3; V, 15, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1-2</td>
<td>V, 15, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:7</td>
<td>II, 155</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:10</td>
<td>II, 156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12</td>
<td>II, 157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:13</td>
<td>II, 158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:14</td>
<td>II, 158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:20</td>
<td>II, 159; II, 161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:21</td>
<td>II, 160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:24</td>
<td>II, 161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:25</td>
<td>II, 162; II, 163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:26</td>
<td>II, 164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:27</td>
<td>II, 166, 1; V, 15, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:27-28</td>
<td>V, 15, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:28</td>
<td>II, 165; II, 166, 1; V, 15, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:1</td>
<td>II, 167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:2</td>
<td>II, 172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:24</td>
<td>II, 168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:31</td>
<td>II, 169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:2-3</td>
<td>II, 170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:9</td>
<td>II, 177, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:10-12</td>
<td>II, 177, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:13</td>
<td>II, 177, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:14</td>
<td>II, 177, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:14-15</td>
<td>II, 177, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:16-17</td>
<td>II, 177, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:18</td>
<td>II, 177, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:19</td>
<td>II, 174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:33</td>
<td>II, 175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:35</td>
<td>II, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Leviticus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>III, 26, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>III, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13-14</td>
<td>III, 20, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22</td>
<td>III, 20, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27-28</td>
<td>III, 20, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:35</td>
<td>III, 4; III, 27, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>III, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2-3</td>
<td>III, 2; III, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>III, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>III, 2; III, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-6</td>
<td>III, 20, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>III, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>III, 4; III, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14-16</td>
<td>III, 20, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>III, 5; III, 6; III, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>III, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>III, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17-19</td>
<td>III, 7; III, 20, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>III, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-7</td>
<td>III, 20, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>III, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>III, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>III, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>III, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>III, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-13</td>
<td>III, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>III, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>III, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20-21</td>
<td>III, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21-22</td>
<td>III, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>III, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>III, 18; III, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>III, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>III, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>III, 20, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>III, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>III, 26, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>III, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

| 4:7 | IV, 7 |
| 4:11 | IV, 8 |
| 5:6 | IV, 10 |
| 5:6-8 | IV, 9 |
| 5:7 | IV, 10 |
| 5:8 | IV, 9 |
| 5:21 | IV, 11 |
| 6:14 | IV, 12 |
| 6:17 | IV, 12 |
| 8:24 | IV, 13 |
| 8:24-26 | IV, 14 |
| 8:25 | IV, 14 |
| 8:26 | IV, 14 |
| 9:6 | IV, 15 |
| 9:10-11 | IV, 15 |
| 9:15 | IV, 16, 2 |
| 9:15-16 | IV, 16, 2 |
| 9:15-23 | IV, 16, 1 |
| 9:16-17 | IV, 16, 2 |
| 9:17 | IV, 16, 2 |
| 9:18 | IV, 16, 3 |
| 9:18-19 | IV, 16, 4 |
| 9:19 | IV, 16, 4 |
| 9:20 | IV, 16, 4 |
| 9:21 | IV, 16, 5 |
| 9:22 | IV, 16, 6 |
| 9:23 | IV, 16, 6 |
| 10:7 | IV, 17 |
| 11:17 | IV, 18 |
| 11:21-22 | IV, 19 |
| 11:23 | IV, 19 |
| 13:18 | IV, 21 |
| 13:33 | IV, 22 |
| 14:9 | IV, 23 |
| 15:30 | IV, 25 |
| 15:30-31 | IV, 25 |
| 15:31 | IV, 25 |
| 16:13-14 | IV, 26 |
| 16:14 | IV, 26 |
| 16:20 | IV, 27; IV, 28 |
| 16:33 | IV, 29 |
| 16:36-38 | IV, 30 |
| 16:37 | IV, 30 |
| 16:37-38 | IV, 30 |
| 16:38 | IV, 30 |
| 16:39-40 | IV, 30 |
| 18:1 | IV, 31 |
| 18:13 | IV, 32 |
| 19:1-2 | IV, 33, 1 |
| 19:2 | IV, 33, 1; IV, 33, 2 |
| 19:3 | IV, 33, 3 |
| 19:4 | IV, 33, 4 |
| 19:5 | IV, 33, 5 |
| 19:6 | IV, 33, 6 |
| 19:7 | IV, 33, 7 |
| 19:8 | IV, 33, 7 |
| 19:9 | IV, 33, 8 |
| 19:10 | IV, 33, 9 |
| 19:11-12 | IV, 33, 10 |
| 19:12-13 | IV, 33, 10 |
| 19:13 | IV, 33, 10 |
| 19:16 | IV, 34 |
| 19:17-19 | IV, 33, 11 |
| 19:19 | IV, 33, 11 |
| 19:21-22 | IV, 33, 11 |
| 20:10 | IV, 19 |
| 20:10-11 | IV, 19 |
| 20:12 | IV, 19 |
| 20:13 | IV, 36; IV, 39 |
| 20:17 | IV, 37; IV, 38 |
| 20:19 | IV, 37 |
| 20:24 | IV, 39 |
| 21:2 | IV, 40 |
| 21:3 | IV, 41 |
| 21:13-15 | IV, 42 |
| 21:16 | IV, 43 |
| 21:24-25 | IV, 44 |
| 21:27 | IV, 45 |
| 22:4 | IV, 46 |
| 22:7 | IV, 47 |
| 22:9 | IV, 47 |
| 22:12 | IV, 48 |
| 22:13 | IV, 47 |
| 22:18 | IV, 48 |
| 22:19 | IV, 48 |
| 22:20-21 | IV, 48 |
| 22:22 | IV, 48; IV, 49 |
| 22:23 | IV, 50 |
| 22:24 | IV, 50 |
| 22:25 | IV, 50 |
| 22:26-27 | IV, 50 |
| 22:27-29 | IV, 50 |
| 23:7 | IV, 51 |
| 24:25 | IV, 61 |
| 25:4 | IV, 52 |
| 27:18-19 | IV, 54 |
| 27:20 | IV, 55 |
| 29:7 | IV, 57; IV, 59, 4 |
| 30:2 | IV, 56 |
| 30:3 | III, 3 |
| 30:3-5 | IV, 57 |
| 30:5 | IV, 58 |
| 30:6-8 | IV, 59, 1 |
## Volume I/14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:10-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:15-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:10-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:28-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:10-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:18-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:11-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4:7</th>
<th>VI, 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>VI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>VI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-7</td>
<td>VI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>VI, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>VI, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>VI, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>VI, 9, 2; VI, 9, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4-8</td>
<td>VI, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>VI, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:7-8</td>
<td>VI, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14-15</td>
<td>VI, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>VI, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>VI, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>VII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>VI, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:13</td>
<td>VI, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:48</td>
<td>VI, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:43</td>
<td>VI, 21, 4; VII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:43-45</td>
<td>VI, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:44</td>
<td>VI, 21, 4; VI, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:45</td>
<td>VI, 21, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:27</td>
<td>VI, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:14</td>
<td>VI, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:3</td>
<td>VI, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:11</td>
<td>VI, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>VI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:15</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:19</td>
<td>VI, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:23</td>
<td>VI, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25</td>
<td>VI, 30, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25-27</td>
<td>VI, 30, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2:13 | VII, 16 |
| 2:14 | VII, 17, 1 |
| 2:20-21 | VII, 17, 2 |
| 2:21-23 | VII, 17, 2 |
| 2:22 | VII, 17, 2 |
| 2:23 | VII, 17, 3 |
| 3:1-2 | VII, 17, 3 |
| 3:2 | VII, 17, 3 |
| 3:3-4 | VII, 17, 3 |
| 3:4 | VII, 17, 3 |
| 3:9 | VII, 18 |
| 3:17 | VII, 21 |
| 3:19 | VII, 20 |
| 3:20 | VII, 20 |
| 3:22 | VII, 21 |
| 3:23 | VII, 22 |
| 3:30 | VII, 25 |
| 4:6 | VII, 33 |
| 4:8 | VII, 26 |
| 4:15 | VII, 27 |
| 4:22 | VII, 28 |
| 5:7-8 | VII, 29 |
| 5:8 | VII, 29; VII, 30 |
| 6:7-8 | VII, 31 |
| 6:11 | VII, 31 |
| 6:12 | VII, 32 |
| 6:14 | VII, 33 |
| 6:15 | VII, 34 |
| 6:18 | VII, 35 |
| 6:20 | VII, 35 |
| 6:21 | VII, 35 |
| 6:22 | VII, 35 |
| 6:34 | VII, 49, 9 |
| 6:39 | VII, 49, 10; VII, 49, 12 |
| 7:5 | VII, 37 |
| 7:6 | VII, 37 |
| 7:11 | VII, 38 |
| 7:20 | VII, 40 |
| 8:23 | VII, 49, 22 |
| 8:26-27 | VII, 41, 1 |
| 8:27 | VII, 41, 1; VII, 41, 2; VII, 41, 3 |
| 8:33 | VII, 43 |
| 9:15 | VII, 44 |
| 9:23 | VII, 45 |
| 9:32-33 | VII, 46 |
| 10:1 | VII, 47 |
| 11:2 | VII, 49, 17 |
| 11:3 | VII, 49, 17 |
| 11:3 | VII, 49, 18 |
| 11:4 | VII, 49, 19 |
| 11:7 | VII, 49, 21 |

Judges

| 1:1-2 | VII, 2 |
| 1:2 | VII, 2; VII, 3 |
| 1:2:9-12 | VII, 3 |
| 1:3 | VII, 2 |
| 1:12 | VII, 3 |
| 1:14 | VII, 4 |
| 1:15 | VII, 4 |
| 1:18-19 | VII, 5 |
| 1:19 | VII, 5 |
| 1:20 | VII, 6 |
| 1:21 | VII, 7 |
| 1:27 | VII, 8; VII, 9 |
| 1:28 | VII, 10 |
| 1:34 | VII, 11 |
| 2:1 | VII, 12 |
| 2:3 | VII, 13 |
| 2:6 | VII, 14 |
| 2:10 | VII, 15 |

Volume I/14
Volume I/14

Writings on the Old Testament

11:8 VII, 49, 22 31:22 I, 54
11:9 VII, 49, 22 32:1 I, 161; II, 108
11:24 VII, 48 32:4 II, 154, 7
11:29 VII, 49, 10; VII, 49, 25 32:5 II, 154, 7
11:29-30 VII, 49, 8 37:27 III, 20, 2
11:33 VII, 49, 5 39:12 I, 156
11:35 VII, 49, 7 41:4 V, 55
11:40 VII, 49, 27 44:12 VII, 17, 1
12:7 VII, 49, 22 51:4 V, 55
13:4 VII, 50 51:5 III, 40, 3
13:5 VII, 52 51:17 IV, 25
13:6 VII, 51 51:9 II, 150
13:7 VII, 52 56:6 I, 156
13:16 VII, 53; VII, 54 65:10 I, 144
13:21 VII, 54 68:2 II, 150
13:22 VII, 54 69:5 III, 20, 3
13:23 VII, 54 73:16-17 II, 92
15:8 VII, 55 73:26 V, 16
15:12 VII, 56 73:27-28 II, 158

1 Samuel
2:25 V, 55 78:39 V, 55; VI, 24
81:10 II, 9
81:15 VI, 30, 1
87:1 II, 11
87:1-2 II, 11
87:2 II, 11
96:2 II, 98
99:6 III, 23, 2
103:3 III, 53, 2
105:25 V, 2
110:1 I, 59
110:4 II, 124
114:6 VI, 30, 1
115:4 II, 76
115:13 II, 98
116:11 VI, 29
116:13 III, 35
116:16-17 IV, 33, 2
119:175 II, 24
121:2 V, 5
128:3 II, 131
130:8 II, 78, 2
135:15 II, 76
135:17 VI, 30, 1
143:2 VI, 28
144:8 V, 48, 3
144:8.15 V, 48, 3
144:15 V, 48, 3
146:5-6 II, 54
147:2 II, 11

2 Samuel
12:13 V, 55

1 Kings
2:29 VII, 56 78:49 VI, 27
10:22 VI, 21, 3
10:26 VI, 21, 3
18:24 I, 139

2 Kings
2:15 IV, 18

Psalms
1:6 V, 48, 1
1:7 I, 59
5:6 II, 71, 6
5:11-12 II, 32
9:9 IV, 51
12:6 I, 143; II, 116
16:5 V, 16
18:36 II, 107
18:45 I, 104
19:12 III, 20, 3
22:16 IV, 16, 3
24:2 I, 132
25:10 I, 161; II, 24
26:2 II, 24
26:3 II, 24
30:10 IV, 51

Questions on the Heptateuch
# Questions on the Heptateuch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th>148:7</th>
<th>II, 54</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>V, 48, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>III, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>IV, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:2</td>
<td>V, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>VI, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>II, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>VII, 49, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>VI, 9, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>III, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>II, 93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>6:36</td>
<td>IV, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>II, 71, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>II, 68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>I, 168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>I, 172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:5</td>
<td>II, 90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:25-26</td>
<td>I, 161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:27</td>
<td>III, 57, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>IV, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>V, 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>I, 59; II, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>I, 148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:3</td>
<td>VII, 17, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>53:12</td>
<td>VII, 49, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:7</td>
<td>IV, 16, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16</td>
<td>III, 93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>IV, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>III, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>IV, 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>V, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:26</td>
<td>V, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>13:37</td>
<td>II, 78, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:54, 58</td>
<td>II, 78, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:56-57</td>
<td>II, 78, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:58</td>
<td>II, 78, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>IV, 33, 10; V, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>I, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>I, 25, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>I, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th>15:26</th>
<th>VII, 37</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 117, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>I, 63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II, 102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>V, 52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>II, 166, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>II, 71, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48</td>
<td>V, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 80; VII, 49, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>IV, 59, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>II, 102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>VII, 49, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>III, 88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>I, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>II, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:43</td>
<td>IV, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:25</td>
<td>IV, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>VII, 49, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34</td>
<td>IV, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>IV, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:27</td>
<td>III, 40, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>II, 98; III, 35; VI, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:34</td>
<td>IV, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>II, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume I/14**
### Volume I/14

| 12:20 | IV, 47 |
| 12:37 | II, 102 |
| 12:48 | III, 31 |
| 12:48-47 | III, 31 |
| 12:49 | VII, 36 |
| 19:27 | VII, 49, 28 |
| 22:37 | VII, 49, 18 |
| 23:43 | III, 57, 1; Rev 3 |
| 24:45 | VII, 49, 16 |
| 5:12 | III, 40, 3 |
| 5:16 | III, 20, 4; III, 40, 3 |
| 5:20 | II, 166, 2 |
| 5:20.21 | VI, 28 |
| 6:9 | V, 23 |
| 7:12 | II, 166, 2; V, 15, 4 |
| 7:13 | II, 166, 2 |
| 8:3 | IV, 33, 2 |
| 8:15 | II, 55 |
| 8:29-30 | II, 102 |
| 9:7.8 | I, 52 |
| 9:22 | II, 32 |
| 9:23 | II, 32 |
| 9:30 | II, 96 |
| 10:3 | II, 65; V, 15, 4; V, 56; VI, 28 |
| 10:4 | VI, 28 |
| 10:7 | V, 54 |
| 10:8 | V, 54 |
| 10:10 | V, 54 |
| 11:1 | I, 104; I, 148 |
| 11:5 | I, 104; I, 148 |
| 11:6 | II, 48 |
| 11:25 | II, 154, 7 |
| 11:25-26 | I, 148; V, 56 |
| 11:30-32 | II, 154, 4 |
| 11:31 | V, 56 |
| 11:33 | II, 148; V, 2 |
| 12:18 | VII, 49, 23 |
| 13:10 | II, 107; II, 166, 2 |
| 15:8-9 | II, 154, 3 |
| 15:10 | V, 56 |

### John

| 1:30 | IV, 51 |
| 4:21-24 | V, 10, 1 |
| 4:24 | III, 93 |
| 5:46 | V, 56 |
| 6:54 | III, 57, 4 |
| 6:70 | I, 117, 4 |
| 7:37-38 | VII, 36 |
| 7:39 | VII, 36 |
| 8:41 | VII, 49, 17 |
| 9:16 | VII, 49, 17 |
| 9:39 | II, 8 |
| 12:31 | III, 72 |
| 13:1 | II, 154, 1 |
| 13:18 | I, 117, 4 |
| 14:30 | III, 72 |
| 14:30-31 | V, 55 |
| 14:31 | V, 55 |
| 15:22 | V, 52 |
| 20:17 | I, 59 |

### Acts of the Apostles

| 2:3 | VII, 36 |
| 2:37 | II, 154, 7 |
| 2:38 | VII, 49, 19 |
| 5:3-4 | II, 59 |
| 7:4 | I, 25, 3 |
| 7:22 | I, 4 |
| 14:15 | II, 54 |
| 15:9 | IV, 33, 11 |
| 17:28 | IV, 42 |
| 20:24 | III, 57, 1 |

### Romans

| 2:4-6 | II, 24 |
| 2:9 | VII, 37 |
| 2:29 | II, 139 |
| 3:21 | VI, 5 |
| 3:23-24 | IV, 33, 9 |
| 4:19 | I, 35 |
| 4:25 | I, 169; II, 60 |
| 5:5 | II, 107; II, 166, 2; II, 172 |
| 5:6 | II, 154, 3 |
| 5:12 | III, 40, 3 |
| 5:16 | III, 20, 4; III, 40, 3 |
| 5:20 | II, 166, 2 |
| 5:20.21 | VI, 28 |
| 6:9 | V, 23 |
| 7:12 | II, 166, 2; V, 15, 4 |
| 7:13 | II, 166, 2 |
| 8:3 | IV, 33, 2 |
| 8:15 | II, 55 |
| 8:29-30 | II, 102 |
| 9:7.8 | I, 52 |
| 9:22 | II, 32 |
| 9:23 | II, 32 |
| 9:30 | II, 96 |
| 10:3 | II, 65; V, 15, 4; V, 56; VI, 28 |
| 10:4 | VI, 28 |
| 10:7 | V, 54 |
| 10:8 | V, 54 |
| 10:10 | V, 54 |
| 11:1 | I, 104; I, 148 |
| 11:5 | I, 104; I, 148 |
| 11:6 | II, 48 |
| 11:25 | II, 154, 7 |
| 11:25-26 | I, 148; V, 56 |
| 11:30-32 | II, 154, 4 |
| 11:31 | V, 56 |
| 11:33 | II, 148; V, 2 |
| 12:18 | VII, 49, 23 |
| 13:10 | II, 107; II, 166, 2 |
| 15:8-9 | II, 154, 3 |
| 15:10 | V, 56 |

### 1 Corinthians

| 1:24 | VII, 37 |
| 1:27 | IV, 50 |
| 2:8 | II, 154, 7; VII, 49, 17 |
| 2:11 | IV, 18 |
| 2:12 | IV, 18 |
| 3:2 | I, 50 |
| 3:15 | VI, 9, 3 |
| 4:7 | II, 65 |
| 5:12-13 | V, 39 |
| 6:18 | III, 8 |
| 7:3-4 | IV, 59, 4 |
| 7:37 | IV, 57 |
| 7:38 | IV, 57 |
| 8:5 | I, 105; II, 86 |
| 9:9 | II, 89 |
| 10:4 | II, 139; III, 57, 3; IV, 35; VI, 30, 1 |
| 10:18 | II, 139 |
# Questions on the Heptateuch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:22</td>
<td>III, 57, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>V, 9; VI, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>I, 117, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>VII, 49, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:46</td>
<td>I, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54</td>
<td>VII, 49, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>III, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Corinthians
- 2:15 | II, 24 |
- 3:3   | II, 166, 2; V, 11 |
- 3:6   | II, 55 |
- 4:7   | VII, 49, 12 |
- 5:6   | I, 156 |
- 10:17 | II, 154, 3 |
- 11:2  | VII, 49, 26 |
- 12:7  | VII, 49, 25 |

Galatians
- 1:9   | IV, 40 |
- 3:17  | II, 47, 4 |
- 4:15  | IV, 26 |
- 5:6   | II, 166, 2; V, 54 |
- 6:1   | III, 20, 2 |

Ephesians
- 2:2   | III, 72; IV, 29 |
- 4:22  | V, 39 |
- 4:28  | V, 39 |
- 5:23  | VI, 23 |
- 5:27  | III, 41; III, 57, 3 |
- 5:31-32 | VII, 49, 26 |

Philippians
- 2:9-10 | I, 123 |
- 2:12  | V, 15, 4 |
- 2:12-13 | II, 167 |
- 2:13  | V, 15, 4 |

Colossians
- 1:15  | V, 23 |
- 1:18  | II, 154, 1; V, 23 |
- 3:3   | IV, 33, 6 |

1 Thessalonians
- 3:5   | I, 57 |
- 5:19  | IV, 33, 10 |

2 Thessalonians
- 3:2   | II, 102 |

1 Timothy
- 2:5   | III, 93 |
- 4:6   | VII, 49, 3 |
- 5:4-5 | V, 43 |
- 5:6   | V, 43 |

2 Timothy
- 2:2   | II, 119 |
- 2:19  | II, 102; VII, 49, 23 |
- 4:14  | VI, 30, 2 |
- 4:16  | VI, 30, 2 |

Titus
- 2:7   | II, 119 |

Philemon
- 2:9-10 | I, 123 |
- 2:12  | V, 15, 4 |
- 2:12-13 | II, 167 |
- 2:13  | V, 15, 4 |

Hebrews
- 5:14  | II, 114 |
- 10:4  | III, 57, 2 |
- 11:32-33 | VII, 49, 8 |
- 11:33 | VII, 49, 9 |
- 12:22 | I, 168 |
- 13:2  | I, 41 |

James
- 1:17  | III, 93 |
- 2:13  | II, 105; II, 129 |
- 4:6   | IV, 25 |
- 4:17  | III, 20, 3 |

1 Peter
- 1:16  | III, 66 |
- 1:18-19 | VII, 17, 1 |

2 Peter
- 2:4   | IV, 29 |
- 2:15  | IV, 48 |

1 John
- 4:18  | II, 172 |

Revelation
- 14:5  | II, 1 |
- 14:7  | II, 54 |

**Volume I/14**
GENERAL INDEX

Questions on the Heptateuch
(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers immediately following entries indicate chapter numbers. Numbers that follow chapter numbers with commas are section numbers.

First Book—Questions on Genesis

Aaron, sons/descendants of, 2
Abel, 3
Abimelech, 49; 55–56; 75–76
Abraham, 24–72; 75–77; 100; 102; 104; 111; 121; 132. See also patriarchs and Abimelech, 55–56; 75
angels, encounters with, 33–34; 37; 41; 58–59 and note
birthplace of, 25
death and legacy of, 70–71
in Egypt, 26
father of, 25; 32
God’s call to, 25; 29
God’s covenant with, 30–36
God’s promises to, 25, 31; 28–29; 31–32; 38; 68
God’s temptation of, 57
and Hagar, 51–53; 55
and Isaac, 50; 57–59; 62–68; 75–77
and Ishmael, 51–53; 55; 124
and Keturah, 25; 35; 70; 90; 124
lineage of, 17 and note; 24
and Lot, 33; 41–47
obedience of, 57–59
and Sarah, in Egypt, 26; 48–49
Sarah as half-sister of, 26
and Sarah conceiving Isaac, 35–37
seed of, 25, 3; 28–32; 52
servant of, 62–67; 77; 111; 161
as against Sodom’s destruction, 40
temptation of, 57
three men who came to, 33–34; 41
well of the oath, 55–56; 60; 78
Abraham, sons/descendants of, 17 and note; 24; 32; 38; 46; 52; 60; 70; 124.
See also Isaac; Ishmael
Abraham, wives of, 70. See also Keturah;
Sarah
Abrahamium, 161 and note; 171
abyss, 12
Adam, 1; 27; 80
adoration, 61
Adullamites, 128
adultery, 93; 139
age, 31 and note
Ahaz, 63
allegory, 27; 70; 76
angels, 3; 22
Abraham and, 33–34; 37; 41; 58–59 and note
army of heaven, 101
of great counsel, 59
Hagar and, 54
immortality of, 34
Jacob and, 101; 104; 168
of the Lord, 59
Lot and, 33; 41; 44
man forbidden to adore, 61
mating with human women, 3
sons of God, 3
you have come…to thousands of rejoicing angels, 168
animals, 7–9. See also under Noah; specific animals
   clean and unclean, 8
anointing, 84
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean, 26
apostles, twelve, 117, 4
Aquila, 11 and note
ark, Noah’s, 4–15. See also Noah
army, 127 and note; 136
army of heaven, 101
Arpachshad, 23
Questions on the Heptateuch

Asenath, 136
asterisks and obelisks, 155 and note
Attic Nights (Gellius), 30
augury, 63
Aulus Gellius, 30
avidentia, 43 and note
Babel, tower of, 19–22
Balak, kingdom of, 121
Balak, the son of Beor, 121
baptism, 3; 161
beauty:
  bearing handsome children, 93
of Sarah, 26; 48
Benjamin, 117; 139; 151–52; 173. See also Jacob, sons of; Joseph: brothers of tribe of, 104
Bethel, 85 and 132; 110–11; 113; 116–17
Bethlehem, 117,1; 165 and note
Bethuel, 67 and note; 82
Bilhah, 90
blessing/blessedness, 76; 79–81; 144. See also under individual names, e.g.,
  Jacob: as blessed
  the Lord blessed you in my foot, 92
blindness, 43
bread, 131
burial, 161; 169–71
butcher, 127 and note
Cain, 1
Canaan (land of), 17; 25,3; 29; 64; 108; 113; 119; 122; 128; 160–61; 170–71
Canaan (son of Ham), 17; 153
carnal people/carnal nature, 50; 70
elder son as signifying, 73
  cattle, 8–9; 153; 160
  Chaldeans, 25,2; 3
  chance, 91 and note
  charity, 70. See also love
  chief of the cooks/chief of the army, 127 and note; 136
  chrism, 84
Christ. See also Jesus Christ
  name of, 84
  Christians, 172
  Church, 32; 169
  Christ and, 80
  sacraments, 70
  circumcision, 50; 53; 108
cleanliness: unclean until evening, 2
clouds, 10
codices, preface; 2–3; 152; 155 and note; 162
  Greek, 155
  Hebrew, 152; 155
  Latin, 162
compassion, 15
concubines, 90; 124
  sons of, 70
corporse, 161
covenants. See also New Covenant; Old Covenant
  God’s with Abraham, 31–36
creation, 9; 22; 80; 87 and note; 134; 153
curses/cursing, 65
  daughters, 117,5 and note; 125; 149
David, 73
death. See also burial; corpses; eternal life; mourning; resurrection; individual names
danger of sin as ending at, 168
gathered to his fathers/gathered to his people, 168
demons, 3; 105
Dinah, 107–8; 117,5; 124; 149; 167 and note
divination, 145
dove, 13–14
dreams, 72 and note; 123; 138
drink/drunkenness, 144
eagles, 7
ears of grain, 95; 133
Eber, 19; 24
Edom/Edomites, 32 and note; 120–21
Egypt. See under individual names, e.g.,
  Abraham; Jacob; Joseph; specific topics, e.g., famine
Egyptians:
  every shepherd of sheep is an abomination to the Egyptians, 154
  wisdom of, 4
elderly, 35 and note; 70
elder/younger sons, 73; 166
election, 104
Eli, 2
Elijah, 139; 169
Elisha, 43

Volume I/14
emotions, 30. See also specific emotions, e.g., fear
Ephraim, 152; 164; 166; 173
Ephratha. See Bethlehem
Epictetus, 30 and note
error, 119
Esau, 25,2–3; 32 and note; 73; 75; 81–82;
102; 105; 108; 110; 118–22
Esau, descendants of. See Edomites;
Idumeans
eternal life, 70; 156; 168
eternity/the eternal, 31
eumuchs, 36; 127
Euphrates River, 29
Eve, 80
evening: unclean until evening, 2
evil. See also sin
lesser and greater, 42
experibor/experiar, 39
extasis, 80
face of God, 105 and note
faith, sound, 76
faithful, call of, 163
faithfulness, 76; 139
fall, the, 1–3
famine, 75; 122; 129; 133; 152; 160
fasting, 169 and note
fear, 44
of Isaac, 80; 82; 100
firstborn sons, 117,2; 128
ever/younger sons, 73; 166
flesh: the two shall be one in flesh, 80
flood, 2; 11–15. See also Noah
foot: the Lord blessed you in my foot, 92
foreigners, 99; 153
foretelling, 49; 145
forgiveness, 161
fortuna, 91 and note
fortune, fortuneteller, 91 and note; 94 and
note
forty, the number, 149
forty-day observance of fasting, 169 and
note
forty days for Jacob’s burial, 169 and note
fruit-bearing trees of paradise, 27
fruitfulness, 95
future, foretelling. See foretelling
Gad, 94 and note
Gellius, Aulus, 30
genealogy, 17
generations, 71; 121
gentiles, 148; 172
geometry/geometric cubit, 4
Gerar, 75
giants, 3; 18
Gideon, 63
gifts of God, 70
glory/glorification, 169
God. See also specific topics, e.g., creation
face of, 105 and note
as Father, 59; 110
image and likeness of, 22; 153
as Lord, 59
one true, 105 and note
righteousness of, 44
wrath of, 39
God, gifts of. See gifts of God
gods, pagan, 94. See also idolatry
gods, those who are called, 105
Gomorrah, 27
Gospel, 59; 76
grace, 15; 104; 148
grain. See also ears of grain
baskets of, 131
ears of, 95; 133
Greek codices, 155 and passim. See also
codices
Greek language, 105 and passim
Hagar, 25; 51–55; 70; 90; 124
Ham, 17
Hamor the Hivite, 107–8; 117,5
happiness:
ethe, 76
eternal, 153
Haran, 25
harvests, 95
head of his staff, 162 and note
Heap of Testimony, 97–98 and note
Hebrew codices, 152; 155 and passim. See
also codices
Hebrew language, 97 and passim
heel, 156
Heliopolis, 136
hell. See also netherworld
herds. See sheep
heretics, 70
high priests, 2
Hippocrates, 93
Hirah, 128
Hivites, 107–8; 117,5
holiness, 145
Holy Spirit, 9; 117,1; 134; 169
Horace, 31 and note

Questions on the Heptateuch
Writings on the Old Testament

Horites, 120
hospitality, 34; 37
House of God, 85 and note; 113
hyperbole, 137
idioms/idiomatic expressions, 31; 150 and passim
idolatry, 61; 84; 111; 116
Idumeans, 73; 119–20
image and likeness of God, 22; 153
incubation, 72 and note
infernus. See netherworld
inheritance, gift of, 70
Isaac, 50–82; 124. See also patriarchs and Abimelech, 75–76
Abraham and, 32; 50; 57–59; 62–69; 75–77
birth of, 50
as blessed, 76
death of, 118–19; 122
deceived by Rebecca and Jacob, 79–81
faith of, 76
fear of, 80; 82; 100
and Joseph, 122
kings of nations shall come from him, 32
the near-sacrifice of, 57–59
old age of, 118
prosperity of, 76
and Rebecca, 62–69; 72–73; 77
and the stolen blessing, 79–81
Isaac, sons of, 72–73; 75; 80; 118. See also Esau; Jacob
Ishmael, 25; 51–53
sons of, 71; 124
Ishmaelites, 124
Israel:
liberation of, 148
people of, 168
the remnant, 148
Israel, sons of. See Jacob (Israel), sons of Israel (Jacob). See under Jacob: name changed to Israel
Jacob, 73–173. See also Esau; patriarchs
angels and, 101; 104; 168
as blessed, 79–81; 104
blessing, the stolen, 79–81
blessing by, 163–66
daughter(s) of, 149
death and burial of, 161–73
derendants of, 122; 148; 150–51
and Dinah, 107–8; 117, S; 124; 149;
167 and note
in Egypt, 149–73
entry into Egypt, 152; 173
Esau, reconciliation with, 105
flight of, 82
God’s promises to, 163
Isaac and, 79–81; 100
and Joseph, 122–26
and Joseph’s sons, 152; 164; 166
and Laban, 67 and note; 86–99
ladder of, 83–85
lameness of, 104
land of promise, return to, 101–17
name changed to Israel, 73; 114 and note
the promise restated, 110–17
prosperity of, 119
rods put into water by, Revisions II, 55 (82), 1; 93
sacrifice to God, 84–85
seventy-five men with whom Jacob entered Egypt, 152; 173
as simple man, 74
wrestling with angel, 104
Jacob (Israel), sons of, 112; 117; 140; 144 and note; 148–52; 164. See also
Benjamin; Joseph; Judah, and other individual names
conlict among, 122
and Jacob’s blessing, 163–66
sons of Leah, 117; 150–52
Jacob, grandsons of (sons of Joseph), 164; 166. See also Ephraim; Manasseh
Jacob, wives of. See Leah; Rachel
Jerome, 26 and note
Jerusalem, 40; 168
Jesus Christ, 62; 117,4; 123; 148; 165–67; 169
Adam and, 80
angels of great counsel, 59
generation of, 169
birth in Bethlehem, 165 and note
and the Church, 80
death of, 148
glorification of, 169
Jacob and, 104
Joseph as prefiguring, 123; 165; 167
name of Christ, 84
Passion of, 117,4
resurrection of, 43; 169
as Son, 110
temptation of, 63
Jews, 148
carnal people of, 70

Volume I/14
Jonah, 169
Jordan River, 102; 161 and note; 171
Joseph, 122–73. See also Jacob, sons of
Judah, 25, 2; 128; 147. See also
Jacob, sons of
Joseph: brothers of
Judas, 117, 4
Judgment, mercy and, 161
justice, 38
divine, 140
justification, 169
Kemuel, 60
Keturah, 25; 35; 70; 90; 124
kings, 121
kings of nations shall come from him,
32
Laban, 67 and note; 86–99
as fortuneteller, 94 and note
lambs: ten ewe lambs, Revisions II, 55
(82), 1; 95 and note
languages, 31; 97. See also specific
languages
all the earth was one lip, 20 and note
come, let us go down and there
confuse their language, 22
tower of Babel, 19–22
Latin codices, 162 and passim. See also
codices
Latin language, 153 and passim
Latin nonce-word, 43 and note
law, eternal, 31
laziness, 58
Leah, 89–91; 94 and note; 117, 2; 150–52; 173
and Dinah, 108
Lenten fast, 169 and note
lentils, 75
Levi, son of Jacob, 117, 2. See also Jacob,
sons of
Levi, tribe of, 164
life, 156. See also eternal life
lions, 7
loins, 150–51
Lord, 59; 62
The Lord Saw, 58
Lot, 33; 41–47
daughters of, 42; 44
in Zoar, 46–47
love, 57; 88; 129. See also charity
Luz, 85 and note; 113–14
lying, 17; 26; 48–49; 106
perjury, 139
Machir, 173
maidservants, 89–90
mammon, 76
Manasseh, 152; 164; 166; 173
manoia, 153
marriage, 63; 119
angels and daughters of men, 3
Mary, 117, 1
meditate, 69 and note
Melchizedek, 72
menstrual periods, 35
mercy, 44; 147; 161; 169
and righteousness, 66; 161
and truth, 66; 161
Mesopotamia in Syria, 3; 29; 82; 108;
113; 117; 119; 151; 156; 173
Methuselah, 2
Midianites, 124 and note
miracles, 35; 63; 70; 169
Moab/Moabites, 121
Moses, 17; 121; 148; 169; 171
as called a god to Pharaoh, 105
and the Pentateuch, 121 and note
mountains, height of, 10
mourning, 171–72
mystery, 80–81; 123; 148; 161; 167
numbers as filled with, 152
of the sabbath, 172
Nahor, 25, 2
names, 71; 113–14
nations, 71; 115; 124
I shall make you companies of nations,
163

Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

kings of nations shall come from him, 32
Nebuchadnezzar, 127
Nero, 30 and 50
netherworld, 123; 126 and note; 142; 145.
  See also hell
New Covenant, 15
New Testament, 15. See also Gospel; Scripture
Nile River, 27; 160
Nimrod, 18
Nineveh, 169
Noah, 2; 4–24
nonce-word, Latin, 43 and note
nouenial, 172
numbers, 152. See also specific numbers,
  e.g., forty
  there was no number, 137
oaths, 77. See also swearing
  Abraham's servant as bound by,
    62–67; 77; 161
  thigh, placing hand beneath, 62; 161
  well of, 55–56; 60; 77–78
obedience, 38
obelisks, asterisks and, 155 and note
Ochozath, 75 and note
old age, 35; 70
Old Covenant, 15
older/younger sons, 73; 166
Old Testament, 155 and note. See also
  Scripture; Septuagint
  the Father and the Son, regarding, 110
  translation, 11 and note
Origen, 4; 155 and note
pagan gods, 94. See also idolatry
paradise, 27
Paran, Mount, 56
Passion of Christ. See under Jesus Christ:
  Passion of
patriarchs, 114; 153; 161 and note; 171.
  See also Abraham; Isaac; Jacob
Paul, the Apostle, 35 and passim
Peleg, 19
Pentateuch, 121 and note
perjury, 139
Pharaoh, 105 and passim
  salvation of, 139
Phicol, 75 and note
Philistines, 75
Potiphar, 127; 130; 136
power, divine, 81; 91 and note, 141
praise, 144
  do not praise any man before his death, 168
priesthood, 31. See also high priests
  Aaron, sons/descendants of, 2
  high priests, 2
  of the sun, 136
promises. See under individual names,
  e.g., Abraham: God's promises to
  prophecy, 67; 104; 145
  authority of, 169
prostitution, 42; 44
providence, divine, 91 and note
Psalms, 66
Rachel, 86–90; 117,1; 123; 165 and note
Rameses, 157
raven, 13
reason, 30; 153
Rebecca, 62–69; 72–73; 77; 79–81; 111
recapitulation, 3; 14; 25,1; 75; 87; 107;
  118; 128 and passim
remission of sins, 161
remnant, 104; 148
resurrection, 161. See also under Jesus
  Christ: resurrection of
  Reuben, 128; 164. See also Jacob, sons of
  revelation, 51; 72 and note; 80; 93
righteousness, 45; 93; 161; 168
  as abomination to the unrighteous, 154
  angels or sons of God, righteous men
  as called, 3
  mercy and, 66; 161
river: from beyond the river, 29 and note
  rods put into water by Jacob, Revisions II,
    55 (82), 1
sabbath, 172
sacramenta, 161 and note
sacraments, 70
sacrifice, 84–85
  Isaac, the near-sacrifice of, 57–59
saeculare, 31
Salem, 108–9; 167
salvation, 139
Samson, 89
Samuel, 2
Sarah, 35–37; 48–49; 51; 53; 70; 75; 90
  beauty of, 26; 48
  death of, 70
  sterility of, 70
Scripture, Sacred, 145 and passim. See
  also New Testament; Old Testament
authority of, 91
beliefs and, 136
spiritual understanding of, 73; 79
virtues mentioned in, 66
Seir/Mount Seir, 106; 119–20; 122
Septuagint, preface; 2; 93; 152; 155; 162;
169 and passim
serpents, 8
servants/servanthood, 33; 44; 102; 145;
159–60. See also under Abraham:
servant of; Hagar
him alone shall you serve, 61
Joseph as, 136
maidservants, 89–90
seven, the number: seventh day, 172
Shechem (son of Hamor the Hivite),
107–8; 117,5
Shechem: Jacob as giving to Joseph, 167
and note
Shechemites, 108; 117,2
sheep. See also lambs
every shepherd of sheep is an
abomination to the Egyptians, 154
variegated young, bearing, Revisions
II, 55 (82), 1; 93
Shelah, 23 and note
Shem, family of, 17 and note; 23–25,1
shepherds: every shepherd of sheep is an
abomination to the Egyptians, 154
Shua, 128
signs, 63; 67; 70; 84; 155 and note; 162
Jacob took a stone and set it up as a
sign, 96
Simeon, 117,2; 164. See also Jacob, sons
of
sin. See also evil; specific sins, e.g., lying
corpses as signifying, 161
danger of as ending at death, 168
forgiveness of, 161
against God, 49
slaves/slavery, 31; 59; 153 and note. See
also under Joseph: sold into slavery
Sodom, 33; 40–45
and Gomorrah, 27
sons of God, 3
sons of Israel. See Jacob (Israel), sons of
sons of the promise, 52; 70
soothsayers, 63
souls, 150–51
fruit-bearing trees of paradise as
signifying virtues of the soul, 27
propagation of, 150
spies, 139; 147
Spirit of God, 134
spirit of life, 9
spiritual, younger son as signifying, 73;
166
spiritual understanding of the Scriptures,
73; 79
staff: he worshiped upon the head of his
staff, 162 and note
sterility, 70
Stoics, 30 and 50
stones
anointed, 85 and note
The Heap of Testimony/The Witness
Heap, 97–98 and note
sun, 136; 138
superstition, 25,2; 63
swearing, 65. See also oaths
Symmachus, 11 and note
synecdoche, 117,4–5
Syria. See also Mesopotamia in Syria
Syrians, 60
Syriac language, 97
Tamar, 128
temptation, 63; 168
of Abraham, 57
ten ewe lambs, Revisions II, 55 (82),1; 95
and note
Terah, 25
thigh, placing hand beneath (oaths), 62;
161
tower of Babel, 19–22
transfluvialis, 29 and note
trees: fruit-bearing, of paradise, 27
tributaries, 73
triporticum, 177,21
trust, 44
truth, 66; 161. See also lying
twelve apostles, 117,4
twelve princes according to their nations,
71
twelve sons of Jacob. See Jacob, sons of
Ulammaus, 85 and note; 113
unclean until evening, 2
unseeingness, 43
virgins/virginity, 107–8 and note
virtues:
fruit-bearing trees of paradise as
signifying, 27
of mercy and righteousness, 66
of mercy and truth, 66; 161

Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

wages: you defrauded me of my wages by ten ewe lambs, Revisions II, 55 (82), 1; 95
war, 153
water. See also wells
Jacob, rods put into water by, Revisions II, 55 (82), 1; 93
wells:
Isaac as digging, 75
Jacob as finding Rachel at, 86–87
of the oath, 55–56; 60; 78
wisdom:
of the Egyptians, 4
of Joseph, 139; 144–45

Second Book—Questions on Exodus

Aaron, 31; 38; 59; 61; 64–66; 94; 101–2; 105; 117
and dissipation of the Israelites, 146; 148
in genealogy, 47,3 and note
as mediator, 10
and the molten calf, 141–49
as priest, 119–29; 133; 148–49
as prophet, 16–17
serving role of, 10
sons of, 125; 129; 148
you shall take the small breast from the ram of consummation, which is Aaron, 128 and note
Aaron, staff of, 19–21; 64–65; 105
ark, as to be placed in, 105; 177,20
Abihu, 95; 101–2
abominations, 28
Abraham, 35; 47; 69; 102; 120 and note; 139; 150
faith of, 47,4
God’s promises to, 47,4
Adam, 40,3; 108
adductoria, 177,8; 177,19
adoption, 55
adoration, 69
adultery, 3–4; 71,4; 71,6
air, 21 and note
allegory, 105
altar:
of God, people as, 97
of holocausts, 173
Moses as building, 97
wooden, 113
Witness Heap, 97 and note; 97–98
wives, 89–91
worship:
upon the head of his staff, 162 and note
worshipped them upon his face, 33; 41
wrath of God, 39
years, 95
younger son, 73; 166
Zaphenath-paneah, Joseph as named by Pharaoh, 135
Zilpah, 90–91; 94 and note
Zoar, 46–47
Amalek, 65
amitibus, 132
Amram, 47,3 and note; 50
anconisae/ancones, 109
angels, 21
an angel met him and sought to kill him, 11
bad, 21
cherubim, 107
heavens of the heavens, 75 and note of the Lord, 3
anger of God. See under God: anger of animals, 21. See also sacrifice; specific animals
anointing, 173
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean, 144 and note
anticipation (praeeccupatio), 61–62; 103
apostrophe, 150
architectonic art of craftsmen, 169
archs, 132
ark of the covenant/ark of testimony, 61;
 ark, 66; 104–5; 112; 129–30; 137; 140; 173; 177,8, 177,20–21
 borne around the walls of Jericho seven times, 43 and note
 as signifying mystery of God, 105
art of craftsmen, 169
aspidiscae, 115
atria, 177,9
back parts, 154,7
Balak, king of the Moabites, 46–48
baptism, 154,7
baptismal symbolism, 144 and note

Volume I/14
Volume I/14

Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

- sin and, 166
- debts/debtors, 80
- decalogue. See ten commandments
demons, 25
demonstration and truth, 117
don't, 168
desert of Sinai, 70
Didymus, 25
disobedience, 149
dissipation, 146
drinking water: test of thirst, 56–57
earrings, 141
earth, 54
earth (element), 21 and note
Easter, 90 and note
Egypt. See also specific topics, e.g.,
plagues
exodus from, 47
Hebrews in, 47
Egyptians:
as Hebrews’ neighbors, 60
Israelites taking silver, gold, clothing
from, 60
you are not going to see them any
longer for time everlasting, 51
elders of Israel, seventy, 102
elements, four, 21 and note
eleven, the number, 108
Elijah, 60 and note; 65
ellipses, 131
empty-handed, 159
enchanters, 22–24
enemies, 146
Esau, 47,5
eternal covenant, 139
eternal life, 55; 108; 141
eternity/the eternal/eternal law, 43; 67;
124
Eusebius, 47,4
evening, 60
evil. See good and evil; sin
faith, 55; 177,1
of Abraham, 47,4
vs. good works, 48
working through love, 166,2; 172
false witness, 71,6
famine, 47,3
fasting, 165
Faustus, 2
fear:
  charity vs., 166,2; 172
do not let God speak to us, lest we die,
166,2
in fear and trembling work out your
salvation, 167
of God, 35; 74
of Isaac, 35
the old covenant/Old Testament and,
73–74; 166,2
of punishment, 35
fetus, ensoulment of, 80 and note
figurative/literal, 93
figurative sense, proper sense vs., 177
finger of God, 25; 55; 70; 140; 144; 166.
See also Holy Spirit
fire, 21 and note; 166,2
flame of fire, 3
You shall not cook a lamb in its
mother’s milk, 90
firmament, heaven as, 102
firstborn, 15
firstborn from the dead, 154,1
firstborn sons killed, 44–45
flame of fire, 3
flies, plague of. See gnats
foreigners, 68; 135
foreknowledge, 32; 44; 102; 148; 166,1
forever, 124
forgiveness:
blessed are they whose iniquities are
forgiven and whose sins are covered
over, 108
of debts, 80
Moses interceding for Israel, 147–54
of sins in baptism, 154,7
fornication, 71,4; 158
forty days and forty nights, 165
forty years, 62
four, the number, 102
free will: and hardening of Pharaoh’s
heart, 18–30
fringes, 116
frogs, plague of, 23–25; 44
garments, 114. See also under priests:
priestly vestments
genealogies. See under individual names,
e.g., Moses
generations, 43; 50; 108
glory/glorification, 102; 154
of God, 154; 167
of the Lord, 176
and Moses as wearing a veil, 167
those who glory in their own works,
Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

iota, 177,12
Isaac, Fear of, 35
Ishmael, 47,2
Israel:
- the chosen of, 102
- seventy elders of, 102
- twelve tribes of, 97
Israel, children of/Israelites. See also specific topics and events, e.g., slavery
- in Egypt, 47
- God’s presence revealed to, 3–10
- journey of, 49–70
- Moses interceding for, 147–54
Israel, sons of, 115
Jacob, 50
- in Egypt, 47,3
jealousy, 158
Jericho, 43 and note
Jerome, 78,2 and note; 123 and note
Jerusalem, 177,6 and note
Jesus Christ, 8; 90–91; 93; 129; 154,6–7; 176. See also faith
- ancestors/genealogy of, 42 and note
- angel of great counsel, 3
- baptism of, 108
- as called among all nations, 154,2
- conception and birth date of, 90 and note
- crucifixion/death of, 79; 154,3; 154,7
- Joshua and, 91 and note
- Passion of, 90; 108; 154,6
- Passover as pertaining to, 48
- resurrection of, 154,6
- rock as signifying, 139
- as servant of circumcision, 154,3
- we are the good odor of Christ, 24
- you shall not cook a lamb in its mother’s milk, 90; 164
- you shall take it from the lambs or the goats, 42
Jethro, 12; 66–69; 99
Jews, 90; 139
Jochebed, 47,3 and note
Jordan River, 62
Joseph in Egypt, 47,3
Joshua the son of Nun, 65; 91 and note; 93; 103 and note
Judah, 47,1; 78,3
Judah, 79
judges, appointment of, 66–69
judgment:
- divine, 24
human, 67–68
- mercy and, 88
- rationale of, 116–17; 129
justice, 96
- mercy surpasses justice, 105; 129
justification, 60; 96; 102
justifications, 95 and note; 99
killing, 79
- you shall not kill, 71,5
knowledge, 138
Kohath, son of Levi, 47,3
lambs
- Passover sacrifice of, 46
- unblemished male lamb, 42
- you shall not cook a lamb in its mother’s milk, 90; 164
- you shall take it from the lambs or the goats, 42
lamps, 72; 177,19
- flowing with milk and honey, 4
land, 54
- flowing with milk and honey, 4
languages. See also specific languages of all the nations, 154,7
Latin codices, passim
Latin language, 177,9 and passim
latria, 86 and note
law. See also covenants; stone tablets; ten commandments
- ancient secular, 84
- ark, as to be placed in, 105; 177,20
- eternal, 43; 67; 124
- fulfillment of, 166,2
- fullness of, 107
- as given to Moses a second time, 144; 156
- grace and, 105
- holiness of, 166; 166,2
The letter kills, 55
- redoing of, 165–66
- tablets of testimony, 105
leadership tasks, 66–69
Levi, son of Jacob, 47,3 and note; 50
Levites, 10; 135; 148
lies. See lying
- literal/figurative, 93
- locusts, plague of, 29; 37–38; 44
- Lord/lords, 86
love, 73; 140; 149; 151. See also charity
- faith working through, 166,2; 172
- the new covenant and, 166,2
- lying, 1; 2 and note; 59; 71,6 and note.
- See also perjury

Volume I/14
Aaron and the molten calf, 141–49
false witness, 71,6
magicians, 21–26
maidservants, 78,1–2
manna, 60–63; 105
ark, as to be placed in, 66; 105; 177,20
omer of, 61
Marah, 56
Marcion, 8 and note
Mediterranean, 177,6 and note
Melchizedek, 124
mercy, 1; 32–33
of God, 105; 129; 149–50
I will have mercy on whom I will have had mercy, and I will show mercy to whom I will have shown mercy, 154,1; 154,3–4
and in judging you shall not have mercy on a poor man, 88
propitiatory as “mercy seat,” 105 and note
as surpassing justice, 105; 129
and truth, 24
vessels of, 32
merit, 154,3. See also works
metaphor, 158
midwives, 1 and note
military service, 47,1
milk:
land flowing with milk and honey, 4
mother’s, 90
miracles, 53; 57; 154,7. See also specific miracles
miscarriage, 80
moæchia, 71,4
moldings, 104
molten calf, 141–49
morality, 92
wise and holy workers, 171
morning, 60; 163
Moses, 1–177. See also stone tablets; ten commandments; and other specific topics and events
an angel met him and sought to kill him, 11
authority of, 2
commanding role of, 10
cries of, 52
faithfulness of, 149
father-in-law of (Jethro), 12; 66–69; 99
freeing the people from Egypt, 47,3
genealogy of, 15; 47,3 and note; 50
God as knowing more than all others, 151–53
as God’s servant, 6–7; 68; 149
he shall be to you as God, 31
infancy of, 1
interceding for Israel, 147–54
killing the Egyptian, 2
as mediator, 10
Pharaoh confronted by, 13–45
song of, 54–55
sons of, 11–12
staff of, 64–65
wife of (Zipporah), 11–12
mother’s milk, 90
mountains. See also specific mountains, e.g., Sinai
smoking, 72
murder, 84
muteness, 8 and note
mystery, 10; 42; 92; 95; 150; 159; 177,1
of God, ark as signifying, 105
“mysterious passage,” 15
rewriting of the covenant as symbolic of, 144
of the sabbath, 172
Nadab, 95; 101–2
nations: Christ as called among all nations, 154,2
neighbors, 71
Egyptians as Hebrews’, 60
neighbor woman, 39
new covenant, 70; 92; 103; 172. See also
New Testament
love and, 166
as signified by the area within, 112
as signified by the re-doing of the law, 166
New Testament. See also Gospel; new covenant; Scripture
love, 73
the New is hidden in the Old and the Old is revealed in the New, 73
nighttime thief, 84
Noah, 69
numbers, 107–8. See also specific numbers
cubits, 113
obedience and disobedience, 96; 149; 166,2
odor:
of sweetness to the Lord, 127
we are the good odor of Christ, 24

Questions on the Heptateuch
Writings on the Old Testament

offerings, 61; 166. See also Old Testament
old covenant, 92; 166. See also Old Testament
fear and, 73–74; 166
God in, 8 and note
as signified by the area outside, 112
Old Testament, 2 and note; 112. See also old covenant; Scripture
fear, 73–74
God as portrayed in, 8 and note
the New is hidden in the Old and the Old is revealed in the New, 73
omer of manna, 61
open your mouth, 9
ordination, 125 and note. See also consummation
original sin, 40,3
ortygometra, 62
outrcy, 5
palm trees, 63 and note
parables, 164
passion, 90. See also under Jesus Christ: passion of Passover, 41–43; 46; 48; 70; 90; 154,1 and note; 162–63
patriarchs, 2; 47,4
Paul, the Apostle, 1 and passim
perception, 114
perjury, 85
Pharaoh, 13. See also specific topics/events, e.g., plagues
heart, hardening of, 18–30; 36–37; 40
Philistines, 49
Phoenicia, 62–63 and note
piety, 40
plagues of Egypt, 22–45
firstborn sons killed, 44–45
portents, 18–19; 40. See also signs
power, 60; 125
of God, 8–9
staff as signifying, 105
predestination, 102
pregnant women, 80
pride, 68–69
priesthood, 43; 119–29. See also Aaron; consummation; high priests
ordination, 125 and note; 148
priestly vestments, 119; 129
and their priesthood shall be for me forever, 124
private parts, 113
prolepsis (praeoccupatio), 61–62; 103
Promised Land, 103
proper sense vs. figurative sense, 177
prophet, Aaron as, 16–17
propitiation, 133
propitiatory, 105 and note
Psalms: Seventy-second Psalm, 92
punishment:
capital punishment, 39
fear of, 35
quail, 62 and note
ram of consummation, 128
rational creature, 105 and note rationale, 116–17; 129
raven, 60 and note
reason, 116
rebirth, 55
recapitulation, 154,7 and passim
reclining, 102; 109
redemption, 48; 78.2
Red Sea miracle, 51–55
you sent your Spirit, and the sea covered them, 55
Rephidim, 70
rest, 139; 172. See also sabbath
resurrection, 51; 154,1
of Christ, 154,6
Reuben, 15
revelation, 24
righteousness, 65; 102; 166,1
as abomination to the unrighteous, 28
rings, 132
ger, 64
rock, 139; 154,6–8; 164
sabbath, 71,1; 139; 160; 172
sacraments, 129; 172 and note. See also baptism
sacramentum. See mystery
sacrifice, 13; 47,2; 62; 120; 126–27; 133;
136. See also holocausts
altar of sacrifices, 113; 135; 177,8;
177,18; 177,22–23
Egyptians and, 27–28
going/coming, sacrifice to the Lord your God in the land, 27
and honoring “gods,” 86
Jethro and, 69; 99
Moses as offering, 99
odor of sweetness to the Lord, 127
Passover, 46
and the sacrifice of the solemnity of Passover shall not sleep in the morning, 163

Volume I/14
Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

Aaron, 14; 83

high priesthood as started from, 23

and his sons, 14; 23–28; 31–33; 36;

82; 85

Abraham, 56–57

adoration, 66

adultery, 61; 63; 65; 68; 73

agriculture, 89

alcoholic beverages, 33

door of, 177,21

explanation of, 177

tabernacle of testimony, 61; 137

tables of testimony, 105; 140

Temple, 177,6 and note

temple of God, people as, 97

ten commandments, 71; 107; 166,1 and

note; 172. See also law; stone tablets

testimony, tabernacle of. See tabernacle of

testimony

testimony, tablets of, 140

test of hunger, 58

test of thirst, 56–57

thief/thieves, 3; 71,3; 84

nighttime thief, 84

thirst, test of, 56–57

time. See also eternity

forever, 124

intolerable expenditure of, 68

trial, 90

be steadfast, for God is coming to you

to try you, 74

tribulation, 90

Trinity, 25; 55; 71,2

trumpets, 72; 166,2

trust, 24; 47,4; 51

truth, 24

demonstration and, 117

twelve springs, 63

twelve stones, 97

twelve tribes of Israel, 97

twenty-eight, the number, 107 and note

two bases to one column, 109

Tyre and Sidon, 63

understanding, 114; 138

unleavened bread, 162. See also Passover

veils, 112; 177,19

sin, as indicating, 108

vessels of mercy, 32

voice, 72–73

Vulgate, 123 and note

wasps, 93

water, 21 and note

thirst, test of, 56–57

through the Spirit of your wrath the

water was divided, 55

twelve springs, 63

wood cast into, 57

you sent your Spirit, and the sea

covered them, 55

weakness, 7; 60

wilderness, journey through, 49–70

will, free: and hardening of Pharaoh’s

heart, 18–30

will, human, 18

will of God, 9

wisdom, 138

gold as signifying, 105

wise and holy workers, 171

you shall speak to all the wise in mind,

whom I have filled with the spirit of

understanding, 114

witnesses, 119

women, pregnant, 80

wood cast into water, 57

word of the Lord, 43

work of God, 166,2

works/good works, 48; 119; 154,3

as taking place when faith works

through love, 172

those who glory in their own, 166,1

worship:

due to God alone, 86 and note

latria, 86 and note

you shall not have other gods besides

me, 71,2

Zipporah, 11–12

Third Book—Questions on Leviticus

vessels of mercy, 32

voice, 72–73

Vulgate, 123 and note

wasps, 93

water, 21 and note

thirst, test of, 56–57

through the Spirit of your wrath the

water was divided, 55

twelve springs, 63

wood cast into, 57

you sent your Spirit, and the sea

covered them, 55

weakness, 7; 60

wilderness, journey through, 49–70

will, free: and hardening of Pharaoh’s

heart, 18–30

will, human, 18

will of God, 9

wisdom, 138

gold as signifying, 105

wise and holy workers, 171

you shall speak to all the wise in mind,

whom I have filled with the spirit of

understanding, 114

witnesses, 119

women, pregnant, 80

wood cast into water, 57

word of the Lord, 43

work of God, 166,2

works/good works, 48; 119; 154,3

as taking place when faith works

through love, 172

those who glory in their own, 166,1

worship:

due to God alone, 86 and note

latria, 86 and note

you shall not have other gods besides

me, 71,2

Zipporah, 11–12

Third Book—Questions on Leviticus

Aaron, 14; 83

high priesthood as started from, 23

and his sons, 14; 23–28; 31–33; 36;

82; 85

Abraham, 56–57

adoration, 66

adultery, 61; 63; 65; 68; 73

agriculture, 89

alcoholic beverages, 33

allegory, 24; 55

angels, 57,1

animals. See also purity laws; sacrifice;

specific animals

beasts of burden, 2

anointing, 14; 16; 23,2

Apollinarians, 93

ark of testimony, 30; 33; 39; 55

atonement, 3; 53–57
Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

85
dead, 83
and funerals, 81–83
he shall not go out from the holy
places, 82 and note
marriage for, 78; 82; 85
Moses as anointing successor of, 23,3
sickness of, 83
as succeeding their fathers, 83 and
note
tabernacle of the testimony, entering,
33; 39; 53; 55; 78; 82
holiness/holy things, 85. See also holy of
holies
atonement for the holy one(s), 53–55
division of the holy and the
contaminated, 33
of God, 32; 66
her husband...is holy to the Lord his
God, 78
he sins involuntarily from the holy
things of the Lord, 6–7; 20,5
the holy one, 3; 53; 54 and note
holy ones, 53
holy places, 6–7; 18, 34; 36,2; 39;
53,1; 55; 82
holy shekel, 9; 20,5
holy veil, 23,1
those by whose punishment the Lord
was made holy, 32
woman after giving birth, she shall not
touch any holy thing, 39–40,1
you are holy, because I am holy too,
66
you shall not profane the holy name,
66
holocausts, 4; 9–10 and note; 12–13;
17–18; 26–28; 30; 36,2–3; 40,2–4
law of the holocaust, 10
holy of holies, Revisions II, 55 (82), 2;
36,2
holies of holies, 19 and note, 78
Holy Spirit, 3; 54–55; 84
hyperbaton or hysterologia, 89
hyperbole, 94
idolatry, 68
immigrants, 91. See also foreigners
immortality, 57,1
incense, Revisions II, 55 (82), 2
incest. See shame
Isaac, 56
Israel, senate of, 25–26
Jerusalem, 24; 56
Jesus Christ, 57,3
as Mediator, 57,2 and note; 93
John the Baptist, 84
Jonathan, 50
Joshua, son of Nun, 23,2 and note
justification, 20,4
Kings, Book of, 50
kinship, 76
land:
land of your possession, 91–92
the land shall not be sold for
profanation/confirmation, 90
the land trembled at those who are
seated upon it, 67
Latin codices, passim
Latin language, 20,2; 25 and passim
Latin translators, 41
law:
eternal, 14; 16; 33; 36
of the holocaust, 10
liturgical, 56 and note
natural, 56 and note
Nominalism, 56 and note
ritual, 56 and note
of sacrifice, 20,1
leprosy, 41–49
life, 57,4
life-giving, 38
little breasts, 27
of imposition, 23,2; 34
of separation, 34
lying, 68. See also perjury
to protect someone, 68
marital relations, Revisions II, 55 (82), 2;
82 and note
Mary, 40,4
Mediator, 57,2
menstruating women, 64
mercy, 68
for mercy shall be given to the lowly,
but the powerful shall suffer more
powerful torments, 31
midwives, 68
miracles, 56
morality, 58–77
morning, 13
Moses, 14; 20,5; 23,2–3; 24–27; 31; 33;
36; 61; 84–85
death of, 23,3
as priest, 23,2

Volume I/14
mournings, pagan customs of, 71
mystery, 23, 2; 57, 3; 76
neighbor, 69; 73
new covenant, 64
New Testament, 84 and note. See also Gospel
Nominalism, 56 and note
numbers. See specific numbers, e.g., seven
oath, 1
obedience, 23
    punishment for disobedience, 94
offerings, 2–23 and passim
old age, 25
Old Testament, 84 and note
    Septuagint, 41 and passim
order of elders, 25
ordination, 80 and note
    original sin, 40, 3
paraptomate, 20, 2
parting his lips, 3
Paul, the Apostle, 57, 1 and passim
pay, as called blood, 57, 3
penance, 40, 4
perjury, 1–2; 7–8
pleonasm, 2
priesthood, 14–16; 21–36; 78–86. See also
    Aaron; high priests
food of, 36
Moses and Aaron as priests, 23, 2
ordination of, 80 and note
    sanctification of a priest, 26
    sin of a priest, 23, 2
propitiation, 53, 2
propitiatory, 53, 2
prostitution, 78
pruning, 89
punishment, 94
    and bodily separation, 27
God as threatening, for disobedience, 94
    those by whose punishment the Lord was made holy, 32
purification, 40, 1
    purity laws:
        clean/unclean, 37–52
        morality, 58–77
Rahab, 68
ram for transgression, 20, 1
redemption, 91–92
resurrection, 81
ritual, 1–23
rock: as signifying Christ, 57, 3
ruler, 66
sabbath, 89; 94
    Sabbath of Sabbaths, 55
sacraments, 57, 4; 84. See also baptism
    visible and invisible, 84 and note
sacrmentum. See mystery
sacrifice, 2–23; 26; 33; 36; 40, 3; 55–57; 84. See also holocausts
    altar of, 39
    eternal, 14; 16 and note
    law of, 20, 1
Nominalism, 56 and note
    by which priests are sanctified, 14
    private, prohibition of, 56
of salvation, 22–23; 26–28; 35; 36, 3
two male goats, 55
salus, 35 and note
salutare, 35 and note
salvation:
    fat of, 13
    sacrifice of, 22–23; 26–28; 35; 36, 3
sacramentum, 57, 4; 84.
    See also baptism
    visible and invisible, 84 and note
serpent, 76
servants/servanthood, 31; 66
service:
    him alone shall you serve, 66
    and you shall not give from your seed to serve the ruler, 66
seven, the number, 57, 3
sexual intercourse, Revisions II, 55 (82), 2; 82 and note
    high priests and, 82 and note; 85
    sexual morality, 58–66
    shadows, 64
    shame: the shame of...you shall not uncover, 58–62; 64
shekel, holy, 9; 20, 5
Shimei, 24
signification on the skin, 41–46
signifier, 57, 3
signs, 9; 23; 41–46; 57, 2–3; 84 and note
Simeon, 35

Questions on the Heptateuch
Simon the magician, 84
sin, 1–3. See also atonement; evil
death to, 81
forgiveness of, 2
he sins involuntarily from the holy
things of the Lord, 6–7; 20,5
male goat understood as for, 26,1
original, 40,3
pardonable, 68
of a priest, 23,2
remission of, 20,4; 40,4; 57,4
sexual morality and, 58–66
transgression and, 18–20
sin, sacrifice for. See sacrifice
sojourners in my presence, 90–91
souls, 57; 81
blood as signifying, 57; 81
God’s will as his soul, 93
he shall not go in over any dead soul,
81
a soul, if it is hidden from him
unwittingly, 5
spies, 68
Spirit of God, 55–56
stone tablets, 20
stoning, 77
synecdoche, 36,3; 89
tabernacle of the testimony, 33; 39; 53;
55; 78; 82
thief: today you shall be with me in
paradise, Revisions II, 55 (82), 3; 84
transgression, 18–20
unclean. See also clean/unclean
until evening, 52
veil, holy, 23,1
ventriloquists, 77
vessel of hide, 51
virginity, 40,4; 78
visible sacraments, 84
vivigignentia, 38
will of God, 93
women. See also specific topics, e.g.,
virginity
and food of priests, 36,1
menstruating, 64
who have given birth, 39–40,1
Word of God, 93
worked hide, 50–51
worship, 66
youth, 25

Fourth Book—Questions on Numbers

Aaron, 4; 19; 27; 30–31; 33
death of, 53
denied entry to Promised Land, 53
election to the priesthood, 30
as high priest, 30
sons/descendants of, 30
Aaron’s staff, 30 and note
Abiram, 26–28
Abraham, 42; 46
abstinence, acts of, 59,5
according to their relationships, etc., 2
“accuser,” 49
adultery, 11; 52
aenigmatisma, 45
aliens, 3
the alien who touches it shall die, 5
allegory, 35
Ammonites, 44
Amorites, 45–46
Anathema, 40–41 and note
angels, 29
and God’s anger, 49

sinful, 29
antistrophe, 16; 61,5
Apocalypse, 49
apocryphal books, 42
Aquila, 52
ark of the covenant/ark of testimony, 30
Balaam, 46–51; 61; 63
Balak, 46
ban, 41
baptism, 33,9–11
Benjamin, 22
blessing/blessedness, 48
blood/blood of Christ, 33
body of Christ, 33
Botrys, Valley of, 21 and note
burning: glory, as signifying, 33,5
Caleb, 23
canonical books, 42
carnal vs. spiritual, 52
cattle, 6; 19; 32; 33,2; 37; 62
cedar wood, 33,6
census, 2; 6 and note
Chaldeans, 42
charity, 33,6. See also love
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christians/Christian faith, 33,9; 53
    Septuagint as Bible of, 52 and note
Church. See also specific topics, e.g.,
sacraments
    rock from which Moses drew water, 35–36
cleanness. See also unclean until evening
    into a clean place, 33,3
cleansing, 33,8–9; 33,11
cleft, 28 and note
cloud overshadowing the tabernacle, 16
consecration:
    to idols/foreign gods, 52
    sacraments of, 54
corruption, 25
Cornelius, 33,9
corpses, 33,1 and note
covenants. See new covenant; old
covenant
cross: rock struck twice as signifying the
two beams of, 35
cursing, 40–41
darkness, 29
dathan, 26–28
death, 10
corpus, 33,1
    and resurrection, 33,5–8
destiterit/destare, 52
devotatio, 40
devil, 49
disobedience: sons of disobedience, 29
divinations, 47
dreams, 47
dung, 33,5
darkness, 29
Edom/Edomites, 37; 44
Eleazar, 30; 33,3–4; 52; 54
Elijah, 18
Elisha, 18
enemies, 26
Esau, 44
eternal life, 29
eternal things, 33,1
Ethiopians, 20
ever: would you have plucked out the eyes
    of those men?, 26
fables, 45
faith, 2; 33,6
    cleansing their hearts by faith, 33,11
    grace through, 53
    hyssop as signifying, 33,6; 33,11
fear: the terror of the land, 22
fire: glory, as signifying, 33,5
firstborn, 6 and note; 32
first fruits, 32
five, the number, 2
flood, 27
foreigners, 25; 33,9
foretelling, 16,3
forgiveness of sins, 33,4
fornication, 52; 63
four, the number, 2
glory, 55
    flame of burning as signifying, 33,5
goat of God, 33,9
God:
    anger of, 49
    cloud overshadowing the tabernacle, 16
    glory of, 33,9
    graciousness of, 36
    holiness of, 36; 53
God, word of. See word of the Lord
gods, foreign, 63
    consecration to, 52
Gospel, 2; 8; 36; 40
Gospels, the four, 2
grace, 18; 35–36; 53
Greek language, 41 and passim
hand of pride, 25
happiness, 33,1
heaven, 29
Hebrews, Epistle to, 17 and note
heifer, red. See red heifer
heresy, 18
high priests, 30; 64. See also priesthood
    holiness:
        of God, 36; 53
        sins of the holy, 31
holocausts, 12
holy places, 18
Holy Spirit, 19; 33,9; 54
hope, 33,6
hyperbaton or hysterologia, 14 and note
hyssop, 33,6; 33,11

Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

idolatry, 52; 63
iniquity. See sin
inverted word order, 16
Israel/Israelites:
  defeating the Midianites, 61
twelve tribes of, 1
Jacob, sons of, 22
Jesus Christ, 12; 33; 35–36; 47; 53
  flesh of; red heifer as signifying, 33
  Passion of; 33,1–3; 33,8
  resurrection of, 33,5–8
as rock, 35
Jethro, 1; 20
Jordan River, 53
Josaphat, 20
Joshua, son of Nun, 23; 53; 54–55
  the Spirit in, 54
justification, 33,9
justifications, 59,5
Keturah, 46
Korah, 27–28; 30
law:
  ark, as placed in, 30
  ceremonial, 59,5
  distinction of the law, 33,1
  universal, 33,1
Levi, tribe of/Levites, 2–6 and note; 13; 16
life, hidden, 33,6
Lot, 27; 46
  offspring of, 46
love, 26. See also charity
lower world, 29
malediction, water of, 39
manna, 30 and note
marriage, 59
Mesopotamia, 61
Midian (son of Abraham and Keturah), 46
Midian (territory), 20 and note; 46; 61–62
  military, 2
miracles, 19; 27; 36; 50
Moab, son of Lot, 46
Moab (territory)/Moabites, 42; 45–65
Moses, 1–2; 4; 6 and note; 13; 15–21; 26–28; 30; 33–37; 42–43; 52–55; 60; 62
  death of, 53
  denied entry to Promised Land, 53
Ethiopian wife of, 20
  five books of, 2 and note
  rock from which water flowed for, 19; 35–36; 53
mystery, 2; 33,1; 53
new covenant, 33; 59,5
New Testament, 2; 17 and note. See also
  Gospel; Scripture, Sacred
  compared to Old Testament, 17 and note; 33,1
Noah, 27
offering of praise, 33,2
old covenant, 2
Old Testament, 2. See also Scripture, Sacred;
  Septuagint
  New Testament compared to, 17 and note; 33,1
Pentateuch, 2 and note
omens, 48
Paralipomenon, Books of, 20 and note
Paran, Mount, Israelites at, 21–34
Passion of Christ. See under Jesus Christ:
  Passion of
Passover, 15
Paul, the Apostle, 17 and note; 29; 35 and passim
Pentateuch, 2 and note
phantasm, 28
Phineas, 52
poets, 45
portents, 50. See also signs
power:
  divine, 19
  they plundered their power, 62
  a thousand from a tribe and a thousand from a tribe, with their power, 60; 62
praise, offering of, 33,2
pride, 25
priesthood:
  Aaron’s election to, 30
  Christian faith and, 53
  high priests, 30; 64
  offspring of priests, 30
  priestly succession, 30
  royal, 33,5
Promised Land, 2; 23; 53
prudence, 59,5
punishment, 30
purification, 10
ram, 9
reason, 59,5
red heifer, 33; 60 and note
resurrection, 33,5–7
rich man, 47

Volume I/14
riddle-speakers, 45
rock:
   as Christ, 35
   struck twice, as signifying the two beams of the cross, 35
   from which Moses drew water, 19; 35–36; 53
rulers, 1
sabbath, 33,2
sacraments, 25; 33,9–11; 54
sacramentum. See mystery
sacrifice, 25; 31; 47; 61
   Christian faith and, 53
   holocausts, 12
   primitiae, 32 and note
   of ram, for transgression, 9
   “sacrifices for sins,” 31
   of salvation, 12
   to you shall I sacrifice an offering of praise, 33,2
salvation: sacrifice of, 12
sanctification, 5; 30; 36
Saracens, 20
scarlet stuff, 33,6
Scripture, Sacred. See also New Testament; Old Testament
   apocryphal books, 42
   canonical books, 42
   Old Testament, compared to New Testament, 17 and note; 33,1
Septuagint, 52 and passim
   as Christian Bible, 52 and note
serpents, 27
shadows, 33; 53
   cloud overshadowing the tabernacle, 16
signs, 3–6; 17; 26; 30; 33,1; 33,5; 36, 50
Sihon, King of the Amorites, 45
sin. See also punishment
   angels, sinful, 29
   cleansing from, 33,8–9
   forgiveness of, 33,4
   in the hand of pride, 25
   of the holy, 31
   human, 10
   of ignorance of the unwitting, 10; 24
   for sin/or for the sake of sin, 12
   of the willing, 24
sin, sacrifice for. See sacrifice
Sinai, Mount, Israelites at, 1–17
slave’s ear, 59,5
Sodom, 27
song, 45
sons of disobedience, 29
souls, 10; 18
spies, 21
Spirit of God, 18; 51
spirit (soul), 18
spiritual, carnal vs., 52
spiritual cleansing, 33,4
staff, Aaron’s. See Aaron’s staff
strength, 21
sun, 27; 52
suspensio, 33,5
Symmachus, 52
tabernacle, 16
The Book of the War of the Lord, 42 and note
the terror of the land, 22
thirst, 35; 43
thousand men, 1
   thousand from a tribe and a thousand from a tribe, with their power, 60; 62
thuribles, 30
transgression, 9
trumpets, 17
twelve tribes, 1
twenty, the number, 2
unclean until evening, 33,7; 33,9; 33,11
Valley of Botrys, 21
vigils, 4
virgins/virginity, 57
visions, 28
vows, and married life, 59
war, 2
   song of, 45
War of the Lord, 42 and note
wasting, 25
water, 33
   brought forth from the rock, 19; 35–36; 53
   of contradiction, 36; 53
   of malediction, 39
   of sprinkling, 33,8–9
   thirst, 35; 43
   “we shall not drink free of cost,” 37
weakness, 21
word of the Lord, 25; 48; 63
world: lower world, 29
Zachary, 19
Fifth Book—Questions on Deuteronomy

Aaron’s staff, 29 and note
Abimelech, 52; 55
Abraham, 35; 52; 55–56
   God’s covenant with, 49 and note
abyss, 54
Achish, king of Gath, 36
Adam, 42
adoption, 46
adultery, 37; 45
aliens, 43
Ammonites, 35
angels, 8; 56
animals. See also specific animals
   unclean, 38
ark of the covenant/ark of testimony,
   15–16
Balaam, 35
beauty, 56
blameworthy sons, 55
blessing, 56
blindness, 56
Boaz, 35; 46
bread, unleavened, 24
brother’s childless widow, marriage to, 46
bull, 56
Cades, 56
cattle, 4; 18; 23–24; 28
census, 9
charity, 15,2; 54. See also love
   Church, 39; 49; 56
   rule of faith (regula fidei), 29 and note
circumcision, 49 and note
   clean heart, 52
   clouds, 9
codices, passim
   confession, 54
covenants, 49 and note
creation, 5–6; 8
   new, 23
   the primogenitus of all creation, 23
darkness, 9; 56
David, 27; 36; 46; 55
dead man, name of, 46
death penalty, 39; 45
debt, 21–22; 41
Deuteronomy: as a kind of second law, 49
divinations, 29
diviners, 19
divorce, 34
dogs, 38
dreamers, 19
death, 5
Eleazar, 46
elect, 8
error, 6; 46; 52
Esau, 56
evil persons, 39
excommunication, 39
faith:
   grace from, 15,4
   rule of, 29 and note
   that works through love, 54
   word of, 54
faithfulness, 14
fear:
   charity vs., 15,2
   with fear and trembling work out your
   salvation, 15,4
   of punishment, 15,2
finger of God, 15,4
firstborn, 18; 23, 28 and note; 38; 57
flesh, 11
foreigners, 20; 26; 36
foreknowledge, 6
fornication, 35; 37
forty days and forty nights, 15,4
forty years in the desert, 51
fruitful mountain, 56
fugitives, 36
Gath, 36
genealogies, Revisions II, 55 (82), 3; 35;
   46
generations, 35; 42
gentiles, 47
giants, 3
glory/glorification, 55
God, 5
   image and likeness of, 4
   mercy of, 55–56
   as perfect, 9
   righteousness of, 11; 15,4; 50; 56
   voice of, 10,3
God, finger of, 15,4
gods, pagan, 48
good will, 54
Gospel, 8; 12; 46; 52; 56
grace, 4; 11; 15,2; 15,4; 42; 48,1; 53; 56
   graven likeness or any image, 4
Greek codices, *passim*

- hairiness, 56
- hands, 54
- happiness/unhappiness, 48, 3
- hardened hearts, 2, 11
- harvest, 44
- hearts, 11
  - clean, 52
  - distracted from God, 27
  - hardened, 2, 11
  - the Lord God did not give you a heart to know, 50
  - love the Lord your God with your whole heart and your whole soul, 53–55
- heaven, 5–6
  - from the height of heaven, 8
- Hebrew language, 3
- Holy Spirit (finger of God), 15, 4
  - “holy things,” 52 and note
- Horeb, 9; 14; 49
- horns of the cross, 57 and note
- hyperbaton or hysterologia, 10, 2
- hyperbole, 17
- Idumaea, 56
- images, 4
  - graven, 4
  - and likeness, 4 and note
- iniquity. See sin
- intermarriage, prohibition against, 35
- Isaac, 35
- Israelites/children of Israel
  - Moses as blessing, 56
  - rebellion of, 1–17
- Jacob, 35
- Jechoniah, 46
- Jerome, 20 and note
- Jerusalem, 10, 1
- Jesus Christ, 4; 15, 4; 23–24; 54–56
- Word of God, 9
- Jews, salvation as from, 10, 1
- joined from his master, 36
- Joseph, blessed by Moses, 57
- Joseph, husband of Mary, 46
- Judah, 35
  - house of, 11
- judgment, divine:
  - as inscrutable, 2
  - righteousness of, 50
- judgment, human:
  - passing, 39
  - you shall not distort the judgment due to an alien and an orphan and a widow, 43
- justice, 2
- justification, 55
- kings, 27
- knowledge, 19; 50
- Latin codices, *passim*
- law, 18–25. See also Ten Commandments
  - Book of Deuteronomy as a kind of second law, 49
  - fullness of, 54
  - observance of, 4–8
  - two tables, giving of, 15
- law, Roman: inequality of men and women in, 33
- left, right and, 48, 1
- Levi, son of Jacob, 46
- Levi, tribe of/Levites, 16; 18; 20; 28; 40
- levirate law, 46
- likeness, image and, 4 and note
- Lot, offspring of, 35
- love, 6; 13; 19; 53–55. See also charity
  - the Lord your God is testing you in order to know if you love him, 13
  - love the Lord your God with your whole heart and your whole soul, 53–55
- Luke, Gospel of, 46
- lying: perjury, 12
- Manicheans, 10 and note
- marriage:
  - to brother’s childless widow, 46
  - polygamy, 27
- Matthan, 46
- Matthat, 46
- Matthew, Gospel of, 46
- men and women, inequality in Roman law, 33
- mercy, 21; 41 and note; 44; 55–56
- Mesopotamia, 35
- miracles, 29
- Moab/Moabites, 35; 49
- Moses:
  - blessing of Joseph, 57
  - blessing the children of Israel, 56
  - death of, 56
  - first sermon of, 1–8
  - fourth sermon of, 49–54
  - second sermon of, 9–47
  - third sermon of, 48

**Questions on the Heptateuch**
mountain, fruitful, 56
mystery, 14
name of the dead man, 46
Nathan, 46
nations, 6
Neri, 46
new covenant, 11; 15–16
compared to old covenant, 15; 49
spiritual things as signified by, 54
New Testament. See Gospel
Noah, God’s covenant with, 49 and note
numbers. See specific numbers, e.g., seven
obedience, 13; 48; 59–64
Og, king of Bashan, 3
old covenant. See also Old Testament
compared to new covenant, 15; 49
old man: put off the old man, 39
Old Testament, 10,3
“holy things,” 52 and note
Pentateuch, 10,3 and note
Septuagint, 20 and passim
omens, 29
original sin, 42
orphans, 43
Paran, 56
parentalia, 47 and note
Passover, 24–25
Paul, the Apostle, 9 and passim
peace, 54
Pentateuch, 10,3 and note
perfection, 9
perjury, 12
pigs, 38
polygamy, 27
portents, 19; 29
priesthood: universal royal priesthood, 16
primogenitus, 23 and note
Promised Land, 9; 14
prophets, 19
prostitution, 37–38
punishment. See also death penalty;
stoning
fear of, 15,2
perjury, 12
rape, 34
remission, year of, 21–22
Rephaim, 3
right and left, 48,1
righteousness, 11; 14; 15,4; 48; 50; 56
rule of faith (regula fidei), 29 and note
Ruth, 35; 46
sabbath of years, 20
sacramentum, 14 and note
sacrifice, 24–25; 28 and note
salvation, 54–55
with fear and trembling work out your
salvation, 15,4
as from the Jews, 10,1
sanctification, 56
Sarah, 52; 55
Saul, King, 36
Scriptures, Sacred. See Gospel; Old
Testament
sea: beyond the sea, 54
second law, Book of Deuteronomy as,
15; 49
Seir, Mount, 56
Septuagint, 20 and passim
sermons of Moses. See under Moses
servants/servanthood:
Pharaoh’s, 50
wives treated like, 33
seven, the number, 42
Shealtiel, 46
signs, 19; 29
sin. See also punishment
blameworthy sons did not sin against
him, 55
of the fathers, 42
hairiness as signifying, 56
against a human being, 45 and note
original, 42
to sin unto God, 55
for three sins and for four I will not
turn away, 42
Sinai, Mount, 15,4; 25; 56
Solomon, 27; 46
sons:
blameworthy, 55
fathers shall not die for their sons, 42
sons of God, 23
soul: love the Lord your God with your
whole heart and your whole soul,
53–55
spiritual things as signified by new
covention, 54
stars, 6
stiff-necked people, 14
stone tablets, 11; 15
stoning, as punishment, 33
sun, 6
rising, 56
Volume I/14

swearing, 12
tablets of testimony, 11; 15
Ten Commandments, second giving of, 9–11; 15–18
tests/testing, 19
thief: *that thief shall die*, 39
twelve tribes of Israel: Moses blessing, 56
twins, 4
two tablets, 15
unleavened bread, 24
virginity, 33–35
voice of God, 10,3
Vulgate, 20 and note
water, 5

widows, 43
marriage to brother’s childless widow, 46
wine, 51
wives:
*he shall not multiply wives for himself*, 27
inequality of, 33
women, 33
word of faith, 54
Word of God, 9
working: *with fear and trembling work out your salvation*, 15,4
worship, 6; 19
year of remission, 21–22
Zerubbabel, 46

Sixth Book—Questions on Joshua the Son of Nun

Abiron, 19
Abraham, 21; 24–25
Achan, 8
Adonizedek, 15
Africa, 15
Ai, 8
Alexander the coppersmith, 30,2
ambush, 10
Amorites, 14–15
anathema, 8 and note
angels, wicked, 27
Antichrist, 22 and note
ark of the covenant/ark of testimony, 2–3; 5; 30,1
Asia, 15
asses, 12
baptism: rebaptism, 6 and note
battles, 8–18
Bethel, 19
Books of Kingdoms, 19 and note
Canaan, land of/Canaanites, 15; 19; 21,2–3; 25; 30,2
carnal attractions and desires, 21
cattle, 9,3; 21,2
charity. *See* love
Christ, *See* Jesus Christ
Christian faith, sacraments of. *See* sacraments
“*christs*,” 23
Church, 25
sacraments, 6
circumcision, 30,1 and note
the Hill of Foreskins, 6
cleansing:
by fire, 9,2
sanctification, 56
clouds, 3
cornerstone, 30,1
covenant(s), 30,1. *See also* new covenant;
old covenant
repetition of, 30,1
of testimony, 5
cruelty, 16
Dan, tribe of, 22 and note
David, 13 and note
death:
and divine providence, 8 and note
sin and, 4
desert of Madbaritis, 6
devoted things, 8 and note
Donatists, 6 and note
enemies, 18; 30,1
Ephraim (territory), 19
error, 6; 29
eternal fire, 4
eternity/the eternal/eternal law, 4
Euphrates River, 21,3 and note
faith, 28
faithfulness, 29
of God, 21,3
fire, 9,1–3
eternal, 4
Questions on the Heptateuch

he shall be burned with fire, 9,2–3
firstborn, 19
foreigners, 13
foreign gods, 29–30
Foreskins, Hill of, 6
free will, 18 and note
Gehenna, 9,2
Gibeonites, 12–15; 18
Gilgal, 14
God:
and cruelty, 16
faithfulness of, 21,3
holiness of, 28
mercy of, 4; 28
promise of, 25
righteousness of, 5; 28
gods, foreign, 29–30
grace, 23; 28
Greek language, 12 and passim
heart, hardening of, 18 and note
hell, 9,2
heresy/heretics, 6 and note; 16 and note
Hill of Foreskins, 6
Hittites, 21,3
holiness. See under God: holiness of
Hoza, 19 and note
idolatry, 29–30
intelligence, human, 3
Israel:
Joshua as leading, 1–7
land as divided between twelve tribes
of, 19–23
Jacob, 29
Jebus, 15
Jebusites, kings of, 15
Jericho, 2; 7–8 and note; 19; 26
Jerome's Latin translation of the Old
Testament. See Vulgate
Jerusalem, 15; 21,3
Jesus Christ, 23; 28
and the Church, 25
the end of the law unto righteousness
for everyone who believes, 28
as rock, 30,1
Jews, 30,1
Jordan River, 21,2–3
Joshua:
final words of, 24–30
as leading Israel, 1–7
prophetic spirit of, 9,3
repetition of the covenant, 30,1
Judah, tribe of, 8
judgment, divine, 8; 18
judgment, human, 3; 28
justice, 8
justification, 28
Kingdoms, Books of, 19 and note
knaves of stone, 30,1
law:
end of, 28
everlasting, 4
"second law," 30,1
Levites, 3
Libya, 15
love, 8
lying, 11; 13; 29
Mabdaritis, desert of, 6
Manicheans, 16 and note
Marcion of Sinope, 16 and note
medicinal liquid, 30,1 and note
mercy, 4; 18; 20; 21,3
of God, 28
Mesopotamia, 22; 29
Moses, 1–2; 16; 18; 21,2
as friend of God, 30,1
as God's servant, 16
mystery, 29–30
Nabal, 13 and note
new covenant, 30
Nile River, 21,3 and note
oak, 30,1 and note
obedience, 29
old covenant, 5; 30,1
Old Testament, 19 and note. See also
Septuagint
God as author of, 16 and note
Paul, the Apostle, 5 and passim
Philistines, 21,3
pride, 30,2
Promised Land, 1; 13; 21
prophecy, 25
providence, divine, 8 and note; 18
punishment:
fire as designating/of eternal fire, 4;
9,1
God's, 1
Rachel, 29
Rahab, 2
rebaptism, 6 and note
Rebecca, 24

Volume I/14
Writings on the Old Testament

Rhinocorura, 21,3 and note
righteousness, 5; 28
rock: they drank of the spiritual rock that followed them, but the rock was Christ, 30,1
sacramentum, 30,1 and note
sacraments, 6
sacrifice, 19 and note
sacrifices of our salvations, 23 and note
salutare or salutaria, 23 and note
salvation: sacrifices of, 23 and note
santification, 56
Saul, 13 and note
Saul, King, 13
schism, 6 and note
scribes, 3
Scriptures, Sacred. See Old Testament
second law, 30
Septuagint, 15; 19 and note; 24–25; 30,1 and passim
servants/servanthood, 28
of God, 1; 7; 16; 28
Moses as God’s, 16
you shall not be able to serve the Lord, because he is a holy God, 28

Shiloh, 30
shoulders, 12
signs, 3
sin, 8
and death, 4
spirit, 24
stone, 30,1. See also cornerstone
knives of, 30,1
stones, 4
stoning, 3; 9
suffering, 16
terebinth, 30,1 and note
Torah, 19 and note
trust, 2; 14
twelve tribes of Israel, land as divided between, 19–23
unbelievers, 30,1
Vulgate, 7; 15; 19; 24; 25; 30,1 and note
war, 8–18
wasps, 27
wickedness. See sin
will, human, 18 and note
witness: this stone shall be a witness for you, 30,1

Seventh Book—Questions on Judges

Aaron, daughters of, 47
Abimelech, 45–47
Abraham, 36–37; 49
obedience of, 49,5
Achsah, 3
Adam, 37 and note; 49,26
Alexandria, 8
Ammonites, 48–49
Anak, 6
anakephalaiois, 10–11
angels:
the devil’s, 5; 49,20
gentiles made subject to, 48
Gideon and, 31–36
of great counsel, 54
Jacob wrestling with, 49,17
of the Lord, 12–13; 31; 35; 54
the Lord prospers the angel with me, 26
men, as called, 31
prophets, as called, 31
anticipation (praeoccupatio), 3; 10–11; 42
Ashkelon, 5
Ashtarte(s), 16 and note
ass, 4
Baal, 16
Baalim, 16 and note
Baalsamen, 16 and note
Babylon, 49,26
Barak, 26; 28; 33; 49,8
barley bread, 30; 39
Benjamin, 7
tribe of, 47
Beth Shean, 8–9
blessedness, 49,27
bread:
barley, 30; 39
unleavened, 35
bridegroom, 49,26 and note
bulls, 25
Caiaphas, 49,11
Caleb, 3–4; 6; 18
daughter of, 3–4
Canaanites, 2–3; 10; 17,3
carnal attractions and desires, 49,1

Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

cattle, 25; 37; 49 passim
charity. See love
Chemosh, 48
child sacrifice, 49
Church, 49,9; 49,26–27
Christ as head of, 49,22
as daughter, 49,26
holocaust as, 49,26
mystery of, 49,14; 49,26
universality of, 49,26–27
virginity of, 49,26
circumcision, 37
City of God, 49,14
City of Letters, 3 and note
codices, passim
conscience, 17,3
consummation, 49,4
creation, 46 and note
cross, 49,22
sign of, 37; 49,11–12
Dan, tribe of, 11
darkness, 46
daughter:
of Caleb, 3–4
Church as, 49,26
of Jephthah, 48–49
David, 37; 47; 49,8; 49,11; 49,21; 49,26
dawn, 46
death: resurrection of the dead, 26
Debir, 3 and note
Deborah, 26; 29; 33
deception, 12
disciples, 49,26
disobedience, 31
dogs, 37; 39
earthen vessels, 49,12
Eglon the king, 21
Ehud, 20–25
eighteen, the number, 37
Elijah, 36
Elizabeth, 47
enemies, 5; 49
he sold them in the hand of their enemies, 17,1
Ephraim (territory), 28
ephod or ephod, 41; 49,12
error, 14; 16
eternal life, 37 and note; 49,27
faith: daughter, your faith has saved you; go in peace, 49,26
faithfulness, 49,9–10; 49,15; 49,16
famine, 49,21
fire, 36
firstborn, 49,2
fleece, 49,9
Flood, 49,26
foreigners, 17,3; 25; 55
foretelling, 49,13; 49,17
forgiveness of sin, 49,18–19; 49,26
fornication, 41–43; 49,7; 49,9–10; 49,16–17
forty years, 19; 42; 53
future, foretelling. See foretelling
Gaza, 5
Gehenna, 49,20
gentiles:
Greeks as term designating, 37
for the Jew first and for the Greek, 37
made subject to angels, 48
Gideon, 32–43; 49,8–12; 49,16; 49,22
family of, 47
Gilead, 49
God:
of Abraham…of Isaac and…of Jacob, 49,1
graciousness of, 5
mercy of, 11; 21
providence of, 11; 49,26
gods, false/foreign, 1 and note; 16. See also idolatry
gold, 41,1
Gospel, 36–37; 46–47; 49,12; 49,16–17
Gothoniel, 18
grace, 37; 49,9
period under, 37 and note
Greek codices, passim
Greek language, 37 and note
Greeks, 37
grew up, 49,17
head: Christ as head of the Church, 49,22
Hebrew language, 41,3
Hebrews, Epistle to, 49,5 and note
Hebron, 3; 6
hell (Gehenna), 49,20
high priests, 41,3
holiness, 35
holocausts, 49,1–6; 49,26–27; 53 and note; 54
Holy Spirit, 36; 49,24
human sacrifice, 49
hyperbaton or hysteria, 18; 29
idolatry, 1 and note; 16; 36 and note; 41,2;

Volume I/14
Questions on the Heptateuch
Questions on the Heptateuch

prophets: angels as called, 31
prosperity, excesses of, 5
prostitution, 49,26
Punic language, 16 and note
Purah, 38
recapitulation, 10–11
Rechab, 5
revelation, 49,12
resurrection, 49,17
righteousness, 49,9
rock, water pouring forth from, 36
sabbath, 49,17
sacraments. See sacred objects
sacramenta. See mystery
sacred objects, 41,2 and note; 43 and note
sacrifice, 53–54
Gideon’s, 35–36
human, 49
salvation, 49,19
Samson, 49,8; 50–52; 55–56
satrapies, 17,3
Saul, 47
Saul, King, 37
savior, 18
scribes, 49,16
Scythians, 8–9
Scythopolis, 8
sent forth, 45
Septuagint, 16; 21; 25; 41,3 and passim
servants/servanthood, 49,5
Abraham’s obedience, 49,5
angel of great counsel in the form of, 54
of Eglon the king, 23
Gideon’s (Purah), 38
Moses as God’s, 48
shadows, 49,1
Shamgar, son of Anath, 25
Shechem/Shechemites, 45–46
Shiloh, 36
shinbone above the thigh, 55
signs, 37; 49,9–12
silver, 17,1
Simeon, 2
sin, 49
forgiveness of, 49,18–19; 49,26
redemption, 17,1
Sisera, 27–28
six, the number, 37 and note; 49,26; 49,28
sixty days, 49,26
slaves/slavery, 25; 37
sold: he sold them in the hand of their enemies, 17,1
sons of the bridegroom, 49,26 and note
Spirit of God, 49,8–16; 49,24
sterility, 50
sun, 16 and note; 46
sword, 40
synagogue, Jewish, 49,16
synecdoche, 41,3
tests/testing, 49,9
the Vulgate, 16; 21; 25; 37; 41; 47; 49
thieves, 18
three hundred men, 49,12
Tob, 49,18 and note
Tola, son of Puah, 47
trust, 44; 49,12
unleavened bread, 35
veruclata, 23
virginity, 49,15–16; 49,26
of the Church, 49,26
Vulgate, 16 and note
war, freedom from, 19; 42
water:
living, 36
from the rock, 36
weeping, 12
will of God, 49,15
wives, 49,26
“word,” the term, 20
worship, 41,2
of foreign gods, 1
wrath, 49,12
Zebul, 46

Volume I/14
Index from
Expressions in the Heptateuch
Locutionum in Heptateuchum
(Sayings in the Heptateuch)

Published by New City Press in:

Writings on the Old Testament

Translations by Joseph T. Lienhard, Sean Doyle, and Joseph T. Kelley, introductions and annotated by Joseph T. Lienhard, S. J. and Joseph L. Farrell, O.S.A.

This volume contains Questions on the Heptateuch (Quaestiones in Heptateuchum), Expressions in the Heptateuch (Locutiones in Heptateuchum), Notes on Job (Annotationes in Iob), Eight Questions from the Old Testament (Octo Quaestiones ex Veteri Testamento), and Answer to the Jews (Adversus Iudaeos)

Volume I/14 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-557-0, 6 x 9 in., 822 pp., 2017

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Expressions in the Heptateuch

## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

*Expressions in the Heptateuch*

*(Prepared by Michael Dolan)*

The Roman numeral refers to the book number; the first number after that is the chapter; if the chapter number is followed by a comma, the number that follows the comma is the section number. E.g. I, 25,1 refers to the First Book (Expressions in Genesis), chapter 25, section 1.

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Vol. I/14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>IV, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16.24-25</td>
<td>I, 1, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15.24</td>
<td>Rev II, 54 (81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16.25</td>
<td>Rev II, 54 (81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>I, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>I, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>I, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>I, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>I, 9; I, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>I, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>I, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>I, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-7</td>
<td>I, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>I, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:22</td>
<td>Rev II, 54 (81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>I, 17; I, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>Rev II, 54 (81); I, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>I, 21; I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6-7</td>
<td>I, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>I, 25; I, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>I, 26; I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>I, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:25</td>
<td>Rev II, 54 (81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>I, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>I, 32; I, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>I, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>I, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>I, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>I, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>I, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>I, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>I, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>I, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>I, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>I, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>I, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>I, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13</td>
<td>I, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:22-23</td>
<td>I, 48; I, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>I, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:3</td>
<td>I, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:5</td>
<td>I, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6</td>
<td>I, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:8</td>
<td>I, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9</td>
<td>I, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12</td>
<td>I, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:17</td>
<td>I, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>I, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7</td>
<td>I, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>I, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:20</td>
<td>I, 61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expressions in the Heptateuch
Expressions in the Heptateuch

42:19 I, 169  1:21 II, 2
42:22 I, 170  1:20 II, 2
42:23 I, 171  1:22 II, 3
42:32 I, 172  2:1 II, 4
42:34 I, 172  2:2 II, 4
42:35 I, 173  2:14 II, 6
42:36 I, 174  2:25 II, 7
43:3 I, 175  3:7 II, 8
43:7 I, 176  3:11-12 II, 9
43:16 I, 177  3:16 II, 10
43:18 I, 178  3:18 II, 11
43:21 I, 179  3:22 II, 12
43:23 I, 180  4:1 II, 13
43:28 I, 181  4:4 II, 14
43:32 I, 182  4:5 II, 15; II, 16
43:34 I, 183  4:6 II, 17
44:6 I, 184  4:8 II, 18
44:7 I, 184; I, 185  4:9 II, 19
44:9 I, 186  4:10 II, 20
44:34 I, 187  4:17 II, 21
45:2 I, 188  4:18-19 II, 22
45:3 I, 188  5:10 II, 23
45:16 I, 189  5:21 II, 24
46:2 I, 190  6:4 II, 25
46:4 I, 191  6:5 II, 26
46:28 I, 192  6:9 II, 27
46:31-32 I, 193  6:12 II, 28
46:32 I, 193  6:26 II, 29
47:8 I, 194  6:30 II, 30
47:9 I, 195  7:6 II, 31
47:12 I, 196  7:9 II, 32
47:13 I, 197  7:11 II, 33
47:15 I, 198  7:12 II, 34
47:20 I, 199  7:15 II, 35
47:22 I, 200  7:16 II, 36
47:26 I, 201  7:22 II, 37
47:28 I, 202  8:1 II, 38
48:1 I, 203  8:2 II, 39
48:16 I, 204  8:3-4 II, 40
48:18 I, 205  8:6 II, 41
49:24 I, 206  8:14 II, 42; II, 86; II, 116
50:2 I, 207  8:16 II, 43
50:3 I, 207  8:18 II, 44
50:4 I, 208  8:21 II, 45
50:6 I, 209  8:22 II, 46
50:10 I, 210  8:29 II, 47
50:15 I, 211  9:1 II, 48
50:17 I, 212; II, 55  9:18 II, 49
50:18 I, 213  9:24 II, 49
Exodus 9:29 II, 50
1:12 II, 1  10:2 II, 51

Volume I/14
Volume I/14

10:4 II, 52  21:13 II, 100
10:8 II, 53  21:20 II, 101
10:15 II, 54  21:28 II, 102; II, 114
10:16-17 II, 55  21:29 II, 103
10:24 II, 57  21:33-34 II, 104
10:26 II, 58  21:34 II, 105
10:28 II, 59  22:5 II, 106
11:2 II, 60  22:26 II, 107
12:3 II, 62  23:28 II, 109
12:4 II, 63  23:30 II, 110
12:7 II, 64  23:32-33 II, 111
12:8 II, 64  24:3 II, 112
12:22 II, 65  24:10 II, 113
12:28 II, 67  25:20 II, 115
12:34 V, 73  26:10 II, 116
12:51 II, 68  26:29 II, 117; II, 118
13:1 II, 69  27:6 II, 118
13:12 II, 70  28:24 II, 122
13:13 II, 70; II, 71  28:29 II, 121
13:15 II, 72  28:35 II, 123
13:16 II, 73  29:13 II, 124
14:27 II, 74  29:26 II, 125
14:31 II, 75  30:8 II, 126
15:1 II, 76  30:12-13 II, 127
15:22 II, 77  32:1 II, 128; II, 129
15:24 II, 78  32:4 II, 133
16:1 II, 79  32:10 II, 130
16:2 II, 80  32:24 II, 131
16:4 II, 81  32:26 II, 132
16:7 II, 82  32:31 II, 133
16:9 II, 83  33:1 II, 134
16:12 II, 83  33:5 II, 135
16:14 II, 84  34:1 II, 144
16:16 II, 85  34:9 II, 136
16:21 II, 86  34:15 II, 137
16:29 II, 87  34:17 II, 138
17:1 II, 88  34:19 II, 139
17:2 II, 89  34:20 II, 140
17:3 II, 90  34:25 II, 141; II, 142
17:5 II, 91  34:28 II, 143
17:15 II, 92  35:4 II, 145
18:12 II, 92  35:21 II, 146; II, 147
18:18 II, 93  35:23 II, 148
18:20 II, 94  35:24 II, 149; II, 150
18:26 II, 95  35:25 II, 151
20:24 II, 97  35:26 II, 152
21:2 II, 98  35:29 II, 154
21:6 II, 99  35:32 II, 155

Expressions in the Heptateuch
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume I/14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35:33</td>
<td>II, 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:34-35</td>
<td>II, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:35</td>
<td>II, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:8</td>
<td>II, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:32</td>
<td>II, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:16</td>
<td>II, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:34</td>
<td>II, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:35</td>
<td>II, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:8</td>
<td>II, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:32</td>
<td>II, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:16</td>
<td>II, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>III, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>III, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>III, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>III, 4; III, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>III, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>III, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>III, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>III, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>III, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>III, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>III, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
<td>III, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>III, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>III, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8-9</td>
<td>III, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>III, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>III, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>III, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>III, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>III, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>III, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>III, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>III, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>III, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>III, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>III, 25; III, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>III, 27; III, 28; III, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:6</td>
<td>III, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7-8</td>
<td>III, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>III, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:35</td>
<td>III, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:46</td>
<td>III, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:47</td>
<td>III, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:51</td>
<td>III, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:55</td>
<td>III, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>III, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>III, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16</td>
<td>III, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21</td>
<td>III, 39; III, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21</td>
<td>III, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>III, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7</td>
<td>III, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>III, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:25</td>
<td>III, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>IV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>IV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>IV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:54</td>
<td>IV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>IV, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>IV, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>IV, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>IV, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>IV, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>IV, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>IV, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>IV, 12; IV, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>IV, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>IV, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>IV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>IV, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>IV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>IV, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>IV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>IV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13-14</td>
<td>IV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>IV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:29</td>
<td>IV, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>IV, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>IV, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>IV, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:8</td>
<td>IV, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>IV, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>IV, 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expressions in the Heptateuch

Volume I/14
Expressions in the Heptateuch
Expressions in the Heptateuch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>V, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>V, 14; V, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5-6</td>
<td>V, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>V, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>V, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>V, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>V, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>V, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>V, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3-4</td>
<td>V, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>V, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>V, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:28</td>
<td>V, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>V, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>V, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>V, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>V, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>V, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>V, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15-16</td>
<td>V, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:24</td>
<td>V, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>V, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>V, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:16</td>
<td>V, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:24</td>
<td>V, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>V, 39; V, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:7</td>
<td>V, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:7-8</td>
<td>V, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17</td>
<td>V, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21</td>
<td>V, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>V, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:1</td>
<td>V, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>V, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>V, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:16</td>
<td>V, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10</td>
<td>V, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:4</td>
<td>V, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:6</td>
<td>V, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:8</td>
<td>V, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:2-3</td>
<td>V, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:6</td>
<td>V, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
<td>V, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:10</td>
<td>V, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:7</td>
<td>V, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:21</td>
<td>V, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:48</td>
<td>V, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:49</td>
<td>V, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:54-55</td>
<td>V, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:63</td>
<td>V, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:2-3</td>
<td>V, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:4</td>
<td>V, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:12:13</td>
<td>V, 66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31:8</td>
<td>V, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:16</td>
<td>V, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:27</td>
<td>V, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:29</td>
<td>V, 70; V, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>V, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:14</td>
<td>V, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:20</td>
<td>V, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:36</td>
<td>V, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:37</td>
<td>V, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:40</td>
<td>V, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:42</td>
<td>V, 78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Joshua

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>VI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>VI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>VI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>VI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>VI, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>VI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>VI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>VI, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>VI, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1-2</td>
<td>VI, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>VI, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>VI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>VI, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:27</td>
<td>VI, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>VI, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>VI, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25</td>
<td>VI, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19-20</td>
<td>VI, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>VI, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:16</td>
<td>VI, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:33-34</td>
<td>VI, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>VI, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2</td>
<td>VI, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:42</td>
<td>VI, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:7</td>
<td>VI, 23; VI, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:8</td>
<td>VI, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:10</td>
<td>VI, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:11</td>
<td>VI, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:27</td>
<td>VI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>VI, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:1</td>
<td>VI, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
<td>VI, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:17</td>
<td>VI, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Judges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>VII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>VII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>VII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>VII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>VII, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/14
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>VII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>VII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>VII, 8; VII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>VII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>VII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>VII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>VII, 13; VII, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>VII, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>VII, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>VII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>VII, 17; VII, 18; VII, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>VII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>VII, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>VII, 22; VII, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>VII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td>VII, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>VII, 26; VII, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>VII, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>VII, 29; VII, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>VII, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>VII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>VII, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>VII, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>VII, 35; VII, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>VII, 37; VII, 38; VII, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>VII, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>VII, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:34</td>
<td>VII, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:43</td>
<td>VII, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:55</td>
<td>VII, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:8</td>
<td>VII, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:34</td>
<td>VII, 46; VII, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>VII, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>VII, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>VII, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>VII, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>VII, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>VII, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14</td>
<td>VII, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>VII, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>VII, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>VII, 57; VII, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>VII, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>VII, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:11</td>
<td>VII, 61; VII, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15</td>
<td>VII, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>VII, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>I, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>I, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:14</td>
<td>II, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>IV, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>III, 19; IV, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:2</td>
<td>VII, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:18</td>
<td>VII, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:8</td>
<td>III, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>III, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:14</td>
<td>II, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:23</td>
<td>II, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:26</td>
<td>II, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:14</td>
<td>III, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:4</td>
<td>II, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:11</td>
<td>II, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:4</td>
<td>II, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:1</td>
<td>II, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:8</td>
<td>II, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87:1-2</td>
<td>II, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:26</td>
<td>II, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:18</td>
<td>V, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:5</td>
<td>V, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:55,56</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142:4</td>
<td>II, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>V, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>V, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>III, 55; IV, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>V, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>IV, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>I, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>I, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>I, 133; VI, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:40</td>
<td>I, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:31</td>
<td>V, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29</td>
<td>IV, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>VII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:19</td>
<td>IV, 65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Expressions in the Heptateuch**
## Expressions in the Heptateuch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:7</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/14
GENERAL INDEX

Expressions in the Heptateuch
(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers immediately following entries indicate chapter numbers. A number preceded by the letter n indicates a footnote.

First Book—Expressions in Genesis

Abel, 12–14
Abraham, 37–90; 102; 107; 118
    circumcision of, 58
    in Egypt, 37–40
    God’s covenant relationship with,
        50–60
    and Isaac, 107
    and Lot, 41–43
    oak of Mamre, 47
    old age of, 57–60
    and Sarah, 37–40; 57; 60; 74 and n45
    servant of, 80; 88 and n52
Adam, 9–11
adoration, 82
adversity, the left as designating, 90
Alexander the coppersmith, 211
allelugory, 90
Amraphel, king of Shinar, 44
animals, 20
    See also specific animals
ark, Noah’s, See Noah
Apreachshad, 36
asterisks and obelisks, 103
awakening, 19
Babel, tower of, 32–35
beasts of burden, 169
beauty, of Rebecca, 81
Benjamin, 167; 183
Bethuel, 90 and n52; 92; 107
Bilhah, 109
body:
    grain according to the body, 196
    soul and, 133 and n71
boy, the term, 181 and n92
bread, 198
breeding: both the sheep and the cattle are
    breeding, 124
bricks, 34
brothers, 43
    because he is our brother and our
        flesh, 135
burial, 207
    dead one, 74 and n45
Cain, 12–14
Canaan, land of, 54; 167; 172; 193; 207
    and n105
    cattle, 20; 22; 59; 119; 124; 130; 193
    centurion, 209; 212
Ched-or-laomer, 45
    circumcision, 56
    of Abraham, 58
    codices, passim
    cognate accusative, 210 and n107
    concubines, 117
    covenants, 68; 97
        with Abraham, 55–56
        with Noah, 29
        sign of, 29
    creation, Revisions II, 54 (81); 1–7; 18
    crowds, 203
daughter, 126
    “days of years,” 202
deduction and burial, 207
    See also resurrection
        dead one, 74 and n45
devil, 133
Dinah, 125–30
divination, 110
dove, 24–25
dreams, 146
earth: all the earth, 33
Edom/Edomites, 119; 131
Egypt
Expressions in the Heptateuch

See also under individual names, e.g.,
Jacob: in Egypt
sale in, 164
elder, the term, 98 and n55
Elijah, 89
ellipsis, 36; 41
Esau, 93–102 and n55; 119–21; 131
eternal things, 90
Eve, 9–12
evil, 90
tree of knowing good and evil, 6; 11
famine, 72; 155; 197
firstborn, 205
flesh: because he is our brother and our
flesh, 135
forgiveness of sin, 212
giant hunter against the Lord God, 30
goats, 101
God:
and Abraham’s family, 36–213
image and likeness of, 2
of my master Abraham, 89
and the world, 1–36
Gomorrah, 61
good, 90
and evil, 6
Goshen, 192
Gospel, 209
gracious to you, do not fear, 180
grain, 196; 198
grave-diggers, 207
Greek codices, passim
Greek language, preface and passim
Hagar, 9; 69
Hamor, 126–30
happiness, 90
hearkening, 170 and n84; 204
Hebrew language, preface and passim; 24
Horites, 46
house, 116
hyperbaton or hysterologia, 47
hyperbole, 35
idioms, 21–22; 171–72 and passim
Idumeans, 131
image and likeness of God, 2
iniquity. See sin
Isaac, 90–102; 107
Ishmael, 69
sons of, 91
Israel: he who consoled Israel, 206
Jacob, 93–131; 181; 202–10
blessing of, 204–6
death and burial of, 207–10
and Dinah, 125–30
in Egypt, 191–213
and Esau, 93–102
and Laban, 112–19
Jesus Christ, 147
resurrection of, 9
Job, 133
Joseph, 132–213
sons of, 204–6
Judah, 134–39; 175; 192
justifications, 199
kinship, 43
Laban, 90 and n52; 92; 107; 112–19
languages, 24
See also specific languages
tower of Babel, 32–35
Latin codices, passim
Latin language, 52; 199 and n98; 207; 210
and passim
Leah, 116
the left as designating adversity, 90
likeness of God, 2
lip: all the earth was one lip, 32
Lot, 41–43
maid servants, 109; 116; 119; 122–23
masculine/feminine, 74
Mesopotamia, 92; 103; 167
mourning, 210
Nahor, 107
Noah, Revisions II, 54 (81); 14–26; 36
God’s covenant with, 29
oak of Mamre, 47
oaths, 80
obelisks, asterisks and, 103
one is not, 167; 172
outcry, 61
Paul, the Apostle, 19 and passim
“Pharaoh,” the term, 201
Philistines, 31
pleonasm, 51
prosperity, the right as designating, 90
Punic language, 24
raven, 23
Rebecca, 81–90 and n52; 92–93
receive the iniquity, 212
repetition, 22

Volume I/14
resurrection, 9; 19
Reuben, 132
right as designating prosperity, 90
righteousness, 90; 111
river: told Abraham from beyond the river, 47
rock, 147
Salem, 130
Sarai/Sarah, 37–40; 57; 60; 74 and n45
Seir, 46; 119
Semitic languages, 24
Septuagint, 103
serpent, 8
servants/servanthood, 119–20; 153; 166–67; 181 and n92; 185–186; 207; 209
See also under Abraham: servant of; maidservants
your servants are not spies, 166
Shechem/Shechemites, 125–30
sheep, 101; 124
Shem, 36
Shinar, 44
signifiers, 147
signs: of the covenant, 29
sin, 6–30
forgiveness of, 212
slaves, 130; 178; 181 and n92
See also servants
Sodom, 48; 61–64
solecism, 52
soul: let us not strike him in the soul, 133
spies, 166; 168
sterility, 37
stone, 34
swearing, 80
Syria, Mesopotamia of. See Mesopotamia
Tamar, 137–39
thigh, hand placed under, 80
three bottoms/three days, 147 and n78
tower of Babel, 32–35
tree of knowing good and evil, 6; 11
very very, 53
vessel and a quiver and a bow, 99
virginity, 81 and nn49–50; 88 and n51
wives, 122–23
woman, the term, 88 and n51
world, God and, 1–36
worries, 124
years, 202
zeugma kat’ ellipsin, 41

Second Book—Expressions in Exodus
Aaron, 29; 31–32; 41; 57; 67; 79; 92; 121; 123 and n62; 126; 128
staff of, 34
Abraham, 71
“absolute idiom,” 122
Amorites, 109
angels, 51
animals
See also specific animals
yoke animals, 140
architectonic work, 156
ark of the covenant, 119
bread, 81; 143
brothers, 56
bulrushes, 5 and n2
burial, 71
Canaanites, 25
cattle, 57–58; 61; 70
codices, passim
compounds, 153
cups, 115
dan, tribe of, 158
dead one, 71
dog, 61
dogflies, 47
Egyptians, 60
Eliab, 158
ever, 99
face, 84
fasting, 143
fearing God, 2
firstborn, 140
forty day fast, 143
fringes, 122
frogs, plague of, 39–41; 52; 65; 109
gnats, plague of, 44
God:
knowledge, God’s, 82
presence of, revealed, 7–21
gods, molten/artificial, 138
See also idolatry
Goshen, 46

Expressions in the Heptateuch
Expressions in the Heptateuch

Greek codices, *passim*
Greek language, 25 and *passim*
hailstorm (plague), 49–50
hand:
  *it will be for a sign upon your hand,* 73
  *stretch out a hand and grasp the tail,* 14–15
hearkening, 11 and n4; 30; 82
heart, hardening of, 37
Hebrews, 60
high priesthood, 121–23
holocausts, 92
  See also sacrifice
holy of holies, 119; 156
hoof, 58
hornets, 109
houses, 40
hunger, test of, 79–81
hyssop, 65
idioms, 133 and *passim*
  “absolute idiom,” 122
idolatry, 128; 133
  molten gods, 138
incense, 153
Israel, children of. See specific topics and events
Jacob, 2
Jethro, 92
judgment fringes, 122
justifications, 98
knowledge, God’s, 82
Laban, 2
lamps, 119; 126
Latin codices, *passim*
Latin language, 144 and *passim*
leprosy, 17
Levi, tribe of, 4
locusts, 52; 65; 109
made sport of, 51
magic arts, 44
maidservants, 101
manna, 81
masculine/feminine, 71
Medeas, 133
Midian/Midianites, 22; 92
midwives, 2
miracles, 16
molten gods, 138
Moses, 6–11; 13; 20–22; 27–32; 47; 55;
  57; 59; 64; 67–69; 76–98; 145; 154;
  159–60
fast of forty days, 143
father-in-law of, 92
song of, 76
murmuring, 79; 82–83
mystery, 99
neighbors, 60
oil of anointing, 153
opening the womb, 139
Passover, 62–67; 142
paternal places, 62
Paul, the Apostle, 128
Phaedras, 133
Pharaoh’s heart, hardening of, 37
plagues, 39–61; 65; 109
plural/singular. See singular/plural
portents, 18; 32; 109
priesthood, 121–23
purple and hyacinth, 158
Questions on the Heptateuch, 62
rationale, 121–22
reckoning: *if you make a reckoning of the children of Israel,* 127
redemption, 127; 140
Red Sea miracle, 74–75
repetition, 42
sacramento, 99 and n52
sacrifice, 97; 115; 141–42
  See also holocausts
  of *everything that opens the womb,* 72
Jethro as offering, 92
Passover, 66; 142
Sarah, 71
scarlet and linen, 158
sea, 74–75
Seeing, *I saw,* 8 and n3; 10; 23; 69
Septuagint, authority of, 25
serpents, 14–15; 34
servants/servanthood, 55; 99
maidservants, 101
Pharaoh’s, 24
sheep, 140
shoulder garments, 157
signs, 18; 32; 73
  *you shall take this staff in your hand,*
  *in which you shall work signs in it,* 21
sin and redemption, 127
singular/plural, 41; 65; 109

Volume I/14
slaves/slavery, 22; 98–99; 101
See also servants
Pharaoh’s slaves, 40; 47
solecism, 24; 121–22; 122
song of Moses, 76
sophists, 27–32; 33
soul: redemption for, 127
sport: made sport of, 51
staff, 101
stretch out a hand and grasp the tail, 14–15
and you shall take this staff in your hand, in which you shall work signs in it, 21
synechdoche, 103–4; 129; 138; 140; 143
tail: stretch out a hand and grasp the tail, 14–15
test of hunger, 79–81
test of thirst, 77–78
textiles, 158
thirst, test of, 77–78
thunderclaps, 50
tibin, 5 and n2
valde valde, 1 and n1; 49
voices, 50
water:
to drink, 143
test of thirst, 77–78
wisdom, 152
wise men, 27–32; 33
womb: opening the womb, 139
yoke animal, 140

Third Book—Expressions in Leviticus
Aaron, 9; 13; 15–16; 18; 49
animals, 20
atonement, 41–42
bald spot, 50
basket of consummation, 13
blood: she shall sit in her clean blood, 24
bloods, 19
bread, 52
cattle, 48; 59
clean/unclean, 17; 19–40
codices, passim
consummation, 13 and n8
covenants, 18 and n10
cursing, 59
cut cuts upon their own flesh, 50
Eleazar, 18
essens, 32
eternal law, 17
feasts, holy, 56
forgiveness, 7
Greek codices, passim
hand: in the hand, 41
holies of holies, 10 and n5
holiness, 10; 13; 21; 51; 55–56
holocausts, 15
idioms, passim
Ithamar, 18
Latin codices, passim
Latin language, 19; 22 and passim
law
See also covenants; purity laws
eternal, 17
leprosy, 25–35
marriage, 51; 53
morality, 43–48
Moses, 15–16; 18; 22; 54
new covenant, 18 and n10
offering, 1–12
ordination, 13 and n8
prayer, 7
priesthood, 13–18; 49–56
prostitution, 51
purity laws:
clean/unclean, 19–40
morality, 43–48
repetition, 42
ritual, 1–12
sabbath, 57
sacrifice, 1–12; 15; 18
law of, 9
salvation: sacrifices of salvations, 18
sanctification, 51; 55
scar, 25
sea, 19
shame: the shame of...you shall not uncover, 43–44
signification on the skin, 30

Expressions in the Heptateuch
Expressions in the Heptateuch

signs, 29
sin, 7; 59
slaves/slavery, 60
solecism, 7; 13
soul, 52

soul purchased for money, 52
torrent, 19
uncleanness, 32
wine and liquor, 16

Fourth Book—Expressions in Numbers

Aaron, 3; 19; 45; 69–70
Abraham, 53
adultery, 80
blessing, 76
bloods, 54
bread
See also manna
unleavened, 86
bronze serpent, 73
Caleb, 43; 112
calves, 15
cattle, 88
the censers of these sinners, 56
census, 2; 81 and n41
children of Israel. See Israel, children of
cloud, 21; 23
codices, passim
consummated their hands, 4
creation, 87
cursing, 76
death: die by death, 52
desire, 26
Edom, 67
Eleazar, 81; 83; 105; 107; 110; 117 and
n52
ellipsis, 30
Esau, 67
Eschol, 36
family, house of, 80
feast day, 86
firstborn, 2; 53
firstfruits, 54
forgiveness, 50
foundation, 81 and n41
Gad, 108; 110; 119
Gershon, sons of, 23
gifts, 53
Gilead, 109; 116
“given things,” 53
God
See also cloud

wrath of, 33
gold, 107
Gospel, 53; 69
Greek codices, passim
Greek language, 30; 127
hands: consummated their hands, 4
Hebrew language, 30 and passim
herds, 108–9
Hobab, 24
holocausts, 91
house of a family, 80
idioms, 52 and passim
idols, molten, 122
involuntaried, 50
Iye-abarim, 74
Jazer, 109
Jesus Christ, 93
Jethro, 24
Joshua, 83; 117
land, 111
Latin codices, passim
Latin language, 30; 54; 127 and passim
leprosy, 34
Levites, 19; 57–58
Lord’s Prayer, 65
manna, 27
Merari, sons of, 23
Midian/Midianites, 24; 80
milled it in a mill, 28
Miriam, 34
Moses, 3; 19; 32; 45; 64; 71; 79; 81;
83–84; 107; 110; 117–19
father-in-law of, 24
mourning, 70
nolle, nolentata (“having been
involuntaried”), 50
offerings, 91
oxen, 15
Passover, 20
Paul, the Apostle, 58; 93
Expressions in the Heptateuch
Expressions in the Heptateuch

last man, 54
last of days, 71
Latin language, 28; 32 and passim
levirate law, 58
loans, 42
locusts, 14
maidservants, 43
marriage: levirate law, 58
mercy, works of, 42
morning, 32
Moses, 68
narrowness, 19
neighbor, 57
plagues, 64
plural/singular. See singular/plural
prosperity, harmful, 33
repetition of words in Scripture, 34; 57–58
sabbath, 18
sacrifice, 44–46 and n25
sadness, 19
Scripture: repetition of words in, 34; 58
serpents, 14
servants/servanthood:
the Lord will judge his people and will
console in his servants, 75 and n37
哺育者们, 43
Pharaoh’s, 64
you shall serve your enemies, 60
service, 60 and n31
singular/plural, 14; 50
slaves/slavery, 43
sleep: behold, you shall sleep with your
fathers, 68
sons of God, 78
soul, 55–56
trials, 64
usury, 42
wideness, 19
lest your heart be widened, 33
widows, marriage to (levirate law), 58

Sixth Book—Expressions in Joshua the Son of Nun

Abraham, 29
Aeneas, 10
anathema, 7 and n2
ark of the covenant, 3; 6
ban, 7 and n2
camps, 11
Canaanites, 18
cavalry, 18
circumcision, 22
covenants, 7
peace treaties as, 13
elite horse, 18
ellipsis, 4
even to the present day, 6
exceptions, 12
exile, 6
Gad, sons of, 28
gaeon, 10
great to see, 25
Greek language, 10 and passim
hand: the Lord commanded in the hand of
Moses, 21
heart: “to strengthen the heart,” 16
Hivites, 13
horses: elite horse, 18
idioms, 31 and passim
Jericho, 3–8
Jordan River, 6; 19; 25
mighty in valor, 5
Moses, 17; 21
nations, 30
old age, 29
peace treaty, 13
Phinehas, 28
plundering, 12
Questions on the Heptateuch, 29
Rehab, 6
Reuben, 28
sea, 9; 30
Septuagint, 10
stone knives, 22
“to strengthen the heart,” 16
Symmachus, 10
twelve stones, 6
valor: mighty in valor, 5

Volume I/14
Seventh Book—Expressions in Judges

Abimelech, 38; 41
ambush, 59
anticipation (praeoccupatio), 53
Barak, 17–18
bowstrings: seven moist bowstrings,
57–58
Canaan, Jabin the king of, 23
Canaanite, 2
codices, passim
Eglon, king of, 12
Egyptians, 28
Ehud, 11
enemies, 25
Ephraim, tribe of, 35
fat/slender (“by way of opposite
expression”), 12
fire, 53–54
flax, 53–54
foreigners, 13
Gazites, 56
Gideon, 29; 35; 40
Gilead, 45
Gospel, 10
Greek language, 33 and passim
hand, 28
hardened, 23
hyperbole, 33
idioms, passim
insidia, 59
Jabin, king of Canaan, 23
jawbone, 53
Jerome, 37 and n14
Jerubbaal, 40
Joshua the son of Nun, 1; 3
Jotham, 40
Judah, 51
kat’ antiphrasin, 12
love, 25
Manoah, 49
metaphor, 53
Midian, son of Abraham and Keturah, 27
Midian, territory, 36
Ophrah, 40
opposites: kat’ antiphrasin, or “by way of
opposite expression,” 12
power, 25; 28
prolepsis (praeoccupatio), 53
Questions on the Heptateuch, 50; 52
Samson, 53
Septuagint, 33
servants/servanthood, 3
seven moist bowstrings, 57–58
Shechem/Shechemites, 41–42
Sisera, 17–19
slender/fat (“by way of opposite
expression”), 12
solemn, 39
Spirit of God, 10
sterility, 48
sun, 25
trumpets, 32
Vulgate, 37 and n14
worthless and disturbed, 39

Expressions in the Heptateuch
Index from
Notes on Job
Adnotationes in Job
(Comments on Job)

Published by New City Press in:

Writings on the Old Testament

Translations by Joseph T. Lienhard, Sean Doyle, and Joseph T. Kelley, introductions and annotated by Joseph T. Lienhard, S. J. and Joseph L. Farrell, O.S.A.
This volume contains Questions on the Heptateuch (Quaestiones in Heptateuchum), Expressions in the Heptateuch (Locutiones in Heptateuchum), Notes on Job (Annotationes in Iob), Eight Questions from the Old Testament (Octo Quaestiones ex Veteri Testamento), and Answer to the Jews (Adversus Iudaeos)

Volume I/14 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-557-0, 6 x 9 in., 822 pp., 2017

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

Notes on Job
(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numeral refers to the chapter number.

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:20</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>19:14</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on Job
# Notes on Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5:24</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>8:10</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:16</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:17</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:6-7</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:22</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:27</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:19</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:29</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:21</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9:22</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:25</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:26</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:28</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:29</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:30</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:31</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:32</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:33</td>
<td>9; 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:33-34</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9:35</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10:2-3</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10:5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
<td>7; 35</td>
<td>10:6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10:7</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/14**
## Volume I/14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10:13</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>13:24</th>
<th>13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>13:28</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14:3</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14:7</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:12</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:13</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:19</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14:22</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:16</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:7</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:14</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:21</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:23</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:25</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:23</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:27</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:25</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>15:29</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>15:30</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:6</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>15:33</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>15:35</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:3</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:6</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:18</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:20</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:8</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:23</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes on Job
Notes on Job

16:12  16
16:13  16
16:14  16
16:15  16
16:16  16
16:18  16
16:19  16
16:21  16
16:22  16
17:1   17
17:2   17
17:3   17
17:4   17
17:5   17
17:6   17
17:7   17
17:8   17
17:9   17
17:10  17
17:11  17
17:12  17
17:13  17
17:14  17
17:15  17
18:5   18
18:6   18
18:7   18
18:9   18
18:10  18
18:11  18
18:12  18
18:13  18
18:14  18
18:15  18
18:16  18
18:17  18
18:19  18
19:1   19
19:3   19
19:6   19
19:7   19
19:8   19
19:9   19
19:10  19
19:11  19
19:12  19
19:13  19
19:14  19
19:15  19
19:16  19
19:16-17  19
19:17  19
19:19  19
19:20  19
19:21  19
19:22  19
19:24  19
19:25  19
19:27  19
19:28  19
19:29  19
19:32  20
20:2   20
20:3   20
20:4   20
20:9   20
20:10  20
20:11  20
20:12  20
20:13  20
20:14  20
20:15  20
20:16  20
20:17  20
20:18  20
20:20  20
20:21  20
20:22  20
20:23  20
20:24  20
20:25  20
20:26  20
20:27  20
20:29  20
21:1   21
21:4   21
21:5   21
21:6   21
21:7   21
21:11  21
21:16  21
21:17  21
21:19  21
21:20  21
21:21  21
21:22  21
21:23  21
21:24  21
21:27  21
21:28  21
21:29  21
21:31  21
21:32  21
21:33  21
21:34  21

Volume I/14
| 22:2 | 22 | 25:5 | 25 |
| 22:4 | 22 | 26:2 | 26 |
| 22:11 | 22 | 26:5 | 26 |
| 22:13 | 22 | 26:6 | 26 |
| 22:14 | 22 | 26:7 | 26 |
| 22:15 | 22 | 26:8 | 26 |
| 22:16 | 22 | 26:9 | 26 |
| 22:18 | 22 | 26:10 | 26 |
| 22:19 | 22 | 26:11 | 26 |
| 22:21 | 22 | 26:12 | 26 |
| 22:23 | 22 | 26:13 | 26 |
| 22:24 | 22 | 26:14 | 26 |
| 22:29 | 22 | 27:3 | 27 |
| 22:30 | 22 | 27:5 | 27 |
| 23:2 | 23 | 27:6 | 27 |
| 23:3 | 23 | 27:8 | 27 |
| 23:5 | 23 | 27:9 | 27 |
| 23:6 | 23 | 27:10 | 27 |
| 23:7 | 23 | 27:11 | 27 |
| 23:8 | 23 | 27:12 | 27; 37 |
| 23:9 | 23 | 27:13 | 27 |
| 23:10 | 23 | 27:14 | 27 |
| 23:11 | 23 | 27:15 | 27 |
| 23:13 | 23 | 27:16 | 27 |
| 23:14 | 23 | 27:18 | 27 |
| 23:15 | 23; 25 | 27:19 | 27 |
| 23:16 | 23 | 27:21 | 27 |
| 24:1 | 24 | 27:22 | 27 |
| 24:2 | 24 | 27:23 | 27 |
| 24:4 | 24; 25 | 28:1 | 28 |
| 24:5 | 24 | 28:2 | 28 |
| 24:6 | 24 | 28:3 | 28 |
| 24:8 | 24 | 28:4 | 28 |
| 24:9 | 24 | 28:5 | 28 |
| 24:11 | 24 | 28:6 | 28 |
| 24:12 | 24 | 28:7 | 28 |
| 24:13 | 24 | 28:8 | 28 |
| 24:14 | 24 | 28:9 | 28 |
| 24:15 | 24 | 28:10 | 28 |
| 24:16 | 24 | 28:11 | 28 |
| 24:16-17 | 24 | 28:14 | 28 |
| 24:18 | 24 | 28:15 | 28 |
| 24:19 | 24 | 28:16 | 28 |
| 24:20 | 24 | 28:17 | 28 |
| 24:21 | 24 | 28:18 | 28 |
| 24:22 | 24 | 28:20 | 28 |
| 24:23 | 24 | 28:21 | 28 |
| 24:24 | 24 | 28:22 | 28 |
| 24:25 | 24 | 28:23 | 28 |
| 25:2 | 25 | 28:24 | 28 |
| 25:3 | 25 | 28:25 | 28 |
| 25:4 | 25 | 28:26 | 28 |

**Volume I/14**

**Notes on Job**
Notes on Job

Volume I/14
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34:7</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:9</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:10</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:18</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:20</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:22</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:25</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:26</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:27</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:28</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:29</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:30</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>37:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:32</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>37:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:33</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>37:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:34</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>37:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:35</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>37:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:2</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:3</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:5-6</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:6</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:7</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:8</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:9-10</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:10</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:11</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:13</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:14</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:15</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:16</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>37:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:2-3</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:3</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:3-4</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:5</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:6</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:8</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:10</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:11</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:12</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:13</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:14</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:15</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:16</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:17</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:18</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:19</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:20</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:21</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:22</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:22-23</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38:17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes on Job

38:18 38
38:19 38
38:20 38
38:20-21 38
38:22 38
38:23 38
38:24 38
38:25 38
38:26 38
38:27 38
38:28 38
38:29 38
38:30 38
38:31-32 38
38:33 38
38:34 38
38:35 38
38:36 38
38:37 38
38:38 38
38:39 38
38:40 38
38:41 38
39:1 39
39:2 39
39:3 39
39:4 39
39:5 39
39:6 39
39:7 39
39:8 39
39:9 39
39:10 39
39:11 39
39:12 39
39:13 39
39:14 39
39:15 39
39:16 39
39:17 39
39:18 39
39:19 39
39:20 39
39:21 39
39:22 39
39:23 39
39:24 39
39:25 39
39:26 39
39:27 39
39:28 39
39:29 39
39:29-30 39
39:30 39
40:1 40
40:2 40
40:4 40
40:5 40
Psalms
2:4 38
2:7 30
2:11 39
4:4 39
5:3 7
6:7 9
8:4 6
10:3 3
10:4 9
18:16 37
18:28 39
18:44 29
19:1 37
19:4 37
22:26 38
22:29 38
32:1 31
34:5 38
36:12 35
42:5 39
42:5-6 39
42:11 19
43:5 39
45:3 36
45:7 38
50:16-17 36
50:21 16; 31
51:3 35
51:9 35
51:13 37
62:1-2 39
63:1 39
72:18 39
73:11-14 40
78:39 40
82:6 38
91:13 38
95:7 30
110:3 38
111:10 36
116:11 37
118:22 38
119:130 38

Volume I/14
# Volume I/14

| 138:6 | 38 |
| 138:7 | 37 |
| 139:8 | 23 |
| 139:9 | 38 |
| 146:1 | 39 |
| 147:9 | 38 |

### Proverbs

| 1:26 | 27 |
| 1:33 | 40 |
| 18:3 | 38 |

### Wisdom

| 1:9 | 1 |
| 8:1 | 38 |
| 9:15 | 36 |

### Sirach

| 1:14 | 7 |
| 10:12 | 38 |

### Isaiah

| 1:3 | 36 |
| 5:20 | 17 |
| 26:20 | 14 |
| 38:11 | 10 |
| 54:1 | 38 |

### Daniel

| 12:4 | 9 |

### Habakkuk

| 2:4 | 36 |

### Malachi

| 4:2 | 26 |

### New Testament

| 17:22 | 29 |

### John

| 1:1 | 26; 38 |
| 1:9 | 10; 25 |
| 1:14 | 38 |
| 3:21 | 6 |
| 6:50 | 36 |
| 7:12 | 5; 17 |
| 7:38 | 38 |
| 7:40 | 5 |
| 8:44 | 38 |
| 9:39 | 36; 38 |
| 12:32 | 39 |
| 13:34 | 38 |
| 14:21 | 38 |
| 17:15 | 38 |
| 21:19 | 38 |

### Acts of the Apostles

| 9:4 | 38 |
| 9:6 | 38 |
| 11:7 | 39 |

### Romans

| 1:21 | 38 |
| 1:22 | 36; 37 |
| 1:28 | 38 |
| 2:21 | 34 |
| 3:8 | 36 |
| 4:5 | 27 |
| 4:17 | 10 |
| 5:3-4 | 39 |

---

**Notes on Job**
# Notes on Job

5:20  36  
7:18  36  
7:24  36; 37  
8:15  39  
8:30  38  
8:34  34  
9:20  40  
10:10  39  
10:14  6  
11:25  17; 36  
13:3  3  
15:8  37  
15:9  37  

1 Corinthians  
1:24  38  
1:25  37  
1:27  38  
1:31  25  
2:9  35  
2:11  19  
2:16  7  
3:1  3  
3:14  38  
4:3-4  9  
4:5  38  
6:4  31  
10:4  39  
12:17  38  
13:8  38  
15:20  38  
15:50  7  
15:51  38  
15:52  38  
15:55  36  

2 Corinthians  
2:11  39  
2:16  37  
5:4  17  
5:6  36  
5:13  39  
5:14  39  
6:10  29  
7:5  30  
10:17  31  
11:15  38  
11:29  26; 30  
12:9  38  
13:4  36  

Galatians  
4:4  39  
4:9  12  
4:19  39  
6:1  19  

Ephesians  
2:2  1; 39  
4:2-3  38  
4:7-8  38  
4:16  38  
5:8  26; 37; 38; 39  
6:11,13  39  
6:12  39  
6:17  3  

Philippians  
1:23  39  
1:24  39  
2:12-13  38  
2:13  37  

Colossians  
3:3  39  

1 Thessalonians  
4:17  36  

1 Timothy  
2:5  9; 38  
6:17  39  

2 Timothy  
2:19  38  

Titus  
3:10  34  

Hebrews  
10:26  31  

1 Peter  
2:22  37  
4:17  12; 36  
4:18  3  
5:5  38  

2 Peter  
1:19  38  

1 John  
3:2  36  
4:18  3  

---

Volume I/14
Notes on Job

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers following entries are chapters and, following a colon, verses in the Book of Job. A number preceded by the letter n indicates a footnote.

Abel, Intro.
Abraham, 28:9; 30:8; 38:20–21, 38
abyss, 28:14; 36:16; 38:16
action, 1:7; 28:27; 31:22
Adam, 7:2 and nn21–23; 38:14 and n158; 38:20–21 and n162
adultery: the adulterer’s eye watches for darkness, 24:15
“adversaries,” 26
Aestus, 27:21
ages of humankind, 38:14 and n154
air: prince of the power of this air, 39:25
ancestors, 39
angels, 1: 4–6; 19; 26; 35; 38 and n182
all my angels praised me with a loud voice, 38:7
apostate, 5:7
the devil’s/wicked, 6: 16:13; 27; 38; 39:25
food for, 38 and n184
and may their life be wounded by the angels, 36:14
prophets as called, 4:18 and n8
what evil does he find against his angels?, 4:18
anger. See wrath
animals. See also specific animals
the beasts entered in under his protection and rested in their sleeping places, 37:8
he has established the hour for the beasts, and they know the order of their sleep, 36:28
animate nature, 38:39–39:30
ant lion, 4:11 and n5
apostate angels, 5
apostles, 17:7; 38:13 and n152
arm, 31:22
ass
See also wild asses
Balaam’s, 12 and n47
astrology, 38:31–32
Babylon, 3:10; 38:8 and n147
Balaam’s ass, 12 and n47
baptism: “enlightenment,” 38:19 and n161
beauty, 38:36
Bildad, 8–10; 18–19; 25–31
first speech of, 8–10
Job’s replies to, 9–10; 19; 26–31
second speech of, 18–19
third speech of, 25–31
birds, 35:13; 39
See also specific birds
black, ravens as, 38:41
blessing/ blessedness, 29:25
blindness, 17:4–5; 18:15; 30:8; 36:7, 26, 29–30, 32; 38:15
blood, 16:18
body of Christ (Church), 38:9 and n148
body of Christ (eucharist), 37:6 and n129
bones, 33:17
his bones have been filled with youth, 20:11
I kept my bones from death, 7:15
a multitude of his bones has dwindled away, 33:19
my bones are in my teeth, 19:20
in the night my bones have been broken, 30:17
boundaries, 38:10
bread, heavenly, 6:6
breasts, 3:12
bribes, 15
bridegroom, 5:4, 7; 38:28
butter, 20:17; 29:6

Notes on Job
Notes on Job

catechism/catechizer, 31 and n301
change, 10:8–9
See also love
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian faith/Christians, 8:19; 29; 38:8 and n147
See also Church
healthy and weak, 38 and n181
Christology, 16:21 and n56
See also specific topics, e.g., persecution; sacraments
authority of, 37:17
as body of Christ, 38:9 and n148
eyes of, 17:7
head of, 29:2; 38:12; 39:27; 40:2
if I have walked with mockers, 31:5
ministry/ministers of, 39:9, 11
now the base deride me, now those younger in age admonish me, 30:1
the righteous in, 3:6
rock as, 39:27–30
as sacrament, 38:9 and n148
spread of, 37:3; 38:13, 18
those who persevere at the end in great trials, 31:1
those who separate themselves from, 31:22
three sorts of people in, 24:4
weaving as work of, 38:36
the wicked disobedient in, 30:23; 36:12
churches, spiritual, 39:1
circumcision, 30:4
“the Circumcision” (Jews), 28:10 and n80
cithara, 30:9
clay, 38:14 and n154
the cloud has watered the grain, 37:11
the clouds shall glide and darken over many men, 36:28
commanding a cloud: be over the earth, 37:6
he has sent out the cloud as his light, 37:11
I placed a cloud around it as a covering, 38:9
the light that gleams in the clouds is not visible to all, 37:21
the Lord spoke to Job through a whirlwind of cloud, 38
from the north come clouds of a golden color, 37:22
who is there who would number the clouds in wisdom?, 38:37
will you summon a cloud with your voice, 38:34
codices, Intro.
cold, 38:24; 39:9–10
colored fabrics, 38:36
colts, 39:3
conception, 10:10 and n40
concupiscence, 4
confession of faith, 2:8; 17:9; 39:23
confession of sin, 1:5; 6:10; 11:13–20; 36:32
“confessors,” 24:5
conscience, 27:18; 37:8; 39:2
cornerstone, 38:6
courage, 17:9; 19:20; 36:20; 39:26
covenants
See also new covenant; old covenant
I made a covenant with my eyes, 31:1
creation, 28:25 and n83; 38:4–15
curses/cursing, 3:1–10; 30:10
sweetness of sin as becoming a bitter curse, 20:12–19
darkness, 3:4–6, 9; 10:8; 23:11; 24; 26:10; 28:3; 36:16; 37:21–22; 38:7
See also night
the adulterer’s eye watches for darkness, 24:15
battle against the princes and powers and rulers of the world of this darkness, 39:25
the clouds shall glide and darken over many men, 36:28
Notes on Job
Notes on Job

faith, 38:19–20
See also confession of faith
he who lives by, 36:10
of Job, 19:24–29
unfeigned, 37:4
faithfulness, 12:20; 36:10
spiritual virtues of the faithful, 38:13
the unfaithful, 28:5; 37:4; 39:25
famine, 5:20; 18:12; 30:3
fat, 15:27
fear, 3–4; 38:17
carnal, 39:24
darkness of, 29:7
of the Lord, 23:16; 36:28; 37:24
love and, 3
seeing my wound, be fearful, 6:21
work out your own salvation in fear and trembling, 38:34
fetus, 3:11
fire, 15
firstborn of the dead, 38:12
food for the angels, 38 and n184
foolish and ignoble, 30:8
foreknowledge, 38:40
forgiveness, 31:19–20, 35; 36:32; 37:8;
38:16, 41; 39:9
the one to whom little is forgiven loves little, 38:25
the one to whom the most is forgiven loves the most, 37:22
and perverse understanding of Scripture, 38:25
fornication, 38:8
freedom, 39
friends of Job. See Job, friends of
frost, 38:24
gabis, 28:18 and n81
gates of death, 38:17
gentiles:
believing, 37:14; 39:29
vocation of, 37:14
giants, 26:5
glory/glorification, 18:14; 29:20; 37:17;
21; 38:30, 33
lack of, 37:21
goat, 39:1 and n190
God
See also under specific topics, e.g.,
fear: of the Lord
as Creator, 28:25 and n83
glory/glorifying, 18:14; 37:21;
38:33
goodness of, 36
graciousness of, 33:13–33
greatness of, 26:5–14; 36–37
hidden ways of, 11:7–12
image of, 6:13; 14:20; 38:14
inaccessibility of, Job’s complaints regarding, 9:15–20
incorruption of, 31:1
as just, 34–35
majesty of, 36:24–37:24
mercy of, 3; 8–10; 23:16; 37–40
purpose of, 33:29–33
righteousness of, 36
sacrifice for sin as signifying, 1:5
and Satan attacking Job’s character, 1–2
speaking to man, 33:14–28
strength of, 12:13–25; 37:5
treatment of Job by, 16:6–16; 23:10–16
the Trinity, 9:8
where were you when I established the earth?, 38:4
wisdom of, 12:13–25; 28:25 and n83; 39 and n212
God, Job’s wish to speak with/appeals to, 13:14–28; 16:18–17:5; 19:7–12;
23:2–9
God speaking to Job, 38–40
and Job’s response, 40
gold, 28:15–17
I made gold my strength, 31:24
good and evil, 38:25
good works. See works
Gospel, 17; 19; 36–39
perfection of, 29:22
grace, 5 and n14; 12; 17; 27–28; 36–39
and perverse understanding of Scripture, 38:25
grain: the cloud has watered the grain,
37:11
greatness, 29:25
of God, 26:5–14; 36–37
hail, 38:22, 24
hands, 36:32
he gives a sign by the hand of every man, 37:7
in his hands he has covered the light,
36:32
left/right, 29:14
happiness, 6:21; 21; 29:16; 31:31; 38; 39
hawk, 39:13
head of the Church, Christ as. See under Jesus Christ: and the Church
hearts, 27:18

Volume I/14
Notes on Job

softened/hardened, 23:16 and n65; 30:3
whatever is conceived in the heart is a word, 30:7
everything is conceived in the heart is a word, 30:7
heaven/heavens, 38:31–33
as the evangelists, 37:17
as holy, 23
as a rational creature, 9:13 and n33
hell. See netherworld
heresy, 16:21 and n56; 29:2
Hexapla, Intro.
hills, 15:7
holiness:
heavens as holy, 23
spirit of, 37:21
Holy Spirit, 9:8; 31 and n102
honey, 20:17
hope, 3:11; 6:8; 29:25; 38:19–20; 39:14, 26
courage of, 17:9
hopelessness, 14:2–12
loss of, 17:10–16
for relief, 16:18–17:5
for there is hope for a tree, 14:7
what hope does the ungodly have?, 27:8
you have destroyed man’s hope, 4:19
house: Church as. See Church
humankind:
ages of, 38:14 and n154
sorrow for, 6:3
humility, 12:23; 17:4; 36:20, 32; 37:4
of Christ, 17:4; 39:9
hypocrisy, 31:5; 36:13
ice, 28:18 and n81; 37:10; 38:29–30
image of God, 6:13; 14:20; 38:14
immortality, 31:20
See also eternal life
impatience, 6
inanimate nature, 38:16–38
The weights and measures of the winds, 28:25 and n83
incarnation, 37:11; 38:14 and n158
infants, 24:12
iniquity. See sin
iron pen and lead, 19:24
Isaiah, 39
Israel: twelve tribes of, 38:13
javelins, 16:12–13
jealousy, 5:2
Jerome, Intro.
Jerusalem, 37:13

Temple in, 8:22 and n32
Jesus Christ, 8:10; 16:19, 22; 17:4–5;
18:14; 24:2; 30:10, 13; 36:8, 16, 33;
37:12–13, 17, 38 and 39 passim
See also confession of faith;
icarnation
Adam and, 38:14 and n158
ages of humankind, 38:14 and n154
ascension of, 39:2
and the Church, 29:2; 39:9; 12; 40:2
“having taken on (a) man,” 16:21 and n56
humility of, 17:4; 39:9
Passion of, 2:8; 8:17; 29:2; 31:39;
37:13; 16; 38:3–4; 39:2
as power of God, 38:20–21
resurrection of, 8:19; 29:2; 38:12;
39:27
as rock, 39
salvation in, 38:3–4
second coming of, 37:4
as Son, 9:8; 38:3–4
where were you when I established the earth?, 38:3–4
as wisdom of God, 38:20–21; 39
Jews, 12:19; 30:8; 31:8; 36:12; 37:17;
38:26
“the Circumcision,” 28:10 and n80
Jewish Synagogue, 29:22

Job

See also under specific topics, e.g.,
morality; sin; suffering
anguish/complaints of, 7; 10; 17:6–9;
19:7–12
appeal to God/wish to present his case to God, 13:13–28; 16:18–17:5;
19:7–12; 23:2–9
curse of, 3:1–10
faith of, 19:24–29
God speaking to, 38–40
God’s treatment of, 16:6–16; 23:10–16
hope, loss of, 14; 17:10–16
hope of, for relief, 16:18–17:5
loneliness of, 19:13–22
misfortunes of, 1–2
on past good days, 29
person and character of, 1
on the present, 30
questions of, 3:11–19
response to critics, 19:1–6
righteousness of, 9:21–24; 32:1
soliloquy of, 3
as tested, 1–2
words of, 6–7; 9–10; 12–14; 16–17;
Notes on Job

19; 21; 23–24; 26–31; 40
Job, friends of:
See Bildad; Eliphaz; Zophar
joy, 21:24
See also happiness
Judah, tribe of, 37:13
Judea, 37:13, 17
judgment, 24:12–13; 36:22–23; 38:13, 25
to come, 23:16
divine, 24:4
and he shall give judgment to the poor, 36:6
I was clothed with judgment as with a mantle, 29:14
judgment shall not fail the righteous, 36:17
a trial from the hidden order of things, 37:9
38:3–4, 16, 20–21, 30; 39:27; 40:2
keystone, 38:4
knees, 3:12
knowledge:
about colored fabrics, 38:36
tell me, if you have knowledge, 38:4
time and, 38:4 and n146
of the truth, 31
lamps, 29:3
exterminated, 18:6; 21:17
lance and spear, 39:23
laughter, 29:24
law (covenants). See covenants
leaders, 39:25 and n210
light
See also sun
consumption of the light, 26:10
darkness was his light in the house, 18:6
he has sent out the cloud as his light, 37:11
in his hands he has covered the light, 36:32
the light that gleams in the clouds is not visible to all, 37:21
up to the consumption of the light, 26:10
when he made light out of the darkness, 37:15
you once were darkness, but now you are light, 39:25
your light has been turned into darkness, 22:11
lions, 4:10–11; 6:7; 10:16; 28:8; 38:39
loneliness, 19:13–22
Lord, God as. See God
love, 3; 35; 38–39
See also charity
of earthly things, 38–39
the one to whom little is forgiven loves little, 38:25
the one to whom the most is forgiven loves the most, 37:22
lying: false witness, 36:16
maidservants, 19:15; 31:13
man: “having taken on (a) man,” 16:21 and n55
martyrs/martyrdom, 28:11; 39:25
Mazzaroth, 38:31–32 and n173
measures: the weights and measures of the winds, 28:25 and n83
mediator, lack of, 9:25–35
meekness, 24:4
mercy, 3; 5–6; 8–10; 23:16; 31; 36–40
even you have risen up against me without mercy, 6:21
truth and, 27:13
works of, 20
merit, 36:10
See also works
milk, 29:6
miracles, 17:5
mockers, 31:5
months, 29:2
morality/moral principles:
Job as maintaining his, 27:1–10; 31
and Job’s longing for death, 6:8–13
and Job’s wish to speak to God, 13:14–19
morning, 7:4; 29:7
morning star, 38:12, 31–32 and n173
mortality, 12:18; 37
Moses, 38 and n138
moth, 4:19
mountains, 15:7
murder, 21:22
Job’s longing for, 6:8–13; 14:13–22
myrmicoleon, 4:11 and n5
mystery, 11:8
mysticism, 40
nakedness, 1; 31:19
nations: deceiving the nations and destroying them, 12:23
nature:
animate, 38:39–39:30
inanimate, 28:25 and n83; 38:16–38
neighbor, 16:21
netherworld, 7:9; 14:13; 17:13; 26:5; 38:17
new covenant, 28:4; 29:2, 20; 30:3
new man, 39:26
New Testament, 5:19
See also Gospel
Old Testament as fulfilled in, Intro.
night, 3:4
See also darkness
in the night my bones have been broken, 30:17
they have made night into day, 17:12
north:
from the north come clouds of a golden color, 37:22
north wind, 26:7
numbers, 28:25 and n83
obedience and disobedience, 1; 36; 38–39
odor of death, 37:10
offcutting of cutting off, 31:22
old covenant
See also Old Testament
stone as, 28:3
old man, 15:10; 40:5
Old Testament, 5:19
See also old covenant; Scripture as fulfilled in the New Testament, Intro.
order: the hidden order of things, 37:9
Origen, Intro.
Orion, 38:31–32
orphans, 24:9
ostiches, 39:13–18
outcry, 30:7f. 40:5
parables, 29:24
parents, 30:1
Passion of Christ. See under Jesus Christ:
passion of
patriarchs, 21:33; 37:13
Paul, 3:6; 26:11; 37:10, 13; 38:3–4 and passim
penance, 6:25
perdition, 26:6
perfection of the Gospel, 29:22
persecution, 24; 26:12; 28:11; 31:29; 37:16; 38:11
those who suffer on account of righteousness, 39:25 and n211
and three sorts of people in the Church, 24:4
Peter, 26:11; 39:27–28
petition, 6:8
Pleiades, 38:31–32
poverty, 36:8
power, 1:7; 27:13–14
predestination, 28:27; 38:12
of the Jews, 37:17
unicorn as signifying, 39:9
priesthood, 12:19
prince of the power of this air, the, 39:25
prophecy, 12:22; 29:24; 38:3–4
obscurity of, 26:8
prophets: angels, as called, 4:18 and n8
punishment:
future, 23:16
and God's purpose, 33:29–33
my eyes have been darkened on account of wrath, 17:7
seeing my wound, be fearful, 6:21
what Job thinks should happen to the wicked, 24:18–24
purity, 4:17
pus: he took a shard to scrape the pus, 2:8
quick-wittedness, 39:13
rain, 36:27; 37:6, 10; 38:25
ravens, 38:41 and n187
redemption, 17:6; 20:17
repentance, 11:13–20; 37–38
restoration, 11:13–20
resurrection, 14:13; 27:19; 38:12–13, 17
See also under Jesus Christ:
resurrection of
revelation, 4:12; 8:10; 38:19; 39:8
food, 36:31
of God, 25:4–6; 36:1–23
he is impious who says to a king, You are acting unrighteously, 34:18
he shall hearken to the righteous, 36:10
he shall not take his eyes away from the righteous man, 36:7
may the righteous man rise up against the enemy, 17:8
the righteous in the Church, 3:6 those who hunger and thirst for., 36:31
See also Darkness
Writings on the Old Testament

Writings on the Old Testament

those who suffer persecution on account of, 39:25 and n211
rivers, 28:10–11; 38:25
rock:

as Christ, 39:27
as Church, 39:27

a rock grows old in its place, 14:18
rocks of the tragelaphus, 39:1
Rome, 38:8 and n147
roots, 30:4; 31:8
of the earth, 30:7
rulers of the world of this darkness, 39:25
sabbath, 5:19 and n14; 30:4
sacraments, 30:4; 31:15; 36:16; 38:38; 39:3
baptism, 38:19 and n161
Church as, 38:9 and n148
the eucharist, 37:6 and n129
of the sabbath, 5:19 and n14
sacrifice, 5 and n14; 8:20; 30:4; 35:7
as signifying the Lord, 1:5
in Jesus Christ, 38:3–4
work out your own salvation in fear and trembling, 38:34
sapphire, 28:6
Sarah, laughter of, 29:24
Satan. See devil
scandals, 38:22
schism, 29:2
Scripture, Sacred, 5:19; 37:17


perverse understanding of, 38:25
sea, 7:12; 14:11
source of, 38:16
second coming of Christ, 37:4
Septuagint, Intro., and n3
serpents, 20:16; 38:3–4; 39:1
servants/servanthood, 3:19; 4:18; 19:16; 29:5; 31:13; 38:3; 39:25
maidservants, 19:15; 31:13
shadows, 30:7
Sheba, 6:19
shoulder, 31:22
sight. See blindness; eyes
signs, 1; 9; 15; 37:7
silence, 40
sin, 24:1–17

See also darkness; error; forgiveness
Church, the wicked in, 30:23
corruption of, 1:5; 6:10; 11:13–20; 36:32
and confession of faith, 2:8
conviction of, 14:5
earth as signifying the sinner, 26:7
God as to sweep away the wicked into darkness, 20:20–29
he does not believe that he is turned away from darkness, 15:22
he took a sharp to scrape the pus, 2:8
inborn, 12:18
Job as accused of (by Eliphaz), 22:4–11
Job’s challenge to friends, to show him where he has sinned, 6:24–30
Job’s claim to righteousness, 9:21–24
“outcry,” 30:7
and perverse understanding of Scripture, 38:25
and punishment, 39
repentance of, 11:13–20
sacrifice offered for, 1:5
and suffering (Bildad’s view of), 18:5–19
and suffering (Eliphaz’s view of), 4:10–11; 15:17–35
sweetness of, as becoming a bitter curse, 20:12–19
symbols for, 37:22; 38:41; 39:1 and n190
by their sins they are darkness, 37:21
voluntary, 12:18
the wicked, Job on, 21; 24; 27:11–23
the wicked, temporary triumph of, 20–21
of youth, 13:26
slaves/slavery, 7:2; 36:33; 39:3
sleep:

the beasts entered in under his protection and rested in their sleeping places, 37:8
he has established the hour for the beasts, and they know the order of their sleep, 36:28
water has covered you in your sleep, 22:11
slow-wittedness, ostriches as signifying, 39:13
snow, 38:22
Sodomites, 30:7; 40:5
Son, Jesus as, 9:8

sons of disobedience, 1
sorrow, 6:3; 29:25
souls, 39

Notes on Job

Volume I/14
and fear of the Lord, 36:28; 37:24
incorruption of, 31:1
Job's: Eliphaz as ridiculing, 15
lack of, from Job's friends, 17:10–15
ture source of, 28
who is there who would number the
clouds in wisdom?, 38:37
witness, false, 36:16
womb, 3:10–11; 31:15
Word of God, 26:14; 28:10; 38:7, 14, 33,
38 and n185
word of God, 27:12; 36:24; 37:6; 39:2,
23, 27
and perfection of the Gospel, 29:22
service to, 6:6
sword of the spirit as, 3:14
When the word of the Lord beheld my
house, 29:4
words of Job. See under Job: words of
works, good, 20:17; 36:10, 14, 20, 32
world: consummation of, 36:27
worms, 27:18
wound, 6:11, 21
wrath:
my eyes have been darkened on
account of wrath, 17:7
wrath destroys a fool, 5:2
youth, 24:5
his bones have been filled with youth,
20:11
sins of, 13:26
Zophar, 11–14; 20–21
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

*(Prepared by Michael Dolan)*

*The numeral refers to the Question number.*

### Eight Questions from the Old Testament

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>23:19</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:26</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:5-10</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>36:18</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:19</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:20</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:21</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:50</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:31</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:9</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:10-11</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Volume I/14
GENERAL INDEX

Eight Questions from the Old Testament
(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers immediately following entries indicate Question numbers. A number preceded by the letter n indicates a footnote.

allegory, 7–8
baptism, 8
brothers, 7
charity, 4; 6
  See also love Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christians, 7–8
Christmas, 8
Church, 7
cleansing, 8
codices, Intro.
covenant, preface
daughters, 5
death, 3
Deuteronomy, book of, 7
Ecclesiasticus, 4
error, 3
eternity, 3
ever/evil men, 6
faith, 3
faithful, the, 3
feet, 7
fire, 8
food, 4
foreknowledge, 2
good men, 6
gospel of good, 7
heresy, 4
holocausts, 8
Holy Spirit:
  and the gift of language, n1
  he will baptize you in the Holy Spirit and fire, 8
Jesus Christ, 5; 7–8
  birth and crucifixion dates of, 8
and the Church, 7
Passion of, 8
resurrection of, 7
as Word, 1–3 and n2
  you shall not cook a lamb in its mother’s milk, 8
joy, 6
justice, preface
Kalends, 8
kid boiled in its mother’s milk, prohibition against, 8
lamb:
  lamb of God, 7
  you shall not cook a lamb in its mother’s milk, 8
language, gift of, n1
levirate law, 7
lies/lying, 4
love, 3
  See also charity
marriage, 7
mercy, works of, 7
mother’s milk, 8
neighbors, 6
Passion of Christ, 8
Paul, 4–5; 7–8
peace, 7
pervasive heart, 4
Proverbs, 6
resurrection of Christ, 7
sacrifice, 8
sanctification, 8
sandal, 7
senses, preface
Solomon’s Ecclesiasticus, 4
Eight Questions from the Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorrow</td>
<td>4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The House of Him Shorn of a Sandal</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongues, gift of</td>
<td>n1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trial</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribulation</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widows</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will, divine and human</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wisdom, human</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom literature</td>
<td>4–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom of God, preface</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>women</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word of God, 1–3 and n2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word of God</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/14
Index from

Answer to the Jews

Adversus Judaeos

(Against the Jews)

Published by New City Press in:

Writings on the Old Testament

Translations by Joseph T. Lienhard, Sean Doyle, and Joseph T. Kelley, introductions and annotated by Joseph T. Lienhard, S. J. and Joseph L. Farrell, O.S.A.

This volume contains Questions on the Heptateuch (Quaestiones in Heptateuchum), Expressions in the Heptateuch (Locutiones in Heptateuchum), Notes on Job (Annotationes in Iob), Eight Questions from the Old Testament (Octo Quaestiones ex Veteri Testamento), and Answer to the Jews (Adversus Iudaeos)

Volume I/14 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-557-0, 6 x 9 in., 822 pp., 2017

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

Answer to the Jews
(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numeral refers to the chapter number; the chapter number is followed by a comma, and the next number is the section number.

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:6</td>
<td>9, 14; 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:3</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:9,14</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:10</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:11</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:1</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:7</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:7-15</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:14</td>
<td>9, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:23</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>52:8</td>
<td>10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>52:9</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>58:12</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>69:5</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>69:21</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>69:22</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>69:23</td>
<td>5, 6; 7, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>69:24</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>69:35-36</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:8</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:14-15,17</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:17</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>96:1</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>96:1-2</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>96:2</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110:4</td>
<td>9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>111:10</td>
<td>10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>118:22</td>
<td>8, 11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Song of Songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:2-3</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>7, 9; 7, 10; 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>7, 10; 9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:6</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2-3</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>7, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:5</td>
<td>9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:2</td>
<td>7, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Zephaniah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>9, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Malachi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>9, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10-11</td>
<td>9, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>9, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/14
## New Testament

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>8, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>8, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:41</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46-47</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6-8</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:18</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:22</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:22-23</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>8, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Answer to the Jews
General Index

Answer to the Jews

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers immediately following entries indicate chapter numbers. Numbers that follow chapter numbers with commas are section numbers. A number preceded by the letter n indicates a footnote.

Aaron, order of, 9,13
Abraham, 1,1; 5,6; 9,12
ancestors, 8,11
anointing, 4,5
apostles, 8,11
beauty, 4,5
Beelzebub, 8,11
blindness, Intro. and n6; 1,2; 5,6; 7,9–10; 8,11; 9,14
body, 4,5
bread:
  Living Bread, 5,6
  unleavened, 2,3
call, following the Lord’s/the called, 6,7–9,14 and n33
Canaan, land of, 7,9
carnal Israel, 7,9
carnal rites, 2,3; 6,8
cast-off, the, 8,11; 9,12 and n33; 9,14
cattle, 2,3; 6,8
change: for those things that will be changed, 5,6
chief cornerstone, 8,11 and n30
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian faith, 3,4
Church, Intro., 4,5; 5,6; 7,9; 9,13; 10,15
  See also specific topics, e.g., sacraments
  circumcision, 2,3; 9,12 and n31
  union of the circumcised and the uncircumcised, 8,11
clouds, 8,11
colored robes, 4,5
cornerstone, Intro. and n8; 8,11 and n30; 9,14
covenants. See new covenant; old covenant
Daniel, 9,14
darkness, 1,1
day: called the earth from the rising of the sun to its setting, 6,8–7,9
demons, 8,11
earth: called the earth from the rising of the sun to its setting, 6,8–7,9
evil, 10,15
error, 2,3
eternal life, 9,13
everlasting, 10,15
eucharist, 9,12 and n33
faithful, the, 5,6
finger of God, 7,9 and n25
forgiveness of sins, 7,9
forty years, 7,9
fruitful olive tree, 6,7
gentiles, 9,14
  Jew and gentile, peaceful reunion of, 8,11
  languages among, 4,5
God:
  mercy of, 6,7; 7,9; 10,15
  as Mighty One, 4,5
Gospel, 1,2; 5,6; 6,7–8; 7,9
grace, 1,1; 6,8; 10,15
heresy/heretics, Intro. and n6; 7,10
holocausts, 6,8
Holy Spirit, 7,9 and n24
humility, 1,1; 10,15
immortality, 6,7
Isaac, 5,6
Isaiah, 8,11
Israel:
  carnal vs. spiritual, 7,9
  house of, 8,11

Volume I/14
Answer to the Jews
Sequagint, Intro.
shadows, 2,3; 4,5; 6,8
sin:
  forgiveness of, 7,9
  my sins are not hidden from you, 5,6
Sinai, Mount, 6,8; 7,9; 8,11; 9,12
slaves/slavery, 4,5; 5,6
speech, 4,5
stiff-necked, 7,9
sun, 4,5; 6,8; 7,9; 9,12–13
sword, 4,5
Temple in Jerusalem, 9,12 and n34
thigh, 4,5
tongues, speaking in, 7,9

transformation: for those things that will be changed, 5,6
trumpet, 8,11
trust in God, 6,7
twelve tribes of Israel, 8,11
unleavened bread, 2,3
vineyard, 8,11
walk in the light of the Lord, 8,11; 9,12; 9,14; 10,15
wild olive tree, 1,1
word of God/Word of God, 7,9; 8,11
Zion, 5,6; 7,9–10
Index from

On the Agreement among the Evangelists

*(De consensu evangelistarum)*

Included in book:

**New Testament I and II**

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains *The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Matthaеum).*

**Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical**

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

Agreement Among the Evangelists
(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

OLD TESTAMENT

Genesis
2:22 II, 28, 68
22:18 I, 25, 39
28:14 I, 14, 21
48:5-6 II, 3, 5

Exodus
20:4 I, 26, 41
23:24 I, 26, 41

Deuteronomy
5:8 I, 26, 41
6:4 I, 26, 41
13:3 II, 30, 71

Psalms
2:2 III, 16, 53
2:6 II, 4, 8
2:7 II, 14, 31
2:9 II, 4, 8
6:4 III, 6, 26
13:3 III, 6, 26
19:1-4 I, 30, 46
19:5 I, 30, 46
19:6 I, 30, 46
34:5 II, 20, 50

Exodus
20:4 I, 26, 41
23:24 I, 26, 41
Deuteronomy
5:8 I, 26, 41
6:4 I, 26, 41
13:3 II, 30, 71
Psalms
2:2 III, 16, 53
2:6 II, 4, 8
2:7 II, 14, 31
2:9 II, 4, 8
6:4 III, 6, 26
13:3 III, 6, 26
19:1-4 I, 30, 46
19:5 I, 30, 46
19:6 I, 30, 46
34:5 II, 20, 50

NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew
1:1 II, 1, 2
1:2 II, 3, 5
1:16 II, 3, 5; II, 3, 7
1:18 II, 5, 14
1:18-25 II, 5, 17
1:19-2:1 II, 5, 14
1:23 I, 26, 41
2:1-3 II, 5, 15
2:1-12 II, 5, 17
2:12 II, 5, 15; II, 5, 17

Agreement Among the Evangelists
Agreement Among the Evangelists

3:11 II, 12, 26; II, 12, 29
3:13-15 II, 13, 30
3:14 II, 15, 32
3:16-17 II, 14, 31
3:17 II, 14, 31
4:1-4 II, 16, 33
4:11 II, 16, 33
4:12 II, 17, 34; II, 18, 42
4:13 II, 17, 35
4:18 II, 17, 39
4:25-5:3 II, 19, 45
5:3 II, 19, 44
5:14 IV, 10, 17
7:28 II, 19, 46
7:29 II, 19, 47
8:1 II, 19, 43; II, 19, 46
8:1-2 II, 19, 43; II, 19, 46
8:5 II, 20, 49
8:5-6 II, 20, 48; II, 20, 49
8:10 II, 20, 50
8:13 II, 20, 48
8:14-15 II, 21, 51
8:16 II, 22, 53
8:16-17 II, 22, 53
8:18 II, 22, 53
8:19 II, 23, 54
8:22 II, 23, 54
8:23-24 II, 24, 55
8:25 II, 24, 55
8:26 II, 24, 55
8:27 II, 24, 55
9:1 II, 24, 55
9:1-2 II, 25, 57; II, 25, 58
9:2 II, 25, 57
9:8 II, 25, 57
9:9 II, 12, 25; II, 26, 59
9:10 II, 27, 60
9:11 II, 27, 61
9:12-13 II, 27, 61
9:14 II, 27, 62
9:15 II, 27, 63
9:17 II, 27, 60
9:18 II, 28, 64
9:24 II, 28, 68
9:25-26 II, 28, 64
9:27 II, 29, 69
9:34 II, 29, 69
9:35-10:1 II, 30, 70
10:9-10 II, 30, 73
10:10 II, 30, 74
10:40 IV, 5, 6
10:42 II, 30, 70
11:1-3 II, 31, 78
11:19 II, 31, 78
11:20 II, 32, 79
11:24 II, 32, 79
11:25 II, 33, 80
11:28 II, 33, 80
11:30 II, 33, 80
12:1 II, 34, 81
12:8 II, 34, 81
12:9 II, 35, 82
12:10 II, 35, 82
12:11-12 II, 35, 82
12:13 II, 35, 82
12:14-17 II, 36, 83
12:21 II, 36, 83
12:22 II, 37, 84
12:23-25 II, 38, 85
12:28 II, 38, 85
12:30 IV, 5, 6
12:37 II, 38, 85
12:38 II, 39, 86
12:40 III, 24, 66
12:45 II, 39, 86
12:46 II, 40, 87; II, 75, 144
12:50 II, 40, 87
13:1-2 II, 41, 88
13:1-3 II, 41, 88
13:52 II, 41, 88
13:53-54 II, 42, 89
13:55 II, 42, 90
13:58 II, 42, 89
14:1 II, 43, 91
14:1-2 II, 43, 91
14:2 II, 43, 91
14:3 II, 44, 92
14:10 II, 44, 92
14:12 II, 44, 92
14:13-14 II, 45, 93
14:15-16 II, 46, 95
14:16 II, 46, 96
14:21 II, 46, 95
14:23 II, 47, 100; II, 47, 101
14:23-26 II, 47, 99
14:33 II, 47, 99
14:34-15:2 II, 48, 102
15:20 II, 48, 102
15:21-23 II, 49, 103
15:23 II, 49, 103
15:25 II, 49, 103
15:28 II, 49, 103
15:29-32 II, 50, 104
15:38 II, 50, 104
15:39 II, 51, 106

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>II, 51, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4-6</td>
<td>II, 52, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>II, 52, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13-14</td>
<td>II, 53, 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>II, 17, 34; II, 53, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>II, 53, 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:20-21</td>
<td>II, 54, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>II, 54, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24</td>
<td>II, 55, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:27</td>
<td>II, 55, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:28-17:1</td>
<td>II, 56, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:1</td>
<td>II, 56, 113; III, 24, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9</td>
<td>II, 56, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:10-13</td>
<td>II, 57, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14-15</td>
<td>II, 58, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td>II, 58, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:22-23</td>
<td>II, 59, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24-25</td>
<td>II, 60, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27</td>
<td>II, 60, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1-3</td>
<td>II, 61, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:22</td>
<td>II, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:35</td>
<td>II, 61, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1-3</td>
<td>II, 62, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>II, 62, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:7</td>
<td>II, 62, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>II, 62, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>II, 62, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:13</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17-20</td>
<td>II, 64, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>II, 64, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:29</td>
<td>II, 65, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:29-30</td>
<td>II, 65, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:34</td>
<td>II, 65, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:1-2</td>
<td>II, 66, 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9</td>
<td>II, 66, 127; II, 70, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15</td>
<td>II, 68, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:10-12</td>
<td>II, 67, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:13</td>
<td>II, 67, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:14-22</td>
<td>II, 68, 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17</td>
<td>II, 68, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-19</td>
<td>II, 68, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:19</td>
<td>II, 68, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:20</td>
<td>II, 68, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23-25</td>
<td>II, 69, 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:27</td>
<td>II, 69, 132; II, 70, 133; II, 70, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28</td>
<td>II, 70, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28-30</td>
<td>II, 70, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:40</td>
<td>II, 70, 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:41</td>
<td>II, 70, 134; II, 70, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:42</td>
<td>II, 70, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:44</td>
<td>II, 70, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:45-22:3</td>
<td>II, 71, 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:14</td>
<td>II, 71, 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:15-17</td>
<td>II, 72, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>II, 72, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:34-40</td>
<td>II, 73, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:41-46</td>
<td>II, 74, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:42</td>
<td>II, 74, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:1-3</td>
<td>II, 75, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:39</td>
<td>II, 75, 144; II, 75, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:1-2</td>
<td>II, 76, 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:3-5</td>
<td>II, 77, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
<td>II, 77, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:14</td>
<td>II, 77, 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:15</td>
<td>II, 77, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:16-18</td>
<td>II, 77, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:18</td>
<td>II, 77, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:20</td>
<td>II, 77, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>IV, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>II, 77, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:1-2</td>
<td>II, 78, 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:2-5.14</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:3-7</td>
<td>II, 79, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:5</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:6</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:13</td>
<td>II, 79, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:14</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:14-15</td>
<td>II, 80, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:18</td>
<td>II, 80, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:19</td>
<td>II, 80, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:20-22</td>
<td>II, 80, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:22</td>
<td>III, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:23-24</td>
<td>III, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:25</td>
<td>II, 80, 158; III, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:26</td>
<td>III, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:30-32</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:30-35</td>
<td>III, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:33-35</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:34</td>
<td>III, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:36</td>
<td>III, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:36-46</td>
<td>III, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:45-46</td>
<td>III, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:47-49</td>
<td>III, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:50</td>
<td>III, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:52</td>
<td>III, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:52-54</td>
<td>III, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:55</td>
<td>III, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:56</td>
<td>III, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:57</td>
<td>III, 6, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Agreement Among the Evangelists
## Agreement Among the Evangelists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26:58</td>
<td>III, 6, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:59-60</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:60-61</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:62-64</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:64</td>
<td>III, 7, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:65-66</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:66</td>
<td>III, 13, 50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:67-68</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:68</td>
<td>I, 31, 48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:69</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:69-74</td>
<td>III, 6, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:71</td>
<td>III, 6, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:73</td>
<td>III, 6, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:75</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:1-2</td>
<td>III, 7, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:3-10</td>
<td>III, 7, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9-10</td>
<td>III, 7, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:11</td>
<td>III, 8, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:11-26</td>
<td>III, 8, 32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:17</td>
<td>III, 8, 33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:19</td>
<td>III, 13, 44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:22</td>
<td>III, 8, 33; III, 13, 44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:24</td>
<td>III, 8, 33; III, 8, 34; III, 13, 44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:27-29</td>
<td>III, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:28</td>
<td>III, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:30-31</td>
<td>III, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:32</td>
<td>III, 10, 37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:33</td>
<td>III, 11, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:34</td>
<td>III, 11, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:35-36</td>
<td>III, 12, 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:37</td>
<td>I, 3, 5; III, 13, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:38</td>
<td>III, 14, 51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:39-40</td>
<td>III, 15, 52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:41-43</td>
<td>III, 15, 52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:44</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:45</td>
<td>III, 17, 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:46</td>
<td>III, 18, 55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:46-47</td>
<td>III, 17, 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:48</td>
<td>III, 17, 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:49</td>
<td>III, 17, 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:50</td>
<td>III, 18, 55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:51</td>
<td>III, 19, 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:51-53</td>
<td>III, 20, 57</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:54</td>
<td>III, 20, 57; III, 21, 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:55-56</td>
<td>III, 21, 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:57-58</td>
<td>III, 22, 59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:59-60</td>
<td>III, 23, 60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:61</td>
<td>III, 24, 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:62-66</td>
<td>III, 24, 62</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:1</td>
<td>III, 24, 65</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:1-7</td>
<td>III, 24, 63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:5-7</td>
<td>III, 24, 69; III, 25, 79</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:6</td>
<td>III, 24, 63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:7</td>
<td>III, 25, 79; III, 25, 80; III, 25, 86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:9</td>
<td>III, 24, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:10</td>
<td>III, 24, 69; III, 25, 80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:16-17</td>
<td>III, 25, 81</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:16-20</td>
<td>III, 25, 79</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>II, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Mark*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>IV, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-4</td>
<td>II, 6, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>II, 12, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7-8</td>
<td>II, 12, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>II, 14, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>II, 18, 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>IV, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>II, 17, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>IV, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>IV, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>II, 22, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>II, 22, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32-35</td>
<td>II, 22, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>II, 22, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:39</td>
<td>II, 19, 43; IV, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:40</td>
<td>II, 19, 43; IV, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-5</td>
<td>II, 25, 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>II, 26, 59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>II, 27, 60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>II, 27, 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>II, 27, 62</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37-38</td>
<td>III, 24, 64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>II, 35, 82</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 35, 82</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11-12</td>
<td>IV, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>II, 36, 83</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-16</td>
<td>IV, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>IV, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 17, 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>II, 40, 87</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:38</td>
<td>II, 24, 55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:40</td>
<td>II, 24, 55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:41</td>
<td>II, 24, 55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>IV, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>IV, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21-22</td>
<td>II, 28, 64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:30</td>
<td>II, 28, 65</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>II, 42, 90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-7</td>
<td>II, 30, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>II, 30, 71; II, 30, 74</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>II, 30, 75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
| 6:11 | II, 30, 70 | 14:54 | III, 6, 19 |
| 6:14 | II, 33, 91 | 14:56 | III, 6, 20 |
| 6:16 | II, 33, 91 | 14:58-59 | III, 6, 20 |
| 6:30 | IV, 105 | 14:61 | III, 6, 20 |
| 6:31 | IV, 105 | 14:65 | III, 6, 26 |
| 6:37 | II, 46, 96 | 14:68-70 | III, 6, 23 |
| 6:38 | II, 46, 96 | 14:69 | III, 6, 24 |
| 6:47-48 | II, 25, 99 | 14:70 | III, 6, 25 |
| 6:48 | II, 25, 99 | 14:70-72 | III, 6, 25 |
| 6:50 | II, 25, 99 | 14:72 | III, 6, 26 |
| 7:34 | IV, 104 | 15:1 | III, 7, 27 |
| 7:36 | IV, 104 | 15:2 | III, 8, 30 |
| 7:36-37 | IV, 104 | 15:4 | III, 8, 34 |
| 8:1 | IV, 5, 6 | 15:9 | III, 8, 33 |
| 8:12 | II, 51, 106 | 15:11-12 | III, 8, 33 |
| 8:24 | II, 53, 108 | 15:12-13 | III, 13, 44 |
| 8:38 | II, 55, 111 | 15:13 | III, 8, 33; III, 13, 47 |
| 9:2 | II, 56, 113; III, 24, 66 | 15:14 | III, 8, 33; III, 13, 47 |
| 9:24 | II, 28, 66 | 15:15 | III, 8, 33 |
| 9:38-39 | IV, 5, 6 | 15:16-19 | III, 9, 36 |
| 9:39 | IV, 5, 6 | 15:17 | III, 9, 36 |
| 9:40-41 | IV, 6, 7 | 15:20 | III, 9, 36 |
| 9:41-43 | IV, 6, 7 | 15:20-21 | III, 10, 37 |
| 9:50 | IV, 6, 7 | 15:23 | III, 11, 38 |
| 10:1 | IV, 7, 8 | 15:24 | III, 12, 39; III, 13, 42; |
| 10:17 | II, 63, 123 | 15:25 | III, 13, 40; III, 13, 42; |
| 10:18 | II, 63, 123 | 15:25 | III, 13, 40; III, 13, 42; |
| 10:46 | II, 65, 126 | 15:25 | III, 13, 40; III, 13, 42; |
| 11:14 | II, 68, 131 | 15:32 | III, 16, 53 |
| 11:21 | II, 68, 131 | 15:34 | III, 18, 55 |
| 11:33 | II, 70, 133 | 15:36 | III, 17, 54 |
| 12:9 | II, 70, 134 | 15:37 | III, 18, 55 |
| 12:10 | II, 70, 135 | 15:38 | III, 19, 56 |
| 12:34 | II, 73, 141; III, 73, 142 | 15:39 | III, 20, 57 |
| 12:44 | IV, 7, 8 | 15:40-41 | III, 21, 58 |
| 13:14 | II, 77, 149 | 15:46 | III, 23, 60 |
| 13:16 | II, 77, 150 | 16:2 | III, 24, 65 |
| 14:1 | II, 78, 152 | 16:7 | III, 25, 80; III, 25, 86 |
| 14:1-2.10 | II, 78, 153 | 16:9-11 | III, 24, 69 |
| 14:2 | II, 78, 153 | 16:12 | III, 25, 71 |
| 14:3 | II, 78, 153 | 16:13 | III, 25, 73; III, 25, 75 |
| 14:10 | II, 78, 153 | 16:14 | III, 25, 75; III, 25, 81; |
| 14:19 | III, 1, 2 | 16:24-25 | III, 25, 83 |
| 14:30 | III, 2, 7 | 16:15-16 | III, 25, 76 |
| 14:35 | III, 4, 13 | 16:17-18 | III, 25, 77 |
| 14:36 | III, 4, 13 | 16:19 | III, 25, 77; III, 25, 83 |
| 14:41 | III, 4, 11 | 16:19-20 | III, 25, 77 |
| 14:51-52 | III, 5, 18 | 18:8 | III, 24, 64 |

Agreement Among the Evangelists
## Agreement Among the Evangelists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luke</th>
<th>1:1</th>
<th>IV, 8, 9</th>
<th>9:17</th>
<th>II, 47, 101</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-4</td>
<td>IV, 8, 9</td>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>II, 47, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:3.1</td>
<td>IV, 8, 9</td>
<td>9:28</td>
<td>II, 56, 113; III, 24, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>IV, 9, 10</td>
<td>9:33</td>
<td>II, 56, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:5-56</td>
<td>II, 5, 17</td>
<td>9:57</td>
<td>II, 23, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:26-35</td>
<td>II, 5, 14</td>
<td>9:59</td>
<td>II, 23, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:22-39</td>
<td>II, 5, 17</td>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>II, 23, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:33</td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>IV, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:40-41</td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>II, 33, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:40-52</td>
<td>II, 5, 17</td>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>II, 73, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:52</td>
<td>II, 6, 18</td>
<td>10:29</td>
<td>II, 73, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>II, 6, 18; II, 6, 19</td>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>II, 38, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II, 12, 26</td>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>IV, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II, 12, 26; II, 12, 29</td>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>II, 39, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 44, 92</td>
<td>11:37</td>
<td>II, 39, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>II, 14, 31</td>
<td>11:37-39</td>
<td>II, 75, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>II, 1, 3; II, 3, 7</td>
<td>13:31-35</td>
<td>II, 75, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:13-14</td>
<td>II, 18, 42</td>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>II, 75, 145; III, 25, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>II, 42, 90</td>
<td>13:35</td>
<td>II, 75, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:35</td>
<td>IV, 2, 3</td>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:40-42</td>
<td>II, 22, 53</td>
<td>18:19</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>IV, 9, 10</td>
<td>18:22</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>II, 17, 37; II, 17, 41</td>
<td>18:35</td>
<td>II, 65, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>II, 25, 57</td>
<td>20:1</td>
<td>II, 69, 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:27-28</td>
<td>II, 26, 59</td>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>II, 70, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:27-29</td>
<td>II, 27, 60</td>
<td>20:15-17</td>
<td>II, 70, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:30</td>
<td>II, 27, 61</td>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>II, 70, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>II, 27, 61</td>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>II, 70, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:33</td>
<td>II, 27, 62</td>
<td>21:20</td>
<td>II, 77, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:34</td>
<td>II, 27, 63</td>
<td>21:21</td>
<td>II, 77, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 36, 83</td>
<td>21:34-36</td>
<td>II, 77, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12-20</td>
<td>II, 19, 45</td>
<td>22:1</td>
<td>II, 78, 152; II, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>II, 17, 40</td>
<td>22:21</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>II, 19, 44</td>
<td>22:21-22</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:3-7</td>
<td>II, 20, 49</td>
<td>22:31-32</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>II, 40, 87</td>
<td>22:31-38</td>
<td>III, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>II, 40, 87</td>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>II, 24, 55</td>
<td>22:34</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>II, 24, 55</td>
<td>22:39-40</td>
<td>III, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:40-41</td>
<td>II, 28, 64</td>
<td>22:41</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:41</td>
<td>II, 28, 64</td>
<td>22:42</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:45</td>
<td>II, 28, 65</td>
<td>22:45</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:50</td>
<td>II, 28, 66</td>
<td>22:48</td>
<td>III, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:7-9</td>
<td>II, 43, 91</td>
<td>22:49</td>
<td>III, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>II, 43, 91; II, 45, 93</td>
<td>22:49-50</td>
<td>III, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>II, 46, 96</td>
<td>22:51</td>
<td>III, 5, 16; III, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>II, 47, 101</td>
<td>22:53</td>
<td>III, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22:54-55</td>
<td>III, 6, 19</td>
<td>1:16 IV, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:54-58</td>
<td>III, 6, 23</td>
<td>1:23 II, 12, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:58</td>
<td>III, 6, 24</td>
<td>1:27 II, 12, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:59</td>
<td>III, 6, 25</td>
<td>1:29 II, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:59-60</td>
<td>III, 6, 25</td>
<td>1:33 II, 15, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
<td>1:42 II, 17, 34; II, 53, 109; IV, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61-62</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
<td>1:43 II, 17, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-30</td>
<td>III, 8, 34; III, 8, 35</td>
<td>2:4 IV, 10, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3-14</td>
<td>III, 8, 34; III, 8, 35</td>
<td>2:12 II, 17, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:14-17</td>
<td>III, 8, 34; III, 8, 35</td>
<td>2:19 IV, 10, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15-20</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
<td>2:24-25 IV, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:16-21</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
<td>3:23-24 II, 18, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:16-22</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
<td>4:1-3 II, 18, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:18-23</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
<td>4:48 IV, 10, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:20-21</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
<td>5:17 IV, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21-26</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
<td>5:18 IV, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:22-23</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
<td>5:19 I, 4, 7; IV, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:23-25</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
<td>5:29 II, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24-26</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
<td>5:35 IV, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:26-30</td>
<td>III, 10, 37</td>
<td>6:1 III, 25, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34-37</td>
<td>III, 12, 39</td>
<td>6:5-13 II, 46, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:36-39</td>
<td>III, 17, 54</td>
<td>6:7 II, 46, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:42-46</td>
<td>III, 19, 56</td>
<td>6:15 II, 47, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:46-49</td>
<td>III, 18, 55</td>
<td>6:15-18 II, 47, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:47-51</td>
<td>III, 20, 57</td>
<td>6:16-17 II, 47, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:50-55</td>
<td>III, 21, 58</td>
<td>6:26-27 IV, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:55-56</td>
<td>III, 22, 59</td>
<td>6:63 IV, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:56-59</td>
<td>III, 23, 60</td>
<td>7:6-7 IV, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:59-64</td>
<td>III, 24, 67</td>
<td>8:31 II, 70, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:1-6</td>
<td>III, 24, 69</td>
<td>8:37 II, 70, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:6-7</td>
<td>III, 24, 69</td>
<td>8:56 IV, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:8-9</td>
<td>III, 24, 69</td>
<td>9:39 III, 13, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:10-15</td>
<td>III, 24, 70</td>
<td>10:16 III, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13-24</td>
<td>III, 25, 70</td>
<td>10:24 IV, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:24-25</td>
<td>III, 25, 70</td>
<td>10:25-26 IV, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25-30</td>
<td>III, 25, 81</td>
<td>10:30 I, 4, 7; IV, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36-40</td>
<td>III, 25, 74</td>
<td>11:55 III, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46-49</td>
<td>III, 25, 74</td>
<td>13:2 III, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:48-52</td>
<td>III, 25, 75</td>
<td>13:21-22 III, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40-43</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
<td>13:27-32 III, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
<td>13:33-36 III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>II, 6, 18</td>
<td>13:33-38 III, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>II, 3, 6</td>
<td>13:36 III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-15</td>
<td>II, 3, 6</td>
<td>13:37 III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>II, 12, 26</td>
<td>13:38 III, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Agreement Among the Evangelists
Agreement Among the Evangelists

14:1-2  III, 3, 9
14:9  I, 4; 7; IV, 10, 19
14:10  I, 4, 7
14:21  III, 25, 86; IV, 10, 20
17:3  III, 25, 86
17:22  I, 4, 7
17:25-26  III, 3, 9
18:1  III, 4, 10
18:4-9  III, 5, 15
18:11  III, 5, 16
18:15  III, 6, 19
18:16  III, 6, 19
18:17  III, 6, 23
18:17-18  III, 6, 23
18:19-24  III, 6, 24
18:22  III, 6, 24
18:25  III, 6, 24
18:26  III, 6, 25
18:26-27  III, 6, 25
18:28  III, 7, 27
18:28-30  III, 8, 35
18:29  III, 8, 35
18:29-31  III, 13, 42
18:30  III, 8, 35
18:31-34  III, 8, 35
18:35-37  III, 8, 35
18:36  IV, 10, 15
18:37-19:7  III, 8, 35
19:1-3  III, 9, 36
19:4-5  III, 13, 46
19:6  III, 13, 46
19:6-12  III, 13, 46
19:7  III, 8, 35
19:8-12  III, 8, 35
19:12-14  III, 13, 46
19:13  III, 13, 40
19:13-16  III, 8, 35
19:14  III, 13, 41; III, 13, 50
19:14-15  III, 13, 46
19:14-16  III, 13, 40
19:15-16  III, 13, 46
19:16-18  III, 10, 37
19:18  III, 14, 51
19:22  I, 3, 5
19:23-24  III, 12, 39
19:25-27  III, 21, 58
19:28  III, 17, 54
19:28-29  III, 17, 54
19:30  III, 18, 55
19:38  III, 22, 59
19:39  III, 23, 60
19:40-42  III, 23, 60
20:1  III, 24, 65
20:1-18  III, 24, 68
20:6-7  III, 24, 69
20:9-11  III, 24, 69
20:12-13  III, 24, 69
20:14-17  III, 24, 69
20:17  IV, 10, 19
20:19-26  III, 25, 75
20:19-20  III, 25, 74
20:20-23  III, 25, 74
20:22  III, 1, 4
20:26-29  III, 25, 75
21:14  III, 25, 82
21:23  III, 25, 78
21:24  II, 12, 25
Acts of the Apostles
1:1-2  IV, 8, 9
9:4  IV, 5, 6
10:41  III, 25, 84
14:22  II, 4, 8
Romans
1:5  II, 2, 4
8:3  II, 4, 12
8:15  III, 4, 14
9:20  III, 13, 48
1 Corinthians
3:18  II, 30, 72
4:21  II, 30, 72
6:17  II, 4, 12
9:7  II, 30, 73
9:11-12  II, 30, 73
9:13-15  II, 30, 73
10:17  III, 25, 72
12:11  II, 21, 52
14:20  II, 30, 72
15:3-8  III, 25, 70
15:4-5  III, 25, 85
15:5  III, 25, 85
15:5-6  III, 25, 71
15:6  III, 25, 85
15:7  III, 25, 85
15:8  III, 25, 85
2 Corinthians
2:16  III, 13, 48
4:3  III, 13, 48
Galatians
4:4-5  II, 3, 6
4:6  III, 4, 14
6:2  II, 30, 72

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:2-5</td>
<td>II, 30, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>II, 30, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:37</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>II, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 6, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Agreement Among the Evangelists
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers, then the Section numbers in parentheses. (Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aaron</td>
<td>I:3(5); II:2(4), 5(17); IV:9(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abba, Father</td>
<td>III:4(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abomination of desolation</td>
<td>II:77(149)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abraham</td>
<td>I:3(5), 14(21), 26(41); II:1(2), 3(5), 4(10–11), 5(17), 12(26), 70(138); IV:10(16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fulfilled promise to Abraham</td>
<td>I:25(39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Abrahews,&quot;</td>
<td>I:14(21) and n52; Revisions II:16(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active life; the active</td>
<td>I:5(8); IV:10(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts, apocryphal</td>
<td>IV:8(9) and n18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td>III:16(53), 25(74, 77); IV:8(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam</td>
<td>II:4(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption</td>
<td>II:3(5–6), 4(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adulteress</td>
<td>IV:10(17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adultery</td>
<td>in the heart, III:2(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aegis</td>
<td>I:21(29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aeschylus</td>
<td>III:16(53) and n73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aesop</td>
<td>I:7(12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age: end of the</td>
<td>II:77(147–51)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ages: predestined order of</td>
<td>I:12(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akeldama (Field of Blood)</td>
<td>III:7(28, 31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander, son of Simon of Cyrene</td>
<td>III:10(37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander of Macedon</td>
<td>I:23(33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allegory</td>
<td>II:77(150–51); III:4(14), 7(30), 25(86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afer</td>
<td>II:5(17), 30(73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrew</td>
<td>II:17(34–35), 17(34–35, 37, 39, 41), 19(45), 46(95–96); IV:10(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also specific topics and events, e.g., resurrection of Jesus Christ, the Annunciation, II:5(14)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Church to be brought to perfection of angelic fullness, II:75(145)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promise to Abraham</td>
<td>I:25(39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anger</td>
<td>I:18(26), 33(51); II:35(82); IV:10(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anna</td>
<td>II:5(15–17), 11(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annas</td>
<td>II:6(18–19); III:6(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annunciation of the Lord</td>
<td>II:5(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anointing</td>
<td>I:13(20), 14(22); &quot;anointed ones,&quot; I:13(20); III:8(33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apocalypse</td>
<td>II:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four living creatures of</td>
<td>I:6(9); IV:10(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also disciples; specific topics and events, calling of choosing the twelve, II:17(39–41), 19(45), 26(59)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the eleven, III:24(67, 69), 25(71–82, 85); IV:10(19)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as Gospel’s first preachers, I:1(1)–2(3); II:30(73–74); III:25(77, 86); IV:3(4), 8(9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus appearing to, III:25(70–83)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mission of</td>
<td>II:30(70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of</td>
<td>II:17(39–41), 53(109); IV:3(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sent forth by Jesus</td>
<td>II:30(70); IV:3(4), 8(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word heavens as signifying</td>
<td>I:30(46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archelaus</td>
<td>II:7(20–1023)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrest of Jesus</td>
<td>III:5(15–18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrogance. See pride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascension of the Lord</td>
<td>I:10(16), 35(54); III:25(76), 25(85)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ass: colt and, II:66(127–28)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astrology</td>
<td>I:23(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Augustine,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goal of, Introduction, p. 117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason for undertaking this work, I:7(10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authority</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also under Gospels: authority of of benefactors, III:3(9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divine, IV:10(20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He taught them as one who had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Agreement Among the Evangelists

authority, II:17(35)
of the Holy Spirit, III:7(30–31)
of Jesus, II:74(143); IV:2(3)
of Jesus’ name, I:10(15), 14(22)
of Moses, II:62(121)
of Septuagint translation, II:66(128)
by what authority do you do these things? II:69(132)–70(133), 70(137–38)

Babylonian deportation, II:4(10)
baptism, II:7(31), 25(76, 79); IV:6(7) and n12, IV:10(11)
See also John the Baptist
Christ’s, II:4(11–13) and n38, II:7(20), 13(30)–15(32), 18(42), 42(90), 44(92); IV:6(7)
by disciples, II:18(42), 70(137)
Barabbas, III:8(32–33)
Bartholomew (Nathanael). See also apostles; Nathanael
Bartimaeus, II:65(125)
beauty, I:28(44), 31(47–48)
Beelzebul, II:38(85)
See also Satan
benefactors, III:3(9)
Bethany, II:68(130)–69(132); III:25(83)
anointing of Christ in, II:78(153)–79(156); IV:10(18–19)
Bethlehem, II:5(14–15, 17); III:25(71)
birds, II:75(145)
birth and boyhood of Jesus, II:5(14)–11(24)
blasphemy, I:7(11), 15(23), 26(41)–27(42), 33(51); II:40(87); III:6(20), 7(27)
bleeding woman, healing of, II:28(65)
blindness:
blind men of Jericho, II:65(125–26)
Jesus healing blind and lame in Temple, II:68(130)
man with blind and mute demon, II:37(84)
two blind men, healing, II:29(69), 65(125–26)
body
See also flesh
immortal, II:75(145)
unity between the members and the head, II:70(138)
body of Christ, III:25(72)
See also Church; eucharist

bread
See also eucharist; five loaves and two fishes miracle
beware of the leaven of the Pharisees,
II:52(107)
children’s bread not to be given to dogs, II:49(103)
the seven loaves, II:50(104–5)
bread, feast of unleavened. See Passover
brothers
See also brethren
mother and brothers of Jesus, II:39(86)–40(87)
brunial of Jesus, III:22(59)–24(62)
Caesars, the, I:23(32); III:13(40, 46)
Augustus, II:5(17)
paying tribute to, II:72(140); III:8(34–35)
Tiberius, II:6(18–19), 8(21)
Caiaphas, II:78(153)–79(154)
Jesus brought before/led away from house, III:6(19–24)
Cana, IV:10(13)
wedding at, II:17(34, 38)
Caanaanite woman’s daughter, II:49(103)
Capernaum, passim
and healing of paralytic, II:25(58)
sabbath teaching in synagogue, IV:1(2)–2(3)
Capitol, Roman, I:22(30), 23(31, 34, 36)
Catholic Christianity, I:1(2), 8(13);
IV:5(6)
See also Church
centurion at Christ’s death, III:14(50), 20(57)–22(59)
centurion’s servant, healing of, II:20(48–50)
Cephas (Peter). See Peter, Apostle
certainty: omission and, II:41(88)
charity, IV:10(20)
chastity, I:23(32)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

chief priests, *passim*
  accusing Jesus, III:8(32–35), 13(40, 44–47, 50), 25:70
children:
  of the bridegroom, II:27(63)
  children’s bread not to be given to dogs, II:49(103)
  Christ laying hands on, II:63(123)
  Do not be children in your thinking, but be infants as to evil, II:37(2)
of God, II:3(6)
humility, as example of, II:61(119)
more children for the one who is deserted than for the one who has a husband, I:31(47)
saying Hosanna in the Temple, II:68(130)
  unless you...become as little children, II:61(119)
*choros*, I:23(35)
*chrism*, I:13(20), 14(22); II:2(4)
Christ
  See also Jesus Christ
  the name, I:13(20), 14(22); II:2(4)
Christians, IV:6(7)
  See also Catholic Christianity; specific topics
Christian times: complaints about human wellbeing during, I:33(51)
Christology: *homo assumptus/susceptus*, IV:10(20) and n71
chronology. See order; specific topics
Church
  See also Catholic Christianity; specific topics, e.g., unity
to be brought to perfection of angelic fullness, II:75(145)
as called barren, I:31(47)
spread to all nations and languages, I:32(49)
  on this rock I will build my Church,
  II:17(34), 53(109)
Cicero, Marcus Tullius, I:23(32–33, 35), 33(51)
circumcision, II:4(10), 5(15, 17)
cities: unrepentant, II:32(79)
Cleophas, III:25(70–71, 74–75, 82)
  Mary, wife of, III:21(58)
cloth, parable of new, II:27(63)–28(64)
cloth: and ass, II:66(127–28)
coming of Christ:
  prefiguring of, I:14(21), 24(37)
  prophecy of, I:11(17)
commandments, I:26(41); II:5(17), 74(143), 75(145); III:24(67), 25(86); IV:10(20)
  the great, II:73(141)
to love one another, III:2(5–6)
the two, II:73(141–42)
  community, IV:5(6)–6(7)
compassion: of Jesus, II:30(70), 45(93), 50(104)
consecration, I:6(9)
contemplative life, the contemplative, I:7(12), 35(53); IV:10(20)
  John the Evangelist as, I:5(8)
continence
  See also virginity in marriage, II:1(2)
contradiction: omission as not, II:12(27–28), 19(47), 41(88), 79(155); III:20(57)
created (that which is created):
  faith and, I:35(53)
creator:
  of all things, God as, I:24(37)
  creature and, I:34(52); II:1(2), 3(6)
cross
  See also crucifixion of Christ
  if anyone wishes to come after me, let him...take up his cross and follow me, II:55(111)
of Jesus, carrying to crucifixion, III:10(37)
crown of thorns, I:31(48); III:8(35–9(36), 13(46)
crucifixion of Christ, III:10(37)–21(58)
  See also passion of Christ
damnation, II:30(71)
Daniel, II:77(149)
David, *passim*
  how Christ is son of, I:2(4)–3(6);
  II:2(4)–3(5), 74(143)
  line up to, through prophet, Nathan, II:4(12); *Revisions II*, 16 (43)
dawn, II:5(17), 22(53), 24(63, 65–67, 69), 25(75); III:24(65)
death
  See also passion of Christ
Lazarus raised from the dead,
Agreement Among the Evangelists

II:78(153)–79(154) there are some standing here who shall not taste death, II:56(112)

demons
See also unclean spirits among the Gerasenes, II:28(64), 42(89)
blind and mute demon, healing man with, II:37(84)
Canaanite woman’s daughter, II:49(103)
cast out when gentiles abandon superstitions and believe in him, II:75(145)
“good,” I:18(26)
Jesus alleged to cast out demons by Beelzebul, II:38(85)
legion of, II:24(56), 65(125)
mute demoniac, healing of, II:29(69)
seven, cast out from Mary Magdalene, III:24(69)
someone who does not follow us, casting out demons in your name, II:63(123); IV:5(6)–6(7)
on the third day I complete my course, II:75(145); III:25(80)
devil. See Satan
Diana, I:25(38)
disciples, II:17(34–41), 17(40), 53(108–9); IV:3(4)
See also apostles; specific topics and events
as given power over unclean spirits, II:30(70)
if you continue in my word, you will truly be my disciples, II:70(138)
as including Judas, II:79(156)
as including more than the twelve, II:70(138)
names as written in heaven, IV:10(17)
the power to cure illnesses, IV:3(4)
“diversity of agreement” among Gospels, II:66(128)
divine grace. See grace, divine
divine providence. See providence, divine
divorce, II:5(14, 17), 62(120–22)
doctrine, II:12(28)
See also Catholic Christianity
of Christ, I:14(22), 16(24), 32(50)
dogs: children’s bread not to be given to, II:49(103)
Donatists, IV:5(6) doves, II:14(31)–15(32)
duplicity, II:30(75)
eagle, I:6(9); II:45(94)
earth
See also under God: of the whole earth; world
Jesus making signs on, IV:10(17)
earthquakes, III:20(57), 24(63, 69)
Egypt, I:25(39); II:5(16–17), 6(19)–7(20), 9(22), 11(24)
eight days: after eight days, II:56(113)
eaters, passim
tradition of, II:48(102)
elements, 29(45)
eleven apostles. See under apostles: the eleven
Elijah, II:56(112)–57(115)
Elizabeth, I:3(5); II:5(17)
Emmas, II:25(70–72) and n100, 104
Ennus, I:23(32)
Enoch, I:25(39)
ephatha, II:50(104)
eternal life, II:17(40), 77(147); III:25(86); IV:10(15)
happiness of, I:5(8)
rich man asking about, II:63(123)
eternal punishment, II:77(147); III:25(86); IV:6(7)
See also fire; Gehenna
eternity: truth and, I:35(53)
ether, I:23(31)
eucharist, III:25(72) and n104; IV:10(20)
and n87
Euhemerus, I:23(32)
Euripides, III:16(53) and n73
evangelists, four, I:2
See also individual names; specific Gospels; specific topics, e.g., John the Baptist
four creatures and, I:6(9); IV:8(9)
and four parts to the world, I:2(3)
as no more inconsistent than Greek tragedians, III:16(53)
order of, I:2
the three evangelists, I:4(7)–6(9); II:17(37), 18(42), 27(61–62), 45(94), 56(112), 77(147); III:2(7), 13(41); IV:10(18, 20)
Eve, II:28(68)
evening, III:24(65)
evil, I:25(87)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

See also sin
expiation, I:3(5); II:4(11)
eyes. See blindness

faith:
and diversity of agreement among
Gospels, II:66(128)
like a mustard seed, II:24(55)
and reason, III:13(43)
and that which is created, I:35(53)
and truth, I:35(53)
whatever you ask for in prayer with
faith, you shall receive, II:68(130)
false gods. See idolatry; paganism
falsehood
See also duplicity
accounts containing variations, but
remaining true, II:12(28)
guarding against and judging,
II:66(128)
false witnesses. See witnesses, false
farms, III:25(71)
fasting, II:4(9), 5(17)
but this kind does not come out except
by prayer and fasting, II:58(116)
children of the bridegroom, II:27(63)
new cloth and new wine parables,
II:27(63)
questions asked Jesus about, II:27(62–63)
Father, God the, I:7(11)
See also God
Father, the term, III:4(14)
fear, I:28(43–44)
feeding the multitudes. See five loaves
and two fishes miracle; seven loaves
miracle
fig tree, II:68(130)–69(132)
Filioque, IV:10(19) and n69
finger of God, II:38(85)
fire, I:30(46)
eternal, II:12(26), 44(92); III:25(86)
Gethenna, IV:6(7)
with the Holy Spirit and with fire,
II:12(26)
where their worm...quenched, IV:6(7)
and n10
fish
See also five loaves and two fishes
miracle
haul of, IV:9(10)
miracle of seven loaves and a few fish,
II:50(104–5)
from now on you shall catch men,
II:17(37, 39)
five hundred brethren. See under
brethren: five hundred
five loaves and two fishes miracle,
II:45(93)–48(102), 53(108), 66(127); III:25(79), 79(155–56); IV:10(15)
flesh:
it is the spirit that gives life, but the
flesh is of no use, IV:10(15)
spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is
weak, III:4(10)
flood, the, I:25(39)
food: feeding the multitudes. See five
loaves and two fishes miracle; seven
loaves miracle
foreknowledge, IV:4(5)
forgiveness:
for your brother from your heart,
II:61(119)
of sins, II:4(13) and n38, 61(119);
III:25(74)
fifty, the number, II:4(8–10)
fifty days, III:25(84) and n155
fifty generations, II:4(8–13)
four, the number, II:4(9)
four creatures, I:6(9); IV:10(11)
four evangelists. See evangelists, four
four parts to the world, I:2(3)
Gabbatha, III:8(35), 13(40, 46)
Galilee:
date of Jesus’ departure into, II:18(42)
and healing of paralytic, II:25(58)
I shall go before you to Galilee,
III:25(86)
and Jesus’ boyhood, II:8(21)–9(22)
Jesus’ post-resurrection appearance in,
III:25(79)
Jesus teaching in, II:42(89–90)
Gethenna, IV:6(7)
genealogy of Jesus, I:2(4)–3(6); II:1(2)–3(7)
Matthew’s forty generations, II:4(8–13)
Genesaret, II:48(102)
gentiles, passim
demons cast out when gentiles
abandon superstitions and believe in
him, II:75(145)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Gospel preached to, I:13(20); III:25(76)
Gerasenes, II:28(64), 42(89)
Gethsemane, III:4(10–14)
betrayal and apprehension of Jesus, III:5(15–18)
God
See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g., worship
as creator of all things, I:24(37)
and “diversity of agreement,” II:66(128)
 glorified, III:1(4)
as immortal, I:35(53)
of Israel, I:13(20)–14(21), 25(39)–26(41), 31(47), 32(49–50), 34(52)
Jesus as God and only-begotten Son of God, I:8(13)
Jupiter thought by Varro to be, I:22(30)
love for, II:73(141–42)
Romans as not accepting, I:12(18)–34(52) passim
of Sabaoth, I:29(45)
Saturn thought to be, I:22(30)
Son and Father, I:7(11)
as true God, I:19(27)–21(29)
of the whole earth, I:14(21), 31(47), 32(49–50), 34(52)
gods, pagan. See under pagan
Gold, I:28(44), 30(46); II:5(17), 30(73)
purged of its dross, I:30(46)
Golgotha, III:10(37)–11(38)
good; goodness:
and eternal life, II:63(123)
good life, II:1(1)
ten as number of righteousness, II:4(13)
Good Samaritan parable, II:73(142)
Gospel, preaching
See also under Jesus Christ: preaching of
among all nations, I:14(21);
II:77(148); III:25(74, 76)
apostles as first preachers, I:1(1)–2(3);
II:30(73–74); III:25(77, 86);
IV:3(4), 8(9)
to the gentiles, I:13(20); III:25(76)
Gospels, four
See also specific Gospels, e.g.,
Matthew, Gospel of allegorical or figurative interpretations, II:77(150–51);
III:4(14), 7(30), 25(86)
as always right, while not agreeing language, II:12(28)
authority of, I:1(2), 7(12)–8(13),
20(28); II:12(28), 21(51–52),
39(86); III:13(43), 13(48); IV:8(9)
discrepancies in order among,
II:19(44), 21(51)–23(54), 42(90)
diversity of agreement among,
II:66(128)
each as accurate, though incomplete,
II:24(55)
to Lord’s supper. II from Lord’s supper to the end, III Matthew compared with other Gospels, II omission as not contradiction,
II:12(27–28), 19(47), 41(88),
79(155); III:20(57)
passages specific to Mark, Luke, or John, IV pluralism, possibility of, II:12(28)
real time and narrative proximity,
II:17(34)–18(42), 19(45–46);
III:4(11)
reason, and truth of, III:13(43)
similar, unreconcilable accounts among, II:29(69), 30(77), 50(104–5)
texts as emended by later scribes,
III:25(71)
as true, but containing variations,
II:12(28)
words and meaning, II:24(55)–25(57),
28(66), 30(72); III:4(14)
grace, divine, I:32(49); II:3(6), 4(11);
III:25(86)
Greeks, I:23(33)
Greek tragedians: evangelists as no more inconsistent than, III:16(53)
Greek version of the Bible, II:14(31)
happiness, I:5(8)
See also joy
healing miracles. See miracles
heart: cleansing, I:5(8)
heaven, kingdom of. See kingdom of heaven
heavens: apostles as signified by, I:30(46)
Hebrew language: Gospel of Matthew as written in, I:2(4)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Hebrews
See also Jews
“Abrahews,” I:14(21) and n52;
Revisions II,16 (43)
Heli, II:4(11)
heretics, IV:5(6)–6(7)
Herods, two, II:7(20)–11(24)
Herod, King, II:5(14–17)
putting children to death, I:6(9)
Herod, tetrarch, II:6(18)–7(20)
called a fox, II:75(145)
hearing about Jesus’ works, II:43(91–45(93)
and John the Baptist, II:43(91)–45(93)
mocking Christ, III:8(34)
son of King Herod, II:7(20)
high priest (Caiaphas). See Caiaphas
Holy Spirit, II:4(11–13) and n38
See also Trinity
authority of, III:7(30–31)
baptism with the Holy Spirit and with fire, II:12(26)
blasphemy against, II:40(87)
the dove, II:14(31)–15(32)
finger of God, II:38(85)
homo assumptus/susceptus Christology,
IV:10(20) and n71
hope, IV:10(20)
human beings, II:3(6–7); IV:10(15)
See also specific topics
pagan gods as deified, I:23(32)
humility:
children as example of, II:61(119)
the greater you are, the more you should humble yourself in all things, IV:10(20)
husband, I:31(47)
more children for the one who is deserted than for the one who has a husband, I:31(47)

idols; idolatry, I:14(21), 26(40)–28(44), 32(49–50)
See also paganism
destruction of, I:16(24), 21(29)
prophecy against, I:26(40–41)
immortality:
of the body, II:75(145)
of God, I:35(53)
Incarnation, I:2(4)
See also Word of God, incarnate
iniquity, II:27(61); IV:6(7)
See also sin
and justice, I:35(53)
Isaiah, I:31(47–48); II:6(18), 12(25), 22(53), 36(83), 42(90); III:16(53); IV:1(2)
Israel, I:26(41)
See also under God: of Israel; Jews
Israel (Jacob), I:25(39)
Jacob, I:25(39), 28(44); II:3(5, 7), 5(14–17)
See also Israel
two wives of, I:5(8)
Jairus’s daughter, raising of, II:64(124–66, 68)
James, Apostle, II:17(35)
See also apostles; Zebedee, sons of
Jesus’ appearance to, III:25(85)
mother of, II:64(124)
mountain, vision of the Lord on,
II:56(112)–57(115)
James, the son of Alphaeus (James the Less), II:19(45)
See also apostles
Jechoniah, II:4(10)
Jeremiah, II:5(17), 53(108); III:7(28–31)
Jericho, II:66(127)
blind men of, II:65(125–26)
the Good Samaritan, II:73(142)
Jerusalem, II:8(21)–11(24)
Jesus entering, II:66(127)–67(129)
yearly trip to, II:10(23)–11(24)
Jesus Christ
See also passion of Christ; Son of God; Trinity; Word of God; specific Gospels; specific topics, e.g., miracles
arrest of, III:5(15–18)
as the beginning, IV:10(17)
betrayal of, III:5(15)
birth and boyhood of, II:5(14)–11(24)
burial of, III:22(59)–24(62)
calming the storm, II:24(55)
as carpenter, II:42(90)
Christ, the name, I:13(20)
coming to his own country, II:42(89)
crucifixion of, III:10(37)–21(58)
divinity as questioned, I:7(11)–8(13)
divinity of, I:4(7)
genealogy of, I:2(4)–3(6); II:1(2)–3(7), 4(8–13)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

as having written nothing himself, I:7(11–12)–10(16)
the Incarnation, I:2(4)
kingly character of, I:2(4)–3(6); IV:10(11)
mediator, I:3(6), 35(53–54); IV:10(20)
as only-begotten Son of God and as God, I:8(13)
preaching of, II:17(36), 19(43), 30(70), 31(78), 42(90), 69(132); IV:2(3)
priestly character of, I:3(6), 6(9)
resurrection, appearances after, III:25(70–86)
resurrection, as eating after, III:25(74)
resurrection of, III:24(61–70), 25(86)
saying the same thing often and at different places, II:61(119)
second coming of, II:77(147–51)
as servant, III:25(86)
as teacher, passim
temptation of, II:16(33)
ten appearances after resurrection, III:25(81)
trials of, III:6(19)–8(35)
who do people say that I, the Son of Man, am? II:53(108)
whose son is he? II:74(143)
as wisdom of God, I:35(53)

Jews, I:12(18), 26(40)
See also under God: of Israel; specific topics and events
Augustine’s anti-Semitism, III:13(42) and n51, II:13(44) and n52
God of, Romans as not accepting, I:12(18)–34(52) passim
God and the Lord’s crucifixion, III:13(50)
as not accepting idol worship, I:14(22)
true God of, I:12(18)
people of God, I:14(21); II:3(5)
priesthood of, I:13(21)–14(22)
why God let Romans vanquish, I:13(20)

John, Gospel of, IV:10(11–20)
See also Gospels; specific topics, e.g., John the Baptist
divinity of Jesus in, I:4(7)

John, Apostle, II:17(35)
See also apostles; John, Gospel of;
John the Evangelist; Zebedee, sons of
mother of, II:64(124)
mountain, vision of the Lord on, II:56(112)–57(115)
John the Baptist, II:17(37), 18(42), 53(108), 57(115), 67(129), 69(132)–70(133), 70(137); IV:10(19)
See also under baptism: of Christ
birth of, II:5(17)
a burning and shining lamp, IV:10(17)
death of, II:43(91)–45(93)
disciples of, II:27(62), 31(78)
the four evangelists on, II:5(17)–7(20), 12(25)–15(32)
Jesus thought by Herod to be, II:43(91)–45(93)
knowledge of Christ, II:15(32)
preaching of, II:6(18)
in prison, II:31(78), 44(92)

John the Evangelist, I:4(7)
See also evangelists, four; John, Gospel of, John, Apostle; specific topics
as contemplative, I:5(8)
as symbolized by eagle, I:6(9); II:45(94)
Jonah, II:39(86), 51(106), 75(144); III:24(86)
Joseph, husband of Mary, II:5(14), 5(16–17), 42(90)
and fear for child’s safety, II:8(21)–11(24)
two fathers of, II:3(5–7), 4(11); Revisions II,16 (43)
Joseph, brother of James, III:21(58), 24(61)
Joseph of Arimathea, III:22(59)–23(60)
joy, II:5(17), 27(63); III:24(64), 25(74), 25(86); IV:10(20)

Judah:
city of, II:5(17)
tribe of, I:6(9), 25(39)

Judas, Apostle, II:19(45), 30(70)
See also apostles
Judas Iscariot, II:19(45), 78(153), 80(157–58); III:1(2–4)
See also apostles
agreement to betray Jesus, II:80(157)
betrayal of Jesus, III:5(15)
kiss of, III:5(15)
repentance of, III:7(28)
Satan entering into, III:1(3–4)
suicide of, III:7(28)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

as thief, II:79(156)
judgment, II:30(71)
Jupiter, I:22(30)–23(36), 25(38), 27(42)
thought by Varro to be God of Jews, I:22(30)
justice, I:12(19), 14(21); III:13(48)
See also righteousness
eternal and temporal, I:35(53)
and iniquity, I:35(53)

kingdom of God, II:4(8), 19(44–45), 45(93); III:22(59)
you are not far from the kingdom of God, II:73(141–42)
kingdom of heaven, II:12(25), 17(40), 19(44–45), 41(88), 61(119)
marrige of the king’s son parable, II:71(139)
kingly character of Christ. See under Jesus Christ: kingly character of kings, I:2(4), 3(6), 25(39), 27(42), 31(47–48); III:3(9), 16(53)
as “anointed ones,” I:13(20); III:8(33)
Kronos, I:23(34–35)
lamb, I:31(47–48)
language
See also words
limitations of, II:12(28)
truth and, II:12(27–28)
languages: Church spreading to all, I:32(49)
Last Supper. See Lord’s supper
Latium, I:23(34)
law
See also commandments
sin as going beyond, II:4(13)
lawyers, II:75(144)
Lazarus, II:78(153)–79(154); IV:10(18)
Leah, I:5(8)
leaven: beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, II:52(107)
Lebbæus, II:30(70)
Legion, legion of demons, II:24(56), 65(125)
Leon, I:23(33)
lepers; leprosy, IV:3(4)
cleansing of, II:19(43, 46), 20(48) and n121, II:21(51)
Simon the leper, II:79(154–56)
Levi, II:17(39), 26(59–60)
See also Matthew the Apostle

lies. See falsehood
life; lives:
active and contemplative, IV:10(20)
good life, II:1(1)
river of this life, I:25(87)
light of the world, IV:10(17)
likenesses (idols). See idols
lion, I:6(9)
living creatures of the Apocalypse, I:6(9)
loaves and fishes miracles. See five loaves and two fishes miracle; seven loaves miracle
Lord of hosts, I:28(44)–29(45)
Lord’s Day, III:24(66), 25(76); IV:10(20)
Lord’s supper, II:80(158); III:1(1–4); IV:1(1), 7(8), 9(10), 10(19)
Gospels from, III
Gospels to, II
the Lord’s discourse, III:3(9)
Peter’s triple denial, predicted, III:2(5–8)
love:
double, IV:10(20)
for God, II:73(141–42)
for neighbor, II:73(141–42)
a new commandment I give to you, III:2(5–6)
Peter’s triple confession of, IV:10(20)
the two commandments, II:73(141–42)
Lucan, I:30(46)
Luke, Gospel of, IV:8(9)–9(10)
See also Gospels; specific topics, e.g., John the Baptist
and genealogy of Jesus, II:3(5)
priestly character of Jesus in, I:3(6)
“The Travel Narrative,” II:62(123)
and n230
lunatic: but this kind does not come out except by prayer and fasting, II:58(116)
lust, II:77(150); III:2(7); IV:10(20)
adultery in the heart, III:2(7)
lying. See falsehood
Magadan, coast of, II:51(106)
magi, visit of, I:6(9); II:5(15–17), 11(24)
magic; magical arts, I:9(14), 11(17)
Malchus, III:5(16)
man.
See also human beings
“take up a man,” I:34(52), 35(54)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Mark,
See also evangelists, four; specific topics
Mark, Gospel of, IV:1(2)–7(8)
See also Gospels; specific topics, e.g., John the Baptist as following Matthew, I:2(4)
Maro, I:23(31, 35)
marrige:
  divorce, II:62(120–22)
  of the king’s son, parable, II:71(139)
  of Mary and Joseph, II:1(2)
  to seven brothers, II:72(140)
  virginity/continence in, II:1(2)
Martha, II:79(154)
martyrs; martyrdom, II:32(49); III:4(14)
Peter and Paul, I:10(16)
Stephen, I:10(16)
Mary, Mother of God, I:1(2)–3(6), 25(39), 26(41), 30(46); II:1(2)–2(4)
See also under Jesus Christ: birth and boyhood of
  mother and brothers of Jesus, II:39(86)–40(87)
  my soul magnifies the Lord, II:5(17)
Mary, wife of Cleophas, III:21(58)
Mary Magdalene, III:21(58), 24(61, 63, 65), 24(68)–25(70), 25(75, 79)
Mary of Bethany: anointing Jesus, II:79(154)
Matthew, Gospel of
See also Gospels; specific topics, e.g., Sermon on the Mount
  forty generations in, II:4(8–13)
  and genealogy of Jesus, II:3(5)
  kingly character of Jesus in, I:3(6);
   II:4(8)
  to Lord’s supper (comparison with other Gospels), II
  from Lord’s supper to end of Gospel (comparison with other Gospels), III
  as written in Hebrew, I:2(4)
Matthew, Apostle (Evangelist), II:19(45)
See also apostles; Matthew, Gospel of calling of, II:26(59–60)
Matthias, III:25(76)
meaning
See also under words: and meaning and truth, II:24(55)–25(57); III:4(14)
mediator; Christ as, I:3(6), 35(53–54);
  IV:10(20)
mercy:
  divine, I:14(21); II:5(17); III:6(26);
   IV:6(7)
  I desire mercy and not sacrifice,
   II:27(61)
metropolis, III:25(71)
Minerva, I:23(32) and n76
miracles, I:9:14; II:45(94); III:7(30);
  IV:10(13), 10(17) and n46
See also loaves and fishes miracle among the Gerasenes, II:28(64), 42(89)
behold, I cast out demons and perform cures today and tomorrow,
II:75(145); III:25(80)
bleeding woman, healing, II:28(65)
blind and mute demon, II:37(84)
blind men, healing two, II:29(69), 65(125–26)
calming the storm, II:24(55)
at Cana, II:17(34, 38)
Canaanite woman’s daughter, healing,
II:49(103)
at Christ’s death, III:19(56)–20(57)
cures are performed when they live by his commandments, II:75(145)
demon-possessed man, healing, II:28(64), 42(89)
demons cast out when gentiles abandon superstitions and believe in him, II:75(145)
disciples, and power to cure illnesses, IV:3(4)
disciples given power over unclean spirits, II:30(70)
fig tree withering, II:68(130)–69(132)
healing of many, II:36(83)
Lazarus raised from the dead, II:78(153)–79(154)
legion of demons let go into swine, II:24(56)
leper, cleansing of, II:19(43–44),
  19(46)–20(48) and n121, II:21(51)
lunatic, But this kind does not come out except by prayer and fasting,
II:58(116)
man who was sick for 38 years,
  healing, II:45(94); IV:10(14)
mute man, healing, II:29(69), 39(86)
paralytic, healing, II:25(57–58)
raising the ruler’s daughter, II:28(64, 66, 68)

Agreement Among the Evangelists
Agreement Among the Evangelists

on the sabbath, II:35(82), 45(94); IV:10(14)
of seven loaves and a few fish, II:50(104–5)
someone who does not follow us, casting out demons in your name, II:63(123); IV:5(6)–6(7)
Temple, Jesus healing blind and lame in, II:68(130)
unclean spirits cast out, II:17(35), 19(45), 30(70), 39(86), 75(144); IV:2(3)
walking on water, II:47(99)–48(102)
water turned to wine, II:17(34), 38
withered hand, healing, II:35(82)
morals; morality, I:7(12); IV:10(20)
and "diversity of agreement" among Gospels, II:66(128)
mortality, I:35(53); II:3(6), 4(9, 11); IV:10(20)
Moses, I:25(39), 26(41); II:3(5), 4(9), 5(17), 56(112)–57(115)
authority of, II:62(121–22); III:25(74)
Pharisees on Moses’s seat, II:75(144)
mother and brothers of Jesus, II:39(86)–40(87)
mountain, sermon on. See Sermon on the Mount
mountain, vision on, II:56(112)–57(115); III:24(66)
after six days/after eight days, II:56(113)
mountains: let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains, II:77(150)
Mount of Olives discourse, II:77(147–51)
mustard seed, II:24(55)
mute man, healing, II:29(69), 39(86)
mystery, III:4(14), 25(72)
of a mediator, I:35(53–54)
Nathan, son of David, I:2(4)–3(5); Revisions II,16 (43)
Nathan, the prophet, II:4(12)
Nathanael (Bartholomew), I:17(34), 19(45); III:25(78)
See also apostles
Nazareth, II:5(17)–6(18), 8(21)–9(24)
and healing of paralytic, II:25(58)
Jesus’ return to, teaching in, II:42(89–90)
necessities of life, II:30(74)
neighbor: love for, II:73(141–42)
new cloth and new wine parables, II:27(63)–28(64)
New Testament, I:27(42)
Nicodemus, III:23(60); IV:10(13)
Ninevites, II:39(86)
Noah, I:25(39)
non-believers. See unbelivers
numbers
See also specific numbers, e.g., four plural and singular, III:16(53)–17(54)
Scripture as speaking of whole numbers rather than parts, II:13(41)
symbolic, II:4(8–10); III:25(71)

obedience:
to God, I:n41
the wind and sea obey him, II:24(55)
ointment, II:79(154–56)
Old Testament, I:27(42)
omission:
and certainty, II:41(88)
as not contradiction, II:12(27–28), 19(47), 41(88), 79(155); III:20(57)
oracle; oracles, I:15(23), 18(26), 32(50)
promise to Abraham, II:25(39)
order
See also specific topics and events Gospels, discrepancies in order among, II:19(44), 21(51)–23(54), 42(90)
Orestes, III:16(53) and n1

pagans; paganism, I passim; I:14(21), 15(23), 20(28), 26(41)
See also under specific topics, e.g., worship: of pagan gods beliefs about Jesus and his disciples, I:7(11)
gods as deified humans, I:23(32)
Jupiter and Saturn, I:23(31–36)
as mocking their own gods, I:8(13)
slandering the Gospels, III:16(53)
worship of pagan gods, I:24(37), 25(38–39)
parables, II:40(87)–42(89), 66(127)
the Good Samaritan, II:73(142)
laborers in the vineyard, II:70(135)–72(140)
new cloth and new wine, II:27(63)–28(64)
two debtors, II:79(154)
the wedding feast, II:71(139)–72(140)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
paradise, II:4(11), 16(53)
paralytic, healing of, II:25(57–58)
parasceve, III:13(50)
passion of Christ, III:9(36)–21(58)
carrying the cross, III:10(37)
centurion's amazement, III:20(57)
clothes divided by casting lots, III:12(39)
disciples told in advance of, II:54(110), 59(117), 64(124), 78(152)
earthquake, III:20(57)
hour of, III:13(40–50)
miracles at, III:19(56)–20(57)
potion offered to, III:11(38)
reviled by passersby, III:15(52)
robbers crucified with, III:14(51), 16(53)
Temple curtain torn, III:19(56)
time of, III:13(41)
utterances before death, III:18(55)
vinegar offered, III:17(54)
women at, III:21(58)
Passover, II:1(3), 5(17), 18(42), 45(94), 67(129); III:8(35), 13(40, 46, 50)
last, of Jesus, II:78(152–53), 80(157–58)
Paul, Apostle, passim; I:10(15–16);
II:17(38)
Christ as not having addressed writing to, I:10(15–16)
shared feast day with Peter, I:10(16)
peace, II:5(17); IV:5(6)–6(7)
peace to you: it is I, III:25(74–75)
price of our, I:31(47)
Pentecost, II:1(4)
perseverance, IV:10(20)
Peter, Apostle, passim See also apostles
Christ as not having addressed writing to, I:10(15–16)
cutting of high priest’s ear, III:5(16–17)
denial of, triple, III:2(5–8), 6(19–21), 6(25)
denial of Christ foretold, III:2(5)
Jesus committing his sheep to, IV:10(20)
the Lord’s appearance to, III:25(82–83) and n141
mother-in-law of, II:21(51–52)
mountain, vision of the Lord on, II:56(112)–57(115)
naming of, II:17(34), 53(109); IV:3(4)
repentance of, III:6(26)
as rock, II:17(34), 53(109)
shared feast day with Paul, I:10(16)
triple confession of love, IV:10(20)
triple denial of, III:2(5–8), 6(19–21), 6(25)
Pharisees, passim; II:62(120)
asking for a sign, II:39(86)
leaven of, II:52(107)
the Lord’s discourse against, II:75(144–45)
on Moses’s seat, II:75(144)
plotting to destroy Jesus, II:36(83)
why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners? II:27(61)
Philip, brother of Herod, II:6(18–19), 7(20)
Philip, Apostle, II:17(34, 37, 39), 19(45); IV:10(19)
See also apostles and feeding of the multitude, II:46(95–96), 79(156)
philosophers, I:7(12), 15(23), 23(31), 29(45), 33(51)
See also individual philosophers Platonic, I:23(35)
Pilate, Pontius:
giving Jesus’ body to Joseph, III:22(59)
giving Jesus up to be crucified, III:13(46)
Jesus brought before, III:7(27)
Jesus brought before, again, III:8(32–35)
message from wife, III:13(44, 46)
as wishing to release Jesus, III:13(44–46)
Plato, I:35(53)
Platonic philosophers, I:23(35)
pleasure, I:23(32); II:13(30), 77(151)
pluralism, II:12(28)
plural numbers, III:16(53)–17(54)
Porphyry, I:15(23)
potter’s field. See Akeldama (Field of Blood)
prayer:
act of leaving as, II:47(100)
but this kind does not come out except by prayer and fasting, II:58(116)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

threefold, of Christ, III:4(10–13)
whatever you ask for in prayer with faith, you shall receive, II:68(130)
preaching. See Gospel, preaching
predestined order of the ages, I:12(19)
Priapus, I:25(38)
pride: “diversity of agreement” as curative, II:66(128)
priesthood, I:13(20)–14(22); II:5(17), 35(54)
of the Jews, I:13(21)–14(22)
priestly character of Christ, I:3(6), 6(9)
prophecy, I:30(46)–32(49)
of Christ’s coming, I:11(17)
as fulfilled, I:26(40), 30(46)–31(47), 35(53–54)
against idolatry, I:26(40–41)
prophetic witness to Christ, I:13(20), 14(22), 19(27), 26(40); II:66(128), 70(137); III:7(31)
prophecy, pagan. See soothsayers prophets
See also individual names
unity of, III:7(30–31)
providence, divine, I:1(2), 14(22), 35(53); III:7(30)
punishment, eternal, II:77(147);
III:25(86); IV:6(7)
See also fire; Gehenna
purity, II:4(11); IV:10(20)
Pythagoras, I:7(12)
Rabboni, III:24(68–69)
Rachel, I:5(8); II:5(17)
rain, I:25(87); II:19(44)
rational soul, I:23(35), 35(53); IV:10(15)
“reachers,” II:20(49)
reading: and instruction in the Scriptures, I:10(15) and n41
reason:
faith and, III:13(43)
and truth of Gospel, III:13(43)
Remus, I:12(19)
repentance, II:12(26), 27(61); III:6(26), 25(74)
See also under individual names, e.g., Peter
resurrection of Jesus Christ, III:24(61–70), 25(86)
appearances after, III:25(70–86)
Jesus as eating after, III:25(74)
revelation, II:5(17); III:7(31), 25(86)
rich man, II:63(123)
righteousness: ten as number of, II:4(13)
robbers, II:73(142); III:5(18)
See also Barabbas; thieves
crucified with Jesus, III:13(46), 14(51), 16(53)–17(54)
rock; rocks:
now go into the rocks and hide yourselves in the earth, I:28(44)
Peter as rock, II:17(34), 53(109)
prudent man building on rock, not sand, II:19(44).
rocks split, and tombs were opened, III:20(57)
tomb of Jesus, III:23(60), 24(63, 67, 69)
rod, II:30(71–72) and n152
Romans: as not accepting God of the Jews, I:12(18)–34(52) passim
Rome, II:25(58)
See also Capitol, Roman
Romulus, I:23(32)
fratricide of, I:12(19)
ruler’s daughter, raising of, II:28(64, 66, 68)
Sabaoth, God of, I:29(45)
sabbath:
Capernaum synagogue, teaching in, IV:1(2)–2(3)
disciples plucking grain, II:34(81)
evening of, III:24(63, 65–66)
healing of man who was sick for 38 years, II:45(94); IV:10(14)
healing of man with withered hand, II:35(82)
pray that your flight may not be...on a sabbath, II:77(151)
sanctification of, I:22(30)
the Son of Man is Lord even of the sabbath, II:34(81)
sacraments, III:25(72) and n104; IV:5(6)–6(7)
See also baptism; eucharist
Sacred Scripture. See Scripture, Sacred sacrifice, II:5(17)
I desire mercy and not sacrifice, II:27(61)
of the Lord, III:13(50)
pagan, I:16(24), 27(42)
the priest’s greatest, I:6(9)
New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)

Sadducees, II:12(26), 52(107), 73(141)
saints, I:31(47); III:20(57)
salt: Have salt in yourselves, IV:6(7)
salvation, I:7(10), 35(53); II:5(17)
sand: foolish man building on, II:19(44).
Satan, II:38(85); III:1(3–4), 2(6), 3(9),
25(72)
Saturn, I:23(31–36)
the name, I:23(35)
thought to be God of Jews, I:22(30)
Saul (Paul), I:10(15–16)
See also Paul, Apostle
scribes, passim
every scribe who has been trained for
the kingdom of heaven, II:41(88)
gospel texts as emended by, III:25(71)
and Pharisees, II:39(86), 48(102),
74(143)–75(144)
Scripture, Sacred, III:24(68–69)
See also specific topics and events
fulfillment of, I:30(46); II:42(90);
III:3(9), 17(54)
instruction in, I:10(15) and n41
Old and New Testaments, I:27(42)
as speaking of whole numbers rather
than parts, II:13(41)
using part to refer to whole, III:24(65)
and n155
second coming of Christ, II:55(111)
56(112), 77(147–51); III:6(20), 7(27)
senses, II:27(63)
Septuagint: creation of, II:66(128) and
n244
Sermon on the Mount, delivery of,
II:19(43–47)
servant: “he leads his servants by way
of the form of a servant,” I:31(47);
III:25(86)
seven, the number, II:4(13)
seven brothers, II:72(140)
seven loaves miracle, II:50(104–5)
seventy-seven, II:4(13)
sheep, I:31(47–48)
shoes, II:30(71, 75)
Sibyls, I:20(28)
See also soothsayers
signs, II:4(8)
answer to those seeking, II:51(106)
on the earth, IV:10(17) and n46
scribes and Pharisees asking to see, II:39(86)
silver, I:28(44); II:30(73)

thirty pieces, II:80(157); III:7(28, 31)
Simeon, II:5(15–17), 11(24)
Simon of Cyrene, III:10(37)
Simon Peter. See Peter, Apostle
Simon the leper, II:79(154–56)
Simon the Zealot, II:19(45)
See also apostles
simplicity, II:30(75)
sin
See also iniquity; specific topics, e.g.,
forgiveness
cleansing of all, II:4(13)
and expiation, I:3(5); II:4(11)
as going beyond the law, II:4(13)
sinners, II:4(8, 12), 27(60–62), 79(154);
III:4(10–11)
Jesus eating with, II:27(60–61)
and tax collectors, II:27(60–61)
six days: after six days, II:56(113);
III:24(66)
Socrates, I:7(12), 18(26)
Sodom, II:32(79)
Solomon, I:2(4)–3(5); II:4(12)
son, sonship, II:4(13) and n38
See also under David: how Christ is
son of
whose son is he? II:74(143)
Son of God, II:1(2); III:20(57); IV:10(15)
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity
equality with the Father, II:3(6);
IV:10(11)
as only-begotten Son of God and as
God, I:8(13)
Son of Man, II:1(2) and passim
See also Jesus Christ
soothsayers, I:20(28), 28(44), 32(50)
Sophocles, III:16(53) and n73
soul:
  rational, I:23(35), 35(53); IV:10(15)
  world soul idea, I:23(35)
speaking: writing and, I:1(2)
spirit, I:23(31, 34–35, 38)
Father, into your hands I commit my
spirit, III:18(55)–19(56), 21(58),
24(66)
ghost, III:25(74)
he who joins himself to the Lord is one
spirit, I:4(12)
it is the spirit that gives life, but the
flesh is of no use, IV:10(15)
the spirit indeed is willing, but the
flesh is weak, III:4(10)

Agreement Among the Evangelists
Agreement Among the Evangelists

spirits, unclean. See unclean spirits
sta , II:30(71–74) and n152
whether or not disciples were to carry,
II:30(71)
Stephen, I:10(16)
stone: the stone that the builders rejected has become the head of the corner,
II:70(135)
storm, calming of, II:24(55)
sunrise, III:24(65)
supertition, I:16(24), 23(35–36), 26(40–41); II:75(145)
supper, the Lord’s last. See Lord’s supper
swine: demons let go into, II:24(56)
symbolism, II:2(4)
tax collectors, II:27(60–61), 28(64)
taxes, II:60(118), 72(140); III:8(34–35)
teachers:
erroreous, II:74(143)
Jesus as teacher, passim
Rabboni, III:24(68–69)
Temple:
casting out of merchants, II:67(129–68(131)
children saying Hosanna in, II:68(130)
curtain torn at Christ’s death,
III:19(56)
destruction of, foretelling, II:76(146)
Jesus healing blind and lame,
II:68(130)
Jesus taken by his mother to, II:11(24)
by what authority do you do these things? II:69(132)–70(133),
70(137–38)
temples, destruction of pagan, I:16(24)
templar, the, I:12(19), 23(34), 35(53);
II:4(9–10), 12(28), 23(54), 30(70)
temptation, II:4(10), 18(42), 30(71); III:4(10)
of Christ, II:16(33), 42(90)
ten, the number, II:4(9)
as number of righteousness, II:4(13)
Ten Commandments. See commandments
Thaddeus (Judas, son of James),
II:19(45), 30(70)
See also apostles
thieves
See also robbers
Judas as thief, II:79(156)
third day: on the third day I complete my course, II:75(145); III:25(80)

thirty silver pieces. See under silver: thirty pieces of
Thomas, Apostle, II:19(45); III:25(74–78,
81–83, 85)
See also apostles
thorns, crown of. See crown of thorns
thunder, sons of, II:39(86), 53(109)
Timaeus (Plato), I:35(53)
time, II:13(40–41)
See also specific topics, e.g., eternity
ages, predestined order of, I:12(19)
end of the age, II:77(147–51)
real time and narrative proximity,
II:17(34)–18(42), 19(45–46),
20(48); III:4(11)
“Time” as father of gods, I:23(34)
transfiguration of Christ, II:47(100);
III:25(72)
transmigration, II:29(86)
“Travel Narrative,” II:62(123) and n230
trees:
fig tree, II:68(130)–69(132)
I see men like walking trees,
II:53(108)
trials of Jesus, III:6(19)–8(35)
tribulation, II:4(8), 27(63)
tribute, paying: to Caesar, II:72(140);
III:8(34–35)
Trinity, I:5(8), 35(53); IV:10(20)
See also Holy Spirit; Son of God
the Filioque, IV:10(19) and n69
truth
See also under words: and meaning
Christ as bearing witness to, III:8(35);
IV:10(19)
despite varying accounts, II:12(28)
and “diversity of agreement” among
Gospels, II:66(128)
and eternity, I:35(53)
and faith, I:35(53)
and language, II:12(27–28)
and meaning, II:24(55)–25(57);
III:4(14)
and reason, III:13(43)
tunics, II:30(73), 30(75)
Tusculan Disputations (Cicero), I:23(32),
23(32–33)
twelve apostles. See apostles
unbelievers, I:7(10), 28(43); III:70(137)
unclean spirits, II:17(35), 19(45), 30(70),
75(144); IV:2(3)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

house cleaned after departure, II:39(86)

unity:
of the flock, I:35(54); III:4(14), 25(72); IV:5(6)–6(7)
between the members and the head, II:70(138)
of the prophets, III:7(30–31)
of the Trinity, I:5(8), 35(53)
universe, I:24(37), 29(45)

vanity, I:7(10), 23(32); II:30(77)

Varro, Marcus Terentius:
as thinking God of Jews was Jupiter, I:22(30), 23(31, 33, 35), 27(42)

Venus, I:23(32), 25(38)

villages, III:25(71)
vinegar: offered to Christ on the cross, III:17(54)

vineyard:
hiring of workers for, II:63(123)
man with two sons, II:70(133)
parable of laborers in, II:70(135)–72(140)

Virgil, cited, I:23(31–34) and nn68–69, 74, 79

virgins, virginity, II:28(68)
in marriage, II:1(2)

virtues, IV:10(20)
two, I:5(8), 7(12)

water:
turned to wine, II:17(34, 38)
walking on water, II:47(99)–48(102)

wedding at Cana, II:17(34, 38)

wedding feast parable, II:71(139)–72(140)

wheat, II:12(26); III:2(6), 3(9)
wicked, the, III:25(86)

wind, I:25(87); II:19(44), 47(99)
est and west, north and south, II:4(9)
the wind and sea obey him, II:24(55)

wine:
in new wineskins, II:27(60)
parable of new, II:27(63)–28(64)
potion o ered to Jesus, III:11(38)

water turned to, II:17(34, 38)

winter: pray that your flight may not be in winter, II:77(151)

wisdom of God, I:35(53)
supreme, I:23(35)

wise men. See magi

witness; witnesses

See also under prophecy: prophetic
witness to Christ
to Christ, I:8(13), 14(22)
Christ’s, III:8(35); IV:10(19)
of the evangelists, III:1(1), 9(36)
of Scripture, III:1(2)
witnesses, false, III:6(20), 7(27)
women, II:28(68)
See also individual names and
descriptions
at passion of Christ, III:21(58)
at tomb of Christ, III:24(63–64, 67–70)

word of God, II:12(28)

Word of God, incarnate, I:7(11), 30(46);
II:3(6), 6(18); IV:10(11–12, 16, 19–20) and n71
as one who took on flesh, not one who
was changed into flesh, I:4(7)

words
See also language
and meaning, II:24(55)–25(57),
28(66), 30(72); III:4(14)

world:
end of the age, II:77(147–51)
four parts to, I:2(3)
light of, IV:10(17)
world soul idea, I:23(35)
worm, IV:6(7) and n10
worship
See also idolatry
of God alone, I:18(26)–19(27), 21(29),
29(45)
writing:

Christ as having written nothing/
writing wrongly attributed to,
I:7(11)–10(16)
and speaking, I:1(2)

yoke: my yoke is easy and my burden is
light, II:33(80)

Zacchaeus, II:66(127)
Zeebedee, sons of, II:17(39, 41); III:21(58),
25(78)

See also James the Apostle; John the
Apostle
mother of, II:64(124)
sons of thunder, II:39(86), 53(109)
Zechariah, priest, I:3(5), 6(9); II:5(17)–
6(19); IV:9(10)
Zechariah, prophet, III:7(29–31)
Index from

On the Lord’s Sermon on the Mount

(De sermone Domini in monte)

Included in book:

New Testament I and II

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Matthaeeum).

Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

The Lord’s Sermon on the Mount
(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

OLD TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter(s) Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>3:9, 3:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>21:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>13:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>3:12, 18:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>1:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:1, 1:16, 5:6, 7:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>1:14, 1:16, 5:5-6, 10:13, 10:13.12, 27:5, 34:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1:2, 1:16, 5:6, 64:4, 66:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>12:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>6:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>2:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>1:6, 4:2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>I, 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1-2</td>
<td>I, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>I, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>I, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>I, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, 2, 8; II, 22, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 17; I, 2, 9; II, 25, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>I, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>I, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11-12</td>
<td>I, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>I, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>I, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14-16</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>I, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>I, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 18; I, 8, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 18; I, 8, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 18; I, 9, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21-22</td>
<td>I, 9, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:23-24</td>
<td>I, 10, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25-26</td>
<td>I, 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>II, 8, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27-28</td>
<td>I, 12, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>I, 13, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:30</td>
<td>I, 13, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td>I, 14, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>I, 14, 39; II, 16, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33-37</td>
<td>I, 17, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:34-35</td>
<td>II, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:38-42</td>
<td>I, 19, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:40</td>
<td>II, 8, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:41</td>
<td>I, 20, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:43-48</td>
<td>I, 20, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>I, 20, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>I, 23, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>II, 1, 2; II, 24, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>II, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>II, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>II, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>II, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>II, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>II, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>II, 4, 15; II, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-13</td>
<td>II, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>II, 6, 20; II, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>II, 7, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 18; II, 8, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>I, 17, 51; II, 9, 30; II, 9, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16-18</td>
<td>II, 12, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19-21</td>
<td>II, 13, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:22-23</td>
<td>II, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>II, 14, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>I, 15, 42; II, 15, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>II, 15, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:27-28</td>
<td>II, 15, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28</td>
<td>II, 17, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28-30</td>
<td>II, 15, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:31-33</td>
<td>II, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:32</td>
<td>II, 17, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:33</td>
<td>II, 7, 25; II, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 20; II, 7, 25; II, 17, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1-2</td>
<td>II, 18, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>I, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>II, 19, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4-5</td>
<td>II, 19, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>II, 20, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>II, 21, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9-11</td>
<td>II, 21, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>II, 22, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>II, 23, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>II, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15-16</td>
<td>II, 12, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>II, 18, 59; II, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16-20</td>
<td>II, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>II, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>II, 25, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>II, 25, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-27</td>
<td>I, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26-29</td>
<td>II, 25, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8</td>
<td>I, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25</td>
<td>I, 22, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>I, 15, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>I, 21, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-30</td>
<td>II, 23, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>I, 22, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>I, 22, 75; II, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>II, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49-50</td>
<td>II, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14-15</td>
<td>II, 11, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>II, 15, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>II, 15, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>I, 14, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:27</td>
<td>II, 20, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:21</td>
<td>II, 20, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>I, 15, 40; II, 6, 20; II, 20, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:39-40</td>
<td>II, 22, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>II, 22, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2</td>
<td>II, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 18; II, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:22-23</td>
<td>II, 25, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:35</td>
<td>II, 13, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>I, 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>II, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:52</td>
<td>II, 18, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4</td>
<td>I, 22, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:41</td>
<td>I, 12, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 12, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>II, 25, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:35</td>
<td>I, 16, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>II, 9, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>II, 7, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:47-48</td>
<td>I, 20, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>II, 8, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>I, 15, 40; I, 15, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:31</td>
<td>II, 9, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:32</td>
<td>II, 9, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>I, 22, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>I, 23, 78; II, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 17; I, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>I, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>I, 2, 6; II, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>I, 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:30</td>
<td>II, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>II, 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:27</td>
<td>II, 7, 25; II, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>II, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:41</td>
<td>II, 7, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>II, 6, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27-30</td>
<td>II, 17, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:25</td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-3</td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:4-5</td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>I, 17, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>I, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>I, 16, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-16</td>
<td>II, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>I, 5, 14; II, 17, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>I, 11, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 22, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>II, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>II, 6, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>II, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>I, 12, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>II, 6, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>II, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>II, 9, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>II, 12, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>I, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>I, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>I, 21, 71; I, 22, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>I, 22, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>II, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>I, 5, 13; II, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:3-4</td>
<td>II, 18, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>II, 20, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>I, 10, 27; II, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>II, 18, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 20, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>II, 18, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>II, 25, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>I, 16, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10-11</td>
<td>I, 14, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12-13</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 16, 45; I, 22, 73</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Sermon on the Mount

7:15  I, 22, 73  5:26  I, 7, 18
7:29  I, 14, 39  6:4  I, 7, 18
8:2  I, 1, 3
9:15  II, 16, 54  9:16  II, 16, 54
9:16  II, 16, 54  9:17  II, 16, 54
9:17  II, 16, 54  9:19  II, 19, 65
9:19  II, 19, 65  9:20-22 II, 19, 65
9:26-27 I, 6, 17; I, 22, 77  10:13 II, 9, 34
10:32-33 II, 1, 3  11:31 I, 17, 51
12:3 II, 25, 83  13:6 II, 25, 83
15:25 I, 11, 30  15:31 I, 17, 51; I, 17, 52
15:31 Rv I, 19 (18), 17  16:1-8 II, 17, 57

2 Corinthians
3:18 II, 12, 42
5:10 I, 6, 17; I, 11, 31
9:7 I, 20, 68
11:12 II, 16, 54
11:20-21 I, 19, 58

Galatians
1:10 I, 7, 18; II, 1, 3
1:20 I, 17, 51
1:23-24 I, 7, 18
3:28 I, 15, 40
4:1 II, 4, 15
4:6 II, 11, 38
4:14 II, 9, 30
5:13 II, 19, 65
5:19-23 II, 24, 81

5:20 I, 5, 15
4:17 II, 1, 3

Ephesians
3:16-17 I, 10, 27
4:26 I, 10, 26
4:28 II, 17, 57
5:13 II, 13, 46
5:29 II, 12, 42

Philippians
3:20 I, 5, 15
4:17 II, 1, 3

Colossians
2:3 II, 25, 82
3:5 II, 13, 45
3:11 I, 15, 40

1 Timothy
1:5 II, 12, 43
2:5 Rv I, 19 (18), 20
5:24 II, 18, 60
5:25 II, 18, 60

2 Timothy
2:24 II, 8, 28
4:14 I, 21, 71
4:14-16 I, 22, 73
24:25 II, 25, 86

Hebrews
3:13 II, 7, 27

James
4:6 I, 11, 32

1 John
5:16 Rv I, 19 (18), 19; I, 22, 73

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers, then the Section numbers in parentheses. (Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes.)

Abraham, I:16(49) and n60
action; actions
   See also intention
   contemplation and, II:21(71)
   and disregarding people’s praise, II:1
   and sincere faith, I:10(27)
   and what is in a person’s heart, II:25
Acts of the Apostles, I:20(64), 22(73);
   II:17(57)
   Manichean rejection of, I:20(65) and n88
Acts of Thomas, I:20(65) and nn90–91
Acyndinus, I:16(50) and n63
adoption, II:16(54)
   into kingdom of God, I:23(78);
   II:11(38)
   as sons, I:23(78); II:4(15–16)
adultery, I:12(36), 14(39), 16(48)
   in the heart, I:12(33, 36),
   and spousal permission, I:16(49–50)
   and n62
adversaries
   See also enemies
   God as called adversary, I:11(32)
adversity, I:3(10), 11(32), 20(68)
   in Christian history, I:19(61)
   Church, II:7(26)
divine, I:3(10), 11(32), 20(68)
   he taught them as one having authority, II:27(87)
   people in positions of, I:16(50)
   to punish, I:20(63, 66)
   of real-life moral struggle, I:16(49)
   and n62
agencies, I:11(29), 15(40–41); II:6(20–21),
   17(57), 20(70)
in human guise, II:9(32)
likeness of, I:4(12)
anger, I:9(21–10(26), 14(39), 19(56, 58);
   II:2(6), 19(63), 20(69), 24(81)
for no reason, I:4, 9(21–22), 10(26, 28);
   Revisions I:19(18):4
animals:
   impure/unclean, II:20(69–70) and nn91–92
   rational and irrational, II:15(51)
   antagonists. See enemies
Antioch, I:16(50); II:17(57)
anxiety, II:7(25), 15(49, 51), 16(53),
   17(56–57)
Apocalypse, I:22(76)
Apostle, the (St. Paul). See Paul, the
   Apostle
apostles, I:6(17); II:16(54)
capability of, I:4(12); Revisions I:19(18):2
approval, human, II:1(1), 1(4), 2(8),
   22(76)
   See also praise
Aquila, II:17(57)
arrogance. See pride
ascension of the Lord, I:20(64)
asking, seeking, and knocking, II:21(71)
   and Revisions I:19(18):9
authority, I:20(65)
   in Christian history, I:19(61)
Church, II:7(26)
divine, I:3(10), 11(32), 20(68)
   he taught them as one having authority, II:27(87)
aries, I:14(39), 16(48)
   in the heart, I:12(33, 36),
   and spousal permission, I:16(49–50)
   and n62
ages: history of the world, I:16(49) and n61
air, I:11(30) and n35
Alexander the coppersmith, I:22(73, 76)
allegory, I:19(58); II:2(6–7)
   limits to, II:15(51–52) and n74
   numbers as suggesting, I:4(11–12),
   19(61)
alms; almsgiving, II:2(5–9), 3(11)
alter, I:10(26–27); II:16(54)
Ambrose, Introduction and n3
Ananias, I:20(64)
The Sermon on the Mount

of Scripture, I:11(32)
and those who proclaim the Gospel,
II:16(54)
By what authority do you do these things, II:20(70)
avarice. See greed

baptism:
of John, II:20(70)
renunciation of Satan, I:11(31) and n36
Beatitudes, I:1(3)–5(15) and passim
See also maxims
and gifts of the Holy Spirit,
Introduction, pp. 13–15
number of, I:3(10), 4(11–12);
II:11(38)
perfection, ladder of, I:3(10)
and petitions of the Lord’s Prayer,
Introduction, pp. 13–15
beauty, I:5(13), 16(50)
of all natural beings in their own order
and according to their own kind,
I:12(34)
visible, II:5(18)
Beelzebul, I:22(75)
See also Satan
benevolence, I:11(31), 21(70)
Bible. See Scripture, Sacred
birds, II:5(17), 15(51–52), 17(57), 21(73)
blasphemy, I:10(27); II:18(59)
blessedness, I:1(3), 3(10), 5(13), 16(42);
II:6(21), 9(35)–10(36), 12(40, 43)
See also happiness
blessed life, II:3(14), 6(20), 21(71)
blood ties, I:15(41); Revisions I,19(18):5
body
See also flesh
of the earth, I:2(4); II:11(38)
earthly and heavenly, II:5(18)
food, making use of, II:17(56) and
Revisions I,19(18):9
injury to, I:16(46)
mastery of, I:6(17)
resurrection of, II:7(27) and n36
and soul, II:6(23)
the whole body, II:13(45)
body of Christ. See Church; eucharist
bread
See also daily bread
consecrated, II:7(27)
of life, II:7(25)
multitude fed on, II:9(31)
brthern, Christian, I:22(73)
brather, I:15(41); II:17(57)
love for, II:12(43)
brushel, I:6(17)
Caesar, II:20(70)
Capernaum, I:21(72)
cardinal virtues, Introduction, n3
Catholic Christianity, I:5(14), 20(65);
II:6(22) and n24
See also Christian life; Christians;
Church
censure. See correction
charity, I:12(5), 5(13) and n23; II:1(3),
4(16), 9(30, 35), 12(43), 19(65)
See also love
fullness of the Law as, II:13(45),
17(58)
undermining, as sin, I:22(75)
chastity, I:14(39), 16(50)
See also virginity
marriage of fraternal companionship,
I:15(42)
cheeks, right and left, I:19(58)
children of God, II:11(38)
Chorazin, I:21(72) and n95
Christ
See also Jesus Christ
name of, II:25(84)
Christian life, I:1(1)
acting upon what we have heard from,
II:25
Christians as brothers, I:22(73)
Christian standard, I:20(66)
Christian warfare, I:18
living the Gospel, II:16
perfect way to lead, I:1(1)
Christians, II:12(41)
See also Catholic Christianity; Church
future, II:4(15)
in history, I:19(61)
Christology: homo assumptus (or
susceptus), I:19(61) and n77
Church, II:10(36)
See also Catholic Christianity
glorious, I:19(66) and Revisions
I,19(18):9
as it is and as it will be, II:19(66) and
Revisions I,19(18):9
the Lord’s Prayer and, II:6(24)
spouse of Christ, II:6(24)
wellbeing of, II:17(56)
circumcision, I:4(12)
The Sermon on the Mount

clothing, II:15(51)–16(54)
See also coat and cloak, below
cloth and cloak, I:19(56, 59–61), 20(66); II:8(28)
coheirs with Christ, I:23(78); II:4(16)
coming of Christ, I:11(29) and n33,
I:16(49) and n61; II:10(36)
commandments, I:8(20)–9(21) and
Revisions I,19(18):3–4; II:4(15)
See also Law
communion, II:1(3)
See also eucharist
compassion, I:19(61)–20(62, 66); II:2(6–7)
See also love; mercy
for enemies, II:2(6)
God’s, II:3(14)
of Jesus, II:2(6)
for the poor, II:24(80)
in rebuke or censure, II:19(64–65)
completion, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):3
See also perfection
condemnation
See also judgment
final, I:9(24), 22(76–77); II:6(22)
conscience, I:3(10), 20(68), 22(74);
II:1(1), 2(9), 4(16), 9(32), 12(43)
and hating God, II:14(48) and
Revisions I,19(18):8
consoler, I:12(36)
See also Holy Spirit
Constantius II, I:16(50) and n63
contemplation, I:3(10), 13(38); II:23(77),
25(84)
and action, II:21(71)
contempt, I:19(58); II:20(69–70)
continence. See chastity; virginity
correction, II:9(34)
See also punishment
compassion in rebuke or censure,
II:19(63–65)
punishment leading to, I:20(62–66)
counsel, I:4(11); II:11(38); Introduction,
p. 15
cross; crucifixion of Peter, II:18(62)
curses, I:21(71)
Cyprian, Introduction, p. 11, and passim
daily bread, I:13(37)–18(54); II:4(15),
7(25–27), 10(37), 11(38); Introduction, p. 15
See also eucharist
darkness, II:13(46)
David, II:1(1)
day of judgment. See under judgment:
day of
death, I:20(64) and n81; II:9(35)
See also mortality; original sin
sin that leads to, I:22(73–75) and
Revisions I:19(18):7
three deaths, I:12(35)
debts; debtors:
lending to others, I:20
trespasses, II:8(28–29) and n38
usury, II:8(28) and n41
deeds. See actions; works
demons, II:25(84–85)
desire
See also lust
for earthly possessions/attractions,
I:1(3); II:13(44, 46), 14(47)
of the flesh, I:2(9), 12(34), 16(43, 46);
Revisions I,19(18):1
will and, II:22(74)
devil, I:11(31); II:9(32), 14(47)
See also demons; Satan
no one can serve two masters,
II:14(47–48)
disciples, II:9(33), 25(84)
See also apostles
righteousness of, I:9(21–25)
divided heart. See under heart: divided
divine precepts. See precepts, divine
divine providence. See providence, divine
divorce. See under marriage: and
separation
doctrine, I:13(38)
See also Catholic Christianity
dogs, I:20(65); II:20(67)–21(71)
Donatism; Donatist schism, I:5(13) and
n23
doves, II:19(66)
drink, II:10(37)
drunkenness, II:22(74), 24(81)
duplicity, II:14(48)
divorce
See also marriage:
earth, I:11(30) and n35
See also world
beauty of, II:13(44)
blessed are the meek, for they shall
inherit the earth, I:2(4)
body of, I:2(4); II:11(38)
heaven and, II:5(18), 6(20–24), 10(36)
kingdom, earthly, I:1(2–3)
salt of, I:6(16–17)
sinners as, I:17(53); II:5(17), 6(22),
The Sermon on the Mount

10(36)
symbolism of, I:5(15); II:6(21–24)
thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven, II:6(22–24)
east: prayer facing, II:5(18) and n19
Egyptian magicians, II:25(85)
eight, I:4, 4(12)
See also under Beatitudes: number of and Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12) and n22
eisenegkes, II:9(30) and n45
elements, I:11(30) and n35
Elijah, Revisions I,19(18):3, I:20(64)
Elisha, Revisions I,19(18):3
endurance, I:5(13); II:17(58)
enemies
See also specific topics, e.g., revenge
compassion for, II:2(6)
love for, I:15(40), 21(69)–22(77)
prayer for, I:21(69)–22(77); II:6(22), 8(29)
reconciling with, I:11(32)
yielding to and exceeding demands of, I:19(56)–20(68)
envy, II:24(81)
eternal life, I:2(6), 23(78); II:3(11), 6(23), 10(36)
eucharist, II:7(25) and n30, 7(26–27) and nn32–36, I:10(37)
See also daily bread
Eve, I:12(34)
evil
See also sin
deliver us from evil, I:17(51); II:4(15), 9(35); Introduction, p. 15
returning good for, I:2(4), 19(57), 22(76)
there is no evil nature, I:11(32)
those who still love this world, II:21(73)
eyes:
an eye for an eye, I:19(56)
of the heart, II:22(76)
inner eye, II:3(14), 12(43)
as intention, II:13(45–46)
sandal through, I:13(37)
splitter in your brother’s eye...beam in your own eye, II:19(63–64)
undivided, II:13(45–46), 19(64), 22(75), 25
faith, II:24(81)
sincere, I:10(27); II:12(43)
God’s inner temple, I:10(27);
II:5(17)–6(20)
and hope, II:6(23)
falsehood. See lies
false prophets, II:24(78–81)
family (blood ties), I:15(41); Revisions I,19(18):5
fasting, I:12(34); II:12(40, 42), 24(80)
Father, God as, I:20(63)
See also God
fear, II:25(82)
beginning of wisdom, I:1(3), 4(11–12)
of God, I:1(3), 4(11–12); Introduction, p. 14
of the Lord, I:6(16)–10(28)
fidelity, marital, I:14(39), 18(54)
fifty, the number, I:4(12)
and Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12) and n22
fire, I:1(3); II:9(32), 11(30) and n35, 24(78)
See also Gehenna; punishment from heaven, I:20(64)
firmament, spiritual, I:5(15); II:13(44)
flesh
See also desire; senses
earth as symbolizing, II:6(23)
and spirit, II:10(36)
woman as symbolizing, I:12(34) and nn40–41
works of, II:24(81)
food
See also daily bread
do not be anxious about what you are to eat, II:7(25)
as material, II:15(50)
in paradise, II:17(56) and Revisions I,19(18):9
for the soul, Scripture as, II:10(37)
spiritual, II:7(25, 27), 10(37)
work for the food which does not perish, II:7(25)
foolish man: building house on sand,
I:1(1); II:25(87)
forgiveness, II:11(39)
for us as we forgive, II:8(28–29)
of sin, II:10(37), 11(39)
fornication, I:14(39)–15(40), 16(43–50)
and Revisions I,19(18):6, I:18(54); II:13(45), 24(81)
See also adultery
all wicked desire as, I:12(36)
idoslatry as called, I:12(36)
The Sermon on the Mount

fortitude, I:3(10)–4(12), 13(37)–18(54); II:11(38); Introduction, p. 15
as cardinal virtue, Introduction, n3
free choice: and necessity, II:16(54)
freedom, II:11(38), 19(65)
friendship, II:11(31)
fruits, II:24(78–81)
of the Spirit, II:25(83)
by their fruits you will know them, II:12(41)

Galatians, II:9(30) and n47
Gehenna, I:13(37–38)
and ascending order of punishment, I:9(22–24)
Genesis, I:12(34), 23(79)
gentiles, I:15(40); II:3(12), 9(32), 16(53)
gifts of the Holy Spirit, seven:
the Beatitudes and, I:3(10), 4(11–12); II:11(38)
and intention, I:10(27)
seven, I:3(10), 4(11–12); II:11(38)
and sincere faith, I:10(27)
glory of God, II:22(76)
by your glory I die each day, I:17(51–52)

God
See also kingdom of God; will of God;
specific topics, e.g., heaven
dwelling of, I:10(27); II:5(17)–6(20)
as everywhere, I:9(32), II(32);
II:5(18)
the Father, I:20(63)
God’s care for those who pray to him, II:15
hallowed be thy name, II:5(19); Introduction, p. 14
image of, I:4(12)
to judge hidden secrets of men,
II:9(32)
as knowing everything, II:3(12)
likeness of, I:2(9)–3(10), 4(12),
23(79); II:12(42)
Lord and ruler, II:9(32)
name of, II:5(19), 10(36)
as never judging rashly or repaying by
false measure, II:18(62)
as never lapsing into disgraceful
behavior, II:4(16)
no one can serve two masters, II:14
as not restricted to dimensions of
space, II:5(17)
our contract with, II:11
as regulator, I:22(77)
as scrutinizing hearts, II:2(5)
seeing, II:12(43)
sons/children of, II:11(38)
who made heaven and earth, I:1(2)
gold, I:16(50), 19(59); II:13(44)
Golden Rule, II:22
good, II:9(32)
See also saints
for evil, I:2(4), 19(57), 22(76)
the good vs. the necessary, II:16(53)
joy, the good alone as possessing,
II:25(83)
kingship and righteousness of God as
our, II:16(53)
supreme, I:3(10)
whatever good you wish ...people should do to you, II:22(74), 24(81)
goodness, I:21(70), 23(79); II:14(48), 24(81)
See also righteousness
feigned, II:1(1)
good will, II:1(1), 4(15–16), 6(21),
11(31), 16(54), 18(61)
good works. See works
Gospel, passim; I:7(18), 16(50); II:9(31, 33)
living the Gospel, II:16(54)
preached to every nation, II:5(19)
preaching, purpose of, II:16(54–55)
proclaiming it as sons, not as slaves,
II:16(54)
grace, divine, II:4(16)
greed, II:13(45)
as idolatry, I:12(36), 16(46–47)
Greek versions of the Bible, I:17(51),
19(58); II:2(9), 22(74)
grief-stricken, the. See sorrowful
guile, II:24(80)
habit, I:12(34); II:6(23)
habitual sin, I:12(36)
Hagar, I:16(49) and n60
hands:
right and left, II:2(6–9)
scandal through, I:13
happiness, I:12(36–37); II:6(21)
See also blessedness
hardship. See trials
hatred, II:19(64), 20(66, 69)
for God, II:14(48)
haughtiness. See pride
head, the, II:12(42)
health, I:18(54), 19(61)
of mind, II:2(17)
heart; hearts  
See also undividedness  
divided, II:1(11), 12(40, 43), 13(45–46), 14(48–15(49), 18(59), 19(66), 22(74–75)  
God as scrutinizing, II:2(5)  
God to judge hidden secrets of, II:9(32)  
kind of heart demanded by God, II:12(43)  
purifying/cleansing, I:4(11); II:12(42)–13(44)  
purity of, I:1(1)–22(76) passim; II:13(44), 14(48), 17(56), 18(59), 22(74–75)  
united, I:2(8) and n7; II:1(1), 3(14), 13(45), 14(48), 17(56), 22(74–75)  
heathens, I:20(69); II:3(12)  
See also gentiles  
heaven, I:3(10), 4(12), 6(16–10(28), 11(30) and n35; II:25(82)  
See also eternal life; kingdom of heaven  
and earth, II:5(18), 6(20–24), 10(36)  
God as seated in, I:17(53); II:5(17–18)  
God’s throne, I:17(53); II:9(32)  
holy souls, as referring to, I:17(53); II:6(22)  
in the Lord’s Prayer, II:5(17), 6(20–24)  
righteous person as, II:5(17)  
symbolism of, I:5(15); II:6(21–24)  
thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven, II:6(22–24)  
heavenly Jerusalem, I:15(41); II:25(84)  
Hebrew language, I:9(23); II:14(47)  
Hebrews, Epistle to, II:7(27) and n37  
hell. See Gehenna, punishment  
heresy; idolatry: as fornication/greed as, I:12(36), 15(41); II:6(23)  
image of God, I:4(12)  
conformed to the image of his Son, II:12(40)  
immaterial, the, II:5(18)  
immorality, I:5(15), 15(41); II:6(23)  
in paradise, Revisions I,19(18):9  
imprecation, I:21(71–72)  
impurity, II:13(45)  
iniquity, II:2(5), 25(84)  
See also sin  
jury:  
to the body, I:16(46)  
ending/being ended, I:19(57)  
injustice, I:20(66)  
intellect, I:3(10)  
See also mind; reason  
tension, II:2(9), 12(42–43), 13(45–14(48), 18(59)–19(63), 20(68), 22(75)  
and sincere faith, I:10(27)  
iota, I:8(20)
irrational animals, II:15(51)
Isaiah, I:4(11); II:25(87)
Israel, II:4(15), 5(19)
jealousy, II:24(81)
Jerusalem, I:17(51–52); II:17(57)
heavenly, I:15(41); II:25(84)
Jesus Christ
See also God; Son of God; specific topics and events, e.g., second coming of Christ
acting upon what we have heard from, II:25
ascension of, I:20(64)
Church as spouse of, II:6(24)
coheirs with, I:23(78); II:4(16)
coming to judge the living and the dead, I:11(29)
and enduring wrongs, I:19
law, as fulfilling, I:8(20)
name of, II:25(84)
as physician, I:19(57); II:17(58)
precepts of, I:15(40)
as rock, II:25(87)
sering for, I:5
as teacher, I:1(2); II:3(12)
as teaching perfection, I:9
truths concealed by, II:20(67)
Jews, I:15(40)
to the Jews I became like a Jew, II:19(65)
Job, II:9(32)
John, Apocalypse of, I:22(76)
John, Apostle, I:22(73), 23(78)
John the Baptist, II:20(70)
Joseph, son of Jacob, II:9(32)
Iot, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):3
joy, I:4(11), 5(13), 11(29); II:1(3), 9(31), 12(40)
for the foolish, II:3(10)
the good alone as possessing,
II:24(81), 25(83)
oil, associated with, II:12(42) and n65
Judas Iscariot, I:21(71), 22(74); II:9(34), 17(57)
judge:
God, II:3(12)
the Son, I:11(29)
unjust, II:15(52) and n74
judgment, II:18–19
See also condemnation
and ascending order of punishment,
I:9(22–24)
of Christ, I:11(29) and n33
day of, II:6(20, 22)
do not judge, lest you be judged,
II:18(61–62)
God as never judging rashly or repaying by false measure, II:18(62)
God’s throne, I:17(53)
human, II:18
measure, II:18(62)
rash and false, warning against,
II:18(60–62), 19(63–64, 66)
judgment from a lawsuit, I:19(59)
just, the. See righteous, the
justice, I:17(53), 23(79); I:10(37), 25(84)
See also righteousness
as cardinal virtue, Introduction, n3
of God, II:10(37)
iniquity and, II:25(84)
of Pharisees, I:9
killing: See murder
kingdom, earthly, I:1(2–3)
kingdom of God, I:2(9), 5(40); II:15(50), 25(83)
adoption into, I:23(78)
coming of, II:10(36)
living for/serving, II:16(53–17(58)
and needs of this life, II:16(53–17(58)
seek first the kingdom of God, II:7(25)
thy kingdom come, I:11(29–32);
Introduction, p. 14
kingdom of heaven, I:1(2–3), 2(9), 9(21);
II:25(83)
See also heaven
each Beatitude as mentioning,
Introduction, p. 14
knowledge, I:4(11), 12(33–36); II:11(38);
Introduction, p. 14
See also wisdom
God as knowing everything, II:3(12)
knowledge inflates, love builds up,
I:1(3)
kryiakos anthrpos. See Lordly Man
lamp
See also light
under a bushel, I:6(17)
language. See speech; specific languages, e.g., Punic
Last Judgment. See under judgment: day of
Latin:
language, I:9(23)
Scripture texts, I:19(58)
Law, II:4(15)
The Sermon on the Mount

See also commandments
Christ as fulfilling, I:7(19)–9(21)
fullness of, II:13(45)
keeping, I:9(21)
natural law, II:9(32)
old, I:21(70) and n92
sum of, II:22(75)
lawsuit, judgment from, I:19(59)
Lazarus, I:12(35)
left hand. See under hands: right and left
lending to others, I:20
lewd behavior, Revisions I,19(18):6
lies; lying, II:2(9), 20(69)
and secret, discipline of, II:20(67) and n90
life, II:12(43), 15(49–50)
See also under blessedness: blessed life; Christian life; eternal life
soul as standing for, II:15(50)
temporal, II:16(54)
way or path as metaphor for, I:11(31–32) and n37
light:
concealing (lamp under a bushel), I:6(17), 7(19)
and darkness, of our actions, II:13(46)
dwelling within us, II:13(46)
for everything that is made manifest is light, II:13(46)
of God, II:3(14)
heavenly lights, I:23(79)
interior, II:22(76)
of truth, II:9(32)
of the world, I:6(17); II:1(2)
lightning, I:20(64)
likeness of God. See under God: likeness of
litigation, II:8(28)
Lordly Man, I:6(20) and Revisions I,19(18):8 and nn21–22
Lord’s Prayer, II:4(15)–11(39)
See also under Beatitudes; and petitions of the Lord’s Prayer; specific topics, e.g., daily bread
how it is divided, II:10
language of, II:5–9
opening lines of, II:5(17–18)
seven petitions of, II:11
temporal and eternal petitions in, II:10
love, I:1(2); II:4(16), 22(75)
See also charity; compassion
action, II:4(16)
for brother, II:12(43)
for enemies, I:15(40), 21(69)–22(77)
for God, II:9(31)
knowledge inflates, love builds up, I:1(3)
love does no wrong to the neighbor, I:5(13)
for a maidservant, II:14(47)
for neighbor, I:5(13), 20(64), 21(70); II:22(75–76)
for others, II:19(65), 22(77)
of the world, II:20(69), 21(73), 25(82)
lust
See also desire
committing adultery in the heart, I:12(33, 36)
lying. See lies
magicians, II:25(85)
maidservant: love for, II:14(47)
malice, II:18(62)
mamon, II:14(47)
man:
every part of, II:9(35)
heaven as masculine, I:6(24) and n29
the inner person, II:12(42)
new man, I:4(12)
reason, as symbolizing, I:12(34) and nn40–41
man, fellow. See brother; neighbor
Manicheanism, I:20(65); II:9(31–33), 24(79)
Man of the Lord, Christ. See Lordly Man
mantle (cloak), I:19(60)
maintenance
See also specific topics, e.g., fidelity
Christ as spouse of Church, II:6(24)
Christian, and third parties, I:16
of fraternal companionship, I:15(42)
heaven and earth as husband and wife, I:6(24)
old law and new law, I:14(39)
and remarriage, I:14(39) and n44
and separation, I:14(39)–16(50)
temporal relationships, I:15
an unbelieving spouse, I:16(44–45), 22(73)
martyrs, I:5(13) and n23, II:22(76–77);
II:15(50)
Stephen as protomartyr, I:22(76)
and their persecutors, II:18(62)
masters:
God as master, I:4(15)
no one can serve two masters, II:4(47–48)
The Sermon on the Mount

Material, the; materiality, I:4(11), n35; II:n35
food as, II:15(50)
God believed to be by Manicheans, II:n35
materialism, II:2(7)
Matthew, Gospel of:
fifth chapter of, I
Mt 5:19-20, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):4
sixth and seventh chapters, II
maxims (Beatitudes):
eight, I:3(10)–4(11)
seven, II:25(87)
measure:
bushel, I:6(17)
God gives the Spirit without measure, I:6(17); Revisions I,19(18):3
judgment, II:18(62)
meek, blessedness of, I:2(4), 3(10)–4(12), 11(29–32); II:11(38), 23(77);
Introduction, p. 14
members: put to death your members which are on the earth, II:13(45)
merciful, the, I:2(7), 19(58)–23(80);
II:11(38); Introduction, p. 15
mercy:
of God, II:10(37), 14(48), 15(52)
I desire mercy rather than sacrifice, I:23(80)
military service, II:17(56)
mind
See also intellect; soul; spirit
health of, II:2(71)
purity of, II:10(37)
miracles, II:25(84–85)
Peter healing the cripple, II:2(6)
resurrection, I:23(35)
misery, I:23(80)
avoiding, I:11(39)
money
See also debt; riches
Jesus as keeping, II:17(57)
the Lord’s Prayer and, II:8(28)
tribute, paying, II:20(70)
women and, II:2(7)
morality
See also righteousness
Christian life, I:1(1)
mortality, incurred through sinning,
II:6(23), 9(35), 10(37), 17(56) and Revisions I,19(18):9
Moses, I:14(39), 19(57); II:24(79), 25(85)
mother: heavenly Jerusalem as, I:15(41)
motivation. See intention
mountain, I:1(3)
murder, I:9(21, 24)
natural law, II:9(32)
nature:
cannot be made by people, II:24(79)
law of, II:9(32)
there is no evil nature, I:11(32)
natures, two, II:24(79)
necessities; the necessary, I:15(40), 19(59); II:12(43), 15(49), 17(56–57)
difference between good and, II:16(53)
neighbor:
care for wellbeing of, I:19(57)
love for, I:5(13), 20(64), 21(70);
II:22(75–76)
new man, I:4(12)
new people, II:5(17)
New Testament: voice of, II:5(17)
non-Christians. See unbelievers
numbers; Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12) and n22, I:19(61) and n78
See also under Beatitudes: number of;
specific numbers, e.g., seven
allegory, as suggesting, I:4(11–12), 19(61)
oaths. See swearing
obedience to God, I:4(11) and Revisions I,19 (18):1; II:6(21), 7(26), 20(67)
oil: joy associated with, II:12(45) and n65
old law, I:21(70) and n92
Old Testament, I:4(12), 20(64); II:9(31)
See also law
heretics opposed to, II:9(31–32)
only-begotten son of God. See son of God, only-begotten
order: All natural beings in their own
order...are beautiful, I:12(34)
Origen, Introduction, p. 11, and passim
original sin, I:15(41) and Revisions I,19(18):5
ostentation, I:19(59); II:12(40–41)
Our Father. See Lord’s Prayer
Paraclete. See Holy Spirit
paradise, I:12(34); Revisions I,19(18):9
food in, II:17(56) and Revisions I,19(18):9
passions. See desire
The Sermon on the Mount

path: as metaphor for life, I:11(31–32) and n37
patience, I:5(13), 19(58); II:14(48), 17(58), 19(65), 24(81)
Paul, Apostle, passim
and enduring wrongs, I:19
  to the Jews I became like a Jew; II:19(65)
response to chief priest, I:19(58)
  Roman citizenship, I:19(58)
as supporting himself, II:16(54), 17(57)
peace, I:2(9), 11(31), 19(56); II:6(21, 23), 11(38), 25(86)
  of truth, holy, II:20(67)
  and God's already knowing our needs, II:3(13–14)
peace, as found in, I:2(9)
perjury, I:17(51–52)
persecution, I:2(9)–3(10), 4(12–16), 22(73)
perseverance, I:3(10); II:21(73), 25(83)
perdition, II:23(77)
perfection:
  the Beatitudes and, I:3
  Christ as teaching, I:9
  completion, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):3
  ladder of, I:3
  of law, I:8(20)
  number three as signifying, I:19(61)
  peace, as found in, I:2(9)
persecution, I:2(9)–3(10), 4(12–16), 22(73)
  of law, I:8(20)
people
  See also man; specific topics
  the new people, II:5(17)
perdition, II:23(77)
praise, II:12(42)
prayer, I:17(51); II:3(10–14)
  for enemies, I:21(69)–22(77); II:6(22), 8(29)
preaching. See under Gospel
precepts, divine, II:2(8), 7(25–27)
pride, I:4(11), 11(32)
  sin and, I:1(3) and n5, I:11(32)
  of those who hate you, I:11(32);
  II:14(48) and Revisions I,19(18):8
prison, I:11(29)
prophets; prophecy, I:10(27)
  false prophets, II:24(78–81)
prophesy, I:8(20)
providence, divine, I:16(49), 17(52);
  II:15(49–52), 24(79)
prudence: as cardinal virtue, Introduction, n3
Punic language, II:14(47) and n69

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
punishment
See also condemnation; correction;
fire; Gehenna
ascending order of, I:9(22–24)
of darkness, I:11(29)
eternal, I:3(10), 11(30), 22(76); II:2(5)
by the judgment with which you judge
you yourselves will be judged,
II:18(62)
and measure, I:6(17)
rebukes, II:19(66)
and retaliation, I:19(57)
sin and, I:9, 12(34)
trouble as, Revisions I,19(18): 9;
II:17(56)
purity of heart, I:1(1)–22(76) passim;
II:1;
Introduction, p. 15
See also under heart: purifying
as undivided, I:2(8)
purity of the mind, II:10(37)
purpose. See intention
raca, I:9(22–23, 25), 10(26, 28)
una, II:1(3), 23(79)
raisorial and irrational animals, II:15(51)
rationd soul, I:4(12)
rationd thought, II:9(32)
reason, II:9(32)
See also intellect
and action, I:4(11) and Revisions I,19(18):1
flesh as subjected to, I:12(34) and
nn40–41
man as symbolizing, I:12(34) and
nn40–41
rationd thought, II:9(32)
as subjected to Christ, I:12(34) and
nn40–41
and truth, II:9(32)
rebirth, I:23(78)
of the new man, I:4(12)
rebukes, II:19(66)
See also correction
reconciliation, I:10(26–27), 11(32)
regeneration, I:4(12)
regulator, God as, I:22(77)
religion, II:5(18)
repentance, I:11(30–31), 22(74);
II:14(48), 25(86)
rest, perpetual, II:17(58)
resurrection miracles, I:12(35)
resurrection of the body, II:7(27) and n36
resurrection of the Lord, I:4(12)
retribution. See revenge
revelation, II:9(35)
revenge, I:19(56)–20(66); II:8(29)
reward, II:2(5)
in heaven, I:5(13)
outward, II:12(40)
rhetorical training, II:3(12) and n9
riches
See also possessions
mammon, II:14(47)
no one can serve two masters,
II:14(47)
the rich, warning to, II:4(16)
right and left, II:2(6–9)
cheeks, I:19(58)
hands, II:2(6–7)
righteous, the, II:6(20, 22), 10(36)
See also saints
righteousness, I:1(2), 2(6); II:5(18)
See also goodness; justice
and almsgiving, II:2(8)
and disregarding people’s praise, II:1
greater and lesser, I:12(33)
heaven, righteous person as, II:5(17),
6(22)
and hypocrisy, II:2(8)
of scribes and Pharisees and of
disciples, I:9(21–25)
the sun of righteousness,
I:23(79)
those who hunger and thirst for
inghess, I:23(79)
righteousness,
I:2(6), 4(12), 13(37)–
18(54); Introduction, p. 15
robbers, II:18(62)
rock:
Christ as, II:25(87)
wise man building house on, I:1(1);
II:25(87)
Roman citizenship, I:19(58)
sabbath, I:4(12), 22(30)
sacraments. See baptism; eucharist
Sacred Scripture. See Scripture, Sacred
sacrifice, II:8(28)
See also idolatry
I desire mercy rather than sacrifice,
I:23(80)
Sadducees, II:20(70)
saints, I:2(4), 15(41), 19(61), 22(76–77);
II:1(3), 6(20–22), 17(57)
God’s temple, II:5(17)
and sinners, II:5(17), 6(22), 10(36)
salt of the earth, I:6(16–17)
salvation, I:4(12), 19(58), 22(76); II:2(6),
12(43), 20(70), 22(76)

The Sermon on the Mount
The Sermon on the Mount

sand, foolish man building house on, I:1(1); II:25(87)
Sarah, I:16(49) and n60
Satan, I:20(65); II:9(33)
See also devil
baptismal renunciation of, I:11(31) and n36
speaking with God, II:9(32)
tests through, II:9(32–34)
scandal: through right eye and right hand, I:13
schismatics, I:5(13) and n23
See also specific schisms, e.g., Donatism
scribes, I:9(21–25) and Revisions I,19(18):4; II:25(87)
Scripture, Sacred, I:1(3), 3(10)–4(11), 11(30, 32), 22(74); II:4(15), 22(74), 25(83)
See also New Testament; Old Testament; specific topics, e.g., love
Augustine as quoting from memory, II:n40
as food for the soul, II:10(37)
the Vulgate, Introduction, p. 15
second coming of Christ, I:16(49) and n61; II:10(36), 11(38)
secrets; secrecy, II:2(7)
almsgiving in, II:2(9)
discipline of, II:20(67) and n90
fasting in, II:12(40)
God to judge people’s hidden secrets, II:9(32)
prayer in, II:3(11), 4(15)
See also justice, righteousness
senator, II:4(16)
senses, I:12(34); II:3(11)
separation. See under marriage: and separation
Sermon on the Mount: perfect way to lead Christian life, I:1(1)
precepts of, call to put into action, I:1(1); II:25(87)
serpent, I:12(34); II:9(35)
seven, the number, I:4(11–12); II:25(87)
and Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12) and n22
Beatitudes and gifts of the Holy Spirit, I:3(10), 4(11–12); II:11(38)
petitions of the Lord’s Prayer, II:11
sheep: wolves in sheep’s clothing, II:12(41)
silver, I:19(59); II:13(44), 25(87)
sin, II:14(48), 18(62)
See also evil; original sin; punishment
degrees of, I:9(22, 24)
earth as referring to sinners, I:17(53); II:5(17), 6(22)
forgiveness of, II:10(37), 11(39)
habitual, I:12
against the Holy Spirit, I:22(73–75) and Revisions I:19(18):7
mortality merited by, II:17(56) and Revisions I:19(18):9
my son, do not add sin upon sin, II:14(48)
pride and, I:1(3), 11(32)
and punishment, I:9(24), 12(34)
reign of, I:22(77)
and repentance, I:11(31)
scandal through right eye and right hand, I:13
that leads to death, I:22(73–75) and Revisions I:19(18):7
three stages to, I:12(34–35)
trespasses, II:8(28)
single eye. See undivided eye
single heart. See under heart: undivided sinners, Revisions I,19(18):6; I:6(17), 11(30–31), 17(53), 20(65), 23(79); II:5(18), 6(22), 21(73)
See also debtors
as earth, II:5(17), 6(22)
saints and, II:5(17), 6(22), 10(36)
slaves; slavery, I:19(58–59); II:4(15)
Israel, II:4(15)
love for a maidservant, II:14(47)
proclaiming Gospel as sons, not as slaves, II:16(54)
treatment of, by master, I:19(59)
snow, I:1(3); II:24(79)
soldiers, II:17(56)
Solomon, II:15(52)
Solomon, Wisdom of, I:23(79)
Son of God, only-begotten, Revisions I,19(18):8; I:23(79); II:6(20)
mediation of, II:5(19)
as Truth itself, I:2(9)
Son of Man, I:22(75)
sons:
of God, II:11(38)
proclaiming Gospel as sons, not as slaves, II:16(54)
sorrowful, blessedness of, I:12(33–36); Introduction, p. 14

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)

soul; souls, I:12(35); II:12(42), 25(83)
See also mind
angelic and human, II:9(33)
beauty of, I:5(13)
body and, II:6(23)
dignity of, II:5(18)
God dwelling within, II:5(18)
as incorporeal, II:15(50)
life, II:15(50)
poverty of, II:8(28)
rational, I:4(12)
of righteous and of sinners, II:5(18)
Scripture as food for, II:10(37)
as subject to divine authority, I:3(10)
trees, good or evil, II:24(79)
space: God as not restricted to dimensions of, II:5(17)
speech:
excessive, II:3(12)
and what is in a person’s heart, II:25
Spirit
See also Holy Spirit
God gives the Spirit without measure, I:6(17); Revisions I,19(18):3
spirit, II:3(14), 6(23)
See also poor in spirit
and flesh, II:10(36)
heaven, II:6(23), 11(38)
heaven as symbolizing, II:6(23)
wind, as called, I:1(3)
spiritual food, II:7(25, 27), 10(37)
spiritual gifts. See gifts of the Holy Spirit
spiritual life: humility as basis, I:3(10)
spouse
See also marriage
Christ as, II:6(24)
stages to sin, three, I:12(34–35)
standing while praying, II:5(18) and n19
Stephen, I:22(73), 22(77)
as protomartyr, I:22(76)
Stoicism, II:18(60) and n85
struggles. See trials
suffering
See also persecution; trials for Christ, I:6(16)
sun, I:23(79)
superstition, I:16(45); II:9(32), 25(87)
Susanna, II:9(32)
swear, I:17(51–52)
swine, II:20(68)–21(71)
symbolism, II:6(22) and n23
of the east, II:5(18) and n19
of heaven and earth, I:5(15); II:6(21–24)
right/left, I:19(58); II:2(6–9)
woman/man as symbolizing flesh/reason, I:12(34) and nn40–41
teaching:
Christ as teacher, I:1(2); II:3(12)
and sincere faith, I:10(27)
temperance:
as cardinal virtue, Introduction, n3
temple: God’s inner, I:10(27); II:5(17)–6(20)
temporal, the, passim
See also earth; world; specific topics
left hand, as pertaining to, II:2(9)
love of, II:16(54)
temptation, II:4(15), 9, 10(37)–11(38), 25(82)
See also tests; trials
time, kinds of, II:9(34)
lead us not into temptation,
Introduction, p. 15
Ten Commandments. See commandments;
Law
Tertullian, Introduction, p. 11, and passim
tests, II:9(31–32)
See also temptation; trials
thieves, II:18(62)
Thomas, Apostle, I:20(65)
thorns, II:24(78–79)
thought, rational, II:9(32)
three, the number: as signifying perfection, I:19(61)
tomorrow, II:17(56)
do not be concerned about tomorrow,
II:7(25)
transformation: promised to the righteous,
I:4(12); II:6(23), 7(27) and n36
tree of life, II:23(77)
trees, two, II:24(78–79)
trespasses, II:8(28) and n38; Introduction, p. 15
See also debts; sin
trials, I:4(12), 18(55); II:9(30, 32) and n44, II:10(37)
See also suffering; tests; trouble
as producing patience, II:17(58)
two kinds of, II:25(82)
tribulation, I:3(10)
tribute, paying, II:20(70)
Trinity: three as signifying perfection, I:19(61) and n78
trouble: as punishment, II:17(56) and Revisions I,19(18):9

The Sermon on the Mount
The Sermon on the Mount

truth, II:10(37)
See also wisdom; specific topics, e.g.,
false prophets
concealed by Christ, II:20(67)
light of, II:9(32)
light of, concealing (lamp under a
bushel), I:6(17), 7(19)
pearls before swine, II:20(67)–21(71)
reason and, II:9(32)
and secret, discipline of, II:20(67) and
n90
son of God as, I:2(9)
two natures, II:24(79)
unbelievers, I:16(45), 22(73); II:2(6–7),
25(84)
an unbelieving spouse, I:16(44–45),
22(73)
understanding, I:19(58)–23(80); II:11(39),
25(83)
gift of the Holy Spirit, I:4(11);
Introduction, p. 15
undivided eye, II:19(64)
undivided heart. See under heart:
undivided
undividedness, II:20(67)
universe, I:17(53); II:5(17), 6(20)
observable parts of, I:11(30) and n35
unjust judge, II:15(52) and n74
unrighteous, the, I:20(67, 69), 23(79); II:6(20)
usury, II:8(28) and n41
vanity, I:1(3)
See also pride
vengeance. See revenge
vices, I:1(3) and n5, I:18(54), 20(63);
II:18(61), 19(64)
See also specific vices, e.g., pride
virginity, I:16(44), 25(38)
marrige of fraternal companionship,
I:15(42)
virtue; virtues, I:19(57)
See also specific virtues, e.g., humility
cardinal, Introduction, n3
visible miracles, II:25(84–85)
Vulgate, Introduction, p. 15
warfare, Christian, I:12(34), 18(54)
water, I:11(30) and n35
way: as metaphor for life, I:11(31–32)
and n37
wheat, II:9(33), 24(79)
whitewashed wall, I:19(58), 21(72)
wicked, the, I:11(32), 23(79); II:9(32),
19(64), 24(81), 25(85)
See also evil; unrighteous
wife
See also marriage
as “left hand,” II:2(7)
will, human, II:25(83)
bad people and, II:22(74), 24(81)
and desire, II:22(74)
will of God, I:2(6), 12(33–36); II:6(20–
24)
Introduction, p. 14
wind, I:1(3)
wisdom, I:2(9)–4(11); II:6(20), 9(35),
22(74), 23(77)–25(86)
asking, seeking, and knocking, II:21
beginning of, I:1(3), 4(11–12)
and fear of God, I:1(3), 4(11–12)
love of, II:3(11)
the narrow door, II:23
peacemakers and, I:4(11); Revisions
I,19(18):1–2; II:11(38)
perfect, I:1(3)
pure and undivided eye, necessity of,
II:25
searching for and acquiring, II:23(77)
supremacy of, I:3(10)
supreme, I:4(12)
wisdom of God, II:3(12)
Wisdom of Solomon, I:23(79)
wise man: building house on rocks, I:1(1); II:25(87)
wolves in sheep’s clothing, II:12(41)
woman; women:
earth as feminine, II:6(24) and n29
flesh, as symbolizing, I:12(34) and
nn40–41
as sparing with money, II:2(7)
word of God: invisible, II:7(27)
words:

excessive, II:3(12)
and what is in a person’s heart, II:25
works, II:22(76)
bad people and, II:24(79)
the Lord will repay him according to
his works, I:21(72)
motivations for performing, I:7(18);
II:1(1)–3(12)
praise for, and God’s glory, I:7(18)
world
See also earth
dead of, II:10(36)
history of, I:16(49) and n61
light of, I:6(17); II:1(2)
love of, II:20(69), 21(73), 25(82)
pleasures of, II:12(42)
Index from
Questions on the Gospels
(Quaestiones evangeliorum)

Included in book:
New Testament I and II

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Mattheum).

Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

**Questions on the Gospels**  
* (Prepared by Michael Dolan)  

## OLD TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4 I, 30</td>
<td>6:2 II, 33, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3 I, 41</td>
<td>6:30 II, 45, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7 I, 41</td>
<td>7:7 I, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7 II, 33, 2</td>
<td>11:12 II, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:9 II, 40, 4</td>
<td>11:27 I, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:22 II, 33, 5</td>
<td>12:1 I, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:5 II, 33, 4</td>
<td>12:22 I, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:27-28 I, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:29 I, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:30 I, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:34 I, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:40 I, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:43 I, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:45 I, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:8 I, 9; I, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:33 I, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:44 I, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:54 I, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:33 I, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:5 I, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:13 I, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:2 I, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:3 I, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wisdom</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sirach</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:18 II, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7 II, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isaiah</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>53:1 II, 33, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:19 II, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:10 II, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ezekiel</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:14 I, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NEW TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16:4 I, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11 I, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14 I, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:18 I, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:25 I, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6 I, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:16 I, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:24-25 I, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:29-30 I, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:25 I, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:29 II, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28 II, 39, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:13 II, 48, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:21 I, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:43 II, 38, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:44 I, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1-2 I, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:2 I, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:9 I, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:25-26 I, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30 II, 33, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40 I, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:17 I, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:19 I, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>I, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>I, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:23</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:26</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:27</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:28</td>
<td>I, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:32</td>
<td>I, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:38</td>
<td>II, 51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>II, 51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:20</td>
<td>I, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:24</td>
<td>I, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:29</td>
<td>I, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:64</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:67</td>
<td>I, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Questions on the Gospels

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)

2:13    II, 51, 2
6:6     I, 43
10:4    II, 50
10:10   II, 38, 2
12:13   II, 51, 2
14:17   II, 11

1 Corinthians
1:10    II, 33, 4; II, 40, 3
1:24    I, 14
1:25    I, 36
3:15    I, 15
7:25    II, 19
8:8     II, 11
13:12   II, 39, 1

2 Corinthians
3:18    II, 39, 1
4:6     I, 7
5:19    II, 33, 3

Galatians
2:1-2   II, 40, 3

2:9     II, 40, 3
6:6     II, 8; II, 51, 2

Ephesians
2:3     II, 38, 2

Philippians
1:17    II, 33, 2
1:23    II, 13
4:12-13 II, 11

Colossians
2:11    I, 2
3:5     I, 2
3:9     I, 2

1 Timothy
6:5     II, 33, 2

1 Peter
2:9     II, 40, 3

1 John
3:2     II, 39, 1
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Question numbers, then the Paragraph numbers in parentheses.

Abraham, II:38,1,4–5
actions, II:15
See also works
Adam, I:19, 43; II:6(2) and n21, 38(2)
as old man, I:43
adoption, I:39; II:5(2)
ages of the earth, I:32 and n37, 41
Alexander the coppersmith, I:24
allegory, I:35
alms; almsgiving, II:34(1), 40(3)
alter, I:34
Ambrose, Introduction, pp. 321, 323
Ananias, II:40(3)
good and evil, I:10
Zechariah hearing from angel, your prayer has been answered, II:1
anger, I:22
animal; animals, I:36; II:33(5), 39(2)
See also specific animals
that fell into a well, II:29(2)
Antichrist, I:21; II:33(6)
Apollon, II:42
apostate, I:32
apostles, II:3, 19, 38(5), 46(1)
See also disciples
appetite, I:21
Asaph, II:33(5)
ascension of the Lord, I:18
authority: of the Church, I:38; II:2
avarice. See greed
banquet: those invited to, II:30
baptism, II:6(1), 22, 40(3)
See also sacraments
Christ’s, II:6(1)
Barabbas, I:35
Barnabas, II:40(3)
beast of burden, II:19, 29(2)
beauty, II:49
bed, II:44(1)
no one lights a lamp and covers it with a bucket or puts it under a bed,
II:12
the two in a bed and the two at the millstone and the two in the field,
II:44
Beelzebul: and if I cast out demons by
Beelzebul, I:5
benevolence, II:15
Bethany, II:20
blessedness, II:19, 33(7)
See also happiness
blindness:
blind and mute man, I:4
blind man approaching Jericho, II:48
the blind presented to the Lord to be cured, I:19
can a blind person lead a blind person? II:9
two blind men, I:28
boastfulness. See pride
boat: Jesus teaching crowds from, II:2
body: bodies:
cadaver, I:42
human body as quadripartite, II:6(2)
and n23
immortality of, I:43
resurrection of, I:43
as signified by number four, II:6(2)
stature of the body to which they could not add anything, II:28
where the body is, there the eagles will be gathered, I:42
bosom of Abraham, II:38(1, 5)
bowl: cup and, II:16
bread:
on the bread and the fish and the egg, II:22
man in middle of night asking for
Questions on the Gospels

three loaves, II:21
three loaves of, II:21
brethren, II:13, 38(3)
bridegroom’s guests, fast of, II:18
brothers: deceased, taking wife of,
Revisions II, 12(39)
bulls, I:31
cadaver, I:42
camels, I:35; II:47
passing through eye of a needle, II:47
straining out a gnat but swallowing a camel, I:35
Canaanite woman’s daughter, I:18
carnal desire. See desire
catechesis, II:40(3)
Catholic faith
See also Church
rule of, II:40(4) and n125
centurion’s son, I:18
charity, I:8 and n10; II:22, 33(7)
children, II:21, 49
as free, I:23
of God, I:39; II:39(1)
healing of, I:18
how often have I wanted to gather your children as a hen, I:36
and parents, I:16
sitting in the marketplace and shouting to one another, II:11
whoever scandalizes one of these little ones, I:24
of wisdom, II:11
of wrath, II:38(2)
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian people: as royal priesthood, II:40(3)
Church, II:48(2)
See also Catholic faith; specific topics, e.g., unity
authority of, I:38; II:2
carnal people in, II:2
community of, II:40(4)
and incarnate Word as wedding, I:31
as lightning, I:38
as loosing and binding, I:25
membership through faith, II:33(2)
as mother (person of), I:18
Peter as representing, II:6(2)
circumcision, I:2
city:
of living and eternal reasons, II:46(3)
of peace, II:19
clothing, II:13, 24, 45(1)
carnal, I:2
of Christ, II:51(3)
cloud: when you see a cloud rising from the west, II:27
coming of Christ, I:15, 20
commandments, I:19, 25; II:18, 33(5), 34(1), 46(1, 3)
See also Law
of love, I:33; II:14, 19, 42
completion. See perfection
cup and bowl, II:16
daniel, I:12; II:3, 44(2)
darkness, II:15
if the light that is in you is darkness, II:15
night as signifying fall of man, I:7
daughter of Canaanite woman, I:18
David, II:5(1–2), 35
days, I:7
defeasibility: the deaf presented to the Lord to be cured, I:19
death, II:49
and life, II:38(2)
debt:
man who owed ten thousand talents, I:25
two debtors pardoned, II:45(1)
Decalogue, II:46(1)
See also commandments
demons, passim
and if I cast out demons by Beelzebul, I:5
legion of, II:13
“lower ones,” II:33(7) and n83
Questions on the Gospels

desire:
cleansing soul from, I:17
lust, I:8
temptation of, I:47
devil, passim; II:19, 31
children of, I:6
duplicity of, II:31
disciples
See also apostles
a disciple is not above his teacher; II:9
Jesus walking on sea toward, I:15
plucking the ears and eating, I:2
seventy-two, I:14; II:14
told of Jesus’ future suffering, I:27
Docetists, II:51(3) and n174
doctrine, I:8
dogs, II:38(1, 5)
dropsy, II:29(2)
duplicity, II:31 and n58
dust, I:30
eagles: where the body is, there the eagles will be gathered, I:42
earth: ages of, I:32 and n37, 41
east: as lightning goes forth from the east and reaches all the way to the west, I:38
eating. See food
egg: on the bread and the fish and the egg, II:22
eight (or six) days, I:7
eleven, the number, II:6(2)
Elijah, I:21
Elizabeth, II:1
end of time, II:2
endurance, I:11
enemies: prayer for, II:45(2)
enigma; II:39(1)
error
See also heresy; schism of unbelievers, II:39(4)
eternal life, I:19, 31, 39(1–2), 45(1)
eternity, II:39(1)
of the Word, I:28
eucharist, II:39(3) and n117
See also sacraments
evening: when evening comes you say, It will be clear, for the sky is red, I:20
evil angels, I:10
eyes (vision), I:15
See also blindness
faith, I:8 and n10; II:33(2)
confession of, I:5; II:38(2)
do you think that he will find faith on earth? I:15
fervor of, I:11
increasing, II:39
like a mustard seed, I:22; II:39(2–3)
lowness of, I:22
sacrament of the teaching of the faith, II:40(3) and n121
faithful steward, II:26
fall of man: night as signifying, I:7
fasting, II:18
Father, God the
See also God
no one knows the Son except the Father, I:1
fatlings, I:31
fear: temptation of, I:47
field:
man in the field who should not return, II:42
two in a bed and the two at the millstone and the two in the field, II:44
fig tree, I:39; II:51(1)
finger, II:33(3)
of God, II:11, 17
tip of, II:38(2)
fire, I:20, 22
he will be saved, but as through fire, I:15
the man who often fell into the fire and at times into the water, I:22
fish: on the bread and the fish and the egg, II:22
five books, the, II:38(4) and n107, 46(3)
flight: pray that your flight may not be in winter or on the sabbath, I:37
food, II:11, 29
See also fasting; specific topics, e.g., Prodigal Son
the soul is more valuable than food, II:24
forgiveness, II:33(3)
seventy-seven times, II:6(1)
of sins, II:20; II:4, 6(1), 11, 13, 33(3)
four, the number, II:6(2)
freedom; free choice, I:33
children as free, I:23
therefore the sons are free, I:23

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Questions on the Gospels
Questions on the Gospels

iniquity, II:34(2), 45(1)
intellect, I:13; II:40(3), 41
intention, I:10; II:15
Isaiah, II:2
Israel, I:43; II:46(1)

See also Jews
itching of the flesh, I:39

Jacob, II:5(1) and Revisions II,12(39)
James, II:2, 40(3)
Jericho:
blind man whose sight was restored when he approached Jericho, II:48(1)
Good Samaritan parable, II:19
the Lord’s departure from, I:28 as moon, II:19, 48(1)
Jerusalem, II:19
Good Samaritan parable, II:19
how often have I wanted to gather your children as a hen, I:36
Jesus Christ
See also Son of God; specific topics and events, e.g., passion of Christ ascension of, II:18
body of, as real, II:51(3)
as end of the law, II:50
every planting that my Father has not planted shall be uprooted, I:17
in the heart of the earth three days and three nights, I:7
he pretended to go further, II:51
humility of, II:23
knowledge of, II:4
as mountain, I:29
no one knows the Son except the Father, I:1
as only-begotten son, II:33(3)
the power of God and the wisdom of God, I:14
as praying three times before being handed over, I:47
resurrection of, I:28
suffering of, I:42
as teacher, II:40(2)
teaching crowds from a boat, II:2
in tomb for three days and three nights, I:7
walking on the sea, I:15
as the way, I:28
Jews, passim; I:28–29; II:30, 38(5)
See also Israel
preaching Gospel to, II:48(1)
priesthood of, II:40(3)
Job, I:12; II:44(2)
John, First Epistle of, II:39(1), 39(1) and n111
John, Apostle, II:2, 11, 39(1), 40(3), 45(2)
John the Baptist, II:1
Jonah, I:7
Joseph: two fathers of, II:5 and Revisions II,12(39)
joy, I:37, 43; II:11, 18, 21, 33(3, 5–6)
Judah, II:33(6)
Judas Iscariot, I:40–41
judge: unjust, II:34(1), 45
judgment, I:30; II:27, 38(3), 46(2)
justice, I:10, 35; II:39(4), 45(2), 50
key of knowledge, II:23
king; kings:
who had twenty thousand men, II:31
who held wedding feast for his son, I:31
kingdom of God, I:5; II:11, 39(2), 47
rich man not entering, I:26
kingdom of heaven, I:31, 38(1), 40(4); II:47
the kingdom of heaven suffers violence, I:37
knowledge:
of Christ, II:4
of God, I:13
key of, II:23
lameness: the lame presented to the Lord to be cured, I:19
lamps:
let your loins be girt and your lamps burning, II:25
no one lights a lamp and covers it with a bucket or puts it under a bed, II:12
language; languages, II:18, 33(1), 40(3), 49
law
See also commandments
Christ as end of, II:50
two covenants of, I:13
the whole law depends on these two commandments, I:33
law, worldly, I:41
Lazarus, rich man and, II:38
legion of demons, II:13

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Questions on the Gospels

lepers; leprosy, II:3
cleansed, II:3
ten lepers, II:40
Levites, II:9, 34(2)
lies; lying
See also duplicity
what does not count as a lie, II:51(1–2)
life:
death and, II:38(2)
before this one, I:40
light
if the light that is in you is darkness, II:15
light shines forth from the darkness, I:7
no one lights a lamp and covers it
with a bucket or puts it under a bed, II:12
of your countenance, I:41
lightning, I:38
loins: let your loins be girt and your lamps burning, II:25
Lord ("master"), II:34(1) and n85
Lord’s Day, I:7
lost sheep, II:32
Lot’s wife, II:43
love
See also under commandments: of love
as existing between two or more, I:27; II:14
mystery of, I:27
lust, I:8; II:33(6)
See also desire
mammon of iniquity, II:34(2), 45(1)
marketplace: children sitting in, and shouting to one another, II:11
marriage, II:49
Martha, II:20
martyrs, I:9; II:45(2)
Mary of Bethany, II:20
masters, two, II:36
men
See also human beings
three kinds of, I:12; II:44(2)
mercy, I:10, 35; II:6(1), 15, 36, 38(2–3, 5), 45(2)
military service, I:9
millstone: two in a bed and the two at the millstone and the two in the field,
II:44
mind, II:6(2)
whole heart, whole soul, whole mind, I:12
miracles, I:18, 19, 22; II:4, 7, 40(1), 48(1)
moneylender, II:45(1)
moon, II:19, 48(1)
mortality, II:19, 21, 38(2), 48(1)
Moses, II:3, 40(1), 46(3)
the five books, II:38(4) and n107, II:46(3)
mother:
Church as, I:18
wisdom of God, I:36
mountain, I:22
the Lord revealing himself after six days/eight days, I:7
you shall say to this mountain, Rise up and throw yourself into the sea., I:29
mulberry tree, II:39(3)
mustard seed:
faith like, I:22; II:39(2–3)
that becomes larger than all the plants, I:11
muteness:
盲 and mute man, I:4
the mute presented to the Lord to be cured, I:19
mystery, II:48(1)
deeper aspects of, II:2
of love, I:27; II:14
a mysterious purpose, II:5(1)
needle: camel passing through eye of, II:47
night
See also darkness
signifying fall of man, I:7
nine, the number, II:32, 40(4)
Noah, I:12; II:44(2)
nobleman who went o to receive a kingdom, II:46
non-believers. See unbelievers
numerical symbolism, II:6(2), 32
See also specific numbers, e.g., seventy-seven
obedience, I:19, 24; II:39(2)
occupations, temporal, II:44(1)
oil, II:19, 34(2)
old man, Adam as, I:43
Questions on the Gospels

Old Testament: priesthood of, II:19
one, the number, II:31 and n58, II:32 and n61, II:40(4)
oneness, II:32
See also unity
only-begotten son of God, II:33(3)
Origen, Introduction, pp. 319, 323
original sin, II:38(2)
parables, II:45(2)
See also specific parables, e.g., Good Samaritan; Prodigal Son
as not lies, II:51(1–2)
paradise, II:38(5)
paralytic: lowered to Jesus through the roof, II:4
Parthians, Epistle to, II:39(1) and n111
sacraments of, II:39(3)
two disciples told beforehand of, I:27
and Revisions II,12(39)
passions, I:9
Paul, Apostle, passim; I:15; II:42
as supporting himself, II:19
peace, II:31
city of, II:19
disruption of, II:2
reconciliation of, II:19
of soul, II:11
supreme, II:39(2)
penance, I:8; II:6, 11, 32, 33(2) and n66, 33 and n66, 40(3)
perdition, I:30
perfection, II:32, 40(4)
persecution, I:15
perseverance, I:28; II:33(5), 38(5), 45(2)
Peter, Apostle, passim; I:15; II:2, 40(3)
following the Lord at a distance as he entered upon his passion, I:46
as representing the Church, II:6(2)
threefold denial by, I:45
Pharisees, I:16, 35; II:34(2), 37, 38(1)
now, you Pharisees clean what is outside the cup and the bowl, II:16
plants; planting:
every planting that my Father has not planted shall be uprooted., I:17
mustard seed, I:11
pleasure, I:22, 47; II:18
poor in spirit, II:47
possession, II:33(7)
power, I:14
of the Lord, II:6(1)
power of God and the wisdom of God, I:14
prayer:
for enemies, II:45(2)
Jesus as praying three times before being handed over, I:47
pray that you do not enter into temptation, II:50
Zechariah hearing from angel, your prayer has been answered, II:1
preaching. See Gospel, preaching
pregnancy, I:7
pride, I:22, 29; II:30, 38(1–2, 5), 40(4), 47
sin of, II:6(2)
priesthood, II:40(3); III:19
Prodigal Son parable, II:33(1–7), 51(1–2)
prophecy, II:1, 3
public service, I:9
punishment, I:25, 30; II:36, 38(2), 45(2)
purification, I:15
quadripartite body, II:6(2) and n23
reason, II:21
reconciliation, II:6(1), 19, 33(3)
red sky, I:20
repentance, II:33(2–3)
resurrection of the body, I:43
resurrection of the Lord, I:28
revelation, II:12, 40(3)
riches, II:34(2)–35, 37
rich man:
and Lazarus, II:38
man with dropsy compared to, II:29(2)
who does not enter the kingdom of God, I:26
righteousness, II:11, 38(3)
false, II:30
robbers, II:19, 37
rock: foundation on, II:10
roof: man who is on the roof, II:41
sabbath, I:7, 35
pray that your flight may not be in winter or on the sabbath, I:37
sacraments, I:43; II:38(5), 39(3) and n117, 40(3)
of His passion, II:39(3)
sacrament of the teaching of the faith, II:40(3) and n121

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)

sacrifices, I:16, 34; II:3, 40(1)
Sadducees, I:32
saints, II:38(3), 39(1), 51(2)
life of saints after they rose from the
dead, II:49
salt, II:32
salvation, I:4, 15, 28; II:1, 7, 13, 19, 32,
33(5), 38(1–2), 46(2)
gentiles and, I:18
he will be saved, but as through fire,
I:15
of Israel, II:33(4–5), 46(1)
rich people and, I:26
Samaritans, II:40(4)
See also Good Samaritan parable
Samaritan woman, II:39(2)
Satan. See devil
scandal: whoever scandalizes one of these
little ones, I:24
scarlet garment, II:51(3)
schism; schismatics, I:38; II:2
scorpion, II:22
scribes, II:23, 34(2)
Scripture, Sacred, II:23, 33(4), 47, 51(2); 
Introduction, pp. 319–24
See also specific topics
veil over, II:4
sea:
Jesus walking on, I:15
of this world, II:2
you shall say to this mountain, Rise
up and throw yourself into the sea.,
I:29
second coming of Christ, I:20, 38
sects, I:11
senses, I:41; II:40(2–3), 41
serpent, II:22
servants, II:39
man who owed ten thousand talents,
I:25
seven, the number, II:6(2)
seven brothers, one wife of, I:32
seven spiritual virtues, I:8 and n10
seventy-seven generations, II:6(1–2)
seventy-two disciples, II:14
sheep, lost, II:32
signs of the times, I:20
silver, thirty pieces of, I:41
simplicity, II:31 and n58
sin, I:7
See also forgiveness; punishment
carnal people in the Church, II:2

confession of, II:33(2)
fall of man, I:7
the number seventy-seven, II:6(1–2)
original, II:38(2)
of pride, II:6(2)
sinners, II:11, 32, 33(6), 38(1)
whoever scandalizes one of these little
ones, I:24
sincerity, II:33(2)
six days: after six days, I:7
sky: when evening comes you say, It will
be clear, for the sky is red, I:20
smoldering wick, I:3
Solomon, King, II:36
Son of God, I:28; II:33(3), 38(5)
See also Jesus Christ
no one knows the Son except the
Father, I:1
Son of Man, passim
See also Jesus Christ
son of the centurion, I:18
sons:
free, I:23
the Prodigal Son, II:33
soul, II:6(2)–7
desire, cleansing from, I:17
peace of, II:11
seeking Christ, II:4
value of, II:24
whole heart, whole soul, whole mind,
I:12
south wind blowing, II:27
speech. See language
steward, faithful, II:26
steward, unjust, II:34(1)
stone, I:50; II:22
whoever stumbles over this stone shall
be broken, I:30
suffering of Christ, I:42
See also passion of Christ
sun, I:14
superstitions, II:33(6)
symbolism, numerical. See specific
numbers
Synagogue, II:33(5)
talents: ten thousand, man who owed, I:25
taxes: and children as free, I:23
teachers, II:4, 9, 16, 23, 44(1)
Jesus as teacher, II:40(2)
teaching of the faith, sacrament of,
II:40(3) and n121

Questions on the Gospels
Questions on the Gospels

temperance, II:11
Temple, II:3
which is greater, the gold or the
Temple that makes the gold holy?
I:34, 35
temporal, the, I:13, 24, 28, 37, 41; II:10–
12, 31, 33(2), 34(1), 36, 39(4), 47, 49
See also specific topics, e.g., pleasure
habits, II:21
occupations, II:44(1)
temptation, II:31, 44(2)
of fear and of desire, I:47
pray that you do not enter into
temptation, II:50
ten, the number, II:6(2), 32, 40(4), 46(1)
Ten Commandments. See commandments
ten thousand talents, I:25
thieves: Good Samaritan parable, II:19
things: all things, II:33(7)
thirty pieces of silver, I:41
three, the number, II:6(2)
three days and three nights in tomb, I:7
three days and three nights in whale’s
belly, I:7
threefold denial by Peter, I:45
threefold prayer of Jesus, I:12
three kinds of men, I:12; II:44(2)
three loaves of bread, II:21
three measures of wheat, I:12
time, end of, II:2
tithes, I:35; II:9
Titus, II:40(3)
tongue: death and life are in the hands of
the tongue, II:38(2)
tongues, gift of, II:18, 40(3)
tower: expenses for building, II:31
treasure hidden in a field, I:13
tribulations; the tribulation, I:10, 15, 20;
II:18, 21, 27, 41, 43–44(1)
triumphant, I:23
Trinity, II:6(2), 14, 21
“higher beings.” II:33(7) and n83
trustworthiness, II:35
truth: what does not count as a lie,
II:51(1–2)
twenty thousand men, king who had, II:31
two:
love as existing between two or more,
I:27; II:14
two in a bed and the two at the
millstone and the two in the field,
II:44
two, the number, II:31 and n58
two masters, II:36
unbelievers, I:5, 44; II:39(3–4)
unclean spirits, I:8; II:33(1)
unity, II:40(3–4), 44(2)
oneness, II:32
unjust judge parable, I:45; II:34(1)
unjust steward parable, II:34(1)
unrighteous, the, II:38(3)
vanity, I:41; II:33(1)
VICES, I:8
violence: the kingdom of heaven suffers
violence, II:37
vipers, I:6
virgins, I:9; II:19
virtues, I:8 and n10
vision, I:15
water:
Jesus walking on, I:15
the man who often fell into the fire
and at times into the water, I:22
wedding:
incarnate Word as, I:31
king’s wedding feast for his son, I:31
weeds, I:10
west:
cloud rising from, II:27
as lightning goes forth from the east
and reaches all the way to the west,
I:38
whale: Jonah and, I:7
wheat, I:10; II:34(2)
measure of wheat faithful steward
gives family, II:26
yeast hidden in three measures of, I:12
wicked, the, I:5, 30, 41; II:38(1)
widow: and unjust judge, II:45
wife: one wife of seven brothers, I:32
wind, I:30; II:27
wine, II:18, 19
winter:
pray that your flight may not be in
winter, I:37
wisdom, II:20, 39(4), 41
children of, II:11
from where does he have this wisdom
and these powers? I:14
woman as, I:12
wisdom of God, I:14
as mother, I:36

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
wise man: building foundation on a rock, II:10
withered right hand, man with, II:7
witness; witnesses, II:38(4)
   on the lips of two or three witnesses
   every word will stand firm, I:27
woman; women, II:44(1)
   as wisdom, I:12
Word, incarnate, I:1, 28, 31; II:4, 19,
   33(6), 38(5), 49, 51(2) and n170
word of God, I:8; II:12, 51(2)
works, II:4, 15, 38(5)
   darkness, as called, II:15
world. See earth
wrath: children of, II:38(2)

yeast: hidden in three measures of wheat,
   I:12

Zechariah, II:1
Index from
Seventeen Questions on Matthew
(Quaestiones XVII in Mattheum)

Included in book:
New Testament I and II

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Mattheum).

Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

## Seventeen Questions on Matthew
*(Prepared by Michael Dolan)*

### OLD TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 77:39</td>
<td>11, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 10:5</td>
<td>11, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach 5:8-9</td>
<td>11, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39:20-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 7:9</td>
<td>13 (14), 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### NEW TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 2:16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19-20</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:32</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34-35</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:35</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:36</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24</td>
<td>12, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25</td>
<td>11, 1; 12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>12, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>12, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:28</td>
<td>12, 6; 12, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29</td>
<td>12, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29-30</td>
<td>12, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:30</td>
<td>12, 6; 12, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>14 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:41</td>
<td>12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:45-46</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark 4:12</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>11, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John 12:20</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td>13 (14), 1; 13 (14), 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>13 (14), 1; 13 (14), 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>11, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans 13:8-9</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians14:21</td>
<td>13 (14), 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians5:16</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians 3:17-18</td>
<td>12, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy 2:5</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numbers in the Index are the Question numbers. The numbers following the colons are the Paragraph numbers.

adultery, 12(13); 16(17):2
angels, 8–9; (12):6–7
animals: rational and non-rational, 8
apostles, 11:1
authority, (12):7

Babylon, 3
beauty, 12(13)
birds, 5; 8; 11:1
  simple like doves, 8
blindness, 13(14)
boasting, 5
body: senses of, 16(17):3
brethren, 9
bridegroom:
  Christ as, 3
brothers, 16(17):1
bundles, (12):8

Catholic Christianity, 11:1, 3–4; (12):8
See also Church
good Catholics, 11:4
charity, 1; (12):9
children (infants), 1
Christ
  See also Jesus Christ
  name of, (12):7
Church, 3
See also Catholic Christianity; specific topics, e.g., unity
Christ as bridegroom of, 3
sacrament of, 11:2
city, worldly, 3
commandments, 4; 12(13)
communion, 11:1–3; (12):8
  See also unity
confessing Christ, 9
confession, 9
darkness: what I am saying to you in darkness, 2
David, 10
death:
  faith and, 6; 16(17):5
  let the dead bury their dead, 6
devil, 3; 11
  one renounces the devil who was his father, 3
disciples, 4; 10
doves, 8
drinking, 16(17):2
dust: shake the dust from your feet, 7
eating, 16(17):2
Ecclesiasticus, 9
Egypt, 3
end of all things, Christ as, 15(16)
enemies:
  the enemies of a man will be the members of his household, 3
  sowing weeds in the midst of wheat, 11
eternity, 12(13)
evil:
  avoiding, 8
  and violence, 8
evil sons, 11:1
eyes, 13(14)
faith, 11:4
  See also Catholic Christianity
  and death, 6; 16(17):5
family:
  the enemies of a man will be the members of his household, 3
  Joseph’s kin, 16(17):1
father: one renounces the devil who was his father, 3
Seventeen Questions on Matthew

fear:
carnal, 2
and darkness, 2
of punishment, 11:3
foxes, 5
gate: narrow, 8
good seed, (12):6
grain, 11:2–3; (12):5–6
See also wheat
heresy; heretics, 11; (12):5, 7–8
Holy Spirit, 2
and confidence of the truth, 2
and languages, gift of, 16(17):3
sword of, 3
homo assumptus/susceptus, 16(17):4 and n48
hope, 11:4; 13(14):2
human beings, 8; 12:7; 12 (13)
See also man; specific topics, e.g., languages
human race:
pernicious society of, 3
society, norms of, 16(17):2
humility, 5
the humble who have twofold charity, 1
incest, 16(17):2
infants, 1
Isaiah, 13(14):1–2
Jacob, 16(17):1
Jesus Christ
See also Word of God
as bridegroom, 3
confessing, 9
as end of all things, 15(16)
the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head, 5
the Synagogue and, 3
Jews, 10; 13(14)
John, 13(14)
the “other evangelist,” 15(16)
Joseph: kin of, 16(17):1
justice, (12):7
of God, (12):7
and norms of human society, 16(17):2
kingdom of God, 15(16)
kingdom of heaven: as like a merchant
searching for fine pearls, 12(13):9
Laban, 16(17):1
languages, 13(14):3; 16(17):3
lepers; leprosy, 4
light: and the confidence of truth, 2
liturgy, 9
love: for neighbor, 12(13)
man
See also human beings
homo assumptus/susceptus, 16(17):4 and n48
miracles, 5; 13(14):2
mortality, 12(13)
mountain, 4
murder, 16(17):2
narrow gate, 8
neighbor: love for, 12(13)
norms of human society, 16(17):2
passion of Christ, 15(16)
peacings, 11:3
peace: I have come not to bring peace but the sword, 3
pearls, 12(13)
penance; penitents, 11:3; 13(14):1–2
people of God: against the worldly city, 3
persecution, 9
perseverance, 11:3
praise: of God, 9
pride, 13(14):2
prudent like serpents, 8
punishment: fear of, 11:3
robbery, 16(17):2
rooftops: proclaim on the rooftops, 2
sabbath: Lord of the sabbath, 10
sacrament of the Church, 11:2
salvation, 11:3; 15(16)
schism; schismatics, 11
scribes, 5; 15(16)
Scriptures, Sacred, 15(16)
See also specific topics
seekers, 11:4
senses of the body, 16(17):3
serpents, 8 and n15
servants, (12):6–7
sexual intercourse, 16(17):2
sheep, 8
in the midst of wolves, 8
sin: confession of, 9
slaves; slavery, 16(17):2
society:
  norms of, 16(17):2
  pernicious, of human race, 3
Sodom, 3
Son of Man, 5; 11:4
sons, 11:2; 16(17):2
sword: of the Spirit, 3
Synagogue, 3
teachers, 11:4
temporal, the, 11:4; (12):7
Ten Commandments. See commandments
theft, 16(17):2
tongues. See languages
truth:
  confidence of, 2
  rule of, (12):7
unbelief, 13(14):2
unity, 11:2–3; (12):5
violence, 8
weeds, (12):5–9
  in the midst of wheat, 11(1–3)
  See also grain
wheat, 11:1; (12):7–9
  See also grain
will, human, 16(17):4
will of God, 16(17):4
wind: a bad son is spoiled by the wind, 11:2
Wisdom, divine, 16(17):4
wolves, 8
word of God, 11:3
Word of God, incarnate, 3; 12(13);
  16(17):4
  sword of Spirit as, 3
worldly city, 3
Index from

Against Adversaries of the Law and the Prophets

(Contra adversarium legis et prophetarum)

Included in book:

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

*Prepared by Michael Dolan*

*(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)*

---

**Volume I/18**

**Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>20:17</th>
<th>II,3,10; II,11,37</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>21:17</td>
<td>II,1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>21:24</td>
<td>II,11,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>I,8,11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I,11,15; I,12,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>I,13,17; I,13,17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I,21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>I,15,23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:17</td>
<td>II,4,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>II,5,18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>II,7,27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>II,1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leviticus</th>
<th>17:14</th>
<th>II,6,21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>II,1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numbers</th>
<th>19:13</th>
<th>II,6,23</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>I,16,28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deuteronomy</th>
<th>28:56-57</th>
<th>I,24,50; I,52</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32:41-42</td>
<td>I,33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Arianism And Other Heresies**
Arianism And Other Heresies

I Samuel
15:10-11 I,42
15:11 I,42; I,42; II,10,35
15:28-29 I,42

Psalms
1:4 I,41
7:4-5 I,35
9:5 II,8,30
12:4 I,11,14
18:9 I,11,14
33:6 I,11,14
43:24 I,41
44:7-8 II,3,12
49:1 I,20,39; I,20,39
49:1-2 I,18,37
49:7 I,20,39
49:7-14 I,18,37
49:9 I,20,39
49:14 I,20,39
49:23 I,18,37
95:1-2 I,11,15
95:5 II,7,29
100:1 II,8,30
101:27-28 I,6,8
102:8-13 I,17,34
103:24 I,2,2
109:1 I,20,39; II,2,6; II,3,12
109:4 I,20,39; I,42
110:2 I,6,9
114:2 I,32
115:10 II,7,27
117:22 II,2,5; II,3,12
117:22-23 II,4,16
131:11 II,2,6

Proverbs
3:18 I,15,24
16:18 I,15,23
25:21 I,35

Song of Songs
2:17 II,11,37
4:6 II,11,37

Wisdom
2:18 I,8,11
2:23 I,23,48

7:26 I,11,15
9:15 II,5,20
11:21 I,6,8

Isaiah
1:2 I,22,46; II,10,35
1:4 I,22,46; II,10,35
11:10 II,3,12
28:16 II,2,5
29:13 II,1,2
33:6 I,17,34
40:6 II,6,22
40:7 II,6,22
45:7 I,23,48; I,23,48; I,23,48 1,49; I,49; I,49; II,10,35
53:4-8 II,3,12
54:1-5 II,3,12
59:20-21 II,2,4

Jeremiah
14:15 II,4,16
17:13 I,44

Lamentations
3:30 I,35

Ezekiel
16:3 I,22,46
18:23 I,17,34
33:11 I,17,34
43:8 I,41

Daniel
7:13-14 II,3,12

Joel
3:5 II,3,11

Malachi
1:10 I,20,39
1:11 I,20,39; I,20,39

New Testament

Matthew
5:21-22 I,31
5:39 I,36

Volume I/18
### Volume I/18

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>I,41</td>
<td>19:27</td>
<td>I,16,28</td>
<td>1:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>I,4,6</td>
<td>20:37-38</td>
<td>II,5,18</td>
<td>1:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17-18</td>
<td>I,49</td>
<td>20:38</td>
<td>II,5,18</td>
<td>1:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>I,49; I,49</td>
<td>23:42</td>
<td>I,41</td>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>II,4,15</td>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>I,26</td>
<td>1:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>I,19,38</td>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>II,6,22</td>
<td>1:25.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>I,7,10</td>
<td>11:34</td>
<td>I,43; I,43</td>
<td>1:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>I,16,28</td>
<td>14:27</td>
<td>II,12,38</td>
<td>1:26-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>II,12,38</td>
<td>17:2-8</td>
<td>II,4,16</td>
<td>1:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>II,5,20</td>
<td>11:34</td>
<td>I,43,1,43</td>
<td>1:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>I,22,47</td>
<td>10:7-8</td>
<td>II,4,16</td>
<td>2:5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>I,22,47</td>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>II,5,19</td>
<td>3:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>I,36; I,36</td>
<td>8:39</td>
<td>II,9,32</td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:17</td>
<td>I,36</td>
<td>9:39</td>
<td>II,8,30; II,11,37</td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>I,52</td>
<td>11:34</td>
<td>I,43; I,43</td>
<td>1:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:13</td>
<td>I,19,38</td>
<td>11:34</td>
<td>I,43; I,43</td>
<td>2:5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:24-25</td>
<td>I,43</td>
<td>14:27</td>
<td>II,12,38</td>
<td>3:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:42</td>
<td>II,2,5</td>
<td>23:29</td>
<td>II,8,31</td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>I,32; I,33</td>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>I,32; I,33</td>
<td>4:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Arianism And Other Heresies
### Arianism And Other Heresies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:13-15</td>
<td>II, 8, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>II, 7, 24; II, 7, 28; II, 9, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20-21</td>
<td>II, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>I, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7-13</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8-10</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1-5</td>
<td>II, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6-7</td>
<td>II, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>II, 8, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>I, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:25</td>
<td>II, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>II, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>II, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>II, 3, 11; II, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>II, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>II, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>II, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>II, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13-16</td>
<td>II, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17-27</td>
<td>II, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:22</td>
<td>I, 16, 27; I, 23, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>II, 8, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-34</td>
<td>I, 21, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>I, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>II, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>II, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>I, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>II, 2, 3; II, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>II, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>I, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>I, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9-10</td>
<td>II, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:19-22</td>
<td>II, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1-4</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>I, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15-17</td>
<td>I, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>II, 8, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18-20</td>
<td>I, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>I, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>I, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>II, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50</td>
<td>II, 6, 22; II, 6, 22; II, 6, 22; II, 6, 22; II, 6, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>II, 6, 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>I, 23, 48; II, 11, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>II, 7, 24; II, 7, 25; II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>II, 7, 24; II, 7, 24; II, 7, 26; II, 7, 28; II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7-11</td>
<td>II, 7, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II, 7, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>II, 7, 28; II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>II, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>II, 7, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>I, 11, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>II, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>I, 14, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14-15</td>
<td>II, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>I, 15, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:29</td>
<td>II, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15-19</td>
<td>II, 8, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>II, 9, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>I, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21-24</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24-31</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>II, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>II, 9, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>I, 11, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11-20</td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, 11, 15; I, 12, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>I, 14, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>II, 9, 34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Philippians 3:19 II,7,29

Colossians 1:16 I,2,2

1 Thessalonians 5:19 I,41

2 Thessalonians 2:11-12 I,16,28

1 Timothy 1:4 II,1,1
1:7 II,2,8
1:8 II,2,8
4:1-3 II,9,32
4:7 II,1,1

2 Timothy 2:8 II,2,6
4:1 I,17,34

Titus 1:12 II,4,13
1:12-13 II,4,13
3:5 II,6,23

Hebrews 5:6 I,20,39

James 1:20 I,41

1 Peter 3:20-21 I,21,45; 1,23,48

1 John 1:5 II,9,34
2:18 II,12,40

Arianism And Other Heresies
Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets

Aaron, order of, I,20,39
Abraham:
  charged with fornication, II,9,32
  faith, II,4,13
  Gospel holds him in great honor, II,9,32
  Law vs promises to, II,8,31
  manna, II,5,18
  Paul charged with deceiving people, II,9,33
  praised as perfect, II,9,33
  son in his old age, II,4,13
  two sons as signs of two testaments, II,9,34
Adam and Eve:
  discernment of good and evil, I,14,18
  God knew that he would sin, I,16,27
  two women for first man, II,1,2
Addas, II,12,42
Adimantus, II,12,41; 42
affection: human; God’s commandment, I,42
alms: eternal reward, for very little, I,32
amazement: at unforeseen things, I,7,10
angels:
  promise for eternity, II,11,37
  anger, II,11,37
animals: sacrifice; Old Law, I,18,37
antichrist: many among us, II,12,40
Apocrypha: used against Jewish prophets, II,4,14
Appeles, II,12,40
Arians, I,23,49
Augustine, Saint:
  Book II, closing, II,12,41-42
  summary of book to this point, II,10,35
author (unknown), I,1,1
baptism:
  foreshadowed; cleansing waters (Nm 19:13), II,6,23
  Basilides, II,12,40
bearing injuries, II,11,37
beauty:
  changing, mortal creatures, I,6,8
beginning, See Creation.
belly: god, II,7,29
bible:
fear (O.T.) and charity (N.T.), II,7,25
sexual imagery defended, II,9,34
shocking language in, I,24,52
signs of testaments: two sons of Abraham, II,9,34
blood:
soul is the blood (Moses), II,6,21
books and reading:
attention refreshed at book’s end, I,24,53
Carpocrates, II,12,40
castration, I,24,52
Catholic Church:
spread through all lands, II,12,42
Cerdon, II,12,40
change: beings made of nothing, I,6,8
chastity: Lord of, II,12,38
Christians: light of the world, II,11,36
Church:
foretold by Isaiah, II,3,12
Israel according to the spirit, I,20,39
keys; forgiveness of sin, I,36
kingdom of God, II,5,20
members included in, II,5,20
sacrifice of praise, I,18,37; 20,39
Cicero, I,24,52
City of God, The, I,14,18
commandment (Old Law):
ho!y, good, and just, II,11,37
meant for life, led to death, II,7,28
cornerstone, II,2,5
corruption:
flesh and blood will not possess…, II,6,22
creation:
all things made in wisdom (Christ), I,2,2
coeternal beginning, I,2,2
darkness that was upon the deep, I,8,11
four translations of the Greek word for, I,23,48
goodness of human beings, I,6,9
heaven and earth: the beginning, I,2,2
humans able to sin, I,14,20
Manichee view, I,1,1
matter and form; goodness, I,5,7
waters gathered into one place, I,13,17
why God created both higher and lower things, I,4,5
why not better at the start? I,3,4
Cretans: liars, II,4,13
curse:
command given in power, I,16,27
terror when heard, I,24,52
darkness: meaning; creation, I,8,11
David, King, I,18,37
day: divided between dark and light, I,12,16
defect: harms by lessening goodness, I,5,7
demons: sacrifice to, I,19,38
desire: produced by sin, II,7,28
Deuteronomy, Book of, I,24,50
device;
desire to do harm, II,12,39
god of this world, II,7,29
power limited by God, II,12,39
serpent, man’s deceiver, I,15,23
discernment:
Adam: good and evil, I,14,18
human capability, I,14,19
tree of discernment, I,21
disciples: names written in heaven, I,44
duty: end and, II,7,26
earth and heaven:
meanings, I,10,13
Elijah, I,26; II,4,13
Emmaus: prophets, II,4,14
duty: end and, II,7,26
enlightenment:
God blinds minds of some persons, I,8,30
Enoch, I,26
Ephesians, II,2,5
Epimenides, II,4,13
eternal life:
commandments of, II,11,37
kingdom of God, II,4,16
Eunuchs, I,24,52
evil, See Good and evil.

faith:
  centurion, I,7,10
  Jews “having the same Spirit of,” II,7,27
fall of man: tree of life, I,26
famine: spiritual, I,24,52
Faustus (Manichee), II,12,41
flesh:
  all flesh is grass, II,6,22
  corruption of, II,6,22
flood (biblical):
  punishment and prophecy, I,21,45
  spiritual, I,43
fool: calling a brother or sister fool, I,16,31
forgiveness:
  Christ’s mercy; Church’s keys, I,36
  of sin, II,11,37
form: capacity for goodness, I,5,7
genealogies: Jewish scriptures, II,1,1
Genesis, Book of, I,1,1
Gentiles: apostle to, II,2,4; 3,11
God:
  comes to know what he always knew, I,41
  cruelty, I,16,30
  descriptors; metaphors, I,40
  fathering evil human beings (Isaias), I,22,46
  foreknowledge of Adam’s sin, I,16,27
  incomprehensible light (O.T. & N.T.), I,11,14
  ineffable; why/how the Bible speaks, I,40
  jealousy, I,40
  life-giving breath of, I,22
  Lord of chastity (O.T.), II,12,38
  neither begins nor ceases to be, I,2,3
  not of the dead, but of the living, II,5,18
  paradoxical language about, I,42
  punishments by, I,16,28
  repentance, I,40,42
  same God in New Law as in Old, I,31
  source of evil, I,23,49
  uncreated light, I,12,16
  vengeance; Old Law, I,17,33
good and evil:
  bad tree bearing bad fruit, I,22,47,49
  charge: God (O.T.) brings forth evil from himself, I,23,48
  discernment; Adam and Eve, I,14,18
  evil cannot exist without good, I,5,7
  evil is privation of good, I,5,7
  filthiness of mind, I,24,50,52
  God as source of, I,23,49
  God fathering evil human beings (Isaias), I,22,46
  human discernment, I,14,19
  not to desire, II,7,28
  repay evil with good (Old Law), I,35
  shocking language in Scripture, I,24,52
  tree of discernment, I,21
good news, II,11,37
goodness:
  sinners have many sorts of, I,6,9
goods:
  earthly and heavenly things created, I,4,5
gospel:
  new law, perfection of the Old, I,16,31
  opposition with the Law (Paul), II,8,31
  preached to Gentiles, II,3,11
  veiled for some called Christians, II,7,29
grace:
  distinguishing Law from, II,7,24-25
  ministry of life in N.T., II,7,28
  Old Law becomes grace, II,3,10
  Spirit of Christ gives light, II,7,28
  handicapped people, II,11,37
happiness, I,2,2; 2,3; 7,10
Arianism And Other Heresies

Jews:
- scriptures as old wives’ tales, II,1,1
- traditions, II,1,2

John the Baptist:
- least in kingdom of heaven, II,5,20

law (old law):
- antitheses between Christ and God of, II,11,36
- Christ: end of the Law, II,7,26
- good if used rightly (Paul), II,2,8
- grace distinguished from, II,7,24-25
- grace through charity given by Spirit, II,3,10
- holy, just, and good, II,7,28
- letter kills, II,7,28
- ministry of death, II,7,24-27
- Paul uses, preaching to Gentiles, II,2,5
- promises to Abraham and, II,8,31
- sin and, II,7,28

least in kingdom of heaven:
- two interpretations, II,5,20

light:
- breath of God: life-giving, I,22
- spiritual tree of, I,26

love:
- growth; darkness in first days of creation, I,8,11

lust, II,11,37

Volume I/18
Mani, II,12,42  
Manichees, I,1,1; 5; II,12,40; 42  
manna, II,5,17-18  
Marcion, II,12,40  
Marcionites, I,1,1  
mountain: chastity, II,11,37  
matter:  
created, I,5,7  
unformed, I,9,12  
Melchizedek, order of, I,20,39  
mercy:  
God enlightens by, II,8,30  
ineffable God, I,40  
punishment for sin and, I,36  
messiah:  
prophets foretold coming of Leader, II,3,9  
Moses:  
Christ’s words turned against,  
II,4,15  
day hours, I,12,16  
Emmaus, II,4,14  
face: glory of countenance, II,7,26  
Law given through, II,3,10  
mortality of soul, II,6,23  
words: soul is the blood, II,6,21

Names:  
written in heaven; on earth, I,44

New Testament:  
language demands careful understanding, I,41  
promises made to Abraham, II,8,31

Noah, I,21,45  
nothing:  
changing, mortal creatures made from, I,6,8

Obedience:  
commended to human nature, I,14,19,21  
Samuel and Saul, I,42

Old Testament:  
foreshadowings of N.T. revelation, II,7,26  
decency language in, I,24,50  
ministry of death, II,7,24; 27  
reading with “veil” removed, II,8,31

Olive tree, II,2,6  
parable: vineyard planted, II,4,16  
paradoxes: language about God, I,42  
parents: honoring, II,1,2  
patriarchs:  
Christ’s words used against, II,5,17-19  
Patricius, II,12,40  
Paul, Saint:  
apostle to the Gentiles, II,2,4  
charged with deceiving people, II,2,6;7; 9,33  
deception: all things to all, II,2,4  
exegetical ruse: five personages, II,2,3;5; 9,33  
little ones fed with milk, not poison, II,2,6  
prophets before the apostles, II,3,12  
taught Law as good, II,2,8  
use of Law and prophets, II,2,5  
peace: I did not come to bring…, II,12,38

Peter, Saint, II,2,5  
praise: sacrifice of, I,18,37  
preachers: to Jews and Gentiles, II,3,11  
priest: Heli, the priest, I,16,30  
prophets:  
apocrypha used against, II,4,14  
before the apostles, II,3,12  
Christ’s words turned against, II,4,15  
Cretans, II,4,13  
foretold coming of Savior, II,3,9  
Paul uses, preaching to Gentiles, II,2,5  
punishment:  
carnal and spiritual, I,16,31  
Christ’s threats greater than Old Law, I,33  
divine: not ignorance, not malice, I,16,28  
for not giving temporal food, I,32  
God of vengeance; Old Law, I,17,33  
purity: Christ the lord of, II,12,38
rainbow, I,43
repetition, the, II,1,2; 2,6
resurrection of the body:
kingdom of God, II,6,22
Romans: Paul as apostle to, II,2,4
sabbath, II,11,37
sacraments: sacred signs, II,9,34
sacrifice(s):
foreshadowing that to come,
II,11,37
foreshadowings of the Eucharist,
I,42
Old Law foreshadowed sacrifice
of Christ, I,18,37
Paul's statements on, I,19,38
perversion; shameful passions,
II,7,28
punishment for sacrilege, I,32
sacral: visible; signs, I,16,30
salvation: flesh and blood; worldly pleasures,
II,6,22
Samuel, and King Saul, I,42
Sarah: marital intercourse with,
II,9,34
Saul, King, I,42
serpent, See Devil.
sexual imagery, II,9,34
signs:
two testaments in two sons of
Abraham, II,9,34
Simeon, I,11,15
Simon Magus, II,12,40
sin:
humans created with possibility
of, I,14,20
making light of, I,32
man, dead through sin, kept from
tree of life, I,15,24
mercy and punishment, I,36
ministry of condemnation, II,7,28
perversity: shameful passions,
I,24,51
prohibition increases desire,
II,7,28
song: light, I,11,15
soul:
blood (Moses), II,6,21
death of, I,16,30
Moses; mortality, II,6,23
talent: parable, I,16,27
Tertullian, II,9,32
time:
no beginning without an end, I,2,3
tree: bad tree bearing bad fruit,
I,22,47,49
tree: of discernment, I,21
tree: of life: spiritual, I,26
unbelievers, II,5,17
universe: inequalities in, I,4,5
veil:
between Moses' face and the
people, II,7,26
understanding: Law to Gospel,
II,7,29; 31
wealth, II,11,37
wedding garment:
lack of; punishment, I,16,30
mystical meanings, I,16,31
wisdom: spiritual tree of life, I,26
word of God: in the beginning...,
I,5

Volume I/18
Index from
Against an Arian Sermon
(Contra sermonem Arianorum)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## An Arian Sermon and Answer to the Arian Sermon

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:26</td>
<td>XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 31:13</td>
<td>XXXII,30; XXXII,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 6:4</td>
<td>I,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>XX; XXIX,27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XIX; XXVIII,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>V,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>XXVIII,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:3</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:20</td>
<td>XXXV,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109:1</td>
<td>9; XI,9; XII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20:6 (LXX)</td>
<td>5; V,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Arianism And Other Heresies
### Wisdom
8:1 IV

### Isaiah
26:10 XI,9
48:12-16 XIX
53:1 XII

### Daniel
3:87 XIX

### Zechariah
12:10 XI,9

### New Testament

#### Matthew
3:16 XV
3:17 XIII; XXXIV,32
5:8 XI,9
12:28 XV
17:5 XX1,11
19:28 XX
23:8 XXXII,30
23:10 34
25:34 9; XI,9
26:38 IX,7; IX,7
26:39 6; VI,6; IX,7

#### Mark
10:18 XXXV,33

#### Luke
1:34-35 XV
2:51 XXII,17
4:21 XXII,18
4:43 6; VI,6
23:46 7; IX,7; IX,7

#### John
1:1.3 I,2
1:3 II,3; XI,9; XV
1:9 XXXII,30
1:14 IX,7; IX,7; XII;
XXVII,23; XXVIII,24
2:19 XV
3:13 VIII
5:19 XIX; XXII,18;
XXIII,20; XXVIII,26
5:19.23 XXIX,27
5:21 VII
5:22 9; XI,9; XI,9
5:26 VII
5:27 XI,9
5:30 9; XI,9
6:38 6; VI,6; VII; VII
6:44 XXX,28
8:18 XXXIV,32
8:28 32; XXXIV,32
8:29 34
8:42 4; III,4
10:18 IX,7
10:30 VIII; IX,7
12:49 6; VI,6
14:6 XXX,28
14:10 XV
14:13 IX,7
14:16 34; XIX
14:25 XXX,28
14:26 XIX
14:28 VIII; IX,7
16:7 IV; XIX; XXX,28
16:13 20; XXIII,20
16:14 19; XXII,18; XXIII,19
16:15 XXIII,19; XXIII,20
16:26 IV
16:28 V,5
16:32 III,4; III,4
17:3 I,1
17:4 19; XXIII,19
17:5 XXXIII,19
17:5.4 XXXI,29
19:37 XI,9

#### Acts of the Apostles
2:31 IX,7
13:35 IX,7

#### Romans
3:20 IX,7
5:12 VII
5:19 VII
8:15 XXV,21
8:26-27 XXV,21

---

**Arianism And Other Heresies**
# Arianism And Other Heresies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bible Reference</th>
<th>Page Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>XXVI,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XXII,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15.19</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19.20</td>
<td>XXIX,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>XXXVII; XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>6; VI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7.8</td>
<td>XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>6; 34; VI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>XXXIV,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>9; XI,9; XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>IX, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>V,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>XXVII,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>I,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/18**
An Arian Sermon and Answer to the Arian Sermon

The Arian Sermon
adoration: persons of the Trinity, 19, 27
angels, 5
creation: Father’s will and command, 3, 4
God: foreknowledge; in the Trinity, 33
Holy Spirit:
  consolation, 9
different from the Son (nature, rank, etc.), 31
does not speak on his own, 20
relations of persons in the Trinity, 10-29
work and concern of, 30
Homoousians, 34
human beings:
  heirs to Christ’s Father, 5
  inferior grade of being, 5
  precious to God, 5
incarnation:
  will and command of the Father, 4, 6
Jesus Christ:
  crucifixion; his Father’s will, 7
divinity not lessened by his death, 7
established before all ages, 2, 4
firstborn of all creation, 1
foreknowledge of all things, 4
fulfilled Father’s plan of salvation, 8
human beings as coheirs of, 5
humility not pretended, 34
judgment office given to, 9
obedience (humble) and power, 34
obedient to his Father, unto death, 6
passion: Father, into your hands…, 7
passion: let this chalice pass…, 6
resurrection and ascension; Father’s will, 8
judgment day:
  Jesus in office of judge, 9
mankind, See human beings.
salvation:
  Jesus fulfilled Father’s plan of, 8
  second Coming of Christ, 9
son of God:

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

can do nothing of himself, 20
relations of persons in the Trinity, 10-29
Trinity:
difference of three realities in, 27
Father greater than Son; Son
greater than Spirit, 24
goodness, wisdom, power of God, 22
interrelations of persons, 10-29
necessary distinction of persons, 32
procession of persons, 26

Answer to the Arian Sermon

Adam:
self-will, VII
sin entered world through, VII
adoption: sons by grace,
XXVII,23
adoration: distinct from honoring,
XXIII,19
angels, V,5
words: trumpet of God, XIII
Apollinarian heresy, V,5
apostles, XXII,15
Arian Sermon: refutation com-
pleted, XXXIX
Arians, XXXVI,34
two Gods taught by, I,1

creation:
all things made through the Son,
II,3; XII
Son created, on Father’s order,
III,4
toil and weariness of Creator,
XXVIII,26
work of whole Trinity, XV
deaht: Adam’s sin; life in Christ,
VII
divine acts: difference in powers,
XIX
emperor: power of, XVIII
eternity: duration without time,
XXIV
Eunomians, XXXVI,34

faith:
Holy Spirit; distribution of grace,
XXXII,30
Father and son, XI,9
Father (God; Lord), See God; Trin-
ity.
flesh (the word), IX,7

glory:
Father and Son, XXXI,29
revelation; the Trinity, XXI,11

God:
See also Creation; Jesus Christ;
Son of God; Trinity
all things in all things, XXXVII
comforter of the saints, XIX
command to serve him (Father)
alone, XXIX,27
Father foreknew the Son,
XXXV,33
Father gave equality only to Son
and Spirit, XXIX,27
Father is life, XVII
Father to Son: words produced in
time, XIII
God is one (Dt 6:4), I,1
now knowing God, rather known
by God, XXV,21
time and, XXIV, XXXV,33
God(s) (Arian): unequal in nature,
I,1
good news, XXII,18
grace: adoption of sons, XXVII,23

holiness:
work of Christ and the Holy
Spirit, XXXII,30
Holy Spirit:
adoption as sons, XXV,21
advocacy and consolation, XVIII,
XIX
comforter of the lowly, XIX
common Spirit of Father and
Word, XXIII,20
crying “Abba, Father,” XXV,21
distinct from the Son, XXXIII,31
does not speak on his own,
XXIII,20
honoring and adoring, XXIII,19

Volume I/18
human body as temple of, XX, XXIX,27
human nature not taken up by, IV
if I do not go away…, XXX,28
inferiority of, XXII,15
intercession and consolation, XI,9
judgment day role, XX
made by Son’s power alone, XXVIII,26
made (Arian) by the Son, XXV,21
manifestation of the Son, XXVI,22
ministers of the Holy Trinity, XXII,15
principal work of the Son, XXVII,23
procession of, XXI,10
receiving what is mine, XXIII,19
resurrection of Christ as man, XV
sent by the Father, IV
Son of God adored with, XXX,28
truth, XXX,28
we do not pray as we ought …, XXV,21
will speak whatever he will hear, XXIII,20
with Christ, he teaches and makes holy, XXXII,30
works of the Trinity, XI,9; XVI
work: sanctification, XXXII,30
Homoousians, XXXVI,34
honor: adoration and, XXIII,19
human beings:
claim to be one with God, IX,7
heirs to Christ’s Father, V,5
less than the angels, V,5
precious value, V,5
trinity: memory, intelligence, will, XVI
human body:
— temple of the Holy Spirit, XX, XXIX,27
human condition:
result of sin: a will of its own, VII
humility: example of Jesus, VIII
incarnation:
created in being assumed, VIII
flesh produced by whole Trinity, XV
form of a servant, VIII, XXVIII,25, XXXVI,34, XXXVIII
will of the Father, III,4, VII, XI,9
Word became flesh, IX,7, XII, XXVII,23
intelligence: power of soul, XVI
Jesus Christ:
See also Son of God
acts: whatever he sees the Father doing, XXXIII,20
Arians on Jn 17:3, I,1
ascension: shepherd returns with his sheep, X,8
coeternal one in time, XII, XXXV,33
divinity (Arian), I,1
Father and I are one, IX,7
Father gave witness concerning me, XXXIV,32
Father greater than human nature of Christ, XI,9, XXVII,24
Father is greater than I, V,5; IX,7, XXXIII,31
Father’s will:
judge the world with justice, XI,9
sit at my right hand, XI,9, XII
form of man; form of God, XXXIV,32
God from God, XI,9
human soul united to Word, IX,7
humanity and divinity, VIII, XI,9
humanity; form, XI,9
I am the truth, XXX,28
judge; does not see Father judging, XIV
made less than the angels, V,5, XXVII,24
natures of God and man, XXXIV,32
no one comes to me unless the Father…, XXX,28
obedience of, VII
obedient to his earthly father, VI,6
obedient to his Father, unto death, VI,6; XXXVIII
one mediator, the man Christ, IX,7
one person, two natures, VII
Arianism And Other Heresies

passion:
- abandoned into hands of men, IX,7
- divinity did not suffer, IX,7
- Father, into your hands... IX,7
- Father, let this chalice pass..., IX,7
- my soul is sad..., IX,7
- resurrection and ascension, X,8
- sanctification and the Spirit, XXXII,30
- sinlessness; great obedience, VII
- Son of God by nature, VIII
- Son of Man by grace, VIII
- soul of, V,5
- Spirit of the Lord is over me..., XXII,18
- testimony of Father at baptism of, VI,6
- This is my beloved Son, XIII, XV, XXXIV,32
- twofold substance, one person, VII
- under will and command of the Father, VI,6
- unity of person, VIII, IX,7
- we (Father and Jesus) will make our dwelling with..., XXX,28
- Wisdom of God, IV
- Word, soul, and flesh, IX,7
- works of, XXXII,30
- judges, human, XX
- judgment day:
  - first place to the Father, XI,9
  - Holy Spirit, XX
- judge is also our advocate, XIX

lamp: flame; brightness, III,4, XXXIV,32

Mary, Blessed Virgin, IX,7
memory: power of soul, XVI
merit:
- Holy Spirit; distribution of grace, XXXII,30

nature: generation in, II,3

obedience:
- made just by obedience of Christ, VII

son and father, XI,9
willing/unwilling, VII
original sin: entrance into the world, VII

perfection:
- participation in divinity, XXVII,23

prayer:
- Spirit pleads with ineffable groans, XXV,21

Sabellians, XXXIV,32
sadness:
- do not sadden the Holy Spirit, XXV,21

salvation:
- plan; will of God, X,8

sanctification:
- work of the Holy Spirit, XXXII,30

service: latria, XXIX,27, XXXV,33

Solomon, King: temple, XX
Son of God:
- adored in the Holy Spirit, XXX,28
- begotten; immortal, IX,7
- begotten willingly or unwillingly, 2
- born before all ages, XXXVII
- can do nothing of himself, XXIII,20
- cannot do anything on his own, XIV
- coeternal with Father, 2
- crucified, VIII, IX,7
- distinct from the Holy Spirit, XXXIII,31
- does what the Father orders, XXII,18
- emptied himself; began to be Christ, VIII
- equality with God, VIII
- existed before all ages, 2
- Father gave life to, XVII
- Father given glory through, XXXI,29
- Father’s willingness to beget Son, XXVIII,26
- firstborn of all creation, XXXIV,32

Volume I/18
foreknowledge, before he made all things, III,4
form of a servant, XXII,16, XXVIII,25, XXXVI,34, XXXVIII
full and perfect image of God, XXVI,22
humility; subject to the Father, XXXVI,34
ineffable mission, III,4
inferior power, XIII
judges according to Father’s laws, XVIII
just judge, XI,9; XVIII
made out of nothing [?], II,3
not “word from Word,” XVII
obedience; pre-incarnation, XXXVIII
obey word of archangel, XIII
power and wisdom of God, XXVI,22
power to do what he sees Father doing, XIV, XXIII,20
same nature as Father, XXXVI,34
sent by Father, III,4, IV
subject to Father in age to come, XXXVII
whatever the Father does…, XXVIII,26

Son of Man:
judges as he hears, XVII
power to judge, XI,9
right hand of the Father, XII
senses and being, XIV
subjection, as man, XIV
unity of person of Jesus, VIII

soul:
flesh without, X,8
powers: memory, intelligence, will, XVI

Spirit:
human spirit pleads with groans…, XXV,21

time:
creature, XXXIV,32
made through Son of God, 2, XXXV,33

Trinity:
See also God; Holy Spirit; Son of God; Word
derivation of Persons, XXIII,19
differences not to be found in, XXXIII,31
different natures in (Arian), V,5
divine acts; difference in powers, XIX
equality; powers or functions, XVIII
Father and Son have same nature; II,3
Father and Son have the same works, XV
Father and Son (both) send Holy Spirit, XIX
Father and Son: differences found, XXXIV,32
Father/Son have one and same will, VII
honoring distinguished from adoring, XXIII,19
immutable nature of, VII
inequality in, V,5
likeness in the human soul, XVI
no difference in nature or power, XXIX,27
no other beings comparable to, IV
nothing done without the Holy Spirit, XV
one and same substance, XXXVI,34
one God, III,4; XXXV,33
one/identical nature of, XIV
only one Person had flesh, XV
orders; obedience, XXII,16
person as creature, XXVII,23
person is not “part” of, XXVII,23
persons’ works inseparable, IV;
XI,9; XVI
sending of persons, XXI,14
serving God alone, XXIX,27
Son alone rose from the dead, XV
Son pleads, Spirit petitions, for us, XXV,21
spoke through the prophet, XXXII,30
subordination of persons in, XXII,16
subordination of the Holy Spirit, XX
three persons, one God, XV

virgin birth, XV

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

will: power of soul, XVI
will of God: Son’s will not opposed to, XVIII
witnessing: persons of the Trinity, XXI,13

word of God:
See also Incarnation; Jesus Christ;
Son of God
life given to Son, XVII
temporal words used by Father, XIII
Index from
Against Maximinus, an Arian
(Contra Maximinum Arianum)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

Prepared by Michael Dolan

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Arianism And Other Heresies
**Answer to Maximinus the Arian**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Genesis</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-27</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-27</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>II,XXVI,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>I,II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>II,XXVI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>II,XXVI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>I,X; II,XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-7</td>
<td>II,III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:24-30</td>
<td>II,XXVI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Exodus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>II,XXVI,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>I,XIX; I,XIX;II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>II,XXVI,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>II,XXI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:11,13</td>
<td>II,XXVI,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>I,XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Deuteronomy</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>I,X; II,XVI,1;II,XXVI,11;II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>II,XIII,1; II,XXIII,3;II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>I,II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:39</td>
<td>II,XXIII,1; II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Psalms</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>II,XXVI,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>I,VIII; II,XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>I,VII; II,XXVIII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>II,XVI,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>II,XVII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:6</td>
<td>II,XII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:10</td>
<td>II,XXIII,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:7-8</td>
<td>II,XV,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8</td>
<td>II,XVII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81:6</td>
<td>II,XV,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Wisdom</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>II,XXI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sirach</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>II,XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Isaiah</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>II,X,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:12-16</td>
<td>II,XX,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>II,XIV,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hosea</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3-4</td>
<td>II,XXVI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zechariah</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>II,XXVIII,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Malachi</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>I,XIX; I,XIX;II,XXVI,10;II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>New Testament</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Matthew</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:18-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mark</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Arianism And Other Heresies**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Books and Chapters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>II,XX,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:36</td>
<td>II,XX,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Luke**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Books and Chapters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:34-35</td>
<td>II,XVII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:52</td>
<td>II,XXIII,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>II,XVI,3; II,XXI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:19</td>
<td>II,XXIII,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Books and Chapters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>II,XVII,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.3</td>
<td>I,IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-4</td>
<td>II,XXIII,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>II,XVII,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>II,XXII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II,IX,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>II,IX,1; II,XX,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>II,XV,2; II,XXIII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>II,XII,1; II,XII,3;\n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>II,XII,2; II,XX,4;\n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>II,XXVIII,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>II,XIV,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>II,XX,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:46</td>
<td>I,III; II,IX,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:52</td>
<td>II,XVII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>II,XX,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>II,XXII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>II,XXIII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>II,XV,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>II,XIV,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:50</td>
<td>II,XXVIII,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:56</td>
<td>II,XXVI,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>II,XIV,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>II,XIV,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>I,X; II,XIV,3; II,XX,1;\n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41-42</td>
<td>II,XIV,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:50</td>
<td>II,XXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>II,XXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>I,XV; I,XIX; II,XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>II,XIV,1; II,XXII,3;\n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Books and Chapters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>II,XVI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:38</td>
<td>II,XVII,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>II,XX,1; II,XXII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-4</td>
<td>II,XXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:47-48</td>
<td>II,XXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38</td>
<td>II,XVI,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>II,III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27-28</td>
<td>I,XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:35</td>
<td>II,XIV,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Books and Chapters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>II,XXIII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>II,VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>I,II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>I,II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>I,II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11.9</td>
<td>II,XIV,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>I,X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>II,XX,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>I,XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>II,XXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:33-36</td>
<td>II,XXIII,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>I,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>XXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25-27</td>
<td>II,XXIII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:27</td>
<td>I,XVI; II,XXIII,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Books and Chapters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>II,XXIII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>I,XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>II,XX,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>II,XXV,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Arianism And Other Heresies

Volume I/18
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference</th>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>II, XV, 4; II, XVII, 1; II, XXIII, 5</td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>Colossians 1:16 II, IX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II, XX, 1; II, XXII, 1</td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>I, XI; II, XXI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II, XIV, 4</td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>II, XXII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>I, X, II, X, 2; II, XX, 1; II, XXII, 2</td>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>I, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>II, XXI, 1</td>
<td>6:19.15</td>
<td>II, XXI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19-20</td>
<td>II, XXI, 1</td>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>I, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>I, I; II, X, 1; II, XXIII, 2; II, XXVII, 14</td>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>II, XXIII, 3; II, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>II, XXIII, 3</td>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>II, XXI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>II, XXI, 3</td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>II, XIV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>II, XIV, 1</td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, XII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>II, XV, 1</td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>Colossians 1:16 II, IX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-9</td>
<td>I, V</td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>I, IX, 1; II, XXVI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>II, XIV, 7</td>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-9</td>
<td>II, XV, 5</td>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>I, XX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>II, II</td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, XXII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>I, V; II, XIV, 2; II, XIV, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>II, IX, 1; II, XI</td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>II, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>I, V; II, IX, 1; II, XII, 2; II, XXVI, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>I, IX, 1; II, XXVI, 10</td>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>II, XII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II, XXV</td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>II, XIII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>I, XX, 1</td>
<td>19:15-16</td>
<td>II, XII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, XXII, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>I, V; II, XIV, 2; II, XIV, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14</td>
<td>II, XII, 2</td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>II, XIII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:15-16</td>
<td>II, XII, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Arianism And Other Heresies
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Arianism And Other Heresies
Answer to Maximinus the Arian

Abraham:
- desired to see Christ’s day, II.XXVI,8
- God seen by, II.XXVI,5,7,8
- now I know, now I have made you know…, I.IX
- son promised to, II.XXVI,5
- spoken to by the Lord, II.XXVI,7
- tomb, II.III
- abundance, II.XIV,7

Adam:
- first; second, II.XX,3
- helper was made for, II.XXVI,2
- unbegotten, I.XX

Adoration: praying and, I.IX

age: eternity, II.XIV,6

angel(s):
- always see face of God, II.IX,1
- ascending to, descending from, heaven, II.IX,1
- greater than Son (in form of servant), II.XXV
- ministry of. II.XXVI,8
- Moses’ bush in flames, II.XXVI,11
- prefiguring Jesus, II.XXVI,8
- seeing archangels, II.XI
- Sodom, II.XXVI,6,7
- testimony on the return of Christ, II.XVI,1
- visibility, I.III

animals:
- generation, II.VI
- offspring of, I.VI; XVIII

antichrist, II.XXXVI,13

Apollo and Paul: unity, II.XXXII,1,2

apostles:
- saw the Lord in this world, not as he is, II.XXXVI,10
- unity with Father and Son, I.XII; II.XXXII,2
- archangels: angels cannot see, II.XI

baptism:
- die to sin, live for Christ, I.II
- name of the Father and …, II.XVI,2; XXII,3

belief:
- confession made with the lips, I.I
- pray for understanding, II.X,2

bible:
- rule on interpreting passages where Son is “less,” II.XIV,8

blood:
- sign of the Son, II.XXII,3

change:
- divine persons made manifest, II.XXVI,10

church:
- body of Christ, II.XVIII,5; XXII,3
- debate over Person creating, II.XXVI,2
- in the beginning God…, II.XXVI,2
- let us make man …, II.XXVI,2,3

creator:
- begotten by the Father, II.XII,3
- flesh of, II.XVII,2

death:
- angels who sinned, II.XII,2

disciples:
- wish that Maximinus put on Christ, II.XXVI,14

dove, I.XIX

eternal life:
- happiness, II.XXXIII,5
- knowing the true God, II.XV,4
- Son of God, II.XXIV

eternity: no age, II.XIV,6

faith: incorrect; ashamed to correct, I.I

Arianism And Other Heresies
father (God), See God; Trinity
relations with... See Holy Spirit;
Jesus Christ; Son of God.
fear of God: proper, II.1
fire: Holy Spirit, I.XIX
flesh:
  given for life of the world,
  II.XVII,2
generation:
  animal and human, II.VI
  animal species, I.VI
  flesh is born of flesh, II.XIV,3
  same substance in the one born,
  II.VII
giving:
  more blessed than receiving,
  II.XIV,7
glory:
  given to God through Jesus
  Christ, II.XIII,2
God:
  adore and serve the Lord alone
  (Dt 6:4), I.1; II.X,1; XXIII,1,3
  begetting what he is, II.VII
  beginning, II.XVII,4
  Christ anointed by Father and by
  Spirit, II.XVI,3
  composed of parts (denied), II.X,3
  Father and Son as the one God,
  II.XXIII,1
  Father as unbegotten, I.XVIII
  Father seen by the Son, I.III
  fear of, See Fear of God.
  he who clings is one spirit,
  II.XX,1
  hear: the Lord is one, II.V,1
  human contacts, I.II; II.V
  I am who am; unchanged, I.XIX;
  II.XXVI,10
  immense, II.XXVI,13
  immortality (each person), I.IV;
  II.XIV,5
  immutable good, II.XXIII,5,7
  immutable, hence immortal,
  II.XII,2
  incomprehensibility, II.XXVI,13
  ineffable union of three persons,
  I.X
  invisibility, I.III; II.X,1
  made a man know; “Now I know,”
  II.XIX
  manifestations; rather signified
  than shown, II.XXVI,10
  mutual love: Father and Son,
  II.XXIV
  nature in the unborn Father,
  II.XV,2
  person as “part” of God, II.X,2
  prefigured by angel (Abraham’s),
  II.XXVI,8
  qualities of, II.XXIII,7
  same nature (substance) in three
  persons, II.XV,3
  seen by no human being, II.XIX,1
  seen in Old Testament, II.XXVI,1
  seen through creature subject to
  him, II.XXVI,10,12
  simple power of, II.X,3
  Son saw the “incomprehensible,”
  II.XIX,2
  three men appeared to Abraham,
  II.XXVI,5,7
  true Son of the Father, II.VII
  unity of, I.1
  unmade, I.XVII
  wisdom of, I.XVI; II.XIII,1
  goodness:
  divinity and, II.XXIII,5,6
  Father the source of, II.XXIII,7
  life that gives life, II.XXIII,7
  Son as less good than Father,
  II.XXIII,7
  happiness: eternal life, II.XXIII,5
  heavenly powers: invisible, II.XI
Holy Spirit:
  adoration of, II.III; XXVI,6
  adoration of the Father, I.X
  announcement to Mary, II.XVII,2
  appeared visibly, I.XIX
  changed, on being seen visible,
  II.XXVI,10
  coeternal nature from God,
  II.XIV,2
  Creator, II.XVII,1,3
  Creator of flesh of the Son,
  II.XVII,2
  creatures not taken into unity of
  his person, I.XIX
  divinity of, II.XXI,1
equal to the Son, II.XVII,2
equality with the Father, I.XIX
form of dove or fire, I.XIX
greater than Christ the man,
II.XVI,3
groaning, pleading, without
ceasing, I.IX; II.XIX
human body, his temple, I.XI;
II.III; II.XXI,1
king, II.XXI,3
knows the things of God…,
II.XV,4
Lord of this temple, II.XXI,2
members of Christ as his temple,
II.XXIII,1
oil of gladness, II.XVI,3
powers of the heavens made firm
by, II.XVII,2
praise of, I.XI
procession of, II.V; XIV,1; XV,1
saints made holy by, II.XXI,3
seated with the Father, II.XXI,3
send forth your Spirit, II.XVII,2
served when we serve God the
Father, II.XXVI,14
two holy spirits, II.XIV,1
unless I (Christ) go, the
Paraclete…, II.XXVI,14
whole world filled by, II.XXI,2
will be with you forever,
II.XXVI,14
witness, II.XXI,3
homousios, II.XIV,3; XVIII,1
human beings:
begetting child of same substance,
II.XV,5
creation: image and likeness of
God, II.XXVI,2
creatures; form of servant,
II.XXV
not good that man be alone,
II.XXVI,3
one by nature, II.XXI,1
one with God, II.XXI,2
human body:
temple of God, II.XXI,1; XXIII,1
temple of the Holy Spirit, I.XI;
II.III
temple of the heavens made firm
by, II.XVII,2
image of God, II.XXV
preference over other creatures,
II.XXV
humility: truth and, II.XVI,1
immortality:
Father and Son, I.IV
immutable God, II.XII,2
soul and other spiritual creatures,
I.IV
Incarnation:
come to do Father’s will, II.XX,3
form of a servant, I.V; II.X,2
points of no disagreement, II.VIII
Son showed that Father is God,
I.VII
Jacob: wrestled with angel,
II.XXVI,9
Jesus Christ:
See also Incarnation; Son of Man;
Son of God; Word of God
advanced in age and wisdom,
II.XXIII,7
anointed with the Holy Spirit,
II.XVI,3
appearance in substance of his
divinity, II.XXVI,2
ascension to “my Father and
yours,” II.XVI,1
contamination by contacts, I.II;
II.V
did not think it robbery to be
equal to God, I.V
died to sin once, I.II
exaltation by the Father, II.II
Father, I want that where I am…,
II.XX,4
filled with the Holy Spirit,
II.XXI,2
from the womb I begot you,
II.XVIII,1,2,3
glory given to God through,
II.XIII,2
God who alone is wise through,
II.XXIII,2
head and body, II.XVIII,5
human love, II.XX,2
invisible in substance of divinity,
II.XV
less than the Father, II.XIV,9

Arianism And Other Heresies
little less than the angels, II.XXV
make me clean..., II.XX,4
marvelous growth (into form of
God), II.IX,2
my soul is sad..., II.XX,2
name: every knee might bend,
II.II
obedient unto death on a cross,
I.V; II.II; II.XIV,7; XV,1
one person; twofold substance,
II.X,2
passion:
foretold, II.XVI,3; XXVI,8
I am not alone; the Father..., II.XVIII,6
made a little less than the
angels, II.XVIII,6
points of no disagreement,
II.VIII
power to die and to rise, II.XIV,9
prayer for unity of his followers,
II.XXII,1
prefigured by Jacob wrestling
with angel, II.XXVI,9
sacrifice for sin, I.II
seated at right hand of the Father,
II.IV
selfsame; unchanged, II.XXVI,14
served when we serve God the
Father, II.XXVI,14
subject to the Father, II.XVI,1;
XVIII,5
subjection to his parents, I.VIII;
II.XVIII,4
through whom all things are (1
Cor 8:6), II.XXIII,3,4
two gods (by calling him “also”
God), II.X,1
Wisdom of God, I.XVI
worshipped as God, I.I
Jews, II.XVI,1
joy: Father and Son, II.XVI,3
judgment (last day):
Christ in human form, II.XVIII,6
Father judges no one, II.XVIII,6
kings, II.I; II.XV,1
life: God, source of life, II.XII,2;
XXIII,7
life: Son gives, to those he wants,
II.XX,4
light: in your light we shall see..., II.XXIII,7
Lot (at Sodom), II.XXVI,6-7
love:
Father and Son: mutual love,
I.XIV; II.XXIV
one by love, II.XXII,1
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Holy Spirit will overshadow,
II.XVII,2
Maximinus (Arian bishop):
Augustine’s response to, I.I-XX
Moses:
bush in flames; angel, II.XXVI,11
claim re seeing Son of God,
II.XXVI,1
desired that God be revealed to
him, II.XXVI,10,12
finger of God, II.XXI,2
god for Pharaoh, II.XV,3
show me yourself..., I.XV
omnipotence: persons of the Trin-
ity, II.XII,1
parent and child:
obedience, II.XVIII,3
same substance, II.XIV,6
patriarchs:
God seen by, II.XXVI,1,12
welcoming angels without
knowing it, II.XXVI,6
Paul, Saint:
one with Apollo, II.XXI,1,2
perfection:
Father and Son, II.XV,5
one in Father and Son, II.XXI,1
therefore by perfect as your
Father..., I.XII
Peter, Saint, II.XVII,1; XXI,1
Pontius Pilate, II.XII,2
power: command and, II.XIV,9
prophecy: foretold as if already
happened, II.XVI,3

Volume I/18
purity: blessed are the clean of heart, II.XII,2

rule of faith, II.XIV,8

Sabellians, I.XIII;
saints:
  made holy by Holy Spirit, II.XXI,3
  prayers ever poured out, I.IX
sin:
  gift of being incapable of, II.XII,2
  sacrifices for, I.I
Sodom, II.XXVI,5,6,7
Solomon, King, II.III; II.XXI,1
Son of God:
  See also Jesus Christ; Son of Man; Word of God
  Adam: I heard your voice…, II.XXVI,4
  all judgment given to, II.XVIII,6
  all which the Father has are mine, II.XIV,7; XX,3
  appeared on earth and lived among human beings, II.XXVI,13
  begetting the Creator, II.XII,3
  in the beginning, II.XVII,4
  begotten, I.XVIII
  begotten as perfect, II.XV,5
  begotten; substance of the Father, II.XIV,2,4
  born from God the Father, II.XIV,1,9
  changed, on being seen visible, II.XXVI,10
  clings to the Father; one God, II.XX,1
  commands received from Father, II.XIV,9; XXIV
  creator of visible and invisible things, LXV; II.XI
  denying that he is true God, II.XV,4
  emptied himself…, IV; II.XV,1,5
  equal, not inferior, II.XIV,6; XX,3
  equal of unbegotten Father, LXX
  equal to the Father, II.VII; XV,1,5; XXIII,7; XXIV
  equality; measure, II.XXIII,7
  equality with God by nature, IV
  eternal life, II.XXIV
  Father as God for, II.XVI,1
  Father as his author, II.XIV,6
  Father bears witness to, I.XIII; II.XXVI,4
  Father does the will of the Son, II.XX,4
  Father greater than the Son, I.XIII; XIX; II.XXV
  Father is God for, IV.VII; II.XVII,3
  Father unable/unwilling to give equality, II.XXV
  form of God, IV
  greatness of, IV.VII
  immortal God, IV
  inferior nature, II.XV
  invisible according to his divinity, I.III; II.XI; XXVI,1
  less because he carried out orders, II.XXVI,2
  less than the Father; form of a servant, II.XIV,8
  love of Father and Son, I.XIV
  made, form of a servant, I.XVII; XIX; II.XV,1
  man in time, IV
  obedience; nature of God, II.XVIII,3
  one in harmony (not number) with Father, II.XXII,2
  one substance with the Father, II.XIV,8; XV,2
  power given to, in begetting, II.XII,1
  prefigured in Jacob, II.XXVI,9
  same nature as the Father, I.VI
  seen by Abraham, II.XXVI,8
  son by nature, not by grace, II.XXIII,7
  subjection; form of a servant, I.VIII; IX; II.X,2; XXIII,2
  substance of God, II.XVIII,1
  visible form of man, I.XIX
  whatever the Father does …, II.XIV,8; XX,4
  will subject to the Father, II.XX,2
  wise through substance of the Father, II.XIII,2
Son of Man:

---

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

angels greater than (human form), II.XXV
form of God not lost by, II.XV,5
from the womb of my mother…, IVII
handed over by the Father, II.XX,4
nature of, II.XXIII,7
subject to the Father, II.XXIII,2
soul:
generation of offspring, II.XIV,4
immortal, II.XII,2
incorruptibly begetting offspring, II.XIV,4
Spirit:
Holy, See Holy Spirit.
human and divine; different
natures, II.XV,4
sign of the Father, II.XXII,3
Stephen, Martyr, II.XXI,1
temple, See Holy Spirit; human
body.
Trinity:
all things are from- through- and
in him, II.XXIII,4
blessed and alone powerful; one
God, II.XII,2
command to baptize in name of,
II.XVI,2; XXII,3
divine authority for unity of
persons, I.XII
each person, true God, II.XV,4
equality of persons, II.XXIII,4
Father and Son, one substance,
II.XVIII,3; XX,1
Father different from Son, I.XIII
Father is greater, Son is lesser,
II.XXIII,1
God alone is invisible, II.X,1
God from substance of God,
II.XIV,2
God’s generation as defective,
II.XVIII,1
I am the Lord; no other,
II.XXIII,2, 3
I am who I am…, I.XIX
I do not change …, II.XXVI,10
incomprehensibility of persons,
II.X,2
invisibility, I.XV
Lord your God is one (Dt 6:4),
II.XXVI,14
no one is good save the one God,
II.XXIII,5,6
no one knows the things of God
except…, II.XXIII,5
omnipotence, II.XII,1
one and only God, II.XV,4
one and same nature, II.XXII,3
one beginning, II.XVII,4
one God, one Creator, II.V
one in nature, II.XXII,1
one is God the Father (1 Cor 8:6),
II.XXIII,3,4
one substance, II.X,2; XIV,1-2;
XX,1; XXII,1
one substance: three persons,
II.Preface
persons: being born; proceeding,
II.XIV,1
power of, II.XII,1
prefigured in three men coming to
Abraham, II.XXVI,6
spirit, water, and blood (signs),
II.XXII,3
Spirit begot a Spirit, II.XV,3
spiritual greatness of persons,
II.X,2
there is no God save the one,
II.XXIII,2
three persons, one God, I.X;
II.X,1
three persons appeared to
Abraham, II.XXVI,5
three persons as witnesses,
II.XXIII,3
three who appeared to Abraham,
II.XXVI,7
two (Father and Son) have one
substance, II.XXII,2
undivided godhead, II.X,3
wisdom by nature, not grace,
I.XVI
wise, II.XIII,2
truth: humility and, II.XVI,1
unity:
Father and I are one
(“homousios”), II.XIV,3

Volume I/18
human spirit clinging to Spirit of the Lord, I.X
one soul and one heart, II.XX,1
prayer of Jesus for, II.XXII,1
that they may be one…, I.XII

water: sign of the Holy Spirit, II.XXII,3
will of god: justice, II.XX,3
wisdom:
built a home for itself, II.XVII,2
depths of the riches of God, II.XXIII,4
God alone is wise, I.XVI; II.XIII,1
Jesus in form of man, II.XXIII,7
soul generating offspring, II.XIV,4

witnesses:
spirit, water, and blood (signs), II.XXII,3

word of God:
all God’s commands contained in, II.XIV,9
everal birth, II.XVIII,2
in the beginning…, I.XIX:
II.XVII,4; XVIII,2; XXIII,7
sadness, II.XX,2
teaching of the Father, II.XX,3
world: filled by Holy Spirit, II.XXI,2

worship:
admire and serve the Lord alone (Dt 6), I.1; II.X,1; XXVI,14
two gods, I.1

Arianism And Other Heresies
Index from

Debate with Maximinus, an Arian Bishop

(Conlatio cum Maximino Arianorum episcoopo)

Included in book:

Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

Prepared by Michael Dolan

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

## Debate with Maximinus

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:26-27</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>15,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10-11</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:28</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:11</td>
<td>15,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:14</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 4:2</td>
<td>15,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>11; 12; 15,26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:1.3</td>
<td>15,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 4:3</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9-10</td>
<td>15,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:7-8</td>
<td>15,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8</td>
<td>15,16; 15,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:8</td>
<td>15,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:2</td>
<td>15,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:24</td>
<td>15,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109:1</td>
<td>15,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109:3</td>
<td>15,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142:10</td>
<td>15,23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Arianism And Other Heresies
Volume I/18

**Proverbs**
- 8:30-31 15,16
- 9:1 15,8

**Isaiah**
- 7:9 15,26
- 7:13 15,9
- 40:5 11
- 53:8 15,14

**Malachi**
- 3:6 15,26

**New Testament**

**Matthew**
- 5:8 14
- 5:18 15,16
- 6:10 15,20
- 10:28 4, 15,14
- 10:29 15,14
- 10:32-33 4
- 11:27 15,13
- 15:9 1
- 17:5 13
- 18:16 15,15
- 24:35 15,16
- 25:34 15,18
- 26:63-64 15,4
- 28:18-20 15,16

**Mark**
- 14:36 15,20
- 14:61-62 15,4

**Luke**
- 1:35 15,21
- 4:18 11
- 6:45 15,23
- 12:4 14
- 12:20 15,9
- 15:4.7 15,9
- 16:10 15,19
- 24:49 15,10

**John**
- 1:1 14
- 1:3 10; 15,21

**Acts of the Apostles**
- 2:32-33 7
- 4:32 12
- 9:4 15,9
- 13:2 15,9
- 13:47 5

**Romans**
- 1:7 15,23
- 1:20 14; 15,7
- 3:20 11
- 8:15 13; 15,21

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26-27</td>
<td>15,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33-34</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>15,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:27</td>
<td>13; 14; 15,13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>15,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>15,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>14; 15,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6-8</td>
<td>15,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>14; 15,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10.13</td>
<td>15,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>15,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>15,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16-17</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>14; 15,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19.15</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>15,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23-24</td>
<td>15,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>5; 15,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>15,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>15,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>14; 15,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:47</td>
<td>15,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>15,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>15,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>15,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>15,16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>15,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>15,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>15,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>15,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>15,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5-11</td>
<td>15,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>15,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>15,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>15,8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>15,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-17</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-15</td>
<td>15,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>15,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>15,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15-16</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>14; 15,14; 15,26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>15,16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Titus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>15,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>15,9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Peter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>15,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>15,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22-23</td>
<td>15,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>15,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/18
Debate with Maximinus

Abraham:
- God seen by, 15,26
- now I know that you fear..., 13

Adam:
- naked, hid himself, 15,26

angels:
- ability to see souls, divinity, other angels, 15,9
- carved, 14
- greater than form of servant, 15,25
- Holy Spirit and, 12
- human race compared to their multitude, 15,9

animals:
- generate same species, 14

Apostles:
- Christ’s prayer for, 15,22

Ariminum, Council of, 2, 4

Augustine, Saint:
- signature on the debate, 15,26

bible:
- worthy disciples of the scriptures, 15,20

commandments:
- keeping; love, 15,22

contact (contamination), 14

creation:
- each creature of God is good, 15,23
- established by the Son, 15,13
- praise for work of the Son, 15,16

devil, 15,15

early Church:
- one heart and soul (Acts), 12
- enlightenment, 5-11

false accusations, 15,14

fear of God:
- Maximinus, 15,1
- flesh (the word), 11

generation: human and divine, 15,15

God:
- See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Son of God; Trinity
- divine substance is utterly invisible, 14
- Father, generating the Son, took nothing away, 15,7
- Father adored by the Son, 14
- Father alone is invisible, 15,9
- Father alone is one God, 15,10
- Father alone is powerful, 15,12; 15,13
- Father and Son are one, 13
- Father and Son in harmony and love, 14; 15,22
- Father bears witness to Son, 14
- Father greater; Son in form of a servant, 14; 15,25
- Father never in visible form, 15,26
- Father the begetter, Son the begotten, 14
- foreknowledge; knowing God, 13
- human “contacts,” 14
- invisible; “seen” by understanding, 14
- no one is good, save the one, 15,23
- one God, whom Christ and the Spirit adore, 13
- professing one God [one person], 12
- Son and Spirit cling to Father; one God, 14
- spirit (Father) begot a spirit (Son), 15,15
- three distinct persons together make one God, 15,26
- unity (Dt 6:4), 15,26
- wisdom seen in his action, 15,9
goodness:
received by each creature, from Christ, 15,23

Heraclius (priest), 1
Hippo Regius, 1

Holy Spirit:
Abba, Father, 15,21
adoration of, 15,3
adoration of the Father, 14
angels and, 12
body as temple of, 15,21
cries out in praise of wisdom, 15,13
crying out; making us cry out, 13
enlightenment from, 5-11
equal to the Father, 13; 14
equal to the Son, 15,17
everything done by, is obtained from God, 9
form of a dove, 15,26
pleads with groans on our behalf, 12; 13; 15,19
power of, 15,21
procession of, 13
same substance as the Father, 15,14
saying that Jesus is Lord, 15,21
simple power, 15,10
souls melted by (one soul, one heart), 12
subject to the Son, 10-11, 12
teacher, guide, enlightener, sanctifier, 15,5
testimonies that he is God, 15,21
unhappiness, 13; 15,19
human beings:
made in image and likeness of God, 15,26
human body:
temple of the Holy Spirit, 15,21
human condition:
growing up, 14

immortality:
wisdom of the saints, 15,14

incarnation:
contact with human flesh, 14
form of the servant, 11
he did not think it robbery..., 14

Israel:
meaning: one who sees God, 15,26

Jacob: wrestling, 15,26

Jesus Christ:
See also Incarnation; Son of God
baptized, 15,16
enlightenment through Holy Spirit, 7-11
form of a servant, 15,15; 15,16
goodness from the Father, 15,23
Holy Spirit and Word made flesh, 11
humility of the flesh, 15,16
name: every knee bent, 15,2
only-begotten Son, 13
passion: Father, let this cup pass, 15,20
power received from the Father, 15,14
Spirit of the Lord is upon me..., 11
subject to his parents, 15,18
teaching, he enlightens us, 5
visible humanity; invisible divinity, 15,9
visible in the flesh, 14
will subject to the Father, 15,20
Wisdom has built a home for itself, 15,8
wisdom in all things made, 15,13
wisdom of God, 14; 14
worshipped; God of every creature, 15,2
John the Baptist, Saint, 13, 15,5
judgment day:
Son subject to the Father, 15,18

Knowledge:
now I know = now that I have made you know, 13

love:
keep the commandments, 15,22
Spirit melts many hearts into one heart, 12
Trinity as one, 15,22

Arianism And Other Heresies
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
overshadowed by the Spirit, 15,21
Moses:
divinity manifested to, 14
no one can see God and live, 15,26
omnipotence, 12
patriarchs:
divine apparitions through creatures, 14
divinity showed itself to, 15,26
Paul, Saint, 5
prophets: witness to the Son, 14
rule of faith, 15,16
Saints: immortal wisdom, 15,14
Segisvult, Count, 1
sheep:
leaving the ninety-nine, seeking the one lost, 15,9
Son of God:
begotten by the Father, 13
birth in the beginning, 15,18
divinity not seen by angels, 15,9
emptied himself, 14; 15,15
equal to the Father, 14
Father and I are one, 15,24
firstborn of all creation, 15,17
immortal wisdom, 15,14
immortality, 15,14
intercedes for us, even now, 12
love for the Father, 15,24
from nothing, 15,13
only-begotten, 15,15
perfection, 15,15
prays to the Father, 12
same substance as the Father, 15,14
simple power, 15,10
subject to the Father, 10
subjection of, 15,23
visible; form of a servant, 14
wisdom of the Father, 15,13
soul:
angels can penetrate, 15,9
generation of offspring, 15,14
immortal, 15,14
invisible, 15,9

Trinity:
challenge (Maximinus) on unity of the persons, 15,26
equality of persons, 14
Father and Son are one, 15,20
Father and Son distinct persons, 13
Father and Son: same nature and substance, 14
immortality, 15,14
omnipotence of each person, 12
one God, 12
one God worshipped in, 11
one nature denied, 14
one undivided nature; three persons, 15,22
persons same and equal, 11
statement on faith requested, 2-4
subjection of persons in, 11
term “one,” meaning love, not substance, 15,22
three persons; one God, 15,23
three persons, one God, denied, 14
three persons; same substance, 15,14
understand what you believe, 15,26
undivided nature; one God, 14
unity:
Christ, the Father, and the faithful, 15,22
will of God:
Father and Son are one, 15,20
wisdom:
applied to Father “alone,” 14
God alone is wise, 15,13
human, is not invisible, 15,9
word of God:
death and, 14
form of a servant, 14; 15,15
worship:
creature worship, 14
Trinity, one God, 11
Index from
On Heresies
(De haeresibus)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18         Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

*Prepared by Michael Dolan*

*(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heresies</th>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td>1:31 LXVI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td>3:5 LXVIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Joshua</strong></td>
<td>5:16 LXVIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Isaiah</strong></td>
<td>45:7 LXV</td>
<td>65:17 LXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Matthew</strong></td>
<td>6:12 LXXXVIII,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Luke</strong></td>
<td>18:1 LVII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>John</strong></td>
<td>6:65 LXXXVIII,2</td>
<td>15:5 LXXXVIII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Corinthians</strong></td>
<td>9:10 XXVI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ephesians</strong></td>
<td>1:5 LXXXVIII,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colossians</strong></td>
<td>1:13 LXXXVIII,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Thessalonians</strong></td>
<td>5:7 LVII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Revelation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>21:1 LXVII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Heresies

Preface,
Baptism, 3
Celsus, 5
Epiphanius, Bishop of Cyrus: work on eighty heresies, 6
heresy:
  defect, or error, makes one a heretic, 7
Epiphanius (bishop) on eighty heresies, 6
  magnitude of task to write about, 1
  succinct summary of past/current heresies, 3
  task (writing) undertaken, 2
  tenets of each to be summarized, 4

The Heresies,
Abelians, LXXXVII
Abeloim, LXXXVII
Abeloites, LXXXVII
Adam, XIX
  death natural; not result of Fall, LXXXVIII.7
Adam and Eve, XLVI.14-15
Adamians, XXXI
Aeons, XI, XIII
Aerians, LIII
Aetians, LV
Africa, XLI, LXIX.1,3,4
agriculture: Manichee, XLVI.12
allegory, LXX.2
Alogi, XXX
angelics, XXXIX
angels, II, III, VI, XXXIX, LIX
Antidicomarites, LVI, LXXXIV
Apellites, XXIII
Apollinarists, LV
Apostolics, XL
Apotactites, XL, LIII
Aquarians, LXIV
Arabians, LXXXIII
Archontics, XX
Arians, XLVII, XLIX, LI, LV
Artemon, XLV
Artotyrites, XXVIII
Ascitae, LXII
Audians, L
baptism, XLIV
baptism:
  children (even though original sin is denied), LXXXVIII.6
  Manichee, XLVI.17
  outside the church, LXIX.5
  rebaptism, XLIX; LXIX.1
  Bardesanists, XXXV

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

- bare feet, LXVIII
- Basilidians, IV
- bible: Manichee views, XLVI.15
- bishops, LIII
  - Africa, LXIX.3
  - Manichee, XLVI.16
- Borborites, VI
- Caecilian, Bishop of Carthage, LXIX.1
- Caelestians, XLI, LXXXVIII.1
- Caelestius, LXXXVIII.1
- Cainites, XVIII
- Carpocrates, VI
- Carporatians, VII
- Castration, XXXVII
- Cataphrygians, XXVI, XXVII, LXXXVI
- Cathari, XXXVIII
- Catharists, XLVI.10
- celibacy, LXXII
- Cerdonians, XXI
- Cerinthians, VIII
- charity, See Love.
- chastity: vow of, LXXXVII
- children:
  - denial of original sin, LXXXVII.6
  - denied heaven, XLVII
- Chiliasts, VIII
- Church:
  - made perfect by lives of just persons, LXXXVIII.5
  - vanished from face of earth, LXIX.1
- Circumcellions, LXIX.4
- Colorbasus, XV
- Coluthians, LXV
- concupiscence: Manichee, XLVI.19
- Council of Nicaea, XLIV
- creation, II, V, XX
- Dactylorynchites, LXIII
- darkness: Manichee, XLVI.7
- depth (aeons), XI
- devil, LXI
- diet: Manichee, XLVI.11
- Donatians, LXIX.1
- Donatists, XLI, LXIX.1
- Donatus, LXIX.2
- dualism: Manichee, XLVI.19
- Easter: date, XXIX
- eating, LXXI
- Ebionites, X, XXXII
- Egypt, L
- Elcesaeans, XXXII
- Elcesaites, X
- Elci (false prophet), XXXII
- elect: Manichee, XLVI.16
- elements: darkness and light
  - (Manichee), XLVI.7
- Encratites, XXV, XL, LIII
- Epiphanius, X, XXII, XXVIII, XXXIII, XXXVII, LXXII, XLII, XLIII, XLV, LII, LIII, LVII, LXXXI
- eucharist, XVII, XXVI
- Manichee, XLVI.9
- Euchites, LVII
- Eunomians, LIV
- Euphemites, LVII
- Eusebia (Manichaean nun), XLVI.9
- Eusebius, X, XXII, LXXXIII
- faith, LXXXVIII.4
- fasting, LIII, LXXXII
- fire, LVII
- flesh: Manichee; evil, XLVI.19
- Florinians, LXVI
- free choice, LXXXVIII.2
- generation: Manichee, XLVI.13
- Gnostics, VI, XVII, LXXI
- God:
  - See also Jesus Christ; Son of God; Trinity
  - body (Tertullian), LXXXVI
  - good and evil; Manichee, XLVI.2-5
  - likeness of corruptible man
    - (Arian), L

Volume I/18
Arianism And Other Heresies

Old Testament; Manichee, XLVI.15
purified by Manichaeian Elect, XLVI.5
good and evil, XXIII, XLVI.2-5; 15
five evil elements (Manichee), XLVI.7
God and evil, LXV, LXVI
grace:
  merit and, LXXXVIII.4
  Pelagian view, LXXXVIII.2

Helvidians, LXXXIV
Heracleonites, XVI
heresy: statistics, LVII
Hermians, LIX
Hermogenians, XLI
Hieracites, XLVII
Hippo, LXXXVII
Holy Spirit, LII
creature, XLIX, LXXI
Manicheus as the Paraclete, XLVI.16
Pelagianism, LXXXVIII.2

human body:
  flesh created by devil, LXI
  image of God, LXXVI

human condition:
  Manichee view, XLVI.19

incarnation, XI, XXI
  Apollinarist view, LV
  flesh without soul (Arian), XLIX
Isaiah: barefoot, LXXVIII

Jerusalem, XXVII
Jesus Christ:
  See also Son of God
descent into hell, LXXIX
Manichee view, XLVI.15
mere man, XXXIII, XLIV
nativiy, XXI
passion:
  pain felt by divinity, LXXXIII
  suffering denied, XIV
Sabellian view, LXX.2
Sem, son of Noah, XIX
serpent, XVII
soul; Apollinarist view, LV

Jovinianists, LXXXII
Judas, XVIII
just persons: Church made perfect by, LXXXVIII.5

knowledge:
  gift of God (Pelagian), LXXXVIII.3
  pride in, LXXXVIII.3

life: Manichee, XLVI.12
light: Manichaean view, XLVI.6-8
liturgy: Church's prayers as meaningless, LXXXVIII.4
love: pride and, LXXXVIII.3
Luciferians, LXXXI
lust, XLVI.10

Macedonians, LII
Majorinus, Bishop, LXIX.2
Manicheaeus: Paraclete, XLVI.16
Manichees, XLVI.1-19, LXX.1
  Elect: twelve disciples, XLVI.16
Manis, XLVI.1
Marcion, XXII
Mark (heretic), XIV
marriage, XXXI, XXXVIII
  Jovinianist view, LXXXII
Manichee, XLVI.13
Priscillianist view, LXX.2
second marriages, XXVI
  vow of chastity, LXXXVII
Martyrians, LVII
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
  virginity, LVI, LXXXII, LXXXIV
Massalinans, LVII
Maximianus (of Carthage), LXIX.5
Maximilla (prophetess), XXVI, XXVII
meat:
  Manichee, XLVI.11, XLVI.12
  unclean, LXX.2
Melchizedekians, XXXIV
Melitians, XLVIII
Menandrians, II
Merinthians, VIII
Arianism And Other Heresies

merit, LXXXII
  grace and, LXXXVIII.4
Metangismonites, LVIII
millennium, VIII
monks: work, LVII
Montanus, XXVI, XXVII
Montenses, LXIX.3
moon, XLVI.18
Moses, XLVI.15, LXVIII

nakedness, XXXI
nature: Manichees and life, XLVI.12
Nazoraens, IX
new heaven, new earth, LXVII
Nicolaites, V, VI, XVII
Noetians, XXXVI
Novatians, XXXVIII

old law, IX
Ophites, XVII
Origen, LXXXIII
Origenists, XLII
original sin:
  denial of contracting by little children, LXXXVIII.6
paradise, XXXI
Parmenianists, XLI
Passalorynchites, LXIII
Paternians, LXXXV
Patricians, LXI
Patripassians, XLI
Paulians, XLIV
Pelagians, XLI, LXXXVIII.1-7
Pepuzians, XXVII, XXVIII
Persecution, X, XXXIII, XLVIII
Perseverance, LXXXVIII.4
Philaster, Bishop of Brescia,
  XLI, XLV, LIII, LVII,
  LXVII, LXXI, LXXX,
  LXXXI
Photinus, XLIV, XLV
Phrygia, XXVI
plants (botany): Manichee, XLVI.12
Praxeans, XLI

prayer:
  excessive, LVII
  pray without ceasing, LVII
priests: bishops and, LIII
Primanian, LXIX.5
Prisca (prophetess), XXVI,
  XXVII
Priscilla, XXVII
Priscillianists, LXX.1
Proclianites, LX
prostitute, I
Ptolemy, XIII
purification, LVII

Quintilla, XXVII
Quintillians, XXVII

resurrection of Jesus, VIII
resurrection of the body, XI,
  XVIII, XXIV, XLI,
  XLVII, LIX, LXVII
Rhetorius, LXXII
Rufinus, LXXXIII
Sabellians, XLI, LXX.2
Salvation, XI, XXV
Sampsaeans, X, XXXII
Satanians, LVII
Saturninians, III
schism, XLVIII, LXIX.5, LXXXI
Secundians, XII
Seleucians, LIX
Sem (son of Noah), XIX
Seminarians, LI, LII
serpent, XVII
Sethians, XIX
Severians, XXIV
sex, VIII
  human seed; Catharists, XLVI.10
silence, LXIII
silence (aeons), XI
Simon Magus, I
Simonians, I
sin:
  equality of all, LXXXII
  Eunomius on, LIV
origin (Manichee), XLVI.19

Volume I/18
smoke, XLVI.7;14
Son of God:
- born eternally, LXXX
- coeternal with the Father, LXXX
- creature, XLIX
soul(s), VI
- entering flesh; Manichee, XLVI.13
- generated from parents, LXXXI
- good and bad souls, XLVI.3
- Manichee: two souls, one good,
  one evil, XLVI.19
return; Manichee, XLVI.12
substance of flesh, LXXXI
Tertullian on, LXXXVI
wicked; turn into demons;
- animals, LXXVIII
Spain, LXXXI
stars, XV
suicide, LXXVII/4
sun, XLVI.18
Synerus, XXII

Tatians, XXV
Tertullian, LXXXVI
Tertullianists, LXXXVI
Tessarescedecatites, XXIX
Theodotians, XXXIII
Torah, XLVI.15
Trinity, XXXXVI
- Arian heresy, XLIX
- Donatus on, LXXI.2
- Eunomian heresy, LIV
- image of vessel (heresy), LVIII
- tripartite, LXXIV
universe: innumerable worlds,
- LXXXVII
Valentinians, XI, XII
Valentinus, XIV, XXXV
Valesians, XXXXVII
Venustians, LXXXV
Viator (Manichee), XLVI.10
virginity, LXXXII
water: coeternal with God, LXXV
wine, XXIV, XLVI.11
wine skins, LXII
women: priesthood, XXVII
word-less (Alogi), XXX
world: elements coeternal with
- God, LIX
zodiac, LXXXI

Epilogue
Abeloites, 2
heresy:
- Augustine states his limitations in
  this work, 1-3
- avoiding, with God's help, 3
Jerome, Saint, 2
Macedonians, 3
Photinians, 3
rule of faith, 3

Appendix
Apollinaris, III
Crysafius, IIIA
Dioscurus, Bishop of Alexandria, IIIA
Eutyches, IIIA
Eutychians, III-III A
Flavian (confessor), III A
Jesus Christ:
- Nestorian view, II
- single nature, I
- two natures, before the
  incarnation, IIIA
Manichaeus, III
Mary, Blessed Virgin: Nestorian
  view, IIIA
Nestorians, II-IIIA, III
Theodosius, Emperor, IIIA
Timotheans, I
Index from
Memorandum to Augustine
(Memorandum Augustinum)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Volume I/18

### Index of Scripture

*Prepared by Michael Dolan*

*(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)*

---

**Memorandum to Augustine and to Orosius**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Leviticus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Exodus</em> 28:43</td>
<td>16:19 5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>2 Maccabees</em> 7:28</td>
<td>16:34 5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Job</em> 1:22</td>
<td><em>Luke</em> 1:32-33 7,8; 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>1:33 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4-6</td>
<td><em>John</em> 5:26 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Psalms</em> 9:5</td>
<td>8:48 9,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>9:31 9,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td><em>Romans</em> 8:20 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Wisdom</em> 12:18</td>
<td>10:4 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sirach</em> 3:22</td>
<td>12:13 11,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:24</td>
<td>16:27 10,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Isaiah</em> 1:13</td>
<td>7,8; 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td><em>1 Corinthians</em> 15:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48</td>
<td><em>2 Corinthians</em> 11:10 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>New Testament</em></td>
<td><em>Colossians</em> 1:16 11,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Matthew</em> 5:17</td>
<td><em>2 Timothy</em> 1:9 5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td><em>Titus</em> 1:2 5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>5,5; 5,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Arianism And Other Heresies
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Memorandum to Augustine and to Orosius

Memorandum to Augustine on the Error of the Priscillianists and Origenists

Numbers refer to section numbers

angels, 2, 3
Avitus, 3
Basil, Saint, 3
creation, 3
eternity, 3
Eutropius, Bishop, 1
fire, 3
Jesus Christ:
   alone, he is Father, Son, Holy Spirit, 2
   passion, 2
Manichees, 2
Origen, 3
Orosius, 1-4
patriarchs, 2
Paul, Bishop, 1
Priscillian, 2, 3
sinner, 4
soul, 2, 3
Trinity, 2
Victorinus, 3
Zodiac, 2

Arianism And Other Heresies
Index from

Against the Priscillians and the Origenists

(Contra Priscillianistas et Origenistas)

Included in book:

Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

Prepared by Michael Dolan

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

**Memorandum to Augustine and to Orosius**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Leviticus</th>
<th>Leviticus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 28:43</td>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees 7:28</td>
<td>16:34</td>
<td>5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:22</td>
<td>1:32-33</td>
<td>7,8; 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 9:5</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>8,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>8:48</td>
<td>9,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,5</td>
<td>9:31</td>
<td>9,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3; 5,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom 12:18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach 3:22</td>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>7,8; 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11,14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 66:24</td>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6,7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 5:17</td>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>11,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>1:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,5; 5,5</td>
<td></td>
<td>5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>1:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6,7</td>
<td></td>
<td>5,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Volume I/18*

Arianism And Other Heresies
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Arianism And Other Heresies
Memorandum to Augustine and to Orosius

To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists

Numbers refer to section numbers

age: eternity; Greek terms, 5,5
angels, 8,9; 8,10; 8,11
heavenly array: choirs, 11,14
creation:
all present generically in each human being, 8,11

goodness of God, 8,9
made by will of God, 3,3
made of nothing, 2,2; 3,3
matter, 2,2
wisdom of God, 8,9
David, King, 7,8
devil, 5,5; 9,12
eternal fire, 5,5; 5,6; 6,7
eternity, 5,5; 5,6; 6,7
kingdom of Christ, 7,8
faith: measure granted to each, 11,14
fire, 6,7; 8,11
God:
See also creation
foreknowledge, 8,9
justice, 10,13
goodness: created world, 8,9
gospel: truth in, 9,12
growth: awareness of, 8,11
heaven: new heaven, new earth, 8,10
human beings:
all creation present in each, 8,11
creation groans and suffers pain in, 8,11
filth; sin, 9,12
human body:
formed from earth, 8,11
made of mud, 3,3
Jacob, 7,8
Jesus Christ:
accused: you have a devil, 9,12
king of all ages, 7,8
kingdom handed over to his Father, 7,8
teacher, 11,14
Job: sin; truth, 9,12
justice: highest; wisdom, 10,13
justification, 9,12
kingdom of Christ, 7,8
knowledge:
how to learn; concern, 11,14
Manichees, 1,1; 4,4
material cause, 3,3
moon, 9,12
movements, 8,11
new heaven, new earth, 8,10
Origen, 4,4
perfection: equality with angels, 8,10
Peter, Saint, 9,12
Priscillianists, 1-11
purification:
  resurrection of spiritual bodies, 8,10
resurrection of the body:
  all creation will be set free, 8,11
Sabellius, 4,4
senses, 8,11
sinner: justified, 9,12
soul:
  changeable, 1,1
  immortal, 1,1
  made from nothing, 2,2
originally the nature of God, 2,2
particle or emanation from God, 2,2; 4,4
stars, 8,11; 9,12
suffering: groans of creation, 8,11
Trinity: Origen on, 4,4
truth:
  Christ the teacher, 11,14
  Gospel; Job, 9,12
will:
  sufficient, when power is supreme, 3,3
will of God:
  not dust or mud, 3,3
  soul created by, 2,2; 3,3
wisdom:
  God’s creation, 8,9
  highest justice, 10,13
worm, 6,7

Arianism And Other Heresies
Index from
Against Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani
(Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

---

**Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani**

Revisions I, 22 (21)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>Galatians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>4:15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>John</th>
<th>Romans</th>
<th>Matthew</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>5:21,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:37</td>
<td></td>
<td>12:33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Manichean Debate
## The Manichean Debate

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Lines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6:6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-24</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>5, 1</td>
<td>17:16 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>2, 1</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18-20</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>3, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10-12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>12, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9-14</td>
<td>16, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>7, 1, 7, 4; 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:24</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:22-24</td>
<td>17, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>17, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:2-8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:14</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leavitic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:3-10</td>
<td>20, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23-24</td>
<td>13, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>13, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12-15</td>
<td>16, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:3</td>
<td>13, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>14, 1; 15, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15-16</td>
<td>14, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:1,3-4,6</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:9</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4-5</td>
<td>8, 17, 5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9-30</td>
<td>19, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:16</td>
<td>19, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:23</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6-7</td>
<td>5, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:1-29</td>
<td>13, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:72</td>
<td>19, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128:2-4</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:11-15</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-15</td>
<td>19, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>7, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>7, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>2, 2; 7, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7-9</td>
<td>19, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>17, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>7, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-2</td>
<td>28, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>28, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:4-5</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1:2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td>3:30</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:23</td>
<td>7, 5</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:11</td>
<td>7, 5; 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Lines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>20, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>19, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>19, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>17, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>9, 2; 28, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:34-35</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:38-40</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>17, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>7, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34:26</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>17, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:29</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Verses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>17-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>29-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>59-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18</td>
<td>29-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>37-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>37a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>37b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:22-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14:1-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:18-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:19-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:11-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:28-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15:39-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15:50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15:51-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15:53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## The Manichean Debate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bible Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colossians</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>15, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>5, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Thessalonians</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-20</td>
<td>15, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Timothy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>28, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>20, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Timothy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8-9</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hebrews</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>16, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani

The numbers in the index refer to chapters

A braham, Revisions I, 22(21):3; 5(1); 7(2); 16(1); 16(3); 28(2)
abstinence: in food and drink, 14(1)
A cts of the A postles, 17(5)
A dam, 3(1-2); 9(1-2); 21
adultery, 3(2)
A mos, the prophet, 26
angels:
  God appearing through, 9(1-2)
  seraphim, 28(1)
  wicked, 17(4); 27
animals:
  animal, body as, 12(4)
  clean vs. unclean, 14(2)-15(3)
  and eating meat, 14(1)-15(3)
  human soul thought to return in, 12(1)
ant, 24
apocryphal scriptures, 17(2); 17(5)
apostles, 17(5)
  See also: disciples; Paul; individual names
  Christ's directive to, 20(1)
  as preachers of the gospel, 20(1)
B abylonian captivity, 7(2)
barrenness:
  of the earth, 4
  of the fig tree, 4
beatiutudes, 27; 28(2)
beggars, 17(4)
belly, empty, 25
B elshazzar, King, 28(2)
blessings:
  promised to Jews, 18(1-2)
  spiritual and eternal, 18(1)-20(3)
  temporal, 18(1)-20(3)
blood:
  avoiding eating, 14(1)-15(3)
  as the soul, 12(1-3)
body, bodies:
  as animal, 12(4)
  flesh, destruction of, 17(2)
  flesh and blood shall not possess the kingdom of God, 12(1)
  killing, 12(1)
  resurrection of, 12(4)-12(5)
body of Christ, 12(4)
  for beggars, 17(4)
  breasts, dry, 25
  Cain, 4; 9(1)
children
  blessings on, 23
  honoring parents, 6-7(1)
  punished for sins of parents, 7(1-2)
  punishment of, 17(2)
Christ, See Jesus Christ
Christians
  See also specific topics
  blessings promised to, 18(1-2)
  and the Sabbath, 2(2)
Cicero, 11
  circumcision, 16(1-3)
circumcision, 16(1-3)
clean of heart, 28(2)
Commandments, Ten, Revisions I, 22(21):2
  Jesus as praising, 16(1)
  the two commandments to love God and neighbor, Revisions I, 22(21):2
1 Corinthians, Book of, 14(3)
creation, 1-5(2)
  seventh day of, 2(1)
  the Word, as ascribed to, 1
cross, taking up and following the Lord, 21
  crucifixion, 21
cruelty: justice vs., 7(1)
Daniel, 28(2)
David, 7(2); 17(6)
days, observances of, 16(3)
death:
  Christ as putting death to death, 21
  let the dead bury their dead, 6
  as punishment, 17(3); 22
demons, 14(3)
always loving one's enemies, 17(1)
Deuteronomy, Book of, 12(1); 13(1); 14(1); 14(3); 16(1); 18(1); 21
  See also specific topics
devil, 17(4); 21; 27
  handing man over to, 17(2)
dietary beliefs and practices:
  clean vs. unclean food, 14(2)-15(3)
  eating meat, 14(1)-15(3)

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

of Manichean Elect and Hearers, 15(2)
overeating, refraining from, 14(1)
disciples
See also apostles; individual names
at Emmaus, 13(3)
divorce, 3(2)
dreams, 28(2)
earth:
barrenness of, 4
as God’s footstool, 10
Easter, 16(3)
Elect, Manichean, 15(2)
Elijah, 17(5); 28(2)
Emmaus, 13(3)
enemies:
God as punishing, 7(1)
God’s promise of poverty to, 19(1)
killing, 17(1–6)
love for, 5(1); 17(1–6)
eternal fire. See hell
eunuchs, 3(4); 23
Eve, 3(1–2); 9(1–2); 21
evil
See also sin
bad tree/bad fruit, Revisions I, 22(21):4
God and, 26
I make peace and I create evils, 27
punishment and, 26
repaying, 8; 17(4–5); 17(5)
Exodus, Book of, 6–7(1); 8; 17(1)
eye for an eye, 8
eyes. See vision
Ezekiel, the prophet, 7(2); 27
family
See also children; parents
leaving, for sake of the kingdom of heaven, 3(1–3)
Father, God as. See God the Father
father and mother. See parents
feast days, 16(3)
fighting: Old Testament and, 20(3)
fig tree, 4
fire, 13(3); 17(5)
in the bush, Moses as seeing, 28(2)
Every tree that does not bear good fruit
will be ... cast into the fire, 26
I am a devouring fire, 13(3)
fire, eternal. See hell
flesh
See also body
destruction of, 17(2)
flesh and blood shall not possess the kingdom of God, 12(1); 12(4)
food. See dietary beliefs and practices
forgiveness of others, 7(5–8)
seventy times seven, 7(1)
fornication, 3(2); 11
free choice. See will
fruit, good and bad, Revisions I, 22(21):4; 26
Galatians, the, 25
Genesis, Book of, 1–5(2)
grass, 14(1)
God
See also specific topics
authority of, 17(5)
as creator, 1
goodness of, 7(3); 13(4); 22
humans as in image of, 5(1)
I am a devouring fire, 13(3)
inaccessible light, dwelling in, 10
as invisible, 28(1)
as jealous, 7(1); 7(4); 11; 13(1–4)
as loved for temporal gifts, 20(2)
love for, Revisions I, 22(21):2
mercy of, 11
seeing God, 28(1–2)
as seen by humans, 9(1–2)
severity of, 22
You have never heard his voice, 9(2)
gods, alien
See also idols
worship of, 11
good:
good tree producing good fruit, Revisions I, 22(21):4
God and, 26
17(5)
goodness of God, 13(4); 22
Old Testament, 7(3)
gospel: apostles as preachers of, 20(1)
grace, Revisions I, 22(21):4
healing on the Sabbath, 22
Hearers, Manichean, 15(2)
heaven, 10
hell, 26; 27
son of hell, Revisions I, 22(21):3
heretics: fire prepared for, 13(3)
Old Testament, 7(3)
gospel: apostles as preachers of, 20(1)
grace, Revisions I, 22(21):4
healing on the Sabbath, 22
Hearers, Manichean, 15(2)
heaven, 10
hell, 26; 27
son of hell, Revisions I, 22(21):3
heretics: fire prepared for, 13(3)
Holy Spirit, 1; 17(5); 28(2)
Hosea, 25
humans
See also specific topics
God as seen by, 9(1–2)
in image of God, 5(1)
idols, 11; 13(2)
idol-worshipers, punishment of, 17(2)
and loving one’s enemies, 17(1)
meat offered to, 14(2–3)
illegal: as punishment, 17(3)
image of God, 5(1)
images, likenesses and, 13(1)
invisible things, 28(1–2)
Isaac, 5(1)
Isaiah, Book of, 3(4)
Isaiah, the prophet, 27–28(1)

Volume I/19
vision of, 28(1–2)
Jacob, 9(1)
jealousy:
   God as jealous, 7(1); 7(4); 11; 13(1–4)
   justice and, 11
   in marriage, 11
Jerusalem, temple in, 10
Jesus Christ, 21
   See also specific topics and events
   genealogy of, 7(2)
   as putting death to death, 21
   resurrection of,28(21):3
   as Son of God, 1; 9(2)
   as Word of God, 9(2)
Jews
   See also specific topics
   blessings promised to, 18(1–2)
   blood, as forbidden to eat, 12(1)
   “brood of vipers,” as called, 5(1)
   and the Sabbath, 2(2)
   as sons of Abraham, 22(21):3
   You have never heard his voice, 9(2)
John, Gospel of, 13(2)
John the evangelist, 1; 13(2)
judge, unjust, parable of, 17(4)
judge, unjust, parable of, 17(4)
justice
   See also punishment
   cruelty vs., 7(1)
   peace and, 20(3)
   and punishment, 7(1)
language: as unworthy of God, 13(2)
law. See Commandments, Ten
Lazarus and the rich man, parable of, 19(1)
Leviticus, Book of, 20(1)
light: inaccessible, God as dwelling in, 10
likenesses and images, 13(1)
Lord’s Day, 16(3)
love:
   for enemies, 5(1); 17(1–6)
   for God and neighbor, 22(21):2
   punishment, imposing with love, 17(2–5)
   for spouse, 3(1–3)
Marire, oak of, 28(2)
man. See humans
Manicheans. See specific topics
marriage, 3(1–3)
   after resurrection, 25
   blessings on, 23
   Christ’s union with church, as illustrating, 3(3)
   divorce, 3(2)
   jealousy in, 11
   leaving, for sake of the kingdom of heaven, 3(1–3)
   love for spouse, 3(1–3)
to non-believers, 3(2)
   Your wife is like a flourishing vine, 23
meat, 14(1–5(3)
   offered to idols, 14(2–3)
meek, the, 19(1)
mercy of God, 11
miracles, 22
money-changers, 10
Moses, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 3(2); 9(1); 21; 25; 28(2)
Nebuchadnezzar, King, 28(2)
neighbor: love for, Revisions I, 22(21):2
New Testament
   See also specific topics
   Old Testament, as opposed to (Manichean charge), 7(1); 13(4)
   Old Testament, harmony with, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 19(2); 27
non-believers: marriage to, 3(2)
oak of Mamre, 28(2)
Old Testament
   See also specific Books and topics
   and God’s goodness, 7(3)
   New Testament, as opposed to (Manichean charge), 7(1); 13(4)
   New Testament, harmony with, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 19(2); 27
pagans, 13(2); 14(3)
   parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 19(1)
   parable of the unjust judge, 17(4)
   Paraclete, 17(5)
   paralytic, daughter of, 17(5)
parents
   children punished for sins of, 7(1–2)
   honoring, 6–7(1)
passivi, 24
Paul, the apostle, 10; 24
   See also specific topics
   teaching and example of, 20(1)
peace:
   Blessed are the peacemakers, 27
   God and, 20(3)
   I make peace and I create evils, 27
   and justice, 20(3)
Peter, 15(2); 17(5); 28(2)
Pharisees, 16(1)
poor, poverty
   See also beggars
   God promising to enemies, 19(1)
   passivi, 24
   poor in spirit, blessedness of, 19(1)
   possessions (riches), 18(1)–20(3)
Proverbs 3:13–15 woman, 19(2)
   prudence, 19(2)
punishment, 7(1–4)
   of children by parents, 17(2)
The Manichean Debate

children punished for sins of parents, 7(1–2)
death as, 17(3); 22
and evil, 26
handing man over to Satan, 17(2)
of idol-worshipers, 17(2)
imposing with love, 17(2–5)
justice and, 7(1); 26
weakness, illness, and death as, 17(3)
repentance, 7(3)
resurrection of Christ, Revisions I, 22(21):3
resurrection of the body, 12(4)–12(5)
morality and, 25
retaliation/revenge, 8; 17(4–5)
riches, 18(1)–20(3)
as given to friends of God, 19(1–2)
placing hope in riches vs. in God, 20(2)
rich man and Lazarus, parable of, 19(1)
rock: Christ as, 12(5)
Romans, Book of, 14(2)
Sabbath, 2(1)–2(2); 16(1); 16(3)
Christ healing man’s withered hand on, 22
working on, 22
sacrifice, meat as, 14(2–3)
Sarah, Revisions I, 22(21):2
Satan. See devil
Saul, King, 17(6)
scribes and Pharisees, 16(1)
scriptures
See also New Testament; Old Testament;
specific Books
apocryphal, 17(2); 17(5)
word of God, storing for times of adversity, 24
seed, lifeless, 25
seraphim, 28(1)
Sermon on the Mount, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 8;
27; 28(2)
serpent, 9(1–2); 21
seventy times seven, 7(1); 7(5)
sickness: as punishment, 17(3)
sight: seeing;
and invisible things, 28(1–2)
seeing God, 9(1–2); 28(1–2)
sin
See also punishment; repentance
children punished for sins of parents, 7(1–2)
I do not want the death of the sinner as much
as that he should return and live, 27
Solomon, 24
Son, Jesus Christ as. See under Jesus Christ: as
Son
“sons,” the term, Revisions I, 22(21):3
soul, souls:
blood as, 12(1–3)
human, as returning in animals, 12(1)
and killing of body, 12(1)
Stephan, 9(1)
tabernacle, 10
temple in Jerusalem, 10
temporal blessings, 18(1)–20(3)
Ten Commandments. See Commandments, Ten
Thomais, 17(2); 17(5)
Timothy, First Letter to, 20(2)
tomorrow, concern about, 4; 24
transfiguration, the, 28(2)
tree, trees:
Cursed is everyone who has been hanged on
a tree, 21
Every tree that does not bear good fruit
will be cut down, 26
fig tree, 4
good and bad, Revisions I, 22(21):4; 26
oak of Mamre, 28(2)
uprooting, 26
withering of, by Christ’s word, 22
Trinity, 1
Tully (Cicero), 11
unbelievers. See non-believers
unjust judge, parable of, 17(4)
vagrants, 24
vengeance, 8; 17(4–5)
vipers, 5(1)
vision, visions, 28(1–2)
war, 20(3)
weakness: as punishment, 17(3)
wealth. See riches
wedding, man not dressed for, 13(4)
widows, 24
wife
See also marriage
blessings on, 23
loving, 51(1–3)
Your wife is like a flourishing vine, 23
will, free: changing for the better, Revisions I,
22(21):4
wine, 14(1)–15(3)
wisdom, 19(2)
Word of God, 9(2)
See also Jesus Christ
creation ascribed to, 1
Let there be made, 1
word of God, storing for times of adversity, 24
See also scriptures
words: as unworthy of God, 13(2)
world:
end of, 7(2)
renouncing things of, 18(1–2)
worry, 4; 24
writing on the wall, 28(2)

Volume I/19
Index from
Against Felix, a Manichee
(Contra Felicem Manichaeum)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/19

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Answer to Felix, a Manichean

Revisions II, 8 (35)

New Testament

John
8:36

Old Testament

Genesis
1:1-2 I, 17

Exodus
3:14 II, 18

Deuteronomy
21:23 II, 10; II, 11

Psalms
34:6 II, 7
116:11 I, 6

Text

New Testament

Matthew
5:8 II, 7
7:17 II, 2
9:13 II, 8
12:33 II, 4
13:27-28 II, 2
25:34 II, 2; II, 8
25:41 II, 8
25:43a II, 2
25:43b II, 2

Luke
24:36 I, 3
24:37-49 I, 3

John
1:1-2 II, 9
1:5 II, 15

Acts
1:14 II, 9
16:7 I, 3; I, 9
16:13 I, 2; I, 10

Romans
5:20 II, 11
6:6 II, 11
7:12 II, 11
7:13 II, 11
7:23 II, 8
8:7 II, 2

1 Corinthians
13:8-12 I, 11
13:9 I, 9; I, 10

2 Corinthians
4:4 II, 2
12:7-8 II, 2

Galatians
3:13 II, 10; II, 11

1 Timothy
1:17 II, 7
4:1 I, 12
4:1-6 I, 7; I, 8
6:16 II, 7

1 John
1:5 II, 15
3:3 I, 12

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

Genesis, Book of, I:17
  goats, II:2
  God
    See also specific topics
    as dwelling in inaccessible light, II:7
    as eternal, I:18
    as Father, I:18
    as immutable, II:18
    as incorruptible, II:1, 7, 14
    as just, II:4
    Manichean concept of, II:9
  opposition to, I:19
  good:
    all natures as (Augustine), II:3
    evil, mingling with (Manichean concept), I:6
  good nature vs. evil nature (Manichean concept), II:2
  habits, II:8
  Holy Spirit, I:2
    See also Paraclete; specific topics
    fear and, I:12
    Manicheans and, I:5–6
    Paul and, I:7–10, 12
    and truth, I:10, 14
  humans
    See also specific topics
    change, capacity for, I:19
    as creatures God has made, II:16–21
    as not part of God, II:16–21
  incorruptibility of God. See under God: as incorruptible
  intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
  Jesus Christ, II:8
    See also specific topics
    crucifixion of, Manichean teaching regarding, II:10, 17
    as freeing us from death, I:19; II:11
    as freeing us from sin, I:19; II:8, 9, 11
    God sending, reason for, II:9–11
    John, Gospel of, I:2
    Judas, I:4
    justice: God as just, II:4
  knowledge:
    as partial in this life, complete in the next, I:11
    worldly, I:14
  law: Christ as freeing us from, I:10–11
  laws, imperial, I:12
  Leitus, Acts of, II:6
  lies, lying: Every human being is a liar, I:6–7
  light, inaccessible. God as dwelling in, II:7
  light, land of, I:17–19
  Luke, Gospel of, I:3
  Mani
    See also specific topics
    Augustine and Felix anathematizing, II:22
    and Christian doctrine, I:10
    claim of apostleship, I:1, 8, 12–13, 16
    Paraclete, as believed to be, I:9–10, 12
    writings of, I:5–6, 14 (see also specific titles)
  Manicheans
    See also specific topics and teachings, e.g., souls: as parts of God
    error of, truth vs., I:13
    God, concept of, II:9
    two natures, concept of, I:17; II:2
    marriage: Manichean prohibition of, I:7–8, 12
    martyrdom, I:12
    Matthias, I:4
    mercy of God, I:18
    moon, I:9–10, 12
    nations of light and darkness. See darkness, land of; light, land of
    natures: all natures as good (Augustine), II:3
    natures, two, II:2
    original sin, II:10, 11
  Paraclete
    See also Holy Spirit
    Mani as believed to be, I:9–10, 12
    Paul, the apostle, I:13
    See also specific topics
    as forseeing Manichean heresy, I:7
    and the Holy Spirit, I:7–10, 12
    Pentecost, I:5–6
    Peter, I:12
    prophecies: We know in part and we prophecy in part, I:11–12
    punishment, I:8
  repentance, I:11
  Satan. See devil
  scriptures
    See also specific topics
    apocryphal writings, II:6
    sexual intercourse, I:7–8, 12
    sin, I:18
    See also punishment; repentance
    Christ as freeing us from, I:19; II:9, 11
    the devil as sinner by will, II:6
    and evil nature (Manichean concept), II:3
    and free choice, II:3–5
    original, II:8, 11
    souls, I:18
    as mutable, II:18

Volume I/19
Volume I/19

as parts of God (Manichean concept), II:16–21
stars, I:14
sun, I:9–10, 12

time:
    beginning, middle, and end, I:6, 9–10, 12
    end time, I:6
    before good and evil were mingled, I:6
Timothy, First Letter to, I:7–8
Treasury, The (Mani), I:14; II:4
trees, two, II:2, 4
truth:
Holy Spirit and, I:10, 14
and Paul’s promise, I:13
vs. error of Mani, II:13
two natures, Manichean concept of, I:17; II:2
vessel, emptying, I:13
war: with nation of darkness, I:19; II:1
will. See free choice
wisdom of the flesh, II:2
Word of God, II:9
See also Jesus Christ
worldly knowledge, I:14

The Manichean Debate
Index from
Against Secundinus, a Manichee
(Contra Secundinum Manichaeum)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19
Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/19

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean

A Letter of Secundinus, a Manichean, to Augustine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>10:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47:29</td>
<td>Ephesians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean

Old Testament

Genesis
1:28  21
2:24  21
24:2-3  23

Psalms
149:5  4

Hosea
1:2  21

New Testament

Matthew
12:33  2
21:31  21

Luke
24:39  25

John
1:1  5
1:9  26, 2
1:12  5
1:14  5
14:9  7
20:27  25

Acts
10:13  22

Romans
1:25  6
2:10  2
5:3-4  10, 1

8:10-11  10, 2
8:15-23  5
8:20  8
8:32  5

1 Corinthians
4:3  1
15:35  10, 2
15:51  10, 2
15:52  10, 2
15:53  10, 2

Galatians
4:4  5

Ephesians
1:5  5
5:8  2, 26, 2
6:12  10, 1

Colossians
1:18  5

2 Thessalonians
2:12-13  5

1 Timothy
1:17  3
4:14  2
4:3  22

2 Timothy
4:3-4  26, 2

1 Peter
2:9  5

Volume I/19
# General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

A statement to Secundinus, a Manichean

The numbers in the indexes refer to sections

## A Letter of Secundinus, a Manichean, to Augustine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Academic</th>
<th>The, 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aeneid (Virgil)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A morites</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anicii, the</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Augustine as former Manichean Hearer</td>
<td>3; 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barrenness: of Sarah</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dares and Entellus</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darkness, land of (evil nature)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devil</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disciples. See individual names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elect, Manichean, Revisions II, 10(37)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entellus, Dares and</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eternal fire. See hell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evil</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evil nature, Manichean belief in</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire, eternal. See hell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgiveness of sin</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fornication</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goats</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannibal</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hearers, Manichean: Augustine as former</td>
<td>3; 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secundinus as, Revisions II, 10(37)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews, writings of</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hell</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## The Manichean Debate
Revisions II, 10(37)

sexual intercourse, 3

sin, 2

skeptics, 3

soul, 2

substances. See natures

Thomas, 4
two natures, Manichean belief in, 5–6

vices, 2

Virgil, 3

virgin, foolish, 2

virtues, 2

wedding banquet, man driven from, 2

wickedness. See evil; sin

Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean

Abraham, 23
adultery, 26(1)
angel, angels, 19(2)
  Jacob wrestling with, 23
  animals, 19(2)
  on the ark, 23
  clean or unclean, 22–23
  apostles. See Paul; individual names
  ark, animals on, 23
Augustine: as former Manichean Hearer, 1–2

beauty: temporal, 15
blasphemies of Manicheans, 20(1)
  body:
    mortality of, 10(2)
    soul as higher than, 16
Busirides, 26(1)

Catholic faith, 5
change, 6

children: conception of, 21
Christ. See Jesus Christ
 Christians, Christian beliefs. See specific
topics, e.g., free choice
conception, 21
consent of soul to evil, 13–19(2)
  and persuasion, 17
creation:

reincarnation, 5
repentance, 2
Roman history, 3

Sarah, 3
Satan, 4
savior, Manichean concept of: as spiritual, vs.
someone who suffered in the flesh, 4

Secundinus, Revisions II, 10(37)

sexual intercourse, 3

sin, 2

skeptics, 3

soul, 2

substances. See natures

Thomas, 4
two natures, Manichean belief in, 5–6

vices, 2

Virgil, 3

virgin, foolish, 2

virtues, 2

wedding banquet, man driven from, 2

wickedness. See evil; sin

The Manichean Debate

Hortensius (Cicero), 3

Incarnation, the, 5

intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse

Jacob, 3
Jesus Christ, 4
Judas, 4

Lions, 3

Manicheans
  See also Elect; Hearers; specific topics
  Augustine as former, 3; 5
  two natures, belief in, 5–6
  Mithridates, 3

natures, two, Manichean belief in, 5–6
Noah, 3

pancarp, 3
Peter, 4

princes and powers, 1
Punic nation, 2

Roman history, 3

Sarah, 3
Satan, 4
savior, Manichean concept of: as spiritual, vs.
someone who suffered in the flesh, 4

Secundinus, Revisions II, 10(37)

sexual intercourse, 3

sin, 2

skeptics, 3

soul, 2

substances. See natures

Thomas, 4
two natures, Manichean belief in, 5–6

vices, 2

Virgil, 3

virgin, foolish, 2

virtues, 2

wedding banquet, man driven from, 2

wickedness. See evil; sin

Asklepios, 23
adultery, 26(1)
angel, angels, 19(2)
  Jacob wrestling with, 23
  animals, 19(2)
  on the ark, 23
  clean or unclean, 22–23
  apostles. See Paul; individual names
  ark, animals on, 23
Augustine: as former Manichean Hearer, 1–2

beauty: temporal, 15
blasphemies of Manicheans, 20(1)
  body:
    mortality of, 10(2)
    soul as higher than, 16
Busirides, 26(1)

Catholic faith, 5
change, 6

children: conception of, 21
Christ. See Jesus Christ
 Christians, Christian beliefs. See specific
topics, e.g., free choice
conception, 21
consent of soul to evil, 13–19(2)
  and persuasion, 17
creation:
as not an evil nature or the love of an evil nature, 18
as not a substance, 14
of sin, 19
soul as consenting to, 13–19(2)
as substance (Manichean concept), 12
whole of, 19(2)
evil nature or substance, Manichean concept of, 9; 20(1–2)
soul and, 9
failure, 11
evil as failure on the part of a substance, 14–15
and punishment, 15
and sin, 15
voluntary and other, 15
Father, God as
See also God
immutability of, 9
firstborn: Christ called by Secundinus, 5–7
fornication, 21
Foundation, The (Mani), 3; 20(1–2)
free choice:
and consent, 13–19(2)
evil found in mutable will vs. immutable nature, 2
sin and (Christian vs. Manichean concepts), 12
Free Will (Augustine), 11
generosity, 10(1)
glory: glory, honor, and peace be to everyone who does good, 2
God
See also specific topics, e.g., creation as highest good, 19(2)
imitation of, 10(1)
as immutable, 9; 19(2); 26(2)
as incorruptible, 19(2)
Manichean concept of, 20(1)–22
nothing as contrary to, 10(1)
substance of, 19(2); 26(2)
good:
creation as, 10(1)
glory, honor, and peace be to everyone who does good, 2
God as highest, 19(2)
Manicheans as locating good in evil and evil in good, 20(1)
good nature: as becoming evil by sinning, 18
happiness, 19(2)
Hearers, Manichean:
Augustine as former, 1–2
Secundinus as, Revisions II, 10(37)
highest good, 19(2)
honor: and all who do good, 2
Hosea, 21
human beings
See also specific topics, e.g., body, soul
all creation as found in, 8
as mutable creatures, 26(2)
rational creatures, 19(2)
immortality, 10(2)
immutability of God. See under God: as immutable
incest, 26(1)
incorruptibility of God. See under God: as incorruptible
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
Jacob, 23
Jesus Christ
See also specific topics
birth of, 9
divine nature of, 5–6
human nature of, 5–6
Secundinus’ claims regarding, 3–11
“spiritual savior,” Manichean concept of, 25
Jews, 26(1)
light, true, 26(2)
light of minds, 2
lights: Christ as “king of all the lights,” 3–11
light vs. darkness. See two substances, Manichean concept of
love:
for creature over creator, 17
for God, 19(2)
loving a good substance wrongly, 16
man. See human beings
Mani, 25
writings of (see specific works)
Manicheans
See also Elect; Hearers; specific topics, e.g., evil
Augustine as former, 1–2
Augustine’s reason for leaving, 1–2
Paul’s predictions regarding, 2
small number of, 26(1)
marrige, 22
Mary, 9; 22
meat, 22
Medea, 26(1)
mortality, 10(2)
mutability, 19(2)
See also specific topics, e.g., creatures, soul
nature (substance)
See also substance

The Manichean Debate
evil found in mutable will vs. immutable nature, 2

two, Manichean concept of (see two substances)

Noah, 23

nothing: all else but God as made from, 10(1)
creation as made out of, 8; 10(1)
creatures as tending toward nothing when they sin, 8
failure as tending toward, 11

obedience to God, 19(2)
Old Testament, 21; 26(1)
Orchi, 26(1)

pain. See suffering
Paul, the apostle, 26(1)
See also specific topics
predictions regarding the Manicheans, 2
writings to Timothy, 2
Paulinus, 12
peace: glory, honor, and peace be to everyone who does good, 2
persuasion, 17
Phaedra, 26(1)
Pharisees, 21
plants, 19(2)
on the ark, 23
power, 10(1)
all power as from God, 10(1)
princes and powers, 10(1)
prostitutes, 21
Hosea as marrying prostitute, 21
punishment for sin, 19(2)
failure and, 15
pains and difficulties as, 11

rational creature, 19(2)
resurrection of the body: and immortality, 10(2)
righteousness, 10(1)

saints, 26(1)
Sarah, 22–23
Satan. See devil
savior. Spiritual savior,” Manichean concept of, 25
Secundinus, Revisions II, 10(37)
sexual intercourse, 22
sin, 8; 19(2)
See also evil; free choice; punishment

Christian vs. Manichean concepts, 12
creatures as tending toward nothing when they sin, 8
devil and, 24
the devil and, 17
failure and, 15
freedom from suffering despite, 10(2)
and free choice (Christian vs. Manichean concepts), 12
good nature as becoming evil by sinning, 18
number of sinners vs. number of saints, 26(1)
soul:
evil and consent, 13–19(2)
and evil nature, Manichean concept of, 9
as higher than body, 16
as mutable, subject to change, 8–9; 24
as part of God, Manichean concept, 19(2)
substance:
the devil and, 17
evil as not, 14
as good, 14
loving a good substance wrongly, 16
regarding the soul, evil, and consent, 13–19(2)
substance of God, 19(2)
substances, two, Manichean concept of. See two substances
suffering, 10(1–2); 19
soul, 16
temporal things, 15
Thomas, 25
time, 6
Timothy: Paul’s writings to, 2
truth: light of minds, 2
two substances or natures, Manichean concept of, 3, 18
See also evil nature or substance

unhappiness, 19(2)

vanity, 8
violence, 10(1)

will, See free choice
wisdom, 10(1)
Word of God
See also Jesus Christ as immutable, 9
Index from
Against the “Foundation Letter” of Mani
(Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.

New City Press of the Focolare
www.newcitypress.com
Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael Dolan)
The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>38, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>42, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-8</td>
<td>9, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-13</td>
<td>9, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>37, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24-25</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Manichean Debate
Volume I/19

General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation

The numbers in the index refer to sections

Acts of the Apostles, 6(5); 10(9)
Manichean rejection of, 11(10)
Adam, 14(12); 43(37)
angels, 34(31)
animals:
  memory of, 20(17)
  sexual practices of, 35(32)
apostles
  See also Paul; individual names
  apostleship, 7(6)–9(8)
  Mani’s claim of apostleship, 6(5)–9(8)
Pentecost, 10(9)–11(10)
ascension of Jesus, 11(10)
beauty, 39(35)
of temporal order, 47(41)–48(42)
Bema, feast of, 9(8)
birds, 31(28)
body:
  nature of God and, 20(15)–22(21)
sensation, 20(16)
  and soul, nature of, 20(16)–22(21)
bright and holy land. See nature of God, Manichean beliefs regarding
Carthage, 20(18)
Catholic Church
  See also specific topics, e.g., Holy Spirit
  anthropomorphism of some believers, 25(23)
  authority of, 5(4)–6(5)
Christianity: and Catholicism, 5(4)–6(5)
corruption:
  evil as, 39(35)–47(41)
  nature as, 39(35)
as not from God, 44(38)–46(40)
purpose of, 43(37)–45(39)
darkness
  See also darkness, land of (below)
of “nation of darkness” vs. of earth, 35(32)
as not a nature, 34(31)
as one of five natures (see five natures in land of darkness)
darkness, land of
  See also light vs. darkness
  as corporeal, 22(20)
five natures in, 19(15); 31(28)–37(34); 40(35)
human inhabitants as good and from God (Augustine), 32(29)–38(34)
sides of in relation to land of light, 22(20)–30(27); 49(43)
death, 47(41)
disciples. See apostles; Pentecost
dreams, 20(17)
elements, five. See five natures in land of darkness
Epicurus, 20(18)
Eve, 14(12)
evil
  See also corruption; sin
  as corruption, 39(35)–47(41)
  God and, 41(36)
  I make good things and create evil ones, 45(39)
as not a nature/substance, 29(27); 41(36); 49(43)
as opposed to nature, 41(36)
evil land. See darkness, land of
feast days, 9(8)
fire, 33(30)
  See also five natures in land of darkness
  fish, 31(28)
five natures or elements in land of darkness, 19(15); 31(28)–37(34); 40(35)
fog. See smoke
Foundation, Letter of (Mani). See Letter of the Foundation
geoese, 35(32)
God
  See also specific topics, e.g., evil, soul
  as highest good, 42(37)–43(37); 48(42)
  nature of, Manichean beliefs regarding, 20(15)–22(21); 25(24)–27(25);
  48(42)–49(43)
  natures created by, 42(37)–45(39)
  providence, divine, 9(8)
good:
  created and uncreated, 34(31)
  God as highest, 42(37)–43(37); 48(42)
  inhabitants of land of darkness as (Augustine), 32(29)–38(34)
  lower goods and higher goods, 34(31)
gospel, 6(5)
Hearers, Manichean, 9(8)

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

The Manichean Debate: Volume I/19
sun: The sun of justice, 2(2)

temporal natures, 47(41)
beauty of, 47(41)–48(42)
touch (sensation), 20(16)
Trinity, 7(6)–8(7); 34(31)
truth
See also knowledge of truth
claims to, renouncing, 4(3)
difficulty seeing, 2(2)
two substances, Manichean belief in. See darkness, light

ugliness, 39(35)
virgin birth, the, 8(7)–9(8)
waters, 33(30)
   See also five natures in land of darkness
weakness, 39(35)
winds, 33(30)
   See also five natures in land of darkness
wisdom, 5(4)
wisdom of God, 7(6)
Word of God, 7(6)
Index from

Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichee

(Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum)

Included in book:

The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Volume I/19

### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

**A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td><strong>Matthew</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>3:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>10:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td><strong>John</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The Manichean Debate
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean

The numbers in the index refer to sections

A dam, 22
adoption, 28–29
angels, Revisions I, 16(15):2
wicked, 23
apostles, 22–23
See also Paul
Augustine: as former Manichean Hearer, 1; 3; 37

body, bodies:
flesh, wisdom of, 21–22
incorruptible and immortal, Revisions I, 16(15):2
vs. soul, 14; 17

Catholic faith, the, 9
See also specific topics
children of wrath, 17
Christ. See Jesus Christ
clay pot, 26
commandments, two, Revisions I, 16(15):2
covetousness, 21

darkness vs. light, 14
David, 19

death:
law of sin and death, 22
souls as cast down to, 3–4; 6–9
vs. life, 14
death and resurrection of Christ, 7–8
devil, 23
disciples, 22–23
Elect, Manichean, 3
Ephesians, Letter to, 16–17
evil
See also sin; two substances, question of
as foreign to God, 19–20
God as not suffering, 15–16
God as preventing, 15–16
Manichean vs. Catholic beliefs regarding, 19–20
source of, Revisions I, 16(15):1; 21
evil substance or nature, Manichean belief in, 21
See also two substances
sin and, 20
faith:
Catholic, 9
of Fortunatus, 3
flesh:
Flesh and blood shall not possess the kingdom of God, 19
wisdom of, 21–22
forgiveness of sin, 16–17
Fortunatus, Revisions I, 16(15):1
faith of, 3
free choice, 15; 17; 20–22
sin and, Revisions I, 16(15):2
soul and, 25
vs. nature, 22

God
See also specific topics
all things as existing in, 4–6
as “cruel” in sending the soul, 28; 32
everything existing as result of command by, 13–14
evil, as not suffering, 15–16
evil, as preventing, 15–16
as incorruptible, 6–7; 9; 11–12; 20
love for, Revisions I, 16(15):2
necessity, as not subject to, 26–28
our reconciliation with, 16–17
God, substance of (Manichean belief), 11
other substance besides, question of, 14
good, substance or nature of. See two substances, question of
gospel, 19
grace, 22

Hearers, Manichean: Augustine as former, 1; 3; 7
Holy Spirit (Paraclete), 23

Incarnation, the, 9
incorruptibility of God, 6–7; 9; 11–12; 20

Jesus Christ, 3; 9; 12
See also specific topics
David as ancestor of, 19
death and resurrection of, 7–8
the Incarnation, 9
Manichean beliefs regarding, 20–21
as redeeming us, 16–17
as savior, 3; 12; 18
as servant, 7

Lambs, 22–23
Life: vs. death, 14
light vs. darkness, 14
love: for God and neighbor, Revisions I, 16(15):2

Manicheans, 2
See also Elect; Hearers; specific topics
Augustine as former Hearer, 1; 3

nature: will vs., 22
natures. See substances
neighbor: love for, Revisions I, 16(15):2
original sin, 22
Paraclete, 23
Paul, the apostle, 19
See also specific topics
penance, 17
Philippians, Letter to, 7
potter, 26
principalities and powers, 22–23
punishment for sin, Revisions I, 16(15):1–20
repentance, 20
resurrection of Christ, 7–8
Romans, Letter to, 19
savior, 3; 12; 18
See also Jesus Christ
servanthood of Christ, 7
sin
See also evil; forgiveness; free choice;
penance; punishment; repentance
and free choice, Revisions I, 16(15):2; 17
God as not making, 15
law of sin and death, 22
original, 22
soul and (Manichean belief), 21
soul, souls:
angels and, Revisions I, 16(15):2
as cast down to death, 3–4; 6–9
as changeable, 11
Christ’s death and resurrection and, 7–8
and free choice, 25
God as “cruel” in sending, 32
God’s reason for sending, 24–36
as made by God, Revisions I, 16(15):2;
11–14
Manichean beliefs regarding, 20
as needing deliverance, 6; 11
as not God, 11–14
question of, 11–14
sin and (Manichean belief), 21
as sinful, 11
vs. body, 14–17
substance of God, soul as (Manichean belief),
See God, substance of
substances, two, question of, 14; 18
See also evil substance
trees:
evil tree, 21
good and bad, 22
truth: vs. lies, 14
two substances (natures), question of, 14; 18
See also evil substance
will, See free choice
wolves, 22–23

Word of God, 3
See also Jesus Christ
wrath, children of, 17

The Manichean Debate
Index from

On the Catholic and the Manichean Ways of Life

(De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum)

Included in book:

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

### The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life

#### Revisions I, 6 (7)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:5</td>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>Matthew 6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 4:24</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Ephesians 5:25.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 42:22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td>I, 10, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:5</td>
<td>I, 30, 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 19:18</td>
<td>I, 28, 57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 4:24</td>
<td>I, 30, 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>I, 16, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The Manichean Debate
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th>16:32</th>
<th>I, 23, 43</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>I, 21, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12-20</td>
<td>I, 17, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:3-4</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>I, 16, 28; I, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:18-19</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>I, 23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:32</td>
<td>I, 28, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>I, 23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>II, 7, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<p>| Matthew     | 6:24  | I, 24, 44 |
|            | 7:6   | I, 18, 33 |
|            | 7:7   | I, 17, 31 |
|            | 10:26 | I, 17, 31 |
|            | 11:27 | I, 16, 28 |
|            | 15:11 | I, 33, 71; II, 14, 31 |
|            | 19:19 | I, 26, 49 |
|            | 22:37 | I, 8, 13 |
|            | 22:38-37 | I, 11, 18 |
|            | 22:39 | I, 28, 57 |
|            | 24:42 | I, 24, 45 |
|            | 25:13 | I, 24, 45 |
|            | 26:9-14 | I, 24, 45 |
| Mark        | 13:33.35.37 | I, 24, 45 |
| Luke        | 2:14  | II, 7, 10 |
|            | 11:9  | I, 17, 31 |
|            | 12:2  | I, 17, 31 |
|            | 12:49 | I, 30, 64 |
|            | 16:13 | I, 24, 44 |
|            | 21:36 | I, 24, 45 |
| John        | 1:3   | I, 16, 27 |
|            | 1:4   | I, 16, 27 |
|            | 1:18  | I, 16, 28 |
|            | 8:36  | II, 11, 22 |
|            | 12:35 | I, 24, 45 |
|            | 14:6  | I, 13, 22; I, 16, 28 |
|            | 17:3  | I, 25, 47 |
| Romans      | 1:25  | I, 24, 44 |
|            | 5:3-4 | I, 23, 42 |
|            | 5:5   | I, 13, 23; I, 16, 29 |
|            | 8:20  | I, 13, 23 |
|            | 8:28  | I, 8, 13; I, 13, 22; I, 26, 50 |
|            | 8:35  | I, 8, 13 |
|            | 8:36  | I, 9, 14 |
|            | 8:38-39 | I, 11, 18 |
|            | 11:36a | I, 14, 24 |
|            | 11:36b | I, 14, 24 |
|            | 12:2  | I, 21, 39 |
|            | 13:8  | I, 28, 56 |
|            | 13:10 | I, 26, 50 |
|            | 13:14 | II, 14, 31 |
|            | 14:1-15:3 | II, 14, 32 |
|            | 14:2-4 | I, 33, 71 |
|            | 14:6  | I, 33, 71 |
|            | 14:12-14 | I, 33, 71 |
|            | 14:14 | II, 14, 35 |
|            | 14:15 | I, 33, 71 |
|            | 14:20 | II, 14, 35 |
|            | 14:21 | I, 33, 71; II, 14, 31 |
| 1 Corinthians | 1:23-24 | I, 13, 22 |
|            | 1:24  | I, 29, 59 |
|            | 5:6   | I, 24, 45 |
|            | 6:11  | I, 34, 78 |
|            | 6:12  | I, 33, 72 |
|            | 6:12-7:7 | I, 34, 78 |
|            | 6:13  | I, 33, 71 |
|            | 7:7   | I, 34, 79 |
|            | 7:14  | I, 34, 79 |
|            | 8:4-13 | II, 14, 33 |
|            | 8:8   | I, 33, 71 |
|            | 10:19-25.28-11:1 | I, 14, 34 |
|            | 11:19 | I, 17, 30 |
|            | 15:22 | I, 19, 35 |
|            | 15:47-49 | I, 19, 36 |
|            | 15:54 | I, 30, 64 |
|            | 15:56 | I, 30, 64 |
| 2 Corinthians | 4:16  | I, 19, 36; I, 34, 80 |
|            | 4:18  | I, 20, 37 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biblical Books</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:10, 21, 38, 5:9, 24, 45, 5:13, 11, 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>3:14-19, 1, 18, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>2:8a, 1, 21, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>2:8b, 1, 21, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>1 Timothy, 1, 19, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>1:15, 1, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life

The first number in the Index refers to a Book.
The number after the colon refers to a paragraph

aborted fetuses, II:14(9), 18, 61
abstinence, dietary. See dietary beliefs and practices
abstinence, sexual. See continence
Adam, II:72–73
parents of, Manichean concept of, II:73
agriculture, II:62
animals, II:12–18
See also dietary beliefs and practices; specific animals
killing, Manichean beliefs regarding, II:54(17), 59–64
seed of, II:66
souls of, II:50, 53
wild animals, II:11(8)
apostles
See also Paul
abstinence practiced by, II:28
testimony of, I:12
apples, II:57
ashes, II:12
asp, II:17
Athens, wicked woman of, II:12–13
Augustine:
Elect, personal observations of, II:68–74(20)
as former Manichean Hearer, I:33(18); II:25(12), 68–74(20)
authority: reason and, I:3, 24(14), 47
bedbugs, II:63–64
bees, II:63–64
beetles, Revisions I, 6(7):8; II:63
beggars, II:36(15), 53, 58
Bible. See scriptures
birds, II:12–18, 50
bishops, I:69(32)
blasphemy of Manicheans, Augustine on,
II:20(11), 23, 27(13)
blindness, II:13–18
body, human:
as afflicting soul, I:40(22)
as creature, I:20(12)
highest good of, I:7(5)
human beings as soul and body, I:52(27)
as humans’ greatest chain, I:40(22)
loving, human habit of, I:40(22)
Manichean beliefs regarding, II:43
medicine for, I:52(27)
presence of God in, II:43
“sensible things,” I:37(20)
and soul, I:6(4)–10
substance of good escaping from, over
time (Manichean belief), II:43
branches of trees, II:45
bread, II:12
beggars and, II:36(15), 53
bread, seal of, II:65(18)–66
See also seals, three, Manichean doctrine of

cardinal virtues. See virtues, cardinal
Catholic Church, Catholics:
The Manichean Debate

and faith, levels of, I:17
and God, I:64
good lives lived by, I:75
Manichean recruitment of, I:80
Manicheans as attacking, I:75
Manicheans compared to, I:74(34)–75
misconduct in, I:75–77
and Old Testament, I:16(10)
as true faith, I:32–34
as “truest mother of Christians,”
I:62(30)–64
Catholic teaching. See specific topics, e.g.,
authority: reason and
Catiline, I:28
celibacy. See continence; virginity
chastity. See continence; virginity
children:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
procreation of, I:78; II:65(18)
Chosen (Elect), Manichean. See Elect
Christ. See Jesus Christ: specific topics
Christian ideals: in Old and New Testaments,
I:2
Christians:
Catholic Church called “truest mother” of,
I:62(30)–64
Manicheans called non-Christians,
I:62(30)
cities: men and women religious in, I:70(33)
color, II:39–53
Commandments, Ten, I:12
See also law
the first commandment, I:18(11)
to love God and neighbor,
I:48(26)–52(27), 56–59(29), 62(30)
common life (monasteries), I:67
concupiscence, I:41
and abstinence from food, II:51
continence. Revisions 1, 6(7):1; I:2; II:28
life devoted to, I:64–68
in marriage, I:79
of Paul, I:79
conversion of the nations, I:12
corruption, II:7(5)–8(6), 11(8)
covetousness, I:35(19)–36
creator, God as, II:8(6)–10
of natures/substances, II:3, 8(6)
creatures:
body as, I:20(12)
Holy Spirit as not a creature, I:28
soul as, I:20(12)
curiosity:
about this world, I:38(21)
temperance and, I:38(21)
darkness, I:13–17
darkness, kingdom of, II:5(3), II:8(18),
24–25(12)
See also evil nature or substance
deacons, I:69(32)
deafness, II:14(9)
death:
evil and, II:14(9)–15
fear of, I:40(22)
good as fleeing from living things after
(Manichean belief), II:45
and love for God, I:18(11)
deceit, deception, I:28
demons: sent into herd of pigs, II:54(17)–55
deterrence: fear and, I:56
dietary beliefs and practices:
gluttony, II:28–30
God as present in foods that are a source
of strength, II:48
God’s presence evident from color, smell,
taste, II:39–53
good as abandoning picked/stored fruits
and vegetables, II:47
grains and fruit, II:36(26)
idols, meat sacrificed to, II:33–34
Manichean, I:67; II:27(13)–53
Manichean Elect, digestive processes and
“divine nature,” II:36(15), 50–52, 60
meat as unclean product of sexual
intercourse, II:37, 49
Paul on, II:31(14)–35
temperance and, I:72–73
digestive processes, “divine nature,” as
escaping through, II:36(15)–53
disciples. See apostles
discipline. See punishment
“divine nature”:
as escaping through digestive processes of
the Manichean Elect, II:36(15),
50–52, 60
motion as allowing to escape (Manichean
belief), II:46
divine providence. See providence, divine
donkey, I:17
drinking. See dietary beliefs and practices
drunkenness, II:35
dung, I:12, 63
eagles, I:12–13, 17, 50
earth, I:13
East, the, I:65(31)
Egypt, I:65(31)
elderly, the. See old people
Elect, Manichean
See also specific topics
Augustine’s personal observations (as
former Hearer) of, II:68–74(20)
“divine nature” as escaping through
digestive processes of, II:36(15),
50–52, 60
grains and fruits to be eaten by, II:36(15)
incorrigibility of, II:57–63, 68–74(20)
lust of, I:70–73
quarreling among, II:71

Volume I/19
The Catholic Way of Life & the Manichean Way of Life

three seals, house for living life of, III:74(20)

virgin made pregnant, incident of, III:72

eternal fire. See hell

eternal life: love for God and, I:47

evil, II:2(2), 5(3), 7(5)–8(6)

See also sin

corruption, II:7(5)–8(6), 11(8)

death and, II:14(9)–15

and exile, II:14(9)–15

and fecundity, II:14(9)–15

God and, II:3

as privation, not essence, II:6(4)

root of, I:35(19)–36

and slavery, II:14(9)–15

and sterility, II:14(9)–15

suffering and, II:14(9)

as that which does harm, II:5(3)–6(4), 16

and unsuitability, II:16

weakness and, II:14(9)–15

evil nature or substance, Manichean concept of, II:2(2), 11(8)–18

See also darkness, kingdom of excrement, II:12

exile, II:14(9)–15

eyes:

blindness, II:13–16

weakness of, II:17

faith: levels of, I:17

family: and the Catholic Church, I:63

farmers, II:62

fasting

See also dietary beliefs and practices

by men and women religious, I:70(33)–72

monks and, I:67

passions, subduing through, I:67, 70(33)–72

fear:

and the Catholic Church, I:63

death, I:40(22)

deterrence and, I:56

of labor and pain, I:40(22)

in the Old Testament, I:56

fecundity, II:14(9)–15

fetuses, aborted, II:14(9), 18, 61

tree Christ cursing, II:54(17)

tree, fire, II:11(8)–14(9)

eternal (see hell)

God as consuming fire, I:64

fleas, II:63–64

flesh (meat). See dietary beliefs and practices; meat

flowers, II:39–53

food. See dietary beliefs and practices

ornamentation, I:78

fortitude, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:25(15), 40(22)–43

See also power

and love for God, I:46(25)

four cardinal virtues. See virtues, cardinal

free choice, II:9(7)

fruit, II:36(15), 39–53

glory: to him be glory, I:24(14)

gluttony, II:28–30

God

See also knowledge of God; Trinity; specific topics

and the Catholic Church, I:64

as consuming fire, I:64

as creator (see creator, God as)

divine providence, I:11–12; II:9(7)–10

and evil, II:3

as God of Old and New Testaments, I:30(17)

as highest good, I:33(8), 18(11), 24(14), 46(25); II:1(1), 8(6), 24

as immutable, I:21, II:5(3)

as incorruptible, I:25(12)–26

as inviolable, I:25(12)–26

as light, I:18(11)

love for (see love for God)

nature of, I:17; II:1(1), 5(3), 20(11)–26

of Old Testament, I:16(10)

as one, I:24(14)

pursuit of, I:10–11, 18(11)

seeing God, I:11

substance of (see under God: nature of, above)

good

See also highest good

Catholic doctrine and, II:6(4)

good nature or substance, Manichean concept of

See also specific topics

in bodies, as escaping over time, II:43

as fleeing from living things after death, II:45

as leaving picked/stored fruits or vegetables, II:47

good will: and love for neighbor, I:51

gospel, I:13(8)

See also New Testament

grains, II:36(15), 39–53, 66

See also dietary beliefs and practices

grapes, II:44

hands, seal of, II:54(17)

See also seals, three, Manichean doctrine of happiness:

and love for God, I:4–5, 18(11)

and pursuit of God, I:18(11)

harm. See evil

hawks, II:12

Hearers, Manichean

See also Elect; specific topics

The Manichean Debate
The Catholic Way of Life & the Manichean Way of Life

Augustine as former, II:25(12), 68–74(20)
and seal of the breast, II:65(18)–66
heaven. See eternal life
hell, Revisions I, 6(7):8
hermits, I:64–67
highest good
See also God
God as, I:13(8), 18(11), 24(14), 46(25);
II:1(1), 8(6), 24
of a human being, I:4–10, 24(10), 46(25)
Holy Spirit
See also Trinity; specific topics
as God, I:23, 28
and love of God, I:23
as not a creature, I:28
human person
See also specific topics
highest good of, I:4–10, 24(10), 46(25)
and living well, I:46(25)
as soul and body, I:6(4)–10, 52(27)
husbands
See also marriage
and the Catholic Church, I:63
idols: meat sacrificed to, II:33–34
immortal, God as. See under God: as
immutable
Incarnation of the Son of God, I:12
innocence, I:54
insects, II:63–64
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
Jesus Christ
See also specific topics and events
the Incarnation, I:12
and love of God, I:22(13)
No one comes to the Father except
through me, I:28
as power of God, I:22(13), 27–28
as truth, I:22(13), 28
as wisdom of God, I:22(13), 27–28, 31
Job, I:42(21)
judgment by God, II:9(7)
justice, I:28(15)
God, in relation to, I:4(24)
and love for God, I:46(25)
wisdom, and, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:27
killing of animals. See under animals: killing,
Manichean beliefs regarding
kingdom of darkness. See darkness, kingdom
of
kingdom of light. See light, kingdom of
knowledge of (knowing) God, I:24(14)
Manichean error regarding, I:47
labor, I:40(22)
lust, I:41
and Adam’s fall, II:72–73
of Manichean Elect, II:70–73
land of darkness/land of light. See darkness,
kingdom of; light, kingdom of
law, I:12
See also Commandments, Ten
knowledge of, sin and, I:64
legumes, II:56
lice, II:63–64
light, II:13–17
and evil, II:13
as God, I:18(11)
lord, kingdom of, II:5(3), 11(8)–18
lips, seal of, II:20(11)–23, 27(13)
See also seals, three, Manichean doctrine
of
love:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
chaste, I:41
and covetousness, I:41
for earthly things, I:41
the first commandment, I:18(11)
the four cardinal virtues and, I:25(15)
instruction and, I:56
and lust, I:41
for neighbor, I:48(26)–52(27), 56–59(29),
62(30)
in New Testament, I:56
for others, I:48(26)–52(27)
for self, I:48(26)
v. fear, I:56
love for God, Revisions I, 6(7):5–7; I:13(8)
the cardinal virtues and, I:46(25)
commandments to love God and
neighbor, I:56–59(29); 62(30)
death and, I:19
and enduring all things, I:41–43
and eternal life, I:47
fortitude and, I:46(25)
and human happiness, I:4–5
Jesus Christ and, I:22(13)
justice and, I:46(25)
and love for self and neighbor, I:48(26)
Old and New Testament testimonies to,
I:26(16)–30(17)
in the Old Testament, I:16(10), 57–59(29)
prudence and, I:46(25)
as pursuit of God, I:18(11)
and scriptures, understanding, I:31–32
separation from God as impossible, I:19
the soul and, I:20(12)–21, 64
temperance and, I:46(25)
temperate, I:40(22)
and the Trinity, I:24(14)
vices and, I:64
and virtue, I:25(15)
lust, I:41
and Adam’s fall, II:72–73
of Manichean Elect, II:70–73

Volume I/19
The Manichean Debate
The Catholic Way of Life & the Manichean Way of Life

See also lust and three seals, Manichean doctrine of, II:19(10)
passions: fasting, subduing through, I:67, 70(33)–72
patrons, I:12
Paul, the apostle, I:13(8)

See also New Testament; Old Testament understanding, I:31–32
seals, three, Manichean doctrine of, II:19(10)–67(19)

house for Elect to live life of, II:74(20)

seeds, II:66
see God, I:11
self, love for, I:48(26)

“sensible things,” I:37(20)
serpent, II:17
sexual abstinence. See continence
sexual intercourse:

meat as unclean product of, Manichean belief, II:37, 49

seal of the breast and, II:65(18)–66
sexual passion

See also lust

and three seals, Manichean doctrine of, II:19(10)
sight

See also blindness; eyes

seeing God, I:11

sin

See also evil; punishment

Adam as made holier after (Manichean belief), II:72–73
cleansing from, Revisions I, 6(7):7

and knowledge of the law, I:64

and love for God, I:64

against neighbor, I:49

slavery, II:14(9)–15

and the Catholic Church, I:63

smell: and evidence of God’s presence, II:39–53

smoke, II:14(9)–17

sobriety, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:27

See also temperance

solitude: lives of, Christian, I:64–68

Son of God

See also Jesus Christ

the Incarnation, I:12

souls:

of animals, II:50, 53

and body, I:6(4)–10

body as afflicting, I:40(22)

change, as subject to, I:21

as corrupted, II:22

as creature, I:20(12)
desires and, II:51
discipline for, I:54–56
eating habits and, II:51

and highest good of human being, I:6(4)–10

human beings as soul and body, I:52(27)

and love for God, I:20(12)–21, 64
The Catholic Way of Life & the Manichean Way of Life

Manichean claims regarding, II:22–23
medicine for, I:54–56
of plants, II:60
preserving as chaste, I:38(21)
virtue and, I:9(6)–10
sparrows, II:28
Stercutius, II:12
sterility, II:14(9)–15
substances or natures, See natures suffering, I:40(22)–41
and evil, II:14(9)
feast of, I:40(22)–41
of Job, I:42(21)
suitability and unsuitability, II:16
sun, II:13, 17
Manichean worship of, I:37(20); II:13
symbols, I:30(17)
taste of food, II:39–53
Temperance, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:25(15), 35(19)
See also sobriety
and curiosity, I:38(21)
and dietary practices, I:72–73
and love for God, I:46(25)
Ten Commandments. See Commandments, Ten
thistles, II:62
thorns, II:62
three seals. See seals, three
trees, II:45, 61
Manichean beliefs regarding,
II:54(17)–56
Trinity: and love for God, I:24(14)
truth: Christ as, I:22(13), 28
two natures: world as constructed from
(Manichean belief), II:36(15)
unsuitability, II:16
vanity, Revisions I, 6(7):4:139
vegetables, II:39–53
vices
See also sin
and love for God, I:64
virginity, II:28
See also continence
"Even a mule is a virgin," II:28
virgin made pregnant, incident of, II:72
women in religious life, I:68, 70(33)–71
virtue:
the soul and, I:9(6)–10
and wisdom, I:9(6)–10
virtues, cardinal, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:25(15), 35(19)
See also fortitude; justice; prudence;
temperance
and love for God, I:46(25)
"visible things," I:37(20)
water, II:13–17
weakness, and evil, II:14(9)–15
weeds, II:62
wicked woman of Athens, II:12–13
will, See free choice
wind, II:13–17
wine, II:44
See also dietary beliefs and practices
as bile of princes of darkness, II:44, 46, 49
and drunkenness, II:35
Manichean denunciation of, II:44
wisdom, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:32
See also prudence
desire for, as leading to the kingdom, I:32
and philosophy, I:38(21)
and virtue, I:9(6)–10
wisdom teaches sobriety and justice and
power, I:27
the wise, Revisions I, 6(7):6
Wisdom, Book of, Revisions I, 6(7):3
wisdom of God, Christ as, I:22(13), 27–28, 31
wives
See also marriage
and the Catholic Church, I:63
women:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
in religious life, I:68, 70(33)–71
violated by Manicheans, II:70–77
world: as constructed from two natures
(Manichean belief), II:36(15)
worms, II:28
young people: and the Catholic Church, I:63

The Manichean Debate
Index from

On the Nature of the Good

*(De natura boni)*

Included in book:

The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: *The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum)*, *The Two Souls (De duabus animabus)*, *A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum)*, *Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum)*, *Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti)*, *Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum)*, a Manichean, *The Nature of the Good (De natura boni)*, and *Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum)*.

Volume I/19    Books/Polemical

**Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006**

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael Dolan)
The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

The Nature of the Good

Old Testament
Genesis
2:9 35
Exodus
3:14 19
Proverbs
8:15-16 32
Wisdom
7:24-25 29
7:27 24
11:21 21
Hosea
13:11 32
2 Maccabees
7:28 26

New Testament
Matthew
25:41 32,33
Mark
10:18 39
Luke
1:33 22
John
1:1-3 24
10:30 24
18:20 25
Romans
1:25 36
2:3-6 28

Job
1:12 32
Psalms
15:10 20
101:27-28 24
148:5 26
3:5 31
4:17 26
5:8-10 31
11:22 31
11:33 31
11:36 26;28
13:1 32
16:27 39

1 Corinthians
12:18 30
12:24-25 30
12:26 30

Ephesians
2:2 33
6:12 33
Colossians
3:25 40

1 Timothy
1:17 24
4:4 34
6:16 39

James
1:17 24

2 Peter
2:4 33
The Nature of the Good

The numbers in the index refer to paragraphs

A dam, 34–35; 46
angels: wicked, 32–33
ape, 14–15
apostles. See Paul; individual names
“beardless youths,” 44
beauty, 18
and the “divine substance,” 44
and form, 23
of higher beings, 14–15
of lesser creatures, 8; 14
and privation, 16
of silence and darkness, 16
belching, 45
birth: and death, 8
body, bodies:
as from God, 30
Hyle (the fashioner of bodies, Manichean), 18
Catholic faith and doctrine, 40
Christ. See Jesus Christ
corruption, 44–47
cupidity, 44–47
corruptible natures. See under natures:
corruptible
corruption, 20
evil as, 4–11
and lesser creatures, 14–15
created universe:
lesser creatures and, 8
limit, form, and order of, 8
creatures
See also specific topics
lesser, 8; 14–15
as made from nothing, 1
as mutable, 1
rational spirits, 7
they worshiped... a creature rather than the creator, 36
Daniel, 16
darkness, 15–16
See also under good and evil: Manichean doctrine of
darkness, land of (Manichean concept), 42
death: birth and, 8
decay, 20
demons: the “divine substance,” 44
devil, 32–33
dietary beliefs and practices, Manichean, 45–47
“divine substance,” emission of, 44–47
eating and drinking, Manichean beliefs regarding, 45–47
Elect, Manichean, 45–47
eternal fire. See hell
eternity, 39
Eve, 34–35
evil
See also corruption; good and evil; sin
and harm of others, 32
and lesser creatures, 14–15
limit, form, and order, 4; 37
as making bad use of a good thing, 36–37
Manicheans as locating good in, Revisions II, 9(36); 12; 41
Manicheans as locating in good, Revisions II, 9(36); 12; 41
natures and, 17
one who does harm will suffer the harm he has done, 40
source of, Revisions II, 9(36)
what it is, Revisions II, 9(36); 4–11
evil, nature of (Manichean concept), 42
Evodius, 44

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

Faith (Evodius), 44
Father, God: Son as equal to, 24
fire, eternal. See hell
flesh (bodily things)
See also body
as from God, 30
food and eating, Manichean beliefs regarding,
45–47
forgiveness of sin, 9; 31
form
See also limit, form, and order
beauty and, 23
good and, 18
and matter, 18
Foundation, The (Mani), 42; 46
free choice, 7; 28

God
See also highest good: specific topics,
e.g., natures: as from God
as eternal, 39
as immortal, 39
as immutable, Revisions II, 9(36); 1; 19;
24; 29; 39
as incorruptible, 6–7; 10; 24; 29; 40
as making all things he did not beget,
26–27
the Son as equal to Father, 24
as source of all good, 3; 12–13; 18
good
See also evil; highest good
form and, 18
God as source of all, 3; 12–13; 18
higher and lower goods, 1
limit, form, and order of, 4–5; 23
Manicheans as locating evil in, Revisions II,
9(36); 12; 41
Manicheans as locating in evil, Revisions II,
9(36); 12; 41
natures and, 17
natures as good, 1–3; 19
good and evil:
Manichean doctrine of, 41–47
tree of the knowledge of good and evil,
34–35
good and evil, Catholic and Manichean
accounts of:
rational arguments, appeal to, 1–23
scriptures, appeal to, 24–40
happiness, 8
harm
See also evil
one who does harm will suffer the harm
he has done, 40
hell, 32–33; 38–39
highest good:
God as, Revisions II, 9(36); 1

as incorruptible nature, 6–7
hyle vs. Hyle, 18
immutability of God. See under God: as
immutable
incorruptibility of God. See under God: as
incorruptible
Jesus Christ, 31
See also Son of God; Word of God;
specific topics
Job, 32
John, Gospel of, 25–26
Judas, 32
judgment, 9; 33
justice of God, 9; 31
land of darkness (Manichean concept), 42
Latin pronouns, 27
light, 15–16
See also under good and evil: Manichean
document of
limit, 21–22
God as highest, 22
small things and, 21
limit, form, and order of created universe,
8; 13
everything as having, 3–5
evil and, 4; 37
good as not present without, 23
of hell, 38
of lesser creatures, 15
nature as not present without, 23
as said to be bad, 23
torments and thistles, 36
lust, 44–47
Maccabees, Book of, 26
Mani. See Manicheans; specific topics
and writings
Manicheans
See also specific topics
beliefs of as error, 48
the Elect, 45–47
good and evil, doctrine of, 41–47
matter: and form, 18
nation of darkness. See darkness, land of
nation of darkness (Manichean concept), 42
natures:
corruptible, 4–11; 9
and evil, 17
as from God, Revisions II, 9(36); 1–2; 10;
13; 19; 28
as good, 1–3; 17; 19
incorruptible, 6–7; 11
limit, form, and order of, 3–5; 23; 37
Manichean beliefs regarding, 2

Volume I/19
Vol. I/19 The Manichean Debate

- sin and, 28; 34–36
- nothing: creatures as made from, 1
  - Without him nothing was made, 25–26

- obedience to God, 7; 35
- order. See limit, form, and order

- Paul, the apostle, 32
- See also specific topics
- Peter, 32–33
- princes of darkness, 45–46
- punishment for sin, 7; 9; 31; 37

- rational arguments, appeal to: good and evil, Catholic and Manichean accounts of, 1–23

- Satan. See devil
- scriptures, appeal to: good and evil, Catholic and Manichean accounts of, 24–40
- seeds, Manichean beliefs regarding, 45
- sexual intercourse: the “divine substance,” 44–47
- silence, 15–16
- sin. See also forgiveness; punishment
  - description of, 34; 36
  - and natures, 28; 34–36

- as not defiling God, 29
- as not from God, 28
- size: small things and excessive things, 21
- Son of God
  - See also Jesus Christ
  - as equal to Father, 24
- souls: and nation of darkness (Manichean concept), 42
- sound, 15–16
- spirits, rational, 7

- thistles, 36
- thorns, 36
- Treasury, The (Mani), 44–47
- tree of the knowledge of good and evil, 34–35

- unhappiness, 8
- universe, created. See created universe

- virgins: and the “divine substance,” 44

- war against nation of darkness, 42–43
- wickedness. See evil; sin
  - will, See free choice
  - wisdom, 18
- Wisdom, Book of, 29
- Word of God, 26
  - See also Jesus Christ
Index from
On the Two Souls
(De duabus animabus)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De bona), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Volume I/19

### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Two Souls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Revisions I, 15 (16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>104:26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matthew</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luke</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Romans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ephesians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Text

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Romans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Timothy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### The Manichean Debate
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Two Souls

The numbers in the index refer to paragraphs

angels, 10(8)
wicked, Revisions I, 15(16)/7
Augustine:
as former Manichean, 1(1)-8(6);
10(8)-14(10)
as having enjoyed arguments with
Christians, 11(9)

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

baptism: infant, Revisions I, 15(16):2
beauty, 3(2)
body, bodies, Revisions I, 15(16):7
bodily things, love for, Revisions I, 15(16):8; 20(13)
souls, comparison to, 7(6)–8(6)
brightness. See light

Christians: Augustine as having enjoyed arguments with, 11(9)
concupiscence, Revisions I, 15(16):2
darkness, nation of, Revisions I, 15(16):6
death: Let the dead bury their dead, 2(2)
devil, Revisions I, 15(16):7
dragon, Revisions I, 15(16):7
evil, 9(7)
See also sin
great goods as in the greatest evil, 16(12)
and sin, 17(12)
souls and, Revisions I, 15(16):5–6
source of, 10(8)
evil soul, Manichean belief in
See also good soul
evil by nature vs. by will, 17(12)
existence of, 18(12)–21(13)
as not from God, 16(12)
will of, 16(12)–17(12)

flesh. See concupiscence
fly: soul of, 4(4)
forgiveness of sin, 18(12)
free choice. See will
friendship, Revisions I, 15(16):8; 23(14)–24(15)

God
See also specific topics
as highest good, 10(8)
 knowing God, 10(8)
 providence, divine, 17(2)
as source of everything that exists, 9(6)–10(8)
as source of life, 1(1)
 God, substance of: Manichean belief regarding, 16(12); 18(12)
good:
great goods as in the greatest evil, 16(12)
highest good, 10(8)
good soul, Manichean belief in,
 16(12)–24(15)
 See also evil soul
as corruptible, 16(12)
as from God, 16(12)
and highest good, 18(12)
rank of, recognizing, 18(12)
as substance of God, 16(12); 18(12)
grace, Revisions I, 15(16):8

highest good: God as, 10(8)
inferior souls, Revisions I, 15(16):2, 6
inferior souls, Revisions I, 15(16):7; 20(13)
incest and intemperance, 5(4)–6(6)
intellect or understanding: senses and,
 2(2)–7(6); 12(10)
justice, Revisions I, 15(16):8
injustice, 5(4)–6(6)
sin and, Revisions I, 15(16):4
and spiritual things, love for, 20(13)

kingdom of darkness. See darkness, nation of

land of darkness. See darkness, nation of
life: God as source, 1(1)
light:
 Manichean beliefs regarding, 8(6)
 Manichean worship of, 2(2)–6(6)
virtue and, 6(6)
 Literal Meaning of Genesis, The (Augustine),
  Revisions I, 15(16):7
 lust. See concupiscence

Manicheans
See also souls, two; specific topics
 Augustine as former, 1(1)–8(6);
  10(8)–14(10)
 mercy of God, Revisions I, 15(16):8
 mind. See soul
 moon, 2(2); 6(6); 8(6)
nature, Revisions I, 15(16):6–8
nature of God. See substance of God

original sin, Revisions I, 15(16):2–3, 5, 6

passion, Revisions I, 15(16):4
Paul, the apostle. See specific topics
Pelagians, Revisions I, 15(16):2
 providence, divine, 17(2)
 repentance, 22(14)–23(14)
senses, sensation
 See also body
 intellect and, 2(2)–7(6); 12(10)
sin
See also evil; repentance
and bodily things, love for, 20(13)
definition of, Revisions I, 15(16):4;
  15(11)
 forgiveness of, 18(12)
of good or evil souls, 18(12)
justice and, Revisions I, 15(16):4
original, Revisions I, 15(16):2–3; 5, 6
and sinners, 9(7)–10(8)
and souls, condemnation of, 17(12)
and will, Revisions I, 15(16):2–6;
12(9)–15(11); 21(13)
soul, souls:
bodies, comparison to, 7(6)–8(6)
of a fly, 4(4)
God as source of, 1(1)–3(2)
and God’s condemnation, 17(2)
inferior, Revisions I, 15(16):7; 20(13)
intelligence of, 3(3)
movement of (will), 16(12)
unjust and intemperate, 5(4)–6(6)
will and, Revisions I, 15(16):3, 6
souls, two, Revisions I, 15(16):1, 5–6;
16(12)–24(15)
See also evil soul; good soul
spiritual things:
justice and, 20(13)
love for, Revisions I, 15(16):8; 20(13)
stars, 6(6); 8(6)
See also light
substance of God, Manichean belief
regarding, 16(12); 18(12)
sun, 2(2); 6(6); 8(6)
See also light
temperance: intemperance, 5(4)–6(6)
two souls, Manichean belief in. See souls, two
understanding. See intellect
vice, 6(6)
See also sin
virtue, 6(6)
lack of, vs. bodily lack, 7(6)
weakness, Revisions I, 15(16):2
widow: A widow who is living in pleasure is
dead, 2(2)
will, free, 19(13)
definition of, Revisions I, 15(16):3;
14(10)
as movement of the soul, Revisions I,
15(16):3; 6; 16(12)
sin and, Revisions I, 15(16):2–6;
12(9)–15(11); 21(13)
two souls and, 16(12)–24(15)
Index from

Answer to Faustus, a Manichee

Contra Faustum Manichaeum
(Against Faustus, a Manichee)

Published by New City Press in:

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

Written probably at the very end of the fourth century, the Answer responds to a certain Faustus, a Manichean bishop, who objects to the Old Testament and questions how Christians can claim it for themselves.

Volume I/20

Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-264-7, 6 x 9 in., 468 pp., 2007

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Book Index

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

**Revisions II, 7 (34)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th>Old Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romans 7:23</td>
<td>Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Index of Scripture

**Geneva**

| Genesis  | 12, 10  |
|          | 12, 11  |
|          | 12, 12  |
|          | 12, 12; 12, 13 |
|          | 12, 21  |
|          | 12, 24  |
|          | 12, 24  |
|          | 22, 32  |
|          | 22, 32  |
|          | 6, 2    |
|          | 12, 41; 13, 5; 15, 11 |
|          | 12, 6; 12, 41; 13, 5 |
|          | 22, 82  |
|          | 12, 41; 13, 5 |

| Exodus    | 3:3     |
|           | 4:19    |
|           | 5:7     |
|           | 6:12-23 |
|           | 17, 4   |
|           | 12, 41; 22, 60 |
|           | 25, 1   |
|           | 17, 4   |
|           | 12, 30  |
|           | 15, 7; 19, 18 |
|           | 15, 7   |
|           | 15, 7   |
|           | 15, 7   |
|           | 22, 52  |
|           | 15, 7; 19, 19; 22, 2 |
|           | 32, 1   |
|           | 7, 22   |
|           | 15, 7   |
|           | 6, 2; 10, 1; 15, 7; 19, 7; 19, 28 |
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

Volume I/20

Leviticus
1:1 17, 4
19:12 22, 2
19:18 19, 24
26:1 19, 18

Deuteronomy
5:32 17, 2
6:4 15, 5; 15, 6; 19, 18
12:32 17, 2
18:18 16, 4
19:15 16, 13
21:23 14, 1; 14, 6
24:1 19, 26
25:7 14, 13
28:66 LXX 16, 5; 16, 22

1 Samuel
12:13 22, 67
15:24 22, 67

Tobit
8:9 22, 35

Job
2:10 22, 14

Psalms
2:1-2 13, 7
2:7 23, 2
2:7-8 12, 43; 13, 7
4:5 22, 92
6:8 19, 28
6:11 20, 11
12:4 19, 31
13:5 12, 13
16:8 12, 13
18:29 22, 8
18:43 22, 86
22:37-19 12, 43
22:28 12, 43
24:1 6, 8
30:7 12, 13
30:8 12, 13
30:12-13 12, 36
34:6 33, 8
36:7 21, 2
36:12 12, 13
41:5 12, 9
45:11-17 15, 11
50:23 20, 21
57:5 12, 43
57:12 12, 43
66:9 12, 13
69:10 13, 18
72:11 13, 7; 22, 76
84:5 15, 11
96:5 21, 9
101:1 21, 3
118:17 19, 31
119:85 12, 27
120:5.7 13, 16
120:7 19, 28
128:9 20, 17
136:8-9 14, 11
147:12-13 15, 11
148:5 14, 11

Proverbs
3:12 22, 14
16:32 LXX 19, 28
21:20 6, 7
25:21 19, 28
30:30 12, 42

Song of Songs
1:7 22, 38
2:2 13, 16
4:15 22, 87

Wisdom
1:13 21, 9
1:16 21, 9
2:20-18.21 12, 44
2:24 21, 9
3:1 19, 31
3:4-5 19, 31
5:6-17 19, 31
6:22 19, 31
7:24 6, 3
7:25 6, 3
7:26 22, 8
9:14 22, 52
9:15 22, 53
11:21 21, 6
11:22-12:2 19, 28

Sirach
1:33 22, 53
11:14 21, 9
28:1-5 19, 28
28:21 19, 28

Isaiah
1:3 13, 11
1:18 12, 42
2:17-20 13, 9
6:3 12, 48
6:10 13, 11
7:9 12, 46; 22, 53

Volume I/20
### Volume I/20

**Answer to Faustus, a Manichean**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:4-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jeremiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19-21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:13a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Baruch**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:37-38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ezekiel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hosea**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Habakkuk**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Haggai**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>LXX</th>
<th>4, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21-22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27-28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33-34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:38-39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:43-44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26-27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12-13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:18-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48-49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume I/20

12:27 | 12, 43  
13:34 | 19, 27  
13:35 | 17, 6  
14:3 | 16, 19  
14:6 | 5, 5, 6, 9; 12, 26; 16, 22  
14:9 | 13, 8  
14:16 | 13, 17  
14:17 | 32, 17  
15:10 | 5, 3  
15:14 | 5, 3  
16:13 | 32, 16  
16:15 | 32, 6  
16:28 | 12, 1  
16:33 | 12, 32  
19:11 | 22, 20  
19:15 | 22, 84  
19:37 | 12, 30  
20:28 | 29, 2  
21:20 | 17, 4  
21:24 | 17, 4  
21:25 | 17, 3  

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>references</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1:11 | 5, 4  
| 10:13 | 12, 22; 22, 93; 31, 3  
| 10:14 | 31, 3  
| 10:15 | 31, 3  

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>references</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1:1 | 15, 2  
| 1:1-3 | 12, 2  
| 1:2-3 | 13, 3; 15, 2  
| 1:3 | 11, 4  
| 1:17 | 12, 47; 16, 29  
| 1:20 | 18, 5  
| 1:20-23 | 20, 19  
| 1:21 | 12, 1  
| 1:21-23 | 22, 93  
| 1:24 | 13, 11; 21, 2  
| 1:25 | 14, 10; 20, 19  
| 1:26 | 21, 2  
| 1:28 | 13, 11; 21, 2; 21, 9  
| 1:30 | 19, 24  
| 2:12 | 22, 14  
| 2:14-15 | 19, 2  
| 2:21-22 | 22, 55  
| 2:25 | 16, 29  
| 3:1-2 | 12, 3  
| 3:5 | 21, 2  
| 3:13 | 20, 11  
| 3:21 | 12, 5  
| 4:1 | 16, 29  
| 4:11-12 | 12, 47  
| 4:15 | 15, 8  
| 4:25 | 16, 29  
| 5:5 | 12, 14; 13, 16; 17, 6; 32, 18  
| 5:12 | 24, 2  
| 5:15 | 12, 8  
| 5:20 | 8, 5  
| 6:6 | 14, 4; 14, 12  
| 6:9 | 11, 7  
| 7:2-3 | 15, 1  
| 7:5 | 11, 8  
| 7:7 | 10, 1; 19, 28  
| 7:7-11-13 | 15, 8  
| 7:12 | 15, 8  
| 7:12-13 | 19, 7  
| 7:13 | 15, 8  
| 7:24-25 | 22, 78  
| 8:1-5 | 12, 3  
| 8:2 | 19, 2  
| 8:3 | 14, 5; 14, 12  
| 8:3-4 | 19, 7  
| 8:8 | 11, 8  
| 8:9 | 11, 8  
| 8:10-11 | 24, 2  
| 8:23 | 3, 3  
| 8:23-25 | 11, 7  
| 8:30 | 22, 89  
| 8:32 | 22, 14; 22, 20  
| 9:4-5 | 3, 3  
| 9:5 | 16, 15  
| 9:6-8 | 12, 6  
| 9:14-15 | 21, 2  
| 9:22-23 | 21, 2  
| 9:23-26 | 22, 89  
| 10:3 | 12, 9  
| 10:4 | 12, 5  
| 10:9 | 16, 29  
| 10:14-15 | 12, 45  
| 10:21 | 13, 11  
| 11:5 | 12, 33  
| 11:8 | 13, 11  
| 11:13-26 | 9, 2  
| 11:20-21 | 9, 2  
| 11:22 | 21, 3  
| 11:23-24 | 9, 2  
| 11:24 | 26, 3  
| 11:33 | 21, 2; 21, 3  
| 11:34 | 22, 71  
| 12:1 | 16, 10; 20, 22  
| 12:14 | 16, 22  
| 13:8 | 19, 27  
| 13:9-10 | 15, 4  
| 13:10 | 17, 6  
| 15:3 | 13, 18  
| 15:4 | 13, 18  
| 15:8 | 19, 8  

**1 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>references</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1:23-25 | 12, 23  
| 2:8 | 13, 11  
| 2:13 | 32, 10  
| 2:14 | 32, 18  
| 3:9 | 1, 3  
| 3:17 | 13, 13; 16, 10; 20, 15  
| 3:21 | 13, 16  

---

**Answer to Faustus, a Manichean**
| 4:15 | 24, 1 |
| 4:16 | 22, 82 |
| 5:17 | 19, 10 |
| 6:4 | 5, 9 |
| 6:7 | 5, 9 |
| 6:19 | 20, 15 |
| 7:3 | 22, 49 |
| 7:4 | 22, 31; 22, 49; 22, 50 |
| 7:5-6 | 5, 9 |
| 7:36 | 32, 17 |
| 8:1 | 15, 8 |
| 9:9 | 6, 9 |
| 9:10 | 6, 9 |
| 10:1-4 | 12, 29 |
| 10:4 | 16, 15 |
| 10:6 | 4, 2; 6, 2; 12, 37; 16, 10; 18, 6; 19, 7; 22, 24 |
| 10:10 | 12, 37 |
| 10:11 | 4, 2; 6, 2; 6, 9; 8, 2; 10, 2; 10, 3; 13, 10; 32, 9 |
| 10:20 | 20, 5; 20, 18; 32, 13 |
| 10:22 | 22, 17 |
| 11:19 | 24, 2 |
| 11:29 | 12, 24; 15, 2 |
| 11:31-32 | 13, 16 |
| 12:1-26 | 22, 14 |
| 12:20 | 21, 8 |
| 12:21 | 21, 9; 24, 2 |
| 12:22-25 | 21, 10 |
| 12:24 | 29, 4 |
| 12:26 | 21, 9 |
| 12:28 | 22, 22 |
| 13:3 | 19, 2; 19, 8 |
| 13:9-10 | 5, 5 |
| 13:11 | 15, 6; 32, 17 |
| 13:12 | 11, 1 |
| 15:3-4 | 15, 6; 32, 18 |
| 15:11 | 13, 3 |
| 15:12 | 2, 2 |
| 15:15 | 11, 3 |
| 15:16 | 14, 11 |
| 15:26 | 24, 2 |
| 15:33 | 11, 3 |
| 15:35 | 11, 8 |
| 15:37 | 21, 9 |
| 15:39 | 21, 9 |
| 15:40 | 24, 2 |
| 15:44 | 11, 3; 11, 8 |
| 15:44-45 | 24, 2 |
| 15:45 | 11, 3 |
| 15:47 | 5, 4 |
| 15:47-49 | 2, 4 |
| 15:50 | 16, 29 |
| 15:50a | 11, 3 |
| 15:50b | 11, 3 |
| 15:51 | 11, 3 |
| 15:51-53 | 16, 29 |
| 15:52 | 11, 3 |
| 15:53 | 11, 3 |

| 2 Corinthians | 19, 7 |
| 1:20 | 12, 5 |
| 3:3 | 15, 4; 18, 4 |
| 3:5-6 | 15, 1 |
| 3:6 | 15, 8; 19, 7 |
| 3:15 | 12, 4 |
| 3:16 | 12, 4 |
| 4:4 | 21, 1; 21, 9 |
| 4:6 | 22, 8 |
| 5:13 | 12, 26 |
| 5:14-15 | 12, 26; 14, 12 |
| 5:14-16 | 11, 8 |
| 5:15 | 11, 8; 14, 4 |
| 5:16 | 11, 1 |
| 5:17 | 11, 1 |
| 6:17 | 11, 3 |
| 6:18 | 11, 9; 21, 9 |
| 6:20 | 22, 20 |
| 6:22 | 12, 11 |

| Galatians | 1:4 | 21, 9 |
| 1:10 | 2; 2; 5; 4; 12, 5 |
| 1:15-16 | 21, 17 |
| 1:22 | 13, 18; 17, 3; 20; 22; 32, 17 |
| 2:20 | 24, 1 |
| 3:6 | 22, 89 |
| 3:8 | 16, 17 |
| 3:10 | 12, 47 |
| 3:13 | 12, 47; 16, 24 |
| 3:15 | 12, 11 |
| 3:16 | 14, 1; 14, 4 |
| 3:17 | 12, 6 |
| 3:19 | 15, 8 |
| 3:21-22 | 19, 7 |
| 3:23-25 | 19, 7 |
| 3:27-28 | 24, 1 |
| 3:29 | 22, 89; 32, 9 |
| 4:4 | 3; 3; 11, 3; 12, 3; 12, 26 |
| 4:19 | 24, 1 |
| 5:2 | 19, 17 |
| 5:6 | 19, 27 |
| 5:12 | 16, 22 |
| 5:17 | 12, 21 |
| 6:3 | 21, 9 |
| 6:4 | 23, 7 |

| Ephesians | 2:4-5 | 11, 8 |
| 2:6 | 11, 8 |
| 2:7 | 11, 8 |
| 2:12 | 12, 24 |
| 2:14 | 22, 89 |
### Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

**Philippians**
- 1:18: 22, 55
- 2:6: 3, 3, 13, 8; 23, 7
- 2:6-7: 12, 8
- 2:7: 3, 6, 13, 8
- 2:9-11: 22, 76
- 3:15: 11, 5
- 3:19: 6, 5, 21, 9

**Colossians**
- 2:3: 15, 3
- 2:4: 12, 46
- 2:5: 1, 3
- 2:15: 16, 29
- 2:16-17: 6, 2, 32, 9
- 3:1-2: 11, 7
- 3:5: 22, 92
- 3:9-10: 24, 1
- 3:10: 24, 2
- 3:11: 24, 1

**1 Timothy**
- 1:5: 5, 5
- 1:7: 15, 8
- 1:8: 15, 8, 22, 41
- 1:15: 16, 16
- 1:17: 11, 3
- 1:20: 22, 20
- 2:1-4: 12, 36
- 2:5: 16, 18
- 3:5: 19, 12
- 3:7: 22, 56
- 4:1-2: 14, 10
- 4:1-3: 30, 1
- 4:1-4: 15, 10

**2 Timothy**
- 2:8: 2, 2, 5, 4, 11, 3, 23, 7
- 2:16-18: 4, 2
- 4:4: 2, 4
- 4:14: 16, 22
- 8:9: 19, 12

**Titus**
- 1:12: 19, 2
- 1:15: 15, 3, 6, 6, 6, 16, 31, 25, 2, 31, 1
- 1:16: 31, 1
- 3:5: 11, 7

**James**
- 4:14: 21, 5

**1 Peter**
- 2:4: 15, 4
- 2:7: 15, 4
- 2:8: 15, 4
- 2:9-10: 22, 89
- 3:17: 22, 20
- 3:21a: 19, 12
- 3:21b: 19, 12
- 4:17-18: 22, 14, 22, 20
- 4:18: 22, 14

**1 John**
- 1:5: 22, 8, 22, 9
- 2:1-2: 19, 7
- 2:3-2: 32, 18
- 3:15: 19, 23
- 5:20: 5, 4

**Revelation**
- 3:19: 22, 14
- 19:10: 20, 21
- 22:8: 20, 21
Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Roman numerals refer to books;
Arabic numerals refer to sections of books.

Abel, XII:9–13; XXII:17
Abimelech, XXII:33, 38
aborted fetuses, VI:8; XI:12
Abraham, XXII:82

See also patriarchs
God’s promise to, XII:6; XV:11
and Hagar, XXII:25, 82
and Isaac, XII:38; XXII:73
and Sarah, XXII:5, 30–40
two wives of, XXII:51
In your descendant all the nations of the earth will be blessed, XII:6, 41
abstinence, dietary. See dietary beliefs and practices
abstinence, sexual. See continence
acts of the Apostles, XIX:31; XXII:15
Adam, XXII:4
birth and death of, XXVI:7; XXVIII:2
commandment given to, XXII:4, 14
and Eve, XII:38
sin of, XXII:78; XXIV:2
Adimantus, I:2; VI:6; XVI:6, 30–31
A donai, X:9
adoption, III:3; XXII:32
children of God, III:3
Joseph, two fathers of, Revisions II, 7
(34): 2; III:3
A dullamites, XXII:85–86
adultery, XV:7; XIX:3, 21, 23; XXII:2
Africans, XV:3
Africans, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2
agapes, XX:20
air, II:3
alien gods, XV:4
See also idolatry; individual names of Manicheans, XV:6

allegorical interpretation of Old Testament,
XXI:88, 94–96
See also specific people, topics, and events; symbolism
altars. See sacrifices
Amalek, XXII:92
amen, X:9
ancestors of Christ. See genealogies of Jesus
Andrew, XII:4; XIV:1; XVII:1; XXX:4
angels, X:20
as forbidding own adoration, XX:21
Jacob wrestling, XII:26
and light, XXII:10
as not born, XIX:1
as seen by humans, XIX:1
Seraphim, XII:48
stairway from earth to heaven, XII:26
successor of Moses as, XVI:19
anger, XIX:3, 20, 28
and murder, XIX:3
Old Testament God and, XXII:14
animals
See also dietary beliefs and practices; meat; specific animals
killing, Manichean beliefs regarding, VI:5
in nation of darkness, XXI:10–13
Noah and the ark, X:14–24
animal sacrifice, VI:1; XVIII:6
to idols, XXI:2; XXX:13
anointing with oil, X:23
Apocalypse, XX:21
apocryphal books, XI:2; XXII:79
apostles
See also disciples; Paul; individual names
authority of, XXII:22; XXX:6
Mani describing himself as, XII:4

Volume I/20
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

Chosen (Elect), Manichean. See Elect Christ.
See also Jesus Christ; specific topics the title, XII:44; XIII:2; 4
Christianity, Christians
See also Catholics; specific topics converts from Judaism, XIII:3
converts from paganism, X:3:1-17 early, X:17
*pseudo-Christians,* I:3
*semi-Christians,* I:2-3
spread of, III:2; XI:15; XIII:3, 7; XVI:2, 27
Church
See Catholic Church; Christianity
chastity of, preserving, XV:4
Christ’s love for, XI:7
good and bad people in, XI:15
tolerating sinners in, XIII:16
as true spouse of Christ, XV:3, 8-11
unity, XV:4
Cicero, XXXIII:6
circumcision, VI:1-3; VI:29; VIII:2; XI:6; XVII:2
All things are clean for the clean, XVII:2
Catholics and, XX:3
Christians and, X:9
Galatians reverting to, VIII:1
of Jesus, Manichean rejection of, XIX:7
Moses as teaching, XVI:6, 28
as prophecy about Christ, XVII:29
of Timothy, XIX:17
Civil law, XXIII:1
clean: All things are clean for the clean, VI:6;
XV:2; XX:1-4
meaning of, XX:1-4
cleverness, I:1
clothing. See garments
commandments
See also Decalogue; law; Old Testament
antedating Mosaic law, Christ and,
XIX:19
goal (end) of, X:23
against killing, adultery, and false
swearing, XIX:3; XXII:2
the law is good, and the commandment
holy, XV:8
life, commandments that regulate vs.
commandments that symbolize,
V:2; IX:2
love and, V:5
of love for God and neighbor, XV:4-7
new, XXI:9; 19
of Old Testament, VI:1-2
two stone tablets, V:4-5, 7-8
commandments of Mani, V:5-7
concupiscence, VI:3; XXII:50
See also lust

passions contrary to temperance, XXII:29
pleasures, mortal, XXI:28
Confessions (Augustine), I:1
conflict. See war
conscience, XX:23
consecrated bread, XX:13
Constantius, V:5
contemplation, XXII:27, 53-54, 58
contemnence, X:4:13
See also virginity
Corinthians, First Letter to, XXI:8
Corinthians, Second Letter to, XI:1, 4, 7-8
courtesans, XXXII:4
See also prostitutes
coveting the property of others, X:1, 3; XV:7
creator, God as:
of men, XV:4; I:2
of nature (all natures), XXVI:3; XXII:4
worshiping creature instead of, XIV:11;
XX:19, 22
the cross, XVI:17; XXIII:12
sign of, XI:30

crows, XXI:11
the crucifixion, XXI:43; XXI:7; XXIII:7, 19

cruelty, XXI:74
Cupid, XX:9
curses, XXXII:14
on anyone who hangs from a tree,
XIV:1-8, 12-13; XV:5, 22-24
on Canaan (grandson of Noah), XI:23-24
as companion of sin, XIV:5
upon Cain, XI:31
for worshipping sun and moon, XIV:12
cuttlefish, XXI:3
Cyprian, V:8; XIII:4
Daniel, XXII:44; XV:6; XXI:2; XXXI:1
darkness, II:3
See also darkness, kingdom of, below
God as first living in (Manichean belief),
XXII:4, 8, 11-12
of ignorance, XXI:22
the Manichean God and, XXII:22;
XXII:4
darkness, kingdom of (Manichean concept),
XII:3; XII:6, 18; XIX:24; XX:17
See also evil nature or substance
animals in, XXII:10-13
and kingdom of light, IV:2; XIII:18;
XXII:14-16
part of God as mingled with, II:6; VI:8
war with, II:3; XXI:15
David, XXII:5
See also genealogies of Jesus
as king, XI:33
sins of, XXII:66-67, 87, 97
death
See also individual names, e.g., Adam
of body vs. soul, XI:4:12
for the faith, XXII:76

Volume I/20
God as bound in the flesh (Manichean belief in), XXX:6
Manichean beliefs regarding, XXX:6
sin and, XIV:3–4
and the soul, XXX:6
death of Jesus, XIV:4; XV:1:1–8;
XVIII:1–2; XXIX:1–3
See also cross; crucifixion; Passion
Manichean rejection of, XIV:12; XXVI:2,
6; XXXIII:2; XIX:1–3; XXXII:22
Decalogue, XV:4–5, 7–8
See also commandments
demons
See also Hyle; idolatry
as confessing Christ, XXII:68
feeding the demon of the Jews (Faustus on), XVIII:2
Manicheans as worshipers of, XIV:10–11;
XV:5
people paying attention to teaching of,
XXX:1–5
sent into pigs, XXI:72
worship, in pagan religions, XX:21
Devil, I:2–3
See also serpent
Christ as killing, XXI:90
meat as created by (Manichean belief),
XXXI:4
Paul handing man over to, XXII:79
Peter called Satan by Christ, XXVI:8
dietary beliefs and practices
See also drunkenness; fasting; gluttony; meat
All things are clean for the clean, VI:8;
XXXI:1–4
of Catholics, XX:13; XXX:5; XXXII:13
of Christians, XXX:5
Daniel and, XXX:2; XXXI:1
distinction of foods, XVI:6, 28, 30;
XIX:10
God as bound up in food (Manichean belief), XX:13
Manichean, VI:5–8; XX:13; XXXI:2–2, 5;
XXXI:4
Moses and the prophets and, XVI:6;
XXVII:6; XVIII:10
Timothy I and, XXX:1
digestive processes, “divine nature” as escaping through,
II:5; V:10; VI:4;
XIII:18; XV:7
disciples of Christ, V:6; VI:1; XI:3; XIV:1;
XVI:31, XIX:77
See also apostles; individual names;
specific topics and events
all nations as becoming, XVI:21
and marriage, XIV:1
disciples of Mani, I:2
See also Adimantus
discipline. See punishment disorder, avoiding, VI:9
“divine nature” as escaping through digestive processes of
Manichean Elect, II:5; V:10; VI:4;
XIII:18; XV:7
divine providence, XXII:78
divorce, XIX:26
dogs, III:6; XXII:79
donkey, VI:9; XI:42; XV:6
dove, XVII:20
dress. See garments
drinking. See dietary beliefs and practices;
drunkenness; wine
drunkenness, XV:9; XIX:44
of Lot, XIX:44, 60
at martyrs’ memorials, XX:21
of Noah, XI:23
earth
See also world as alive (Manichean belief), XV:4
as conceiving Jesus (Manichean belief),
XV:11
eating. See dietary beliefs and practices
edifice, spiritual, I:3
Egypt, XI:28
exodus from, XII:29–31
flight into, XXII:36
Egyptians:
God’s command to despoil, XXII:71–72
Moses and, XXII:90–93
Moses killing the Egyptian, XXII:69–70
Elect, Manichean, V:6; VI:4–5; XX:11;
XXII:23, 98
See also Manicheans “divine nature” as escaping through
digestive processes of, II:5; V:10;
VI:4; XIII:18; XV:7
Healers, treatment of, V:10–11
elements, five, II:3; XX:9
Elijah, XII:34; XVI:16; XXVI:1–6, 3, 8
Elisha, XII:35
Elizabeth, XXII:85
Emmanuel, XXXIII:5
See also Jesus Christ
enemies:
hatred of, XI:24
love for, XIX:3; 24
of Manichean God, II:6; VI:8; XXII:22;
XXIV:2
victory over, XXII:76
Enoch, XVI:3; XIX:3, 20; XXVI:3
Ephesians, XXIV:1
Epicureans, XX:10
Er (son of Judah), XXII:84
Essai, XX:52
eternal fire. See hell
eternal law, XXII:27, 30, 43, 70, 73
eternal life, IV:2; V:3–4; XVI:6; XIX:31
eucharist, X:28; XIX:14
eunuchs, XX:4
Eve, X:11:36; XV:9
evil
See also good and evil; sin
desire to do harm, XXI:74
Manichean God as unable to defend against, II:6
evil land. See darkness, nation of
evil nature or substance, Manichean concept of, XX–XXXI
See also darkness, kingdom of excrement, I:5
eye for an eye, XIX:25
faith, XX:23
love and, V:5
power of, XXX:8
of righteous of old and Christians today, XIX:15
simple faith, need for, XI:46
false testimony, XV:7; XIX:18
See also perjury; swearing
fasting
See also dietary beliefs and practices
Daniel and, XXX:2
Lenten, XXX:3
fate, the Fates, II:5; XX:9
Father, God as. See God; Trinity
fathers, fatherhood
See also parents
Do not call anyone on earth father, XXII:39
Joseph, two fathers of, Revisions II, 7
(regarding Jesus, X:11:3)
Faustus of Milevis, I:1; Revisions II, 7 (34): 2–3; III:3
regarding Jesus, X:11:3
Gaithers, XXX:9
Judaism, near-conversion to, XIX:5
fear:
as evil, XXI:15
grace vs., XV:4
feast of tabernacles, V:1:9; XIX:10
fetuses, aborted, V:8; XXI:12
Fever, XX:9
fighting. See war
fire, III:3
in the bush, XV:6
Christ as casting on earth, XXII:93
eternal (See hell)
the final, II:5
“first man,” II:3–5; IX:3; XX:9, 12
fish, XVI:6, 9; XXI:3
five elements. See elements, five
flesh. See also body; lust
no one ever hates his own flesh, XXI:7
Paul, and knowing Christ according to the flesh, XI:7–8
the term, XI:7
flesh (meat)
See under dietary beliefs and practices; meat the flood. See Noah
food
See also dietary beliefs and practices
God as bound up in (Manichean belief), X:13
foreshadowing. See under Old Testament, as foreshadowing what was to come
forgiveness, XII:42; XIX:25
of others, XIX:25
sacrament of, XI:7
of sin, XX:22
fornication, XII:31; XIX:18
Fortune, XX:9
The Foundation (Mani), XXI:16; XXII:22
freedom, Christian, VI:12
free will, II:5; XXI:22, 28, 78
fruit, V:4, 6
See also dietary beliefs and practices
mandrakes, XX:56
Galatians, VIII:1–2; XII:6
garments:
of linen and wool, V:1:9
Moses despoiling Egyptians, XXII:91
new patch on old, VIII:1–2; XV:1–2
patching linen with purple, VI:9
gehenna, XIX:20
See also hell
genealogies of Jesus:
both son of God and son of David, XXIII:1–10
fatherhood, question of, XXIII:1–10; XXVII:1–2
consistency of, III:1–4; XXVIII:3; XXXIII:2, 5–8
gentiles, I:1–2; II:1–2; XVIII:23, 24; XVI:1; XIX:17, 19; XXI:88
See also specific topics
as children of Israel, XXII:89
and the Old Testament, XVII:20
glorification, XXI:86
gluttony, XV:13
God
See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g., obedience
as creator of men, XXIV:1–2
God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, XXV:1–2
Volume I/20
See also dietary beliefs and practices

Hagar, XXII:25, 82

hair:
- baldness, VI:9; XII:35
- unruly, VI:9

Ham (son of Noah), Revisions II, 7 (34): 3; XII:23–24

See also Noah

hare, XXI:3

harlots. See prostitutes

harm

See also evil

desire to do, XXI:74

harmony, XXI:6

hated, XIX:25

See also anger of enemies, XIX:24

Hearers, Manichean, V:6, 10; VI:4–5; XXX:5

Augustine as former, XV:7

heaven

See also eternal life; kingdom of heaven

“second man” from, XI:3

heaven, kingdom of. See kingdom of heaven

heavenly bodies. See moon; stars; sun

heavenly Jerusalem, XV:11

Hebrew people, XXII:24

See also Jews; Old Testament; specific topics

Hermes, XIII:1, 15, 17

Herod the Elder, XXII:85

Herod the Younger, XXII:85

highest good, XIX:16

See also God

Hippocrates, XXXIII:6

Hirah, XXII:85

holiness: sacraments as visible signs of, XIX:12

Holy of Holies, XIII:15

holy scriptures. See scriptures

Holy Spirit, XII:15, 30; XV:4; XIX:27, 30; XXII:17

See also Paraclete; Trinity; specific topics and gift of love, XII:15

Pentecost, XXXIII:12

honey, XV:1–2; XXI:13

hope:

salvation only in, X:7–8

source of, X:8

Hosea, XXII:3, 50, 89

human person

See also man; specific topics

God as creator of, XXIV:1–2

in image of God, XXII:27; XXIV:1–2

life on earth as temptation, XXII:28
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

human race, six ages of, X:11:8, 18
husbands
See also marriage
love for wives, X:7
serving two husbands, X:5
idols, idolatry
See also pagans; specific topics and events
handmade idols, X:13:9
Jews as abandoning,
moses and, X:11:79, 91–93
ignorance:
darkness of, X:11:22
human, X:11:78
Manichean God as subject to, X:11:15;
image of God, X:11:27; X:14:1–2
the incarnation, Revisions I, 7 (34): 1;
incest, X:11:3
Judah and, X:11:60–61, 64
Lot and, X:11:5, 41–45
inner man and outer man, X:11:1–2
intelligence, I:1
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
interpolations, Manichean accusations of,
moses and, X:11:4
Israel
See also specific topics
Ismael, X:11:37; X:11:25
Israel
See also specific topics and events
children of, X:11:89
exodus from Egypt, X:11:29–31
raising up offspring in, X:11:1
Jacob, X:11:41; V:6; X:11:82
See also patriarchs
angel, wrestling with, X:11:26
Joseph and, Revisions I, 7 (34): 2; III:3
and Judah, X:11:42
wives of, X:11:5, 47–59
James, X:11:1
Jannes, X:11:12
Janus, X:11:15
apheth, See Noah
ealousy, X:11:14, 18, 21
Jeremiah, X:11:36; X:11:8; X:11:29
See also specific topics
Jericho, X:11:31
Jerusalem, heavenly, V:11
Jesus Christ, X:11:8
See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g.,
Church
baptism of, X:11:5–6
birth of (see birth of Jesus)
Crucifixion of, X:11:11; X:11:7, 19
death of (see death of Jesus)
as fulfilling promises of God, X:11:5;
x:11:7–8
as fulfilling the law, X:11:4, 7;
x:11:7–31
genealogy of (see genealogies of Jesus)
as human and divine, III:8; V:4; VII:5;
x:11:5
the incarnation, X:11:64
life of, as taught by the New Testament,
x:11:76
moses as foretelling, X:11:1–18;
x:11:9, 11–31
Old Testament as foretelling, X:11:37–38;
x:11:20; X:11:8, 9
Passion of (see Passion of Christ)
prophets as foretelling, X:4–6, 23, 30,
45–46; X:11:4
resurrection of (see resurrection of Jesus)
as servant, III:6
suffering of (see suffering of Jesus)
temptation of; X:11:7
Jesus as Son of God,
moses and, X:11:14; X:11:5, 7
Jesus Christ, Manichean beliefs regarding,
II:2–5; X:11:22
basis for Faustus’ belief in, X:11:5
as brought forth in all trees and plants,
x:11:11
earth as conceiving, X:11:11
as son of “first man,” I:4
Jesus, Joshua as called. See Joshua
Jewish rites. See rites
Jews, Judaism, IX:2; X:11:2
See also Old Testament; specific topics,
e.g., circumcision
as children of Judah, X:11:89
converts to Christianity from, X:11:1
Faustus’ near-conversion to, X:11:5
God and, X:11:5
as prophet of Christ and Church,
x:11:24
John, Gospel of, II:6; III:1; V:1; X:11:17
See also gospels; specific topics
John the Baptist, V:1; X:11:31; X:11:74, 85
John the evangelist, X:11:30; X:11:6; X:11:23;
x:11:4
See also John, Gospel of; specific topics
Joseph (husband of Mary), X:11:8
See also genealogies of Jesus
regarding fatherhood of Jesus, X:11:3
Joseph of Arimathea, X:11:11
Joseph (son of Jacob), X:11:28

Volume I/20
sold into slavery, XXII:61

two fathers of, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2; III:3
Joshua, XII:31; XVII:19
Judah, XXII:60–64; XXIII:9; XXXII:4
children of, XXII:89
Jacob and, XVII:42
Jesus as from tribe of, XXII:64, 83–86
Judas, XIV:8; XXII:14, 63
Judges, time of, XII:32
judgments by God, XXII:78
as hidden, XXII:78
Juno, XVIII:5
Jupiter, XX:9
justice
mercy and, XX:13
and punishment, X:2–3; 9
justification, XVII:17; XXII:86
killing
See also murder of animals, Manichean beliefs regarding, V:5
commandments against, XIX:3; XXII:2
kingdom of darkness. See darkness, kingdom of
kingdom of heaven, IV:2; V:3; X:1; XXII:76
the expression, XIX:31
making selves eunuchs for sake of, XIX:4
patriarchs in, XXXII:1
prostitutes entering before Pharisees, XXII:80
kingdom of light. See light, kingdom of
kings, XIII:2
time of, XXII:32–33
knowledge of (knowing) God:
Manichean error regarding, XXIV:2
lamb, VI:7; XI:30; XVI:15; XIX:10;
XXXII:12
land of darkness/land of light. See darkness, kingdom of light, kingdom of
latrina, XX:21
law.
See also commandments
Civil, XXI:1
eternal, XXII:73
fulfilment of, XIX:6; XXVII:4; 7; XIX:7–31
of gentiles, XIX:2
as good, XV:8
grace and, XV:4; 8; XIX:7–8; 27; XXII:6
of Hebrews, XIX:2
the law is good, and the commandment holy, XV:8
love as fulfillment of, XIX:6
Mosaic, XIX:6; XIX:7, 19
of nature, XXI:5
righteousness of law fulfilled in us, XIX:7
sacraments and, XXII:6
three kinds of, XIX:2
of truth, XIX:2
law and the prophets
See also Old Testament; prophets
Christ as fulfilling, XIX:1–7
Manichean rejection of, XIX–XXI; XXII
Leah, XXII:47–59, 82
Lenten fast, XXXX:3
Letter of the Foundation (Mani), XIX:16;
XXII:22
Liber, XX:13
lies, lying. See false testimony
life: commandments that regulate vs. commandments that symbolize, V:2; IX:2
light
See also good and evil, Manichean doctrine of
different lights, Manichean failure to distinguish, XIX:2; XXII:8
God as, XX:7
made by God on first day, XXII:10–11
by which the mind knows intelligible things, XIX:7
light, kingdom of, XIII:6, 18; XXII:14
See also darkness, kingdom of
and kingdom of darkness, II:3; IV:2;
XIII:18; XXII:14–15
linen. See garments
Lord's Prayer, XIX:25
"Lord," the term, XV:9
Lot, XXII:5, 35, 41–45, 60, 88
love, XX:23
commandments of, XV:4–7
for enemies, XIX:2, 24
Faith and, V:5
gift of, XIII:15
for God, XV:4
Holy Spirit and, XIII:15
of husbands for wives, XXI:6
and the law, XVII:6
for neighbor, XV:4, 7; XIX:24
Luke, Gospel of
See also genealogies of Jesus; gospels;
New Testament
and Matthew, I:1–14; XXVIII:3;
XXXII:5–8
Lupercalia, XIX:15
lust, XV:7
See also concupiscence as adultery, XIX:21, 23
birth and (Manichean beliefs), XXIV:1
and Manichean gods and goddesses,
XV:7; XX:6
patriarchs and, XXII:15
pleasures, mortal, XXII:28
and purpose of intercourse, XXII:30–31
scripture as criticizing, XXII:81
Lycaonia, XX:21
lying. See false testimony
Maccabees, XIX:14
Magi, II:5
magic, XIX:1–4
Magus, XVIII:5
Mambres, XIII:12
man; men
See also human person; specific topics, e.g., husbands
“first,” or primal man (see “first man”) inner and outer, XXIV:1–2
two men (Manichean belief in), XXIV:1–2
woman as helper for, XII:38
mandrakes, XXII:56
Mani, X:III:2, 4
See also specific topics
apostle of Jesus Christ, as calling himself, XIII:4
commandments of, V:5–7
The Foundation, XXII:22
as leading Catholics astray, XV:3–4
the name, XIX:22
Paraclete, as claimed to be, XIII:17 (see also Paraclete)
Treasurer, XV:4
vs. authority of scriptures, XXXII:19–22
writings of, XIII:18; XV:4, 6; XXII:22
Manichean God. See God, Manichean
Manicheans. Manicheanism, V:10–11; XIII:3–4
See also Elect; Hearers; Mani; specific topics and teachings, e.g., good and evil; Paraclete
Augustine as former Hearer, XV:7
beliefs of, XIII:18
the Bema, XV:III:5
Catholic objections against,
XXX:5–XXIII:3
dietary beliefs and practices of (see under dietary beliefs and practices)
and paganism, XV:10; XX:1–10, 14–23
Paul as foretelling, XV:10; XXX:1
and “pseudo-Christians,” I:2–3
two substances, belief in (see darkness; light)
manna, XII:29
Mark, Gospel of, II:1, 6; III:1
See also gospels; specific topics
marriage
See also under Church: as true spouse of Christ; husbands; procreation;
wives; individual names, e.g., Jacob:
wives of disciples of Christ and, XIV:1
divorce, XIX:26
as good, XXX:6
Manichean prohibition of, XIX:26;
XXX:1, 6
Paul on, XXX:6
and procreation, XXIX:4
Mary, XVIII:5; XX:9
martyrs, XIV:1; XXI:21; XXII:28; XXII:76
Catholic reverence, XX:21
drunkenness at memorials, XX:21
Mary, III:1; XX:11; XIII:1–4, 8–10;
XXVI:7; XXIX:4
See also birth of Jesus; genealogies of Jesus
genealogy of, XXII:8–9
marriage. See marriage
Mattatians, V:5
Matthew, Gospel of, II:1, 6; XIII:1–4;
XXII:64; XXX:1–10; XXVIII:3, 5–8
meals. See dietary beliefs and practices
meat
See also dietary beliefs and practices; pork
Manichean beliefs regarding, VI:5–8;
XXX:5; XXX:4
mediator, Jesus as, XIII:8
M elchi, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2
men. See human person; man
Mercury, XVIII:5
mercy, XIX:29; XX:20; XXX:1
and justice, XXII:3
Messiah, XIII:44
See also Jesus Christ
metaphor, Revisions II, 7 (34): 3
mind
See also soul
knowing intelligible things, XX:7
Minerva, XX:9
ministry of preaching, XXX:10
miracles, X:III:6; XXVIII:2; XXIX:2
monarchy (the single principle), XX:19
Montanists, XXX:II:17
months of the year, XVIII:5
moon, Manichean worship of, XIV:1, 11–12;
XX:2, 8, 11
Moses, XVI:1–33; XXII:5; XXX:1
See also law; patriarchs; specific topics and events
curse by, XIV:1–8, 12–13; XV:5, 22–24
dietary beliefs and practices, XXX:3;
XXX:1
as foreseeing Manicheans, XIII:6

Volume I/20
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

as foretelling Christ, XII: I–II; XIII: I–18; XIV: V: I, I1–II; 
and idolatry, XII: I7; I9–I3 
raising bronze serpent, XII: II0 
raising Egyptian, XII: I9, 67–70, 90 
staff becoming serpent, XII: I8 
the two stone tablets, V: I–II; VI: I–I7 
mother, motherhood 
See also parents 
mother of Jesus, Mary as (see birth of 
Jesus; genealogies of Jesus; Mary) 
mullet, II: III 
murder, XIX: I8, I9, I7 
anger and, XIX: III, I7 
Manicheans and, V: IV, I7; V: I7 
mustard tree, XII: I6 
myth: of Manicheanism, II: I–II; II: I3, I8; 
XII: I7 
See also Manicheans 
nakedness, XII: I2; 
XII: IV, I7 
Nathaniel, XII: I–II; 
nations: 
the expectation of the nations, XII: I8 
spread of Christianity among (see under 
Christianity: spread of) 
in your descendant all the nations of the 
earth will be blessed, XII: I3, I4 
nations of darkness/light. See darkness, 
kingdom of, light, kingdom of 
nature, XII: I7 
See also Manicheans 

Noah, XII: I4–I7, I8–I9; 
Ham as son of, Revisions II, VII: I–II; 
as tenth from Adam, XII: I4 
non-believers. See unbelievers 

Old Testament, XVIII–XIX 
See also commandments; New Testament; 
patriarchs; prophets; scriptures; 
specific Books, topics, and people 

Octavius Augustus, XIX: II 
oil, anointing with, XII: I3 
“old man” (as opposed to “new man”), 
XX: I–II 

Octavius, XIX: IV, I7; 
XIX: IV, I7 
Old Testament as in harmony with, 
XX: I7–I8, II; 
sacrifices (see under sacrifices: Old 
Testament) 
sin in, XX: I–II; 
symbolism in (see symbolism; specific 
people and events) 
olive trees, IX: I–II; 
XII: II; 

Onan (son of Judah), XII: I7 
order, XX: I7 
avoiding disorder, VI: I 
ocf peace, XII: I7 
of nature, XII: I–II; 
onorganization, XX: I7 
original sin. See under sin: of Adam 
Orpheus, XII: I–II; 
ox, VI: I7 

pagans, paganism, XXX: I-I 
See also idolatry; specific topics 
beliefs of, XX: I0 
Christians as learning from, XII: I7 
converts to Christianity from, XII: I–II; 
Manicheanism and, V: I7; 

pagan prophets, XX: I–II; 
worship by, X: II 

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
“impure,” XXXIII:3–4
Manichean rejection of, XIII–XIV; XVI
pagan prophets, XXI:15
prophets, prostitution:
courtesans, XXXII:4
with demons (Augustine accusing
Manicheans of), XV:5
entering kingdom of heaven before
Pharisees, X:80
Hosea marrying (see Hosea)
at Jericho, XII:31
in Manichean marriages, XV:7
Tamar donning garment of (see Tamar)
providence, divine, XII:78
Psalms, Book of, XII:43; XII:45
punishment:
Christ as taking on our, XIV:4
eternal, XII:16
justice and, XII:2, 3, 3, 9
just vengeance, XIX:25
sin and, XIV:3–4
purple. See garments
quadrupeds, XVI:6
rabbit, XXI:6; XXII:3
Rachel, XXI:4, 47–59, 82
rational action and rational contemplation,
XII:27
rational soul. See soul
reason, XIII:6; XII:27; XVIII:3
Rebecca, XII:46, 82
repentance, XII:66–67, 97
reproduction. See procreation
resurrection of Jesus, VI:3; X:8; XII:29;
XIV:2; XV:2; XXII:7; XXIX:3
Manichean beliefs regarding, XXV:22
resurrection of the body, XII:8; XV:29;
XIV:2; XVII:1
Revelation of John, XV:11
revenge. See vengeance
riches. See property
righteousness, human, XX:23; XIII:78
rites, XIX:17–18
See also animal sacrifices; circumcision;
Old Testament; pork, abstinence from;
Sabbath rest; sacraments
as symbols foretelling what was to come,
VI:2; XIII:15
Romans, Letter to, XI:1, 4; XII:2
Romulus, XVIII:6
Ruben, XXI:64
rulers (legitimate authority), XXII:74–75
Sabbath, Sabbath rest:
Christians and, V:1; 4; XVIII:2
Catholics and, XIX:6; 9
corn gathered on, Christ allowing, V:6
Moses as teaching, XVI:6, 28–29
and pagan god Saturn, XVIII:5
as prophecy about Christ, XVI:29
sacraments, XIX:1
See also rites; specific sacraments, e.g.,
baptism
of the Church, XIII:15
of old law, cessation of, XIX:13; XXII:6
as visible signs of holiness, XIX:12
sacrifices
See also animal sacrifice
Abraham and Isaac, X:38; X:27; X:73
Jesus as offering, Manichean rejection of,
XIX:7
and Manichean God, XX:15–18; XXII:22
Manicheans and, VI:5
Old Testament, VI:5; XX:8; 23;
XII:17, 22
pagan, XX:18–23; XXII:17
Sadducees, XVI:24; XIX:31
Saints, Revisions II, 7 (34): 3
See also individual names
and sexual organs, XIX:4
salvation, X:16; XII:6; XV:2; XIX:17;
XXI:1
baptism and, XI:7–8
faith and, XII:46
grace and, XII:42
hope and, X:7–8
Samson, XII:32
santification, XIII:15
Sarah, XIII:5, 30–40, 82
Satan. See devil
Samson, XVIII:2; X:13
Saul, king, XII:32; XXII:57
Saul (Paul). See Paul, the apostle
savior, XII:36; XIX:8
See also Jesus Christ
sects, XII:3–4
See also heresies
scribes, XVIII:9
scriptures, XIX:18
See also canonical scriptures; gospel; New
Testament; Old Testament; specific
Books and topics
apocryphal books, XI:2; XXIII:79
authority of, XX:3; XXII:4, 6–46;
XXII:19–22; XXII:11
Catholic acceptance of, XX:62
Catholics and, XX:3
Catholics as not praising all actions in,
XX:62
people and lives in, XXII:96
prophetic books, XX:94
value and importance of, X:18
sects, XX:3
seers, XIII:1
See also prophets
Seneca, XX:9
senses, sensation, XXII:20

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

See also body
serpent, I:2–3; XXXI:1–3
See also devil
deceiving Eve, XV:9
Moses raising in desert, XII:30; XV:6
Moses' staff becoming, X:II:28; XV:6
servant
See also specific topics and names
Jesus as, III:6; X:II:8; XXII:10
Seth, X:II:3, 20
sexual intercourse. See continence
sexual abstinence. See continence
sexual intercourse, XXX:6
See also lust; procreation
births, regulation of (Manichean), X:V:7; X:II:30
meat as unclean product of, Manichean belief, VI:8
purpose of, XXII:30–31
sexual organs:
and procreation, X:IX:4
saints and, Revisions II, 7 (34): 3; X:IX:4
sexual passion. See concupiscence; lust
sheep, X:II:43; XXII:85
Sheelah (son of Judah), X:II:84
Sibyls, XIII:1–2, 15, 17; XXII:23
silver, XIII:9; XXII:91
Simon Magus, X:IX:12
sin
See also evil; punishment; repentance;
individual topics or names, e.g.,
David
of Adam, X:II:78; XXIV:2
and death, X:IV:3–4
forgiveness of, XX:22
loving the sinner but hating the sin,
X:IX:24
in Old Testament, XXXII:14
and punishment, X:IV:3–4
sinfulness, XXII:78
sins in Church, tolerating, XIII:16
what it is, XXII:26–27
six ages of the human race, XII:8; 18
slavery, Joseph sold into, X:II:61
smoke, III:3
snakes. See serpents
Sodom, X:XI:14, 41–45, 60–61
Solomon, XXXII:4
wives of, X:II:81, 88
Song of Songs, X:V:6; X:II:38
Son of God, V:4; II:2
See also Jesus Christ
Son of man, III:6; V:4; II:2
See also Jesus Christ
soul, souls:
body and, XXII:27; XXIV:2
at death, XX:6
death of the soul (Augustine on), XIV:2
Manichean beliefs regarding, V:10;
XX:17; XXII:22; XV:2
of Manichean Hearsers thought to return in
vegetables, V:10
as part of God (Manichean belief), XX:17
reason and, XXII:27
space: nature of God and, XXV:2
sphere of darkness. See darkness, kingdom of
spirit.
See also soul
body and, XXII:2
the Splendorous One, X:XX:12; XXII:19
stairway from earth to heaven, X:II:26
stars, II:5
stealing. See theft
stones: as alive (Manichean belief), X:V:4
stone tablets, the two, X:V:3–4, 7–8
substance of God, XX:9; XXII:22
inner man as part of, XXII:2
substances, two. See two natures
suffering of Jesus, X:VII:1–2; XXII:1–2
Manichean rejection of, XX:2, 11–12;
XXII:22
sun, Manichean worship of, X:V:1, 11–12;
XX:2, 8; 11
swans, XXI:11
swearing, X:IX:22–23; XXII:2
perjury, X:IX:23
symbols and symbolism, Old Testament,
IV:2–9; X:IX:11; XXXII:4; XXXII:9
See also allegory; specific people and events
foretelling by means of, XVIII:7
Jewish rites as, VI:2–4
Symmachians, X:IX:4
See also Nazareans
tabernacles, feast of, VI:9; X:IX:10
tables, the two stone, X:V:3–4, 7–8
Tamar, XXII:61, 64, 83–86; XXXII:4
Teaching Christianity (Augustine), XXII:91
temperance, XXII:29, 50
temples, X:II:36; XX:22
Manichean God as dwelling in, X:IX:15, 18
New Testament and, X:VI:10
restoration of the temple, X:II:36
temptation, X:IX:9; XXII:28
of Jesus, XXXII:7
Ten Commandments. See commandments;
Decalogue
Tertullian, X:II:4
testing God, XXII:36
Thelca, X:IX:4
theat, X:V:7; X:IX:18
Thomas, X:VII:33; XXII:79; X:IX:2; XXX:4
the three times (Manichean belief), X:III:6
Timothy, II:2; X:IX:17
First Letter to, X:XX:1–6
Tobias, X:IX:35
Treasury (Mani), X:V:4
trees
See also specific trees, e.g., olive trees
as alive and having feelings, X:V:4
curse on anyone who hangs on a tree, XIV:1, 2, 6, 12; XVI:5, 24
and grafting, IX:1–2
Jesus as brought forth in (Manichean belief), XX:11
Jesus on, XX:2, 11
mustard tree, XII:36
as parents of first princes of darkness, VI:8
Trinity, XII:19; XV:6; XX:7
See also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ beliefs of Faustus/Manicheans regarding, XX:2, 12
Trismegistos, XIII:17
truth:
apostles as teachers of, XXXII:22
Christ as, V:5; XVI:11
two births (Manichean belief in), XXIV:1–2
two natures (substances), Manichean concept of, XXXII:19–20
See also darkness; evil substance; light
unbelievers, XXI:2, 9; XXXI:4
unclean vs. clean. See clean: All things are clean for the clean
unity, XXI:6
Church, XII:20; XV:4
 unleavened bread, VI:9; XXXII:11
Uriah, XXII:87
Varro, XXIII:6
vegetables, V:6; VI:4, 6
See also dietary beliefs and practices
souls of Manichean Hearers thought to return in, V:10
vengeance:
cruelty in, XXII:74
just, XIX:25
Venus, XX:9
Vestals, XX:21
vendgar, XX:2
vining, XX:36; XV:6
violence. See war
vipers, XX:13
See also serpents
Virgil, XXII:25
virus birth, XII:10; XXVIII:4; XXIX:1
See also birth of Jesus; Mary
virginity, XIV:13; XX:21
See also continence
Paul as regarding, XXX:4, 6
virgins dedicated to Christ, XXX:4
Vulcan, XX:9
war, XXII:74–78
with kingdom of darkness, II:3; XXI:15
and “turning the other cheek,” XXII:76
what is blameworthy in, XXII:74
wealth. See property
wheat, XII:28
See also grain
white, whiteness, XII:42; XXI:11
widow, widows:
Elijah fed by, XII:34
taking wife of deceased brother, XXXII:10
will, free, II:5; XXII:22, 28, 78
will of God, V:3; XXII:27
wind, XII:10
wine, XII:42; XX:13; XXII:84
See also dietary beliefs and practices;
drunkenness
wise men, the three, II:5
witness, false. See false testimony; perjury
witness, witnesses:
believing in Christ without, VII:1–2; XVII:1–2, 45
Christians and, VIII:2
Jesus bearing witness to himself, XVI:2, 13
wives.
See also marriage
of Abraham, XXII:51
having multiple wives, XXII:47
husbands’ love for, XX:7
of Jacob, XXII:47–59
In the Old Testament, 35–59 (see also under individual names/patriarchs)
taking wife of deceased brother, XXXII:10
woman: as helper for man, XII:38
wombs, Manichean God as enclosed in, III:6; XXXII:10
wool. See garments
Word of God, VII:2
See also Jesus Christ
In the beginning was the Word, II:6
world
See also earth; nations; specific topics, e.g., Christianity; spread of end of (Manichean belief), II:5
god of this world, XXI:1–2, 10
six ages of, XII:8
The world cannot receive him, XXXII:17–18
worms, VI:8; XX:7
worshiping creature instead of creator, XIV:11; XX:19, 22
worship of God, XXII:9
worship of idols. See idolatry
writings:
of Augustine (see specific titles) in general, XXXIII:6–7
of Man, XV:4, 6
Zechariah, XII:36
Zerah, XXII:64
Zilpah, XXI:82
This Volume contains the following writings: *Psalm against the Party of Donatus (Psalmus contra partem Donati)*, *Answer to the Writings of Petilian (Contra litteras Petiliani)*, *Answer to the Letter of Parmenian (Contra epistulam Parmeniani)*, *Baptism (De baptismo)*, *Letter to Catholics on the Sect of the Donatists (Epistula ad Catholicos de secta Donatistarum)*

Volume I/21: Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-404-7, 6 x 9 in., 698 pages, 2019

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## The Donatist Controversy I

### Scripture Index

*(prepared by Michael Dolan)*

**Psalms Against the Party of Donatist**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>Matthew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133:1</td>
<td>26:52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Answer to the Writings of Petilian

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 6:3</td>
<td>2:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>I, 13, 14; II, 8, 20; II, 39, 94; III, 50, 62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Exodus 20:13 | 2:10 |
| 20:14 | II, 97, 224 |
| 20:16 | II, 92, 210 |
| 20:17 | II, 92, 202 |
| 32:32 | II, 92, 210 |

| Deuteronomy 30:19 | 3:8 |
| 2 Samuel 12:12 | II, 3, 4; III, 50, 62 |

| 2 Maccabees 7:9 | 11:1 |
| 14:4-5 | II, 18, 40 |

| Job 14:4-5 | 2:27 |
| 1:1 | II, 46, 107 |
| 1:2-4 | II, 46, 107 |
| 1:5-6 | II, 46, 107 |
| 2:1-9 | II, 92, 202 |
| 2:7-8 | II, 92, 210 |

---

**Volume I/21**
The Donatist Controversy I
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
<th>Reference 3</th>
<th>Reference 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, 68, 151</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>II, 33, 77; II, 68, 153</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>II, 23, 52; II, 71, 159</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10-11</td>
<td>III, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>III, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>III, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>III, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>III, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:39</td>
<td>II, 61, 137; II, 61, 138</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>III, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>II, 53, 121</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 103, 237</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>II, 92, 203</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>I, 20, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15-16</td>
<td>II, 16, 36; II, 73, 164; III, 58, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>I, 21, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16-17</td>
<td>I, 8, 9; II, 6, 12; III, 44, 53; III, 50, 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>II, 53, 121</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>II, 55, 126</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>II, 55, 126</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>II, 108, 247</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>II, 7, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>II, 7, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>II, 19, 43; II, 73, 163</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>II, 19, 42; III, 50, 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25</td>
<td>III, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>II, 19, 43; II, 100, 229</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31-32</td>
<td>II, 62, 139; II, 62, 140</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>I, 8, 9; II, 6, 12; III, 44, 53; III, 50, 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>II, 7, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td>II, 37, 87</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:30</td>
<td>II, 78, 174</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:38-39</td>
<td>II, 78, 174</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:49-50</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>III, 34, 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>II, 108, 247</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>II, 99, 228</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Chapter/Verse</td>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>I, 9, 10; II, 2, 5; III, 49, 59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>II, 10, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>III, 56, 68</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 20, 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>II, 30, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>III, 55, 67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>II, 22, 50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>II, 84, 185</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>II, 13, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>II, 73, 164</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:37</td>
<td>II, 12, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:51</td>
<td>II, 30, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:24-25</td>
<td>II, 89, 196</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>II, 22, 49; II, 24, 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>II, 75, 167</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:35</td>
<td>II, 75, 167</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:27</td>
<td>II, 22, 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:3-4</td>
<td>II, 22, 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>I, 5, 6; III, 42, 51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>II, 92, 202</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:12</td>
<td>II, 8, 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>II, 30, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:19</td>
<td>II, 15, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>II, 32, 72</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>II, 32, 76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:7-8</td>
<td>II, 38, 91</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>II, 43, 102</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2-4</td>
<td>II, 32, 72</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:32-34-35</td>
<td>II, 104, 239</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>III, 48, 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>II, 21, 47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:8</td>
<td>II, 21, 47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:17-18</td>
<td>II, 21, 47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>III, 54, 66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:23</td>
<td>II, 30, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:27-28</td>
<td>II, 30, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:1-7</td>
<td>II, 37, 85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:3</td>
<td>II, 37, 86; III, 56, 88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>II, 107, 244</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>III, 56, 88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>II, 14, 32; II, 15, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13-16</td>
<td>I, 19, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13-18</td>
<td>II, 15, 34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>II, 14, 32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>I, 27, 29; II, 52, 120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:26</td>
<td>II, 15, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>II, 14, 33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>I, 5, 6; II, 4, 9; II, 15, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>I, 9, 10; II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>III, 56, 88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:17</td>
<td>II, 8, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>III, 48, 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>II, 20, 45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:12-13</td>
<td>III, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:14</td>
<td>II, 23, 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>III, 3, 4; III, 51, 63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>II, 41, 97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>I, 3, 4; III, 51, 63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:14.16</td>
<td>III, 55, 67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>III, 55, 67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>III, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>II, 92, 202</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>III, 54, 66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:6-7</td>
<td>I, 5, 6; III, 42, 51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>III, 5, 6; III, 50, 62</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>III, 2, 3; III, 36, 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:21-23</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:1-3</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>II, 48, 112</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4-6</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Donatist Controversy I
The Donatist Controversy I

4:15 II, 5, 11; III, 55, 67
4:16 II, 76, 169
5:5 II, 10, 24
6:3 II, 18, 40
6:10 II, 23, 54
6:18 II, 62, 140
8:11 III, 4, 5
9:17 III, 55, 67
11:19 II, 74, 166
13:1-3 II, 77, 171
13:2 II, 55, 126
13:3 II, 99, 228
13:5-8 II, 78, 173
13:6 II, 78, 174; II, 81, 180
13:7 II, 78, 174
15:9 II, 18, 40
15:13 III, 46, 55; III, 46, 56
15:13-15 III, 46, 56
15:14 III, 46, 56

Ephesians
1:2 II, 1, 2
2:14 II, 70, 158
4:1-3 II, 69, 155
4:2-3 II, 78, 174; III, 5, 6
4:3 II, 15, 35; II, 32, 74
4:5 II, 27, 62
5:8 III, 12, 13
5:25-26 III, 49, 59; III, 56, 88
5:29 II, 68, 154

Philippians
1:2 II, 1, 2
1:15-18 II, 81, 180
1:18 II, 81, 179
2:20-21 II, 76, 170
3:5-6 II, 92, 206

Colossians
1:18 II, 104, 239
1:23 II, 103, 237
4:2-4 II, 105, 241

1 Thessalonians
5:14-15 III, 4, 5
5:15 III, 4, 5

2 Thessalonians
1:2 II, 1, 2

1 Timothy
1:7 II, 22, 50
1:8 II, 56, 127
1:11 II, 39, 94
1:20 II, 10, 24
3:10 III, 30, 35
3:15 II, 103, 237
5:6 II, 7, 16
5:22 II, 106, 242; II, 106, 243

2 Timothy
2:8 III, 56, 88
2:12 III, 7, 8

Volume I/21
### Answer to the Writings of Petilian

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>II, 68, 154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>II, 30, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>II, 30, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>II, 52, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Answer to the Letter of Parmenian

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>I, 2, 2; I, 4, 6; II, 13, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:4-5</td>
<td>I, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:13-14</td>
<td>I, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:15</td>
<td>I, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:6.15</td>
<td>I, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:22</td>
<td>II, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:20-21</td>
<td>II, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>II, 23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:45</td>
<td>II, 4, 9; II, 17, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:21</td>
<td>II, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>II, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
<td>19:2</td>
<td>II, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:2-3</td>
<td>II, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>II, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:17-19</td>
<td>I, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:28-29</td>
<td>I, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>II, 105, 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>II, 105, 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>II, 39, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 86, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>III, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II, 98, 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 19, 43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>III, 5, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:21</td>
<td>II, 21, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>I, 14, 21; II, 19, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:32</td>
<td>I, 4, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>II, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>II, 14, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:27</td>
<td>II, 6, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>II, 8, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ecclesiastes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>II, 16, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>II, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>II, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>II, 14, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Donatist Controversy I

Sirach
2:14 II, 1, 2; III, 6, 29
4:25 III, 6, 29
10:2 II, 4, 8
15:9 II, 12, 26
34:19 II, 5, 10
34:30 II, 10, 20

Isaiah
3:12 III, 5, 26
5:20 II, 1, 1
52:11 III, 4, 20
59:1-8 II, 3, 6
59:5 II, 3, 7
59:7 II, 3, 7
59:8 III, 6, 29
66:3 II, 5, 10

Jeremiah
2:12-13 II, 10, 20
9:1 II, 7, 13
10:10 II, 10, 22
15:18 II, 10, 20
17:2 II, 4, 8
23:28 III, 3, 17

Ezekiel
9:4 III, 2, 10

Daniel
9:20 II, 12, 26

Amos
2:7 II, 13, 30

New Testament
Matthew
3:12 III, 3, 19
5:9 III, 2, 10
5:10 I, 9, 15
6:12 II, 10, 20
9:12 III, 2, 5

Luke
15:22 II, 14, 32
18:14 III, 2, 5

John
1:1 II, 16, 35
1:8-9 II, 14, 32
1:14 II, 16, 35
1:16 II, 14, 32
1:33 II, 10, 22; II, 11, 23
3:6 II, 11, 23
3:27 II, 15, 33
5:21 II, 14, 32
8:44 I, 2, 3
9:31 II, 8, 15
13:34 III, 2, 5
14:6 II, 2, 5
14:27 III, 2, 5
16:15 II, 15, 34
20:21 II, 11, 24
20:21-23 II, 11, 24
20:22 II, 11, 24
20:23 II, 11, 24

Romans
1:32 I, 3, 5
2:24 II, 10, 22
3:4 I, 2, 3; II, 2, 5
3:15 II, 3, 7
6:9 II, 10, 22

Volume I/21
### The Donatist Controversy I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume I/21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>II, 7, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>II, 7, 14; III, 5, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:6</td>
<td>I, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>I, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-15</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>II, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14-18</td>
<td>II, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:21</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>III, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>II, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>I, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>I, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>II, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>II, 7, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-21</td>
<td>I, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-2</td>
<td>III, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>III, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>III, 5, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>III, 1, 3; III, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>II, 2, 4; III, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11-12</td>
<td>II, 20, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philemians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-18</td>
<td>II, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>II, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>II, 18, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>III, 5, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>III, 5, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>III, 1, 3; III, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>II, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>II, 13, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to the references provided, the volume also includes readings from other books such as 1 Corinthians, 2 Corinthians, Romans, 1 Thessalonians, 2 Thessalonians, and Revelation.
# The Donatist Controversy I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Timothy</th>
<th>2 Timothy</th>
<th>1 John</th>
<th>Revelation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3 II, 11, 24</td>
<td>II, 11, 25</td>
<td>II, 8, 15</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7 II, 4, 8; II, 9, 18</td>
<td>III, 4, 25</td>
<td>II, 8, 15</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4 II, 13, 29</td>
<td>III, 4, 25</td>
<td>II, 8, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5 II, 8, 16</td>
<td>III, 4, 25</td>
<td>II, 7, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6 II, 10, 20</td>
<td>IV, 10, 15</td>
<td>III, 5, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22 II, 21, 40; III, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 7, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Old Testament

### Genesis
- 1:4 VII, 7, 12
- 15:10 I, 17, 26
- 21:10 I, 10, 14

### Exodus
- 20:13.15 VI, 14, 23
- 34:6 II, 10, 15

### Deuteronomy
- 4:24 III, 19, 25

### 1 Kings
- 18:21 VII, 8, 14

### Psalms
- 13:3 I, 19, 29
- 14:5 IV, 9, 12
- 26:8 VII, 51, 99
- 40:5 V, 27, 38
- 44:14 V, 27, 38
- 50:16 VII, 15, 29
- 50:18 VII, 15, 29
- 58:1 II, 7, 10

## Baptism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th>Song of Songs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:4 VII, 7, 12</td>
<td>9:12 VI, 12, 18</td>
<td>2:14 VI, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10 I, 17, 26</td>
<td>9:18 VI, 12, 18</td>
<td>4:9-12 V, 27, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:10 I, 10, 14</td>
<td>14:11 VI, 14, 22</td>
<td>4:12 V, 27, 38; VI, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:13.15 VI, 14, 23</td>
<td>18:1 III, 19, 26</td>
<td>4:13 V, 27, 38; VI, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:6 II, 10, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td>4:15 V, 27, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 4:24 III, 19, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td>6:8 I, 11, 15; IV, 3, 4; IV, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings 18:21 VII, 8, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td>6:9 VI, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 13:3 I, 19, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:5, 2:24-25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>34:30, 1:12, 18; V, 23, 33; VI, 12, 19; IV, 8, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>2:24-25, 15:18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>16:17-19, III, 19, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>2:6-7, 2:8, III, 19, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>1:2-3, I, 10, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>1:24, 9:39-40, 9:40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>2:14, 6:37, 23:43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>3:11, 3:14, 5:13, 5:20, 6:14-15, 6:15, IV, 3, 4; IV, 13, 20; VI, 18, 31; VI, 28, 54; VII, 15, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:16, 1:29, 1:32-33, 1:33, III, 4, 6; IV, 11, 17; V, 12, 14; V, 13, 15; VI, 28, 54; VI, 34, 66; VII, 14, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td>7:22, 7:23, IV, 3, 4; IV, 13, 20; VI, 18, 31; VI, 28, 54; VII, 15, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:24, 7:26, VI, 24, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:22, VI, 44, 86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:24, I, 5, 6; IV, 19, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:30, I, 7, 9; IV, 10, 16; VI, 18, 30; VI, 31, 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Donatist Controversy I**
## The Donatist Controversy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>II, 14, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>I, 18, 28; III, 19, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:35</td>
<td>III, 19, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>III, 6, 9; VI, 37, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>III, 19, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>I, 18, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>V, 13, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:23</td>
<td>I, 11, 15; V, 21, 29; VI, 1, 1; VI, 3, 5; VI, 14, 23; VII, 12, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>V, 21, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:31</td>
<td>IV, 21, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>V, 23, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>IV, 9, 12; V, 23, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>VII, 11, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>IV, 24, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>III, 16, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>VI, 34, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>VI, 19, 33; VI, 34, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>V, 10, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>I, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>V, 9, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>IV, 22, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>V, 14, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>III, 19, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>II, 7, 10; II, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>IV, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10-13</td>
<td>I, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>III, 14, 19; V, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>I, 15, 23; III, 14, 19; IV, 15, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>III, 15, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>I, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>III, 14, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-4</td>
<td>I, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>III, 13, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>III, 13, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>IV, 13, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>IV, 4, 6; V, 24, 34; VII, 11, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>VII, 13, 25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>I, 11, 16; V, 24, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>VI, 12, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-21</td>
<td>IV, 18, 25; V, 14, 16; VI, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>IV, 18, 25; VI, 12, 19; VI, 43, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22-23</td>
<td>I, 18, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume I/21**
## Volume I/21

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ephesians</th>
<th>2 Timothy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6 V, 10, 12</td>
<td>2:8 V, 14, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4 V, 14, 16</td>
<td>2:16-21 III, 19, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2-3 VI, 7, 10; VII, 51, 99</td>
<td>2:17 IV, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3 II, 6, 8</td>
<td>2:17-20 IV, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-6 VI, 12, 18</td>
<td>2:19 III, 19, 26; V, 27, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5 VI, 12, 19</td>
<td>2:20 IV, 12, 18; VII, 51, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5 VI, 8, 11</td>
<td>2:21 IV, 14, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6 VII, 10, 18</td>
<td>4:2 II, 11, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14 III, 14, 19</td>
<td>Titus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5 IV, 5, 7; IV, 9, 12</td>
<td>1:7 III, 18, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5-6 IV, 18, 25</td>
<td>1:16 IV, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27 III, 18, 23; IV, 3, 4</td>
<td>1 John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18 IV, 7, 10; IV, 11, 17; VII, 50, 98</td>
<td>3:20-21 V, 28, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15 II, 5, 6; III, 15, 20; IV, 11, 17; VI, 7, 10</td>
<td>3:21 IV, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16 II, 5, 6</td>
<td>4:8 I, 18, 27; III, 16, 21; VI, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>1 John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5 IV, 4, 6; V, 11, 13</td>
<td>2:9 I, 11, 16; IV, 13, 19; V, 19, 27; VI, 14, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>2:19 III, 19, 26; V, 21, 29; VII, 51, 99; VII, 53, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5 III, 16, 21; V, 8, 9; VI, 1, 2; VII, 45, 89</td>
<td>3:15 V, 19, 27; VI, 23, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8 V, 8, 9</td>
<td>2 John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13 IV, 5, 7</td>
<td>10 VII, 45, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19 IV, 13, 19; VI, 1, 1</td>
<td>10-11 VII, 45, 88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Letter to Catholics on the Sect of the Donatists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>28:10-15 6, 13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>28:14 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16-18 6, 11</td>
<td>28:15 6, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18 19, 51</td>
<td>Judges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:1-5 6, 12</td>
<td>6:36-40 5, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The Donatist Controversy I
The Donatist Controversy I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Volume I</th>
<th>Volume II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>13, 33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>8, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>8, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:1-2</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>8, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:17-18</td>
<td>8, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:27</td>
<td>25, 75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:27-28</td>
<td>8, 21; 19, 51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:10</td>
<td>24, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:10-11</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:13</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:13-14</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:17</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48:2</td>
<td>24, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48:8</td>
<td>24, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:1-2</td>
<td>8, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>57:4</td>
<td>8, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>57:5</td>
<td>8, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>61:2</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>63:9</td>
<td>5, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>68:4</td>
<td>24, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72:9-11</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72:17-19</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72:19</td>
<td>8, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90:12</td>
<td>16, 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>96:5</td>
<td>19, 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:5</td>
<td>20, 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>118:158</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:28</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:53</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>23, 65</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>16, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>16, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>14, 35; 21, 60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>19, 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>19, 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>34:7</td>
<td>19, 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>11:9-10</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:19-22</td>
<td>16, 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41:4-5</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41:5</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42:1-4</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:5-6</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:8</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:12-17</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:12-17</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:17</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:18-23</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51:4-5</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>52:9-10</td>
<td>7, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53:11-12</td>
<td>7, 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53:12</td>
<td>7, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>54:1</td>
<td>7, 18; 14, 36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>54:1-5</td>
<td>7, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>54:4</td>
<td>24, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>58:10</td>
<td>16, 41; 19, 51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>62:1-4</td>
<td>7, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>62:4</td>
<td>19, 51; 24, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/21
**Volume I/21**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ezekiel</th>
<th>Luke</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:4 14, 35</td>
<td>13:26 15, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:2 16, 42</td>
<td>13:28-30 15, 37, 16:29 25, 75, 16:31 25, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:3 16, 42</td>
<td>18:8 15, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:9 16, 42</td>
<td>18:9 15, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:21 8, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:44 10, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:45-46 10, 24, 24:46-48 10, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:47 10, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:48-49 10, 26, 24:50-53 10, 26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th>John</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:12 20, 55</td>
<td>1:33 21, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14 16, 40; 25, 72</td>
<td>1:51 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15 16, 40</td>
<td>2:17 20, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20 22, 62</td>
<td>3:5 22, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13-14 14, 36</td>
<td>4:2 21, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17 21, 59</td>
<td>6:70 25, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22 23, 67</td>
<td>7:37-38 23, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23 23, 65; 23, 67</td>
<td>7:39 23, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24 21, 60</td>
<td>10:27 11, 28; 12, 32; 25, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26 21, 60</td>
<td>13:10 22, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11-12 14, 36</td>
<td>19:24 8, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13 10, 25</td>
<td>21:17 16, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30 16, 40</td>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24 17, 45</td>
<td>1:1-8 11, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:30 14, 35</td>
<td>1:8 11, 29; 19, 51; 24, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:38 14, 35</td>
<td>1:8-10 11, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:39 14, 35</td>
<td>1:9-15 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:47-50 14, 35</td>
<td>2:1-14 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18 21, 60</td>
<td>2:37-41 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23 25, 74</td>
<td>2:39 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7 20, 56</td>
<td>8:1 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21 16, 41</td>
<td>8:4 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16 15, 37</td>
<td>8:25 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:27-28 5, 8</td>
<td>8:39-40 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:6 19, 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12 15, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13 15, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:14 17, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:23 3, 6; 11, 28; 25, 72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25 19, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:26 25, 72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Donatist Controversy I**
The Donatist Controversy I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Verses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>9:15-16 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:31 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11-15 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:15 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:28 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:46-47 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:48 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:4 21, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>versus Ephesians 4:32 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:23 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:27 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:31 7, 17; 10, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>versus Philippians 3:15 11, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>versus Colossians 1:3-6 17, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:6 17, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:24 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Timothy 2:7 12, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15 24, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15-16 24, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16 24, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:1 19, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>versus 2 Timothy 2:19 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5 13, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:12 15, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13 15, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>versus Titus 2:14 14, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Peter 2:8 15, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 John 4:1 23, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Revelation 22:13 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:14-15 21, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:2 23, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:7 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:1 12, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:2 7, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:11 23, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:14 19, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:8-9 19, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:6-9 12, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:9 17, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15 6, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15-16 6, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16 24, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:27 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:19-21 22, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:21 23, 65; 25, 74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/21
The Donatist Controversy I

Index of Names and Places

(prepared by Jen Weers)

“n” after a page number references a note

Psalm against the Party of Donatus

| A | Africa, 30, 35n, 37–38, 39n, 40, 46n |
|   | Apostle, the. See Paul the Apostle |
|   | Augustine of Hippo, 29–31 |
| C | Caecilian, 35, 35n, 38, 46n |
|   | Carthage, 35 |
|   | Christ Jesus. See Jesus Christ |
|   | Cyprian of Carthage, 30–31 |
| D | Donatists, 29–31 |
|   | Donatus of Magnus, 37–39 |
| E | Ezekiel, 41 |
| F | Felix of Abthungi, 35n |
| H | Hippo, 29 |
| J | Jesus Christ, 34, 39–41, 44 |
|   | John the Baptist, 41 |
|   | Judas, 30, 42, 45 |
| M | Macarius, 39, 39n, 40, 46, 46n |
|   | Miltiades, 35n |
| N | Numidia, 35, 35n |
| O | Optatus of Milevis, 30 |
| P | Paul (imperial notary), 46n |
|   | Paul the Apostle, 45 |
|   | Peter, 34 |

Answer to the Writings of Petilian

| A | Aaron, 192–193 |
|   | Abednego, 178–180 |
|   | Abiron, 71 |
|   | Abraham: and kings, 169; and |
|   | Macarius, 122–124, 128; |
|   | offspring of, 84–85, 88, 110, 137, |
|   | 263; Paul on, 70, 83, 252–253 |
|   | Africa, 63, 68, 164–165, 191, 203, |
|   | 208, 253, 263 |
|   | Ahab, 166, 168 |
| Alypius, 54 |
| Ananias, 96–97 |
| Anastasius, 134, 134n |
| Apollos, 117, 125, 243, 257–259 |
| Apostle, the. See Paul the Apostle |
| Arles, 172 |
| Assuras, 64 |
| Athens, 107 |
| Augustine of Hippo, on Petilian’s |
|   | writings, 47–52 |

Volume I/21
Volume I/21

B
Bar-Jesus, 241
Bauto, 224–225, 225n

C
Caecilian, 87, 167, 167n, 203, 203n, 224, 224n
Caiaphas, 107, 124
Cain, 137, 160
Calama, 186, 261
Carneades, 220, 220n
Carthage, 47
Cassian, 183
Cephas, 125
Christ Jesus. See Jesus Christ
Circumcellions: and baptism, 129–130; belligerent nature of, 142, 160–162; and schism, 88; suicidal nature of, 71, 71n, 96, 171
Cirta, 47
Constantine: about, 171n, 186n; and Christianity, 171–172; history of controversy, use of, 224; vs Julian, 183; laws of, 175; and Silvanus, 69, 262
Constantinople, 237
Corinth, 117
Cornelius, 115
Crispinus of Calama, 157, 186
Crispus, 259
Cyprian of Thubursicum Bure, 234–235

D
Dathan, 71
David: on baptism, 129; on holiness vs impious, 128; and judgement, 131; on kings, 166–167, 169–170; on persecutors, 89; and righteous among wicked, 130; on sinners, 190–191, 233; on traditor, 80
Decius, 167, 167n, 174
Diocletian, 167, 167n, 174
Domitian, 167, 167n, 174
Donatus Magnus, 123–124, 254

E
Elijah, 94, 170
Elisha, 170
Eve, 205
Ezekiel, 196

F
Faustinus, 157, 157n
Felician of Musti, 61–62, 64–65, 79–80, 135, 135n, 239, 239n
Firmus, 156, 156n
Fortunatus, 54, 185–186, 186n, 237
Furius, 221, 221n

G
Gaius, 259
Gaul, 237
Gehenna, 147, 183, 185
Geta, 167, 167n, 174
Gildo (Count of Africa), 61n, 156, 156n, 176, 188
Goliath, 129

H
Hermon, 192, 194
Herod, 109, 166
Hippo, 157, 186
Honorius of Milevis, 237, 237n

I
Isaac, 169
Isaiah, 233
Israel, 124
Italy, 52

The Donatist Controversy I
# The Donatist Controversy I

## J
- **Jacob**, 169
- **James**, 134, 134n
- **Jeremiah**, 189–190, 233
- **Jerusalem**, 134, 148, 159, 193

**Jesus Christ**: and anointing language, 192–193; and baptism, 235–236, 238–239, 243–244; in baptism, 57–59, 76–77, 79–80; baptism of the Trinity, 109–114; baptism vs John’s, 114–115, 117–119; as baptizer, 250; betrayal of, 80–83; and false witnesses, 138; vs Julian, 183–184; name, holiness of, 154, 154n; name, invocation of, 136; and peace, 145; and persecution, 152; unity in, 56–58

**Jezebel**, 166, 168

**Job**, 131–132, 196

**John (the apostle)**, 122, 134, 161, 195–196, 233


**Joseph (son of Jacob)**, 169

**Judas**: and baptism of sinners, 235; and baptizers, wicked, 259; condemnation of, 80; and Matthias, 92; righteous and unrighteous, 125, 130, 197; as traditor, 81, 85, 97–98, 125–127

**Judea**, 121, 126, 137–138

**Julian (the Apostate)**, 156, 156n, 169, 169n, 171–172, 171n–172n, 175, 182–184

## K
- **Korah**, 71

## M
- **Macarius**, 122, 122n, 128, 175–176, 224, 224n
- **Mani**, 72–73, 73n
- **Manicheans**, 52, 72–73, 73n
- **Marcellinus**, 167, 167n
- **Marculus**, 87–88n, 95–96, 162
- **Matthias**, 92
- **Mauretania Caesariensis**, 156
- **Maximian**: about, 61n, 63n, 167n; and false witnesses, 138–139; fate of, 167, 174; and Praetextatus and Felician, 61–62; and rebaptism, 65
- **Maximianists**: about, 48, 156n; baptisms of, 235; condemnation of, 135; and crime, 95; Donatists treatment of, 73–74, 238–239; and rebaptism, 65–68; and schism, 156; and schism ramifications, 61–65; sufferings of, 126–127
- **Maximus, Magnus**, 224, 225n
- **Mensurius**, 167, 167n, 224, 224n
- **Meshach**, 121, 126
- **Messianus**, 224–225, 225n
- **Milan**, 224
- **Milevis**, 237
- **Monceaux, Paul**, 47
- **Moses**, 141, 160, 169, 210
- **Mount Zion**, 192

## N
- **Nathaniel**, 147
- **Nero**, 167, 167n, 174
- **Noah**, 196
- **Numidia**, 47

## O
- **Optatus of Thamugadi**: about, 61n, 114n, 241n; and baptism, 64, 78, 119–120; as baptizer, 61–62, 187–188; betrayal, 127; death of, 176; evils of, 66–67, 91, 100, 102–103, 123–124, 135, 145, 156

---

**Volume I/21**
Paul the Apostle: as apostles, last of, 92; baptism, 76, 97, 105, 120; baptism, ministers of, 246–247, 257–259; baptism, of sinners, 235; baptism and Christ, 250; Christ, body of, 192–193; Christ, unity in, 56–58, 203; on Cretan prophets, 107; discipline, ecclesiastical, 205; evangelism, 190; failure, response to, 243; and false witnesses, 139; and the Holy Spirit, 117; and hope, 182, 227; on the law, 137; on laymen, 197; and love, 149–150; persecution, 94, 96–97; Petilian’s opinions to Augustine, 246–247; on proclamation of Christ, 153–154; righteous and unrighteous, 125; righteousness of, 195; and sacraments, 130–131; scripture, Augustine’s use of, 253–255; on sin, 141; slanders, 213; sufferings of, 164

Peter, 125, 130, 134, 162–163, 184–185, 233, 249, 259

Petilian and writings of, 47–52, 186n

Philip, 79, 130, 233

Philus, 221, 221n

Pilus, 221, 221n

Pontius, 169, 169n, 172, 183

Pontius Pilate, 108, 166–167

Praetextatus of Assuras, 61–62, 65, 239, 239n

Primian, 63, 63n, 97, 234

Protagoras, 221, 221n

Quodvultdeus, 231, 231n

Red Sea, 118

Rogatian, 183

Rogatus of Cartenna, 156

Romanus, 224, 224n

Rome, 172

Rusicade, 261

Saint Matthias, 80

Samaria, 79, 126, 137–138

Saul, 173. See also Paul the Apostle

Seranus, 156–157, 157n

Shadrach, 178–180

Silvanus of Cirta, 52, 261–262

Simeon, 147

Simon, 79, 190

Simon the Magician, 70, 129–130, 233, 241

Smaria, 121

Solomon, 122

Splendonus, 237–238, 237n

Stephanas, 259

Susanna, 101

Taurinus, 224, 224n

Tertullus, 216

Thubursicum Bure, 234–235

Timothy, 148, 197

Trajan, 167, 167n, 174

Ursacius, 167, 167n, 175–176

Valens, 173, 173n

Valerian, 167, 167n, 174

Zebedee, 99

Zechariah, 147

Zenophilus, 261

Zion, 166, 194

The Donatist Controversy I
The Donatist Controversy I

Answer to the Letter of Parmenian

A
Aaron, 306
Abraham, 272–274, 276, 295, 323
Adam, 307
Ahab, 336
Ananias, 345
Apollos, 328
Apostle, the. See Paul the Apostle
Arles, 281–282, 366, 366n
Augustine of Hippo, on Parmenian writings, 265–268

B
Babylon, 303
Bagai, 266, 364–365
Balaam, 310

C
Caecilian, 266, 275–276, 278–281, 323, 323n, 347, 347n, 355
Caiaphas, 306, 322, 322n
Carthage, 369
Christ Jesus. See Jesus Christ
Circumcellions, 288–292, 300n, 301, 312, 362
Constantine, 280, 282, 284
Cornelius, 332

D
Daniel, 306, 322
David, 306, 367
Decius, 351, 351n
Diocletian, 266
Donatus Magnus, 265, 275n, 297–298, 354n, 362–363

E
Ephesus, 321
Ezekiel, 299, 304, 306, 353, 357

F
Felician of Musti: about, 332n, 363n; as baptizer, 314, 332, 363, 365; and Maximianists, treatment of, 328; and Parmenian’s behavior, at council, 279; and rebaptism, 366–367
Firmus, 289

G
Gildo (Count of Africa), 303, 332, 332n

H

I
Isaac, 272
Israel, 310

J
Jacob, 272
Jehoshaphat, 335–336
Jerusalem, 303
Jesus Christ: as Abraham’s offspring, 272–274; and baptism, 319, 334, 367; vs Donatus, 297–298; and law, 335, 348–349; power of, 328–330; proclamation of, 320–321, 336; unity in, 309–310, 349
John (the apostle), 308–311, 317, 329, 332–333

Volume I/21
The Donatist Controversy I
The Donatist Controversy I

Baptism

A
Aaron, 459, 511
Abel, 414
Abiram, 458–459
Abraham, 415, 415n, 496
Adam, 412
Adelphius of Thasuaute, 569
Africa, 433, 443, 472
Agrippinus, 432–433, 432n, 433–436,
441–442, 450–451, 472
Antonianus, 469, 469n, 470
Apostle, the. See Paul the Apostle
Arius, 454, 454n
Asher, 412
Assuras, 504
Augustine of Hippo, on Baptism,
381–388
Aurelius of Utica, 578
Aurelius, from Cillavi, 594
Aymmus of Ausuagiga, 582
C
Caecilius of Bilta, 540–541, 541n
Caiaphas, 403
Cain, 414
Caldonius, 523
Carthage, 422, 436
Cassius of Macomades, 560–561
Castus of Sicca, 447, 565
Christ Jesus. See Jesus Christ
Clarus of Mascula, 593
Constantine, 400n
Cornelius, 385–386, 401, 493–494,
496
Crescens of Cirta, 548
Cyprian of Carthage, 382–388, 603–
604; about, 416–417, 417n; and
Agrippinus council, 434; apology
for, 431–433; authority of, 419–
426; on baptism vs rebaptism,
438–439; on baptism of heretics,
596–598; on baptizers, 540–541,
545, 554, 583; on betrayal, 587;
on Christians, wicked, 562;
Donatists beginning, 442–443;
on envy, 569; as example,
573–574; example of, 441; on
heathens, 571; on heresy, 558;
and Jubaianus, 422, 444–445; on
judgement, 575–578, 587–588;
on letter to Januarius and other
bishops (70), 520–523; on letter
to Jubaianus (73), 448–474, 481–
489, 492–495, 497–516; on letter
to Pompeius, 523–531; on letter
to Quintus (71), 518–520; and
love, 460; on outsiders, 555, 568;
vs Peter, 586; praise of, 516–518;
and prayer, 557; as precedent,
441–442; principle, 445–447;
sacraments and authority of, 391;
and schism vs traditio, 428–429;
and schismatics, acceptance of,
430–431; and separation of the
Church, 426–427; on sinners,
579; unity, appeal for, 437–440;
wicked, being in communion
with, 427
D
Daniel, 466
Dathan, 414, 458–459
Dativus of Vadis, 552
Demetrius of Leptis Minor, 569
Diocletian, 386
Dioga of Leptis Magna, 595
Donatus of Capsa, 590
Donatus Magnus, 437, 442
Donatus of Cibalianæ, 585

Volume I/21
Volume I/21

E
Egypt, 465, 578, 580
Elijah, 510
Enoch, 414
Esau, 406, 412, 414, 515
Eucratius of Thenae, 566
Eugeniæ of Ammaedera, 567
Eunomius, 454, 454n
Ezekiel, 462

F
Faustus of Timida Regia, 586
Felician of Musti, 393, 393n, 399, 437
Felix of Bagai, 551
Felix of Barmacca, 567
Felix of Buslacene, 448
Felix of Buslacenis, 589
Felix of Gurgita, 591
Felix of Marazanae, 581
Felix of Misgirpa, 542–543
Felix of Uthina, 563
Fortunatus of Tuccabori, 554–555

G
Geminius of Furni, 586

H
Hagar, 414
Ham, 414
Hermes Trismegistus, 572, 572n
Honoratus of Tucca, 448, 592
Hortensianus of Lares, 559
Hosea, 459
Hostanes, 571, 571n
Hymenæus, 461

I
Iader of Midila, 580
Iambus of Germaniciana, 579
Irenæus of Ululis, 585
Isaac, 406, 412, 496–497
Ishmael, 406, 412, 414

J
Jacob, 406
Januarius of Lambaes, 546–547
Januarius of Muzuli, 569
Januarius of Vicus Caesaris, 561
Jeremiah, 455
Jesus Christ: baptism of, 418, 424, 427, 442, 449; baptism of heretics, 450–451, 468, 472, 502, 566, 579, 583; baptism of vs John’s, 507–513; baptisms, Catholic vs Donatus, 395, 397–399; bride of, 467, 509, 511–512, 526, 528, 582; enemies of and baptism, 550, 559; and forgiveness, 407–408; gathering in the name of, 400–401; judgement, 445, 539, 577; and martyrdom, 492; and outsiders, 480, 488; and salvation, 592; unity in, 405
John (the apostle): on baptism, 507; on baptism and forgiveness, 406–407; on baptism of heretics, 483; on baptizers, wicked, 519–520, 522, 559; on outsiders, 460, 550; on teachings of Christ, 594
John the Baptist, 386, 495, 507–513
Jubaianus, 422, 422n, 434, 438, 444–446, 448, 538–539
Judas, 414, 507, 587–588
Julian of Marcelliana, 589
Julian of Thelepte, 586
Junius, 523
Junius of Neapolis, 596

L
Leah, 414
Leucius of Theveste, 567
Liberalus, 523
Libosus of Vaga, 447, 566

The Donatist Controversy I
The Donatist Controversy I

Litteus of Gemellae, 595
Lucianus of Rucuma, 580
Lucius of Auzafa, 591
Lucius of Castra Galba, 547
Lucius of Membressa, 588

M
Magnus, 539, 597
Marcellus of Zama, 584–585
Marcion, 454, 454n, 584, 584n
Marcus of Macarius, 574–576
Maximian, 393, 393n, 505
Maximianists: about, 393n;
  baptism of, 435, 443, 443n;
  condemnation of, 398–399, 399n;
  and rebaptism, 504–505, 505n;
  schism of, 436–437
Maximus, 523
Mesopotamia, 465
Munnulus of Girba, 550
Moses, 414
Musti, 504

N
Natalis of Oea, 595
Nathanael, 460
Nemesius of Tubuanae, 544–546
Nicolaus, 478
Nicomedes of Segermes, 549–550
Noah, 414
Novatus of Thamugadi, 543
Numidia, 433

O
Optatus of Thamugadi, 436, 436n
Ostanes, 571, 571n

P
Paul of Obba, 581
Paul the Apostle: on Abraham, 496;
  and Agrippinus council, 436; as
  an example, 420; and apology
  for Cyprian, 432; and avarice,
  468–470, 525; on baptism of
  heretics, 486, 570; on baptism
  and forgiveness, 407; on baptism
  and law, 506; on baptism and
  martyrdom, 494; on baptism and
  Mother Church, 405–406; on
  baptism of heretics, 452–454,
  485; and baptism, corruption of,
  466; and baptizers, standards
  of, 458; and baptizers, wicked,
  522, 540–541, 544, 546; and
  charity, 403; on Christians, false,
  524; on discussion, peaceful,
  540; on Donatists becoming
  Catholic, 411, 413; on envy and
  jealousy, 476–477, 479–481; on
  faith, 581; and God’s dwelling,
  598–599; on heathens, 571;
  and the Holy Spirit, 455–456;
  human thought, 425–426; and
  John the Baptist, 386, 507,
  509–512; on objections, of
  converts, 396–397; Old and New
  Testament correlations, 413; on
  outsiders, 460, 473–474, 568;
  on rebaptism, 473, 473n, 501,
  551; on resurrection, 527; and
  salvation, 488, 507; on sin, 452,
  564, 578–579; sins of, 470–471;
  on vices, 489
Pelagianus of Luperciana, 580
Peter: as an example, 420–422; on
  baptism, 466, 530; baptism and
  forgiveness, 407; and baptism, of
  heretics, 472; and charity, 480;
  on charity, 556; vs Cyprian, 586;
  Cyprian on, 424; martyrdom
  of, 574; on outsiders, 555; and
  rebaptism, 383; and the truth, 447
Peter of Hippo Zaritus, 591

Volume I/21
Volume I/21

Philetus, 461
Philip, 459
Photinus, 487, 487n
Plato, 571–572
Pollianus of Miley, 551
Polycarp of Hadrumetum, 543
Pompeius, 523, 539
Pompeius of Sabrata, 595
Pomponius of Dionysiana, 581
Praetextatus of Assuras, 437
Primian, 398–399, 505
Privatianus of Sufetula, 558
Privatus of Sufes, 559
Pudentianus of Cuicul, 590
Pusillus of Lamasba, 592

Q
Quietus of Burug, 564
Quintus, 420, 433, 523, 539
Quintus of Agguia, 589

R
Rachel, 414
Rebecca, 414
Rogatianus of Nova, 587

S
Salvianus of Gazaufala, 592
Sarah, 414
Satius of Sicilibba, 577
Saturninus, 523
Saturninus of Abitina, 589
Saturninus of Tuca, 584
Saturninus of Victoriana, 583
Saul, 403, 456, 525. See also Paul the Apostle
Secundianus of Thambei, 593
Secundinus of Carpi, 561
Secundinus of Cediae, 550
Sedatus of Thuburbo, 556–558
Simon the Magician: and baptism, 385, 493; and baptism and forgiveness, 407; baptism and Mother Church, 405; and charity, 403–404; envy and jealousy, 478; kingdom of God, entering, 545; sacraments, 456
Solomon, 558
Stephen, 523–524, 523n, 526, 526n
Stephen of Rome, 383
Successus of Abbir Germaniciana, 553

T
Tenax of Horrea Coelia, 590
Theoegenes of Hippo Regius, 551
Therapius of Bulla, 587
Tyconius, 389–390

V
Valentinus, 454, 454n
Venantius of Tinisa, 582
Verulus of Rusicade, 590
Victor of Assuras, 590
Victor of Gor, 577
Victor of Octavus, 593
Victorius of Thabraca, 563
Vincent of Thibaris, 570

Z
Zechariah, 571
Zosimus of Tarassa, 585
Zosimus of Tharassa, 447

The Donatist Controversy I
Letter to Catholics on the Sect of the Donatists

A
Abednego, 668
Abimelech, 619
Achaia, 640
Ambrose of Milan, 664, 664n
Ananias, 638
Antioch, 639
Apostle, the. See Paul the Apostle
Arles, 658
Asia, 640
Athens, 639
Azotus, 638

B
Bagai, 658–659
Bethany, 633
Bithynia, 640
Byzacena, 612
Byzacium, 665

C
Caecilian, 611, 611n, 657, 684
Caesarea, 612, 638
Cappadocia, 640
Carthage, 612n, 654–655, 658
Circumcellions, 612n, 653, 663, 663n, 668, 671
Colossae, 656
Constantine, 657–658, 658n
Corinth, 640
Cornelius, 638, 672
Crispus, 673

D
Daniel, 654–655
David, 613, 621
Donatus Magnus, 635, 654, 656, 661

E
Egypt, 619, 653–654
Elijah, 644
Enoch, 642–643, 649
Ephesus, 640
Ezekiel, 645, 654

F
Felician of Musti, 658, 658n, 659, 681

G
Gaius, 673
Galatia, 640
Gehenna, 645, 678
Gerar, 619
Gideon, 617

H
Harran, 619

I
Iconium, 639
Illyricum, 640
Isaac, 618–619, 621, 642–643
Isaiah, 621–626, 653–654
Israel, 617, 620–626, 633, 642, 644

J
Jacob, 619–620, 622, 642–643
Jeremiah, 676
Jerusalem, 624, 626, 631–636, 638, 643, 681

Jesus Christ: as Abraham’s offspring, 618–619, 621–622, 666, 680–681; and baptism, 659, 679; baptism of Donatists, 672–679; baptism of outsiders, 679, 681, 683; bride of, 624; the Church of, 607; as head of the church body, 613–614; Old Testament, prophecies in, 627–633; and salvation, 662–663

Volume I/21
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Names and Terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>John (the apostle), 637, 672; John the Baptist, 633, 672; Judah, 619, 644; Judas, 611, 630, 636, 645, 672; Judea, 634, 637–638, 662; Julian (the Apostate), 661n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Lactantius, 611, 611n; Laodicea, 640; Lot, 642, 649–650; Lucilla, 612n, 657, 683; Lystra, 639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Majorinus, 611, 611n; Marcion, 680, 680n; Mary (virgin), 613; Matthias, 636; Maximian, 658; Maximianists, 612, 612n, 646, 665, 668, 681; Meshach, 668; Moses, 630–631, 648, 653, 685–686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Noah, 616, 642–643, 649; Numidia, 665; Numidian, 659; Nundinarius, 657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Optatus of Milevis, 664, 664n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Parmenian, 635; Paul the Apostle: on baptism, 673–675; on the Church, 607; Colossae, epistle to, 656; evangelism, 639–640; on forgiveness, 608; and God’s dwelling, 682; on Isaiah’s testimonies, 621–625; and lawlessness, 668–669; on persecution, 650; on Psalms, 627; on the righteous among unrighteous, 645; on righteous, number of, 647; on scriptural interpretation, 618–619, 666, 677; on spiritual phenomena, 661–662; Pergamum, 640; Peter, 616, 630, 636–638, 672–673, 675; Petilian, 626, 642; Philadelphia, 640; Philip, 637, 672; Pontius, 635, 661, 661n; Pontus, 640, 680, 680n; Praetextatus of Assuras, 658, 658n, 659, 681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Rome, 612, 612n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Samaria, 634, 637–638; Sarah, 671; Sardis, 640; Saul, 638. See also Paul the Apostle; Secundus of Tigisi, 683; Shadrach, 668; Simon the Magician, 672; Smyrna, 640; Sodom, 642, 649–650; Solomon, 642–644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Theophilus, 633; Thyatira, 640; Tripolis, 665; Tripolitania, 612; Tyre, 654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Zenophilus, 657; Zion, 623, 626, 631, 680</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Donatist Controversy I**
Index from
On Nature and Grace
(De natura et gratia)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Volume I/23

## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

### Nature and Grace

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>29,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>62,72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>30:14 LXX</td>
<td>69,83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>8:46</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:11-13</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>49,57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:1.3</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>31,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:17</td>
<td>66,79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:7</td>
<td>24,27; 27:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:8</td>
<td>24,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37:5</td>
<td>31,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37:6</td>
<td>31,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41:5</td>
<td>19,21; 49,57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>31,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>71:5</td>
<td>23,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85:8</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>86:11</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>92:2</td>
<td>31,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>102:5</td>
<td>20,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:73</td>
<td>17,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:118</td>
<td>62,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:133</td>
<td>13,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>139:10</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>143:2</td>
<td>60,70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>69,83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 835 LXX | 63,75 |
| Ecclesiastes | 7:21 | 7,8 |
| Wisdom | 1:11 | 15,16 |
|         | 9:15 | 48,56 |
| Sirach | 10:9 | 49,57 |
|         | 10:15 | 29,33 |
|         | 10:15.14 | 29,33 |
|         | 18:30 | 62,72 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>20,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>65,78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>35,41; 60,70; 67,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>53,62; 58,68; 67,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>35,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>23,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:12-13</td>
<td>19,21; 21,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>15,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:38</td>
<td>58,68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:9</td>
<td>37,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>63,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:60</td>
<td>23,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>64,77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>69,83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>24,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:31</td>
<td>24,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>62,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/23

1:22  22,24
1:23  22,24
1:24  22,24
1:25-26  22,24
1:26-27  22,24
1:27  22,24
1:28-31  22,24
3:23  4,4; 41,48
3:23-24  1,1
3:24  4,4
4:5  1,1
5:5  17,18; 42,49; 56,67; 64,77; 66,79; 70,84
5:12  8,9; 39,46; 41,48
5:18  41,48
6:12  38,45
7:18  51,59
7:19  50,58; 67,81
7:20  62,72
7:23  53,62
7:24  53,62; 54,64; 55,65; 55,66
7:24-25  53,61; 54,64
7:25  44,51; 53,62; 54,64; 55,65;
     58,68; 59,69; 62,72; 63,74;
     64,77; 68,82; 70,84
8:7-8  17,18
8:9  52,60
8:24,25  48,56
10:2-3  1,1
10:2-4  32,36
10:4  1,1
10:8  69,83
10:17-18  2,2
13:8  69,83
13:10  69,83

1 Corinthians
1:19  40,47
2:3  44,51

2 Corinthians
4:13  44,51
5:21  14,15
12:9  27,31
13:3  63,75

Galatians
2:21  1,1; 2,2; 9,10; 40,47
3:5  53,61
5:4  40,47
5:11  40,47
5:17  50,58; 53,61; 56; 57,67
5:18  57,67

Ephesians
2:3  67,81
2:3-5  3,3
4:8  66,79
5:14  23,25

Philippians
2:12-13  27,31; 32,36

1 Thessalonians
5:21  39,46

1 Timothy
1:5  70,84
1:15  21,23

2 Timothy
2:13  49,57

Hebrews
4:15  14,15

James
1:5  17,19
1:5-6  16,17
1:25  57,67
3:2  16,17
3:8  15,16; 16,17
3:10  16,17
3:13-17  16,17
3:15  6,6
4:7  58,68

1 John
1:8  14,15; 34,38; 36,42; 62,73
3:9  14,15
5:3  69,83

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Nature and Grace
A bel, 9,10; 37,44; 38,45
ability: power of choice, or nature, 45,53
Adam, 32,36
abstaining from food, 20,22
Adam and Eve, 3,3; 37,44; 38,45
all have sinned in, 4,4; 9,10
created spotless, 63,75
Adam’s sin, See original sin.
adultery, 38,45
afflictions, 23,25
Ambrose of Milan, Saint, 63,74
angel, 33,37
anger: children of, 3,3; 63,75; 67,81
animals: taming, 15,16
apostates, 62,73
assent, 61,71
Augustine, Saint:
   Pelagius’ use of his Free Choice, 67,80
baptism, 55,65
   attaining righteousness without, 7,7
   bath of regeneration, 4,4; 8,9
effects, 41,48
flesh and baptized persons, 52,60; 54,64
bible: let us believe what we read . . ., 39,46
blindness, 47,55; 51,59
boast, 27,30
body and soul:
   See also human nature; soul
corrupted body weighs down soul, 48,56
Cain, 37,44; 38,45
children of God, 64,77
choice, See free choice.
Christian life:
   darkness re. how to live, 40,47
   exhortations to arouse, 68,82
Christians, 1,1; 55,65; 60,70
Church, 21,23
spotless, 63,75
commandment(s):
   ask for what you cannot do, 43,50
good, 69,83
impossible, 43,50; 69,83
infants incapable of obeying, 21,23
new; love one another, 69,83
not burdensome, 69,83
not heavy for one wholly turned to the
   Lord, 69,83
concupiscence, 61,71
interior evil, 62,72
opposition to doing good acts, 56
condemnation, 4,4; 8,9; 67,81
condition (possibility), 10,11
confession, 31,35
conscience: good, 70,84

Volume I/23
Answer To The Pelagians I
freedom, 66,79
healing, 67,81
human nature restored by, 53,62
imploring for, 22,24
justification and, 11,12; 62,73
living by the Spirit, 17,18
love, 70,84
nature given by the creator (Pelagius), 51,59
necessity, 53,61
Pelagius on sinlessness, 12,13; 53,61
perfection, 68,82
righteousness, 10,11; 50,58
salvation; free gift, 4,4
sinlessness and, 59,69; 60,70
unbaptized should seek help of, 55,66
guilt, 9,10; 23,25; 30,34
healing, 11,12; 26,29; 27,31; 34,39; 58,68; 67,80
faith, 44,51
grace, 67,81
pray for, 30,34; 31,35
health, 26,29; 54,63
hurt by not eating, 20,22
heart:
adultery, 38,45
beaten and dried out (Ps 101), 20,22
clean, 62,72
darkening of, 22,24
disposition re. commandment(s), 69,83
love poured out in our hearts, 17,18;
42,49; 57,67; 63,74; 64,77; 66,79; 68,82
pure, 70,84
sinless = best altar for God, 64,77
Hilarion of Poitiers, Saint, 62,72; 62,73
Holy Spirit, 60,70
led by, 57,67
living according to, 17,18
love and, 64,77
love poured out in our hearts, 17,18;
42,49; 57,67; 63,74; 64,77; 66,79; 68,82
homosexuality, 22,24
hope, 48,56; 60,70
human being:
Adam’s descendants not affected by his
sin, 21,23
created as able to be without sin, 43,50;
51,59; 59,69
created with free will, 67,81
equal with God, 33,37
pride; withdrawing from God, 29,33
righteousness attained by self alone, 2,2;
23,25
righteousness; sin, 23,25
salvation; free choice, 39,46
senses: power and necessity, 47,55
See sinlessness
taming their tongues, 15,16
human nature:
See also sinlessness; will
A augustinian’s basic teaching, 3,3
Church as spotless, 63,75
corrupt: Christ the savior, 40,47
created blameless, 67,81
created with free choice, 65,78
false defense of, 55,66
goods received from creator, 3,3
harmed by sin, 20,22
inseparable ability not to sin, 50,58; 51,59
natural perception of maker, 2,2
natural spiritual life, 17,18
original state, 3,3
Pelagius:
basic teaching, 1,1
no weakening or injury from Adam’s sin,
19,21; 48,56
praise of, 34,39
righteousness through, 2,2
salvation with no need of redemption,
24,26
sin due to defects of, 1,1; 66,79
will’s disobedience affecting, 53,62
woundedness (Pelagius), 24,27; 26,29
human will, See will
humility, 23,25; 24,27; 32,36; 34,38; 36,42
ignorance, 29,33; 67,81
punishment for sin, 67,81
sins of, 17,19
immorality, 62,72
impossibility: commandment(s)and, 43,50
impurity, 22,24
infants:
commandment(s) and, 21,23
dying without baptism, 8,9
need for salvation, 6,6
Isaac, 32,36
Israel, 69,83
Jacob, 32,36
James [addressee], 1,1
Jerome, Saint, 65,78
Jesus Christ:
born in likeness of sinful flesh, 61,71
crowd: Hosanna, Son of David . . ., 37,43
death and resurrection, 2,2
desires of the flesh, 61,71
devil will find nothing in him, 24,26
divinity and humanity in flesh, 2,2
dying in vain, 1,1; 9,10
end of the law, 40,47
flesh like sinful flesh, 14,15
grace through, See grace

Volume I/23
I am the way . . ., 32,36
mediator, 26,29; 44,51; 64,77; 67,80
name: he will save us from our sins, 20,22; 21,23
name needed (Pelagius), 40,47
needed, as physician, 54,64
passion and death:
dying by reason of will to obey, 24,26
present everywhere, 67,81
righteousness does not sanctify all, 41,48
sinlessness, 14,15; 24,26; 61,72; 64,77
teacher, 61,71
without me you can do nothing, 62,73
Jews, 2,2; 41,48
Job, 62,72; 62,73
John, Bishop of Constantinople, 64,76
Judas, 8,8
justification, 40,47
grace and, 9,10; 11,12; 62,73
gratuitous, 1,1; 4,4
righteousness and, 41,48
knowledge:
neglecting to seek, 67,81
right and wrong acts, 67,81
Lactantius, 61,71
law (Mosaic), 57,67
commandment(s), 16,17
end of, 1,1
fulfillment, 17,18
love is fulfillment of, 69,83
purpose (N.T.), 12,13
sin: members and law of the mind, 25,28;
57,67
understanding, 17,19
law of nature, 2,2
Lazarus, 8,8
life, 8,8; 23,25
light, 22,24; 26,29
limping, 26,29
literature: teacher of, 41,48
Lord’s Prayer:
bring us not into temptation, 53,62; 58,68;
67,80
deliver us from evil, 53,62; 66,79
forgive us our debts, 35,41; 60,70; 67,80
forgiveness; temptation, 18,20
love:
beguining; righteousness, 70,84
Christ’s burden is light, 69,83
commandment(s): not heavy, 69,83
freedom of, 65,78
fulfillment of the law, 17,18; 69,83
law of fear and, 57,67
poured out in our hearts, 17,18; 42,49;
57,67; 63,74; 64,77; 66,79; 68,82
pure, good; sincere, 70,84
sinful, 38,45
love for God:
lacking; righteousness, 38,45
perfect, 42,49
lust, 35,40
lying: kills the soul, 15,16
Marcellinus, 14,15; 23,25
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
sinlessness, 36,42
mercy, 3,3; 5,5; 15,16; 19,21; 21,23; 31,35;
34,39; 55,65
sin as necessary for, 25,28; 26,29
merit, 5,5
mind:
body presses down, 48,56
members resisting law of, 55,65; 57,67;
63,75
pure, 64,77
natural goods, 3,3
natural law, 9,10; 40,47
nature:
See also human nature
activities; members, 11,12
God, author of, 45,53
necessity, 65,78
natural, 46,54
senses and sensation, 47,55
negligence, 13,14; 15,16; 17,19
neighbor: command to love, 69,83
obedience:
contempt for, 25,28
Jesus, obedient unto death, 24,26
odors, 47,55
Old Testament:
righteous persons [list] not sinless, 36,42
original sin:
consequences, 23,25
effects: ignorant; subject to the flesh,
67,81
entered the world through one man, 8,9;
39,46; 41,48
free choice, 3,3
human nature not injured by (Pelagius),
19,21
imitation of Adam’s sin, 9,10
infants dying without baptism, 8,9
pain, 27,30; 57,67; 67,81
paradox, 28,32
pardon:
See also forgiveness of sin
praying for, 18,20
passions, 67,81
slave of, 35,40
patience, 23,25
peace, 62,72
Pelagius [passim: the entire work]:
appeal to scripture, 14,15

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

on human nature, 1,1
on original sin, 8,9
on sinlessness, 12,13ff
perfection, 62,72; 63,75
complete, 60,70
daily renewal, 64,77
grace, 68,82
highest, 12,13
righteousness, 13,14
physician, 1,1; 19,21; 21,23; 23,25; 26,29; 55,65
piety, 31,35; 58,68
poison, 28,32
possibility, 10,11
praise, 34,38; 68,82
prayer, 58,68; 68,82
Pelagius on sinlessness, 12,13
preaching:

faith comes from hearing, 2,2
salvation to believers, 40,47
pride, 16,17; 23,25; 24,27; 25,28; 27,31; 28,32; 31,35
beginning of all sin, 29,33
distinguished in the law, 29,33
good actions, 32,36
not every sin is of pride, 29,33
occasion of, 27,30
progress, 12,13; 33,37; 58,68; 60,70; 68,82; 70,84
punishment, 34,39; 55,65
anger of God, 2,2
death of the body, 23,25
debt of all humanity, 5,5
fear of, 57,67; 68,82
sin results: filled with every wickedness, 22,24
pure of heart: beatitude, 65,78
purity: temple for God (Xystus), 64,77
reading: hold on to what is good . . ., 39,46
redemption, 24,26
Christ dying in vain, 40,47
savior as unnecessary, 34,39
repentance, 35,40
right and wrong:

knowingly not doing the right thing, 67,81
righteousness, 13,14; 19,21; 26,29; 40,47; 43,50; 67,80
attaining by nature and free choice, 9,10
beginning of love, 70,84
commandment(s), 16,17
darkness, 23,25
grace and, 10,11
human nature sufficient for, 50,58
interior battle with concupiscence, 62,72
justification and, 41,48
love of, 57,67
love of God, 38,45
making ourselves righteous, 31,35
necessity (for God), 46,54
no living person, 42,49; 60,70
paths of goodness, 68,83
perfect, 2,2; 21,23; 42,49; 60,70; 62,72; 68,82
self-sufficiency, 6,6; 7,7; 23,25; 32,36
way, 32,36
will and, 43,50
worship and, 62,72
sacrifice: old law, 17,19
saints:
grace, 63,75
spotless purity, 63,75
salvation:

fear and trembling, 27,31; 32,36
free choice (alone), 39,46
grace of Christ, 4,4
hope of, 35,40
people who have never heard of Christ, 9,10
self-sufficiency for, 24,26
Satan, 28,32
schoolmaster, 1,1; 12,13
self-sufficiency, 32,36; 55,66
sensation: natural necessity, 47,55
sex: unnatural intercourse, 22,24
shame, 67,81
silence, 45,53
sin:

See also original sin
avoidable, 67,80
avoiding future sins, 34,39
pray for help, 18,20
provision of means for, 26,29
being proud, 29,33
captive to law of, 55,65
captive to law of, 55,65
choice and will, 61,71
contempt for God, 29,33
defects of nature, 66,79
despair of avoiding, 35,40
differences in, 12,13
determined to die without; Lord’s Prayer, 35,41
excuse: human weakness, 7,7
free choice: sin or not sin, 49,57
healed by sins, 28,32
if we say we have no sin . . ., 14,15; 34,38; 36,42
ignorance and difficulty as punishment for, 67,81
it is no longer I who do it . . ., 62,72
law; resisting law of the mind, 25,28; 53,62
must be wiped away by God, 18,20
necessary; reason for God’s mercy, 25,28; 26,29
necessity, 28,32; 61,71

Volume I/23
sinlessness:
ability from nature, not choice, 45,53
Ambrose of Milan on, 63,74
bible does not mention sins of all, 37,44; 38,45
God's help necessary for, 10,11
godlike (Xystus), 64,77
grace and, 51,59; 53,61
holy persons departed from this life, 35,41
human nature, 58,68
Jesus, the only possible one, 64,77
Lactantius on, 61,71
possibility:
attributed to God alone, 44,52
with grace, 59,69; 60,70
without grace of God, 44,52; 51,59; 53,61
in this life, 8,8
natural possibility (Pelagius), 33,37; 48,56; 49,57; 51,59; 53,61
pride, 34,38
question of possibility, 44,51
righteous persons (Old Testament), 36,42
scripture texts, 8,8; 14,15; 53,61
will as self-sufficient, 64,76
sinner(s):
bible testifies that all are sinners, 42,49
Christ came to save, 5,5; 19,21; 21,23
cries: heal my soul (Ps 40), 49,57
Jesus (name) as savior, 20,22
justification, 1,1; 26,29
rejection by God, 62,73
soul:
healing, because of sin, 19,21
mouth that lies, kills, 15,16
speaking: example of choice/nature, 45,53
spirit:
creation, 52,60; 54,64
flesh lusts (opposes) against, 53,61; 54,63-64; 56; 57,67
spiritual life: natural will and, 17,18
temple of God: pure heart, 65,78
temptation, 18,20
watch and pray, 34,39; 58,68
Timasius, 1,1
tongue:
James on, 16,17
taming, 15,16
trust, 32,36
truth, 16,17; 22,24; 23,25; 28,32; 34,38; 36,42; 68,82
understanding: prayer for, 17,19
venial sins, 12,13
vice, 27,31
free choice, 65,78
virtue: free choice, 65,78
voice, 45,53
way, 32,36
weakness, 7,7; 20,22; 22,24; 25,28; 30,34; 38,45; 51,59; 67,81; 70,84
virtue made perfect in, 27,31
wickedness, 22,24
willing, 32,36; 34,39
ability implanted in nature, 43,50; 50,58; 51,59; 53,61
action follows, 51,59
cannot undo what has been done, 18,20
God's help needed by, 63,74
healed and helped by God, 42,49
will, 32,36; 34,39
ability implanted in nature, 43,50; 50,58; 51,59; 53,61
action follows, 51,59
cannot undo what has been done, 18,20
God's help needed by, 63,74
healed and helped by God, 42,49
I can will the good, but cannot do it, 51,59
natural necessity, 46,54; 58,68
preparing by God, 63,75
refusing to do the right thing, 67,81
resisting; yielding, 67,80
self-sufficient, 64,76
sin and, 1,1; 23,25; 61,71
wisdom:
cross and, 19,21
darkening of the heart, 22,24
tames the tongue, 16,17
warned to ask for, 17,19
women: righteous persons (Old Testament), 36,42
Word of God: enfleshed, dwells among us, 52,60
works, 23,25; 56
works of mercy, 68,82
worship, 62,72
Xystus (bishop and martyr), 64,77
zeal, 1,1; 7,7
Zechariah, 63,74
Index from

On the Deeds of Pelagius

(De gestis Pelagii)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture References

*(prepared by Michael Dolan)*

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>21:10</td>
<td>5,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>25:7</td>
<td>18,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:9</td>
<td>3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>3,5; 3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59:12</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100:9</td>
<td>14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>107:20</td>
<td>24,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>109:17</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:133</td>
<td>14,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>14,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>140:9</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>3,11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>11,26; 12,27; 12,28; 30,55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:19-20</td>
<td>14,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:10-11</td>
<td>13,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:14</td>
<td>3,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>3,9; 35,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>3,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:32</td>
<td>14,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>14,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7-8</td>
<td>6,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:12-13</td>
<td>6,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:14-16</td>
<td>6,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:15-18</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>4:8 LXX</td>
<td>14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:6-7</td>
<td>3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>15:16-17</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>8:20 LXX</td>
<td>1,2; 35,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td>5,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>5,13; 5,14; 35,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>3,9; 35,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>13,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>13,29; 35,63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>35,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Deeds of Pelagius

12:28 14,32
13:5  4,12
14:18 14,32
15:9  14,36; 35,64
15:9-10 17,40
15:10 14,36; 14,36; 14,37; 30,54
15:21 35,61
15:55 30,55
15:57 14,35

2 Corinthians
  3:6  5,14
  6:1  14,36

Galatians
  2:21 6,20
  4:21-22.24-26 5,14

Philippians
  3:12 18,42

1 Timothy
  2:4  24,48
  2:7  14,32
  6:1  14,32

2 Timothy
  1:12 14,35
  4:7  14,35
  4:7-8 14,35

James
  2:13 3,10

2 Peter
  1:4  18,42; 35,65

1 John
  1:8  11,26; 12,27
  3:2  30,55

Volume I/23
Subject Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprung)
(the numbers refer to the particular book and its section)

Abel, 10,22
Abraham: two sons (allegory), 5,14
actions: helps, 1,3
Adam: created mortal, 11,23; 11,24; 33
adoption: new creation, 10,22
ambiguity, 10,22
angel, 6,18
judgment day, 3,11
anger, 3,7; 25,50; 26,51
animals: irrational, 6,18
apostles, 5,14
apostleship: gifts embraced in, 14,36
atrocities:
    Pelagius’s followers at Jerome’s monastery, 35,66
Augustine, Saint:
    books under his name, arrived in Spain, 6,19
    friendship with Pelagius, 23,47
    letter from Timasius and James, 24,48
    letter to Pelagius, 26,51-26,53
Aurelius, 1,1
baptism:
    Church cleansed from every spot and wrinkle, 12,28; 35,63; 35,64
    instruction of the newly baptized, 2,4
bishops, 25,50; 35,66
Province of Palestine, 1
blessing, 3,7
boast, 3,11; 14,36
Caeselius:
    claim that we do more than commanded, 13,29; 35,63
    condemned at Carthage, 11,23; 11,26
    22,46; 35,62
defense of, 33
everyone can have all the graces, 14,32 35,63
    grace related to merit, 17,40; 35,65
    misrepresentations after his trial, 33,58
    propositions objected to, 35,63; 35,64
    35,65
Carthage, 22,46; 35,62
    statements condemned at, 11,23
Catholic Church, 5,15; 10,22; 19,43;
    20,44 33,58; 35,60
Charus (of Hippo), 32,57
chastity:
    marital; commanded, 13,29; 35,64
children of God:
    driven by the Spirit, 3,5-3,6; 3,8
    only those completely without sin, 18,42 35,65
Christians, 26,51
Church, 11,25; 14,36
    baptismal bath; all sins are forgiven, 12,28
    body of Christ; each member has its own gifts, 14,32
    future; remaining without stain, 12,28
    good people only, as members, 12,27
    members without stain or wrinkle, 35,63 35,64
    present time: prayer for pardon, 12,28
commandment(s):
    Caeselius’ claim, 13,29; 35,63
    easily kept (with labor and struggle!), 30,55
    free from body of this death, 9
    humans can keep, if they want, 6,16;
    7,20 35,61
    keeping: not to sin is sufficient, 13,29
consent, 4,12
corruption:
    free from sin by their own effort, 10,22
Creed:
    instruction of those to be baptized, 2,4
curse, 3,7
The Deeds of Pelagius

Cyprian, Saint, 11,25

Daniel (prophet), 5,14
darkness, 3,11
death:
came through one man (Adam), 35,61
produced by the law, 7,20
set free from body of, 7,20; 8,21; 9; 35,62
where is your sting..., 30,55
debt: grace and, 14,33
desire, 3,6; 3,7; 3,8; 7,20; 8,21
earthly things, 5,14
devil: eternal punishment, 3,10
Diospolis, Synod of, 1; 20,44
dogma, 6,16; 6,18
Donatists, 12,27; 22,46
eaglets, 6,18
Eastern churches, 11,25
election of grace, 17,41
eternal life:
non-baptized infants, 11,23; 11,24; 33
35,65
eternal punishment, 3,9; 3,11; 35,62
Eulogius, Bishop, 3,9
experience:
learning: not able to govern self, 3,7
eye, 3,7
faith, 6,18
good works and, 14,34
Peter, 14,35
five wise virgins, 3,11
flesh: children of the, 5,14
fondishness, 6,18
forgetfulness, 18,42; 35,65
forgiveness of sin, 23,47; 35,61
baptismal bath, 12,28
knowledge needed by believers, 2,4
free choice, 3,8; 14,31; 26,51; 29,53; 35,61 35,62
ability not to sin, 10,22; 13,29
Caelestius’ errors on, 14,30
choosing good, 3,5; 35,62
help of God, 35,65
negat by need for God’s help, 18,42
victory and, 18,42; 35,65
gifts from God, 13,29
apostleship, 14,36
See also grace
Caelestius: everyone can have all graces, 14,32
proper to individual members, 14,32
worthiness for, 14,35
God:
subject to sin (syllogism), 18,42
good and evil:
choosing, 3,7
evil is not even to be thought, 4,12
good works:
faith and love, 14,34
judgment day, 3,11
goodness:
God assists in choosing, 3,5; 3,7; 3,8
35,62
grace, 3,7; 17,40; 22,46; 25,50; 26,51;
29,53 30,55; 34,59; 35,61; 35,62
See also gifts; sinlessness
Caelestius’ errors on, 14,30
Caelestius: everyone can have all graces, 14,32; 14,33; 35,63
diversity of graces, 14,32; 35,63
given for each human action, 14,31
31,56; 35,65
governed by their own will, 3,5
gratuitous giving, 14,33
help to weakened nature, 7,20
human nature created with free choice, 17,41
letter of Timasius and James, 24,48;
25,49
located in the will, 35,65
merit and (Caelestius), 17,40-41
merit: faith or good works, 14,34
nature created from free choice, 23,47
no living rightly without, 1,3
old / new testaments, 5,14
Paul’s “I have labored more…”, 14,37
30,54
Pelagius on, 10,22
results (Paul), 14,36
sinlessness and, 6,16; 14,31
unworthy recipient, 14,35
works not the basis of, 14,33
worthy for (Caelestius), 17,40

Volume I/23
Hagar, 5,14; 5,15
healing: Paul, 14,32
health, 26,51
heart: desires of, 3,7
heaven: 
   new Jerusalem, 5,14
   promised in Old Testament, 5,13-5,15
   35,62
   wealthy persons, 11,23; 11,24; 33; 35,65
help: two kinds of helps, 1,3
heresy, 21,45; 32,57; 33,58; 34,59; 35,62
   35,65
   necessity of (Paul), 35,61
heretic(s), 30,55
   definition, 6,18
   fool, 6,18; 35,65
   heaven in Old Testament, 5,13
Heres, Bishop, 1,2; 16,39; 35,62
Hilary of Syracuse, 11,23; 30,54
Hippo, 22,46; 32,57
Holy Spirit, 5,14
   driven by the Spirit, 3,5-3,6; 3,8
   gives life, 9
   help for each human act, 14,31
   it is not you who speak…, 14,31
   wisdom, 3,6
human acts:
   driven or governed, 3,5-3,6
   grace given for each act, 14,31; 31,56
   35,65
human nature:
   created with ability not to sin, 10,22
   created with free choice (= grace), 17,41 35,61
   health free from defect, 9
   sold and wounded, 8,21
   willing to labor results in ability not to sin, 30,54; 30,55
human race:
   all do not die through Adam’s sin, 11,23 11,24; 33; 35,65
   all do not rise through Christ’s resurrection, 11,23; 11,24; 33; 35,65
humility:
   if we say we have no sin…, 12,27
ignorance:
   sacrifices offered for, 18,42
sinfulness, 18,42; 35,65
incarnation, 11,25
infant(-s):
   knowledge and salvation, 2,4
   newborns are in original justice, 11,23
   11,24; 33; 35,65
infant baptism:
   preaching; Basilica of the Ancients, 11,25
intelligence, 3,6
James [former disciple of Pelagius], 23,47
   letter to Augustine, 24,48; 25,49
Jerome, Saint:
   violence committed against his monastery, 35,66
Jerusalem: earthly; heavenly, 5,14
Jesus Christ, 7,20; 8,21
   cleansed from sins through, 1,3
   foretold by prophets, 5,14
John (bishop of Jerusalem), 14,37; 16,39; 17,40 30,54; 30,55
judgment:
   mercy and, 3,10
judgment day:
   I do not know you…, 3,11
   rewards and punishments, 3,11
   sinners will not be spared, 3,9-3,11; 35,62
kingdom of God, 5,15
   Church in eternity, 12,28
kingdom of heaven, See heaven
knowledge:
   sinlessness and knowledge of the law, 1,2-2,4
Latin language, 16,39
law (Mosaic):
   complex, 1,3
   holy, 7,20
   infants; knowledge of the law, 2,4
   knowledge of, and avoiding sin, 1,2-2,4 8,21; 9; 14,31; 35,62
   law in members resists law of the mind, 7,20
   leads to the kingdom, 11,23; 11,24; 33 35,65

Answer To The Pelagians I
legal experts, 2,4 training in, 1,3
you shall not desire, 7,20
Lazarus, Bishop, 1,2; 16,39; 35,62
letter-writing, 26,51
light, 3,7
Lord’s Prayer:
  forgive us our debts, 11,26; 12,27;
  12,28 30,55
love, 26,51
  good works and, 14,34
  goodness and life, 3,7
  thinks no evil, 4,12
lust, 3,7; 30,55
Mani, 5,15
Marcellinus, 11,25
Marcion, 5,15
marriage: virginity and, 13,29; 35,64
mercy, 3,5; 3,7; 12,28; 14,35; 26,51; 35,66
  judgment and, 3,10
  worthy of, 18,42
merit, 14,30; 17,40; 35,65
  grace and (Caelestius), 17,40-41;
  35,65
  recompense; God’s gifts, 14,35
wealthy persons, 11,23; 11,24; 33;
  35,65
miracles: Paul, 14,32
Mount Sinai, 5,14; 5,15; 35,62
New Testament:
  children of the promise, 5,14
  freedom, 5,14
  making equal to Old = injury, 5,15
  ratified by Christ’s blood, 5,14
Old Testament:
  canonical authority, 5,14; 5,15; 35,62
  heirs: earthly goods, 5,14
  kingdom of heaven promised in, 5,13-
  5,15; 35,62
  promise of temporal felicity, 5,14
  servitude, 5,14
  usage of the term, 5,14
opinion, 6,18
Origen, 3,10
original sin:
  harmed Adam alone, not the human
  race, 11,23; 11,24; 33; 35,65
Orosius (priest), 16,39
Palestine: Province of, 1; 35,62
pardon: related to merit and labor, 18,42
  35,65
Paul, Saint:
  apostleship, 14,36
  by the grace of God I am…, 14,36
  crown of righteousness, 14,35
  faith: works through love, 14,34
  having all virtues and graces, 14,32
  14,33; 35,63; 35,64
  I am not fit (worthy)…, 14,36; 17,40
  35,64
  I have labored more…, 14,37; 30,54
  labors and grace, 14,36
  preacher; persecutor, 14,36
Pelagius, 1–66 (passim)
  See also Caelestius
Book of Chapters, 30,54; 30,55
  accepts judgment of the Church, 19,43
  acquitted conditionally, 11,25; 21,45
  34,59; 35,65
  all are governed by their own will,
  3,5-3,11
  Augustine’s gradual awareness of,
  22,46
  Augustine’s letter to, 26,51-29,53
  boast: friendship with holy persons,
  29,53
  books written for unnamed widow,
  6,19
  Church on earth is spotless, 12,27
  commentary on Romans 9:16, 16,39
  condemns errors he once held, 23,47
  25,49
  condemns views contrary to Church’s
  teaching, 35,60
  contentions condemned by
  ecclesiastical court, 33,58
  correspondence with Augustine, 21,45
  defense of condemned propositions,
  21,45; 25,50
  denials, at his trial, 33; 33,58
  erroneous report of his trial, 32,57
  evil does not enter one’s thoughts,
  4,12
  exhortations toward moral goodness,
  25,50
followers at Jerome’s monastery, 35,66
humans can be sinless if they want, 6,16-7,20
inquest finds him innocent, 10,22
judgments of the Church, 33,58
kingdom of heaven promised in O.T., 5,13-5,15; 35,62
knowledge of the law; sinlessness, 1,2-2,4
lie in episcopal court, 6,19
must confess and publicly argue against errors, 29,53
propositions condemned by the Synod, 35,65
propositions he refused to condemn, 11,26
reaction to judgment of Synod, 30,54
sinners will not be spared, 3,9-3,11
Synod’s judgment of his orthodoxy, 20,44
trial: boasting as if victorious, 30,54; 30,55
truthfulness questioned, 31,56
penance, 18,42; 35,65
perfection, 35,62
Church in eternity, 12,28
Peter, Saint:
prayed, that your faith fail not…, 14,35
possessions:
renouncing, by wealthy persons, 11,23; 11,24; 35,65
prayer, 6,16; 27-28,52; 29,53
predestination, 3,7; 17,41; 35,64
pride, 3,7; 14,36; 30,55
promised land, 5,14
prophecy: gift of, 14,32
providence: each human act governed by God, 14,31
punishment, 22,46
bishops and, 35,66
rash judgments, 6,18
redemption: Christ died in vain, 7,20
reincarnation, 6,18
remission of sin, See forgiveness of sin reproach, 6,18
resurrection of the body, 35,61
righteousness, 6,16; 26,51
attaining; free choice, 35,61
faith as basis of, 14,34
law and, 7,20; 35,61
people living before Christ, 11,26; 35,63
Romans, Letter to: commentaries, 16,39
Rome, 22,46
saints, 5,15
prayer, 6,16
salvation, 26,51; 30,55
Sarah, 5,15
self-governing, 3,5-3,7
servant (investing master’s money), 3,11
sexual desire, See lust
Sicily, 11,23
sin:
easiness of avoiding, 31,56
everything that does not come from faith, 14,34
helping one not to sin, 1,3
knowledge of the law and, 9; 14,31
law of, 7,20
overcome by (Caelestius), 14,30
turn from by our own effort, 10,22
sinfulness, 14,31
cleansed through Jesus, 1,3
sinlessness:
attainable without grace of God, 14,37; 16,39
Caelestius on, 13,29
children of God, 18,42; 35,65
created by God, with free choice, 10,22
free choice, 35,61
God’s help and grace, 35,62
human beings, sinless, before Christ, 11,23; 11,24; 11,26; 35,63
humans can be, if they want, 6,16-6,19
7,20; 11,23; 11,24; 11,26; 35,62
knowledge of the law, 1,2-2,4
if we say we have no sin…, 11,26
no sinless person exists, 6,16
one’s not sinning depends on God, not self, 15,38
Pelagius on, 14,31
boasting after his trial, 30,54; 30,55

Answer To The Pelagians I
without the grace of God, 30,54; 35,61
possible with help of grace, 30,55
soul can be as sinless as God, 35,65

sinner:
  free choice, 3,5; 3,8
  will not be spared, 3,9-3,11; 35,62
soul: sharer in divine nature, 35,65
Spain, 6,19

temporal goods:
  promise of the O.T., 5,14
temptation, 14,31; 14,35
  pray that we not enter, 7,20
threshing floor, 12,27
Timasius, 23,47
  letter to Augustine, 24,48; 25,49
tongue, 6,18
Trinity, 19,43
truth, 2,4; 6,16; 6,18; 12,27; 34,59

vessels of anger/mercy, 3,7
victory: free choice (not God’s help), 18,42 35,65
virginity:
  more than is commanded, 35,63; 35,64
  permanent, 13,29
  superior to marital chastity, 13,29
virtue:
  Caelestius on, 14,32; 35,63
  developing in all, without grace, 14,37
weakness, 7,20; 14,36
wealthy persons:
  renouncing their possessions, 11,23
  11,24; 35,65
wedding garment (parable), 3,11
will, 35,61
  all are governed by, 3,5-3,11; 35,62
  arming ourselves with, 18,42
  Caelestius’ errors on, 14,30
good, but evil action prevails, 7,20
  grace located in, 35,65
  I do not do what I want…, 7,20; 9
  proud confidence in, 3,7
  withdrawn from God, 3,7
wisdom: Spirit of, 3,6
Word of God: body of Christ and, 14,32
words: offensive, 6,18
work: grace and Paul’s labor, 14,36
works: graces given and, 14,33

Volume I/23
Index from
On the Grace of Christ and Original Sin
(De gratia Christi et de peccato originali)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23          Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

Old Testament

Genesis
1:28 II,35,40
25:17 II,30,35

Exodus
20:17 I,8,9
33:10 I,46,51

Esther
15:9-10 I,24,25

Job
14:4 LXX II,32,37

Psalms
1:2 I,31,33
19:6-7 II,25
30:7-8 I,45,50
38:4 II,25
45:7-8 II,25
51:7 II,25; II,41,47
51:12,14,13 II,25
110:4 II,28,33
115:15-16 I,25
117:11 II,41,47
119:37 I,15,16
119:68 I,13,14

Isaiah
7:14 II,25
54:13 I,13,14

I Maccabees
2:69 II,30,35

Luke
9:53 I,46,51
22:61 I,45,49

John
3:5 II,19,21
3:8 II,24,28
5:26 II,27,32
6:44 I,10,11
6:45 I,13,14; I,14,15
6:65 I,10,11
8:56 II,27,32
14:6 II,27,32
15:5 I,29,30

Acts of the Apostles
4:12 II,24,28
15:10-11 II,25
17:13 II,24,28

Romans
1:17 I,48,53
3:19-21 I,8,9
3:20-21 II,25
3:24 I,31,34
4:11 I,30,35
4:15 I,8,9
5:5 I,9,10; I,26,27; I,30,31
5:12 I,50,55; II,29,34
5:14 II,24,29
5:20 II,24,29
6:6 II,31,36; II,32,37
6:14 I,38,42
7:7 I,8,9
7:15 I,39,43
7:23 I,39,43
7:24 II,41,47
7:24-25 I,39,43; II,24,29
7:25 II,31,36
8:14 I,25,26
8:28 I,13,14
9:8 I,30,31
9:15 I,46,51

New Testament

Matthew
5:45 II,40,46
10:20 I,16,17; I,25,26
11:28 I,10,11

Answer To The Pelagians I
Volume I/23

| 1:3 | II,40,45 |
| 2:11 | II,32,37 |
| 2:13 | II,32,37 |
| 2 Thessalonians |
| 3:2 | I,10,11 |
| 1 Timothy |
| 1:15 | I,2,2 |
| 2:5 | II,24,28; II,26,31; II,28,33 |
| 4:14 | II,34,39 |
| 2 Timothy |
| 1:7 | I,33,36 |
| Hebrews |
| 13:3 | II,34,39 |
| James |
| 4:7 | I,22,23 |
| 1 Peter |
| 3:11 | I,3,3 |
| 1 John |
| 2:16 | I,20,21 |
| 3:1 | I,21,22 |
| 3:9 | I,21,22 |
| 4:7 | I,21,22 |
| 4:7-8 | I,21,22 |
| 4:8 | I,21,22 |
| 5:20 | II,27,32 |

| 1 Corinthians |
| 1:3 | I,8,9 |
| 2:14 | I,12,13 |
| 7:4 | II,34,39 |
| 7:5-6 | II,38,43 |
| 8:1 | I,26,27 |
| 10:4 | II,31,36 |
| 10:31 | I,44,48 |
| 11:1 | II,26,31 |
| 11:19 | II,22,25 |
| 13:4 | I,11,12 |
| 13:4-5 | I,21,22 |
| 13:12 | I,49,54 |
| 15:21-22 | II,26,31 |

| 2 Corinthians |
| 3:5 | I,25,26 |
| 3:6 | I,8,9 |
| 4:13 | II,25 |
| 5:20-21 | II,32,37 |
| 12:7-9 | I,11,12 |
| 12:9 | I,12,13 |
| 13:7 | I,25,26 |

| Galatians |
| 2:20 | I,23 |
| 3:21 | I,8,9 |
| 3:22-24 | I,8,9 |
| 5:6 | I,26,27 |

| Ephesians |
| 2:3 | I,50,55 |
| 2:8 | I,31,34 |
| 2:8-9 | I,23 |

| Philippians |
| 1:29 | I,31,34 |

| Colossians |
| 1:13 | II,40,45 |
| 2:11 | II,32,37 |
| 2:13 | II,32,37 |
| 1 Thessalonians |
| 4:9,10 | I,13,14 |
| 2 Thessalonians |
| 3:2 | I,10,11 |

| 1 Corinthians |
| 9:16 | I,46,51 |
| 10:3 | I,42,46 |
| 11:6 | I,23 |
| 12:3 | I,31,34 |
| 13:10 | I,9,10 |
| 14:23 | I,26,27 |

| 2 Corinthians |
| 2:12 | I,5,6 |
| 2:13 | I,5,6; I,10,11; I,25,26; I,45,49 |
| 3:6 | I,48,53 |
| 3:9 | I,13,14 |
| 3:20 | I,49,54 |

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

ability (Pelagian idea):
  aided by God’s help, I, 41, 45
  capable of good or evil, I, 5, 6; 25, 26
  corrupted by sin, I, 50, 55
  do, say, or think anything good, I, 16, 17
  everyone who has listened, I, 14, 15
  fulfilling God’s commandments, I, 3, 4-6, 7
  given and helped by God, I, 25, 26
  God blamed for our evil deeds, I, 17, 18
  God’s help restricted to, I, 6, 7
  grace located in nature, I, 35, 38
  helped (grace) by law and teaching, I, 6, 8-7
  law and teaching of Christ, I, 33, 36
  nature found in law and teaching, I, 41, 45
  properly due to God, I, 4, 5
  root of actions, good and bad, I, 20, 21
Abraham:
  blessed by Melchizedek, II, 28, 33
  faith in Christ’s incarnation, II, 27, 32
  righteousness of faith, II, 30, 35
action:
  See also human acts
  fulfilling God’s commandments, I, 3, 4-6, 7
  Adam and Eve, II, 31, 36; 32, 27
  See also original sin
  Christian faith rests on, II, 24, 28
  Eve and Mary contrasted, II, 40, 45
  our sin = imitation of first sinner, II, 15, 16; 16, 17
  state before/after his transgression, II, 4; 13, 14
  adultery, II, 33, 38; 34, 39
  Africa: council at Carthage, II, 7, 8; 12, 13; 21, 24
  Albina, I, 1, 1
  Ambrose, Saint, I, 42, 46-47, 52
  on original sin, redemption, sinless Christ, II, 41, 47
  Peter’s tears, I, 45, 49
  praised by Pelagius, I, 43, 47; II, 41, 47; 41, 48
  righteousness of Zechariah and Elizabeth, I, 48, 53
  angel(s), II, 40, 45; 40, 46
  anger:

Volume I/23
The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

children of, I,50,55
transformed into gentleness, I,24,25
animals:
defected humans and, II,40,46
sacrifice; free of defects, II,32,27
Assyria, King of, I,24,25
Aurelius, Bishop, II,3,3; II,4,14,15
baptism:
See also infant baptism
forgiveness of sin, I,39,43
kingdom of heaven and, II,5,5; II,18; II,21,23
Pelagius' profession of faith,
I,32,35-33,36
rebirth from the Spirit, II,38,43
same words for adults and infants,
II,21,24
beginning:
God’s help needed (Ambrose), I,44,48
bible:
See also writings of Catholic authors, I,42,46
boast, I,45,50; II,14,15
body of Christ,
See also Mystical Body
Caecilius, I,22,23; II,30,31; II,32,33; II,36,39
condemnation, II,41,48
denial of original sin, II,2,2-7,8
disciple of Pelagius, II,19,21
denier re errors, II,6,7
error due to ignorance, II,23,26
excommunication, II,7,8
heresy, II,23,26
Pelagius an ally of, II,16,17
Pelagius compared with,
II,12,13-13,14
promise to condemn what Rome
condemns, II,7,8
on redemption of infants, II,19,21
synod of Palestine: charges summarized,
II,12,12-13
on transmission of sin, II,23,26
Carthage, I,1,1; II,2,2; II,19,21
council of African bishops, II,7,8; II,12,13;
II,21,24; II,23,26
Catholic Church, II,3,3; II,16,17; II,23,26
chastity, marital, II,33,38
childbirths, pain and groaning, II,36,41
children:
God, author of nature that is born, II,37,42
work of God; even if born of sin, II,33,38
children of God, I,21,22
children of the promise, I,30,31
 driven by the good God, I,25,26
Christian life:
A dam and Christ contrasted, II,24,28
Christanity:
faith rests on A dam and Christ, II,24,28
Christians, I,10,11; II,33,37; II,34,31; II,23,27;
II,29,34
circumcision:
eighth day, II,31,36
knife used in, II,31,36
not made by the hand, II,32,27
original sin and, II,30,35
coming to Christ, I,14,15
commandment(s):
circumcision, II,30,35
fulfilling: ability, will, action, I,34,6-7
II,23,26
grace and free choice, I,7
II,26,27-29,30
infants not capable of receiving, II,15,16
law as, I,13,14
love or fear, I,26,27
transgression, I,8,9
concupiscence, I,20,21
forbearance of sin, II,38,43
marriage and, II,33,38
not harmful to those born again,
II,38,43
condemnation, II,16,17; II,31,36
See also damnation
animals, II,40,46
blessing of nature not removed by,
II,40,46
consent, II,40
Constantius, Bishop, I,34,37; II,36,39
conversion:
everyone who has listened to the
Father …, I,14,15
covetousness:
source of evil, I,18,19; II,20,21
creation:
praise for created nature, I,6,7
curse, I,13,14
damnation, II,29,34
death:
A dam, II,28,33
certain, II,20,22
gathered to one’s ancestors, II,30,35
passed on by original sin, I,50,55; II,29,34
reigned from A dam until Moses, II,24,29
debt, I,23
delight, I,13,14
Demetrias (virgin): letter to, I,37,40
desire, I,30,32; II,46,51; II,40
desire for God, I,10,11
you shall not desire, I,8,9
devil, II,37,42; II,40,45; II,40,46
resisting, I,22,23
devout person (Ambrose on God’s call),
I,46,51
disease, I,8,9
disobedience, II,33,38; II,36,41
Elijah, I,23,27

Volume I/23
Elizabeth: righteousness, I,48,53
Emmanuel, II,25
enlightenment, I,7
Esther: king of Assyria and, I,24,25
eternal life: eucharist and, II,18
everlasting day, II,27,32
eucharist: eternal life and, II,18
evil, See good and evil.
example, I,10,11
Christ helps us not to sin, I,2,2
first sin and, II,15,16
eye:
  eyes/seeing, I,4,5
mind or flesh, I,15,16
faith:
  everything not coming from, is sin, I,26,27
gift of God, I,31,34
heaven, I,10,11
measure given to each one, I,31,34
moved to come to Christ, I,10,11
Old Testament people saved by grace of Christ, II,25
patriarchs (old covenant), II,28,33
Pelagius' profession of, I,32,35-33,36
people living in time of the law, II,25
repayment for merit, I,31,34
righteous live from, I,48,53
seal of righteousness, II,30,35
we believe, therefore we speak out, II,25
fear: commandments, I,26,27
fidelity in marriage, II,34,39
fig leaves, II,34,39
fleece, II,26
flesh, II,32,27; 38,43
flood (biblical), II,29,34
forgiveness of sin:
  See also infant baptism
baptism, I,39,43
grace, I,2,2; 35,38
help of grace located in, I,38,42
lust and marriage, II,38,43
restoration of nature to a better state, I,37,41
fornication, II,38,43
free choice, I,3,3; 8,9; 9,10; 47,52; II,30,35; 31,36
ability in all people, I,31,33
ability, willing, being, I,5,6
clinging to God, I,22,24
coming, or not coming, to Christ, I,14,15
defense of, I,28,29; 39,43; 41,45
fulfilling God's commandment(s), I,7
God's grace joined to, I,36,39
God's help always needed, I,33,36
goods achieved by, I,23
it is no longer I who live . . ., I,23
non-Christians, I,31,34
one spirit with the Lord, I,23
power to avoid sin, I,28,29
sinning or not sinning, I,31,33
sufficient to ourselves, I,41,45
fruit: tree (good or bad), I,18,19; 19,20
gentleness, I,24,25
gifts: love and knowledge, I,26,27
freedom from, II,5,5
freedom from, II,5,5
forsaking evil, II,13,14
love and covetousness as sources, I,18,19
nature and nature's defect, II,33,38
praise or blame, II,13,14
unclean spirit, II,40,46
good works, I,31,33
meriting grace, I,22,23
goodness:
  ability from God; doing, from us, I,25,26
  ability to do, say, or think, I,16,17
good tree: grace of God, I,19,20
human beings praised for, I,4,5; 6,7;
  I,16,17
virgin's witness: nature and grace, I,38,42
grace, I,6,7
See also ability
can do nothing without God, I,35,38
commandment(s):
  can be fulfilled without, I,26,27
  fulfilled more easily with, I,26,27-29,30
consists in law and teaching, I,7
efficacy: know, do, believe, love, I,12,13
example for our imitation, I,39,43
forgiveness of sin, I,2,2
free from the body of this death, II,24,29
free choice and, I,47,52
freedom from, II,5,5
God directing our hearts, I,23
gratuitous, I,23; 31,34; II,24,28
helping natural ability I,3,4; I,25,26
Holy Spirit, I,5,6
infants freed from devil by, II,40,45
law and teaching of Christ, I,31,33

Answer To The Pelagians I
The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

law: great difference, I,13,14

letter to Pope Innocent, I,30,32-33,36

located in law and teaching, I,7, 30,32

merit, See merit

my grace is sufficient ... I,12,13

necessary for every moment, every act, I,2,2; 3,3

no ability, willing or action without God’s help, I,47,52

no one set free except by, II,29,34

old covenant; belief in resurrection, II,26,31

Pelagius:

letter to Demetrius, I,37,40

profession of faith, I,32,35-33,36

reparation for faith, I,31,34

restoration to life through, II,24,29

revelation of doctrine, I,37,40

set free from sin by, I,39,43; II,31,36

teaching, I,13,14; 14,15

unhappy man that I am ... I,39,43

See will
guilt, II,38,43

tears, I,45,49

healing, I,8,9

heart:

anger and gentleness, I,24,25

eyes of the, I,7

love poured out in our hearts, I,9,10; 26,27; II,24,28

Peter’s tears, I,45,49

placed under God’s direction, I,23

heaven:

See also eternal life; salvation

baptism required for, II,5,5

faith in, I,10,11

Henoch, II,23,27

heresy, II,21,23; 22,25; 23,26

lack of knowledge and, II,23,27

holiness: will and, I,7

Holy Spirit, I,12,13; 34,37; 41,45

baptismal rebirth, II,38,43

God teaches by grace of, I,14,15

grace and, I,5,6

help of, I,22,23

infusion of love of Christ, I,39,43

love poured out in our hearts, I,9,10; 26,27; II,24,28

Mary’s virginity and, II,41,47

resist evil spirit with help of, I,27,28; 40,44

hope, I,11,12; II,38,43

glory to come, I,10,11

human acts:

ability due to God, I,4,5

beginning without God’s help, I,44,48

grace necessary for each act, I,2,2; 3,3; 9,10

need of God’s help, I,3,4; 5,6; 41,45

power, willing, being, I,47,52

teach and exhort, I,10,11

human being(s):

before act of our own will, II,13,14

born subject to sin, II,41,47

good will; bad will, I,18,19

praise of nature, before the law, II,29,34

reborn into a better nature, I,38,42

subject to unclean spirits, II,40,46

will and action attributed to, I,4,5

human body: praise, II,36,41

human nature:

animal nature and, II,40,46

defect of nature created good, I,19,20

deserves praise, II,40,46

evil is not something we are born with, II,13,14

grace located in, I,3,3

infants not damaged by their origin, II,21,24

need of the second Adam, II,29,34

not spotless from the beginning, I,50,55

original purity, II,35,40

restoration to a better state; penance, I,37,41

husband and wife, II,34,39

ignorance, II,6,7

incarnation:

generation from thigh of Abraham, II,27,32

old covenant faith in, II,26,31; 32,27

infant(s):

circumcision neglected, II,30,35

born only with what God created; no sin, II,15,16

freed from devil by grace of Christ, II,40,45

original sin, II,1,1; 2,2; 4, 13,14

state of A dam before his transgression, II,13,14; 14,15; 15,16; II,16,17

subject to condemnation, II,18; 21,23

unbaptized; heaven, II,18,20; 20,22

infant baptism:

Caelestius on, I,30,32; 32,35; II,23,26

forgiveness of sin, I,32,35; II,1,11; 5,5; 6,6; 16,17; 21,24; 40,45

necessary (Caelestius), II,4

Pelagius:

deceived the judges, II,10,11

tried to deceive the pope, II,17,19

practice as proof of original sin, II,40,45

spiritually circumcised, II,32,27

Innocent, Pope, II,7,8; 8,9; 9,10; 17,19; 21,24

Pelagius’ letter to, I,30,32-33,36; 34,37

Volume I/23
Jesus Christ:
believe in him; suffer for him, I,31,34
Christian faith rests on, II,24,28
cooperates with human will, I,44,48
created human nature; healed its defect, II,33,38
divinity and humanity, II,27,32
everyone who has listened to the Father ... I,14,15
example and teaching, I,35,38;42; 41,45
faith in the whole Christ, II,24,28
form of the servant, II,28,33
grace through, I,47,52
helps us not to sin, by example, I,2,2
inferior to the Father, II,28,33
mediator, I,50,55; II,24,28; 25; 28,33; 40,46
mediator for both Testaments, II,26,31
Old Testament faith in, II,25
sinless, II,28,33; 32,27; 41,47
tempted, II,41,47
those he looked upon shed tears, I,45,49
without me you can do nothing, I,29,30
Job, II,24,28
justification, I,8,9; 30,31; 50,55
no righteousness without faith in Christ, II,24,28
sinners under the law, I,39,43
knowledge:
knowing what one should do, I,33,36
lack of, and Christian faith, II,23,27
love not distinguished by Pelagius, I,26,27
revelation; nature, I,40,44
law:
commands, rather than helps, I,8,9
fulfilled by grace, I,9,10
gift or commandment(s): I,13,14
grace:
God's help, I,7
great difference, I,13,14
helping natural ability, I,6,8
help existed in time of prophets, I,41,45
I see another law ... (Paul), I,39,43
justification and righteousness, II,24,28
knowledge of sin through, I,8,9; II,25
no one is found exempt from sin, II,41,47
not doing what one ought to do, I,13,14
people who lived before, I,38,42
purpose: to show need of grace, II,24,29
righteousness and, I,9,10; 48,53
terrifies, convicts, punishes, II,25
usefulness, I,8,9
willing what is good, I,10,11

learning:
everyone who has listened to the Father ... I,14,15
life, I,8,9
temporal = uncertain, II,20,22
Lord's Day, II,31,36
love, I,3,3; 30,32; 35,38; 41,45
does / thinks no evil, I,21,22
doing what one knows one should, I,33,36
failing to do good, I,26,27
faith-filled, II,25
fulfillment of the law, I,9,10
gift of grace, I,44,48
God has first loved us, I,26,27
highest degree of (Paul), I,11,12; 12,13
knowledge not distinguished by Pelagius, I,26,27
learned from God, I,13,14
merit and grace, I,26,27
not puffed up, I,11,12
poured out in our hearts, I,9,10; 26,27;
II,24,28
source of good, I,18,19; 20,21
virtue; comes from God, I,21,22
lust, I,15,16; II,34,39; 37,42; 38,43; 40,45
marital chastity, II,33,38
marriage and, II,38,43
no intercourse without, II,36,41
marriage:
avoiding fornication, II,38,43
conjugal relations, II,34,39
fertility, II,35,40
goodness not destroyed, II,37,42
increase and multiply ... II,35,40
lust and, II,38,43
original state (before the Fall), II,35,40
practice licit intercourse; conceal the shameful, II,37,42
procreation of children, II,33,38; 34,39
purpose of intercourse, II,38,43
sacred character of, II,34,39
satisfaction of sexual pleasure, II,38,43
See also sex
three goods in, II,34,39
what God has joined ... II,34,39
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
contrasted with Eve, II,40,45
Melania, I,1,1
Melchizedek, II,28,33
mercy, I,44,48; II,17,18
merit, II,24,28
doing God's will, I,22,24
gift of faith, I,31,34
grace and, I,33,3; 31,34
love and grace, I,26,27
meriting grace, by good works, I,22,23
Methuselah, II,23,27
Answer To The Pelagians I

modesty, II, 36, 41
Moses: law given through, II, 24, 29
Mystical Body: old covenant, II, 26, 31

nakedness, II, 34, 39
natural ability, See ability
nature, See human nature
Noah, II, 23, 34

non-believers, II, 40, 45
gift of faith, I, 10, 11
non-believers, I, 31, 34
Novatians, II, 41, 47

old covenant:
faith in the incarnation, II, 32, 27
people saved by faith; grace of Christ, II, 25

olive trees, II, 40, 45
original justice:
purity, II, 35, 40
sex in, II, 36, 41

original sin:
Adam alone was harmed by, II, 2, 2; 3, 3; 4, 4; 10, 11; 13, 14; 15, 16; II, 16, 17
birth in the flesh, II, 38, 43
Caelestius on, II, 2, 7, 8
circumcision and, II, 30, 35
denial is heresy, II, 23, 26

God’s justice: unbaptized infants, II, 20, 22
goodness of marriage and, II, 33, 38
harms those who do not sin, II, 21, 24
human race harmed by example, not propagation, II, 15, 16; 16, 17
humans born with defect of, II, 40, 46
infant baptism, I, 33, 36
infants, II, 1, 1; 2, 2; 4, 5, 5; 10, 11; 13, 14; 14, 15
infants condemed for, II, 31, 36

nature and nature’s defect, II, 33, 38

nature corrupted and condemned, I, 50, 55
pain of childbirth and, II, 36, 41

passed on as a result of being born, II, 40, 45
practice of infant baptism as proof of, II, 40, 45

salvation of infants, II, 19, 21

synod of Palestine; charges summarized, II, 11, 12, 13
transmission of, II, 4, 4; 6, 6; 10, 11; 13, 14; 14, 15; 23, 26

Palestine, bishops of, II, 8, 9
Pammachius, II, 3, 3
paradise, II, 23, 27
parents, II, 38, 43

Paul, Saint:
revelations, I, 11, 12
on sinfulness, II, 31, 36
taken up to third heaven, II, 23, 27

who will set me free . . ., II, 41, 47
Paulinus (deacon), I, 3, 3; 4, 7, 8
Paulinus, Bishop, I, 35, 38
Pelagius, I, 1, 1-50, 55 passim
ability, will, action, I, 3, 4-6, 7; 21, 22; 25, 26; 47, 52
accused of denying grace, I, 41, 45
acquittal, I, 31, 34; II, 8, 9; 9, 10; 14, 15; 16, 17
appeal to authority of Ambrose, I, 42, 46-47, 52
arguments against grace, I, 25, 26

Caelestius compared with, II, 12, 13-14
charge of deceiving the bishops, II, 15, 16; 16, 17
deceived bishops of Palestine, II, 8, 9; 10, 11
defense of free choice, I, 5, 6
denies original sin, I, 41, 48
equivocation, II, 3, 1
example: speaking, I, 16, 17; 25, 26
every example: the eye, I, 15, 16
on infant baptism, II, 5, 5; 6, 6; 16, 17
knowledge and love not distinguished by, I, 26, 27
letter to Demetrius, I, 37, 40
necessity of grace, I, 2, 2; 3, 3
on one baptism, I, 21, 24
perversion teaching, I, 22, 25
praise of Ambrose, I, 41, 47; 41, 48
prayer for his conversion, I, 9, 10
profession of faith, I, 32, 35-33, 36
stubborn obstinacy, I, 26, 27; 30, 31; 45, 50
synod of Palestine; charges summarized, II, 11, 12-12, 13
three ages of salvation history, II, 26, 30
tried to deceive A postolic See, II, 17, 19
truthfulness questioned, I, 22, 23
penance (sacrament), I, 37, 41
mercy of Christ, I, 45, 49
people of God, I, 30, 35
perfection, I, 11, 12; 13, 14
Peter, Saint:
denial; tears after Jesus looked upon him, I, 45, 49
I will not be scandalized . . ., I, 45, 50
salvation of the fathers (O.T.), II, 25
saved by the Rock, I, 45, 50
physician, II, 26, 30
Pinianus, I, 1, 1
Platonists, I, 31, 36
praise, I, 13, 14
Ambrose, I, 43, 47
good will and good acts, I, 4, 5; 6, 7; 16, 17; 17, 18
righteousness, I, 26, 27
prayer, I, 41, 45
Pelagius on, I, 30, 32

Volume I/23
that you do nothing evil, I,25,26
predestination, I,12,13
pride, I,8,9; 11,12; 12,13; 23; 26,27; II,40,46
procreation of children, II,34,39
promise, I,8,9; 10,11; 30,31
prophets: law and teaching, I,41,45
punishment:
  fear of, I,13,14
  reign of death, II,24,29
reason, II,26,30
  lust and, II,34,39; 38,43
redemption, I,30,32; II,19,21; 41,47
renewal: interior life, I,11,12
reproach, I,48,53
resurrection of the body:
  Ambrose on, II,41,47
revelation: grace, I,7
righteousness, II,32,27
  ability, will, action, I,3,4
  canonical scriptures, I,42,46
  Christ’s example, I,2,2; 38,42
  commandment(s): known and feared, I,8,9
  holy lives before the law; before Christ, I,38,42
  law and teaching as helping grace, I,9,10
  law as source = not from God, I,13,14
  law does not bring, I,8,9
  law ineffective; Christ came as physician, II,26,30
  love and embrace, I,8,9
  love of, I,13,14
  nature corrupted; law was added, II,26,30
  nature; creator known by reason, II,26,30
  nonbelievers benefitted by God’s r., II,21,24
  none, without Christian faith, II,24,28
  old covenant; salvation, II,26,31
  perfection (law), I,48,53
  praise the one who makes us righteous, I,26,27
  sweetness, I,13,14
  true, I,47,52
  Zechariah and Elizabeth (Ambrose on), I,48,53
Roman empire, II,17,18
  Rome, I,2,2; 3,3; 22,23; 30,32; 41,45; II,1,1;
  2,2; 3,3; II,5,5; 8,9; 12,13; 21,23; 21,24;
  23,26
root: good and evil (analogy), I,18,19; 20,21
  Rufinus (priest), I,3,3
  rule of faith, II,29,34

sacraments:
  Pelagians dare not reject, II,40,45
  sacrifice(s):
    animal defects, II,32,27
    called sin, II,32,27
  salvation:
  apart from Christ’s redemption, I,30,32
  righteous people of old covenant, II,26,31
  unbaptized infants, II,18,20; 20,22; 21,23
  salvation history:
    three ages (Pelagius), II,26,30
  Samaria, I,46,51
  Satan (thorn in Paul’s flesh), I,11,12; 12,13
  schoolmaster, I,8,9
  self-sufficiency, I,5,6; 25,26; 41,45
  sex:
    disobedience of members (organs), II,34,39
    mutual consent, I,38,43
    privacy in intercourse, II,37,42
  shame, II,36,41; 37,42
  sin:
    See also forgiveness of sin
    abounding, II,24,29
    attributed to God, I,25,26
    corrupted: a nature that was created good, I,19,20
    covetousness: not born of God, I,21,22
    desire and consent, II,40
    everything that comes not from faith, I,26,27
    free choice, I,28,29
    human beings not born with, II,6,6
    imitation of the first sinner, II,15,16;
    16,17
    law and knowledge of, I,8,9
    law; knowledge of sin, II,25
    old law; Christ’s teaching, I,39,43
    sacrifices for, are called sins, II,32,27
  sinfulness:
    humans do not cease to be human, II,40,46
  sinlessness:
    ability for, due to God, I,4,5
    Ambrose as witness, I,43,47
    free choice; reject help of grace, I,30,32
    law and teaching, I,3,3
    nature and free choice, I,3,3
    resurrection of the body, II,38,43
    spotless in this world, I,49,54
    synod of Palestine: charges summarized, II,11,12-12,13
    Zechariah and Elizabeth, I,48,53
  sinner: habit of sin, I,39,43
  Sodom, I,29,34
  Son of God: way, truth, life, II,27,32
  soul:
    sweetness in, I,13,14
    weak, I,12,13
  speaking, I,4,5
  example used by Pelagius, I,16,17; 25,26
  spirit(s): unclean, I,40,46
  spiritual life:
    Jesus looked upon Peter (interiorly), I,45,49
The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

seeing, desiring, doing, I,14,15
sweetness, I,13,14

teaching:
  exhortation; example, I,10,11
  God affects willing and acting, I,14,15
  grace helping natural ability, I,6,8; 7
  righteousness and, I,9,10
  times of the prophets, I,41,45
  willing that is good, I,10,11
  tears: wash away guilt, I,45,49
  temptation: resisting the tempter, I,40,44
  thinking:
    ability from God; doing, from ourselves, I,25,26
    threshing floor, II,25
    time: grace necessary, I,2,2
    tree:
      good and evil (analogy), I,18,19; 19,20
      Trinity, II,23,26
      truth, I,2,2; 30,31; II,22,25; 35,40
understanding, II,40,46
unity:
  clinging, become one with him, I,46,51
  one spirit with the Lord, I,23
veil of the temple, II,25
vice, I,20,21; 39,43; II,13,14
virgin:
  conceiving a child, II,35,40
  intercourse: pain and blood, II,35,40
  virgin birth, II,41,47
virtue, I,20,21; 39,43; II,13,14
made perfect in weakness, I,12,13
vocation:
  God calls those whom he chooses (Ambrose), I,46,51
way:
  found more easily if grace helps, I,41,45
  weakness, I,11,12; 12,13; II,40,46
wickedness:
  human beings become bad trees, I,19,20
  wife and husband, II,34,39
will:
  ability due to God, I,4,5
  Christ cooperates with (Ambrose), I,44,48
  dependent on God’s will, I,23; 46,51
  fulfilling God’s commandments, I,3,4-6,7
  God helps, I,15,16; 45,49
  God produces the willing in one . . .
  I,10,11
  God’s help not needed, I,3,4; 5,6; 41,45; 47,52
  good will: comes from God, I,21,22
  God’s work, I,24,25
  self-produced, I,10,11
  holiness and, I,7
  infants and, II,15,16
  making human will dependent on God’s will, I,22,24; 46,51
  not helped by any additional power, I,2,2
  original defilement, II,40,46
  sin and, II,6,6
wisdom:
  desire for God, I,10,11
  God and marriage, II,35,40
  revelation of, I,11,12
  works, I,23; 31,34
world: term for “living in the world”, I,20,21
wrongdoing, I,48,53; II,13,14
Zechariah: righteousness, I,48,53
Zosimus, Pope, II,2,2: 6,7; 7,8; 8,9; 9,10; 17,19; 21,24

Volume I/23
Index from

On the Perfection of Human Righteousness

(De perfectione justitiae hominis)

Included in book:

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23

Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Volume I/23

**Index of Scripture**

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

#### Old Testament

**Exodus**
- 3:14 14,32
- 20:17 2,4; 5,11; 11,28

**Numbers**
- 24:3 12,29
- 24:15 12,29

**Deuteronomy**
- 6:5 5,11; 8,19
- 18:13 9,20
- 23:17 9,20
- 30:9-14 10,22
- 30:15 19,41
- 30:15-19 19,40

**Tobit**
- 4:21 13,31

**Job**
- 1:8 16,37
- 1:11 12,29
- 9:17 11,26
- 14:4 LXX 11,28
- 14:16-17 11,28
- 16:17 11,25
- 17:8 12,30
- 23:11-12 11,27
- 27:6 11,28
- 29:14 11,27

**Psalms**
- 14:1,3 13,31
- 14:2 13,31
- 15:1-2 9,20
- 16:4 19,42
- 18:24 9,20
- 19:13 15,33
- 24:3-4 15,34; 15,36
- 25:17 2,2; 4,9
- 27:9 20,43
- 30:6 19,41
- 31:8 4,9
- 32:2 6,15

- 37:3 13,31
- 37:6 11,24
- 116:2 12,29; 12,30
- 119:1 9,20
- 119:80 10,21
- 119:133 10,21
- 125:4 15,34
- 143:2 17,38

**Proverbs**
- 2:21 14,32
- 18:17 11,27
- 20:8 15,33; 15,34
- 20:8-9 15,33; 15,34
- 20:9 15,33
- 22:11 9,20

**Song of Songs**
- 4:5 LXX 19,41

**Wisdom**
- 8:21 5,11
- 9:15 6,14

**Sirach**
- 7:21 16,37
- 7:27 16,37
- 13:24 15,34
- 13:30 15,36
- 15:8 12,30
- 15:14-17 19,40
- 15:15 19,41
- 38:10 15,34
- 39:25 14,32

**Isaiah**
- 1:19-20 19,40; 19,42

**Habakkuk**
- 2:4 8,18; 11,28

### New Testament

**Matthew**
- 5:6 8,17
- 5:8 15,34
- 5:9 18,39

---

**Answer To The Pelagians I**
### The Perfection of Human Righteousness

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:14-15</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>8,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>10,21; 19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>6,15; 7,16; 8,18; 8,19; 9,20; 11,24; 15,34; 15,36; 21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>6,14; 10,21; 13,31; 15,34; 20,43; 21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>6,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>3,5; 4,9; 10,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12-13</td>
<td>21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-30</td>
<td>10,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:43</td>
<td>15,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>5,11; 8,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:39-40</td>
<td>5,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>11,24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>17,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>11,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>15,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:19</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:63-65</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>15,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>4,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>11,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:18</td>
<td>11,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>11,23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>5,11; 10,21; 10,22; 20,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>18,39; 21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>19,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>6,12; 21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>11,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>7,16; 8,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>2,1; 2,3; 2,4; 3,6; 4,10; 7,16; 8,17; 10,21; 20,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>3,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>20,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29-30</td>
<td>20,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>15,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:28</td>
<td>5,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>10,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>10,22; 11,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>5,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>3,8; 10,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>12,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:36</td>
<td>19,40; 19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>8,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>6,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55-56</td>
<td>6,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>2,4; 3,7; 4,10; 18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>10,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:11</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>7,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>19,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>2,1; 6,12; 8,17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>17,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>12,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>15,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>9,20; 15,35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-15</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer To The Pelagians I

3:12-13-15 8,19
3:13 15,36
Colossians
1:21-22 9,20
1:28 9,20
3:4 15,35
1 Timothy
1:5 10,21
2:5 19,42
2 Timothy
3:13 1
Titus
1:6 17,38
Philemon
13-14 19,40
14 19,41
James
2:13 15,34; 17,38
3:2 21,44
1 Peter
1:13-16 9,20
2 Peter
2:19 4,9
1 John
1:8 18,39; 21,44
2:1 18,39
3:2 3,8; 18,39
3:2-3 18,39
3:3 18,39
3:5-6 18,39
3:6 18,39
3:9 18,39
3:21-22 15,34; 15,36
4:18 10,21
5:3 10,22
5:18 18,39
Revelation
14:5 12,30; 12,30

Volume I/23
The Perfection of Human Righteousness

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The Perfection of Human Righteousness

Abraham, 19, 42
Adam and Eve:
   sin entered the world through, 18, 39; 21, 44
   almsgiving, 8, 18; 11, 24; 11, 28
   venial sins forgiven by, 9, 20
   anger, 19, 41
   children of, 2, 3
   apostates, 11, 27; 18, 39
   baptism: forgiveness of sin, 7, 16
   belief: Christ's foreknowledge re believers, 19, 41
   bible: texts re command to be without sin, 8, 17ff
   boast, 12, 30; 15, 33; 15, 34
   Caeselius, 1, 0; 8, 17; 9, 20; 10, 22; 11, 28; 14, 32; 15, 33; 16, 37; 17, 38; 18, 39; 19, 40; 19, 41; 19, 42
   cheerfulness, 8, 18; 10, 21
   children of God, 9, 20; 13, 31; 14, 32; 18, 39
   church:
      body of Christ, 15, 35
      Christ united himself with, 15, 35
      glorious, 15, 35
      holy and spotless, 9, 20
   perfect, 15, 35
   commandment(s):
      doing the impossible, 3, 6
      goal = love, 10, 21
      keeping = love for God, 10, 22; 19, 41
      light and sweet, 10, 21
      many, in scripture, 5, 11
      not burdensome, 10, 21ff
      scripture proofs: be without sin, 8, 17ff
      two: love God; love neighbor, 5, 11
   wash away sins, 17, 38
   concupiscence, 6, 12; 8, 18; 8, 19; 11, 27; 11, 28; 13, 31; 21, 44
   condemnation, 9, 20; 19, 42
   consent, 11, 28; 12, 29; 21, 44
   continence, 8, 19
   cooperation: receiving God's help, 20, 43
   creation: God made all things good, 14, 32
   darkness, 12, 30
   David, King, 19, 42
   death, 7, 16; 11, 27
      origin: first sin, 18, 39; 21, 44
      set free from body of, 8, 17
      sin as sting of, 6, 14
   Definitions Attributed to Caelestius, 1, 0ff
   desire, 6, 14; 21, 44
   carnal, 8, 19
   for I do not the good that I want . . ., 11, 28
   ignorance, 9, 20
   righteous prayer, 8, 18
   world and, 5, 11
   you shall not desire, 5, 11; 11, 28
   despair, 10, 21
   Elizabeth, 17, 38
   end of the world, 11, 24
   enemies: love of, 8, 18
   Eutropius, Bishop, 1, 0
   faith, 7, 16; 8, 18; 8, 19; 11, 23; 11, 27; 11, 28; 15, 36; 18, 39
   belief in the heart, 11, 28
   drawn by the Father, 19, 41
   God imparts measure of, 19, 41
   grace and, 6, 14
   no man can come to me unless . . ., 19, 41
   prayer and, 19, 40
   righteous live from, 8, 19
   sanctification, 18, 39
   vision and, 3, 8
   fasting: chastisement of the body, 8, 18
   fear: commandments and, 10, 21
   flesh: sin dwells in the, 11, 28
   foot: limping, 2, 4
   forgiveness of sin, 8, 18; 11, 24; 11, 28
   baptism and, 7, 16
   universal need of, 21, 44
   free choice: sinfulness and, 4, 9
   freedom: unable to do what we know, 4, 9
   gift: Father in heaven gives good things, 14, 32
   glory, 8, 18
   godlessness, 3, 8
   god:
      foreknowledge, 13, 31
      I am who am, 14, 32
      immutable good, 14, 32
      restoration of human goodness, 4, 10
   righteous, 6, 15; 10, 22
   good and evil:
      choice, 19, 40
      free choice, 4, 9
      human nature, 6, 14
      power to do good, 11, 28
      two commands, 5, 11
      will the good; do evil, 11, 28
   good works: almsgiving, 8, 18
   goodness:
      every person chooses, 19, 41
      flesh and, 11, 28
      God alone is good, 14, 32
      not a single person does good, 13, 31
      restoration of, 4, 10
   grace, 8, 17; 14, 32
   abundant, 19, 42
   cooperation needed, to be helped, 20, 43
   faith and, 6, 14

Volume I/23
freed from condemnation, 19,42
healing the will, 6,12
help in avoiding sin, 2,1; 2,4; 3,5; 3,6; 4,10; 6,12; 7,16
poured into our hearts, by the Spirit, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
greed, 2,4
hands: innocent, 15,36
healing, 20,43
heart:
  blessed are the pure, 15,34; 15,36
  chaste, 15,33
  correction; faith, 19,41
difference: pure / upright, 15,36
  good things from the treasure of, 14,32
  love poured into our hearts, by the Spirit, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
self-reproach, 11,28; 15,36
upright, 15,34; 15,36
heaven:
  no sin; no infirmity, 18,39
running toward perfecting place, 8,19
Hebrews, Letter to the, 17,38
holiness, 9,20; 18,39; 21,44
Holy Spirit:
  given, after the ascension, 15,35
  love poured out in our hearts, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
hope, 3,8; 7,16; 8,19
human beings:
  commanded to do good, 4,10
daily interior renewal, 18,39
God alone is good, 14,32
  good, as created, 4,10
liars, 12,30
restoration of goodness, 4,10
human nature:
  goodness questioned, 6,14
humility, 6,15; 10,22
ignorance, 9,20
infidelity, 11,28
Jesus Christ, 2,1
  advance knowledge of the righteous of old, 19,42
  came to take sins away, 18,39
  failings; Christ's healing, 19,42
  foreknowledge re. believers, 19,41
  form of a servant, 15,35
  mediator, 19,42
  resurrection, 15,35
  sinfulness, 11,24; 12,29
Job, 19,42
  pure prayer, 11,25
  sufferings, 11,26
  without reproach, 16,37
John the Baptist: light, 14,32
Joshua, 19,42
judgment:
  mercy triumphs over, 17,38
judgment day, 4,10; 11,24
judgment without mercy, 15,34
righteous king shall sit upon his throne, 15,33
law, 21,44
desire to sin, 6,14
entered so sin might abound, 19,42
you shall not desire, 11,28
liar:
  every human being, 12,29
  if we say we have no sin . . ., 18,39; 21,44
life, 19,41
light, 14,32
limping, 2,4; 3,5
Lord's Prayer:
  bring us not into temptation, 21,44
  deliver us from evil, 6,14; 13,31; 15,34; 19,40
  forgive us our sins, 6,15; 7,16; 8,18; 11,24; 15,36; 21,44
love, 8,19
  fulfillment of the law, 3,8
  goal of God's commandments, 10,21
  imperfect, and sin, 6,15
  perfect, 7,16; 8,18
  poured out in our hearts, by the Spirit, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
love for God:
  command: whole heart, mind, soul, 5,11; 8,19
  keep his commandments, 10,22
lust, 6,12
Mani, 6,14
Marcion, 6,14
marriage, 19,41
mercy, 15,33; 19,40; 19,41
  See also judgment day
  judgment and, 17,38
mind, 2,4
  newness of, 5,11
Moses, 19,42
nature, 2,3; 6,12
necessity, 4,9
neighbor: command to love, 5,11
Noah, 19,42
Old Testament:
  faith of the righteous, 19,42
  Onesimus, 19,40
original sin:
  born of God, 18,39
  contracted from man in whom all sinned, 19,42; 21,44
pardon, 15,36
Answer To The Pelagians I

patience: tested (Job), 11,26
Paul, Bishop, 1,0
Paul, Saint, 5,11
Pelagians, 11,23
perfection, 8,17; 8,18; 8,19; 13,31; 15,35
because your Father is . . ., 9,20
eternal, 14,32
progress in, 7,16
running toward, 9,20
scripture texts enjoining, 9,20
those close to, are called perfect, 11,23
perseverance, 11,27
Philemon, 19,40
physician, 3,5; 4,9; 10,22; 21,44
pleasure, 21,44
possibility / impossibility, 3,6; 3,7
poverty, 15,36
prayer, 8,18
faith leads to, 19,40
pure, 9,20
pure (Job), 11,25
predestination, 15,35; 20,43
pride, 5,11
progress, 7,16; 8,18; 15,34; 15,36; 18,39;
20,43
lessening one's sins, 11,27; 13,31
providence, 19,41
punishment: fear of, 10,22
race: running, 8,19
redemption:
Christ dying in vain, 7,16
mission of Son of God, 3,7
renewal, 3,7; 4,10; 15,36; 18,39
riches: no sin on conscience, 15,36
righteousness, 5,11; 11,24; 15,33; 21,44
asking God's help, 20,43
belief in the heart, 11,28
complete, 3,8
elements: fasting, almsgiving, prayer,
8,18
hunger and thirst for, 8,17
no living person found . . ., 17,38
no one does good, avoids evil, 16,37
Old Testament: advance knowledge of
Christ, 19,42
people drawing close to perfection, 11,23
perfect, 3,7; 13,31; 17,38
self-accusation, 11,27
running, 9,20; 11,27
saints, 18,39
salvation, 10,22
Samuel, 19,42
schoolmaster, 5,11; 19,42
scripture, See bible
seeking God, 13,31; 14,32
self-control, 5,11
self-reproach, 11,28; 15,36
Sicily, 1,0
sin, 15,33
See also concupiscence; consent; grace;
temptation
arising from necessity or from will, 2,2
avoiding, with help of grace, 2,1
commandment to be without, 3,6; 5,11
See consent
desire increased by the law, 6,14
desire to, 11,28
duty to be without, 3,5
fault that one cannot be without sin, 6,13
forms of, 5,11
God imputes to human beings, 6,15;
21,44
God wills that one be without, 3,7; 3,8
grace needed to avoid, 21,44
love deficiency, 6,15
members; reigning, 11,28
natural, or addition to nature, 2,3
possibility of avoiding, 2,1; 5,11; 6,15
See redemption
self-accusation, 11,27
sting of death, 6,14
suffering for (Job), 11,26
thing or action, 2,4; 12,29
venial, 9,20
why a human can't be without, 6,12
sinfulness, 8,19
defective human condition, 4,9
fault that will alone cannot overcome,
6,13
sinlessness:
claim that some human has, 21,44
doing good not the same as, 13,31
God's command; proofs from scripture,
8,17ff
if we say we have no sin . . ., 18,39; 21,44
Jesus alone is sinless, 12,29
not even an infant is free, 11,28
only said of the Only-Begotten, 11,24
perfection of righteousness, 8,18
persons by their own resources, 7,16
possibility of, 4,9; 11,23; 20,43
questions on human condition, 7,16
spotless, 17,38
when and through whom, 7,16
words; thoughts, 20,43
sinner: healing, 4,9; 19,42
slave, 4,9
Son of God: sinless, 3,7
suffering: God's reasons for (Job), 11,26
temptation, 15,35; 21,44
truth, 12,30; 20,43
vice, 4,9
vision, 3,8; 7,16; 8,18; 18,39
weakness, 8,18

Volume I/23
wickedness, 11,28; 19,42
will, 2,1; 2,2; 3,5; 6,12; 10,21; 10,22
See also consent
error: be truthful without God’s help, 12,30
fault that will alone cannot overcome, 6,13
God’s help is needed, 19,40
good actions done by, 15,34
healed only by grace of God, 6,12
sin of the first human, 21,44

sufficient to avoid sin, 21,44
unable to follow, 4,9; 6,12
wisdom, 12,30
works of mercy, 15,36
world: conformed to, 5,11
wound, 20,43
wrestler, 12,29
yoke, 10,22
Zechariah, 17,38
Index from

On the Merits and Forgiveness of Sins and on Infant Baptism
(De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum)

Included in book:

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins
and the Baptism of Little Ones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>II,21,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>III,11,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>I,16,21; I,2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>I,36,67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>I,36,67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I,31,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II,33,53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>I,2,2; I,4,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19:18</td>
<td>II,33,53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>I,10,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:19</td>
<td>II,22,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>I,10,11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Job</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>II,12,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2:3</td>
<td>II,10,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:28-31</td>
<td>II,10,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4-5</td>
<td>III,7,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:5-6</td>
<td>II,11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>II,7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:3</td>
<td>I,22,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>I,22,54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians I
## Answer To The Pelagians I

### Proverbs
- 3:12 | II,16,25
- 3:18 | II,21,35
- 4:27 | II,35,57
- 8:35 | II,18,30
- 20:9 | III,7,13

### Wisdom
- 2:24 | I,9,9
- 2:25 | I,9,9
- 4:11 | I,21,30
- 8:19-20 | I,25,38
- 9:15 | II,10,12

### Sirach
- 18:30 | II,5,5
- 25:24 | I,16,21

### Isaiah
- 53:3-12 | I,22,54
- 53:6 | I,22,54
- 56:1 | II,5,5
- 61:1 | I,22,54

### Jeremiah
- 2:29 | II,10,14
- 10:23 | II,6,7
- 10:23-24 | II,17,26

### Ezekiel
- 28:3 | II,10,13

### Daniel
- 9:5,11,15 | II,10,13
- 9:20 | II,10,13
- 9:24 | I,14

### Zechariah
- 1:3 | II,5,5

### New Testament
#### Matthew
- 1:21 | II,29,48; III,4,8
- 5:6 | II,5,5
- 5:48 | II,15,22
- 6:12 | II,4,4; II,10,13; II,16,25; III,13,23
- 6:12-13 | II,4,4
- 6:13 | II,2,2; II,4,4
- 8:22 | I,2,2
- 9:12 | I,18,23; III,4,8
- 12:30 | I,28,55
- 19:5-6 | I,16,21
- 19:6 | I,31,60
- 19:14 | I,19,24
- 19:28 | II,7,9
- 25:34 | III,3,6
- 25:46 | III,3,6
- 26:28 | I,24,34; II,30,49

#### Mark
- 10:8 | I,31,60
- 16:15-16 | I,27,40
- 16:16 | III,2,3; III,3,6

#### Luke
- 1:6 | I,13,20
- 2:11 | I,23; II,29,48
- 4:18-19 | I,22,54
- 5:32 | I,18,23; I,19,24; I,27,40
- 6:37-38 | II,3,3
- 9:56 | III,5,10
- 9:60 | I,2,2
- 19:9-10 | I,27,40
- 20:34 | I,20,27; II,9,11
- 23:43 | I,22,31
- 24:46-47 | I,27,40
- 24:46-47 | I,22,53

#### John
- 1:1 | I,31,60
- 1:5 | I,25,37
- 1:9 | I,25,36; I,25,37; I,25,38
- 1:12-13 | II,23,37
- 1:14 | I,31,60; II,18,31; II,24,38
- 1:29 | I,23; I,27,40
- 3:1-21 | I,30,59
- 3:3 | I,20,26; I,30,58; II,27,43
- 3:5 | I,20,26; I,20,27; I,30,58; III,3,6; III,4,8
- 3:8 | I,22,32
- 3:13 | I,31,60
- 3:14-15 | I,32,61

---

**Volume I/23**
Volume I/23

3:15 I,32,61
3:16 I,33,62
3:18 I,33,62; III,2,3
3:19 I,33,62
3:35-36 I,20,28
3:36 III,2,3
6:51-52,54 I,24,34
6:52 I,20,27
6:54 I,20,26; I,20,27
8:36 II,6,7
9:19 II,10,14
9:19-20 II,10,14
9:23 II,10,14
10:27-28 I,27,40
12:46 I,24,35; I,25,38
13:26-14:5 II,10,14
14:1 I,14
14:1-2 II,10,15
145, LXX I,24,34
14:6 I,27,40
14:16-17 II,10,14; II,10,15
14:17 II,10,15
14:30 I,39,70
14:30-31 II,29,48; II,31,50
15:13 II,34,54
16:7 II,32,52
16:8-10 II,32,52
39:33 II,10,16
5:13 I,10,12
5:14 I,11,3
5:15 I,11,14
5:16 I,12,15; I,13,16; I,16,21
5:16.18 II,25,42
5:17 I,13,17
5:18 I,13,18; I,14; I,15,19; I,16,21
5:19 I,15,19
5:20 I,15,20; III,11,20
5:20-21 I,15,20
5:21 I,15,20
6:12 II,4,4; II,28,45
7:14-25 I,27,43
7:15 II,10,15
7:16 II,4,4
7:19-20 II,12,17
7:22 I,6,6
7:24 II,6,6
7:24-25 II,12,17
7:25 I,21,29; I,22,33
8:3 I,27,43
8:8 II,28,45
8:10 I,4,4; I,6,6; I,7,7
8:10-11 I,4,4
8:11 I,5,5; I,7,7
8:12-13 I,7,7
8:17 I,18,23; I,25,36
8:23-25 II,7,9
8:24-25 I,18,23
9:11-12 I,22,31
9:14 I,21,29
10:14 I,22,31
11:32 I,21,29
10:43 I,22,52
11:33 I,21,29; I,21,30; I,22,31
13:38-39 I,22,52
11:33-36 I,21,29

Acts of the Apostles
3:14-15 I,22,52
4:11-12 I,22,52
5:30-31 I,22,52
10:43 I,22,52
11:33 I,21,29; I,21,30; I,22,31
13:38-39 I,22,52

Romans
2:12 I,10,12
3:22-26 I,27,43
4:4-8 I,27,43
4:5 I,14; I,19,25
4:23-25 I,27,43
5:5 II,17,27
5:6 I,18,23; I,27,43
5:12 I,8,8; I,9,9; I,9,10; I,10,1; I,10,11; I,10,12; I,28,55; II,29,47; III,4,8; III,7,14; III,11,19
5:12-13 I,10,12
1 Corinthians
1:13 II,18,31
1:31 I,22,32
2:6 II,15,22
3:2 II,15,22
3:7 I,9,10; I,25,37
4:7 II,18,28; II,18,30
6:15 III,9,17
7:14 II,25,41; II,26; III,12,21
11:1 I,9,10; I,14
12:12 I,31,60
14:20 I,25,36

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

15:3  I,27,44
15:21  I,8,8
15:21-22  I,8,8; II,30,49; III,11,19
15:53-56  III,11,20
15:54-56  III,11,20
15:57  III,11,20

2 Corinthians
4:6  II,13,20
4:16  II,7,9
5:2-4  II,2,2
5:14-6:2  I,27,44
10:17  I,22,32; II,18,31
12:9  II,16,24

Galatians
1:3-4  I,27,45
3:8  I,10,11
3:19-22  I,27,45
3:21-22  I,10,12
3:22  III,11,20

Ephesians
2:1-5  I,27,46
2:3  I,21,29; II,10,15
2:8-10  I,27,46
2:12-18  I,22,46
4:21-24  I,22,46
4:22-24  II,7,9

Philippians
2:8  II,29,48; II,31,51
2:13  I,33,62; II,18,30
3:6  II,13,20
3:7-11  II,13,20
3:12-14  II,13,20
3:15  II,15,22
3:15-16  II,13,20

Colossians
1:12-14  I,22,47
2:10-15  I,22,47
3:5  I,6,6

2 Thessalonians
3:2  I,28,55

1 Timothy
1:15-16  I,22,48
2:5-6  I,22,48
2:6  II,1,1

2 Timothy
1:8-10  I,22,48
4:7-8  II,16,24

Titus
2:13-14  I,22,49
3:4-7  I,22,49
3:5  I,18,23; I,24,34; II,7,9

Hebrews
1:1-3  I,22,50
2:2-3  I,22,50
2:14-15  I,22,50; II,31,50
2:17  I,22,50
4:14-15  I,22,50
7:24-27  I,22,50
7:26  II,13,19
9:24-28  I,22,50
11:1  II,31,50
11:13  II,31,50
11:39  II,31,50
12:6  II,16,25

James
1:13  II,4,4
2:10  II,3,3
2:12-13  II,3,3
3:2  III,7,13

1 Peter
1:3-5  I,27,41
1:5  I,28,55
1:7-9  I,27,41
2:9  I,27,41
2:22-23  III,7,13
2:22-24-25  I,22,54
3:18  I,27,41
3:21  I,24,34; I,27,41

1 John
1:7  I,27,42

Volume I/23
The Punishment & Forgiveness of Sins & the Baptism of Little Ones

1:8  II,7,8; II,8,10; II,10,12; II,13,18 5:9-12  I,27,42
2:6  III,7,13
3:2  II,8,10 Revelation
3:8  I,9,9; I,27,42 5:9  I,22,51
3:9  II,7,9; II,8,10; II,10,12
3:16  II,34,54

Answer To The Pelagians I
Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Punishment and the Forgiveness of Sins

Aaron, II, 13, 19; 16, 25
Abel, I, 15, 19
Abraham, I, 10, 11; II, 25, 39; II, 25, 40
Adam and Eve:
- all share in sin of, I, 9, 9
- before/after their disobedience, II, 22, 36
- birth in, as sinners, III, 2, 2
- body, after his sin, I, 16, 21
- condemnation established for his lineage, I, 11, 13
- created fully grown, I, 37, 68
- death came through a man, I, 8, 8
- dismissed from paradise, II, 22, 36
- disobedience; results, II, 21, 35
- Eve: rib of Adam, I, 37, 68
- first man, I, 9, 10
- forbidden fruit, II, 21, 35
- imitation; persuasion, I, 13, 17
- mortal body, I, 3, 3
- naming his wife, I, 36, 57
- one flesh, I, 16, 21
- one in whom all have sinned, I, 15, 19; 28, 55
- origin of those born with sin, I, 9, 10
- original state, I, 37, 68
- Pelagius on, III, 4, 9
- propagation of sin, I, 13, 18; III, 11
- salvation of, I, 34, 55
- sin and death, III, 11, 19
- sin entered by one man . . ., I, 9, 10
- sinless: death and, I, 2, 2; 3, 3
- willful sin, I, 9, 10
- woman who believed the serpent, I, 28, 56
- you are earth . . ., I, 2, 2; 4, 4
- atonement, I, 27, 43
- spiritual procreation, I, 18, 23

Baptism:
See also infant baptism
- called "salvation", I, 24, 34
- coheirs with Christ, I, 25, 36
- concupiscence remains, II, 28, 45
- forgiveness of sin, I, 17, 22; 28, 55; II, 27, 44; III, 3, 6
- form indicates sins forgiven, I, 34, 63
- institution of, I, 18, 23
- kingdom of God, I, 24, 34
- likeness of Christ's death, I, 32, 61
- necessity, I, 26, 39; 35, 58
- non-baptized are not with Christ, I, 28, 55
- old weakness remains, II, 7, 9
- providence and, I, 21, 30
- rebirth (sacrament or "bath" of), I, 16, 21; 22, 31; II, 7, 9; 27, 43; 27, 44; 28, 45
- sacrament given once, II, 25, 40
- sacrament of salvation, I, 18, 23
- serious transgressors, III, 10
- spiritual procreation, I, 18, 23
- baptized infants, See infant baptism.
- belief: infants; will and, I, 22, 31
- Bible:
- preeminent books, I, 35, 57
- read; hear; embrace, I, 36, 58
- unerrancy, I, 22, 33
- birth, See also childbirth.
- spiritual, through Christ, I, 15, 19

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

blasphemers, I,22,32
boasting: in the Lord, II,19,33
body:
  See also flesh; soul
  animal arousal, I,16,21
  baptism and, II,7,9
deaht: righteousness; sin, I,6,6; 7,7; 8,8
first man, I,3,3
life; hope, I,7,7
life on account of righteousness, I,7,7
mortal, without being destined to die, I,5,5
spiritual, I,2,2; 3,3; 5,5
tree of life, II,21,35
body and soul:
  before/after the fall of man, I,16,21; II,22,36
  God's creation, I,28,55
born again, See rebirth, bronze snake, I,32,61
canonical books, I,27,50
Carthage, III,5,10; 6,12
catechumens: sanctified, II,26
Catholic Church, III,6,12
celibacy, II,10,12
change: gradual movement toward death, I,16,21
chastity, II,5,5
childbirth:
  born in the flesh, through Adam, I,15,19
  pains of labor, II,23,37; 33,53
children:
  See also infant(s)
  bad behavior as charming, I,35,66
  begetting; concupiscence, II,9,11
  begotten in old sinful flesh, II,27,44
  believers, I,19,25; III,2,3
  do not have minds like . . ., II,25,36
  Jovinian: born without original sin, III,7,13
  kingdom of heaven, I,19,24
  love of, I,35,66
  praiseworthy life of, I,19,24
  children of God, II,6,7; 9,11; 18,23; 34,54;
    II,23,37; III,2,2
  adoption complete, II,7,9; 8,10
  grace, II,24,38
  purpose of the incarnation, II,24,38
  choice, See free choice.
  Christ, See Jesus Christ.
  Christian life:
    abandoning in Christ, III,7,13
    crucify the flesh for Christ, II,23,37
Church, I,33,62; II,12,21; 13,22
  See also Mystical Body
  ark as symbol, II,10,12
  authority, III,2,2
  body not distinct from Christ, I,31,60
community with Christ, II,1,1
incorporation into, I,26,39
infant baptism, I,25,38; III,1,1; 4,7; 4,8
mark: baptism, eucharist - and salvation, I,24,34
tradition, III,3,6; 3,9
  two in one flesh (with Christ), I,31,60
  circumcision, I,27,47; II,25,40; III,5,10; 5,11;
    8,16; 9,17
  clarity (in writing), III,4,9
clothes: wearing out, I,3,3
command(-ments), II,6,7; III,12,21
  even knowing that human beings will not do, II,16,23
  held in contempt, II,16,23
  pray for understanding, II,5,5
  rich young man observed all, I,16,25
concupiscence, I,9,10; II,10,15; 24,38
  consent; sin, II,4,4
  in infants, II,4,4
  initial righteousness, II,23,37
  law of, II,28,45; 28,46
  life combat, II,4,4
  marriage and, I,29,57
  mind's subjection to, I,39,70
  overcoming, I,39,70
  pray: forgive, help, take away, II,4,4
  propagation and, II,9,11
  remains after baptism, I,39,70; II,28,45
  condemnation, I,12,13; 12,14; 13,18; 16,21;
    28,55; II,23,12; 23,12
  brought to all by Adam, II,25,42; III,4,9
  judgment, II,10,14
  sinless human beings, III,3,6
  unjust, III,4,7
  consent; sin, II,4,4
  continence, I,29,57; 39,70
  conversion: husband and wife, III,12,21
  cornerstone, I,27,52
  corruption, II,21,35; 26
  courage, II,28,45; 31,50
  creation:
    all created things = good, II,21,35
    displeasure with, II,11
    first human beings = adults, I,37,68
    cross, I,27,46; 54; II,23,37
Cyprian, Saint, III,3,6
 darnation, II,4,4; 17,26; 19,33; 25,41; 27,43; 27,44
carnal generation, II,10,15
children of, II,16,25
concupiscence and, II,4,4
David, I,10,12; 10,13
darkness, I,24,35; 25,38; 27,47; 33,62; 36,67;
  II,5,6; 19
David, King: pardon merited by, II,34,56
death, II,12,17
  if Adam had not sinned, I,2,2; III,1,1

Answer To The Pelagians I
Adam’s sin as cause, I,4,4; 8,8; 9,9; II,30,49; III,7,14; 11,19; 11,20; 12,13
believe, only to remove pain of death, II,31,50
body of; punishment for sin, I,6,6; 7,7
body’s return to earth, I,2,2
challenge, II,34,54
children of anger, II,10,15
Christ chose to die, II,31,51
earned by the human race, I,4,4
fear of, I,27,43; II,31,51; III,13,23
freed by grace from, I,27,43
God need not have inflicted, on people, II,31,50
grace; free from second death, I,22,31
humiliation; test, II,34,56
kingdom of, I,13,17
law of, I,16,21
living according to life, I,7,7
make good use of, II,28,45
movement towards, I,16,21
necessity of, I,6,6
origin, II,29,47; III,12,21
original sin, II,21,35; 24,38; III,4,8
pain, II,34,54
power stripped from, I,27,43
punishment for sin, III,11,20
reign of, I,11,13; 13,17
righteous conquering fear of, II,34,54
righteousness of obedience, II,31,51
seed of, in the flesh, III,9,17
set free from, by the resurrection, I,32,61
snake as source, I,32,61
soul or body, III,11,20
those taken from life, without dying, I,3,3
transformed into life, I,7,7
delight, I,35,66; II,17,26; 17,27; 34,55
victorious; certain knowledge withheld, II,19
demons, III,10,18
desire, I,1,1; II,5,5; II,13,20; III,12,21
devil, I,26,39; 27,42; 28,55; 34,63; 39,70
children of the, I,27,54
debtors to, II,30,49
first parents, II,21,35
originator of sin and death, I,9,9; 13,17; II,31,51
power over death, I,27,50; II,31,51
sins; imitation, I,10,11; 13,18
disbelief: children of, I,27,46
disobedience, I,15,19
A dam imitated by, I,9,10
children of, II,29,48
pride, II,19,33
drunkenness, II,10,12
earth: death and the human body, I,2,2
eastern churches, I,27,50
Elijah, I,3,3
Elizabeth, II,13,19; 13,20
emotions, II,29,48
enemies: loving, I,15,22
enlightenment, I,25,36; 37,38; 26,39
eternal life, I,11,13; 12,15; 13,17; 15,20; 23; 26,39; 27,40; 27,48; 32,61; II,1,1; 24,38; 27,43; 29,47; 34,56
apart from community with Christ, III,11,19
belief in the Son of God, I,20,28
hope for, I,24,34
kingdom of God, I,20,26
outside kingdom of God, III,3,6; 4,7
partakers of Christ’s body, III,4,8
rising to, II,30,49
sacraments, I,24,34
eternal punishment, I,11,13; 13,17
second death, I,28,55
eucharist:
baptized persons, I,20,26
bread which I shall give . . ., I,24,34
called “life”, I,24,34
entrusted before Christ shed his blood, I,24,34
flesh for life of the world, I,20,27
kingdom of God, I,24,34
unless you eat my flesh . . ., I,20,26; 20,27; 24,34; III,4,8
Eye, See Adam and Eve
evil, See good and evil
exorcism, I,34,63
eye, II,5,5
Ezekiel, II,10,12; III,12,21
faith, II,16,24; III,2,2; 11,20; 13,23
baptism and, I,32,61
believe what you do not see, II,32,52
contest of, II,33,53
death and, II,31,50
fear of death, II,31,51
harsh combat for believers, II,33,53
miracles of Christ and, II,32,52
not remaining in darkness, I,24,35
Old Testament events, II,29,47
one who believes is not judged, I,33,62
promises, II,31,50
read; hear; embrace, II,36,58
righteous live from faith, II,32,52
righteousness, I,6,6; 7,7; 14; II,13,20
saved by grace through faith, I,27,46
stronger when not looking for miracles, II,32,52
visible rewards, II,31,50
weak and feeble, II,31,50
works through love, II,34,54
faithful; baptized infants, I,20,28

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

fasting: as punishment, III,6,12
father and son, I,35,66
fear, II,29,48
fear of God, I,1,1
first man, See Adam.
flesh, I,3,3; 5,5; 15,19; 16,21; 22,31; 23; 27,46; 28,55; II,8,10; 28,45; III,9,17; 10,18; 12,21
See also concupiscence
before/after the fall of man, II,22,36
children of the, I,27,54; III,2,2
eucharist, I,20,27
living according to the, I,7,7
original sin, II,23,37
original state, II,34,55
punishment: transmission of sin, III,3,5
sinful, II,36,58
those in, cannot please God, II,28,45
turning from God, II,5,5
food:
paradise, I,3,3
sanctification, II,26
foolishness, I,35,66
forgiveness of sin, I,27,52-53; II,28,46; 35,57
See also infant baptism
baptism: full and complete, II,7,9; 28,45; 28,46
baptism needed for, III,3,6
catechumens, II,26
Christ the source, I,13,16
Christ’s sacrifice, I,27,50
death and, II,33,53
forgive, as we want to be forgiven, II,16,23
grace abounding, I,15,20
grace; righteousness, I,13,17
infants forgiven for sins of others, III,5,10; 5,11
Lord’s Prayer, III,13,23
meriting not to suffer death, II,34,55
needed by infants, II,36,58
no other way to Christ, I,33,62
punishments and, II,34,54
reconciliation by mediator, Christ, I,28,56; II,29,47
redemption and, I,27,47
renewal, II,9,11
serious transgressors not held from baptism, III,5,10
soul’s need of, II,36,59
spiritual rebirth, III,8,15
winning God’s forgiveness, I,27,50
free choice:
God’s help needed, I,5,6
good or bad, II,18,30
insufficient against temptation, II,3,3
reliance on self, II,2,2
striving for sinlessness, II,6,7
turning from God, II,18,31
freedom, II,6,7
generation:
al share in Adam’s sin, I,9,9
transmission of sin by, III,2,2
God:
anger of, I,20,28; 21,29; II,10,12; III,2,3
authority of the words of, II,36,59
commandments held in contempt, II,16,23
foreknowledge, II,29,47; 36,59
injustice in, I,21,29; 30
judgment and mercy, II,7,8
light of the interior human being, II,5,5
mercy and truth, I,21,29; II,18,31
not affected by disobedience, II,22,36
power and mercy, II,6,7
reconciliation with, through Christ, I,28,56
riches of wisdom and knowledge, I,21,29
righteous judgments, I,21,29
righteousness, II,16,23
See also righteousness.
truth, II,10,14
turn toward me . . ., II,5,5
godlessness, I,26,39
good and evil:
evil remains in our flesh, II,4,4
I do not do the good . . ., II,12,17
law of God vs law of body members, I,27,43
providence and death of infants, I,21,30
tree of knowledge, II,21,35
use related to, I,29,57
good news, I,27,46; 54
good will:
God the author of, II,18,29
loving righteousness, II,18,30
good works:
asking God for help in doing right, II,19,33
certain knowledge of, sometimes not granted, I,19
delight related to love for God, II,17,27
knowledge for, II,17,27
use of corruptible flesh, II,28,45
goodness:
attractive, II,19,33
Job, II,12,17
righteousness of God, II,5,5
strength of will for good life, II,5,6; II,17,26
gospel(s), II,13,20; 35,57
grace, I,6,6; 9,10; 26,32; 39; 27,43; 27,49; 27,54; 39,70; II,9,11; 12,17; 19,33; III,5,10; 10,18; 13,22
abundance, I,11,14; 13,17; III,11,20
benefit from, I,7,7; 26,39
destruction of the second death, I,22,31

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

effect, I, 10, 11
freedom and, I, 21, 29
gratuitous, I, 21, 29
leads to justification, I, 12, 15; 13, 16
learning to ask for help, II, 19, 33
mercy, I, 18, 31
my grace is sufficient . . ., II, 16, 24
rebirth, I, 11, 13
leads to justification, I, 12, 15; 13, 16
why humans are not helped by, II, 17, 26
withheld at times, II, 19

forgiven in baptism, II, 28, 45
infant salvation, I, 24, 34

Hagar, II, 22, 36

happiness: afterlife, I, 31, 50

health, I, 23

heaven, I, 16, 21; 18, 23; 31, 60
children and, I, 19, 24
no one ascends into . . ., I, 31, 60
souls first sin in, I, 22, 31
Hebrews, Letter to the, I, 27, 50
hell: children of, I, 22, 32
Henoch, I, 3, 3
high priest, I, 27, 50; II, 13, 19
holiness, I, 27, 46
parents; newborn child, II, 25, 41
Holy of Holies, I, 14; III, 13, 23
holiness, See Bible.
Holy Spirit, I, 9, 10; 15, 19; 27, 46; 27, 49;
39, 70; II, 7, 9; 11, 11
See also rebirth
born in, I, 15, 19
first fruits, I, 8, 10; 27, 44
gift of rebirth, III, 2, 2
he cannot come unless . . ., II, 32, 52
indwelling, I, 7, 7; III, 11, 20
love poured into our hearts, II, 17, 27
hope, I, 24, 34; II, 6, 7; 7, 9; 8, 10; 9, 11; 10, 12;
13, 20; 16, 24; 31, 50
life of the body, I, 7, 7
living from faith, II, 32, 52
patience and, I, 18, 23
resurrection of the dead, I, 6, 6
salvation, I, 18, 23
what we are and what we shall be, II, 8, 10
human beings:
        bodies are members of Christ, III, 9, 17
        God, author of existence of, II, 18, 29
        possibility of sinlessness in this life, I, 39, 70
human body, See body.

human condition:
        See also original sin
        born flesh from flesh, III, 24, 38
        born in sinful flesh, I, 37, 68
        if first parents had not sinned, I, 37, 68
human nature, I, 36, 67
human race: beginning of, II, 20, 34
humiliation, II, 34, 56
humility, I, 19, 24; 27, 54; 29, 57; II, 19, 33;
III, 13, 23
husband:
        non-Christian, with Christian wife, II, 26
hypostatic union, I, 31, 60

ignorance, I, 10, 12; 35, 66; 36, 67; 39, 70;
II, 2, 2; 17, 26; 29, 48
illness, I, 5, 5
image of God, II, 7, 9
sinless infants, I, 30, 58
impossible:
        God does not command, II, 3, 3; 6, 7; 15, 22
incarnation, I, 11, 13
born from God's will, II, 24, 38
divine/human substance, I, 31, 60
humility; mercy, II, 17, 27
likeness of sinful substance, I, 27, 43; 38, 69;
II, 24, 38; 29, 48
purpose: that the world might be saved,
I, 33, 62
sin and death, I, 32, 61
testimonies, I, 26, 39
that we might become children of God,
II, 24, 38
incorruption, I, 2, 2; 5, 5; II, 7, 9; 27, 44;
III, 11, 20
independence: desire for, II, 19, 33

infant(-s):
        all sinned in Adam, III, 7, 14
        baptized; included in “the faithful,”
I, 20, 28
belief in the Son of God, I, 20, 28
believers, I, 19, 25; 25, 38; III, 23
benefit from Christ's righteousness,
III, 2, 3
born as non-believers, III, 9, 17
born with mind close to animal, I, 22, 32
Christ as physician, savior, redeemer, I, 23
concupiscence, II, 4, 4
crying; reasoning, I, 35, 66
defense, I, 17, 22
diverse merits, I, 22, 31
dying without baptism; salvation, I, 28, 55
enlightenment at birth, I, 25, 36

Volume I/23
forgiveness of sins, I,33,62
harm from sin of Adam, III,2,2
helplessness of the newborn, I,38,69
ignorance and sin, I,36,67; 37,68
See also infant baptism
innocence; sin, I,17,22; 35,66
innocents, I,35,65
life; kingdom of heaven, I,27,42
merit, II,36,59
minds enlightened, I,25,38
no sin in newborns, I,9,9
nursing at the breast, I,38,69
one taken; another lives on to be evil, I,21,30
original sin, I,23; III,1,1
See also infant baptism; original sin
Cyprian on, III,5,10
baptism and, I,9,9
personal sin, I,20,28; 23; 26,39; III,4,7
rational soul, I,25,38
reason, I,35,65
sinless in personal lives, I,35,65; II,20,34
weakness of mind and body, I,35,65
infant baptism, I,27,50
before eighth day, III,5,11
believing means to be baptized, I,27,40
belonging to Christ’s sheep, I,27,40
brought into Christ’s body, I,9,10
children dying without baptism, I,16,21
children of baptized parents, II,25,39;
II,27,43; 28,45; III,9,17
Church as loving mother, I,25,38; III,1,1
conformed to death of Christ, I,32,61;
II,27,43
controversy re personal sin, I,34,64
entering number of believers, I,25
false form of, I,34,63
forgiveness of personal sins, I,17,22;
34,63; II,27,43
incorporation into the Church, III,4,7
located among the believers, I,33,62
necessity, I,26,39; 33,62; 35,66; III,13,22
newborn suited for (Cyprian), III,5,10
original sin and, I,34,64; III,4,7; 12,21
See also original sin
purpose of, I,18,23; II,1,1
rebirth necessary, II,27,43
reborn for immortality, II,28,45
reconciliation and salvation, I,27,44
redemption needed, II,36,58
responses, I,34,63
sanctification in Christ, III,6,12
sin in infants, I,20,34
sinful flesh loses its power, I,39,70
infant salvation:
Biblical promise, I,23
sacraments, I,24,34
tradition of the Church, III,4,9
the unbaptized, I,20,26; 21,30; 30,58;
33,62; III,4,8
innocence, I,17,22; 20,26; II,35,57
instinct, I,36,69
intercession, II,4,4
Israel: redeemed, II,35,57
Israelites, See Jews.

Jeremiah, I,21,30
Jerome, Saint:
Jovinian’s writings, III,7,13
on original sin, III,6,12
Jesus Christ, I,10,11; 11,14; II,17,27
See also incarnation; Son of God; Word
of God
ascension, I,31,60; II,32,52
baptism; sinless flesh, II,24,38
believe in me . . ., I,14
call on his name, III,4,8
See church.
dead chosen/accepted by, II,29,48; 31,51
divinity, I,31,60
faced death, although sinless, II,24,38
forgiveness of sins, I,13,16
forming in himself a new human being,
II,27,46
frees us from death, II,23,37
God and man, I,31,60
See grace.
growth; changes, II,29,48
high priest, II,13,19
I am the living bread . . ., I,24,34
imitation of, I,9,10
infancy:
ignorance, II,29,48
weakness, I,37,68
judge of the living and the dead, II,29,47
light, I,24,35; 30,59; 33,62
likeness of sinful flesh, I,28,55; 32,61
mediator between God and humans,
I,26,39; 27,48; 28,56
miracles, II,32,52
name: he will save . . ., II,29,48
obeident in suffering (Job), II,11
one savior for infants and adults, II,29,48
only way to come to God, I,33,62
passion:
bringing us to God, I,27,41
Christ died for sinners, I,27,43
figure: Moses raising the bronze
snake, I,32,61
mystical body, I,26,39
obedient unto death, II,29,48
scourged, II,16,25
this is my blood . . ., II,30,49
physician, savior, redeemer (for infants),
I,23

Answer To The Pelagians I

Volume I/23
post-resurrection appearances, and faith, II,32,52
present in humans, I,7,7
priesthood unsurpassable, I,27,50
prophecies about him, to be fulfilled, I,27,53
rebuke, II,11
See redemption, resurrection, I,32,61
righteous; justifies others, I,14
righteousness of, II,11; III,2,2; 2,3
sinless, I,27,54; II,1,1; 20,34; 35,57;
III,7,13
soul handed over to death, I,27,54
sufferings, I,27,54
way, truth, life, I,27,40
Jews: clothes wearing out, I,3,3
Job:
did not sin with his lips, II,10,16
praised by God, II,12,17
sinlessness, II,10,12; 10,14
suffering with equanimity, II,11
trials and afflictions, II,12,17
true worshipper, II,12,17
John: 1st Letter of, I,27,42
John the Baptist, I,27,40
Jovinian, III,7,13
Judas, I,15,19
judgment, II,14,21; 17,26; 10,16
condemnation, II,10,14
leads to condemnation, I,12,15; 16,21
life however brief, not clean, II,10,15
mercy and, II,3,3; 7,8
judgment day, II,29,47
justice:
sufferings of innocent souls, III,10,18
justification, I,14; 27,43; 28,55; II,20,34
birth in the Spirit, II,27,43
conquering sin, III,11,20
grace leads to, I,12,15; 13,16
leads to righteousness, I,15,19
many through one (Christ), III,4,9
merits and, I,33,62
set free from sin by, I,32,61
kingdom of God, I,12,15
attaining, I,30,58; II,1,1
come, blessed ones, III,3,6
eternal life, I,20,26
rebirth, III,4,8
salvation apart from, I,28,55
sinless image of God, III,3,6
kingdom of heaven, See heaven.
knowledge:
certainty in good deeds sometimes
withheld, II,19
perfect in teaching of, II,15,22
sin; degree, I,36,67
tree of, III,11,20
last judgment, See judgment day.
lack of, I,35,66
law (of Moses), I,27,50; 27,52; II,13,20
entered so sin might abound, III,11,20
observing the whole law, II,3,3
pleasure in, II,12,17
power of sin, III,11,20
righteousness and, I,27,45
sin existed before, I,10,12
Levites: tithes, II,25,39; 25,40
liberation, I,26,39
life:
burden; sinlessness, II,16,24
merit in a previous life, I,22,32
temporal; ends in death, II,30,49
life of the Spirit, II,28,45
light, II,5,5
truth and, I,25,37
literature, I,28,55
long life, I,27,54
Lord’s Prayer:
bring us not into temptation, II,2,2; 4,4
forgive us our debts, II,4,4; 10,13;
III,13,23
forgiveness of sin, II,13,18
human life free from sin, II,2,2
necessary, II,14,21
one body; some still have sins, II,10,13
love:
Carnal, for children, I,35,66
poured out in our hearts, II,17,27
union with God, I,1,1
love for God: relative delight in good works, II,17,27
lust, I,29,57; II,28,45
lying, II,16,25
Maccabees, I,1,1; II,1,1; III,1
marriage:
concupiscence and, I,29,57
goodness of, I,29,57
Job as symbol, II,10,12
martyrs: glory; fear of death, II,34,54
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
child born without sin, I,29,57
faith, II,24,38
Son conceived in obedience, I,29,57
virgin mother, II,24,38
mediator:
See also under Jesus Christ
law vs God’s promise, I,27,45
Mediator, II,25,39
mercy, II,18,31; 30,32; 30,33; III,5,10; 13,23
bath of rebirth, I,18,23
children of, I,22,32; II,17,26; III,2,2
forgiveness of sin, II,16,23
grace, II,18,31
judgment and, II,3,3; 7,8
merit, I,21,29; II,18,31
diverse; infants, I,22,31

Volume I/23
justification and, I, 33,62
previous life, I, 22,32
midwife, I, 28,55
mind:
arousal of the flesh and, II, 22,36
baptism and, II, 7,9
darkness (infants), I, 36,67
ignorant and weak, at birth, I, 37,68
resisting the law of, II, 29,48
modesty, II, 22,36
morons (term), I, 22,32; 35,66
mortality, I, 5,5
Moises, II, 13,20; 16,25; 27,43
serpent raised up by, I, 30,59; 32,61
written law, I, 10,12
mystical body, I, 27,54
life from the cross, I, 26,39
nakedness, II, 22,36
A dam, I, 16,21
natural law, I, 10,12
new covenant:
new creation, in Christ, I, 27,44
New Testament, I, 11,13
things hidden in O.T. revealed, I, 27,53
newborns, See infants.
N i c o d e m u s , I, 30,59;
night, I, 24,35
N o a h , I, 10,12
N o a h ' s ark, I, 27,41
non-believers:
See also unbelief
non-baptized ranked among, I, 33,62
one spouse righteous, III, 12,21
non-Christians:
born of Christians, III, 9,17
nuns: persuaded to marry, III, 7,13
obedience, I, 5,5; II, 10,14
benefit to one who serves, II, 21,35
death and, II, 31,51
great good, II, 21,35
piety of, II, 21,35
sinful flesh, II, 34,55
obviously (in discussions), I, 35,65
old age, I, 3,3; 16,21
Old Testament, I, 11,13
hidden things revealed in N.T., I, 27,53
salvation; faith, II, 29,47
original justice, II, 22,36
if first parents had not sinned, I, 37,68
mortality: righteousness, I, 5,5
original sin, I, 10,18
See also A dam; baptism; infant baptism
baptism and, II, 9,11; III, 10,18
born for condemnation, I, 28,55
child born of two baptized parents, III, 3,5; 8,16
children, II, 10,15; III, 2,2
contraction from A dam, I, 11,13; 13,16;
III, 5,10
death's origin, II, 30,49; 31,51
disobedience of the flesh, I, 16,21
entered world through one man, II, 29,47
equal guilt, I, 21,30
forgiven in baptism, I, 9,9; 17,22; II, 26
harm from sin of A dam, III, 2,2; 3,5
infants subject to, I, 20,28; III, 1,1; 5,11
J er o m e on, III, 6,12; 7,13
justice, III, 10,18
likeness of A dam's transgression, I, 11,13
many have died, for sin of one man, I, 12,15
passed on to all human beings, I, 22,33
Pelagius on, III, 2,4; 10,18
personl sins added to, I, 10,11; 10,12;
12,15; 15,20
punishments for, II, 23,37
results, II, 21,35
sinful flesh, II, 34,55
snake and, I, 32,61
sold to power of sin, I, 23
stability of life lost, I, 16,21
subject to sin and death, I, 16,21
tradition, III, 7,14
transmission: imitation, I, 9,9
violation of obedience, II, 21,35
woman: beginning of sin, I, 16,21
orphans, III, 13,22
pain, I, 10,15; 29,48
paradise, I, 3,3; II, 34,55
bodily; spiritual, II, 21,35
parents, III, 9,17
passing on holiness to children, II, 25,41
personal sins; harm to the child, II, 27,44
reborn; beget children in the flesh, II, 28,45
righteous, II, 9,11
past: forgetting, II, 13,20
patience, II, 7,9; 28,45; 32,52
hope and, I, 18,23
P a u l , S a i n t , I, 10,11
angel of Satan, II, 16,24
be imitators of me . . ., I, 14
righteousness, II, 16,24
crown of righteousness, II, 16,24
giving his debtors, II, 16,24
greatness, II, 13,20
I have fought the good fight, II, 16,24
Pelagius' writings on, III, 1,1
perfection, II, 15,22
righteousness, II, 11
testimonies, I, 27,43
peace, I, 27,46; II, 19,33
Pelagians:
refutation of individual arguments,
III, 8,15

Answer To The Pelagians I
The Punishment & Forgiveness of Sins & the Baptism of Little Ones

Pelagius, III,1,1; 2,4; 3,5; 3,6
question of the soul, III,10,18
Pentateuch, II,35,57
perfection, II,8,10; 13,20; 16,24,25; 31,50; III,13,23
biblical usage, II,15,22
commanded to be, II,15,22
will and God's grace, II,20,34
worthy of being called perfect, II,15,22
persuasion: sin and the devil, I,13,17
Peter, Saint, I,10,11
Pharisaees:
  thankful for not being like other men, II,5,6
Philip (apostle), I,27,54
Phinehas, II,13,19
pity, II,2,2; 19,33; 21,35
tried and tested, II,34,56
pillar of cloud, II,16,25
pleasure, I,35,66; II,10,15
praise: offered to Christ (Rv 5:9), I,27,51
prayer, II,26; 5,6; 7,8
gift, II,19,33
predestination, I,17,26; 29,47
predestination, II,10,13
pride, I,27,53; II,17,26; 17,27; 19,33; III,13,23
priesthood, II,13,19
promised land, II,35,57
propagation:
  transmission of sin and death, I,9,9; 9,10
prophets: witness; forgiveness of sin, I,27,52-53
providence, I,22,31
  baptism offered to one, not to another, I,21,30
  God's help varies, II,5,6
Punic Christians, I,24,34
punishment, I,18,32; 35,57; III,3,5; 10,18
challenges for the righteous, II,34,54
purification:
  those making progress re commandments, II,16,23
race (Paul), II,16,24
reason, I,25,38; 37,68; II,5,6
infants, I,35,65
rebirth (by the Spirit), I,28,55; 29,57; 30,59; II,2,2; 9,11; 23,37; 27,43; 28,45; III,4,8; 9,17
See also baptism
  carnal; spiritual, I,31,60
  eternal salvation and, I,18,23
  grace of God, II,28,45
  kingdom of God, I,20,26
  produces Christians, III,9,17
  spiritual, I,16,21; 33,62; II,10,12
  unless you eat my flesh . . . , I,20,27
rebuke, II,10,16; 11,17,26
reconciliation: message; ministry, I,27,44
redemption, I,26,39; 27,48; 34,63; II,1,1; 30,49; 35,57
See also forgiveness of sin
  blood shed also for infants, I,24,34
  body awaiting, II,7,9
  Christ died for sinners, I,18,23; 27,44; 27,50
effects on sin, I,23
Jesus came to save sinners, I,27,48
renewal, II,13,20; 27,44
baptism: effect, II,7,9; 27,44
children of God, II,8,10
put off the old . . . , II,7,9
repentance, I,19,24; 19,25
reproach: Job, II,12,17
resurrection (of Christ):
  spiritually circumcised in, III,5,11
resurrection of the body, I,3,3; 4,4; 8,8; 18,23; 28,55; II,13,20; III,2,2; 11,20
came through a man, III,11,19
Christ's post-resurrection time; faith, faith, II,32,52
every one's body, through Christ, II,30,49
hope, I,6,6
rebirth: body and spirit, II,7,9
righteousness, I,7,7
transformation: mortality, I,5,5
Revelation, Book of, II,7,8
rich young man:
  Jesus' advice re. attaining eternal life, II,16,25
righteousness (including: of God), I,4,4; 10,12; 13,17,18; 16,21; 22,31; 25,38; 27,43,44,46; 27,49; 39,70; II,5,6; 9,11; 11,10,14; 14,21; 16,25; 20,34; 35,57; III,2,2; 11,19
bodily death, I,6,6
brought to all by Christ, II,25,42
Christ as example of, I,9,10
Christ suffered for the unrighteous, II,27,41
death; obedience, II,31,51
faith and, I,6,6; 7,7; 14; II,13,20
forgiveness, I,13,17
giving birth to righteous children, II,9,11
God's knowledge of each human being, II,16,23
good will; love, II,18,30
grace and, I,15,20
hunger and thirst for, II,5,5
justification leads to, I,15,19
kingdom of God, III,3,6
law and, I,27,45
love and delight in, II,10,15
need for God's help, II,5,5
no living person . . . , II,7,8; 12,17; 13,18; 14,21
obedience to, II,19,33
original justice, II,22,36

Volume I/23
Paul's testimonies, I,27,43
perfect knowledge of, II,15,22
perfect possessors of, II,13,20
plan of, II,18,32
presence of the Creator, I,19,25
reward, II,32,52
spiritual birth, I,15,19
test of, II,34,56
testimony in scripture, II,10,12
Zechariah, II,13,19
Rome, III,7,13
rule of Christian faith, II,27,43; 35,57

sacrments, I,24,34; 36,67; II,26; III,4,8; 12,21
one faith, II,29,47
sacrifice:
  bloody, I,27,54
  high priests (O.T.), II,13,19
saints, I,27,47; 27,54
  imitation of Christ, I,9,10; 10,11
  resurrection, I,5,5
salvation, I,12,15; 26,39; 27,50; II,1,1; 36,59; III,4,7
  apart from community with Christ, III,11,19
  hope for, I,24,34
  one faith that saves (O.T. and N.T.), II,29,47
  our effort is needed, I,5,6
sacraments, I,24,34
saved by grace through faith, I,27,46
  today you will be with me . . ., I,22,31
unbaptized infants, I,18,23; 20,26; III,4,8
unbaptized souls, III,5,11
  unless one has been reborn . . ., I,30,58
Samuel, II,16,25
sanctification, II,26; III,12,21
non-believing spouses, II,26
scripture, See Bible.
second coming, I,27,50
self-image, II,11
senses, I,21,35
sex:
  refraining from intercourse, III,12,21
  sex organs: before/after the fall of man, II,22,36
shame, II,22,36
sheep: lost, sought, found, I,27,40
sick, I,23; III,4,8; 12,21; 13,23
silence, I,35,65
silliness, I,35,66
simplemindedness, I,22,32
simplicity, I,22,32
sin, II,10,13; 29,48
  See also concupiscence; justification; original sin
abounding, I,15,20
accountability, II,10,15
against Christ, I,28,55
before the law . . ., I,10,12
born in body of death, I,29,57; II,23,37
committed out of some necessity, II,10,15
collection, II,10,14
correct, I,13,17
death by sins, I,27,46
dead of the soul, I,2,2; 9,9
dead; righteousness, I,6,6; 7,7
turned the world through one man,
  I,9,9; 10,11; 13,17,18; 22,33;
  III,1,1; 4,8; 7,14; 11,19
eternal life and, I,24,34
giving in; relativity, I,39,70
God as cause, II,17,27
God forbids, while knowing people will sin, II,16,23
God's anger, III,2,3
guilty lords it over humans, I,11,13
healed from plague of, III,4,8
if we say we have no sin . . ., II,7,8; 8,10;
  10,12; 13,18
illicit desires, I,19,25
imitation of the one sin, I,12,15
imputed; law, I,10,12
knowledge related to seriousness, I,36,67
law of, I,16,21
love of, II,35,57
newborn infants, I,35,66
  no one is free of (J. ames), III,7,13
origin, II,25,41; III,11,20; 12,21
originator, the devil, I,9,9; 13,17
Pelagius on transmission of, III,3,5; 3,6
  personal sins, I,10,11,12; 12,15
personal will, I,11,13
perversity, III,35,57
prevents attaining grace, III,5,10
punishment of God, II,16,25
purification, I,27,50
remaining in darkness, I,24,35
remedies: works of mercy, II,3,3
responsible for sins of others, III,3,5; 8,15
separation from God, I,19,25; 28,56
slave; set free, I,24,34; 26,39
sting of death, III,11,20
those born of God . . ., II,8,10; 10,12
transmission of, III,7,14
will and, I,35,65; II,3,3
will power not fully exerted, I,39,70
sinfulness, I,4,4
sinlessness, II,16,24
absolute, II,16,23
actual existence of such a one, II,7,8
  can a human ever be completely sinless,
  II,20,34
command to be perfect, II,15,22
Jerome on, III,6,12

Answer To The Pelagians I

The Punishment & Forgiveness of Sins & the Baptism of Little Ones

The Plan of Salvation

The Jewish Preach

The Sins Of The Fathers and Their Sons

The Plan of Salvation

Accountability

The Testimony In Scripture

The Testimony Of Jesus Christ

The Testimony Of The Holy Ghost

The Testimony Of All The APOSTLES

The Testimony Of The Prophets

The Testimony Of The New Testament

The Testimony Of The Old Testament

The Testimony Of The Apocalypse

The Testimony Of The Epistles

The Testimony Of The Gospels

The Testimony Of The Psalms

The Testimony Of The Proverbs

The Testimony Of The Song Of Solomon

The Testimony Of The Isaiah

The Testimony Of The Daniel

The Testimony Of The Ezekiel

The Testimony Of The Hosea

The Testimony Of The Joel

The Testimony Of The Amos

The Testimony Of The Obadiah

The Testimony Of The Jonah

The Testimony Of The Micah

The Testimony Of The Nahum

The Testimony Of The Habakkuk

The Testimony Of The Zephaniah

The Testimony Of The Haggai

The Testimony Of The Zechariah

The Testimony Of The Malachi

The Testimony Of The Matthew

The Testimony Of The Mark

The Testimony Of The Luke

The Testimony Of The John

The Testimony Of The Acts

The Testimony Of The Romans

The Testimony Of The Corinthians

The Testimony Of The Galatians

The Testimony Of The Ephesians

The Testimony Of The Philippians

The Testimony Of The Colossians

The Testimony Of The Thessalonians

The Testimony Of The Timothy

The Testimony Of The Titus

The Testimony Of The Philemon

The Testimony Of The Hebrews

The Testimony Of The James

The Testimony Of The Jude

The Testimony Of The Revelation

The Testimony Of All The Teachers

The Testimony Of All The Elders

The Testimony Of All The Bishop

The Testimony Of All The Deacons

The Testimony Of All The Ministers

The Testimony Of All The Servants

The Testimony Of All The People
kingdom of God, III,3,6
lack of will, II,17,26
Lord’s Prayer, II,10,13
mediator (Christ) alone is sinless, II,29,47
no human lives a sinless life, II,17,26
possibility of, II,1,1; 6,7
sinner(s), I,1,1
Christ came to call sinners, I,18,23; 19,24; 27,40
imitation of, I,15,19
justification, I,14
need for Christ’s healing, III,4,8
snake:
raising (by Moses), I,32,61
snake bite, I,32,61
Son of God:
belief in; eternal life, I,20,28
death overcome by, III,11,20
God speaks through, I,27,50
mission: to save the world, I,27,42; 30,59
unbaptized persons; non-believers, I,20,28
Son of Man, I,17,27
came to save souls, III,5,10
on earth; in heaven, I,31,60
must be raised up (cross), I,30,59
seeking lost sheep, I,27,40
title, I,31,60
soul(-s):
See also body; body and soul
body as servant to, II,22,36
cannot be lost without sin, III,5,10
child born of Christian parents, III,9,17
created as Christian, III,9,17
creation, I,25,38
death of, I,2,2; 8,8; 9,9
goodness of sin, II,36,59
generation, III,3,5; 10,18
newly born infants, I,36,67; 37,68
Pelagius on, III,10,18
preexistence, I,22,31; 23,32
propagation, II,36,59
rational, I,25,38
state before birth of child, III,9,17
unborn infants, III,10,18
Job; Jesus, II,11
sun, I,25,37
talent: children of mercy, I,22,32
tax collector, II,5,6
temptation:
free choice alone, II,3,3
pray not to enter, II,2,2; 4,4
time I,16,21
tithes, II,25,40
tradition, III,6,12
unbelief / unbelievers:
condemnation, III,3,6
death stemming from, I,7,7
husband and wife, III,12,21
mercy of God, I,21,29
passing on, to offspring, III,9,17
understanding: commands of God, II,5,5
union; together in Christ, I,31,60
vigilance, I,19,33
virtue:
faith working through love, II,34,54
perfection in, I,16,24; 20,34
vocation(s), I,22,32
wages: workers in gospel parable, II,18,32
weakness, I,27,54; I,31,60; II,2,2; 16,24;
17,26; 27,44; 29,48
wickedness, II,21,35
will, II,29,48; III,2,2; 12,21
See also free choice.
believing, I,22,31
choice; misuse, II,18,30
full strength of, II,3,3
goodness related to strength of, II,17,26
I do not what I want; rather . . ., II,10,15
level of exertion, II,15,22
power of, not fully exerted (re. sin), I,39,70
pride, II,19,33
search for good had apart from God,
II,18,28
sin and, I,35,65; II,3,3; 17,26
striving for sinlessness, II,6,7
wisdom, I,21,29; II,7,9; 21,35

Volume I/23
interior human being, I,25,38
perfect student of, II,15,22
wit, I,35,66
woman:
Adam naming Eve, I,36,67
marriage, III,7,13
Word of God, II,17,27
in the beginning . . , I,31,60; II,24,38
made flesh, II,29,48 ]3
Son remained in heaven; lived on earth, I,31,60
true light, I,25,36; 25,37
works of mercy:

remedies against sin, II,3,3; 4,4
world:
children of the, I,27,54; II,8,10
devil as prince of, II,31,51
flesh given for life of, I,20,27
salvation, I,30,59
world (the word), I,20,27
worship: piety of obedience, II,21,35
Zacchaeus, I,27,40
zeal, I,1,1; 27,49
Zechariah, II,13,19; 13,20
Index from
On the Soul and Its Origin
(De anima et eius origine)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Volume I/23

**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

### The Nature and Origin of the Soul

#### Old Testament

**Genesis**

1:20  IV,23,37  
1:24  IV,23,37  
2:7   I,14,19; I,17,28; II,2,2  
2:23  I,18,29; I,18,30; I,18,31; II,14,20  
2:24  II,14,20  
7:21-22 IV,23,37

**Job**

7:15 LXX  IV,22,36  
32:7-8 LXX  I,14,19  
32:8 LXX  I,14,19  
33:2-3 LXX  I,14,19

**Psalms**

2:4    I,14,18  
2:8    I,14,18  
13:4   II,2,3  
32:9   IV,23,37  
38:4   IV,16,23  
49:13  I,15,25; IV,2,2; IV,2,3  
49:15  IV,11,15  
65:3   I,17,28  
104:29 IV,23,37  
107:25 IV,23,37  
139:6 LXX IV,8,12  
146:4  IV,23,37  
149:8  IV,23,37  
151:6  I,14,19

**Proverbs**

18:21  IV,16,23

**Ecclesiastes**

3:21  IV,23,37

**Wisdom**

1:5    III,2,2  
4:11   I,12,15; III,15,22; IV,24,38  
4:11.14 II,9,13; III,10,14  
4:13   II,9,13; III,10,14  
13:9   IV,5,6

#### Sirach

3:22  IV,4,5; IV,5,6; IV,6,8

#### Isaiah

40:5  LXXI,18,31  
42:5   I,14,17; I,14,18; I,14,19; I,14,20  
57:16  I,14,21

#### Zechariah

12:1   I,14,22

2 Maccabees

7:22   I,15,25  
7:22-23 I,14,23

#### New Testament

**Matthew**

6:10   III,11,17  
6:30   I,16,26  
10:39  I,9,10; II,12,17

**Mark**

16:16  II,12,17  
16:18  II,17,23

**Luke**

3:6    I,18,31  
16:24  IV,15,22; IV,16,23

**John**

1:14   I,18,31; II,14,20  
3:3    III,11,17  
3:4    III,11,17  
3:5    I,9,10; II,10,14; II,12,16; II,12,17; III,11,17; III,13,19  
7:15 LXX  II,2,2  
13:10  III,9,12  
14:2   II,10,14; III,11,15  
15:26  I,14,21  
19:30  II,2,2; IV,23,37  
20:22  I,14,18

---

**Answer To The Pelagians I**
# Volume I/23

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acts of the Apostles</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:2-4</td>
<td>I,14,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:25</td>
<td>I,16,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:25-26</td>
<td>I,17,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26</td>
<td>I,17,28; II,14,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>I,17,27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Romans</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I,17,28; II,14,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>II,12,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>IV,22,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>IV,9,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>IV,9,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26-27</td>
<td>IV,9,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>I,8,9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Romans</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>IV,9,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>IV,22,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22-23</td>
<td>IV,15,22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ephesians</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>IV,22,36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Philippians</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>IV,8,12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colossians</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>IV,22,36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Thessalonians</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>IV,13,19; IV,22,36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Timothy</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>I,16,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>I,18,29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Timothy</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:20-21</td>
<td>I,20,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>III,6,8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

## Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

The Nature and Origin of the Soul

Abraham:
  bodily soul of, IV, 15, 22
  faith of, IV, 16, 24
  incorporeal likeness of his body, IV, 19, 30
  Lazarus and the bosom of, IV, 15, 21;
   16, 24
Adam and Eve, II, 13, 18; IV, 11, 16
  See also original sin
  cast out of paradise, I, 12, 15
  in whom all have sinned, I, 17, 28
  parts taken were ensoled, not dead,
   I, 18, 29
  whole woman, with soul and spirit,
   I, 18, 29-30
  woman, bone of my bone . . ., I, 18, 29;
   II, 14, 20
air, IV ,3, 4; 12, 18; 23, 37

nourishment, III, 4, 4-4, 6
  always (the word), III, 6, 8
amputation: dreams, IV, 18, 27; 18, 28
anatomists, IV, 2, 3
anatomy, IV, 6, 7
angels, IV, 16, 24
  appearing in bodily form, IV, 21, 35
animals, IV, 8, 12; 9, 13; 10, 14; 11, 15
  humans become like, IV
  humans compared to, IV, 2, 2-2, 3; 6, 8;
   7, 11
soul; no spirit, IV, 23, 37
Apollinarists, I, 18, 31
apostacy: God’s foreknowledge, I, 12, 15
apostles: baptisms not recorded, III, 9, 12
Augustine, Saint:
Volume I/23

bible:
language usage, IV, 22, 36
usage re. "whole" and "part", II, 14, 20
blasphemy, II, 3, 6
blood: term for the whole human being, I, 17, 28
body (-ies):
definition, IV, 12, 17
form and, IV, 15, 22
likeness of (dreams; visions), IV, 17, 25; 18, 28; 21, 34
likeness: perception of real bodies, IV, 20, 31
St Perpetua wrestling in man's body, I, 18, 26
body and soul:
bodily nourishment, II, 4, 8
bone from my bones . . . . , I, 18, 31
breathing air, IV, 3, 4
male and female members, IV, 20, 32-33
merit and, II, 8, 12
movement of members, III, 4, 4
brain: ruling the body, IV, 5, 6
breath (breathing), IV, 12, 18
belongs to nature of soul, or body, or air, IV, 3, 4
Elisha raising the dead boy, III, 5, 7
experiment, III, 4, 4
God creates (not from nothing), II, 5, 9
God; breath of life, I, 4, 4
interpreted as soul (Is 42:5), I, 14, 20
made from surrounding air, III, 4, 6
spirit and breath (same idea), I, 14, 18;
brotherly love, I, 20, 35
castration, IV, 20, 33
Catholic Church, I, 20, 35; II, 3, 5; 3, 6; III, 2, 2;
7, 9; 14, 20; 15, 23
children and parents, II, 6, 10
Cicero, IV, 7, 9
circumcision, I, 11, 13; III, 12, 18
baptism prefigured by, II, 11, 15
baptism: 
See also original sin; Pelagians;
unbaptized infants
anyone who has not been reborn . . . . ,
III, 13, 19
bathe of rebirth, II, 7, 11
becoming a member of Christ, I, 9, 10
boy (Dinocrates) dies at age seven, I, 10, 12
evil and falsehood in, III, 10, 14
good merit recovered through, III, 7, 10
necessity of, I, 9, 11
original sin, II, 12, 17
prefigured by circumcision, II, 11, 15
pristine state recovered; body washed,
II, 7, 11
required for entry into heaven, III, 11, 16
unbaptized infants promised heaven
(Victor), I, 9, 10
dead:
interior senses, IV, 19, 30
power of thought after death, IV, 19, 30
recognize in likenesses of their bodies, IV, 19, 30
sleep and, IV, 18, 28
death:
effect of original sin, II, 14, 20
Dinocrates (brother of St Perpetua), I, 10, 12;
II, 10, 14; 12, 16; III, 9, 12; 13, 19
dream: amputation of body members, IV, 18, 27
damnation, I, 9, 11; 11, 14; IV, 11, 16
See also eternal punishment; hell
Dinocrates, I, 10, 12
unbaptized infants, I, 9, 10; II, 13, 18
dreams, IV, 20, 32
being with bodily member lacking,
IV, 19, 29
feeling in experiences, IV, 18, 27
Answer To The Pelagians I

images as real bodies, IV, 17, 25
likenesses of bodies in, IV, 18, 27; 18, 28; 19, 20; 21, 34-34
visions of dreamers, IV, 18, 28
dwellings, II, 4, 8
many, in my Father's house . . ., III, 11, 15

ecstasy, IV, 17, 25; 21, 35
Elisha: raising the dead boy; analogy, III, 5, 7
danger in, I, 3, 3; II, 1, 1
eternal damnation, See damnation.
eternal life:
learning about the soul, IV, 10, 14
eternal punishment, II, 15, 21; III, 11, 17
eucharist: offered for unbaptized persons, I, 11, 13; II, 11, 15; 15, 21; IV, 24, 38
eunuchs, IV, 20, 33
Eve, See Adam and Eve
eyes, I, 14, 22; II, 2, 3; IV, 5, 6
whole head understood by, IV, 16, 23
face:
know, recall, think about, IV, 19, 30
self-knowledge, IV, 15, 21
faith, I, 3, 3
good thief, I, 9, 11
learning what mind cannot reach, IV, 10, 14
fate, I, 9, 13
figure of speech, IV, 16, 23
flattery, II, 17, 23
flesh:
See also human body
body of the flesh, IV, 22, 36
living like animals, IV, 11, 15
propagation, I, 17, 28
signifies whole human being, I, 17, 28; 18, 31
soul associated with, II, 13, 18
defiled through, I, 6, 6; 7, 7; 19, 33; II, 7, 11
desires food for, II, 4, 8
lost merit through, III, 7, 9
wise in terms of, IV, 14, 20
flood (Genesis), IV, 23, 37
foreknowledge, See under God
forgiveness of sin:
See also baptism; infants; original sin.
good thief, III, 9, 12
original and personal sins; baptism, I, 13, 16
form:
body and soul, IV, 18, 28
found only in bodily things, IV, 15, 21-22
free choice, I, 12, 15; IV, 7, 11
infants not capable of, I, 13, 16
friend, I, 20, 35
love for, I, 20, 35

Genesis, Book of, I, 18, 29
God:
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity
bodily members, IV, 16, 23
breath, I, 4, 4
breath of life; Elisha and, III, 5, 7
See also soul (origin of)
called “God of A braham,” etc., IV, 16, 24
corporeal (Tertullian), II, 5, 9
fallibility, III, 10, 13
foreknowledge of, I, 7, 7; 8, 9; 11, 13; II, 12, 16; 13, 18
destroyed if foreknown doesn’t happen, I, 12, 15
of infants’ future sins, I, 12, 15
redemption of unbaptized infants, II, 9, 13
incomprehensible knowledge of; IV, 8, 12
justification questioned, II, 13, 18
knowledge of his works; of himself, IV, 5, 6
nature, III, 3, 3
not a body, IV, 12, 18; 14, 20; 16, 23
omnipotent and immutable, IV, 12, 18
See predestination
soul made from nature of (error), I, 4, 4
spirt: I, 23, 37
unchangeable nature of, I, 4, 4
good thief:
baptism of blood, I, 9, 11
baptism: water from Christ’s side, III, 9, 12
paradise, III, 13, 19
sought life in the dying Christ, I, 9, 11
unbaptized, in paradise, II, 10, 14; 12, 16
grace, IV, 11, 16
set free from sin by, I, 8, 8
unbaptized infants, I, 11, 14
grain, I, 14, 17
happiness, II, 10, 14; 12, 17; III, 11, 16
heart:
loving God with whole heart, IV, 6, 7
pulse never stops, IV, 6, 7
ruling the body, IV, 5, 6
thinking with, IV, 6, 7
heaven:
See also eternal life; paradise; salvation
bath of rebirth required, III, 11, 16
conditions for entering, II, 10, 14; 12, 16
kingdom of God and, III, 11, 16
many dwellings in Father’s house, III, 11, 15-11, 17
paradise distinct from, II, 10, 14
unbaptized infants, I, 9, 10; II, 12, 16; 17; III, 13, 19; IV, 11, 16
unless one has been reborn . . ., II, 12, 17
hell, IV, 20, 33
poor man carried to bosom of A braham, II, 4, 8

Volume I/23
recognition of one another, IV, 18, 27
rich man’s desire for drop of water, IV, 19, 29
heresy, I, 19, 34; III, 14, 20
Holy Spirit, III, 2, 2
baptism of four / five thousand, I, 14, 18
breath and spirit given to people, I, 14, 18;
14, 20
fruits (realities) of, IV, 15, 22
human nature and, I, 14, 20
makes intercession with groans, IV, 9, 13
Pentecost, I, 14, 18
rebirth through, II, 10, 14
for the spirit will go forth . . ., I, 14, 21
hope:
good thief, I, 9, 11; II, 10, 14
we cry out, Abba, Father, IV, 9, 13
honor, III, 1, 1; IV, 2, 3
human beings:
animals and, IV, 2, 2; 2, 3
body and soul, III, 14, 20
breath and spirit given by God, I, 14, 17;
14, 18; 14, 23
created to be unlike animals, IV, 10, 14
designated by term, “blood”, I, 17, 28
exterior, interior, and innermost, IV, 14, 20
exterior shape, IV, 14, 20
God gives to all life and spirit, I, 14, 18
rational, human soul, I, 18, 31
soul prefigured in, I, 8, 8; II, 8, 12
Jews: circumcision, III, 12, 18
joy, IV, 19, 29
Judah (tribe), IV, 22, 36
Jacob: family of, IV, 22, 36
Jesus Christ:
Apollinarist heresy, I, 18, 31
burial (of his flesh only), II, 14, 20
crucifixion: good thief and disciples
contrasted, I, 9, 11
form of God, IV, 15, 21
good thief, I, 18, 31
handed over his spirit . . ., IV, 23, 37
intelligences, IV, 11, 15; 22, 36; 23, 37
Jesus Christ: See also original sin, Pelagians
Jesus Christ: See also original sin, Pelagians
made “from one blood”, I, 17, 28
original sin and, I, 17, 28
rebirth into sinful flesh, IV, 11, 16
Inspiration (breath or spirit), I, 14, 19
intelligences, IV, 11, 15; 22, 36; 23, 37
powers not known to me, IV, 7, 10; 7, 11
Jesus Christ: See also original sin, Pelagians
Jesus Christ: See also original sin, Pelagians
rebirth into sinful flesh, IV, 11, 16
Inspiration (breath or spirit), I, 14, 19
intelligences, IV, 11, 15; 22, 36; 23, 37
powers not known to me, IV, 7, 10; 7, 11
Israel: family of Jacob, IV, 22, 36
Jews: circumcision, III, 12, 18
joy, IV, 19, 29
Judah (tribe), IV, 22, 36
Judgment:
soul judged when it leaves body, II, 4, 8
kingdom of God:
See also heaven
bound by the laws of, III, 11, 17
everything belongs to, III, 11, 16
heaven and, III, 11, 16
many dwellings in Father’s house,
III, 11, 15-11, 17
may your kingdom come . . ., III, 11, 17
unless one has been reborn . . ., III, 11, 17;
13, 19
wrongly separated from, III, 11, 16

Volume I/23

Answer To The Pelagians I
knowledge: few people know how we do things, IV, 6,7我个人认为你可能是指以下内容。请注意，以下内容是根据原始文本翻译的，可能存在一些差异。

nature and origin of the human soul

knowledge: better and truer, of a person, IV,19,30

body higher than the soul? IV,5,6

certainty, IV,20,31

few people know how we do things, IV,6,7

humility in, IV,24,38

investigating matters higher than you, IV,6,8

limited to bodily forms, IV,15,21

much not known about our nature, IV,8,12

person’s soul and will, IV,19,30

relative ignorance, IV,2,3

soul’s three levels of, IV,20,31

tings neither bodies nor likenesses of bodies, IV,20,31

language usage:
whole for part; part for whole, II,14,20

Lazarus:

bosom of Abraham, IV,15,21;23;24;19,29

learning: faith and, IV,10,14

life: food, drink, and air, III,4,4

Limbo-like place, I,9,11 [note 20]; II,12,16

little ones, See infants

Lord’s Prayer:
may your kingdom come . . ., III,11,17

love, III,13,19

correcting errors and, II,17,23

form, IV,15,22

Maccabees:

Book of, I,11,13; III,12,18

example of, II,11,15

mother of, I,14,23

martyr(-dom):

becoming a member of Christ, I,9,10

good thief, I,9,11; III,9,12

Maccabees, I,14,23

unbaptized people, II,12,17

visions of, IV,18,26

visions of souls of, IV,21,34

medicine, IV,6,7

memory:

coming / not coming / to mind, IV,7,10

reciting backwards, IV,7,9

mercy, I,11,13; II,12,16; 12,17; 17,23;

III,13,19

merit, IV,24,38

good; bad, II,7,11

many dwellings . . ., II,10,14

none, before soul’s union with body, II,8,12

sin and infants, I,8,8

sin from the flesh, I,6,6

soul lost, through the flesh, III,7,9

source, I,6,6

mind, IV,22,36

powers remain unknown to us, IV,7,9-9,13

monster, IV,20,32

mother:

knowledge; mother of the Maccabees,
I,15,25

mules, IV,20,33

mystical body (body of Christ): unbaptized infants, II,15,21

names: form and, IV,15,22

nature:
either is God, or is from God, II,3,5

origin and kind, I,19,32

Nicodemus, III,11,17

Noah’s ark, IV,5,6

nourishment, IV,19,29

original sin:
See also infant baptism; Pelagians

body and soul, I,6,6

condemned: union with sinful flesh,
I,11,13

damnation deserved, I,11,13

damnation faced by all, IV,11,16

entered world through one man, II,14,20

God heals wound he inflicted on us, I,7,7

merit: four condemned theories, I,13,16

pard: unbaptized infants, II,10,14

Pelagian heresy, III,13,19

Pelagian view on infant baptism, II,12,17; 15,21

punishment for, IV,11,16

removed from infants, II,11,15

soul condemned to be subject of, I,13,16

soul in bondage, II,9,13; 13,18

souls merited to be condemned, I,11,14

souls of infants and, I,19,34

transmission of, I,8,8; II,14,20

unbaptized infants, I,9,16; III,9,12

unjust punishment (Victor), II,13,18

paradise, I,9,10

distinct from kingdom of heaven, II,10,14

separate from kingdom of God, III,13,19

unbaptized infants, II,10,14

unbaptized people, III,13,19

parents and children, II,6,10

origin of the soul, I,14,23

transmission of original sin, I,8,8

Paul, Saint:
baptized, III,9,12

ignorance of himself, IV,8,12

taken up to third heaven, IV,8,12

thorn in his flesh, IV,9,13

Pelagian heresy, I,9,11; 13,16; 19,34; II,12,17; 15,21

---

Volume I/23
Nature and Origin of the Human Soul

Pelagius: original sin, III,13,19
Pentecost: filled with the Holy Spirit, I,14,18
perfection, III,10,14; III,9,12
Perpetua, Saint, I,10,12; II,10,14; III,9,12
vision: wrestling in man’s body, IV,18,26; 18,27
persecution:
  baptism of blood, I,9,11
  Dinocrates, I,10,12
Peter (addressee; fellow priest), II,1,1; III,3,3
Peter, Saint:
  knowledge of power of his will, IV,7,11
phoenix, IV,20,33
physicians, IV,2,3; 6,7
learning, IV,10,14
piety, I,11,13; IV,11,15
praise, III,1,1; IV,1,1; 24,39
prayer, I,9,10
Perpetua, for Dinocrates, IV,18,27
we do not know what . . ., IV,8,12; 9,13
predestination, I,8,9
eternal life, IV,11,16
fallibility of (Victor), III,10,13
God acting contrary to, III,10,14
unbaptized infants, II,9,13
pride, I,9,11; III,12,18; IV,9,13
Priscillianists, III,7,9
propagation, See soul (origin of)
providence:
  governing non-rational beings, IV,23,37
  what we say is in his hands, IV,1,1
punishment:
  predestined to eternal death, IV,11,16
reason, III,14,20; IV,22,36; 23,37
redemption:
  unbaptized people, I,11,13; II,9,13
Renatus, II,1,1; 10,14; III,3,3; IV,11,15
renewal: soul or spirit, IV,14,20
resurrection of the dead:
  learning by faith, IV,10,14
  reward for the unbaptized people, II,12,16
  souls will be judged, I,16,26
  unbaptized infants, II,12,17; III,15,22
Revelation, Book of, IV,21,34
rich man:
  in hell; asks for drop of water . . ., II,4,8
Rogatists, II,10,14; III,2,2
Rogatus: heretic, III,2,2
rule of faith, I,11,13; 11,15; 17,23
sacrifice(s): offering of, II,11,15
saints:
  dying at an early age, II,9,13
  intercession, IV,9,13
salvation, IV,2,3
Samaria, IV,22,36
Samuel: clothed, after death, IV,19,29
sanctification, II,7,11
Saul, King, II,12,17
scripture, See bible; words of God
seed, I,14,17; II,14,19
self-knowledge, IV,2,2,3
  beginning of life in the womb, IV,4,5
  bodily form, IV,15,21
  unable to comprehend ourselves, IV,6,8
sensations, IV,5,6
senses:
  body; soul, II,2,3
  interior; the dead, IV,19,30
  perception through, IV,20,31
  soul and, IV,6,7
sentiment, IV,23,37
sex:
  knowledge of, IV,20,31
  male and female; organs and members, IV,20,32-33
Simplicius (could recite from memory, backwards), IV,7,9
sin:
  See also original sin
  creature, or body, IV,16,23
  punishment of sins not yet committed, I,12,15
  soul defiled through the flesh, I,6,6
  souls prior to being in the flesh, I,12,15
sinner:
  God’s foreknowledge of, I,7,7
  sleep
  brother of death, IV,18,28
Son of God:
  equal to the Father, II,5,9
soul:
  See also baptism; infant baptism; merit;
  original sin; spirit
  also called spirit, IV,12,17
  amputation of body members and, IV,18,27
  body: not a spirit; II
  breath of God’s nature, III,3,3
  character of, II,6,10
  congeals; spread through all its members, IV,20,33
  corporeal, II,6,10; III,4,4
dead person; experiences, IV,17,25
defiled through the flesh, I,6,6; 7,7; 19,33
dimensions, spaces, parts, IV,21,35
empty, without a body, IV,12,18
ensoles; gives life, IV,23,37
eternal life, IV,10,14
form from the body, IV,15,21; 18,28
gives organs life more easily than it knows them, IV,5,6
God’s kindred, by gift, I,19,32; II,3,5
  good or bad merit prior to being in flesh, III,7,10
incorporeality, IV,12,17; 15,21; 21,35; 23,37

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

interior human being, IV, 14, 20
knowledge about a person, IV, 19, 30
likeness of a body, IV, 17, 25; 18, 26; 19, 29
merit lost through the flesh, III, 7, 9
merit of being sinful, II, 8, 9; 11, 13; II, 7, 11; II, 12; 11, 14; 19, 33; III, 8, 11; IV, 11, 16
more internal than the body, IV, 5, 6
nature of God and, III, 3, 3; 4, 4
definition (Victor), I, 2, 4; 5, 9
not a spirit, but a body (Victor), I, 5, 5
nourishment for the body sought by, II, 4, 8
original sin, II, 9, 13
preexistence of, II, 7, 11
prefigured in Christ, I, 8, 8; III, 8, 11
punished by association with body of sin, I, 7, 11
recovery of its pristine state, I, 6, 6; III, 7, 10
renewal; image of God, IV, 14, 20
senses, II, 2, 3; 6, 10
separated from spirit, IV, 22, 36
sexless, IV, 20, 33
sinful by association with flesh, II, 13, 18
spirit and, IV, 23, 37; 24, 38
spirit is distinct from, I, 2, 2
state prior to being in the flesh, III, 7, 9; IV, 8, 11
three levels of knowledge, IV, 20, 31
VICTOR'S errors on, I, 5, 9-12, 17
soul (origin of):
Adam, II, 13, 18
analogy of breathing, III, 4, 4-4, 6
Augustine defends his lack of knowledge, IV, 4, 5
authority of words of God, I, 19, 34
breath of God, IV, 14, 20
breathed in as new; derived from parents, II, 6, 10
clearer proofs needed, I, 18, 30
come from God's breath; not from nothing, I, 19, 32
core of the dispute, II, 13, 18
created by God; not part of God's nature, I, 4, 4
created free of sin (Victor), I, 15, 21
created out of nothing, I, 4, 4; 14, 23
definite opinion on, IV, 10, 14
first man: God breathed into the face of . . ., IV, 2, 3
first woman, I, 17, 27
given by God; not of same nature as God, IV, 2, 3
God breathes forth a corporeal soul, III, 4, 4
God breathes new souls, I, 18, 31
God breathes, without propagation, I, 19, 33
God created, from himself (Victor), II, 3, 5; III, 6, 8
God gives, creates, forms, IV, 11, 15
God gives soul and spirit to humans, I, 14, 23
God gives, through endless time (Victor), III, 6, 8
God made soul out of Himself, III, 3, 3
God's breath (Victor), I, 15, 24
he who forms the human spirit . . ., I, 14, 22
higher questions, forbidden to search out? IV, 4, 5
human reason; divine authority, I, 13, 16
I have made every breath . . ., I, 14, 21
individual souls breathed in, II, 6, 10
investigating; knowledge, IV, 11, 16
made by God, not from him, III, 3, 3
mother of the Maccabees, I, 15, 25
new souls breathed in as children are born, I, 19, 34
not from nothing (Victor), II, 3, 5
propagation of, II, 6, 10; 7, 11
propagation, I, 14, 23
propagation, or breath of God, I, 14, 17; 14, 19; 14, 20; 14, 21; 15, 25; 16, 26; 17, 27; 18, 29; 18, 30; 19, 33; II, 14, 19; 14, 20; 15, 21
scripture proofs inadequate, I, 14, 17
scripture texts, IV, 10, 14
self investigating what it does not know, IV, 5, 6
soul given to first human being, II, 3, 6
substance of God, by nature, I, 19, 32
summary of Victor's views, IV, 24, 38
VICTOR rebukes Augustine for indecision, IV, 2, 2
spirit:
definition (Victor), IV, 23, 37
human nature, I, 14, 18
mind and intellect, IV, 14, 20
part of the soul, IV, 22, 36
reason and understanding, IV, 22, 36
renewal; image of God, I, 14, 20
soul as, IV, 12, 17; 13, 19
soul is distinct from, II, 2, 2
spiritual life:
making us cry out . . ., IV, 9, 13
pour gifts into your spirit, III, 15, 23

Volume I/23
sponsors, II, 12, 17
storm, IV, 23, 37
substance:
  body, soul, and spirit, IV, 13, 19
  empty, without a body, IV, 12, 18
  soul and spirit: one substance, II, 2, 2
  teaching: caution re what is not known, I, 16, 26
  temptation: will and, IV, 7, 11
Tertullian, II, 5, 9
thought:
  dwelling without ceasing, IV, 6, 7
  power of, after death, IV, 19, 30
Tobit, II, 2, 3
tongue, IV, 16, 23
Trinity, IV, 5, 6
  one God, II, 3, 5
  three persons; one nature, II, 3, 5
truth, I, 19, 34; II, 1, 1; III, 2, 2; 4, 5; 11, 17;
  14, 20; IV, 1, 1; 2, 2; 3, 4; 7, 11
correcting errors, II, 17, 23

unbaptized infants:
  admission to paradise (Victor), II, 10, 14
  born of non-believing parents, I, 11, 13
  born/die among unbelievers, II, 15, 21
  condemnation; original sin, I, 11, 14; 19, 33
  merit being placed in sinful flesh, II, 15, 21
  merit; original sin; damnation, I, 13, 16
  pardon for original sin, after death, III, 9, 12
Pelasgian view, II, 12, 17; 15, 21
predestination (Victor), II, 9, 13
redemption; God’s foreknowledge, II, 9, 13
taken away so that evil . . . , III, 15, 22
text (Wis 4) misapplied, III, 10, 14
unbaptized people:
  damned even though sinless, I, 11, 14
  entrance into heaven, II, 12, 16
  eucharist may be offered for, I, 11, 13;
  II, 11, 15
  fallibility of God’s predestination, III, 10, 13
  good thief, in paradise, II, 10, 14
  heaven open to, IV, 11, 16
  heaven promised to, III, 13, 19
  kingdom of heaven, I, 19, 33
  meriting paradise, II, 12, 16
  only the reborn have God as Father, II, 10, 14
  part of the kingdom of God, III, 11, 17
  place of lesser happiness, outside heaven, II, 12, 16
  sacrifice offered for (error), III, 12, 18
  understanding, IV, 11, 15; 22, 36
values: earthly/heavenly things, I, 14, 20

Vergil, IV, 7, 9
Victor, Vincent:
ability for argumentation, III, 14, 21
A Augustine rebuked by, IV, 1, 1-2, 3; 12, 17;
  24, 38
A Augustine’s love for, III, 1, 1
books dictated by Rogatus, III, 2, 2
books received from Renatus, I, 1, 1; II, 1, 1
choice of the name, Vincent, III, 2, 2
conversation with, III, 14, 21
convert, III, 2, 2
correction needed, III, 1, 1; 5, 7; 15, 23;
  IV, 24, 39
desire to be corrected, III, 2, 2; 15, 23
dwellings in Father’s house,
  III, 11, 15-11, 17; IV, 24, 38
elegance, I, 3, 3; II, 2, 2; 3, 7; 17, 23
errors (eleven) to be corrected, III, 3, 3
  the faith, I, 4, 4-8, 9
little ones dying without baptism, II, 9, 13
on the soul, II, 5, 9-12, 17
summarized, III, 15, 22-15, 23
exhortation to change his views, III, 14, 20
fallibility of God’s predestination,
  III, 10, 13
gifts of wisdom: god, III, 1, 1
God gives souls through endless time,
  III, 6, 8
heaven promised to the unbaptized
  people, after resurrection, III, 13, 19
human being made up of three bodies,
  I, 5, 5
I decree, . . . , II, 11, 15; 12, 16; III, 12, 18
love for, I, 20, 35
love for Rogatus, III, 2, 2
no merit before union with body, II, 8, 12
on origin of souls, See soul
on preexistence of souls, II, 7, 11
ready to accept correction, II, 16, 22;
  17, 23; IV, 13, 20; 15, 23
sacrifice offered for the unbaptized,
  II, 11, 15; III, 12, 18
scriptural proofs inadequate, II, 14, 19
sincerity or pretense (as Catholic), III, 2, 2
soil lost merit through the flesh, III, 7, 9
soul merited to be sinful before all sin,
  III, 8, 11
soul recovers its pristine state, III, 7, 10;
  IV, 24, 38
summary of errors of, I, 19, 32-20, 35
summary of his views, IV, 24, 38
talents and eloquence, III, 14, 21; IV, 24, 39
talkativeness, I, 3, 3
text (Wis 4) misapplied, III, 10, 14
unbaptized infants: admission to paradise,
  II, 10, 14; 12, 17
unbaptized people: entrance into heaven,
  II, 12, 16
urged to be a true Catholic, III,1.1-2,2
views differ with Augustine, I,2,2
vision of Rogatus, III,2,2
Vincent (the name), IV,24,38
virtue, IV,7,11
visions: likeness of bodies, IV,21,34

weakness, IV,7,11; 11,15
will, I,12,15
knowledge about a person, IV,19,30
knowledge of power of, IV,7,11
wings, IV,16,23
wisdom, IV,22,36; 23,37
asking for, III,1,1
grace; perfection, III,10,14
inspiration of the Almighty, I,14,19
source, I,14,19
wise in the flesh, IV,14,20

Wisdom, Book of, III,15,22
text (Wis 4) misapplied, III,10,14
woman: came from body of man, I,17,27
she will be called . . . , II,14,20
Word of God: made flesh, II,5,9
words of God (scriptures):
See also bible authority of, I,19,34
faith in, IV,10,14
figure of speech: part / whole, I,17,28
knowledge and, IV,15,21
wound:
dream: likeness of bodies, IV,18,27
wrestling:
vision of St Perpetua, IV,18,26
Index from

On the Spirit and the Letter

(De spiritu et littera)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23

Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

## The Spirit and the Letter

### Old Testament

#### Genesis
- 15:6: 26,46; 31,54
- 17:5: 24,40
- 18:14: 24,40
- 22:18: 26,46
- 25:23: 24,40

#### Exodus
- 20:17: 4,6; 8,14; 13,21; 13,22; 14,23; 14,24; 14,25; 20,35; 25,42; 29,50; 30,52; 36,65

#### Deuteronomy
- 30:12-14: 29,51

#### 1 Kings
- 8:46: 36,65

#### Job
- 28:28: 11,18; 12,19

#### Psalms
- 3:9: 11,18
- 4:7: 28
- 12:7: 10,17
- 22:26: 8,13
- 30:3: 30,52
- 31:20: 29,51
- 32:2: 18,31
- 34:3: 8,13
- 36:10: 12,19; 36,65
- 36:11-13: 7,11
- 41:5: 27,47; 30,52
- 54:8: 30,52
- 62:12-13: 33,58
- 68:31: 10,17
- 73:28: 22,37
- 103:2-5: 33,59
- 103:5: 32,56
- 119:85: 30,52
- 143:2: 2,3; 36,65
- 148:20: 8,13

#### Ecclesiastes
- 1:18: 14,26
- 7:21: 36,65

#### Wisdom
- 8:21: 13,22

#### Sirach
- 18:30: 36,65

#### Isaiah
- 26:10: 22,37
- 53:7: 16,28

#### Jeremiah
- 31:31-32: 19,34
- 31:31-34: 19,33
- 31:32: 19,34; 20,35
- 31:33: 20,35; 21,36; 22,37
- 31:33-34: 24,39
- 31:34: 24,39; 24,40; 24,41; 25,42; 28,49

#### Joel
- 2:32: 29,51

#### Habakkuk
- 2:4: 11,18; 26,44
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th>1:22 12,19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>1:24:28 31,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>2:8-10 26,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>2:8-14 26,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7-17</td>
<td>2:9 32,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>2:11 28,49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>2:13 26,45; 28,49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>2:14 26,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>2:14-15 26,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>2:16 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:19</td>
<td>2:17 8,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>2:17-29 8,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37.39</td>
<td>2:26 26,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>3:8 13,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>3:20 8,14; 9,15; 14,24; 30,52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>3:20-27 13,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>3:21 9,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:29</td>
<td>3:22 9,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>3:22-23 9,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>3:22-24 26,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 1:9</td>
<td>3:23-24 10,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 1:12</td>
<td>3:24 9,15; 26,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 1:14</td>
<td>3:24-28 26,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 1:16</td>
<td>3:27 10,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 1:47</td>
<td>3:30 29,50; 32,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 5:14</td>
<td>4:3 31,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 5:35</td>
<td>4:4 26,45; 31,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 6:51</td>
<td>4:15 14,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 8:36</td>
<td>4:16-17 24,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 14:8</td>
<td>5:5 3,5; 17,19; 25,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 14:9</td>
<td>5:12 27,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 14:21</td>
<td>5:13 14,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 15:5</td>
<td>5:20 6,9; 14,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 17:3</td>
<td>5:20-21 6,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jn 19:11</td>
<td>6:1-2 6,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>6:2 6,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>6:3-11 6,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>6:4 29,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16-17</td>
<td>6:12 36,65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18-23</td>
<td>7:7 4,6; 8,14; 13,21; 14,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>7:7-8 13,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.22</td>
<td>7:7-25 14,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.22</td>
<td>7:11 4,6; 14,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.22</td>
<td>7:12-13 13,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.22</td>
<td>7:24 14,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.22</td>
<td>8:3-4 19,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.22</td>
<td>8:6 4,6; 14,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.22</td>
<td>8:7 17,29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/23
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>32,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>24,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>24,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>34,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30-32</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:31</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:32</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7-13</td>
<td>24,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>12,20; 13,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3-4</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6-9</td>
<td>29,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>29,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>24,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>10,16; 26,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>34,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>36,66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>35,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>31,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>21,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9-10</td>
<td>17,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>13,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>31,54; 33,57; 34,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>31,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>32,55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>24,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>24,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:11-12</td>
<td>23,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>36,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>17,30; 20,35; 25,42; 26,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-9</td>
<td>14,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-6</td>
<td>17,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>4,6; 5,7; 5,8; 14,23; 14,24; 20,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>15,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>16,28; 18,31; 30,52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-2</td>
<td>18,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>18,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>18,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>18,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>18,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>35,63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>36,66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>18,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21-22</td>
<td>19,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>19,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>19,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>32,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>14,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>32,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>29,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>2,2; 25,42; 29,50; 33,57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>22,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>28,49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>10,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-8</td>
<td>10,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>27,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>29,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5-6</td>
<td>32,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>13,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>33,59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>36,66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>30,52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>36,65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>22,37; 24,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>32,55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians I
The Spirit and the Letter

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

The Spirit and the Letter

able (being able), 31,53
Abraham, 24,40; 26,46
faith of, 24,40; 31,54
Adam, 6,9
adoption, 32,56
Amorites, 25,42
anger: produced by the law, 14,24
artisans, 10,17
assent, 31,54; 34,60
atonement, 13,21
baptism: death of Christ, 6,10
beauty, 24,41
belief:
  See also faith
  free choice, 34,60
  God and the will to believe, 34,60
  question: one is convinced; another not, 34,60
bible:
  difference between O.T. and N.T., 24,41; 26,43
  figurative expression in, 4,6
  See also New Testament: Old Testament
  boast, 8,13; 9,15; 10,17; 13,21; 18,31; 28,49;
  29,50; 30,52; 32,56; 33,57; 33,59; 35,63
camel, 1,1; 5,7; 35,62
childhood: when I was a child . . ., 23,38
children of God, 7,12; 22,37; 32,56
Christian life:
  crucified with Christ, 6,10
  dead to sin; living for God, 6,10
  know the Lord, 24,41; 28,49
  symbol: Christ’s death and resurrection, 6,10
Christianity: law of faith, 13,21
Christians: letter from Christ, 17,30
circumcision, 8,13; 8,14; 13,21; 14,23; 1425;
  21,36; 26,46; 32,56
  faith and, 29,50
  commandment(s), 2,4; 12,20; 13,21; 13,22;
  19,32; 34,60; 35,62
failure, 17,30
holy and righteous, 14,25
keeping, for love of God, 22,37
love God: love neighbor, 17,29; 21,36;
  36,64
love: what we ought to ask for in faith, 36,64
motive for observance, 14,26
Old Testament, 21,36
you shall not desire . . ., 4,6; 13,21; 14,24;
  20,35; 29,50
concupiscence, 10,16; 19,34
condemnation, 14,24; 18,31; 28; 31,54; 33,58
  fear of, 32,56
confession, 36,65
consent: forbidden pleasure, 36,65
contemplation, 24,41; 33,59
eternal reward, 24,39
contempt, 33,58
continence, 4,6; 13,22; 32,56
covenant, 19,34
creation:
  invisible reality of God in, 12,19
  power of God seen in, 12,19
  ready to serve God, 35,62
crude, 5,7
creator known through, 12,20
cunningness, 18,31
darkness, 36,65
david, king, 31,54
death:
  law, 18,31
  origin, 6,9
  passed on to all human beings, 27,47
  reign of sin and, 6,9
  sin seen as sin, 13,21
  wise according to the flesh, 14,24
deceit, 18,31
delight, 3,5; 14,26; 25,42; 29,51; 35,63
desire, 3,5; 4,6; 8,14; 13,21; 14,25; 20,35;
  29,50; 29,51; 32,56; 33,59; 36,65
  forbidden object, 4,6

Volume I/23
Answer To The Pelagians I

good and evil, 4, 6
sin, 4, 6
transgression added to, 5, 8
diseases, 6, 9

Egypt, 24, 41
eternal life, 2, 4; 6, 9; 22, 37; 24, 39; 24, 41; 28, 49; 32, 36; 33, 59
eye, 36, 63
faith, 3, 5; 10, 16; 16, 28; 19, 34
belief in Christ, 9, 15; 29, 50
by which we believe in God, 31, 54; 32, 56
Christian, 19, 32
circumcision and, 29, 50
commandment to love God/neighbor, 36, 64
doing what one promises, 31, 54
free choice, 33, 58
God’s gift, 31, 54
hope in God, 29, 51
in our power, 32, 55
justification by, 26, 45; 29, 51
law of, 10, 17; 25, 42
law of works, 13, 21-22; 24, 41
lies in our power, 31, 53; 31, 54
love poured out in our hearts, 17, 29;
29, 51; 33, 57; 33, 59
measure of, given to each one, 35, 61
move mountain into the sea, 35, 62; 35, 63
performs good works through love, 33, 57;
33, 59
piety of, 12, 19
praise (Paul), 32, 55
righteous live from, 11, 18; 26, 44; 28, 49;
32, 56; 36, 65
righteousness, 18, 31; 29, 50
salvation, 29, 51
saved by grace, 32, 56
soul lives from, 33, 59
will to believe is God’s gift, 33, 57
works through love, 14, 26; 26, 46; 32, 56;
33, 59
faithful:
distinguished from Gentiles, 26, 43
fear, 19, 34
forced to do what is permitted, 32, 56
law and, 17, 29
love and, 18, 31
Old Testament, 25, 42
punishment, 36, 65
flesh, 26, 46
love and, 17, 29
tablet of, 17, 30
wisdom, 4, 6; 19, 34
wise according to, is death, 14, 24
forgiveness of sin: baptism, 33, 59
free choice, 3, 5; 5, 7; 9, 15; 33, 57; 33, 59;
34, 60
God’s help, 2, 4
grace strengthens, 30, 52
neutral power, 33, 58
sinfulness and, 2, 3; 35, 62
freedom, 18, 31; 26, 45; 30, 52
future, 24, 41
Gentiles, 26, 43; 26, 46; 28, 49
law written in their hearts, 28
uncircumcised, 29, 50
gift, 35, 63
whatever one has is from Christ, 29, 50
glorification, 5, 7
glory, 9, 15; 10, 16; 13, 21; 18, 31; 22, 37;
24, 41; 27, 47
face of Moses, 14, 24
god:
all things are possible for, 5, 7
anger, 8, 13; 12, 19
cling to, 22, 37
faithful, 31, 54
goodness; love, 25, 42
highest good, 3, 5
inscrutable; unsearchable, 36, 66
judgment: no injustice, 31, 54; 36, 66
law = fear; faith = hope, 29, 51
See mercy
no partiality, 28, 49
omnipresence, 36, 66
one who has seen me . . ., 33, 59
power and wisdom, 5, 7
promises, 24, 40
recompenses, 33, 59
righteousness of, 9, 15; 26, 44
godlessness, 7, 11; 12, 19; 12, 20; 28; 36, 66
good and evil:
good coming out of evil, 13, 21
do not do the good . . ., 14, 25
will and avoiding evil, 33, 59
good life, 7, 11
gift of God, 5, 7; 10, 17
good will, 29, 50; 31, 54; 33, 57
good works, 16, 28; 25, 42; 28; 32, 56; 33, 58
grace and, 10, 16
healed soul, 29, 51
sign of grace, 33, 57
goodness, 11, 18
will the good, but can’t carry out, 33, 59
powers: body and soul, 11, 18
gospel, 11, 18; 15, 27; 24, 39; 34, 60
power of God for salvation, 26, 44
grace, 6, 9; 7, 12; 8, 13; 9, 15; 13, 22; 14, 25;
15, 27; 17, 30; 24, 40; 28; 33, 59; 36, 66
description, 28, 49
dying to sin, 6, 9
free choice and, 30, 52

Volume I/23
justification by, 9,15; 13,21; 19,34; 26,45; 27,48; 34,60
law and, 10,16
measure of faith given to each one, 35,61
nature repaired by, 27,47
one person believes; another does not, 34,60
promised in the N.T., 28,49
righteousness, 19,32
saved by faith, 32,56
seeking, 19,34
sinfulness, 35,62
Greeks, 26,44
guilt, 14,26
happiness:
living for God, 22,37
Paul on, 24,39
healing, 30,52
heart, 7,11; 12,19
circumcision of, 8,13
darkened, 12,19
Gentiles; law written in, 26,43; 26,46
God sees, 8,14
grace: laws of God in human hearts, 28,49
I will put my laws in . . . , 19,33; 20,35; 21,36
laws in; presence of the Spirit, 21,36
laws written in (N.T.), 25,42
tables of flesh, 14,24; 17,29; 17,30; 20,35; 25,42
word of faith in, 29,51
Hittites, 25,42
Holy Spirit, 3,5; 10,16; 13,22; 14,24; 14,25; 15,27; 17,29; 18,31; 20,35; 29,51; 33,59; 36,66
finger of God, 16,28; 17,29; 21,36; 26,46
freedom, 18,31
gift; delight in the Law, 14,26
grace given by, 12,20
justification, 9,15
laws of God; presence in the heart, 21,36
letter that kills, 4,6
life-giving, 4,6; 17,30; 19,34
love effected by, 19,32
lover of the Spirit, 25,42
pours out love in our hearts, 3,5; 4,6; 5,7; 25,42; 26,46; 28,49; 33,57; 33,59
presence, 5,8
honor, 26,45
hope, 7,11; 13,22; 29,51; 32,56; 36,64
human being:
finest work of, 2,2
God as teacher and helper, 6,9
human condition, 1,1
humility, 18,31
hypocrisy, 18,31
idolatry, 11,18; 14,23
ignorance, 2,4
image of God, 28,49
interior renewal, 22,37; 27,47
stain of earthly loves, 28
immortality, 29,51
incorruptibility, 36,66
infant baptism, 1,1
ingratitude, 12,19
Isaac, 24,40
Israel:
See also Jews
house of, 24,40
law of righteousness, 29,50
jealousy, 2,3
Jeremiah, 19,33
Jesus Christ, 6,9
ascended; gifts to human beings, 29,50
come to fulfill the law, 10,16
death has no dominion over, 6,10
equal to the Father, 22,37
eternal life, 22,37
faith bestowed by, 11,18
faith in, See faith knowing; eternal life, 33,59
mediator, 27,47; 28
medicines: death and resurrection, 6,10
passion;
Passover lamb, 16,28
temple veil, 15,27
See redemption
Jews, 1,1; 6,9; 8,13; 17,30; 26,44
hearers of the law, 26,45; 28,49
law given to, 26,46
Sabbath, 15,27
Judah; house of, 24,40
Judaism:
See also law
law of works, 13,21
judgment day, 22,37; 28; 33,59
justification, 5,7; 9,15; 13,21; 14,24; 25,42; 28; 29,51
faith and, 12,19; 14,24; 29,50; 29,51
gift of God, 9,15
law; grace, 10,16; 19,34
observers of the law, 26,44; 26,45; 28,49
saints, 36,65
source, 8,14; 17,30
knowledge:
love in proportion to greatness of, 36,64
pain, 14,26
partial; dim, 24,41
power; delight, 35,63
lamb: Passover, 16,28
law, 6,9; 8,13; 8,14
delight in, 14,26
entered so that sin might abound, 6,9; 13,21; 14,24
faith and, 30,52
fear; love, 8,13; 29,51
foreshadowings in, 14,23
fulfilled, 19,34
good if used correctly, 10,16
guard with love, 26,46
hearers; observers, 26,44; 26,45; 28,49
I do not do what I want . . ., 14,25
justification, 9,15; 13,21
knowledge of sin through, 14,24
letter of, 4,6; 6,10
ministry of death, 18,31
naturally observing, 27,47; 27,48; 28,49
purpose: to seek grace, 19,34
righteousness of, 29,51; 32,56
sinfulness increased, 6,9
stone tablets; tablets of flesh, 20,35; 25,42
transgression, 18,31
witness, 9,15
written in the heart (N.T.), 25,42
written on tablets; hearts, 28
letter from Christ, written by the Spirit, 17,30
letter that kills . . ., 5,7; 5,8; 19,32; 25,42
Paul’s teaching, 5,7; 5,8
Ten Commandments, 14,23; 14,24
you shall not desire, 13,21; 14,24; 20,35; 29,50
light, 3,5; 7,11; 12,19; 18,31; 22,37; 24,41; 28,36,65
Lord’s Prayer: forgive us our debts, 36,65
love:
believes everything, 32,55
commandment, 17,29
faith works through, 14,26; 26,46; 32,56; 33,59
fear replaced by, 18,31
finds pleasing what is permitted, 32,56
fulfillment of the law, 16,28
guarding the law, 26,46
keep the commandments, 22,37
law written within, 19,32
proportion to greatness of knowledge, 36,64
two commandments, 36,64
love of God, 36,64
for his goodness, 25,42
imperfect, 36,65
poured out in our hearts, 3,5; 4,6; 14,25; 15,27; 17,29; 21,36; 25,42; 26,46; 28,49
whole heart, soul, mind, 36,64
wisdom of the flesh, 17,29
lust, 4,6; 19,34; 36,65
flesh vs spirit, 33,59

Marcellinus, 1,1
meaning: multiplicity of, 24,41
medicine, 6,9
mercy, 6,9; 7,12; 9,15; 18,31; 27,47; 29,51; 33,58; 33,59; 34,60; 36,65
merit, 6,9; 8,13; 18,31
mind, 24,41
mortality, 33,59
Moses, 14,23; 14,24; 16,28
face of, 17,30
Mount Sinai, 15,27
nature, 26,43; 27,47
New Testament, 24,39
distinctiveness, 26,43; 26,46; 28
foretold by Jeremiah, 19,33; 25,42
ministry of the Spirit, 18,31
promises (O.T.), 33,59
Spirit, 14,24
term, 20,35
obedience: give what you (God) command, 13,22
Old Testament, 15,27
earthly promises, 21,36
righteousness, 11,18
term, 20,35
veil drawn over reading of, 17,30
olive tree, 26,46
Passover, 16,28
patience, 13,21; 36,64
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
beginning of each of his letters, 7,12
choice of his name, 7,12
grace, 35,61
least of the apostles, 24,40
letter kills . . ., 5,7; 5,8
Pelagians: circumventing scriptures, 8,14
perfection, 1,1; 5,7; 23,38; 24,41; 29,51; 36,64
seek: hope, 36,65
Pharisee: sin of, 13,22
piety, 11,18; 13,22; 28
Pilate, 31,54
pleasure: consent, 36,65
possibility, 1,1; 5,7
power: willing and being able, 31,53
praise, 8,13; 13,22; 27,48
preaching, 24,39
predestination, 5,7
presumption, 34,60
pride, 7,11; 9,15; 10,17; 12,19; 12,20; 13,22
punishment, 12,19
promise:
children of the, 24,40
keeping faith, 31,54
promised land, 24,41
prophecy: necessary, 24,41
prophets, 9,15

Volume I/23
providence, 15,27
punishment, 7,12
contempt for God's gifts, 33,58
fear of, 14,26; 19,34; 29,51
God punishes in a hidden way, 31,54
the law and fear of, 8,13
righteousness and fear of, 32,56
purity, 2,3
redemption, 13,21; 28
resurrection of the body, 29,51; 33,59
likeness of Christ, 6,10
righteousness, 1,1; 2,2; 5,7; 6,9; 7,11;
8,13; 11,18; 12,20; 13,21; 13,22;
14,24; 19,34; 21,36; 26,46; 27,48;
29,50; 33,59
cloak; faith, 18,31
fear of punishment, 32,56
God's action, 5,7
hope of, 32,56
hunger for, 32,56; 36,65
knowledge of, 36,64
lesser, 36,65
live from faith, 36,65
love of, 8,13; 14,26; 21,36; 30,52
made righteous, 26,45
no living person has, 2,3
perfect, 35,62; 35,63; 36,64
prevention, 9,15
proportionate to lack of love, 36,64
renewal of, 6,10
self without God's help, 19,32
source, 29,50; 36,65
use of the law, 10,16
works of, 18,31; 25,42
Romans, Letter to the, 7,12
Rome, 11,18
Sabbath, 14,23; 14,24; 14,25; 15,27; 21,36
sacraments, 29,50
Old Testament, 13,21; 14,23
sacrifice:
animal victims, 14,23
Old Testament, 21,36; 25,42
saints, 28; 36,66
great love, 36,64
justification, 36,65
salvation, 4,6; 12,20; 14,24; 26,44; 28
faith and, 29,51; 31,53
God's will for all, 33,58
gospel and, 11,18
grace through faith, 32,56
sanctification, 15,27; 26,45
Saul, King, 31,54
Saul (later Paul):
persecuting the Church, 7,12
schoolmaster, 10,16; 18,31
senses, 36,65
servants, 32,56
servile work, 15,27
silver, 10,17
sin:
abounding, 14,24
all things enclosed under, 19,34
censure, 6,9
darkness, 7,11
deceived by, 4,6
desire, 4,6
died to, 6,9
enlisted to, 6,10
entered human race through one man, 6,9;
27,47
free choice, 3,5
guilt, and knowledge of, 14,26
knowledge of, through the law, 8,14
law and, 13,21; 14,24
law obeyed out of fear, 8,13
law of, in my members, 14,25
letter forbidding, 14,25
obeying its desires, 36,65
responsibility for, 34,60
seen as death, 13,21
separates God and human beings, 25,42
servile work, 15,27
sinfulness increased; law, 6,9
soul wounded by, 30,52
transgression added to desire, 5,8
venial sins, 28
sinfulness, 1,1
abolition of, 6,10
sinlessness:
grace and free choice, 35,62
no human being in this life, 36,65
possible, with God's help, 2,2
sinfulness: possibility of, 35,62
sinner, 7,11; 9,15; 30,52
excuse not to believe, 33,57
justification, 32,56; 33,59
made righteous, 26,45
obvious punishment, 31,54
slave, 30,52
smiths, 10,17
Sodom, 28
son of god:
likeness of sinful flesh, 19,34
Song of Songs, 4,6
soul:
good health, 35,63
healed by love of righteousness, 29,51
healed from wound of sin, 30,52
image of God, 28
lives from faith, 33,59
rational, 28
ungrateful, 11,18
spirit:
test whether it is from God, 32,55
wisdom, 4,6
spiritual goods: O.T. and N.T., 21,36
stream, 4, 6

temporal goods, 21, 36
temptation, 36, 65
  beyond one’s ability, 31, 54
Ten Commandments, 14, 23; 14, 24; 15, 27
thanksgiving, 11, 18; 13, 22
treasure: vessels of clay, 18, 31
  truth, 3, 5; 10, 16; 12, 19; 24, 41; 27, 48
unbelievers, 27, 48; 28: 33, 57; 33, 58
  act against will of God, 33, 58
vanity, 12, 19
vineyard: parable of wages, 24, 41; 33, 58
  virtue, 36, 66
vision, 3, 5; 36, 64; 36, 65
vocation: predestined, called . . ., 5, 7
wages: gospel parable, 24, 41
weakness, 9, 15; 10, 16; 29, 51; 34, 60; 36, 66
wickedness, 19, 33
wild olive tree, 26, 46
will, 1, 1; 9, 15; 33, 59
  See also free choice
  ability to carry out, 31, 53
  believe with, 33, 57
  compulsion, 31, 53
  cooperation of the creature, 5, 7
  doing what is permitted, 32, 56

force or persuasion, 31, 53
  gift of God, 34, 60
  God’s gift: will to believe, 33, 57
  goodness and, 12, 20
  inner act, 8, 14
  nature as source, 33, 57
  no will except from God, 31, 54
  perfection and, 35, 63
  power = ability to act, 31, 53
  righteousness, 2, 4; 3, 5; 5, 7; 30, 52
  will of God: unbelievers, 33, 58
  wisdom, 5, 7; 9, 15; 11, 18; 12, 19; 13, 22; 19, 34; 32, 56
  Book of, 35, 62
  flesh vs spirit, 4, 6
  wise in moderation, 35, 61
  Word of God, 24, 41
  work: servile, 15, 27
  works, 13, 21; 24, 40; 29, 50; 33, 59; 35, 63
  See also good works
  justification by, 26, 45
  law of, 14, 24; 25, 42
  law of faith, 13, 21-22
  without me you can do nothing, 29, 50
  worship, 13, 22
  wounds, 6, 9; 27, 47
Index from
Against Julian
(Contra Julianum)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians II

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume contains three works of Saint Augustine of Hippo: Marriage and Desire (De nuptiis et concupiscentia); Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians (Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum); and Answer to Julian (Contra Julianum).

Volume I/24
Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-107-7, 6 x 9 in., 596 pp., 1998

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/24

INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Answer to Julian

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:27–28</td>
<td>IV, 14, 69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>III, 26, 60; IV, 9, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:29–30</td>
<td>IV, 14, 69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>VI, 7, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>I, 5, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>IV, 9, 53; IV, 16, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>IV, 3, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>V, 4, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>V, 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>IV, 16, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>IV, 16, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>III, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:1</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>VI, 24, 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:14,12</td>
<td>VI, 7, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:6</td>
<td>III, 19, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:18</td>
<td>III, 19, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>VI, 24, 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:19–22</td>
<td>V, 3, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
<td>25:20</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>II, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11–12</td>
<td>V, 13, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:5 LXX</td>
<td>V, 13, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>II, 8, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians II
### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>II, 8, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:13</td>
<td>VI, 5, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:2</td>
<td>II, 8, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:4</td>
<td>III, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7</td>
<td>V, 3, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:8</td>
<td>IV, 2, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>VI, 12, 39; VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:17</td>
<td>I, 7, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
<td>II, 8, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>I, 3, 9; I, 7, 32; II, 2, 4; II, 3, 5; II, 6, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:5</td>
<td>II, 8, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>IV, 8, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63:4</td>
<td>II, 8, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>IV, 3, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:49</td>
<td>V, 3, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:8</td>
<td>IV, 3, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:6</td>
<td>II, 8, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:59</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:11</td>
<td>VI, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:12</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:3</td>
<td>VI, 18, 57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:8</td>
<td>III, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114:3</td>
<td>I, 3, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>I, 4, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:9</td>
<td>VI, 24, 75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:36</td>
<td>II, 8, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:175</td>
<td>I, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:9</td>
<td>V, 4, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>VI, 12, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:8</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>V, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18:12</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:30</td>
<td>V, 3, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:30–31</td>
<td>V, 3, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>IV, 14, 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>III, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:33</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:21</td>
<td>VI, 14, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>II, 1, 3; III, 3, 9; III, 6, 13; III, 18, 35; IV, 9, 60; VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:9 LXX</td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:14</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9</td>
<td>IV, 3, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63:17</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:56</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>V, 6, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:29–30</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31–32</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:18</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ezekiel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>V, 3, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hosea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:11</td>
<td>V, 3, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14 LXX</td>
<td>VI, 20, 65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Maccabees

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>V, 15, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>V, 12, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>III, 19, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11–12</td>
<td>I, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>IV, 14, 65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>V, 13, 49; V, 15, 57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 8, 23; II, 10, 33; III, 1, 2; III, 14, 28; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 28; IV, 3, 29; V, 9, 40; VI, 14, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>V, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>V, 9, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>IV, 3, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28</td>
<td>VI, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Answer To The Pelagians II
Answer To The Pelagians II

6:13  I, 8, 38; III, 13, 27; IV, 2, 6; V, 4, 15
15:5  V, 16, 66
15:1719  VI, 2, 4

6:22–23  IV, 3, 33

Acts of the Apostles
7:7  VI, 19, 58
7:29  VI, 24, 76

7:78  IV, 8, 41
17:28  III, 24, 56

7:8  I, 8, 38
17:31  IV, 3, 25

7:11  II, 8, 26

Romans
7:17  IV, 3, 22

1:17  IV, 3, 17; IV, 3, 19
1:21  V, 4, 18

1:18  I, 5, 18
1:21–22  IV, 3, 47

10:16  IV, 3, 20
1:23–24  V, 3, 10

12:32  VI, 15, 45
1:24  V, 3, 10; V, 3, 11

12:33  I, 8, 40
1:25  V, 3, 10

19:11  V, 9, 39; V, 16, 66
1:26  V, 3, 10

19:12  V, 9, 39
1:26–27  V, 3, 10

19:28  II, 8, 22
1:27  V, 4, 14

22:14  V, 4, 14
2:14  IV, 3, 23

23:9  VI, 25, 82
2:14–15  IV, 3, 23

23:37  IV, 8, 42
2:16  IV, 3, 23

26:24  V, 11, 44
3:67  III, 18, 35

26:28  III, 3, 9
3:8  IV, 8, 49

Mark
16:16  VI, 3, 6; VI, 10, 29

Luke
16:16  VI, 3, 6; VI, 10, 29

1:17  IV, 3, 17; IV, 3, 19
1:21  V, 4, 18

3:23  V, 12, 47
5:8–10  VI, 24, 77

13:32  VI, 19, 60
5:8–12  VI, 24, 79

15:18  IV, 3, 28
5:11  VI, 4, 9

16:9  IV, 7, 39
5:12  I, 3, 8; I, 3, 10; I,

20:34  VI, 13, 40
5:20; I, 6, 27; I, 6,

23:42  VI, 15, 45
28:1; I, 7, 32; I, 7,

John
3:5  II, 6, 18; III, 3, 8;
33; III, 22, 51; III,

5:14  VI, 4, 10
24; 56; IV, 15, 77;

VI, 4, 9

5:1921  VI, 24, 75

6:39  V, 4, 14

6:44  IV, 8, 44; V, 4, 14
5:12–18.19  VI, 24, 80

6:54  III, 1, 4
5:13  VI, 4, 9

6:66  IV, 8, 44
5:14  I, 6, 27; VI, 4, 9

7:7  VI, 2, 4
5:15  VI, 4, 9

7:23  VI, 2, 4
5:12  I, 6, 27

8:32  VI, 12, 39
5:15  I, 7, 33

8:36  VI, 12, 39
5:16  I, 6, 22; I, 6, 27;

9:3  III, 6, 13
VI, 4, 9; VI, 24, 79

12:31  VI, 2, 4
VI, 4, 9

14:6  VI, 12, 39

14:27  II, 8, 26

14:30  VI, 2, 3

Volume I/24
Volume I/24

6:12  VI, 4, 10  7:24  II, 3, 5; II, 4, 8; II, 5, 11; V, 7, 28; VI, 18, 70; VI, 23, 70
6:2   VI, 4, 10; VI, 5, 13  5:11  V, 7, 28; VI, 18, 70; VI, 23, 70
6:23  VI, 4, 10  6:24–25  II, 3, 5; II, 3, 6; VI, 18, 54; III, 26, 62; V, 7, 28; VI, 23, 73
6:3   I, 6, 28; I, 7, 33; 7:25  III, 26, 62; V, 7, 28; VI, 23, 73
VI, 3, 7; VI, 5, 13; 6:34  VI, 4, 10
VI, 5, 14; VI, 26, 83
6:34  I, 6, 27  6:35  III, 26, 61
6:35  VI, 5, 13  6:36  VI, 5, 13
dus, VI, 5, 13
6:36  VI, 4, 10  6:37  VI, 4, 10
6:4   VI, 5, 13  6:38  VI, 5, 13
6:4–11 VI, 5, 13
6:5   I, 6, 27; VI, 3, 7; 6:39  VI, 24, 78
VI, 5, 13  6:40  VI, 24, 78
6:6   VI, 3, 7; VI, 5, 13  6:41  VI, 13, 40; VI, 15, 47
6:7   II, 5, 14  6:42  VI, 15, 45
6:7–11 VI, 5, 13  6:43  V, 4, 14
6:8   VI, 5, 13  6:44  V, 4, 14
6:10  VI, 3, 7  6:45  V, 4, 14
6:11  VI, 3, 7  6:46  V, 4, 14
6:12  III, 26, 62  6:47  V, 4, 14; VI, 2, 5
6:12  III, 26, 62  7:48  V, 4, 14; VI, 19, 59
6:12  III, 26, 62; VI, 23, 73  6:49  V, 3, 8
7:1    VI, 23, 73  7:50  V, 3, 13
7:9    VI, 23, 73  7:51  V, 3, 13
7:9–10 VI, 23, 73  7:52  V, 7, 30
7:11   VI, 23, 73  7:53  IV, 3, 17
7:12–13 VI, 23, 73  7:54  IV, 3, 17
7:13   VI, 23, 73  7:55  IV, 3, 24; IV, 3, 27
7:14   VI, 23, 73  7:56  IV, 3, 32
7:14   VI, 23, 70; VI, 23, 73  I Corinthians
7:15   III, 26, 62; III, 26, 64; VI, 23, 73
7:16   III, 26, 62  1:13  VI, 16, 49
7:17   VI, 23, 73  1:27  VI, 8, 23
7:18   II, 9, 32; III, 13, 27; 1:30–31  VI, 23, 70
III, 26, 62; V, 7, 30; V, 15, 58; V, 16, 61; VI, 15, 46; VI, 18, 54; VI, 23, 70; VI, 23, 71; VI, 23, 72; VI, 23, 73
II, 5, 14; III, 26, 61
II, 5, 13; II, 8, 30; VI, 23, 73
II, 8, 30  2:12  VI, 16, 50
7:20   VI, 23, 71  2:14–15  VI, 16, 49
7:22   IV, 2, 11; VI, 23, 72; VI, 23, 73  3:12  VI, 16, 49
7:23   II, 5, 13; II, 5, 14; II, 9, 32; III, 26, 61; V, 6, 24; V, 7, 25
V, 6, 24; V, 7, 25
7:24–25  III, 26, 61
7:7    V, 16, 66
7:9    IV, 2, 6
7:31   V, 16, 60

Answer To The Pelagians II
| 9:25 | IV, 3, 18 | Philippians | 2:13 | IV, 3, 15 |
| 9:27 | II, 8, 24 | Colossians | 1:13 | VI, 8, 22; VI, 10, 33 |
| 12:12 | IV, 16, 79 |  |  |  |
| 12:22 | IV, 16, 79 |  |  |  |
| 12:22–25 | IV, 16, 80 |  |  |  |
| 15:10 | III, 21, 48 |  |  |  |
| 15:21–22 | I, 6, 22 |  |  |  |
| 15:22 | VI, 24, 80; VI, 24, 81 | 1 Thessalonians | 4:45 | V, 9, 35; V, 9, 38 |
| 15:22.49 | VI, 4, 10 | 2 Thessalonians | 2:10 | V, 3, 12 |
| 15:36 | VI, 16, 15 |  | 3:2 | VI, 24, 80 |
| 15:44 | VI, 23, 70 |  |  |  |
| 15:55 | I, 5, 16; II, 3, 6; II, 4, 8; VI, 20, 65 |  |  |  |
| 2 Corinthians |  |  |  |  |
| 2:15–16 | III, 23, 53 | 1 Timothy | 2:4 | IV, 8, 42; IV, 8, 43 |
| 4:16 | VI, 14, 41 | 2 Timothy | 1:89 | V, 4, 14 |
| 4:16a | VI, 13, 40 |  | 2:19 | IV, 8, 43; V, 4, 14 |
| 4:16b | VI, 13, 40 |  | 2:25–26 | V, 4, 14 |
| 5:4 | VI, 13, 40 | Hebrews | 11:6 | IV, 3, 24; IV, 3, 30; IV, 3, 32; V, 8, 34 |
| 5:10 | VI, 10, 29 | James | 1:5 | III, 21, 48 |
| 5:14 | VI, 5, 14; VI, 9, 24; VI, 9, 27 |  | 1:14 | IV, 2, 6 |
| 5:14–15 | VI, 4, 8; VI, 15, 48 |  | 1:14–15 | VI, 15, 47 |
| 5:19 | VI, 2, 5; VI, 4, 9 | 1 Peter | 2:22 | II, 2, 4; V, 15, 57 |
| 6:16 | VI, 14, 42 |  | 3:7 | V, 9, 40 |
| 11:3 | VI, 22, 68 |  | 3:9 | VI, 11, 35 |
| 11:29 | I, 1, 1 | 2 Peter | 2:19 | V, 3, 12 |
| 12:4 | II, 5, 13 | 1 John | 1:8 | II, 8, 25; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 29; V, 7, 27 |
| 12:9 | II, 4, 8; IV, 2, 11 |  | 2:15 | V, 16, 60 |
|  |  |  | 2:16 | III, 21, 45; IV, 2, 6; IV, 13, 64; VI, 2, 3 |
|  |  |  | 3:36 | VI, 24, 79 |
|  |  |  | 5:12 | VI, 9, 27 |
|  |  |  | 5:19 | VI, 2, 3 |
| Galatians |  |  |  |  |
| 1:9 | V, 7, 27 | 1 Peter | 2:22 | II, 2, 4; V, 15, 57 |
| 2:20 | VI, 23, 71 |  | 3:7 | V, 9, 40 |
| 2:21 | IV, 3, 17 |  | 3:9 | VI, 11, 35 |
| 2:26 | VI, 24, 81 | 2 Peter | 2:19 | V, 3, 12 |
| 3:27 | VI, 9, 27 | 1 John | 1:8 | II, 8, 25; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 29; V, 7, 27 |
| 5:6 | V, 4, 18 |  | 2:15 | V, 16, 60 |
| 5:16 | III, 26, 62 |  | 2:16 | III, 21, 45; IV, 2, 6; IV, 13, 64; VI, 2, 3 |
| 5:17 | I, 5, 17; II, 3, 6; III, 21, 50; III, 26, 62; III, 26, 66; IV, 1, 2; V, 7, 27; V, 7, 28; VI, 13, 40; VI, 14, 41; VI, 16, 50 |  | 3:36 | VI, 24, 79 |
| 5:18 | III, 26, 62 |  | 5:12 | VI, 9, 27 |
| 5:19–20 | III, 26, 62 |  | 5:19 | VI, 2, 3 |
| Ephesians | 2:3 | II, 8, 28; VI, 10, 33; VI, 24, 78 |  |  |
| 4:18 | III, 12, 25 |  |  |  |

**Volume I/24**
Subject Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Answer to Julian

abandonment:
  God's patience, V,13
  handed over to shameful passions, V,10
Abimelech, III,19,36; 37
Abraham, VI,18
  fertility, God's gift, III,11,2123; 32; 18,34
  promises to, VI,80
actions:
  ends and, IV,21; 22; 25
  good and evil, VI,19,58
Adam and Eve:
  See also original justice; original sin; paradise; serpent
  ashamed after first sin, IV,54
  carnal concupiscence, IV,49
  created without concupiscence, V,55
  damaged because of sin, III,58
  death and, V,19
  descendants, V,15,52
embarrassed, covered their sexual organs, V,6; 7; VI,2268
Eve believed the serpent, I,10; 32; II,37; VI,2268
Eve and childbearing, II,6,15
excuses for sinning, VI,24,75
fig leaves, II,16; 17
first Adam; second Adam, VI,77
forbidden fruit, IV,82
hiding from God, IV,82
increase and multiply..., IV,69
lineage affected by, V,54
marriage of, V,48
Mary and Eve, virgins, I,3,5
naked, I,10; II,17; IV,81; 82; V,6; 7

fear, IV,82
shame, V,7,25; 33
not naked, not ashamed, IV,9,53
perished; all perished in Adam, I,32
sexual arousal, V,7,25
sinned by free choice, VI,10,28
sorrow, I,24
in whom all have sinned..., VI,24,75
will; Manicheism, I,16
wounded by the serpent, I,10
yoke upon children of, VI,5,11; 10,28; 31; 43

adoption, I,6,21; VI,13,40; 43; 47
adultery, I,39; III,16; 14,28; 19,36; 37; 46; 47; 49; IV,48; 10,56; V,8,31; 12,46; 60; 62; VI,61
child as good result of, III,9,18; 22,51
child born from, III,53
having children as object of, IV,39
intemperance within marriage, II,20
intention of begetting children, V,10,41
looking at a woman with desire, IV,14,65

Aeneas, IV,67
Africa, III,4; 5; 17,31; VI,21
Ahab, King, V,13; 4,14; 15; VI,25,82
air: breathing, IV,68
Albinus, VI,16
all (biblical usage):
  "many" and, VI,80
Amasiah, King, V,12
ambition, II,25

Ambrose, Saint, I,10; 22; 34; 35; II,2,4; 4,8; 9; 5,10; 11; 12; 23; 24; II,30; 32; 10,33; 34; 35; 37; III,2; 14,28; 32; 48; VI,23,70
five arguments of Pelagians, II,7,19
Julian attacks, I,4,11
on law of sin, II,6,15
on progress in virtue, II,22
praised by Pelagius, I,30; 44; II,11; 6,15; 21; 32
testimony against Manichees, I,44; 45

Answer To The Pelagians II
Ammonianus, Bishop, I,19; 32
Anaxagoras, IV,15,75
Anaximander, IV,15,75
Anaximenes, IV,15,75
angel(s), I,37; VI,13,40
   created free of sin, V,16,59
   good nature of, I,40
   good trees, IV,30
   greater than human, VI,64
   guilt written in minds of, VI,62
   Joseph, do not be afraid…, V,47
   nature of, as work of God, I,41; 43
   praise of bad angels, V,3,8
   sin of, V,64
   virtues, IV,21
   works of God, V,64
anger, II,12; 25; V,13; VI,23; 31; 33
   children of, II,28; V,13,49; VI,20; 31; 33
   eleven O.T. texts, VI,78
   Romans (5:812), VI,79
   saved from; redemption, VI,9
   vessels of, V,4,14; VI,32
animals, IV,5,35; V,18
   creation; sacrifice, III,19
   desires, III,49
   desires in paradise, IV,82
   evil not present in, IV,74
   fear of, before/after original sin, I,25; 33
   food; sustenance, IV,69
   killing humans (after original sin), I,25
   physiology, IV,12,58
   sexual desire praised, IV,59
   sexual organs, IV,12,58
   sin by imitation of, IV,74
Apollinaris, V,55
apostles, II,26; 30; 32; III,64; IV,9; VI,21
   good odor of Christ, III,53
   martyrdom, I,13
aprons, V,7
Aristotle, I,12; II,34; 37; III,2,7; IV,78; V,14,51; VI,56; 64
arrogance, II,30; 36; IV,28
asking, seeking, knocking, IV,41; 42
attainment, I,6; II,9; 7,19; 22; 24; 9,31; V,18; 34; VI,11
attitude, V,6,24
Augustine, Saint:
   baptized by Ambrose, I,10
   contradiction charged to, V,5,1923
   conversion, VI,39
   devil worship (charge), III,18,34
   on Julian’s four volumes, I,2
   Manichee (accusation), I,19
   Punic debater, III,32
   structure of his book described, I,3
   supported by many teachers, I,30
avarice, See greed.
babies, See children.
Balbus, IV,12,58; 72; 76; V,33
baptism:
   baptized into death of Christ, I,5,15; 33; VI,3,6; 7; 10; 13; 21; 33; 48
   blessings (Chrysostom), I,6,21
   born for God, VI,4
   Christ dies for each person in, VI,48
   circumcision a sign of, II,18; V,45; VI,18
   concupiscence set free of guilt by, VI,17,51
   cross and tomb as baptism, I,27
   crucified and buried with Christ, I,5,15; VI,13
   effective grace, I,44
   effects: sanctification of the body, I,17; VI,13,40
   eternal life, II,22
   evils remaining after, VI,52
   See forgiveness of sin.
   free from chains, VI,16,49
   freed from power of darkness, III,2,7
   frees us from sin, not from evil, VI,16,49
   grace, VI,5; 43
   Gregory Nazianzen on, I,5,15
   guilt removed by, II,5,10; VI,3,6; 52
   Julian on, VI,67
   See original sin.
   passing into body of Christ, VI,5
   perfect renewal, complete healing, VI,55

Volume I/24
perfection (beginning), VI,15,45
prepare children for rebirth, IV,3
purpose of second birth, VI,59
putting on Christ, VI,27
rebirth, VI,42
reborn of water and the Spirit, II,18
redeemed from power of the devil, VI,8,22
Reticius on, I,7
reverence for rebirth, I,32
sacrament of rebirth, VI,26
spiritual, VI,26
spiritual circumcision, VI,20
unwilling persons, IV,45
unwilling; refusing, IV,42
water consecrated, VI,62
barbarian invasion, IV,19
Basil, Saint, I,16; 22; 30; 32; 35; II,10,33; 37; III,32; VI,69
on chastity, I,17
on fasting, I,18
beatitude, II,29; VI,60; 65
beauty, V,14,51
visible; audible, IV,73
bedbug, IV,55
believers:
See also faith; unbelief; unbelievers
original sin and children, V,50
Bethlehem, I,5,15
bible:
interpretation, V,7
knowledge of, by the learned, V,2
learned men, II,34
birth, See childbirth.
bishops, IV,11,57; 61
African, III,32
caliber of, II,37
Catholic view on original sin, I,32
Donatists, III,5
Eastern/Western church, I,13; 14; 5,15; 20
Manicheism, III,32
mind of the apostles, II,30
refuting Pelagian arguments, II,1,1; 4; 9,31; 36
statements related to controversy, I,46
blasphemy, IV,81
blind(ness), II,34; VI,16; 69
as punishment, V,3,8; 9; 12
understanding, V,37
boasting, II,29; IV,30; 77; VI,9; 54; 23,70
bodies:
See also human body
not the work of evil creator, III,8,17
union of, as evil, III,15
body and soul:
See also flesh; human body; mind; spirit
carnal desires of the soul, V,28;
VI,14,41
corruptible body weighs down soul, I,17; VI,13,40; 16,49; 23,70
daily renewal of the soul, VI,14,41
disagreement of flesh and spirit, II,11
earth and heaven, II,3,6
gifts of God, IV,27
God the creator of, II,2,4; 7,19;
III,6,13
governance entrusted to soul, III,10
hidden facts re the soul, V,17
joined (Cicero), IV,78; 83
nobility of soul, II,7
origin of soul, V,53
paradise, II,5,10; 11
Plato on the soul, II,7,19
purity of soul, V,26
rule by the soul, II,24; IV,5,35
senses and immortality, II,5,10
servitude of the body, II,24
soul as substance, VI,18,53
soul dwelling in stomach, V,26
souls after death (pagan view), IV,83
work of God, II,21
bread, III,41
breathing, IV,68
Caecilian, I,7
Caelestians, II,34; III,2
Caelestius, I,20; II,34; 36; III,9; V,6,24;
VI,14
Cain, II,20; VI,24,75
Calligonus, VI,14,41
Camilli, IV,26
carnal desire, See desire; sexual desire.
carnality, See flesh.
Carthage, III,4; 9; VI,16
catechumens, III,62; VI,16,49
Catholic Church, I,9; 22; 23; 30; III,5; 17,31; VI,67; 69
paradise as symbol of, V,6,24
Catholic faith, I,2,4; 3,5; 8; 12; 5,15; 16; 19; 20; 26; 27; 8,36; 9,42; II,1,1; 3; 6,15; 7,19; 9,31; 32; 34; 36; 37; III,1,1; 3; 12,24; 32; 48; IV,51; V,1,1; 17; 26; 64; VI,5,11; 8,22; 23; 33; VI,11,34; 35; 26,83
Catiline, IV,19; 25
Cato, V,38; 12,46
causality: natural causes, IV,15,75
censure, V,8,31
change, I,37; VI,16,49
chastity, II,16; 30; 32; III,15,29; 50; 64; V,6,24; 29; VI,61; VI,2268
Basil on, I,17
begetting children, III,41
conquering evil, V,30
continence and, IV,64; V,7,25
desire for, VI,56
desire for intercourse and, III,43
excess of concupiscence and, V,48
fight against evil instincts, V,66
habits and fight for, VI,55
mind of those without faith, IV,3,14
mind that commits fornication, IV,27
pleasure of intercourse, IV,49
procreation and, V,37
sexual desire reined in, III,14,28
sight of sexual organs, IV,59
suppressing evils, VI,46
temple of God, VI,13,40
temporary, IV,48; V,34
unbelievers, IV,27; 58
unbelievers living chaste lives, IV,3,14
unchasteness, IV,3,14
undefeated, VI,57
virginity, IV,48; 49; 50
virtue, IV,3,14
childbearing:
right to, in Roman Law, III,22
total years of spouses, III,22
childbirth:
more God’s action, than parents, V,11,44
pains of, III,60
power of the devil, III,22,51
children:
See also infant baptism; pregnancy;
procreation
adopted by grace, VI,26,83
appearing before Christ’s judgment
seat, VI,29
awareness of sin, II,4,8
babies incapable of sin, VI,9,24
baptized into Christ’s death, VI,10; 33
begetting, II,20
being washed and being born as equal, VI,27
born with bodily defects, V,53
claimed by devil, VI,31
confess through lips of others, VI,79
dead in sin (unbaptized), VI,14
development: infancy to wisdom, V,18; VI,1,1
evils; sufferings, III,9; 10
foetus formed in temple of God, VI,43
God, creator of innocent little ones, VI,30
God’s creative action, IV,38
God’s creatures, III,10,20
good born from evil desires, VI,42
goods of marriage, V,12,46
ignorance, III,19,36
illegitimate, III,40
imitation of Christ, VI,79
increase and multiply…, III,60; IV,69
infants have body of sin, VI,13
justice; subject to condemnation, III,25
merit in infants, IV,8,40
newborns:
as God’s works, III,56
both innocent and guilty, III,23,52
Pelagian view, II,2
predestination, VI,59
punished for sins of parents, VI,25,82
reason asleep in, II,4,8
sacrifices for sin, VI,26,83
sinful offspring; happiness, IV,50
suffering as proof of original sin, III,6,13
Volume I/24

... Answer to Julian...

tormented by unclean spirits, VI,31
wisdom lacking in infants, V,18
work of the devil, III,58
of world; of devil; of God, VI,13,40
children of God, I,2; IV,8,40
children of the world, VI,13,40
daily renewal, VI,13,40
driven by the Spirit, V,9,35; VI,14,41
marriage and, VI,13,40
choice [free choice], I,13; 9,42; II,23;
III,2; IV,8,40; V,26; 9,35; 36; 39; 64;
VI,9,24; 38; 20,63
See also original sin; sin; will
grace and, IV,47
infants and rebirth, IV,44
moderation, III,27
resisting God’s will, IV,42
sin and, VI,10,28
Christian faith, I,14; 17; 22; 23; IV,78;
V,2; VI,10; 8,22; 10,28
Christian life:
See also baptism; worldlyness
changed for the better, VI,16,49
fight evil dwelling in the flesh, VI,71
imitating Christ, V,57
it is not I who live..., VI,71
living for God in Christ, VI,7
living with Christ, VI,13
progress, after baptism, VI,60
trust grace, not human strength, II,3,6
trust in Christ, VI,23,70
united to likeness of his death, VI,7
will of God that all be Christians,
IV,43
Chromatius, Bishop, I,19; 32
Church:
See also Catholic Church
attacking the mother, VI,7,17
chaste mother, III,32
East and West, I,13; 14
growth of, II,37
prays for her enemies, IV,15
psalm of dedication of a house, VI,42
virgin, V,6,24
Cicero, IV,12,58; 72; 76; 78; V,23; 42;
VI,11,34; 67
circumcision:
baptism and, V,45
domesticated olive tree, VI,21
eighth day, VI,18; 20; 21
foreskin, VI,19; 20
law, IV,25
rebirth signified, VI,18
sign of baptism, II,18; III,18,34; VI,18
soul lost if not circumcised, V,45
Clematius, Bishop, I,19; 32
clothing and dress, IV,80
clothing the naked, IV,30
cold, V,28
color (quality), V,14,51
commandment(s):
child’s awareness of, II,4,8
delight opposed to, II,13
given in paradise, III,35
impossible commands, III,35
original justice, II,5,10
Tully on, IV,61
common people, VI,11,34
compassion: natural, IV,31
competition: corruptible crown, IV,18
concupiscence (of the flesh), II,3,5; 7; 9;
30; III,49; VI,26,83
See also continence; desire; flesh;
impurity; lust; sexual desire
Adam and Eve, V,8,31; 54
adultery, VI,61
all are tempted, pulled, enticed, VI,47
awareness of, VI,12
born and die subject to, VI,44
children born for the world, VI,2,3
children born through, IV,4,34; VI,5
conceived in pleasure of, II,6,15; 32
conception and, II,20; 32
conquered by grace, V,32
conquest of, V,27; VI,72
consent to, III,14,28; V,26; VI,16,49;
73
control of, IV,13; 52
defeating, III,44
desires opposed to the spirit, III,50;
62; 66; IV,2; 4,34; 37; V,55
diminished but not destroyed,
VI,16,49
diminished; fervent love, VI,50

Answer To The Pelagians II
disease, III,15,29; 21,42; 58; IV,2,6; 10,56
disobedience to rule of the mind, V,3,8
disobedience of the mind, III,15,29; 17,51; 69
disobedience to the rule of the mind, V,3,8
enemy of virtues, IV,14,65
ever, III,41; IV,1,1; 9; VI,12; 17,51; 69
excess; fornication, III,12,26; 27;
20,38; IV,64; 73; V,48
fighting against, III,65; 66; IV,70; 73;
V,6,24; 61; VI,47; 50
flesh, eyes, and pride of life, IV,64;
VI,2,3
good and evil, III,45; IV,9
good will and, IV,13
guilt ceases to exist, VI,60
happiness in heaven, VI,46
impulses restrained, IV,2,6
indecent behavior, IV,73
innocence of child born from, V,48
licit union to have children, IV,49
living lives of continence, IV,11
marital chastity, IV,9
marriage and, III,50; 531 24,54;
IV,2,6; 9; 12
moderation, III,21,42; 45; IV,9; 12
music and, V,23
natural; carnal, IV,52
naturally good, V,52
never ceases, III,16,30
no use better than good use, IV,39
not absolved and made holy, VI,17,51
not counted as sin (baptism), VI,17,51
origin of, III,27; IV,13
original sin contracted from, III,24,54
paradise, V,42
parents whose child is sin, VI,47
parents and children, V,14,51
praise of, III,44; 45; 49; 50; 64; 65;
IV,64; V,3,8; 9; 29; VI,16,49; 17,51
procreation and, IV,38
pursuit of pleasure, VI,50
quality, not a substance, VI,18,53
rebellion against the mind, VI,30
reinforcing, III,40; VI,14,41; 61
by grace, IV,7
by mind, III,39; 41; 49; V,6,24
remains to be fought against, VI,52;
60
remedy for, III,15,29
removed by rebirth, VI,3,6
righteousness and, IV,6,36
senses and, IV,14,65
sexual arousal and, IV,13,62; 69
sexual organs, IV,81
sin that dwells in me, VI,73
use as servant, VI,60
used only for begetting children, IV,2
virility, V,58
worse than ignorance (as to sin), VI,50
condemnation, V,14,4; 34; VI,77; 79
children born under, V,43
exempt from, V,11,44
God’s justice, III,35
guilt, V,10
justice, III,25
kingdom, III,25
one who does not believe, VI,3,6
original sin and, VI,59
set free by act of mercy, VI,59
subject to, VI,62
unbelievers, VI,29
consciousness of, I,1.1; II,13; 22; III,49; IV,82;
V,3; 39
guilt and, VI,62
consent, II,25; 32; 10,33; III,14,28; 62;
IV,7; 10; 12; 14,65; V,11; 12; 22; 23;
29; VI,16,49; 60; 61; 71
bad desires, VI,74
carnal desire, VI,15,45
excess, IV,64
good health, VI,57
growth in holiness, VI,14,41
constancy, IV,20
Constantinople, III,4
contempt, I,1.1
continence, II,14; 20; III,22; 27; 45; 49;
50; III,66; IV,1,1; 7; 8; 9; 10; 11,12; 64;
14,65; V,9; 22; 6,24; 7,25; 61; VI,11,34;
47; 50; 56
chastity of unbelievers, IV,17
God must grant, IV,18
good persons living in, III,14,28
marriage and, V,39
old age, V,12,46
praise of, V,65
reining in concupiscence, IV,39; VI,60
saints enduring, VI,46
shameful persons practicing, IV,18

contradiction:
charge of, IV,6,36

contraries:
reciprocity of, VI,60

conversion:
of life, VI,76
of morals, II,28
past evil actions and, VI,56
from sin, I,5,15

converts, VI,35

corruption: exterior self, VI,13,40

courage, IV,19
enduring evils, VI,46

creation, V,4
  all things in heaven and on earth, V,2,3
  babies born deformed, sick, ugly, V,1,30
  flesh comes from God, II,4,8
  God as author of physical bodies, III,8,17
  God’s foreknowledge and, V,43
  goodness of God, III,19
  pagan philosophers and, IV,77
  praise for all in heaven and on earth, IV,66
  predestination, V,4,14
  seeds, VI,26

creatures:
  human and angelic, VI,64
  love of, IV,33
  surprise: subject to the devil, VI,64

crime:
  abetting, V,4,14
  audacity, IV,51
  crocodile, VI,16
  cross, I,5,15; 27; 32; II,18
  emptied of meaning, VI,36
  cures, VI,60; 61
  curiosity, VI,7,17
curses, III,6

Cynic (canine name), IV,15,75

Cyprian, Saint, I,6; 22; 32; II,3,6; 4,8; 9; 18; II,30; 10,33; 37; III,17,31; 32
  on perfection, II,25

Damasus, VI,38
damnation:
  See also condemnation; eternal
  punishment
  earned by all human beings, VI,2,3
  goodness/injustice of God, IV,45
  righteousness and, IV,26
darkness:
  power of, III,2,7; VI,2,3; 7,17; 8,22; 31; 33

David, King, II,6,15; III,4; V,23; VI,10,28
death, II,2,4
  Adam’s sin as cause of, I,27; VI,9; 21
  all die in Adam, I,10; 32; VI,80
  chain linked to first Adam, VI,14,48
  chastised in body of, V,6,24
  Christ died for all, VI,4,8; 52
  Christ’s death and devil’s power over, VI,27
  Christ’s death signified by our sin, VI,7
  Cyprian on, II,3,6; 4,8
  dominion over Christ, VI,10; 13
  final summation, VI,26,83
  human condition, III,63
  infants without sin, I,24
  life and, I,27
  mortality, V,54
  mystical; burial, II,14
  one died for all…, VI,14; 48; 52
  origin; devil, III,36; 22,51
  rescue from kingdom of, I,24
  rescues us from sin, II,14
  separation of soul from body, VI,14,48
  sexual desire and, III,14,28
  sinner’s; martyr’s, VI,55
  sting of, I,16; II,3,6; 4,8
  where is victory…, VI,65
  who will free from body of…, II,3,6; 4,8; 11; 13; V,28; VI,54; 23,70
debate, I,12; II,34; III,5; 21,42

Answer To The Pelagians II
deceit, II,29; V,4,14; 16
decency, IV,12,58; 16,79; 80; 81; V,6,24
dedication of a house, VI,42
delight, II,13; IV,66; 67; V,29; 33
  See also pleasure
animals and humans, IV,74
carnal, IV,71; V,63
mind, IV,71
mind pleased with itself, IV,28
shameful recollections, IV,70
spiritual, IV,11
Democritus, IV,15,75
demons, VI,67
  See also devil
children and, VI,31
expulsion, VI,60
pigs and legion of demons, IV,38
sacrifice to, VI,61
desire(s), II,20; 24; V,9; VI,61; 73
  See also consent; flesh; sexual desire; spirit
animals in paradise, IV,82
boundless, IV,70
bringing good to completion, III,62
commands, IV,61
disciplining, IV,66
distracted and ensnared by, V,15
do not go after..., V,11
do whatever good desire wants, V,29
earthly; allurement, II,23
evil, IV,7; 5,35; 18; 28; 14; 41; 52
evil movement, VI,60
evil things, good things, V,28
evil to desire evil, VI,50
flesh, III,62
flesh and the soul, VI,14,41
flesh vs. spirit, II,12; 6,15
follow nature, V,29
free from, V,30
glorious battles against, VI,15,45
good and bad, IV,12; VI,56
growth in holiness, VI,14,41
habits and the will, VI,55
handed over to, V,12; 13
handing one over to sinner, V,15
holding in check, II,5,10; 6,15; III,49
life, the greatest desire, II,25
mind resisting bad desires, VI,60
pigpen of desires, II,5,10; 11
reason’s control over, IV,5,35
senses related to, V,23
sensory awareness, VI,56
sinful, II,3; 5; 14
  battle with, VI,56
  burning with, V,11
  reign of, VI,42
soul has carnal desires, V,28
spirit resisting flesh, IV,69
struggle against bad desires, VI,74
virtues holding in check, III,49
war against evil/flesh, II,32; VI,42
yearning for sensations, IV,66
despair, II,30
devil, II,25; IV,3; V,3; 11; 28
adultery and, III,9,18
angel who once was good, III,63
arouses the evils within us, II,27
Augustine charged with worship of, III,18
author of human nature, II,28
author of newborn babies, II,2
children of the, VI,13,40
claiming children as his own, VI,31
claims all who are born for himself, VI,26
compact with God, VI,26
concupiscence and, III,26,59
conqueror, V,27
corrupter of our substance, VI,59
creator of human beings, II,2,4; 3,5
death and, I,33; V,36
dominion over human beings, III,2,7; 55
equality with God, I,27
existence and goodness of God, III,19
good to be subject to, VI,65
human beings rescued from power of, VI,65
human body made by, V,26
human sexual organs, IV,83
intercourse with Eve, VI,2268
loan shark of sin, I,10
marriage and, III,12; IV,38; VI,23
murderer from the beginning, VI,20,63
origin of sin, III,55
original sin and, III,46; VI,19,58
patrimony of, VI,23
persecutions and, IV,38
power of God over, III,2,7; VI,26; 59
power over those born, III,22,51

Volume I/24
power over unbaptized infants, VI,27
praise of (Julian), V,16
prince of heaven and earth, VI,2,3
redeemed from power of, VI,8,22
rescued from power of, VI,25
senses and, IV,14,65
serpent as wise, II,13
sex; flesh vs. spirit, V,36
sinner, V,3,8
spirit by nature, unclean by defect, VI,20,63
surprise that a creature is subject to, VI,64
unclean spirits torment infants, VI,31
works of:
   passing through work of God, III,56; VI,21,66
   work of God and, I,41; 44
   made holy, VI,52
   world under power of, VI,2,3
   wound from, II,10,33
   wrong to rebel against, VI,65
dialectics, III,16; V,14,51; VI,11,34; 36; 55; 60; 64
dignity, I,25; IV,55
   in marriage, II,20
Dinomachus, IV,76; VI,50
Diogenes, IV,15,75
Diogenes the Cynic, IV,15,75
Dionysius (the tyrant), V,14,51
Diospolis, Council of, I,19
discernment of spirits, VI,16,49
disciples, VI,35; VI,4; 47
disease, V,28; VI,18,53
disobedience: original sin, I,27
disposition (a quality), VI,14,51
   virtue and the will, IV,19
dissoluteness, III,14,28
divorce, III,14,30; V,12,46
dog: vomit, VI,20
Donatists, III,5; 17,31
Donatus, I,7
dove, I,3,5
dreams, III,20,38; IV,10; V,42
drunkenness, II,28; IV,73; VI,54; 55; 56
eating:
   See also foods; hunger; taste
   banquets, IV,71
   sufficient for removing hunger, IV,70; 71
education, V,4
Eleutherius, Bishop, I,19; 32
eloquence: empty, V,43
embarrassment, V,20
emotions, IV,61
Empedocles, IV,15,75
emperor, III,3
ends:
   actions and, IV,21; 25
   morality of means, V,10,41
enemies:
   better not to have, than to defeat, VI,65
   command to pray for, IV,41
   love of, V,57
Epicurus, III,48; IV,21; 76; V,29; VI,44
error, VI,1,1
eternal life, IV,33
   See also heaven; infant baptism
   images of God deprived of, VI,10
   rebirth and, II,22; IV,39
   reward, IV,23
   righteousness, VI,9
   unbaptized infants, I,19; III,4; 25
eternal punishment, VI,50
   providence and foreknowledge, VI,25
   rescue from, VI,31
   suffering justly, V,11,44
   unbaptized infants, III,4
ethics: moral philosophers, IV,76
Ethiopians, V,14,51
Etruscan pirates, IV,78; 83
Eucharist: salvation and, I,13; III,4; 25
Eulogius, Bishop, I,19; 32
Answer To The Pelagians II

eunuchs, VI,14,41
Eutonius, Bishop, I,32
Evander, IV,67
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
Evil, See good and evil.
excess: victory of concupiscence, IV,64; 73
existence:
  God’s goodness, III,19
  a subject must exist in something, V,14,51
exsufflation, I,19; III,8; 9; 5, VI,5,11
eye: bad; simple, IV,33
Ezekiel: testimony of, VI,25,82
Fabius, IV,17; 26
Fabricius, IV,17; 25; 25
faith, V,4; VI,14; 81
  abandoned; God’s foreknowledge, V,43
  attaining wisdom and, V,18
  attempts to destroy, I,22
Christian mysteries, VI,8,22
  good acts done by unbeliever, IV,30
  good will without, IV,30
  living from, V,9
mystery of original sin, VI,5,11
pleasing God impossible without,
  IV,24; 25; 26; 30; 32; V,34
protection of, V,58
removal of original sin, VI,12
resurrection and, IV,25
righteous living and, IV,3,14
rising with Christ, VI,18
sin and, II,28
sin is all that does not come from,
  IV,24; 27; 32
suffering as hindrance to, III,10
true virtue of chastity and, IV,50
rightfully righteous live from, IV,17; 19; 23
understanding depends on belief, II,3
using good of marriage, IV,6,36
working through love, IV,31; 33;
  IV,51; V,18
wrong action done out of, IV,51
fall of man, See original sin.
false accusations, VI,35
farmers, VI,65
fasting, IV,71
  Basil on, I,18; 32
  Eve and the forbidden tree, I,32
penance and, I,18
fate, VI,3,6; 43
merit and, IV,46
will of God and, IV,46
fathers of the Church, I,31; II,1,1; VI,69
  See also bishops
fear, IV,51; V,39; VI,60
  assent and, II,34
  disposition of the soul, VI,54
nakedness of Adam, IV,82
  serpents, before original sin, I,25
feeblemindedness, III,10
fertility, III,60; IV,1,1
  Abraham and Sarah, III,11,2123
  gift of God, III,23
fidelity, II,20; III,16,30; IV,3,14; V,12,46
Fidus, Bishop, I,19; 32
fig leaves, II,16; 17; IV,12,58; 59; V,2,5;
  7,25
first couple, See Adam and Eve.
first sin, See original sin.
flavor, IV,66
flesh:
  See also body and soul; desire; spirit
  arrogance of, II,5,10; 11
  body of death, II,3,5; 4,8; V,28
  carnal persons, VI,16,49
  Christ’s flesh, V,15,52
  compulsion toward evil, III,64
  desire(s), III,62; VI,71
  in animals and in humans, IV,74
  conquered by spirit, IV,73
  daily diminished, VI,56
  opposed to the spirit, II,12; 6,15;
  10,33; III,23; 13,26; 50; 62; 66;
  IV,2; 13,62; 69; 72; 74; V,27; 28;
  V,36; 55; VI,13,40; VI,14,41; 15,45;
  47; 50; 55; 57; 23,70; 72; 73
  pleasure and, II,6,15

Volume I/24
author of all good things, I,37; 45
cannot be author of something evil, III,8,17
compact with devil, VI,26
See creation.
See devil.
foreknowledge, V,11,44
giving honor to, V,2
goodness, VI,26; 59
human suffering and, III,10
justice and, III,35; V,43
mercy and, V,15
of things belonging to God, VI,65
hears (angry); spares (merciful), V,15
hidden judgment of, VI,38
hidden laws; guilt, VI,62
highest good, I,9,42; IV,28
impossible commands, III,35
injustice, IV,45
judge of the world, III,35
judgment, V,4,14
just judgment, V,4,14
justice, V,1,2, 28; 31
knowing him, V,38
light, V,3,8
merciful goodness, V,4,14
See mercy.
mysterious works of, VI,7,17
no evil, no weakness in, IV,28
power, III,18,34
presence in his temple (the body), VI,46
unjust punishment, V,3,8
wisdom and knowledge of, III,37
works for benefit of his enemy, VI,25
gods, IV,5,35
bodies of, VI,44
gold, IV,66
Goliath, III,4
good and evil:
See also flesh; goodness; guilt;
Manichees; sin; world
all natures created good, I,8,36
Augustine vs. Julian, III,49
bad use of good things, III,16; IV,6,36
baptism removes every sin, not every evil, VI,16,49
become evil by falling away from good, V,64
concupiscence; Augustine vs. Julian, IV,2,6
conquer evil by means of the good, V,30
contraries, VI,64
creation of bodies, III,8,17
desire for evil, IV,7
doing evil for good end, V,10,41
enduring evils, V,22
eternal evil can produce evils, I,39
evil as:
coeternal with God, I,9,42; V,6,24
coming only from evil, VI,21,66
defect of a substance, II,9
derived from the good, I,43
dispositional quality, VI,54
effect of original sin, II,5,10
God's work, V,8,31
natural instinct, V,66
privation of good, I,37; 9,42; 45
substantial, I,16; 43
willing from good natures, I,38
fear of defeat, III,44
fighting against, II,9; V,28
foolishness as cause of evils, V,18
good that I will…., II,3,5; 13; 14;
III,62
good tree, bad fruit, I,38; 40; 44; 45;
IV,22
good use, III,21,42
human generation, VI,42
less/more evil, IV,22
make good use of evils, V,37
making a new evil, IV,39
nature as God’s work, III,56
nature capable of either, I,37
necessity of fighting evil, II,9
no evil without some good, III,53
opposing good, become evil, V,29
opposition between, II,32; V,32
persons enduring themselves, V,36
sexual desire, III,15
sharing praise, V,8,31
sheep and wolves, VI,20
sinful desires, VI,42
source of evil, I,37; 40; 41; 43; 44
struggle of the baptized, II,3,5; 7
substances, VI,19,58
two evils: one we have, one we commit, IV,73
two natures (Manichee), I,8,36; 38;
VI,21,66; 67

Volume I/24
union of bodies as evil, III,15
will; Manicheeism, I,16
wound from the devil, II,10,33
good taste, IV,12,58
good thief:
remember me when…, VI,15,45
good works:
icorrect end, IV,21; 22
kingdom of God, IV,33
motivation, IV,22; 33
ttrue virtues, IV,33
unbelievers doing, IV,30
goodness:
acts without faith are not truly good,
attaining kingdom of God, VI,1,1
barren tree, IV,22; 33
bodily pleasure as human good, IV,76
desiring, with carnal concupiscence,
VI,50
evil as fallen from, I,37
human generation, VI,42
natural, VI,17,51
naturally attractive, V,29
virtue, III,48
virtues and the mind, IV,19
willing, but not doing, II,14
gospel: defense of, II,37
grace, I,16; 22; 27; 28; 32; II,3; 4,8; 23;
24; 29; 34; III,1; 1, 2; 32; 33; 46; 49; 53;
61; IV,7; 45; 78; V,3; 8; VI,11; 4,14; 18;
28; 40; 58; VI,7,17; 17,51; 26,83; 54;
59; 73; 79; 28,82
abundance of, I,27
arguments from/against God, VI,5,11
concupiscence conquered by, V,32
enemies of, IV,15; 16; 22; VI,6,24; 39;
VI,44
fight against effects of sin, II,32
forgiveness of sins, VI,12; 72
free choice and, IV,47; VI,5
good works, IV,33
gratuitous, IV,15
guilt for sin and, VI,44
healing, II,9
help for the will, V,65
human nature, image of God, merits,
IV,15
immortality and, VI,13,40
judgment, VI,3,6
justification and, I,33
merit and, III,48; IV,8,40; 41
nature corrected by, IV,25
need of, V,9,35
paradise, IV,82
Paul’s letter to the Romans, VI,4,8
perfection and, IV,15
praise of, IV,48
put deeds of flesh to death, VI,14,41
rebirth and, VI,43; 44
righteousness, II,3,5; 4,8; 9; 22; IV,42;
VI,9
sacraments, II,6,15
set free from body of death by, II,13;
V,28
set free from every evil, VI,60
set free from the world, VI,4
sin destroyed by, I,33; VI,9
sin prevents attainment of, I,6
temptation and, VI,44
ten blessings of baptism, I,6,21
true virtue bestowed by, IV,48
truth sets free from vanity, VI,39
washing sin away, II,6,15
wretched man that I am…, II,3,5; 6
Grace against Pelagius, IV,47
grain, IV,27
grape vine, VI,7,17
greed, I,9,42; II,23; 25; 28; IV,19; 21;
VI,14,41
Greek language, V,7
Gregory Nazianzen, Saint, I,5,15; 16;
22; 32; II,7; 4,8; 9; 30; 10,33; 34; 37;
III,32; VI,23,70
guilt, II,10,33; III,46; IV,21; 51; V,4,14;
28; 14,51; 60; VI,17,51; 61; 21,66;
baptism and forgiveness, II,9; 5,10;
VI,50; 52; 62
born of fornication; born of marriage,
III,23,52
children, II,4,8
concupiscence, VI,60
condemnation, V,10
conscience, VI,62
dead sin still fights back, II,32
evils remain, VI,16,49
grace setting free, V,44
nature and bad acts, III,6,13
pardon, VI,47
person born according to the flesh, VI,52
pulled to evil actions by, II,12
punishment and, III,24,54
subject or substance, VI,62

habit, II,25
force of, VI,73
selfcontrol, VI,55
struggle against, II,3,5; 5,10; 14
virtue, IV,19

Hagar, III,22

happiness, II,14; IV,33; 41; 50; 69; 83; V,29
heaven, VI,32
natural instinct, IV,19
harmony, V,28
hate, VI,1,1
both sin and penalty for sin, VI,2
world hates Christ, VI,4

healing, II,4; 8; 9; 10,33; III,6,13; IV,11; V,17; 26; 28; VI,55; 62; 74

health, IV,66; 67; 70; 72; V,28; VI,55; 60
moderation in eating, IV,71

heart, II,25; III,50
blindness, III,25; V,12
confused by thoughts, II,23
darkness, V,18
evil desires of, V,11
generous, IV,15
God sees interior of, IV,82
rise upward, II,24
virtues and, V,10
works of the law written in, IV,23; 25

heat, V,28

heaven:
entering: good recompense, VI,29
fate, IV,46
happiness described, VI,46
rebirth for entering, II,18

Heraclitus, IV,15,75

heredity:
defects transmitted by parents, VI,7,17

heresy, II,36; VI,23,70

heretics, I,30; III,5; 48; IV,27; V,1,1; 6,24; 26; 66; VI,8,22
Hilary, Saint, Bishop of Gaul, I,9; 22; 32; II,4,8; 26; 28; 29; 30; 35; 37; III,32; VI,23,70
holiness, I,6,21; III,26,59; 64; IV,61; V,6,24; VI,16,49
baptism and, VI,13,40
body and baptism, VI,44
growth: not consenting to carnal desires, VI,14,41
pursuit of, IV,28; 29
Holy Spirit, I,12; II,3; 24; IV,16; 33; V,32; 9,35; VI,2,3; 5; 47; 16,49; 71; 72
See also temple of God
belongings as foolishness, VI,52
knowledge of what God has given us, VI,50
led by, III,62
reborn through, IV,4,34

homosexuality, III,40

honor, IV,68

hope, I,16; II,29; 32
good thief, VI,15,45
salvation, VI,15,45
temple of God, VI,13,40

Horace, IV,19; V,6

horses:
virtues and vices (metaphor), II,12; III,14,28

Hortensius, IV,78
	house:
psalm of dedication, VI,42
three divided against two..., II,5,10

human beings:
animals and, See animals. ?????
born in (or out) marriage, V,62
Cicero on origin of, IV,78
created free of sin, V,16,59
created from seed, IV,12
devil as owner of, III,2,7; 19; 18,34; VI,26
devil is hostile to, V,36
devil's dominion over, III,55
evil nature (Manichee), V,16,59; 64; 65

Volume I/24
flesh from, II,4,8
God and devil dividing, VI,26; 27
God the creator of, II,3; 7,19; 9,31; III,12,24; 46; IV,1,1; V,13,49; VI,2,3
God’s gifts to, VI,26
good, although born with an evil, III,9,18
good, in a barren way, IV,22
good, though born with sin, IV,7,37
good nature; evil defect, III,47; 23,52
goodness of, III,22,51
individual gifts of God to, IV,16
made from human seed, III,22,51
mental denseness; animals, V,18
natural abilities, VI,2
natural goodness, IV,3,14
natural instinct to govern themselves, V,66
nature as stepmother (Tully), IV,60
not good for man to be alone, II,20
pagan philosophers and creation of, IV,77
punishment: subject to the enemy, VI,65
rebirth needed, II,10,33
receiving gifts of God, IV,3,14
regard nothing human as foreign to, IV,83
renewal; grace, VI,13,40
righteousness, IV,42; VI,9
the sexual act; goodness, IV,38
trees as metaphor for, VI,19,58
unclean; in devil’s power, VI,20,63
work of God, II,7,19; 21; III,18,34;
IV,12; V,64
world (the word) as, VI,4
human body:
defecation process, IV,12,58
device as maker of, V,26
digestion, V,33; VI,52
divine indwelling, I,17
gifts of God, IV,16; 27
God, the fashioner of all bodies, V,53
hunger, thirst, digestion, V,20; 22;
VI,52
immortality; happiness, VI,13,40
obedience of members, to will, V,5,19;
21
Plato on, II,7,19

redemption; adoption, VI,13,40;
15,45; 47
sanctified; virtuous, I,17
stomach, lungs, nerves, etc., IV,12,58
human condition:
body of this death, III,63; VI,23,70
Cicero on, IV,78
evils suffered, IV,83
gifts; evils, IV,16
grace; mortality, VI,13,40
human nature:
changeable, III,55
Christ’s revelation, V,55
condemned, VI,20,63
corrupted by devil, V,26
creation; defects, III,6,13
defense and praise of, V,18
devil as author of, VI,19,58
evil (Manichee), III,12,24; V,65; 66;
VI,57
foreign evil mixed in, VI,2
God produces good from, V,4,14
goodness of, I,40; III,12,24; 23,52; 53
illness of, VI,62
merits grace, IV,15
more perfect, II,26
praiseworthy, III,7,14
stepmother, VI,67
work of God, II,28
human race:
condemned with full justice, VI,52
humility, II,29; IV,17
hunger, IV,67; V,22
moderation in eating, IV,70; 71
prodigal son, IV,28
hypocrisy, II,29
idolatry, VI,16,49; 60
lastiing defect, VI,61
ignorance, VI,16,49
diminished, VI,50
gravity of sin and, VI,50
righteousness, III,19,36
image(s) of God, V,4; I1,44
deprived of eternal life, VI,10
ever without guilt (Julian), VI,67
exiled from kingdom of God, III,9
Answer To The Pelagians II

grace and, IV,15
kingdom of God, V,56
separation from kingdom, VI,32; 81
washed; claimed by God, VI,26

imitation:
correcting way of life, VI,76

immortality, VI,14; 50; 60
ablaze in desire for, II,27
body; full happiness, VI,13,40
created mortal, IV,7,37
devil and mortality, I,33
Lazarus, I,24
natural instinct, IV,19
perfection, II,22
Plato on, II,7,19
senses and, II,5,10

impiety, VI,61
impudence, III,11,34

impurity, III,44; IV,48; V,37; 63
assaults on the spirit, II,13
desires of the heart, V,10

incarnation, VI,77
Hilary on flesh and sin, I,9
likeness of sinful flesh, V,15,52; 55; VI,13

incense, IV,66
incorruptibility, VI,13,40

infant baptism, I,10; III,17,31
adultery; intention, V,10,41
blessings from, I,6,21
children believe through those present at, VI,3,6
chosen from the world, VI,5
exorcism and exsufflation, I,19; III,8; 9; 5,11; VI,5,11
fate and, IV,46
forgiveness of another’s sin, I,6
imminent danger of pregnant mother’s death, VI,43
necessity, III,18,34
Pelagian understanding of, III,8; 5,11
punishment: dying without baptism, V,11,44
reason for, II,4,8
reborn for sake of next world, V,10,41
reborn from water and the Spirit, VI,2,3

salvation, I,14; 22; III,4; 25; V,18; VI,69
adopt all who are going to die, IV,45
believing through another, VI,29
Julian’s views, IV,43; V,2
udden death; unbaptized child, VI,43
superfluous or necessary, VI,3,6
unbaptized infants; salvation, IV,26; 42; 43

infants, See children.
injustice, IV,39; VI,62
innocence, IV,12; 18; V,2,5; 6
deserving to come from God’s hands,
VI,30
gift at start of life, III,10
infancy, III,19,36

Innocent, Pope, I,13; 22, 32; II,10,33; 36; III,32; VI,12,37
intention: actions and, IV,33; V,10,41; 16,59

Irenaeus, Saint, I,3,5; 32; II,37; III,32
Isaac, III,22; 23; 18,34
circumcision, III,18,34; 35

Ishmael, III,22
Israel, V,3,8; 12; 4,14

Italy, VI,21

Jacob, V,14,51
Jeremiah, V,6,24
Jeroboam, King, V,12; 15

Jerome, Saint, III,32
qualifications, I,34; II,10,33; 36; 37

Jesus Christ, II,32
See also incarnation; redemption;
resurrection; Son of God; Word of God
Adam as symbol of, I,27
all brought to life in Christ, VI,80
born of the Holy Spirit, VI,62
circumcision, VI,18; 20
concupiscence, V,58
cross and tomb: our baptism, I,27
death’s dominion over, VI,10; 13

Volume I/24
died also for children, III, 58
died for all; all died, VI, 9, 24; 27; 52
dying in vain, V, 18; VI, 81
flesh of, V, 15, 52
full of grace, V, 58
ghost (Manichee teaching), I, 2, 4
gifts of Christ rejected, VI, 72
good acts to rescue us from present evil, VI, 44
greater than Plato, I, 12
heresy of Apollinaris, V, 55
human nature, V, 55; 57
I am the truth..., VI, 39
imitation of, by children, VI, 79
likeness of sinful flesh, V, 55; VI, 7; 13; 62
mortality; flesh, V, 54; 55
not needed for salvation (Julian), VI, 81
passion and death:
baptized into, See baptism.
Christ died for all, VI, 4, 8; 52
devil and power of death and, VI, 27
his death a true death, I, 27
only for sinners, VI, 4, 8
true death, true flesh, VI, 7
unbelief as cause of, V, 3, 8
united to likeness of, I, 27; VI, 13
when we were still sinners..., VI, 9
peace, II, 5, 10; 14
reconciling the world to himself, VI, 5; 9
See resurrection.
righteousness and, I, 33
gained without Christ, IV, 17
through obedience of, VI, 9
sinless, II, 2, 4; 4, 8; 11
savior, I, 31; II, 28; III, 17, 31
second Adam, VI, 77
sinless, I, 4, 11; 32; II, 2, 4; 32; V, 57; VI, 48; 52; 62
takes away the sins of the world, VI, 43
tempted, endured, as human being, I, 4, 11
thought to be the son of Joseph, V, 47
without me you can do nothing, V, 66
Jews, II, 7; 13; III, 62; VI, 72
blindness of, V, 3, 8
you are of this world..., VI, 4
Joash, King, V, 12
Job: testimony of, V, 13, 49
John Chrysostom, Saint, I, 19; 6, 21; 23; 24; 26; 28; 7, 29; 30; 32; 33; 34; 35; II, 17; 10, 33; 37; III, 32; VI, 69
Jordan River, I, 10
Joseph, Saint:
genealogies end with, V, 47
married to Mary, V, 12, 46
thought to be father of Jesus, V, 47
Joseph of Egypt, V, 23
Joshua, son of Nun, V, 12
Jovinian, I, 2, 4
Jovinus, Bishop, I, 19; 32
joy, I, 1, 1; VI, 60
judges, II, 34; 35; 36; III, 2; 21, 42; VI, 36; 64
reason, learning, freedom, II, 37
judgment, V, 36
all born subject to list of charges, VI, 62
children appearing before Christ, VI, 29
God’s hidden judgment, VI, 38
left by justice; taken by grace, VI, 3, 6
recompense for actions, VI, 29
scorned, VI, 36
subject to vanity, VI, 39
judgment day, V, 4, 14
hidden thoughts, IV, 23; 25
justice and mercy, IV, 46
punishment of sinners, V, 11, 44
Julian, I, 4, 11; 26; 35; II, 1, 1; 7; 14; 35; III, 9; 32; VI, 8, 22
on Abraham and Sarah, III, 17, 31
appeal to philosophers, IV, 15, 75
Augustine insulted by, I, 1, 1
failures in logic, IV, 10, 56
his fourvolume argument as inadequate, I, 2
interpretation of Paul, IV, 16, 79
logic of syllogisms, III, 7, 14; 16
parading his learning, IV, 15, 75; VI, 44
refutation of his:
1st book, III, 1, 1
2nd book, IV, 1, 1
3rd book, V, 1, 1

Answer To The Pelagians II
4th book, VI,1,1ff
refutation summary, VI,26,83
response to first argument, III,2,7
Zosimus and, VI,12,37
just and unjust, I,43; 44
justice, IV,19,21; V,3; 17
arguments from/against God, VI,5,11
creator, IV,78
human race condemned, VI,52
judgment, VI,3,6
justification, VI,79
death and, II,14
grace and, I,33
many transgressions, I,22; 27
perfection; immortality, II,22
resurrection of Christ, VI,18
righteousness, IV,42

Keturah, III,22
kingdom of God:
devil and those not admitted into,
VI,27
eternal salvation, IV,42
images of God separated from, III,9;
26; V,56; VI,32; 81
inheriting, VI,16,49
life of God in, III,25
love of, V,4
newborns in, VI,27
rebirth needed for entering, III,8
repayment to little ones, VI,15,45
righteousness, IV,17
separation from, VI,55
unbaptized infants are excluded, III,25
wisdom and, VI,1,1

kingdom of heaven, See heaven.
knocking, asking, seeking, IV,41; 42
knowledge, V,9
concupiscence, VI,61
pride of, VI,44

Latin language, II,36; IV,8; V,7
laughter, IV,27
law (Old Testament; Torah):
holy, VI,73
members vs. mind, VI,72

Lord’s Prayer:
bring us not into temptation, V,15
Cyprian on, II,3,6
Deliver us from evil, III,27; 28; IV,2,6
forgive us our debts, II,23; 10,33;
III,2; 48; IV,28; 29; V,40; VI,44
God’s will be done, II,3,6
lead us not into temptation, IV,2,6
prayer of the baptized, II,3,6

pardon for sins (Jews), VI,72
removal of sin and, VI,9
righteousness, IV,22; VI,80
sacrifices, V,45
sin abounding, VI,9
spiritual (Paul), VI,73
works of, done by nature, IV,23
written in hearts, IV,23; 25

law of God, III,3; 62
delight in, IV,67

law of nature:
pleasing God without faith, IV,23

Lazarus:
Christ wept over death of, I,33
raising of, I,24

laziness, III,64
learned men, II,34; 36; 37
learning, V,9

Leucippus, IV,15,75

lies:
believing, as sinful, V,12; 4,14
speaking evil against someone, I,1,1

life:
death and, I,27
gift of God, IV,5
God’s creating work, III,46
greatest desire, II,25
providence of God, VI,59
in whom we live, move, and…, III,56

limbo, IV,26
limping, I,10; III,11,21; 63; IV,83; V,34
logic:
Julian; syllogisms, III,7,14; 16

loincloths, II,16; IV,82
loins, II,17

Latin language, II,36; IV,8; V,7
laughter, IV,27
law (Old Testament; Torah):
holy, VI,73
members vs. mind, VI,72

Volume I/24
love, I,35; V,29; VI,1,1; 72
command, VI,4
concupiscence diminished by, VI,50
creatures, without the creator, IV,33
disordered, IV,18
faith working through, IV,31; 33; 51;
V,18
higher good, IV,28
love for God:
creator and creatures, IV,33
greatful, V,9
supreme good, IV,28
lungs, IV,68
lust, II,3,5; 20; 25; IV,69; VI,50
luxury, IV,19

Maccabees: mother of the, V,53
Mani, I,17; III,17,31
Manichees, I,3,5; 12; 5,15; 16; 19; 20;
23; 7,29; 34; 38; 39; 40; 43; II,1,1; 3,6;
7; 12; 28; III,3; 12,24; 17,31; 32; 63;
IV,1,1; IV,51; V,6,24; 26; 16,59; 64; 66;
VI,2; 57; 69; 74; 26,83
Ambrose on, I,44; 45
Catholics as (accusation), I,3; VI,67
evil doctrine, I,2,4
evil nature coeternal with God, I,17;
38; 9,42; V,6,24
human nature as evil, I,17; 38;
III,12,24; V,65; 66
Pelagian support for, I,3; 8,36; 9,42;
VI,21,66; 59
many (biblical usage): “all” and, VI,80
Marcellinus, V,54; VI,18; 2268
marriage:
Ambrose on, II,20
carnal pleasure as motive, V,9,35
chaste, I,17; II,6,15; 32
chastity in, III,14,28; 15,29; 21,42;
43; 49; 22,51; IV,1,1; 2,6; 7; 10; 13;
33; 48
children of the world from, VI,13,40
Christian: goal, V,34
concupiscence and, III,14,28; 53;
25,57; VI,13,40
condemn the good of, V,65
condemned (Pelagian), II,2; 4; 3,5;
III,2,7
continence and, V,39
definition, V,62
desire for, as evil, IV,10
devil and, IV,38; VI,23
importance of, II,20
divorce, when intercourse stops, V,12,46
ethereal, IV,54
goal of its will, V,34
good of children from evil sexual
desire, IV,39
good tree, I,39; 44
good use of concupiscence, III,50; 53;
24,54; IV,9; 49
goodness of, II,3; 8; 20; 21; 32;
III,22,51; IV,1,1; 10,56
goods which make it good, III,16,30;
53
having children as God planned, III,53
husbands must honor wives, V,40
intent: prepare children for rebirth,
IV,3
issue between Augustine and Julian, I,2,4
no evil belongs to, IV,49
not begetting children of God,
V,13,40
original sin and goods of, III,25,57
possess your vessel…, V,40
power of the devil in, III,12
prayer for selfcontrol, V,40
prior to fall of man, III,25,57
remedy, III,21,42
sacrament, V,12,46
selfcontrol and, V,66
sex:
desire in, IV,10,56; V,8,31
necessary in, IV,4
for pleasure, II,10,33; III,16,30
for sake of having children, IV,38
temperance in, II,20
three goods of, V,12,46
union of bodies, V,62
using good of, without faith, IV,6,36
virginity of unbelievers and, IV,50
wife as vessel, V,40

Marriage and Desire, I,2,4
martyrs, VI,26,83
death as source of merit, VI,55
Answer To The Pelagians II

devil and, IV,38

Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Christ born of, VI,62
conceived without sexual desire,
VI,2268
Eve and, I,3,5
flesh of the virgin, V,15,52
married to Joseph, V,12,46
original sin and, V,54
title of wife, V,48
virginity denied by Jovinian, I,2,4

masters and slaves, IV,61; VI,64

Maximianists, III,5

meditation, II,7
words of God, VI,76

Melissus, IV,15,75

Memorius, I,12

memory, V,14,51
guilt, VI,62

menstruation, III,22; 43

mercy (of God), I,14; II,11; 23; 25; 27; 29;
36; 37; III,10; 12,24; 25; 33; 35; IV,39;
41; V,13,49; VI,43; 46; 57; 59
children of, VI,31
grace and, VI,39
judgment day, IV,46
trust in, III,48
vessels of, VI,32
with/without faith, IV,31

merit, III,35; 19,36; IV,19; 29; 46; V,13
asking, seeking, knocking, IV,41
eternal life, VI,32
fate and, IV,46
God's gifts, VI,39
good and bad, IV,46
grace and, III,48; IV,8,40; VI,5; 39
infants, IV,8,40
Julian on, VI,15,45
martyr's death, VI,55
works of righteousness, II,29
yoke of the children of God, VI,43

Messiah:
faith [O.T.] in mediator to come, V,45
mind, V,6
bodily pleasures and, IV,72; 76
carnal delight and, V,42

concupiscence and, III,39; 41; 49; 61;
V,60; VI,6; 24; 30
corruptible body weighs down, III,41
delights, IV,71
evils of, VI,52
gifts, IV,27
involuntary bodily functions and, V,20
law in members resisting law of mind,
VI,72
learning and, V,9
most excellent thing in creation, IV,28
power over sexual desire, V,61
power over the body, V,29
resisting the law of, IV,72; V,7; 3,8;
6,24; 7,25; V,30; 36; 56; VI,44; 60;
20,63
senses in paradise, IV,69
serve law of God with, VI,73
temptations held in check by, II,27
Tully on, IV,60
virtue, IV,19
virtues reside in, IV,3,14

moderation, III,27; 21,42; 43; 45; IV,9; 12
eating and drinking, IV,68

modesty, I,35; II,17; 30; III,33; IV,27; 81;
V,4; 2,5; 9; 20; V,6,24; 30; VI,11,34
money: desire for, V,60
moneylovers, IV,18

morality:
destruction of morals, V,6,24
ethical philosophers, IV,76

morons, III,10

mortality:
groaning in ourselves, VI,13,40
law of sin, II,6,15

Moses, VI,76; VI,81
mother: temple of God, VI,43

motivation: glory: human or divine, IV,22
murder, IV,51; V,60; VI,17,51; VI,24,75
music: effect on emotions, V,23

nakedness, IV,59; V,7; 7,25

natural law:
righteousness, IV,25

Volume I/24
nature(s):
   See also human nature
   accidents changing, VI,16
   changed by original sin, III,26,59
   evils in human lives, IV,60
   fighting against, II,2,4
   goodness of, IV,28; 30
   laws; defects, V,14,51
   limits and rules, VI,18
   one alone is without beginning, I,8,36
   philosophers appealed to, IV,15,75
   praise for, II,30; III,9
   proving transmission, parent to child, VI,20
   sexual organs called, VI,20

necessities:
   desires unbounded, IV,70
   sensual pleasures and, IV,70

New Testament:
   announced by Jeremiah, VI,25,82
   promise (Ezekiel), VI,25,82
   nobility, III,64; IV,17
   nothing, I,37
   nourishment, IV,68; 69; 71
   Nymphidius, Bishop, I,19; 32

odor, IV,66

old age:
   sex in, V,12,46
   sex; producing children, III,22
   shame re intercourse, V,62

Old Testament:
   children born for servitude, VI,25,82
   sacrifices for sins, V,45
   olive tree:
      wild and domesticated, VI,15; 7,17;
      20; 21
   Olympia, I,24
   Olympius, Bishop, I,8; 32; II,10,33; 37;
      III,32
   order: established by God, VI,65
   original sin, II,9,31; 32; V,3; VI,26,83; 69
   Adam’s nakedness, IV,81
   Adam’s sin harmed him alone, I,19

   all human beings are subject to,
      II,10,33
   Ambrose on, II,11
   Basil on, I,16; 18; 32
   birth as cause of, IV,4,34
   bishops defend Catholic view, I,32
   born from law of sin, II,9; 11
   born of sinful origin (Hilary), I,9
   conceived in iniquity, I,10
   contracted in first birth, I,14
   contracting, II,4; 8; 6,15; 20; III,35;
      46; 47; 53
   decency of sexual organs, IV,16,79; 81
   defect inflicted by the devil, VI,19,58
   denial of, V,64; VI,63; 20,67
   devil’s rights (Julian), VI,19,58
   discord between flesh and spirit, IV,38
   disobedience, V,7
   of Adam, I,27
   balanced by obedience, I,3,5
   of body as punishment, V,5,19
   of the flesh as punishment, V,3,8
   dying without baptism; suffering
   justly, V,11,44
   effects, III,12; VI,2
   effects: miseries, VI,39
   entered through one man…, I,8; 10;
      16; 20; 22; 27; 28; 32; 33; III,22,51;
      56; IV,77; V,26; 14,51; VI,9; 21;
      10,28; 39; 43; 20,63; 24,75
   evil effects of, III,9,18
   evil will of first humans, IV,54
   excuses for personal sins, VI,24,75
   existing without a substance, VI,36
   faith and reason in mystery of, VI,5,11
   foolishness or pride as cause, V,18
   foreskin as sign of, VI,20
   forgiven in baptism, I,14; II,10; 33
   forgiveness; rebirth, I,2,4
   free choice, IV,83
   freed by rebirth, III,66
   fruit of a good marriage, I,39
   fruit of the tree; sexual desire, IV,63
   garments donned after the sin, V,2,57
   healing:
      by gift from God, IV,5
      Irenaeus on, I,3,5
      needed, III,9,18
      of the uncreated evil, IV,7,37
   human beings as good, IV,7,37
   humans born with this evil, III,9,18
   imitation, not propagation, I,19; 33
inheritance, I,26
John Chrysostom on, I,6,21; 23; 24; 26; 28; II,16
law of sin and, II,5,10
Manicheeism, I,16
marriage and, IV,49
marriage prior to Adam’s sin, III,25,57
natural defect in human nature, IV,54
nature coming from God, III,56
nature damaged by, II,28; III,55; 26,59
no infancy is free of, V,57
Olympius on, I,8
paternal debt handed on by Adam, I,26
personal sins and, VI,76
position of honor lost, I,25
producing a voluntary good from,
IV,39
punished, unless reborn, V,17
punishments deserved, III,10; VI,1,1
removed by rebirth (baptism), II,3
root in a gift from God, I,9,42
saved from, V,16,59
sense of shame, IV,9,53
statements of Catholic teachers on,
I,7,29
subject to, from first birth, II,1,1
voluntarism and, VI,9,24
weakness remains, after rebirth, II,3
world condemned for disobedience,
I,33
world guilty because of Adam, VI,5
worthy of condemnation, VI,59
yoke on children of Adam, IV,60; 78; 83; VI,5,11; 10,28; 31,43
you will be like gods, V,17
original sin and children, I,12; 13; 19; 23; 25; 7,29; 33; II,2; 4; 4,8; 18; 9,31; III,2; 8; 10; 5,11; 17,31; 19,36; 22,51; 23,52; 63; IV,3; 50; 83; V,4; 30; 48; 50; 53; 63; VI,3,6; 20; 36; 48; 55; 67; 79; 26,83
See also infant baptism
born dead, VI,14
children born from adultery, I,39; III,22,51
children of the world, VI,13,40
contracted from marriage, III,24,54
contracted from the (forgiven) parent,
VI,5,11
death of infants and, I,24
exclusion from baptism, I,6
God’s justice and, VI,2
guilt contracted before birth, II,6,15
harm done by denying, III,12,24
marriage condemned as evil, I,2,4
no personal sins, VI,19
not cleansed by rebirth (Julian), VI,7
original sin contracted, VI,4,8
parents, I,10; III,19,36; V,43
parents compared to murderers, V,43
reason for baptism, VI,14,42
rebirth for eternal life, IV,39; V,16,59
suffering as proof of, III,6,13
transmission of, V,28; 54; VI,77
passed from parents to children, III,12; V,50; 14,51; VI,14; 16
passed on by Adam’s disobedience,
IV,1,1
original justice, I,19
See also paradise
animals subject to humans, I,25
innocence and shamelessness, V,2,5; 6
intercourse in paradise, IV,11,57
no fear of serpents, I,25
producing children, III,11,21
senses of the soul, II,5,10
sexual arousal, IV,5,35; 69
shame and, IV,13,62
overindulgence:
food; repentance, IV,70
pagans, IV,27
good acts, bad manner, IV,30
painters, V,6
Palestine, II,36; III,4; IV,8,40
paradise, I,17; 32; III,22; 35; 63; IV,10,56; 72; V,28
See also original justice
Adam hides from God, IV,82
concupiscence in, III,27, 25,57;
IV,14,65; 69; V,42
dwelling place of the soul, II,5,10; 11
eating in, IV,68; 69
fasting and, I,18
grace in, IV,82
no sorrow, shame or any evil in, V,22
sex before the fall, IV,5,35; 11,57; 69; 71
sexual desire, IV,54; 69; V,22; 48; 62
sexual organs obedient in, V,29
symbol of the Church, V,6,24

Volume I/24
paradox, IV,6,36
pardon, VI,47
parents:
See also children; original sin and children; procreation
attribute all sins of, to children, III,23,52
baptized, III,66
begetting children, III,55
children punished for sins of, VI,25,82
defects transmitted by, VI,7,17
desire to have children, V,43
guilt of newborn children, V,16,59
procreation; God’s role, III,18,34
sins “of others” and our sins, VI,10,28
Parmenides, IV,15,75
passion(s), II,7; 27; III,15,29
arousal, V,23
God handed them over…, V,10
law of flesh, II,13
Paternians, V,26
patience, V,9; 13; 4,14; 22; VI,46
patriarchs:
wives; procreation, V,45
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
on death of Christ, VI,9,24
good that I will I do not…, II,3,5; 13; 14; 30; 32; III,62
Julian’s interpretation of, IV,16,79
letter to the Romans, VI,4,8
pride; angel of Satan, IV,28
Romans 5:12 (Julian on), VI,24,75
Romans 7, VI,23,70
words not permitted to be spoken, II,13
peace, II,5,10; 14; 24; 26; 32;
original justice, III,23
Pelagians, I,12; 13; 33; 35; II,7; 34; 35; III,2; 4; 32; IV,9; 17; 29; 5,35; V,6,24; 16,59; VI,18; 8,22; VI,35; 36; 38; 57; 77
five chief arguments against, II,2; 4; 7,19
perfection demanded by, II,23
refutation from the Fathers, II,1,1
support for Manichees, I,3; 8,36; 9,42; VI,21,66; 69
Pelagius, I,19; 20; 23; 32; II,14; 34; 35; 36; III,4; 9; 25; 48; IV,8,40; V,6,24; VI,18
Ambrose praised by, I,30; 44; II,11; 6,15; 21; 32
bishops duped by, I,19
penance:
fasting and, I,18
pleasure and, IV,71
perfection, IV,11
capable of attaining, II,7,19; 22
Cyprian on, II,25
grace: help in attaining, II,3; IV,15
Hilary on struggle for, II,26
hope for, VI,13,40
justification; immortality, II,22
Pelagian demand for, II,23
present life, II,28
pursuit of, II,30
salvation, VI,15,45
Peripatetics, II,37; VI,64
perizomata, V,7
persecutions:
devil and, IV,38
persons:
enduring themselves; good and bad, V,36
perversity, V,10
Peter, Saint, V,57
philosophers, V,33; VI,44; 50; 18,53
ethical, IV,76
Julian’s appeal to, IV,15,75
philosophy, IV,17
bodily excitement inimical to, IV,72
love of wisdom, IV,72
natural causes, IV,15,75
nature of reality, IV,15,75
pagan philosophers and human creation, IV,77; 83
pagan vs. Christian, IV,72
physician:
not needed by the healthy, I,18
physiology: vital organs, IV,59
piety, II,20; III,48; IV,17; 6VI, 72; VI,61
pigs, VI,20

Answer To The Pelagians II
Answer To The Pelagians II

legion of demons, IV,38
Piniarus, IV,47
Plato, I,12; II,34; IV,17; 72; 15,75; 76
on the soul, II,7,19; 32
pleasure, II,23; 10,33; IV,7; 18; V,27; VI,61; VI,71
bodily, III,48
carnal senses in paradise, IV,69
concupiscence, II,6,15; III,16,30
eating; overindulgence, IV,70
Epicurus on virtues, IV,21
excessiveness, III,14,28
flesh vs. spirit, II,13
food or drink, IV,68
genital organs, IV,14,65
human good (bodily), IV,76
invincible; flesh, V,32
licit and illicit, VI,50
moderate; excess, V,61
natural, V,38
necessities and, IV,70
pardonable use of sex, V,12,46; 63
penance and, IV,71
philosophers and, V,33
sensations, IV,66
sensual desire, IV,14,65
sex in marriage, V,40; 16,59
sexual, V,63
snares and food of the evil (Plato), IV,72; 76; V,33
Stoics, IV,59
struggle against the flesh, II,14; 6,15
thought and, V,42
will confused with, V,37
poets, V,6
Polemo, I,12; 35
poor:
using unjust riches for the needy, IV,39
Porphyry, Bishop, I,19; 32
potter, IV,46
poverty, IV,19
praise, V,56
See also under subject praised, e.g.
Ambrose, Saint; desire; etc.
all of creation, IV,66
sharing, V,8,31
prayer:
ask and you will receive…, IV,41
during sexual intercourse, II,20
married couples, III,43
predestination:
God’s goodness, V,43
gratuitous election, VI,59
many are called…., V,4,14
mystery of, V,4,14
pregnancy:
child without faith in a believing
woman, VI,43
God’s work, VI,26
human destined to be devil’s subject,
VI,43
imminent danger of mother’s death,
VI,43
pride, I,16; 35; II,23; 9,31; III,6,13; IV,11;
17; 29; 83; V,1,1; 9; 17
mind, IV,28
original sin, V,18
Paul; angel of Satan, IV,28
procreation (propagation of children),
III,16,30; 53
concupiscence and, IV,49
desire for carnal delight, V,63
good act, V,60
good of marriage, V,8,31
good use of concupiscence, IV,14,65
honor for sexual desire, V,60
marriage and, V,62
paradise, IV,69
patriarchs (O.T.), V,45
purpose of taking a wife, V,12,46; 62
sex without pleasure preferred, IV,71
sexual delight, IV,71
sexual desire, V,9,35; 37
sexual pleasure, IV,33
sexual union, III,16; 9,18
Prodigal Son, IV,28
progress, III,49
promiscuity, III,16
prophet: false, V,13
prostitute, VI,14,41
desire to be chaste, VI,55
human child in womb of, VI,43
providence, II,37

Volume I/24
effects of original sin and, I,25
God’s hidden activity, VI,59
procreation and, III,18,34; 41
reduced to nothing without, VI,59
prudence, II,12; IV,19; 20
Publius Africanus, IV,59
Punic debater, III,32
punishment, IV,15; 45; 46; 81; 82; V,4
Aristotle on, IV,78
bad angels as means of, V,3,8
children and sins of parents, VI,25,82
disobedience of the flesh as, V,3,8
God’s judgment, III,37
handed over to heart’s desire, V,10
justice and injustice, V,36
lightest for unbaptized children, V,11,44
sin as punishment for sin, V,12; 15
purification, II,27
purity, III,19,36; V,26
Pythagoras, IV,17; V,23
Pythagoreans, IV,15,75
quality(ies), VI,54
exist in a subject, V,14,51
good and bad, VI,56
moving from substance to substance, V,55
presence, VI,60
quantity and, VI,64
substance and, VI,36
quantity: contraries, VI,64
rape, III,40
rashness, IV,20
reality: right order of, I,44
reason, IV,12,58; V,42; VI,7,17
Ambrose on, II,5,10
children and, II,4,8
control over desires and members, IV,5,35
desire and, IV,73
fight against weakness, II,4,8
honoring, II,36
quality of judges, II,37
rebirth, See baptism.
reborn, See baptism; infant baptism; rebirth
reconciliation:
  Christ and the world, VI,5; 9
  God’s anger, VI,79
  repentance, V,4,14
  through one man, Christ, VI,77
  world to Christ, VI,10
redemption, VI,1,1
  adoption of the body, VI,13,40; 47
  blood of Christ, VI,2,3
  final summation, VI,26,83
  forgiveness of sin, V,1,2,3
  mercy of God, III,25
  price: blood of Christ, III,9
Regulus, IV,17; 25
religious mind, V,42
repentance, II,14; V,4,14
  God’s patience, V,4,14
  goodness of God, V,4,14
  sensual pleasures, IV,70
resurrection (of Christ):
  eighth day, VI,18
  forgiveness (Julian), VI,15,45
  united to likeness of, VI,10; 13
resurrection of the body, I,22; II,26; 32;
  IV,72; V,6,24; VI,23,70
  concupiscence in, VI,50
  passions absent, II,7
  supreme happiness, VI,46
Reticius of Autun, I,7; 32; II,10,33; 37; III,32
reward, IV,19
rhetoric, VI,11,34
riches:
  make for yourselves friends…, IV,39
  unjust, used for the needy, IV,39
righteousness, I,6,21; 27; 33; V,13,49; VI,9; 79
all human beings, VI,80
bestowed in three ways, II,23
called by God, V,4,14

Answer To The Pelagians II
capable of attaining, II, 22; 24
coming through created means, IV, 17
concupiscence and, IV, 6, 36
damnation, IV, 26
good “horses,” II, 12
grace, II, 3, 5; 4, 8; 9; 22
ignorance, III, 19, 36
Jesus alone is sinless, II, 2, 4
kingdom of God, IV, 17
merit of works of, II, 29
natural law, IV, 25
perfection of, II, 2, 4; 23; 9, 31; 32;
III, 6, 2
pleasure of the flesh and, III, 48
progress towards, II, 4, 8
shameless, V, 2, 5
sins of the righteous, II, 29
through Christ, IV, 42; 43
ture virtue in the truly righteous,
IV, 17; 19; 23
virtue, III, 19, 36
warfare against our own desires,
II, 9, 32
Roman Law:
right to bear children, III, 22
Rome, IV, 17
rule of faith, I, 17; 22; II, 5, 10
sacraments, I, 14; II, 6, 15
sacrifice:
prefiguring Christ’s sacrifice, V, 45
sacrilegious, VI, 61
saints, I, 7, 29; II, 1, 1; 29; 30; 37; IV, 9; 11;
5, 35; 6, 36
battle for chastity, V, 7, 25
enduring; continence, VI, 46
fight against concupiscence, VI, 47
glorious battles against sexual desire,
VI, 23, 70
merits, III, 48
war with evil, VI, 57
salamander, VI, 16
Sallust, III, 2
salvation, I, 30; II, 1, 3; V, 17; 13, 49
See also infant baptism
Christ, the one mediator, VI, 81
Eucharist and, I, 13
evil persons, IV, 43
God helps one but not another, IV, 45
God wills that all be saved, IV, 42; 43;
44
harmony of flesh and spirit, II, 3, 6
Irenaeus on, I, 3, 5
knocking on God’s door, IV, 42
none can come to me unless…, IV, 44;
V, 4, 14
perfection, VI, 15, 45
power of Christ alone, I, 27
Samaritan, I, 32
sanctification, VI, 17, 51
Sarah, III, 17, 31; 32; 18, 34; 19, 36; 37
chastity, III, 32
fertility, God’s gift, III, 11, 2123; 32;
18, 34
Satan, V, 3, 8; VI, 52
Saul, King, IV, 31; V, 3, 8; 23
Scipio, IV, 17; 18; 26
Scylla, VI, 50
seed, III, 22, 51; IV, 12; 69; V, 34; 53;
VI, 7, 17; 19, 24; 26; 59 spiritual;
carnal, VI, 43
seeking, asking, knocking, IV, 41; 42
self:
exterior and interior, VI, 13, 40
selfcontrol, III, 25, 57; 62; IV, 2, 6; 8
concupiscence and, III, 44; 45; 50
good of marriage and, V, 66
habits, VI, 55
love of eating, IV, 67
married couples, III, 14, 28; 15, 29;
21, 42
prayer; married couples, V, 40
senses (sensation):
arousal of passion and, V, 23
concupiscence and, IV, 14, 65
desire, VI, 56
discernment of, IV, 66
forms and, V, 14, 51
human beings, V, 55
liveliness of, IV, 14, 65
love of eating, IV, 67
necessity of, IV, 14, 65
stimulation of, vs. thought, IV, 72
usefulness of, IV, 14, 65
will and, IV, 69

Volume I/24
sensuality, II,24

sex [includes “marital intercourse”]:
See also continence; concupiscence; marriage; procreation
blameworthy pleasure, V,63
children born by union of bodies, IV,4,34
desire to have children, V,63
devil as inventor of, IV,4; V,36
embarrassment, IV,12,58; 13,62
excessiveness, III,14,28
good will; bodily pleasure, V,16,59
how to possess one’s own vessel,
V,9,35; 38; 40
increase and multiply…, IV,69
intention of having children, V,16,59
legitimate union of bodies, IV,38
marriage of Joseph and Mary, V,12,46
members as good, IV,5,35
morally good use in marriage,
III,14,28
original sin; disobedience of the flesh,
V,3,8
permissible limit of concupiscence,
IV,7
pleasure of intercourse, IV,49
praise for all intercourse, III,40
prayer during intercourse, II,20
producing children in old age, III,22
shame in talking about, IV,55
two in one flesh, III,10,20
union as evil act, IV,49
unlimited intercourse, IV,2,6; V,10
whenever moved by desire, III,14,28
whole mind/body given to, IV,71
sex differences:
body organs, V,5,19
reason for, III,16; 9,18
sexual arousal, IV,82; VI,23,70
Adam and Eve, V,7,25
before original sin, IV,13,62; 69
frequent satisfaction desired, V,40
indecent because of disobedience,
V,7,25
obedience to the will, V,5,1920
reined in by reason, IV,73

shame, IV,82
sexual desire, II,6; 15; 25; IV,10; V,29
See also concupiscence
Abimelech, III,37
Abraham and Sarah, III,22; 23
arousal of genital organs, IV,5,35; 73;
V,5,19; 20
bad use, good use, III,41
bearer of happiness, a child, IV,50
bodily injury and consent, V,22
conquering, V,28
continence vs. concupiscence, IV,64
death and, III,14,28
defect of the soul, VI,18,53
defense of, IV,60
diminished daily, VI,14,41
Diogenes the Cynic, IV,15,75
disease, III,21,42; 60; V,38
disobedience as evil, IV,63
eunuchs; fuel lacking, VI,14,41
Eve and the serpent, VI,2268
excesses, IV,12; V,39
fighting against, III,44; 50; 51; IV,9;
V,62; 63
genital heat, IV,8
good in married couples, IV,9; 10,56;
V,12,46; VI,69
good result: children, IV,39
good use of evil, III,15; IV,49; 50
governing, III,65; 66
guilt, V,60
he who looks at a woman…, IV,14,65
human beings born from, VI,55
independent power, V,26
issue: good or evil, V,27
lesser goods, IV,61
limping, V,34
longings of carnal desire, VI,14,41
marriage; condemnation, IV,10,56;
V,8,31
married couples, IV,71
movement; consent, III,62
natural, V,27
old age, V,12,46
opposition to the spirit, in paradise,
V,48
paradise before the sin, IV,54; 69
pleasure, IV,33
power of mind over, V,61
praise for, III,66; VI,16; 20; 6,24;
11,34; 35; 46
procreation; honor, V,60
punishment of sin, V,9
reining in, VI,35; 14,41; 61
risen bodies, IV,54
servitude, IV,69
shame of first human beings, IV,54
spouses put evil to good use, VI,42; 55; 60; 69
state of original justice, IV,11,57
ugliness of, V,37
use of the evil in marriage, V,10,41
vicious part of mind, V,33
wallowing in, within marriage, III,14,28
will and, III,25,57; V,21; 22
wound in our nature, III,26,59
yielding to, V,12,46
sexual organs:
Adam’s nakedness, V,33
chastity and, IV,59
condemnation of arousal, IV,13,62
covered out of modesty, IV,16,79
devil and, IV,83
diabolical, IV,81
dishonorable, V,37
disobedience of, V,3,8
law in members resisting law of mind, VI,72
less respectable members (Paul), IV,80
man and wife, V,40
members called “nature,” VI,20
obedient in paradise, V,29
Paul’s use of term “body,” V,5,19
pleasure, IV,14,65
put earthly members to death, VI,14,41
reproductive organs, VI,55
resisting law of the mind, VI,44; 60;
20,63
shame; covered, IV,12,58; V,2,5
shame (Paul), IV,16,79
sleep and the will, V,42
soul in control of, V,6,24
shame, II,6; 5,10; 11; 14; 15; 16; 17; 25;
III,10,20; 20,38; 53; 65; IV,55; 82;
V,2,5; 6; 20; 27; 29; 8,31; 33; 39; VI,35
See also Adam and Eve
first sin and sense of, IV,9,53; 13,62
genitals covered, IV,12,58
old age, V,62
sexual organs; animals, IV,12,58
sheep: goodness of, VI,20
shrewdness, IV,20
sick: baptized, VI,52
silence, IV,42
sin, V,3
See also concupiscence; consent;
original sin; will
adults; guilt, III,6,13
all that does not come from faith,
IV,24; 27; 32
Ambrose on, II,3,5
avenging the injustice of, V,16
avenging the sins of parents, VI,25,82
blackness of, IV,33
both sin and punishment for sin in
will, VI,38
brusling the temple of God, VI,46
captive in law of, II,13; 14; VI,23,70
children infected by parents’ sins,
VI,10,28
Christ died for those dead in, VI,4,8
concupiscence the parent of, VI,47
continuing to live in, VI,10; 13
created beings and guilt, II,2; 4; III,46
crucified when Christ died, II,3,5; 4,8;
22
dead; burial, II,32
death of/to, I,27; 33; VI,33
dead produced for (Paul), VI,73
death rescues us from law of, II,14
denial that desire for is evil, VI,48
desire for, IV,10
destroyed by grace, I,33
destroyed by the cross, II,18
died to; living for God, VI,42
driven toward, II,28
dying to:
baptism, VI,7
reborn for God, VI,14
effect of a blind heart, V,3,8
faith versus, II,28
fig leaves; symbol, II,17
foreskin as sign of, VI,20; 21
forgiven in world to come, VI,15,45
forgiveness, See forgiveness of sin.
forgiven; remains in mortal flesh, II,3,5
free choice needed for, VI,10,28
God as cause of, III,55
God does not dwell in body subject to, VI,43
good acts done in a bad manner, IV,32
good use of something evil, V,60
grace and, VI,9
guilt based on end, not action, IV,21
guilt for sins remembered, VI,62
hate as both sin and penalty for sin, VI,2
hatefulness of, II,13
holding us until the last death, VI,48
human beings can avoid all, V,27; 29
if we say we have no sin…, II,25; IV,29; V,27
imitating animals, IV,74
imitation of the first man, VI,24,75; 77
impure thoughts, II,10,33
infants and body of, VI,13
it is not I who do that…, VI,73
known through the law (Paul), VI,73
law and, VI,9
law could not remove, VI,9
law of, II,5,10; 12; 13; III,62; V,7; 30; 36
Ambrose on, II,6,15
in bodily members, II,10,33; III,11,21; 61; 3,5; 7; 4,8; 9; 11; 13; 14; 30; 32; V,3,8; 6,24; 7,25
struggle against, II,10,33
motion of the male body, II,5,10
nature free of all defect, V,16,59
newborns innocent of personal sin, III,23,52
no one is clean from filth (Job), V,13,49
origin: God or devil, III,55
parents' sins and our sins, VI,10,28; 25,82
personal sins, VI,24; 75; 76
possibility of being without, IV,29
prevailing over other sins, IV,28
punishment of, III,18,34; V,3,8; 9,35
fitting, II,3
sins as punishment for sin, V,10; 36
subsequent sin, V,12; 15
reborn made subject to, V,56
resisting desire for, VI,73
rising from something free of sin, V,16,59
sacrifices for, VI,26,83
sacrifices [O.T.] for, V,45
serving no longer, VI,10; 13
set free from; grace, VI,13,40
signified by death of Christ, VI,7
something both sin and punishment for sin, V,36
struggle to avoid, VI,72
virtues overcome, IV,28
will or nature, III,4
wrong action done in faith, IV,51
sinners, II,28; III,19,36; 64; V,11,44
Christ died only for, VI,4,8
death as punishment, VI,55
disobedience of one man, VI,9
gifts of God to, IV,27
God works for benefit of, VI,25
punished through bad angels, V,3,8
punished through the devil, V,3,8
punishment for themselves, V,36
punishment: God and devil, V,36
thorns as punishment for, VI,65
slander, I,12; II,28; III,19; 18,34; 47; 23,52; IV,3,14; 47; 49; 51; V,1,1; 26; 48; VI,5,11; 23; VI,39; 13,40
slaves, IV,61; V,12; VI,64
sleep, V,21; 42
sleep: paradise, V,42
Sodom, V,11,44
Sodomites, III,39
Solomon, King, VI,25,82
Son of God:
See also incarnation; Jesus Christ
not of the world, VI,4
song, IV,66
Soranus, V,14,51
speech: tongue in check, I,20
spirit:
desire of flesh conquered by, IV,73
desires in opposition to flesh, I,17; II,11; 10,33; III,13,26; 50; 62; 66; IV,2; 4,34; 13,62; 66; 67; 69; 72; V,27; 28; 36; 55; 56; 58; VI,13,40; 14,41; 15,45; 46; 47; 48; 50; 57; 71
discord with flesh, IV,38
free rein given to assaults on, II,13
live: put works of flesh to death, VI,56
soul attacked by flesh, II,7
war with the flesh, II,3,6; 7; 11

spiritual combat:
conflict within us, II,27; 32
dead sin comes back to life, II,32
flesh vs. spirit, II,7; 4,8; 32

spiritual life:
See also grace
higher parts subservient to lower,
VI,62
internal enemy, VI,46
law of flesh vs. law of mind, II,13;
10,33; III,61
progress; battle with evil desires,
VI,56
progress; diminishing of ignorance,
VI,16,49

Stephen, Saint, VI,76
sterility, III,22
Stoics, III,8; IV,12,58; 59; 72; 76; VI,64
stubbornness, II,14; 30; III,32; IV,20;
V,12; 13; VI,4,8; 26,83
stupidity, VI,1,1; 64
subject: contraries, VI,64

substance:
See also quality
comparing, VI,19,58
evil as, I,16; II,9
existing without, VI,36
guilt as, VI,62
qualities and, VI,36

suffering:
Adam’s will as origin of, III,5,11
endured by Christ, V,55
goodness of God and, III,10
innocent children, III,9; 10; 6,13
sun:
rises on the good and the bad, V,13,49;
57
syllogisms: Julian; logic, III,7,14
taste: moderation in eating, IV,68
temperance, IV,19
sex in marriage, II,20
sexual excess, V,39
temple of God (human body), I,17
body; Holy Spirit, VI,42
building the, VI,14,41
chastity, VI,13,40
constructed after captivity, VI,42
daring to bruise, VI,46
evils in, displeasing God, VI,46
hope, VI,13,40
pigpen of desires and, II,5,10; 11
sexual desire diminishing, VI,14,41
Spirit of God dwells in, VI,16,49
women; womb, VI,43
temporal goods, IV,19
temptation, II,7; IV,59; VI,60
body tempted, soul suffers, II,5,10
checked by strength of mind, II,27
grace not to enter, VI,44

Thales of Miletus, IV,15,75

theft, IV,39
thirst, IV,67
thorns, VI,65

thought:
confusion of mind and heart, II,23
sensual pleasures and, IV,70; IV,72;
V,42
timidity, VI,54; 60
touching, IV,66; 70
tree:
barren, IV,22; 32; 33
disobedience of sexual desire, IV,63
fruit: good and bad, VI,19,58
good tree, bad fruit, I,38; 39; 40;
III,55; IV,22; 30; 32
metaphor for human beings, VI,19,58
tree of life, IV,69

Trinity, I,8,36; V,4
begotten Son is coeternal, II,4,8
body as temple of God, I,17

trust:
mercy of God, III,48
truth, I,1,1; 3; 16; 7,29; 34; II,14; 25; 29;
9,31; III,1,1; 2,7; 35; 21,42; IV,2,6;
Valentinian, IV,14,41
valuation, IV,19
vanities, II,23; VI,39
Venustians, V,26
vice(s), II,2; 4; 7; 5,10; 11; 20; III,65; V,7,25; VI,1,1
bad “horses,” II,12; III,14,28
death; burial, II,32
death of, II,14
inclinations toward, II,28
law of mind vs. law of sin, II,12
soul filled with, IV,61
struggle with, II,24
truth found in, IV,20
victory over, II,27
will and, V,27
virgin birth, I,2,4; 10; II,2,4; 4,8
virginity, I,17; III,21,42
chastity and; the body, IV,48
holy, IV,9
love of, V,65
unbelievers; goodness, IV,50
virgins, III,43; IV,10; 48; 50; V,6,24; 61
virility, V,58
virtue(s), III,65; V,56
attaining, II,9; 7,19; 9,31
body shares in, I,17
capability of, III,19,36
cardinal = good “horses,” II,12
Cato on, V,38
concupiscence as enemy of, IV,14,65
defined, IV,19; 22
desire for, II,5,10
dispositions and, IV,22
distinguished by their ends, IV,21
fight against concupiscence, V,28
form of immutable substance (God), IV,17
gifts abounding in unbelievers, IV,16; 27
good works, IV,33
grace bestows, IV,48
heart the abode of, V,10
human goodness, III,48
incapability of human nature for, II,2,4
joy, III,10
made perfect in weakness, IV,11
people without faith, IV,3,14; 16; 24
perfection; grace, II,3; 4; 25; 32
progress in (Ambrose), II,22
pursuit of, III,64
reside in the mind, IV,3,14
servants of pleasure (Epicurus), IV,21
set afire for, II,30
tested, VI,67
true and false, IV,21
truly righteous people, IV,17; 19
trust in oneself, II,29
vices opposed to each, IV,20
weakening; battle, V,56
will and, VI,73

ugliness, V,14,51
unbelief, II,28; V,15,52
cause of killing of Christ, V,3,8
passed on by believing parents, VI,43
pleasing God, IV,23
unbelievers, III,55
chastity, IV,3,14; 17; 27
condemnation, VI,29
exalted by chastity, IV,50
gifts of God to, IV,27
good actions by, IV,32
good tree, IV,30
praise of, IV,16
serious sins of, V,10
true arguments of, IV,72
virtue and, IV,3,14; 16; 25; 27
understanding, III,1,1
union of bodies, See sex.
universe: evil in, V,8,31
Ursicinus, VI,38

Valentian, VI,14,41
values, IV,19
vanities, II,23; VI,39
Venustians, V,26
vice(s), II,2; 4; 7; 5,10; 11; 20; III,65; V,7,25; VI,1,1
bad “horses,” II,12; III,14,28
death; burial, II,32
death of, II,14
inclinations toward, II,28
law of mind vs. law of sin, II,12
soul filled with, IV,61
voluntaarity, VI,9,24
voluntas, V,37
voluptas, V,37

way of life: correcting, VI,76
weakness, II,3; 4,8; 9; 12; 23; 24; 27; 32; III,14,28; IV,11; 28; 4,34; 61; 67; V,12,46; VI,13,40; 46
    God chose the weak things…., VI,23
wealth, IV,18
wheat, grain of, VI,15
wickedness:
    handed over to desires of the heart, V,10; 11
    saints wage war with, VI,57
widow, IV,48
wife:
    subject to husband, VI,64; 65
will, VI,50
    actions as fruit of, I,38
    acts produced by God, IV,15; 16
    assaults on resolve of, II,6,15
    bodily impediments, V,21
    both sin and punishment for sin in,
        VI,38
    carnal senses subject to, IV,69
    chastity and a dissolute will, IV,48
    discipling sensations, IV,66
    dispositions and virtue, IV,19
    doing the evil I do not will, II,14; 30;
        VI,73
    doing the evil that is hated, II,3,5; 13; 32
    evil, I,37
    excess; defect, III,27
    foolish and harmful, IV,32
    good end for having children, V,10,41
    good will, good tree, I,45
    goodness: a will without faith, IV,30
    habits and, VI,55
    hearts of evil persons run wild, VI,73
    helped by grace, V,65
    idolatry, VI,61
    Manicheeism, I,16
    merciful, IV,31
    moderation of arousal, III,27; IV,69
    natural evils, IV,16
    obedience of bodily members, V,5,19
    paradise, V,29
    pleasure confused with, V,37
    prepared by the Lord, I,45; IV,44
    salvific, IV,8,40
    sexual arousal and, V,5,1920; 22
    sexual desire and, III,26,59
    sexual organs in sleep, V,42
    sexual sins, V,63
    sin and, III,4
    sinfulness; condemnation, VI,20,63
    soul with evil disposition, VI,54
    vice and, V,27
    virtue and, VI,73
will of God:
    fate and, IV,46
    flesh vs. spirit, II,3,6
    free choice to resist, IV,42
    injustice and, V,15
wine, III,41; IV,73
wisdom, II,7; 36; 37; III,1,1; IV,61; V,13; 36; VI,1,1; 64
    animals and desire for, IV,74
    coming to, from infancy, V,18
    desire for, IV,17; 18
    God loves one abiding in, VI,1,1
    house built by, II,6,15
    infants lacking, V,18
    love of, IV,14,65
    piety, III,48
    sensual pleasures and, IV,71
    serpent; flesh, II,13
wolves, VI,20
women:
    cause of sin for man, II,20
    chaste, V,23
    dowries, V,7
    humans formed in womb, VI,43
    married, V,6,24
    passion, V,23
    sexual arousal, IV,13,62
    wonder, VI,7,17
Word of God:
    creation through, II,4,8
    made flesh, VI,77
words of God (scripture):
    meditating; living, VI,76
worldliness, II,23; 25
children of the, VI,13,40
chosen from, VI,4
created by Father through Son, IV,64
devil and child of concupiscence,
   VI,2,3
devil’s power over, VI,2,3
fleeing from, II,32
flesh, eyes, and pride of life, VI,2,3
hatred for Christ, VI,4
heavenly things vs., II,3,6
judgment of the, VI,4
love of, IV,33; V,60
reconciled to Christ, VI,5; 9; 10
rescue from present evil, VI,44
term for human beings, VI,4
use like those who do not use, V,60
wound: as substance, VI,19,58

Xenocrates, I,12; 35
Xenophanes, IV,15,75

Zeno, II,34
Zoboennus, Bishop, I,19; 32
Zoninus, Bishop, I,19; 32
Zosimus, Pope: Julian’s accusations
against, VI,12,37
Index from
Against Two Letters of the Pelagians
(Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians II

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume contains three works of Saint Augustine of Hippo: Marriage and Desire (De nuptiis et concupiscentia); Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians (Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum); and Answer to Julian (Contra Julianum).

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-107-7, 6 x 9 in., 596 pp., 1998

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Volume I/24

## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermons and Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>51:7</strong></td>
<td>IV, 10, 27; IV, 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>51:12</strong></td>
<td>III, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>51:17</strong></td>
<td>II, 9, 20; II, 9, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>59:11</strong></td>
<td>II, 9, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>77:10–11</strong></td>
<td>II, 10, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>81:2</strong></td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>81:11</strong></td>
<td>II, 9, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>84:6</strong></td>
<td>IV, 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>94:8</strong></td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>95:67</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>104:27–30</strong></td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>104:28</strong></td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>116:10</strong></td>
<td>I, 21, 39; III, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>116:12</strong></td>
<td>III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>119:36</strong></td>
<td>IV, 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>143:10</strong></td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3:16</strong></td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8:35 LXX</strong></td>
<td>I, 18, 36; II, 9, 20; IV, 6, 12; IV, 9, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>16:1</strong></td>
<td>II, 9, 19; II, 9, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>19:14</strong></td>
<td>I, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>20:9</strong></td>
<td>IV, 10, 27; IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7:30</strong></td>
<td>II, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1:2</strong></td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1:18–20</strong></td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1:19–20</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>54:1</strong></td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>56:1</strong></td>
<td>IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>59:2</strong></td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9:2223 LXX</strong></td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>17:5</strong></td>
<td>I, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>32:40–41</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>32:41</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:22</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:22–27</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:22.32</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:26</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:26–27</strong></td>
<td>I, 20, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:27</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:32.36.22</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:32–38</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>36:37–38</strong></td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians**

**Old Testament**

**Genesis**
- 1:34: II, 7, 15
- 1:27–28: IV, 5, 9
- 1:28: IV, 2, 2
- 2:24: I, 5, 9
- 3:17–19: IV, 8, 22
- 25:23: II, 7, 15

**Exodus**
- 4:12: II, 9, 20
- 20:17: I, 7, 12
- 33:20: IV, 11, 31

**Leviticus**
- 18:5: IV, 5, 10
- 19:2: IV, 9, 25

**2 Chronicles**
- 30:12: I, 20, 38

**Ezra**
- 8:28: IV, 6, 14

**Esther**
- 14:13: I, 20, 38

**Job**
- 14:4 LXX: IV, 4, 4
- 14:5 LXX: IV, 10, 27

**Psalms**
- 6:3: III, 3, 5
- 14:1: IV, 11, 31
- 17:15: III, 7, 17
- 18:2: III, 3, 5; III, 4, 13
- 21:4: II, 9, 21
- 23:6: II, 9, 21
- 25:15: III, 3, 5
- 31:10: III, 3, 5
- 33:1: III, 7, 17
- 34:3: III, 8, 24
- 40:34: III, 4, 6
- 49:7: I, 7, 12

---

**Proverbs**

**Isaiah**
- 1:2: IV, 11, 31
- 1:18–20: IV, 2, 2
- 1:19–20: IV, 6, 12
- 54:1: III, 4, 13
- 56:1: IV, 10, 28
- 59:2: IV, 4, 8

**Jeremiah**
- 9:2223 LXX: III, 7, 17
- 17:5: I, 7, 12
- 32:40–41: IV, 6, 14
- 32:41: IV, 6, 15

---

**Sirach**
- 7:30: II, 2, 2

---

**Ezekiel**
- 36:22: IV, 6, 15
- 36:22–27: IV, 6, 14
- 36:22.32: IV, 6, 15
- 36:26: IV, 6, 15
- 36:26–27: I, 20, 38
- 36:27: IV, 6, 15
- 36:32.36.22: IV, 6, 15
- 36:32–38: IV, 6, 14
- 36:37–38: IV, 6, 15

---

**Answer To The Pelagians II**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk 2:4</td>
<td>III, 3, 5; III, 5, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi 1:23</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 5:6</td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25; IV, 10, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25; IV, 9, 26; IV, 10, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10:12</td>
<td>III, 7, 17; III, 7, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 11, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 13, 27; I, 14, 38; III, 3, 5; III, 5, 14; III, 5, 15; III, 6, 16; IV, 7, 17; IV, 10, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>I, 13, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>II, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>I, 22, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 8, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2; IV, 5, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>I, 5, 9; IV, 2, 2; IV, 5, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>III, 3, 5; IV, 11, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13–15</td>
<td>II, 7, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15</td>
<td>II, 7, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark 9:49</td>
<td>IV, 10, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:56</td>
<td>IV, 8, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41–42</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:34</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John 1:12</td>
<td>I, 2, 5; I, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>III, 4, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>I, 3, 6; I, 19, 37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54</td>
<td>I, 22, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:63–64</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:64–65</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:65</td>
<td>I, 19, 37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:66</td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>I, 2, 5; II, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>III, 7, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans 1:17</td>
<td>I, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1920</td>
<td>IV, 11, 30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>I, 8, 13; I, 9, 16; I, 11, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20–21</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20–24</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27–28</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1315</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14–15</td>
<td>III, 4, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>III, 2, 3; III, 4, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8–11</td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>IV, 4, 7; IV, 4, 8; IV, 8, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>I, 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20–22</td>
<td>I, 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:46</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I, 8, 13; I, 9, 16; I, 11, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7b–13</td>
<td>I, 8, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>I, 9, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9a</td>
<td>I, 9, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9b</td>
<td>I, 9, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12–13</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>I, 9, 16; I, 11, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 10, 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14b</td>
<td>I, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14c</td>
<td>I, 10, 17; I, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>I, 10, 18; I, 11, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>I, 10, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>I, 10, 18; I, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>I, 8, 13; I, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18a</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/24
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
<th>Reference 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:18b</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19–20</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>I, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22–23</td>
<td>I, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>I, 10, 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>I, 11, 23; IV, 11, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24–25a</td>
<td>I, 10, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25b</td>
<td>I, 10, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>I, 10, 21; I, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>I, 10, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>II, 2, 3; III, 6, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10–11</td>
<td>I, 11, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>III, 2, 2; IV, 6, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>I, 10, 17; I, 11, 23; III, 3, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24–25</td>
<td>III, 3, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28–29</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11–13</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14–16</td>
<td>IV, 6, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>II, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>II, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>II, 7, 13; II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:19</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>IV, 6, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20–21</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22–23</td>
<td>II, 7, 15; IV, 6, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:34</td>
<td>I, 20, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:56</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33–36</td>
<td>IV, 6, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>IV, 5, 10; IV, 6, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>III, 7, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>IV, 10, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>I, 3, 7; III, 5, 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
<th>Reference 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td>I, 10, 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>III, 2, 2; IV, 4, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
<th>Reference 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 8, 18; II, 9, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>III, 2, 2; III, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6b</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15.14</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>I, 21, 39; III, 4, 11; IV, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:67</td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20–21</td>
<td>III, 6, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>III, 5, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9a</td>
<td>III, 7, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9b</td>
<td>III, 7, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
<th>Reference 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>III, 7, 22; IV, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>I, 8, 14; III, 4, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11–12</td>
<td>IV, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15–18</td>
<td>III, 4, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>III, 4, 7; IV, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>III, 2, 3; III, 4, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21b–22</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21–26</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>III, 4, 6; III, 4, 7; III, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>III, 4, 9; III, 4, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:28</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:31</td>
<td>III, 2, 3; III, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>III, 3, 5; III, 4, 11; III, 5, 14; IV, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
<th>Reference 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:89</td>
<td>II, 6, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
<th>Reference 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>II, 8, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>IV, 10, 27; IV, 10, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28–29</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians II
## Answer To The Pelagians II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>I, 18, 36; I, 20, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>III, 7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6b</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:69</td>
<td>III, 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>III, 7, 20; III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9–10</td>
<td>III, 7, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11–12</td>
<td>III, 7, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12–13</td>
<td>III, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12b</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13–14</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 3, 5; III, 5, 15; IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15a</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15b</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17–19a</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Colossians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>I, 6, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>III, 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:25</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Timothy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>I, 7, 12; I, 21, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>I, 14, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>IV, 8, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Timothy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8–10</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Titus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>I, 14, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:47</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>I, 19, 37; III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hebrews**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>I, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**James**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:14–15</td>
<td>I, 13, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>II, 2, 2; III, 8, 24; IV, 3, 3; IV, 7, 18; IV, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:89</td>
<td>IV, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume I/24**
SUBJECT INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians

ability: comes from God, II,18
Abraham:
 promises; inheritance, I,8,13; III,4,6; 7; 11; 13
two sons (two testaments), III,12
Adam and Eve:
 See also original sin
Adam, in whom all have sinned…, IV,7
conscience, I,16
curse from their sin, IV,22
death as punishment, IV,6; 24
death deserved, IV,6
eyes were opened, I,16,32
adoption:
 redemption of the body, I,10,17; 11,23; III,5
adultery, I,30; IV,24; 26
Africa, II,3,5; 4,6
almsgiving, III,5,14; IV,18
goodness of sins, I,14,28
Alypius, Bishop, I,1,1
Ambrose, Saint, IV,34
 on grace, IV,30
 on original sin, IV,11,29
 on righteousness of saints, IV,31
angels, II,12; III,18; 22; 23
anger, I,20,38; III,7; IV,10,27
law and, I,8,13
revenge, III,5,14
vessels of, II,15; IV,16
Apostasy, II,3,5; IV,2,2; 18; 28
baptism:
 See also infant baptism; original sin
children of God, II,6,11
complete renewal of human beings,
IV,2,2; 7,17
effects: complete purification, I,23,41
forgiveness of sin (Pelagian), IV,5; 23
guilt of, forgiven by, I,14,28
necessary for all ages, II,10; 6,11;
IV,1,1; 2,2; 5
no one is excluded from, IV,23
Pelagian slander: no full forgiveness,
I,12,26
Pelagian teaching, I,22,40; III,3,4;
8,24
reconciliation with God, IV,8
salvation realized in, III,5
washes away all sins, II,4,6; III,5;
6,16; IV,28
belch, IV,7,17
bible:
 Catholic faith transmitted through,
IV,12,32
two testaments, III,4,6
bishops:
Africa, II,3,5
pastoral lookout, I,2
Pelagian, II,10
signatures obtained by force, IV,34
blasphemy, IV,4,4
boasting, II,15; III,22; IV,9,25; 26; 28
body and soul:
 See also human body
 carnal spirit; spiritual body, I,10,17
corruptible body weighs down the
soul, I,10,17; 24

Answer To The Pelagians II
Manichean/Pelagian idea of soul, II,2,2
origin of souls, III,10,26
soul as particle of God, II,2,2
souls equal to soul of Christ (Pelagianism), IV,2,2
struggle between flesh and spirit, IV,9,25

Boniface, Pope, I,1,1

Caelestius, I,5,9; II,3,5; 4,6; 8; 10
calling:
choice and grace, II,10,22
God's choice, II,7,13
many are called, few are chosen, II,10,22
resisting God’s call, IV,13

Catholic Church, III,10,26; IV,23
defense against Manichees, II,2,2
defense against Pelagians, II,2,2
love and hate, II,4

Catholic faith, IV,1,1; 4,4; 8; 8,20; 11,29; 12,32; 33

Catholics, II,1,1; IV,6,12; 13; 24; 10,27; 33

change, II,7,14
change: grace and the good, II,23

children (infants; newborn): all are born subject to sin, IV,11,29
birth: glory given to the creator, IV,3,3
born free from all fault, IV,5,9
conceived in evil, IV,4,4
death unjust (Pelagian view), IV,6
dying without baptism, II,7,14
God, creator of the newborn, IV,2,2; 4,4; 24
good by reason of creation, IV,4,4
good result of marriage, I,33
infant purity like that of Christ, IV,5
newborn; kiss work of God’s hands, IV,24
newborn; Pelagian claims, I,6,11
See salvation.
setting the soul free, IV,4,4
of the world; of the devil, III,3,4
children of God, I,5; III,2,2; 3,4; III,19
baptism and, II,6,11

becoming: gift of God, I,3,6
Christ the means to, IV,6
confessing sins, III,3,4
one twin unbaptized, II,16

children of the promise, III,8; 12
choice (free choice), III,2,2; IV,26; 30; 33; 34
beginning of evil, II,2,2
calling and grace, II,10,22
captive, III,8,24
desire for virtue, II,10,22
faith; gift of God, I,3,6
free by grace of God, III,9,25
good actions, II,8,17
Holy Spirit and, I,20,38
humans become evil by, IV,6
merit obtaining mercy, II,10,22
original sin and, I,2,4; 5; II,4,6
Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; IV,1,1; 2,2; 6,1216
Pelagian slander, I,2,4
Pelagian understanding of, I,15,29; 24,42

Christian life:
if Christ is in you..., I,24
regarding all things as loss..., III,19

church:
holy and spotless (baptism), IV,7,17; 28
human sheep as members, IV,15
without stain or wrinkle, IV,7,17
circumcision, III,10; 22
baptism and (Fidus), IV,23
cities: deserted, IV,15

commandment(s):
carrying out, III,7,17
contempt for, IV,28
faith working through love, III,9
free choice in keeping, I,2,2
holy, righteous and good, I,14; III,2,2
motive for observing, III,11
observing in the heart, III,9
perpetual life, IV,10
reward for observing, III,7,17; 23
righteous keeping of, III,5,14
signs, III,10

ten commandments, III,10

conception:

no one is free from sin, IV,11,29

sexual intercourse necessary for, I,10

concupiscence, III,8,24; 9,25

See also flesh; purity; sex

actions from impulse of, I,18

all are tempted by, I,27

arousal, in paradise, I,35

consent to sin, I,18; 19

disease, I,11,23

disordered, I,17,34

freed from, I,24

good is incomplete with, I,19

law of sin, I,21

Manichean view of, II,2,2

marriage and, IV,3,3

Pelagian view of, I,27; II,2,2

selfcontrol, I,24; 35

sin and, I,27

sins washed away by daily prayer,

I,14,28

condemnation, I,22

conscience, II,1,1; IV,10,27

first human beings, I,16

consent, I,20; 21; 24; 27; 15,29; 11,23

carnal inclinations, I,10,17

disordered concupiscence, I,17,34

sex in paradise, I,35

conversion:

none can come to me unless…, I,19,37

secret and sudden (grace), I,19,37

Council of Carthage, II,4,6; 7

creation:

ashamed of works of creator, I,33

creature(s):

goodness of each, II,1,1

Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; 9,25;

IV,1,1; 2,2; 4,4; 33

cross: enemies of, III,22

curse, IV,10,27

Cyprian, Saint, IV,12,32; 34

on grace, IV,9,25

on original sin, IV,8,2124

on progress in holiness, IV,10,27

damnation, II,16; III,5,14

darkness, IV,31

set apart, II,15

David, King, IV,11,29

death:

in Adam all die, IV,8

Ambrose on, IV,31

delivered from law of, I,8,13

freed from body of, I,21; 11,23

longing for Christ, IV,10,27

passed on to human race by Adam,

IV,6; 7; 24

produced by sin, I,14

righteousness and, IV,28

sin came first; death followed, IV,7

delight, I,3,6; 7; 16; 20; 22; II,21; IV,11;

10,27

desire:

carnal, III,11

evil; consent, I,24

for God, IV,31

God cooperates with, IV,30

for good, even if imperfect, II,18

grace: desire to keep the

commandments, III,7,17

helped by grace, II,10,22

interior transgression of the law, I,9,15

sinful, in heaven, III,7,17

tinking is less than, II,18

you shall not desire…, I,7,12; 14; 16

devil, III,8,24; IV,21; 24; 9,25; 10,27

children of (Pelagianism), III,3,4

creation of human beings, I,6,11

evil actions and, I,18,36; 19,37

marriage and, IV,5,9

original sin and power of, I,35

originator of all sin, III,3,4

power over infants, I,6,11

sexual passion and, I,10

subjection to, II,5,9

dignity: flesh of Christ as source, II,3

dogs, III,22

drunkenness, IV,10,27

Eastern churches, IV,21

Volume I/24
Elisha: symbol of Christ, IV,11
enemies: love of, IV,9,25
envy, IV,10,27
eternal life, I,21,39; IV,22
See also heaven; salvation
hope of, I,9,15
law; faith in Christ, IV,10
total rebirth, IV,31
Eucharist:
eternal life (Pope Innocent), II,7
food of salvation, IV,9,25
unless you eat my flesh…, I,22,40
evil, See good and evil.

failure, III,5,14
faith, II,8
apostles lived by, III,15
beginning of; grace, II,23
belief given by the Father, I,19,37
come to me = believe in me, I,3,6
everything that does not come from, is
sin, III,5,14
free choice (Pelagian), I,3,6
fruits of, III,5,14
gift of God, I,3,6
given gratuitously, IV,10
help of grace, IV,10
I believed; therefore I have spoken,
I,21,39; III,11
keeping the commandments, III,9
measure of, given to each, IV,14
none can come to me…, I,3,6; 19,37
old and New Testaments: one faith,
III,11
progress in path of, III,22
promise made to Abraham, III,7
righteous live by, I,7; 7,12; III,5; 13;
14; 19; 23
salvation and grace, II,12
seeing what we now believe, III,19
seeking grace, I,14
spirit of, IV,10
those not yet Christians in name, III,11
upholds the law, IV,11
we walk by faith, not vision, III,7,17
willingness to believe, I,19,37
works through love, III,11; 21; IV,10
falsehood, II,16
fate, II,5,9; 6,11; 16; 8,17; IV,26
astrology, II,12; 14
fear, IV,10; 11
carnal, III,9
Fidus, Bishop, IV,23
fig leaves, I,31
flesh, III,22; IV,4,4
See also body and soul; human body
desires of, I,9,15
desires opposed to spirit, IV,9,25
evil body created by evil spirit, IV,6
good does not dwell in, I,19
held captive by, I,20
resisting law of the mind, IV,31
serve law of sin with, I,21
sins of, I,7; IV,10,27
subject to corruption, I,20
trusting in, III,2,2
vices of, IV,28
forgiveness of sin:
almsgiving, I,14,28
baptism and, IV,23
Christ, the sinless one, IV,4,4
daily prayer for, IV,33; 34
faith and, III,5,14
Pelagian view, I,12,26; III,8,24
redemption, III,6,16
sinners without faith, III,3,4
fornication, I,30
free choice, See choice; will.
friendship: faithful only in Christ, I,1,1
future:
new heaven, new earth, IV,31
no sin in heaven, III,5
garment (the word), I,16,32
gifts (of God), II,7,13; 21
Father in heaven giving, III,3,4; 5
given to those who are evil, IV,15
given without merit, II,7,13
one receives, one does not receive,
IV,16
glory, III,5,14
human body, I,11,23
revealed, III,7,17
God:
 anger, II,15
 becoming united with, IV,31
 completion of our good works, II,18; 23
 foreknowledge of evil, II,16
 holy name, IV,14
 impartiality, II,7,13
 injustice not found in, IV,16
 love from, II,21
 no iniquity in, I,20,38
 not made, II,1
 who can see his face and live? IV,31

good and evil:
 See also sin
 choice as beginning of evil, II,2,2
 choosing evil out of ignorance, I,27
 evil nature coeternal with God, III,9,25
 fate, II,12
 fear of punishment, II,21
 flesh as evil, IV,6
 forced to do evil, I,18,36
 free choice, I,3,6; II,8,17
 God gives good in exchange for evil, IV,14
 God’s foreknowledge, II,16
 good does not dwell in me…, I,8,13; 19
 humans become evil by choice, IV,6
 reward, in afterlife, IV,2,2; 18
 sweetness of the good, II,21
 wanting to do good, evil is at hand, I,19

good works:
 begun and completed by God, II,18; 23
 grace as payment for, II,15
 Jacob loved for, II,15
 preparing the heart for, II,9,19; 20
 work through love, III,5,14

goodness:
 consenting to and willing, II,8,17
 delight in, I,22
 desire for; from God, II,21
 grace and change, II,23
 grace necessary for, I,7; IV,26
 Holy Spirit necessary for, IV,28
 imperfect good desired, II,18
 making themselves good, IV,13

nature and will, II,3
 one who makes us good, IV,15
 there is no one who does good…, IV,31
 will to be good, I,18,36; 19,37

gospel: spread of, III,9
 grace, I,5; 18; 24; 15,29; 20,38; 21,39;
 II,3; 4,6; 15; III,2,2; 11; 18; IV,21
 being owed, or freely given, I,19,37
 calling and choice, II,10,22
 children of God; sin, III,3,4
 conversion of enemies of Christ,
 I,19,37
 Cyprian on, IV,9,25
 delight in the good, I,22
 desire for good and, II,18
 desire helped by, II,10,22
 desire to keep the commandments,
 III,7,17
 enemies of, III,12; 21; IV,11
 evil and, I,7
 faith and, IV,10
 fate and, II,10; 6,11
 food at the proper time…, IV,31
 freed from body of this death, I,21
 freedom of will and, IV,3,3
 goodness and change, II,23; IV,26
 gratuitous, not owed, II,15
 gratuitously given, I,7; II,6,11; 7,13;
 10,22; IV,15
 help for good actions, I,18,36; 19,37
 help for good intention, II,10; 6,11;
 8,17; 22; IV,2,2; 13
 help in our weakness, III,22; 9,25
 heretical enemies of, I,2; 7,12
 keeping the commandments and,
 III,10
 law as, IV,11
 love and, I,8,13
 makes us good, IV,15
 Manichees = enemies of, II,1,1
 merit and, I,3,6; 4,8; 19,37; 24,42;
 II,5,9; 10; 8,17; 10,22; III,8,24;
 IV,2,2; 15; 16; 19; 30; 33
 necessity: Ambrose on, IV,30
 obedience to the law and, III,2,2
 Paul defending, I,8,13
 Pelagian enemies of, I,24,42
 Pelagian objections replied to, II,5,9;
 8,17
 Pelagian slander, I,2,4
Pelagian teaching, I,18,36
Pelagianism; five praises, IV,1,1; 10; 19
praise of the law against, IV,10
prayer and, II,23
redemption, I,8,13
salvation by, I,9,15
saved by faith, II,12
scripture on power of, I,20,38
seeking, through faith, I,14
sin abounding, III,7
something owed, II,3
Spirit of, III,13
sufficient, III,18
will for good actions, I,19,37
will merits, IV,6,12

greed, IV,10,27; 30

Hagar (maid of Sarah), I,16,32; III,3; 9; 12
hair: roots of shaved head, I,12,26
handwriting, I,27
happiness, III,13
keeping the commandments, III,11
hatred, I,20,38
healing, IV,10,27; 30; 34
heart, IV,10,27
fear of God in, IV,14
new heart, new spirit, IV,15
observing the commandments, III,9
preparing; good works, II,9,19; 20
pride blocks ears of, IV,14
pure, IV,10,27; 28; 31
stony heart; heart of flesh, I,20,38;
IV,14
transformed from wrath to gentleness, I,20,38
heaven, IV,9,25
fullness of perfect righteousness, III,23
love of God and neighbor in, IV,28
sinful desires absent in, III,7,17
those who led a superior moral life, III,5,14
heresy, II,1,1
synods and, IV,34
views contrary to truth, II,3,5

heretics, III,9,25
enemies of grace of God, I,2
Hilary, Saint, IV,7
holiness:
constantly being made holy, IV,10,27
Lord’s Prayer, IV,9,25
progress in (Cyprian), IV,10,27
Holy Spirit, I,9,15; 21; 14,28; III,13
body as temple of, IV,4,4
driven by, I,27; III,2,2; IV,14
first fruits, I,10,17
free choice and, I,20,38
gives life, III,11
grace through, III,11
help for good souls (O.T.), IV,2,2; 18; 28
help in our weakness, III,22
indwelling, I,24
letter of the law and, III,23
lifegiving, III,12; IV,11
Old Testament and virtue, III,4,6
renew the face of the earth, IV,31
righteousness of the law, III,20
virtue and, III,13; IV,26
will accuse the world of sin, III,3,4

hope, I,7,12
commandment, IV,18
hope that is seen, III,5

human acts:
without me you can do nothing, II,18; 9,19

human body:
See also body and soul
awaiting redemption of, I,10,17; 11,23
glory, I,11,23
life given to, I,24
temple of the Holy Spirit, IV,4,4

human condition:
weakness; struggle against sin, III,5; IV,22

human nature:
Catholic concern for, II,2,2
evil nature as cause of sin, IV,5

humility, I,24; III,19

human beings:
answering back to God, II,15; IV,16
body (earth), soul (heaven), IV,9,25

Answer To The Pelagians II
born as sinful flesh, II,3
die in sin, IV,7
God does many things in, II,21
good as human beings, III,9,25
human sheep, IV,14; 15
implanted desire for good, II,8,17
nature as evil, II,3,5
state of Adam before his sin, II,4,6
work of God, I,18,36

idolatry, IV,26
ignorance: choosing evil, I,27
image of God:
  predestined to be conformed to,
  II,10,22
immortality, I,10,17; III,18; IV,22
  paradise, I,5
incarnation: likeness of sinful flesh, II,3
infant baptism:
  before the eighth day, IV,24
  circumcision and (Fidus), IV,23
  effects, I,23,41
  infants believe through others, I,22,40
  kissing what God has made, IV,23
  Manichees on forgiveness, II,3
  merits of parents and, II,6,11; 14
  necessity of, I,22,40
  not necessary for salvation, I,24,42
  Pelagian idea of, II,3
  salvation of the unbaptized, II,7
innocence, IV,21; 10,27; 28
Innocent, Pope, II,3,5; II,4,6; 7; 8
intention: good, II,10; 6,11; 8,17; 22;
  IV,2,2; 13
Isaac, III,8; 13
Israel: remnant of, II,15

Jacob: Esau and, II,16; 10,22; IV,16
  loved for future works, II,15
jealousy, IV,10,27
Jerusalem:
  earthly, III,9
  heavenly mother, III,8
  metaphor, III,12
Jesus Christ:
  born in likeness of living flesh, II,3
  descendant of Abraham, III,4,6
  Elisha a symbol of, IV,11
  faith in, See faith.
  flesh of, as pretense, IV,5
  friendship, I,1,1
  hunger and thirst for, III,7,17
  See incarnation.
  knowledge of: faith and vision, III,19
  longed for, in the Old Testament,
  III,11
  mediator, I,7,12
  not bound by law of sinful birth,
  IV,11,29
  our advocate before the Father, III,15
  passion: love as motive, IV,6
  passion: Pelagian view, IV,6
  physician, IV,19
  prophets on his coming, III,13
  revealed in the flesh, III,13
  sacrifice for our sins, III,6,16
  saved by grace of, I,9,15
  sinlessness, I,18,36; IV,2,2; 4,4
  sins (Pelagian slander), I,12,25
  soul of, IV,5
  wisdom of God, IV,11
Jews, III,22
  scattered everywhere, III,9
John the Baptist, III,11
Jovinian, I,2,4
joy:
  commandment: rejoice in God…,
  III,7,17
  kingdom of God, IV,28
judge, II,7,13
judgment day:
  Cyprian on Christ as judge, IV,21
  reward or punishment, IV,2,2; 18; 28
Julian, I,3; 2,4; 6,11; II,1,1
justice, II,7,13
justification, II,6,11; III,2,2; 13; IV,26
  works of the law, I,8,13; 14
  kingdom of God, IV,22; IV,28
kissing:
kiss of peace; work of God's hands, IV,24
newborn infants, IV,24
rite of infant baptism, IV,23

knowledge:
perfect, III,7,17
puffs up, IV,11

law (of Moses; the Torah):
Ambrose on, IV,30
cause of serious sin, III,3
children of the free woman, III,3
commands the letter, without the
Spirit, III,23
consent, that it is good, I,18
efficacy, I,7,12
established to convict the proud,
III,9,25
given for sake of transgression, III,7
grace, IV,11
holy, I,14; III,2,2
holy, righteous and good, III,9; IV,3,3; 10
inheritance from, III,7; IV,10
justification, I,8,13; 14; III,13; IV,26
knowledge of, puffs up, IV,11
necessary, III,10
Paul lives without reproach, III,23
Pelagian accusations, III,2,2
Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; 9,25;
IV,1,1; 2,2; 10; 11; 44
righteousness and, I,8,13; 9,15; III,19;
20
sin and righteousness, I,8,13; IV,3,3; 30
spiritual, III,10
stone tablets, III,10
works based on fear, IV,10

law of God:
interior self; delight, I,20; 22
serving with the mind, I,21

learning: desire for, III,13
letter kills, III,2,2; 12; 20; 22; 9,25; IV,11
lips, II,20
loincloths, I,16,32

Lord's Prayer:
Cyprian on, IV,9,25

forgive us our debts…, III,6,16; 7,17;
IV,7,17; 10,27
forgiveness of our sins, I,14,28
give us today…, IV,26
may your kingdom come, IV,28
may your name be holy, IV,9,25; 10,27
your will be done, IV,9,25

lost objects, III,10

love, IV,30
death of Christ and, IV,6
desire for the good, II,21
faith works through, III,11
friendship, I,1,1
fulfillment of the law, III,21
grace helps in bestowing, I,8,13
keeping the commandments, III,9
knowledge of the law and, IV,11
perfect (when faith becomes vision),
III,21
spiritual, III,20
struggle against carnality, I,10,17
lust, I,18

malice, II,16; IV,30
Mani, III,20; 9,25; IV,3,3

Manichees, I,2,4; 10; 6,11; 24,42; IV,4,4;
6; 5,9; 10; 6’12; 7,17; 18; 19; 21; 24;
10,27; 28; 11,29; 12,32
answer to charge of, II,1,1
detested by other heretics, II,1,1
Pelagians compared with, II,2,24
Pelagians' five praises and, III,9,25;
IV,3,3; 19

Marcion (heretic), III,20

marriage:
carnal debt, III,5,14
carnal pleasure permitted in, I,33
concupiscence and, IV,3,3
condemned (accusation), I,2,4
Cyprian on, IV,24
defense of, I,5,9
device as source (Manichee), IV,5,9
incontinence; intercourse, III,5,14
instituted by God, II,5,9
leave father and mother…, I,5,9
modesty in, I,33
Pelagian claims, I,6,11
Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; 9,25
Pelagianism, I,30
praise of, IV,1,1; 2,2; 5,9; 33
present state, I,5,9
purpose, I,10
virginity and, I,2,4; III,5,14
what God has joined…, I,5,9

Mars, Field of, I,16,32
Martha, III,22
martyrs: death not an evil for, IV,2,2
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
  virginity, I,2,4
mercy, I,6,11; 9,15; 14,28; 19,37; 20,38;
  24,42; II,15; 21; III,5; 7; 9; 10; 13;
  IV,4,4; 6; 11; 12; 15; 16; 21; 23; 9,25;
  10,27; 12,32; 33; 34
merit:
  abandonment, ruin, destruction, IV,15
  asking God’s help, IV,30
  enemies of Christ, IV,26
  grace and, I,3,6; 4; 8; 19,37; 24,42;
  II,5,9; 10; 8,17; 10,22; III,8,24;
  IV,2,2; 15; 16; 19; 30; 33
  infant baptism and parents, II,6,11
  nature and will, II,3
  recompense, IV,13
  Saul converted to Paul, I,19,37
Messiah: Lamb of God, III,11
Mileve, II,7
mind, IV,10,27; 31
  diseases in, II,1,1
  serve law of God with, I,21
  struggle against concupiscence, I,27
modesty, I,35
  chaste marriages, I,33
Moses, II,20; III,8; 11; III,12; 13
  law and, IV,3,3; 33
mouth, II,20
murder, IV,26

nakedness:
  shame, I,16,32
nature:
  merits of a good nature, II,3
New Testament:
  children of the promise, III,11; 12
  heirs of the New Testament, III,4,6
  hidden in veils of prophecy, III,7; 10
  passing from the old condition, III,13
  revealed and ratified, III,9
  suitable ministers of, III,12
Noah, III,8
nonchristians: faith, III,11
Novatians, IV,11,29
Numidia, II,7

Old Testament:
  See also law; patriarchs; prophets
called “old” because revealed earlier,
  III,13
  Holy Spirit and virtue, III,4,6
  old books (better term), III,12
  one faith (New Testament), III,11
  prefigured the new, III,4,6
  revealed through Moses, III,13
  sinfulness of holy people, I,7,12
  veil remains, III,12
olive tree:
  wild/domesticated, I,6,11
original sin, III,8,24
  Ambrose on, IV,11,29
  came to life in paradise, I,16
  concupiscence as punishment, I,35
  contracted from concupiscence, I,35
  Cyprian on, IV,8,2124
  damned on account of one sinner,
  II,15
  death inherited from Adam, not sin,
  IV,1,1; 2,2; 6; 8
denial of, IV,4,4; 5; 19
disobedience of sex organs, I,31
ever derives from first human being,
  II,8
evils deriving from, III,9,25
existence of, IV,10,27
  forgiven in baptism, III,10,26
  free choice and, I,2,4; 5; 15,29
  heresy: not passed on to human race,
  IV,6; 7
human beings born without defect of,
  II,3,5
humans subject to the devil, II,5,9
origin of, III,10,26; IV,6
power of the devil, I,35
reconciliation, IV,8
second death for the unbaptized, I,22,40
sin harmed Adam only, II,4,6
through one man sin entered…, IV,8
transmission of, III,10,26
trying to prove there is none, IV,2,2
original sin and children, II,4,6; 7,14; 11,29; IV,3,3; 8; 5,9; 23; 24
believers as parents, I,6,11; IV,24
guilt forgiven by rebirth, I,27
made by the devil, I,6,11
Pelagianism, I,30

Paulinus (deacon), II,4,6
peace, I,24; 17,34; IV,28
Pelagians, I,14; 15,29; II,1,1; III,4,6; 5,14; 15; 10,26; IV,6,12
on baptism, I,22,40
baptism of children, III,3,4
clergy of Rome accused by, II,3,5; 8
errors in the five praises, IV,3,3; 19
five praises of, III,8,24; 25; IV,1,1; 19
free choice and, I,5
on grace, II,5,9
Manichees compared with, I,2,24; IV,3,3
refuted by Ambrose, IV,11,29; 12,32
repentance needed by, I,24,42
selfcorrection, II,4
tradition refutes three errors of, IV,8,20ff
Pelagius, I,3; 4,8; 19,37; 22,40; II,3,5; 8; 10; 8,17; 18; III,9,25; IV,3,3; 15; 21; 9,25
condemnation, I,5,9
praise of Ambrose, IV,11,29
perfection, IV,28
confession of imperfections, III,19
Paul on, III,15
progress toward goal of, III,19
rebirth in eternal life, IV,31
true security, III,7,17
persecution:
prayer for persecutors, I,19,37
Peter: washing of feet, IV,11,29
Pharisee, IV,7,17
piety, III,15; IV,30
pity, II,10; 15; 16
pleasure, IV,30
carnal, I,33
power:
people trusting in their own, I,7,12
prayer, IV,31; 33
See also Lord’s Prayer
help of grace, II,23
of petition, III,5

Palestine, I,4,8
parable:
laborers in vineyard, II,7,13
paradise, IV,21; 22; 24
   freedom in, I,5
   sex as it would have been, I,17,34; 35
parents, II,6,11; 14; IV,24
partiality, II,7,13; 14; 16; IV,2,2; 16
passion, I,24
carnal pleasure, I,33
original justice, I,10
sexual, IV,10,27
will, in paradise, I,17,34; 35
patience:
origin and greatness of, IV,9,25; 26
struggle and battle, IV,22
patriarchs, III,9,25; 33; IV,10
children of, III,3,4
righteousness, I,21,39
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
boasting in terms of flesh, III,22
conversion of, I,19,37
describes himself as carnal, I,10,17
imperfection admitted, III,15
on love of husband and wife, I,5,9
Pelagian slander, I,8,13; 14
perfection and imperfection in, III,19; 23
pressing on, III,22
pride in his revelations, III,18
righteousness, III,20
share in suffering of Christ, III,21
term “the Apostle” means Paul, III,3,4
weakness of, III,18
without reproach re the law, III,23

Answer To The Pelagians II
spiritual grace, IV,30
predestination:
  image of God, II,10,22
presumption, I,14,28
pride, II,12; III,7; 8,24; 13; 18; 22; IV,14; 15; 9,25; 10,27; 34
  knowledge of the law, IV,11
  medicine against, III,18
righteousness and, III,20
prophecy:
  New Testament hidden in, III,7
prophets, III,8; 9,25; IV,2,2; 10; 18; 28; 33
  coming of Christ and, III,13
providence, IV,34
punishment, II,7,13; 15
  doing good out of fear of, II,21
  fear of, I,9,15; 22
purification, IV,31
purity, IV,5
  perfection of, IV,31
questioning, III,13
Quirinus, IV,21; 9,25; 10,27
rebirth, I,27; III,5; IV,31
  See also baptism
redemption:
  Christ dying in vain, III,22; IV,10
  final resurrection, III,5
  grace, I,8,13
  set free by, I,7,12
  Son of Man came not to destroy…, IV,23
  when we were still sinners, Christ died…, IV,8
repentance:
  Pelagians, I,24,42
Resurrection:
  Paul’s knowledge of power of, III,21
resurrection of the dead:
  rebirth, III,5
revenge, III,5,14
reward, III,7,17; 23; IV,2,2; 18; 28; 31; 33
righteousness, I,5; 19,37; III,5; 7; 9; 13; IV,8
  body of this death, III,23
  children of slave girl (O.T.), III,12
  command; practice, IV,28
  death and, IV,28
  delight in, I,9,15; 22
  distinguished by law of faith, III,5,14
  earth and heaven, III,7,17
  equal to angels of God, III,18
  faith of Jesus Christ, I,8,13
  hearers and doers, III,2,2
  hope: commandment, IV,18
  hunger and thirst for, III,7,17; IV,7,17; 18
  law and, IV,3,3; 30
  love of, and doing good, II,21
  people (O.T.) saved by faith in Christ, I,7,12
  perfection of, III,18; 22; IV,28
  received from God, III,13; 22
  relevant to love of God, III,21
  reward; perfect, IV,33
  saints (Ambrose on), IV,31
  Saul (Paul), I,9,15
  saved by faith in mediator, I,21,39
  sin and, I,27
  sinlessness (Pelagian), IV,10,27
  source: God or humans, III,2,2
  source: law or faith, III,19; 20
  spirit is life, I,24
Romans (ch.7), I,8,13
Romanus, IV,21
Rome:
  clergy accused by Pelagians, II,3,5; 8
  rule of faith, IV,3,3
Sabbath:
  carnal observance, III,10
  rest from work, III,10
sacrments: Old Testament, III,10
sacrifice, III,6,16
  animal victims, III,10
saints, IV,2,21; 3,3; 10; 18; 28
  Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; IV,1,1; 2,2; 7,17; 28
  Pelagians’ love of, III,15
  righteousness (Ambrose), IV,31
sinless in this life (Pelagian view), IV,19
virtue, III,5,14

salvation:
baptism; absolutely saved, III,5
baptism of infants, I,22,40
gratuity of, II,10,22
of infants, IV,4,4
unbaptized infants, II,7
will of God, IV,9,25

sanctification: Sabbath, III,10

Sarah: symbol, III,8
Satan: first sin of pride, III,18
Saul (later Paul):
righteousness, I,9,15; 19,37

selfcontrol, I,24; IV,10
concupiscence, I,35

sex:
disobedience of organs; original sin,
I,31; 16,32
invention of the devil, I,10
law in members resists law of mind,
I,20

paradise:
frequency, I,17,34
original justice, I,6,11
as sex would have been, I,17,34; 35
Pelagianism, I,31
private place sought, I,33
shame, I,31; 35
soul bound to chain of flesh, IV,6

shame, IV,3,3
all are born with, I,33
sin and, I,16,32

signs, III,10

Sinai, Mount, III,3; 4,6; 7; 8; 9; 12

sin:
action, word, or thought, I,27
attractiveness, I,27

baptism washes away all sins, III,5
carnal desire, III,11
children of God, III,3,4
children of the world, III,3,4

Christ in likeness of sinful flesh,
III,6,16
daily sins, daily forgiven, I,14,28;
IV,10,27
defect in nature, II,2,2
desire, consent, act, I,18
desire to sin, III,7,17
devil as author of, I,6,11
enemies of God, IV,8
everything that does not come from
faith, III,5,14
evil result of, I,33
flesh serving the law of, I,21
See also forgiveness of sin
free choice, I,5
free choice; subject to devil, II,5,9
free will, I,7
grace more abundant…, I,8,13; III,7
grace of the savior and, I,5
held from, by fear, I,9,15
holy people in Old Testament, I,7,12
if we say we have no sin…, IV,3,3;
7,17; 18; 10,27; 31
ignorance, I,16; 27
it is not I who do this…, I,18; 19; 22
knowledge of, through the law, I,8,13;
16; 11,23; III,13
law and, I,8,13; III,3; IV,3,3
nature proves guilt of, III,13
no one is without sin, I,14,28;
IV,10,27; 28; 31
not consenting to, I,24
not known, seen as sin, I,11,23
one who has been born of God…,
IV,31
Pelagianism and the soul, II,2,2
pious faith wipes away, III,15
preventing persons from attaining
grace, IV,23
punished, as if it were committed,
II,16
punishment, IV,6
purification, IV,10,27
reward of being unable to, III,7,17
separation from body of Christ,
IV,9,25
sold under the power of, I,10,17
sting of death, III,2,2; IV,7
struggle against; weakness, III,5;
IV,22
whatever does not come from faith, I,7
will, not nature, as source, IV,2,2; 5

sinners:
pray over our sins, IV,10,27
under devil’s power, I,18,36
slander, I,3; 5,9; 15,29; III,1,1; 5,14; 6,16
slavery: carnal fear, III,11
snakes: poison, III,18
Sodom, III,5,14
soul, See body and soul.
spirituality:
body as well as soul, I,10,17
stars, II,12; 14
sterility, III,13
suffering:
share in Christ’s suffering, III,21
sun: gazing on, IV,31
swearing, IV,10,27
sweetness, II,21
temporal goods:
earthly blessings (o.t.), III,9
hope for, III,11
worldly desires, IV,30
temporal life, IV,10
temptation, IV,9,25
deliver us from evil, I,27
thanksgiving, III,5
Thessalonica, I,3; II,1,1
thinking:
desire is greater than, II,18
tradition:
faith handed down by, IV,12,32
travelers: perfect, III,19
tree: fruit: good or bad, II,2,2
Trinity, III,18
trust, III,2,2
truth, I,7; 5,9; 15,29; II,3,5; III,3,4; 19; 9,25; IV,5,9; 26
twins, II,15; 16
Jacob and Esau, II,16
unbelief, III,15; 8,24
children of the devil, III,3,4
Spirit will accuse the world of sin, III,3,4
vanities, IV,30
vessels:
made for dishonest purpose, II,7,14
vice, IV,10,27
virgin birth:
Manichees and, II,3
virginity:
marriage and, I,2,4; III,5,14
virtue:
desire for, II,10,22; IV,2,2; 13
Holy Spirit and, III,13; IV,26
Holy Spirit in the Old Testament, III,4,6
made perfect in weakness, III,18
perfection of, III,19
wages: parable, II,7,13
weakness, IV,10; 22; 9,25; 31; 34
will:
believer: good will, I,7
disobedience of sex organs, I,16,32
free for evil acts, I,7
free to obey with piety, IV,15
grace and freedom of, IV,3,3
human heart and, I,20,38
I do not do what I want…, I,18; 19
inclined to evil, I,9,15
merits grace, IV,6,12
merits of a good will, II,3
prepared by the Lord, II,20; IV,6,12; 26
preparing heart; opening mouth, II,20
will of God: Lord’s Prayer, IV,9,25; 26
wisdom, IV,31
complete, III,7,17
perfect, III,7,17
words, II,5,9
work:
parable; wages, II,7,13
Sabbath rest, III,10
worldliness, IV, 10, 27; 28; 30
worship:
  commanded to serve one God, III, 10
  servile; free, III, 13
writing: hand, I, 27

zeal, II, 10, 22; IV, 31
Zosimus, Pope, II, 3, 5; 8
Index from

On Marriage and Concupiscence

(De nuptiis et concupiscentia)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians II

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume contains three works of Saint Augustine of Hippo: Marriage and Desire (De nuptiis et concupiscentia); Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians (Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum); and Answer to Julian (Contra Julianum).

Volume I/24

Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-107-7, 6 x 9 in., 596 pp., 1998

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marriage and Desire</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
<th>2:24–25</th>
<th>II, 27, 45</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>I, 31, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:10–11</td>
<td>II, 8, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Old Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genesis</th>
<th>Sirach</th>
<th>18:30</th>
<th>I, 23, 25; I, 28, 32</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>21:1</td>
<td>I, 26, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>I, 29, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>16:49</td>
<td>II, 19, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exodus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th>1:20</th>
<th>I, 11, 12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>I, 35, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>II, 9, 21; II, 17, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 33, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>II, 3, 9; II, 33, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>19:46</td>
<td>II, 9, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>I, 16, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>I, 16, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>26:28</td>
<td>II, 33, 56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Job**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Luke</th>
<th>2:33</th>
<th>I, 11, 12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:15 LXX</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:41</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:48</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:49</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:50–51</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:3a</td>
<td></td>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>II, 3, 9; II, 26, 42; II, 29, 50; II, 33, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:34</td>
<td></td>
<td>20:34</td>
<td>I, 18, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>24:30–31</td>
<td>I, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Psalms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>John</th>
<th>8:36</th>
<th>II, 3, 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>II, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>20:2</td>
<td>I, 30, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ecclesiastes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Romans</th>
<th>1:17</th>
<th>I, 32, 37</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Corinthians
6:19–20  I, 18, 20
7:1  I, 16, 18
7:2  I, 16, 18
7:36  I, 14, 16
7:7  I, 3, 3
7:29  I, 13, 15

2 Corinthians
4:16  I, 18, 20
4:16a  I, 30, 33
4:16b  I, 18, 20
10:17  I, 17, 32

Galatians
5:17  I, 17, 32

Ephesians
2:35  I, 17, 32
5:3  I, 17, 32
5:25–27  I, 33, 38
5:27  I, 33, 38; I, 34, 39
5:32  II, 12, 24

Philippians
2:6  I, 11, 12
2:7  I, 11, 12

Colossians
1:13  I, 11, 12
3:18  I, 11, 12
3:19  I, 11, 12
4:6  I, 11, 12

1 Thessalonians
4:35  I, 8, 9
4:5  II, 33, 55
4:5.4  I, 8, 9

1 Timothy
1:15  I, 33, 55
5:14a  I, 8, 9

Hebrews
11:6  I, 4, 5

1 Peter
3:6  I, 9, 10
3:15  I, 2, 2

2 Peter
2:12  I, 8, 20
2:19  II, 3, 8

Volume I/24
Volume I/24

1 John

2:15–17  I, 18, 20
2:16  II, 7, 17
3:8  II, 33, 56

Answer To The Pelagians II
SUBJECT INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Marriage and Desire

Abimelech, King, II,27; 15,30
abortion, I,15,17
Abraham [and Sarah], I,8,9; 9,10
birth of Isaac, II,13,26
concupiscence and generation in,
II,10,23
faith of, II,11,24
prayer to regain power of sex, II,27
Sarah called “sister,” II,27
sexual vigor restored, II,19,34
abstinence, I,3,3; 16,18
mutual consent, in marriage, I,11,12
Pelagian vow, II,60
Adam and Eve:
bone from my bones…, I,5,6
concupiscence, marriage, and sin,
II,4,10
covered sex organs, II,5,14; 22
Eve called “life,” II,4,12
example of sin, II,45
eyes of both were opened, I,5,6
increase and multiply, II,4,12; 13; 9,21
manchild: Cain, II,7,17; 18
naked, I,5,6; 6,7
naming creatures, I,5,6
sexual union: Seth, II,19
shame, I,5,6
wild olive tree, I,32,37
adultery, I,1,1; 10,11; 13; 14,16; 15,17;
17,19; 24,27; 26,29; II,4; 19,34; 21,36;
24,39; 43
children born from, II,20,35; 21,36
fidelity and, II,32,54
good that is born from sin, II,42
almsgiving, I,33,38
Alypius, Bishop, II,1,1
Ambrose, Saint, I,35,40; II,15; 51
angel: good work of God, II,48
anger, II,16,31; 20; 17,32; 18,33
animals: mating, I,4,5
apostate, I,10,11
Arians, II,23,38
artists, II,22
athletics: loincloths, II,30,52
Augustine, Saint:
forced reading of his works, I,2,2
Julian controversy, II,2,2
readers of his book, II,4,10
babies. See children.
baptism:
apostates and, I,10,11
concupiscence and, I,25,28
forgiveness of all sins, I,26,29; 33,38
power to renew human beings,
II,11,24
rebirth, I,33,38
rescued from power of the devil,
I,20,22
battle, I,31,35
begetting children, See procreation.
Bible:
Catholic commentators on, II,51
Pelagian use of, II,14,28
birds: mating, I,4,5
body and soul:
corrupted body weighs down soul,
I,31,35
flesh becomes spiritual, I,33,38
gifts of God, I,4
Caelestians, II,7; 8; 13; 15
Caelestius, II,29,49
Cain, II,7,17
carnal desire, See desire.

Catholic Church, II,51
- concern for our salvation, II,9

Catholic faith:
- all hearts drawn to, II,4

Catholics:
- Manichees and Pelagians compared with, II,9

celibacy: Paul on, I,15

chastity (marital), I,2,2; 27,30; II,42
- gift of God, I,3,3
- unbelievers and, I,4
- virtue, I,4,5

children:
- born for punishment; reborn for life, I,17,19
- born from evil of concupiscence, I,24,27; II,58
- created by God, II,6,16; 8
- eternal punishment, I,32,37
- good of marriage, to be loved, I,17,19
- guilt, I,32,37
- personal sin not committed by, I,20,22
- See procreation.
- rebirth needed by, I,19,21
- redemption, II,8
- salvation by Christ, II,60
- salvation of infants, II,50
- sin and the will, II,27,44; 45
- sinners by birth, not by act, I,19,21
- sins of parents and, II,50
- unwanted, I,15,17

children of God, I,4,5
- not produced by good parents, I,18,20
- power to become, I,20,22

choice: free, II,8

Christ (the word), I,32,37

Church:
- Christ’s love for, I,10,11
- Pelagian attack on, II,18,33
- rebels resolved on ruin of, II,7
- truth; heresy, I,20,22
- without spot or wrinkle, I,33,3834,39

circumcision:
- God’s command, II,11,24
- sign of righteousness, II,11,24

concupiscence:
- See also desire; sex
- body of this death, I,16,18
- children born from evil of, I,24,27
- decreased by continence and old age, I,25,28
- devil and sex arousal, II,34,57
- enduring, I,17,19
- goodness of marriage and, I,7,8; 35,40; II,19,34
- Julian omits reference to, II,5,14
- law of sin in the flesh, I,34
- marriage without, II,42; 31,53
- natural desire and, II,7,17
- natural moderation, II,19,34
- not a good to be loved, I,18,20
- not being subject to, I,15
- original sin and, I,32,37
- paradise, I,16,18; 22,37
- Paul’s teaching on, I,27,30
- polyandry, I,9,10
- proper use of, I,8,9
- remains in the baptized, I,25,28
- righteousness, I,23,25
- sacrament of rebirth, I,23,25
- shame, I,22,24; II,5,14; 10,23; 35,59
- subservience to, I,14,16
- worldliness, I,18,20

conscience, II,35,59
- sin: heart and body, I,28,31

consent, I,23,25; 24,27; 28,31; II,6; 58
- serving the law of sin, I,36
- sin; desire, I,29
- taken captive by sin, I,34; 31,35

continence, I,25,28; II,18

conversion:
- previous sins require forgiveness, I,26,29

creation:
- everything made through Christ, II,60
- God made all things good, II,4,12
- goodness from the supreme good, II,16,31

creatures:
- devil’s power over, I,15
- evil (Manichee), II,19,34

Cynics, I,22,24

Cyprian, Saint, II,51
dignity, I,9,10
disobedience, See original sin; sex organs.
divorce, I,10,11; 13
dogs, I,10,11; 13
dreams, II,42

Emmaus, I,5,6
eternal life:
  more abundant life, through Christ, II,46
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
exsufflation, II,18,33; 50; 51

faith:
  baptism as sacrament of, I,10,11
  necessary, to please God, I,4,5
  ready to give account of, I,2,2
  righteousness (Old Testament), II,11,24
  family, I,16,18
  farmers, II,29
  fear, I,30,33; II,7; 9
  fertility, II,42
  attributed to God, II,4,12; 5,14
  God as source of, II,10,23
  original justice, II,29; 25,40
  fidelity, II,32,54
  good of marriage, to be loved, I,17,19
  motive, I,4
  first human couple, See Adam and Eve.
flesh:
  See also sex
  held captive by, I,34; 31,35
  serving the law of sin, I,36
forgiveness of sin:
  blessedness, I,33,38
  circumcision as sign of, II,11,24
  guilt in the reborn, I,23,25
  guilt removed, I,36
  sins previous to conversion, I,26,29
  this is my blood..., II,56
fornication, I,1,1; 4,5; 10,11; 14,16; 24,27;
II,4; II,43
remedy for, I,16,18
freedom:
false; slavery, II,8
set free by the Son, II,8
willingly taking delight, I,30,33
gift of God:
asking for, I,3,3
sinfulness, I,4
gluttony, II,21,36
God:
allpowerful goodness, II,48
creator of all good things, II,4,12
foreknowledge re evil humans,
II,16,31
immutable good, II,50
made nothing evil, II,6,16
mercy and justice, II,8
gold, II,21,36
good and evil:
causality (evil), II,26,41
change from evil with God’s help, II,20
completion of evil desires, I,32
evil acts from evil will, II,48
evil arises from good, II,48
evil passing through a work of God, II,48
God and the devil, II,17,32
I do not the good…, I,30,33
marriage as cause of evil, II,42
good works:
good will, II,43
help of God and, II,8
goodness:
God as source of, II,9,21
grace, I,32; 30,33; 31,35; 32,37; II,5; 6; 16,31; 20; 42; 45
grain, II,29
greed, II,21,36
guilt, I,23,25; 26,29; 32,37
Hagar, I,5,6
happiness, I,8,9
health: heredity, II,34,57
heaven, I,33,38
holiness:
Christian bath, I,34,39
original sin and children, II,58
Holy Family:
faithful marriage, I,11,12
three goals of marriage, I,13
Holy Spirit: rebirth, I,8,9
hope, I,15; 31,35
hope that is seen…, I,18,20
human beings:
answering back to God, II,16,31
Christ as tempted and enduring,
I,35,40
Christ the physician, II,9
created by the good God, II,29,49;
33,55
creation: God or the devil, II,27
evil because of original sin, II,24,39
evil nature mixed in (Manichee), II,9
free choice in; II,8
fruits of marriage, II,4,11
God produces, from human seed, II,14,28
God’s foreknowledge of evil, II,16,31
good because of God, II,24,39
good nature of, II,17,32
good result of marriage, II,19,34
malice, II,20
power of sin and, II,16,31
praise for, II,42
work of God, I,1,1; II,4; 7,17; 13,26;
14,28; 27,44; 48; 50
human body:
evil source, II,6,16
redemption of, I,31,35
temple of God, I,18,20; 31,35
human nature:
corruption of, II,9,21
devil and corruption of, II,34,57
devil or God as maker of, I,26;
II,16,31; 43
God as source; no original evil,
II,29,49; 50
goodness as created, II,9; 21,36
sin; nature as evil, II,48
husband and wife:
Christ’s love for the Church, I,10,11

Volume I/24
Volume I/24

natural order: man as ruler, I,9,10
sexual rights, I,14,16

image of God:
devil as creator of human beings, II,27; 16,31
immortality, I,31,35; 33,38
impudence, II,21,36
incarnation, I,24,27
concupiscence, I,12
sinless birth, II,15
incorruptibility, I,25,28; 31,35
hope for, I,18,20
infant baptism:
Cyprian on, II,51
exorcism and exsufflation, II,18,33; 50; 51

infants:
See also children
need for healing, I,1,1; II,9; 15; 23,38; 42; 47; 56
intention: evil and, II,29,49
intercourse, See sex.
Isaac, II,10,23; 11,24
God, not sexual union, as source, II,13,26

Jesus Christ:
ancestors; generations, I,11,12
born without sin, I,24,27
grace even more abundant through, II,46
healing medicine, I,1,1
his flesh not found in the tomb, I,34
Joseph as father of, I,11,12
See Messiah.
name, Christ, from chrism (oil), I,32,37
name: savior, II,60
not born from sexual union, I,1,1
passion: original sin and children, II,56
physician, II,51
See redemption.
second Adam, II,20,35
sinless, II,5,14
subject to his parents, I,11,12
tempted, endured, like human beings, I,35,40; II,15
Joseph, Saint, I,11,12
Joseph and Mary, See Holy Family.
Jovinian (heretic), II,15; 23,38

judgment day:
belief in, II,11,24
punishment relevant to uncleanness, I,26
Julian of Eclanum (heretic), II,20,35
ashamed to refer to sex, II,7,17; 18
on concupiscence, II,5,14
misquoting by, II,6
Pelagian document, II,2,2
justification, II,29,49
Christ and, II,46
grace, after many transgressions, II,46
language:
called “tongue,” I,23,25
teacher of, II,46
last judgment, See judgment day.
law:
could not remove sin, II,46
tlaw of God:
delight in, I,30,33
life: Adam called his wife “life,” II,4,12
limping, I,7,8
little ones, See children.
loincloths, II,30,52
Lord’s Prayer: forgive us our debts, I,33,38
love: fear and, I,30,33
lust, II,5,14; 15; 13,26; 29; 21,36
Manichees, II,7; 19,34; 23,38; 29,49; 50; 51
Catholics and Pelagians compared with, II,9
marriage:

Answer To The Pelagians II
believing spouses; sacrament, I,10,11
bond, I,10,11
Chris and the Church, I,21,23
conception a good result of, II,22,37
See concupiscence.
condemned (accusation), I,1,1; 5,6;
   II,3; 4; 4,11; 26,41; 42
destructive actions in, I,15,17
devil and fruit of, II,26,41
devil as inventor of, II,32,54
evil (heresy), II,31,53
fruits of, II,4,11; 18
God instituted from the beginning,
   II,32,54
good and evil (Mani), II,23,38
good fruit from good tree, II,43
goodness of, I,1,1; II,19,34
healing, II,21,36
honorable; goods, I,24,27
increase, I,21,23; II,42
institution of; II,13
Julian vs. Augustine, II,2,2
man will cling to his wife, I,21,23;
   II,4,12; 22; 31,53; 32,54
natural good of, I,4,5
original justice, II,30,52
original sin and, II,25,40; 26,41
paradise, II,22,37
patriarchs as model, I,16,18
Paul on, I,15; II,45
power over body of spouse, I,14,16
purpose: procreation, II,42; 32,54
sex and happiness, I,8,9
society for begetting children, I,4,5
three goals; the Holy Family, I,13
three goods of, I,17,19; 21,23
ture marriage without sex, I,11,12
two in one flesh, II,4,12; 13
virginity (consecrated) and, I,4,5;
   II,15; 23,38
what is permitted in, I,14,16
without sexual union, II,19,34; 22,37
with/without shameful passion,
   II,32,54
Mars, II,30,52
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
   Son conceived without concupiscence,
      I,24,27
   virginity, II,15
   wife as title of, I,11,12
mercy, II,16,31; 17,32
Messiah:
   belief in the Christ to come, II,11,24
mind: virtues reside in, I,4,5
modesty, I,22,24; II,22
Moses, I,10,11; II,46
nakedness, II,32,54
nature:
   See also human nature
   God as author of, II,27
   goodness of, II,17,32
newborn, See children; infants
Noah, II,9,21
old age, I,25,28
olive oil, I,32,37
olive tree:
   wild; domesticated, I,19,21; 32,37;
   II,58
original justice:
   See also paradise
   body of this death, II,6
   conceiving without lust, II,29
   desire not found in, II,30,52
   marriage in, II,30,52
   marriage of first couple, I,5,6
   naked and not ashamed, II,14,28
   peaceful obedience of sex organs,
      II,22,37
   sex and the will, II,18
   sex without shame, II,13,26
   sowing human seed, II,29
original sin:
   Adam's voluntary sin as cause, II,43
   all are born under power of, II,11,24
   concupiscence and disobedience,
      I,32,37; II,35,59
   condemnation comes to all through,
      II,46
   contracted in marriage, I,1,1; II,4; 5;
      24,39
   contracting (Julian), II,27,44
denial (heresy), II,12,25
   disobedience of sex organs, II,31,53

**Volume I/24**
Marriage and Desire
entered world through one man, II,3; 8; 15; 20; II,24; 22,37; 42; 45; 46; 47
every human being born with, II,50
forgiven only by rebirth, I,19,21
goodness of marriage and, II,32,54
humans destined to perish, II,17,32
Isaac, II,11,24
Manichee as defender of, II,50
marriage and, I,1,1; II,3; 6; 20; 25,40; 26,41
nature changed for the worse, II,34,57; 58
origin, II,28
passed on through a work of God, II,48
passion a result of, II,21,36
Paul on, II,45
power of the devil, II,4,11
scriptural objections to, II,27
sin of disobedience, II,30,52
tradition, II,51
transmission of, II,23,38
will of the first man, II,48
original sin and children, II,8; 28; 20,35; 46; 50; 33,55; 56; 58
bath of rebirth, II,4
child conceived by concupiscence, I,24,27
conception (if there were no sin), I,1,1
law of sin present in, I,32,37
no need for Christ to save, II,9
power of the devil, II,1,1; 20,22; 26; II,3; 5; 13; 15; 18,33; 29,49
propagation, I,21,23
rebirth needed, I,19,21
reborn parents, II,58
rescued from power of the devil, I,20,22

paradise, I,16,18; II,6; 13,26; 29; 15,30; 35,59
shame in, II,30,52
parents, I,32,37; II,5
both pious and impious have children, II,27
children and sins of, II,50
procreation of children, II,45
passion, I,12; II,32,54

obedience of sex organs, II,13,26
usage of the word, II,33,55
will and arousal of, II,35,59
without marriage, II,42

patriarchs, I,8,9
marriage (model), I,16,18
polygamy, I,9,10
propagation a duty of, I,13,14

Paul, Saint, Apostle:
on carnal desire, I,8,9
on concupiscence of the flesh, I,27,30
on marriage and celibacy, I,15
on original sin, II,45

peace, II,35,59

Pelagians, II,7; 8; 13; 15; 18,33; 51; 31,53
first human beings, II,4,10
Manichees and Catholics compared with, II,9
use of Scripture, II,14,28
vow of abstinence, II,60

Pelagius, II,29,49
praises Ambrose, I,35,40; II,15; 51

people of God:
spiritual rebirth, I,15

piety:
parenthood and, II,27
reward of, II,12,25

pleasure, I,14,16; 17
morally good, II,22
sex and the will, II,31,53

polygamy, I,8,9; 9,10
possessions, I,15

potter, II,16,31

praise: for human nature, sex, etc., II,42
prayer, I,14,16

procreation:
fecundity of the seed, II,25,40
good of marriage, I,7,8
necessity of sexual desire, I,8,9
passion (lust) necessary for, I,24,27; II,13,26
purpose, I,4,5
reward of pleasure of sex, II,12,25
unholy begetters, II,27
wombs in the house of Abimelech, II,27; 15,30

propagation:
children of the flesh/world, I,18,20
concupiscence and, I,16,18
duty of the patriarchs, I,13,14
family obligations, I,16,18
people of God, I,15

prophecy:
God speaks through human being, II,4,12
prostitute, I,9,10; 15,17
purification: circumcision, II,11,24

Ravenna, II,1,1
rebirth, See baptism.

redemption:
  handed over for our sins, II,56
  hope of, I,31,35
  need for a redeemer, I,19,21
  this is my blood…, II,56
renovation: interior self, I,30,33
reproduction: sexual arousal and, I,6,7
resurrection of the dead:
  original sin and, II,27
righteousness, I,4,5; 19,21; 27,30; II,46
concupiscence, I,23,25
  faith in the Christ to come, II,11,24
Romans, II,30,52
Rome, II,1,1; 2,2
rule of faith, II,4
ruler, I,9,10

Sabellians, II,23,38
sacrament:
  good of marriage, to be loved, I,17,19
salvation:
  God the Father has rescued us…, II,5
  infants, II,15
selfcontrol, I,16,18
Seth, II,19

sex:
  abstinence and true marriage, I,11,12
  arousal related to will, I,24,27; II,18
  bad use of, I,4,5
  believers and carnal desire, I,4,5
  child as reward of, II,12,25
  conjugal rights, I,14,16
  devil and concupiscence, II,34,57
  disease of desire, II,19
  disordered disobedience, II,35,59
  God as creator of, II,6,16; 12,25
  good and evil, II,21,36
  happiness, II,35,59
  happiness in marriage, I,8,9
  Holy Family, I,12
  human seed; dying, II,14,28
  law in my members / resists law in
    mind…, I,30,33; 34; II,6; 22; II,58
  in marriage for pleasure, I,24,27
  moderation praised, II,19,34
  natural relations, II,20,35
  obedience of members, before the fall,
    II,29
  passion; reward, II,12,25
  passion subject to will, II,33,55
  permissible intercourse, I,8,9
  pleasure, II,13,26
  pleasure as motive for, I,4,5
  pleasure without conception, II,19
  preserving the species, I,4,5
  privacy sought for, I,7,8; 22,24;
    II,33,55
  propagation of children, I,8,9; 14,16
  purpose of marital intercourse, I,12
  seeking pleasure, I,15,17
  shame See shame.
  shameful desire, II,14,28
  shameless excess, II,19,34
  union without shame, II,22,37

sex differences, II,5,14
  God made male and female, II,31,53

sex organs:
  ashamed in paradise, II,30,52
  created for good activity, I,21,23
  disobedience of members, II,5,14;
    6,16; 7,17; 13,26; 18; 20
  punishment for sin, I,6,7
  shame, I,6,7; II,13,26
  obedience to will, II,31,53; 35,59
  sexual desire, II,7,17
  shameful arousal of, II,31,53; 35,59
Volume I/24

sex perversion:
  men, II,19,34; 20,35
  unnatural intercourse, II,35,59
  woman’s body, II,20,35

sexual desire, See desire.

sexual ethics:
  pardonable sins, I,24,27

shame, I,6,7; 12
  concupiscence, II,35,59
  hiding, II,5,14; 22; 21,36
  human works, II,22
  marital sex, I,7,8
  in old age, I,25,28
  original justice, II,29
  source of, II,7,17; 21,36

sin:
  children and sins of parents, II,50
  completion: obeying one’s evil desire, I,32
  concupiscence in the baptized, I,25,28
  desire; consent, I,29; 36
  devil’s power, II,15
  evil source, II,6,16
  filthy clothes (figure) removed, II,50
  flesh; serving the law of sin, I,36
  freeing from law of, II,12,25
  it is no longer I who do it…, I,29
  knowledge of, through the law, II,46
  nature as evil, II,48
  no one is free from, II,15
  produces sin, I,23,25
  sole cause of final condemnation, I,26
  whatever comes not from faith, I,4;
  I,4,5
  whole, composite person in, I,28,31
  will and, II,15; 48
  without sin means being not guilty, I,26,29
  work of the devil, I,1,1; II,4
  wound, II,34,57

Sodomites, II,19,34

Son of God: emptied himself…, I,11,12

soul, See body and soul.

spirit:
  flesh opposed to, I,31,35
  free from law of sin and death, I,36
  sponsors (at baptism), I,20,22
  sterility, I,15,17; 17,19
  temperance, II,18
  temple of God:
    body as, I,18,20; 31,35
  temporal goods:
    this world is passing away, I,15
  thief: planting stolen wheat, II,42
  time:
    for embracing…, I,13,14
    this world is passing away, I,15
  tree: from its fruits…, II,43
  Trinity: one and the same nature, II,23,38
  truth, II,1,1; 18,33

unbelievers, I,4
unchasteness, I,4,5

Valerius, Count, I,1,1; 2,2; II,1,1
vanity of vanities, II,50

Vestal Virgins, I,4,5

virginity:
  consecrated, I,4,5
  marriage and, II,15; 23,38
  virtue(s): reside in the mind, I,4,5

wickedness, II,27

wife:
  desiring wives of others, I,8,9
  polyandry, I,9,10
  reasons for loving husband, I,15

will:
  arousal of passion and, II,35,59
  good and bad wills, II,43
  I can will the good…, I,32
  I do not the good that I will…, I,30,33
  infants and sin, II,27,44
  natural desire, II,7,17
  sexual passion and, I,6,7; II,33,55
  sin and, II,15; 48

wisdom:
Marriage and Desire

concupiscence of, II,10,23
spiritual desire for, II,30,52

women:
  intercourse without sexual desire,
  II,15,30
  pleasure in womb of, II,13,26
  sex relations against nature, II,20,35
worldliness: love of, I,18,20
writing: called “hand,” I,23,25
Index from

Answer to the Pelagians III

Introduction, translation and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ

This volume includes the work: *Unfinished Work in Answer to Julian.*

**Includes:**

**Against Julian, an Unfinished Work**  
*(Contra Julianum opus imperfectum)*

Volume I/25  
Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-129-9, 6 x 9 in., 774 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>20:17</th>
<th>II, 152; IV, 57; IV, 58</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>34:7</td>
<td>III, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>V, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>VI, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>II, 178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>VI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>VI, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>IV, 34; VI, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>IV, 4; VI, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>II, 57; II, 59; IV, 5; IV, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>II, 60; IV, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>V, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>VI, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-19</td>
<td>VI, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>VI, 21; VI, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-19</td>
<td>VI, 27; VI, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>VI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>VI, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>VI, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>I, 68; II, 99; II, 178; VI, 23; VI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>IV, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>VI, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>VI, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12 LXX</td>
<td>VI, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>II, 145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>VI, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>II, 145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:24</td>
<td>III, 52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>II, 152; IV, 57; IV, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>III, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, 50; III, 15; III, 18; III, 19; III, 20; III, 30; III, 35; III, 37; III, 42; III, 50; III, 54; III, 55; III, 61; III, 62; III, 64; III, 65; III, 78; III, 83; III, 84; VI, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>11:44</td>
<td>VI, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>III, 13; III, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>14:18</td>
<td>III, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>V, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>II, 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:14-16</td>
<td>III, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:17-18</td>
<td>III, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:4</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Kings</td>
<td>14:5-6</td>
<td>III, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>14:1-5 LXX</td>
<td>I, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4 LXX</td>
<td>III, 110; IV, 90; VI, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4-5</td>
<td>II, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4-5 LXX</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>I, 105; III, 122; IV, 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:17 LXX</td>
<td>VI, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>IV, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:7-9</td>
<td>III, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>III, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:8</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>VI, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>III, 9; V, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:3</td>
<td>II, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>II, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
<td>I, 80; II, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>VI, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:7</td>
<td>I, 105; VI, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:17</td>
<td>I, 106; V, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:1-2</td>
<td>I, 67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:9</td>
<td>II, 52; II, 223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7</td>
<td>IV, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:1,7</td>
<td>II, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:23</td>
<td>I, 97; I, 141; II, 234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:27</td>
<td>III, 109</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>I, 63; II, 178; VI, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
<td>I, 41; I, 80; II, 6; II, 153; II, 229; III, 113</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:21</td>
<td>III, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>I, 52; I, 59; II, 73; III, 110; IV, 82; IV, 90; VI, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>III, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:6</td>
<td>IV, 124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:24</td>
<td>I, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:29</td>
<td>IV, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77:11</td>
<td>II, 231; IV, 126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:8</td>
<td>II, 234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:7</td>
<td>II, 234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:4</td>
<td>IV, 104; VI, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:15</td>
<td>VI, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117:1</td>
<td>II, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:9</td>
<td>II, 174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:133</td>
<td>I, 88; VI, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:172</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:175</td>
<td>I, 52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>I, 4; I, 5; I, 92; II, 178; V, 11; VI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>IV, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11 LXX</td>
<td>I, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>IV, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>I, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
<td>I, 95; I, 97; I, 134; I, 141; II, 6; III, 1; III, 107; III, 114; III, 163; V, 57; VI, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>II, 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:2</td>
<td>III, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:19</td>
<td>VI, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ecclesiastes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>I, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:30</td>
<td>IV, 44; V, 57; V, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10</td>
<td>I, 36; II, 107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wisdom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>IV, 32; IV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>I, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24-25</td>
<td>II, 35; II, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>II, 48; II, 49; II, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>IV, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3.8</td>
<td>VI, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4.5</td>
<td>V, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:28</td>
<td>IV, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>III, 44; IV, 43; IV, 56; VI, 13; VI, 27; VI, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>VI, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:24-12:2</td>
<td>IV, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>IV, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>IV, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>IV, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3-7</td>
<td>IV, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-9</td>
<td>IV, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>IV, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10-11</td>
<td>III, 11; IV, 123; IV, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>III, 11; IV, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12-13.15</td>
<td>IV, 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>IV, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19-21</td>
<td>IV, 131</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sirach**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>IV, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14.17-18</td>
<td>I, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:30</td>
<td>IV, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:33</td>
<td>II, 56; II, 66; VI, 25; VI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:24</td>
<td>IV, 235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:15</td>
<td>IV, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>I, 27; I, 49; I, 92; II, 236; III, 42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Isaiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>I, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16-18</td>
<td>I, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19-20</td>
<td>I, 45; I, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20 LXX</td>
<td>I, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>I, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:13</td>
<td>II, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>III, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:8</td>
<td>I, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:8 LXX</td>
<td>II, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:8-9</td>
<td>I, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:8-13</td>
<td>I, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9</td>
<td>I, 133; I, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:20.21</td>
<td>VI, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:21-23</td>
<td>IV, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:22</td>
<td>IV, 135</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jeremiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>IV, 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:23</td>
<td>IV, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>II, 167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
<td>II, 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:21-30</td>
<td>III, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:29</td>
<td>III, 84; VI, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:30</td>
<td>III, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:18</td>
<td>III, 21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Baruch**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>VI, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>III, 202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ezekiel
16:3 IV, 129
16:45 IV, 129
18:2 IV, 39
18:3 IV, 38
18:8 IV, 41
18:9-20 IV, 47
18:20 IV, 49
18:21 IV, 52
18:21-22 IV, 48
18:29-30 IV, 49
20:5 IV, 39
36:22 I, 133
36:27 I, 133

Daniel
3:17-18 V, 4
13:56 III, 11; IV, 129

Hosea
2:24 I, 141
13:14 LXX VI, 40

Habakkuk
1:14 II, 36

New Testament

Matthew
1:2 III, 88
1:3 III, 88
1:17 II, 84
1:21 II, 56; I, 63; II, 108; II, 170; II, 222; IV, 13; V, 29
3:7 IV, 129
5:28 IV, 29
5:45 V, 64
5:48 II, 52; VI, 34
6:10 II, 52; VI, 6; VI, 10; VI, 34
6:12 I, 67; I, 98; I, 101; I, 105; II, 71; II, 212; III, 116; IV, 89; VI, 15; VI, 30
6:12-13 I, 104
6:13 I, 67; I, 90; I, 93; I, 105; I, 106; I, 108; II, 227; IV, 82; IV, 89;
VI, 15, 30
7:16-18 II, 52
7:17 II, 21
7:18 II, 21
8:22 II, 170; III, 138; III, 147; III, 149; III, 151; III, 153
9:12-13 II, 20
10:20 III, 120
10:28 II, 31
11:25-26 III, 106
11:28 II, 29
11:29 II, 29
11:30 I, 111
12:29 VI, 20
12:33 I, 93; V, 21; V, 23
12:33-35 V, 21
12:34 II, 230
19:4-6 III, 139
19:6 II, 57; II, 59; II, 61; II, 194
22:29 VI, 30
22:30 VI, 30
23:26 I, 47
23:37 I, 93
23:38 I, 93
25:41 VI, 31
26:28 V, 9
26:39 VI, 36
26:41 III, 107

Luke
1:15 IV, 134
6:45 V, 21
11:42 IV, 124
12:45 VI, 40
14:26 IV, 23
19:10 I, 48; III, 138; VI, 20
20:35-36 VI, 30
22:32 II, 227
23:21 II, 175

John
1:1 I, 138
1:1.3 IV, 21
1:3 IV, 43
1:9-10 IV, 21
1:10 IV, 18; IV, 23
1:12 I, 94; III, 106
1:13 III, 51
1:14 I, 138; II, 61; IV, 21; IV, 47
1:29 II, 71; II, 84; II, 198; II, 199;
IV, 133
3:5 II, 113; II, 161; VI, 12
3:6 III, 172; III, 173

Answer To The Pelagians III
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume I/25</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>III, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>III, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:56</td>
<td>IV, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>VI, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:43</td>
<td>I, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54</td>
<td>III, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>I, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33</td>
<td>I, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>I, 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34-36</td>
<td>I, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>I, 74; I, 77; I, 84; I, 91; I, 93; I, 94; VI, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:37</td>
<td>I, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:37-38</td>
<td>I, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:39-41</td>
<td>I, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>II, 53; IV, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>IV, 47; VI, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38</td>
<td>I, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>IV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td>VI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>IV, 5; IV, 78; IV, 79; IV, 82; IV, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>I, 66; I, 97; I, 98; II, 198; III, 118; III, 119; III, 120; IV, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>VI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>IV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13</td>
<td>II, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>II, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22-24</td>
<td>VI, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>VI, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>V, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:14</td>
<td>III, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>IV, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>V, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>I, 130; IV, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>II, 67; V, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>II, 200; II, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>II, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II, 69; II, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13-22</td>
<td>II, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>II, 157; II, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14-15</td>
<td>II, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>II, 158; II, 161; II, 217; VI, 40; VI, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21</td>
<td>II, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23-25</td>
<td>II, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24-25</td>
<td>II, 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>II, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>II, 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1-2</td>
<td>II, 165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>II, 166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 83; I, 86; II, 166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II, 169; II, 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7-11</td>
<td>II, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>I, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>I, 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 22; I, 74; I, 106; I, 109; I, 113; II, 24; II, 35; II, 36; II, 37; II, 38; II, 41; II, 44; II, 47; II, 49; II, 50; II, 52; II, 56; II, 59; II, 61; II, 63; II, 83; II, 135; II, 144; II, 172; II, 173; II, 174; II, 177; II, 181; II, 184; II, 185; II, 187; II, 191; II, 194; II, 195; II, 197; II, 202; II, 217; II, 221; II, 223; II, 236; III, 29; III, 58; III, 85; III, 88; III, 91; IV, 90; IV, 95; IV, 104; V, 23; V, 63; VI, 27; VI, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:37-38</td>
<td>I, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:39-41</td>
<td>I, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>II, 53; IV, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>IV, 47; VI, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38</td>
<td>I, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>IV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td>VI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>IV, 5; IV, 78; IV, 79; IV, 82; IV, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>I, 66; I, 97; I, 98; II, 198; III, 118; III, 119; III, 120; IV, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>VI, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>IV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13</td>
<td>II, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>II, 186</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/25
Answer To The Pelagians III

Volume I/25

1 Corinthians
1:20 I, 43
1:30-31 I, 140
3:7 II, 232; III, 114
4:7 II, 166; II, 232; IV, 129
6:10 I, 68; II, 58
7:5-6 I, 68
7:25 II, 168
7:28 III, 185
8:5-6 I, 48
11:1 II, 52; II, 146
11:9 VI, 26
11:12 III, 44; III, 94
12:23-25 IV, 36
15:12-24 VI, 32
15:13-12 VI, 34
15:13.12 VI, 34
15:16 IV, 116; VI, 34
15:20 IV, 116; VI, 34
15:20-21 VI, 36
15:21 VI, 31; VI, 36
15:21-22 III, 37; VI, 31; VI, 40
15:22 I, 5.5 II, 68; II, 69; II, 134; II, 197; II, 209; VI, 31; VI, 36; VI, 37
15:23-24 VI, 37
15:24-25 VI, 37
15:26 VI, 37
15:26-28 VI, 37
15:29-32 VI, 38
15:32 V, 2
15:33.34 VI, 38
15:34 I, 45
15:35-36.39 -45.47-49 VI, 39
15:36 V, 14
15:37 V, 14
15:38 V, 14
Answer To The Pelagians III

15:43-44 VI, 39
15:45 VI, 39
15:46 VI, 12; VI, 40
15:46.49 VI, 40
15:49 VI, 22; VI, 31; VI, 40
15:50 VI, 40
15:51 VI, 40
15:52 VI, 40
15:53-56 VI, 40
15:54-55 VI, 40
15:55 I, 67; VI, 40; VI, 41
15:55-56 II, 71; VI, 40
15:56 VI, 41
15:56-57 VI, 40; VI, 41

2 Corinthians
3:5 I, 79; III, 120
4:13 I, 124
4:16 II, 61
5:10 III, 107
5:14 I, 64; II, 163; II, 175; III, 37
5:14.15 II, 30; VI, 21
5:14-15 I, 117; II, 133; II, 134; V, 9
5:15 II, 163
5:20 I, 12
6:14-15 III, 187
10:17 III, 142; V, 64
13:7 I, 108; II, 165; II, 227; II, 232; III 107; III, 109; VI, 15

Galatians
2:21 II, 70; II, 188; II, 198; II, 199
3:2 I, 72
3:11 II, 199
3:16 II, 59
3:21 II, 220
3:21-22 II, 199; VI, 15; VI, 41
3:22 II, 220
3:29 II, 59
5:16 I, 72; IV, 77; VI, 14
5:17 I, 72; III, 170; III, 175; III, 178; III, 212; VI, 6; VI, 8; VI, 11;
VI, 34; VI, 17
5:19 III, 177
5:22 III, 177
6:7-8 I, 45

Ephesians
2:3 II, 228; III, 11; III, 79; IV, 123; IV, 124; V, 22
2:8 I, 124
4:5 I, 53
4:16 III, 114
5:12 III, 187
5:23 VI, 26

6:12 V, 40
6:23 I, 124; III, 106

Philemon
2:8-9 VI, 36
2:13 I, 45; I, 95; I, 97; III, 114; V, 57
3:9 II, 158; VI, 18

Colossians
1:12-13 VI, 20
1:13 I, 52; I, 64; III, 126; III, 182
1:18 VI, 37
3:5-7 I, 67

1 Thessalonians
4:16 V, 61

1 Timothy
1:15-16 I, 67
2:5 I, 124
2:19 IV, 55
4:4 IV, 55; VI, 16
6:10 III, 175
6:16 I, 50

2 Timothy
2:13 I, 81; V, 54
2:19 I, 48; III, 44; III, 216
2:20-21 I, 134
2:21 I, 134; I, 135
2:22 I, 235; IV, 126
2:25 VI, 19

Hebrews
2:11 III, 85; III, 87; III, 93
2:14 I, 64
5:14 V, 1
6:17-18 III, 40
7:9-10 IV, 104
8:13 III, 151
11:8-12 III, 85
11:12 III, 85
12:11 VI, 31

James
1:13 IV, 89
1:14 I, 67
2:10 II, 107

1 Peter
2:12 IV, 123
2:21-22 IV, 85

Volume I/25
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Citations are to book [Roman number] and chapter.

Abel, II, 54, 62; III, 85; VI, 11, 22, 23, 27, 30
righteousness of, II, 180-184
A bimelech, V, 16
Abraham, I, 48, 50, 131, 141; II, 59, 145, 160, 179; III, 38, 43, 52, 85, 88; IV, 1, 76, 104; V, 10, 12, 16, 64; VI, 17, 30
children of, II, 157, 158
Christ’s flesh from loins of, VI, 22
descendants of, I, 87, 89, 90
great number of offspring, III, 85, 88
loins of, VI, 22
promise to, II, 153-158, 168
righteousness, II, 162
tithe, VI, 22
abstinence, IV, 56
abuse, I, 73, 119
A cademic skeptics, IV, 116; VI, 26
A catius, III, 162
A chan, III, 12, 30
actions:
natures and, V I, 9
unable to change, V I, 19
See also original sin; paradise
all are children of, VI, 60
all exist/perish in him, II, 36, 178
all sin in Adam, I, 5, 68, 112;
II, 36, 85, 98, 134, 135, 164, 173,
197, 209, 214, 215, 217; III, 49;
IV, 104; VI, 31, 36, 40
broke commandment on how to live,
II, 77
Christ and,
Christ’s descending to underworld,
VI, 12, 22, 30
comfort of death’s coming, VI, 27
concupiscence before his sin, IV, 26;
VI, 16, 22
condition of death, VI, 36
created:
-animal body (as created), VI, 12
-bad nature, VI, 12
-blind, VI, 14
-free choice, VI, 12
-as good, III, 144, 152, 186; VI, 16
-innocent, VI, 19
-mortal, I, 67, 68; III, 57, 75
-upright, III, 110
curse, VI, 25
death, II, 93
death due to merit of sin, VI, 25
death’s reign, A dam to M oses,
II, 185-187, 202
destined to fall, VI, 10
devil, VI, 12
dilemma: good or evil, VI, 13
fear of death, VI, 27
first father of Christ (humanity),
VI, 12
first man, earthly, VI, 40
forbidden fruit, II, 187; VI, 20, 30, 41
free choice, III, 110; V, 40, 54; VI, 18

Volume I/25
generation began with, II,199
ignorance about, VI,27
immortality, VI,30
law, VI,41
law of obedience, VI,15
likeness of God, V,11
living as Enoch, VI,39
living, mortal soul, VI,39
mortality, IV,43,79;
V,14,16,23,25,27,39,41
name means “man”, VI,31
natural innocence, VI,18
naturally evil (Mani), VI,8
origin of sinning, VI,10,14
original sin imputed to, VI,22
original sin not in, IV,85
pattern of sin, II,189-194,214; VI,23
penance; long suffering, VI,30
punishment merited, VI,23
repentance, VI,30
righteousness, II,54; V,1,27
set free from underworld, VI,12,22,30
sin admitted by Julian, IV,98
sin; male more worthy of imitation,
II,190
sinning by imitation, III,85
subject to necessity toward the good,
V,12
teacher of sin, II,173
vacillation, VI,12
we all existed in, II,36,178; III,4,25;
IV,76,90,104
will; sin, V,61; VI,22
wretchedness; VI,27
you will return to earth, VI,23,27
Adimantus, I,25,59
adoption (children of God), I,53,111
healing (baptism) needed for,
III,149,150
adultery, I,22,40,65; II,42; III,144,209;
IV,29,113,118; V,17,18,20,21,23,24
Africa, III,35
agriculture, V,24
Ahab, King, III,57; IV,34,35
all (the word): “many” and, II,135,145,
147,148,149,175-177,215
Alypius, I,17,17,42,52,85; III,35
Ambaziah, King, III,30,33
ambition, IV,22
Ambrose, Saint, I,2,6,9,48,52,59,66,
67,70,71,72,93,99,109,115,117,126,
135,138; II,1,2,8,9,14,15,21,31,33,
36,37,73,164,208; III,56,178,
181,187,205,213; IV,10,23,28,42,
50,55,64,67,70,72,73,75,88,94,97,1
04,106,108,109,110,112,115,117,
118,120,122,128; V,5,20,25,30,
41,43,60; VI,6,8,12,14,26,37
charged with careless writing,
IV,113,119,121
Jovian’s attack on, IV,121
would now defend Julian, IV,114
Amsanctus, I,48
Anaxagoras, IV,103
angel(-s), I,66,102; II,52,53; III,210;
IV,63,116,123; V,26,32,38,40,42,
53,58,60,62,63,64; VI,10
fallen, VI,22
imitation of, VI,34
immortality, VI,30
anger, I,135; IV,119
children of, II,228-231; III,79;
IV,123,124,128,129,131,134
reconciliation, II,172
vessels of, I,127,134,141; II,142,158;
III,97,142; V,64
animals, 1,94; III,109,124,147,186,191;
V,8
born with defects, IV,75
concupiscence in, IV,38
dead, VI,31
earthly man, VI,40
first mating, V,11
freedom in intercourse, IV,43
human affinity with, IV,39,125
humans and, re sex, II,122
image of God on par with, VI,26
imitating, II,52
irresistible instincts, IV,41
morality lessons from, IV,43
nature; genus, V,24
pain/pleasure in giving birth,
V,26,29
propagation; concupiscence, IV,56
sexual desire in, IV,58; V,20
anti-Christ, I,132; III,44
Apollinarist heresy, IV,47-50,53,58
apostasy, V,64
apostles, I,50,77,89,106; II,52,175; III,72;
VI,35
Apulia, VI,18
A pulia, VI,18
A reopagus, V,64
argumentation, III,142; IV,116,118; V,24
impossibility in, III,188
prepositions, IV,97
Arians, I,75,76; IV,7; V,25,30,44
Aristotle, II,51; III,199; V,23
artists, IV,31
arts, I,53
things done contrary to (as sins), VI,9
ashamed, See shame.
Athanasius, I,75
Athens, IV,43
athletes, IV,44
Atticus, IV,88
Augustine, I,1,2
accused of blasphemy, I,49-51
inconsistency charged against, II,37-41
Jovinian compared with, IV,122
love of learning, IV,75
talent recognized by Julian, III,188
authority, II,16
Avernus, I,48
Baal, I,141
Babylon, I,75,139; V,4
Bacchus, IV,104
baptism:
See also infant salvation
ability to sin, I,98
adults with single sins, II,128
all sins forgiven by, II,212
blood of Christ as price of, V,9
Christ's law, II,161
circumcision as foreshadowing, I,50
comparison of opposites, II,217
death of Christ, II,135,172,222,223,225; V,9
devil cast out by, IV,77
diseases (evils) remain, II,106
dying evil before (Julian), I,105
dying to sin, II,172,173,222-225
effects (various), II,116-120
eternal benefits, III,52
evils from original sin, VI,26
forgiveness of sins in, II,97,98,225; VI,8
-sins become many by use, II,105
-various sins, different baptisms, II,108
gifts from, I,53
good and evil; before/after, I,105
grace from, I,95-98
grace rich in spiritual gifts, I,53
guilt removed by, V,26
healing and restoration, II,94,97,121,122; III,151
heirs, II,159
justifies after many sins, II,164
law, I,67
medicine of Christ, III,147
members of the dead, VI,38
necessary for all ages, II,113; III,149; V,9
one form; different ages made holy, III,59
power of its gifts, I,53
providence, V,12
rebirth, II,135,192; III,38; V,64
removes guilt of sin, II,71,98
renouncing the world, II,223; III,42
salvation, III,44,188
savior necessary for all ages, V,25
set free from first birth by, I,70
sin and the will, I,98,106
sinlessness, II,173
See sponsors.
temporal effects of original sin, II,97,98
temporal penalties; eternal benefits, II,95
will set free by, I,101
baptism of infants, I,55,56; II,114,205; III,51,187; IV,77,121; VI,23,36
children dying without baptism, II,126
renunciation via sponsors, II,224
rescued from power of darkness, I,50,52,60,63,64; II,181; III,124-127,137,199
restoration to original state, I,123
righteousness, I,57
saving remedies of Christ, II,221
Basil, Saint, I,52,59; II,37; III,111; IV,72,73
beatitude:
desire for, IV, 67
everlasting freedom, VI, 11
sin as impossible, V, 58
Beelzebub, V, 21
behavior: decorum, IV, 67
being:
multiples, VI, 26
necessary and possible, V, 45
believing. See faith.
Benjamin, tribe of, I, 141
bible:
authority of, I, 3
birth in o.t./rebirth in n.t., III, 84
heresies, I, 25
incautious use of words in (Julian), IV, 113
injustice of the divinity in, II, 21
interpretation; missing words, II, 158
Manicheans find falsity in, VI, 16
sources of errors, I, 26
birth:
conception necessary for, IV, 91
guilt in, I, 70
bishops, I, 59
bitterness, III, 177
blessedness: resurrection, VI, 36
blessing: law, II, 160
blind [-ness], VI, 17, 20
definition, III, 119
of heart, I, 47
willingly blinding oneself, VI, 18
boasting, II, 166; VI, 18
bodies: grow by addition, V, 47
body and soul:
See also death; flesh; image of God;
M anicheism
all souls belong to God, III, 43, 44, 54
bodies, in paradise, I, 116
body is dead on account of sin, IV, 136; VI, 7, 13, 23, 24, 27, 40
body weighs down the soul, III, 65; IV, 43, 56, 67, 75, 128; V, 1, 11, 16;
VI, 7, 13, 14, 17, 20, 27, 29, 30
creator’s dominion, III, 46
defects in the body, III, 95, 104
discord: flesh and spirit, I, 71
divine commandments, I, 71
generation, IV, 5
God the creator of both, III, 174
good nature; evil present, III, 135
governing the flesh, I, 71
mud; nobility, I, 69
power to destroy both, VI, 31
reproduction is of flesh (body), II, 61
soul:
corrupted (M anicheism), V, 25
created, VI, 20
flesh (M ani), III, 172
fruit of the spirit, III, 177
good and evil in, III, 155
happy or unhappy, V, 30
individually created, II, 25, 28
interior defects weigh down, I, 69
not from God (M ani), VI, 14
origin of, IV, 104
part of God (M ani), III, 186
rational soul is a nature, V, 40
resists separation, II, 186
set free by grace, V, 13
temptation; sin, I, 71
transmission of souls, II, 178; III, 173, 174; IV, 104
body, human:
See also human beings
dead on account of sin, V, 10, 21, 25
deformed; monstrous, V, 9
denial of original sin, V, 8, 22
devil as author of, IV, 72, 120
God the source of, IV, 118
God’s creation, IV, 43
incorruptible, IV, 127
members amputated, V, 19
praise of formation of, IV, 70
Boniface, I, 8; II, 178; III, 102
bribery, III, 35
Caelestians, III, 101, 119, 138; IV, 5, 109, 114
Caelestius, I, 67, 73, 75; VI, 25
Caiphas, VI, 121
Cain, VI, 7, 23, 27
fear of death, VI, 23, 27
sin of, II, 180-184
Calliphon, I, 64
camel, V, 61
canaanites, IV, 128
cursed seed, IV, 132
Ham imitated by, IV, 129
origin, IV, 129
capital punishment:
children and parents, III, 13
captivity, III, 120
carefulness, V, 47
Carthage, V, 26; VI, 25
Catholic Church, I, 9, 23, 50, 53, 75, 106; II, 25, 27, 87, 104, 150, 164; III, 7, 10, 18, 29, 45, 61, 67, 185, 199; IV, 43, 72, 88, 97, 112, 120; V, 9, 25, 44, 64; VI, 21, 23, 35
Catholic faith (-truth; etc.)
I, 2, 10, 22, 33, 52, 59, 73, 75, 85, 86, 96, 115; II, 6, 63, 66, 97, 105, 117, 129, 153, 163, 166, 187, 214, 236; III, 18, 35, 61, 95, 101, 102, 103, 109, 154, 170, 175, 186, 187, 205, 216; IV, 1, 11, 30, 45, 49, 50, 75, 109, 110, 112, 114, 128, 136; V, 1, 4, 9, 47, 56, 64; VI, 6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 17, 22, 25, 27, 41
Chaldeans, I, 82
chance: God's power, III, 109
change: mutability of all creation, V, 60
charcoal, IV, 91
charity, I, 86
chastity, I, 48; II, 42, 43; III, 56, 170, 178, 183; IV, 57, 122; V, 14
Christ's humanity, IV, 49, 52, 53, 57
lost virginity, VI, 19
marital, I, 62, 68, 70; II, 31, 122, 218; V, 23, 25
relative perfection in, IV, 52, 53
sex not condemned by Christ's choice, IV, 58
chickens (laying eggs), VI, 26
child-bearing, II, 8; IV, 117
childbirth:
Julian mocks Augustine, I, 15
natural moderateness, V, 46; VI, 26
pain:
-natural, not penal, in, VI, 26, 29
-in paradise, V, 14, 15
-as punishment, II, 91; VI, 21, 25, 26, 29
-sinfulness related to, VI, 21
-varies with mothers, VI, 29
-women in, I, 15
childlessness, II, 42
children (infants; little ones; newborn):
See also baptism of infants; generation; parents; procreation
avoiding sins of parents, VI, 27
bear witness to Christ, savior, II, 28
belief through others, I, 55
belong to parents, II, 40
born under power of devil, I, 22, 26, 62, 64, 86, 88, 112, 113; II, 24, 39, 40; III, 101, 142, 146, 162, 199; IV, 68, 95, 105-109, 115, 125; V, 7, 25, 64; VI, 20, 21, 23
causality, IV, 100
choosing good and evil, I, 48
Christ came to save all, III, 141
Christ is Jesus (savior) for, I, 53; IV, 13; VI, 120
Christ the physician denied to, III, 145-152
evils and defects in the newborn, VI, 9
excluded from benefit of Christ's death, V, 9
excluding Jesus savior from, II, 170
existing/remaining without the sexes, IV, 16, 100
few, or no, sins, II, 133
free, or not free, from all sin, I, 32, 47, 52, 53, 56, 96; II, 18, 114, 115, 129, 135, 138, 151, 161, 162, 172, 173, 174, 190, 196, 197, 214, 216, 224, 225, 235; III, 7, 12, 48, 57, 138, 144, 149-153, 154, 161, 162, 164, 187, 197, 198, 204; IV, 8, 72, 90, 98, 103, 104, 105, 109, 113, 115, 116, 121, 125, 129, 136; V, 7, 9, 13, 24, 26, 59, 64; VI, 17, 17, 20, 22, 23, 26
fruit of good (bad) tree, V, 21, 23
God the creator of, I, 141;
III, 101, 103, 124; IV, 118
grace; imitation of first human, II, 148
guilt, II, 144
identity of the father, V, 23
inheriting parents' talents, VI, 9
Jesus as savior of, I, 53
Jesus died for, II, 135, 138, 175
killing, I, 4
labors of little ones, VI, 29
lying, IV, 121
malice of, as necessary, V, 63
miseries:
-attributed to God, VI, 24
-mercy, I, 39
-not merited by sin, I, 72
-of the newborn, V, 27
nature and sin, V, 26
nature owes love to, VI, 22
no will; no sin, II, 24
origin: sexual act in marriage, II, 24
original sin contracted at first birth, I, 50, 54, 55, 57, 106, 117; II, 8, 13, 57, 77, 87, 103, 113, 116, 141, 169,
faith, II, 159, 160
sin revealed in the law, II, 74
symbol of resurrection, IV, 134
symbol of sin's removal, II, 221
takes away original sin, II, 73
clothing: care, modesty, IV, 44, 65
commandments, I, 79; IV, 122; V, 61
See also law
Deuteronomy, III, 12
excessiveness, VI, 15
forgiveness of sins, III, 48
friend of the creator, VI, 20
God doing opposite of, III, 21, 23, 26
tempting, just, and good, II, 220
impossible to observe, III, 4, 116
justice, III, 34
keeping/obedience
correcting way of life, II, 174, 222
grace of God, III, 106
with love, III, 114
merit, I, 134
teaching injustice, III, 27
original state, VI, 14
Paul's humanity, II, 232-235
remain in effect, III, 17-19
respect for, III, 16
righteousness, I, 107
transgression, II, 185, 187
tyrannical, III, 75
unjust, III, 73
virtues, II, 233
common folk, II, 2, 14, 36
conception: possible, not necessary, V, 55
concupiscence [sexual desire], I, 67, 68, 70, 71, 86, 101, 106, 108; II, 5, 6, 8, 10, 31, 34, 218; III, 56, 72, 74, 85, 167; IV, 5, 23, 120; VI, 6, 37
A dam in paradise, IV, 26
all born from Adam through, I, 48
animal nature of, IV, 38, 56
bad things in the world, IV, 18
battle against, II, 21, 217, 218, 228, 233; V, 8, 14
bitterness, III, 177
blame and praise for, IV, 17
Christ, IV, 87
continence, IV, 52
creation by God, IV, 23
damaged humans born through, IV, 95
debate on, IV, 6
defect, IV, 29

children of God, II, 7; IV, 132; V, 2
driven by Spirit of God, III, 120
power to become, III, 106
reborn as, III, 51
Christ (the name), VI, 31
Christian faith, III, 52, 106
Christian life:
be holy because I am holy, VI, 34
our body of sin nailed to his cross, II, 223
pagans and, I, 83
sinful flesh, V, 1, 34
Chrysippus, V, 23
Church, I, 67, 73, 82, 86
accusation against, I, 57
building itself up with love, III, 114
mercy and judgment, I, 130
union of Christ with, II, 59
war on, III, 144
Cicero, I, 22; II, 4; IV, 43; V, 17; VI, 22, 26
circumcision:
commandment, II, 77, 157; III, 17
eighth day, I, 4, 50;
II, 73, 119, 125, 151, 161, 201, 219

reason and will in infancy, I, 48, 113;
IV, 90, 103, 116
righteousness given to, I, 48, 113;
IV, 90, 103, 116
sacrificed to demons, VI, 23
savior not needed by, VI, 20
share nature of parents, II, 42
sin See sin: parent/child relations
Sodom, VI, 23
some adopted into kingdom of God, I, 136
subject to punishment, I, 57
sufferings resulting from original sin, IV, 114
vessels of honor, III, 2
weighed down by sin of another, I, 48
work of God, V, 7
works of the devil, VI, 21
yoke of original sin as unjust,
I, 27, 29, 31, 39, 48, 49, 57, 92, 116, 120, 122, 136; II, 16, 21, 22, 66, 67, 74, 95, 110, 117, 119, 124, 139, 141, 144; III, 5, 6, 7, 8, 12, 14, 22, 48, 61, 83, 126, 134, 202, 210; IV, 2, 74, 75; V, 2, 4, 64; VI, 3, 7, 14, 17, 20, 23, 24

common folk, II, 2, 3, 14, 36
conception: possible, not necessary, V, 55
concupiscence [sexual desire], I, 67, 68, 70, 71, 86, 101, 106, 108; II, 5, 6, 8, 10, 31, 34, 218; III, 56, 72, 74, 85, 167; IV, 5, 23, 120; VI, 6, 37
A dam in paradise, IV, 26
all born from Adam through, I, 48
animal nature of, IV, 38, 56
bad things in the world, IV, 18
battle against, II, 21, 217, 218, 228, 233; V, 8, 14
bitterness, III, 177
blame and praise for, IV, 17
Christ, IV, 87
continence, IV, 52
creation by God, IV, 23
damaged humans born through, IV, 95
debate on, IV, 6
defect, IV, 29
devil, II, 32, 88; III, 100, 177, 142, 180, 205; IV, 23, 107, 113; V, 13
devil as origin of (Mani), V, 7, 30
devil does not find c. in Christ, IV, 14, 18, 79

disparagement of nature, III, 178
effect of original sin, III, 177
enticed by, IV, 89
evil, even without consent, IV, 29, 61; V, 50

evil; source, IV, 25
evil substance (Mani), III, 176, 186
excess, IV, 24, 25, 41, 53
excess only is blameworthy, V, 19
eyes; things seen, IV, 22, 24, 25
fight against, I, 70; III, 167, 178, 187; V, 8
flesh; evil, III, 170
flesh vs. spirit, III, 72, 178; IV, 77; VI, 3, 23, 24, 28
forced desires: strive not to have at all, IV, 57
for forbidden fruit, I, 71
genus and species, IV, 25
God the Father as source of, IV, 21, 67, 69, 72, 77, 89
good of marriage, III, 187; V, 23, 24
good use of, I, 65, 70; III, 187, 209; IV, 107; V, 10
having sex for sex itself, V, 13
human beings born through, II, 226
human conduct, IV, 22
human nature ruined by, III, 186
immoderate/moderate, IV, 21, 24
impelling toward the illicit, V, 19
inborn, II, 235
incarnation, IV, 48
innocent longing, I, 71
Isaac’s birth, V, 10
law of sin, I, 72; III, 179
limit set for human beings, IV, 41
marriage, I, 11; II, 45
-chastity, II, 31, 218
-intercourse as good, V, 18
-John on, IV, 19, 29
modesty resists, IV, 37
natural evil, III, 187, 209; IV, 53, 67; V, 17
necessary for sexual union, V, 5
not a sin (Julian), III, 210
occasion of sin, I, 71
opposition to spirit, IV, 33

original sin, I, 72; III, 56; IV, 128; V, 16, 17
original state, V, 16
paradise, I, 67; II, 122, 218; III, 167, 177, 186, 187; IV, 38, 39; V, 20; VI, 18, 14, 23
passion in intercourse, IV, 27
pleasure, II, 39
-powerful force, V, 17
-praise; shame, II, 42; III, 177
presence in Christ, IV, 45, 53, 54, 58, 77
procreation, III, 212; V, 13, 16
propagation; male role, III, 167
punishment, IV, 34, 38, 56
relation to sex organs, IV, 28
resisting, III, 109; IV, 25, 69, 77, 114
resurrection of the body, V, 13
risen body will not have, V, 13
root of all evils, III, 175
-saints; consent, V, 59
-senses of mind and flesh, IV, 69
sexual misconduct, IV, 22, 69, 77
-shame, III, 184; IV, 37, 38, 67, 83; V, 14, 59
sinner attracted by, II, 221
slaves of, V, 8
-souls subject to, III, 187
union of spouses, III, 142
unworthiness of, IV, 38
usage (1 Jn 2:2), IV, 20
-vice, I, 64; IV, 24
-will, III, 109, 183, 187; IV, 38, 39, 43; V, 22
-word not used in a good sense, IV, 18, 20
-world as source, III, 185, 205, 209; IV, 5, 14, 18
-youth, II, 235
condemnation, I, 136; II, 113, 115, 117, 142, 189; V, 61, 64; VI, 19
A dam, II, 135, 136, 144
all descendants of A dam, I, 124, 125, 127, 128
circumcision; eighth day, II, 119, 125, 151, 161, 201, 219
judgment leading to, II, 105, 210, 211
last judgment, II, 212
nonbelievers, III, 199
one sin suffices for, II, 103, 105
penalty for sin, V, 26
unbaptized as subject to, I, 115
-worthy of, I, 130
Confessions, I, 25, 68
conscience, I,13,48,68,84,87; II,11,117, 171; III,114
consent, I,68,71,72,101,106,108; II,71, 226; III,178,183; IV,22,25,69,89; V,50,59; VI,20,41
imitation of Christ, IV,48
consolation, IV,109
Constantinople, III,166
contempt, I,41
contentiousness, V,2
continence, II,42; IV,37,52
counters (logic), III,31,146; IV,91; V,23,47,59,62
conversion, II,6,227; III,1
courage, I,83; II,223; V,1
cow, V,15,39
cowardice, V,1
crates (Theban), IV,43
creation, I,53; IV,1,2
created good; good creator, III,159; V,26; VI,14,16
lineage traced back to nothingness, V,38
natural/necessary, V,46
praise of, IV,121
Creed, I,49; IV,7
crime: God permits, III,24
criminals, VI,23
Critotheus, IV,88
curse:
guilt, VI,27
Noah’s cursing Canaan, IV,128
custom: acting contrary to, IV,37
Cynics, IV,43,44
Cyprian, Saint, I,6,7,9,52,53,59,67,69, 70,117; II,2,14,33,37,73,164; IV,72,109,112,113; VI,6,10,14,18, 21,23
Cyprus, King, I,140
damnation, III,183; V,58
circumcision, II,219
God the maker of evil humans, I,114,130
second death: depart from me . . . , V,1,31
Daniel (prophet), IV,129
darkness (Manichean), V,15,7
eternal, V,37
as nothing, V,44
rescued from power of, V,15,20
source of evil/sin, V,49,54
substance, V,54
David, King, I,70; II,84; III,33,52; IV,49,79; VI,40
penance; pardon, V,1,30
dead: baptism, VI,38
defeasance, I,123; V,22
death, VI,12,14
See also: immortality; mortality; resurrection; tree of life
able not to die, VI,30
Adam (as created), II,236
ambiguity over meaning of, I,68
ascribed to nature, not original sin, V,1,37
before the fall, I,68
body dead on account of sin, II,76; IV,36
Cain’s fear of, V,1,23
cause of, I,25,126; II,103,236; III,94; V,43; VI,7,8,12,31.

ceases after resurrection of the body, II,78.

children of Adam, VI,22.

Christ shows equality by his dying, V,34.

Christ's power over, VI,36.

devil and mortality, V,63; VI,7.

earthly man, VI,40.

eternal death destroyed by Christ, I,69,119.

resurrection takes away, II,98.

righteousness, V,27,37.

seeds come to life after, V,14.

serpent as sign, I,140.

set free through Christ, I,110; II,69,85,139.

sin as cause of, V,25,27.

sin as sting of, V,40.

sinner's end, I,94.

soul released from body, V,36,37.

temporal punishment for sin, VI,30.

wages of sin, VI,25.

will to die, IV,103.

wise according to the flesh, V,40.

work of the devil, V,43.

wound, VI,47.

you are earth . . . . I,68.

decency, IV,41.

decorum, IV,67.

defects:

human beings; creation, V,11.

natures and substances (Manicheism), V,16.

definition, III,119.

elements of, I,34,77.

delight, II,11.

in evil, I,94.

demons: sacrifice of children to, IV,128.

desire (-s): I,9,22,24,67,72,80,87,93; IV,21,22; V,29.

See also concupiscence; sexual desire.

chastity, IV,52.

evil, V,17.

flesh acts through, V,59.

flesh vs. spirit, I,69,70,72,101,106; II,15,17,97,180; III,167,170,173,175,176,178,179,185,186,187,21.

2,213; IV,19,19,19,26,27,28,33,37,38,41,43,44,49,57,58,61,63,6.

7,114,120; V,5,7,8,16,19,20,22,24,30; VI,3,5,6,8,9,11,14,15.

22,24,36,37,41.

force of sexual pleasure, V,11.

free choice, IV,122.

increased by prohibition, VI,41.

increased by sin, V,41.

Julian attacks Book Two, II,22.

law: you shall not desire, IV,57,58.

modesty, IV,37.

more fierce, more pure, IV,49.

natural, V,1.

Volume I/25
possible, not necessary, V, 46, 49
education: toil and pain, VI, 20
Egypt, VI, 22
elements (world), V, 39
Elijah, I, 141; VI, 30, 39
Elizabeth, IV, 134
emotions, I, 105
Enoch, VI, 22, 30, 39
Ephesus, VI, 38
Epicurus, II, 4; V, 26
Epiphanius, IV, 47
Esaü: rejection of, I, 131-132, 141
Esther, III, 163
eternal life, II, 106, 215; III, 52, 167; VI, 36
Christ, II, 69, 204
future blessedness, II, 167
grace, II, 97, 98
present world and world to come, II, 140
righteousness, II, 215
eternal punishment, I, 130; II, 24, 99; III, 199; V, 47, 64; VI, 6, 10, 22, 30, 36, 37
children and sins of parents, III, 5
everlasting death, VI, 40
evill will, IV, 118
second death, VI, 31
unbelief, VI, 30
eternity, V, 31
eucharist, III, 162
food/drink belong to the reborn, III, 38, 44
Eunomians, IV, 7
eunuch, V, 11
Christ as, IV, 52
evacuation (bodily function), IV, 37
Eve, II, 8, 56, 173, 179, 190; III, 187; VI, 12, 20, 26
death through original sin, V, 27
living as Enoch, VI, 39
nakedness, IV, 65
name given to, IV, 4
pain of childbirth from, V, 15; VI, 29
punished (Gn 3), VI, 25, 26
seduced, VI, 27
sin prior to Adam, VI, 23
evill, See good and evil.
example, II, 47, 56
excommunication, I, 48
exorcism and exsufflation, rites of, I, 50, 55, 57, 60, 117; II, 120, 181; III, 82, 142, 144, 146, 164, 182, 199, 208; IV, 7, 77, 108, 120; V, 9, 64; VI, 23
experience, VI, 14
eye: wickedness, IV, 28
Ezekiel, I, 33, 134; III, 36; V, 15
Jeremiah used to interpret, III, 84
faith, I, 53; II, 12, 98, 140; III, 61, 106, 121; V, 4, 22; VI, 8
Abram and Sarah, III, 85
Abram as witness to, II, 155
antiquity, I, 59
children of the promise, VI, 41
circumcision, II, 159, 160
God gives the increase, II, 157
God produces willing in us, II, 158
heavenly man, VI, 40
hope relevant to, VI, 26
love of sin, VI, 38
mercy and believing, VI, 10
power to become children of God, I, 94
praiseworthy examples of, III, 85
promise and, II, 199, 220
promise to Abram, II, 153, 154, 158
punishment: not to believe, VI, 10
resurrection of the body, II, 99; VI, 34
righteousness, II, 158, 222
reward of, in next life, II, 94, 95
salvation, I, 141
source, I, 124
testing, VI, 29
virtues, II, 188
visible reward, VI, 29
false accusation, III, 18, 35
falsity, III, 85, 121; IV, 106; V, 33
farming, I, 139; VI, 27
fasting, I, 52
fates, I, 82
fathers:
certain relationship with children, VI, 30
identity known, V, 23
Fathers of the Church, IV, 72, 112
Faustus, I, 25, 59, 69; II, 147, 226
fear, I, 58, 73; IV, 5, 11; V, 14, 16
bitter servitude of, III, 112
empty, III, 124
everlasting death, VI, 40
justice, VI, 17

Volume I/25
torment, VI,17
fecundity, V,11,15; VI,25,30,31
God's work, IV,5,6,7,8,9,10,29,68
feeble-mindedness, III,155,160,161,191;
   IV,74,75,114,115,123,125,134;
   V,22; VI,9,16,27
fertility, I,123; II,56
fidelity, I,65
figure of speech:
   proper sense, III,90-93
   singular used instead of plural, III,88
first human beings, See Adam; creation;
   Eve; original sin; original state; paradise
flattery, IV,49,112; VI,10
flesh, II,6,15,32,97; IV,27
See also body and soul; concupiscence; desire; incarnation;
senses
battle against, VI,14
body and soul belong to God, III,44
body of sin, II,223
child of concupiscence, III,175,176
corruption, VI,40
death vs. resurrection, VI,40
defects; no evil spirit, I,69; VI,14
desire, V,59
earth, VI,60
evil in first human beings, VI,14
exterior human being, II,61
generation of, II,61
good does not dwell in . . . , V,59
harmony with spirit, VI,6,14
human unity with animals, IV,39
incarnation, I,141
John's usage, IV,19
law of sin, I,72
likeness of sinful flesh, IV,81
Manicheism, III,94; VI,6
nature and senses, IV,69
sinful, and likeness to sinful, II,218;
   VI,33,34,35
spirit vs. flesh, See under desire.
   weakness; test, II,137, 233
what is born of the flesh . . . ,
   III,172,173
wise according to (=death), VI,40
work of, put to death, VI,15
work of the devil, III,126
works of, III,177
flood (biblical), II,186
Florus, I,2,12; III,166,187; IV,5
food, III,1,57
fool, III,9
force, V,11,32,45
free will, I,101
foreskin, II,73,156
forgiveness:
   losing evils, VI,19
   removal of guilt, VI,19
forgiveness of sins, I,57,84; IV,101; VI,8
See also justification; righteousness
   baptism, See under baptism.
   blood of the Lamb as price of, V,9
   children and adults, II,132
daily pardon, II,71
death as punishment, V,126
denied to little ones, II,120
enduring penalties of this life, III,154
   grace and pardon,
      II,107,115,120,121,222,227
   grace related to number of sins, II,131
guilt and penance, VI,19
Jesus forgave serious sins, II,152
Jews and Gentiles, II,151
justification through, II,165
keeping the commandments, III,48
   Lamb of God, II,71,84
   Lord's Prayer, VI,15
many sins required for (not just one),
   II,115,118
   pardon for personal sins, III,48
   pardon given at baptism, I,95,106
   prayer, penance, and almsgiving,
      II,97,212; III,51
reason for Christ shedding his blood,
   II,172
seventy times seven times, II,212
sin remaining with sinner, IV,96
   single sins of older children, II,126
   sins contracted by act of will, II,131
   souls with one sin only, II,118
   unbaptized persons, I,57
   voluntary sins, II,108
form:
   creatures could have been made
      better, V,15
   fornication, I,22,68; III,187,209; V,17,18,
      20,23
   as bad tree, V,21
   evil fruit from, V,21
   fortitude, I,36
   free choice, I,47,73,75,76,77,82,84,85,
      87,88,91,92,95,96,103,106,108,109;
Answer To The Pelagians III
Answer To The Pelagians III

See also good and evil; will action and, V, 19
A dam created with, VI, 12, 18 before/after baptism, I, 102 cannot be lost, VI, 19 concupiscence, III, 187 definition, I, 77; III, 103, 105; VI, 10 denial of, III, 109-111, 214 evil will, V, 56 examples, III, 110 first human beings, VI, 11 first law, given in paradise, VI, 15 freedom damaged by bad use of, VI, 13 good work of God, V, 56 goodness, V, 57 help of God's grace, I, 94; III, 107, 108 innocence a greater good than, VI, 19 loss of strength, V, 12 lost when it began to be used, VI, 8 natural limitations, III, 109 natural sin, II, 19 necessary, V, 47, 56, 58 not present in God, I, 102 original sin, II, 105 options: good or evil, III, 115, 117-119 paradise before the fall, VI, 8 possibility of sinning, V, 47 power to lead a good life, I, 94 righteousness and the law, VI, 18 set free by grace of God, I, 79 sin and the will, I, 98 sinners, I, 94, 96, 97 will or nature as cause, V, 56 will to be happy, VI, 26 worshiping God properly, III, 106-108 freedom, I, 74, 82; III, 117 of choice, See free choice definitions of "free" and "not free," III, 120-122 doing evil as evidence of, I, 81 essence of, III, 119 if the Son sets you free, I, 94 Jesus on power of, I, 93-94 loss of, on side of evil, VI, 19 original state, I, 47 perishes through sin, I, 94 possibility of sinning, VI, 11 promised by Jesus, I, 87-88 slavery, I, 107 word used in many senses, I, 87 fruit: good/bad tree known by, V, 21, 23 future life:
See also heaven capable of good alone, V, 58 future state: unable to sin, V, 56 reward: no battle with concupiscence, VI, 8 spiritual body, VI, 12
generation:
begins with a man, II, 83, 187 all things come from God, III, 94 bodies (Mani), III, 174, 176 body and soul, IV, 5 father and mother, III, 88 flesh, II, 61 four persons concerned in, II, 29
good produced out of evil, III, 181, 183 meanings, II, 53 natural laws of propagation, VI, 22 opposed to imitation, II, 52-55 See also original sin: passed on by . . . requires two persons, II, 56 seed and conception, III, 85, 88 sexual pleasure, II, 33 genital organs, See sexual organs.

Gentiles, I, 131, 132, 134, 141; II, 151, 155, 158, 159, 173 genus and species, V, 24 giants (Zeus), IV, 122 gifts, I, 53 glory, I, 73, 134, 135, 141; II, 171, 172; VI, 36, 39, 40 goats on the left, V, 64 God, II, 13 See also image of God, I, 37 accusations against, I, 53, 57; V, 2, 6; VI, 6, 18, 22, 24 anger of, I, 127, 134; IV, 128; V, 16; VI, 26 arguing against, I, 138 attributes, I, 50; III, 83 Augustine accused of blasphemy, I, 49-51 author of all good natures, III, 159 author of nature in each individual, III, 154, 181

Volume I/25
Volume I/25

author of necessary things, V, 63
brings good out of evil, V, 11, 12
cannot be God, and unjust, I, 28, 57, 81, 100
cannot have a bad will, III, 120
cannot will what is evil, I, 97, 101, 103
charges of injustice, IV, 76
commandments and judgments, III, 36
commissions no crimes, III, 135, 136
corrupted by nature of evil (Mani), V, 54
corruptible, III, 186; IV, 31
creator, I, 73, 109, 113, 114, 115, 119
-body and sex, IV, 9
-creates and raises up, VI, 31
-of evil, III, 136, 155, 161
divine nature not made from nothing, V, 38
emancipation from, I, 78
existence of, V, 30
faith in powers of, II, 155
favoritism, IV, 125, 128
fidelity, V, 64
forced to will the good, I, 101
foreknowledge, I, 93, 119, 130; II, 87, 142, 156, 220; III, 98; IV, 131
-death of infants, I, 48
-evil persons, V, 64
-number of saints, VI, 37
-those he knows will be condemned, V, 13
free choice, VI, 10
goodness of, III, 103, 106; V, 13, 64
guilt of, I, 72
guilty of sin, V, 63
hidden judgment, I, 135
idolatry, II, 151
imitating, II, 52
immutable, VI, 5
inherited sin attacks, V, 14
injustice, I, 5, 141; II, 16, 21, 236; III, 2, 5, 24, 34, 77
judges through prophets, III, 12
judgment and mercy, I, 25, 27, 141; IV, 122, 128
just judge, III, 6, 10, 26, 33, 38, 107, 109; IV, 2, 31, 32, 33, 34, 44, 122, 129, 132
-I, 136; V, 24, 6, 64; VI, 17, 23
justice of, I, 59, 134, 122, 140;
II, 22, 104, 124, 139, 144, 200;
III, 27, 12, 26, 27, 37, 43, 57, 92, 154, 210; IV, 114, 130; V, 60, 61;
VI, 12, 15, 22, 27
-crimes against, III, 126-136
-fool and denial of, III, 9-11
-punishment of infants, III, 136
-known by his virtues, II, 16
-known by reason, II, 151
-likeness of, I, 63
-loss of justice or omnipotence, I, 49
-love for the human race, II, 167
-love from, I, 122; III, 106
-loves all that exists, IV, 124
-maker of the newborn, I, 141
-malice, V, 64
See Manicheism
Manichean idea of, I, 120
miseries attributed to, IV, 26
most loving creator, I, 122
omnipotence, I, 93, 122; III, 126; V, 15, 60
our virtue, I, 86
-overcoming nothingness, V, 54
-patience, IV, 131; V, 64
-persecutor of the newborn, I, 48
-pity, I, 141
-praise for works of, IV, 10
-praising himself, III, 21
-prince of darkness (Mani), I, 49
-promises, I, 141
-sacraments, commandments, judgments, IV, 122
-sin not possible by, V, 31, 38, 54, 60
-sins ascribed to, V, 49, 52, 64
-traducianists, VI, 4
-trustworthy, just, and holy, II, 167; V, 2
-unable to sin, I, 103; V, 19
-unchangeable; immutable, V, 42, 44, 54, 60, 63
-undeserved punishments by, II, 49, 136
-vengeance, IV, 34, 35
-will of, See will of God
-work of, See will of God
-writes prejudicial to works of, IV, 110-111
-godhead: Christ imitable by us, IV, 87
Goliath, III, 32
good and evil:
See also free choice; Manicheism;
sin; will
-all creation is good, I, 122
-before/after baptism, I, 98, 102
capability for, I, 81

Answer To The Pelagians III
Answer To The Pelagians III

choice, See free choice.
concupiscence, IV, 69
conduct, I, 89; VI, 40
correlative terms, III, 145
defects are only in a good, II, 88
devil as creator of goods, V, 6
devil recognizes his own, IV, 9, 10
discernment (paradise), VI, 30
dominion of the will, VI, 19
effects of grace and original sin compared, II, 149
free from one, reject the other, I, 107
free to do good, with God's help, III, 105, 108, 109, 110
freedom as possibility of, I, 82; VI, 11
good alone in future life, V, 58
good can come through evil, V, 10, 63
good nature of body and soul, III, 155
goodness independent of God, V, 57
goods of the mind, VI, 18, 19
grace and fighting against vices, II, 106
help in willing the good, I, 94
humans created free to choose good, II, 7
humans make themselves either, V, 57
logic: both at the same time, III, 32
love bestowed by the Spirit, II, 165
Manichean and Augustine compared, V, 54
Manicheism, I, 115; III, 23, 37
merit, if no original sin, I, 39
minds trained to separate, III, 187
moderate/immoderate concupiscence, IV, 21, 24
natural defects, V, 22
necessary, possible, V, 54, 59, 60
necessity of the good, V, 61, 62
predetermination, V, 57
recognized by will alone, I, 80
recompense for, VI, 31
seek the good; avoid the evil, I, 105
shame; flesh, III, 143
suffering, V, 22
tree of knowledge of, VI, 30
two natures/substances (Manicheism), III, 175, 206
voluntary, V, 58
weakness for doing good, III, 110
good and evil: evil
act as something possible, V, 50
A dam as cause of, VI, 13
alien nature of, IV, 109; IV, 4, 5, 25, 30; V, 14
arising from a good, V, 26, 38, 60
children lacking free will, V, 15
coeternal with God, V, 5, 17, 25, 30, 41; V, 36, 41
coeTERNAL with God, III, 94, 178, 186;
IV, 2, 23, 42, 109
created subject to necessity of, VI, 12
creation of evil, III, 128, 136
defects as evil, IV, 115
distinct substance, IV, 121, 123
doubt about existence of evil, V, 27
equality able to receive evil, V, 59
exists only in a good, I, 114
flesh in first human beings, VI, 14
forced to do evil, II, 6
forgiveness, VI, 19
free for evil, III, 120
free will as source, V, 5, 9
God as creator or source, I, 120;
IV, 118; V, 54, 63; V, 15
grace and evil human beings, III, 188
healing needed, III, 37
lack of a good, V, 44
made out of nothing, V, 31, 39
maker of evil humans, I, 114
moves one toward evil, V, 19
natural evil as non-existent, I, 123;
III, 159-160
naturally present, III, 190
nature and an evil will, V, 53, 60
nature and substance, V, 1, 5
nature of evil as immutable, I, 97
necessity, V, 61
no evil apart from evil will, V, 22
original sin as cause of evils, II, 104
person is still a good nature, V, 60
persons created by God, V, 64
possibility of evil, V, 38, 39, 51, 61, 62
privation of good, IV, 109; V, 60
rescue from evils of this life, II, 94
set free from evil, I, 107, 111
sin and punishment, V, 26
substance (Manicheism), I, 69, 85;
III, 37, 170
will and natural evil, I, 24
work of God sinning, V, 63
good works, I, 131, 132, 133, 141; III, 2

Volume I/25
free to do, III,108
good ‘tree’, V,21
good will and God’s grace, III,120
proceed from good thought, III,120
Without you can do nothing . . ., III,118,119,120
goodness, I,54,67; III,73,113
holiness, I,98
justice, III,124-127
moral, II,151
nature of, to be mutable, I,97
necessity (creation), V,120
owed to God, V,48
possibility for, V,57
treasures of the heart, V,21
virtue and pleasure, I,64
willing the right things, V,61
goods:
- mutable, V,15
- can be lost, V,19
- God’s work, V,15
- will and the loss of, V,19
volatile; loss, V,19
gospel, II,19: VI,15
150,152,172,188,195,196,208,214; IV,48,84,95,114,124,125,129,132,134,34: V,4,9,61,62,64; VI,10,12,13,14,
15,19,22,26,30,39
See also baptism
abounded more than sin,
- II,85,98,142,147,148,204,209,217,221,222
abundant for more/many, II,96
anger of God, II,160
baptism’s effects, I,95-98
benefits for humans, I,94
chosen by, I,133
death, I,69
denial of, or praise of, III,189
effects:
- same at all ages, II,127
- various, II,120
example or gift, II,146
favoritism, I,131
fighters in war against evil, II,106
forgiveness and conversion, II,227
free choice, I,94; IV,122
gifts of, I,53
God’s justice, III,2
good will, III,120,122
imitation of virtue, II,214
individual differences, II,119
innocents made more perfect by,
III,147
justification,
II,103,105,108,109,112,113,114,115,119,121,126,130,131,133
law, IV,114
many sins removed by, II,173
medicine of Christ, III,149,150
merits, I,133,141
munificence, at different ages,
II,121-127
need for, because of sin, I,94
old testament sacraments, I,124
original sin, II,129,140
pardon for sin, II,107,222
Paul on, II,128-134
power of God, I,133
power of; power of sin, II,97-103
praised over sin (Paul), II,132
redemption, I,10,117
righteousness, I,140
sanctification, I,117
set free from many sins by, II,212;
IV,122
superiority over sin, II,206-209
various helps, III,114-119
will, I,95; III,115
without me you can do nothing, I,98
working in adults; in children, II,120
works, I,98,133
Greek language, IV,66
Gregory, I,6,9,52,53,59,67,69,70,117; II,33,37; IV,72,73; VI,14
III,3,20,32,56,79,82,124,154,159,209
9; V,11,60; VI,26,35,41
See also original sin
curse, V,27
eternal sin, V,19
forgiveness, VI,19
grace, I,99
human origins in, II,202
merits punishment, IV,33

Answer To The Pelagians III
Answer To The Pelagians III

necessity of, V, 51
penance and pardon, V, 19
removal; the will, V, 19
sin: parent and child, V, 27
unwilling, IV, 103
will, IV, 94
wretchedness, V, 27

habit, II, 10, 15; III, 167, 178
bad, affecting human nature, V, 12, 13
fruit of the will, IV, 103
necessity; second nature, IV, 103
weighed down by bad h., IV, 87; V, 59
Ham: Canaanites, IV, 129

happiness, I, 69, 70, 103; II, 89; III, 161, 162;
IV, 19, 23, 33, 38, 92; V, 4; VI, 11, 14
See also original state; paradise complete, V, 61
natural desire for, V, 26
nature flees from unhappiness, V, 26
necessary that we will h., V, 53, 55;
V, 12, 26, 30
resurrection, VI, 36
righteousness, VI, 12
sin vs. enjoying, V, 60
two eternal states of, II, 113
hate, II, 11; III, 13
parents, brothers, sisters, IV, 23
soul cannot hate itself, IV, 23
healing, V, 16, 19, 30; VI, 16, 8
health, III, 145, III, 195
hearing, VI, 23
heart, III, 60, 114, 117, 147, 167
blind and deaf, V, 22; V, 10, 17
God and acts of willing, V, 4
good persons, V, 21
humble, V, 47
knowing God in, VI, 23
obedience from, II, 230
stony, VI, 15

task of faith in, VI, 29
heaven, I, 53, 56, 57, 63; V, 37
desire for sins in, V, 37
eternal state(s) of happiness, II, 113
heavenly man, V, 39, 40
incorruptible bodies in, V, 30
merits of infants, I, 133
providence and the saved, V, 12
sinlessness in, II, 216
Hebrew language, IV, 66
Hebrews, Letter to the, V, 22
hell, IV, 118; V, 122, 30, 31, 36, 40

heresy (-etics), I, 9, 22, 25, 54, 68, 73, 75,
83, 130; II, 4, 7, 33, 103, 146, 166;
III, 18, 31, 51, 59, 94, 95, 101, 105, 124, 1
51, 182; IV, 5, 7, 9, 14, 43, 53, 75,
84, 89, 112, 113, 122, 134, 136; V, 9,
17, 30, 48, 54, 64; VI, 1, 4, 5, 8, 22, 35
Hilary, Saint, I, 9, 52, 59, 70, 117; II, 33,
37, 164; IV, 72, 73, 95, 109; VI, 33
Hippocrene, III, 117
holiness, I, 87, 133; VI, 17
attaining goodness, I, 98
inborn, IV, 134
manifesting Christ’s resurrection,
II, 223
parents and children, III, 51
pursuit of, IV, 20
Holy of holies, IV, 89
Holy Spirit, I, 50, 70, 72, 83, 86, 94, 98, 107,
124, 138, 140; II, 42, 56, 72, 85, 93, 119,
137, 140, 146, 157, 165, 166, 167,
169, 214, 217, 220, 228; III, 38, 106;
IV, 7, 58, 84, 86, 87, 89, 95, 120, 121,
134, 136; V, 48; VI, 7, 8, 13, 15, 22,
27, 34, 35
children of God, III, 120
driven by, II, 233
gifts of the, II, 167
resurrection of the body, I, 96
homonyms, II, 51
humousians, I, 75, 76
homosexuality, V, 17
honor: vessels of, III, 2
Honoratus, V, 26
hope, II, 11, 98, 153, 165, 166, 167; VI, 41
faith relevant to, VI, 26
heavenly man, V, 40
horse: form, V, 15
human being(-s), I, 22; III, 94; V, 1, 4
See also Adam; body and soul; hu-
man nature; image of God;
mind; will
alone: not good for man, IV, 4
answering back to God, I, 141
become better by sinning, V, 16
better form (creation), V, 15, 16
born and reborn, III, 51
born with defects of body and mind,
I, 70, 85; II, 123; III, 104, 160, 162;
IV, 75; V, 123, 8; VI, 5, 9, 14
called “world,” IV, 77
changed from evil to good, I, 138

Volume I/25
conceived by sexual pleasure, III,183
conception, IV,4
congenital characteristics, IV,127
corruptibility and weakness, I,71
creation:
-body and soul, VI,20
-by God’s goodness, IV,83,115
-by the devil, See devil (below)
capable of good and evil, V,58
-from darkness; from nothing, V,42
-God the creator, I,114,130; II,41;
-III,104,124,138; IV,76; VI,64;
VI,14
-image and likeness of God, VI,26,35
-natural evil denied in, IV,89
-upright, VI,8
-with tenderness, VI,20
-defective, even in paradise, VI,16
devil:
-author (creator) of bodies of,
-III,67,96,138,153,154; IV,38
-fruit of diabolical concupiscence,
-III,181
-fruit tree of the devil, II,32
-made for the devil, VI,64
-power over substance of, IV,51
-prince of this world, IV,77
-work of the devil, III,154
drawn to baptism, I,101
evil:
-by condition of birth, I,116
-God the creator, I,124; VI,14
-natural evil denied in, III,154; IV,89
-nature of, VI,20,25
-persons created by God, V,64
fear of death, VI,16
flesh and blood, V,40
forced to exist, V,42
free choice, V,47,57
gifts and wounds as equal, II,95
gifts, commandments, conversations,
VI,20
God loves/hates, IV,124
God (perfection) is cause of defects,
V,11
God produces, from seeds, V,14
God sins when person sins, V,63
good and bad in each, V,13
good, as creatures, III,159
good fruit from good tree, V,23
good of nature in, III,142
goods of life bestowed on, V,64
grace sets free, IV,122
grace: three benefits, I,94
happiness, V,60
helper (woman) made for, V,126
human beings make selves what they are, V,57
human person is a nature, I,96
image of God, I,63; V,38
likeness of God, III,110
mind and body, V,60
miseries of, I,72
natural goodness, III,82; V,59
nature, See human nature.
necessary to be part of a nature, V,49
not naturally evil, VI,14
produced from seeds, V,11
punishment; image of God, VI,36
seeds sown in woman’s womb, V,14
sin imputed to, V,53
state of being last, I,48
substance of, I,66
suffering, III,187
term refers to mind and body, II,61
vanity, I,36,63; II,178
wisdom, IV,123
work of God, I,64; II,23,24; III,160;
V,43
worldly conduct, IV,22
human nature:
See also human beings
animal sexuality, IV,43
bad habits, VI,12,13
capable of good and evil, V,58
Christ and value of, V,23
condemnation at its origin,
I,96,113,119
created as good, I,101;
III,144,145,146,187
-evil by its own will, V,62
damaged by original sin, I,105;
III,177,202,215;
-III,66,95,154,158,173,186,198,2
-06; IV,1,8,17,40,41,43,59,74,
75,95,104,109,114,123,128,130,
134; V,2,3,5,8,11,14,15,20,21,
25,29,30,40,56,64; VI,3,7,8,9,
12,13,14,16,20,21,27,41,
damaged, needs Christ’s healing,
III,181
defect (original sin) in,
III,67,95,96,109,159,160
damaged, needs Christ’s healing,
III,181
defect (original sin) in,
III,67,95,96,109,159,160
-evil if damaged, III,193
multiple defects, VI,5
original sin, III,66,95
-saved when defect is removed, III,195
-suffering as punishment, VI,25,26
-turns toward evil, II,6
damaged by the individual, III,208
devil, IV,5
devil as creator of, III,154
disparagement of, III,189
dominion of the devil, IV,80
evil, I,98
-always desired by, I,97
-capable of sinning, V,60
-coeternal with God, III,155,170,173;
   VI,5,17,41
-having, or being, an evil,
   III,188,190,195,215
-natural evil in, III,154
-present in human beings, III,195
-sin is natural, III,160
genus (logic), V,24,40
good work of God, V,56
God makes, in each individual,
   III,154
God the author of, IV,134
good or evil,
   III,144,150,159,192-194,196,20
6
good, prior to original sin, V,43
goodness of, I,115
healed by Christ, II,41,215
healing needed, I,24; II,8; IV,114
human beings born from, V,21
injuries from original sin, I,97;
   II,87,163
innocent before use of will, II,20
made with good will, V,38
Manicheans on, III,37,138,173
mind and flesh, V,59
sin and the will, I,72; V,26
sinful: blame and praise, V,63
slowness of, II,13
transmission of original sin, II,145
will, V,53
work of God, III,144
human race:
See also human beings
A dam and Christ as the whole, II,163
great evils of mind and body, III,161
increase and multiply, VI,26
original sin and condemnation of,
   III,56
proof of God’s love for, II,167
subject to original sin, III,158
suffering, as created, VI,25
wretched because of original sin,
   V,27
humility, III,116
mysteries revealed to little ones,
   V,1,24
husband: rule over wife, VI,26
Hyparxis, IV,43
hypocrisy, IV,121
idolatry, I,57; II,151; III,33,49,106;
   IV,31,128; V,4
ignorance, I,47,93,105,106; V,1,24;
   V,14,41
sin and the law, II,151,221
image of God, I,37,39,40,53,130,136;
   VI,22
animals on par with, VI,26
born with mental deformity, III,161
corruptible body, III,44,45
death and, I,5
defects in
devil (dominion; kingdom), I,63; V,5,20
free choice, III,45,109; V,38
human bodies, IV,40
innate evil (original sin), V,135
kingdom of God, II,30,113; III,97
mind, IV,39,75
original sin, IV,75
potter of clay vessels, I,133
punishment unjustly imposed, VI,36
tree of life, V,39
imitation:
A dam and Christ, II,190
of Christ, See Christian life.
evil-doers, II,48-50
law and, IV,129
See original sin: passed on by . . .
sins of, II,48,49,149,186; VI,31
use of reason, II,147
will, V,34
Immaculate Conception, I,66
immortality, I,67,71; IV,135; V,8,13;
   VI,25,30,37,39,40
changing actions, VI,19
children of Enoch, VI,30
not to be able to die, V,30
paradise, V,30
tree of life, V,30
impossibility: in argumentation, III,188
impudence, III,143; V,5

Volume I/25
impurity, I,109
Incarnation, I,61,140; II,42,146,148,188
Ambrose vs. Mani on, IV,109
A pellinarist heresy, IV,47-50
concupiscence, IV,5,14,48,79,84,104
flesh from loins of Abraham, VI,22
free from sexual union, IV,88,106
God and man in one person, IV,84
likeness of sinful flesh, III,51,87; IV,48,60,63,79,80,83,122;
VI,22,33,34,35
participation in our nature, VI,33
Word was made flesh, IV,21,47,84
incest, III,187
incorruption(-ibility), IV,38,39; VI,13,30,37,40
infant salvation, I,30,32,33,111,118; II,1,101,116,128,222,236; III,37,
83,138,144,146,149,214; V,15,25,41; VI,21,22,41
See also baptism of infants
forgiveness of sin, II,30,108
kingdom of God, III,107,124
little ones with no sin, II,118,119
works and good will, III,2
infanticide, IV,128
inherited sin, See original sin.
injustice, I,4,55
innocence, I,54,123,130; V,59
greater good than free choice, V,19
loss and restoration, V,19
lost; righteousness, VI,19,20
nakedness, V,5
original sin attacks, VI,24
punishment of, VI,27
Innocent, Pope, VI,11
instinct, IV,41
insults, I,88
intellect: defects present from birth, V,11
intelligence: relative, V,1
intercourse, See sex.
intermediate state, III,31
Irenaeus, IV,72,73
Isaac, I,141; II,153,158,160; III,88; IV,59; V,10; VI,30
Isaiah, III,99; IV,135
Israel, I,141; II,12; VI,22
ture Israelites, III,41,42
Israelites:
adopted by grace, IV,132
all in loins of Abraham, V,12
children of God, IV,132
land of the promise, IV,128
spiritual, IV,135
Italy, I,59; III,35
Jacob, I,141; II,160; III,88; IV,59; V,30
choice of; merits, I,131-133
Jeremiah, IV,134
interpretation of Ezekiel, III,84
Jerome, Saint, IV,121
blasphemies praised by Augustine, IV,89
challenge to praise for, IV,88
Jerusalem, I,33,93
Jesus Christ, I,76,84,94,131,140; II,6
Abel and, II,180,182
Adam and, II,54,69,136-141,146,188-194,196,203,218; III,10
baptized, IV,63
came to seek and save what was lost,
III,141
chastity, IV,49,52,53,57,58
Church, See Church.
clothing, IV,63,65
coming in humility; in glory, I,124
concupiscence in,
IV,18,45,53,58,77,79,87
death:
-accepted, II,99
-body only was buried, II,178
-Christ died for all, II,30,133,239;
III,37; V,9; VI,21
-dying in vain, III,38
-example, VI,34
-Father, if it is possible . . . , V,36
-foreshadowed in sacrifices, III,16
-forgiveness of sins, III,31
-handed over for our sins, II,163
-healing human nature, II,215
-imitating the power of, II,223
-little ones he also died for, I,64
-obedient unto death, V,36
-original sin and, II,163
-righteousness through, II,170
-in vain, II,188
deceit was not on his lips, IV,87
deliverer, I,110,111,112,118
descent to underworld: A dam released, V,12,22,30
desired only what was permissible, IV, 58
divinity: power of his own will, IV, 84
eternal life through, II, 85
example of perfection, IV, 57
father of the world to come, II, 188
first fruits of the resurrection, VI, 36
forgiveness of sins, I, 84
freedom promised by, I, 87
fulfills law against desire, IV, 58
God and man, VI, 22
grace, I, 140
healing spiritual seed, II, 216
heavenly man, VI, 40
holiness, IV, 54, 134
human nature, V, 23
humanity, I, 138
-Adam as first father of, VI, 12
-Apollinarist heresy, IV, 47-50, 53
-body if lacked nothing natural, IV, 59
-bold language re flesh of Christ, IV, 64
-Christ's equality with us, VI, 34
-concupiscence, IV, 58
-deity as soul of, IV, 47
-dreams, IV, 58
-evenuch, IV, 52
-flesh and spirit in accord, IV, 57
-full masculinity, IV, 53
-heresies, IV, 81
-his flesh not separate from ours, VI, 33
-merited becoming Word of God, IV, 84
-modesty, IV, 63, 64
-real body, IV, 54
-senses and suffering, IV, 46-50, 57
-sexual organs, IV, 54, 59
if Christ is in you . . . , I, 96
 imitation of, IV, 87
See also incarnation.
lamb of God, II, 198, 199; IV, 133
life-giving spirit, VI, 39
likeness of sinful flesh, II, 218, 225
Lord's Day (eighth day), II, 73, 151
lying charged against, IV, 121
meaning of his word, I, 89
mediator, II, 172; VI, 17
new Adam, IV, 104
obedience, II, 144, 146, 147, 148, 149
original sin in, IV, 51, 60, 86, 87, 104;
VI, 135
passion:
-Apollinarist heresy, IV, 50
-devil and, V, 10
-punishment without sin, VI, 36
perfection of virtue in, IV, 48, 50, 53
physician needed by little ones, III, 145-152, 153
priesthood prefigured, VI, 22
proposed the Father for imitation, IV, 87
rebirth through, II, 109
-See also baptism
regeneration through, II, 187
reign in life through, II, 103
resurrection:
-denial of, VI, 34
-if the dead do not rise . . . , VI, 34
-eighth day, IV, 134
-sharing in, II, 223
righteousness, II, 140, 144, 170; IV, 87;
VI, 7, 23, 27
salvation before Christ, I, 115
saves people from their sins, III, 150;
V, 29
savior (his name), I, 111;
II, 108, 128, 131, 170, 222;
IV, 13, 84; VI, 18, 20
savior of infants, I, 32, 111, 118; II, 115
second Adam, VI, 22, 31
sin:
-desire for sin, IV, 48, 53, 89
-devil finds none in Christ, IV, 78, 79, 80, 84
-sinlessness, I, 59, 62;
IV, 82, 85, 87, 88, 89, 106, 120, 134
Son of God, I, 138, 140; IV, 84
suffering (real), IV, 47
temptation, IV, 79, 83
virgin birth chosen by God, I, 52, 64, 66
virtues surpassed all others, II, 171;
IV, 87
washes sins away, I, 70
Wisdom of God, IV, 135
world did not know him, IV, 18
Jews, I, 7, 12, 131, 132, 133, 140; II, 149, 151;
V, 21
See also Israelites; law
captivity, I, 138, 139
children of Abraham, II, 158
descended from Abraham, IV, 1
heirs of the promise, II, 158
praise of, IV, 134
pride, II, 173
Volume I/25

Answer To The Pelagians III

remnant, I,141
serious sins, III,39
Job, IV,129
John, Apostle, III,209; VI,21
Gospel (prologue), IV, 21
letter of, IV,19,20,45,69
John the Baptist, Saint, IV,134
baptism by, IV,63,88
John Chrysostom, Saint, I,52,59,96; II,37; III,111; IV,72,73; VI,7,26
Jordan river, IV,121
Joshua, III,12,30
Jovinian, I,96,98,101; III,144
attack on Ambrose, IV,121
Augustine as worse than, IV,122
Julian compared with, IV,122
judges, I,10,48; II,1,2,33,37; III,24; IV,19,20,45,69;
V,28; VI,21,27
human and divine, III,34,35,37
judging:
God’s just judgment, II,87,89
norm for, III,13
volitional or seminal cause, III,13
judgment day, I,96; II,212; III,107
Julian:
Jovinian compared with, IV,122
occasion of his book, I,1
parents of, I,68
justice (divine justice), I,3,4,27,28,39,45,49,50,53,64,72,78,105,113,119,
133,138,139; II,13,16,39,84,105,
117,151,161,171,196,216,236;
III,1-8,13,17,23,24,27,32,46,53,56,57,67,99,130,151,157,164;
IV,1,136;
V,1,28,64; VI,17,24,27,30,41
characteristics, III,2
contradictory propositions, III,32-34
day’s wage for work in vineyard,
I,38
definition of, I,35,44; II,17
divine, See also God: justice.
evil will, V,22
God as genus of, I,37
God’s greatest attribute, IV,130
goodness, III,124-127
imputes only freely committed sins,
V,29
just persons (Ezekiel), III,38
logic, IV,116
new heaven and new earth, V,62
old and new testaments, I,38
origin, I,37
punishment, V,26
sins: parents and children, III,33,34
unity of virtues, I,36
unmerited gifts, I,38
will united to, I,133
justification, I,59; II,97
baptism, after many sins, II,164
Christ: nature; law, II,198,199
grace,
II,103,105,108,109,112,113,114,
115,119,121,126,130,131,133
Paul on, II,128-134
rebirth, after many sins, II,108
set free from many sins (by baptism),
II,212
kingdom of God [or —heaven], See heaven.
kinship, III,13
knowledge:
gift of God needed, I,95
labour in attaining, V,3
pursuit of, V,1
labor, See work.
language teacher, II,144,209
languages: natural, IV,66
last judgment, See judgment day.
Latin language, IV,66
law(s), I,3,4,5,72,133,137; III,12,13,
15; V,48
authority of, III,20,177,185
anger, II,153,158,160,161
baptism, I,67
commanding what is impossible,
III,82,116
commandments, II,152,158
defect: power of sin, II,220
denied; corrected, III,16
freedom to observe, V,15
God’s plan in giving, II,220-221
grace, IV,114
guilt for one offence, II,107,119
heirs of the promise,
II,157,158,159-162
holiness claimed, II,173
holy, III,186
ignorance of, II,151,221
Jews alone were subject to, II,209
justice, III,34
justification, II,151
knowledge of sin, II,69,72; III,210
law of members resists law of mind, I,67,69,71; III,112; IV,31,35,44,56; V,59; VI,5,13,14
multiplicity of, VI,20
natural sin, II,70
origin of sin, VI,41
original sin challenged, II,73,77
perversion, II,21
power of sin, VI,41
promise to Abraham, II,156,158
reign of sin, II,198,199,217
righteousness, II,158; VI,41
sin:
- abounding, II,70,217,218,220-221
- Adam to Moses, II,185,199
- existed up to the,
  - II,69-78,199,219,220
- free will; before/after law, II,201
- parents and children, III,30,33,61
- passions, I,69
- sins increased by, VI,15
  transgression of,
  - II,146,149,160,185,186,191,201,
  - 205,209,214,217,218,221; VI,41
  two sacred witnesses, III,31
Lazarus, VI,7
learning, II,13
Levi (son of Israel), I,48; II,179; III,38,43; IV,76,104; V,64; VI,22
liberal arts, II,1
lice, V,15
life, VI,12
  brought to life in Christ, II,197,209
diligence, VI,36
name given to Eve, IV,4
reverence for human birth, I,70
seeds sown in the earth, V,14
light: hated by those who do evil, III,187
likeness of God, See image of God
literature teacher, II,209
little ones; See children
logic, I,57; II,36,37,99; V,34
contradictory propositions, III,31-34
contrary propositions, IV,91
correlative terms: good; healthy, III,145
demands of, IV,115
genus and species in, V,24
propositions and conclusions, IV,116
loincloths, IV,37
loins, I,48
Lord’s Prayer:
  Bring us not into temptation, I,106,108; II,227; IV,82,89
  Forgive us our debts, I,67,98,101,104,105; II,71,212;
  III,116; IV,89; VI,15,30
  Y our will be done, VI,6,10,34
Lot, III,52
love, I,84,94,131; II,11,165,233
  children of God, III,106
  command to love persecutors, IV,87
effect of God’s love, I,133
gift of God, III,106
for God, I,83
God the source of, III,114,122
God’s love of Jacob, I,132,133,141
greatest: to die for one’s friend, VI,27
Holy Spirit, I,107
keeping the commandments, III,114
righteousness, II,142
sexual desire, III,85
unites members of Christ, VI,14
will, I,95; III,112
love of the world, IV,22
lupine, grove of, III,81
lust, III,142; IV,5,53; V,15,25
Lycaonia, V,64
lying, I,67; IV,104,122
Macarians, I,75
majority opinion, II,3
malice, IV,123,126,127,128,129,131,134;
V,63,64
man (Hebrew word = Adam), VI,31
Mani, I,24,32,49,52,59,66,96,97,98,101,115,116-120; II,102,148,
178; III,18,23,37,53,79,83,94,109,
144,159,160,161,167,170,180,183,1
84,185,187,195-197,199,200,212,21
3,216; IV,5,17,18,19,23,24,28,29,
38,47,50,55,56,58,64,67,70,71,72,7
5,81,88,99,109,114,120,121,122,
128,130,134; V,1,4,8,9,19,20,25,26,
30,36,37,38,40,42,43,44,49,54,56,6
3,64; VI,5,6,8,9,13,14,15,16,17,
20,21,23,28,31
Augustine compared with,
III,153-158,162
Julian assumes Mani’s views, VI,14
letter: discovery; quotations,
III,166-176

Volume I/25

Answer To The Pelagians III
manias, III,152

false statements in bible, VI,16
good soul = particle of God, VI,6
two souls: one good, one evil, VI,6,9

Mantua, V,11

Mary, Blessed Virgin, I,66;
IV,58,79,84,86,87,104,121,122,134;
VI,34,35

meaning: word of God, I,89
medicine: possibility of death and, V,47

Melchiades, Bishop, I,55

Melchizedek, II,179; III,38; IV,76,104;
V,17,22

Melitides, V,25

memory, VI,13

Menoch (letter of Mani to), III,172,187;
IV,109

mercy, I,38,39,48,55,67,70,113,127;
132,133,134,141; II,8,106,117,168;
170,222; IV,124,129; V,47,61,64;
VI,6,14

believing by free will, VI,10
children of, IV,129,131
judgment, VI,12
rejected by sinner, I,130
vessels of, I,141; II,142; III,142

merit, I,122,126,141; II,101,117,146,166,
170; V,6,56,62; VI,9,30,40

Marcellinus, I,68; II,178; III,177; IV,104;
VI,25

Marcion, I,59; III,53; V,26

marital act; See marriage; sex,
marriage, I,9,22

See also concupiscence; sex
accusations against Augustine, V,23
barren, V,21

births making up for deaths, VI,30

carnal pleasure in, I,68

carnal pleasure, I,11; II,45; III,209
condemnation, I,22,61,62,66;
II,24,31; IV,58,114,121; V,24
creation of, I,70
defect in, II,122
devil and, IV,68
evil to be healed in, III,144
fecundity as reason for, IV,5,10,19,29
fidelity, VI,22

God as source of, IV,117
God unites the spouses, III,138

good and evil, V,25

good tree, V,21 as . . .
goodness of, V,23

husband clings to wife, II,57

immoral intercourse in, II,40
institution, I,17; IV,118,121; VI,30

Julian attacks Book Two, II,22
make good use of sexual desire,
V,18,24

morality of, V,23

nature is distinct from, V,24

not a genus, V,24

original sin contracted from,
II,22,64;
III,27,39,42; IV,35,57,65; V,56;
V,21,23,41; VI,14

paradise, I,62; II,93

praise of, V,24

praised by Ambrose, IV,113

praiseworthy, II,45

purposes; order, V,23

sex in, II,24,32,39

-disease, I,68

-as essence of, I,65

sexual desire, II,88; III,170

shame and pleasure in, II,105; IV,5

species of nature, V,46

two in one flesh, I,59,61

virginity and, IV,122

work of the devil, I,62,64; II,28,88;
IV,72,105,107,113

works of human beings, V,24

martyrs, I,50; VI,27; VI,36

Mary, Blessed Virgin, I,66;
IV,58,79,84,86,87,104,121,122,134;
VI,34,35

mercy, I,38,39,48,55,67,70,113,127;
132,133,134,141; II,8,106,117,168;
170,222; IV,124,129; V,47,61,64;
VI,6,14

believing by free will, VI,10
children of, IV,129,131

judgment, VI,12

rejected by sinner, I,130

vessels of, I,141; II,142; III,142

merit, I,122,126,141; II,101,117,146,166,
170; V,6,56,62; VI,9,30,40

Answer To The Pelagians III

Volume I/25
divine justice, I,38
evil merit, V,63
justice in ascribing, IV,76
keeping the commandments, I,134
quality affected by sin, I,96
reward, VI,5
will as cause of, I,134; II,101
metaphor, III,87-88; IV,66
mind, II,52,60,233; V,14
See also will
act of a nature, V,40
age and use of reason, I,47
causality, V,60
concupiscence, III,177
dull or sharp; defects, V,11
human beings born with defects of,
V,14,16
image of God, IV,39,75
keen for understanding, IV,75
loss of innocence, V,19,20
natural things, V,63
sin as free act of, V,42
will and, V,40,41,42,60
miracle; man born blind, III,162
misery, I,29,39,50,121; II,89,104,116,
119,163,214,236; III,57,65,89,
109,161,198,215; IV,38; V,3,7,9,
14,16,21,24,30
modesty, II,60; V,15,16,23
actions not done in public, IV,37
Christ, IV,63
covering whatever is good, IV,42
customs vary, IV,44
intercourse, IV,31
natural acts, IV,37,43
private genital parts, IV,44,55,65
sexual behavior, IV,31
Monica, Saint, I,68
moral conditions, V,1
more (the word), II,205,206,208,209
mortality, I,67,71; II,76;
V,12,25,30,31,39
body of this death . . . , I,67,69,71
Moses, I,141; II,69,217,221; III,18,34;
IV,14,15,41
death’s reign, A dam to Moses,
II,185-187,202
multiply (word usage), VI,12,26
mutation, V,18
Myrmidons, V,15
mysteries, III,106
nabu, IV,104
nakedness, IV,37,41
A dam and Eve, IV,65,79
Christ and shame, IV,63
offensive, IV,63
original sin, V,16
original state, IV,44,62
shame, IV,36,41,62; V,5; V,126
various reasons for, IV,44
naming: sign of wisdom, V,1
natural relations (the term), V,20
natural sin, See original sin
nature (-s): V,40
See also human nature
actions and, V,19
created subject to necessity of evil,
V,12
creation as good, V,15
creator, V,56
defects in, I,63,66; V,16
diabolical, I,63
esential for a nature, V,53
evil:
existing in a nature, I,114
God cannot create, III,136
as substance, I,69,85
will attributed to, V,53,60
good, but with defects, V,64
good, with presence of evil, III,206
goodness, as a nature, V,136
laws of, V,130
meaning of, I,90
mutability of good and evil, I,97
not a genus, V,24
praises the creator, II,235
sin, V,53
substance (Manicheism), V,25
supreme goodness of creator of,
V,16
will, V,56
work of God, V,63
necessary (-ity), I,72,82,84,103,106,134
conception, V,55
darkness; sin, V,54
definition, V,45
doing evil out of, V,50
emptiness or fullness, V,59
evil, V,63
free choice (not its use), V,58
having things as possible, V,47
natural part of creatures, V,46
natural things, V,63
Volume I/25
nature and free choice, V, 56
neither virtue nor vice, V, 62
part of a nature as, V, 49
possible and, V, 45-47, 51, 53, 59-64
sin attributed to God, V, 52
sinning, VI, 3
voluntary acts, V, 55
whatever is natural, V, 46
will and, IV, 93, 103; V, 53, 57
willing happiness, V, 53

nettle, II, 10

new testament:
children of the promise, III, 41
prediction (Jeremiah), III, 84
rebirth into freedom, III, 42
next life, See future life.

Nicodemus, II, 175
Nile river, IV, 123
Noah, III, 12; IV, 128, 129; VI, 22, 30
n nobility, I, 131

nothing (-ness):
absolutely nothing, V, 44
capability to sin, V, 39
creation from, V, 31
darkness as, V, 44
destructive power of, V, 32, 37
divine nature, V, 38
eternal, V, 36, 38
feebleness of God, V, 54
free choice, V, 38
great dominion of, V, 33
greatest power substituted for, V, 35
power, V, 38, 42
void, V, 32

Novatians, IV, 7
Numidia, I, 16; VI, 11

obedience:
A dam and the law, VI, 15
eager to obey, II, 229
ears that hear, II, 228
fallen angels, VI, 22
gospel, II, 230
rewards of, VI, 30
sole virtue of a rational creature, VI, 15
spiritual glory, VI, 39
old age, IV, 37
old testament, I, 88, 124
holy persons without baptism, I, 124
opinion, II, 16; III, 31, 32
Origen, V, 47; VI, 10

original sin, I, 3, 6, 22, 24, 29, 30, 43, 52, 92, 98, 136; III, 2, 44, 77; IV, 55, 113, 119, 120
See also A dam; devil; guilt; misery; original state; paradise
abounding after the law,
II, 217, 218, 220
in A dam all sin, I, 25, 74, 109, 113, 125;
II, 20, 22, 26, 33, 35, 36, 37, 38, 41, 44
47, 49, 50- 57, 59, 61, 63, 64, 66, 82,
83, 89, 101, 103, 135, 144, 145, 161,
163, 172, 173, 174, 177, 183, 185, 18
7, 194, 199, 202, 212, 213, 215, 217,
221, 223, 236; III, 11, 29, 57, 58, 65,
85, 87, 88, 91, 92, 154, 177, 186, 187,
213; IV, 1, 23, 42, 64, 67, 79, 90, 94,
95, 96, 97, 98, 103, 104, 112, 115, 11
8, 120, 128, 133, 136; V, 7, 20, 21,
30, 31, 40, 41, 64; VI, 5, 6, 7, 8, 14,
16, 21, 22, 27, 29, 31, 33, 36, 37, 41
A dam as image of God, II, 30
A dam was destined to fall, VI, 10
A dam's good nature vs. his will, VI, 13
all are born with, II, 163; IV, 70, 83
all born of marriage, I, 64
all made sinners by, II, 149
all sinned in A dam, II, 207
all were that one A dam, II, 179
all who are born of sexual union,
IV, 79
Ambrose on, I, 48; II, 21
baptism and healing effects of,
II, 94, 97
baptism and the end of death, II, 93
beauty tempted the eye, I, 71
blame for, II, 64, 101, 107
blame nature, not imitation, III, 11
born evil, III, 155
Catholic faith, IV, 136
cause of, V, 20, 21, 24
children: imitation of first human,
II, 148
choosing good and evil, II, 216
Christ died for all sinners,
II, 163, 169, 170
Christ is either guilty or not human,
IV, 80
Christ is free from, IV, 82
circumcision takes away, II, 73
covenant to be reborn, II, 235
concupiscence, III, 56; IV, 68; V, 13
concupiscence before the fall, VI, 14

Answer To The Pelagians III
condemnation, See condemnation.
contracted:
-by being born, IV, 78
-by birth, removed by rebirth, II, 76
-from our origin, I, 57, 63
-removed, II, 218
-questioned, II, 27
curse upon the serpent, V1, 28
death, See death.
defect by God’s judgment, V, 64
defect in human nature, II, 220;
III, 67, 95, 96, 104, 109, 160, 161
defense or deception, IV, 113
denial of universality (Julian), II, 176;
III, 53, 66, 162, 210;
IV, 67, 84, 123, 129, 133;
V, 22, 30, 55, 64;
VI, 9, 12, 14, 16, 18, 22, 41
devil as author of, IV, 120
devil used the serpent, V1, 28
devil’s dominion over bodies,
II, 27, 28 [bal]
dominion of the devil, II, 30, 147, 205;
III, 46, 132; V, 40; VI, 20
effects, I, 54, 55; III, 71, 73, 102, 161
enormity of harm, V1, 23
evil:
-evils increased, not begun, by,
V1, 26, 28
-God accused of creating evil,
V1, 6, 10
-merit, I, 39
-origin of, II, 17; III, 207; VI, 17
-by will, not necessity, V, 50, 62
-will; act of the mind, V, 60
example(s) of sin (from Adam),
II, 62, 103, 107, 184, 185, 187
existed before the law, II, 217
existence after Christ questioned,
II, 71
existence of natural sin, II, 148
existing and remaining, IV, 96, 103
first evil will, then evil desire, I, 71
flesh and spirit in discord, III, 178
forbidden fruit, V1, 23
free choice, I, 94; III, 102
free will, IV, 90, 91; V, 35; V1, 7
freedom of choice destroyed by,
II, 88
generation and regeneration, III, 85
God and inherited sin, V, 54
grace, II, 113, 140, 142
grace as more powerful than, II, 99
grace removes guilt, II, 97, 98
great evils, II, 106
greatness of the sin, VI, 13, 21, 27
guilt, IV, 84, 90
-before use of reason, III, 96
-from our origin, III, 119
-removed by rebirth, I, 70
-unequaled by any sin, V1, 23
-from will, not nature, II, 165
harming A dam alone, II, 107
healing, II, 130
human miseries from, I, 85
human nature, II, 114, 163
human race subject to, III, 158
image of God, VI, 35
imitating Christ, IV, 86
imitation or generation as cause,
II, 35, 47, 50, 52–55, 56, 70, 75, 81,
83, 105, 135, 137, 145, 146, 149,
173, 177, 181, 187, 199, 205, 214, 21
5, 216, 226; III, 19, 85, 86, 91;
IV, 129; V, 63; VI, 27
immortality, VI, 7
imputed under the law, II, 73, 84
inborn evil, V, 43
inclination toward sinning, V, 48
increasing after the law, II, 218, 219
incredibly great sin of, V1, 7
infant salvation, II, 2
information, not punishment (Gn
3:19), VI, 27
inherited sin, III, 216
injuries inflicted by A dam’s sin,
II, 87–89
injury, I, 96
injury to human nature, II, 97
injustice of, II, 20
innate, III, 89, 90
innocence attacked by, V1, 24
kingdom of the devil, II, 208
knowledge of good and evil, VI, 12
Mani and Julian on, III, 175; VI, 18
Manicheans on, III, 37
many died because of the one, II, 134
many made sinners by,
II, 144, 146, 147, 149, 215
many, not all, II, 215
many sins after the one sin,
II, 111–115
minimizing A dam’s sin, VI, 23, 27
miseries; evils, II, 104, 116
natural evil, IV, 71, 128; V, 3, 31, 55
natural sin, II, 16, 113, 201; III, 31;
V1, 13, 21

Volume I/25
nature corrupted by I, 72
necessity of doing evil, VI, 20
necessity/possibility,
V, 38, 54, 55, 60, 63; VI, 10
no one is born free from, II, 20
no sin by any involved in generation,
II, 24, 28
not all polluted by, II, 202
nothing new resulting from, VI, 27
origin of, I, 44; II, 214; V, 55, 60
other grave sins compared with,
VI, 21
pain of childbirth, VI, 25, 26
paradise, VI, 36
parents’ sins, VI, 21
passed to all human beings, V, 63
pattern of sin (Julian), II, 109
Paul on, II, 104, 148, 202
Pelagian argument, II, 27
power of grace, II, 129
procreation, III, 64-65
propagation of, IV, 121
punished with justice, II, 74
punishment:
-all are born with, II, 189
-imensity, VI, 11, 27
-for our origin, III, 37
-passed on, I, 105; II, 63
reason and piety oppose natural sin,
I, 31
reason for term “original”, V, 9
rebirth compared with, I, 105
redemption, IV, 84
reign of death, II, 185, 191, 192
reigning after Christ, II, 84
reigning without the will, IV, 96
remedy (rebirth), II, 97
removed by rebirth, VI, 22, 22, 22, 36
restoration to original state, II, 90
sacrilegious hunger for forbidden fruit, I, 71
seen as children grow, I, 47
sex seen as blameworthy, V, 5
sexual desire, V, 16
sexual organs not changed by, V, 8
shame re genitals, IV, 44
sin/death passed on to all,
II, 195-199, 216
sin mingled with the seeds, VI, 21, 25
sin: serious or slight, II, 211
sin which is also punishment for sin,
I, 44, 47, 104; III, 33;
V, 28, 38, 47, 51, 59; VI, 17
sinful inclinations, II, 107, 142
sinfulness as natural, II, 100
sins committed without knowledge of, II, 107
sins of others as our sins, I, 57; III, 25
slaves to, I, 88
sources (four possible), II, 29-34
suffering of fear and pain, V, 17
sufferings of the newborn, VI, 27, 35
temporal and eternal deaths, II, 100
thorns and thistles, VI, 27, 28
transmission by Adam denied, II, 99
transmission by condition of human nature, II, 145
undermines example of Christ, IV, 87
universality of, IV, 121
unjust, IV, 76
virtue, III, 70
will, I, 47; II, 217
-as cause of, IV, 95, 116
-and contraction of, II, 112
-first human being, II, 236
-not seed, VI, 35
-the sinner, Adam, I, 47
Wisdom, Book of, IV, 124
woman (Eve) as cause of, VI, 25
wretched human race, VI, 27
original state (before Adam’s fall), V, 1, 5, 16
See also baptism of infants
children in paradise, III, 198
concupiscence in, II, 45, 91; VI, 16, 22
death, II, 138
different start; different end, IV, 39
freedom restored, V, 11
if no one had sinned, V, 17
incorruptibility, IV, 39
keeping commandments in, V, 14
lives, if no one had sinned, IV, 123
M ani deceived, V, 14
miseries as part of, III, 147
nakedness, IV, 44, 62
no vanity in, II, 178
passing into spiritual body, VI, 39
suffering, even without original sin,
VI, 26
pagans, I, 83
pain:
-justice, VI, 17
-sensing, IV, 69
Palestine, I, 133; II, 66
Pelagius in court, VI, 25
Answer To The Pelagians III

paradise, I,52,54,69,71,72,90,94; II,22,39,42,59,91,92,93,119,122,21,8,236; III,45,48,56,162,210,211
See also Adam; original sin; original state
bereavements in, III,154
best of all places, V,1,96
bodies in, if no sin, I,116
children (if no original sin), III,198
concupiscence in, III,167,186,187; IV,1,9; V,10,20; VI,8
deaths and punishments in, I,68; III,161; VI,22,27,39
defects of human beings in, V,22; VI,1
Eve, before the fall, III,187
fear of death in, VI,14
feeblemindedness in, III,161
flesh and spirit in, IV,37,38,114
forbidden fruit, I,71; V,16; VI,30,41
guilt; compelled to leave, VI,30
human miseries, without original sin, III,147,154,198
humans enriched by, VI,20
if no one had sinned . . . , I,70,116; III,198; V,1,3,64; VI,1,3,5,7,9,13,14,16,21,23,25,27
immortality in, VI,30
intercourse in, I,70
law as evidence of free choice, VI,1
naked and not ashamed, III,74; IV,10,36,37,62,63,66
original state, I,67,71; III,65,95,110,154
outcasts, VI,21
pain and grief in, VI,27,36
pain of childbirth in, V,14,15,17
place of happiness, VI,9,13,14
pleasure, VI,23
punishments in, II,197; V,1,36
sex in, III,177
intercourse, I,70
-mockery, V,15
-organ obey will, V,15,16,20
-sexual desire, I,67
-sowing seed (man and farmer), V,15
-spiritual, V,1,39
sufferings (before original sin), IV,114; VI,25,26,27,30
thorns in, VI,28
pardon, See forgiveness of sin
parents, I,52,57; II,24,35,40; IV,6; V,7,23
fathers and children, VI,30
-guilt of their children, II,42-45
-sins affecting children, VI,21
-sour grapes, VI,21
parricide, I,57
passion(-s), I,105; III,169,170; IV,33,108; V,1,9
-patience, I,67; II,94,166; III,113,154
-patriarchs, I,50
-Patricius (letter of Mani), III,186; IV,109
-Paul, Saint, Apostle, I,131,133,141; II,19,38,54,63,84,95,102,104,142,147,150,158,184,220,221,222,226,236; III,12,91,94,99; IV,1,36,44,50,55,103,116,123; V,1,4,25,43,59,61,63; VI,10,16,31-36
-changed by grace of God, III,11
-on justification, II,128-134
-natural goodness of intercourse, V,17,20
still Saul, I,93,133
-peace, I,72; II,106; VI,27
-flesh and spirit, I,72
paradise, I,71
-Pelagius (-ians), I,2,14,33,35,48,56,59,67,70,73,75,94,96,115,129,133; II,22,41,51,66,3,97,103,204,107,11
penance, III,1,48; V,47
-guilt and pardon, VI,19
-sins healed by, III,51
-penitents, VI,20
-perfection, V,61
-persecution, III,35; V,4; VI,12
-Peter, Saint, Apostle, IV,44,87,123,126; V,34,36
-another will bind you . . . , II,186
-Pharaoh, I,141
 Pharisees, I,75
-Philosophy, IV,123
-Philosophy: Christian, IV,22
-Phoenician (term of insult), VI,18
-Phoenicians, III,199
-physician, V,47; VI,20
-piety, I,86; II,13; III,122

Volume I/25
children and sin, I,113
evil quality: mutability, V,19
imitation and use of, II,147
sin and the will, V,19
sin and use of, V,29
Rebecca, I,141; III,88
rebirth, See baptism
reconciliation: state of enmity with God, II,172
redemption, II,30; VI,11
See also salvation
body and soul, I,101
children need Christ the savior, V,25
taking away our sins, II,225
religion, I,24
repentance, IV,13,63,126,129,131; V,64;
V,17,19
repetition = boredom, II,44; III,140,144
resurrection, I,87
term: future blessedness, VI,40
the word, VI,36
resurrection of the body, I,96; II,98;
III,37,94; IV,38,116
all brought to life in Christ, VI,31,36
belief in, VI,33
concupiscence will not be there,
V,13
equality with Christ, VI,34
faith, VI,34
faith in combat, II,99
good or bitter, VI,36
heavenly man, V,40
Manicheism, VI,36
Paul on (1 Cor 15:12-24), VI,32-36
reality of, VI,36
righteousness, III,148; VI,36
seeds come to life . . . , V,14
woman married seven times, V,130
Reticius, Bishop, I,55
reverence, II,16; III,1,24
reward:
avoiding sin, II,166
greater good merited by lesser good,
V,58
inability to sin as, V,56; VI,5,12
punishment opposed to, V,10,36
rich: labor, VI,29
righteousness, I,57,67,69,76,79,82,
94,96,99,106,131,133,138,139,140;
II,54,101; III,172; V,47; VI,18,22,
30,37
abounded more than sin, II,208
acts of (Ezekiel 18), III,38
battle against concupiscence, V,18
Christ, II,154; VI,23,27
Christ dying in vain, II,170,198,199
comes upon all human beings, II,103
death of Abel, VI,27
delight in, II,217,226
eternal life, II,215
faith or works, I,141
forgiveness of many sins, II,114
free in regard to, I,107
Gentiles and, II,158
grace, II,105,106,126
happiness, VI,12
imitating obedience of Christ, II,215
imitation of righteous persons, II,146
imposed by Christ, IV,87
innocence lost, VI,19
justification, II,135
law, II,220; VI,15,18,41
life through Christ, II,144,215
love, II,142
nature and the law, II,188
necessity of, III,122
obedience of Christ,
II,144,146,147,148,149
old testament persons, II,146
pattern of, II,188
Paul’s exhortation to, I,109
preservation, II,222
pursuit of, II,233
reborn in Christ, I,140; II,190
resurrection of spiritual body, V,40
resurrection of the body, III,148
sacraments, II,224
sanctification, II,232
second life of the body, V,17
self-will, II,158
sin, V,11
slaves of, I,107,108
spirit is life, IV,136
Spirit of righteousness, III,51
voluntary action, IV,84
Rimini, Synod of, I,75
road safety, V,1
Romans, Letter to, II,20; II,150-153; III,85
Rome, I,17,18,94; III,35,118
Romulus, I,22
roots, IV,97,99
Sabellius, II,73,151; IV,134
Sabellians, V,25

Volume I/25
sacrament(s), I, 9, 53, 54; II, 92, 116, 129; III, 124, 150; IV, 122
criminals receiving, I, 57
human beings improved by, V, 9
old testament; grace, I, 124
righteousness conferred through, II, 224
tree of life as, VI, 30

sacrifice:
animal victims, I, 38
Canaanites killing their children, IV, 128
temporariness of, III, 16
sacrilege: shame for God's creation, IV, 63
Sadducees, VI, 30
saints, I, 51, 103, 108; II, 13, 39, 66, 188, 215; III, 116, 154; IV, 58; VI, 30, 39, 40
concupiscence, V, 59
death as precious, VI, 31, 40
free choice, VI, 10
God's foreknowledge of number of, III, 198
number complete, V, 30, 37
possibility of sinning (in heaven), V, 58
punishments of, VI, 36
resurrection of, VI, 40
reward of, V, 61; VI, 12
salvation, IV, 57, 114; VI, 11, 18, 21
baptism, III, 188
before Christ, I, 115-116
conditions for, III, 44
death immediately after baptism, II, 215
death to sin, II, 225
enduring penalties of this life, III, 154
evil removed from human nature, III, 195
faith, I, 141
God's foreknowledge of evil, III, 98
grace abundant for more/many, II, 96
grace of the savior, II, 85
hope of, I, 120
human nature having, or being, an evil, III, 188, 190
imitating Christ, VI, 31
Jeremiah on, III, 84
many or few (the terms), II, 206
number of saved and perished, II, 205, 206
plan of, I, 139

rescued from power of darkness, III, 182, 199
soul reborn, I, 72
souls belong to God, III, 54
sanctification, I, 86, 94, 95, 109; II, 117
Sarah, I, 141; II, 153; III, 85, 88; V, 10
school children, VI, 9
Scots, IV, 44
seed(s), I, 141; II, 15, 24, 28, 40, 41, 83, 123, 194, 216, 228; III, 10, 44, 46, 56, 57, 66, 85, 88, 93, 142, 161, 192; IV, 7, 75, 104, 116, 123, 128, 129, 132, 134, 135; VI, 12, 22, 25, 39
come to life only if they die, V, 14
good God, and defects in, V, 11
human beings produced from, V, 11, 14, 21
immortal, IV, 135
mixing choice with, VI, 9, 21
paradise, V, 15
spiritually understood, III, 84; IV, 135
two kinds: birth; rebirth, IV, 135
will, VI, 17, 22
works of God, V, 11, 12, 24
self-control, I, 70
senses, III, 109, 142, 167; IV, 5, 23, 76, 118; V, 1, 5, 14
awakened (by soul), V, 120
devil and, IV, 118
humans surpass other living things, I, 94
pleasure, I, 71
power of sensation, IV, 29
report to spirit, IV, 27, 28
unclean spirit, V, 6
virtue and ardent desire, IV, 49

serpent:
curse upon, VI, 25, 28
curse upon, V, 25, 28
sign; death, I, 140

sex [general; in marriage], I, 65, 66; IV, 4, 5, 10, 115
See also modesty; shame
before/after paradise, V, 17
cause of original sin, V, 20
Christ's choice of chastity, IV, 58
concupiscence when mind is unwilling, III, 187
condemnation, in marriage, II, 32
desire for sexual sins, IV, 22, 53
desire necessary for, V, 5, 17
devil recognizes his own, IV, 10, 14

Answer To The Pelagians III
diabolical, IV, 107; V, 16, 19, 20, 24, 25, 30
differences of the sexes, V, 17
evil habit, I, 69
force of pleasure and desire, V, 11
generation, II, 56
God’s blessing on, IV, 7
God’s creation, IV, 40, 117
good produced out of evil, III, 181, 184

good use of an evil, III, 185; IV, 117
instituted by God, V, 17
intercourse and creation, IV, 118
law of members; second nature, I, 69
licit/illicit intercourse, III, 170, 185

marital act:
- chastity, V, 17
- disease, I, 68
- intercourse as good/licit, V, 18, 24
- sign of universality, IV, 121
members resist counsel, I, 69
natural pleasure, IV, 38
natural relations in marriage, V, 17
openly speaking about, IV, 43

paradise:
- marriage, I, 70
- mockery, V, 15
pleasure, I, 68; II, 59, 105; VI, 5, 23
possibility of moral goodness, V, 20
possible, not necessary, V, 46, 49
praiseworthy, V, 6
privacy, III, 177; IV, 44
relations against nature, V, 17
relations with woman as natural, V, 46
serious sins arising from, V, 21
shame in intercourse, II, 92;
- III, 142, 177, 187
sin, IV, 43
sinful only in excess, V, 16
terms: “marital” or “natural” relations, V, 18
sexual desire, See concupiscence
sexual organs, I, 68, 106
See also shame
sexual union, See sex

shame, I, 12, 16, 91; II, 2, 9, 11, 60, 92, 105;
III, 46, 143, 154, 167, 177, 184;
IV, 5, 10, 26, 30, 43, 54; V, 6, 13, 19;
VI, 16, 30, 39
causes of, IV, 62
concupiscence, IV, 38, 67; V, 16, 59

human body, IV, 63
nakedness, III, 74; V, 5; VI, 26
sex in marriage, III, 170, 177, 184
sexual arousal, IV, 62
sexual organs, IV, 26, 31, 43, 44, 63
sexual union, III, 142, 177, 187
sin, V, 30
works of God and humans, IV, 31, 36, 37, 63
sight, III, 119; IV, 29, 37
silence, promoting error by, IV, 15, 17
Simon Magus, I, 98
simple-mindedness, IV, 8
simplicity, I, 54, 108; III, 106
sin, III, 1
See also condemnation; good and evil; justification; law;
Manicheism; original sin; punishment; temptation
able not to sin, V, 58
abounding; the law,
II, 70, 217, 220, 221
A dam and possibility of sinning,
VI, 12
die in A dam, VI, 36
angel or human (natures), V, 63
ascribed to God, V, 49
attributing to the innocent, I, 57
avoiding commission of, I, 72,
III, 111; IV, 122
baptism and dying to sin, II, 172, 173;
V, 9
baptism and the will, I, 98, 106
believers should stop, II, 224
birth and rebirth, III, 50
bitterness as effect of, I, 47
blameworthy action, II, 221
blaming birth for, I, 70

volume I/25
blaming necessities of nature for, II, 7
body dies when it turns from, IV, 136
body is dead on account of, II, 76;
III,65,75,94
body of, nailed to Christ’s cross, I, 67;
II,223
born under power of, I,2,109,115;
II,1,208,228; III,37,127,200;
IV,90,97,108; V,25; VI,14
Canaanites imitating Ham, IV, 129
capability: things made of nothing,
V,39
causes, II,105
Christ’s death to, and ours, II,225-227
circumcision as symbol of removal,
II,221
committing; refraining from, I,78
conceupiscence as path to, I,71
condition for existing, IV, 103
consent, II,226; IV,48,53
daily asking for pardon, II,216
death as merit of, VI,37
death to, through baptism, II,222-224
defective freedom, I,98
definition(-s),
I,41,44-47,104,105,116;
II,17,80,81; III,157; IV,118;
V,26,28,29,30,43,47,51;
VI,17,21
delight in, II,217,220
desire for, I,71;
II,71,105,161,220,226
devil as father of, I,90
dominion in this world, II,173
doubt about existence of evil, V,27
esseuce of, I,79
eternal nature of darkness (Mani),
V,30,31,49
eternal punishment, V,36
evil merit, III,204
evil will, I,24; II,8,220; V,21,26
Eve; beginning, III,85
exists in a nature, IV,116
Ezekiel (18:1-30), III,38,39,47-52
free choice loses strength by, V,1,8
forced into, I,94
four persons involved in generation, II,29
free act of the mind, V,42,56
free will, I,44,97; II,39,68,201,214, 221; IV,101; V,28,38; VI,10
freedom:
-perishes through sin, I,94
-possibility of, I,108; VI,11
genus and species, I,47
God alone can judge, III,33
God as creator of, III,141
God as guilty of, V,63
God’s inability to sin, V,32; VI,15
grace abounded more than, II,85,98,
142,147,148,204,209,221
grace, after many sins, II,103,222
grace and avoiding, IV,122
grace superior to, II,206-209
greater good = not to be able to, V,56,58
human beings become better by, V,16
human beings created without necessity to, V,56
habit of, I,16,67,96,105; IV,91,103;
V,14,41
happiness and, V,60
harder to commit than to avoid, III,111
hereditary, III,87
ignorance of, before the law,
II,72,221
imitation, not generation,
II,52,135,149,186,194,199; VI,31
immorere, I,47
impelled toward, I,83
imputed to a human being, V,53
imputing, when law does not exist,
II,200 &
inability to, as reward, V,58; VI,10,12
inheritance of, I,13,20,91;
III,15,20,29,31,34,47-49; VI,1,31
innocence of the newborn, II,31
innocent before use of will, II,21
Jesus saves people from their sins, II,2
Jews, after receiving the law, II,209
justice of God, II,80-84
justly imputing; pardon, I,67,105,106
law and knowledge of, II,72,221;
III,210; VI,41
law of members; law of mind, I,71;
II,189,233
lawful condemnation, I,48
love for, I,16,94
natural (Mani), III,67-82,160-161;
IV,92-93; V,25,40,63; VI,5,17
nature and the will, I,72
necessity of, I,99,105,106;
IV,35,87,122; V,31,62;
VI,3,6,7,15

Answer To The Pelagians III
sinful flesh, V,33
sins greater than A dam’s sin, V,22
sins punished by sins, IV,31,34,35
slaves of, I,82,87,88,94,99,107,109;
II,8,223,228,229,230; V,19
source of, I,71; V,28
spiritual, V,40
state of nature, I,96
sting of death, II,71; VI,40
temporal punishment due to, V,36
unwilling, III,122
use of reason, V,29
vessels of dishonor, I,135
virtue and possibility of sin, V,61
voluntary, V,43,59
warning against imitation, VI,27
will, I,47,60;
II,28,105,111,116,220,226;
III,157,160,163,210; IV,76,
90,91,95-100,116,121,129; V,64
-A dam’s sin, VI,22
-existing without will,
IV,96,97,100,102,103,116,136
-in, and not in, the will, IV,91
-reason, VI,19
-willing to be able to, V,31
woman (Eve) as origin, II,56
work of the devil, V,63
sinner(-s)
Christ died for all, II,169,170
conversion of, I,54; V,64
death as a benefit, V,27
devil, not A dam, was first, II,47
free choice, I,91,96
God as potter, III,101
God does not withhold goods from,
V,64
guilt, I,106
malice, IV,127
many, because of disobedience of
one, II,148,149
natural sin as pattern for, II,105
rejecting God’s mercy, I,130
sin as punishment of, IV,34,35
temporal punishment, V,21
Sirach, IV,123
slander, I,98; II,58,104,117; III,35,54,169;
IV,72,73,88,104,106,109,121
slavery, I,87
freedom and, I,107
slave to one’s conqueror, I,112,113
snake (lance), IV,38
Sodom(-ites), I,118; II,186; III,12; IV,128; V,123
Solomon, III,52
sorrows, IV,90
sorrow, VI,16
soul, See body and soul
species, V,24,46
spirit:
  concupiscence opposed to, IV,33
  flesh vs. spirit, See under desire.
  harmony with flesh, VI,6,14
  sinning, I,101
spiritual beings: natural, V,40
spiritual life: tree of life: paradise, V,39
sponsors, II,224; III,199
springtime, IV,38
stars: multiplied, V,26
Stoics, I,35; IV,43
students, VI,9
stupidity, I,12
substance:
  defects, I,66
  natural characteristics, VI,19
  work of the devil, III,126
suffering, II,166,223; V,1
  alien nature in human beings, V,25
  common lot, III,187
  as an evil, V,22
  nature’s plan, VI,26
  as punishment, I,57
  source of, VI,16
  test, VI,17
Susanna, IV,37
sweat, VI,27,29
swine, IV,75
Symplegades, IV,13

teachers, VI,9
temperance, I,36
temptation, I,72,130; II,7,167; IV,82,122;
  V,14,41
  Lord’s Prayer, I,67,90,93
  prayer, III,107,109
  resisting, II,45
Tertullian, II,178
Theodore of Mopsueia, III,111
thorns, VI,27,28,29
Thyatria, I,89
the, IV,104; VI,17,22
traducianists, I,6,25,27,75; II,14,27,
  28,62,102,142,236; III,7,10,20,
  35,41,85,91,123,152,165; IV,44,90,
  118,130; V,2,6,30,54,63; VI,3,5,8,
  11,15,31
  tree:
    known by its fruits, V,21,23,24
  tree of life:
    animals protected by, VI,39
    bodily: spiritual, VI,39
    not necessary to die, VI,30
    separation from as beginning of death, VI,30,31
trials, II,37; III,14
Trinity, I,29,30,75; II,16; III,106;
  V,25,30,31,63; VI,22
truth, I,2,3,4,5,15,17,18,19,23,87,90,
  117,135; II,1,4,11,13,19,20,24,26,
  42,62,79,100,102,112,113,117,127,
  150,163,215,216; III,20,31,34,
  36,46,52,53,66,67,85,88,91,100,
  138,188,199,216; IV,8,12,19,31,
  33,47,56,89,91,103,104,113,
  121,128; V,1,4,6,13,20,26,44,
  55,59,61; VI,1,2,6,20,25,30,36,41
Tully, See Cicero.
tunics, IV,37
Turbarius, Bishop, I,1; II,11; IV,30; V,4
  twins, VI,22
Two souls, or Against the two souls, I,44
ugliness, I,116
unbelief: eternal punishment, VI,30
unbelievers, VI,41
unhappiness, I,90
Valerius, Count, I,7,16,109; III,96,177
vanity, I,36,63; III,100; V,1; VI,7,20,27
vengeance, III,26; IV,34
verb: usage of past tense, VI,30
vessels:
  dishonorabe (=sin), I,135,141
  purpose of making, I,126,134
  vice, I,106,223,236; III,1,32,71,106,
  112,114,122; IV,24; V,3,7,8,14,15,
  23,29
  earthly man, V,40
  God’s gifts and, III,163-165
  necessity, V,62
  victory, II,12
  vipers, malice of, IV,129
virgin birth, I,141
virginity, IV,121,122
lost; return to chastity, VI,19

virgins, V,17

virility, V,11

virtue(-s), I,64,71,81,86,87,91,132; II,3,7,89,92,153,161,188,214,223; IV,20,87; V,1; VI,7,12,30,41

attaining beauty of, VI,7

blessed fullness (heaven), V,62

commandments, II,233

condition: no evil will, V,61

desires of present life, IV,22

eagerness for, II,233

free choice, III,122

free from [rejecting], I,107

God’s gifts, III,163-165

heavenly man, VI,40

merit, II,146

necessity of the good, V,61,62

obedience as chief virtue, VI,15

original sin and capability for, III,70

parents and children, III,52

possession not difficult, III,114

possibility of sin, V,61

pursuit of, I,67

reverence for, III,1

senses and ardent desire, IV,49

testing, III,49

trust in one’s own.

II,167,220,229,233;

III,73,76,107,109,113; V,62,64;

VI,12,18

unity of virtues, I,36

voluntary, V,61

vocation, I,93,135

war, I,4,49

wealth, IV,22,23; VI,29

widows, V,17

wife: subject to husband, VI,26

will (free will) I,39,45,79,80,126,133,141;

II,6,8,10,11,15,20,38,45,65,83,101,103,107,108,131,196,216,232;

III,2,3,32,56,82,98,102,110,111,114,117,181,191; IV,23,37

See also free choice; sin

act of a nature, V,40

act of the mind, nothing forcing it, V,60

acts of choice mixed with the seeds, V,9,21

admonished, I,93

baptism and sin, I,98,106

becoming Word of God by, IV,84

capacity of will to exist, V,38

captive, III,112

change, II,231; V,42

characteristics (Julian), II,138

children and sin, I,113

children without use of reason, I,48

concepiscence obedient to, I,71;

IV,38,43; VI,22

correction of, II,234

creatures not capable of evil, V,39

definition, I,46-47; V,41,42; VI,11

denial that God produces, IV,8

duties from free will, I,135

evil:

-A dam as source of, V,41

-attributed to necessity, V,62

-cause of evil works, V,21,22,60

-children lacking use of will, V,15

-derived from bad will, III,154

-human nature, V,53,61

-merits of evil wills, VI,9

-a nature, V,60,61

-nothing as cause of, V,31

-pardon granted to evil will, I,111

-personal responsibility, V,42,43

-possible or necessary, V,62

-recipient of evil will, V,56

-source of evil, VI,9

freedom:

-of acting well, VI,15,19

-re evil acts, I,97,99,100,105

-force and, I,101

-to resist devil, I,90

-source of sin, V,28

-unchangeable, VI,12

of God, III,106

-action on human wills, III,166

-acting on hearts, V,4

-bodies made from seeds by, V,14

-cannot be bad, III,120

-human restoration, after original sin, VI,20

-identity with God, V,42

-not able to sin, V,15

-perfect love of, VI,37

-producing acts of will, III,166; V,57

-producing interior acts, II,157,158

-world made by, V,45

God’s intention blocked by, I,93

good will; bad will, I,97; V,57

good will is work of God, V,61

grace, I,94,95; III,115
guilt, IV, 84, 94
habit of sin, IV, 103; VI, 14
See happiness.
help in resisting evil, I, 71
I do not the will that . . . , I, 67, 91, 96, 99, 105; II, 15, 38; III, 73, 110, 112, 177, 178, 180, 185; IV, 87, 91, 93, 103; V, 22, 28, 40, 50, 51, 52, 59, 60, 62, 64; VI, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, 19, 21
imitating Christ, IV, V, 86
innocence lost by defect of, VI, 19
justice, I, 37
loss of evils introduced by, VI, 19
loss of natural goods, VI, 19
love needed for good will, III, 122
meaning of, I, 90
merit, I, 134
nature:
- causes, V, 56
- essential, V, 53
- good or evil will, V, 62
- sinning, without will, I, 72
- vitiated, I, 85
necessity, IV, V, 3, 103; V, 52, 57, 61
need to be set free, VI, 15
newborn children, II, 18
not free if nature is captive, IV, 80
original sin, V, 35
originally created as good, V, 61
owned by devil, V, 6
possible, V, 47, 57, 61
preceding cause, V, 41
prepared by the Lord, I, 134; II, 6; III, 1, 107, 114, 163; IV, 126; V, 57; VI, 9, 10, 11, 34
removal of guilt; VI, 19
reward or punishment, V, 62
set free by baptism, I, 101
sexual arousal/desire, I, 70; III, 187
sexual organs in paradise, V, 15, 16
sexual organs obeying, I, 68
sin and, see under sin
slaves to vices, II, 236
source: the human person, V, 42
struggle, I, 83
temptation, III, 109
two wills: one good, one bad, V, 21
uncoerced act of the mind, V, 40, 41, 42
unhappiness, I, 90
wisdom, I, 69

beneficial knowledge, V, 3
earthly; unspiritual, V, 57
giving names as sign of, V, 1
God the giver of, IV, 125
human beings, IV, 123
spiritual tree of life, V, 39
Wisdom, Book of, IV, 123-125, 128, 129, 130; V, 2
witless bearing, I, 83
women: Plato, VI, 22
Word of God: incarnation, IV, 84
words:
- decorum, IV, 67
- metaphorical use, III, 87-88, 92
- reality, II, 36
work(-s), I, 141
find rest for your souls . . . , VI, 29
human condition, V, 1, 3
lesser punishment than death, VI, 27
of mercy, III, 48
pleasure of the mind, VI, 27
punishments turned into benefits, VI, 29
rich and poor: all labor, VI, 29
world, II, 31; V, 4
all present goods and pleasures, IV, 20, 23
concupiscence, III, 185, 205, 209; IV, 5, 18
creation from nothing, IV, 21, 23; V, 56
loving the, III, 170; IV, 22
necessary that it come to be, V, 45, 51
passing away, II, 215
the word:
- conduct of human beings, IV, 22
- good sense; bad sense (usage), IV, 18
- 1 John refers to human beings, IV, 20
- used for human beings, IV, 77
- vices of wills, IV, 23
- two coeternal natures in, III, 186
world did not know him, IV, 18
worldliness, I, 83
worship, I, 70
free choice, III, 105-108
multiple meanings, III, 106
wound, V, 39, 47
youth, II, 235
zeal, I, 141; IV, 119
Zeno, I, 36
Zosimus, I, 18
Index from

On Admonition and Grace

(De correptione et gratia)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians IV

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor

This volume includes four works: Grace and Free Choice (De gratia et libero arbitrio), Rebuke and Grace (De correptione et gratia), The Predestination of the Saints (De praedestinatione sanctorum), and The Gift of Perseverance (De dono perseverantiae).

Volume I/26

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Volume I/26

### Index of Scripture

*(prepared by Michael Dolan)*

*(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)*

**Rebuke and Grace**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>Matthew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:2</td>
<td>3:8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td>6:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25-27</td>
<td>6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Chronicles</td>
<td>10:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>10:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>18:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:38</td>
<td>18:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>1 Chronicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>11:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>12:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>12:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:7</td>
<td>12:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:8</td>
<td>12:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:2</td>
<td>14:45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:22</td>
<td>20:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77:11</td>
<td>20:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:4</td>
<td>20:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:8</td>
<td>20:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9 LXX</td>
<td>8:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>4:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>13:40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:11 LXX</td>
<td>13:40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>13:40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>33:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:6</td>
<td>15:48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees</td>
<td>7:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>13:41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/26

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Rebuke and Grace

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Answer to the Pelagians IV
Answer to the Pelagians IV

gratuitous, 28
gratuity of deliverance by, 12
lost by free choice of evil, (6,9)
power: Adam and the saints compared, (11,29)
role of, 2
room for commands and rebukes, (3,5)
room for prayer, (2,3)
salvation and, 13
taking refuge in, 2
two kinds of help given by, 34
guilt, 2, (15,46)
Hadrumentum, (1,1)
happiness, 27, 28, 32, 34
healing, (14,43)
heart: touched, 45
heaven: baptism necessary to enter, 19
holiness: name of God made holy in us, 10
Holy Spirit, 30, 47
love for God and, 27
will and, 38
human beings:
made upright from the beginning, (6,9)
Hymenacus, 16
immortality, (12,33)
Incarnation, 30
infant baptism, 19
dying unbaptized, 12, 18
infant salvation:
dying but not baptized, 12
infants:
merit and, 18
Israel, 45
Jesus Christ, 32, 40
boasting in the Lord, 37
flesh to be eaten; blood to be drunk, 22
grace of, (10,26)
first Adam; second Adam, 31
of redemption, 30
mediator, 30
see redemption:
Son of God, 30
who will separate us from love of, 15
John, Saint: A postle:
preeminence of, (9,20)
John the Baptist:
number of the elect, (13,39)
joy, 10, 30
Judas, 14, 22
judgment day, 27
justice, 27
kingdom of God, see heaven
kings, 45
law:
resistance: law of mind vs. law of
members, (11,29)
role of, 2
life: longevity as temptation, 19
Lord's Prayer:
Forgive us our debts, 35
May your name be made holy, 10
love, (1,1), (2,3), 4
faith working through, 13, 16, 21, 40
gift, (8,17)
rebuke and, (6,9), (15,46)
rebuke for a sinner, 25
love for God:
all things work for the good . . ., 24
Holy Spirit and, 27
perseverance in, 23
who will separate us from . . ., 15
martyrdom, 35
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 30
mercy, 25, 35, 41
perseverance and, 10
vessels of, 13
merit, 12, 32
boasting, 37
chosen through election, 13
gifts and, 19
grace, 41
infants and, 18
murmuring, 19
obedience, (6,9)
original sin:
A dam's free choice, 28
all sinned in that one sin, (6,9)
damaged origin of human race, (10,26)
fallen by evil will, (6,9)
other sins added to, 42
rebuked in individuals, (6,9)
pain, (5,7)
paradise, 28
Paul: commands/rebukes re love, (3,5)
peace, (1,1)
reconciliation, (15,46)
perdition, (9,20), 40
child of, (16)
perish, 14, 48
perseverance:
ability and will to, 38
A dam's fall/failure, (10,26), 34, 38
chosen brought to happy life, 16
chosen people, 35
faith that works through love, 13
final blessedness, (12,33)
gift not received, 42
gift of God, 10, (8,17)
gift, to the end, 15, 16, 19, 23, (10,26)
holding on to the good, 32
in goodness, 36

Volume I/26
Volume I/26

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Answer to the Pelagians IV

life-giving, 22
will: conquering the flesh, 31
standing, 10, 35, 36
temptation:
  longevity, 19
  presumption, 40
  will and, 38
tithe, 44
truth, (1,1), 27
Valentine, (1,1)
virtue:
  claiming; from self, 24
  made perfect, 37, 38
wealth, 19
will:
  fallen away from a good life, 10
  free, (14,43)
  free = ability not to sin, (12,33)
  freedom and grace, (8,17)
  God as producer of, 38
  God wills, makes us will, 47
  grace and acts of, 32
  perseverance and, (8,17)
  prepared by the Lord, (4,6)
  set afire by the Holy Spirit, 38
  spirit conquering the flesh, 31
  temptations and, 38
will of God:
  resisting, 45
  salvation for all human beings, 44
  works, 14
  works of mercy, 41

Volume I/26
Index from

On Grace and Free Will

*(De gratia et libero arbitrio)*

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians IV

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor

This volume includes four works: *Grace and Free Choice (De gratia et libero arbitrio)*, *Rebuke and Grace (De correptione et gratia)*, *The Predestination of the Saints (De praedestinatione sanctorum)*, and *The Gift of Perseverance (De dono perseverantiae)*.

Volume I/26

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Grace and Free Choice

Old Testament

Exodus
4:21 23,45
7:3 23,45
8:32 23,45
9:12 23,45
10:20,27 23,45
20:17 16,32
36:27 16,32

Leviticus
19:18 17,36
19:18 LXX 17,35

Deuteronomy
6:4-5 17,36
8:17-18 7,16

Joshua
7:12 20,41
11:20 20,41

2 Samuel
16:10 20,41
16:11-12 20,41
16:12 20,41
17:14 20,41

1 Kings
12:15 21,42

1 Chronicles
28:9 5,11

2 Chronicles
12:16-17 21,42
15:2 5,11
25:7-8 21,42

Esther
15:7-8 21,42

Psalms
1:2 2,4
26:6 4,6
27:9 6,13
30:7 6,13
30:8 6,13
31:9 2,4
32:9 3,5
34:14 16,32
36:4 2,4; 3,5
37:23 16,32
39:2 16,32
44:22 7,16; 17,34
51:12 8,20
52:13 8,20
60:19 6,15
80:4 15,31
80:8 5,10
80:4 15,31
84:8 18,37
85:7-5 5,10
95:8 14,29; 15,31
101:1 22,44
103:4 9,21
105:25 21,42
141:3 16,32

Proverbs
1:8 2,4
1:29 2,4
2:6 19,40
3:1 2,4
3:5 2,4

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Answer to the Pelagians IV

3:11 2,4; 4,9
3:16 LXX 18,37
3:27 2,4
3:29 2,4
4:2 2,4
5:3 2,4
8:35 LXX 16,32
10:12 17,35
19:3 2,3; 21,43
19:14 LXX 4,8
21:1 21,42
29:19 3,5

Song of Songs
8:5 6,13

Wisdom
4:11 23,45
8:21 4,8

Sirach
15:11-18 2,3
15:16 16,32
15:16 LXX 15,31
22:33 16,32
23:4 16,32
23:5 16,32
23:6 16,32

Isaiah
1:18 6,13
11:2 19,40
11:2-3 18,39

Jeremiah
17:5 4,6

Ezekiel
11:19 14,29
11:19-20 14,29
14:9 21,42; 23,45
18:31-32 15,31
32:26 16,32
36:22-27 14,30
36:26 15,31

Habakkuk
2:4 7,17

Zechariah
1:3 5,10

New Testament
Matthew
5:17 13,25
6:9 14,30
6:12-13 13,26

6:19 2,4
10:23 23,45
10:28 2,4; 18,39
16:24 2,4
16:27 2,4; 8,20; 23,45
18:11 13,25
19:10-11 4,7
26:41 4,9

Mark
12:28-31 17,36

Luke
2:14 2,4
9:23 2,4
12:4 18,39
12:5 18,39
12:48-47 3,5
19:10 13,25
22:32 4,9

John
1:16 9,21
3:17 22,44
3:27 6,15
6:6 5,10
9:39 22,44
13:34-35 17,36
13:37 17,33
15:5 6,13; 8,20
15:13 17,33
15:16 13,38
15:22 2,2

Romans
1:17 7,17
1:18-20 2,2
1:24 21,42
1:26 21,42
1:28 21,42
2:6 2,4; 8,19; 8,20
2:12 3,5
3:8 22,44
3:20 10,22
3:28 7,18
4:4 5,11; 8,19
4:5 15,31
4:15 10,22
5:3-5 18,39
5:20 22,44
6:14 12,24
6:23 8,19; 9,21
7:6 10,22
7:7-13 10,22
8:12-13 11,23
8:14 11,23
8:26 17,33
8:35-29 17,34
8:36-37 7,16

Volume I/26
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>7,16</td>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>14,28; 18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>23,45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:21</td>
<td>20,41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>12,24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>14,28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5-6</td>
<td>8,19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>21,43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30-32</td>
<td>22,44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>22,44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>9,21; 14,28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:21</td>
<td>2,4; 3,5; 4,8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8-10</td>
<td>17,33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>19,40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>6,15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>4,8; 9,21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>7,17; 14,28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:36</td>
<td>4,8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:36-37</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37</td>
<td>4,7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>19,40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31-13:8</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>19,40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13-14:1</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>5,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>5,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>4,8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:57</td>
<td>4,8; 7,16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:2-3</td>
<td>14,29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>7,16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>11,23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>14,28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17-18</td>
<td>8,20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>5,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:20</td>
<td>21,42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>10,22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>13,25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>7,18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>12,24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13-14</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>7,17; 14,28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>8,20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>7,17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>8,20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>19,40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>6,15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-7</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>17,33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28-29</td>
<td>14,28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>9,21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>9,21; 16,32; 17,33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8-9</td>
<td>12,24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15-16</td>
<td>7,17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>18,38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14-15</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>18,38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>3,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10-11</td>
<td>21,42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>13,25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>17,34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>4,7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>18,39; 19,40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>5,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>6,14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>7,16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>6,14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>24,46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>5,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-7</td>
<td>5,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philemon</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>10:38</td>
<td>7,17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>24,46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-15</td>
<td>2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>4,8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>6,15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>17,35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>7,18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-17</td>
<td>24,46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answer to the Pelagians IV**
### Answer to the Pelagians IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Peter</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>17,35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 John</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>17,35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>19,40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10-11</td>
<td>17,35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>17,35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>18,37; 19,40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 4:18 | 17,33 |
| 4:19 | 18,38 |
| 4:21 | 17,35 |
| 5:23 | 17,35 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 John</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>17,35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revelation</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume I/26**
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Grace And Free Choice

A.bishai, (20,41)
Absalom, (20,41)
Adam, (13,25), 43
adultery, 8
A hasuerus, King, (21,42)
A hithophel, (20,41)
Ai (city), (20,41)
A maziah, King, (21,42)
angels, 43
anger:
  law as producing, (10,22)
  vessels of, (20,41)
animals, (13,25)
A rabs, (21,42)
arm: word usage, (4,6)
blessing: loving one another, 38
chastity:
  gift of God: keeping the commandment, 8
  marital, 8
children of God:
  driven by the Spirit, (11,23), (12,24)
love of, 35
Christian life: see also good works
Church: dressed in white, (6,13)
circumcision, 18
commandments, 2,2
  free choice, 4, (18,37)
  keeping made easy by love, (17,33)
  love and the burden of, 35
  observing, with God’s help, 26, 28
  observing; the will, 8, (15,31)
  prayer needed for keeping, (16,32)
  will to observe, (16,32)
concupiscence, 3,8
continence, 7,8
conversion:
  good works after, (6,13)
  gratuity of grace, 29
  turning to Christ by believing, (5,10)
  creature, (20,41)
Cyprian, Saint, 26
darkness, (19,40)
David, King, (20,41)
death:
  law and, (11,23)
  wages of sin, (9,21)
demons: believe and tremble, 18
desire: law and, (10,22), (16,32)
devil, (9,21), (20,41)
Egyptians, (21,42), (23,45)
darkness, (19,40)
Cyprian, Saint, 26
darkness, (19,40)
David, King, (20,41)
death:
  law and, (11,23)
  wages of sin, (9,21)
demons: believe and tremble, 18
desire: law and, (10,22), (16,32)
devil, (9,21), (20,41)
Egyptians, (21,42), (23,45)
edurance: grace, 28
eternal life:
  both merited and God’s gift, 15
  good works, 8,19
  grace and works, 18, 19, 20
  merit, (1,1)
Pelagians on merit, 15
  reward for good life, 20
  righteousness and, (9,21)
edternal punishment: fire, (3,5)
faith:
  free choice, 29
  freedom: faith in Christ, (3,5)
Answer to the Pelagians IV

gift of God, 17
gift, and gratuity of grace, 28
growing, 38
justification by, (6,13)
mercy of God, 17
Peter, 9
prayer and, (16,32)
righteousness and, 17
Spirit of, 28
will of the believer, 28
works through love, 18

fear, (20,41), (21,42)
love and, (17,33)
power to kill the body, 39

flesh, (11,23)
heart; feeling, 29-30
word usage, (4,6)

free choice, 11
commandment to love and, (18,37)
commandments, (18,37)
doing good or evil, (10,22), (11,23)
faith and, 29
grace and good use of, 7
harden not your hearts, (15,31)
New Testament texts, 4
obeying God's commands, 8
proofs from Scripture, 2,2-3
proofs of, 4
taken away, (9,21)
free will, See free choice; will

Gentiles, (3,5), (22,44)
gifts [of god]

God:
goodness and justice, (23,45)
his name profaned, 30
holiness, 30
mercy and justice, (23,45)
no injustice in, 43
Pelagian, (19,40)
wisdom, (23,45)

good and evil:
conquer evil by good, (3,5), 8
evil desire; good will, 9
evil merits, 12, (23,45)
free choice, (10,22), (11,23)
good returned for evil, 14
merits, 15
nothing good done by self alone, (6,13)
repaying evil for evil, 34
this world and world to come, (22,44)
will, (20,41)

good works:
after conversion, (6,13)
crown as reward of, (9,21)
faith as source, 17
formed and created for, 20
good thoughts preceding, (7,16)
human spirit or Spirit of God, (11,23)
merit of a good will, (14,27)
pride over, (9,21)
without me you can do nothing, 20

grace, (20,41)
abandonment, (6,13)
condition of the Spirit, (10,22)
conversion and, (5,10), 29
defending free choice, (4,6)
eternal life, 20
frees from dominion of sin, (12,24)
good use of free choice, 7
good will; keeping the commandments, (15,31)
gratuitous, 14, (8,19), 28
help in keeping commandments, 9
law and, (10,22), (11,23), (12,24), (13,25),
(14,27)
letter of the law and, (18,37)
lovers of the law, 38
merit and, 11, 12, 13, 14, (5,10), 43,
(22,44)
merits of a good will, 30
nature and, (13,25)
returning evil for evil, (23,45)
sin and the law, (22,44)

heart, (4,6), (20,41)
clean; new creation, 20
hardening; free choice, (15,31)
hardness of, 29, 30
new heart, new spirit, (15,31)
of stone; of flesh, 29-30, (16,32)
Pharaoh, (23,45)
will and, (21,42)

heaven: merit and gift, (8,19)
holiness:

God is made holy in us, 30
Pelagian idea, (19,40)

Holy Spirit, 15, 39
children of God driven by, (11,23), (12,24)
faith and, 28
gives life, (12,24)
grace and, (10,22)
letter of law kills, (11,23)

hope, 39
placing, in human beings, (4,6)

human beings:
we are his work . . ., 20

human condition: fragility, (4,6)
humility, (20,41)

idolatry, (21,42)

Volume I/26
Volume I/26

Answer to the Pelagians IV

ignorance, (3,5)
image of God, (13,25)
infants:
original sin, (23,45)
will; grace, (22,44)
jealousy, (24,46)
Jeroboam, King, (21,42)
Jerusalem, (5,10)
Jesus Christ:
dead: fulfilling the law, (13,25)
dying in vain, (13,25)
knowledge and love of, (19,40)
Jews, (2,2); (3,5), (20,41), (22,44)
righteousness, (12,24)
Joash, King, (21,42)
John the Baptist, (9,21)
judah: land of, (21,42)
judas, (20,41)
justice, (23,45)
crown of, 14
justification:
 grace and the sinner, (6,13)
kings:
heart of, in hand of God, (21,42)
knowledge:
Pelagians on, (19,40)
will not to know, (3,5)
law:
ger and, (10,22)
death and, (11,23)
faith and, 28
grace and, (11,23), (12,24), (13,25), (14,27)
grace makes us lovers of, 38
kills without grace, (10,22)
knowledge of sin, (10,22)
letter kills, (18,37)
prohibitions of, 8
righteousness, (12,24), (13,25)
sin abounding, (22,44)
sin and power over human beings, (11,23)
transgression, (10,22)
light, (19,40)
Lord's Prayer:
bring us not into temptation, 26
forgive us our debts . . ., 26
may your name be holy, 30
love for God:
God first loved us, 38
who can separate us from . . ., 34
love of neighbor, (17,33)
love:
attributes of, 34
burdens made light by, (17,33), 35
comes from God, (18,37)
ease in keeping commandments, (17,33)
faith works through, 18
fulfillment of the law, (17,33), 35
gift from God: free choice, (18,37)
grace from God, (18,37)
greatest virtue, 34
new commandment: love one another, 36
new testament texts, 35
Pelagians on, (19,40)
serving one another through, 34
two commandments, 36
will fully aflame with, 34
marriage, 7
martyrs, (17,33)
mercy, (23,45)
mercy, (7,16), 17
good works, (9,21)
merit(-s), (14,27), 38
crown of justice, (7,16)
eternal life, (1,1)
evil merits, 15
gifts of God, 15, 20
grace and, (5,10); 11, 12, 13, 14, 43, (22,44)
mouth: place a guard upon, (16,32)
nature: grace and, (13,25)
new testament:
prediction: heart of flesh, 29
non-believers, (13,25), (22,44)
obedience, (20,41)
original sin:
mercy and justice of God, (23,45)
Palestine, (5,10)
patience, 39
patriarchs, (13,25)
Paul, Apostle, Saint:
conversion; grace, 12
evil merit, 12, 14
good fight; finishing the race, (7,16)
keeping the faith, 17
on free choice, 12
on perfection, (1,1)
Pelagian(-s; -ism), (4,6), (5,10), (11,23), (13,25), 15, (18,37), (19,40)
on infants and grace, (22,44)
Pelasgus: tried by bishops, (5,10)
perfection, (1,1)
perseverance, (23,45)
Church dressed in white, (6,13)
Peter, Apostle, Saint:
denial by, (17,33), 39
prayer that his faith does not fail, 9
Pharaoh, (20,41), (23,45)
Philistines, (21,42)
plenty: works of, (17,33)
plague: flies, (23,45)
prayer, (14,27)
help in keeping the commandments,
Answer to the Pelagians IV

(16,32)
temptation and, 9
pride, (2,2), 20, (9,21), (11,23), (16,32),
(18,37), 38
providence: children of non-believers, (22,44)
punishment, (3,5), (21,42), 43, (23,45)

race, (7,16)
Rehoboam, (21,42)
righteousness, (12,24)
  
goodness of will and, (15,31)
  grace; eternal life, (9,21)
  works of the law, (10,22), (12,24), (13,25)
  works of, 17

salvation: Son of Man's coming, (22,44)
sexual sins, (16,32)

sin:  
  conquering; gift of God, 8
dead as wages of, (9,21)
dominion of, (12,24)
enslaved to, (15,31)
Jeews and death of Christ, 2
  knowledge of, and the law, (10,22)
  law and, (22,44)
  law as power of, 8
  power over human beings, (11,23)
Son of Man:  
  came so world might be saved, (22,44)
suffering: grace of endurance, 28

temptation, 3
  watch and pray, 9
testing, (20,41)
thanks to God, 38
thought: sufficiency from God, (7,16)

Timothy: free choice, 7
tribulation, 39
understanding, (1,1), (19,40)
  praying for, (24,46)
Valentine (brother), (1,1)
vanity, 38
victory, (7,16)
virtue: trusting in one's own, (12,24)

war, (21,42)

will:
  aflame with love, 34
  commandments and, 4
efficacious strength, (16,32)
evil; sinfulness, (20,41)
  see also free choice
  God as cause of good, (16,32)
  God working with, (17,33)
  God's counsel and acts of, 4
  God's dominion over, (20,41)
goood and evil, (20,41)
goodness, (15,31)
  heart and, (21,42)
  heart of stone, 29-30
  infants, (22,44)
  keeping the commandments, (16,32)
  merits and grace, 30
  perfecting of, (17,33)
  turning to God, (5,10)
  will of God:
    acceptance; free choice, 7
    wisdom: praying for, (24,46)
    works: repayment for, 20

Volume I/26
Index from

On the Gift of Perseverance

(De dono perseverantiae)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians IV

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor

This volume includes four works: Grace and Free Choice (De gratia et libero arbitrio), Rebuke and Grace (De correptione et gratia), The Predestination of the Saints (De praedestinatione sanctorum), and The Gift of Perseverance (De dono perseverantiae).

Volume I/26 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

The Gift of Perseverance

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>19:2 2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:11 22,62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13 22,62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:10 11,25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:2 6,12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66:9 6,12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:18,19 7,14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>84:6 13,33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85:7 6,12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:1 14,35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>118:8 22,62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:36 8,20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>140:9 6,12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>2:6 17,43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>4:11 10,24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:21 17,43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>3:22 12,30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>57:16 9,21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>17,46; 22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:40</td>
<td>2,2; 7,14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Baruch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>14,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>20,51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament

Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>2,4; 21,55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>2,5; 3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>4,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>5,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>5,9; 6,11; 6,12; 17,46; 22,62;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>9,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:22</td>
<td>9,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:11</td>
<td>14,35; 14,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>14,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>14,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14-15</td>
<td>8,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>19,49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>14,37; 20,51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer to the Pelagians IV
### Answer to the Pelagians IV

| 9:53 | 19.49 |
| 18:1 | 14.35 |

**John**
- 1:1 16.40
- 1:12 8.20
- 6:6 14.34, 14.37
- 10:30 24.67
- 12:37-40 14.35
- 14:1 14.34, 14.35
- 14:28 24.67
- 16:12 16.40

**Romans**
- 5:12 12.30
- 8:15 23.64
- 8:26-27 23.64
- 8:28 9.21
- 9:20 8.17; 12.30; 14.37
- 9:23 12.28
- 10:14 14.36
- 10:21 18.47
- 11:1 18.47
- 11:2 18.47
- 11:4 18.47
- 11:5-6 18.47
- 11:7 18.47
- 11:29 13.33; 14.36; 17.41
- 11:33 11.25; 12.30
- 11:34 11.27; 14.37
- 14:4 8.19

**1 Corinthians**
- 3:1 11.25; 12.28; 14.36; 24.66
- 3:1-2 16.40
- 3:5-7 14.37
- 3:10 14.37
- 4:7 17.43
- 7:7 14.37
- 9:24 22.57
- 10:12 8.9; 11.25; 13.33
- 12:6 23.64

**2 Corinthians**
- 3:5 8.19; 8.20; 13.33

**Galatians**
- 4:6 23.64
- 6:7 2.3

**Ephesians**
- 1:4 9.21
- 1:4-5 18.47
- 1:4-11 7.15
- 1:11 7.14; 9.21
- 6:23 17.44

**Philippians**
- 1:6 14.34
- 1:29 2.2
- 2:12.13 13.33
- 2:13 14.34; 22.59

**Colossians**
- 3:2.1 13.33

**1 Thessalonians**
- 3:5 6.12

**2 Timothy**
- 1:8-10 23.65

**James**
- 1:5 17.43
- 1:5-6 17.44
- 1:14.13 6.12
- 1:17 17.44; 22.62
- 3:14-16 17.44
- 3:17 17.44

**1 Peter**
- 3:17 2.2

**1 John**
- 1:8 5.8
- 2:19 8.19; 9.21

---

**Volume I/26**
Gift of Perseverance

abandonment: by God, 12
A dam, (9,21), 27
free choice, (7,13)
adoption, (18), 64
A mbrose, Saint, (19,48), 49, 64
on self-sufficiency, 19-20
angels, (3,6), (7,13), (19,48)
equality of humans with, (3,6)
angry, 18
A pollinarists, 67
aspects, 27, (20,51)
assent: hearing with the heart, 37
A ugustine, Saint:
Confessions, 53
conversion, 53
Rebuke and Grace, 55
Revisions, 27
B aal, (18)
baptism, 4, 23
mystery of God’s grace, (13,32)
boasting, (11,25), 36, 43, (19,48), 49, 50,
(20,51), (24,66)
body: Pelagian idea of, 4
bread: daily, (4,7)
calling, 33, (17)
God’s inscrutable judgments, (9,21)
irrevocable, 36
the elect, (19,48)
Catholic Church, 4, 27, 31
Catholic faith, 56
defense of, 52
celibacy, 37
charity, (1,1), 42, (20,51)
God’s foreknowledge, (17)
matrimonial, 37
children of God: power to become, 20
chosen, (15,38), 60
before creation of the world, 35
called according to plan, (9,21)
gifts of God, 47
infants before the creation, (11,25)
Church, 14, (19,48), 49, 58, 60, 68
born, grew, and increased, (23,63)
gifts and, 65
prayers of, as guide, (23,63)
spouse of Christ, (5,8)
commandments, (19,48), 49
commands, (14,34)
concupiscence, 12
condemnation, (8,16), 23, 26, 27, 30
conscience, (5,8)
continence: gift, 43
conversion, 49, 50
wills opposed to God, 22
crying out, 64
Cyprian, Saint, 4, (4,7), (5,8), 12, 43, (19,48),
49, 55
perseverance taught by, 36
death, (1,1)
debt: remitting, (8,16)
desire: earthly, 20
despair, 46, 62
devil, (7,13)
devotion, 50
discipline, 59
doubt, 30
election of grace, (18)
Elijah, (18)
ememies:
Lord’s Prayer, 49
praying for, 60, (23,63)
error, 40, 55
eternal life, 11, 62
eucharist:
abstain from, for serious sin, (4,7)
daily receiving, (4,7)
exhortations, 42
faith, (1,1), 23, 36, 42, (23,63)
abandoned (Tyre and Sidon), (10,24)
beginning with gift from God, (3,6), (16,39),
43, 49, 52, (21,54), 55, (24,66)
comes not from us, (21,54)
confession of belief, 49
exhortations to, 45
give what you command . . ., 53
grace and, 41
heresy, 43
increase of, (2,2), 44
intelligence and, 35
perseverance in, 43
received even without asking, 44
temptation to abandon, 46
will and, 41
wisdom and, 44
working through love, 20
faithful: heavenly man, (3,6)
Volume I/26

Answer to the Pelagians IV

gift: of God, 33, (21,54), 65, (24,66)
flesh: harmony with spirit, (3,6)
foreknowledge: predestination, (18)
forgiveness of sin, 67
free choice, (7,13)

God:
abandoned by, 12
anger and mercy, 18
foreknowledge, (17), 50, (22,57), 61, 65, (24,66), 67
actions one would have done, 31
fallings one would have done, 22
future gifts, 42
gifts of God, 47, 56
good and evil, (15,38)
predestination and, 35
gives the increase . . ., 37
holiness: honor to God, 49
injustice, (11,25), 23
inscrutable judgments, 18, (9,21)
judgment: mercy and truth, (11,25)
judgments: inscrutable, 35
just judgment, (8,16)
knowledge and understanding from, 68
knowledge of needs before being asked, (16,39)
no favoritism in, 31
no injustice in, (8,16)
work/hand of, 14
good and evil, 44
actions if one had lived, 31
evil merits, (11,25)
God's foreknowledge of, (15,38)
jealousy and quarrels, 44
nature(s) in human beings, 30
origins of evil, 27
suffering and, (2,2)
goodness:
failure to make progress in, (15,38)
remitting a debt, (8,16)
gospel, 22, 23
grace, 4, (7,13), 14, 15, 27, (15,38), 45, 60
election of, (18)
faith and, 41
given with mercy and justice, (12,28)
God's justice in giving; 17
gratuitous, (12,28), 29, 41, (19,48)
merit and, 4, (8,16), (11,25), (12,28), 30,
31, (13,32), 33, 36, 40, 42, 49,
(20,51), 53, (21,54), 55, 56, 64,
(24,66)
not to commit sin, (10,24)
obedience and, 41
predestination of, (19,48)
sets us free, 52
will and, 41
Gregory of Nazianzen, Saint, 49

hand of God, 14
hearing: obedience, 37, (19,48)
prefixing, (20,51)
heart, 19, 22, 33
hardening, (11,25), 35
hearing; assent, 37
lift up our hearts, 33
not in our own power, 20, (19,48), 49
heaven: merits, 29
heaven and earth (term), (3,6)
heresy, 43, 53
Hilary, (1,1)
holiness:
honor to God, 49
name of God made holy in us, 4
perseverance in, 4, (9, 11)
Holy Spirit, 49, 64
hope, 46, 62
human beings:
actions/words; heart/thought, 49
equality with angels, (3,6)
nature(-s):

good and evil, 19, 30
of man as created, 29
human condition:
original sin; punishment, 29
humility, 12, 23
ignorance, 27, 29, 43
infant(-s; little ones):
chosen before creation, (11,25)
dying unbaptized, 23, 31
God's foreknowledge of acts if they had
lived, 31
grace given gratuitously, (11,25)
grace; gift of obedience, (17)
infant baptism, 27, 29
merit, 29
original sin, (9,21)
perseverance; 17
rational souls, 31
salvation: uncertainty, 30
unbaptized; condemnation, 30
intelligence: divine gift, 35
Israel: promises made to, (18)
Jerusalem, 49
Jesus Christ:
foreknowledge, 23
model of our predestination, 67
refusal to believe in, 23
suffering for, (2, 2)
time of his coming, 23
true humanity and divinity, 67
Jews:
disbelief in Christ, 23
eyes blinded; hearts hardened, 35
not able to believe, 35
judgment (-day), 23, 35
actions if one had lived, 23
evil which God knows a person would have done, 22, (10, 24), 31
God’s foreknowledge of what would have been, (13, 32)
sins which one would have committed, (10, 24)
justice, (12, 28)
God’s just judgments; 17
knowledge: from face of God, 68
learning: capability for, 40
Lord’s Prayer:
1st petition, 4, 55
2nd petition, 5
3rd petition, (3, 6)
4th petition, (4, 7)
5th petition, (5, 8)
6th petition, 9
Bring us not into temptation, (9, 11, 12), 46, 62, (23, 63)
enemies, 49
Forgive us our debts . . . , (5, 8)
May your kingdom come, 5, (3, 6)
May your name be made holy, 4, 55
petitions are for perseverance, 3
proof of gift of perseverance, (7, 13)
love, 18, (17), 42, (20, 51), 56
faith working through, 20
grace to obey God with delight, 41
Manichees, 26, 27, 29, 67
books written against, 30
mercy, (10, 24), 35, 49, 52, 55
faith and, 56
God’s judgment, (11, 25)
merit and, (11, 25)
vessels of, 18, (12, 28)
merit, 67
merit: grace and, 4, (8, 16), (11, 25), (12, 28), 30, 31, (13, 32), 33, 36, 40, 42, 49, (20, 51), (21, 54), 55, 56, 64, (24, 66)
heaven and, 29
infant salvation, 29
mercy and, (11, 25)
mind, 20
miracles: gospel, 23
mercy: Christ in Tyre and Sidon, (10, 24)
signs for non-believers, 22, 23
Monica, Saint, 53
non-believers, 15, (9, 21), (10, 24), 31, 44, 45, 60, (23, 63), 65
miracles and, 22, 23
praying for, (3, 6)
obedience, 22, 42, 58, 61
exhortation; gift, 37
grace and, 41, 50
hearing, 37, (19, 48), 49
infants, (17)
power to obey withdrawn, (15, 38), 61
preaching and, (24, 66)
predestination, 36
original sin, (7, 13)
entered through one man: Adam, 30
guilt contracted by birth, 23, 27
infants, (9, 21)
Pelagianism, 4, 26-27, 29
original state, 27
pagans, 23
Paulinus, Saint, 55
Pelagian(-ism), 4, (5, 8), 26-27, 29, 31, (13, 32), 43, 41, 45, 52, 53, 55, (24, 66)
Pelagius, (13, 32), 41, (21, 54), 56
penance, 23
perdition, (8, 16), 31, 35
perfection, 55
perseverance, 42, 53, 58, 61
comes not from ourselves, (21, 54)
Cyrian’s teaching on, 36
gratuity: adults, 19
holy persons pray for, (3, 6)
hope of, 46
in holiness, 4
infants; gratuity, 17
mystery of God’s gift, (13, 32)
necessary to pray always, 35
need to speak truth about, 40
objections from brothers in Provence, (6, 10)
suffering even death for, (2, 2)
to the end: gratuitous gift from God, (1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 6), (6, 10), (8, 16), 15, 19, (9, 21), (13, 32), (14, 34), (17), (16, 39), 43, 45, 47, 49, (21, 54), 55, 56, (23, 63), (24, 66)
Photinians, 67

Volume I/26
Gift of Perseverance

piety, 33, 42, (20,51)
pleasure, 20
praise, (11,25)
prayer(-s), 62
Church’s prayers as guide, (23,63)
ask, seek, knock, 64
continuous petition, 4
daily, 15
for one’s sins, (5,8)
for perseverance, 35
formalities, (23,63)
God’s gift, 64
people who don’t pray, (16,39)
saints, 3
preaching, 23, 45, (19,48)
heard with obedience, (24,66)
hearing, 37
predestination and, (14,34), 42
predestination, 14, (9,21), 23, 55, 56, 59, 65
adoption through Christ, 15
Augustine’s early teaching on, 52
can and ought to be taught, (14,34)
Christ as model, 67
Church’s teaching, (19,48)
Cyprian and Ambrose on, 49
defense: heresies, 50
foreknowledge, (18)
God’s foreknowledge and, 35
God’s inscrutable judgments, (11,25)
mystery, 22
obedience, 36, 42
preaching, 45, 46, (20,51), (21,54), 62,
(24,66)
saints: definition, 35
Scripture, 47
silence about, 41
teaching, (22,57)
will of God and, (15,38), 58
pride, 3, (5,8), 12, (16,39), (17) 59, 62
Prosper, (1,1)
providence, 31
nothing happens without God, 12
punishment, (12,28)
God’s justice, 17
God’s mercy and truth, (11,25)
judgment day, 23
Tyre and Sidon, 23
rebuke, (19,48), 43, 44
redemption: original and personal sins, 30
reward: workers in vineyard (parable) ; 17
righteousness, 45
God makes persons righteous, 67
Pelagian idea of, 4, (5,8)
Rome, 53
running, (22,57)
saints, 19, 22
definition of predestination, 35

May your kingdom come, 5
merits of, 4
prayers of, 3
predestination of, 15
predestination, 53
salvation, 19, 23, 33, 46, (19,48)
Samaritans, 49
self-sufficiency, 19-20
sex organs, (20,51)
Sidon, 22, 23, (10,24), 35
silence, (15,38), 40
Simplician (bishop of Milan), 52, 55
sin, 58, 59
if we say we have no sin . . ., (5,8)
sin: infant baptism and, 29
sin: pray daily because of, (5,8)
sinners, (5,8), 27
Sixtus (priest) , 55
sparrow, 31
spirit, 20
harmony with flesh, (3,6)
standing, 19
suffering: for doing good, (2,2)
sufficiency, 19, 20, 33
talent, 43
teaching: capability for, 40
temptation, (7,13), 15, 19, 22, 62, (23,63)
abandon the faith, 46
Lord’s Prayer, 9, 11, 12
thanksgiving: mockery, 3
thoughts: not in our own power, 20, 33,
(19,48) , 49
Trinity, 50, 67
truth, 64
dilemma: stating truth when hearer cannot
grasp it, 40
God’s judgment, (11,25)
silence about, 40
twins; 17, (11,25)
Tyre, 22, 23, (10,24), 35
unbelief, 58
understanding: from face of God, 68
vanities, 20
vineyard: workers in (parable) 17
virtue, 56
gifts: exhortation, 45
God’s gifts, 42
Pelagian idea of, 4
will:
Augustine’s books on free will, 26, 27
conversion and grace, 53
faith and, 41
God produces the willing in us, 33,
(14,34), 42
grace and, 41

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Answer to the Pelagians IV

prepared by God, 49
providence and, 12
will of God:
see also predestination
calling; making holy, 49
giving of grace and, (12,28)
imitate heaven, (3,6)
predestination and, (15,38)

wisdom:
earthly; diabolical, 44
faith and, 44
gift; exhortation, 43, 44
Word of God, 67
in the beginning . . ., 40
world: flight from, 20
worship, 33, (24,66)

Volume I/26
Index from

On the Predestination of the Saints

(De praedestinatione sanctorum)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians IV

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor

This volume includes four works: Grace and Free Choice (De gratia et libero arbitrio), Rebuke and Grace (De correptione et gratia), The Predestination of the Saints (De praedestinatione sanctorum), and The Gift of Perseverance (De dono perseverantiae).

Volume I/26 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael Dolan)
(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

The Predestination of the Saints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>Proverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:25</td>
<td>14:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4-5</td>
<td>25:10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings 8:57-58</td>
<td>37:23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 7:1 LXX</td>
<td>119:36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>127:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proverbs 8:35 LXX</td>
<td>20,42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer to the Pelagians IV

20:24 20,42  
21:2 20,42  
Wisdom  
4:11 14,26; 14,28; 14,29  
Isaiah  
45:11 LXX 10,19  
54:13 8,14  
Jeremiah  
17:5 1,2  
Baruch  
2:31 20,42  
Ezekiel  
36:27 11,22; 20,42  
Habakkuk  
2:4 10,20  
Malachi  
1:3 3,7  

New Testament  
Matthew  
6:10 8,15  
13:11 20,40  
20:16 16,33  
John  
6:28-29 7,12  
6:29 8,13  
6:36.37 8,13  
6:43-46 8,13  
6:44 8,15  
6:45 8,14; 16,33  
6:60-61 8,35  
6:64-65 8,15  
6:65-66 8,15  
6:66 20,40  
15:16 17,34; 19,38  
Acts of the Apostles  
4:24-28 16,33  
13:48 20,42  
16:14 20,41  
Romans  
1:1-4 15,31  
1:17 10,20  
1:28 10,19  
4:16 10,19; 11,21  
4:20-21 2,6; 10,19  
7:7-25 4,8  
7:14 4,8  
8:13 11,22  
8:14 11,22  
8:28 18,37  
8:28-29 16,32  
8:30 17,34  
9:10-29 4,8  
9:12 19,38  
9:12-13 16,32  
9:13 3,7  
9:18 8,14  
9:19 8,14  
9:20 8,16; 15,30  
9:22-23 8,14  
10:1 8,15  
10:9 11,22  
11:5 3,7; 16,33  
11:5-6 6,12  
11:6 2,6  
11:7 16,33  
11:7-10 6,11  
11:25-27 16,33  
11:28-29 16,33  
11:29 16,33; 18, 37; 19,38  
11:33 6,11; 8,16  
11:36 14,26  
11:35-36 2,4  
12:3 14,23  
12:4 2,10  
1 Corinthians  
1:18 8,14  
1:24 16,32  
1:27-29 5,9  
1:30-31 5,9  
1:31 5,9; 8,16  
2:31 18,37  
3:21 5,9; 18,37  
3:2-7 5,9  
4:6-7 5,9  
4:7 3,7; 4,8  
7:25 3,7  
10:12 11,21  
12:11 11,22  
12:6 3,7  
16:8-9 20,40  
2 Corinthians  
2:12-13 20,41  
2:14-16 20,41  
2:16 20,41  
3:5 2,5  
4:13 8,13  
5:10 12,24  
Galatians  
3:16 16,33  
6:7 19,39  
6:17 1,1  

Volume I/26
The Gift of Perseverance

Old Testament

Leviticus
19:2 2,4

Psalms
2:11 22,62
2:13 22,62
25:10 11,25
26:2 6,12
66:9 6,12
80:18-19 7,14
84:6 13,33
85:7 6,12
101:1 14,35
118:8 22,62
119:25 8,20
140:9 6,12

Proverbs
2:6 17,43

Wisdom
4:11 10,24
8:21 17,43

Sirach
3:22 12,30

Isaiah
57:16 9,21

New Testament

Matthew
6:9 2,4; 21,55
6:10 2,5; 3,6
6:11 4,7
6:12 5,8
6:13 5,9; 6,11; 6,12; 17,46; 22,62; 23,63
10:22 2,2
11:21 9,23
11:22 9,23
12:11 14,35; 14,37
13:13 14,37
19:11 14,37
20:14-15 8,17
26:41 6,12

Luke
1:3 19,49
8:8 14,37; 20,51

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Predestination of Saints

Abraham, 6, (9,17), 20
children promised to, 20
faith, not works, promised to, 20
father of many nations, (10,19)
promises made to, 33
Adam, (9,17)
adoption, (18,35), 36
alms: Cornelius, (7,12)
Ambrose, (4,8)
angels, (9,17)
anger: vessels of, 14, 33
animals, 10
Apollos watered . . ., (5,9)
apostles, 28, 41
chosen before creation of the world, (17,34)
assent: act of believing, 5
Augustine:
Commentary on some statements in the letter to the Romans, (3,7)
Time of the Christian Religion, (9,17)
Trinity, The, (8,13)
baptism: bath of rebirth, 31
baptism:
forgiveness of sins, (13,25)
same grace as incarnation, 31
belief: thought and will, 5
believer, see faith
boasting, (3,7), (4,8), 16, 37
body:
in the body = time when we live in the body, 24
building, (7,12)
calling:
apostles as chosen, (17,34)
chosen, 37
irrevocable, 33, 37, (19,38)
members of God’s predestined Son, (16,32)
plan of God, 37, 39
running, (3,7)
that we might believe, (19,38)
Catholic faith, 24, 28
children of God, 20, 22
chosen: 10, (6,11)
believers, (17,34)
Christ’s members; before creation of the world, (18,35), 36, 37, (19,38)
grace, not merit, (6,11)
hoi and spotless, 36, (19,38)
made rich in faith by, (17,34)
predestination, (18,35)
why Christ came when he did, 18
you have not chosen me . . ., (17,34), (19,38)
Church, 27
prays for persecutors, 15
predestined to be members of, 31
commands:
ask that God give what he commands, 22, 27
demands are in power of a human being, 22
God and carrying out, (10,19)
God’s promise, 20, 22
good works, 20, 22
power of the human to carry out, 20
what is demanded; what is offered, 20
condemnation, 16
conversion:
drawn to Christ by the Father, 15
everyone who has heard my Father . . .
(8,13), 14, 33
Father's teaching, and coming to Christ,
14
Cornelius: alms and prayers, (7,12)
cross: folly, 14
Cyprian, Saint (3,7)
Cyprian on, (14,26)
Ephesians, Letter to the,(18,35)-36
election of grace, (3,7), (6,11) , 33
eternal life, (13,25), 42
eucharist: future merits for receiving, (13,25)
faith, 18
see also non-believers
ability to have; human nature, 10
Augustine's earlier errors, (3,7)
beginning of:
gift of God, (2,3), (4,8), 31, (19,38),
(20,40), 41, (21,43)
increments, 22
scriptural texts, 39
Scripture testimony, 4
believers ask for increase of, 20
building by preaching, (7,12)
chosen in order that they might believe,
(17,34)
demand and gift, 20
foreknowledge of God, (3,7)
gift in its beginning and completion, 16, 20
gift of believing in Christ, 15
gift of God, (3,7)
given to some, not to others, 16
God's foreknowledge, 20
God's work, (7,12)
good works and, 20
human being's part in, 20
increase is from God, (2,3), 5, 22, (21,43)
mercy and belief, (3,7)
merited by mercy of God, (3,7)
no one comes to me unless . . . (15, (20,40)
praying for anticipates grace, 15
preceeded by grace of God, (3,7)
promise to Abraham, 20
rich in faith by being chosen, (17,34)
salvation, a gift, (7,12)
salvation as reward for, 22
sets believer apart, 10
standing firm in, (11,21)
twofold call to, (16,32)
voluntary, (6,11)
will and, 10
work of God, 6
works and, (7,12)
flesh, (8,13)
conflict with spirit, (4,8)
death to deeds of, 22
put to death by spirit, 20
foreknowledge:
predestination and, (10,19)
forgiveness of sin:
Christ the man, 31
future sins, 24
penance, (13,25)
free choice, (4,8), (5,9), 10, (12,23)
holiness, 36
future life: reward or punishment, 24
gifts, (3,7), (21,43)
irrevocable, 37, (19,38)
natural, 19
God:
foreknowledge, (10,19), (17,34), 36
Christ the man, 31
his own future actions, (17,34)
believers and non-believers, (9,17)
early death, (14,26)
faith and works of individuals, (3,7)
faith; believers, 20
forgiveness of sins, 24, (13,25)
penances performed, (13,25)
predestination and, (19,38)
judgment and mercy, (6,11)
mercy, see mercy
no injustice in, 27
promises, 6, (10,19)
keeping his commands, 22
power of human being, 20
trust in, (11,21)
unsearchable ways, (6,11), 16
wisdom and knowledge of, (9,17)
good and evil:
grace sets good apart, 10
merit, 24
good life, the, 10
good works, 2, 5
commandments, 20, 22
faith and, 20
faith promised to Abraham, 20
Holy Spirit, (3,7)
gospel:
believing in, 15
enemies for your sake, 33
preached, (3,7), 39, (20,40)
preaching; belief in, (9,17)
grace, (4,8), 10, 37, 41

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Answer to the Pelagians IV

Christ as fountain of, 31

election of, (19,38)

faith and, (3,7)

gratuitous, 6, (6,11), (21,43)

hardness of heart and, (8,13)

human nature and, (5,9)

mercy, (17,34)

merit and, (1,1), (2,3), 4, 5, (3,7), 10, (12,23), (12,25), 27, 29, 37

power of, seen in prayers, 27

prayer and, 15

predestination as preparation for, (10,19)

predestining by, 36

result of predestination, (10,19)

unchangeable truth of, (17,34)

works and, (7,12)

Greeks, (16,32)

heart(-s), (8,13)

doer opened, 41

God working in, 39

grace and hardness of, (8,13)

hardened, (3,7)

inclined to will of God, 42

open to hear God's word, (20,40)

heaven: chosen wills inclined to, 42

Hilary, (1,1)

Holy Spirit, (8,13), (15,30), 31, 39

doing good and, (3,7)

works, 20, 22

hope, 2

human beings:

distinguishing gifts, 10

power re God's promises, 20

human nature: grace and, (5,9)

humility, (5,9)

infant baptism, 24

infant salvation, 24

infants:

dying: mercy and judgment, 29

predestination of, 24

Israel, 33

Judah and, (7,12)

nation of prophets, (9,17)

Jesus Christ, (5,9)

crucified = scandal; folly, (16,32)

foreknowledge, 18

fountain of grace, 31

free will, (15,30)

gifts of, (15,30)

God's foreknowledge of Christ the man, 31

humanity and divinity, 31

mediator, (12,23)

merit; Son of God, (15,30)

miracles and belief in, (9,17)

no one can come to me unless ... , (8,13)

percenter of faith, 31

predestination as man, (15,30)

predestined to be Son of God, 31

refusal to believe in, (9,17)

sinlessness, 31

Son of Man and Son of God, 31

this is a hard saying ... , 15

why Christ came when he did, (9,17), 18

Jews:

called, (16,32)

predestination, 33

Judah: Israel and, (7,12)

judgment, 14, 24, 41

acts if one had lived longer, 29

mercy and, (6,11)

merits earned if one had lived, 24

merits of a life one did not have, 29

justice, 36

law, (4,8)

limping, 33

literature, 14

little ones, see children; infants

Lord's Prayer:

May your will also be done ... , 15

love, (1,1), 2, 36

faith and, (3,7)

nature of human beings, 10

Mary, Blessed Virgin, (15,30), 31

mercy, 4, (3,7), 33

belief and, (3,7)

dying in infancy, 29

faith and, (7,12)

Father's teaching, and coming to Christ, 14

forgiveness of sins, 24

grace and, (27, (17,34)

judgment and, (6,11)

vessels of, (8,13), 14, 33

merit:

chosen people, (6,11)

Christ as Son of God, (15,30)

evil merits, 20, 22

future merits foreseen, 24

gained in one would have lived, (13,25)

good and evil, 24

grace and, (1,1), (2,3), 4, 5, (3,7), 10, (12,23), (12,25), 27, 29, 37

mockery, 39

Moses, (9,17)

non-believers:

ask that faith be given to, 20, 22

Christ's foreknowledge of, (9,17)

olive tree, 33

original sin, 2, 16, 24

Volume I/26
predestination of saints, 31
salvation, 28, 39
God's plan of, 33
God's will for all, 14
only one way to, 15
preached since beginning of human race, (9,17)
reward for faith, 20, 22
true religion, (9,17)
worthiness for, (10,19)
saul, king, 42
scandal, (16,32)
simplician, (4,8)
sin:
danger of, gone after this life, (14,26)
dangers and temptations, 28, 29
God's foreknowledge of, (10,19)
power of the evil one, 33
punishment for sins, (10,19)
son of god:
conformed to image of, (16,32)
predestination of Christ, (15,30)
spirit:
death to deeds of the flesh, 20, 22
sufficiency comes from God, 5
teacher of literature, 14
temptation: human life as, (14,26)
spirit: death to deeds of the flesh, 20, 22
sufficiency comes from God, 5
wisdom, book of:
authority, 27-29
on death, (14,26)
word of God, 39
work of God, that you believe ... (7,12), (8,13)
works, (16,32)

faith and, (7,12)
worship: God's commands, (10,19)

Zion, 33
Index from

Letters 1-99

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/1

Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-163-3, 6 x 9 in., 440 pp., 2001

Includes:

Responses to Januarius

(Ad inquisitiones Januarii)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Nehemiah</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>55, 7, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20.12.18.21.25</td>
<td>37, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>55, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>36, 3, 5; 55, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>55, 10, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3, 22:18</td>
<td>53, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:10</td>
<td>78, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>93, 9, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>93, 5, 19; 93, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:53</td>
<td>46, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>55, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:20</td>
<td>55, 16, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:7</td>
<td>55, 11, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:25</td>
<td>75, 4, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15</td>
<td>55, 3, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>36, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:28</td>
<td>36, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>55, 11, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25-26</td>
<td>47, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>46, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11</td>
<td>48, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:7</td>
<td>32, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:29</td>
<td>78, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:7</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1</td>
<td>55, 17, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:26</td>
<td>87, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>36, 8, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>75, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>25, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10</td>
<td>22, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3, LXX</td>
<td>55, 6, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>93, 9, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>93, 9, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>93, 9, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>55, 17, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>93, 6, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17-19</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:28-29</td>
<td>51, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:4</td>
<td>38, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:1</td>
<td>47, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:14</td>
<td>64, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:6</td>
<td>92, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12</td>
<td>88, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:13</td>
<td>36, 13, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:4</td>
<td>55, 10, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:11</td>
<td>94, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:37</td>
<td>94, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Letters 1-99
Letters 1-99

45:12 93, 9, 29
45:14 36, 11, 25
45:14-15 36, 9, 22
45:17 93, 9, 29
46:11 55, 12, 22
48:3 93, 8, 25
49:21 23, 1
50:1 36, 2, 3
50:1-2 76, 1
50:14 36, 8, 18
53:6 22, 2, 8
55:6-8 95, 3
55:7 95, 4
55:9 95, 3
55:14-16 93, 9, 28
55:19 93, 11, 46
57:2 48, 2
58:8-9 75, 1, 2
61:3 93, 9, 28
65:14 94, 6
67:2-3 93, 10, 35
68:7 32, 2
68:12 75, 1, 2
69:13 78, 6
69:27-28 78, 6
72:7 55, 6, 10
72:8 66, 1; 93, 5, 19
72:11 87, 8
72:17-19 93, 6, 20
72:18 32, 2
81:11 75, 1, 2
84:5 55, 15, 28; 94, 6
89:31-34 29, 7
89:38 55, 6, 10
90:12 93, 9, 28
94:9 55, 14, 26
94:15 48, 2
94:19 41, 2; 95, 1
100:3 24, 1
101:5 93, 2, 8
103:10 95, 1
104:4 95, 8
107:5 56, 9; 36, 5, 11; 36, 5, 12
108:6 93, 1, 1
112:2-3 94, 3
119:53 93, 9, 28
119:120 55, 14, 25
119:158 93, 9, 28
120:1 25, 2
120:7 88, 1
122:1 41, 1
125:2 41, 1
132:8 55, 16, 30
141:5 26, 4, 6; 33, 3

Proverbs
4:9 32, 4
4:27 48, 2
9:9 93, 5, 17
13:22 93, 12, 50
19:12 88, 5
27:6 82, 4, 31; 93, 2, 4
29:19 93, 5, 17
30:12, LXX 93, 10, 37; 93, 10, 41

Ecclesiastes
11:2 55, 13, 23

Song of Songs
1:6 93, 8, 24; 93, 8, 25
1:7 93, 9, 29
2:2 93, 9, 28

Wisdom
5:3-4 55, 5, 9
5:6 55, 5, 8
13:9 55, 4, 7

Sirach
3:1 36, 11, 26
4:25 93, 13, 51
11:7 43, 3, 11
22:6 68, 1
27:12 55, 5, 8
27:29 88, 5

Isaiah
2:2 93, 9, 29
3:12 33, 3
5:20 36, 8, 20
6:2-3 94, 6
6:3 55, 16, 29
26:20 36, 13, 31
41:7-8 78, 5
45:11, LXX 24, 1
54:1 93, 8, 26
54:2-5 93, 9, 29
66:5 88, 9

Jeremiah
2:30 93, 1, 3
9:24 55, 4, 6
17:5 89, 5
31:31-32 75, 4, 14

Ezekiel
18:4 98, 1; 98, 3
18:4.20 44, 5, 12
33:9 29, 8

Volume II/1
### Volume II/1

#### Daniel
- 3:36 93, 9, 30

#### Habakkuk
- 2:4 55, 2, 3; 55, 14, 25

#### Malachi
- 1:2 78, 8
- 1:11 93, 6, 20
- 4:2 55, 5, 8

#### New Testament

##### Matthew
- 5:8 92, 4
- 5:9 43, 1, 2
- 5:10 44, 2, 4; 87, 7; 93, 2, 8
- 5:14 93, 9, 29
- 5:16 41, 1
- 5:21 36, 4, 8
- 5:37 23, 1; 82, 2, 21
- 5:39 46, 12; 47, 5
- 5:40 93, 3, 11
- 5:45 93, 2, 4
- 6:1 38, 2
- 6:24 36, 10, 23
- 7:1 95, 3
- 7:2 77, 2
- 7:6 29, 2
- 7:14 93, 9, 30
- 7:15, 16 44, 2, 4
- 7:16 29, 6
- 8:8 54, 3, 4
- 8:11 93, 9, 30
- 9:15 36, 3, 5
- 10:16 55, 7, 12
- 11:13 75, 4, 14
- 11:18-19 36, 11, 26
- 11:19 36, 11, 26
- 11:28-29 55, 12, 22
- 11:28-30 26, 5
- 11:29 94, 3
- 12:8 36, 3, 5
- 12:28 55, 16, 29
- 13:24-3 43, 8, 21
- 13:30 76, 2
- 13:43 78, 1
- 16:18 53, 1, 2
- 16:24 55, 14, 24
- 17:26 83, 5
- 18:7 73, 3, 6; 78, 1
- 18:15 95, 3
- 19:26 32, 2
- 21:25 93, 11, 47
- 22:40 82, 3, 28
- 23:3 53, 1, 3; 78, 8
- 24:12 73, 3, 6; 77, 1; 78, 1; 93, 9, 33
- 24:12-13 76, 2
- 24:13 78, 1
- 24:14 93, 7, 22
- 24:31 93, 9, 33
- 26:2 36, 13, 30
- 26:3-4 36, 13, 30
- 26:17 36, 13, 30
- 26:20 54, 5, 7
- 28:1 36, 12, 28
- 28:19 55, 16, 30

##### Mark
- 1:44 82, 2, 18
- 10:27 32, 2
- 16:2 36, 12, 28

##### Luke
- 6:5 36, 10, 23
- 7:33-35 36, 11, 26
- 8:27 32, 2
- 10:37 98, 6
- 11:20 55, 16, 29
- 14:23 93, 2, 5
- 16:16 75, 4, 14; 82, 2, 18
- 18:8 93, 9, 33; 93, 11, 49
- 18:9-10 93, 11, 49
- 20:4 93, 11, 47
- 20:36 55, 14, 26
- 22:20 54, 5, 6; 54, 5, 7
- 24:1 36, 12, 28
- 24:44-47 76, 1
- 24:44-47 93, 6, 21
- 24:46 93, 7, 23
- 24:47 93, 7, 23

##### John
- 1:16 82, 2, 18
- 1:16-17 75, 4, 14
- 1:17 82, 2, 18
- 1:17 91, 8, 9
- 8:18 55, 9, 16
- 3:5 98, 2
- 4:22 23, 4
- 4:24 92, 5
- 5:18 75, 4, 14; 82, 2, 18
- 5:19 93, 9, 32
- 5:24 55, 1, 2
- 5:46 82, 2, 8
- 6:44 93, 2, 5
- 7:39 55, 16, 30
- 8:44 92, 4
- 10:16 93, 5, 19

Letters 1-99
### Letters 1-99

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>55, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>44, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:36</td>
<td>93, 1, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>75, 4, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>88, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:27</td>
<td>92, 3, 17, 3, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>52, 2, 93, 10, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>83, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:33</td>
<td>39, 2, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>94, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:1</td>
<td>36, 12, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17</td>
<td>93, 9, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>93, 6, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>55, 17, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13.12</td>
<td>75, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34-35</td>
<td>75, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:44-45:47-48</td>
<td>75, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1-3</td>
<td>75, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17-18</td>
<td>75, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>75, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1-2.4.5.7-12</td>
<td>75, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>88, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:41-16:3</td>
<td>75, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>75, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:7</td>
<td>36, 12, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:11</td>
<td>36, 12, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-18.20-24.26</td>
<td>75, 3, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:20-25</td>
<td>82, 2, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:24</td>
<td>82, 2, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1-4</td>
<td>49, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7-11</td>
<td>55, 6, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>43, 3, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>55, 14, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>55, 15, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>55, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>99, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>55, 10, 19, 82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>55, 5, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>55, 14, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>55, 16, 26, 98, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>55, 2, 3, 55, 14, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1-12</td>
<td>82, 2, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>95, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1-10</td>
<td>55, 2, 3, 55, 14, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>55, 14, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>55, 11, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>55, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>55, 2, 3, 55, 11, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>55, 14, 25, 64, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>93, 2, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:1-23</td>
<td>40, 3, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>75, 4, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>93, 6, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1-23</td>
<td>62, 2, 87, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>55, 3, 4, 55, 14, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>93, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2-4</td>
<td>87, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>55, 21, 38, 82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13-4</td>
<td>22, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:3</td>
<td>36, 8, 20, 36, 11, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>87, 5, 95, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>36, 7, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>36, 7, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>36, 7, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>36, 11, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>62, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>78, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1-7</td>
<td>93, 9, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>64, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>78, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>93, 9, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>93, 11, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>82, 2, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>78, 5, 95, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>95, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>93, 2, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>29, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12-12</td>
<td>95, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>29, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>29, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1-8</td>
<td>55, 21, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>36, 11, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22</td>
<td>40, 4, 4, 75, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:7</td>
<td>36, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>36, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>41, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:26</td>
<td>47, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>46, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:31</td>
<td>48, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>21, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1-12</td>
<td>54, 5, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>29, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>54, 5, 6, 54, 5, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>54, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-34</td>
<td>54, 6, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>48, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30-10</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>94, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>55, 21, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>55, 16, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>92, 3, 92, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>93, 9, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14-15</td>
<td>28, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume II/1**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>83, 1; 95, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>83, 1; 95, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>29, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>55, 14, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>36, 10, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>78, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>78, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>58, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>40, 4, 6; 78, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>53, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>93, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>22, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>75, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>40, 3, 3; 82, 2, 7; 82, 2, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>75, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>75, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:3-5</td>
<td>82, 2, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:11-14</td>
<td>75, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>40, 4, 5; 75, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>28, 3, 4; 40, 3, 3; 82, 2, 4; 93, 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>93, 13, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>93, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>82, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>93, 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>75, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>55, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>93, 9, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:29</td>
<td>93, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:47</td>
<td>93, 8, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>75, 4, 14; 82, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>75, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>75, 4, 14; 82, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>55, 2, 3; 75, 4, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>23, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>75, 4, 14; 82, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:19-21</td>
<td>29, 6; 93, 11, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>5:22-23</td>
<td>29, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>82, 3, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>87, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>55, 14, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>75, 4, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>55, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Letters 1-99**
### Letters 1-99

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>93, 9, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>43, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Hebrews
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>40, 4, 6; 75, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### James
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>73, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>55, 10, 18; 93, 11, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>23, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Peter
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:1-3</td>
<td>29, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>88, 9; 93, 10, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>55, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>78, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 John
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>92, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>93, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>93, 9, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>64, 1; 92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>73, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Revelation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>43, 8, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>43, 8, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>43, 8, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>94, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>93, 9, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:11</td>
<td>78, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume II/1**
Volume II/1

Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number.
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Aaron: idol worship, as tolerating, 43:23
Abaddires, 17:2
abandoned woman, the, 93:26, 30
Abednego (Shadrach, Meshach, and), 36:16; 93:9(3)
Abimilech, 46:18; 47:3
Abram, 87:4; 93:28(9), 52
Abraham:
the bosom of Abraham, 78:6
Cast out the handmaid and her son, 78:8
Christians as offspring of, 88:11
Esau as nephew of, 36:12
The God of Abraham and the God of Nachor, 46:18
God’s promises to, 53:1(1); 76:1; 89:4
Jesus Christ as descendant of, 76:1
offspring of, 93:15, 19, 51(13)
Absalom, 78:8
Abundantius, 65:1–2
Academics, the, 1:1–3
actions:
neutral, 75:4, 16; 82:13–14
actors, 91:4–5
Acts of the Apostles:
the Holy Spirit filling one hundred and twenty, 93:21
Priscillianists and, regarding fasting, 36:28
voice speaking to Peter, 75:7
Adam:
“because of food Adam lost paradise,” 36:11–12
original sin, 98:1, 6
Adriatic, the: misrouted letter to Jerome, 40:1(1)–9(6)
adultery, 78:6
adulterers, rules regarding, 93:41–42
of David, 82:5
of Jupiter, 91:4–5
Paul on, 29:5
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
Aegean, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Aeneas, 7:4
Aeneid, the, 7:4; 14:1; 15:2; 17:2, 3; 91:2
Africa
See also Hippo; Thagaste; specific names, locations, and topics
Catholicism in, 49:2–3
Donatists as only in, 49:3; 52:2; 76:2;
87:1; 93:24(8)–25
feasting and drunkenness in cemeteries, 22:2–6
martyrs in, 78:3
Megalius as primate of, 38:2
Punic language in, 17:2
schisms in, 93:24(8)–25 See also schisms
Against the Pagans, book by Paulinus, 45:2
age: greater understanding as accompanying, 4:1–2
Agilus (son of Paulinus and Therasia), 30:3;
31:2–3; 42; 45:1
“airy or ethereal spirits,” 9:3
Alaric, 99:1
Albina, 46
Alexander (bishop, in succession of bishops), 53:2
Alexander (of Jerusalem), 75:4(3); 82:23(3)
Alexandria: Athanasius as Catholic bishop, 44:6
allegories:
interpretation of, 93:24(8)
usefulness of, 55:21
Alleluia, the cry of praise, 36:18(8); 55:28,
32, 34
alopigia, 36:9(5), 11, 19
Alps, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
altars
See also sacrifice
“Urbicus,” treatise of, 36:24
Alypius, 2:1; 22:1
Augustine presents to Paulinus, 27:5
as bishop of Thagaste, 28:1(1); 32:1
Jerome, as link to, 28:1(1); 39:2(2)
Thagaste, as bishop of, 28:1(1); 32:1
Ambrose, bishop of Milan, 24:4; 75:20(6)

Letters 1-99
Letters 1-99

asking Fortunius about, 44:7(4)
books of, 31:8
on church customs, 54:3
Duties as by, 82:21
on fasting, 36:32(14)
on lying, 82:24
Amnon, 78:8
Anacletus, 53:2
Anastasius, 53:2
anathema, 53:1(1); 93:23
angel(s):
  bodies (forms) of, 95:7, 8
  and circumcision of Moses, 23:4
  "devil and his angels," 43:22
  devil as previously, 73:7
  "even an angel from heaven . . . should be anathema," 93:23
  false, 53:6(3)
food and drink, as given, 95:8
Generous, "inspiring" Donatist letter to, 53:1(1)–7
as guests, 95:8
Jerusalem whose citizens are the holy angels, 55:10(6)
and Moses, circumcision of, 23:4
praising God in heaven, 94:6
on prayer with fasting, 36:18(8)
in Revelation, Book of, 43:22–23
Satan transforming self to, 53:7
Seraphim, the two, 55:29(16)
as spirits, 95:8
sature of, 95:8
struck by, 95:2
thousands of angels for eternity, 95:8
tongues of, 94:7
anger, 9:3–4; 93:48
of God, 91:6
turning to hatred, warning against, 38:2
Anicetus, 53:2
animal(s)
  See also specific animals
Christ, as symbolizing, 55:11
  the four, 94:6
sold as temple sacrifices, 29:3
wild, 93:11
Answer to the Pagans (by Paulinus), 31:8
Answer to the Skeptics, 1:3
Antioch:
  Paul and Barnabas in, 75:7
quarrel between Paul and Peter, 28:3(3)–5
  See also under Paul; Peter
Antoninus, letter from Augustine to:
  on being mistaken about a person, 20:1–3
Anulinus (proconsul of Africa), 88:1; 89:3; 93:13
Apocalypse, the, 78:9
  angel, stature of, 95:8
  many thousands seen in, 93:30
  seven churches, 55:10(6)
Apollinaris of Laodicea, 75:4(3), 20(6)
Apollo:
  in poem of Licentius, 26:6
apostasy, 78:8
See also Manicheans
  apostle(s)
    See also individual names
    the Church in time of, 93:9(3)
true and false, 43:22–23
Aptungi; Felix of, See Felix of Aptungi.
Aquila and Priscilla, 75:9
Aquilea: Rufus of, 68:3
Arabs, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Argentius, 29:12
Arians, 44:6; 93:31
Aries, 55:14(8)
Arimphaeans, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
ark of Noah, 78:8
ark of the covenant:
  carried around . . . the seventh time, 55:10(6)
law of signifying sanctification, 55:30
Arles: Caecilian, acquittal of, 76:2; 88:3; 89:3 See also Caecilian
armor of God, 75:2
arts, liberal: salvation as not from, 87:1
Arzuges, the, 46:1–5; 93:24(8)
Ascension, the:
  celebrated, 54:1(1)
  fifty days after Easter, 55:29(16)–31(17)
asceticism:
  of Paulinus, 25:4
ashes, 48:2
Asia:
  Hilary of Poitiers on, 93:31–32
in poem of Licentius, 26:6
Asiarcha, 29:12
Asinus Pollio, 75:22(7)
"assumption of the man," the, 11:2–4
Assur, Pruettaxis of, See Pruettaxis of Assur.
Asterius of Scythopolis, 75:20(6)
Asterius (subdeacon), 39:1(1)
astrology, 55:12(7)–13, 13, 14(8)
astronomy; astronomers, 55:6(4)
Athanasius, Catholic bishop of Alexandria, 44:6
Athenians, 47:4
atomism: of Epicurus, rejecting, 3:2
Augustine
  See also specific topics
  as bishop, 32:1–2
  friendships of, See individual names.
  mother of, See Monica.
  ordination as priest in Hippo, 21:1–6
  Aurelius, bishop of Carthage; prim ate of Africa, 32:1
  Quintian (priest), problems with, 64:1–3
Aurora, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
authority:
  resisting, 87:7

Volume II/1
secular, See secular power.
Aoz (sea), 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Bacchus (Liber), 17:5
Badesil, church of, 64:2
Bagai:
council of, 88:11
Maximian as bishop, 69:1–2
banquets
See also drink; eating; feasts; food in church, complaints regarding, 29:1–11
baptism, 89:5
See also John the Baptist
of Christ, 89:5
Christ, as belonging to, 51:5
of Christ vs. John, 93:47
by disciples, 44:10(5)
Donatists accepting Maximianist, not Catholic, 51:4–5
exsufflation, See exsufflation.
faith, as sacrament of, 98:9–10
foot-washing and, 55:32
as gift of God, 61:2
infant, 98:1–10
of John, 44:10(5)
of John vs. Christ, 93:47
Lent, after, 54:9(7)–10
original sin, as removing, 36:9(5)
Paul as rebaptizing (after John), 93:47–48
by Peter, 93:47
Peter wanting to be washed, 44:10(5)
rebaptism, Donatist practice of, See rebaptism.
righteousness and, 93:10
as sacrament, 54:1(1) See also sacraments
schismatics, of former, 93:46(11)
Second Coming as eliminating need for, 23:4
sins of other and, 98:2
true, 89:5
validity of, 89:5
barbarians, 46:1–5
See also pagans
Barcaean, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Barcelona, 24:4
Barnabas, 40:3(3)
See also under Galatians (Paul, rebuke of Peter by)
Paul and, in Antioch, 75:7
Barzillai the Gileadite, 72:3(2)
bathing:
after Lent, 54:9(7)–10
ethics of, 46:15; 47:3
Bathsheba, 82:5
battle, 99:2
beauty:
of body, 64:1
of body and soul, 3:4
"he who is ineffably beautiful," 64:1
of Helen of the Greeks (Troy), 40:7
being, the hierarchy of, 18:2
blessedness, 36:9(5)
Bible, See scripture.
bile: anger produced by and producing, 9:3–4
bishop(s)
See also individual names
Augustine as, 31:4; 32:1–2
deposition and reputation of, 83:2; 91:7
Donatist, council in Carthage, 93:43
Paulinus and Thesania's letters from five, 32:1
Roman, succession of, 53:2
rules among (letter from Cyprian regarding), 93:41
Valerius (of Hippo), 21:1–6
black: white as more pleasing, 29:11
blasphemy:
Manichean priest accused of, 79
blessed, blessing:
alogia, 36:19
blindness, 7:6(3)
blinding, as persecution, 88:8
Didymus of Alexandria, See Didymus.
spiritual, 93:1(1)
of Stesichorus, 82:33 See also Stesichorus
"those that strike even blind eyes," 51:5
blood of Christ, 98:9
See also eucharist
boasting, 48:2; 55:6(4); 82:2
admonishment of, 78:8
body (-ies), 13:3
of angels, discussion regarding, 95:8
beauty of, 3:4; 64:1
dead on account of sin, 55:3(2)
dissolution of, 95:2
effect of mind on, 9:2–5
and mind, debate with Manichean priest regarding, 79
natural and spiritual, 95:7–8
"quasi-body" as soul's vehicle, 13:2–4
redemption of, 55:3(2)
resurrection, 55:23(13); 95:7–8 See also resurrection
senses as deceptive, 7:2, 3
sensual pleasures of, See sensual pleasures.
sin, as dead on account of, 55:26
snares of, 95:2
as soul (common philosophical position), 1:1
soul making use of senses, 7:2, 3–7
soul vs., 3:4; 55:18(10)
as soul's vehicle, 13:2–4
spirit vs., 55:3(2), 9
spiritual (after resurrection), 94:6; 95:7–8
truth, as like, 13:3
body of Christ, 98:9
See also eucharist
Letters 1-99

Boniface, bishop of Cataqua, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
ecclesiastical property problems, 96:2–3; 97:3
Boniface, letters from Augustine to:
on infant baptism, 98:1–10
Book of Wisdom, 54
books
See also individual titles
reading, recognizing in ourselves truth
found in, 19:1
books, sacred, 53:4(2)
burning of, 51:1, 2
surrendered in time of persecution, 35:4; 43:10–14; 45:4; 53:4(2); 76:3–4; 89:4
Bordeaux: Delphinus as bishop of, 24:4
Boreas, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
boom of Abraham, 78:6
See also eternal life; heaven
boyhood: manhood and, 4:1–2
branches, 82:27
broken, reattachment of, 87:9
vines and, 52:2
bread:
Alypius, as gift to, 24:5
the eucharist, See eucharist.
brethren, false, 87:2–3
bronze: in Jericho, 46:18
Bucolica, 16:3; 17:3
bull(s), 47:5
burial, 82:15
Byzacena, 46:1
Sufe massacre in, 50
Byzacium: Maximianist schism, 93:24(8)
Caecilian (bishop of Carthage), 76:2
case of (Donatist condemnation of), 43:1–20, 25(9)–26; 93:13–16(5)
Daniel and lion’s den, comparison, 88:5
Donatist reaction to verdict, 89:3
false charges against, 93:39
innocence of, 53:5
judgment regarding, validity of, 93:14
Majorinus as Donatist counterpart, See Majorinus;
two acquittals of, 88:3
Caecilian (governor of Africa), letters from Augustine to:
on anti-Donatist edict, 86
caelicolae, 44:13(6)
Caesarea:
bodyguards for Paul travelling to, 75:10
Eusbeius as Donatist bishop, 87:1–10
Eusebius of, 24:3
Peter in (God shows no partiality), 75:7
Caiphas, 56:30(13)
Calama (Numidia):
Crispinus as Donatist bishop, See Crispinus.
Megalius as bishop of, 38:2
Nectarius, 38:3
pagan feasts in, 90; 91:3–10
calf; calves, 55:11
Gideon sacrificing, 46:18
Calixtus, 53:2
Calliope, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Callipides, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Calphurnius Lanarius, 68:3
Campania (Campagnia):
Nola as in, See Nola.
cancer, 79
canonical books (scriptures), 82:24
See also scripture
authority of, 93:35(10)
complete obedience owed only to, 82:24
inerrancy of, 82:2–3
on reprimands, benefit of, 93:32
translations and preservation of, 93:38
capit, 3:5
Capitoline Hill, 91:4–5
Capraria, 48:4
Eudoxius as abbot, See Eudoxius.
Carcedonius: regarding Timothy, cleric.
62:1; 63:2–3
carnal, 93:32
See also flesh; sensual pleasures
carnal persons, Ishmael as symbolizing, 93:6
spiritual vs., 95:6
Carneades (renowned skeptic), 1:2
carousing, 93:48
Carthage, 43:7
Aurelius as bishop of, See Aurelius.
Caecilian as bishop, See Caecilian.
Caecilian vs. Majorinus, See under individual names.
council of Donatist bishops in, 93:43
Donatist promise in, 51:1
Genethlius as bishop before Aurelius, 44:12
Majorinus as first Donatist bishop, 93:13
See also Majorinus
Nebridius, 3–14
Secundus, council held under, 76:2 See also under Secundus
Casae Nigrae, Numidia:
Donatus as bishop in, 43:4 See also Donatus
Januarius as Donatist bishop, See Januarius.
Caspian, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Cassia, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Cassiciacum, 1:1–3
Cassus, Mount, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Castorius, letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
on Maximian, abdication of, 69:1–2

Volume II/1
Letters 1-99

Casulanus (Catholic priest), letters from Augustine to:
on fasting, 36:1–32
Cataqua, Numidia: Paul as bishop, 85:1–2
Catholic Church, Catholics, 93:23
See also Church, the; individual names;
specific topics
Circumcellions as persecuting, See
Circumcellions.
Donatist converts to (rejoining), 61:1–2;
89:7; 93:16(5)–17 See also under
Donatsists
and Donatist schism, See Donatists.
false, 93:17
fish, bad among the good (as like),
93:33–34, 50(12)
gentleness of, 88:6
Macarian, Donatists calling, 49:3
Manichees as enemy of, 25:2
as one true faith, 20:3
persecution of, 93:6
religious practices of, 17:5
spread of, 49:2–3; 52:1; 87:1
the Trinity according to, 11:2–4
as true Church, 93:51(13)
unity of, See Christian unity.
Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way
of Life, The, 24:2
Cato, 91:4
cattle:
shepherds and, 93:5
theft of, 93:5
wandering, 93:5
Celer, letters from Augustine to:
on Donatist departure from Catholic
Church, 57:1–2
on pursuing a good Christian life, 56:1–2
Celestine (possibly deacon and pope), letters
from Augustine to:
on the hierarchy of being, 18:1–2
cemeteries: feasting and drunkenness in
African, 22:2–6
Cenchreae, 75:9
Paul, vow of at, 82:8
centurion, the, 54:4(3)
Cerinthus, 75:13
chaff, See also harvest; weeds; wheat.
removal at last winnowing, 93:33, 42,
50(12)
wheat, amid, 93:33–34
wheat purified through ministry of, 98:5
change: for the better, 55:11
charity, 48:3
cherubim, 94:6
See also angels
child (-ren):
of abandoned woman, 93:26, 30
bad, 89:2
and God, belief in, 98:7
nature of, 98:7
“where even the children praise the
Lord,” 93:50(12)
Chremes, 7:4
Christ
See Jesus Christ; specific topics and
events
Christian grace, See grace.
Christian love
See also love
fasting, in relation to, 36:16–26
Christian martyrs
See also individual names
Punic names of, 16:2; 17:2
Christian unity, 36:22; 44:13(6)
See also Church, the
bringing about, ways discussed, 93:17
communion among churches, 49:2
Donatists exhorted to return to, 76:1–4;
87:9
Donatsists (former) as desiring, 93:16(5)
force used to bring about, 93:16(5)–18
See also under fear; force; secular
power
importance of, 93:28(9)
love, bearing with one another in, 48:3
scattered members gathered together,
93:31
tolerance and, 44:11
Christianity
See also Catholic Church; Church; faith
converting “these who hate you,” 88:9
events celebrated in, 54:3(1)
fruit, as recognized by, 29:6
hierarchy of being, task in relation to,
18:2
Jerusalem, as beginning in, 93:21, 23
Jews, contrasted to, 29:4; 36:23(10)
martyrs, accused of worshipping, 16:2–3
pagan habits brought to by former
pagans, 29:9
the Sabbath, regarding, 36:5(3)
sacraments of, See under sacraments.
spread of, 93:22(7)
tolerance within, 54:3–5(4)
as the true philosophy, 2:1
Christians:
false brethren, 87:2–3
good and bad, 53:6(3)
as having died along with Christ,
55:3(2)–4(3)
law, to abandon, 82:20
numerical superiority over Jews, 93:26
Christmas, 55:2
Chronicles, Book of, 75:2
Chrysippus of Soli, 16:3
Chrysostom, John, 75:6
Church, the, 55:3(2); 93:30–31
See also Catholic Church; Christian
unity; individual topics
Christ as king, 89:4
Letters 1-99

as Christ’s body, 55:3(2), 31(7)  
customs Augustine would like abolished, 55:35(19)  
customs in, 54:6(5)  
Donatist claim to be, 93:24(8)  
moon, designated by term, 55:10(6)  
as mother, 48:2; 89:6; 98:3  
Mount Sion as symbolizing, 55:11  
“no one wipes out from the earth the Church of God,” 43:27  
respecting customs of other churches, 36:32(14)  
Rogatist claim to be, 93:23–26  
serving, steering middle path while, 48:2–3  
seven churches, John writing to, 49:2  
sin of some as not destroying, 93:30–34  
spread of, 53:6(3); 93:21, 26–30  
See also Catholicism  
true, 44:3(2); 93:11  
unity in, See Christian unity, universal, 55:3(2)  
Church of Christ, 87:9, See Church, the.  
Church of God: not offending, 36:21(9)  
Cicero, 17:3  
on cities, flourishing, 91:3  
On the Orator, 15:1  
Cimmerian, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)  
Circumcellions, 23:6–7; 35:2; 76:2; 93:2  
Catholicism, converts to, 93:2  
Donatists as tolerating, 43:24  
Hasna, invading basilica at, 29:12  
persecution of Catholics by, 88:1, 6–8, 10, 12  
Restitutus (Catholic priest), murder of, 88:6  
savagery of, 93:11  
circumcision, circumcised, 23:4; 82:15  
commanded for sake of what it signified, 82:20  
of Jesus, 82:18  
Jew(s) as, 75:7  
Paul on, 82:19  
of Timothy, See under Timothy  
Cirta, Numidia:  
Fortunius, meeting with, 44:1(1)  
Profuturus as bishop of, See Profuturus.  
Sylvanus as bishop of, 43:17(6)  
city (-ies)  
See also specific names  
flourishing, 91:3  
City of God, 91:3  
Clement, 53:2  
cherub(s), 83:4  
Aurelius allowing to preach, 41:1–2  
monks and, 60:1–2  
reputation of, 78:6  
rules regarding, 63:2; 64:3  
Timothy, 62:1–2; 63:1–4  
clothes, See garments.  
colors: white more pleasing than black, 29:11  
Colossians, 49:2  
Comes (holy man), 24:3  
Commandments, Ten, See Ten Commandments.  
communion, See eucharist; sacraments.  
compassion, 40:4(4), 6; 75:12(4), 17; 82:26–29  
conscience, 55:38  
Constantina, 34:5; 38:3  
bishops in, order of, 53:4(2)  
Constantine, the emperor, 43:4  
Caecilian, case of, 76:2; 89:3; 93:13–16(5)  
Donatists evoking authority of, 53:5–  
88:1–7  
Constantinople:  
Eusebius as bishop of, 24:3  
John Chrysostom as bishop of, 75:6; 82:23(3)  
continence:  
fruits of the Spirit, 29:6  
profession of, as gift of God, 61:2  
conversations See also words  
bad, 93:32  
Corinthians, 43:25(9); 49:2  
baptism of, 93:47  
Corinthians, Letter(s) to:  
on resurrection, beliefs regarding, 93:32  
Cornelius, 53:2; 75:22(7); 82:11  
Peter in house of, 75:7  
correction (being corrected), 93:1(1)  
See also punishment  
shame regarding, 93:52  
courage:  
false suspicions as threat to, 78:6  
“That you might not lose courage because of the tongues of detractors,” 78:5  
covenant, ark of:  
carried around . . . the seventh time, 55:10(6)  
law of signifying sanctification, 55:30  
coveting neighbor’s wife and property See also desire  
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)  
crazy person:  
“Someone who ties down a crazy person,” 93:4(2)  
creature:  
seven symbolizing, 55:28  
creatures: vanity, as subject to, 55:20(11)  
crime: guilt vs. innocence, 93:15  
Crisspinus, Donatist bishop of Calama:  
as heretic, 88:7  
Crisspinus, letters from Augustine to:  
reprimanding for rebaptism, 66:1–2  
on the schism, 51:1–5  
criticism, constructive, 28:6(4)  
among friends, 82:31–32  
cross:
Letters 1-99

four directions of, 55:25
meaning of, 55:24(14)
symbolism of, 55:25
crosses, the three, 93:7
crown: after battle, 99:2
crucifixion:
of Christ, 36:30(13)
crosses, the three, 93:7
of flesh, 55:24(14)
cruelty:
comparative, 93:7
in persecution, 97:4
cupi, 3:5
cupiri, 3:5
customs, 54:6(5)
Cutzupits, 53:2
Cyprian, 93:36
Christian unity, regarding, 93:36–42, 45
colleagues, greed of, 93:15
Donatists, as seeming to favor, 93:37–42
infant spitting out eucharist, 98:3–4
lying, regarding, 82:24
as martyr, 93:36
Paul and Peter, regarding, 93:31
as Saint, 93:36
Cyprian, letters from Augustine to:
on letter to Italica, 92A
Damascus, 53:2
Daniel, 93:19
fasting, regarding, 36:16
the lion’s den, 88:5
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, 36:16; 93:8(3)
Dares, 68:2; 73:1(1), 4
darkness:
Dathan, 87:4; 93:28(9), 52
Daucus (father of identical twins), 14:2
daughter(s):
as thorns, 93:28(9)
David, King:
Absalom: rebellion of, 78:8
adultery of, 82:5
the armor of God, 75:2
and Beraalstai the Gileadite, 72:3(2)
Christ, as symbolizing, 55:31(7)
house of, 32:2
incest in house of, 78:8
Jerome comparing self to, 75:2
Saul, as tolerating, 43:23
Saul’s anointing, respect for, 87:9
day: beauty in comparison to night, 29:11
deacons, See individual names.
death
See also killing
burial, 82:15
contemplation of, need for, 10:1–3
“death of the gospel,” 95:2
enemy, as last, 55:26
and eternal life, 92:1–2
See also eternal life; heaven
hope, as source of, 36:31
as last enemy, 55:10(6), 31(7)
to life, passing from, 55:3(2)
Manichean priest, debate with re., 79
rest in, 36:31
resurrection of the dead, See resurrection.
of the soul (as impossible), 3:4
deceit, See lies, lying.
Delphinus (bishop of Bordeaux), 24:4
demon(s), 46:3
doctrines of demons, 55:36(20)
finger of God, cast out by, 55:29(16)
ido-worship as serving, 32:5
sacrifices to (re. infant baptism), 98:1–4
Spirit of God, cast out by, 55:29(16)
sweating by (pagan), 46:1–5; 47:2
unclean spirit, 82:17
desire:
for passing things, controlling, 2:1
“desired,” Latin conjugations, 3:5
desires
See also under flesh
Deuterius (bishop of Macrina), 93:43
Deuteronomy, 46:18; 47:3
deil, See Satan,
Didymus (the blind) of Alexandria, 75:4(3), 20(6)
Jerome as finding fault with, 82:23
difficulties, See sorrow; suffering.
Diocletian, 53:4(2)
persecution of, 43:3(2)
Dionysius, 53:2
discernment: gift of, 78:3
discipline, See correction; punishment.
dishonor: vessels made for, 93:50(12)
divine mysteries, 55:29(16)
docile, See meekness,
doctor: “of the heart,” 95:6
Dodona, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
dog(s), 47:5
Domnio, 24:3, 5
Donatist leaders, Augustine’s letters to
See also under Donatists; individual names
on Caecilian and peacemaking, 43:1–27
on Fortunius, meeting with, and the true Church, 44:1–14
Donatist(s)
See also individual names; specific topics
Africa, as only in, 49:3; 52:2; 76:2; 87:1; 93:24(8)–25, 27
“angel-inspired” letter to Generosus, 53:1(1)–7
beginnings of, 88:1
beliefs of (Christ’s glory), 93:1(1)
bishops, council in Carthage, 93:43
Caecilian, case against, See Caecilian.
Catholic Church, as exhorted to return to,
Letters 1-99

Catholic Church, rejoining, 61:1–2; 69:1–2
Christian guilt, beliefs regarding, 89:4
Circumcellions as, 23:6–7 See also Circumcellions
Crispinus, Augustine’s correspondence with, See Crispinus,
Cutzupits, 53:2
document as false, 89:1
Emeritus, Augustine’s correspondence with, See Emeritus,
escaping clutches of (Celer), 56:2
Eusebius, Augustine’s correspondence with regarding, 34:2–6
as false, 89:1
Fortunian, Augustine meeting with, 44:1–14
Generous, “angel-inspired” letter to convert, 53:1(1)–7
Hippo, around, 89:8
Holy Spirit, as lacking, 93:46(11)
Honoratus, Augustine’s correspondence with, See Honoratus,
laws, imperial, complaints regarding, 89:3
laws issued against, 93:16(5)–17
love shown to, 89:6
Macarius, the time of, 23:6; 29:1; 44:4–5(3)
Majorinus as first bishop in, See Majorinus,
martyrdom, as claiming, 89:2
mass conversion (to Catholicism), 93:16(5)–17
matricidal young man, rebaptism of, 34:2–6
Maximian, abdication of, 69:1–2
Maximianist split from, See Maximianists,
Maximianists, accepting back, 51:2, 4–5; 76:3
Maximianists, persecution of, 51:3, 5
Maximinus, See Maximinus,
Montenses, 53:2
Optatus, as not expelling, 87:4–5 See also Optatus
persecution of, 44:4, 7(4)–8, 11; 87:8; 89:2
Proculeian as bishop, See Proculeian,
reason for, primary, 87:6, 10
re baptizing, practice of, 23:1–8; 34:2–6; 43:21(8); 44:7(4)–8, 12
Rogatus, the Rogatist split from, 87:10 See also Rogatists
Roman authorities appealed to regarding, 87:8
in Rome (“the hill people”), 53:2
sacrifices of, 87:9
schism with Catholic Church, 33:1–6; 43:1–27; 49:1–3; 57:1
secular power to control, 93:1(1) See also secular power
Severinus, letters from Augustine to (re: schism), 52:1–4
as sinners, 32:2
suppressing, Paul’s words to justify, 87:7
Tychonius, 41:2
unity with, appealing for, 43:1–27 See also Christian unity
wickedness of, 93:10
Donatists, letter from Augustine to (no salutation): exhorting to return to Catholic Church, 76:1–4
Donatus (bishop of Caesa Nigrae), 43:4, 15, 26; 44:6
See also Donatists
Donatus (former monk), 60:1–2
donkeys, 98:4
dove(s):
Holy Spirit as, 89:5
sheathed in silver, 98:5
drachmas: the two, 83:5
dreams: source of, 8:1; 9:2–5
drink, drunkenness
See also eating; food
in cemeteries, to “honor” martyrs, 22:2–6
Exodus, crime of emphasized in, 29:5
feast days of saints, 29:1–11
idol, to celebrate fashioning, 29:4
not fasting as compared to, 36:3(2)
pagans bringing to Christianity, 29:9
Paul on, 29:5
Duties (Ambrose as author), 82:21
earth
See also world
glory of Christ over, 93:1(1)
kingdom of Christ, 93:19
east, 93:30
Easter, 55:2
Alleluia, the, See Alleluia.
baptism at, 51:4
Easter triduum, significance of, 55:24(14)
fifty days after (up to Pentecost), 36:18(8); 55:29(16)–31(17)
“the Lord has risen today,” 98:9
vigil, 34:2; 82:14
eating
See also drinking; feasts; food
on Lord’s Day, as rejoicing, 36:19
resurrection, Christ after, 95:7
Ehion, 75:13, 16
Ebonism: as heresy, 82:16
Ebonites, 82:15–16
eclipses, 55:7
threshing the: Paul on, 29:5
Egypt, 75:14
“souls” going with Jacob to, 97:8
“Egyptian monsters,” 16:2
eight, 55:28
eighth day, the, 55:17, 23(13), See Lord’s day.

Volume II/1
Letters 1-99

infants circumcised on, 55:23(13) as Lord’s Day, 55:23(13) Eleusius, 93:31 Eli: Samuel tolerating wicked sons, 43:23 Elijah, 32:4 false prophets, killing, 44:9; 93:6 fasting, as regarding, 36:2, 16 forty-day fast, 36:16, 27(12); 55:28 Elisha, 32:4 Emeritus (Donatist bishop of Caesarea), letter from Augustine to: on sin, Optatus, schism, 87:1–10 Emesa, Eusebius of, 75:4(3); 82:23 enmity, 93:48 empathy, 75:12(4) nature of, 40:4(4), 6 emperor(s) See also individual names Constantine, See Constantine. letters from two to Probian, 88:4 petitioning, 93:13 end of the world See also Apocalypse; harvest God’s elect at, 93:33 seashore as, 93:34 enemy (-ies), 73:10 of all good persons, 48:2 of Catholic faith, Manichees as, 25:2 of the Church, 55:31(7) death as last, 55:10(6), 26, 31(7) devil as, 78:5 Donatists as, 93:2 See also Donatists friends turned to, 73:10 “Not everyone who scourges is an enemy,” 93:2(2) praying for, 78:6 Entellus, 68:2; 73:1(1), 4, 9 Ephesians, Letter to, 49:2; 75:2 Ephesus, 49:2 John as teaching in, 36:21(9) Epicureans, sect of, 88:10 Epicurus: rejecting atomism of, 3:2 Epiphanius, 26:6 (poem of Licentius) Epilipsis, 40:2(2), 9(6); 75:2 Eridanus, 26:6; 6 (poem of Licentius) Esau: “because of food Esau lost his birthright,” 36:11–12 eternal life, 92:1–2 attaining, 94:6 and eternal rest, See eternal rest (below). hope of, 92:1 favored ones, reuniting with, 92:1–2 preparation for, 91:3 of saints, 95:2 eternal rest, 55:17 as aim of all our actions, 55:20(11) obtaining, 36:25(11) Sabbath symbolizing, 55:17–19 eternity: permanence of, 7:2 Eucaddires, 17:2 eucharist, 98:9 See also sacrament(s) church customs regarding, 54.6(5)–9(7) different church customs regarding, 54.3–4(3) infant spitting out, 98:3–4 receiving worthily, 54:4 Eudoxius (abbot on Capraria), letters from Augustine to: on steering a middle path, 48:1–4 eulogia, 36:19 Eunuch, The, 91:4 Europe, 26:6 (poem of Licentius) Eusebius (Catholic, Roman official), letters from Augustine to: on Donatist rebaptism, 34:1–6 messages for Proculian, 35:1–5 Eusebius (in succession of Roman bishops), 53:2 Eusebius of Caesarea, 24:3; 75:20(6) Eusebius of Emesa, 75:4(3); 82:23 Eusebius of Vercelli, 75:20(6) Eustatius (monk), 48:4 Eutychian, 53:2 Evander, 17:2 Evaristus, 53:2 evil See also Satan; sin avoiding appearance of, 83:5 See also scandal Church treatment of, 93:6 correction of, 93:7 good vs., 93:6 hidden, 93:10 motives as showing, 93:6 persecution of, 93:8 punishment for, 91:6 repaying, 93:14 tolerated, for good, 93:15 Evodius, 24:3; 80:1 apology to Proculian for language of, 33:2–3 Exampaean lake, 26:6 (poem of Licentius) examples, bad, 78:5 Exodus: crime of drunkenness emphasized in, 29:5 the Pasch, 55:30 Expositions of the Psalms, 75:20(6) exsufflation, 34:3; 43:21(8), 25(9); 51:5; 52:2–3 sacraments subjected to, 43:25(9) external things: as present to us as we are to ourselves, 4:2 eyes, 82:33 blindness, See blindness. of body and mind, 4:2; 92:3–6; 92A God to be seen with (school of thought), 92:3–6; 92A Raise up the eyes of your heart, 76:1
Letters 1-99

- removing the straw from your eye . . . while leaving the beam in my own, 85:2
- Ezekiel, the prophet, 87:2
- on the sins of children and parents, 44:12

Fabian, 53:2
Fabius: defeating Hannibal, 72:3(2)

fainthearted, See weak.

faith, 55:26; 82:22; 98:9
See also Christianity
baptism as sacrament of, 98:9–10
Catholicism as one true, 20:3
differing between spouses, 23:4
external rest, as obtaining, 36:25(11)
sacraments and, 98:9–10
as shield, 48:3; 75:2
strong, 97:4
unfeigned, 55:38
weak, 97:4 See also under weak
false prophets:
Elijah killing, 44:9
false witness: in Ten Commandments,

family (ies): religious differences in, 33:5

Famous Men, book by Jerome, 40:2(2), 9(6)

“fantasies,” 7:1, 4

farm animals, 55:11
farmer(s), 55:15
God the Father as, 52:2
tenant, in Mappala, rebaptism of, 66:1
fasting, 36:2–32; 48:3
alopita, 36:9(5), 11–12
Ambrose on, 36:32(14)
avoiding, from Easter to Pentecost,
36:18(8)
commands in Bible regarding, 36:25(11)
diverse customs regarding, 82:14
of Elijah, forty days, 36:27(12)
Eucharistic, 54:6(5)–9(7)
feast days, as not practiced on, 36:18(8)
forty days, 36:2, 16; 55:28 See also Jesus;
Moses (under fasting, below)
guidelines for, 36:25(11)–27(12)
humility, as signifying, 36:30(13)
Jesus, forty day fast of, 36:13(6)
Lent, 54:5(4), 6(5)
Lord’s Day compared to Sabbath regarding,
36:8–13(6)
Manichees, errors in regard to, 36:27(12),
29
of Moses, forty days, 36:13(6), 16, 27(12)
prayer with, angel referring to, 36:18(8)
Priscillianists, errors in regard to, 36:28
and the Sabbath, 36:2–13(6)
as sacrifice, 36:18(8)
“Urbicus” (“the city fellow”), Augustine
refuting treatise, 36:2–32
week, days of, 36:30(13)–31
father

See also parents
Lord as, 98:3
fatherland:
heaven as, 92:4
love for, 90; 91:1–2
Faustus the Manichee, 82:17
fear:
freedom from (foretastes of), 10:2–3
government, 93:20(6)

See also force; punishment; secular
power
of secular authority, 93:20(6)
Fear (the god), 17:2
feasts, feast days:
See also food
alogia, 36:19
in cemeteries, to “honor” martyrs, 22:2–6
drunken banquets in churches, 29:1–11
fasting not practiced on, 36:18(8)
Jesus in Jerusalem for, 82:18
pagan, 90

feet:
sayings regarding, 17:2
“the Lord rescues his feet from the
snare,” 48:3
washing of, 55:32, 33
Felix of Musti, 51:2, 4–5; 53:6(3);
70:1–2; 76:1
Felix and Hilarinus, letter from Augustine to:
on the scandal of Boniface and Spes,
77:1–2
Felix of Aptungi, 43:3(2)–4, 12–13(4); 53:2;
88:3–5
Felix of Musti, 88:11
Felix of Nola; Boniface and Spes sent to
burial place of, 78:1
Felix the Manichee, 79
servant in spirit, 48:3
Festus, letters from Augustine to:
on dealing with Donatists, 89:1–8
Fever (the god), 17:2
fidelity, marital, 91:3
fiery furnace, the, 36:16; 93:9(3)
fiery:
fifty:
fifty days, 55:28–31(7)
symbolism of number, 55:29(16)–31(17)
fighting, 68:2; 73:1(1); 99:2
fine arts: lack of interest in, 1:2
fire, 48:2
Dathan and Abiram consumed, 87:4
love of, 98:5
refinement by, 55:31(7)

schism, punishment for, 51:1
Firmus, 87:10
first day, the, 55:17
fish: bad among the good, 93:33–34, 50(12)
five caves of the nation of darkness, 7:4
flattery, 28:6(4); 82:31
Volume II/1

Flavian (vicar for Africa), 87:8  
flesh, the  
See also body; sensual pleasures  
Ishmael as symbolizing, 93:6  
spirit vs., 93:31  
Flora (pagan goddess), 90; 91:5  
Florencius, 97:3  
flute:  
“a bad flute player makes a good singer,”  
60:1–2  
food:  
banquets in church, complaints regarding,  
29:1–11  
“because of food Adam lost paradise,”  
36:11–12  
“because of food Esau lost his birthright,”  
36:11–12  
fasting, See fasting.  
Jews, some food condemned by, 82:26  
on Lord’s Day, eating as rejoicing, 36:19  
offering to idols, eating, 46:3, 8, 10, 11, 17, 18; 47:3  
purity, Jewish beliefs regarding, 36:17  
sweet foods, 93:28(9)  
fool(s), folly:  
happiness and, 3:1  
foot, See feet.  
force:  
use of, 93:1(1)–7, 16(5)–18, 26  
forgiveness:  
of injuries, 48:3  
of sins, in Christ’s name, 93:21, 23  
fornication, 55:24(14); 93:48  
fornicators, rules regarding, 93:41–42  
Gentiles to abstain from sacrifice involving,  
82:9  
Paul on, 29,5  
Fortunatian, 80:1  
Fortunatus, 79  
Fortunatus (et al.), letter to Generosus from:  
on “angel-inspired” letter, 53:1(1)–7  
fortune: neither fearing nor desiring, 3:5  
fortunetelling, 55:37  
Fortunius (Donatist bishop of Thaive):  
Augustine meeting with, 44:1–14  
fifty: symbolization of number, 55:28  
fourty days:  
Christ on earth after resurrection, 55:28  
Elijah fasting for, 36:16, 27(12)  
fasting, 36:13(6); 55:26, 28  
Moses fasting for, 36:13(6), 16, 27(12)  
four, 55:28  
four winds, the, 93:33  
fruit: property acquired through, 96:2  
Free Will, 31:7  
freedom:  
free choice, 31:7  
we have been called into freedom,  
55:36(20)  
friends, friendships, 82:1  
of Augustine, See individual names.  
Augustine’s love for, 73:10  
basis of, 82:31  
constructive criticism among, 82:31–32  
emnities arising between, 95:4  
as good fortune, 3:4  
losing, 73:10  
Moses as friend of God, 36:13(6)  
“Not everyone who is merciful is a friend,” 93:4(2)  
truth as owed in, 82:31  
frugality, 91:3  
fruit, 47:4  
See also fruit  
fruits (spiritual):  
of the Spirit, 29:6  
furnace, the fiery, 36:16; 93:9(3)  
Gaius, Catholic layman, 53:2  
Gaius, letters from Augustine to:  
on searching for the truth, 19:1  
Galatians, 49:2; 82:2–3  
Galatians, Letter to, 82:30(4)  
Paul, rebuke of Peter by, 28:3(3)–5;  
40:3(3)–6; 75:2–17; 82:2–29  
Garamantian, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)  
Gaul, 53:5  
Arles, See Arles.  
Gelizzi, Church of, 43:5  
Generous, letter from Augustine, Alypius,  
and Fortunatus to:  
on “angel-inspired” letter, 53:1(1)–7  
Genesis in Answer to the Manichees, 24:2  
Genethlius (bishop of Carthage before  
Aurelius), 44:12  
Gentiles:  
food laws, as not having, See law,  
Mosaic.  
Holy Spirit descending on, 75:7  
Jews, as forced to live like, 75:8; 82:10, 22  
Jews who live among, 75:10  
and Mosaic law, 82:10  
Paul correcting Peter regarding, 40:5 See  
also under Paul; Peter  
rites of, 82:20, 28  
Timothy’s father as, 75:9  
gentle yoke and light burden, 54:1(1)  
gentleness:  
obeying God with, 48:2  
geometry: angles and quadrangles, 14:4  
Gideon, 46:18  
Gildon, Count, 87:5  
See also Optatus  
Gildonian, Optatus the, See Optatus the  
Gildonian.  
“Gildonius,” See Optatus.  
glory:  
of Christ, 93:1(1)  
future, 55:3(2), 10(6)  
of humans, as empty, 93:15  
Letters 1-99
Letters 1-99

gluttony
See also drink; eating; food

goats:
sheep, separating from, 93:49–50

God
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity;
specific topics
becoming like, 92:3
characteristics of, 92:2–3
consulting (to reach understanding), 13:4
as creator, 14:4
fear and love of, 22:7
gifts of, 61:2
glorifying, See under glory.
kingsdom of, See kingdom of God.
likeness of, 92:3
love for, 55:20
love of us, 55:19, 20
as one, 36:23
one true (as opposed to pagan gods), 17:5
praising, See praise.
as severe and gentle, 93:4
as spirit, 92:5
the Trinity, 11:2–4
truth in teaching about, as crucial,
28:3–5
union with, 10:2–3
will of, knowing, 80:2–3
worship of, See worship.
wrath of, 93:5

God of Abraham and the God of Nachor, The,
46:18
gods, false, 91:4
See also idols, idolatry
gods and goddesses, pagan, 17:2
See also individual names
considered members of one great God, 17:1
as humorous, 17:2
Maximus of Madaura on, 16:1–4
Roman, 16:2
gold:
in Jericho, 46:18
ten-pound fine, 88:7
Gomorrah, Sodom and, 36:9

good, goodness:
doing, civil authorities and, 93:20
evil tolerated for, 93:15
evil vs., 93:6
fear and, 93:20
Mosaic law as, 82:20
motives as showing, 93:6
rest as reward for, 55:25
good works, 55:19, 25
gospel:
Mosaic law and, 82:20
spread of, 93:21–23

Greek
language:
scripture translations,
71:3–6; 75:20–21; 82:34
Greek mythology:
Medea, 7:4

Greeks:
not offending, 36:21
Paul and, 93:7
growth, spiritual: Paulinus desiring guidance
in, 25:1–5
guests: unknown, policy regarding, 38:2

guilt:
comparative (pagan feast in Calama), 9:9
innocence vs., 93:15

habits, bad, 89:6
fear as breaking, 93:3
subduing, 48:3

Hagar:
Sarah and, 93:6

happiness,
not from sensual pleasure, 3:4
perfect, 36:31
wisdom and, 3:1, 5
harmony, 93:28

harp:
and lyre, 75:2
in the psalms, 55:12

harvest, 93:15
end-time, 87:8, 93:31
separating grain from weeds, 76:1

Hasna, 29:12

hatred:
anger turning to, warning against, 38:2
and persecution, 97:4

Volume II/1
preaching from, 93:15
healing: gift of, 78:3
heart:
a clever heart, 85:2
doctor of, 95:6
hardness of, 88:9
Raise up the eyes of your heart, 76:1
a slow heart, 85:2
heaven, 55:17–19
See also eternal life; eternal rest
the bosom of Abraham, 78:6
glory of Christ over, 93:1(1)
heavenly bodies: differences among, 14:3
heavenly trumpet, 1:2
Hebrew (language)
See also
languages
scripture translations from, 28:2(2); 71:3(2)–6(4); 75:20(6)–21; 82:34–35
hierarchy of being, 18:2
Helen of Troy, 40:7; 68:1
Hellespont touche, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
hemorrhoids, 38:1
Heraclea: Theodore of, 75:4(3); 82:23
Hercules, 17:2; 50
heresies, heretics
See also
individual groups and names
bishops sent to emperor regarding, 97:3
caelicolae, 44:13(6)
Cerinthus and Ebion, 75:13
conversion of, forcible, 93:17 See also under fear, force
correction of, 89:1; 97:2–3; 98:5
“deceitful spirits,” paying attention to, 55:36(20)
Donatists called, See Donatists.
Ebonism, 82:16
false Catholics, 93:17
laws concerning, 97:2
Mani, 75:14
Manichæas, 36:29 See also Manichæas
Marchion, 75:14
Minæi, 75:13
Nazaraeans, 75:13
punishment for, 88:7
as quarrelsome, 55:20(16)
schism as, 87:4; 89:7
secular authority against, 93:12
“who wanted to be both Jews and Christians,” 82:15
Hermogenian, Augustine’s letters to:
on the Academics, 1:1–3
Hilarinus, Felix and, letter from Augustine to:
on the scandal of Boniface and Spes, 77:1–2
Hilary of Poitiers, 75:20(6); 93:31–32
on Asia, 93:31–32
Synods as by, 93:21
Hippo
See also specific topics
people’s dependence on Augustine, 22:9
Proculeian as Donatist bishop, See Proculeian.
Profuturus as priest of, See Profuturus.
Valerius as bishop of, 21:1–6
holiness:
“All we want is holiness,” 93:14, 43
of scriptures, 28:3(3)–5
holocausts, 47:3
Holy, holy, holy, 94:6
Holy Spirit, the:
in baptism, 98:2, 5
coming of, celebrated, 54:1(1)
Donatist(s) as lacking, 93:46(11)
as dove, 89:5
filling one hundred and twenty, 93:21
finger of God signifying, 55:20(16)
Gentiles, descending on, 75:7
glorification of Jesus, coming after, 55:30
grace through, 98:2
Mosaic law and, 82:19
sevenfold gift of, 24:4; 55:10(6)
in the Trinity, 11:2–4
Holy Week: criminal suits ceased during, 34:2
honey: sword coated with, 82:2
honorable: use of word, 23:1
Honoratus (Donatist bishop), letters from Augustine to:
discussing schism, 49:1–3
Honoratus of Thaive, 83:1–6
Honorius, the emperor, 97:2
hope:
death as source of, 36:31
of eternal life, 92:1
pagans as without, 92:1
placing, in humans vs. Christ, 89:5
scandal, despite, 78:1
in sorrow, 55:26
of this world and the world to come, 55:10(6)
horse(s), 47:5
hostility:
patience with, 73:10
human being(s)
See also people; persons
being mistaken about someone, 20:2
creation of, 14:4
humility, 22:7(2)
fasting as signifying, 36:30(13)
of Paulinus, 31:6
humor, 95:2
Maximus accused of joking, 17:1–2
Hyginus, 53:2
Hymenæus, 55:4(3)
Hypanis, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
hypocrisy, 22:7(2)
Hyrkania, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
idleness, See laziness.
Letters 1-99
idol(s), idolatry, 55:20(11); 87:2
in Calama, 91:6
Christians as despising, 82:12
and Cyprian’s colleagues, greed of, 93:15
demons, as serving, 32:5
drunkenness to celebrate fashioning an idol, 29:4
eating food offered to, 46:3, 8, 10, 11, 17, 18; 47:3–4; 6
Gentiles to abstain from, 82:9
infants, regarding, 98:3
Julian (emperor) and, 93:12(4)
laws concerning, 93:26; 97:2
Nebuchadnezzar forcing worship, 93:9(3)
Paul on, 29:5
Satan, as from, 82:12
schism punished more severely than, 51:1
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
torn down, 91:3
wickedness of, surpassing, 93:10
Ignatius, 88:4
ignorance:
in present life, 95:5
sins of, 47:4
illness: hemorrhoids, 38:1
Illyricum: Paul, ministry in, 49:2
images, three kinds:
arrived at by reason, 7:4–7
ones we make up, 7:4–7
from previous sensations, 7:1, 4–7
imagination:
memory and, 7:1–7
memory impossible without, 6:1
sensation vs., 6:1–2
the soul and, 7:1–7
impurity, 55:24(14); 93:48
See also purity
“incarnation of the Word,” the, 11:2–4; 12:1
incense, 87:2
incest, 78:8
indolence, See laziness
infants/baptism of, 98:1–10
injustice, See justice
innocence: guilt vs., 93:15
insanity: advantage of, 7:2, 3
insults: bearing, 88:9
intellect, intelligence
See also mind; soul
maturity and, 4:2
as seat of truth, 3:4
truth, as able to recognize, 93:20(6)
intelligible nature:
sensible nature compared to, 4:1–2; 3:2–3
irrationality (alogia), 36:9(5), 11–12
Isaia, 46:18; 47:3
Ishmael and, 93:6
Isaiah, 43:23
Isaurian, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Ishmael:

Cast out the handmaid and her son, 78:8
and Isaac, 93:6
Israel, 75:14
Italica, letter from Augustine to:
Cyprian to deliver, 92A
on death and eternal life, 92:1–6
Italica, letters from Augustine to:
on turmoil around Rome, 99:1–3
ivy, 75:22(7); 82:35
jac, 3:5
Jacob, 46:18; 47:3
incest in house of, 78:8
“souls” going to Egypt with, 95:8
Jabres, 55:29(16)
James (apostle, leader of Jerusalem Christian community), 75:10
Jerusalem, as teaching in, 36:22
Paul, as admonishing, 82:8–10
Jannes, 55:29(16)
Januarius:
Two Books of Answers to the Questions of Januarius, 54–55
Januarius, letter from Catholic clerics of Hippo to:
on Circumcellion violence, 88:1–12
Januarius, letters from Augustine to:
answering questions about religious practices, 54:1(1)–10
Jeremiah, 43:23
New Testament promised through, 75:14; 82:18
Jeremiah, books of:
burning, 76:4
Jericho, 46:18
moon, as meaning, 55:10(6)
Jerome:
book Famous Men, on ecclesiastical writers and their works, 40:2(2)
book written against, misunderstanding regarding, 82:33
misrouted letters from Augustine to, 40(1)–9(6); 72:1(1), 5(3); 75:18; 82:32
Rufinus, rift with, See Rufinus.
Jerome, letters from Augustine to:
on Jerome’s scripture translations, 71:1(1)–6(4)
the letter delivered after nine years, 28:1(1)–6(4)
as misrouted, See under Jerome, above.
on Peter and Paul’s dispute, 40:1(1)–9(6)
on resolving misunderstanding, 73:1(1)–10
on wishing for communication, 67:1–3
Jerome, letters to Augustine from:
on the deacon, Praesidius, and greeting Alypius, 39:1(1)–2(2)
on Galatians, disagreement over, 68:1–3
on making peace, 81
on their disagreement regarding Paul and Peter, 82:1(1)–36
on their disagreements, 72:1(1)–5(3)
Jerusalem:
James as teaching in, 36:22 See also James Jesus in, 82:18
Paul, ministry in, 49:2
Jesus Christ
See also specific topics
Abraham as ancestor of, 76:1
called Apollo, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
called “son of thundering Jove,” 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
the Church as body of, 55:3(2), 31(7)
as circumcised, 23:4
compared to other men, 14:3–4
crucifixion of, 36:30(13)
David symbolizing, 55:31(7)
fourty-day fast of, 36:13(6)
glory of, 93:1(1)
killing, reasons for, 82:18
kingdom of, 93:19
as Lord of the Sabbath, 36:5(3)
mistreatment of, 29:7
Mosaic law, as transforming, 82:18
passion and resurrection celebrated,
54:1(1); 55:2
prophecy, as fulfillment of, 76:1; 82:15,
88:11; 93:21
sacraments, as replacing, 40:4(4)
salvation as from, 40:4(4)
as servant, 33:5
sins, as propitiation for, 93:32
sins forgiven in name of, 93:21, 23
the son, role in Trinity, 11:2–4
suffering as necessary, 93:21, 23
symbols for, 55:11
as the truth, 14:4; 26:6
truth in teaching about, as crucial, 28:3(3)–5
the way of, 93:35(10)
world, as redeeming, 76:1
jewels, 78:9
Jew(s)
See also Law, the; individual names and specific topics
Christian converts, 82:17
Christians, contrasted to, 36:23(10)
the circumcised, 75:7 See also circumcision
“flogged Christ, and Christ flogged the Jews,” 93:8
hard-heartedness of, 29:4
not offending, 36:21(9)
umerical superiority of Christians, 93:26
the Passover, celebration of, 55:15
Paul rebuking Peter for living like
Gentile, 28:4
the Sabbath, regarding, 36:5(3)
sacraments and observances of,
40:4(4)–6 See also sacraments
sobriety of, 29:4
unity, regarding, 93:26
Jezebel, 93:6
Job, Book of: Jerome, translation by,
28:2(2); 71:3
John (apostle):
Ephesus, as teaching in, 36:22
seven churches, writing to, 49:2;
55:10(6)
John the Baptist:
baptism of, 44:10(5)
Christ, baptism of, 89:5
law and the prophets, as end to, 75:14;
82:18
Paul as rebaptising people from, 93:48
John (Chrysostom), bishop of
Constantinople, 82:23
joking: Maximus accused of, 17:1–2
Jonah, Book of:
Jerome, translation by, 71:5(3); 75:21,
22(7)
translations of (ivy/gourd plant), 82:35
Jordan River, 55:14(8); 93:26
and circumcision of Moses, 23:4
Joshua, son of Nun, 46:18
Jove:
“thundering Jove”; “son of thundering
Jove,” 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
joy, 10:2
effects of (Nebridius), 3:1–5
Jubaianus, letter from Cyprian to, 93:36
Judah, house of, 75:14; 82:18
Judah, lion of, 55:11
Judas, 78:8
Christ in regard to, 43:23; 44:10(5); 93:15
Last Supper, as sharing, 93:15
Satan as entering, 93:7
Judea, 93:21
Judges, Book of, 46:18
judges, human, 89:4
judgment:
Church, within, 95:4
judges, human, 89:4
judging others, 95:3
of other church customs, 54:3
judgment, the last, 23:3
harvest, as, See harvest,
heavenly trumpet, 1:2
Julian the Apostate (emperor), 91:8; 93:12(4)
Donatists appealing to, 93:12(4)
Julius (bishop of Roman church), 44:6; 53:2
Junio, 16:2
Jupiter, 16:2; 17:1, 3; 91:4–5
justice:
of God, 95:6
ministers of, Satan’s messengers as, 53:7
Letters 1-99

persecution on account of, 87:7; 93:7
justification, 55:2
killing:
ethics of, 46:12–13; 47:5
in name of Christianity, wrongness of, 44:8–9
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
kingdom of God:
Galatians, warning in (the works of the flesh), 29:6
Paul’s warnings regarding exclusion from, 29:5
scribes and Pharisees not righteous enough for, 36:8
king(s)
See also individual names
Christ as, 89:4
lion, compared to, 88:5
to serve Christ, 93:19
Kings, Book of, 55:31(7); 82:5
know yourself, 93:29
knowledge:
without love, 55:39
Korah, 93:52
Laban, 46:18; 47:3
lamb, 55:11
Jews killing, at Pasch, 55:23(13), 29(6)
sacrifice of, 75:15
lamp:
Augustine called by Paulinus, 25:1
shining “with sevenfold brightness,” 24:5
Lampius, 24:4
Lanarius, Calphurnius, 68:3
languages:
scription translations, 71:3(2)–6(4);
75:20(6)–21
translators, 82:34(3)
Laodicea: seven churches, as one of, 49:2
Laodicea, Apollinaris of, 75:4(3)
Laodicean, the unnamed, 82:5
Last Supper, the, 54:7–8(6); 55:2
Judas as sharing, 93:15
Latin:
Jerome urged to translate scriptures from Greek, 28:2(2)
Jerome argued to translate scriptures from Greek, 28:2(2)
scripture translations, 71:3(2)–6(4);
75:20(6)–21
translators, 82:34(3)
Laodicea: seven churches, as one of, 49:2
Laodicea, Apollinaris of, 75:4(3)
Laodicean, the unnamed, 82:5
Last Supper, the, 54:7–8(6); 55:2
Judas as sharing, 93:15
Latin grammar:
desired (capui or cupiri), 3:5
point of, 3:25
laughter, 95:2
law, secular, See secular power.
Law, the, 36:13(6); 75:5
See also Moses
Christ and first Christians as observing, 82:18–19
Christ as respecting, 82:9, 18
Christ as transforming, 82:18, 19
Christ conferring with devil regarding, 88:10
Christian study of, 82:16
Christians ceasing to observe, 82:17
Gentiles and, 82:10
as holy, 82:20
Holy Spirit and, 82:19
Jew(s) and, 75:5–17
John the Baptist as end to, 82:18
love as fulfillment, 82:20
Paul as respecting, 82:7–12
Peter and Paul as both observing, 75:11
rites of, 82:13–15
law and the prophets, 82:27
Christ as fulfillment of prophecy, 76:1:
82:15; 88:11; 93:21
John the Baptist as end to, 75:14; 82:18
and psalms, 93:21
laziness, 89:6
Augustine claiming fault of, 10:2
avoiding, 48:2
eternal rest as not, 55:17
mental, 1:2
“Someone who . . . rouses a lazy person,” 93:4(2)
lector(s): rules regarding, 63:2; 64:3
leisure:
Augustine’s longing for, 13:1
putting Church before, 48:2
value of, 10:1–3
Lent:
baptism after, 54:10
bathing after, 54:9(7)–10
observances of, varying, 54:5(4)
sermon against drunken banquets, 29:3–11
Lenten fast, 54:6(5)
Leontius, 29
leper: healing of, 82:18
lethargic, See lazy.
letters, Augustine’s
See also under individual correspondents
characteristics of (described by Nebridius), 6:1
Leuci/Leucia, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Liber (Bacchus), 17:4
liberal arts: salvation as not from, 87:1
Liberius, 53:2
Libya: Tipoli in, See Oea.
llicitiousness, 93:48
Licentius (son of Romanian):
Augustine describes to Paulinus, 27:5
Paulinus concerned for, 32:3–5
poem by Paulinus for, 32:5
poem for Augustine (his teacher) by, 26;
26:6 (following)
Licentius (son of Romanian), Augustine’s letter to:
with concern for soul of Licentius, 26:1–6
lies, lying, 73:10

Volume II/1
“the episcopacy is not the art of living a life of deception,” 85:2
Jerome as not teacher of, 75:18
Paul’s rebuke of Peter, 28:3(3)–4; 40:3(3)–6; 75:2–17; 82:2–29
slander, 73:10
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
as undermining authority of scriptures, 28:3(3)–5; 40:3(3)
useful (lies of expediency), 82:21–22
life:
eternal, See eternal life; heaven, mortal and immortal, 55:2–3(2); 95:2
present, 95:2, 5–6 See also specific topics
light:
of Christ, 93:5
lily: in the midst of thorns, 93:28(9)
Linus, 53:2
lion of Judah, 55:11
lion(s), 93:19
Daniel and, 88:5
devil as like, 76:5
kings(s), compared to, 88:5
Lord, 93:29
as father, 98:3
“lord”, as salutation, 23:1
Lord of the Sabbath: the Son of Man as,
36:23(10)
Lord’s Day, the, 36:8–13; 55:17, 22(12), 23(13)
eighth day as, 55:23(13)
fasting scandalous on, 36:10
preferred to Sabbath, 36:12
“Urbicus,” Augustine refuting treatise of,
27:4
as when Jesus rose from the dead, 36:12
Lord’s supper, the, 54:7–10
drunkenness in the Church, complaints regarding, 29:5
Lot, 93:27
love, 43:1; 83:3
See also compassion of Augustine for friends, 73:10
Christian unity, 48:3
fire of, 98:5
fruit of, 52:2
as fullness of the law, 55:38
gifts of God and, 61:2
for God, 55:20(11)
for God and neighbor, 55:38(21)
of God for us, 55:19, 20(11); 82:20
as healer, 89:6
Holy Spirit to arouse, 55:29(16)
if he handed over his body to be burned, but
did not have love, 39:40
jealous, as not, 55:39
knowledge without, 55:39
law, as fulfillment of, 82:20
maternal, 89:6
with severity, 93:4(2)
Lucilla, 43:17(6), 25(9)–26
Lucillus, 84:1–2
Lucinian, 5:1
Lucitas, 16:2
Lucius, 53:2
Luke, 75:10
lyre: harp and, 75:2
Macarian: Donatists calling Catholic Church, 49:3
Macarius, 23:6; 44:4–5(3); 87:10; 93:43
Maccabees, 40:6
Macedonia: Emesa, 75:4(3)
Macrina: Deuterius as bishop, 93:43
Madaura, Maximus of, 16:1–4
Majoran, 43:4
Majorinus, 15:1; 43:26; 44:8; 76:2
Donatist schism, as first bishop in, 88:1
See also Donatist schism
sect of, 93:13
man
See also human beings; people; persons
Jesus (the son) as, 11:2–4; 12:1
manhood: boyhood and, 4:1–2
Mani, 75:14
manic: wild raging, 89:6
Manichean priest (unidentified), letters from
Augustine to:
on debate questions, 79
Manicheans, Manicheans
See also specific topics
fasting, errors in regard to, 36:27(12), 49
Fainstus, 82:17
five caves of the nation of darkness, 7:4
as heretics, 36:29
moon, beliefs about, 55:6(4)
“Pentateuch against the Manichees,”
24:2; 25:2
Priscillanists, as similar to, 36:28
Romanian and book, True Religion, 27:4
See also Romanian
scripture, as rejecting many parts of, 82:6
as sinners, 32:2
mankind
See also human beings; people; persons
creation of, 14:4
manna, 54:5; 54:4(3)
Mantua, 16:3
manuring: pagan god of, 17:2
Mappala: rebaptism of tenant farmers, 66:1
Marcellus, 53:2
Marcion, 75:14
Marcus, 53:2
Marius Victorinus, 37
Maro, 17:3
marriage:
“doctrines of demons” forbidding,
55:36(20)
fidelity in, 91:3
religious differences in, 33:5
Mars, 17:1
Letters 1-99

Marsi, the, 55:12(7)
martyrs, martyrdom
See also individual names
in Africa, 78:3
the Church in time of, 93:9(3)
Circumcellions demanding honor of, 88:9
Donatist(s) claiming, 89:2
“honoring” by feasting and drunkenness in
cemeteries, 22:2–6
the Maccabees, 40:6
suffering alone as not making, 89:2
maturity: of mind and intellect, 4:2
Mauretania, 59:1
Mauretania Caesariensis, 87:1
Mauretania Sitifensis:
Sittis, Novatus as bishop of, 84:1–2
Mauritania Caesariensis, 87:10; 93:24(8)
Cartenna as in, See Cartenna.
Maximian (Donatist bishop of Bagai), 53:4(2); 70:2
abdication of, 69:1–2
Maximianists, 51:3; 87:6; 93:24(8)
Donatist persecution of, 51:3, 5; 76:4
Donatists, breaking away from, 43:26
Donatists, split from, 43:26; 87:6
Donatists accepting back, 51:2; 76:3
Donatists accepting baptism of, 51:4–5
Donatists appealing against, 93:12(4)
Maximinus (Donatist bishop on Siniti in
Numidia), letters from Augustine to:
on rebaptism, 23:1–8
Maximus (of Madaura), 16:1–4
Maximus, letters from Augustine to:
defending Christianity, 17:1–5
Maximus, letters to Augustine from:
defending pagan gods, 16:1–4
meat
See also food
abstinence from eating, 55:36
offered to idols, eating, 46:8
Medea, 7:4
meekness:
obeying God with, 48:2
Megalus, bishop of Calama, 38:2
Melania the Elder, 94:2–3
Melania the Younger, 46
Melchiades, the Pope, 43:16
Melchisedek, 40:6; 73:15
memories: different kinds of, 7:4–7
memory:
imagination and, 7:1–7
impossible without imagination, 6:1
mercy:
Christ compared to other, 14:3–4
illustrious, 82:2
merciful seeing everyone who is merciful is a friend,”
93:4(2)
of Paulinus, 31:5
Meshach (Shadrach, and Abednego), 36:16; 93:9(3)
middle path: steering, serving the Church,
48:2–3
Milan
See also specific topics, people, and
events
Ambrose as bishop of, 24:4, See
Ambrose.
Hermogenian (Augustine’s letters to),
1:1–3
Simplician as bishop of (succeeding
Ambrose), See Simplician,
at the tomb of the saints, 78:3
Zenobius (Augustine’s letters to), 2:1
mille, going the extra, 48:1
Milevis, 34:5
region of, 97:3
Severus as bishop of, 31:9; 38:3
military service, 32:5
Miltiades, 53:2
Minaei, 75:13
mind
See also intelligence; intelligible nature;
soul
and body, debate with Manichean priest
regarding, 79
effect on body, 9:2–5
mental laziness, 1:2
misuse of (Licentius), 26:6
sensual pleasures vs., 3:4; 4:1–2
truth, as seat of, 3:4
understanding, two ways of reaching,
13:4
Minerva, 16:2; 47:4
minders: faith required of, 82:22
mirror(s), 3:3
Miscellany (by Origen), 75:6
Miscellany of Questions in Response to
Simplician, A, 37:1–3
misery
See also sorrow; suffering
end to, 36:31
mockery, mocking, 55:9; 82:3
Molopes, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
monad, the, 3:2
monasteries:
clerics, rules regarding, 64:3
entering, 83:3
Honoratus from Thaive, 83:1–6
money, 93:5
denarius, 55:31(7)
silver, 96:2
money changers, temple, 29:3
Monica, mother of Augustine:
advice for regarding church customs,
54:3
fasting, concerns about, 36:32(14)
monks:
Volume II/1

Donatus and his brother, 60:1–2
reputation of, 78:6, 9
Spes, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
Montenses, 53:2
moon:
  Church designated by term, 55:10(6)
eclipses, 55:7
Jericho as meaning, 55:10(6)
Manichean beliefs about, 55:6(4)
phases of, 55:6(4)–9
as symbol, 55:10(6), 11
morals:
  bad conversations as ruining, 93:32
  “corrupt times and relaxed morals,” 29:5
  good, 91:3
Moroe, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Mosaic law, See law, Mosaic.
Moses:
  forty-day fast, 36:2, 13(6), 16, 27(12); 55:28
  as friend of God, 36:13(6)
  law, as giving, 36:13(6)
  law given to, 55:29(16)
on Mount Sinai, 55:30
murmuring against God, tolerating, 43:23
punishing sinful actions, 93:6
smashing stone tablets, 29:4
mother:
  the Church as, 48:2; 89:6; 93:6; 98:3, 5
  still needing . . . the milk of his mother, 93:21
Mount Cassus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Mount Olympus, 16:1; 17:1
Mount Sinai, 55:29(16), 30
Mount Sion, 55:11
Mount Zion, 93:25
mountain(s)
  See also individual names
Muratius Felix, 53:4(2)
murder
See also killing
matricidal young man, 34:2–6
of Restitutus (Catholic priest), 88:6
of Uriah, 82:5
Musti: Felician as Donatist bishop of, See Felician.
Musti, Felix of, See Felix of Musti.
Mutugenna, 23:2
Mygdo, 16:2
mysteries, divine, 55:29(16)
myths, 7:4
Nacher:
The God of Abraham and the God of Nacher, 46:18
Naevius (legendary tall man, at six feet), 14:3
Nunphamo, 16:2; 17:1–2
nature: as mutable (heirarchy of being), 18:2
nature (substance):
  three elements in every, 11:3–4
Naucello, letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
  on Felician (Donatist bishop), 70:1–2
Nazareans/Nazaraeans, 75:13; 82:15–16
Nazirites, 75:9
Nebridius, 98:8
characteristics of, 98:8
  correspondence with, 3–14
Nebridius, letters from Augustine to:
  on the body as soul’s vehicle, 15:2–4
  on contemplating death, 10:1–3
  on differences (among people; among heavenly bodies), 14:1–4
  on happiness, 3:1–5
  on memory and imagination (images), 7:1–7
  on sensible vs. intelligible natures, 4:1–2
  on the Trinity (“the assumption of the man”), 11:2–4
Nebridius, letters to Augustine from:
  demands of Thagaste citizens on Augustine, 5:1
  on imagination, 6:1–2
  on sleep and dreams, 8:1
Nebuchadnezzar, king, 93:9(3)
Nectarius, 38:3
Nectarius (pagan official), letters from Augustine to:
  on pagan feasts in Calama, 91:1–10
Nectarius (pagan official), letters to Augustine from:
  on pagan feasts in Calama, 90
neighbor(s):
  concern for, 95:6
  he who prepares a pit for his neighbor, 93:19
  loving, See under love.
Neoplatonists:
  Ambrose as, See Ambrose.
  Porphyry, 82:22
Nero, 75:10
New Academy: Carneades, 1:2
night: beauty of the day in comparison, 29:11
Nile, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Noah, ark of, 78:8
Nola, Paulinus as bishop of, See Paulinus.
North Pole, 7:4
Novatus (Catholic bishop of Sitifis), letters from Augustine to:
  on Lucillus, 84:1–2
numbers, 3:2
  and images arrived at by reason, 7:4
  the monad, 3:2
  pebbles used as means of calculation, 7:4
  power of soul illustrated by, 7:3(6)
  raven set, 7:3(6)
  symbolism of, 55; 55:28 See also specific numbers
  triangular, 153 as, 55:31(17)
Numidia:
  Bagai, council of, 88:11
  Caecilian as legate for, See Caecilian.
  Calama, See Calama.

Letters 1-99
Calama, Crispinus as Donatist bishop, See Crispinus.
Casaec Nigrae, Donatus as bishop in, 43:4
Cataqua, See Cataqua.
Cirta, Profuturus as bishop in, See Profuturus.
Maximinus as Donatist bishop (on Siniti), See Maximinus.
Maximus of Madaura, 16:1–4
Milevus, Severus as bishop of, See Severus.
Mutugenna, 23:2
Pammachius spreading Catholicism in, 58:1–3
primacy in (Victorinus claiming), 59:1–2
Thaive, letter to Donatist leaders in, 43
Turris, Samsucius as bishop of, See Samsucius.
Xantippus as primate, See Xantippus.
Nundinarius, 43:17(6); 53:4(2)
nun(s):
farmer’s daughter as, 35:4
Primus’ improper conduct with, 35:2
oaths, pagan, 46:1–5, 2; 47:2
Oea, 71(5); 75:21
oil:
from olive press, 78:9
in sacrament(s), 55:13
weight of, 55:18(10)
Old Testament, See Law; law and the prophets; scriptures, prophecy, Christ as fulfillment of, 76:1; 82:15; 88:11; 89:4
olive press, 78:9
olive tree, 82:27
Olympius, letters from Augustine to:
on church and property matters, 96:1–3
on laws regarding idolatry and heretics, 97:1–4
Olympus, Mount, 17:3
On the Orator, 15:1
one hundred and twenty:
Holy Spirit filling, 93:21
oneness, Christian, See Christian unity.
Optatus (the Gildonian), Donatist bishop of Thamugadi, 43:25(9); 51:3; 53:6(3); 76:3; 87:2–5
ordination of Augustine, 21:1–6
orgies, 35:2
Origen, 28:2(2); 40:9(6); 75:4(3)–6, 19(5), 20(6)
See also Rufinus
Jerome as finding fault with, 82:23
original sin, 98:1, 6
Adam, in whom all sinned, 55:8(5)
oxen:
“The tired ox puts down his foot with more force,” 68:2; 73:9
pagan(s)
See also Maximus of Madaura;
individual names
Against thePagans, book by Paulinus, 31:8, 45:2
bishops sent to emperor regarding, 97:3
Calama, pagan feasts in, 90; 91:1–10
Christians, relationship with, 93:26
ethics regarding, 46:15–16
feasting and drinking, bringing to Christianity, 29:9
hope, as without, 92:1
laws passed against, 93:10
Nectarius, 38:3
sacrifice, Christian ethics regarding, 46:3, 6, 8, 10, 11, 14, 17, 18; 47:3–4
Sufes, the, 50
pagan gods
See also individual names
considered members of one great God, 17:1
Maximus defending, 16:1–4
Palinurus, 15:2
Pallor (the god), 17:2
Pammachius (Roman senator), letters from Augustine to:
on Catholic unity, 58:1–3
parable(s):
bad fish in with good, 93:33–34
chaff amid the wheat, 93:33–34
of Pharisee and publican, 93:49
weeds amid the grain, 93:33–34
parents:
of bad children, 89:2
infant baptism, regarding, 98:1–10
love for, 90
sin of, and infant baptism, 98:1–10
Parmenian (Donatist bishop of Carthage), 93:43–44
Parmenon, 7:4
Parthenius, 22:9
Pasch, the, 55:2, 9, 24(14), 26, 30
celebration of, 55:5–9
dinner, Paschal, 36:30(13)–31
drunkenness during, 55:35(19)
in Exodus, 55:30
the month of new harvest, 55:5
Sabbath, as including, 55:15–16(9), 16(9)
as sacrament, 55:2
sacrament, Paschal, 55:27(15)
Passion of the Lord, 55:2
celebrated, 54:1(1)
commemoration of, 98:9
day of, 36:30(13)
Passover, the, 55:15
before the crucifixion, 36:30(13)
past, the: memories, 7:1–7
patience, 22:7(2)
Paul, apostle, Saint, 36:28
armed escort for, 47:5; 87:8
baptizing after John, 93:17–48
and Barnabas, in Antioch, 75:7
bodyguards for, 75:10
compassion of, See compassion.
on destruction of flesh to save spirit, 93:7
Donatist schisms, words used to justify, 87:7
on drunkenness, 29:5
on fear of government, 93:20(6)
Galatians, Letters to, See Galatians.
and Barnabas, in Antioch, 75:7
bodyguards for, 75:10
compassion of, See compassion.
on destruction of flesh to save spirit, 93:7
Donatist schism, words used to justify, 87:7
on drunkenness, 29:5
on fear of government, 93:20(6)
Greeks defending, 93:7
imprisonment of, 93:7
on Ishmael and Isaac, 93:6
Jewish sacraments and observances, view of, 40:4(4), 6
letters of, 49:2, See individual names; specific letters.
lying, regarding, 82:24–25
as minister of the truth, 82:22
ministry of, 49:2
Mosaic law, as respecting, 82:7–12
persecution of, 93:7
and Peter, 28:3(3)–5; 40:3(3)–6, 5; 75:2–17; 82:2–29; 93:31
righteous freedom of, 82:22
on Satan as angel, 53:7
and Timothy, 75:9, 13, See Timothy.
tolerance, as living life of, 43:23
in Troas, 36:28
truth, as minister of, 82:22
violence of Christ used, 93:5
weak, as sparing, 83:5
Paul (bishop in Constantina), 53:4(2)
Paul (bishop of Cataqua): property acquired by, 96:2
Paul (bishop of Cataqua), letters from Augustine to:
reprimanding Paul’s manner of living, 85:1–2
Paula, 68:1, 68:3
Paulinian, 68:3
Paulinus, bishop of Nola:
Licentius referred to, 26:5
Against the Pagans as by, 31:8, 45:2
poem for Licentius, 32:5
poverty and humility of, 31:6
Paulinus (and Therasia), Augustine’s correspondence with, 24–27; 30–32, 42
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters from Alypius to:
requesting Against the Pagans, 45:1–2
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters from Augustine to, 45:1
on eternal life and present life, 95:1–9
on knowing the will of God, 80:1–3
on lapse in correspondence, 42
requesting Against the Pagans, 45:1–2
on Romanian, Alypius, and Licentius, 27:1–6
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters to Alypius from:
on writings of Augustine and Eusebius, 24:1–6
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters to Augustine from:
on Melania and Publicola, etc., 94:1–8
on “Pentateuch against the Manichees,” 25:1–5
wishing for reply, 30:1–3
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters to Romanian from:
on Augustine as bishop, and Licentius, 32:1–5
peace:
“Do all this, and the God of peace will be with you,” 48:3
“Peace be with you,” 53:3
“Pentateuch against the Manichees,” 24:2; 25:2
Pentecost, 55:32
fifty days after Easter, 36:18(8)
people:
differences among, 14:2–4
differences between Jesus and other people, 14:2–4
Pergamum, 49:2
perjury, 47:2
persecution, 93:8
of Catholic Church, 93:6
of Catholics by Circumcellions, See Circumcellions.
Catholics called persecutors, 35:4
of Christian preachers, 40:6; 75:15
of Diocletian, 43:3(2)
of Donatists, 44:4, 7(4)–8, 11
Donatist(s) claiming, 89:2
hatred in, 97:4
just, 93:8
justice, on account of, 44:4; 87:7; 93:7
of Maximinianist by Donatists, 51:3, 3, 5
motives for, bad and good, 93:50(12)
nonresistance to, 93:11
“once peace was established after the persecutions,” 29:9
praiseworthiness of, factors in, 93:7
resisting, 93:11
Persia: Manichaeism as from, See Manichees.
Persius, 68:2
person(s)
See also man
being mistaken about someone, 20:2
spiritual and carnal, 93:6
Peter, apostle, Saint, 53:2
baptism by, 93:47
correction of failure, 93:38
denying Christ, 82:4(2), 5
drachmas, the two, 83:5
fasting, regarding, 36:21(9)
forcing Gentiles to live like Jews, 82:22
humility of, 82:22
merits of, 93:38
Paul and, 28:3(3)–5; 40:3(3)–6; 75:2–17; 82:2–29; 93:31
and Simon Magus, 36:21(9)
sword of, Christ stopping, 93:7
Peter, basilica of: drunkenness in, 29:10
Pharaoh, the, 93:6
Pharisee(s):
fasting, regarding, 36:7(4)–9
and publican, parable of, 93:49
Zechariah tolerating, 43:23
Philadelphia, 49:2
Philletus, 55:4(3)
philosophy:
Christianity as the true, 2:1
philosophers, 1:1–3 See also individual names and groups
Phlegethon, 7:4
Phrygians, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Pl., 53:2
Plato, Platonic doctrine:
the Academics’ belief in, 1:1
in Augustine’s letters to Nebridius, 6:1
intellectual learning and memory, 7:2
sensible world as mere copy/image of Ideas, 3:1
“playfully exercise on the field of the scriptures,” 81, 82:2–3
plays, theatre, 91:4–5
Plotinus, Platonian thought:
in Augustine’s letters to Nebridius, 6:1
the monad, 3:2
poetry:
for Augustine (his teacher) by Licentius, 26:4, 6 (following)
by Paulinus for Licentius, 32:5
Stesichorus (poet), 68:1 See also Stesichorus
Poitiers: Hilary of, See Hilary of Poitiers.
Pontian, 53:2
Pope Melchiades, 43:16
Porphyry, 75:6, 12(4), 16; 82:22
possessions, 31:5–6; 93:5
love of, 93:15
Praetextatus of Assuri, 51:2, 4–5; 53:6(3); 88:11
praise:
for doing good, 93:20(6)
each one will have praise from God, 78:5
eagerness for, 22:7(2)–8
false praise as criminal, 28:3(3)–5
praising God:
“be fervent in spirit, that your soul may receive praise in the Lord,” 48:3
harmony in, 95:8
the two Seraphim, 55:29(16)
prayer, 48:3
for enemies, 78:6
with fasting, angel referring to, 36:18(8)
pretense, See lies, lying.
pride, 93:20(6)
avoiding, 48:2
of carnal persons, 93:6
as mother of strife and jealousy, 22:7(2)
priest(s), See clerics.
primates, See individual names.
Primian, 43:26; 53:6(3)
Primus: rebaptism of, 35:2
“principal Lord, the,” 36:18(8)
Priscilla and Aquila, 75:9
Priscillianists, 56:28
prisoners: the groaning of prisoners, 48:1
problems, 55:26
See also sorrow; suffering; tribulation
Proculeian, Donatist bishop of Hippo, 78:8
and Circumcellion crimes, 88:6
discussed with Eusebius (re: matricidal young man), 34:4–6
as heretic, 88:7
Proculeian, letters from Augustine to:
hoping to mend their differences, 33:1–6
Profuturus, bishop of Cirta, 28:1(1), 6(4), 6(4); 32:1
and correspondence between Augustine and Jerome, 40:8(5); 71:2; 72:1(1)
Profuturus, letters from Augustine to:
against turning anger to hatred, 38:1–3
promise(s) of God, 43:25(9)
property
See also possessions; wealth
defending, 93:11
prophecy: Christ as fulfillment of Old Testament, 76:1; 82:15; 88:11; 89:4
prophecy See also individual names
Jezebel killing, 93:6
and persecution, 93:8
testimony of the law and the prophets, 55:28
tolerance by, 93:15
prophets, false:
Elijah killing, 44:9; 93:6
prophets, law and, See law and the prophets.
Proteus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Volume II/1

proverbs:
sword coated with honey, 72:2
“The tired ox puts down his foot with more
force,” 68:2
Psalms, 75:20(6)
Expositions of the Psalms, 75:20(6)
harp in, 55:12(7)
law and the prophets and, 93:21
singing, 55:34
publican(s):
 fasting, regarding, 36:7(4)
 and Pharisee, parable of, 93:49
Publicola, Roman senator; death of, 94:2–3
Publicola, letters to Augustine from:
on various questions for Augustine,
46:1–18
puffed up, 95:4
Punic language, 17:2
Lucilius’ knowledge of, 84:2
names of Christian martyrs, 16:2; 17:2
punishment:
as correction, 93:8 See also correction
fear, use of, 93:3
just, 9:9; 91:6
problems and benefits of, 95:3
purity, 93:48
food, Jewish beliefs regarding, 36:17
Puparius (bishop of Limate), 43:6(3)
Quintian, letters from Augustine to:
on Aurelius, urging reconciliation with, 64:1–4
Quintus, 94:1, 8
rain: on the just and unjust, 55:8(5); 93:4(2)
ram (Aries), 55:14(8)
raven set, 7:6(3)
reading: truth found in, 19:1
reason: images resulting from, 7:4–7
reconversion, 23:1–8; 34:2–6; 43:21(8);
44:7(4)–8, 12; 89:4
Christian standards regarding,
93:46(11)–48
Crispinus reprimanded for, 66:1
Cyprian regarding, 93:36
Donatist practice of, 23:1–8; 34:2–6;
43:21(8); 44:7(4)–8, 12
Julianus, letter from Cyprian to, 93:36
of matricidal young man, 34:2–6
Maximinianists (returning) exempt from,
88:11
Paul baptizing after John, 93:47–48
of Primus, 35:2
rebirth:
baptism (infant) and, 98:1–10
religion
See also Catholicism; Christianity; faith
differences of, in same family, 33:5
renewal, 92:3
repentance, 93:52
reproaches, See correction.
Republic, The, 91:3
reputation:
of bishops, 83:2
Boniface and Spes, 78:5
of cleric(s), 78:6
of monks, 78:6, 9
rest:
complete, 48:2
in death, 36:31
eternal, See eternal rest.
good works, as reward for, 55:25
souls as loving, 55:18(10)
spiritual, 22:12; 55:22
Restitutus, 97:3
murder of, 88:7
resurrection of Christ, 36:31; 95:2
appearance to disciples after, 95:7
celebrated, 54:1(1)
the Lord’s Day, 55:2(13)
Lord’s Day as preferred to Sabbath,
36:12
the power to lay down his life and to take
it up again, 55:16(9)
the third day, 93:21, 23
resurrection of the body, 55:3(2)–4(3); 94:6;
95:7–8
life after, 55:31(7)
Revelation, Book of, 43:22
See also Apocalypse
riches, See possessions; wealth.
righteousness:
baptism and, 93:10
establishing, 93:10
eternal rest, as obtaining, 36:25(11)
of God, 93:10
grace, as only by, 82:14
law, as coming through, 82:19
parable regarding pride over, 93:49
persecution not proof of, 44:7(4)
Rogatists as far from, 93:27
scribes and Pharisees lacking, 36:8
Ripheans, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
rites
See also under Law; sacraments
of Gentiles, 82:20
old sacraments, 82:15
River Jordan, 55:14(8)
and circumcision of Moses, 23:4
robbers:
Circumcellions contrasted to, 88:8–9
man wounded by (Good Samaritan), 98:6
Paul on, 29:5
rock: Christ as, 55:11
Rogatists, 87:10; 93:11, 23, 26, 49
in Cartenna, 93:21–22(7)
Catholicism, claim of, 93:23
Donatists, compared to, 93:11
Rogatus as founder, 93:11
Vincent (Rogatist bishop of Cartenna),
letter from Augustine to,
93:1(1)–53

Letters 1-99
Letters 1-99

Rogatus, 87:10; 93:1(1), 11
See also Rogatists
Roman gods, 16:2
See also individual names
Romanian, 5:1
described, 27:4
prosperity of, 15:2
Romanian, letters from Augustine to:
on book True Religion and prosperity, 15:1–2
Romanian, letters from Paulinus to:
on Augustine as bishop, and Licentius, 32:1–5
Romanus (son of Paulinus and Therasia), 30:3; 31:2–3; 45:1

Rome
See also specific topics, people, and events
gods of, 16:2
turmoil around (events leading to sack of), 99:1–2
Romulus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
root: life from, 87:9
rope(s), 47:5
Stretch out further your ropes, 93:29
Rufinus, 73:6(3)–8; 81; 82:1(1)
Rufus of Aquilea, 68:3
rumors: caution against believing, 78:5
Rusica, 87:10

Sabbath, the, 55:18(10)
Christians vs. Jews regarding, 36:8(3)
eternal rest, symbolizing, 55:17–19
fasting customs, 36:2–32; 82:14
God made holy, 55:18(10)
Jacob, 36:15(7)
Lord’s Day, compared to (regarding fasting practices), 36:8–13(6)
Lord’s Day preferred to, 36:12
rest on, figurative interpretation, 55:22
spiritual rest, as signifying, 55:22(12)
as when Jesus rested in the tomb, 36:12
sacrament(s), 55:13
See also specific sacraments
baptism, 23:4 See also baptism
Christian, 54:1(1); 98:9–10
Christmas as not, 55:2
circumcision, 23:4
distinguished from other observances, 54:1(1)–2(2)
of Donatists, 87:9
of Donatists vs. Christians, 89:7
of faith (Christian), 98:9–10
of grace, 75:15
Jewish, 54:1(1); 82:8, 15, 26–27
Paschal, 55:2, 26, 27(15)
receiving worthily, 54:4(3)
sin of others sharing, 93:37
traditional (not from scripture), 54:2(2)
of universal Church, 54:1(1)
sacred books, 53:4(2)
burning of, 51:1, 2
surrendered in time of persecution, 35:4;
43:10; 44:4; 53:4(2); 76:3–4; 89:4
sacrificed grove, wood taken from, 46:7; 47:3
“sacrifice of praise, a.” 36:18(8)
sacrifice(s):
to false gods, 91:5
fasting as, 36:18(8)
Gentiles to abstain from certain, 82:9
incense of Sabbath replacing animal
sacrifice, 36:19
on the Lord’s Day, 36:18(8)
pagan, Christian ethics regarding, 46:3,
6, 8, 10, 11, 14, 17, 18, 47:2–4
sacrificial table (altar):
“Urbicus,” treatise of, 36:24
sailors, 55:15
saint(s):
city of, 95:8
eternal life of, 95:2
feast days of, drunken, 29:1–11
gifts of, varying, 78:3
Milan, at the tomb of, 78:3
souls of, 55:23(13)
salvation:
eternal, 95:6
fear as catalyst for, 93:2–3, 16(5)–18
force used to bring about, 93:1(1)–7,
16(5)–18, 26
Jesus Christ, as from, 40:4(4)
and Mosaic law, 82:11
old sacrament rites and, 40:4(4); 82:15
of self and others, 21:4
Samaria, 93:21
Samaritan, Good, 98:6
Samsucius:
Turris, as bishop of, 34:6
Samsucius (bishop of Turris), 34:6; 62:1–2;
83:4
Samsucius (with Augustine and Alypius),
letter to Severus from, 62:1–2
Samuel, 43:23
Samuel, Second Book, 55:31(7)
Sanaes, 16:2
sanctification, 89:5
commemorated on the seventh day,
55:19
law in the ark signifying, 55:30
sand, 93:30
Sarah: and Hagar, 93:6
Sardica: Donatist appeal to Council of, 44:6
Sardis, 49:2
Satan, 36:21(9)
an angel, as previously, 73:7
apostles handing men over to, 93:7–8
“blown out” through exsufflation, See
exsufflation.
Christ conferring with, 88:10
cleverness of, 48:3
conquering, 36:21(9)
“devil and his angels,” 43:22
Judas, as entering, 93:7
Manicheanism blaming for one’s evil deeds, See Manichees.
as tempter, 48:3
victory over, 39:2(2)
“Whoever observes them . . . has plunged into the pit of the devil,” 82:18
Saturn, 17:3
Saturninus, 22:9
Saul, King, 87:9
David rescued from hand of, 55:31(7)
David tolerating, 43:23
Saul (later Paul), 93:5
saved, See salvation.
sandal(s):
abundance of, 93:33
avoiding, 36:32(14); 54:3; 83:2, 5
Boniface and Spes, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
Church clouded over by, 93:30
scars: of Christ after resurrection, 95:7
schism, schismatic, 51:1–5; 93:25
See also heretics; names of individual groups
as crime, 76:1–4; 87:4
Donatist, 76:1–4, See Donatists.
force, use against, 93:1(1)–7
as heresy, 87:4; 89:7
punished in scripture, 51:1
secular authority against, 93:12
as sin, 87:4
as wicked sacrilege, 76:1–4
schoolmaster, 75:14
scourge
See also punishment
“Not everyone who scourges is an enemy,” 93:4(2)
scribes:
Zechariah tolerating, 43:23
scripture
See also canonical books
holy and true, 28:3(3)–5
promise(s) in, 43:23(9)
thirteenth time, 82:34(5)–35
truth of, 82:5
"useful lies" as undermining authority of, 28:3(3)–5
Scythian wave, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Scythopolis:
Asterius of, 75:20(9)
sea:
sand in, 93:30
from sea to sea, 93:19
the tranquil, 15:2
seashore: as end of the world, 93:34
seasons, the, 55:13
four, 55:28
Second Coming: baptism, as eliminating need for, 23:4
secular power:
Church, on behalf of, 93:1(1)–20, 50
fear of, 93:20(6)
Secundus of Tigris, 43:5–12, 14(5), 17(6), 26; 88:3
Carthage, council held at, 76:2
Sylvanus ordained by, 53:4(2)
seed: good, Church found in, 93:31–32
self: interior and exterior, 55:8(5)
self-control, 91:3
sensation: imagination vs., 6:1–2
senses, the:
deceptiveness of, 7:2, 3
and perceiving God, 92:5
sharper in “airy or ethereal spirits,” 9:3
sight, 7:6(3)
taste, 7:6(3)
truth of, 7:5
sensible nature and world:
as image of intelligible one, 3:3
intelligible nature compared to, 3:2–3; 4:1–2
sensational pleasures, 95:6
See also individual topics
dangers of, 2:1
doing without, 3:4
drunkenness, See drunkenness.
Galatians, the works of the flesh, 29:6
love of, 2:1
mind and intelligence vs., 3:4
as transitory, 2:1
Septuagint, the, 75:19(5)–20(6)
thirteenth time, 82:34(5)–35
seraphim, 55:29(16); 94:6
See also angels
serpents:
Marsi, the, 55:12(7)
servant(s):
Jesus Christ as, 33:5
seven:
ark of covenant carried around . . . the seventh time, 55:10(6)
the creature, symbolizing, 55:28
purified sevenfold, 55:31(7)
seven days; the seventh day, 55:17–19
sevenfold gift of the Holy Spirit, 55:10(6)
symbolism of, 55:5
seven churches:
John (the apostle) writing to, 55:10(6)
seven days, the, 55:17–18(10)
Severinus (Donatist relative), letters from Augustine to:
on Donatist schism, 52:1–4
Severus:
as bishop, 32:1
friendship with Augustine, 84:2
greetings sent through Profuturus to, 38:3
Milevis, as bishop of, 38:3
Letters 1-99
Letters 1-99

Paulinus, sending greetings to, 31:9
Severus, letter from Alypius, Augustine, and
Samsucius to, 62:1–2
Severus, letters from Augustine to:
on Timothy (cleric), 63:1–4
shadow of death:
we fear no evil, 38:1
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, 36:16; 93:9(3)
shame:
  human sense of, 91:5
sheep, 76:4
goats, separating from, 93:49–50(12)
rebpastizers as like wolves preying on, 35:4
shepherd(s), 76:4
  the good shepherd, 93:49
  “If you are good shepherds, be silent,” 35:4
sickness, See illness.
Sidonians, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
sight
See also under eyes
  sense of, 7:3(3), 6
silliness, 95:2
silver, 83:4; 96:2
  box and lamp, Donatists handing over, 53:4(2)
dove sheathed in, 98:5
in Jericho, 46:18
like silver from the earth, 55:31(7)
Simon Magus, 36:21(9)
Simplician:
A Miscellany of Questions in Response to
Simplician, 37:1–3
Simplician, letters from Augustine to:
of appreciation, promising to answer
questions, 37:1–3
sin, sexual
See also adultery; fornication
Boniface and Spes, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
sin, sinners, 87:3
baptism removing, 36:9(5)
of children and parents, 44:12
Christ, as forgiven in name of, 93:21, 23
Christ dying for our, 55:2
compassion for others’, 82:29 See also
  compassion
Donatists and Manichees as, 32:2
early church as tolerating, 43:22–23
as enemy within, 73:10
grace and, 82:20
Holy Spirit removing bond of (baptism), 98:2
Mosaic law and, 82:20
neutral actions vs., 75:4, 16; 82:13
of one as not defiling others, 93:15, 33–34,
  37, 42, 45, 49; 98:2
original, 98:1–1
of others and sacraments, sharing, 93:37
of parents, 98:1–10
repentance of, 93:52
sinful person, what constitutes, 87:3
sinners, known, effect of, 87:2
sinners, unknown, the presence of, 87:1
unknown, guilt regarding, 89:4
when the sinner is praised, 55:9
wicked, destruction of, 87:2
Sinai, Mount, 55:29(16)
sincerity
See also truth
  of Paulinus, 31:5
singing, 55:32, 34
See also Alleluia
  “a bad flute player makes a good singer,”
  60:1–2
Donatist finding fault with Catholic,
  55:34
Siniti (in Numidia): Maximinus as Donatist
  bishop, See Maximinus.
Sion, Mount, 55:11
Siricius, 53:2
Silifici: Novatus as bishop of, 84:1–2
Sixtus (two), 53:2
skepticism: as hiding Academics‘ true
  convictions, 1:1
skeptics: Carneades, 1:2
sky: differences among heavenly bodies,
  14:3
slander, 73:10
Paul on, 29:5
sleep:
  advantage over waking, 7:2, 3
dreams, source of, 8:1
smoke, 48:2
Smyrna, 49:2
snakes, See serpents.
sheer, sobriety:
  of Jews, 29:4
Socrates: about learning and memory, 7:2
Sodom and Gomorrah, 36:9(5)
sodomites: Paul on, 29:5
Soliloquies, the, 3:1, 4
Augustine as author of books, 72:5(3)
Son of Man, the
See also Jesus Christ
  as Lord of the Sabbath, 36:5(3)
sorcery, 93:48
sorrow
See also suffering; tribulation
  excessive, 95:3
  hope in, 55:26
  those who rejoice in our, 78:6
Sosthenes, 93:7
Soter, 53:2
soul
See also intelligence; mind
  activities of, many, 7:7
  beauty, as lacking, 64:1
  body as vehicle for, 13:2–4

Volume II/1
Volume II/1

as body (common philosophical position), 1:1ody vs., 3:4; 55:18(10)
death of (as impossible), 3:4
decreasing or increasing, power of, 7:6(3)
imagination and, 7:1–7
making use of body’s senses, 7:2, 3–7
“quasi-body” as vehicle for, 13:2–4
rest for, 55:22(12)
as seat of truth, 3:4
truth as food of, 1:3
souls: human beings as called, 95:8
south:
sower: Christ as, 93:15, 31
Spain: Barcelona, 24:4
Spanianum, 35:2, 4
Spes, 77:1–2
spirit:
body vs., 55:3(2), 9
flesh vs., 93:31
Spirit of God, 92:3
spirits: “airy or ethereal,” 9:3
Spirits, fruits of, 29:6
spiritual bodies, 95:7–8
spiritual growth: Paulinus desiring guidance in, 25:1–5
spiritual persons: Isaac as symbolizing, 93:10
spring: pagan feasts celebrating, 90; 91
stars:
believers as, 93:15
differences among heavenly bodies, 14:3
Stephan, 53:2
Stesichorus (poet), 68:1; 75:18; 82:33
Stilicho, 97:2–3
Stoics, sect of, 88:10
Chrysippus, 16:3
stone:
Christ as, 55:11
stones: five smooth stones, 75:2
stoning: of church by pagans, 9:8
Strabonia: Abundantius as priest, 65:1–2
straw: wheat, separated from, 87:8
strike, 93:32, 48
vice of, 22:7(2)
stubbornness, 93:20(6)
Subhena: Timothy, the cleric, 62:1–2; 63:1–4
Sufes, letters from Augustine to:
on pagan massacre of Christians, 50
suffering
See also sorrow of Jesus Christ, 93:21, 23
sharing, 99:2
sun:
differences among heavenly bodies, 14:3
eclipses, 55:7
as symbol, 55:11
superstitions, 7:4
surgeon, 93:8
suspicions, false, 78:6
swearing, See oaths.
sweet foods, 93:28(9)
sword:
honey, coated with, 72:2; 82:2
of Peter, 93:7
Sylvanus (bishop of Cirta), 43:17(6)
Sylvanus (subdeacon in Constantina), 53:4(2)
Sylvester, 53:2
symbols, symbolism
See also specific items, numbers, and topics
creatures as, 55:11, 14(8)–15
of divine realities, 55:11, 14(8)–15
rites, Old-Testament, 82:15
Synods, 93:21, 31
Tagisi, Secundus of:
Sylvanus ordained by, 53:4(2)
Talarus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
talk
See also words
inopportune, 68:1
Tamar, 78:8
taste, sense of, 78:3
Taurus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
tax evasion: property acquired through, 96:2
taxes, 96:2
Teaching Christianity, 41:2
tears:
“I did not evoke their tears with my tears,” 29:7
Telesphorus, 53:2
temptation:
guarding against, 48:3
present life as filled with, 95:2
ten, 55:28
Ten Commandments, the, 55:20(11)–22(12)
as holy, 82:20
the most important, 55:38
Terence, 26:3
comedy of, 7:4
The Eunuch, 91:4
Thagaste:
Alpyius as bishop of, See Alpyius.
demands of citizens on Augustine, 5:1
Donatists, mass conversion of, 93:17
gifts of spiritual church, 29:12
Thagura: Xantippus as bishop of, See Xantippus.
Thaive:
Honoratus of, 83:1–6
letter to Donatist leaders in, 43
Thamugadi: Optatus as Donatist bishop of,
43:25(9); 51:3
Theasius, 80:1
theatre, 91:4–5
Theodore of Heraclea, 75:4(3), 20(6); 82:23
Theodore of (of Hippo) letters from Augustine to:
on reception of Donatists into church,
61:1–2
Theodosius, the emperor, 97:3
Theodotian, 75:19(5)
Letters 1-99

Therasia (wife of Paulinus), 24, 25
See also Paulinus
Thessalonians, Letter(s) to, 49:2
thief, thieves:
crucified with Christ, 93:7
forced to confess, 78:3
Paul on, 29:5
temple as "den of thieves," 29:3
third day: Christ rising on, 93:21, 23
Thieves, crucified with Christ, 26:6
forced to confess, 78:3
Paul on, 29:5
Temple as "den of thieves," 29:3
third day: Christ rising on, 93:21, 23
thirty: symbolism of, 55:5
three elements in every nature, 11:3–4
Thursday, Holy, 54:5(4)–9(7)
Thyatira, 49:2
Thyestian feasts, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Tigisi, Secundus of,
See also Secundus of Tigisi.
timid,
See also weak.
Timothy:
christening of, 75:9
father as Gentile, 75:9
holiness and faith of, 78:8
Timothy (cleric), 62:1–2; 63:1–4
Titus, 82:12
toilet: pagan god of, 17:2
tolerance:
and Christian unity, 44:11
of evil on account of good, 93:15
of other church customs, 54:3
unity, for the sake of, 43:22–23
tongues: speaking in, 94:7
tools, metal, 47:5
torture, 9:9; 88:4
the torturer, 93:8
traditio(s), 35:4; 44:10(5)
See also sacred books
in Africa, 89:4
Transfiguration, the, 55:28
transgression, See sin.
tree(s), 47:5
trial: of Caecilian (bishop of Carthage), 43:1–20
trials (troubles), See sorrow; suffering.
triad, the, 33:4
Triumphant, 36:28
Troy:
Paul in, 36:28
Trojan War, the, 40:7
True Religion, 15:1; 24:2; 27:4
truth: trust the Lord exhorting us to, 29:8
truth See also lies, lying
Academics as concealing, 1:1–3
Adored by his true adorers in spirit and in truth, 78:3
body as like, 13:3
"but truth gives birth to hatred," 82:31
Christ as, 26:6
Christian, beauty of, 40:7
criticism, constructive, See criticism.
as food of the soul, 1:3
imagination and, 7:4
knowing, yet fighting against, 93:10
"only the truth speaks the truth," 26:6
Paul’s concern for teaching, 28:4
progression toward (with age), 4:1
reading, recognizing in ourselves truth
found in, 19:1
of scripture, 28:3(3)–5; 82:5 See also under lies, lying (Paul rebuking Peter)
search for, See below.
of senses (as greater than that of thought), 7:5
Son of God as highest form of, 14:4
soul as seat of, 3:4
through Jesus Christ, 82:18
vs. flattery, 33:3
truth, search for, 19:1
the Academics’ obstacles regarding, 1:1–3
Tubiscium: Fortunius as Donatist bishop, See Fortunius.
Tully, 17:3
Turris:
Samsucius as bishop of, See Samsucius.
twenty-three thousand (there fell on one day), 36:15(7)
twins: differences between, 14:2
Two Books of Answers to the Questions of Januarius, 54–55
Tychonius, 41:2; 93:14, 43–44, 43–45
unclean spirit, 82:17
understanding: two ways of reaching, 13:4
unworld, 7:4
unhappiness: and happiness, discussion of, 3:1
unity, Christian, See Christian unity.
universe: God as creator, 14:4
Urbanus, 53:2
"Urbicus" ("the city fellow"):
fasting treatise, Augustine refuting, 36:2–32
Uriah, 82:5
Uzziah, 75:2
Valentine (Catholic bishop), 88:10
Valerius (bishop of Hippo):
Augustine as coadjuter to, 31:4
Augustine on, 29:7
at Lenten sermon, 29:11
Paulinus, sending greetings to, 31:9
Paulinus describing, 32:2

Volume II/1
Letters 1-99

Volume II/1

personal qualities of, 22:4
Valerius (bishop of Hippo), letters from Augustine to:
on priesthood, qualms regarding, 21:1–6
vanity (-ies), 55:20(11)
deceptive, 92:3
Varro, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)vegetables, 47:4
See also food
veiled woman, 93:28(9)
vengeance, 47:5
Venus, 16:2; 17:2
Vesta, 16:2
Vetustiusinus, 31:7
Victor (in Roman succession of bishops), 53:2
Victor (priest of Proculeian), 34:5; 35:1
Victorinus, letters from Augustine to:
on primacy in Numidia, 59:1–2
Vigilisitt: deposed African bishop, refusing, 64:4
Vincent, Rogatist bishop of Cartenna
(successor of Rogatus), 93:1(1)–53, 21
See also Rogatists
vine: Jesus as, 52:2
vines, 61:2
violence:
of Christ, 93:5
of Circumcellions, 88:1, 6–8, 10, 12
value of, 89:7 See also under force
Virgil, 17:3
to the Aeneid, 7:4; 14:1; 15:2; 17:2; 3; 91:2
Bucolics, 16:3; 17:3
virginity, vow of: as gift of God, 61:2
virgins, consecrated, 98:6
virtues, theological, See faith; hope; love.
wantonness, 55:24(14)
water, 48:2
in baptism, 98:2
in sacrament(s), 55:13
weight of, 55:18(10)
weak (-ness):
punishment and, 95:3
salvation of, 93:31
setting example for, 73:8
support of the, 93:3
wealth, 31:5–6
See also possessions
earthly vs. eternal, 15:2–3
(of Romanian), 15:2
Wednesday, 36:30(13)
weeds, 93:15
seed among, 93:31–32
separating grain from, 76:1–2
wheat, as not choking, 93:33
week, days of: fasting, discussion of,
36:30(13)–31
weeping:
"I did not evoke their tears with my tears,"
29:7
well(s): drinking from, ethics of, 46:14; 47:3
west, 93:30
wheat:
carried in order to be purified, 98:5
chaff amid, 93:33–34
chaff (weeds) as not choking, 93:33
grain, amid, 93:33–34
not uprooting weeds for fear that they
might . . . uproot the wheat, 43:21(8)
in sacrament(s), 55:13
straw, separated from, 87:8
white:
clothes at Easter Vigil, 34:2–3
more pleasing than black, 29:11
White Sunday, 34:3
wicked (-ness), 93:10
See also evil; sin
of carnal persons, 93:6
destruction of, 87:2
of Donatists, 93:10
widow (-hood), 93:29
the matricidal young man, 34:2–6
wild animal(-s), 55:11; 93:11
wild raging, 89:6
will: of God, knowing, 80:2–3
window(-s), 47:5
wind(-s): the four, 55:28
wine:
in sacrament(s), 55:13
winnowing
See also harvest
the last, 93:33, 42, 50(12)
wisdom:
and happiness, 3:1, 5
Licentius accused of fearing, 26:2
Son of God as highest form of, 14:4
Wisdom, Book of, 54
wolf, wolves, 76:4
re baptizers as like, 35:4
woman, women:
“roving bands of women who have
shamelessly refused to have
husbands,” 35:2
woman, abandoned, 93:26, 30
woman, veiled, 93:28(9)
woman of ill repute, 65:1–2
wood: sacred grove, taken from, 46:7; 47:3
words:
evil conversations, 78:5
works
See also good works
“fruits” as (From their fruits you will
know them), 29:6
world, the
See also earth
Christ as propitiation for sins of whole,
93:32
Christ as redeeming, 76:1
dying to the, 94:4–5
end of, See Apocalypse; end of the world; harvest.
spread of Christianity, 93:22(7)
“the chains of this world,” 26:2
wheat spread throughout, 93:32
world(s): “three worlds,” 7:4
worship of pagan gods, 17:3–4
wounds:
of Christ after resurrection, 95:7
wrath of God: salvation, as bringing about, 93:5
wrongdoing: avoiding appearance of, 83:5 See also scandal

Xantippus (of Thagura) primate of Numidia, 59:1–2
Xantippus (primate of Numidia), letters from Augustine to:
on Abundantius (priest), 65:1–2
Zaccheus, 54:4(3)
Zechariah, 43:23
Zenobius (brother of Dioscorus)
Augustine’s letters to, 2:1
Zenophilus, 43:17(6); 53:4(2)
Zephrenius, 53:2
Zephyrs, 26:4, 6 (poem of Licentius)
Zion, Mount, 93:25
Index from

Letters 100-155

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/2 Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-186-2, 6 x 9 in., 438 pp., 2002

Includes the following works:

On Seeing God
(De videndo Dei)

Six Questions Against Pagans
(Quaestiones expositae contra paganos numero sex)

On the Grace of the New Testament
(De gratia Testamenti Novi)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:31</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>21, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>19, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:12</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>19, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:30</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 33:11</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13 LXX</td>
<td>147, 8, 20; 147, 11, 26; 147, 13, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20</td>
<td>147, 8, 20; 147, 13, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:23</td>
<td>147, 11, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:23 LXX</td>
<td>147, 13, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 22:4.6</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers 12:8</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>13, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 6:5</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>18, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>14, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit 12:12</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>29, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12 LXX</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>9, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:21</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>13, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:4</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>34, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>140, 33, 77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>2, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4-5</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>12, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>3, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>13, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>15, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:3</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>5, 14; 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>1, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>102, 17; 138</td>
<td>1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2.4</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:3</td>
<td>121, 1, 4; 149</td>
<td>1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:3-4</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>1, 5; 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>15, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14</td>
<td>121, 1, 6; 149</td>
<td>1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>11, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5-6</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>140, 21, 53; 140, 23, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:2</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>1, 2; 140</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume II/2

#### Letters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100-155</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>140, 34, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>140, 31, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>111, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18 LXX</td>
<td>108, 1, 1; 108, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>105, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6 LXX</td>
<td>153, 5, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>140, 16, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>104, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9 LXX</td>
<td>140, 34, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:31-32 LXX</td>
<td>130, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:3-4 LXX</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:8</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:8-9</td>
<td>130, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:12 LXX</td>
<td>108, 3, 12; 108, 7, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ecclesiastes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>143, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Song of Songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>149, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>140, 22, 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:20,18,21</td>
<td>140, 7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>119, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>144, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>140, 22, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>127, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>140, 24, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>140, 28, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>140, 24, 61; 140, 28, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6</td>
<td>137, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>140, 15, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:30</td>
<td>108, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:4</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:18</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>121, 1, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>147, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9 LXX</td>
<td>120, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10 LXX</td>
<td>147, 11, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5 LXX</td>
<td>140, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:12</td>
<td>120, 3, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>102, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7-8</td>
<td>102, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:11</td>
<td>108, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:4</td>
<td>140, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>105, 4, 15; 140, 15, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>153, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1-5</td>
<td>105, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:18-19 LXX</td>
<td>130, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:20</td>
<td>149, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10 LXX</td>
<td>140, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:5</td>
<td>108, 7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1</td>
<td>120, 3, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2</td>
<td>121, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:5 LXX</td>
<td>108, 1, 3; 129, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>121, 2, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>108, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>105, 2, 6; 155, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td>138, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:31-32 LXX</td>
<td>138, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Baruch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:38</td>
<td>147, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ezekiel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28:3</td>
<td>TIT, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:4</td>
<td>105, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:25-37</td>
<td>111, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:38-45</td>
<td>111, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:99-100</td>
<td>105, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:3-20</td>
<td>111, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>105, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Zephaniah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11 LXX</td>
<td>105, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Zechariah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>147, 11, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Maccabees

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:18-19</td>
<td>111, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

##### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18-20</td>
<td>153, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>121, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>149, 2, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>140, 27, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>149, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-45</td>
<td>153, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>119, 5; 130, 2, 5; 147, 1, 3; 147, 5, 12; 147, 5, 15; 147, 6, 18; 147, 11, 24; 147, 11, 27; 147, 11, 28; 147, 15, 37; 147, 16, 39; 147, 23, 52; 147, 23, 53; 148, 2, 9; 148, 3, 11; 148, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>105, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>108, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14-16</td>
<td>140, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>133, 2; 140, 31, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:39</td>
<td>136, 2, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>153, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>140, 29, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>120, 3, 14; 130, 11, 21; 153, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>130, 11, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>130, 11, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>130, 11, 21; 153, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>130, 11, 21; 130, 14, 29; 145, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>153, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1-2</td>
<td>102, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>102, 22; 102, 23; 102, 25; 102, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7-8</td>
<td>153, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>153, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>149, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-27</td>
<td>127, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>140, 20, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-12</td>
<td>140, 20, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>140, 22, 84; 140, 23, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>120, 4, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>149, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12-13</td>
<td>140, 30, 72; 145, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>121, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>140, 16, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>126, 3, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>140, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>140, 24, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-30</td>
<td>127, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>124, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3-9-40</td>
<td>102, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:37-38</td>
<td>140, 28, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>147, 12, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17</td>
<td>147, 12, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10</td>
<td>147, 5, 13; 147, 9, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>140, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:24</td>
<td>130, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:21</td>
<td>127, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>148, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>140, 18, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37-39</td>
<td>137, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>105, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:35</td>
<td>140, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>140, 22, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13</td>
<td>140, 32, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:14</td>
<td>140, 17, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:1</td>
<td>140, 32, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:3-4</td>
<td>140, 33, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:5</td>
<td>140, 32, 76; 140, 34, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:6</td>
<td>140, 34, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:9</td>
<td>140, 31, 74; 140, 34, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:10</td>
<td>140, 34, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:11</td>
<td>140, 35, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:12</td>
<td>140, 35, 81; 140, 37, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21-23</td>
<td>140, 34, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>140, 23, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>147, 11, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>140, 11, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>140, 23, 57; 147, 11, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:42</td>
<td>147, 11, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>147, 11, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>130, 14, 26; 140, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>145, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:42</td>
<td>140, 14, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:25</td>
<td>149, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:46</td>
<td>140, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mark**

| 10:18 | 153, 5, 12 |
| 10:25 | 130, 1, 2 |
| 12:35 | 148, 2, 7 |
| 14:36 | 140, 10, 27 |
| 15:34 | 140, 1, 2 |
| 16:12 | 149, 3, 31 |

**Luke**

| 1:24 | 127, 5 |
| 2:14 | 140, 18, 46 |
| 2:29-30 | 121, 3, 17 |
| 2:34-35 | 121, 3, 18; 149, 3, 33 |
| 2:35 | 130, 14, 29 |
| 2:37 | 140, 4, 12 |
| 3:6 | 138, 2, 15 |
| 3:14 | 6:37-38 |
| 6:45 | 153, 5, 15 |
| 7:6-7 | 153, 5, 12 |
| 10:16 | 140, 20, 50 |
| 10:27 | 140, 11, 28 |
| 11:9-13 | 140, 18, 45 |
| 11:51 | 130, 8, 16 |
| 12:48-47 | 140, 10, 27 |
| 12:49 | 111, 2 |
| 12:50-51 | 121, 3, 18 |
| 18:1 | 130, 8, 15 |
| 18:25 | 130, 1, 2 |
| 19:8 | 153, 5, 24 |
| 20:36 | 148, 2, 7 |
| 22:62 | 140, 14, 36 |
| 23:21 | 140, 14, 36 |
| 23:34 | 121, 1, 7; 138, 2, 13 |
| 24:5 | 121, 3, 16 |
| 24:16 | 149, 3, 31 |

**Volume II/2**
### Volume II/2

| 24:46 | 129, 2 |
| 24:47 | 105, 1, 2; 129, 2 |

**John**

| 1:1-5 | 137, 14 |
| 1:3 | 140, 3, 9 |
| 1:9 | 140, 3, 7 |
| 1:10 | 140, 3, 8; 140, 3, 9 |
| 1:11 | 140, 3, 9 |
| 1:12 | 140, 4, 11; 147, 10, 23 |
| 1:13 | 140, 4, 11 |
| 1:14 | 140, 1, 2; 140, 11; 140, 36, 82 |
| 1:18 | 140, 18, 45; 147, 5, 13; 147, 5, 16; 147, 6, 17; 147, 6, 18; 147, 11, 28; 147, 15, 37; 147, 16, 39; 147, 19, 46; 148, 2, 10 |
| 1:33 | 108, 1, 3 |
| 3:18 | 147, 11, 24 |
| 4:24 | 147, 17, 42 |
| 5:28-29 | 140, 15, 38; 147, 11, 24 |
| 6:50 | 140, 25, 62 |
| 6:54 | 153, 4; 153, 5, 15 |
| 8:7 | 140, 2, 25 |
| 8:32 | 101, 2; 149, 2, 27 |
| 8:36 | 101, 2 |
| 8:38 | 145, 2 |
| 9:16 | 121, 1, 4 |
| 10:16 | 108, 6, 17 |
| 10:18 | 140, 14, 36 |
| 12:28 | 147, 15, 37 |
| 13:10 | 108, 3, 8 |
| 13:30 | 108, 6, 17 |
| 13:35 | 108, 6, 17 |
| 14:6 | 104, 4, 13; 104, 4, 16; 121, 1, 5 |
| 14:8 | 147, 11, 26 |
| 14:9 | 147, 5, 13; 147, 5, 16; 147, 6, 18; 147, 12, 29; 147, 14, 33; 147, 23, 52 |
| 14:16-17 | 148, 2, 6 |
| 14:21 | 147, 11, 27; 147, 20, 48; 148, 3, 11 |
| 14:23 | 147, 11, 27 |
| 14:27 | 108, 1, 3 |
| 17:3 | 147, 11, 27 |
| 18:23 | 138, 2, 13 |
| 19:26-27 | 121, 3, 17 |
| 20:17 | 119, 3; 120, 3, 15; 121, 3, 16; 140, 17, 43; 149, 3, 32 |
| 20:29 | 147, 3, 8 |

| 21:17 | 108, 6, 17 |
| 21:18-19 | 140, 10, 27 |
| 25:6 | 140, 8, 21 |

**Acts of the Apostles**

| 1:8 | 102, 29 |
| 2:27-31 | 140, 15, 38 |
| 9:4 | 140, 6, 18 |
| 17:28 | 140, 12, 32 |
| 23:3-5 | 138, 2, 13 |

**Romans**

| 1:20 | 102, 5 |
| 1:21-23 | 101, 2 |
| 1:24 | 143, 10 |
| 1:25 | 101, 2 |
| 2:3-6 | 153, 2, 4 |
| 2:4 | 153, 2, 5; 153, 3, 7 |
| 4:5 | 140, 20, 50; 140, 30, 71 |
| 5:5 | 140, 4, 11; 140, 7, 19; 140, 18, 45; 140, 22, 54; 140, 37, 85; 145, 3; 145, 7 |
| 5:6 | 149, 4, 7 |
| 5:8 | 149, 1, 7 |
| 5:10 | 149, 1, 7 |
| 6:6 | 140, 5, 13 |
| 6:9 | 102, 3 |
| 6:10 | 145, 5 |
| 7:13 | 145, 3 |
| 8:15 | 140, 20, 49; 140, 21, 52 |
| 8:18 | 111, 2 |
| 8:24 | 130, 4, 9; 130, 14, 25 |
| 8:25 | 130, 14, 28 |
| 8:26 | 131; 149, 2, 21 |
| 8:26-27 | 149, 2, 21 |
| 8:28 | 149, 2, 14 |
| 8:34 | 145, 6 |
| 8:35-39 | 140, 19, 47 |
| 9:7 | 140, 19, 47 |
| 9:8-10 | 140, 26, 64 |
| 9:20 | 140, 20, 50; 140, 22, 54; 140, 30, 71; 140, 37, 83 |
| 10:9 | 140, 27, 66 |
| 11:6 | 140, 30, 71 |
| 11:19-20 | 140, 20, 51 |
| 11:20 | 140, 24, 59 |
| 11:25 | 149, 2, 19 |
| 11:26-27 | 149, 2, 19 |
| 11:28 | 121, 2, 11; 149, 2, 18 |
| 11:32 | 149, 1, 7 |
| 11:33 | 140, 26, 63; 149, 1, 7 |
| 11:33-34 | 140, 25, 62 |
| 12:2 | 120, 4, 20 |
| 12:12 | 155, 1, 4 |
1 Corinthians
1:12 105, 3, 11; 108, 1, 3
1:20 140, 2, 30
1:27 140, 27, 67
1:30-31 120, 4, 19; 145, 6
1:31 140, 7, 19; 140, 20, 50;
140, 31, 75; 140, 34, 79;
140, 37, 85; 145, 7
2:9 130, 8, 17
2:11 147, 5, 14
2:14 147, 17, 44
3:7 120, 3, 14; 144, 1
3:9 140, 26, 63
4:5 121, 3, 18
5:6 108, 3, 7
6:17 147, 15, 37
7:4 127, 9
8:2 140, 37, 85
8:3 140, 37, 85
9:24 119, 6
9:27 121, 2, 13
10:17 140, 26, 63
10:18 140, 2, 19
10:19-20 102, 19
11:19 141, 5
11:29 142, 3
11:31 111, 5
12:11 140, 1, 6
12:28 121, 2, 9
13:4 140, 22, 54; 140, 24, 61
13:5 125, 2
13:12 120, 1, 4; 140, 25, 62;
147, 22, 51; 148, 1, 1;
148, 2, 7
13:13 130, 8, 16
13:6 140, 32, 76
15:22 140, 9, 25
15:28 148, 5, 17
15:52 102, 5; 140, 34, 78

2 Corinthians
1:12 140, 31, 74
1:14 140, 10, 26
1:15 147, 22, 51; 148, 2, 8
1:18 147, 22, 51; 148, 2, 7;
148, 2, 8
4:18 140, 11, 29

Galatians
3:16 105, 4, 14
3:27 102, 29
3:29 140, 19, 47
4:4 140, 3, 6; 140, 4, 11
4:9 140, 4, 11
5:6 140, 21, 52; 140, 26, 63;
147, 14, 34
5:8 140, 34, 79
6:5 140, 34, 79; 141, 5
6:16 149, 2, 19

Ephesians
1:4 149, 2, 20
1:18 147, 15, 37
2:8-10 140, 20, 51
2:9 140, 30, 71
2:10 140, 30, 71; 140, 30, 73;
140, 35, 81
3:13 140, 26, 63
3:14-19 140, 25, 62
3:18 140, 1, 2
3:18-19 147, 6, 18; 147, 14, 33;
147, 23, 52
3:19 140, 26, 63; 147, 15, 36
3:20 120, 2, 12; 140, 17, 43
4:10 102, 29
4:11 149, 2, 11
4:22 142, 2
5:1 148, 1, 5
5:8 140, 3, 6; 140, 23, 57
5:19 140, 17, 44
5:25-26 108, 1, 3
5:29 130, 3, 7; 140, 6, 16
5:31-32 140, 6, 18

Philippians
1:23 140, 6, 16
1:27 122, 1
2:6 140, 4, 12
2:7 140, 4, 12
2:8 140, 4, 12; 140, 24, 59;
140, 27, 66
2:9-10 140, 27, 66
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>140, 21, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>140, 24, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15-16</td>
<td>108, 3, 9; 120, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>133, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>122, 2; 130, 9, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>130, 1, 2; 140, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>149, 2, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>149, 2, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>149, 2, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>149, 2, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>149, 2, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>149, 2, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>149, 2, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>149, 2, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>149, 2, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>149, 2, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>102, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17-18</td>
<td>149, 2, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>121, 2, 12; 149, 2, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19-20</td>
<td>149, 2, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>149, 2, 23; 149, 2, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21-23</td>
<td>121, 2, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>149, 2, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>149, 2, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>140, 36, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>140, 27, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>130, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>108, 5, 15; 148, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>121, 2, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>126, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>140, 32, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>130, 9, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>130, 13, 24; 140, 24, 61; 147, 14, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>147, 15, 37; 148, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>121, 2, 10; 149, 2, 12; 140, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3-4</td>
<td>149, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>121, 2, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>140, 8, 21; 149, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>130, 1, 1; 130, 3, 7; 130, 14, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>130, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>108, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-6</td>
<td>130, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>147, 5, 14; 147, 6, 17; 147, 15, 37; 147, 16, 39; 147, 17, 44; 147, 19, 46; 148, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>130, 1, 2; 140, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>108, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>121, 2, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>130, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>133, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>140, 30, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:55</td>
<td>140, 25, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>140, 13, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>121, 3, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>149, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>111, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>147, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>149, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>140, 37, 85; 147, 19, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>140, 25, 62; 149, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>140, 31, 74; 140, 34, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>140, 10, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>153, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>147, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>140, 27, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>147, 22, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>108, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>140, 22, 54; 147, 19, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>153, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>149, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>140, 22, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>130, 2, 5; 147, 5, 12; 147, 8, 20; 147, 10, 23; 147, 15, 37; 147, 19, 46; 148, 3, 11; 148, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>140, 22, 54; 148, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>148, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>147, 19, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>140, 18, 45; 140, 20, 49; 140, 20, 51; 140, 21, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>102, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>121, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Letters 100-155

Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number. The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

abandonment, 140:14–19(7), 27–28, 33, 43(17), 59(24), 82(36)
Abel, 102:17; 140:27
Abraham, 147:14, 18, 26 offspring of, 121:2; 140:46–50
Academics, the, 118:16; 144:2
Adam, 140:21(8)–22; 143:6
adoption, 140:9–11; 153:13
adultery, 140:53; 153:9(4), 12(5), 15
Aelian, 129:4; 141:10–11
Aeneid, the, 140:76(32); 151:1
Africa
See also Hippo: specific names and topics
Catholics in, 105:2
Donatists in, 100; 105:2; 129:6
afterlife, See eternal life; heaven; hell
Agabus, 149:11(2)
Against the Christians, book, 102:8
Alba, town of, 102:8
Albina, 125:2
Albina, letter from Augustine to: on Pinian’s oath, 126:1–16
Albina, Melania, and Pinian, letter from Augustine to:
on why a visit hadn’t been possible, 124:1–2
Albyius, 117; 119:1; 126:1–3, 9
Albyius, letter from Augustine to: on Pinian in Hippo, 125:1–5
Ambrose: Commentary on the Gospel of Luke, 147:17–39, 52(23)–54; 148:6(2)–7, 10
Anastasius (African monk), letter from Augustine to:
on worldly enticements and grace, 145:1–8
Anaxagoras, 118:12, 23(4)–27
Anaximenes, 118:12, 23(4)
angels, 102:20; 147:14, 25, 40; 148:7
cult of the angels, 149:27–28
and prayer, 130:18(9); 140:69(29)
as rational creatures, 140:56(23)
at resurrection, 140:78
and temple sacrifices, 102:20;
147:17(6)–18
wicked, See demons; devil
animal sacrifice, See under sacrifices
animals: salvation of, 140:71(30)
Anna, 130:29
anthropomorphites, 148:13(4)–14
Antiochus, king, 111:5
Anulinus, 129:4
apostles, 140:36(14), 65–67; 147:52(23); 149:11(2)
See also individual names
Appolinarists, 140:12
Appolonius, 136:1; 138:18
Aprigius (proconsul), 139:2; 151:1–14
Aprigius, letter from Augustine to:
on capital punishment, 134:1–4
Apuleius, 136:1; 137:13(4); 138:18(4)–19
Arcesilas of Pitane, 118:16
Arians, the, 119:1; 147:19(7); 148:10
ark of Noah, See Noah
Arles, Council of, 105:8
Armentarius and Paulina, letter from Augustine to:
on their life of continence, 127:1–9
Ascension, the, 137:13
Athanasius (bishop of Alexandria), 148:10
atomism, physical (Democritus), 118:12, 27–28, 30–31
Audians, 148:14
Augustine: writings, 139:3; 143:3
See also specific titles
Aurelius (bishop of Carthage), 128:4; 151:3
Aurelius, Sylvanus, and bishops to
Marcellinus from:
on the Conference of Carthage,
128:1–4; 129:1–7

Volume II/2
authorities, state, See government
Azariah, 111:3, 8
Bagai, Council of, 108:1(1), 5–6, 13(4)–15
baptism, 108:3; 130:16; 139:3; 149:26; 153:15
infant, 143:6; 149:22
John the Baptist, 140:7–8
rebaptism, Donatist practice of, See rebaptism
barbarians: attacks by, 111:1–9
beauty, 120:20; 138:5; 140:63(26)
inner, 147:51(22)
belief, See faith
“belly,” 149:3–4
Bible, See scriptures
birth, spiritual, See rebirth by grace
birth of Christ, See virgin birth
bishops, See individual names
bishops, Catholic role of, 152:1–3; 153:1(1)–26
bishops, Catholic and Donatist: at Conference of Carthage, See Conference of Carthage
blindness:
   bodily, 155:3
   of Jews, 149:18–20
blood of Christ, sacrament, 140:60–62(25); 141:5
   See also sacraments
boasting, See pride
body:
   carnal nature, 140:56(23); 144:2
   and good, supreme, 118:13–16
   health of, 130:7–8, 13
   pleasures of, See flesh: pleasures of senses, See senses
   and soul, 120:18(4); 131; 137:11–12; 142:5–11
   body, spiritual, 148:16–18
   at resurrection, 120:17; 147:49(21)–51(22)
   See also sacraments
body of Christ, Church as, 140:15(6)–18
   suffering of Christ and body, 140:36(14)–42
body of Christ, sacrament of, 140:60–62(25); 141:5
   See also sacraments
Boniface, 139:2; 152:1
books, See specific titles
books, sacred: surrendered in time of persecution, 105:2
born again, See rebirth by grace
bread:
   daily bread, 130:21(11)
   love, as symbolizing, 130:16
   sacrament of, See body of Christ
   We...are one bread, one body, 140:63(26)
breasts: My hope from the breasts of my mother, 140:30(12)–31
bribery, 141:1, 12; 153:23
bride, bridegroom:
   Christ and the Church, 140:18
   wise and foolish virgins, parable, 140:74(31)–81(35)
bull of Phalaris, 155:2
Caecilian (bishop of Carthage), 105:2, 6, 8; 108:2, 13(4); 128:2; 129:4
case of, 141:7–10
Caecilian (new imperial commissioner), letter from Augustine to:
   on execution of Marcellinus, 151:1–14
Caellestians, 145:8
Caesars, the, 102:8; 104:16; 138:9
Cain, 102:17; 140:27; 147:26; 37; 149:9
Calama, Numidia: crimes against Christians in, 103:1–4
canonical scriptures, 147:4–5; 148:15
capital punishment, 100:1–2; 133:1–3; 134:1–4; 139:2
carnal nature, 140:3(2)
   See also flesh: desires of words of my sins, 140:17
Carthage:
   Conference of, See Conference of Carthage
   schism at, 105:8
catechumen: Caecilian as, 151:14
Catholic Church, Catholics
   See also Church
   Donatists, meeting with, See Conference of Carthage
   spread throughout world, 140:43(17), 60; 141:4
   as true Church, 118:32(5); 140:43(17); 141:5
   Catiline, war with, 138:16(3)
   Celer, 139:2
celibacy, See chastity
centurion, Gentile, 140:50, 54(22)
chaff, wheat and, 108:12; 142:3
change, 138:2–8; 140:12
character, 145:7
charity, 139:3; 140:62(25), 77, See also love
   chastity, 137:12; 147:43
   of the elect, 121:7
   fear and, 140:53
   in marriage, 151:8–9
   rape and, 111:9
   of soul, 144:2
   virgins, parable of, 140:77(33)
   vows of, 127:1–9
cheek: turn the other cheek, 138:12–13
children:
   my seed will serve him, 140:68(28)
Letters 100-155

procreation of, 130:29
sated with their children, 149:4–5
training, 104:7; 138:14
children of God, 140:8–10(4)
children of the promise, 140:46–48, 50
choice (free will), 140:3(2)–4
chosen, the, 149:19–22
Christian (Catholic) unity, 141:5
Donatists exhorted to return to,
105:1(1)–17; 108:17–20
Donatists’ return to, 142:1–4; 144:1–3
parables supporting, 108:10–12
state, as foundation, 138:10
Christianity
See also Catholic Church; Church, the;
specific topics
growth of, 137:16
humility in, 118:22–23(4)
and salvation, 102:8–15
spread of, 140:65–67; 142:2
and the state, 136:2–3; 137:20; 138:9–16
as truth, 102:15; 104:12; 137:16
Christians, 102:21; 140:8–9, 47(19), 48, 68(28)
See also specific topics
Against the Christians, 102:8
Donatist crimes against, 100; 133:1
early, 118:33
non-Catholic, 118:32(5)
persecution of, See persecution
rich, 140:66(27)–67
weak, help for, 118:32(5)
church: I shall sing of you in the midst of the
court of, 140:43(17); 45(18)
Church, the
See also Catholic Church; Christianity
asylum in, 113
as body of Christ, See body of Christ
growth of, 129:3
house of God, 141:1–2
Mary as symbolizing, 120:15
the poor in, 140:60–61
in scriptures, 105:14–15, 17
sinners in, 129:5
strength of, 140:36(14)–37(15)
unity in, See Christian unity
Cicero (Tully), 103:1, 2; 104:3, 7, 15–16;
138:9; 143:3; 155:3–4
Dioscorus, questions of, 117; 118:1(1)–34
“Don’t give a boy a sword.” 104:7
soul as immortal, 104:3
Circumcellions, 105:3(2), 6; 108:19
in Hippo, 111:1
savagery of, 108:13(4); 133:1
circumcision, 121:3; 149:20, 26
Cirta, citizens of, letter from Augustine to:
on return to unity, 144:1–3
Cirta, Council of, 141:1–13
cities, 138:10; 155:9(4)
City of God, The, 136:3; 154:2; 155:2
clean of heart, 148:9, 11
See also seeing God
cold, of outermmost darkness, 140:55
cold weather, 124:1
commandments of Christ, 137:17;
155:14–15
Commentary on the Gospel of Luke,
147:17–39, 52(23)
compassion, for others, 130:3–4
concupiscence, See lust
Conference of Carthage, 128:1–4; 129:1–7;
139:1
proceedings of, 141:1–13
confession, 140:60
conscience, 130:24(4); 140:74(31)–75, 79;
151:10
Consentius (Catholic layman), letter from
Augustine to:
answering theological questions,
120:1–20
Consentius (Catholic layman), letter to
Augustine from:
on theological questions, 119:1–6
Constantine, the emperor, 105:8–10; 129:4;
141:8–11
continence, See chastity
conversion, to Christianity, 140:65–67
Donatists’ return to unity, 142:1–4;
144:1–3
Council of Arles, 105:8
Council of Bagai, 108:1(1), 5–6, 13(4)–15
Council of Cirta, 141:1–13
courage, 155:12–13(4), 16
creation, order of, 140:3(2)–4
creator, God as, 140:81(35); 147:47, 50
creature: creator vs., 101:2; 102:20;
140:3(2)–4
Cresconius, 114; 115
Cresconius, letter from Augustine to:
on behalf of Faventius, 113
crimes, punishment for, See
punishment
Crispinus (Donatist bishop of Calama),
105:4
cross, the
See also crucifixion of Jesus, below
dimensions of, 140:64
mystery of, 147:34
crucifixion of Jesus, 140:39(16)
My God...why have you abandoned me?,
140:14–18, 27
Old Testament foretelling, 102:37;
140:24
suffering, See suffering of Christ

Volume II/2
Cyprian (bishop of Carthage): as martyr, 108:9–12; 151:6

damnation, See hell
Daniel, 111:3–5; 140:28
See also fiery furnace
darkness, 140:6(3); 54(22)–58, 61, 69(28), 82(36)
David, King, 138:19
as psalmist (See Psalms)
deadness, 155:3
death, 140:16; 143:8
the dust of death, 140:38
“end of evils,” 103:3; 104:3
and eternal life, See eternal life
fear of, 127:2; 140:16, 22
martyrdom, See martyrdom
poverty and, 103:3; 104:2–4
and resurrection, See resurrection
sleep, compared to, 140:76(32)
death penalty, See capital punishment
debts, debtors, 110:4–6; 130:21(11)
Delphinus, 139:4
Demetrias, 150
See also Proba
Democritus, 118:12, 27–30
demons:
false gods as, 102:18–20
and miracles, 102:32
Deogratias, letter from Augustine to:
Six Questions in Answer to the Pagans, 102
desires, fleshly, See carnal nature; flesh, desires of
devil, the, 105:13; 140:42; 147:15–16
at last judgment, 140:57–58
in outermost darkness, 140:54(22)–55, 61
Dioscorus, letter from Augustine to:
on Cicero, 118:1(1)–34
Dioscorus, letter to Augustine from:
on Cicero, 118:12
disciples, See apostles; individual names
doctors:
It is not the healthy...but the ill, 140:72; 145:8; 149:7
Vindician, 138:3
dogs, 140:39(16), 42, 60; 149:10
Donatists, 118:12
Catholics, meeting with, See Conference of Carthage
Christian emperors and, 105:6–11(3)
Circumcellions as, See Circumcellions in Hippo, 111:1
lies, as based on, 105:6
Maximianists, conduct with, 129:5, See also Maximianists
in Numidia, 129:6
persecution of, 108:14
punishment for, suggested, 100;
133:1–3; 134:1–4
rebaptism, practice of, See rebaptism
schism with Catholic Church, 105:8, 17
violence of, 105:4–5; 111:1
Donatists, former, letters from Augustine to:
on their return to unity, 142:1–4;
144:1–3
Donatists, letters from Augustine to:
on the Conference of Carthage, 141:1–13
exhorting to return to Catholic unity, 105
Donatus (bishop of Casae Nigrae, Numidia), 105:8
Donatus (formerly proconsul of Africa), letter from Augustine to:
urging to follow Christ, 112:1–3
Donatus (proconsul of Africa), letter from Augustine to:
on punishment for Donatists, 100
Drunkensus, 144:2
dualism, See Manichees
dust, 140:38
eating, See food
egg, 130:16
Egypt:
monks, barbarians attacking, 111:1
water turned to blood, 143:1
Elijah, 137:13(4); 140:39(16)
Elisha, 137:13(4)
emperors, Christian:
See also individual names
Donatists and, 105:6–11(3)
and Roman state, 136:2–3; 138:16(3)
end of the world, 122:2
final judgment, See judgment, by God;
resurrection, final
enemies:
Christians and Donatists, 105:17
Christ’s teaching regarding, 138:9–15
God...will crush the heads of his enemies, 149:10
loving, 100:1–2; 140:63(26); 153:4(2)–5
praying for, 130:23
In terms of the gospel they are enemies on your account, 149:18–20
enemies of grace, 140:83(37)–84; 145:8
evry, 140:54(22), 61
Epicureans, 118:12, 14, 20–21, 26; 155:2–3
body as highest good, 118:16–19, 19
on mind, 118:29
Letters 100-155

on nature, 118:28
soul as mortal, 104:3
Epicurus, 155:2
Eridanus, 118:6
eternal fire, See hell
eternal life, 147:27
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)—13; 130:14;
138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26);
155:16—17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
carly life and, 127:2—6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
eternal punishment, See hell
eucharist, See sacraments
exsufflation, rite of, 105:7; 108:3
eyes
See also senses, the five: sight
blindness, See blindness
of body vs. mind, See seeing God
faith, 102:12, 15; 140:50, 80; 145:3; 147:43
See also salvation
before Christ’s birth, 102:8—15
fish symbolizing, 130:16
owed to scriptures vs. humans, 147:39
and reason, 120:2—3, 5—6, 8
seeing and believing, 147:3—11
unfeigned, 130:24(4); 147:35
fasting: prayer and, 130:24
fatherland, heavenly, See heaven
Faventius, 113; 114; 115; 116
fear of God, 140:45(18)—46, 51—53, 58—61;
145:4
fear of punishment, 145:4—6
Felician of Musti, 106:1; 108:1(1), 4(2)—6,
13(4)—15; 141:6
 Felix of Aptungi, 105:6, 8, 10; 141:10—11
fiery furnace, 102:32; 108:8; 111:3, 5; 140:28
fire, eternal, See hell
fish:
bad from good, 108:12
faith, as symbolizing, 130:16
fishermen, 140:67
flattery, See praise, human
flesh
See also body
desires of, 137:12; 145:2, 6; 149:6, 8
man as called, 140:12
pleasures of, 118:14, 17; 140:3(2), 17;
145:2
suffering of, See suffering
Florentinus (imperial official), letter from
Augustine to:
on behalf of Faventius, 114
Florentius, 143:4
food, See eating
after resurrection, 102:6—7
Do not handle; do not taste; do not touch, 149:23, 29—30
Let no one judge you regarding food, 149:26
The poor will eat and be satisfied,
140:66(27)—67
foolish virgins, in parable,
140:7(31)—81(35), 84
forgiveness, 103:3; 104:9; 105:2; 138:9;
148:5; 153:15
Christian mercy and, See mercy: Christian
fornication, 140:53
Fortunatian (bishop of Sicca), letter from
Augustine to:
on behalf of Faventius, 148:1(1)—18
Fortunatus (bishop of Cirta, Numidia), letter
from Augustine to:
on behalf of Faventius, 115
Free Will, 143:2, 5, 7
freedom, 101:2
friend at midnight parable, 130:15
friendship, 130:4, 13, 23; 155:1(1)
future, foretelling, See prophecies
Gaul, 105:8; 111:1
generation:
generation to come, 140:69(29)—71(30)
Who will recount his generation?,
153:13
Generous (governor of Numidia), letter
from Augustine to:
on behalf of Faventius, 116
Gentiles, 140:49(20)—51; 149:18—20
goats, sheep, separating from, 108:12
God
See also Trinity
in heaven, 120:14
knowledge of, 140:81(35)
nature of, 118:23(4); 120:7, 14, 16;
137:4; 140:80—81; 147:47
seeing, 147:1(1)—54; 148:1(1)—18
serving, 140:52(21)
will of, See will of God
gods, false, 102:8—10, 18—20; 138:18(4)
good, 147:43; 153:12(5)—13

Volume II/2
Letters 100-155

See also righteousness
the common good, 140:67, 70
creation as, 140:4
evil, returning for, 100:1–2; 138:11–15; 153:2(5).
See also enemies
the highest, 118:13–16; 140:56(23)
immutable, 140:80–82(36)
joy in, 140:80
good works, 140:62(25)–63(26), 71(30)–72, 74–81; 147:34
goods, temporal, See wealth
See also Catholic Church; Christianity
Gospels: Paulinus of Nola, questions regarding, 121:14–18
gourd plant, See Jonah
government, 138:10
Christianity and, 136:2–3; 137:20;
138:9–16; 153:16–19
officials of, 153:8, 19, 23–25, See also specific titles
grace, 101:2; 140:1–85
because of grace...not because of works, 140:71(30)–72
 desires, overcoming through, 137:12
“enemies” of, See “enemies of grace”
fear of God preserving, See fear of God
and the law, 145:5
sinner and, 149:7–8
whole intention of, 140:85
and worldly pleasures, 145:2
Grace of the New Testament, the, 140:1–85
“grafting” of Gentiles, 140:49(20)–51
grain:
weeds, separating from, 108:11–12
wheat and chaff, 108:12; 142:3
gratitude, 140:84
greed, 104:4
See also wealth
Pinian, in case of, 125:1–5; 126:7–10
Greek language, 149:12–16
Greek philosophers, 118:23
See also philosophers; individual names
Gregory (Phoebatus of Agen), 148:10

Hannibal, 138:16(3)
happiness:
attaining, 118:13–15; 140:56(23)
the happy life, 130:9(4)–11, 27–28;
155:11(1)–10
temporal and eternal, 130:18(9); 137:20;
140:3(2)–5, 13(5), 20, 22–23,
28(11)–29, 33(13)
wealth and, 140:67
health, good, 130:7–8, 13
hearing, 137:5–6
heart, 130:17
Blessed are the clean of heart, 148:9,
11–12. See also seeing God
disposition of, 138:13–14
life of, 140:61–63(26)
heaven, 102:15, 19; 103:2
See also eternal life
all religions seeking, 104:12(4)
Christ as way to, 104:13; 138:17
Christ in, 120:15
and earthly suffering, 111:2
God in, 120:14
the rich entering, 130:2
hell, 102:22–23, 27; 104:3; 140:54(22)–58
impurity leading to, 102:19
heretics, heresies, 118:12; 120:13(3); 137:16
See also Donatists; Manichees;
Pelagians; individual groups and names
Hippo, 124:2
dependence on Augustine in, 124:2
Pinian wanted as priest, 125:1–5; 126:1–14
violence in, 111:1
Hippo, letter from Augustine to clergy and people:
apologizing for absence, 122:1–2
holiness, 148:18
holy ones who are in his land, 121:2
Holy Spirit, 130:28; 137:16; 140:11, 13(5); 145:3, 7
See also Trinity
Honoratus (catechumen in Carthage), 139:3
Honoratus, letter from Augustine to:
hope, 145:7; 147:34
“a good conscience,” 130:24(4)
account of, giving, 120:4
egg symbolizing, 130:16
faith and, 120:8
we have been saved in hope, 140:17,
71(30)
Horace, 143:4
human beings:
as body and soul, 137:11–12, See also body; soul
carnal nature of, 140:3(2); See carnal nature
intellet of, 102:14; 104:11; 147:45(18)
humility, 127:5
of centurion, Gentile, 140:50, 54(22)
of Christ, 118:17, 22–23(4)
fecundity, 149:23, 27–29
Pharisee and publican, parable, 121:3
the poor as humble, 140:60–61, 63(26),
65–67
Letters 100-155

and salvation, 140:53

idols, idolatry, 102:18–20; 104:5; 105:7

immortality:

- of Christ, 120:9; 140:30(12)–31
- of God, 143:7

of soul, See under soul

immortality of God, 148:11

See also seeing God

Ingentius, 141:10–11

Innocence (priest), 133:1

Innocent (pope), 151:2

integrity: in poverty and wealth, 138:16(3)–17

intellect, human, 102:14; 104:11; 147:45(18)

invisibility, of God, See under seeing God

invisible realities, 120:9

irony, 149:23

Isaac, 140:28, 47(19)–48; 147:14

Isaiah, 147:14, 18

Ishmael, 140:47(19)

Israel, 140:47(19), 49(20); 149:19

See also Jews

Ninevah as prefiguring, 102:37

offspring of, 140:46–50

people as prophetic, 102:15

Italy, 111:1

Jacob (Israel), 147:14, 26

offspring of, 140:46–50

two names of, 140:49(20)

jealousy, 140:53–54; 148:6(2)–9, 13(4)–14

Jerome, letter to Augustine from:

on heretics, 123

Jerusalem, 141:4; 149:3

Jesus Christ, 102:11; 137:15; 140:10(4)–11, 68(28)

See also Son of God; Trinity; Word of God; specific topics

birth of, 102:3; See also virgin birth

death of, 102:3; 120:9; 140:13(5), 38, See also crucifixion of Jesus

as God and man, 137:11–12; 20; 138:20;

- 140:12, 43(17); 147:16

- in heaven, 120:15

as human, 119:2–4; 137:9(3)–12

immortality of, 120:9; 140:30(12)–31

as mediator, 140:43(17); 147:51(22);

- 149:17, 26

resurrection of, See resurrection of Christ

as salvation, 102:11–15; 140:46

in scripture, See scriptures

as Son of Man, 140:21(8)–23

as Truth, 155:14

as wisdom of God, 102:29; 120:19

Jews, 121:2; 137:15; 149:24, 26–27

as non-believers, 121:7; 137:16; 140:9, 20, 50; 147:51(22); 149:18–20

scattering of, 137:16; 149:3, 9

Job, 111:4; 6; 140:26(10), 34, 45(18);

- 147:14

John the Baptist, 140:7–8

Jonah, 102:30–37

Joseph, husband of Mary, 153:9(4)

Joseph, son of Jacob, 140:28; 149:33

joy, 140:80; 147:43

Judais, 149:24, 26–27

Judas Iscariot, 108:7(3), 8

judge (state official), 153:8, 16, 19–20, 23

unjust, parable of, 130:15

judgment:

- ability to judge, 147:44

With the judgment you pronounce.....

102:25–26

judgment, by God, 104:9; 111:3–4; 140:57, 82(36); 147:34; 149:22; 153:4(2)

See also resurrection, final

wise and foolish virgins parable,

140:74–81

Julian (emperor), 105:9–11

Julian (future bishop of Eclanum), 101:4

Juliana, daughter of Proba, See Proba

Jupiter, 138:18(4)

justice, 140:66(27); 153:26; 155:12–13(4), 16

Juvenal, 138:16(3)

kindness, 147:43

kings, See individual names

knowledge, 147:3(8), 35–36

of God, 140:81(35)

lamps, 140:74–75, 77, 79–80

land ownership, 149:3

Latin language, 149:3

Lattion, kingdom of, 102:8; 138:16(3)

law, 121:4; 153:16

Do not kill them lest they forget your law, 149:9

faith vs., 121:3

fulfilling, 145:7

grace and, 145:3, 5; 149:26

Jesus as born under, 140:11

law and the prophets, 155:14–15

Christ as end of, 121:7

lawyers, 153:8, 25

Lazarus: resurrection of, 102:2–7, 31

letters:

- of Augustine, See specific senders or recipients

- length of, 137:19

liberal arts, 101:2

liberty, 101:2

lies, lying:
perjury. See perjury
life, temporal:
  attempts to prolong, 127:2; 140:16–17, 22
and eternal life, 127:3–4; 130:2–6 (See also eternal life)
nature of, 120:18(4)
light, 140:6(3)–10(4), 69(28), 82(36); 147:42–46(19)
lions, 140:42
Literal Meaning of Genesis, The, 143:4
“little ones,” 140:60
lofty thoughts, See pride
logic, 118:19
Lord’s Prayer, the, 130:21–25(14)
Lot, 140:28
love, 127:5; 140:61–62(25); 145:3, 7; 147:43–44; 148:6(2); 155:13(4)–15
bread as symbolizing, 130:16
for Christ, 145:6
of Christ, four dimensions of, 140:62(25)–64(25); 147:33(14)–35
commandments to, 140:61; 153:15
debt imposed by, 110:5
faith and, 120:8
fear and, See fear of God
for God, 130:14(7); 137:17; 140:45(18)–47(19); 155:13(4)–15
God as, 140:54(22); 148:18
in marriage, 140:53
for others, 130:13–14(7); 137:17; 153:14
for ourselves, 130:14(7)
praying for, 145:7
pure heart, from, 130:24(4)
as warmth and light, 140:55
Luke, 149:11(2)
lust, See flesh: desires of
luxury, life of, See wealth
Maccabees, 111:5
Macedonius, (vicar of Africa), letters from Augustine to:
on friendship, wisdom, virtue, 155:1(1)–17
on role of Catholic bishop, 153:1(1)–26
Macedonius, letters to Augustine from:
on City of God, 154:1–3
on role of Catholic bishop, 152:1–3
Macrobius (Donatist bishop of Hippo), 107:1; 139:2
Macrobius, letter from Augustine to:
on rebaptism, 106:1; 108:1(1)–20
magicians, 102:32; 137:13(4); 138:18(4)–19
water turned to blood, 143:1
Manichees, Manicheans, 118:12; 140:83(37)
Marcellinus (imperial commissioner) at Conference of Carthage, 141:1
execution of, 151:1–14
Marcellinus, letter to Augustine from:
on Volusian, questions of, 136:1–3
Marcellinus, letters from Augustine to:
on book Free Wil., 143:1–12
on capital punishment, 133:1–3
on Conference of Carthage and punishing Donatists, 139:1–4
on Volusian, questions of, 138:1(1)–20
Marcellinus, letters from Aurelius, Sylvanus, and bishops to:
on the Conference of Carthage, 128:1–4; 129:1–7
Marinus, 151:1–14
Mark, 149:11(2)
marrige, 130:29; 140:53
chastity in, 127:1–9; 151:8–9
martyrdom, martyrs, 140:35; 141:7
Christ as one with, 140:27–28, 35, 41
Cyprian as (See Cyprian)
tention of, 138:12
punishment for killers, 139:2
Mary, mother of Jesus, 149:32–33; 153:9(4)
See also virgin birth
Mary Magdalenae, 149:32
materialism, See Democritus
Maximian (Donatist bishop of Bagai), 106:1; 108:5, 13(4)
Maximinists, 108:1(1); 118:12; 129:5; 141:6
Donatists accepting baptism of, 106:1; 108:5–6; 128:4; 129:5
persecution of, 108:14
Maximinus (Donatist bishop of Siniti, Numidia), 105:4; 142:3
Maximus and Theodore, letter to Augustine from:
on visit to Macrobius, Donatist bishop, 107:1
measure (with the measure you measure...): pagans, answer to, 102:22–27
meek, the, 147:43; 149:3
Christian meekness, 138:9–15
Melania, 124:1–2; 126:4–5
See also Albina; Pinian
Melchiades, the pope, 105:8
Memorias (bishop in Apulia), letter from Augustine to:
on Music, “liberal disciplines,” 101:1–4
men: human beings, See human beings
men and sons of men, 140:21(8)–23
mercy, 142:4
Christian, 104:6; 8, 15–17; 122:2; 138:9–15; 153:3–19
Letters 100-155

mercy of God, 140:62(25), 71(30)–72, 82(36); 149:7; 153:26
wise and foolish virgins parable, 140:74–81
Micaiah, 147:14
midnight visitor, parable of, 130:15
Mincius, 118:6
mind, human, 118:24–27, 29, 32
intellect, 102:14; 104:11; 147:45(18)
miracles:
birth of Christ, 137:2, 7
of Christ, 136:1; 137:13(4)–14
early Christian, 118:20
by God, 111:5
non-believers doubting, 102:14; 120:5; 121:4
pagan, 138:18(4)–20. See also magicians
possibility of various, 102:30–37
money, 153:26
See also wealth
love of, See greed
monks, Egyptian: barbarian attacks on, 111:1
morality, 118:17
Moses, 137:13(4); 140:28; 147:14, 20(8), 31(13)–32
mother:
of Jesus, See Mary, mother of Jesus
From the womb of my mother you are my God, 140:30(12)–32
music, 140:44–45(18)
Music, six books by Augustine, 101:1–4
mysteries, divine, 120:5
mystery of grace, 140:36(14), 63(26)–64
mystery of the cross, 147:34
nature, 118:17–18, 28
Nebuchadnezzar, king, 102:32, 105:7
Nectarius, letter from Augustine to:
on punishing pagan crimes, 104
Nectarius, letter to Augustine from:
on punishing pagan crimes, 103
neediness, See poverty
neighbor, love of, 137:17; 153:14
Neoplatonists, See Platonicists; Plotinus
See also specific topics
grace of, See grace
niece of Severus, 111:8
Nineveh, See Jonah
Noah, 108:20(7); 111:4; 140:28
non-believers, 102:14; 140:8–9, 57–58
See also pagans
Jews as, See Jews
the light shone in the darkness, and the darkness did not grasp it, 140:6(3)
punishment for, 140:57–58
wicked people, 147:15–16, 25
Numidia, 139:4
See also Calama; Thagaste
offspring of Abraham, 121:2; 140:46–50
offspring of Jacob/Israel, 140:46–50
oil in wise and foolish virgins parable, 140:74(31)–81(35), 84
Old Testament, 140:5–6(3), 15(6)–17, 20
See also specific topics
grace hidden in, 140:6(3), 26(10)
prophecies, See prophecies
olive tree, 140:49(20)–51
Optatus (of Milevis), 141:9
Optatus (the Gildonian), Donatist bishop of Thamugadi, 108:5
order, in creation, 140:3(2)–4
original sin, 143:6
pagans, 149:25
See also non-believers; specific topics
rites, and salvation, 102:9
Pagans, Six Questions in Answer to, 102
parables, 108:11–12
chaff amid the wheat, 108:12, 142:3
midnight visitor, 130:15
Pharisee and publican, 121:3
weeds amid the grain, 198:10–12
widow and unjust judge, 130:15
wise and foolish virgins,
140:74(31)–81(35), 84
pardon, See forgiveness
Passion of the Lord, 140:33(13), 82(36); 149:33; 155:4
patience, 140:63(26); 145:7; 147:43
Christian, 139:8–15
in suffering, 140:33(13), 35
Paul, apostle, Saint, 108:8; 118:20;
147:31(13)–32
See also specific topics
Paulina, Armentarius and, See Armentarius
and Paulina, letters from Augustine to Paulina, letter from Augustine to:
Seeing God, 147:1(1)–54
Paulinus of Nola, letter from Augustine to:
response to biblical questions, 149:1(1)–33
Paulinus of Nola, letter to Augustine from:
posing biblical questions, 121:1(1)–18
peace, 127:5; 147:43, 45(18); 148:18
Pelagians, See enemies of grace
Pelagius, letter from Augustine to:
brief, of greeting, 146
penance, See punishment
people, See human beings

Volume II/2
Peregrinus, 139:2, 4; 149:34
perjury, 125:3–4; 126:11–12
persecution, 108:14(5)
of Christians, 103; 137:16
prayer for those who persecute you, 153:4(2)–5
righteousness in time of, 145:5–6
perseverance, persistence, 147:34
Persius, 118:3
persons, human, See human beings
Peter, apostle, Saint, 140:36(14); 147:30
See also specific topics
Phalaris, bull of, 155:2
phantasms, 147:42
Pharaoh's magicians, 143:1
Pharisee and publican, parable, 121:3
philosophy, philosophers, 102:32; 149:24–25, 30; 155:2, 4–6, 9(3)
See also individual names and groups
Phoebatius of Agen, 148:10
Photinus, 120:15; 147:19(7)
physicians, See doctors
piety, 140:45(18); 155:2, 4–5(2), 17
Pindar, 124:1–2; 125:1–5
oath of, 126:1–14
Plato, See Platonists, below
Platonists, 118:16, 20
and Christians, early, 118:33
as concealing views, 118:20–21, 33
highest good as divine, 118:16, 20
on logic, 118:19
on morality, 118:17
on nature, 118:18
truth and error of, 118:16–19
pleasures, bodily, See flesh
Plotinus, 118:33
See also Platonists
Po, 118:6
Polemon of Athens, 118:16: 144:2–3
poor, the
See also poverty
generosity to, 122:2
he chose the lowly...to confound the mighty, 140:67
as humble, 140:60, 61, 63(26), 65–67
as “little ones,” 140:60
The poor will eat and be satisfied, 140:66(27)
regarding self as, value of, 130:30
poor man, prayer of, 140:59(24)
Pope Innocent, 151:2
pork, 149:4
Porphyry
See also Platonists
Against the Christians, book, 102:8
and Six Questions in Answer to the Pagans, 102
possessions, See wealth
lack of, See poverty
Possidius (bishop of Calama), 101:1;
104:1(1); 105:4
poverty, 103:3; 104:2–6
See also poor, the
of Christ, 140:59(24), 66(27)
Roman, integrity in, 138:16(3)
voluntary, 138:17; 140:61, 63(26),
65–67
power of God, 137:8, 14
Praetextatus of Assuri, 108:5–6, 13(4)–15
praise, human, 110:2–5; 118:6–7;
140:74–81
praise, of God, 140:44–47(19), 49(20), 60,
63(26), 65
prayer, 145:3, 7
angels and, 130:18(9); 140:69(29)
answered, 130:26
different sorts of, 149:13–17
disposition during, 130:24
Do not depart from me because trouble is very close, 140:33, 43(17)
for eternal life, 130:30
for happy life, 130:9(4)–11, 27–28
length of, 130:19–20
the Lord’s Prayer, 130:21–25(14);
153:13–14
for others, 111:6–9; 130:23
Paul on, 130:9, 25(14)
persistence in, 130:15
of poor man, 140:59(24)–64
purpose of, 130:16–17
requests, recommended, 130:23
unanswered, 130:26; 140:19(7)
we do not know what we should pray for as we ought, 130:9, 25
without ceasing, 130:18
predestined, the, 149:19–22
pride, 121:2; 140:42, 50–52(21), 54(22), 61,
67–68(28)
good works and, 140:71(30)–72, 74–81
vanity, 155:4, 6–9(3)
priests
See also individual names
forcible ordination, practice, 126:2–3
Primian (Donatist bishop of Carthage),
106:1; 107:1; 108:1(1)–5,
13(4)–14(5); 141:6
and Maximianist schism, 129:5
Proba (Roman widow), letters from Augustine to:
on body and soul, 131
on consecration of Demetrias (letter including Juliana), 150
on widowhood and prayer, 130:1(1)–31
Letters 100-155

Proculeian (Donatist bishop of Hippo), 105:3(2)
promise, children of, 140:46–48, 50
promises
See also vows
breaking, See perjury
propagation of souls, 143:8
prophecies, Old Testament,
140:69(29)–71(30)
Christ as fulfillment, 102:32; 137:13(4),
15–16; 140:21(8)
God speaking in, 102:15
prophets, 149:11(2)
See also individual names
Israel as prophetic people, 102:15
prosperity, See wealth
prudence, 155:12–13(4), 16
Psalm 22, 140:1–85
as for telling future, 140:69(29)–72
Psalms:
meter in, 101:4
Paulinus of Nola, questions of, 121:2–8;
149:3–10
spread of church, for telling, 142:2
Publicola, Valerius: Albina as widow, See
Albina
punishment:
bishops interceding, 152:2; 153:1(1)–26
capital, See capital punishment
Christian mercy in, See mercy: Christian
for crimes against Christians, 103; 104
of Donatist heretics, 100
everlasting, See hell
fear of, 145:4–6; 153:16–19
by God, 111:3–5, See also punishment by
God
With the measure you use, it will be
measured out to you, 102:22–27
of pagans in Calama; 103:
penance, for sin or crime, 152:2;
153:6(3)–7
pure of heart, See seeing God
Pythagoras, 102:13–14; 118:23(4); 137:12
Rahab, 140:28
rape, 111:9
rational creatures, 140:56(23), 69(29)–70
reason: faith and, 120:2–3, 5–6, 8
rebaptism, 105:7, 12; 106:1; 108:1(1)–20
forcible, 111:1
Maximianists exempt from, 106:1; 107:1;
128:4; 141:6
rebirth by grace, 140:9–11, 72
religions:
Christianity only true, 102:15;
104:12(4)–13
heaven, all seeking, 104:12(4)
remnant, the, 149:3
repentance, 103:3; 104:9; 105:2; 153:5–7
See also sin
restitution for sins, 153:20–22
reputation, 151:10
Restitutus, 108:13(4)–14(5); 133:1
resurrection, the final, 102:2–7;
140:25–26(10)
See also eternal life
angel’s trumpet at, 140:78
belief in, 120:9
seeing God at, 147:1(1)–54
spiritual body at, 120:17;
147:49(21)–51(22)
wise and foolish virgins parable,
140:74(31)–81(35)
resurrection of Christ, 102:2–7; 31; 120:9;
137:13(4)–16; 140:40; 149:31(3)
resurrection of Lazarus, 102:2–3, 31
Revisions, letters called books in:
The Advantage of Believing, 140
The Grace of the New Testament, 140
memorandum, 148
Seeing God, 147
Six Questions in Answer to the Pagans,
102
riches, See wealth
righteousness, 120:18(4)–20; 130:3–4;
145:4–6; 149:21; 153:12(5)
absence of, 140:54(22)–55
attributed to self vs. grace, 140:74–85
God, as from, 140:62(25), 71(30)–73
grace, as from, 140:71(30)–72, 74–85
life of, 127:5
love of, 140:52(21)
pride and, 140:50
rites of worship, 102:10, 12
See also sacraments; sacrifices, temple
Roman gods, 102:13
Rome:
Christian emperors, 138:16(3)
Christianity and, 136:2–3; 137:20;
138:9–16(3)
decline and fall of, 138:16(3); 154:2
decline and fall of, 154:2
Latium, kingdom of, 102:8; 138:16(3)
Romulus, 138:10
Rufinus, 139:4
Rustician, 108:19
sacrifices, 149:16
See also specific sacrifices
body and blood of Christ, 140:60–61,
66(27); 141:5; 147:8
Christ, as for telling, 138:7–8
old and new, 138:2–8
sacrifices and, 102:21, See also
sacrifices

Volume II/2
sinners, partaking with, 141:5
of worship, 102:12
sacred books: surrendered in time of persecution, 105:2, 6; 141:7
sacrifices:
angels and, 102:20; 147:17(6)–18
Christ as, 140:73
Christians and, 102:16–21; 136:2
Old and New Testament, 138:2–8; 140:46
of praise, by Abraham’s offsprings, 140:46–48
for sins, 140:73
salvation, 118:32; 140:22, 46, 71(30)–72; 149:17
everlasting, See eternal life; heaven by grace through faith (See grace)
history of, 102:8–15
in hope, 140:17, 71(30)
of humans and animals, 140:71(30)
satan, See devil
Saturninus (letter from Augustine to former Donatists), 142:1–4
schism, schismatics:
Donatists, See Donatists
Maximianists, See Maximianists
as unjustifiable, 108:11–12
schoolmaster: law as, 145:3
scorpion, 130:16
sight, 137:5–6
See also senses, the five blindnes, See blindness
seeing God, 147:1(1)–54; 148:1(1)–18
three kinds of things we see, 120:11
visible events and realities, 120:8–11
signs
See also symbols
An evil...generation asks for a sign, 102:34
Simeon, 140:46; 149:33
sin, 149:3–4; 153:11
See also evil; forgiveness; punishment; repentance
accountability for, 105:16(5)
as all equal, 103:3; 104:8(3), 13–17
beginning of all, 140:61, 68(28)
in the Church, 129:5
correction of, 108:20(7)
and darkness, 140:58
and fear of punishment, 145:4–5
God as punishing, 111:3–5
of good vs. evil people, 153:14
grace and, 149:7–8
With the measure you use, it will be measured out to you, 102:22–27
mercy and, 104:15–16, See also mercy:
Christian original sin, 143:6
of others, 141:5; 142:3; 151:7, 11–12; 153:2, 14, 21
participation in, 100:1–2; 108:7(3)–8, 16(6)–17
resitution for, See repentance
words of my sins, 140:17
singing, 140:44–45(18)
I shall sing of you in the midst of the church, 140:43(17)–45(18)
Six Questions in Answer to the Pagans:
on Christian religion, time of, 102:8–15
on Jonah, 102:30–37
on resurrection, final, 102:2–7
on sacrifices, temple, 102:16–21
on scripture (With the measure...), 102:22–27
on Son of God, existence of, 102:28–29
slave, Christ as, See servanthood
sleep, 140:76(32)
nake (serpent), 130:16
Solomon, 102:28–29
Son of God, 140:10(4)–12
See also Jesus Christ
existence of, 102:28–29
Son of Man, 140:10(4)–12, 21(8)–23
See also Jesus Christ
sorrow, 140:36(14)
soul, 120:18(4); 140:7
after death, 143:8–9
beauty of, 120:20
body and, 131; 137:11–12; 140:3(2); 143:6, 8–10
creator as above, 140:3(2)
God as healing, 147:44
highest good as in, 118:13–16, See also Stoics
image of God, 120:20
immortality of, 104:3; 137:12; 143:7
mutability of, 140:74(31)
origin of, 140:32; 143:5–11
propagation of, theory, 102:13–14
rational, 140:3(2)–4), 56(23)
righteousness as from, 120:20
transmigration of, theory, 102:13–14
Spain, 111:1
speech: human and divine, 102:33
soul, 111:6
truth: beauty of, 140:63(26)
Christ as teaching, 137:12
Christ as Truth made man, 118:32; 155:14
Christianity as, 137:16
mind thought to be, 118:24–27
worship and, 102:10
Tully (Cicero), See Cicero
Tusculan Disputations (Cicero), 155:3–4
unbelievers, See non-believers
understanding, See reason
unity, Christian, See Christian unity
Vandals, 111:1
vanity, See pride
vengeance, 138:9–10, 12
Victorian, letter from Augustine to:
on barbarian attacks, 111:1–9
Vindician, 138:3
violence: and Christ’s teaching, 138:14–15
Virgil, 104:11; 140:76(32); 151:1
virgin birth, the, 102:36; 135:2; 137:2, 4(2), 8–9(3), 13; 143:12

Letters 100-155

grace of New Testament, foreshadowing, 140:9

tax collectors, 140:67
teachers, 149:11(2)
temperance, 155:12–13(4), 16
temple sacrifices, See sacrifices
temptation, 130:21(11)
Tertullian, 147:49(21)
Thagaste, 126:7
The Lord’s Prayer, 153:13–14
thief, 153:20–26
Themistocles, 118:13
tomb of Jesus, 149:32
torture, 153:20; 155:2–3
tr Solidus, 8:2, 16; 108:2
See also sacred books
traducianism, 143:10
Transfiguration, the, 149:31(3)
transmigration of souls, 102:13–14
trials and tribulations, See suffering
Trinity, the, 120:6–7(2), 12–13(3), 16–17; 147:19(7)
Trinity, The (book by Augustine), 143:4
trouble
See also suffering
Do not depart from me because trouble is very close, 140:33–35
tru mp et, 78(33)
truth:
beauty of, 140:63(26)
Christ as teaching, 137:12
Christ as Truth made man, 118:32; 155:14
Christianity as, 137:16
divine, 102:14
mind thought to be, 118:24–27
worship and, 102:10

Volume II/2
You took me out of the womb, 140:31
virgins, consecrated, 150
virgins, wise and foolish, parable, 140:74(31)–81(35), 84
virtue, 155:6, 8–10, 12–13(4), 16
in poverty and wealth, 138:16(3)–17
visible events and realities, 120:8–11
Visigoths, 111:1
vision, 147:47–48(20)
See also senses, the five; sight
Volusian (pagan intellectual), 136:1–3; 138:1(1)–20; 139:3
See also Albina
Volusian, letter to Augustine from:
on scriptures, questions regarding, 135:1–2
Volusian, letters from Augustine to:
scriptural questions, replying to, 137:1(1)–20
on scriptures, reading, 132
vows:
breaking, 127:9
to God, 127:1, 6, 8–9; 149:16
I shall pay my vows before those who fear him, 140:60–61
to people, See perjury
war: and Christ’s teaching, 138:14–15
weak, weakness, 120:6; 139:3; 140:15(6)
Christians, help for, 118:32(2)
law as showing, 145:3
wealth:
and happiness, 140:67; 155:7–10, See also happiness
and heaven, entering, 130:1(1)
 pitfalls of, 104:3–4
rich people, 140:66(27)–67
Roman, 138:16(3)
seeking, reasons for, 130:7–8, 11–12, 14
temporal and eternal, 140:26(10)–27, 29–30(12)
wrongful possession of, 153:24–26
weeds: separating grain from, 108:10–12
whale, See Jonah
wheat and chaff, 108:12; 142:3
wickedness, See evil; sin
widow and unjust judge, parable, 130:15
widows, widowhood:
Proba, See Proba
prayer pertaining to, 130:1(1), 29
will: free will, 140:3(2)–4
will, human, 102:26–27, 140:69(28)
will of God, 140:62(25)–63(26), 68(28)
winter, 124:1
wisdom, 149:30; 155:5(2), 12
incorporeal, 118:18; 120:11
mind thought to be, 118:24–27
the supreme, 140:45(18)
true and false, 120:6
wisdom of God: Christ as, 102:29; 120:19
wise and foolish virgins, parable, 140:74(31)–81(35), 84
womb:
I was cast onto you from the womb, 140:32
From the womb of my mother you are my God, 140:30(12)–31
women: Christian, taken captive, 111:3, 5
word:
spoken, 137:7
words of my sins, 140:17
Word of God, 140:6(3)
Christ as, 102:11; 137:15; 140:6(3), 11–12, 16
grace revealed in, 140:6(3)
nature of, 137:7–12
works, good, See good works
world: end of, 122:2
worldly pleasures, See flesh: pleasures of worm.
I am a worm and no man, 140:21(8)–24(9)
Jonah and, 102:35–37
worship, 155:5(2), 17
See also praise
rites of, 102:10
and sacrifices, temple, 102:16–21 (See also under sacrifices)
writing, of Augustine, See Augustine
Xenocrates, 118:16; 144:2
Index from
Letters 156-210

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/3
Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-200-5, 6 x 9 in., 424 pp., 2004

Includes the following works:
On the Presence of God
(De praesentia Dei)
On the Origin of the Soul and On a Verse in James
(De origine animae et de sententia Jacobi)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

| Old Testament | 6:13 | 170, 2 |
|               | 7:25 | 187, 2, 6; 194, 6, 28; 196, 1, 3 |
|               | 13:3 | 162, 7 |
|               | 13:4 | 205, 2, 16 |
| Genesis       | 2:23 | 190, 5, 18 |
|               | 15:6 | 196, 3, 10 |
|               | 16:12 | 165, 2, 2 |
|               | 17:5 | 196, 3, 10 |
|               | 21:12 | 196, 3, 11 |
|               | 22:18 | 185, 1, 5; 196, 3, 10 |
|               | 25:23 | 194, 8, 35; 194, 8, 38; 196, 3, 13 |
|               | 26:4 | 185, 1, 5 |
|               | 46:26 LXX | 190, 5, 18 |
| Exodus        | 3:15 | 157, 4, 24 |
|               | 9:16 | 186, 6, 17; 194, 8, 39 |
|               | 20:14, 13-17 | 196, 4, 16 |
|               | 20:17 | 157, 2, 6; 157, 2, 9; 177, 10; 194, 6, 28; 196, 1, 3; 196, 1, 4; 196, 2, 6; 196, 2, 8 |
|               | 23:7 | 204, 8 |
|               | 28:3 | 157, 1, 2 |
|               | 33:19 | 186, 6, 16; 186, 9, 33; 194, 8, 35; 194, 8, 39 |
|               | 34:4 | 173, 3 |
| Leviticus      | 19:18 | 177, 10; 189, 2 |
|               | 26:12 | 187, 12, 35 |
| Deuteronomy    | 5:21 | 157, 2, 6; 194, 6, 28; 196, 1, 3 |
|               | 6:5 | 189, 2 |
|               | 7:1 | 187, 8, 28; 189, 8 |
|               | 11:14 LXX | 190, 3, 10; 193, 2, 3 |
|               | 14:5 LXX | 166, 3, 6; 202A, 8, 17 |
|               | 14:5 LXX | 193, 2, 3 |
|               | 28:2 LXX | 167, 3, 11 |
| Psalms         | 2:1-2 | 185, 5, 19 |
|               | 2:5 | 185, 1, 3 |
|               | 2:8 | 185, 1, 3 |
|               | 2:10-11 | 185, 5, 19 |
|               | 3:3 | 177, 1 |
|               | 4:4 | 188, 3, 9 |
|               | 7:3 | 186, 10, 34 |
|               | 7:4 | 186, 10, 34 |
|               | 9:5 | 186, 10, 36 |
|               | 13:1 | 184A, 3, 6 |
|               | 16:10 | 164, 2, 3; 164, 3, 8; 187, 2, 5; 205, 2, 9 |
|               | 18:37 | 185, 2, 11 |
|               | 19:5 | 198, 6; 199, 12, 50 |
|               | 22:7 | 161, 1 |
|               | 22:17 | 199, 12, 50 |
|               | 22:17-19 | 185, 1, 3 |
|               | 22:28-29 | 158, 2 |
|               | 23:5 | 23:6 |
|               | 25:10 | 194, 5, 19 |
|               | 27:9 | 186, 4, 12; 194, 3, 6 |
|               | 29:10 | 157, 2, 10; 180, 6; 182, 3 |
|               | 30:8 | 187, 13, 38 |
|               | 32:9 | 188, 2, 7 |
|               | 177, 5; 185, 2, 7 |
Letters 156-210

Volume II/3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume II/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:16</td>
<td>186, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:16</td>
<td>186, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6-8</td>
<td>205, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:26 LXX</td>
<td>166, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:31</td>
<td>198, 4; 199, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9</td>
<td>186, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:8</td>
<td>186, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:13</td>
<td>193, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16 LXX</td>
<td>190, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16-17 LXX</td>
<td>205, 4, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:2</td>
<td>198, 4; 199, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:24</td>
<td>205, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>187, 10, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>205, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>187, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td>3:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td>3:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>3:95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:11-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:24, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>1:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>2:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>2:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>2:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td>1:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>12:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>1:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees</td>
<td>14:42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td>Matthew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>162, 5; 187, 10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>199, 10, 35; 199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>199, 10, 35; 199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:36</td>
<td>197, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>167, 6, 19; 171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>169, 1, 3; 171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>189, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>185, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>157, 4, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>210, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>187, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>157, 1, 2; 167, 4, 15; 167, 6, 20; 176, 2; 177, 16; 177, 4; 177, 18; 178, 3; 185, 9, 39; 186, 9, 33; 187, 8, 28; 189, 8; 196, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>157, 2, 5; 176, 2; 177, 4; 178, 3; 179, 3; 186, 12, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>189, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>205, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>187, 12, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>169, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8-10</td>
<td>189, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>162, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>164, 7, 21; 166, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>157, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>157, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>184A, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>167, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>194, 4, 16; 194, 4, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>199, 12, 48; 208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>167, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>189, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>186, 8, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td>208, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>185, 11, 48; 185, 11, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>199, 13, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:43</td>
<td>198, 4; 199, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>208, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>186, 8, 27; 186, 12, 41; 188, 2, 7; 190, 4, 13; 194, 7, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>185, 10, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>188, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:14</td>
<td>182, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>157, 4, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>157, 4, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>157, 4, 24; 157, 4, 25; 157, 4, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:23-24</td>
<td>157, 4, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:26</td>
<td>157, 4, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>157, 4, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:29</td>
<td>157, 4, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37-39</td>
<td>189, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:39</td>
<td>204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>167, 5, 16; 189, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-3</td>
<td>208, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:8</td>
<td>166, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:8,10</td>
<td>202A, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:12</td>
<td>194, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
<td>199, 10, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:9</td>
<td>199, 12, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:14</td>
<td>197, 4; 198, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:15</td>
<td>198, 7; 199, 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:15-19</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:17</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:17-18</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:18</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:19-21</td>
<td>199, 9, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:21</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:22</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:29</td>
<td>199, 11, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:29-33</td>
<td>199, 11, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:30</td>
<td>199, 11, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:33</td>
<td>198, 5; 199, 12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>198, 5; 199, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:37-39</td>
<td>164, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:45-46</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:48-50</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:48-49</td>
<td>199, 1, 1; 199, 13, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:31-32</td>
<td>199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:32</td>
<td>208, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>199, 12, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>205, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:6</td>
<td>199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>175, 4, 176, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:53</td>
<td>158, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:64</td>
<td>199, 9, 25; 199, 11, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>199, 12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>169, 2, 5; 169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-30</td>
<td>189, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:38</td>
<td>199, 10, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>199, 12, 48; 208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-17</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17-20</td>
<td>199, 9, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20-24</td>
<td>199, 11, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-25</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25-26</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28-29</td>
<td>199, 11, 44; 199, 12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>197, 2; 198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35-37</td>
<td>199, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:42</td>
<td>199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:46</td>
<td>184A, 1, 2; 193, 2, 4; 194, 10, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>177, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>187, 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:41</td>
<td>187, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:41-44</td>
<td>187, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>169, 2, 5; 169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:41</td>
<td>194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37-38</td>
<td>167, 6, 19; 171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-9</td>
<td>189, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>162, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:47</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>189, 2; 196, 4, 16; 204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>167, 6, 20; 186, 9, 33; 186, 12, 41; 189, 8; 196, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>189, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:36</td>
<td>199, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>199, 1, 1; 199, 13, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45-46</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:56</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25-27</td>
<td>169, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>3:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td>1:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>190, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>185, 9, 36; 186, 7, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:31</td>
<td>189, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10-11</td>
<td>190, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>187, 13, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>187, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

| 1:3 | 187, 3, 8 |
| 1:9 | 157, 4, 40 |
| 1:17 | 167, 3, 13; 186, 2, 6; 190, 2, 6; 194, 5, 20 |
| 1:18-20 | 194, 6, 24 |
| 1:21 | 187, 6, 21; 187, 8, 29; 194, 6, 25 |
| 1:25 | 184A, 3, 5; 187, 6, 21; 187, 8, 29 |
| 2:1 | 194, 6, 25 |
| 2:4 | 185, 11, 49 |
| 2:5 | 185, 11, 49 |
| 2:6-10 | 186, 2, 4 |
| 2:12 | 194, 6, 27 |
| 2:25-29 | 196, 4, 16 |
| 3:19 | 186, 7, 26 |
| 3:20 | 194, 6, 28 |
| 3:20-21 | 177, 14 |
| 3:24 | 185, 9, 40; 194, 3, 6 |
| 4:4-5 | 177, 8 |
| 4:4-6 | 186, 2, 6 |
| 4:5 | 185, 9, 37 |
| 4:9-12 | 196, 3, 10 |
| 4:15 | 157, 3, 15; 177, 13; 196, 1, 4 |
| 4:16-17 | 196, 3, 10 |
| 5:5 | 190, 2, 18 |
| 5:12 | 185, 11, 30; 186, 2, 4; 186, 1, 3; 194, 3, 11 |
| 5:13 | 157, 3, 11; 157, 3, 18; 157, 3, 19; 164, 7, 19; 166, 9, 27; 176, 2; 179, 6; 186, 4, 12; 186, 5, 13; 186, 6, 19; 186, 6, 21; 186, 8, 30; 187, 8, 28; 190, 1, 3; 193, 2, 6 |
| 5:14 | 157, 3, 18 |
| 5:15 | 157, 3, 19; 157, 3, 20 |
| 5:16 | 166, 3, 6 |
| 5:17 | 157, 3, 15 |
| 5:17-19 | 157, 3, 11 |
| 5:18 | 166, 7, 21; 187, 9, 31; 190, 1, 3; 193, 2, 6; 194, 7, 31 |
| 5:19 | 157, 3, 20 |
| 5:20 | 157, 2, 6; 157, 3, 15; 157, 3, 16; 196, 1, 4 |

| 7:7-16 | 194, 2, 20 |
| 7:20 | 194, 6, 28 |
| 7:22 | 157, 3, 16; 175, 3 |
| 7:22-25 | 157, 3, 15; 171A, 1 |
| 7:23 | 166, 2, 5; 196, 2, 5 |
| 7:24 | 167, 6, 2; 171A, 1; 179, 3; 194, 3, 8 |
| 7:24-25 | 194, 6, 28 |
| 7:25 | 166, 2, 5; 166, 8, 24; 171A, 1; 193, 2, 3; 194, 1, 1; 194, 6, 30; 196, 1, 3; 196, 2, 8 |
| 7:26 | 157, 3, 15 |
| 7:27 | 164, 7, 19; 187, 9, 31; 190, 6, 21 |
| 7:28 | 187, 5, 16 |
| 7:29 | 194, 5, 19; 194, 5, 21 |
| 7:30 | 186, 12, 41 |
| 7:31 | 184A, 3, 5; 187, 6, 21; 187, 8, 29 |
| 8:2 | 8:3 |
| 8:5 | 8:9 |
| 8:10-11 | 179, 4 |
| 8:12 | 194, 4, 17 |
| 8:13 | 187, 8, 27 |
| 8:14 | 193, 2, 6 |
| 8:15 | 196, 3, 10 |
| 8:16 | 177, 14 |
| 8:17 | 158, 4 |
| 8:18 | 196, 3, 11 |
| 8:19 | 194, 8, 37 |
| 8:20 | 186, 7, 25 |
| 8:21 | 186, 7, 25 |
| 8:22 | 177, 7 |
| 8:23 | 158, 4 |
| 8:24 | 196, 3, 13 |
| 8:25 | 186, 6, 16; 186, 6, 19; 186, 6, 21; 194, 8, 35; 194, 8, 38 |
| 8:26 | 186, 5, 14 |
| 8:28 | 194, 6, 23 |
| 8:29-30 | 186, 5, 14; 194, 8, 34 |
| 8:30 | 194, 8, 39 |
| 8:31-32 | 194, 3, 10; 194, 8, 35 |
| 8:33 | 186, 6, 16 |
| 8:34 | 194, 8, 35 |
| 8:35 | 175, 3; 176, 2; 186, 7, 25; 186, 9, 33; 186, 10, 36 |
| 8:36 | 186, 6, 17 |
| 8:37 | 186, 6, 17 |
| 8:38 | 186, 6, 17; 194, 2, 4; 194, 3, 6; 194, 3, 10; 194, 3, 13; 194, 3, 15 |
9:19  186, 6, 18; 194, 3, 13; 194, 6, 23; 194, 6, 29
9:19-20  194, 8, 40
9:20  186, 7, 22; 194, 3, 13
9:20-21  186, 6, 18; 186, 7, 23; 194, 2, 5
9:20-21. 23  194, 6, 23
9:21  186, 6, 19; 190, 3, 9
9:21-23  194, 6, 30
9:22  186, 7, 24; 194, 6, 22
9:22-23  186, 7, 24; 190, 3, 9; 190, 3, 11; 194, 2, 5
9:23  186, 7, 24; 194, 6, 22
9:24  186, 8, 31; 196, 4, 15
9:27  186, 8, 31
9:30-32  196, 4, 15
9:30-33  186, 3, 8
9:32  184A, 2, 4
10:1  186, 11, 37
10:1-2  184A, 2, 4
10:2  186, 11, 37
10:1-2  186, 3, 9
10:3  157, 2, 4; 177, 14; 185, 9, 37; 186, 11, 37; 186, 11, 38; 196, 2, 7
10:3-4  157, 2, 6
10:4  194, 8, 36
10:9  157, 2, 7
10:10-14  196, 2, 6
10:14  194, 3, 10
10:14-17  199, 12, 48
10:14-15  196, 2, 6
10:17  198, 6, 199, 12, 50
10:21  196, 4, 15
11:1-2  196, 4, 15
11:2  186, 8, 31
11:5  186, 8, 31
11:5-6  186, 8, 31; 186, 5, 15; 186, 7, 25; 194, 8, 39
11:6  177, 8; 186, 2, 6; 186, 4, 12; 186, 8, 31
11:16  186, 6, 19
11:13  169, 1, 4; 177, 14; 194, 2, 5; 194, 3, 10; 194, 6, 23; 194, 7, 33
11:33-36  194, 2, 5
11:35  194, 3, 6
11:36  170, 3; 194, 3, 6
12:3  186, 2, 4; 194, 3, 9;
12:3-5  194, 3, 10
12:5.6  185, 9, 42
13:8  175, 3
13:9  192, 2
13:9-10  157, 2, 6; 196, 4, 16
13:9-10  167, 5, 16
13:10  157, 2, 4; 157, 2, 9;
13:10-11  157, 3, 10; 167, 3, 11;
13:10-11  167, 5, 16; 188, 3, 13
13:11-12  199, 8, 22
14:5  172, 1; 202A, 1, 3
14:23  188, 3, 13; 194, 3, 9
15:13  179, 4
1 Corinthians
1:12-13  208, 5
1:20  194, 8, 35
1:21  169, 1, 3
1:22  185, 6, 24
1:22-24  196, 4, 15
1:25  169, 1, 3
1:31  157, 2, 10; 186, 2, 4; 186, 7, 26
1:32-23  187, 8, 9; 199, 4, 12
1:34  186, 3, 10
1:35  187, 8, 26
1:36  169, 1, 2
1:37  187, 8, 29
1:38  208, 5
1:39-44  193, 4, 13
1:40-44  194, 3, 10
1:41-42  187, 5, 16; 187, 8, 26;
1:43  187, 8, 29
1:44  185, 9, 36
1:45-48  157, 2, 10; 185, 9, 38;
1:46  186, 2, 4; 186, 3, 10;
1:47-23  194, 5, 21
1:48  188, 2, 7
1:49  208, 5
1:50  157, 4, 37
1:51-45  187, 4, 15; 187, 8, 29
1:52  170, 2
1:53  157, 4, 37; 172, 1;
1:54  188, 2, 6; 189, 5;
1:55  202A, 1, 3
1:56  158, 12
1:57  157, 4, 31
1:58  194, 3, 15
1:59  199, 11, 38
1:60  199, 11, 38
1:61  157, 4, 37
1:62  157, 4, 38
1:63  157, 2, 5; 176, 2; 179, 4
1:64  185, 11, 50
1:65  187, 6, 20
1:66  184A, 3, 5
1:67  196, 4, 15
1:68  208, 5
1:69  209, 10
1:70  187, 6, 20; 194, 4, 18
1:71  173, 5; 173, 6
1:72  187, 8, 29
1:73  169, 1, 2
1:74  169, 1, 2; 169, 1, 3
1:75  164, 5, 14
1:76  175, 3; 186, 10, 36
1:77  157, 3, 14;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>1:5-6 198, 6; 199, 12, 51; 1:6 185, 1, 5; 208, 6; 1:9 177, 5; 1:10 177, 5; 1:13 187, 12, 35; 1:18 164, 3, 9; 1:24 185, 9, 40; 2:9 187, 13, 39; 2:16-17 196, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:6 185, 1, 5; 208, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:9 177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:10 177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13 187, 12, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:18 164, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:24 185, 9, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:9 187, 13, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:16-17 196, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>2:13 188, 1, 1; 3:5 205, 2, 16; 3:12 179, 4; 4:14-16 193, 4, 10; 4:16 193, 4, 9; 5:1-3 196, 3; 199, 3, 8; 5:2 198, 3; 9; 5:3 199, 11, 36; 199, 11, 37; 199, 11, 39; 199, 11, 40; 5:4-5 199, 1, 2; 199, 11, 38; 5:17-18 188, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>2:2 190, 1, 2; 199, 5, 15; 2:5-8 198, 3; 199, 3, 10; 2:7-8 199, 3, 11; 2:11 194, 2, 4; 3:2 199, 12, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:5 167, 3, 11; 2:4 168; 2:5 166, 2, 5; 187, 2, 3; 3:1 173, 2; 199, 8, 23; 3:15-16 199, 12, 50; 3:16 187, 4, 21; 4:1 199, 8, 22; 6:3 186, 8, 27; 6:16 166, 2, 3; 6:17 157, 4, 33; 6:17-19 157, 4, 26; 157, 4, 30; 186, 9, 33; 6:19 157, 4, 35; 6:20 193, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>1:7 194, 3, 15; 194, 4, 18; 2:25 186, 9, 33; 2:25-26 185, 7, 31; 2:26 182, 6; 3:1 198, 3; 199, 3, 7; 199, 8, 22; 3:2-5 199, 8, 22; 3:5-6 199, 8, 22; 4:1 199, 9, 25; 199, 11, 45; 4:8 209, 10; 198, 4; 199, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>2:12 196, 2, 8; 3:5 187, 8, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>2:9 170, 9; 10:38 186, 2, 6; 190, 2, 6; 194, 4, 21; 1:19 193, 4, 13; 2:1-6 167, 1, 3; 2:3 167, 1, 3; 2:4 167, 5, 18; 2:6-9 196, 4, 16; 2:8-9 167, 6, 19; 2:10 167, 1, 1; 167, 3, 10; 169, 4, 13; 2:12 167, 6, 19; 2:13 157, 4, 36; 167, 6, 19; 2:19 194, 3, 11; 3:2 167, 3, 10; 167, 5, 17; 167, 6, 19; 167, 6, 20; 157, 2, 10; 4:6 157, 4, 40; 5:12 157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:5 177, 5; 1:13 162, 7; 205, 2, 16; 1:17 188, 2, 6; 189, 8; 194, 5, 21; 1:19 193, 4, 13; 2:1-6 167, 1, 3; 2:3 167, 1, 3; 2:4 167, 5, 18; 2:6-9 196, 4, 16; 2:8-9 167, 6, 19; 2:10 167, 1, 1; 167, 3, 10; 169, 4, 13; 2:12 167, 6, 19; 2:13 157, 4, 36; 167, 6, 19; 2:19 194, 3, 11; 3:2 167, 3, 10; 167, 5, 17; 167, 6, 19; 167, 6, 20; 157, 2, 10; 4:6 157, 4, 40; 5:12 157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:5 187, 12, 35; 3:18-19 163; 3:18-20 164, 6, 18; 3:19 164, 1, 2; 3:20 164, 1, 2; 164, 4, 10; 3:21 164, 1, 2; 164, 4, 10; 3:21-4:2 164, 4, 10; 4:3-5 164, 4, 10; 4:5 164, 7, 21; 4:6 164, 4, 10; 164, 7, 21; 4:8 185, 10, 43; 185, 10, 44; 4:17 164, 7, 21; 5:4 208, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td>2:16 186, 5, 14; 3:8 199, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Letters 156-210

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I John</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>167, 3, 10; 167, 4, 15; 185, 9, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>185, 9, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>157, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>199, 1, 1; 199, 3, 7; 199, 6, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>189, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>177, 17; 185, 9, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>187, 13, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>185, 6, 21; 185, 6, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jude</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>185, 11, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Revelation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>164, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:7</td>
<td>187, 11, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume II/3**
Volume II/3

General Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number. The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Abel, 164:6(3); 179:8–9
abomination of desolation, 199:28–29
Abraham, 158:6; 162:5; 164:6(3)–7; 186:19
offspring of, 196:10–11, 14(4)–15, 40, 47
Abraham, bosom of, See bosom of Abraham
Abraham, Peter and (monks), See Peter and
Abraham
Absalom, 185:32(8); 204:2
Achilles, 166:3(2)
Adam, 164:6(3); 179:8; 205:19
See also original sin; specific topics
Christ as second, 157:14;
187:30(9)–34(11); 205:11–12
adultery: children of, 166:15
adversity, See suffering
Africa, 177:2; 185:29; 186:2; 199:46(12)
Ahab, King, 185:41
Albina, 202:2
Albinus, 191:1; 192:1(1)
Alypius, 176:1–5; 177:1–19; 191:1
Alypius, Aurelius and, letter from Pope
Innocent to:
brief of greeting, 184
Alypius and Augustine:
letter from Jerome to
on Caelestian, 202:1–2
letter to Juliana from
on Demetrias, consecrated virgin,
188:1(1)–14
letter to Maxinus from
on Arianism, 170:1–10
letter to Paulinus from
on Pelagian heresy, 186:1(1)–41
letter to Peregrinus from
on Maximus, 171
Ananias (in Acts), 185:22
Anapsychia, See Marcellinus
Anastasius, 165:1(1)
angels, 169:11; 187:36; 189:6
See also specific topics and events
appearances of, 158:9; 162:5
bodies of, 158:6
wicked, 189:5; 194:20
anger, 193:3(2); 210:2
of God, 186:24–25; 190:10–11; 194:5, 30
animals, 166:16(6)
animal sacrifice, 177:16; 196:3
Annanius (a Pelagian), 202:2
Antichrist, 199:10–11, 11
Antonius, bishop of Fussala, 209:1–10
Apocalypse, 187:38(13)
See also end of the world
apocryphal books, 158:6
Apollinarists, 165:1(1); 187:4
apostles, 185:22
See also individual names
Apostolic See
See also individual popes
Pelagians, as concerning (See under
Innocent, the Pope:
correspondence re. Pelagians)
Appius, 172:1
Aptus, 196:16
Arianism, 170:1–2, 8; 185:1(1), 47–48(9);
187:4
ark of Noah, See Noah’s ark
Asellicus, letter from Augustine to:
on Aptus, teaching of, 196:1(1)–16
astronomy, 199:34(10), 39
Augustine
doctrine of, 194:1(1)–47
writings of, mentioned, 162:2 (See also
specific titles)
Augustine and Alypius, joint letters, See
Alypius and Augustine
Aurelius, 175:1–5; 176:1–5; 177:1–19;
191:1; 194:1(1)
Volume II/3
Letters 156-210

Church
See also Catholic Church; Christianity; specific topics
corruption, use by, 173:2–3; 185:21(6)–25(7)
disturbances in, 169:2
favoritism in ecclesiastical honors, 167:18
scandals in, 208:1–7
and the Second Coming, 199:26
favoritism in ecclesiastical honors, 167:18
unity in, 173:5–6; 185:42–44
without spot or wrinkle, 156; 185:38–40; 187:28
Cicero, 165:2(2)
Circumcellions, 185:25(7), 41
circumcision, 194:11; 196:2, 9(3), 16
City of God, The, 169:1(1); 184A:5(3)
Claudius, letter from Augustine to: on Answer to Julian, 207
Claudius Postumus Dardanus, See Dardanus,
Cicero
coercion, use of, 185:1(1)–51
Commandments, 177:10
See also law
love, 189:2–3
concupiscence, 171A:1; 177:17; 184A:3; 187:31; 194:44, 196:5(2)–6
temptation and, 177:4
Conference of Carthage, 173:7; 185:6(2), 30
See also Donatists
consecrated virgins, See virgins, consecrated
Consentius, letter from Augustine to: on the risen Christ, 205:3(1)–19
constancy, 167:6
Constantine, Emperor, 185:6(2)
Constantius, 182:7
continence, See chastity
Corinth, 169:2
Corinthians, First Letter to, 205:6–17(3)
Cornelius, the centurion, 187:36; 189:4
correction, See punishment: rebuke
Correction of the Donatists, The, 185:1(1)–51
Council of Bagai, 173:8
Council of Carthage
letter from Pope Innocent to, 181:1–9
letter to Pope Innocent from, 175:1–5
Council of Diospolis, 179:7; 183:3; 186:2, 32(9)–33; 194:7
Council of Jerusalem, 175:1; 179:7
Council of Milevis:
letter from Pope Innocent to, 182:1–7
letter to Pope Innocent from, 176:1–5
courage, 167:5–8
cowardice, 167:6
creationism, 165:1(1); 180:2; 190:13(4)–24; 202A:9
and original sin, 166:10–11
cruelty, 180:5
crucifixion: good thief at, See good thief, the
cunning, 167:6
Cyprian, 166:23–24; 180:5
damnation, See hell
Daniel, 157:2; 185:7, 19(5); 197:1, 5; 198:3, 7
weeks of, 197:5; 198:7; 199:19(7)–21, 31–33
Dardanus, Claudius Postumus, letter from Augustine to: The Presence of God, 187:1(1)–41
David, King, 164:9; 182:3; 185:9, 32(8); 204:2, 5
death
See also martyrdom; suicide
escaping (Enoch and Elijah), 193:5, 7–8
and eternal life, 193:6
firstborn from the dead, 164:9
of infants (See under infant baptism)
killing a human being, 204:5
and resurrection (See resurrection of the dead)
sin and (See under sin: and death)
soul after, 159:1–5; 162:1–9
debt, 191:2
Demetrias: as consecrated virgin, 188:1(1)–14
demons, 169:1(1); 184A:5(3); 194:11
desires, fleshly, See concupiscence;
morality, chastity in
devil, the, 185:47; 205:16
driving out, 194:46
fighting against, 189:5
Diospolis, Council of, See Council of Diospolis
disagreements, 210:2
disciples, See individual names
doctors:
Gennadius, and life after death, 159:3–4
Maximus (See Maximus)
dog: eloquence of, 172:1; 202A:2
Donatian (primate of Byzacena), 196:1(1)
Donatists, 208:3
The Correction of the Donatists, 185:1(1)–51
dealing with, 204:1–9
Maximianist separation from (See Maximianists)
Donatus (a Donatist priest), letter from Augustine to: against suicide, 173:1–10
Letters 156-210

dove: Holy Spirit as, 169:5(2), 7, 9, 10(3)–11
Dreams, See visions
dualism (Maniches), 165:1(1)
Dulcitius, letter from Augustine to:
on dealing with Donatists, 204:1–9
Earth, end of, See end of the world
eclipses, 199:34(10)
Edomites, 196:13
Elijah, 187:17; 193:5, 7–8
Elisha, 187:17
Elizabeth, 177:16; 187:22(7)–23
emperors, 185:6(2), 19(5)–20, 27–29
See also individual names
Honorius and Theodosius, 201:1–2
end of the world, 197:1–5; 198:1–7
See also resurrection of the dead; Second Coming of Christ
The End of the World, 199:1(1)–54
enemies of grace, See Pelagians
Enoch, 193:5, 8
Epicureans, 167:4(2)
Esau, 196:13
See also under Jacob: and Esau
Eve, 179:8; 190:18
Evil, See sin
Evdou, 177:1–19
letters from Augustine to
on Christ preaching in the underworld, 164:1(1)–22
on the soul after death, 159:1–5; 162:1–9
on the Trinity, 169:1(1)–13
letters to Augustine from
on the Father and Son, 160:1–4
on the soul, visions, 158:1–12
on the soul of Christ, 163
on the virgin birth, 161:1–3
exorcism, 194:43(10), 46
exsufflation, rite of, 173:8; 185:8; 187:17; 194:43(10), 46
eyes: bodily and non-bodily, 159:3–5; 161:3; 162:4–5, 8–9; 205:1(1)
Ezekiel, 165:2(2); 185:31
faith, 171A:2; 177:11; 186:7(3)–10
as gift, 194:10–11, 15
grace and, 187:32; 194:15
_of patriarchs (See under Old Testament: patriarchs, faith of)
Faith and Works, 205:18(4)
family:
abandoning, 157:32
relations, 170:6
favoritism, 194:3(2)–5, 31(7)–32
in ecclesiastical honors, 167:18
Jacob and Esau (See under Jacob: and Esau)
Felicia, letter from Augustine to:
on scandals in the church, 208:1–7
Felicity and Rusticus, letter from Augustine to:
on tribulations and giving rebukes, 210:1–2
Felix, North African bishop, 206
fidelity, See marriage, chastity in fiery furnace; the, 123:5; 185:8; 205:4
fig tree, parable of, 199:42–44
figurative language, 180:3–4
Firmus, 172:2; 184A:7; 200:1
firstborn from the dead, 164:9
flesh, concupiscense of, See concupiscense
furnace, fiery, See fiery furnace
Fussala, 209:1–10
Galatians, Letter to, 180:4; 196:2–16
Gaudentius, 204:1–9
Gaul, 157:41; 175:1; 179:7
Genesis, Book of
See also Literal Meaning of Genesis,
The
creationist theory (See creationism)
Gennadius, 159:3–4
Jews, living like (See Galatians, Letter to)
as non-believers, 184A:5(3)
Germanus, 184
gifts of God, 157:29; 158:12; 186:10;
190:10; 194:10–11, 14–16(4)
virtues as (See virtues)
God, 160:1–4; 166:16(6)
See also Trinity

Volume II/3
Volume II/3

as Father, 160:1–4
as love, 186:7(3)
on omnipresence of, 187:7(3)–21, 35(12), 41
temples of (See temples of God)
gods, false, See idolatry
Gog and Magog, 165:2(2)
good
See also righteousness
being forced to do good, 173:2–10
good thief, the, 164:8; 187:3(2), 5
good works, See works, good
gospel: spread of, 199:46(12)–49
Goths, 185:1(1)
grace, 186:3–6, 31; 190:3; 194:3(1)
and the law (See under law: grace and)
rebirth by (See rebirth)
grace vs. free choice, 157:5–8, 10, 16–18;
179:1–10; 186:1(1)–41; 188:1(1)–14;
194:1(1)–47
See also under Innocent, the Pope: letters re. Pelagians
Nature and Grace, 168 (See Nature and Grace)

greed: and wealth, See wealth

Greeks, 196:15

Hagar, 185:9, 11; 196:12–13

hatred, 210:2

health, 187:12–13

heart:
hardened, 194:14
“Hold in check your wicked and wild
heart,” 173:10
purification of, 171A:1–2

heaven
See also eternal life
Christ as in, 187:3(2), 8–10, 41; 199:41; 205:2
paradise and, 184A:2; 187:3(2); 5–7(3)
heavens (astronomy), 199:34(10), 39
hell, 205:15
Adam, patriarchs, and prophets released from, 164:6(3)

Christ preaching in, 163; 164:1(1)–22
heresies, heresies, 185:2, 47; 194:47;
199:22(8)
See also Donatists; Pelagians; individual
groups and names

Hero and Lazarus, bishops, 175:1; 179:7
Herod, 166:16(6), 18(7)

Hesychius: letters on the end of the world
from Augustine, 197:1–5; 199:1(1)–54
to Augustine, 198:1–7

Hezekiah, 185:19(5)

Hilary (bishop of Narbonne), letter from Augustine to:
on Pelagian heresy, 178:1–3

Hilary (Catholic layman): letter from Augustine to
on Pelagian teaching in Sicily,
157:1(1)–41
letter to Augustine from
on Pelagian questions, 156

Hippo, 209:1–10

Holy of Holies, 199:33

Holy Spirit, 173A
See also Trinity
as dove, 169:7, 9, 11
Pentecost, 199:23
sin against, 185:48(9)–50

Honorius, Emperor, 182:7

Honorius and Theodosius, letter to Aurelius from:
on sanctions against the Pelagians,
201:1–2

hope, 171A:2

human nature, See free choice

idolatry, 173:5; 185:8, 12(3)
creature vs. creator, worshiping,
184A:5(3)

immortality, 187:11(4)–12
time and, 166:14

infant baptism, 202A:17(8)
See also original sin

Catholic view, 166:6(3), 28; 184A:2;
186:11(4); 194:44–46

infant death and, 194:31(7)–32

Pelagian view, 157:11(3); 184A:2;
186:12, 30; 193:3(2)–4;
194:42–43(10)
temples of God, infants as, 187:21,
26(8)–27, 29

infants, 187:22(7)–25

baptism of (See infant baptism, above)
souls of (See under soul: origin of)
and suffering, 166:16(6)

Innocent, the pope: letters regarding
Pelagians, 186:2; 190:22
from the Council of Carthage, 175:1–5
to the Council of Carthage, 181:1–9
from the Council of Milevis, 176:1–5
to the Council of Milevis, 182:1–7
from five bishops, 177:1–19
to five bishops, 183:1–5

intelect, human, 158:11; 169:4

intercourse, sexual, 184A:3; 187:31
See also concupiscence; marriage, chastity in

Isaac, 164:6(3); 196:12–13, 14(4)
twin sons of (See under Jacob: and
Esau)

Ishmael, 165:2(2); 196:12–13
Letters 156-210

Israel, 185:41; 196:11–16

Jacob, 164:6(3); 199:39
and Esau, 186:13(5)–21; 187:24;
194:34(8)–39; 196:13; 202A:8(4)
those who came from his loins, 190:18–19

James, apostle: The Opinion of James,
167:1(1)–21
James, Timasius and, See Timasius and James
Jeremiah, 187:32(1)–10; 198:37
Jerome, 180:1–5; 190:20(6)–21; 197:1, 5;
199:9; 202A:1(1)–6
Jerusalem, 196:12
Council of, 175:1; 179:7
destruction of, 198:3; 199:25(9)–31
John as bishop (See John, bishop of
Jerusalem)
Jesus Christ, 164:19(7)–20; 187:4, 34
See also God; Trinity; specific topics and
events
Adam, as second (See under Adam: Christ
as second)
birth of (See virgin birth)
as God and man, 187:8–10, 39–40
as mediator, 166:3; 187:34(11); 190:5(2)
present in spirit before coming in the flesh,
164:17(6)–18
as servant, 170:9
as Son of God, 160:1(4) (See also Trinity)
soul of, 163; 164:19(7)–20
as Word of God (See Word of God)
Jews: Christians living like, 196:1(1)–16
See also Galatians, Letter to
Job, 164:2; 166:16(6)
John, bishop of Jerusalem, 186:36
letter from Augustine to
on Pelagianism, 179:1–10
John the Baptist, 187:22–27; 32(10)
Jonah, 166:21
Joseph (husband of Mary), 158:9; 187:33
Joseph (son of Jacob), 199:39
Josephus, 199:30
Joshua, 199:30
Josiah, 185:19(5)
Jovinian, 166:6(3); 21; 167:4(2), 10(3)

judgment:
of God, inscrutable, 167:20; 186:12, 20;
194:6(3), 33
judging others, 157:37–39;
167:19(6)–20
the last, 199:45
Julian of Eclanum, 206
Answer to Julian, 207
Juliana, letter from Alypius and Augustine
to:
on Demetrias as consecrated virgin,
188:1(1)–14
justice, 167:5, 6; 171A:1, 2; 194:4–5
justification, 177:9, 11; 186:10; 194:6(3)–8;
196:6
killing a human being, 204:5
kindness, 171A:1
kings, 173:10; 185:19(5)–20
See also specific names
language:
figurative, 180:3–4
speaking in tongues, 199:23
Largus, letter from Augustine to:
on suffering and the world to come, 203
law
See also Commandments
grace and, 157:6, 9; 177:2–14; 190:7;
194:28; 196:3–6
The Opinion of the Apostle James,
167:1(1)–21
sin and (See under sin: the law and)
Whoever observes the whole law, but
offends on one point, 167:1(2)–21
Lawrence of Caesarea, 209:8
laws against the Donatists, See Correction
of the Donatists, The
Lazarus, 164:7
Lazarus (bishop). Hero and, See Hero and
Lazarus
lies, lying, 157:40; 180:3
Literal Meaning of Genesis, The, 159:2;
162:2
love, 167:14(5)–17; 171A:2; 177:10;
186:7(3); 189:2–3; 192:1–2; 194:11
disagreements and, 210:2
faith and, 186:7(3); 194:11
freedom and, 167:19(6)
if I...do not have love, it profits me
nothing, 173:5–6
Lucifer, bishop of Cagliari, Sardinia,
185:47
Lucifer (devil), See devil
Luke, Gospel of, 199:25(9), 27–31, 40,
43–44

Volume II/3
Volume II/3

lust, See concupiscense

Maccabees, Books of, 204:6–8
Macedonians, 185:48(9)
Magnitude of the Soul, 162:2
Manichees, 165:1(1), 166:7
Marcellinus, 166:7; 169:13; 190:20(6)
Marcellinus and Anapsychia, letter from Jerome to:

on origin of the soul, 165:1(1)–3(3); 166:8(4)
Marius Mercator, See Mercator, Marius
Mark, Gospel of, 199:25(9), 27–30, 32, 39, 43–44
marriage, chastity in, 157:39; 167:10(3); 184A:3; 189:7; 200:1–3
Marriage and Desire, 200:1–3; 206; 207
martyrs, martyrdom, 166:18(7); 185:8–9, 20; 204:4
See also individual names
Mary, See virgin birth
Matthew, Gospel of, 199:25(9), 27–30, 32, 39, 44–45
Mauritania Sitifensis, 185:6(2)
Maximian, Catholic bishop of Bagai, 185:26–28
Maximianists, 173:8; 185:17, 47
Maximus (physician), 171
letter from Alypius and Augustine to
on Arianism, 170:10–10
letter from Augustine to
on purity of heart, 171A:1–2
Melania, 202:2
Melchizedek, 177:12
Mercator, Marius, letter to Augustine from:
on Pelagians and second coming, 193:1(1)–13
mercy, 194:14
and favoritism (See favoritism)
of God, 167:20; 190:9(3)–12; 194:4, 6(3), 14
for others, 167:19(6)–20; 171A:1–2
Milevis, Numidia, bishop of (See Optatus)
Council of (See Council of Milevis)
military, See soldiers; war
miracles, 162:6–7; 185:24; 187:23–24, 36
money, See wealth
moon, 199:34(10), 39
morons, 166:17
Moses, 158:6; 196:16
Mount Sinai, 196:9, 12
Naboth, 185:41
nature, human, See free choice
Nature and Grace (book by Augustine), 168; 179:2
Nature (book by Pelagius), 179:2–10; 183:5; 186:1(1)
Nebuchadnezzar, King, 185:8, 19(5)
nedy: helping, 171A:1
Neoplatonists, 165:1(1)
neborns, See infants
Ninevah, 164:2; 185:19(5)
Noah: non-believers in time of, 164:1(1)–22
Noah’s ark, 187:38(13)
non-believers:
as already judged, 205:14
discussing religion with, 184A:6
God’s foreknowledge of, 186:26; 190:9(3)–12; 194:12
infants as, 193:2(4)
Noah, at time of, 164:1(1)–22, 15
praying for, 184A:4(2); 186:38
preaching to, 169:3
two kinds of, 184A:5(3)–6
Numidia: Milevis, See Council of Milevis
paths (swearing), 157:40
Ocean, 199:47
Oceanus, 165:2(2)–3(3)
letter from Augustine to
on creationism and Paul’s rebuke to Peter, 180:1–5
Old Testament:
Christ as mediator, 187:34
patriarchs, faith of, 157:14; 177:12;
190:6, 8
olive trees, 184A:3; 194:44
Opinion of the Apostle James, The, 167:1(1)–21, 1(2)–21; 202A:3
Optatus (bishop of Milevis), 185:6(2)
letters from Augustine to
on the origin of the soul, 202A:1(1)–20
on the soul and original sin, 190:1(1)–26
Origen, 165:1(1); 169:13; 202A:8(4)
Origin of the Soul, The, 166:1(1)–28;
169:13; 202A:1(1), 3
See also under soul: origin of original sin, 157:12–13, 19–21; 186:33;
187:31; 190:3
creationist theory and, 166:10–11
grace and (See grace)
infant baptism (See infant baptism)
lust and (See concupiscence)
Orosius, 166:2; 169:13; 172:1; 175:1; 180:5
pagans, 184A:5(3)
poets and philosophers, 164:4
Palestine, 165:2(2); 177:2; 186:2, 27(8)
See also Council of Diospolis

Letters 156-210
Letters 156-210

parables:
  banquet, 185:24
  fig tree, 199:42–44
  three good servants, 199:52(13)–54
  virgins, 199:45
  paradise, 184A:2; 187:3(2), 5–7
  See also heaven

partiality, See favoritism

patriarchs, Old Testament, See under Old Testament: patriarchs

Paul, apostle, Saint, 185:22–24, 22–28
  rebuking Peter (Christians living like Jews), 180:4; 196:1(1)–16
  Paula, 172:2
  See also Eustochium

Paulinus, letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
  on Pelagianism as heresy, 186:1(1)–41

peace: war and, 189:6
  peace and security, 199:37

Pelagians, 156; 178:1; 190:22; 196:7
  See also free choice; grace; infant baptism dealing with, 178:2–3; 191:1–2 (See also under Innocent, the pope; correspondence re. Pelagians)
  sanctions against, 201:1–2
  in Sicily, 156; 157:1(1)–41

Pelagius, 175:1; 186:1(1), 27(8)
  See also Pelagians, above
  Nature, book by (See Nature)
  Pentecost, 199:23

Peregrinus, letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
  on Maximus, 171
  perjury, 157:40
  persecution, 185:9–11
  Peter, apostle, Saint, 185:22, 46
    First Letter of, 164:1(1)–22
    Paul’s rebuke of (See under Paul: rebuking Peter)
  Peter and Abraham (monks), letter from Augustine to:
    on Christian doctrines, 184A:1(1)–7
    philosophers, 164:3(2)
    See also specific names and topics

Phoenicia, 165:2(2)

Photinius, 185:48(9)

physicians, See doctors

piety, 167:11; 171A:1

Pinius, 202:2

Platonists, 165:1(1)

pleasures, bodily, See under concupiscence
  poets, 164:4
  poor: helping, 171A:1
  popes, See Boniface; Celestine; Innocent; Zosimus

possessions, See wealth

Possidius, 177:1–19

poverty:
  helping the needy, 171A:1
  virtue and, 157:157:23(4)–38

prayer:
  daily, for forgiveness, 185:38
  as gift, 194:15
  Holy Spirit and, 194:16(4)–18
  as sacrifice, 177:16
  against temptation, 177:4, 16; 186:41

preaching:
  “foolishness” of, 160:3
to whole world, 199:46(12)–49
  predestination, 186:25; 187:37; 190:9
  Presence of God, The, 187:1(1)–41
  pride, 165:1(1), 194:21
  Primian, 173:8; 185:17
  Priscillianists, 165:1(1); 166:7; 169:13; 202A:8(4)

Priscus of Caesarea, 209:8

prison, spirits held in, See under hell: Christ preaching in

Privatus, 158:9

Profuturus, 158:9

propagation of souls, 190:2, 13(4)–19, 23–25; 202A:8(4), 10–14

prudence, 167:5; 171A:2

punishment, 186:12, 16(6)
  coercion, use by Church, 173:2–3; 185:21(6)–25(7)
  eternal (See hell)
  rebukes, giving, 210:2

purity of heart, 171A:1–2

Pythagoras, 165:1(1)

rabbi: teacher, 166:9

Razis, 204:6–8

reason, 160:1–3; 161:1
  rebaptism, 185:22, 43(10); 204:4
  Rebekah/Rebecca, 187:24; 194:37
  See also under Jacob: and Esau
  rebirth, 166:5; 187:30(9)–34(11)
  infants and (See infant baptism)
  rebukes, giving, 210:2
  relatives, See family
  resurrection of Christ, 164:14(5); 205:5–6, 8–11
  firstborn from the dead, 164:9
  resurrection of the dead, 164:9; 180:4; 205:6–16
  See also end of the world; Second Coming of Christ
  revenge, 167:6

riches, See wealth
righteousness, 177:11; 185:37–38, 41
source of, 157:5, 13–14; 177:13–14;
185:42; 186:8–10; 190:8
Rome, 165:2(2); 177:2; 185:28; 199:35,
46(12)–47
Rufinus, 165:1(1)
Rusticus, Felicity and, letter from Augustine to:
on tribulations and giving rebukes,
210:1–2
Sabbath, 196:3, 8
sacraments, 182:5; 186:28
See also baptism; specific sacraments
old, 196:3
sacrifice:
animal, 177:16; 196:3
prayer as, 177:16
saints, 186:25
Sallust, 166:14; 167:6; 172:1; 202A:3
salvation, 173:10; 186:31; 190:6
everlasting (See eternal life)
by grace through faith (See faith; grace)
preaching and, 169:3
Samuel, 158:6
sanctification, 187:32
Sarah, 185:9, 11; 194:37; 196:12–13
Satan, See devil
Saul, King, 158:6; 185:9; 204:5
Saul (Paul), See Paul
scandals in the Church, 208:1–7
schism, schismatics, 185:2, 44–45, 47; 204:2;
208:3
See also Donatists; heretics; individual
groups and names
Second Coming of Christ
See also end of the world; resurrection of
the dead
the living at time of, 193:9(4)–13
self-righteousness, 187:37–39
Septugint, 172:2
servant: Christ as, 170:9; 205:12
servants, parable of three good,
199:52(13)–54
Servilius, 158:9; 11
Seth, 164:6(3)
sex:
abstaining from (See chastity; virginity)
desire (See concupiscence)
tercourse, 184A:3; 187:31
in marriage (See marriage, chastity in)
Shadrach, Meschach, and Abednego, See fiery
furnace
shame, 186:40
Sicily, 156; 157:1(1)–41
sight
See also eyes; visions
seeing God, 169:3
signs, 169:7; 185:24; 196:15; 198:5
of end times, 199:17, 22(8)–23, 34(10),
39, 45
sin, 194:27
baptism and (See baptism)
Christ as without, 164:19(7)–20; 190:25
and death, 164:21; 193:6–7, 12
degrees of, 167:17
excuses for, 194:22(6)–29
forgiveness of (See forgiveness)
free choice and (See free choice)
grace and, 194:29–30
against the Holy Spirit, 185:48(9)–50
the law and, 157:9, 15; 167:10(3)–20;
194:25
living without, people described as,
157:2, 4
love and, 167:14(5)–17
original (See original sin)
personal, 194:27
vices, 167:6–9
Sinai, Mount, 196:9, 12
Sitifis, 185:6(2)
Sixtus, letters from Augustine to:
on grace, baptism, and God’s judgment,
194:1(1)–47
on Pelagianism, 191:1–2
sobriety, 189:7
soldiers, 189:4–6
Solomon, King, 158:12; 187:35(12); 199:47
Son of God: Christ as, See Jesus Christ;
Trinity
soul:
after death, 158:4–8, 11; 159:1–5;
162:1–9
of Christ, 163; 164:19(7)–20
creationist view, 165:1(1) (See also
creationism)
origin of, 166:1(1)–28; 180:2;
190:1(1)–2, 4–5(2);
202A:17(8)–20; 205:19
The Origin of the Soul, 166:1(1)–28
propagation of, theory (See propagation
of souls)
Spain, 166:2
Spirit, See Holy Spirit
stars, See astronomy
stinginess, 167:6
Stoics, 165:1(1); 167:12–13
stubbornness, 167:6
suffering, 203; 210:1
of infants, 166:16(6)
suicide, 173:1–10, 4–6; 185:12(3), 14,
32(8)–34(10); 204:1–8
sun, 199:34(10), 39
swearing, 157:40
symbols, See signs

Letters 156-210
Letters 156-210

Syracuse in Sicily, 156; 157:1(1)–41
Syria, 165:2(2)

teacher, 166:9–10
temperance, 171A:2
temple in Jerusalem, 198:3; 199:33
temples of God, 170:2; 187:19–21, 26(8)–27, 29, 35(12)–39
becoming, 187:32
temptation, 162:7; 177:4; 178:3; 205:16
prayer regarding, 186:41
struggles with, 186:33

Ten Commandments

See also law
love, 189:2–3

Terence, 185:2(6)
Tertullian, 165:1(1); 190:14

Thamugadi, 204:6–8
Theodosius, 185:25(7)
Honorius and (See Honorius and Theodosius)

thief, the good, See good thief, the three good servants, parable of,

Timasius and James, 177:6; 179:2; 186:2
letter to Augustine from on grace, 168
time: immortality and, 166:14

To Turbantius, 207
Toth, 158:6
tongues, speaking in, 199:23
torture, See punishment

trials and tribulations, See suffering
Trinity, the, 164:17(6); 169:5(2)–11; 170:2–9; 171A:1; 187:15–16(5)
See also God

Trinity, The (book by Augustine), 162:2; 169:1(1); 174
troubles, See suffering

True Religion, 162:2
Tully (Cicero), 165:2(2)
twins, See Jacob and Esau

unbelievers, See non-believers
underworld, 187:5–6
See also hell

Christ preaching in, 164:1(1)–22

Valerius, 207

letters from Augustine to commending Felix, 206
on Marriage and Desire, 200:1–3

Vandals, 166:2
vices, 167:6–9
Victor of Caesarea, 209:8
violence: of Donatists, See Donatists
Virgil, 165:2(2); 190:10
virgin birth, the, 161:1–3; 162:6–7; 164:19(7); 187:31, 33
virginal conception found in nature, 161:1–3
virginity, 188:6
See also chastity

virgins, consecrated:
Demetrias as, 188:1(1)–14
Eustochium, 172:2; 202:2
Felicia, 208:1–7
virgins, parable of, 199:45
virtues, 167:4(2)–18; 189:7
See also specific virtues

cardinal and theological, 171A:2
and self-righteousness, 157:38

vision (sight)
See also eyes
seeing God, 169:3
visions, 158:3; 9–10; 159:2–5; 162:3–9

Gennadius and (life after death), 158:3–4

Volusian, 161:1; 162:6

war, 199:35
and peace, 189:6
wealth:
Christians and, 157:23(4)–38; 186:33
of the wicked, 185:35(9)–37, 40–42

weeks of Daniel, See under Daniel: weeks of wickedness, See sin
will, free, See free choice
wisdom, 158:12; 167:11–13; 171A:1
wisdom of God, Christ as, 170:4
women: silence in church, 169:2
Word of God, 160:4; 169:7–8; 187:40
See also Jesus Christ
works, good
See also grace vs. free choice
free choice and, 157:5
world, end of, See end of the world

worm: I am a worm and no man, 161:1
their worm will not die, 205:14

Zechariah, 177:16
Zosimus, the pope, 190:22–23; 191:2; 194:1(1)
Index from

Letters 211-270

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/4
Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-209-8, 6 x 9 in., 352 pp., 2005
Includes:

Letters 1*-29* (Divjak)
(Epistulae 1*-29*)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>4:3</th>
<th>3*, 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>216, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8.3</td>
<td>250, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>258, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
<td>218, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>266, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:21</td>
<td>243, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:7</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genesis</th>
<th>1:28</th>
<th>6*, 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>5*, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Leviticus | 19:18 | 233 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deuteronomy</th>
<th>6:4</th>
<th>238, 3, 18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>233, 258, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:39</td>
<td>219, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2 Samuel    | 21:17 | 228, 10 |

| Tobit       | 12:7  | 237, 4; 257, 8 |

| Judith      | 16:15 | 227 |

| Job         | 7:1   | 217, 4, 14 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>25:17</th>
<th>220, 10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36:10</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:5-6</td>
<td>218, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:23</td>
<td>217, 1, 3; 217, 2, 5; 218, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:5</td>
<td>216, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:9</td>
<td>263, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:5</td>
<td>270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
<td>218, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:10</td>
<td>266, 2; 266, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>214, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:10</td>
<td>217, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:39</td>
<td>238, 2, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86:11</td>
<td>217, 4, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:8</td>
<td>214, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:17</td>
<td>216, 5; 248, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98:1</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100:3</td>
<td>231, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>2*, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:4</td>
<td>238, 2, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:7</td>
<td>270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:16</td>
<td>237, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:19</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:4</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:125</td>
<td>214, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:158</td>
<td>248, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>216, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143:2</td>
<td>216, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:7</td>
<td>237, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149:1</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th>4:26</th>
<th>215, 7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:26-27</td>
<td>215, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>215, 7; 218, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
<td>217, 2, 5; 217, 6, 23; 218, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8 LXX</td>
<td>220, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12 LXX</td>
<td>264, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>228, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Letters 211-270
### Letters 211-270

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Volume II/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27:20 LXX</td>
<td>211, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>238, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>3*, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>217, 4, 15; 217, 6, 21; 217, 6, 22; 226, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>3*, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25, 27</td>
<td>238, 4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>238, 4, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>248, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>2*, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>2*, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>220, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>221, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:24</td>
<td>247, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:16</td>
<td>263, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:17, 19</td>
<td>263, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>2*, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:10</td>
<td>216, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:10</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>238, 4, 24; 242, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>218, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:34</td>
<td>266, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>217, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:4</td>
<td>250, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>242, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>229, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>2*, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>264, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>4*, 4; 265, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>217, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>243, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>220, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>263, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30-31</td>
<td>258, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>248, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:38</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:32</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>217, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:25</td>
<td>220, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>258, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>265, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>238, 4, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26-32</td>
<td>243, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>243, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:33</td>
<td>243, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:33</td>
<td>243, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>258, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>263, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:46</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:62</td>
<td>265, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume II/4**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>231, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>217, 6, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>217, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>219, 1; 238, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>237, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>2*, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:7-9</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>243, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>219, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:2-3</td>
<td>219, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>268, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>1:5-4</td>
<td>217, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>217, 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>215, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>238, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>238, 3, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>217, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>220, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>228, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>242, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>219, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>243, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>217, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>218, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>217, 1; 217, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>20*, 32; 228, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:27</td>
<td>211, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>238, 2, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>238, 2, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:8-9</td>
<td>231, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>268, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>217, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>265, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>20*, 28; 263, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>3*, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>263, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>263, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>237, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>238, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>217, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>238, 2, 11; 238, 4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>220, 3; 231, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>217, 6, 19; 225, 4; 225, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>243, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>243, 12; 262, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>3*, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>3*, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>238, 2, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>18*, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:25-26</td>
<td>262, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>248, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>211, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>237, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>217, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>214, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>214, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>266, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>250, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>2*, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>2*, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5-6</td>
<td>262, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>237, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:14-16</td>
<td>214, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume II/4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 John</th>
<th>2:15-17</th>
<th>220, 6; 220, 9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>211, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>211, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>228, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:8,16</td>
<td>219, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>218, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revelation</th>
<th>3:19</th>
<th>247, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:13</td>
<td>217, 6, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Letters 211-270

General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number.
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Abgar, king of Edessa, 230:5
Abraham, 265:4
Adam, 217:9, 11; 226:5–6
See also original sin
  Christ as second Adam, 217:11
adultery, 259:1; 262:1, 5; 6*:7
adversity, 244:1–2
Aeneid, 230:1; 2*:3; 12*:15
Africa, 11*:26
See also specific names, topics, events, and locations
Aurelius as primate (See Aurelius, bishop of Carthage)
  scriptural commentary in, 27*:2
slave trade in, 10*:2–8
African bishops:
  letter to Gallic bishops from
  on Leorius, 219
  African Council, 215:2
  Agapius (bishop), 11*:2–21
aging process, the, 213:1
Alexandria, 228:6; 4*
almsgiving, See charity
Alypius, 220:3; 224:2; 238:4; 248:2; 16*:1–2; 20*:12, 15; 23A*:1; 28*:4
  letters from Augustine to
  on books of Julian and Caelestius, 10*
  on converts to Christianity, 227
  on rape of nun, 9*
  memorandum to Thagaste clerics, 15*:1–2
Alypius and Peregrinus:
  letter from Augustine to
  on church problems, 22*
Ambrose, bishop of Milan, 222:2; 29*:2
amulets, 245:2
anathematization: of Classicianus, 250–250A
  angels, 234:2
  bad, 217:9–10; 2*:9–10
anger, 211:14
Anna, 262:9
Answer to Julian, 225:3
Answer to the Skeptics, 212A; 1A*:3
Antoninus of Fussala, 20*:1–33
apocryphal books, 237:2–4
apostles: baptism of, 265:1–8
Apostolic See, See individual popes;
  specific topics and events
Arianism, 228:10; 238–242; 23A*:3
Homoean, 220:2
Asterius, Count, 11*:4–20
astrology, 246:1–3
Athanasius, bishop of Alexandria, 228:6, 10
Atticus, letter from Augustine to:
  on correcting Pelagian errors, 6*
  attire, See clothing
Audax:
  letter from Augustine to
  rejecting flattery of, 261
letter to Augustine from
  on wisdom, 260
Augustine
See also African bishops
  congregation of, his letter to
  on help repaying a debt, 268
  writings of, mentioned, 224:2 (See also specific titles)
Aurelius, bishop of Carthage, 219; 231:7;
  4*:2; 23A*:3
See also African bishops
  letter from Augustine to
  on Alypius and Pelagians, 16*
  letter from Jerome to, 27*:1–3
Aurelius of Macomades, 20*:9, 12
authority: abuse of, 247:1–4
Auxentius, 238:4
Auxilius, 250A
letter from Augustine to
on Classicianus, anathematization of, 250

baptism, 227; 265:1–8; 2*:3–11
grace and, 217:16(5)
infant (See infant baptism)
the Lord’s Prayer at, 5*:2
martyrdom counted as, 265:4
and penance, 265:2, 6–8
barbarians, 10*:2–5; 11*:2, 20
See also pagans
attacks, dealing with, 220:3, 7; 228
Bassus, 7*:1–2
bathing, 211:13
beating: as punishment, 8*:2; 20*:5
Belial, 245:2
believers, See Christians
Benenatus of Simitthus, letters from
Augustine to:
on orphaned girl, 253–254
Béziers, council at, 11*:23–24
bishops, 11*:20
See also clergy; individual names
African, letter to Gallic, 219
as human beings, 250:3
letters on Pelagian heresy, 215:2
removal of abusive, 20*:1–33
blasphemies, See heresies
body:
lusts of (See concupiscence)
and soul, 238:12
Boniface, Count, 7*:1
as general, 229
letters from Augustine to
dissolute life, reprimanding, 220
on shipwreck, 17*
Boniface, the pope, 16*:3; 20*:11–12; 22*:7;
23A*:5
books, 211:13
See also specific titles
by Augustine, 224:2
Cælestius, 10*:1; 12*:16
Carthage, 22*:5–11; 23*:1–2
Calamis: Possidius as bishop, See Possidius
canonical books (scriptures): Priscillianists
and, 237:2–8
Cauna: Honorius as bishop, See Honorius
Carthage, 15*:2; 16*:2; 27*:1–3
See also specific topics and events
Aurelius as bishop (See Aurelius, bishop of Carthage)
clerics, letter from Augustine to
on his safe return to Hippo, 25*
Council of (See Council of Carthage)
Cataphrygians, 237:2
Catiline, 259:2
Cato, 2*:12
Celestine, the pope, 9*:1, 4; 10*:1
celibacy, See chastity; continence
Ceretius, letter from Augustine to:
on Priscillianist teaching, 237
charity, 243:12; 262:4–9; 265:8; 268:2
chastity, 259:1–5; 6*:5
See also continence
nuns and, 211:10–11
virginity, consecrated (See consecrated virgins)
childbirth, 6*:7
choice, free, See free choice
Chrisimus, letter from Augustine to:
on discouragement, persevering
through, 244
Christ, See Jesus Christ
Christian faith
See also specific topics
enemies of (See under enemies: of
Christian faith)
spread, scripture foretelling, 232:3–4
Christians:
bad, 249
prayer for, 217:14, 28
Christinus, letter from Augustine to:
on love and letters, 256
sending love and encouragement, 256
Church
See also specific topics
“defenders of,” 20*:6
scandals in, 249
Church:
dedication of new, 269
as sanctuary, 250:1–2; 250A; 1*:3, 5
Cicero, 231:3; 242:5; 258:1, 4; 259:2;
2*:12; 12*:1
Cillenius, Gallic bishop, 219
Circumcellions, 28*:7
circumcision, 265:4; 6*:7
City of God, The, 212A; 1A*:1–3; 2*:2–3;
23A*:3
Classicarius, 250–250A
letters from Augustine to
on anathematization, 250A; 1*
cleanliness: of clothing, 211:10
clergy:
during barbarian invasion, 228
demands on, 22*:1
difficulty finding, 22*:1
and impurity, 18*:1–3
and sexual temptation, 13*:1–3
clerics, See clergy
clothing:
appropriate, for women, 262:9–10
care and custody of, 211:12–13
expensive, 245:1
Communication, Ten, See Ten Commandments
communion: withholding, 15*:3; 20*:7, 11;
23A*:6
community living, 211:5–6
concubines, See prostitution
concupiscence, 259:3
fighting against, 220:6, 9–11
and God's will, 2*:8–10
in marriage, 6*:3–8
nuns and, 211:10–11
and original sin, 2*:10
Confessions, The, 231; 12*:1, 4
consecrated virgins, 212; 263
and chastity, 6*:5
and consecrated widowhood, 3*:1–4
Consentius, letters to Augustine from:
on leisure vs. learning, 12*
on the Priscillianists, 11*
Constantinople, 6*
Constantius, the emperor, 228:6
continence, 220:12
See also chastity; virginity
in marriage, 262:1–11
conversion of non-believers:
prayer for (See under non-believers: prayer for)
copyists, 27*:3
Cornelius the centurion, 265:3
Cornelius (widower), letter from Augustine to:
on eulogy request, 259
cosmetics, use of, 245:1
Council of Africa (African Council), 215:2
council at Béziers, 11*:23–24
Council of Carthage, 213:5; 215:2; 10*:1;
26*:1–2; 28*:2
Council of Diospolis, 217:18(6); 4*:2;
19*:2–4
Council of Nicaea, 213:4; 238:4; 22*:5
Council of Numidia, 213:5; 215:2
Council of Sardica, 26*:1
Count Boniface, 7*:1
Count Sebastian, 7*:1–2
Cresconius (estate supervisor), 14*:2; 15*:3–4
Cresconius (monk), 214:1; 215:1
Crimes
See also specific topics and events
punishment for (See punishment)
Cyprian, 212A; 215:3; 1A*: 25*: 27*: 29*:2
on The Lord's Prayer, 217:2–3, 6
Mortality, 217:22
Cypriana, 259:1–5
Cyril, letter from Augustine to:
on The Deeds of Pelagius, 4*
Cyrus, bishop of Carthage, 27*:1
Damasus, the pope, 27*:1–2
Darius, Count, 231:7
letters from Augustine to
on negotiating peace, 229; 231
letters to Augustine from
on negotiating peace, 230
David, King, 228:10
deacon
See also clergy; individual names
office of, 26*:1–2
death:
eternal, 217:19
grace and, 217:22
in the Lord, 217:16(5), 22
mourning, 263:1–4
of a spouse, 259:1–5
debate: with Pascentius, 238:1–9
decretal: of Fascius, 208:1–3
deeds (good works), See good works
Deeds of Pelagius, The, 4*:1–5
defenders of the church,” 20*:6
demons:
defenders also believe and tremble, 2*:6
jewelry linked to, 245:2
Deogratias, 249; 25*
desires, worldly, See concupiscence
Deuterius, 22*:5; 23A*:5
letter from Augustine to
on Manicheanism, 236
devil: as power of darkness, 217:8(3)–11
Dioscorus, 227
Diospolis, Council of, See Council of
Diospolis
discipline, See punishment
discouragement: persevering through, 244:1–2
Donatius of Suppa, 21*: 26*
Donatian (primate), 23A*:4
Donatists, 245:2; 249; 11*:25–26; 23A*:3;
28*:1–7
Dorotheus, 15*:3–4
letter from Augustine to
on employee accused of crime, 14*
dress, See clothing
earrings, 245:2
Ecland, Julian of, 10*
eloquence: oratory, art of, 2*:12–13
Elpidius, letter from Augustine to:
on the Trinity, 242
enemies:
of Christian faith, 217:6, 10
loving, 220:8
praying for, 215:3

Volume II/4
Letters 211-270

Volume II/4

Ennius, 231:3
enslavement, See slavery
Epiphanius of Salamis, 222:2; 223:2
Esther, Queen, 262:10
eternal fire, 4*:3
See also hell
eternal life, 217:19; 263:2–4
Eucharist, 216:2
Eulogius of Caesarea, 19*:4
eulogy: request by Cornelius for, 259
Eunomius, 238:4
eunuchs, 3*:3
Eusebius of Caesarea, 230:5
Eustochius, letter from Augustine to:
on enslavement, cases of, 24*
evil
See also sin
free choice and, 217:8(3)–10 (See also free choice)
God as permitting, 2*:8–10
good and, 215:4–8
good use made of, 215:8; 264:1–2; 2*:8
repaying good for, 220:8
excommunication, See anathematization
exhortation, 226:5
Fabiola, letters from Augustine to:
on Antoninus of Fussala, 20*
on heaven vs. earth, 267
faith, 217:10
grace and, 214:4; 217:24–30 (See also grace)
without works, 2*:6
family:
charity beginning with, 243:12; 262:7–9
renouncing for Christ, 243:2–10
of sinner, punishing, 1*:1–2, 5
Fascius, 268:1–3
fasting, 211:8; 265:8
fate: and astrology, 246:1–3
Father, God as, See Trinity
Faustinus, letter from Augustine to:
on settling financial issue, 7*
Felician, 7*:1–2
Felix (deacon):
letter from Augustine to on virginity and consecrated widowhood, 3*
Felix (layman), 254
letter from Augustine to on orphaned girl, 252
Felix (monk), 214:1; 215:1
fire, eternal, 4*:3
See also hell
Firmus, 248:2
letters from Augustine to
on baptism, 2*
on The City of God, 1A*; 212A
flattery, 260; 261:2
See also praise
flesh, desires of, See concupiscence
flirtation, 211:10–11
Florentina, letter from Augustine to:
on teaching, 266
Florentinus (domesticus), 7*:1
Florentinus (pagan), 232:7
Florentius (bishop of Hippo Diarytus), 219
Florus (monk), 214:6; 215A; 215:3, 8; 216:2–4, 6
foreknowledge, divine, See predestination
forgiveness, 211:14
fornication, 259:1; 262:2; 6*:7
See also concupiscence
Fortunatus of Aquilea, 27*:2
fortune: and astrology, 246:1–3
France, See Gaul
free choice
faith and, 217:23
God as causing, 217:1
grace and, 214:1–3, 6–7; 215:4–8; 217:4–24
original sin and, 217:12(4)
Free Will, 226:8
friendship, 258:1–4
Fronto, 11*:1–23
Fussala, bishop of, 20*:1–33
Gabinian, 227
Galatians (slave merchants), 10*:7–8
Galla, the widow, 212
Gallic bishops:
letter from African bishops to, 219
garb, garments, See clothing
Gaudentius, 23A*:3
Gaul
See also specific topics and events
bishops in, letter from African bishops to
on Leporius, 219
garbage, controversy on, 225–226
generosity, 268:2
See also charity
Genesis 6:3, 5*:3
Germania (place), 251
Giddaba: slave trade, 10*:6
Gift of Perseverance, The, See Prosper of Aquitaine
gifts, material: nuns and, 211:12
gifts (talents): right use of, 2*:12–13
Gitta: rejected as priest, 18*:1–2
Letters 211-270

God
See also specific topics
as just, 217:20
three persons of (See Trinity)
will of (See will of God)
the Word (See Word)
good:
and evil (See evil: good and)
repaying evil with, 220:8
seeking common, 211:12
good will: grace and, 215:1, 4–8; 217:5, 16(5)–17
good works, 217:10
among non-believers, 217:10
faith without, 2*:6
gospels: spread of, 226:3
grace, 214–217; 225–226
controversy among monks, 214–216; 225–226
and faith (See under faith: grace and)
and free choice (See Free choice)
and good will (See under good will: grace and)
as gratuitous, 217:19–21
infants and (See infants baptism)
and law, 217:1–12(4), 23
and righteousness, lack of, 2*:6
and teaching and, 217:12(4)
the Twelve Propositions, 217:16(5)–18(6), 25–26(7)
Grace and Free Choice, 215:1, 2; 216:1; 226:10
See also Hadrumetum, monks of
grandchildren, desire for, 3*:1–4
Greek language, 238:4; 261:5; 5*:3
Greeks, 4*:5
grey hair, 218:1
grief, 263:3
Hadrrian, 10*:3
Hadrumetum, monks of, 214–215; 225:2
hair: women covering, 245:1
happiness:
false, 2*:10
the happy life, 233
hatred: anger and, 211:14
heaven, See eternal life
hell, 4*:3
rich man in, 259:5
Hesychius, 213:1–7; 7*:1
heresies
See also Donatists; Pelagians; individual groups and names
history of, 221–224
It is necessary that there be heresies, 264:1
Heresies, book by Augustine, See Quodvultdeus

Hero and Lazarus, bishops, 19*:2
Hilary, bishop of Arles, 225:9
Hilary, layman from Gaul:
letter to Augustine from
on grace controversy, 226
Hippo, 22*:4
See also specific topics and events
nuns in, letter from Augustine to
books written for, 211
slave trade in, 10*:7–8
Holy Spirit, 238:21(4)
See also spirit; Trinity; specific topics
and baptism, 265:3–4
“homilies,” 224:2
Homilies on the Gospel of John, 23A*:3
Homoian Arianism, See under Arianism: Homoian
Honoratus, bishop of Thiae, 21*
letters from Augustine to
on barbarian attacks, dealing with, 228
on Donantius, 26*
Honorius, bishop of Cartenna, 22*:5–11; 23*:2; 23A*:5
Honorius, the emperor, 10*:3
Honorius, the pope, 215:2
Honorius, the pope, 6*:1; 19*:1
Honorius (priest), 6*:1; 19*:1
Innocent, the pope, 215:2
Innocent (priest), 6*:1; 19*:1
Innocentia, 3*:5
intercourse, sexual, See sex
invasion, by barbarians, See barbarians
James, Timasius and, 19*:3
Jerome of Bethlehem:
letter from Augustine to
on Pelagians, 19*
letter to Aurelius of Carthage from, 27*:1–3

Volume II/4
Letters 211-270
Letters 211-270

Rules for Nuns, 211:5–16
money, See wealth
monks, See monasteries; specific names, topics, and events
Mortality (Cyprian), 217:22
mother
See also family
renouncing for Christ, 243:2–10
mourning the deceased, 263:1–4
Nature and Grace, 19*:3
Nature and Origin of the Soul, The, 23*:1
Nature (Pelagius), 19*:3
Neptune, 245:2
Nestorians, 219
Nicaea, Council of, See Council of Nicaea
Nobilus, letter from Augustine to:
on dedication of new church, 269
non-believers:
enemies of Christianity, 217:6
prayer for, 215:3; 217:1(1)–30; 264:2
Novatianists, 265:1, 6
Novatus, bishop of Sitifis, 7*:1–2
letter from Augustine to:
on Donatist remnants, 28*
Numidia, Hippo
See also specific topics and events
Council of (See Council of Numidia)
slave trade, 10*:7
nuns:
in Hippo, quarreling, 211
rape of, 9*:1–4; 14*:2; 15*:3–4
and sexual temptation, 13*:1–3
nursing the sick, 211:9
obedience, 214:7
Odes (Horace), 230:3
offending others: refraining from, 8*:1–2
old age, 213:1; 218:1
Olympius, 28*:7
Optatus, 23*:1; 23A*:3
oratory, art of, 2*:12–13
Origen, 12*:11–12; 27*:2
original sin, 215:3; 217:9, 11–12(4); 225:3
the baptized and, 2*:10
and infant baptism (See infant baptism)
Orotypus (layman), letter from Augustine to:
announcing arrival, 257
Ortosius (Spanish priest), 19*:1; 237:1
orphaned girl, 252–255
Orpheus, 234:1
Ovid, 12*:7, 16
pagans
See also non-believers; individual names
barbarians (See barbarians)
hope, as lacking, 263:3–4
leaders of Madaura, letter from
Augustine to:
on Christian faith, 232
Palatinus (deacon), 19*:1, 3
Palatinus (layman), letter from Augustine to:
on pursuing Christian wisdom, 218
Palestine, See Council of Diospolis
Pancarius, letter from Augustine to:
on Secundinus, complaints about, 251
parables, 243:2
parents, See family
Pascentiius:
letters from Augustine to
on the Trinity, 238–239; 241
letters to Augustine from
on the Trinity, 240
Passerius, 19*:4
pastors, See clergy
Paterculus, bishop of Arles, 11*:1, 23–24,
26:12*:15
Paul, 265:4
Paulinus, secretary to Ambrose
letter from Augustine to
on martyrs, difficulty writing about, 29*
peace:
of God, 238:16
obtaining peacefully, 229:2
Pelagians, 214:3–5; 215:1–2; 216:5;
217:4(2), 18(6); 4*:1–5; 19*:2–4
See also Caelestius
actions taken against, 12*:16; 16*:3
and grace controversy, 225:2
and marital concupiscence, 6*:2–8
Twelve Propositions against,
217:16(5)–18(6), 25–26(7)
penalty, See punishment
penance:
baptism and, 265:2, 6–8
and virtue, 211:4
Peregrinus (count), 227
Peregrinus (bishop), Alypius and:
letter from Augustine to
on church problems, 22*
Peregrinus (tribune), 28*:5–6
persecution:
clergy during times of, 228
of good people, 248:1–2
perseverance, 226:5–6; 248:2
Peter, 265:1–8
Phlaster of Brescia, 222:2; 223:2
Plotinus, 6*:1
poem: of Audax, 260; 261:4
poor:
helping (See charity)
wrongful treatment of, 247:1–4

Volume II/4
Letters 211-270

Popes, See Boniface; Celestine; Damasus; Innocent; Zosimus
Porphyry, 226:3
possession, See wealth
Possidius, letter from Augustine to:
on Alypius, Josias, Church discipline, 23A*
on jewelry, 245
power: abuse of, 20*:4
praise
See also flattery
on seeking human, 231:2–6
prayer, 211:7
for believers, 217:14, 28
the Lord’s Prayer, 217:6; 5*:2
for non-believers, 216:6; 217:1(1)–30; 264:2
and penance, 265:8
and temptation, 218:3
predestination, 217:13; 225:3, 5–6, 8; 226:3–7
The Predestination of Saints, See Prosper of Aquitaine
pride:
danger for teachers, 266:2–4
warning against, 211:6
priests
See also clergy
reasons for rejecting, 18*:1–2
and sexual temptation, 13*:1–3; 18*:1–3
principle (Trinity doctrine), 232:5
Priscillianists, 237:1–9; 264:1–3; 11*:1–27
Priscus, 16*:3; 23A*:6
Prisculus, bishop of Marseilles, 219
property
See also wealth
disputes, 8*:1–2
Prosper of Aquitaine:
letter to Augustine from
on grace controversy, 225
prosperity, See wealth
prostitution, 259:3
A man who clings to a prostitute, 238:11; 241:2
Provence, Gaul: the grace controversy, 225:226
Proverbs, Book of, 215:4–8
psalms: prayer and, 211:7
Punic language, 20*:3
punishment, 250A
anathematization, 250–250A
appropriate, 14*:2
beating as, 8*:2; 20*:5
eternal (See hell)
for rape, 9*:1–4; 14*:2; 15*:3–4
of sinner’s family, 1*:1–2, 5
of slave merchants, 10*:3–4
stoning as, 11*:13, 16
quarreling nuns, 211:1–16
Quintilian (African bishop), letter from Augustine to:
on widow and daughter, 212
Quintilian (rhetorician), 2*:12
Quodvultdeus, 25*
letters from Augustine to
on heresies, 222; 224
letters to Augustine from
on heresies, 221; 223
rape:
chastity and, 7
of nuns, 9*:1–4; 14*:2; 15*:3–4
Ravenna, 10*:1
reading: distaste for, 12*
rebirth, bath of, See baptism
Rebuke and Grace, 225:2; 226:7
See also Hadrumetum, monks of relics, 212
Renatus, 16:2; 23A*:3
letter from Augustine to
on church problems, 23*
Reprimand for Quarreling Nuns, The, 211:1–4
reputation, 231:4
Restitutus, 18*:3
letters from Augustine to
on Church scandals and bad Christians, 249
on a misbehaving priest, 13*
Revisions, 224:2; 226:10
rich man in hell, 259:5
riches, See wealth
righteousness: grace and, 2*:6
rites, sacred, 235:2
Rogatists, See Renatus
Rogatus, 28*:7
Rome, See specific topics and events
Romulus (Christian convert), letter from Augustine to:
on wrongful tax collection, 247
Rules for Nuns, 211:5–16
Rusticus (bishop), 22*:8
Rusticus (pagan African), 252
letter from Augustine to
on orphaned girl, 255
Rusticus (priest), 211:4
sadness, 244:1–4; 263:3
Sagittius, 11*:2–20
salvation:
for all, 217:19; 225:4
baptism and, 2*:6
dispensers of, 261:2
with fear and trembling work out your salvation, 217:14–15, 21:22; 218:3
free choice and, 217:8(3)
if having fled...defilements of the world...they are again caught and defeated, 237:5
Stand firm...and do not again be bound by...slavery, 237:5
sanctifier (Trinity doctrine), 232:5
Sapida, letter from Augustine to:
on death of her brother, 263
Sardica, Council of, 26*:1
Satan, See devil
scandals, 249; 18*:3
scripture:
canonical books, 237:3–8
as foretelling events, 232:3–4
Sebastian (count), 7*:1–2
Sebastian (monastery superior), letter from Augustine to:
on sorrow over sinners, 248
secret of the king, 237:4, 6–9
Secundinus (Numidian priest): complaints about, 251
Secundus (Numidian bishop), 219
Seleuciana, letter from Augustine to:
on baptism of apostles, 265
self-knowledge, 267
selfishness/selflessness, 211:12
sermons: “homilies,” 224:2
servant, Christ as, 238:17
servants:
punishing, 8*:2
slaves (See slavery)
Severa (heretic), 11*:2–20
Severian, 15*:2
Severus (bishop of Milevis), 213:1; 270
Severus (bishop of Minervia), 12*:13
Severus (heretic), 11*:2–6, 11–19
sex
See also adultery; chastity; concupiscence; fornication
flirtation, 211:10–11
impurity, 18*:3–3
in marriage, 6*:3–8; 262:1–11
temptation (See under temptation: sexual)
shipwreck, 265:8; 17*
sick, the: care of, 211:9
siege, by barbarians, See barbarians
Simpliciola, 212
sin:
Christ as without, 264:3
differing beliefs regarding, 4*:4
evil (See evil)
and God’s will, 2*:8–10
grace and, 215:8
and human nature, 2*:10
original (See original sin)
of others, 248:1–2
penance for (See penance)
sinners, 248–249
small sins, 265:8
singing: and prayer, 211:7
Sittifis, 7*:1–2
Sixtus, 214:3
Skeptics, Answer to, See Answer to the Skeptics
slavery, 10*:2–8; 24*:1–2
social classes, 22*:2
Son, the
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity
as lesser God (See under Arianism: Homoian)
Son of Man, 238:17
See also Jesus Christ
sorrow, 244:1–4; 263:3
soul:
and body, 238:12
hating one’s own, 258:3
The Nature and Origin of the Soul,
23*:1, 3
Spain, 264:1–3; 11*:26–27
speaking (oratory), art of, 2*:12–13
spirit, 238:11; 241:2
meanings of word, 238:15; 5*:3
Spirit, Holy, See Holy Spirit
Stephen, Saint, 212
steward, position of, 24*:2
stoning: as punishment, 11*:13, 16
suffering:
adversity, 244:1–2
bodily, 228:7
suicide, 244:1–2
Summary of the Conference with the Donatists,
28*:2
Suppa, 26*
people of, letter from Augustine to
on Donantius, 21*
Susanna, 262:9
Syagrius, bishop of Huesca, 11*:3–20
Tagetes, 234:1
Tarragona, 11*:2–20
taxation, 22*:2
wrongful, 247:1–4
teaching, 266:1–4
and grace, 217:12(4)
Tegulata, See Antoninus of Fussala
temptation, 243:1
prayer and, 218:3
and salvation, warnings regarding, 237:5
sexual, 6*:7; 13*:1–3 (See also concupiscence)
worldly allurements, 220:1–12; 231:6

Volume II/4
Ten Commandments:  
obeying, 2*:8  

_Upon these two commandments the whole law and the prophets depend_, 233

tenant farmers:  
bishop abusing (See Antoninus of Fussala) wrongful tax collection, 247:1–4  
Terence, 220:9; 258:5, 12*:7, 14  
Tertullian, 27*:3  
Thaenae: Peregrinus as bishop, (See Peregrinus)  
Tertullian, 27*:3

Thagaste:  
Alypius as bishop (See Alypius) clerics, letter from Augustine to memorandum from Alypius, 15*  
Thaive, Honorus as bishop, (See Honorus)  
Themistocles, 231:3  
Theodosius, 222:3  
Thogonoetus, (See Antoninus of Fussala)  
Timasius and James, 19*:3  
Titian, bishop of Tarragona, 11*:2–20  
Tobit, Book of, 237:8

_Tractoria_ (Pope Zosimus), 12*:16

_translation of written works, 261:5; 27*:2–3  
Trinity, 238:11–25, 28; 239:3, 241:1–2; 242:2–3  
doctrine of, 232:5  
Son as lesser (See under Arianism: Homoian)

Trismegistus, Hermes, 234:1

thrust God, 218:2  
truth, 238:23, 29  
Tully, _See Cicero_

tunic, 263:1

Turbantius, 10*:1

Twelve Propositions against the Pelagians, 217:16(5)–18(6), 25–26(7)  
Tyconius, 249

unbelievers, (See non-believers understanding: and wisdom, 214:7  
Urbanus, 20*:2  
Ursaius, 11*:14–15  
Uzalis, 216:2

Valentine, abbot of Hadrumetum:  
letter to Augustine from on grace controversy, 216  
letters from Augustine to on grace controversy, 214–215A

Valentinian (bishop of Baiana, Numidia),  
letter from Augustine to reply to questions, 5*  
Valerius, 213:4  
Vandals, 228  
_Victor, an African bishop: letter from Augustine to on a financial dispute, 8*_  
Victor, Vincent, 23A*:*3

Victorinus (citizen of Hippo), 28*:5–7  
Victorinus (subdeacon), 236:1–3  
Virgil, ; 230:1; 258:5; 2*:3; 12*:15  
virgins, consecrated, (See consecrated virgins)  
virtue, 231:4  
Vitalis, letter from Augustine to on Pelagian heresy, 217

wealth, 218:2; 220:7, 11; 244:1–2  
almsgiving, 262:4–9  
wickedness, (See evil; sin widower, Cornelius as, 259:1–5  
widows:  
attire of, 262:9–10  
consecrated widowhood, 3*:1–4  
mistreatment of, 20*:6

will, free, (See free choice will of God, 2*:7–10  
wisdom, 214:7; 218:1–3; 238:23  
wives, subjection of, 262:1–11  
women:  
clothing, appropriate, 262:9–10  
and modesty, 211:14  
ornaments worn by, 245:1  
as weaker sex, 2*:4  
wives, subjection of, 262:1–11  
Word of God, 219:3; 232:5–6; 238:23

works, good, (See good works worldly cravings, (See temptation worshiping God, 233; 234:1  
writing: instead of reading, 12*:5–6  
writing: copying of, 27*:3  
writing (books) by Augustine, 224:2

(See also specific titles

Xanthippus of Thagura, 26*:1

Xenophon, 234:1

yest, 211:3

Zabi, 28*:1  
Zosimus, the pope, 215:2; 12*:16
Index from
Sermons 1-19

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, introduction by Cardinal Michele Pellegrino, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 1-19 are on the Old Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.))

Volume III/1
Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-0-911782-75-2, 6 x 9 in., 399 pp., 1990

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE
(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:5  4, 8
1:26-27  1, 5
2:2-3  9, 6
3:4  15/A, 7
3:14  13, 1
3:18  7, 2
3:19  16/A, 5
15:6  14, 4
18:2  7, 6
21:12  2, 1
22:1  2, 2
22:12  2, 5
22:15  16/A, 12
22:17-18  2, 8
22:18  2, 1; 4, 16; 8, 18
25:23  4, 17
25:27  4, 15
25:31  4, 12
27:4  4, 24
27:6-10  4, 13
27:24  4, 23
27:24-26  4, 24
27:27  4, 24, 26
27:27-29  4, 26
27:28  4, 8
27:30-33  5, 4
27:32-33  4, 21
27:33-36  4, 27-28
27:35  4, 15; 4, 22
27:37-38  4, 23, 29
27:38  5, 4
27:39  4, 35
27:40  4, 30, 33; 5, 4-5
32:28  5, 6
32:29  5, 6

Exodus
3:4  6, 2
3:14  6, 2, 4; 7, 1. 7

Numbers
21:8-9  6, 7

Deuteronomy
6:4  9, 3

1 Kings
3:16-27  10, 1
17:9  11, 2
17:13  11, 2

Tobit
4:15  9, 14. 15. 16

Job
1:6  12, 1. 6
1:21  14, 6; 15/A, 6
2:9  15/A, 7
2:10  15/A, 7

Psalms
2:8  8, 18
2:10  13, 1
2:11  13, 2
2:12  13, 2
4:4  19, 2
6:5  16/A, 13
10:4  15/A, 4
10:14  14, 1. 6. 10

Volume III/1

Sermons 1-19
Sermons 1-19

Proverbs

75:6-7 16/B, 3
79: 12 14, 4
85:8 7, 5
86:15 9, 1
101:1 17, 5
101:2 16/A, 8
102:27 7, 7
102:26-27 12, J O. 12
104:24 16/A, 6
104:27 2, 6
106:1 16/A, 5
111:10 8, 17
116:11 7, 7
118:22 4, 18
120:1 16/A, 4
121:8 15, 4
126:6 11, 3
140:5 16/A, 10
142:5 4, 13
144:1 9, 13
144:9 9, 6, 16
148:5 2, 7
148:7-8 8, 10

Ecclesiastes

3:7 16/A, 8
7:30 19, 4

Song Of Songs

2:17 19, 3

Wisdom

1:9 12, 3
2:15 15, 2
3:11 13, 9
5:8-9 18, 5
7:27 12, 10
8:1 8, 1
11:20 8, 1

Sirach

5:11 8, 6
15:9 15/A, 1
28:18 16/A, 2
29:12 14, 1

Isaiah

9:6 7, 3
53:7 17, I; 18, I
58:7 I I, I
66:2 8, 6

Volume III/1
Volume III/1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
<th>Volume III/1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>9:5 16/A, 2&lt;br&gt;17:5 13, 2</td>
<td>25:44 18, 4&lt;br&gt;25:45 9, 20; 18, 4&lt;br&gt;26:52 4, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>3:5-7 17, 2&lt;br&gt;3:18-19 17, 2</td>
<td>2:5 16/A, 4&lt;br&gt;2:17 4, 19&lt;br&gt;2:19 16/A, 8&lt;br&gt;10:18 15, 5&lt;br&gt;13:32 1 6/A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:3 14, 1, 10&lt;br&gt;5:8 4, 4, 6; 6, 1; 12, 1, 10</td>
<td>Luke 2:14 18, 5&lt;br&gt;6:45 15, 5&lt;br&gt;7:47 10, 8&lt;br&gt;11:20 8, 18&lt;br&gt;11:41 16/A, 12&lt;br&gt;16:9 14, 8&lt;br&gt;16:13 16/B, 1&lt;br&gt;16:19 15/A, 5&lt;br&gt;16:22 14, 4&lt;br&gt;16:25 15/A, 2&lt;br&gt;18:9-10 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:11 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:12 9, 19; 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:13 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:14 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;19:2-8 14, 2&lt;br&gt;20:21-25 13, 4&lt;br&gt;23:34 5, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>2:5 16/A, 4&lt;br&gt;2:17 4, 19&lt;br&gt;2:19 16/A, 8&lt;br&gt;10:18 15, 5&lt;br&gt;13:32 1 6/A, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>2:14 18, 5&lt;br&gt;6:45 15, 5&lt;br&gt;7:47 10, 8&lt;br&gt;11:20 8, 18&lt;br&gt;11:41 16/A, 12&lt;br&gt;16:9 14, 8&lt;br&gt;16:13 16/B, 1&lt;br&gt;16:19 15/A, 5&lt;br&gt;16:22 14, 4&lt;br&gt;16:25 15/A, 2&lt;br&gt;18:9-10 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:11 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:12 9, 19; 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:13 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;18:14 16/B, 4&lt;br&gt;19:2-8 14, 2&lt;br&gt;20:21-25 13, 4&lt;br&gt;23:34 5, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1-3 1, 2&lt;br&gt;1:3 14, 9&lt;br&gt;1:8 4, 6&lt;br&gt;1:9 4, 6&lt;br&gt;1:14 14, 9&lt;br&gt;1:29 19, 3&lt;br&gt;1:47 4, 15&lt;br&gt;3:14-15 6, 7&lt;br&gt;4:14 6, 8&lt;br&gt;4:24 16/A, 9&lt;br&gt;5:46 1, 2&lt;br&gt;6:5-6 2, 2&lt;br&gt;6:38 7, 3&lt;br&gt;8:4-5 16/A, 4&lt;br&gt;8:6 13, 5&lt;br&gt;8:7 13, 4; 16/A, 4&lt;br&gt;8:10-11 13, 5&lt;br&gt;8:10 16/A, 5&lt;br&gt;8:11 16/A, 5&lt;br&gt;8:25 1, 2&lt;br&gt;8:44 8, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermons 1-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:56 16/A, 12</td>
<td>2:9 4, 1; 19, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7 7, 3</td>
<td>3:1 16/A, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:7 12, 1</td>
<td>3:6-7 4, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16 4, 18</td>
<td>3:9 4, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18 5, 3</td>
<td>3:16 9, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:48 10, 8</td>
<td>3:17 9, 15; 15, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28 12, 5</td>
<td>4:7 13, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6 8, 5; 12, 5</td>
<td>4:16 16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1 4, 26</td>
<td>8:6 8, 4, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5 4, 26</td>
<td>9:22 16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15 16/A, II</td>
<td>9:26-27 13, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30 5, 3</td>
<td>10:1-3 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17 5, 7</td>
<td>10:3-6 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts Of The Apostles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37-38 16/A, 8</td>
<td>10:4 4, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:51 7, 6</td>
<td>10:11 8, I, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13 4, 19</td>
<td>10:13 15, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27-28 7, 7</td>
<td>11:29 4, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17 10, 2</td>
<td>13:1-3 4, 20, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18 18, 2</td>
<td>13:12 5, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23 8, 4</td>
<td>15:10 16/A, I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4 18, 2, 3</td>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6 18, 2</td>
<td>1:12 16/A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28 2, 9</td>
<td>1:22 9, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2 14, 4</td>
<td>2:14-16 4, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5 10, 3</td>
<td>4:13 19, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5 2, 9</td>
<td>5:6-7 12, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5 16/A, 12</td>
<td>5:16-18 5, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3 19, 3</td>
<td>8:9 2, 6; 14, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6 4, 1, 12; 10, 2</td>
<td>11:26 15, 5-6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10 10, 2</td>
<td>13:3 2, 5; 7, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20 9, 4</td>
<td>22:27-29 16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24 4, 9</td>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32 8, 15</td>
<td>3: 1-3 10, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 16/A, 10</td>
<td>3:7 4, II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4 16/A, 10</td>
<td>3:9 7, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10 2, 9</td>
<td>4:4 5, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5-6 10, 3</td>
<td>4:19 4/A, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36 1, 5; 15, 3</td>
<td>4:21-26 10, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9 10, 5</td>
<td>4:22 2, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11-12 16/A, 1</td>
<td>4:23 2, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3 13, 6</td>
<td>5:2 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8 1, 1</td>
<td>5:6 2, 9; 16/A, II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27-28 4A, 1</td>
<td>5:15 8, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2 8, 5</td>
<td>6:2 16/A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6 8, 5</td>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8 12, 2</td>
<td>1:9-10 1, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8 17, 1</td>
<td>2:20 4, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:22 9, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

A
abandonment, to God, 14:1, 2
abortion, 10:5
Abraham, 2:1-9; 4:11, 16; 6:5; 7:4, 6;
  8:14; 14:4, 5; 15A:5; 16A:12, 13;
  19:3
actors, 9:21
Adam, 5:3, 7; 6:8; 7:4; 9:2; 15A:7
Adimantus, 12:2
adultery, 8:8, 12; 9:3, 4, 7, 11-15, 18;
  13:4, 6; 15:3; 16A:4-6; 17:4
adversary, 9:3, 8, 12, 21
almsgiving, 9:17-21; 11:1; 16A:12
angel(s), 4:3; 5:1-8; 6:2; 7:2-6; 8:15;
  12:1-12; 19:5, 6
anger, 8:9; 17:6
animals, 8:8; 9:17
apostles, 4:6
Arians, 5:3
astrology, 4:36; 9:3, 17, 18; 15A:4
authority, 13:6, 7; 15A:6
avarice, 9:20; 14:7

B
Babylon, 16A:9
bad people, 15:5-9; 15A:1; 16B:2;
  18:1-5; 19:4;
baptism, 4:9, 14; 5:2; 16A:6; 19:6
Bethlehem, 4A
blasphemy, 16B:2
blessing, 4:13-35; 5:4; 15A:5
blindness, 4:21
blood, 8:4, 17
body, 12:8-10, 12
boils, 8:9
burning bush, 6:1-8; 7:1-7

C
Caesar, 13:4
catechumens, 19:6
courage, 4:2
Cyprian, St., 8:16

D
creation, 8:17
cruelty, 9:13

Volume III/1
Sermons 1-19

**E**
- darkness, 8:12
- death, 6:7; 8:13, 15; 9:2; 13:8; 15A:7, 16A:11; 17:7
- debt, 1:1
- deceit, 16:4
- desert, 4:9
- devil, 2:3; 4:9, 36; 9:3, 21; 12:1-12; 15A:6, 7; 16B:1
- disciples, 10:6
- discipline, 13:9; 15A:3-4; see also punishment
- doctor, 2:3; 4:2; 9:10; 15A:8, 9; 16B:1
- dog-fly, 8:7
- dogs, 8:7; 9:21
- Donatus, 4:33; 5:3
- drunkenness, 17:3
- earth, 13:4
- earthquakes, 19:6
- Egyptians, 8:16
- Elijah, 11:1-3
- enemy, 15:7-9
- entertainment, popular, 9:5, 6
- envy, 4:28
- equality, of women and men, 9:12
- Esau, 4:1-37; 5:4, 5
- eternal life, 4:8; 16:3
- eternity, 7:7; 16A:1
- eucharist, 5:7; 9:14; 17:5
- Eve, 5:3; 8:15; 15A:7
- excommunication, 17:3
- Exodus, 8:14

**F**
- false witness, 8:11; 9:7, 12, 13
- falsehood, 8:5; 9:13
- family, 9:20
- farmers, 13:4
- fasting, 9:17, 21
- fear, 13:2, 4, 9; 17:3
- fever, 9:10; 19:6
- fidelity, 9:4
- figures, 4:9-12, 20-26; 6:3, 6, 8; 8:3, 4; 10:1; 15:4
- fire, 15:4, 7
- firstborn, 4:23; 8:13
- flies, 8:18
- forgiveness, see pardon
- fornication, 9:3, 11, 14, 15, 18; 15:3
- frogs, 8:5, 17, 18
- furnace, 15:4, 5
- Gentiles, 4:18; 10:2
- gnats, 8:6, 17
- goats, 4:19
- God, 4:5
  - abandonment to, 14:1, 2
  - as Father, 14:10
  - and Christ, 5:7
  - finger of, 8:18
  - grace of, 16B:1
  - harm to, 9:15
  - help from, 16A:1
  - house of, 15:1-3, 9
  - and light, 4:5-6
  - love of, 2:4; 5:2; 9:9
  - manifest, 6:1; 11:2
  - as merciful and just, 9:1
  - nature of, 7:7
  - patience of, 9:2; 18:2
  - praise of, 15A:4, 6, 7
  - as recompense, 11:3
  - reveals his name, 6:4
  - second name of, 6:5
  - service of, 9:16
  - sight of, 12:6
  - and signs, 6:6-8
  - silence of, 17:4
  - submission to, 15A:8
  - temple of, 9:15
  - testing of, 2:2, 3
  - vision of, 4:4
  - voice of, 12:2, 4, 5, 7
  - word of, 4:31; 5:1; 6:2; 9:3
  - works in us, 13:3
- gold, 4:5; 8:16; 15:4, 5, 7; 9:16; 19:5
- good, 15:5
- good days, 16:1, 4, 5
- good life, 16:2
- good people, 15:1-9; 18:1-3; 19:4

**Volume III/1**

G
- Gentiles, 4:18; 10:2
- gnats, 8:6, 17
- goats, 4:19
- God, 4:5
  - abandonment to, 14:1, 2
  - and Christ, 5:7
  - as Father, 14:10
  - finger of, 8:18
  - grace of, 16B:1
  - harm to, 9:15
  - help from, 16A:1
  - house of, 15:1-3, 9
  - and light, 4:5-6
  - love of, 2:4; 5:2; 9:9
  - manifest, 6:1; 11:2
  - as merciful and just, 9:1
  - nature of, 7:7
  - patience of, 9:2; 18:2
  - praise of, 15A:4, 6, 7
  - as recompense, 11:3
  - reveals his name, 6:4
  - second name of, 6:5
  - service of, 9:16
  - sight of, 12:6
  - and signs, 6:6-8
  - silence of, 17:4
  - submission to, 15A:8
  - temple of, 9:15
  - testing of, 2:2, 3
  - vision of, 4:4
  - voice of, 12:2, 4, 5, 7
  - word of, 4:31; 5:1; 6:2; 9:3
  - works in us, 13:3
- gold, 4:5; 8:16; 15:4, 5, 7; 9:16; 19:5
- good, 15:5
- good days, 16:1, 4, 5
- good life, 16:2
- good people, 15:1-9; 18:1-3; 19:4
Sermons 1-19

good works, 9:14, 21; 11:1; 15A:5; 18:4

goodness, 16A:6
greed, 9:13; 14:7, 8

Greeks, 10:2

guile, 4:15, 22, 23, 27
guitarist, 9:13

guitarist, 9:13

H

habit, 16A:2, 3; 17:3

Hagar, 10:2

hail, 8:10

hand, 6:8

happiness, 19:4

hatred, 5:2; 9:9; 19:6

health, 15A:7

heathen, 17:6

heaven, 19:5

heresy, 4:33; 5:1, 3; 7:4; 9:13; 15:6

Holy Spirit, 4:1, 18; 7:2, 6; 8:6, 17, 18; 9:6; 16:1

hope, 4:9; 13:2; 14:1

humility, 4A; 15A:5; 16B:2-4

hunter, 9:13, 21

I

idols, 4:12

image, 9:9; 13:3, 4

injustice, 9:13

inheritance, 8:13; 15A:3, 4

insincerity, 10:5-8

intention, 5:2

incest, 9:18

Isaac, 2:1, 8; 4:11, 13, 21-30, 35; 6:5; 19:3

Isaiah, 6:2

Israel, 4:15

J

Jacob, 4:1-37; 5:1-8; 6:5

Jerusalem, 4:8; 10:2; 16A:9

Jews, 4:12, 13, 18, 21; 5:3, 4, 5; 6:3; 9:3, 6; 10:2, 3; 15:6; 16A:4; 18:4; 19:6

Job, 12:1-12; 15A:6, 7

John, 1:3, 5

John the Baptist, 4:6

joy, 4:4; 13:2

Judas, 8:15; 10:5, 6; 12:4

judgment, 9:2; 13:1-9; 17:5,7; 18:2, 4

justice, 4:7; 9:8; 13:2; 16B:3

justification, 2:9

K

kids, 4:19, 20

kings, 13:4

L

Laban the Syrian, 12:4

language, 8:16

law, 2:2, 9; 6:3; 8:18; 9:7; 10:3; 13:4; 18:1

Lazarus, 14:3-5; 15A:2, 5

lechery, 9:14

leniency, 13:9

lentils, 4:12

lies, 16A:2

life, 9:8; 16:1-5; 17:7

light, 4:5-7

lion, 4:22, 23

locusts, 8:11

Lot, 7:6

love, 2:4; 4:20; 5:6; 9:7, 9, 13; 10:5, 6; 13:8; 17:2; see also charity

lust, 9:13, 15

M

Manichees, 1:1-5; 2:2; 5:3; 12:1-12

marriage, 9:3, 4, 11, 12, 15, 18

martyrs, 4:2, 37

materialist understanding, 4:1, 3, 12, 33

Matthias, 12:4

money, 9:21; 13:7; 14:2; 15A:5, 9

Moses, 1:2, 5; 6:1-8; 7:1-7; 8:3, 17, 18; 9:7

motherhood, 4A; 10:4, 7, 8

murder, 8:9, 15; 9:3, 4, 7, 12, 15, 18

mystery, 2:2, 6

N

New Testament, 1:1, 2; see also Scripture

number, 8:17, 18; 9:7

nurse, 4A

Volume III/1
Volume III/1

O

obedience, 2:5
oil, 15:9; 19:6
Old Testament, 1:1; 4:9, 10, 11; 12:1; see also Scripture
orphan, 14:1, 10

P

pagans, 5:8; 15:3, 6; 19:6
pardon, 5:2, 3; 9:21; 10:6; 16A:5, 6; 17:5, 6; 19:2; see also repentance
parents, 8:7; 9:3, 4, 7, 13, 15
Paul, 1:3, 5; 4:6, 26; 8:15; 15:3, 5; 16A:10, 11
people, 4:11, 17, 18; 9:16
persecution, 4:36
Peter, 4:2, 6; 8:15; 12:4
Pharaoh, 12:4; see also plagues
Pharisees, 9:19; 13:5; 16B:4
Philip, 2:2
piety, 8:14; 9:20; 15A:5
plagues, 8:1-18
poor, 4A: 9:19-20; 14:1-10; 15A:2; 18:4
poverty, 18:1
prayer, 9:17, 21; 15:7-8; 15A:9; 19:2
preaching, 5:1
pride, 14:2, 4
prison, 8:15
progress, 16A:1, 13
promised land, 4:13
prostitute, 9:14, 15
punishment, 13:9; 19:2; see also discipline

R

ram, 19:3
rapacity, 9:13
Rebecca, 4:11, 14, 31
repentance, 18:2, 5; 19:2, 3; see also pardon
rich, 8:10; 9:20-21; 14:2-9; 15A:2, 5, 6; 18:1, 3; 19:5
rock, 4:22, 23
rod, 8:3, 17

S

sabbath, 4:8; 8:6, 17, 18; 9:3, 6, 21
sacrifices, 4:31, 35
sacrifice, 2:8, 9; 4:8; 16A:12; 19:3
Sarah, 2:7
schism, 5:1, 10:8
Scripture, 1:5; 2:2; 5:7; 8:4, 10, 13, 18; 5:4; 6:1, 2, 8; 7:3; 8:2, 5, 17; 12:2, 3, 8; 17:1, 3; see also figures
serpent, 6:7; 8:3, 17
servant, 8:10, 9:16
seven, 8:17
sexuality, 8:8
shame, 13:9
shows, 9:17, 21
sickness, 9:10; 15A:7
signs, see figures
silence, 16A:8, 17:4; 18:1, 5
sin, 4:20; 9:21; 10:5, 13:8; 15A:2; 16B:1-3; 17:3; 19:2, 4, 17
Sitifis, 19:6
smell, 4:28
Solomon, 10:1-8
song, 9:5, 8, 16
soothsayers, 4:36
stars, 1:4; 16B:2
stealing, see theft
straw, 15:4, 5, 7
sun, 4:5, 6; 12:11, 12
superstition, 9:13
sword, 4:33
symbols, see figures
Synagogue, 10:2

T

tax, 13:4; 16B:4
temple, 6:2; 9:15
temptation, 2:2, 3; 4:9, 34, 36; 15:4; 16A:12
testing, see temptation
theft, 8:10, 13, 14, 16; 9:7, 12, 13, 15; 17:4
thorns, 6:3; 7:2
time, 1:5; 9:2; 11:1; 16:1, 2; 16A:1; 17:7
tithes, 9:19

Sermons 1-19
Sermons 1-19

- tongue, 16:4; 16A:2-9
- trials, see temptation
- Trinity, 1:5; 7:4, 6; 8:17; 9:4, 6, 7
- trust, 2:1-9; 9:16
- truth, 8:5; 9:1; 12:4

**U**
- unity, 4:30; 7:4; 8:17, 18; 10:4, 8
- upright people, see good people

**V**
- vacation, 8:17
- vessels, 15:2, 3, 5, 7, 9

- Vincent, 4:36
- violence, 8:13

**W**
- water, 6:8; 8:4, 17
- wine, 15A:5
- wisdom, 6:8; 8:17; 12:2
- women, 9:12; 12:12
- work, 8:17; see also sabbath
- works, 2:9; 8:13, 17; 11:1, 3; 16:5; 16A:11; 16B:2

**Z**
- Zacchaeus, 9:19; 14:2

Volume III/1
Index from

Sermons 20-50

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Sermons 20-50 are on the Old Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/2 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-0-911782-78-3, 6 x 9 in., 400 pp., 1991

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>1:21</th>
<th>21, 9; 22/A, 2; 25/A, 3; 45, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>22/A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>43, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>29, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>49/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>46, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>46, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>22, 4; 46, 33; 47, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>49:9</td>
<td>37, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>45, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>26, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>33:11</td>
<td>23, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>23, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>33:19</td>
<td>27, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>5:17-21</td>
<td>33, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>32:39</td>
<td>24, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua</td>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>46, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>23, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>22/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>46, 11; 33, 35; 47, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:11-12</td>
<td>30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>23, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>24, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>47, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>34, 8; 35, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>47, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>50, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>46, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>38, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>16:5</td>
<td>47, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>18:28</td>
<td>37, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>46, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>19:4:6</td>
<td>32, 23; 46, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>44, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>22, 3; 7; 46, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>19:22</td>
<td>22, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>20:6</td>
<td>45, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>44, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>22:16-17</td>
<td>27, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>22:16-18</td>
<td>22, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>22:27</td>
<td>46, 35; 47, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>22:27-28</td>
<td>46, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>24:1</td>
<td>39, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>27:4</td>
<td>37, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>20, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>27:14</td>
<td>40, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>30:10</td>
<td>49/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>32:5</td>
<td>29/A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>32:8</td>
<td>24, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>32:9</td>
<td>43, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>34:5</td>
<td>25, 1; 28/A, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 20-50

34:12-13 25, 6
34:18 21, 2; 41, 7
35:14 41, 7
36:6-7 23, 11
36:7 23, 10
36:8 23, 12; 32, 6
36:9 23, 10; 28, 2; 28/A, 1
37:1 25/A, 1
37:2 25/A, 1
37:4 21, 1
38:9 25, 5
39:6 38, 6
39:11 29/A, 2
40:2-3 33, 5
40:4 47, 29
41:4 20, 1; 2; 3; 29, 3
42:3 31, 5
42:6 47, 9
45:2 27, 6
46:4 32, 6
49:2 20/A, 9
50:11 37, 8
50:21 47, 5
51:1 20, 2
51:3 20, 2; 29/A, 4
51:8 23, 1; 28, 2
51:9 29/A, 4
51:10 20, 2
51:10 20, 1; 2
52:2 32, 17
52:8 25/A, 4
55:12-13 46, 36
56:7 26, 14
56:8 31, 5
56:10 48, 1
56:10-11 47, 27
57:1 20/A, 1; 9
61:2 47, 17
62:8 29, 5
62:10 25/A, 2
64:10 21, 1; 3
68:2 22, 1; 2; 6
68:9 23, 16
68:30 47, 23
68:35 43, 1
69:28 33/A, 4
71:4 22/A, 1; 4
72:8 37, 12
72:11 45, 6; 46, 33
73:1 29/A, 2; 47, 29
73:1-3 48, 3
73:11 48, 4
73:12 48, 4

73:13 48, 4
73:14 48, 4
73:15 48, 5
73:23 23, 1; 5
73:28 32, 28
75:1 23/A, 1; 4
76:5 39, 5
78:47 43, 3
80:1 46, 23; 47, 3
80:2 46, 23
80:5 46, 12
83:1 24, 1; 4; 7; 46, 17
84:4 33/A, 1; 37, 30
85:12 26, 15; 30, 10
88:5 26, 10
90:1 49/A, 1
90:12 46, 38
94:12 25, 1
94:12-13 25/A, 1
94:13 25, 7
94:13-14 25, 7
95:2 47, 8
95:4 47, 17
95:6 26, 1; 3
95:6-7 47, 1
95:7 47, 13
96:1 27, 1; 33, 5; 46, 33; 40
96:1-3 27, 2
96:2 27, 2
97:11 21, 1
98:3 46, 34
100:3 26, 1; 2; 4; 5, 12
103:9 29/A, 2
103:14 24, 3
104:24 29/A, 2
105:3 28, 1
108:5 47, 19
110:3 44, 6
111:3 37, 3; 29
113:3 37, 6
115:8 24, 2
116:10 28/A, 1
116:11 28/A, 1
116:12 28/A, 1
116:16 37, 7
118:1 29, 1; 5; 29/A, 1; 4
119:62 37, 7
119:67 29/A, 2
119:71 25, 5
119:73 25, 3
121:1 30, 1; 6; 10
121:1-2 46, 17

Volume III/2
### Volume III/2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>121:4</td>
<td>47, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126:5-6</td>
<td>31, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126:6</td>
<td>31, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>21, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7-8</td>
<td>23, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:3-4</td>
<td>20, 2; 29, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142:5</td>
<td>25, 1; 45, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:3-4</td>
<td>32, 9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>32, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:8</td>
<td>32, 24, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:9</td>
<td>32, 5, 8; 32, 9; 33, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:11</td>
<td>32, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:12</td>
<td>32, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:12-15</td>
<td>32, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:13</td>
<td>32, 25, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:13.14</td>
<td>32, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:15</td>
<td>32, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:2</td>
<td>33/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:3</td>
<td>33/A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:4</td>
<td>33/A, 3; 47, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:5</td>
<td>33/A, 4; 47, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>23, 15; 24, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149:1</td>
<td>34, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149:2</td>
<td>34, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150:4</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151:2</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151:5</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>152:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153:2</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153:5</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153:8</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154:4</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155:4</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156:4</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157:4</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158:4</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>29/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>35, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>47, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>36, 1, 5, 7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>36, 7, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9</td>
<td>25/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:2</td>
<td>39, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:26</td>
<td>34, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:12</td>
<td>47, 17, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:4</td>
<td>37, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:10</td>
<td>37, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:11</td>
<td>37, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:12</td>
<td>37, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:13</td>
<td>37, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:15</td>
<td>37, 7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:16</td>
<td>37, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:17</td>
<td>37, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:18</td>
<td>37, 10, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:19</td>
<td>37, 12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:20</td>
<td>37, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:21</td>
<td>37, 15, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:22</td>
<td>37, 17, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:23</td>
<td>37, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:24</td>
<td>37, 20, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:25</td>
<td>37, 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11-12</td>
<td>42, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>37, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>47, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>46, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>43, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:9</td>
<td>37, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6-7</td>
<td>25, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6-8</td>
<td>20/A, 9; 25/A, 1; 33/A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:14</td>
<td>47, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>44, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2-3</td>
<td>27, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:3</td>
<td>44, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7-8</td>
<td>44, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>44, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:9</td>
<td>44, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:46</td>
<td>44, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:3</td>
<td>37, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:1</td>
<td>37, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:13</td>
<td>45, 1, 2, 3, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 20-50

58:7 47, 25 58:10 46, 38

Jeremiah
1:5 26, 1
3:15 46, 23
17:11 46, 28
18:8 22, 6
31:31–32 25, 1

Ezekiel
7:19 50, 13
18:4 35, 2
18:21 20, 3, 4
33:2–6 46, 20
33:7–9 46, 20
33:11 40, 2
34:1–2 46, 2
34:2 46, 2
34:3 46, 9, 15
34:3–5 46, 3
34:4 46, 10, 13, 14, 15
34:5 46, 16
34:6 46, 17, 18
34:7 46, 19
34:8 46, 19
34:9 46, 20
34:10 46, 21, 23
34:11 46, 23
34:12 46, 23
34:13 46, 24; 47, 20
34:14 46, 24, 25
34:15 46, 25, 26, 30, 37
34:16 46, 26, 27
34:17 47, 3, 6, 7, 14
34:18–19 47, 9
34:20 47, 15
34:21 47, 16, 19
34:22 47, 19
34:23 47, 20, 27
34:23–24 47, 21
34:24 47, 21, 24
34:25 47, 22, 23
34:26 47, 24
34:27 47, 25, 26
34:29 47, 28
34:30–31 47, 29
34:31 47, 30

Daniel
2:34 45, 6

2:35 45, 6

Micah
6:6–8 48, 2

Habakkuk
2:4 49, 2, 4, 5
3:3 46, 38, 40

Haggai
2:6–9 50, 9
2:8 50, 1, 7

New Testament

Matthew
3:1 24, 2
5:3 36, 7
5:6 28, 2; 37, 7; 45, 4
5:8 22A, 4
5:9 23, 16
5:10 37, 11
5:15–16 46, 5
5:16 47, 13
5:17 33, 2
5:25 40, 5
5:28 45, 8; 46, 9
5:45 29A, 2
6:1 47, 13
6:2 47, 14
6:3 32, 22
6:5 25A, 2
6:10 47, 7; 50, 10
6:12 47, 7, 23; 49, 8
6:19–20 36, 5
6:21 37, 9; 38, 7
7:3–4 49, 7
7:22 37, 27
7:26 46, 22
8:10–11 46, 34
10:41–42 41, 6
10:42 39, 6
11:10 37, 19
11:25 29, 2
11:25–27 24, 4
11:28 30, 8, 41, 5
11:28–29 30, 9
11:29 24, 4; 30, 9; 50, 11
13:27 47, 6

Volume III/2
Sermons 20-50

6:51 28, 2; 45, 4
8:34 33, 3
8:44 28/A, 1
8:46 26, 10
8:48 44, 3
8:58 22, 1
10:16 46, 30
10:18 31, 3
10:27 46, 23; 29, 30, 32
10:30 47, 20
13:34 33, 2
14:9-10 47, 20
14:21 27, 6
14:23 23, 6
14:27 24, 4; 47, 22
14:28 47, 20
14:30 26, 10; 29, 2
14:31 26, 10
15:5 30, 8
15:15 27, 5; 45, 10
16:12 27, 5
17:24 41, 7
19:30 37, 2
21:15-17 46, 23, 30
21:17 46, 30, 37

Acts
1:7-8 46, 40
7:51-52 49, 10
7:59-60 49, 11
21:10-13 22, 2
21:14 22, 2

Romans
1:17 26, 5
1:24 32, 19
1:25 50, 7
2:4 40, 2; 47, 5
2:5-6 47, 5
2:21 46, 22
2:21-22 47, 5
3:4 28/A, 1
4:17 26, 4
4:25 45, 5
5:5 23, 7, 8; 34, 2
5:6-7 23/A, 2
6:12 30, 6
6:13 30, 6
7:12-13 26, 10
7:14 23, 3; 30, 1
7:14-15 30, 3
7:15 30, 3, 4
7:25 26, 5; 26, 12
8:15 33, 1
8:20 33, 3
8:24 23, 12; 27, 5
8:24-25 27, 5
8:25 37, 8
8:31 37, 15
9:15 27, 3
9:18-20 27, 3
9:20 26, 13, 15
9:21 26, 13
10:3 50, 11
11:23 32, 16, 46, 18
11:30-32 27, 7
11:33 27, 6
11:34-35 26, 14
11:34-36 27, 7
11:35-36 26, 14
12:11 22, 7
13:8-10 33, 2
13:13 49, 3
14:12 35, 2

1 Corinthians
1:10 46, 30
1:11-13 46, 17
1:13 46, 17
1:20 46, 28
1:26-28 43, 6
1:29 47, 13
1:31 47, 13
2:3 23, 2, 3; 37, 23
2:6 23, 4
2:11 30, 3
2:14-15 23, 4
3:1-2 23, 4
3:4 27, 4
3:6-7 43, 8
3:12 50, 8, 9
3:17 23, 7, 24, 1
4:3 49, 2
4:5 47, 23; 49, 4
4:6 23, 17
4:7 30, 10; 35, 3; 43, 2
9:7 46, 3
9:11 37, 20
10:4 46, 10
10:13 46, 12, 12
10:24 32, 10
10:52 47, 12
10:33 47, 12

Volume III/2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>35, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>46, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>37, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>37, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>41, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>41, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>23, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33</td>
<td>35, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>50, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>35, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>46, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>37, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>37, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>41, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>41, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>23, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33</td>
<td>35, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>50, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>47, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>28, 2; 31, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>50, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>37, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>31, 5; 38, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7</td>
<td>27, 6; 33/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7-6</td>
<td>21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>46, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>37, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>26, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>37, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>37, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>23, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>45, 1, 2, 6, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>36, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 42, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>47, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>31, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>46, 30; 50, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-9</td>
<td>47, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>37, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>46, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Galatians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>47, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>26, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>26, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>26, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>26, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>37, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>49/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>37, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14-15</td>
<td>46, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>46, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22-23</td>
<td>33, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>25, 4; 30, 4; 50, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-22</td>
<td>37, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>35, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>35, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ephesians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>26, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>26, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>26, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>23/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-12</td>
<td>37, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>25, 7; 47, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>32, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>49, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>28/A, 1; 49, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>45, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>33, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>22/A, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Philippians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>44, 3; 46, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>47, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>41, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>30, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-11</td>
<td>47, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>37, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>37, 5; 46, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>21, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>46, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>46, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>37, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>37, 14; 46, 4; 47, 25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Colossians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>25/A, 1; 41, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>25/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>36, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>32, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Thessalonians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>23, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>49, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Timothy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>26, 7; 47, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>21, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>46, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>39, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8-10</td>
<td>25/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>39, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Sermons 20-50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6:10</th>
<th>50, 1, 13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 36, 2, 5, 6; 39, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-18</td>
<td>25/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 39, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 36, 6; 39, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>33/A, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Peter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Timothy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Peter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Titus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Titus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hebrews</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>James</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>James</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 John</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revelation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Sermons 20-50

building foundation, 20A:7
business man, 21:4

C
Canaanites, 37:21
captivity: redemption, 27:2-3
carnal people, 23:3, 4
cattle, 23:11
charity:
acquiring, 34:7
Christ present in his poor, 38:8; 42:2
cymbal clashing, 37:3
dearness, 34:7
defer, 46:38
fruit of the Spirit, 37:28
fullness of the law, 33:2
give yourself, 34:7
God's promises, 32:14
greater than faith/hope, 41:3
in the heart, 47:23
just man's reward, 41:6
kindheartedness, 50:7
neighbor in poverty, 41:1
opportunities to do good, 50:3
sharing with the poor, 50:2
support of bishops, 46:5
unity, 46:18
see also love
chastity: valiant woman, 37:10
cheating, 38:4
cheerfulness: good works, 31:3, 5
children:
discipline; love, 21:8
filial piety, 45:2
Job's, 22A:2
son and father, 45:2
children of God: peacemakers,
23:16-17
Christ, see Jesus Christ
Christian life:
chosen by Christ, 43:6
from fear to love, 32:8
imitation of Christ suffering, 46:10
new life, 32:25

Volume III/2
persecution, 46:11
preached everywhere: why so much evil? 31:5
summer/winter, 36:4
take my yoke, 30:9
Christians:
anxious to hear shepherd’s voice, 47:4
bishops and their flocks, 46:2
care for weaker “sheep,” 47:14
divisions among, 47:28
fruit of the trees, 47:25
God’s possession, 47:30
good and just, 47:18
judging between sheep and sheep, 47:6, 7, 9, 14, 19
justification, 26:9
listen, while there is still time, 47:5
peace with one another, 24:4
pleasing others, 47:12
reason for being, 47:18
as sheep, 47:1-30
strong: characteristics, 47:16
temporal life not so good, 33A:3
vineyard: house of Israel, 47:29
waiting for judgment, 47:3
your kingdom come, 47:7
Church:
body of Christ, 45:5
bridegroom in heaven, 47:19
bridegroom: Songs of Songs, 46:35-36
clothes for husband (Christ), 37:17
distaff and spindle, 37:13-14
glory, 50:10
goats and sheep, 46:37
God’s praise found in, 34:6
growth, 44:2
husband’s confidence in, 37:4
mother, 22:9, 10
mother of martyrs, 37:1
mountain, 45:6, 7
precious stones in, 37:3
proof: mouth of God, 47:19
prophesied, 22:4; 50:9
redeemed by Christ, 37:2
root and tree, 44:2
shepherd and flock, 46:34
sinners in, 47:18
spread throughout the world, 47:17
valiant woman (Proverbs) a figure of, 37:1-30
vine and twigs (symbols), 46:18
works for husband’s good, 37:5
zealous maidservant of the Lord, 37:7
see also bishops; heresy
circumcellions, 47:17
city set on a hill, 37:2
clothing: honor, 46:6
comfort, 20A:8
commandments:
attaining eternal life, 38:7
love of God, 27:6
response to, 32:23
shepherd’s voice, 47:4
teaching, 47:9
see also ten commandments
companions (the word), 46:36
conduct:
direct my steps, 30:1-2
open to others, 47:11
see also conversion
confess (confessing to God):
blaming the devil, 20:2
calling God’s name, 23A:4
God already knows your sin, 29A:4
God is good, 29:1
goodness of God, 29A:2
humble before God, 23A:1
man punishes; God frees, 29A:3
pour out your hearts, 29:6
practice encouraged, 22:8
praising or repenting, 29:2, 4;
29A:1
set free by God, 29A:3
sins, not excuses, 29:3
today, before judgment day, 47:8
in the Trinity, 29:2
unwillingness, 29A:3
conscience:
cleansing, 47:7, 8
courage, 37:13
good, 25A:3
known to others, 47:23
open to God, 47:11
rich in, 36:4
sweet taste, 37:10
testimony of, 47:12-13
consolation: bishops’ role, 46:12, 13, 40
constancy, 41:1-2
contributions (support), 46:4
conversion (moral):
almsgiving and prayer, 39:6
change for the better, 39:6
forgiveness on day of, 39:1
postponing day of, 40:3-5
procrastination, 20:4; 40:5
corruption, 21:8
courage: suffering, 46:10
covenant: old and new, 46:10
covetousness, 26:9
creation:
a Creator necessary, 43:1
first humans, 26:1-5
God, who is like you? 24:1
goodness of, 21:3; 29:1
grace, 26:12
man’s role in, 43:3
mystery, 23:15
seventh day, 33:3
sheep made for Creator to feed, 47:1
see also mankind; temporal . . .
criminals, 20:2
cross:
peace, 25:7
prophecy, 37:2
crucifixion, see Christ
crying:
good deeds, 31:6
just men, 31:4
people of God, 47:17
sowing in tears, 31:1-6
weep before the Creator, 47:1
see also tears
Cyprian, Saint, 37:3
Cyrenaean, 46:41
darkness: afterlife, 31:6
daughters: term for “heresies,” 37:27
David and Goliath, 32:2-4, 9, 12, 18, 25-26
David, King: prefigure of Christ, 47:20, 21
dead:
raised up, 26:11
who ever came back? 41:4
dearness, 34:7
death:
choosing to die, 40:6
distress, 38:6
fear of, 38:7
incarnation and, 23A:3
merry-making at the end, 31:4
riches lost, 39:5
sin and, 26:10
threats, 36:10
troubled by, 31:3
uncertain day of, 39:1
see also afterlife; judgment day
decalogue, see ten commandments
deceit, 23:5
deformity, 27:6
delight, 21:1, 3, 9, 10
spiritual, 23:12
demons:
Christ and, 44:3
worship, 24:6
desert: solitude, 47:23
desires:
harmful, 25A:2
lofty, 20A:5, 6
see also greed; lust
despair, 20:1, 2; 40:2, 3
desperation, 20:3
despising, 20A:3
devil:
dead stones (people), 24:2
deliverance from, 22A:4-5
enemy, 22A:5
excuse for sin, 20:2; 29:3
fool at his end, 46:28
glee over being blamed, 20:2

Volume III/2
Sermons 20-50

Goliath as symbol of, 32:7
greed and fear used by, 32:11, 13
Job and, 22A:1-3; 25A:3
letter “d” in, 32:6
martyrs overcome, 32:26
original sin and, 27:2
partridge as symbol of, 46:28
discipline, 21:8
distaff, 37:13-14
dogs, 50:10
Donatus/Donatists, 33:5; 37:3; 45:7; 46:14, 17, 18, 33, 37, 39, 41; 47:17, 28
dreading, by masters, 23:2
drink: fountain of life, 23:12
drunkenness (enjoyment of good things), 23:12

E
ear: food: sound, 28:4
earnest, and pledge, 23:8-9
earthly goods, see temporal goods
Egypt, 46:37, 38
Elijah, 39:6
Elisha, 26:11
emptiness: spiritual, 36:11
end of the world, 38:11; 46:2; 47:18
endurance, 20:2, 8; 38:1, 5, 11
Christian strength, 46:13
enemy:
delivery from, 22A:1, 5
flesh vs spirit, 30:4
friend’s enemy, 49:6
praying for, 49:11
enjoyment: provision for, 36:6
eternal fire, 22:3; 23:18; 23A:1; 25A:1; 47:4
eternal goods:
divine distribution, 50:3
investment in, 38:8
love for, 45:3
see also temporal goods
eternal life:
Christians in this life, 33A:3
eternal rest, 33:3; 33A:3, 4
haven of our labors, 37:30
keep the commandments, 38:7
praise in, 33A:1
promise of, 22:10
threat to, 32:16
time lovers and, 38:2
see also afterlife
Eunomians, 46:18
Evangel (the word), 45:5
Eve, 22:9, 10; 22A:3; 45:5; 46:28
evil:
baleful days, 25:3-5
body members as weapons of, 30:6
Christ preached everywhere, 31:5
examples of wrongdoing, 40:4
fear of, 32:15
God will condemn evil deeds, 23A:1
human creation, 23A:1
iniquity as master/mistress, 30:1, 8
love of iniquity, 35:2
people prospering, 25A:1
suffering evil, being evil, 48:8
surplus wealth, 32:20
see also badness; sin
example:
bishops leading bad lives, 46:9
care for weaker brethren, 47:14
excuses, 29:3
exile: tears, 31:5
eye: light as food of, 28:3
eyes of the mind, 21:7

F
faith:
believe while you don’t see, 38:3
Canaanite woman, 37:21
claim no credit for self, 26:15
clinging to God, 22A:4
David vs Goliath, 32:3
delight in the Lord, 21:1
grace, 32:9
hearts firmly fixed in, 38:5
just person lives by, 49:2
justice of God, 27:6
justified through, 26:9
last things, 48:7
needs tending, 43:8

Sermons 20-50
Sermons 20-50

paid/kept as same time, 36:8
poor man, rich in faith, 41:2
received; value, 43:2
reward, 33A:1
riches, 25A:3
seeing, 21:5, 7
start of a good life, 43:1
temporal values and, 47:30
tolsome time, 38:4
faithfulness: in slaves, 21:6; 36:8
falsehood, 32:10
famine, 47:28
fate, 20:2
faults: God angry/gentle with, 24:7
fear:
devil and, 32:11, 13
love and, 24:1
old/new covenants, 33:1
restraint on sinning, 45:8
serving the Lord with, 30:10
temptation, 32:15
ten commandments, 32:8
fear of God:
sanctification, 45:9
wisdom, 37:29
field (valiant woman), 37:8-9
first man, see Adam
fisherman, 43:6
flatterers, 41:5
flesh:
grass, 25:6; 33A:3; 45:10
sinful, 27:2
spirit and, 30:4; 45:8, 9
food: light for the eye, 28:3
forgiveness of sin:
all sin forgiven, 23A:2
by Christ, 32:12
day of conversion, 20:4
He delivers you from yourself, 42:3
prayer, 22:6; 47:7
prophecy, 44:6
see also repentance
forgiving:
enemies, 49:8-9
forgive and you will be forgiven, 42:2
a form of kindness, 42:1
fortune: good/bad, 20A:1
foundation, building, 20A:7
fountain of life, 23:10, 12
free choice/will, 23A:1
Pelagian error, 26:2; 8
without God, a bad thing, 26:3
freedom, 33:1
friend: stand by, even in poverty, 41:1-3
fruit trees, see trees
future events, 22:1, 2
future life, see afterlife; eternal life

G

gentleness, 24:4
Gethsemane, 31:3
gift of God, 32:23
girdles, 37:21
giving:
a form of kindness, 42:1
give and you will be given, 42:2
gladness, 31:3
glory:
of God's house, 50:11
in the Lord, 47:13
gnashing of teeth, 31:6
goats, see sheep
God:
anger, 24:7
approving, 48:2
cheating, 38:4
chief shepherd, 46:18
conditions for seeing, 23:18
contact with (humble prayer), 45:7
dearness, 21:4
do not keep quiet or grow gentle, 24:4, 7
face to face with (Moses), 23:14
fairness and justice, 27:7
faithful and trustworthy, 38:10
Father, and the Church, 22:9, 10
Father as shepherd, 47:21
Father's testament of peace, 47:22
first faith, then sight, 22A:4
foreknowledge, 26:4
God will come from the African, 46:38-40

Volume III/2
goodness of, 29:1; 29A:2
gratitude to, 24:1
hearing Word of, 28:4
his children will see him as he is, 23:16
image of, see image of God
inscrutable/unsearchable ways, 26:13-15; 27:7
judge, 47:7
just in what He allows, 48:7
keeping himself for those who love him, 22A:4
keeping quiet (as judge), 47:5, 8
learning from, 30:9
letter “d”, in, 32:6
light, no darkness, 28A:1
love—
commandments, 27:6
freely, 22A:1
God is love, 21:2; 23:8-9, 13; 34:3
in hope, 21:1; 32:16
love beyond words, 21:2
loving/having, 34:5
profit from our love, 34:8
merciful and just, 22:5
mystery, 23:15
not grasped by thought, 21:2
oath; I live, 46:19
our whole/true good, 22A:2
patience, 47:5
possessed equally by all, 47:30
possession of, 32:28
praise the word of, 47:27
reaching him, 47:30
realize his justice, 48:6
refusing his gift, 32:23
repenting (change of sentence), 22:6
revealed and concealed, 23:14
riches of wisdom and knowledge, 27:7
seeing face to face, 38:3
shepherd, 47:3, 20
sing his praises, 34:6
spirit, 21:2
unchanging, 23:15
united to; sin, 29:6
visiting the temple (human body), 23:6
wait patiently, 40:1
walking about in us, 23:8-9
who is like you? 24:3
see also Jesus Christ; faith; Holy Spirit; sin; Trinity; trust; worship
godless: Lazarus and the rich man, 33A:4
gods, 24:2, 3, 6
gold, 21:3, 4, 5, 7, 10; 23:9; 32:21; 34:5;
36:3, 8; 38:6; 50:1-13
Goliath, 32:2-4, 7, 9, 12, 18, 25-26
good days, 25:5-6, 7
good deeds, see good works
good people:
life events and, 48:8
rich, 36:4
upright of heart praised, 21:1-10
good things:
all received from God, 26:14, 15
desire for, 29:5
enjoyment beyond telling, 23:12
everything created by God, 21:3
life, valued the highest, 20:4
restraint, 38:1, 5
this life, 41:5
good works:
cheerfulness, 31:3, 5
crying, 31:6
distaff and spindle, 37:13-14
harvest, 25:8
hearing and acting, 23A:1
let works shine before men, 47:13
redemption and, 23A:2
rich in, 36:6; 39:4
sabbath, 33:3
seeking praise for, 47:13
sharing riches, 25A:4
sowing in tears, 31:2
but unwilling to suffer, 46:13
see also charity
goodness:
judgment day, 47:6
man’s original state, 26:3
neighbor’s, 35:3
power, 29:1
responsibility, 35:2
source, 29A:2
start: right faith, 43:1

Sermons 20-50
Sermons 20-50

willing, 30:3
gospel, 25:1
grace:
  belief and, 32:12
  creation; justification, 26:12
  helps fulfill the law, 32:8
  justification, 26:9
  merit and, 26:14
  nature and, 26:4, 5
  Pelagian error, 26:8
  prefigured: milk and honey, 25:1
  punishment and, 23A:2
  reliance on, 32:9
  riches of God, 27:6
  saved by, 23A:1
  source, 26:10
  symbolism, 32:7
  unsearchable ways of God, 26:13, 15
  grass, 25:6; 25A:1; 45:10
  greed, 32:11, 13, 14, 19, 22; 38:6; 45:2;
  46:13; 50:6
  possessions, 50:3
  soul’s riches, 36:9
  temptation, 32:14
  wish to be rich, 39:3
  see also avarice
guilt, 30:3

H
Haggai, 50:1
hand: left/right, 32:22
happiness:
  celestial/terrestrial, 32:22, 27
  heaven, 45:10
  poverty and, 50:5
  right hand, left hand, 32:22
  temporal/worldly things, 21:8; 32:18,
  24
harlot, 37:20
harvest time, 47:6
hate, 24:3: 49:5-6
  desire for revenge, 49:9
  hate is a murderer, 49:7
  speck of anger, 49:7
  healing, 20:1; 30:5
  health:
  good people, bad people, 38:2
job, 22A:3
hearing the word, 23:1; 23A:1
heart:
  anguish, 47:17
  belief, 49:2
  charity in, 47:23
  clean, 20:1, 2; 23:18
  cleaned by confessing, 23A:4
  give to God, 34:7
  gold vs faith, 21:7
  impossible to read, 49:4
  invest in, 36:8
  lifting up to God, 25:2
  lowliness of, 45:7
  peace, 25:7
  purified, seeing God, 22A:4
  rejoice, 28:1
  revealing thoughts of, 49:4
  rich persons investing in, 36:11
  sin, 45:9
  sound and meaning, 28:4
  treasure, 37:9
  uprightness praised, 21:1-10
  word of God in, 32:13
heavenly:
  glory, 45:10
  home, 38:11
  see also kingdom of heaven
hell, 28:4; 32:13; 41:5
Helper (Lazarus), 33A:4
Hercules, 24:3, 6, 7
heresy and heretics:
  all agree against unity, 47:27
  astuteness of heretics, 46:29
  bad “daughters,” 37:27
  companions of Christ, 46:36
  devil and, 46:28
  divisions among Christians, 47:28
  excuse: following our bishops, 46:21
  indifference to, 46:15
  motive for separation, 47:18
  pride, 46:18
  prong of their yoke, 47:26
  rebaptizers in Africa, 46:37
  testament, 47:22
hill: symbol of Christ, 47:24

Volume III/2
Holy Spirit, 22:7; 23:8-9; 29A:1; 32:6; 33:3
love God with God, 34:3
honor:
clothing, 46:6
seeking, 39:2
hope, 20A:1; 21:1; 22A:4; 23:12; 24:5; 27:5; 32:16; 45:10; 47:1, 23, 25
Christ, head of the Church, 45:5
giving up, 20:3
perishing from, 20:3; 40:3
perverse, 20:4
uncertainty of riches, 36:5
house of God, 27:1
human affairs: God seen as uninterested in, 48:4-5
human beings, see mankind
human condition, 24:5
humility:
Christ’s example, 23A:3, 4; 41:7; 50:11
contact with God, 45:7
endurance, 20A:8
foundation, 20A:7
God draws near to the humble, 21:2
grace to the humble, 30:7
Incarnation as model, 30:9
learning justification, 25:5
rich people, 36:1-2; 5
sons of Zebedee, 20A:6
trust and, 20A:2
see also pride
hunger, 36:9; 37:7
husband and wife, 45:5
hymn: praise God, 33:5
hypocrits, 37:15A 0
idols, 22:4; 47:11
image of God: nothing dearer to God, 20A:2
immortality, 20A:5; 7; 49:3; 50:13
ture riches, 36:3
incarnation:
born of a virgin, 49A:1

Christ proceeded without receding, 28:5
clothes of a slave, 20A:3
learning humility from, 30:9
our death and, 23A:3
passion and, 22:1
poverty, 36:3
purpose, 26:7
unchanged as creator, 47:20
infant: crying/laughing, 31:4
iniquity, see evil
insensitivity, 47:10
investment: temporal or eternal, 42:2
James, son of Zebedee, 20A:6
jealousy: evil-doers, 25A:1
Jerusalem: God’s house, 50:11
Jesus Christ:
ascended into heaven, 46:40
awaken faith in, 38:10
body (the Church), 45:5
brethren, 36:5
burial, 44:7
crucified, 37:2; 44:4, 6
crucifixion: forgivenes, 49:9
crucifixion: the tunic, 22:1
crucifixion: thief hanging with Christ, 22:3
deforced (Isaiah), 27:6; 44:4
despised, 20A:3
destitute for sake of mankind, 39:6
equality with the Father, 30:9
eternal life promised by, 22:10
find/attend him in the poor, 25:8
flesh of, 27:2
food nourishing without perishing, 28:2
gentle and humble of heart, 24:4
God and man, 37:17
grace through, 26:12
guards at his tomb, 44:7
head of the Church, 45:5
hidden as God, 20A:3
hill (symbol), 47:24
hold fast, in his poverty, 41:7

Sermons 20-50
human and divine, 44:6
humbled: death on the cross, 41:7
humility, 23A:3; 4; 32:13; 50:11
interior beauty, 44:3
Jewish blindness re, 44:5-6
judge, 25A:1
justice and wisdom, 28:2
justifies the unjust, 23A:2
king, 45:6
learn from me, 24:4
martyrs confessing, 31:2
mediator, 26:7; 47:21
mercy, 32:12
mountain of God, 45:5, 7
name of, 47:20
our peace, 25:7; 47:22
persecuted, 44:2
poverty, 36:3
power over death, 31:3
prefigured by David, 32:5; 47:20, 21
prophecies concerning, 38:10; 44:1; 47:20
redeeming the captives, 27:2
resurrection foretold by, 44:6
rich, became poor, 41:7
role as God-man, 20A:4
second commandment, 33:3
see the Father in, 47:20
son of man, 23:11
sorrowful unto death, 31:3
suffering, 22:1; 46:10, 11
transfiguration, 43:5
virgin birth, 44:6; 45:6; 49A:1
wizard or magician, 43:5
Word incarnate, 26:7
Word of God, 23A:3
Word: unchanging God, 23A:15
see also Incarnation; Mystical Body of Christ
Jews:
blindness about Christ, 44:5-6
disbelief in resurrection, 41:4
praying for, 49:11
scattered over the earth, 45:7
Job:
delight in the Lord, 21:9
motivation, 45:2
testing, 22A:1-3; 25A:3
John, A postle (love(d), 20A:8; 34:2
John, son of Zebedee, 20A:6
Joseph in Egypt, 37:20; 46:23
Joseph of Arimathea, 44:7; 46:41
joy:
everlasting; heaven, 45:5, 10
rejoice, 28:1
sowing in tears, 31:1-6
Judah, 22:1; 5; 46:23
judgment:
bishops/God feeds with, 46:27
fruit trees, 25A:1
God finds you, 48:2
love the person, hate the vice,
49:5-6
of others, 49:4
perversion, 48:2
self, 49:5
judgment day:
bishops and, 46:2
conspicuous in the gates, 37:19
final judgment, 47:4
foretold, 22:4
harvest time, 47:6, 16
sheep and goats, 47:17
Son of Man will come in glory,
37:19
sorting time, 48:7
strong and feeble sheep, 47:15
just person/people:
crying, 31:4
evil days, 25:4; 5
hard life, 32:19
victorious, 32:26
justice:
arrogance, 30:10
desire for, 32:21
free choice, 26:2
God and sinners, 22:5, 6
God: no unfairness, 27:3, 4, 6
hatred of vice, 49:7
light of, 50:8
living by, 49:2
rich people, 25A:2
right judgment, 48:2

Volume III/2
sacrifice and, 49:1
wages: age when hired, 49:2
work of God, 49:2
justification:
    confessing, 23A:4
grace; the Law, 26:9, 12

K

kindness:
    rewarded, 20A:9
    sins cleansed by, 42:1
kingdom of heaven, 23A:1; 32:14
    sale price: rich and poor, 39:6
    kneeling, 49:11

L

laboring: come to me, 30:8
lamps: bishops as, 46:5
land:
    flowing with milk and honey, 25:1
    of the living, 45:4
last day of life, 22:8
last things, 48:7
laughing, 31:4
law (O.T.):
    David’s five pebbles, 32:5
    instructed by the Lord, 25A:1
    number symbolism, 32:5, 7
    spiritual/carnal, 30:1, 3
    see also Torah
Lazarus (beggar), 20A:9; 33A:4
    meaning: “Helped,” 33A:4
    poor man, rich man (Luke 16), 41:4-5
laziness, 38:6
liar: everyman, 28A:1
Libya, 46:41
lie; deceit, 23:5
life:
    desire for, 25:6
    ending with merry-making, 31:4
    events: do judgment, do justice, 48:8
    falsity of, 36:6
    God seen as unconcerned, 48:4-5
    highest value, 20:4
    last day, 22:8
    long, 33A:2
    long/bad life desired, 20:4; 40:5
    a mist, 24:5
    span shrinks with aging, 38:5
    true life in afterlife, 39:5
    vines, 43:3
    see also afterlife; conduct
light: food for the eye, 28:3
linen, 37:6, 18
listener, perfect, 23:4
listening, 28:4; 47:5
living stones, 24:2
loftiness, 20A:7
love:
    because we are loved, 34:2
    burden made light by, 30:10
    charity sings the new song, 33:1
    clean heart, 23:18
    drinking, 23:13
    earthly, 34:4
    exchanging, 35:2
    fear and, 24:1
    of God, see God: love
    loved but not seen, 34:4
    lover profits by, 34:8
    loving kindness, 20A:9
    loving/having, 34:5
    means having plenty of room, 23:7
    nearness of God, 21:2
    of neighbor: ten commandments, 33:4, 5
    new commandment, 33:2
    old/new covenants, 33:1
    promises: God or world, 32:14
    rightly, 23:13
    seeing God, 22A:4
    self and neighbor (command), 34:8
    sinful, 21:3
    sing the new song, 34:1, 6
    Stephen (martyr) as example, 49:10
    unity, 32:5
    vices of friends, 49:6
    whole heart, mind, strength, 34:7
    see also charity
    lower things, 21:3

Sermons 20-50
Sermons 20-50

lust:
- bad pastors, 46:9
- consent withheld, 30:7
- defilement of the flesh, 45:8
- flesh vs spirit, 25:4; 30:4, 6
- holding on to, 30:4
- refraining from, 20:3; 34:5
- thoughts and wishes, 45:9

M
- Maccabees, 32:15
- maidservants, 37:7, 10
- Mambre, 23:16
- mammon of iniquity, 41:6; 50:6, 8
- Manichees, 37:17; 50:7, 9, 13
- mankind (human beings):
  - creation of, 22:7; 26:1-5
  - all creation subject to, 20A:3
  - endowed (created) with free will, 26:8
  - flesh and spirit (created), 30:4
  - hierarchy in creation, 43:3
  - humans made into angels, 45:10
  - image of the creator (mind, reason, judgment), 24:3; 26:4; 43:3
  - nothing if God is unknown, 32:9; 12
  - original condition of, 26:1
- people:
  - living/dead stones, 24:2
  - praise-making creature, 29:1
  - sheep of God's pasture, 26:5
  - trusting in, 32:9
- See also:
  - original sin
- manna, 45:1
- manumission of slaves, 21:6, 7
- marriage, 21:1
- martyrs:
  - Church as mother of, 37:1
  - confessing Christ, 31:2
  - false gods, 24:6
  - God's non-intervention, 32:15
  - seed of their blood, 22:4
  - sowing in tears, 31:1, 3
- master (teacher):
  - dangerous office, 23:1
  - fellow pupil, 23:2
  - material benefits, 37:20
  - materialistic people, 23:4, 5
  - meaning, 28:4-5
  - mediator: Christ as, 26:7
- mercy:
  - confessing one's sins, 29:3
  - divine, 23:11; 27:1-7
  - God and sinners, 22:5
  - great sinner, 20:2
  - poor man, rich man (Luke 16), 41:4-5
  - praise of, 29A:1, 2
  - Psalm 57, 20A:1-9
- merit: grace and, 26:14
- merry-making (Ps 126:56), 31:4, 5, 6
- mind:
  - sanctification of, 45:9
  - seeing with eyes of the, 21:7
  - sound and meaning, 28:4
- mirror, 49:5
- misery: poverty and, 50:5
- mistress: sin as, 30:1
- money, 21:7; 41:1
- mongomachy, 32:3
- mortality, 22:9; 23A:3; 49:3
- Moses, 23:14, 16; 41:4
- books of: see Torah
- mother-love, 23:3
- Mount of Olives, 46:40
- mountain(s):
  - authors of the Scriptures, 46:24
  - Christ: mountain of God, 45:5, 6, 7
  - stone becomes, 45:6
  - symbol for pride, 46:17
  - Synagogue and Church, 45:6
  - murder: hatred as, 49:7
  - muslins, 37:20
- mystical body of Christ:
  - each member a part in, 24:5
  - inheritance from Christ, 22:10

N
- name: written in heaven, 33A:4
- nature:
  - grace and, 26:4, 5
  - healing, 30:5
- necessities, 37:30; 39:6
- neighbor:
  - advice: be wise for, 35:1

Volume III/2
commanded to love, 33:4, 5
concerned interest, 35:3
meaning: Christ, 41:7
poverty; charity, 41:1, 5
true love of, 35:2
netherworld: Lazarus (beggar) in, 41:4
new covenant:
Donatists and, 33:5
song: love, 34:1
New Testament:
law (gospel), 25:1
source, 26:10
night, 37:7
noonday, 46:38
Numidia, 46:39

O
obedience, 35:3
old age, 33A:2
Old Testament: source, 26:10
olive tree, 25A:4
original sin, 26:3; 27:2; 30:2

P
pagans, 24:6; 26:4, 6, 7
paradise, 25:3
paralytic soul, 46:13
pardon, 20:2; 22:6
parents and children:
  goodness/badness, 35:2
  poor and rich, 45:2
Parmenian, 46:17
partridge:
  devil symbol, 46:28
  quarreling, 46:29
pastoral work, see bishops
patience, 40:1; 47:6, 17
Paul, Saint:
  imprisoned, 46:4
  new covenant, 25:2
  suffering foretold by prophet, 22:2
  teacher, 23:2
peace:
  Christ is, 25:7
  cross and, 25:7

heavenly, 50:12
pursuit; seeking, 23:18; 25:7
testament of, 47:22, 28
peacemakers: children of God, 23:16-17
Pelagians, 26:2, 8
Pentapolis, 46:41
people of God, 24:5; 50:11
perfection: Donatists, 47:17
perishing, 20:3
persecution:
  Christian life of suffering, 46:11
  growth of the Church, 44:2
  perversity, 48:2
Peter, Saint:
  body of the Church, 46:30
  common man, 43:6
  feed my sheep, 46:23, 30, 37
  “living stones,” 24:2
Pharisee: publican and, 36:11
Philistines, 32:25
Photinus, 37:17
pigs, 50:10
pleasing others, 47:12
pleasing the Lord, 47:1
pleasure:
  delight in the Lord, 21:8, 9
  restricting, 38:1; 46:10
  senses, 28:2
pledge, and earnest, 23:8-9

poor:
  bellies of, storerooms for good works, 36:9
  bones of, 33A:3
  charity to neighbor, 41:1, 5
  children and parents, 45:2
  Christ is destitute in, 38:8
  citizen of kingdom of heaven, 38:9
  despising, 25A:3
  disdaining/ignoring, 41:6
  find/attend Christ in, 25:8
  generosity to, 45:4
  God feeds, through the rich, 39:4
  justice, 32:27
  Lazarus, 33A:4
  porters for the rich, 38:9
  rich man as brother of, 36:5
rich tested by, 39:6
in spirit (blessed), 36:7
spiritually poor, 36:10
supply their lack, diminish your load,
25A:4
threats, 36:10
trust in God, 20A:9
valiant woman, 37:14
possessions:
fear of losses, 50:3
greed, 50:3
loving/having, 34:5
potter, 26:13
poverty:
Christ, 36:3
hold fast with neighbor in, 41:7
misery and, 50:5
the valiant woman, 37:25
praise:
be what you sing, 34:6
confessing to God, 29:4; 29A:1
eternal life, 37:30
heaven, 45:10
praise God, 33:5; 33A 1:1
seeking, for good works, 47:13
valiant woman, 37:23, 26
what the Lord gives, 48:1
prayer:
commending, in tears, 31:5
contact with God, 45:7
intention, 40:7
unheard, 21:8
weapon against the devil, 22A:5
preaching: saying His thing, 46:1
precious stones, 37:3
pride (the proud):
David and Goliath, 32:12, 26
division; heresies, 46:18
God withstanding, 30:7
good and bad “mountains,” 46:17
humbled, 36:11
redemption and, 30:2
riches and, 36:2, 5, 7; 39:4
rising against God, 25:2
smoke, 22:8
struggle with, 33A:2
transgressors, 26:9
see also humility
profit, 22A:2
promise(s):
guarantees, 40:7
mountain, 45:3, 5
reward for self-cleansing, 45:1-2
promised land, 25:1, 45:4
prophecy:
Church in, 22:4
crucifixion of Christ, 22:1
judgment day, 22:4
told as happening in the past, 22:1, 2
warnings, 22:2
prophets: poor man, rich man (Luke 16), 41:4
prosperity, 20:2; 32:22, 27; 38:1
enjoying friend’s p., 41:2-3
evil people, 25A:1
proud, see pride
providence: God’s way, 22:2; 26:15
publican, 36:11
punishment:
grace and, 23A:2
use of possessions, 32:27
purification:
cleanse self of every defilement, 45:1, 3, 6, 8
cleanse the inside, 45:9
by endurance and restraint, 38:1

Q
quarreling, 23:17; 46:29

R
rain showers, 47:24
razor, 32:17
reason: image of God, 43:3
rebaptizers in Africa, 46:37, 38
redemption:
Christ’s mortal flesh, 27:2
grace, 23A:2
human malice, 30:5
merciful, 22:9
pride and, 30:2
slaves, 21:6, 7
soul; riches, 36:7, 9
repentance:
dangers to guard against, 20:3
drawn to by God’s patience, 40:2
foretold, 44:6
fruitful sorrow, 22:3, 6
God healing/forgiving, 20:3
God is leading to, 47:5
Psalm 51, 20:1
responsibility: for good and evil, 35:2
restraint, 38:1, 5, 11
resurrection of the body, 23A:3; 31:6;
37:25-26; 50:12
reward:
cleansing self of defilements, 45:1
good people, bad people, 38:2
rich (riches; rich people):
all good people are rich, 36:4
bones of, 33A:3
buried treasures, 38:8
children and parents, 45:2
clinging to treasures, 38:7
fear of death, 38:7
good people, bad people, 38:2
good things: this life, 41:5
good works, 25A:4; 36:6
hell: too late for just desires, 41:5
humbled, 36:1, 5
immortality, 36:3
inner wealth (virtues), 25A:3; 36:7
investment in hearts, 36:11
justice, 25A:2; 32:27
Lazarus and, 33A:4
mammon of iniquity, 50:6
money as temptation, 39:3
motive for worship, 22A:2-3
poor man’s brother, 36:5
pride, 36:2, 5, 7; 39:4
redemption of the soul, 36:7, 9
Scripture and, 36:1
sharing good times, 41:3
test: help the poor, 39:6
transfer assets to heaven, 38:9
treasure in heaven, 36:5
trust in God, 20A:9
uncertainty, 36:5
use of created things, 21:10
see also charity; poor; sharing;
treasure; wealth
room (love), 23:7
root: prophecy re Christ, 44:1
S
sabbath: third commandment, 33:3
sacrifice:
appeasing God, 49:1
offer yourself, 48:2
reward for, 20A:2
sadness, 31:3; 35:3
saints:
eternal joy, 31:6
hold fast to God and Church, 22:9
tears, 31:6
testimony of, 48:4, 5
sales, 37:20
salvation:
grace, 23A:1
hope, 27:5
sanctification:
body and spirit, 45:9
fear of God, 45:9
perfected, 45:8, 9
pursuit of, 23:18; 45:1
Saul (later Paul), 24:7
Saul, King, 32:3
savior, 43:1
scripture(s):
allegory in, 32:6
attentive to readings, 32:2
authors as “mountains,” 46:24
Christ and the Church, 46:33
feed in good health, 46:24
heretics disagree on, 47:27
medicine, 32:1
no grounds for blaming, 23:3
past tense, future meaning, 27:5
spiritual, 23:3
treat as face of God, 22:7
value of riches in, 36:1
second coming, 50:10

Sermons 20-50
Sermons 20-50

self:
- deliver you from your (bad) self, 42:3
- praise God for your good points, 48:2
- self-accusation, 20:2, 4
- self-indulgence, 21:3

senses:
- human/animal life, 43:3
- pleasure, 28:2

sermon:
- composed of letters and syllables, 47:30

serpent:
- sin, 20:2
- servant, 32:23
- servile works, 33:3
- servitude: earthly goods, 25:2
- sharing, 20A:8; 25A:.4; 36:6; 39:5
- shaving, 32:17

sheep:
- Christians as, 47:1-30
- God’s disposition, 26:15

shepherds:
- bishops as, 46:1-41
- shouting, 24:5

sickness, 49:6

sign of the cross, 32:13

silence:
- bishops as shepherds, 46:20

silver, 21:4, 5, see also gold

Simon of Cyrene, 46:41

sin(s):
- always before me, 29A:4
- bad use of things, 21:3
- cleansed by alms/kindness, 42:1
- conversion delayed, 20:4
- defilements of the spirit/the flesh, 45:8
- disordered usage, 21:3
- enemy of God, 47:7
- God is carrying our sins, 47:5
- God turns his face away, 20:2
- healing hurt caused by, 20:1
- heavy-laden, come to Christ, 30:9
- inner enemies, 42:3
- justifying, 22:8
- loving badly, 21:3
- mistress, 30:1
- Pauline teaching, 26:10
- preference for earthly things, 32:14
- proper to man, 32:10
- punishment, 20:2; 29:6
- refrain from bad will, deeds, thoughts, 45:8
- reigning in the body, 30:6
- remedy for guilt, 47:7, 8
- repent and confess, 29:6
- self-accusation, 20:2, 4
- serpent, 20:2
- slave of sin, 47:26
- will and decision, 20:1
- works of the flesh, 37:28
- see also confess; forgiveness; repentance

singing:
- new man, 22A:1

sinners:
- good fortune, 32:19
- man’s creation, 22:7
- perish, from face of God, 22:1

slave(s; -ery):
- bad slave, 37:15
- divine master, 37:20
- entrusting goods to, 39:6
- faithful, 21:6-7; 36:8; 38:8
- fear, 33:1
- sleeping: temporal life as, 39:5
- sluggishness, 30:6
- smoke, vanishing, 30:6
- solitude, 47:23
- Solomon’s temple, 23:7
- song: cheer; love, 34:1
- sons of men, 23:11

soul:
- body weighs down, 30:4
- fool, taken away this night, 32:27
- gain whole world; lose soul, 36:9
- loving/hating, 29:5
- redemption; riches, 36:7, 9
- rest in God, 33:3
- sound, 28:4-5
- speech: slipping up, 23:2
- spindle, 37:13-14
- spirit:
  - and flesh, 30:4; 45:8, 9
  - lust (war), 25:4
  - spiritual goods, 37:20
  - spirituality, 23:4

Volume III/2
Stephen, Saint, 42:3; 49:10-11
stone(s):
became a great mountain, 45:6
people: living and dead, 24:2
stream (the word), 32:6-7
strength:
characteristics, 47:16, 17
Hercules, 24:6
stupidity, 47:10
success: worldly, 25A:2
suffering:
Christian life, 46:10
endurance, 20A:8
God’s will be done, 22:2
good people, bad people, 38:2
unwilling or unable to endure, 46:13
warning by God, 22:3
summer, 25A:1; 36:4; 38:6
sunlight, 50:7
superfluities, 32:17, 19
superstition, 24:6

tax collector, 36:11
teacher:
attitudes, 47:10
master, a dangerous office, 23:1
tears:
become my bread day and night, 31:5
everlasting, 31:6
saints, 31:6
sowing, reap joy, 31:1-6
temple:
human body, 23:6; 24:1
of Solomon, 23:7
temporal goods:
attachment to, 38:7; 46:18
disdaining, 45:3
diversity of fortunes, 47:30
eternal life and, 38:2
God as distributor, 50:3
good use of created things, 21:10; 50:4
temporal life:
happiness, 32:18, 22, 27
lot of Christians in, 33A:3
threats; evils, 32:16
temptation:
beyond what is bearable, 46:12
good/bad things in life, 20A:1
greed, 32:14
storm: faith is sleeping, 38:10
ten commandments:
cheerful fulfillment, 32:8
fear, 32:8
first three, 33:3
harp strings, 33:1, 2
number symbolism, 32:5, 7
seventh-tenth, 33:4
two tables, 33:2
testament: old and new, 25:1, 2
thorns: heresies, 37:27
threats, 32:15, 16; 36:10
Tigisi, 46:39
time:
conversion “tomorrow,” 20:4
uncertainty of tomorrow, 40:5
tolerance, 47:17
tongue:
refrain from evil, 25:6, 7
valiant woman, 37:23
Torah:
justification; grace, 26:9
number five (symbolism), 32:7
source, 26:10
transgressors, 26:9
treasure:
banking in heaven, 38:9
eternal/temporal goods, 38:8
tree:
judgment: fruit trees, 25A:1
roots, 20A:7
withered, 36:4
Trinity:
confessing in, 29:2
feeding Christ’s flock, 47:20
unity of the godhead, 33:3; 47:21
troubles:
beyond what is bearable, 46:12
psalm 126, 31:4
trust:
excessive, 20:3

Sermons 20-50
first commandment, 38:5
mercy of God, 20A:1-9
poor/rich trust in God, 20A:9, 10
in princes, 33A:3
self not to put trust in, 20A:2
truth:
error and, 46:41
God as, 28:5; 32:10
masters, 23:2
understanding, 23:5

U
ugliness, 49:5
unbelief:
in Christ, 43:9
darkness, 49:3
understanding:
belief and, 43:4, 7-8, 9
carelessness in, 47:10
image of God, 43:3
of truth, 23:5
ungodly, the, 40:2
unity:
in the creation, 24:3
forced, 46:41
good shepherds, 46:30, 37
heretics all agree against, 47:27
love, 32:5
upright of heart, 29A:2; 48:3
see also good (-ness)
usury, 38:8; 42:2

V
valiant woman (Proverbs):
figure of the Church, 37:1-30
vice:
hating, 49:5-7
inner struggles, 40:7
speck or beam in eye, 49:7
virgin birth, 44:6; 49A:1
"without hands," 45:6
virtues:
holding in; holding out, 20:2
inner wealth, 25A:3; 36:7
treasure, 21:8
voice:
sound, 28:5
witnessing with, 24:5

W
waiting, 40:1
war:
David and Goliath, 32:3
lust, 25:4
warnings, 22:3
wax, 22:1-10
wealth:
danger: evils, 32:20
indifference to, 50:3
Job and the devil, 22A:3
one’s surplus, another’s necessities, 39:6
transfer, 36:5
see also rich
weeds, 47:6, 18
weeping, see crying; tears
well-being, 33A:3
wickedness, see evil
widow’s two farthings, 39:6
wife: spiritual and fleshly works,
37:6
will of God, 32:18; 45:3
wine, 21:3
wineskins, 36:2
winter, 36:4
wisdom:
be wise for self and neighbor, 35:1
cunning, 46:28
divine, 27:7
fear of the Lord, 37:29
greed and, 38:6
love of, 38:6
as noonday, 46:38
woman:
announcements (bible), 45:5
charm deceitful, beauty vain,
37:29
distaff and spindle, 37:13-14
double cloaks for husband, 37:17
deathly love, 34:4
farsighted in faith and hope, 37:8
Hebrew usage of the word, 49A:1
her children enriched, 37:25-26
husband not anxious re home, 37:15-16
light of hope, 37:11
opened her mouth with care, 37:23
superlative way: charity, 37:28
useful work, 37:12
valiant woman (Proverbs), 37:1-30
valor and elegance, 37:22
wool, 37:6; 46:6
word of God:
foothold in the heart, 32:13
rain showers (image), 47:24
Word, The, see Jesus Christ
words: letters in, 32:6
work:
valiant woman, 37:10
works of mercy, 50:4
world:
pilgrim exiles in, 38:11
promises of, 32:14
worldliness: earth and its fullness, 39:2
worldly:
goods, 32:24
success, 25A:2
well-being, 38:1
see also temporal . . .
worship:
gods as senseless objects, 24:3
good times and bad, 32:28
Job vs the devil, 22A:1-3
motive, 22A:3
old/new covenants, 25:2
riches as motive, 22A:2
wrestling, 22A:5
wrongdoer, 22A:1, 4

Y
yoke, 30:9-10

Z
Zacchaeus, 25:8; 39:6; 47:30
Zebedee, sons of, 20A:6, 8
Index from

Sermons 51-94

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Sermons 51-94 are on the Old Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/3 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-0-911782-85-1, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1991

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td>68.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>52.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>53A.4; 91.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>57.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>60.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>51.18; 52.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>65A.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>58.4; 78.5; 88.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>88.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>88.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>51.4; 63B.2; 88.10; 91.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:16</td>
<td>58.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:5-6</td>
<td>51.28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:14</td>
<td>72.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>65A.7; 72A.4; 74.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13-16</td>
<td>74.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>75.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:34</td>
<td>60.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:10</td>
<td>88.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:32</td>
<td>88.24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 19:18</td>
<td>74.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 5:16</td>
<td>65A.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>75.5; 81.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1.5</td>
<td>62.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>60.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>57.9; 71.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:29</td>
<td>61A.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:39</td>
<td>77.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joshua 5:2.3</td>
<td>71.26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings 6:16</td>
<td>60.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:27</td>
<td>60.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Tobit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>88.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>88.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>60.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>86.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>72.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>58.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>81.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>58.8; 82.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>81.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>90.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>65A.7; 67.2; 69.3; 90.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>81.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>70.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:8</td>
<td>58.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>67.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:28</td>
<td>67.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:43</td>
<td>77.5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:43-44</td>
<td>62.4; 63B.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:44</td>
<td>77.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>53.14; 60.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1.3-4</td>
<td>78.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>59.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>87.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16.17</td>
<td>51.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>51.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>86.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4</td>
<td>65A.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:8</td>
<td>53.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>52.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:1</td>
<td>58.6; 77A.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:22</td>
<td>52.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12</td>
<td>58.11; 84.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:13-14</td>
<td>58.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Sermons 51-94

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34:18</td>
<td>70A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:6</td>
<td>53, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>53, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:11</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:9</td>
<td>64, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:5-7</td>
<td>77B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>53A, 4; 60, 2; 90, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:12</td>
<td>77B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:8</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:10</td>
<td>52, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:4-3</td>
<td>52, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:1</td>
<td>64, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:23</td>
<td>81, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:10-11</td>
<td>62, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:12</td>
<td>75, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:21</td>
<td>60A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:23</td>
<td>67, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:1</td>
<td>85, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:8</td>
<td>52, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:2</td>
<td>62, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>67, 2; 69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:6</td>
<td>65A, 1; 68, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:1</td>
<td>77A, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:11</td>
<td>61A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:10</td>
<td>60, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:4</td>
<td>53, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:9</td>
<td>76, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:2</td>
<td>75, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1</td>
<td>65A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:7</td>
<td>71, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6</td>
<td>81, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6-7</td>
<td>76, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:4</td>
<td>59, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:11</td>
<td>52, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:11</td>
<td>65A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86:4</td>
<td>52, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:1</td>
<td>55, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:11-12</td>
<td>81, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:5</td>
<td>63, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:8</td>
<td>69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:9</td>
<td>69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:12-13</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:18</td>
<td>76, 8; 80, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:5</td>
<td>63, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100:1</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:5</td>
<td>81, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106:47</td>
<td>77, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108:12</td>
<td>61A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109:7</td>
<td>56, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:1</td>
<td>61, 20; 91, 2; 92, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:9</td>
<td>61, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113:5-6</td>
<td>70A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>81, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>65A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:22</td>
<td>60A, 2; 88, 10; 89, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:155</td>
<td>70A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:165</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:22</td>
<td>88, 10; 89, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:2</td>
<td>68, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:9</td>
<td>90, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:11</td>
<td>51, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>70A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7</td>
<td>55, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:5</td>
<td>67, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:5</td>
<td>77C, 93, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142:5</td>
<td>53A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143:2</td>
<td>93, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>93, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28</td>
<td>87, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>82, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>65A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:2</td>
<td>53A, 6; 85, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>60, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ecclesiastes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>61, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>61, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Song of Songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>65A, 8; 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>62A, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>53, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>65, 6; 81, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>62, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>58, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>58, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>52, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>52, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>63, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>68, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>76, 8; 77A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>73, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>87, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>67, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>65, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:12</td>
<td>56, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:23</td>
<td>65A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:15-16</td>
<td>68, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>78, 2; 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>62A, 3; 89, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>75, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>89, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9 (LXX)</td>
<td>89, 4; 91, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>52, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14-15</td>
<td>92, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>72A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10</td>
<td>65, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:12</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6</td>
<td>65A, 13; 82, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume III/3**
Sermons 51-94

Volume III/3

New Testament

Matthew
1:1 51, 7
1:1-2 51, 7
1:16 51, 7
1:17 51, 8
1:28 51, 9
1:19-20 51, 7
1:20-21 51, 16
1:25 51, 30
1:1-2 71, 19
2:2 71, 20
2:10 72, 3
3:11 71, 19
3:14-15 52, 1
3:16-17 52, 1
3:17 71, 27
3:28 71, 24
3:28-29 71, 22
4:6 81, 4
4:17 71, 19
5:1-3 53A, 1
5:3 53, 1
5:4 53, 2: 4; 53A, 6, 8
5:5 53, 2; 53A, 6
5:6 53, 4; 53A, 9; 57, 13; 61, 7; 77, 14
5:7 53, 5; 53A, 10
5:8 53, 6; 16; 53A, 11; 88, 4
5:9 53A, 12
5:10 53A, 13
5:16 93, 14
5:20 85, 5
5:22 55, 1
5:22-24 82, 5
6:1 54, 3
6:1-5 93, 14
6:7-8 56, 4
6:9 56, 5; 57, 2; 58, 2; 59, 3
6:9-12 71, 19
6:9-10 77B, 6
6:10 53A, 9; 56, 7; 57, 5; 58, 3; 59, 4; 77B, 6
6:11 56, 9; 57, 7; 58, 5; 59, 6
6:12 56, 11; 57, 8; 58, 6; 59, 7; 71, 20; 77A, 1; 83, 4; 93, 13
6:12-13 77A, 3
6:13 56, 18; 57, 9; 10; 58, 9; 58, 11;
6:14 71, 25
6:14-21 60, 5
6:33 58, 5
6:33, 32 57, 13
6:78 80, 2
7:1 61A, 5
7:3 58, 8
7:6 77, 9
7:7 60A, 1; 61, 4; 77, 9; 77B, 1;
7:8 57, 8-9
7:8-9 61A, 2; 77B, 2
7:9-11 61, 1
7:11 61A, 2; 77B, 2
7:12 75, 9
7:13 64, 4; 6
7:21 77, 12
7:22 62, 1
7:9 62, 4
7:8-9 62A, 1
7:10 62, 3; 62A, 2; 77, 12
7:10-8 88, 10
7:11 62A, 3; 77, 13; 88, 22; 90, 4
7:8-12 62, 6
7:12 77, 15; 77A, 4
7:13 62A, 4
7:19-20 62, 2
7:21-22 62, 2
7:22 88, 3
7:25 81, 8
7:27 63, 3
7:29 90, 8
8:6 71, 25
8:11-13 88, 4
8:12 62, 6
8:13 77, 15; 77A, 4
8:13 62A, 4
8:19-20 62, 2
8:21-22 62, 2
8:22 88, 3
8:25 81, 8
8:27 63, 3
8:29 90, 8
9:6 71, 25
9:11-13 88, 4
9:12 88, 7
9:13 71, 11
9:21 63B, 1
10:16 64, 2; 64A, 1; 2; 73, 2
10:17 64, 1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Volume III/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23:9</td>
<td>65A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>71, 19; 93, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:35</td>
<td>60, 6; 81, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4, 3</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:5</td>
<td>93, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:6</td>
<td>93, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:6-7</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:8-9</td>
<td>93, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:10</td>
<td>93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:11-12</td>
<td>96, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:13</td>
<td>93, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21-23</td>
<td>93, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>56, 6; 57, 5; 58, 3; 87, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-37</td>
<td>86, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-41</td>
<td>75, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-46</td>
<td>86, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>93, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35-40</td>
<td>86, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>53A, 6; 86, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>56, 7; 58, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>77A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:21</td>
<td>75, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:39-42</td>
<td>87, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40-42</td>
<td>91, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>64A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-7</td>
<td>62, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>62, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>63A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>81, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:45</td>
<td>62, 5; 63B, 1; 77, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:46</td>
<td>77, 6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:49</td>
<td>77, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:50</td>
<td>77, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>78, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:28</td>
<td>78, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:57-58</td>
<td>62, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:59-60</td>
<td>62, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5-8</td>
<td>61, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27-28</td>
<td>72A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
<td>88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-10</td>
<td>71, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>71, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16-18,20</td>
<td>86, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>88, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>93, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48</td>
<td>72, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>71, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7-9</td>
<td>72, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:31</td>
<td>53, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22-31</td>
<td>86, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>80, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>61, 6; 77B, 1; 80, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1-8</td>
<td>61, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:8</td>
<td>88, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10-13</td>
<td>58, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>60A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>60A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:19</td>
<td>61, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:22</td>
<td>86, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>89, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:18</td>
<td>92, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>62, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23</td>
<td>90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>56, 3, 16; 60A, 2; 63, 2; 77, 4; 80, 5; 87, 14; 90, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:42</td>
<td>53A, 13; 67, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>53A, 13; 67, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:28</td>
<td>89, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>75, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>53A, 13; 78, 5; 80, 5; 92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.14</td>
<td>70A, 2; 91, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>52, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>67, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>67, 9; 75, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>63, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>51, 32; 71, 23; 80, 5; 92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>66, 1; 66, 3; 67, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>66, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>66, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>66, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Sermons 51-94

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:47-51</td>
<td>89, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:48</td>
<td>69, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>52, 13; 62A, 3; 67, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>53, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>71, 12; 19, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>71, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>91, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>62A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>53, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17, 19</td>
<td>71, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33, 35</td>
<td>67, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>71, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>53, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:41</td>
<td>53A, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51</td>
<td>83, 2; 85, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:57</td>
<td>71, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>60A, 2; 77, 8; 88, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>52, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>91, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:43</td>
<td>67, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:44</td>
<td>67, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>67, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>90, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>64, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>68, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8-10</td>
<td>88, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>52, 14; 71, 25, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>78, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>71, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>91, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:31</td>
<td>86, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>89, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5.1</td>
<td>87, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>71, 11, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>71, 25, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>60A, 2; 71, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:8-9</td>
<td>71, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15</td>
<td>76, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:33</td>
<td>51, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>65A, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22-23</td>
<td>71, 19, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:24-29</td>
<td>88, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Volume III/3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>68, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>51, 20; 52, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18-20</td>
<td>68, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>52, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20-21</td>
<td>68, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20-22</td>
<td>68, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-23</td>
<td>53, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>67, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>67, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>57, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>51, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21-24</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20-21</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>79A, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>80, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>51, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>71, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>71, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>88, 1; 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14-16</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16.17</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>77, 6; 58, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>53A, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>56, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>71, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>53A, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>71, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16</td>
<td>71, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>70, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>51, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>52, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>75, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:3-5</td>
<td>51, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>51, 20; 62, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>54, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>56, 1; 57, 1; 76, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13-15</td>
<td>57, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>58, 1; 59, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>56, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>51, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:34</td>
<td>53, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>71, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>60, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-2</td>
<td>62, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>76, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-9</td>
<td>63B, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter and Verse</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Reference 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>76, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>76, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>68, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>60, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>53, 7; 53A, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27-28</td>
<td>51, 4; 87, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>71, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>91, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse Range</td>
<td>Reference 1</td>
<td>Reference 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>71, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17</td>
<td>82, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>53, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>73, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>71, 21; 73A, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>65A, 12; 71, 3; 93, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>62, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>62, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>51, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>51, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>51, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-7</td>
<td>51, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>51, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:35</td>
<td>86, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>62, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>62, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>62, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>62, 7; 9; 82, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>73, 4; 88, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>70, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>62, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:24</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>54, 2, 4; 78, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>64, 6; 64A, 2; 89, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>51, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26</td>
<td>51, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>90, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9-11</td>
<td>71, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>71, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>62, 5; 65A, 7; 91, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29-30</td>
<td>90, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31-13:1</td>
<td>93, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-2</td>
<td>90, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>90, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>90, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>93, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>53, 6, 16; 78, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>71, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>77, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>63A, 3; 63B, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>62, 7; 63A, 3; 63B, 3; 77, 3, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9.8</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>76, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>88, 7; 90, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>61A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>78, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33</td>
<td>62, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-54</td>
<td>53A, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-55</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>53A, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>54, 2; 91, 4; 93, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>75, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>71, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>51, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>52, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>88, 13; 90, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>64, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7</td>
<td>53, 6; 88, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>88, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>54, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>70, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>85, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>64A, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>72A, 8; 93, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-9</td>
<td>77B, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>61A, 4, 5; 76, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>90, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>82, 8; 92, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>88, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-23</td>
<td>88, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>56, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>52, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22-24</td>
<td>89, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>88, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>81, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>52, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>51, 28; 52, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>71, 26; 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>53, 11; 71, 16; 90, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>53A, 12; 56, 8; 58, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>89, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-2</td>
<td>88, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>91, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>67, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>53A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>88, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:24-25</td>
<td>70, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>53, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>71, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>89, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>88, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-17-19</td>
<td>72, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>63, 1; 64A, 2; 81, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-19</td>
<td>53, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>53, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/3
Index (prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A

Abel, 72:3; 87:5, 7
Abraham, 71:32, 72:3, 87:5, 7
genealogy of Christ, 51:7, 31
promise re his seed, 51:4; 81:8; 88:10, 21
two sons; symbolism, 89:6
Adam:
begot sin and death, 90:7
generation of Christ, 51:31
man, and nothing else, 81:6
punishment; mortality, 51:25
sin begotten by, 83:5
admiration:
flatterers selling, 93:12
motive for good works, 93:10
performing to be seen by men, 93:14
adoption:
chaste parentage, 51:26
children born from husbands' seeds
(O.T.), 51:28
New Testament; divine grace, 51:28
Old Testament, 51:28
wives of childless kinsmen, 51:29
adultery:
dead soul, 65:6
God will be the judge, 82:11
marital problems, 51:22
Aeneas, 81:9
Africa, 88:21
afterlife:
direct vision of Word of God, 59:6
God as our inheritance, 55:4-5
almsgiving, 61:1-13
see also charity
darkness dispelled by, 88:16
doing good with justice, 61:3
give surplus to the destitute, 91:9
pleas of the poor, 61:13
and prayer; clean our sins, 56:12
treat our souls well, 86:17
amendment, see conversion.
angels:
appearing as men, 72A:4
doing God's will, in heaven, 58:4; 59:5
prayer to be equal to, 77B:6
reapers, 73:4
see Truth itself, 57:7
sin; fell by disobedience, 73A:3
sorting out the weeds (parable), 73A:1
anger:
hatred and, 82:1
lust for revenge, 58:8
plead for help against, 57:13
sun going down on, 58:7; 75:5
vengeance, a fearful temptation, 57:11
animals:
neighbors to each other, 90:7
taming, 55:3, 4
Apollo, 71:30
apostles:
Christ's "tunic," 62:7; 77:8
one bad among the twelve, 90:2
Paul the hem (of his tunic), 63A:3;
63B:1-3
see also Paul, Peter, etc.
simple fishermen chosen, 87:12
unbelievers, 80:1
weak chosen to confound the strong,
87:12
applause, for Augustine's sermon, 61:13
Arians, 71:5
Arius, 73A:2
ask/seek/knock:
ask and you shall receive, 61A:1-7; 80:2
Sermons 51-94

asking in faith, 61A:5  
see Canaanite woman, 77A:1  
cure asked for, 61A:5  
eternal goods; God listens, 61A:4  
God is our Father, 61:1  
it all amounts to "ask," 61A:2  
judging God, 61A:5  
notice those who ask us for things, 61:8  
Paul asked for relief, 61A:3  
some ask, and don't receive, 61A:5, 6  
temporal longings; trust God, 61A:4  
that God may make us good, 61A:7  
throwing pearls before pigs, 60A:1  
voices and good works, 77B:7  
we beg from God, 61:7  
widow's importunity, 61:5-6  

astrologers, 87:11  
Augustine, Saint:  
large crowd, feeble voice, 68:1  
speaking at Lord's command, 82:15  
authority:  
centurian: image of the pagans, 62:4  
good man, a trainer; bad man, a tester, 62:12  
preference for the higher over the lower, 62:13  
respect or contempt for, 62:13  
avarice:  
advice: take thought for the future, 86:9  
desire, 59:8  
devil's kingdom, 71:4  
disease, 61:3  
see also greed  
judgment day, 77A:4  
leading to temptation, 57:9, 11  
love and, 78:6  
mistress says "save up for yourself," 86:6-8  
parents and children, 90:10  
root of all evils, 53A:3; 61:10; 85:6  
slavery to, 53A:2  

baby, newborn:  

fed by mother, 71:19  
rich and poor as equal, 61:9  

Babylonia, Jewish migration to, 51:14  
badness, see good and evil; wickedness banquet:  
both good and bad people come, 90:1  
eating/drinking unworthily, 90:1  
baptism:  

born as members of Christ, 72A:8  
gift of the Holy Spirit (Peter), 71:33  
John the Baptist, 71:19  
sins forgiven in, 56:13; 58:6  

bastards:  
separating ourselves from chastisement, 55:5  

beatific vision:  
what should be prayed for, 77B:5  

beating:  

servant; world, 72:7  

beautitudes, 53:1-16; 53A:1-14  
hunger and thirst for justice, 53:4, 8; 53A:9  
meek, 53:2, 8; 53A:7  
merciful, 53:5; 53A:10  
mourners, 53:3, 8; 53A:8  
parts of a spiritual body, 53:9  
peacemakers, 53A:12  
persecution for justice' sake, 53A:13  
poor in spirit, 53:1, 8; 53A:1, 6  
pure of heart, 53:6-7  
putting God's word into practice, 53A:1  
reward matches the work, 53:8  
same people in all eight, 53:9  

beauty:  

God desires you in your ugliness, 62:8  

Beelzebub, 71:35; 88:7  

beggar:  

blessed are the merciful, 53A:10  
praying: all are beggars, 83:2  
standing at rich man's door, 56:9  
we beg from God; beggars ask of us, 61:8  

behavior: bad behavior, can't hide from God, 69:3  

belief/believers:  
see also faith  
first benefit: forgiveness of sins, 71:19  
not even if someone returns from the dead, 86:16  
onece spiritually blind, deaf, dead, 88:3  
walk by faith, not by sight, 88:4  
birth: death from disease of being born, 77:14  
bishops, job of bishoping, 94  
blasphemy:  
against the Son of Man, 71:23-24  
impenitence as, 71:20-21  

Volume III/3
Sermons 51-94

faith, 77:11
from dog to human being, 77:10; 77B:1
humility, 77:1, 11
not a dog: she asked, sought, knocked,
60A:3, 4
perfection, 77B:1
persevering voice of, 77:9
representing Church and Gentiles, 60A:2
tested by Christ, 60A:2
triumph of, 60A:4
carnality:
see also flesh
temporal concerns, 71:30
catechumens:
Lord’s Prayer; those seeking baptism,
causation (analogy):
building existing without an agent, 68:4
centurian:
asks that his servant be healed, 62:1ff;
62A:1-4
Christ entered his heart, 62A:1
faith of, 88:10
humility, 77:12
change:
for better or worse, 51:1
persons change, not words, 86:7
character: be gold, 62:12
charity:
almsdeeds pray for us to the Lord, 56:11
see also almsgiving
Christ’s yoke is light, 68:13
counsel: sell all, give to the poor,
86:1-17
does not seek its own, 51:34
fruit of the Spirit, 89:1
giving to members of Christ, 53A:6
God returns greater gifts, 86:5
let love be born in you, 90:6
see also love
more excellent way, 93:5
nothing without charity, 88:21
oil in lamps, 93:5
one with plenty helps one in need,
85:7
poured through the Holy Spirit, 71:18
seeks not its own advantage, 78:6
violating, 88:21
what is done for the least, is done to
Christ, 86:3-5
chastisement, separating ourselves from,
55:5
chastity: leading to temptation, 57:9
love wife chastely, 51:25
cheating: let no one seek his own, 78:6
children:
  born in/out of wedlock, 51:26
discipline, 82:2
heirs; avarice, 86:9, 11
lifespan diminishing as they grow, 84:2
schooling; discipline, 70:2
squandering inheritance, 60:3

Chosen People, see Jews.

Christian life:
be mother(s) of Christ, 72A:8
cherish eternal life, 62:16
come to me, all you who labor, 88:18
crowds trying to stifle, 88:13
crying out to Christ, 88:10, 12, 13
gospel commandments, 88:13
how to be brother, sister, mother to Christ, 65A:7
imitate the snake: shed old skin, 64:6
see also kingdom of God
live with Christ in your heart, 86:1
loaded with fruit or shady with leaves, 89:3
serving two masters, 62:17
suffering persecution, 70:1
wages, eternal life, 56:10

Christian unity:
  opposed by the impenitent, 71:36
Christians:
  leading bad lives, 73:3
  leading good lives, 73:4
  summoned from east and west, 62:6
  wheat and chaff, 63A:1
chronology:
  generations from Abraham to Christ, 51:8, 11, 12
Church:
  both good and bad people in, 88:19
  bride at the wedding feast, 90:6
  built on Christ, 76:2
called both woman and man; 64A:3
Christ the bridegroom, 91:7
Christ: "who touched me?" 63B:3
  experiencing absence of the Lord, 75:5
  field, in parable of the good seed, 73A:1
  foretelling; Pentecostal speaking with tongues, 89:1
  forgiveness of sins, 71:28, 37
gentile members, 63A:2; 63B:2
glorified in this world, 75:10
hated for His name’s sake, 64:3
see also kingdom of God
loosing/unbinding in confession, 67:3
members are sons/daughters of God, 90:6
as mother, 57:2
mother Church, like Mary, 72A:8
mother of Christ, 65A:7
multitudes flowing into, 63A:1
see also Mystical Body
Peter as representative of, 76:1
prefigured: Old Testament populations, 51:26
sin of being estranged from, 71:28
something better than Mary, 72A:7
spiritual/worldly people in, 56:8
spread throughout the world, 51:4
strong/weak members in, 76:4
ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:2
those separated from, do not have the Spirit, 71:30
thy will be done, as in heaven, 57:6; 58:4
unity opposed by impenitent heart, 71:36
unity; speaking in tongues, 87:9
vessel tossed about by storm, 75:4
virgin, 72A:8; 93:4
white garments (the transfiguration), 78:2
woman suffering from issue of blood, 77:8
worldwide, 62:4

Circumcellions, 62:17
commandments:
  keep, if you wish eternal life, 84:1-2; 85:1-7
  keeping is easier than counsel of perfection, 85:1
  whole range of, related to love, 68:13
confession:
  accusing self is praising God, 67:2, 4
  Christ’s “I confess . . .”, 67:1-9 passim
Church loosing/unbinding, 67:3
come back to life, 67:2
darkness confessing to be darkness, 67:9
not limited to sins, 68:2
praise as, 68:2
congregations:
  leaders seated on higher level, 91:5

Volume III/3
conscience:
correcting, 82:14
wedding garment, 90:6
wounding the weak persons, 62:9, 10
consent:
battle with coveting flesh, 77A:2
coveting, 58:9
scandal as temptation, 81:4
withholding, 88:25
withholding, from works of darkness, 88:19
consolation, of mourners, 53:3
conversion:
changing from bad to good, 61:2
conscience-stricken Jews, 89:1
correcting yourself, 82:14
delaying, 87:11
disciples (Jews) at Pentecost, 80:5
Jewish converts, 77:4
let voices be heard in deeds, 88:12
once spiritually blind, deaf, dead, 88:3
past sins forgiven, 87:10
postponing, 73A:2
wolves become sheep, 64:2
wrongheaded hope, 87:10
cornerstone, 51:15; 88:10; 89:4
correction, see rebuking others
counsel, gift of, 91:9
courage:
fear of the Lord, 65:1
threats of wicked men, 62:12
covenant:
symbolism of Abraham's two sons, 89:6
covetousness:
brings forth sin; sin begets death, 58:9
conquered, means peace, 77A:2
see also consent; desire
enticing, 77A:3
fighting against, 57:9
let no one seek his own, 78:6
sin of the flesh, 77A:2
cowardice, and fear, 65:1
creation:
find three somethings; analogy of the Trinity, 52:17
finding some likeness of the godhead, 52:15
God desires his own, 62:8
heaven and earth as the whole of, 68:2
invisible things clearly perceived from, 68:5
knowledge of the responsible agent, 68:4
love the creator, 68:5
made through the Son, 52:5
creator:
beauty of, 65A:4
far above us; incomprehensible, 52:16
God our Father, 57:2
meekness: closeness to the creator, 53:2
sees us, hears us, 69:3
creed:
Lord's Prayer; those seeking baptism, 56:1; 58:1; 59:1
reciting by heart, 58:1, 13
cross:
beating the world by, 51:2
boat for crossing stormy sea, 75:2
breadth, length, height, depth, 53:16
four dimensions of, 53:16
honor to the, 88:8
crow wings, 68:13
crucifixion:
of criminals, forbidden, 88:8
see also Good Thief
see also Jesus Christ: crucifixion
most shameful death, 88:7
cruelty: hatred, 82:2
cupidity, see avarice; greed.
cure:
asking for, 61A:6
see also healing
hem of Christ's garment, 63A:3
curses:
prophetic utterances in the psalms, 56:3
D
darkness (mental or spiritual evil):
devil and unbelievers in the world, 67:5
dispelled by almsgiving, 88:16
hate as, 82:3
humility: confessing to be darkness, 67:9
mental; foolish persons, 67:8
taking no part in works of, 88:19
David, King:
genealogy of Christ, 51:7
Jesus as Son of, 51:7, 8, 20; 91:1, 2; 92:1, 2, 3
dead:
let his property come to him (good works), 86:11
person sent on ahead, not lost, 86:11
rich man wants to warn his brothers, 86:16
Sermons 51-94

sinners; Lazarus, 67:2
spiritually dead, 88:3
death:
advice to fool against extravagance, 86:15
see also afterlife
bitter; Christ's passion, 88:7
concern over ending of this life, 84:1
delayed, not eliminated, 77A:4
dying for temporal possessions; 64A:2
dying with/without anxiety, 64:4
fear of, 65:2
fear only everlasting death, 77A:4
longed for, in evil days, 84:1
prayer for eternal life, 57:3
prepare for last day; 64A:1
slain by Christ's death, 80:5
soul leaves body, 65:5-6
swallowed up in victory, 53A:12
ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:6
demonicia: blind/dumb person cured by Christ, 71:1
demons:
asking in prayer, 56:2
cast out by Jesus, 71:2, 27
cast out by prayer and fasting, 80:3
cast out by simple holiness, 71:3
confessed Jesus as Son of God, 90:8
see also devil
faith of, 53:11
genius loci, 62:10
prayer heard (allowed to go into pigs), 61A:3; 77B:4
unclean spirits, seeing God, 53:10
departing from the unclean, 88:23-25
dependence, on admiration, 93:10
desire(-s):
consenting to bad desire, 77A:3
covetous, 57:9
craving for riches, 68:11
dwelling always in house of the Lord, 65A:3
earthly; deface image of God, 90:10
evil; don't consent, 53A:11
finding the Lord to be absent, 75:5
framework in the Lord's Prayer, 56:4
labor for thing(s) craved, 68:10
mortification: crying out to Christ, 88:17
praying always, 80:7
stormy sea, 76:9
value lost if quickly granted, 61:6
despair:
impenitence, 71:21
soul killed by, 87:10
turning back from God, 75:6
devil:
called lion, 73:2
cast out by the Holy Spirit, 71:19
cunning at making things up, 91:4
see also demons
dreadful hunter, 51:2
invisible enemy, 67:5
rich and proud, 53A:4
Satan divided against himself, 71:33, 35, 36
self-accusation leaves no room for d., 67:4
disciples:
casting out demons, 71:2
John's disciples become Christ's, 66:4
nothing without the Lord, 89:2
rebuked for unbelief, 80:1
sent by Jesus to the nations, 77:5
speaking in tongues, 89:1
disease: woman with issue of blood, 63A:2
disobedience:
obeying the devil, 90:9
sin of paradise; sin of angels, 73A:3
dog:
Canaanite woman as, 60A:3, 4; 77:10; 77B:1
giving what is holy to, 77:9
Donatists, 88:25
Donatus, 73A:2; 88:21
doubt:
Jesus calms storm-tossed boat, 75:1
Peter walking on the water, 76:8
doves:
simplicity of, 64:5-8; 64A:2
wings, 68:13

E

earth:
delight in, 91:3
earthly people; unbelievers, 57:6; 58:4
flesh, 56:8
possessed by, 53:2
they will be done, 59:5
understood to mean whatever is on earth, 68:2
earthly things, see temporal goods

Volume III/3
eating: sustaining the human, 51:23, 24
estasy: snatched from bodily consciousness, 52:16
Elijah: mount of the transfiguration, 78:2-5; 79; 79A:1
nourishment for forty days, 51:24
emotions: run on affection, feelings, love, 91:7
end of the world: date unknown; 64A:1
eventual collapse, 81:9
fourth watch of the night, 75:7
enemy(-ies): approaching the Lord’s table, 90:9
badness by disobedience, 90:9
belief vs the (invisible) devil, 67:5
grab him for God, 90:10
love of, 56:14, 15, 16
make good is killing enemy, making friend, 90:9
pardonin, 59:7
praying for death of, 90:9
praying for harm to befall, 56:2
prosecuting, 90:9
saved from, by praising God, 67:6
stand firm in the Lord, 62:12
Stephen’s last prayer, 90:9
equality: rich and poor, at birth, 61:8, 9
error: Peter blamed for “human” ideas, 76:3
word against the Holy Spirit, 71:7
eschaton: end of the world, 75:7
eternal goods: temporal goods and, 61:11
eternal law: time of Job, 81:2
eternal life: ask: to dwell always in the house of the Lord, 65A:13
life: cherishing, 62:16
everlasting joy, 75:10
forgiveness of sins, 71:19
see also heaven
heavenly home, 86:1
keep commandments, if you wish to come to, 84:1-2; 85:1-7
petitions; Lord’s Prayer, 57:6; 58:12
pray for everlasting benefits, 80:7
pray for, until the end, 77B:1
promise, 61A:5
temporal price for, 70:2
treasure in heaven, 86:10
wages for life’s work, 56:10
work for the reward: keep commandments, 84:2
eternal punishment: enduring, to avoid, 70:3
eternity, dying for, 77A:4
eucharist: abiding in Christ, 71:17
daily bread, 57:7; 58:5
whoever eats my flesh . . . , 71:17
Eunomians, 71:5
Eunomius, 73A:2
evil people, see good and evil; wickedness
expectations: attending Augustine’s sermon, 51:1
extravagance: Christ’s advice: treat your souls well, 86:17
devil’s kingdom, 71:4
mistress says “spend, treat yourself well,” 86:6-7, 15
eyes: seeing God, 53:6
seeing temporal light, 88:5
faint-hearted: encouragement, 77C
faith: acquiring: stretch out heart, not hand, 88:2
arrive at vision of God, 88:4
believing without seeing preferred, 88:2
building, in things that were not seen, 88:1
built up by Christ’s transitory works, 88:11
calling upon God’s name, 57:1
can do “in the Lord,” but not in the apostles, 76:5
Canaanite woman, 77:11; 77B:1
centurion and his servant, 62A:1-4
Christ dwelling in the heart; 64A:2
Christ resides in inner person through, 53:15
Christ’s acts in time, 88:14
comfort now, joy later, 88:4
Sermons 51-94

discerned in humility: Zacchaeus, 62:3
dress: tunic and shirt of mail, 58:13
eye healed: understand Christ's divinity, 88:14
eyes enlightened by, 53:6
first believe; heal "eye," 88:4
greatest from the smallest, 77:12
heart as boat, Christ asleep, 81:8
heart purified by, 53:10
humbly ask, seek, knock, 60A:4
Jesus walking on the waters, 80:6
light: love, believe, cry out, 88:15
love together with, 90:8
perceive Christ passing by, 88:14
Peter walking on water, 76:6
prayer for, 80:1
resist the devil; watch, 91:4
sleeping, 63:1
touching the hem of his garment, 62:5
unfeigned: wedding garment, 90:6
walking by; doing good works, 91:9
wherewithal to see divine light, 88:6
will Son of man find faith on earth? 88:22
woman touching hem of Christ's garment; 63B:2
working through love, 53:11
faithfulness:
virginity, 93:4
family affection, 72A:3, 4
father:
Father of rebirth before natural father, 72A:6
father and son:
guides: on earth, in heaven, 88:16
fear:
death of soul, not body, 65:7-8
inner flight, 77C
proper time for, 55:1
those who kill the body, 65:1-8
field: parable of the sower, 88:21-22
fig tree: Nathaniel; A dam, 69:4
figs from thistles, 74:4
fire: baptism, 71:19
fishermen, chosen to be apostles, 87:12
flatterers, selling admiration, 93:12
flesh:
battle with spirit, 53A:12
earth: (Lord's Prayer), 56:8
glass, it dies, 82:13
spirit and, 57:6; 58:4
weaknesses, 53A:12
food: poor man, rich man, 61:12
fool: calling one's brother "fool," 54:1ff
foolish:
things revealed to, 67:8
virgins, see virgins
forgiveness:
as we forgive others, 59:7
Christ awake in your heart, 63.2
done with the heart, 58:10
forgive and be forgiven, 83.2, 4
forgive, that you may be forgiven, 56:16
grudge nursed in heart, 58:7
loose on earth, loosed in heaven, 82:7
mouth and heart, 83:7
seventy-seven times, 83:1-8
forgiveness of sin:
baptism, 56:13
daily prayer, 77A:1
eternal life, 71:19
forfeiting by taking vengeance, 57:11
given only in Church with the Holy Spirit, 71:33
heart hardened by impenitence, 71:35
Holy Spirit occupies, after forgiveness, 72A:2
not forgiven apart from the Church, 71:28
sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:6, 9-18, 20
stressed in Lord's Prayer, 57:12
tree and its fruit, 72:2
what debts? 57:12
word against the Son of Man, 71:23-24
work of the Trinity, 71:25
fornication:
God will judge, 82:11, 13
fortune:
wrestling with good fortune, 76:9
forty (the number):
generations of Christ, 51:32
foundation:
greatness and humility, 69:2
fruit:
Jesus caused tree to wither, 89:1-4
tree known by, 72:1
tree outside its season, 77:7
words and no deeds, 89:1
future:
avarice says: take thought for, 86:9
eternal, 86:10

Volume III/3
future life:
  see also afterlife
  everything to be related to, 57:13

G
games:
  concern for those attending, 51:1
  stadium rather than church, 51:2
  vain rejoicing, 51:2
genealogy:
  man before the woman, 51:30
generosity:
  fill empty person from your fullness, 53:5
genius loci, 62:10
Gentiles:
  apostles sent to, 88:10
  belief foretold, 60A:2
  brotherhood, 57:2
  calling upon the name of the Lord, 56:1
  Christ’s bodily absence, powerful presence, 62:5
  Christ’s sheepfold, 77:2
  gospel preached to, by Paul, 60A:2
  healed by Paul’s preaching, 78:2
  Paul’s mission to, 77:5
  seeking salvation for the, 82:7
  Tyre and Sidon, 77:1
wild olive grafted to olive, 77:12
gifts/giving:
  give God back yourself, 65A:12
  God is our good Father, 61A:7
  good gifts don’t make us good, 61A:7
  to just/unjust persons, 60:6
  reconciliation with brother first, 82:6
“Go out from there” (meaning), 88:23-25
goals:
  hardships endured, 70:2
God:
  almighty Father, thy will be done, 56:7; 57:6
  anger, Moses’ maternal instincts, 88:24
  comprehended = something other than God, 52:16
  see also Creator
  cultivates (improves) his creatures, 87:1
  extend yourselves toward; grab others, 90:10
  false idea: I sin, he doesn’t care, 75:6
  Father as farm worker, 87:2
  fatherhood; begets Son, 68:9
finding: book of created nature, 68:6
  glorifying means giving thanks, 68:6, 7
  He is the good that makes good, 61:3
  heaven in palm of His hand, 53:13-14
  himself, as riches, 53A:4
  idea of; spiritual not bodily, 53:7
  life of the soul, 62:2
  longing to see, 68:9
  loved freely, and for nothing, 91:3, 9
  metaphors: face, hands, feet, 53:7
  name hallowed, 56:5
  omnipresence: can’t hide from his eyes, 69:3, 4
  only the Father knows the Son, 68:9
  our Father in heaven, 65A:6
  praise, see Praise
  property of the Father, 71:18
  refuge, 55:2, 6
  run away from/to him, 69:4
  see him by leading good life, 69:4
  seeing; the pure of heart, 53:6-7
  sight of, promised, 69:3
  strikes; heals, 77:3
  supremely good: the Father, 61A:7
  thinking of, as body, bulk, or mass, 53:12, 14
  training, to receive the inheritance, 55:5
  treating his name with disdain, 56:5
  will is done in if not by us, 56:7

godhead:
  communion; gift of the Holy Spirit, 71:18
  Jesus’ descent to the shades, 53A:13
  material localization, 52:15
  understanding, from the creation, 52:15

gods:
  Roman and Trojan, 81:9
  stars and planets as, 68:4

gold:
  creature says “love me,” 65A:4
  doing good with, 61:3

good and evil:
  bad lives, 82:14
  bad person cannot make a good one, 61:2
  based on viewpoint, all are bad, 90:2
  compared with the bad, the good are few, 90:4
  evils abound because of wicked people, 80:8

Sermons 51-94
God makes people good, 61:2
good/bad things happen to all alike, 64:1
keep yourself from every kind of evil, 77A:4
let the bad imitate the good, 73:4
not wanting to be good, 85:1
redeeming the time, 58:11
relativity, 72:4
resisting evil; 64A:2
same people: good and bad, 90:3
see also scandal; sin
the times (ourselves) as evil, 80:8
unity of God's people, 88:19
wheat and chaff, 88:19
see also wickedness
Good Thief:
salvation, 67:7
good works:
admiration as motive, 93:10
ask, seek, knock — with voices and morals, 77B:7
breadth, length, height, depth, 53:15
command to the rich, 53A:4, 5; 85:4
crying out to God, 88:12, 16, 17
done by bad people, 72:1
faith without charity, nothing is done, 53:11
forgive; give: twin acts of kindness, 58:10
lamps burning, 93:3, 4
let your light shine before men, 54:1-4; 93:14
mothers obstructing sons, 72A:3
persevere in, 88:18
pleasure only in God, 81:3
purpose: to become well known, 54:3
seeking recognition for, 54:3
take care not to do justice before men, 54:1-4
ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:3
walking by faith, 91:9
words and deeds, 77:7
goodness:
can't lose against your will, 72:6
good gifts don't make us good, 61A:7
see also meekness
no one is good but the one God, 90:2
progress; the human condition, 61A:7
see God by leading good life, 69:4
sinners confessing, 90:3
temporal/eternal goods, 61:11
wanting good things; not wanting to be good, 72:5
goods:
temporal and eternal, 80:7
gospel(-s):
authority of, 72A:6
backing up with the law and the prophets, 79A:3
mouth of Christ, still speaking, 85:1
unity with law and prophets, 79
grace:
burdens eased by, 70:3
frees us from demons, 71:3
hidden secrecy of God's will, 53:15
matching, with good works, 88:12
needed by Christ (as man), 67:7
sufficient, 61A:4
things handed over by the Father, 68:8
voluntary rain, 76:6
grapes from thorns, 74:4
great men:
offending "Mr. Big," 62:8
greatness:
humility as foundation, 69:2
greed:
see also avarice
cannot be totally extinguished, 90:6
craving for possessions, 68:10
evil spirit, 72A:2
first to get, then to increase, 68:10
plain for all to see, 60:5
possess the earth, 53:2
prayer to become rich, 77B:2
rebuked, 61:10
root of all evil, 72:4
grief:
consolation, reward for mourners, 53:3
grudge, be reconciled, 82:5
grumbling, about present evils, 60:1

H

hairs:
counted; God's providence, 62:15
known by the creator, 65:3
happiness:
action now, achievement afterward, 53:1
longing for, 68:11
work, to get the reward, 53:1
harvest:
parable of the sower, 53A:5; 88:21-22

Volume III/3
hatred:
anger and, 82:1
anger grown old, 58:8
brooding, in the heart, 58:8
cruel acts, 82:2
damage to your own spirit, 82:3
murderer, 82:3
ridding from your heart, 56:17
shun: toss beam out of the eye, 82:2

healing:
cry out for, 88:13
God strikes/heals, 77:3
health of the spirit, 88:3

health:
asking for, 61A:5
goodness, 72:4
spiritual healing, 88:3
temporal vs eternal, 80:3
true health is immortality, 77:13-14

heart:
asks, seeks, knocks, 91:3
boasting of chaste heart, 93:14
Christ dwelling in; sleep, 63:1
clean up; remove avarice, 85:6
cultivation by God, 87:1
dullness of, 72:6
earthly treasure, 60:5
evils inflaming eye of, 88:6
faith of the centurion, 62A:1
forgiveness from, 83:8
God is sole judge of, 91:5
good/bad treasury, 74:3
heart-pure, see Pure of heart.
healing the "eyes" of, 88:5
love: pure heart is wedding garment, 90:6
mental turmoil; Jesus calms storm-tossed boat, 75:1
mystery of the godhead, 52:15
oil in flasks; ten virgins, 93:9
see also pure of heart
purified by behavior, 91:5
purified by faith in God, 53:10
rich with God, 62:12
roots in, 91:5
seeking God, 53:7
simplicity: asking only one thing from the Lord, 65A:3
veil placed over, 74:5
virginity of, 93:4
wedding garment lacking, 90:4
withdrawing from evil, 88:25

heaven(-s):
declare the glory of God, 53:14
desired for sake of earthly well-being, 77:13
gift, promise, 78:5
see also kingdom of heaven
measured in palm of His hand, 53:13-14
mind, 56:8
spiritual people in, 57:6
standing for all saints, 53:14
thy will be done, 59:5
understood to mean all in the heavens, 68:2

heirs, desiring other's death, 86:12
herald, as spokesman, 74:3
heresy, necessity of, 51:11
heretics:
dangers from, 75:8
good results drawn from, 51:11
legal penalties, 62:18
parable of the weeds, 73A:2
sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:5

holiness:
begging favor for ourselves, 57:4
demons cast out by, 71:3
Holy Spirit:
activities done with Father and Son, 71:26
baptism; forgiveness of sins, 71:33
baptism of Christ; form of a dove, 52:1
blasphemed; gravest sin, 71:6, 9-18, 20, 36
body as temple of, 82:13
born/fed by, 71:19
forgiveness of sins in, 71:19, 23
fruits of; charity, 89:1
heretical groups, 71:5
impenitence is blasphemy against, 71:20, 23, 34
little ones in Christ, 71:31
lives in the humble of heart, 72A:2
parentage of Christ, 51:30
pretenders and, 71:32
property of, 71:18
repentance for sin against, 71:7, 34, 37
sevenfold activity, 72A:2
sin against; most difficult problem in Scripture, 71:8
sin against: pagans, Jews, heretics, 71:5
speaking in languages of all nations, 71:28
Spirit of Father and Son, 71:29

Sermons 51-94
Sermons 51-94

sufferings of St Paul, 70:2
those separated from the Church, 71:30
hope:
companion of faith, 53:11
wrongheaded, 87:10-11
human beings, see mankind.

human condition:
cure: acknowledge the doctor, 87:14
heritage of Adam; Christ, 90:7
life from Christ’s divinity, 80:5
progress in goodness, 61A:7
refusal to admit problems, 77:11
seasickness, 75:2
sick with sin, 87:13
time on earth as foreign travel, 75:2
wearisome life, 60:2

humankind:
Christ the head of; 64A:2
creature: the number seven, 51:34
earth did not produce human species, 90:7
greatness: image of God, 60:2
see also image of God
likeness of the Trinity in, 52:19-23
made in image of God, 52:18
one source: all neighbors, 90:7
perpetuation of, 51:23, 24
sexes, and the Incarnation, 51:3
human race/species, see humankind.
humility:
analogy: foundation of skyscraper, 69:2
asking pardon for offenses, 82:6
becoming humble: learn from Christ, 68:11; 70A:1
belief in the scriptures, 51:6
Canaanite woman, 77:1
centurian: I am not worthy . . ., 62:1ff; 62A:2
Christ enters centurian’s heart, not house, 62:1
Christ’s example, 51:4
corner for day of judgment, 93:13
darkness confessing to be darkness, 67:9
death on a cross, 68:11
deserving to see God face to face, 68:7
digging round the tree, 72:3
faith discerned in humility: Zacchaeus, 62:3
God is close to crushed hearts, 70A:2
grafting in the wild olive, 77:15
hills and valleys, 77:12
the humbled exalted, 60A:4
John, baptism of Christ, 52:1
laying down the head, 62:2
paradox: the Canaanite woman, 60A:3
poor in spirit, 53:1, 8
poverty; the Beatitudes, 53A:2
things hidden from the wise, revealed to the lowly, 67:8
things revealed to little ones, 68:3, 7, 8
unworthy to enter under my roof, 62A:2

hunger:
food, temporary relief, 53:4
hungry for justice, 61:7
hunters, enduring hardships, 70:2

hypocrisy:

bodies in church, hearts outside, 62:17
performing to be seen by men, 93:14
pretense; exterior form, 71:32
seven more wicked spirits, 72A:2

idolry, 62:7, 9, 13
idols:
asking in prayer, 56:2
breaking, in their hearts, 62:17
lounging with false gods, 62:9
smashing, 62:18
worship of, 62:10; 68:4; 71:4

image:
removed when person is present, 74:5

image of God:
God tames; is refuge, 55:3
human beings are Christ’s currency, 90:10
mind, 53A:12
one soul as, 52:18
rubbed off by earthly desires, 90:10
rubbed off by sin, 60:2
sculpted anew, 90:10
seeing its maker, 88:6

immortal life, see eternal life; immortality

immortality:
death swallowed up in victory, 53A:12
real health, 77:13
soul can be immortal; can die, 65:4

impenitence:
against the Spirit, 71:34-36
blasphemy against the Holy Spirit, 71:20, 23, 25
Church unity opposed by, 71:36
despair, 71:21

Volume III/3
Sermons 51-94

**Impiety:**
- death of the soul, 65:5

**Importunity:**
- widow’s importunity, 61:5-6

**Impure heart,** see **pure of heart.**

**Incarnation:**
- bodily womb, 51:3
  - born of a woman; belief, 51:4
  - emptied himself, taking form of slave, 52:11; 88:4, 11; 92:2
  - God the Father and, 52:6, 7, 11
  - likeness of the flesh of sin, 69:4
  - Paul: work of the Father, 52:9
  - Word made flesh, 51:32
  - work of both Father and Son, 52:8, 11

**Inheritance:**
- amassed by avarice, squandered by children, 60:3
  - avarice and, 86:11, 12

**Injury:**
- asking pardon for offenses, 82:6
  - reproving others for, 82:7

**Insult:**
- revenge/forgive, 63:2

**Intelligence:**
- food for belly of innerself, 77:14

**Investments:**
- interest from leading good lives, 94
  - transfer to place of true life, 61:11

**Irreligion:**
- few totally irreligious, 69:3

**Isaac,** 71:32

**Ishmael,** 71:32

**Israelites,** see **Jews.**

**Jesus Christ:**
- asks “how long, dull of heart?” 72:6
  - asks: who touched (hem of his garment); 63B:1-3
  - baptism; the Trinity, 51:33; 52:1
  - begotten by the Father; begets Son, 68:9
  - believing in, but not loving, 90:8
  - boat in storm, 63:1-3
  - body jostled by many; touched for well-being by few, 77:6
  - born of woman, 72A:4
  - bread for the hungry, 53:4
  - bride and bridegroom; flesh of Christ, 91:8
  - bridegroom at the wedding feast, 90:6
  - called lamb, lion, 73:2
  - came, in person, only for the Jews, 63A:2
  - Canaanite woman, 77:1
  - champion who beat the world, 51:2
  - charity to members of Christ, 53A:6
  - childhood; found (as 12-year-old) in temple, 51:17
  - childhood: subject to his parents, 51:19
  - see also Church
  - Church as man and woman; 64A:3
  - conceived by faith, not lust, 69:4
  - confessing to the Father, 68:3; 69:1
  - cornerstone: Jews and Gentiles, 88:10
  - cornerstone symbolized by Jechoniah, 51:15
  - see also Cross
  - crucifixion:
  - despised when he hung on the cross, 87:9
  - Father, forgive them . . ., 80:5; 90:9
  - hid his grandeur, exposed his weakness, 87:9
  - mocked, 88:8
  - refusal to come down from the cross, 87:9
  - spectacle to be stared at, 51:2
  - David’s Lord, and son of David, 51:20; 91:2, 3
  - death from sharing our humanity, 80:5
  - death, slays death, 80:5
  - death: Word cannot die; became human, 80:5
  - demons cast out by his own power, 71:2, 27
  - descended from Adam, Noah, Abraham, 51:31

---

**Volume III/3**
Sermons 51-94

descent to the shades; not leaving
Paradise, 53A:13
died for wicked men, 72:2
divinity, 91:8
divinity abides, 88:9
divinity is still, humanity passes by,
88:14
dwelling through faith in our hearts, 81:8
Emmaus: pretending to go farther, 89:4,
7
Father is greater; one with the Father, 91:2,
3
fear not: it's really me, 75:9
fountain of life, 53:4
genealogy (Matthew and Luke), 51:1-35
genealogy: ancestry through Joseph,
51:16, 30
genealogy, in Matthew, 51:7, 12
generations (77), 51:31-35; 83:5
grace needed by, 67:7
hangs from a cross, rules the world,
70A:2
healing the human sickness, 87:13
hem of his garment, 62:5, 7
how to be brother, sister, mother to,
65A:7
humanity, 92:3
humanity and divinity, 80:5
humanity: born of a woman, 51:3
humility, 68:11; 70A:1
humility: emptied himself, 68:11
"I confess . . .", 67:1-9 passim
images (pre-Incarnation), 74:5
Incarnation, see Incarnation
intercedes, after the ascension, 75:3
Jechoniah in genealogy of, 51:13
see also Jews
John the Baptist; disciples, 66:1-5
Jonah and, 72A:1
Joseph as father of, 51:17, 19, 21, 26, 30
Last Judgment: threatened punishments,
75:9
last words: Father, forgive them, 56:3
left Father, left mother (the Synagogue),
91:7
love carries soul to Christ, 65A:1
make place for Christ among your children, 86:13-14
mediator: man and God, 81:6
see also Messiah
miracle: raising daughter of synagogue
official to life, 77:6
miracles admonish us to believe, 88:8
miracles of healing, 88:1
miracles past and gone, 88:9
mother; authority of the gospels, 72A:6
mother: conceive him in your heart,
65A:7
mother; the Manichees, 72A:5
mountain of refuge, 62A:3
mountain thrown into the sea, 89:2
must be "about his Father's business."
51:17-20
see also Mystical Body
name (anointing), 89:5
name means "Savior," 51:10
nativity: born of a woman-virgin, 52:10
no fruit without Christ, 89:1
no one to be loved more than Christ,
65A:11
no sin "if I had not come . . .", 71:11
not seen and believed in; seen and slain,
62:4
obedient unto death, 75:7
see also parables
parentage: in time and in eternity,
51:20
parentage: son of man, 51:17
passing by (meaning: transitory deeds),
88:9, 11
passion: waves rose mightily, 75:7
Peter and demons confess: Son of God,
90:8
Peter's fear of Christ dying, 76:3
power and wisdom of God, 53:7
power not used, crucified, 75:7
praying alone, 75:3
pretending (?) to find fruit out of season,
89:4
property of the Son, 71:18
prophecy: served by those he did not
know, 62:4
reality of, 75:8
recognition of Christ's love, 53:16
resides in inner person through faith,
53:15
resurrection (of the body):
brought about by both Father and Son,
52:13
news brought by women, 51:3
pull down this temple, 62A:3
scars shown to Thomas, 88:2
rock (Peter, on this rock . . .), 76:1
sent to lost sheep of Israel, 77:4, 8, 9

Volume III/3
Volume III/3

simultaneously in heaven and on earth, 67:7
snubs his mother, 72A:3
son of A braham, 91:1
son of David; son of A braham, 51:7, 8
son of David; Son of God, 91:1, 2; 92:1, 2, 3
Son of man, anointed at the head, 89:5
sower of the good seed, 73A:1
stone, 91:1, 92:2
stopping, standing still, 88:14, 16
storm at sea calmed, 75:1-10
suffering: work of both Father and Son, 52:8, 12
sufferings admonish us to believe, 88:8
symbolic language: Who touched me?, 77:7
took on mortal body so he could slay death, 88:1
touching hem of his garment, 63A:1-3; 63B:1-3
treasures of wisdom and knowledge, 51:5
true light, 67:9
true light: justice and wisdom, 75:5
unavenged, 58:8
walking on the sea: “It’s really me,” 75:8
walking on the waters, 80:6
walking on water, calms the waves, 75:1, 7
what is done for the least, is done to Christ, 86:3-5
who is my mother? 72A:6
who sees me, sees the Father, 88:4
woman touched hem of his garment, 77:6, 8
Word of God is never silent, 51:17
Word of God, Word made flesh, 88:14
Word was with God; David’s Lord, 91:2
Jews:
Babylonian migration, 51:14, 15
believers, at end of the world; 63B:2
Christ and, 77:2
Christ, the morning worm, 62A:4
excluded from gospel by pride, 77:11
faith and the Roman centurion, 62A:2
faithful to Christ, 89:1
grafting in the wild olive, 77:15
hoping for coming of Messiah, 91:1; 92:1, 2
lost sheep of house of Israel, 77:2, 4, 8, 9; 60A:2
opinion on Christ as son, 92:1
parable of the vineyard, 87:3
Pentecost; conversion, 87:14
Peter’s preaching to, 77:4
pride renders unfruitful, 77:12
rejected, 62:6
rejection of Christ as “Babylonian migration,” 51:14
sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:5, 11
stumbled over Christ (stone), 92:3
tree withered by Christ, 89:2
Job:
devil allowed to test, 77B:4; 91:4
molested, on the dunghill, 81:2
worships God for nothing, 91:3, 4
John the Baptist, Saint:
angels greater than, 66:2
in chains, sends disciples to Christ, 66:1-5
doubts about Christ? 66:3
greater than a prophet, 66:2
humility, 52:1
Jesus to John: my works are my words, 66:3
John’s disciples become Christ’s, 66:4
none born of woman greater than, 66:1
preaching repentance, 71:19
what Christ said about John, 66:2
witness to the true light, 67:9
Jonah, representing Christ, 72A:1
Joseph, Saint:
angel’s appearance in dream, 51:10
chaste father, 51:26
Christ’s ancestry through, 51:16, 30
father of, 51:27
father of Christ, 51:17, 19, 21, 26, 30
finding Mary to be with child, 51:9
genealogy: Matthew vs Luke, 51:27, 29
Mary’s husband, 51:16
naming Jesus, 51:16
son of Eli, 51:29
unwilling to disgrace Mary publicly, 82:9
joy:
Canaanite woman, 77B:1
eternal: Truth, Word, Wisdom (Christ), 75:10
over progress of workers, 82:15
Judas:
good drawn from the betrayal, 51:11

Sermons 51-94
judge:
widow's importunity, 61:5-6

judgment day:
avarice, 77A:4
divine mercy and, 72:2
humble concern, 93:13
knock now, not at time for judgment, 93:16
life is short, 82:12
receive the kingdom, for charity to the poor, 86:4
threatened punishments; last judgment, 75:9

justice:
become the slave of, 86:7
credit just acts to faith in Christ, 54:4
disburse money, to get justice, 61:4
gold: the good you are good with, 61:3
hunger and thirst for justice, 53:4; 53A:9; 61:7
increasing, by almsgiving, 61:3
Joseph's genuine sense of, 51:9
light of; Tobit, 88:15
performing to be seen by men, 93:14
reproving others, 82:7
turning away from light of, 88:5
widow's importunity, 61:5-6

justification:
Pharisee and the tax collector, 60A:4

kindness:
good done because of weariness, 61:5
putting another person off, 87:11

kingdom of God:
Church, 78:4
heresies and schisms, 71:4
possessed equally by all, 88:18
scribes not instructed in, 74:2
things made new in, 74:5
thy kingdom come, 56:6; 57:5
vs kingdom of the devil, 71:2

kingdom of heaven:
banquet, 90:4
see also heaven
parable of wicked servant, 83:1
poor in spirit, 53:1, 8
rest in, 77:13
temporary vs eternal health, 80:3
ten virgins, 93:1ff

labor, see Work.
lamb: Jesus called lamb, 73:2
lamps: ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:3, 4
languages:
	binding role, 71:28
	see also Pentecost
	speaking in tongues of all nations, 71:28
last judgment, see judgment day.
last things: wake, sleep, rise, reign, 57:5
law:
overstepping is sin, 83:7
peace, no scandal, for those loving the law, 81:1
unity with prophets and gospel, 79
voluntary rain, 76:6

Lazarus:
sinners buried like L., 67:2, 3
leaders, obedience to, 82:15
lethargics, 87:15
lie:
every man a liar, 81:5, 6
resisting scandal, 81:5

life:
blessed only if eternal, 84:2
fear of its ending, 84:1
see also human condition
scandal: lovers of the world, 81:7
a sickness, 80:2
uncertainty of, 82:14

life events:
straw is burned; gold is refined, 62:12

light:
Christ, the light; John the Baptist, the lamp, 67:9
eye of body; eye of heart, 88:5
love, believe, cry out, 88:15

lion:
death called, 73:2
Jesus called lion, 73:2
longevity:
a long life can be a torment, 84:2
Lord, The, see Jesus Christ.
Lord's Prayer:
asking for something good for ourselves, 56:5
daily cleansing of our sins, 59:7
daily purification of, 56:12
deliver us from evil, 57:10; 58:11; 59:8
deliver us from temptation, 56:18; 57:9; 58:9; 59:8

Volume III/3
Suffering, 65A:9
unlawful; pollution of the soul, 65A:1
without charity, nothing is done, 53:11
without love, I am nothing, 90:6
worldly things loved wrongly, 65A:1
lover:
enduring hardships easy for, 68:12, 70:2
inconveniences easy for, 70:3
lust:
fighting against, 57:9, 11
sex in marriage, 51:22, 24
spirit’s war with flesh, 56:8

Macedonians, 71:5
Manes, 73A:2
Manichees, 73A:2; 92:3

mother of Christ, 72A:5
marriage:
Church and the Church, 51:21
husband/wife joined by God, 65A:10
matrimonial contract, 51:22
Mutual love, and the sex act, 51:21, 24
not right that it be broken, 91:7
procreation of children, 51:22, 23, 24

martyr(s):
cause, 53A:13
celebrate festival of, 64:8; 64A:1; 65:8
Christopher’s yoke is light, 68:13
suffering, 65A:9
merits; deeds, 64:1
persecution for justice’ sake, 53A:13
professing faith, 51:8
spectacles, 51:2
testimony, 65:3
this life as superfluous, 62:14

Mary, Blessed Virgin:
blessed womb of, 72A:7
Church something better than, 72A:7
discipleship greater than motherhood,
72A:7
fertility brought; virginity not taken away,
69:4
figure of the Church, 72A:8
mind greater than womb, 72A:7
modesty, 51:18
snubbed by Jesus, 65A:6; 72A:3

Lord’s table:
banquet of holy scriptures, 90:9
love:
all devoted to arriving at object loved,
65A:2
avarice and, 78:6
see also charity
in Christ, not instead of Christ, 65A:5
calls for two wings, 68:13
creation with, 77C
creator for His creation, 68:5
enemies, 56:14, 15, 16
enticing beauty of the world, 65A:2
extend, beyond your family, 90:10
faith together with, 90:8
faith working through, 53:11
give God back yourself, 65A:12
God and neighbor, 90:8
God or the world; stormy sea, 76:9
God’s test, to know if we love him, 57:9
heart, lifted up, will haul up flesh, 68:13
loving father/mother more than Christ,
65A:1-13
many loves overcome by one love,
65A:2
no one more than Christ, 65A:11
only creature says “love me,” 65A:4
perfect gift of the Holy Spirit, 71:19
pure heart is wedding garment, 90:6
reproving others, 82:4
right order, 65A:8
root of all good, 72:4
spiritual loving, 65A:11

Volume III/3

Sermons 51-94
Sermons 51-94

virginity, 51:18; 72A:8
with child; Joseph’s sense of justice, 51:9
maternal affection, 72A:3, 4
M atthew, Saint:
faith in the evangelist, 51:6
M aximianists, 88:25
meek(ness):
closeness to creator of heaven and earth, 53:2
how to be meek, 81:2
instructing in spirit of, 88:20
J ob as example of, 81:2
land of the living, 53A:7
peace to those who love your law, 81:1
pleasure only in God, 81:3, 5
possession of/possessed by earth, 53:2
memory:
analogy: God the Father, 52:23
trinity in man, 52:19-23
mercy:
beatitudes, 53:5
beggar standing at your door, 53A:10
divine judgment and, 72:2
divine; not my capacity, 76:8
have mercy, because of my trust, 77A:1
knock now, not at time for judgment, 93:16
voluntary rain, 76:6
M essiah:
promise to A bramah, 51:4
promised to come in world’s old age, 81:8
prophecy: unjustly judged; will come to judge justly, 92:1
revealed to Peter by the Father, 76:3
seeking/saving what had been lost, 89:1
metaphors: lion; lamb, 73:2
mind:
as heaven, 57:6
heaven (Lord’s Prayer), 56:8
image of God in, 53A:12
reasoning power, 55:3
virginity of, 72A:8
ministry, of rebuking, 82:15
miracle(s):
building up faith in things not seen, 88:1
centurion’s servant, 62A:1-4
disciples perform, through the Lord, 89:2
indicating a future reality, 89:3
Jesus healing diseases of the spirit, 63A:2
mountain thrown into the sea, 89:2
performed by good/bad people, 90:5
miser:
let no one seek his own, 78:6
self-indulgent, 63A:2
mistresses: avarice and extravagance, 86:6
mortification: crying out to Christ, 88:17
M oses, 87:5, 7
adopted by Pharaoh’s daughter, 51:28
idol worshippers, 88:24
maternal instincts, 88:24
miracles, 90:5
mount of the transfiguration, 78:2-5; 79; 79A:1
offered another people, by God, 88:24
scribes sitting in chair of, 74:17
shining face, 74:5
mothers:
become mothers of Christ, 72A:8
obstructing sons’ good works, 72A:3
mourning:
consolation, the reward, 53:3
dead souls, 65:7
repentance, 53A:8
murder: hate, 82:3
mystery:
divine mysteries, 60A:1
God’s “ignorance” a guarantee of; 63B:2
localization of the godhead, 52:15
mystical body:
be the body of Christ, 62:7
crushed by flesh; touched by faith, 62:5, 7
head (Jesus) ascends, body (members) follow, 91:7
jostled, not touched (by pagans), 62:11
sinning against our brothers, 82:4, 5

N

Nathanael:
no guile in, 89:5
under the fig tree, 69:4
nature:
finding God in book of created n., 68:6
necessities:
superfluities of the rich, 61:12
neighbor: everyone as, 90:7
Nineveh: Jonah, 72A:1
Noah: generation of Christ, 51:31
number(s):
4th watch of the night, 75:7

Volume III/3
parents:
- God taught us to love, 65A:7
- honor your father and mother, 65A:7
- Jesus teaches us to love, 72A:4
- love; Christ's teaching, 65A:6
- love; not put ahead of God, 72A:4
- loving father/mother more than Christ, 65A:1-13
- loving, in Christ, 65A:5
- only God put before parents, 65A:7
- sparrows' natural goodness, 90:10
- passions: tranquillity in yourself, 76:9
- patience: enduring patiently, 63A:1
- patriarchs: procreation of children, 51:23
- Patrispassians, 52:6; 71:5
- Paul, Saint:
  - apostolate to the gentiles, 63A:3
  - asked for Satan to depart, 61A:3
  - before men: let light shine; take care not to do justice, 54:2
  - censuring sinners, 82:8
  - Christ laid Saul low, 77:3
  - Church's prayer for/against "Saul," 56:3, 14
  - division: followers of Peter/Paul, 76:2
  - freed from demon, 71:3
  - hem of Christ's garment, 77:8
  - humility, 77:3
  - last/least of the apostles, 63A:3; 63B:3; 78:2-5
  - little in himself, great in the Lord, 76:7
  - mission, 77:5
  - name (Tiny, or Little), 77:3
  - prayer to have Satan removed, 77B:3, 4
  - request: remove sting in the flesh, 76:7
  - struck down; healed, 87:15
  - sufferings, 70:1, 2
- peace:
  - covetousness conquered, 77A:2
  - loving the law, 81:1
  - order: God controls mind; mind controls flesh, 53A:12
  - pacify yourself inside, 53A:12
  - persecution of Christians stopped, 51:14
  - promoting, 53A:12
  - tranquillity of the times; in yourself, 76:9
- pearls:
  - do not throw, before pigs, 60A:1-4; 77:9
- Pentecost:
  - conversion of Jews, 87:14
  - disciples speaking in tongues, 80:5; 87:9
Sermons 51-94

Plato, and Peter, 68:7
pleasing everyone, 54:2, 4
pleasure:
  adultery and, 65:6
  sinful, 56:12
polygamy: Old Testament, 51:25
poor:
  assistance for each other, 91:9
  Augustine begs offerings for, 66:5
  boasting about poverty, 85:2
  counsel: sell all, give to the poor,
    86:1-17
  equal to the rich, at birth, 61:9
  fear of poverty, 53A:2
  labors in work, 70A:1
  look for sufficiency, not riches, 85:6
  parable of the rich young man, 85:1-2
  porters for the rich, 53A:6
  prayer to become rich, 77B:3
  rich and poor have met each other,
    53A:6
  superfluities provide poor with
    necessities, 61:12
  walking together with the rich, 85:7
  wishing to become rich, 53A:3
poor in spirit:
  kingdom of heaven, 53:1, 8
  poor in wishes, 53A:2
possessions:
  first greed, then fear, 68:10
  gaining: loss of possession of self, 53A:4
  good things vs being good, 72:5
  power, intimidating, 65:2
  practicing, and scribes' preaching, 74:2, 3
praise:
  accusing self in confession, 67:2, 4
  confession of, 68:2
  human error sometimes in, 73A:3
  revelations to the humble, 67:8
  saved from enemy by praising God, 67:6
  thrown off balance by, 75:10
prayer(s), 80:1-8
  all are beggars, 83:2
  almsgiving and prayer clean our sins,
    56:12
  see also ask, seek, knock
  believing, you will receive, 89:2
  clean out your inner room, 53A:11
  desire is praying always, 80:7
  devotedness, not wordiness, 56:4
  differences in prayers, 77B:2
  Father knows, before you ask, 80:2

Volume III/3
forgiveness of daily sins, 58:8
garrulous, 80:2
God’s favor, not answered, 77B:4
Jesus alone on the mountain, 75:3
not getting what is asked for, 77B:4
present needs, 59:6
tears reach the Lord, 77B:6
text (a prayer), 67:10
that you may love enemies, 56:15
two wings: forgiving and giving, 58:10
urgent, when all human efforts have failed, 75:4
what should be asked for, 77B:5
what we should ask for, 57:3
what we should avoid in asking, 56:2
without ceasing, 77B:1
preaching: scribes, 74:2, 3
pressure:
scandal and, 81:2, 4, 5
training exercises, 81:7
world as boat, Christ asleep, 81:8
pretense:
physical presence with Christ’s sheep, 71:32
pride:
belief in the scriptures, 51:6
calling selves wise, they became foolish, 67:8
Canaanite woman: faith, 77:11
Christ’s example of humility, 68:11;
70A:2
God hides himself from the proud, 68:7
grafting in the wild olive, 77:15
heart: judgment, 91:5
hills and valleys, 77:12
imagine: escape the eyes of God, 70A:2
light exposed to wind of, 67:9
living a good life, 72A:2
recognizing, but not glorifying, God, 68:7
riches and, 53A:4
Saul (king) and Saul (later Paul), 77:3
soul’s greatest ill, 51:4
swelling/shriveling, 70A:2
swollen heads of congregation leaders, 91:5
swollen-headed, 87:12
weighed down by sins, 70A:1
the wise and the prudent, 67:8
worm in riches, 61:10
Priscillian, 73A:2
procreation of children, 51:22, 23, 24
profit: good use of, 61:11
promise:
Christ, cross, Spirit, Church, 77A:2
promotion: means of doing good, 72:4
property:
transferring wealth to heaven, 53A:6
prophecy:
Messiah served by people he never knew, 77:5
transfiguration, 78:1
prophets:
deeds explain words, 88:25
John the Baptist greater than, 66:2
stay with their people, good or bad, 88:24
unity with law and gospel, 79
providence: God protects, 62:15
psalms: prophetic utterances, 56:3
public rebuke, see rebuking others.
punishment:
feared by evil people, 90:2
robbers crucified with Jesus, 53A:13
pure of heart:
beatitude: shall see God, 53:6-7, 16;
53A:11; 88:4
purified by each beatitude, 53A:11
special way of seeing God, 53:9
unclean spirits, seeing God, 53:10
Q
quarrel: simplicity of doves, 64:7
R
rain, voluntary, 76:6
razor, superfluities, 62:14, 15
rebuking others:
correcting, with gentleness, 88:20
correction, with love, 77C
public or private, 82:4-12, 15; 83:1, 8
reconciliation:
gift of self to God, 82:5
redemption:
death of the flesh, 76:9
for this “bit of dust,” 57:13
religion:
Few deeply religious, few totally
irreligious, 69:3
three ages: before/under the law; age of
grace, 72:3

Sermons 51-94
Sermons 51-94

religious condition:
  exterior form only, 71:32
  good tree, bearing fruit, 72:3-4
  mere men, carnal and sensual, 71:30
repentance:
  change your ways while you can, 73:3
  dirt of, 72:3
  holding on to the Church, 71:37
  see also impenitence
mournning; beatitude, 53A:8
preached by John the Baptist, 71:19
reproving others, see rebuking others.
rest: Christ's yoke is light, 68:13; 70:1
resurrection (of the human body):
  flesh will rise by soul's merits, 65:3
  gift, promise, 78:5
  God as our inheritance, 55:4
  iniquity and infirmity eliminated, 77A:2
  parable of vineyard workers' wages, 87:5
revenge: Christ asleep in your heart, 63:2
reward: working together, 82:15
rich:
  all are beggars of God, 56:9
  command: be rich in good works, 53A:4,
  5; 85:4
  command not to have proud thoughts,
  85:3
  counsel: sell all, give to the poor,
  86:1-17
  duties of, 61:11
  equal to the poor, at birth, 61:9
  fear increases as riches increase, 53A:2
  greater needs of the, 77:13
  labors in thought, 70A:1
  no needs means truly rich, 77:13
  parable of the rich young man, 85:1-2
  parable: taken to Abraham's bosom,
  86:16
  poor as porters lifting property to
  heaven, 53A:6
  poor in spirit, 53A:6
  prayer to become, 77B:2
  proud of delicacy, 61:12
  rich and poor have met each other,
  53A:6
  walking together with the poor, 85:7
riches:
  breeding pride, 61:10
  craving for, 68:11
  make entering heaven difficult, 85:2
  possessed by good and bad alike, 61:2
superfluities provide poor with
  necessities, 61:12
  uncertainty of, 61:11; 85:3
  see also wealth
  wish to become rich, 61:10; 85:6
Rome: fall of, in Christian times, 81:9
rulers: Cross of Christ in crown of, 51:2

S
Sabellians, 52:6; 71:5
sacraments: wedding garment, 90:5
sacrifice: of praise; salvation, 67:6
Sadducees: deny Holy Spirit, 71:5
saints:
  shake dust off their feet, 88:23
  thy kingdom come, 59:4
  salvation:
  calling upon the name of the Lord, 56:1
  evil: kingdom come for others, 57:5
  the Good Thief, 67:7
  persevering to the end, 93:6
  pleasing people for the sake of, 54:4
  repent and be baptized, 77:4
  whoever believes and is baptized, 71:16
  woman's role in, 51:3
Satan, see devil.
scandal:
  cut it off, throw it away, 81:4
  examples, 81:2
  Job's wife, 81:2
  lie by Mr. Big, 81:5
  peace for those loving the law, 81:1
  pressure, 81:2, 4, 5
  temptation; don't consent, 81:4
  threat of, 81:1
  troubles as training exercises, 81:7
  world both good and bad, 81:3
sciples:
  knowledge of the law, 74:1
  preaching but not practicing, 74:2, 3
  pride, 91:5
  sitting in chair of Moses, 74:3
  tithes, 85:5
scripture(s):
  belief: pride vs humility, 51:6
  clear passages; obscure passages, 71:11
  merge into one truth, 81:1
  reading, 51:35
  sense: proper or symbolic, 89:4, 5, 6
  understanding, 51:35
  secrets, value of, 51:5

Volume III/3
sects: divisions calling themselves churches of Christ, 71:37
security:
  proper time for, 55:1
  rich and poor, 53A:2
segregations (term), 71:32
self:
  analogy of the Trinity found in, 52:17
  glorification, 54:3
  hate as damage to, 82:3
  must be stern judges of, 63A:1
  self-accusation: confession is praising God, 67:2, 4
  self-deceit: thinking one is something, 67:6
  self-indulgence: examples, 63A:2; 63B:3
  self-interest, 54:3
self-love:
  reproving others, 82:4
  whoever loves iniquity hates his own soul, 90:6
senses:
  five; the ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:2
sensuality:
  people not having the Spirit, 71:30
  sustaining human pleasure, 51:23
servant:
  beating, 72:7
  investing talent received, 94
  squandering capital, 94
seventy-seven (times to forgive), 83:1-8
sex:
  love wife chastely, 51:25
  married love, and the sex act, 51:21, 24
sexes:
  Christ, born of a woman, 51:3
  neither male nor female, in faith, 72A:4
  proper honor of each sex, 51:3
sharing:
  easy givers: the rich, 61:11
  giving readily, 85:4, 5
  make place for Christ among your children, 86:13-14
  parable of the sower, 53A:5
  rich and poor, on the same road, 61:12
  tithes, 85:5
sheep among wolves, 64:1-3; 64A:1-3
sickness:
  attitudes of the sick, 80:4
  Christ as doctor for the spiritually sick, 88:7
  God the Father as doctor, 80:2
Sidon: gentle city, 77:1
silence:
  reproving others, 82:7
  withdrawal from the din, 52:22
simplicity:
  asking only one thing from the Lord, 65A:3
  seeking God, in the heart, 53:7
sin:
  against the weak is sin against Christ, 82:4
  almsgiving and prayer clean our sins, 56:12
  battle: coveting vs consent, 77A:2
  covetousness of the flesh, 77A:2
  daily prayer for forgiveness, 58:8
  elevenfold, 83:7
  enemy of your soul, 77A:4
  expecting to go unpunished, 77A:2
  false idea: I sin, God doesn't care, 75:6
  forgive us our debts, 56:11; 77A:3
  forgive, as we forgive, 57:8; 58:6
  see also forgiveness of sin; good and evil
  ignoring or slighting minor sins, 58:10
  incarnation: likeness of the flesh of sin, 69:4
  justification, 77A:4
  large or small, sink ships, 77B:7
  makes gap between us and God, 68:10
  number 77 symbolizes all sins, 83:7
  object left here; sin carried on, 58:9
  original, see original sin.
  rebuke in private, 83:8
  see also scandal
  small sins not to be shrugged off, 77B:7
  spirit; body, 51:34
  sweetness; death, 77A:3
  tree not bearing fruit not in season, 89:3
  trivial, 82:5
  we are God's debtors, 83:2
  weaknesses of the flesh, 53A:12
sinner(s):
  censuring, in front of all, 82:8
  Christ as doctor for the sick, 80:4
  correcting, with gentleness, 88:20
  correction with love, 77C
  dead, like Lazarus, 67:2
  justified by calling himself 'sinner,' 60A:4
  oil of (flattery), 93:12
private reprove, 82:11
prophets not keeping quiet, 88:25
see also wickedness

sleep:
Jesus: boat in storm, 63:1-3
ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:6-7
snake, cunning of, 64:5-8; 64A:2-3
Solomon: on censuring others, 82:8
sons: good works; mother relations, 72A:3
sons of God: grace: power to become, 81:6
soul:
can be killed, 65:5
dead without God, 65:7, 8
even “dead,” makes flesh live, 65:6
give alms to your soul too, 87:11
image of God, 52:18
image of the Trinity, 51:34
immortal after its own fashion, 65:4
killed by despair or by wrongheaded
hope, 87:10
life of the body, 62:2
memory, understanding, will, 52:19-23
one who loves/does not love his own,
90:6
polluted by unlawful love, 65A:1
sower:
enemy has sown weeds everywhere,
73A:3
parable explained, 73:1; 73A:1
parable of the good seed, 73:1; 73A:1;
88:21-22
parable of the weeds, 79A:1
space: localization of the godhead, 52:15
sparrow, as parents, 90:10
spectacles: two kinds of people at, 51:2
speech: bridling, 55:1
spirit:
battle with flesh, 53A:12
capacity to be enlarged, 91:6
diseases; healing by Jesus, 63A:2
flesh and, 57:6; 58:4
hate as damage to, 82:3
spirits: seven wicked and seven more
wicked, 72A:2
spiritual life:
breadth, length, height, depth, 53:15
Christ as doctor for the sick, 88:7
Christ awake in your heart, 63:1-3
daily nourishment, 57:7
enemy (devil) is invisible, 67:4-5
God tames his own image, 55:3
see also heart
pleasing God, 65A:13
stairs: Jacob’s dream, 89:5
stars: measuring creation, 68:4
stealing: plundering, 85:1
Stephen, Saint:
forbids his enemies, 56:16
last prayer: for his enemies, 90:9
rebukes the Jews, 90:9
stone: builders reject, becomes cornerstone,
89:4
storm:
boat tossed about by waves, 75:1-10
Jesus: boat in storm, 63:1-3
perish without the boat (Church), 75:4
temptations and trials, 75:4
strength:
God grants to those aware of weakness,
76:6
strong/weak members in the Church,
76:4, 6
stronger means less needy, 77:13
suffering:
bitter medicine, 88:7
entering the kingdom of heaven, 80:3
love, 65A:9
temporal; glory to come, 70:3
sufficiency, content with, 85:6
sun:
rises on the good and the wicked, 58:7
ture light: justice and wisdom, 75:5
superfluities:
provide poor with necessities, 61:12
razor: lower authorities, 62:14, 15
symbolism: sense of scripture, 89:4, 5
synagogue:
mother of Christ, 91:7
tree deservedly shriveled up, 89:1

T

tabernacle: orders for construction of, 83:7
talent: servant investing, 94
taming: flee to God for refuge, 55:2-3
tax collector: justified, 60A:4
teaching: ability to, 91:9
tears: blood of the heart, 77B:6
temple of God:
sins of the flesh, 82:13
soils of the just, 53:7
temple of Jerusalem: body of Christ, 62A:3
temporal goods:
ask/seek/knock, 61A:4

Volume III/3
Volume III/3

asking, in moderation, 80:7
beneficial/harmful, 80:7
creature says “love me,” 65A:4
dying for; 64A:2
eternal goods and, 61:11
temptation:
daily combat, 77A:3
deliver us from evil, 56:18; 57:9, 10
different ways, 59:8
temporary; 77A:3
God does forsake some, 57:9
God seems to forsake some, 71:15
God walking on the waters, 75:7
Job: fire finds gold, not straw, 91:4
storm-tossed; absence of Christ, 75:5
tested by, 57:9; 59:8
testing faith, 71:15
a wind, a wave, 63:3
wishing to become rich, 77B:3
ten commandments:
symbolism (of ten), 83:6
the number ten, 51:34
thanksgiving: glorifying God, 68:6, 7
theft: Tobit’s wife, 88:15
Thomas, Saint: doubt, 88:2
thought: evil, 77A:3
time:
all things pass; the Lord remains, 65A:13
redeeming the time, 84:2
tithes: scribes and Pharisees, 85:5
tongue: taming, 55:1, 2
touch: unclean things, 88:23-25
transfiguration:
allegorical meaning of, 78:2
Jesus was the agent in, 79A:1
Peter’s desire: build three tabernacles, 78:3; 79; 79A:1
prophecy, 78:1; 79A:1
significance (after the vision), 78:5
symbolism of mystery of, 79A:3
vision on the mountain, 78:1; 79; 79A:1
voice from a cloud, 78:4; 79
transgression: the number eleven, 51:34
unbelievers:
chasing after vanities, 60:2
eternal life, 86:10
heavenly investing, 86:1
laying up, on earth, 60:1-6
put by earth in earth, 60:5
storing up for whom? 60:3
where your heart is, 60:5
trees:
Jesus caused tree to wither, 89:1-4
known by its fruit, 72:1
leaves: analogy: perpetuation of the human race, 51:23
trials: troubles test like fire, 81:7
Trinity:
activities of divine-three are inseparable, 71:26
apparently separated: place, function, 52:2
baptism of Christ, 51:33; 52:1
distinct properties and subsistence of each person, 71:18
Father does nothing without the Son, 52:5, 7, 14
Father reveals the Son; Son reveals the Father, 68:9
image found in image of God (man), 52:17
inseparable works: Father and Son, 52:2, 3, 4, 14
man as image of, 52:19-23
pardon of sins as work of, 71:25
performs works of each of the persons, 71:27
three persons acting/being in common, 71:33
was Father born? did Father suffer?, 52:6, 7
trouble(s):
anxiety over temporal, 60:1
training exercises, 81:7
Troy: burned; gods, 81:9
truth: holding down, in iniquity, 68:5, 6
Tyre: Gentile city, 77:1
ugliness: made beautiful by God’s desire, 62:8
unbelief:
dead of the soul, 65:5
purge thing that prevents seeing God, 88:5
unbelievers:
darkness in the world, 67:5
death burying their dead, 62:2
thy will be done, 59:5
unclean: depart from, spiritually, 88:23-25

Sermons 51-94
understanding:
- analogy: God the Son, 52:23
- creator is far above us, 52:16
- first believe, 89:4
- gentle in hearing the word, 52:22
- trinity in man, 52:19-23

unity:
- Eucharist: be what we receive, 57:7
- law, prophets, gospel, 79, 79A:3

usury: guard against, 77A:4

V

values:
- see also eternal life
- faith working through love, 90:8
- good things vs being good, 72:5
- vanity: temporal goods, 61:11

veil:
- placed over hearts, 74:5
- respect for secret behind, 51:5

vengeance:
- divine, 59:7
- fearful temptation, 57:11

virtue:
- arming against scandals to come, 81:1
- progress in, 88:18

W

wages:
- parable: workers in vineyard, 87:1-8
- wages: parable: workers in vineyard, 87:1-8

weakness:
- encourage the faint-hearted, 77C
- intimidation, 65:2
- sinning against the weak person, 62:9, 10
- strength made perfect in, 61A:4, 5
- strong brothers’ care for, 62:7
- strong/weak members in the Church, 76:4, 6

wealth:
- accumulating for one’s children, 60:3
- arguments in justification of, 60:5
- effects; setting heart on riches, 60:3
- relatively good/bad, 72:4
- see also riches
- storing; danger of theft, 60:4
- uncertainty of riches, 53A:4
- use for good purposes, 91:9
- vainly storing up, 60:4

wedding feast:
- bad people excluded, 90:3
- Christ the bridegroom, 90:6
- Church the bride, 90:6
- good and bad guests, 90:2
- householder finds one lacking wedding garment, 90:4
Sermons 51-94

Volume III/3

king's son, 90:1ff
wedding garment:
  faith with love, 90:9
  good conscience, unfeigned faith, 90:6
  love from a pure heart, 90:6
  man found lacking, 90:3, 4
  many called, few chosen, 90:4
  meanings of, 90:5
  observed on the heart, 90:4
  one man found lacking was many people, 90:4
  only the good have, 90:5
wolves: sheep among, 64:1-8
woman:
  Church as; 64A:3
  Jesus honored, in his mother, 72A:4
  suffering from issue of blood, 63A:1-3;
  63B:1-3; 77:6, 8
  martyrs; cunning of the snake; 64A:3
  sin and salvation through, 51:3
word:
  scripture usage (in singular form), 71:22
Word of God: daily food, 56:10
Word, The, see Jesus Christ.
work:
  come to me, all you who labor, 69:1, 4
  hard labor easier with love, 70:3
  joy over results, 82:15
  motive: craving for something(s), 68:10
  rich man, poor man; 70A:1
works of mercy:
  delaying, 87:11
  forgiveness and good deeds, 83:2
world:
  beauties of; love the creator, 68:5
  as boat, Christ asleep, 81:8
  dreaming about banquets of, 77:13
  getting severely beaten, 72:7
  grown old; troubles and pressures, 81:8
  parable of the sower, 88:21-22
  pressures; world as boat, Christ asleep,
  81:8
worldliness: waste for the soul, 63A:3
worldly ambition: greed vs humility, 68:10
worship:
  cultivating God, 87:1
  God worships human beings, 87:2
  heavens and the earth, 53:14

Y
  yoke: Christ's load is light, 68:12; 70:1, 3;
  70A:1

Z
  Zacchaeus: house and affections, 62:3
  Zachary: naming newborn son, 51:30
Index from

Sermons 94A-147A

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Sermons 94A-147A are on the New Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/4 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-000-1, 6 x 9 in., 480 pp., 1992

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>Job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>118, 1; 119, 2</td>
<td>1:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3, 31</td>
<td>96, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-27</td>
<td>126, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>97, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>129, 4; 147A, 2</td>
<td>2:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>110, 1; 122, 1</td>
<td>2:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>113A, 10</td>
<td>3:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>122, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>98, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1618</td>
<td>129, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>105, 9; 113A, 10; 129, 9; 130, 3</td>
<td>4:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>101, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13–17</td>
<td>109, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>145, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leviticus</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>106, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deuteronomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>147A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>145, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>106, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Judges</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:36–40</td>
<td>131, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Kings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9</td>
<td>136B, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12</td>
<td>136B, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12:14</td>
<td>136B, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10.14.</td>
<td>100, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tobit</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7:10</td>
<td>125A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:89</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Maccabees</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sermons 94A-147A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33:9</td>
<td>125, 4; 91:1; 136A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1</td>
<td>95, 2; 105, 8, 13; 106:1; 116, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
<td>114, 1; 114A, 1; 103:1; 131, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:5</td>
<td>103, 4; 103:24; 131, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:8</td>
<td>143, 2; 103:4; 131, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:11</td>
<td>130, 3; 142, 9; 145, 5; 103:5; 105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12</td>
<td>108, 6; 104:24; 117, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:13</td>
<td>108, 6; 106:1; 136A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:14</td>
<td>108, 2; 110:3; 135, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:18</td>
<td>112A, 5; 115:4; 105, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:89</td>
<td>142, 9; 116:10; 126, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>113, 6; 125A, 2; 116:11; 130, 2; 131, 4, 8; 132A, 2; 147, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:7</td>
<td>145, 5; 119:164; 95, 2; 114, 1; 114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:12</td>
<td>112A, 4; 116:34; 112A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:1</td>
<td>113B, 4; 116:5; 105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>125, 2; 116:15; 133A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:9</td>
<td>147A, 4; 118:1; 136A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>138, 6; 118:24; 120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:10</td>
<td>110, 4; 119:49; 105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:13</td>
<td>138, 8; 119:133; 112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:10</td>
<td>103, 3; 104, 7; 119:164; 95, 2; 114, 1; 114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:8</td>
<td>104, 5; 121:3; 104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:9</td>
<td>136A, 2; 121:4; 105, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:9.3</td>
<td>113, 2; 126:6; 102, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:17</td>
<td>112A, 5; 127:1; 105, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:1214</td>
<td>138, 7; 147A, 4; 132:9; 107, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:1</td>
<td>97, 2, 4; 132:17–18; 128, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:11</td>
<td>97, 4; 108, 5; 146, 2; 147A, 4; 135:5; 111, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:5.11</td>
<td>129, 5; 138:6; 115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:7</td>
<td>101, 3; 139:4; 112A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:9</td>
<td>131, 4; 139:16; 135, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:11</td>
<td>124, 1; 140:5; 142, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:9</td>
<td>104, 5; 145, 1; 143:6; 131, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:11</td>
<td>113A, 9; 144:9; 125, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:18</td>
<td>136B, 3; 144:11–14; 113, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>104, 3; 144:15; 113, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:17</td>
<td>135, 6; 147:2; 105, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:24–25</td>
<td>130, 2; 147:12–14; 130, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:25</td>
<td>132A, 1; 148:8; 128, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:39</td>
<td>142, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:7</td>
<td>112, 1; 113A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:3</td>
<td>136C, 4; 133A, 3; 144, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6</td>
<td>107, 3; 125, 3; 8:35, LXX; 136B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:67</td>
<td>97, 2; 10:2; 114A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:17</td>
<td>142, 4; 22:2; 107A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:18</td>
<td>129, 9; 24:16; 114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86:11</td>
<td>104, 5; 114A, 1, 2, 5; 27:21; 113A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:12</td>
<td>138, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proverbs**

3:11–12; 113A, 4
3:34; 131, 3; 144, 1
8:35, LXX; 136B, 4
10:2; 114A, 3
22:2; 107A, 5
24:16; 114A, 1
27:21; 113A, 11

**Volume III/4**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume III/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>7:30</td>
<td>96, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>138, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>138, 6; 147A, 3, 4; 138, 7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>95, 5; 138, 8; 146, 2; 147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>125A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>95, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>125, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>107, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>117, 11; 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>113A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>113A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>97, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>123, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29:27</td>
<td>105, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:23</td>
<td>106, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:6</td>
<td>126, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>100, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>118, 2; 140, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9, LXX</td>
<td>126, 1; 139, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>125A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>125, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:8</td>
<td>128, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:10, LXX</td>
<td>127, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:12</td>
<td>131, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:68</td>
<td>119, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:68</td>
<td>124, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:69</td>
<td>113B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42:14</td>
<td>145, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46:8</td>
<td>102, 2; 112A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>113A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>95, 4; 138, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65:5</td>
<td>99, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>142, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>101, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>107, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:79</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>128, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>142, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>3:2, 109, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:2, 110, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:34, 123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:11, 123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:17, 109, 1; 110, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:15–16, 108, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:17, 125, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:25, 109, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:25–26, 125, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:28, 98, 5; 139A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:45, 142, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:6, 105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:8, 117, 15; 126, 13; 127, 10; 136C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:2, 137, 11; 138, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:5, 112A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:8, 107A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:9, 136C, 4; 139, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:9, 114, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:9,12, 135, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:11, 125, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6:12, 114A, 5; 115, 3; 131, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:22–23, 137, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:22–23, 138, 3; 142, 11; 145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:25, 134, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8:22, 134, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9:9, 105A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9:12, 112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>133, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:42</td>
<td>105A, 1; 107A, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>142, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28–29</td>
<td>117, 17; 142, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>142, 11, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>96, 1; 112A, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td>138, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>138, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>113A, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>101, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>105, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:6.12</td>
<td>129, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>107A, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>98, 6; 99, 9; 139A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:35</td>
<td>114A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>142, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:27</td>
<td>142, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.22</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9</td>
<td>111, 2; 121, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:44</td>
<td>122, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:11</td>
<td>95, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12–13</td>
<td>95, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:14</td>
<td>95, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>112A, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>125, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2</td>
<td>137, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:23</td>
<td>137, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>99, 13; 101, 10, 11; 129, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21, 23</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21.23</td>
<td>147A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:24–27</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26–27</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:31–40</td>
<td>137, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34, 41</td>
<td>113A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34, 46</td>
<td>127, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34–35, 40</td>
<td>113, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>113, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.40</td>
<td>113B, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.42.46</td>
<td>137, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>103, 2; 107A, 2; 113, 1; 114A, 4; 133, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:28</td>
<td>134, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>99, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:34</td>
<td>130, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40</td>
<td>110, 3; 122, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>108, 1; 129, 2; 142, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mark**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>147, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>101, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35–39</td>
<td>98, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:41</td>
<td>139A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>96, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:37–38</td>
<td>96, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>122, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>113A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15–17</td>
<td>113A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30–31</td>
<td>106, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>97, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Luke**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>105, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>101, 11; 105A, 1, 2; 107A, 8; 117, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:78</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>111, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>137, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td>112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31–32</td>
<td>97A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20–21</td>
<td>114A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37–38</td>
<td>114, 5; 114A, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:46</td>
<td>129, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12–15</td>
<td>98, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>98, 2; 139A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>128, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>99, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:41–47</td>
<td>99, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:48–49</td>
<td>99, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:50</td>
<td>99, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>101, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:57</td>
<td>100, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:58</td>
<td>100, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:59</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:60</td>
<td>100, 2; 127, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:61–62</td>
<td>100, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>101, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:46</td>
<td>101, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:56</td>
<td>101, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>101, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>102, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>145, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17, 20</td>
<td>145, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III/4**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41</td>
<td>103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41–42</td>
<td>103, 3; 104, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>105A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:8</td>
<td>105A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>132, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9–10</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1–13</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:39</td>
<td>106, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>106, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:42</td>
<td>106, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>94A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>107, 2; 107A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>107, 3; 107A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>105A, 1; 107, 1, 4; 107A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16–20</td>
<td>107A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18–19</td>
<td>107, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20–21</td>
<td>107A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>107, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35–36</td>
<td>105, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:36</td>
<td>108, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>103, 6; 104, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:58</td>
<td>109, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:89</td>
<td>110, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>110, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:23–24</td>
<td>112, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>105, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18–20</td>
<td>112, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:22–23</td>
<td>112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>112A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14–15</td>
<td>112A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17</td>
<td>112A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17–18</td>
<td>96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18–19</td>
<td>112A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18–20</td>
<td>112A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>112A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:25</td>
<td>112A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:27</td>
<td>112A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>112A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:29</td>
<td>112A, 11, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:29–30</td>
<td>112A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td>112A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>112A, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19–21</td>
<td>113A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:20</td>
<td>113B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22–24</td>
<td>102, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24</td>
<td>113B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>102, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29–30</td>
<td>113A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29–31</td>
<td>129, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:31</td>
<td>113A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:34</td>
<td>114, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20–21</td>
<td>109, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:32</td>
<td>96, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:9–14</td>
<td>137, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:9.13</td>
<td>115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>136A, 2; 136B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13–14</td>
<td>135, 6; 136A, 2; 136C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13, 14</td>
<td>1115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>136A, 3; 136B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:16</td>
<td>115, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:29</td>
<td>107A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>113, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>105A, 1; 113, 3; 107A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>113, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:33</td>
<td>125, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:40</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>128, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:3</td>
<td>107A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:33</td>
<td>105, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:31–32</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>137, 3; 147, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:46</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>138, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:42</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13–21</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>116, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38</td>
<td>116, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38–39</td>
<td>112, 7; 116, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38–40</td>
<td>116, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:41</td>
<td>116, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:44–45</td>
<td>116, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:45–47</td>
<td>129, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>116, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46–47</td>
<td>129, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>116, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:51</td>
<td>128, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

1:1 | 104, 7; 117, 3; 117, 5; 118, 1; 124, 3; 125, 3; 126, 5, 6; 13, 135, 4, 8 | 104, 3

---

**Sermons 94A-147A**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Volume III/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12.14</td>
<td>136C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>97, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>133, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.14</td>
<td>145A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>117, 1; 118, 1; 120, 2; 125, 3; 126, 9; 127, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>141, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9.14</td>
<td>133, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>96, 5; 108, 1; 121, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>121, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11–12</td>
<td>103, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11–13</td>
<td>119, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>97A, 4; 121, 3; 143, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>121, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>97, 4; 113B, 2; 119, 4; 121, 5; 124, 2; 134, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>96, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23–25</td>
<td>120, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29; 3:29</td>
<td>136C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>129, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:47</td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:48</td>
<td>122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:49</td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:50–51</td>
<td>122, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:50–51</td>
<td>123, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>100, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>136, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>128, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25.26</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>136, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:35, 38</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>125, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>125A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13; 6:44</td>
<td>136C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>125, 6; 125A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>125, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>126, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 15; 135, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>98, 1; 135, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24–26</td>
<td>127, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>127, 7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25–27</td>
<td>127, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III/4**
Volume III/4

10:2.1.10 137, 4 20:25 112, 4; 145A, 1
10:7 142, 5 20:27 112, 5
10:9.11 137, 3 20:27–28 145A, 1
10:11 138, 3 20:28–29 143, 3
10:11–13 138, 1 20:29 112, 4
10:12–13 137, 11 21:15 137, 10; 138, 7
10:16 138, 5 21:15–17 137, 3; 138, 4; 146, 1;
10:30 126, 12; 139, 1; 147, 2; 147A, 1
94A, 1; 147, 1
140, 4; 142, 6
137, 11
138, 7
138, 4; 146, 1;
10:7
142, 5
139, 1
11:11–14 98, 4 21:15.16.17
11:39 98, 6; 139A, 2
11:43 128, 14; 139A, 2
11:44 98, 6; 139A, 2
12:24 111, 2
12:44 140, 1
12:49–50 140, 3
12:50 140, 6
13:1 103, 6; 104, 6
13:34 125, 10
13:37 147, 2
13:37–38 147, 1
14:6 94A, 2; 128, 1;
134, 6; 141, 1; 142, 1
14:21 126, 14; 15; 127, 12; 142, 7
14:30 121, 1; 134, 4, 5, 6
14:8 125, 11
14:89 125, 3; 126, 14;
142, 6; 145, 6
14:9 104, 6
15:1 113, 6; 125A, 5
15:4 101, 3
15:5 101, 6; 136B, 3;
144, 5
15:18 96, 8
15:22 143, 2
16:7 143, 4
16:7–11 143, 1
16:8–11 144, 1
16:10 143, 4; 144, 3, 6
16:11 143, 5; 144, 6
16:15 135, 2
16:19 143, 2
16:24 145, 1, 6
16:33 97, 4
17:10 135, 3
17:22 103, 4
17:24 135, 5
20:17 104, 6; 143, 4
20:22 99, 9
20:25 112, 4; 145A, 1
20:27 112, 5
20:28–29 145A, 1
20:29 112, 4
21:15 137, 10; 138, 7
21:15–17 137, 3; 138, 4; 146, 1;
21:18–19 147, 3
21:25 98, 3
22:9 128, 4
22:11 127, 10
22:25 128, 5
23:28 97, A, 2
24:32 103, 4
25:13 99, 10
25:26–38 99, 11
26:9 122, 6; 123, 4; 133, 8
26:9, 26:14 116, 7
26:11–13 125, 9
26:15 106, 1
26:17 101, 1
26:24 108, 2
1:17 143, 4
1:18 141, 1
1:19 141, 2
1:20 126, 3
1:20–22 141, 2
1:20–23 141, 3
2:5 113A, 12
3:3 143, 2
3:4 133, 6; 147, 1
3:8 99, 4
3:23 143, 2
4:4 131, 8
4:15 125, 2
4:25 144, 6
5:5 105, 5; 128, 4; 145, 4
5:6 112A, 10, 13; 142, 5
5:12 115, 4
5:20 115, 4; 125, 2
6:9 108, 1
6:12 128, 8
6:12–13 128, 12
7:7 136, 5; 145, 3, 5

Acts

Romans
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Range</th>
<th>Sermon Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:31–32</td>
<td>129, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>137, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>112A, 4; 137, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18.19</td>
<td>101, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3–11</td>
<td>143, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>107A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>117, 13; 125, 3; 126, 13; 136, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>142, 6; 144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:78</td>
<td>95, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12–13</td>
<td>131, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>101, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>125, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13–14</td>
<td>105, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13.12</td>
<td>142, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>94A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>109, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16–17</td>
<td>125A, 2; 136, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>116, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>99, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>104, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>127, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>137, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>94A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>126, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>113A, 4; 114A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10.11</td>
<td>124, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>95, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>144, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>124, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24–25</td>
<td>113B, 1; 124, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sermons 94A-147A
SUBJECT INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A

Abraham:
  bosom (privacy), 113B:3
delivery from death; outer darkness,
  125A:4
give alms, all things are pure, 106:24
give temporal, receive eternal, 114A:3
giving as mercy, 106:4
kingdom of heaven bought by, 125A:5
kingdom of heaven up for sale, 105A:1
money made from usury, 113:2
Tobit to his son Tobias, 125A:4
widow and her two farthings, 125A:4

example of his faith, 113A:10
kingdom of heaven: for the birds, 125A:2
kingdom of heaven: for the fishes, 125A:2
kingdom of heaven: for the unbelievers, 125A:2
kingdom of heaven: for the birds, 125A:2
kingdom of heaven: for the fishes, 125A:2
kingdom of heaven: for the unbelievers, 125A:2
Lazarus in heaven; rich man in hell,
  102:3, 4
name (Abram) changed, 122:4
parable of Lazarus (beggar) and the
  rich man, 113A:2, 6; 113B:3
promise re his seed, 130:3
promises refer to Christ and Church,
  129:5
rich, but not proud, 113A:6
sacrifice of his son: faith, 113A:6
seed of; Christ; mystical body, 144:5
sower; Christ the harvester, 101:2

Adam and Eve:
  sexual organs covered in shame, 110:1

adoption:
  called to sonship by God, 139:1
  Christ’s joint heirs, 143:2
  sons of God, 126:9

adultery:
  flesh lusts against the spirit, 128:8, 13
discipline and, 114A:5, 6
  hatred and, 114A:6
  repentance, 112A:5
intended, already guilty, 139A:2
  be angry and do not sin, 113:2
  clinging to, 114A:3
  discipline and, 114A:5, 6
Jesus at Pharasee’s table: woman with
  bad reputation, 99:6
  looking back, by a married person, 96:10
  law kept out of fear, not love, 145:3
adversary, see devil; sin

agitation, see troubles

Africa:
  Church at “noon day,” 138:910;
  147A:3
African, 126:11
afterlife, see eternal life

Alexandria: gods, 105:12

Alma:
  Christ in the needy person, 113B:4

appendage, 126:11

Antichrist, 129:7

Apocalypse: authorship, 95:2

apostles:
  doubt re the resurrection, 116:2
  faith: request for increase, 114A:1
  qualities as preachers of the gospel,
    101:11
  reapers to the Jews, 101:1, 2
  sins of, 135:7, 8

apostle:
  see also evangelizers
  reapers and sowers, 101:1
stewards share what they receive, 101:4

arcades: where the sick used to lie (John 5), 125:1

Arians, 117:1, 6, 8, 11; 135:2
  Son cannot do anything of himself…, 126:8
  Son of God as inferior, 139:35

ask/seek/knock, 145:1
  coming to friend in middle of night, 105:113; 105A:12
  God puts off giving answer, 105:3
  knock by praying, 105:3
  seek in the Lord’s book (Bible), 105:3

Augustine, Saint:
  sermon owed as “debt,” 112A:1
  as shepherd, 137:14

avarice:
  abundant crops, build new storerooms, 107:5; 107A:2
  beware, even in your own possessions, 107:9; 107A:2
  beware of all avarice, 107:4, 8; 107A:5
  eternal wisdom related to, 107:10
  excuse for, 114A:45
  fool, today your soul will be required of you, 107:6; 107A:2
  see also greed
  greedily looks after self, 107:4
  idolatry, 107:8
  immoderately fond of possessions, 107A:7
  refrain from, 107:110

b

Baal, 100:3

bad example, see good example; wrongdoing

bait, 134:6

baptism:
  see also catechumens
  Christ as principal agent, 129:7
  see also John the Baptist, Saint
  newly enlightened ones, 120:3
  recently baptized, the, 146:2
  remission of all sins, 131:6
  uncircumcised people, 99:12

beings:
  less in parts than in totality, 117:4

belching, 112:7

belief and doubt:
  Ariens and the weaker brethren, 117:7
  Christ/Church, fulfillment of things foretold, 113A:5, 9
  see also faith
  healing: find the place of the wound (Thomas), 112:5

birds: wings; carrying a load, 112A:6

birth:
  Christ’s compared with ordinary human birth, 121:5

bishops:
  Christ, the one teacher of, 134:1
  do not place your trust in bishops, 129:8
  fear at hearing: feed my sheep, 146:1
  black (color), 125:5
  blasphemy:
    Ariens on the Son of God, 139:45

blind:
  Christ came to give light, 135:1
  punishment for turning from God, 117:5
  sight given to man born blind (Jn 9), 136:16; 136A:14; 136B:1; 136C:1
  Tobit: blind of eye; light of heart, 125A:5

body and soul:
  flesh lusts against spirit, 128:79

bread:
  meaning of the three loaves (Luke 11), 105:3
  stone contrasted with; love, 105:6

burglar, 125:5

C

Caelestis, 105:12

Caesar: pay back to Caesar…, 113A:8

Capernaum, 101:8

Carthage, 94A:6; 105:12

Sermons 94A-147A
catechumens, 136B:1
(on the) eucharist, 132:1, 2
forgiveness of sins, 97A:3

Catholic Church, 146:2
celibacy:
looking back, by one committed, 96:10
cha , 111:3
character:
must love good traits in order to have them, 114A:3

charity:
[not] achieved from yourself, 145:4
see also alms
alms given to the soul, 106:4
bigheartedness, 105A:1
building your church, 107A:9
compared with other goods, 145:4
cup of cold water; reward, 107A:8
engrafting, by being gentle and humble of heart, 142:12
fullness of the law, 125:10
give earthly things, get repaid with heavenly things, 123:5
give to God, 107A:7
God the source, 145:4
harshness of Christian life made easy by, 96:1
hold resources, to provide for the needy, 107A:7
jealousy and, 142:12
see also love
parable of the wedding garment, 95:7
Paul on (1 Cor 13), 142:13
putting abundance in storerooms, 107A:2
regret for money given to the poor, 107A:6
tithing and, 106:3
widow and her two farthings, 105A:1; 107A:7
willingness’ role in, 107A:7, 8

chastity:
conversion of the unchaste, 132:2
husband and wife, 132:2
law kept out of fear, not love, 145:3
soul wedded to God, 137:9

children:
“let the children come…,” 115:4
children of God:
believers in Christ, 143:2
the Father as inheritance, 146:1
influenced by the Holy Spirit, 128:9
mother’s womb: waters of baptism, 119:4
power to become, 119:45; 121:34
promise: to see God as he is, 117:15
saints, by grace; Jesus, by nature, 139:1
second birth, from the Church, 121:45
sons and daughters by grace, 140:3

choir: concord of voices, 112A:9
chrism: Jacob’s ladder, 122:9

Christ, see Jesus Christ

Christian life:
built on the rock, 134:2
constancy; reward, 134:1
see also cross; disciples
discovery of our emptiness, 105:2
favors lavished on human beings, 130:4
fear Christ above, recognize him below, 123:4
follow Christascended to heaven, 96:3
foreign visitors in this world, 111:4
hold him in whom you can possess everything, 142:6
live in accord with your inheritance, 146:2
live like exotic strangers, 124:4
man ordered, was rejected, in following Christ, 100:1
nothing hard or harsh in things commanded, 96:1
reluctant man called by Christ, 100:2
seed of Abraham, 130:3
walk on behavior, not feet, 141:4
where you believe, there you will come, 131:2

Christian unity:
multitude with one soul and one heart, 103:4
other sheep, not of this fold, 138:5
see also unity

Christianity:
lands white for the harvest, 101:2
Moses and the prophets as its sowers, 101:2

Christians:
understand what you are, 137:4

Church:
Africa, the “noon day,” 138:910;
147A:3
bad people in, 137:9
be yourselves the house of God, 107A:9
Christ’s intent: to teach the whole Church, 137:6
Christ’s mission: to establish, 137:6
disciples could not see (the body), 116:6
examine the scriptures [Jews and Donatists], 129:6, 9
following Christ, duty of all members, 96:9
growth (years near the resurrection), 111:2
head in heaven, body on earth, 129:4
inn to which Samaritan took beaten man, 131:6
love of, 138:10
making one flock out of two, 137:6
Moses’ words refer to, 129:9
see also mystical body
over the whole earth your glory, 147A:4
prodigal son (parable), 112A:8
shepherd enters by the gate (sheepfold), 137:4
signified by the number seven, 95:2
“sing to the Lord a new song,” 116:7
speaking with one voice, 129:4
spiritual marriage (Song of Songs), 138:9, 10; 146:2; 147A:2
spread throughout the world; Jewish unbelief, 113A:1
unity; the Donatists, 138:9
world reconciled to God, 96:8
circumcision:
Cornelius (uncircumcised Gentile) and the Holy Spirit, 99:12
cleansing:
faith is inside, not outside, 106:1
clergy:
Augustine as shepherd, 137:14

Paul on good/bad qualities, 137:11
shepherd, hired hand, thief, 137:5
some seek their own convenience, in the Church, 137:8
true shepherds, 137:10
unprofitable servants, 137:15
watchman, 137:15
clergy (as hired hands):
not rebuking those in error, 137:12
run away when wolf comes, 137:12
ulterior motives, 137:11
unworthy, 137:10
codex (beauty; reading), 98:3
coeval creatures, 117:1014

commandments:
holiness of, 145:3
honor your father and mother, 100:2
whoever keeps, “remains in me,” 132A:2
“whoever loves me keeps…,” 126:14, 15

compasion:
Christ remaining in us, 134:1
crown of mercy, 131:8
father running to meet prodigal son, 112A:6

donduct of life:
end of the world: God’s mercy, 113A:12
virtues in Martha’s role, 104:7

confession:
humility, 113B:3
sinners: confess to the Lord, 136A:3

conscience:
adversary to sin: will and word of God, 109:3, 4
Christ silently teaching from within, 102:2
contrite and humbled heart, 112A:5

constancy:
remaining in God’s word, 134:1

Constantinople: gods, 105:12

contemplation:
be still and see, 104:7
continence: loins girt, 108:2
conversion:
fear: role in amendment of life, 113B:3
not moved, not likely to be changed, 145:1
reform while there is yet time, 113B:4
Cornelius, the uncircumcised Gentile, 99:12
coveting:
    bindlime for spiritual wings, 112:6
    lust of flesh, eyes, ambition, 112:6
    sin through the commandment, 145:3, 5
creation:
    coeternal or coeval, 117:10
    created things, love of, 137:10
    creation: all things made through Word of God, 120:2; 126:9
    creatures generate equals in substance, not time, 117:14
    fallen, restored by Christ, 117:1
    God governs creation, doesn’t stop working, 125:4
God’s daily miracle grown cheap, 126:4
likeness of creator in, 117:9
nothing eternal among creatures, 117:10
nothing more added to, 125:4
question created things: answer “God made us,” 141:2
six days; rest on sabbath, 125A:1
so wonderful, what must the Creator be? 120:3
world of beauty and good, 96:4, 5
cross:
    faith borne up by, 131:2
    renunciation, meaning of taking up, 96:4
    road exceedingly rough, 96:3
    taking up; selfdenial, 96:2, 3
universal Church, following Christ, 96:9
crown:
    expression: by your crown, 94A:6
    crucifixion, see Jesus Christ: crucifixion
D

Daniel:

stone hewn from mountain without hands, 147A:4
darkness:
    alms; delivery from outer darkness, 125A:4
day of judgment, see judgment day
dead:
    “awake, you that sleep…,” 98:2
disbelief even if someone rises from the dead, 129:9
    “let the dead bury their dead,” 100:2; 127:7
    shall hear the voice…, 127:7
    three persons raised by the Lord, 98:17
    three persons: three sorts of sinners, 98:5
    unbelievers come alive in faith, 100:2; 127:7
dead works:
    take off your shoes (meaning), 101:7
dead:
    alms; delivery from outer darkness, 125A:4
certainty of, 97:3
delivery from, by grace of God, 125:2
end of road of life, 109:4
fear; eternal life, 127:2
Jesus rising again removes fear of, 147:3
Lazarus in heaven; rich man in hell, 102:3
live a good life; avoid a bad death, 102:12
our punishment, 97:2
sin conquered by Christ, 128:10
taking captivity captive, 128:4
time after death tells if a death was bad, 102:4
two kinds: body and mind, 98:2
uncertain hour, 97:2
uncertainty of life, 97:3
unfortunate fear of, 101:3
watch lest we be unprepared, 97:1
where is your sting? [sin], 131:7
debtors (parable):
    forgiving the two debtors, 99:35
    servant whose debt was cancelled, 114A:2

Volume III/4
deceit: double heart, 133:4
decisionmaking:
   powers lost by sinning, 131:6
demons:
   power to drive out, 142:11
   subject to us, in Jesus’ name, 145:1, 6
desire:
   enlarging the soul with, 142:8
   only its creator can satisfy the soul, 125:11
despair, 142:1
devil:
   defeated with help of belief in Christ, 143:4
   finds no sin in Christ, 134:6
   greed and fear used by, 94A:5
   nothing of himself found in Christ, 134:4
   prince of this world; the ungodly, 144:6
   prodigal son parable, 112A:3
   quit of him, 109:2
   reach agreement with adversary, 109:2, 3
   redeemer conquered the deceiver, 130:2
   shame in presence of, 97:2
   temptation to deny Christ, 94A:2
   tempter and persecutor, 94A:5
   tempter overcome by being snubbed, 123:2
   wolf in the sheepfold, 137:12
   wordlings’ complaining about, 143:4
dinner:
   invitation to (parable), 112:1
   those who did/did not come, 112:8
disciples:
   called: follow me, 147:3
   chosen by the Lord, 100:3
   harvest ready and waiting, 101:1
   miracles performed by, 136B:3
   seeking high rank in Christ’s kingdom, 142:10
   true; “if you remain in my word,” 134:1, 2
discipline, and anger, 114A:5.6
dissipation: the prodigal son, 96:2
divinity:
   except Christ, no one claims to be one
   with the Father, 140:4
Docetists, 116:1
Donatists, 99:8; 129:19; 138:1, 9, 18;
   146:2; 147A:2, 4
doubt, see belief and doubt; faith
duty:
   services for the poor; for the saints, 103:5
dying, see death

E

Easter: Lenten fast, 125:9
easy life, not the way to eternal rest, 113A:14
Elijah:
   fast, for forty days, 125:9
   sent to widow woman, 136B:4
Elisha: staff, 136:6
Emmaus: questioned on the road, 111:2
end of the world:
   dead will come from the tombs, 127:14
   God’s patience, 113A:12
   last day known only by the Father, 97:1
   our works as aid or torment, 97:1
   stones will attach to foundation, 116:7
   uncertain date, 109:1
enemy:
   making a friend of, 105A:2
   praying for death of, 105A:2
Ephesians, 129:7
epithalamium, 147A:2
equality: generation among creatures, 117:14
Esau and Jacob, 122:3
eschatology:
   faith of Christians, 113A:1
   eternal life (rest; eternity):
      believe in, without seeing, 127:3
      bought by Zacchaeus, 107A:3
cheaply valued, 107A:2
children of God: what we shall be, 127:5
Christian hope, 108:1
examine the scriptures, 129:1
“eye has not seen…,” 127:1, 3, 5
Father’s commandment, 140:6
fear of death, 127:2
forgiveness of sins, 114:2, 5
God’s promise, 127:1
heart set on easy time on earth, 113A:14
high value of, 105A:2
hope, 108:2
“hour is coming…,” 127:115
immobility of eternity, 117:10
light for eyes of the mind, 127:6
nothing compares with, 127:13
pass over to Christ, 125A:3
predestined to, 111:4
promised to those who eat His flesh, 132:1
rest in Abraham’s bosom, 113B:3
“times” not in eternity, 139:3
use temporal goods for eternal gain, 114A:34
value (cost) is exactly what you are, 127:3
wages for a good life, 108:6
we shall see God, 127:11
what is to be found there, 127:3
“whoever believes in me…,” 127:4
eucharist:
Christ sacrificed; come to the dinner (parable), 112:1
eaten in portions, remains whole and entire, 132A:1
eating and drinking to condemnation, 132:2
eternal life promised, 132:1
how Christ is to be eaten, 132A:2
meaning: to eat Christ, 132A:1
real presence, 131:1
remaining in me, 132A:2
return of the prodigal son, 112A:7
unworthy reception, 132A:1
evangelize(ers; ing):
apostles have the peace they preach, 101:11
disciples sent out by Christ, 101:5
meaning of not “carrying a purse,” 101:6
take off your shoes (meaning), 101:7
told to greet no one on the road, 101:89
evil, see good and evil
excuses:
three who were invited to a dinner (parable), 112:2
eyes:
first rank, of the five senses, 112:7
light for eyes of the mind, 127:6
faith:
analogy of tree: rooted in love, 117:17
belief in a spiritual way; justification, 143:4
belief in Christ is belief in one who sent him, 140:1
believe and understand, 118:2
believe before promises paid, 113A:10
believe before you see; rewarded, 142:8
believe in order to pray, 115:1
believe what we do not yet see, 127:1
believers’ hearts rising up on high, 116:2
believing unto justice with the heart, 143:4
believing/seeing, 97A:2
borne up by the cross, 131:2
dead (unbelievers) come alive in faith, 127:7
defined (Hebrews 11), 126:3
disciples see the head; we see the body (Church), 116:6
discovery of our emptiness, 105:2
first believe, then understand, 126:1, 2
fish as symbol of, 105:7
fulfillment: the whole Christ (head and members), 116:6
gift; not from one’s own strength, 131:3
gift, not merited, 131:2
gift of God (St Paul), 105:5
God prepares will for faith, 136B:4
Holy Spirit challenge re belief in Christ, 143:2

Volume III/4
hope and charity must join belief in Christ, 144:2
hour is coming; the dead shall hear…, 127:7
human race itself born blind, 136A:4
I believe, help my unbelief, 115:1
light in the scriptures, 126:1
miracles of Christ and, 126:4, 5
observe what you see, believe what you do not see, 126:5
outer senseknowledge of, 112:7
perfect, hard to find on earth, 115:1
prayer perishes when faith falters, 115:1
promise of love through, 136:5
purified minds’ attention to form of God, 143:3
purifying hearts by, 106:1
reason in the heart, 126:3
resurrection of body and soul, 127:8
resurrection: through bodily senses to the heart, 116:3, 4
risen Christ not available to human eyes, 143:3
seeing Christ with eyes of the heart, 136B:1
seeing rather than believing, 113A:4
seeing with eyes, but not with heart, 135:6
seeking the inner sense of, 112:7
senseknowledge of Christ and, 112:4
sight as reward of, 97A:2
terror if eye for the future is lost, 113A:4
Thomas’ recognition of divinity of Christ, 145A
understanding and, 139:1; 140:6
use eyes to see; the creation, 126:3, 4
what is believed feeds us, 112:5
false, see lie
fare well:
greeting, 116:1
proclaiming, 101:910
fasting:
fourty days (Jesus, Moses, Elijah), 125:9
love of the world, 125:7
fear:
abandoning the way, 142:1
comes with law, hope, and grace, 145:3
forgiveness and, 114A:2
hope in God and, 145:23, 5
hope placed in this world, 94A:5
in life’s threats, cling to God, 97:4
leap for joy, with trembling, 131:5
role in amendment of life, 113B:3
salutary parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:1
torturer of the soul, 124:2
work out your salvation, 131:4
feminism:
miracle of the seven loaves, 95:3
festival day (booths):
eight days (sabbath to sabbath), 133:7
Jesus lying (?) about going, 133:18
fig tree:
miracle: fruit out of season, 98:3
Nathaniel under, 122:1
no fruit for three years, 110:15
filial piety:
reluctant man called by Christ, 100:2
fire:
brightness, 117:11, 12
brilliance as coeval with it, 118:2
shedding light, 117:11
straw and gold (the just and the wicked), 113A:11
flesh:
grass that withers, 119:3; 124:1
see also lust
sin condemned in, 134:4
Son of God, 124:3
following Christ, see Christian life
fool:
hearing God’s word, but not doing, 107:6
today your soul will be required of you, 107:6; 107A:2
forehead of the inner self, 107:7
forgiveness of sin(s):
Behold, the lamb of God, 136C:2
believers in Christ, 143:2
catechumens, 97A:3
faithful, the:
forgiveness of sins, through the Holy Spirit, 99:9
faith, see lie
fasting:
fourty days (Jesus, Moses, Elijah), 125:9
love of the world, 125:7
fear:
abandoning the way, 142:1
comes with law, hope, and grace, 145:3
forgiveness and, 114A:2
hope in God and, 145:23, 5
hope placed in this world, 94A:5
in life’s threats, cling to God, 97:4
leap for joy, with trembling, 131:5
role in amendment of life, 113B:3
salutary parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:1
torturer of the soul, 124:2
work out your salvation, 131:4
feminism:
miracle of the seven loaves, 95:3
festival day (booths):
eight days (sabbath to sabbath), 133:7
Jesus lying (?) about going, 133:18
fig tree:
miracle: fruit out of season, 98:3
Nathaniel under, 122:1
no fruit for three years, 110:15
filial piety:
reluctant man called by Christ, 100:2
fire:
brightness, 117:11, 12
brilliance as coeval with it, 118:2
shedding light, 117:11
straw and gold (the just and the wicked), 113A:11
flesh:
grass that withers, 119:3; 124:1
see also lust
sin condemned in, 134:4
Son of God, 124:3
following Christ, see Christian life
fool:
hearing God’s word, but not doing, 107:6
today your soul will be required of you, 107:6; 107A:2
forehead of the inner self, 107:7
forgiveness of sin(s):
Behold, the lamb of God, 136C:2
believers in Christ, 143:2
catechumens, 97A:3

Sermons 94A-147A
Christ as man, and as God, 99:7
Donatist heresy, 99:8
eternal life as reward, 114:2, 5
god: clean of heart can see God, 117:15
God: Father is God from no one; Son is God from God, 140:2
end of the world: God’s patience, 113A:12
hope in the future, 97A:4
hope in the future, 97A:4
Hesiod, 99:4
Holy Spirit, through the holy faithful, 99:9
imitating Christ, 114:3
imitating Christ, 114:3
“if your brother…,” 114:15, 114A:13
Lord’s Prayer, 114:5, 114A:5
Lord’s Prayer, 114:5, 114A:5
one forgiven little, only loves a little, 99:56
parable of the two debtors, 99:2, 4
raising of Lazarus as figure of, 98:6
seven times a day,” 114:1; 114A:1, 5
through, or apart from, human agency, 99:10
woman with bad reputation, 99:113
forty: represents fulfillment of justice, 125:7, 9
fountain of life, 142:9
friend: coming to, in middle of night, 105:113, 105A:12
fruit: no fruit (figtree) for three years, 110:15

G

Gehazi, 136:6
generation: one and same substance, 139:2
Gideon, 131:9
giving, see alms; charity
glory: seeking glory from each other; not seeking glory from God, 129:2

G

Gentiles: not yet in the one fold, 138:5
prodigal son (parable), 112A:8, 13
philosophers know but do not honor God, 141:14
poor man is rich, with God, 105A:2
put Himself in debt by making promise, 113A:5
rests and acts simultaneously, 125A:1
security in our protector, 130:5
Son “cannot do anything of Himself…,” 126:115
Son of God thanks to those who know him, 117:5
Son of God unchanging, as he rebukes sinner, 142:4
unutterable, 117:7
word of God

godhead:
procession of persons, 140:2
splendor of, 126:7
Trinity

godlessness:
Christ died for the godless, 112A:10
conversion from, 97A:1

God as man, and as God, 99:7
Donatist heresy, 99:8
eternal life as reward, 114:2, 5
forgive, and be forgiven, 114:3
grudges, 114:4
Holy Spirit, through the holy faithful, 99:9
hope in the future, 97A:4
“if your brother…,” 114:15, 114A:13
imitating Christ, 114:3
Lord’s Prayer, 114:5, 114A:5
one forgiven little, only loves a little, 99:56
parable of the two debtors, 99:2, 4
raising of Lazarus as figure of, 98:6
seven times a day,” 114:1; 114A:1, 5
through, or apart from, human agency, 99:10
woman with bad reputation, 99:113
forty: represents fulfillment of justice, 125:7, 9
fountain of life, 142:9
friend: coming to, in middle of night, 105:113, 105A:12
fruit: no fruit (figtree) for three years, 110:15

G

Gehazi, 136:6
generation: one and same substance, 139:2
Gideon, 131:9
giving, see alms; charity
glory: seeking glory from each other; not seeking glory from God, 129:2

G

Gentiles: not yet in the one fold, 138:5
prodigal son (parable), 112A:8, 13
philosophers know but do not honor God, 141:14
poor man is rich, with God, 105A:2
put Himself in debt by making promise, 113A:5
rests and acts simultaneously, 125A:1
security in our protector, 130:5
Son “cannot do anything of Himself…,” 126:115
Son of God thanks to those who know him, 117:5
Son of God unchanging, as he rebukes sinner, 142:4
unutterable, 117:7
word of God

godhead:
procession of persons, 140:2
splendor of, 126:7
Trinity

godlessness:
Christ died for the godless, 112A:10
conversion from, 97A:1

God's patience, 113A:12

[...]

Volume III/4
gold and straw (the just and the wicked), 113A:11

gold: seeking, 108:5

good and evil:
  God is the doctor, 113A:14
  see also sin; troubles; wickedness
  world (evil) and creator (good), 96:5

good days, longing to see, 108:4, 5, 6

good example:
  to catechumens, 132:2
  lay people observe bad ecclesiastics, 137:7

good fortune:
  actions mixed in with, 105:8

Good Shepherd, 138:110
  qualities of, 138:1, 4
  spiritual marriage, 138:8
  unity as lesson of, 138:5

Good Thief:
  proud to share Christ’s crucifixion, 111:2

good will:
  Holy Spirit and eternal life, 105A:2
  see also works of mercy

good works:
  attend to the poor, 102:5; 103:5
  do good with what was badly gotten (money), 113:3
  do what is in your power, 125A:3
  keep lamps burning, 108:1
  live a good life; avoid a bad death, 102:12
  moving on, to eternal life, 111:4
  parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:2
  praise God without ceasing, 114A:1
  turn from evil and do good, 108:7
  see also works of mercy

goodness:
  giving self over to faith and promise of eternal life, 127:3
  God’s help needed to lead good lives, 132A:2
  good things from treasure of the heart, 138:4
  good will makes one good, 105A:2

gospel:
  meaning of Evangelium, 133:6
  proclaiming, not in a genuine way, 137:9

Goths, 105:13

grace:
  chosen by, 100:3, 4
  Christians pit selves against, 131:9
  deliverance from sin, only by grace of God, 125:2
  fear, law, and hope, 145:3
  gift of God, 144:1
  given gratis, 100:4
  hidden in Old Testament, 131:9
  holiness from God’s indulgence, 100:4
  rain, 131:4
  reliance on, 100:3
  your merits are his gifts, 131:8

greed:
  see also avarice
  God and other objects of, 105A:2
  hope placed in this world, 94A:5
  living and dying, 107:10
  slave of money, 107A:4

greeting:
  bidding people “fare well,” 101:9
  “greet no one on the road,” 101:89

grieve:
  torturer of the soul, 124:2

grudges, 114:4

H

habit:
  four stages of sin, 98:6
  sinful; Lazarus, come outside, 139A:2
  symbol: stone against Lazarus’ tomb, 98:5, 7

happiness:
  earthly possessions, 113:6
  finding, in God, 113:6
  found in the one; lost in dissolution, 96:6

harlots, 112A:2

harvest:
  plentiful; laborers are few, 101:12

hate:
  nursing, in one’s heart, 114A:6
health: gift of God, 127:3

heart:
believing unto justice, 143:34
contrite; God is close, 112A:5
cured, to see the light which is God, 136C:1
deceit “in heart and heart,” 133:4
faith: Christ washing the “face” of the heart, 135:6; 136A:4; 136C:5
find Christ, silently teaching, 102:2
fox holes and bird nests in, 100:1, 2
good obedience: resurrection of heart, 127:11
good things from treasure of, 138:4
have law in, 125A:3
love of the world: letting go, 125:11
reason in, 126:3
related to giving, 105A:1
return (prodigal son), 112A:4, 5
treasure where heart is, 107A:6; 114A:3

heaven:
Capernaum “exalted right up to;”
101:8
follow Christ ascended to heaven, 96:3
Martha and Mary in the hereafter, 103:6
united (mystical body) with the one
who came down, 144:5

heavenly kingdom:
the Lord guards the city, 105:9

hell:
parable of Lazarus and the rich man,
113A:3

heretics:
as martyrs, 138:2
plundering properties, 146:2

high priests:
sacrifices for their own sins, 135:7

hoarding, 107A:7

holiness:
God’s grace, not one’s own merit,
100:4

Holy Spirit:
challenge world re sin, justice,
judgment, 143:15; 144:16

children of God influenced by, 128:9
Cornelius, the uncircumcised Gentile,
99:12
deeds of the flesh; living by the Spirit,
128:9
deposit against future reward, 142:9
forgiveness of sins, through the holy
faithful, 99:9
gift of the, 143:3, 5
gifts bestowed on us, 128:4
given without human agency, 99:11
reception; speaking with tongues,
99:10

honors:
given to both good/bad people,
105A:2

hope:
earthly goods, 105:13
egg of the “divine hen,” wisdom,
105:11
fear of God and, 145:23, 5
future blessings, 105:11
gift of God (St Paul), 105:5
lift up your hearts, 105:11
looking backward, 105:7
stretch out to what’s ahead, 105:7

hospitality:
duty, 111:4
Martha and Mary (the better part),
104:2

human beings, see mankind

human condition:
born blind (as to faith), 136A:4
gifts of the Son of man, 140A
grass phase; transmutation promised,
113B:2
life as trading: giving and receiving,
130:2
wretched me, a man, 145:5

humanity, see mankind

humility:
Christ’s way/example, 123:1; 142:2, 5
confess your sins to the Lord, 136A:3
countering head swollen by pride,
142:5, 10
gift of faith; work in fear, 131:3
hold what you have received, 131:5
“I said in my abundance…,” 131:5
leap for joy, with trembling, 131:5
learn by laying hold of little things, 117:17
learn from Jesus, not power, but to be humble, 142:11, 12
least ones of Christ; judgment day, 113:1
Pharisee and the taxcollector, 137:4
prayer: Pharisee and publican, 115:23
repentance, 110:1
signified by lying down, 113B:3
step down (pool, Jn 5) to be healed, 125:6
step to the heights, 96:3
way to eternal life, 123:3
husband and wife: chastity, 132:2

idols / idolatry:
avarice, 107:8
dogs, 121:3
folly: creating idols for themselves, 141:3
Goths and, 105:13
promise of overturning, 113A:7, 9
with brain and heart, the smith would be their god, 141:3
worship of, as lunacy, 113A:7
image:
likeness to the original, 117:13
of something born over water, 117:12
image of God:
character: pay tribute to God, 113A:8
idolatry, 113A:7
made through the Word, 117:2
rational mind as, 145:2
refashioning ourselves, 125:4
impurity, see adultery; chastity; purity
incarnation:
analogy of human word, 119:7
heresies, 117:6
Holy Spirit and the virgin Mary, 121:5
omnipotence of Word of God, 119:6
purpose of, 119:1
sun as analogy of, 120:2
Word became flesh, 119:4
Word created his own mother, 119:6
Word retained relationship to Father, 117:16
infants:
infant baptism: “let the children come…,” 115:4
no evil, except that of their origin, 115:4
inheritance:
judgment giving possession of, 107A:1
stolen by brother, 107:23; 107A:1
Isaac:
Jewish nation sprung from, 113A:6

Jacob:
blessed; remained lame, 122:3
Israel; two names, 122:3, 5
Jacob’s ladder, 122:2, 6
wrestling with angel, 122:3
jealousy: charity and, 142:12
Jesus Christ:
see also Son of God; Son of Man;
Word of God
alms given to the poor, 114A:4
angel of great counsel, 125:3
ascension: “will come as you see him…,” 127:10
authority, 128:2
“before Abraham was, I am,” 121:2
belief in, by those who did/did not see him, 112:7
belief; not by physical contact, but in a spiritual way, 143:4
both rich and poor, 123:4
bridegroom “comely of figure…,” 138:6
brother’s request on dividing inheritance, 107:3; 107A:1
calls for faith in himself; refers honor to the Father, 140:1
came that those who cannot see may see, 136:4
Christ the anointed one, 122:2
Christ the rock, 129:8
see also Christian life
come to fulfill the law, 125:10
“come to know that the Lord is great,” 111:2, 3
coming; has come, 108:1
complete in all of us: mystical body, 116:6
conqueror of the world, and death, 97:4
contrasts in life events of, 110:3
crucifixion:
deformity of the crucified, 95:4
Good Thief proud to share in, 111:2
Jews crucified Christ, 136:4
man as “prevailing,” 110:3
necessity; fulfillment of prophecies, 116:5, 6
no comeliness or dignity, 138:6
veil rent, 125A:3
veil of temple torn, 137:6
“cup which I am going to drink,” 142:6
cures now are worked on hearts, 136C:1
death [see under passion and death below]
disbelief in a crucified “God,” 124:3
divinity concealed by, 133:7
divinity; refusal of Jews to believe, 113A:1
divinity; Thomas touching the body of Christ, 145A
elder son in prodigal son (parable), 112A:14
emptied himself, taking form of servant, 142:6; 144:4, 5
eternal life; Father’s commandment, 140:6
see also eucharist
everything has been handed over to me…, 142:6
fast, for forty days, 125:9
forgiveness of sins, 99:7; 114:3
form of a servant; man and God, 126:13, 14
form of God; form of man (prophets), 95:4
giving and receiving, 130:2
good shepherd, 138:110
handsome of figure, or no comeliness (prophets), 95:4
head of body (the Church), 137:1, 2
his own people did not know him, 121:2
human life of Son of God, 124:3
humility, in all circumstances, 123:1
“I and the Father are one,” 139:15; 140:4
invitation to the dinner (parable), 112:1
Jewish unbelief in, 129:3
Jews crucified Christ, 147A:4
Jews wanted to kill him, 125:3
John the Baptist’s testimony, 128:2, 3
judge in form of servant, 127:10
justice, that he goes to the Father, 144:34
“learn from me…,” 142:11, 12
light, 125A:2
[his] load lifts; does not weigh down, 112A:6
love of sinners, 97A:1
lying (?) re going to festival, 133:18
making himself equal to God, 125:3, 6
Martha and Mary (the better part), 103:16; 104:17
Martha and Mary: Word of God; Word made flesh, 104:3
martyrs as witnesses to, 128:3
mercy and justice, 144:34
miracles, see miracles
miraculous birth, 126:5, 6
mission: to establish the Church, 137:6
mortality, 116:5
see also mystical body
neither did his brothers believe in him, 133:1
“nowhere to lay his head,” 100:1
one Christ is man and God, 130:3
one with the Father, 144:5
our welfare/salvation, 116:1
see also parables
passion and death
death allowed to be inflicted on him, 113A:1
death; Son of man, Son of God, 127:9
dead; human flesh, 136:6
necessary; bridegroom, 116:6
pool (Jn 5): where the sick used to lie, 125:3
postresurrection appearances, 111:2
asks for something to eat, 116:3
feel with your hands, 116:4
he opened their minds, 116:5
“peace be with you,” 116:17
showed himself to his disciples,
116:5
to forgive sins, 99:7
presenting himself to be fed (Martha
and Mary), 103:2
promise: seed of Abraham, 113A:10
prophecies (all) fulfilled in,
136C:3
rejected by the Jews, 113A:7
prophecy, promise, performance,
110:4
prophets on physical appearance,
95:4
purpose of the incarnation, 119:1
real existence as man, 113A:5
real presence in ourselves, 131:1
received as a guest, 103:2
redeemer conquered the deceiver,
130:2
represented: Jacob wrestling with
angel, 122:3
restorer of fallen creation, 117:1
resurrection:
disciples acknowledge reality of,
116:3
disciples’ doubt, 116:2
Easter celebrated for fifty days,
125:9
glory of the resurrection, 116:2
references in the Psalms, 129:5
sight not available to human eyes,
143:3
rising again removes fear of death,
147:3
sacrifice for sin, 134:5
[the] same one: man and God, 123:3
sears of his passion preserved, 116:1
secretly going to the festival, 133:1, 7
silent teacher in heart of one with
faith, 102:2
sinless, 143:1
Son of God by nature, 140:3
Son of God emptied self to become
man, 95:4
spiritual love (Song of Songs), 138:6
“stones will cry out…,” 121:3
temptation: turn stones into bread,
123:2
treatment given to Son of God,
113A:14
ture God, eternal life (1 Jn 5), 140:3
th (exalted) and life (God), 142:2
truth: “if I bear witness to myself…,”
128:1
two births: first without a mother;
second without a father, 140:2
two substances, one person, 130:3
unbelief as blindness, 136:4
unchangeable, as the Word, 124:3
“unless you eat my flesh…,” 131:1
way to eternal life, 123:3
way, truth, and life, 94A:2; 141:14;
142:114
what the Jews could see; what unable
to see, 125:3
“who loves me… will be loved by my
Father,” 126:14
“whoever eats me lives…” 132A:1
“whoever sees me also sees the
Father,” 126:14
see also Word of God
to disciples, said also to us,
129:2
world reconciled to himself, 121:1
world (vitiated by sin) remade by
Christ, 96:6
wounds of unbelief, 116:1
Jewish observances, 125A:2
see also law, Jewish
Jews:
blindness, re Christ, 136:2, 4, 6
called brood of vipers, 121:3
Donatists and, 129:9
other sheep, not of this fold, 138:5
pool (Jn 5): where the sick used to lie,
125:3
prodigal son (parable), 112A:8, 1013
refusal to believe in Christ, 113A:1, 7
represented by the 5, 000 loaves,
130:15
those keeping the commandments,
112A:13
trip over stone (Christ), 147A:4
unbelief in Jesus, 129:3; 143:2
what the Jews could see; what unable
to see (in Jesus), 125:3
Job: true riches, 113:4
John, Saint, Apostle:
greatness of, 117:1
reclining on the Lord’s breast, 119:1; 120:1; 133:6

John the Baptist, Saint:
baptism of repentance, 121:3
himself not the light, 133:6
martyrdom, 94A:16
preaching repentance, 109:1
witness to the truth, 128:2, 3

joy:
leap for joy, with trembling, 131:5
petition: pray, that your joy may be full, 145:6

Judas:
divine providence, 125:5
thief, 101:6

judgment day:
authority of Son of man, 127:10, 14
bad people in the Church, 137:9
see also end of the world
evil persons will also see God, 127:12
foretold, it will be fulfilled, 110:4
God’s patience, 113A:12
God’s warning (“Watch out!”) ignored, 113A:4
helping the least ones of Christ, 113:1
just and wicked interrogated by the Lord, 125:8
reach agreement with adversary: word of God, 109:4
temporarily spared, 110:1
threshingfloor: wheat and chaff, 111:3
without charity, “I do not know you,” 138:3

Jupiter, 105:10

justice:
belief in the spiritual (not physical) Christ, 143:4
challenge by Holy Spirit; because Christ is going to the Father, 144:34
Christ died for nothing (if justice is through nature), 131:9
cleansing the body, 106:1
fulfillment represented by number forty, 125:7, 9
grace and the law, 136:5
greatness of the just man, 110:2
judgment for plunder from a helpless man, 113:2
just man lives by faith, 143:4; 144:2
just men tried in goldsmith’s furnace, 113A:11
man is just by grace of God, 100:4
must love it, to have it, 114A:3
Pharisee boasting about his “eyesight,” 136B:2
zeal for God, not according to knowledge, 129:2; 131:10

justification:
hope fulfilled in Christ, 144:6

K

kingdom of God:
eating bread in, 112:5

kingdom of heaven:
alsms and the buying of, 125A:5
Christ’s mission, 137:6
good will as price of buying, 105A:1
nearness of, 109:1
we belong to Christ, 130:4
worth as much as each person has, 105A:1, 2

knowledge:
comprehension of a body with the eyes, 117:5

lamp:
let your light shine, 108:12, 7
lighting; fire, 117:11

last day, see end of the world

last things, see eternal life

law, civil:
punishment of criminal, 125:5

law, Jewish:
Christ not come to repeal, but to fulfill, 125:10
delivery from sin, only by grace of God, 125:2
holiness of, 145:3
justice and grace, 136:5
letter kills, 136:5
shows our diseased condition, 125:2
there to terrify the presumptuous, 145:3, 5
Torah: five books, five arccates (Jn 5), 125:2
transgression added to sin, 125:2
your members fighting with your mind, 145:3, 5, 6
Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:114; 113B:14
poor man in heaven; rich man in hell, 102:3
Lazarus (brother of Martha & Mary):
life restored, 98:4, 5, 7
raised from the dead, 139A:12
Lent: fast of forty days, 125:9
liberty: being delivered, 134:2
lie:
difference: being mistaken, and lying, 133:4
every man a liar (i.e. empty), 133:6
false evidence, 94A:2, 3
falsehood prevailing, before the flood, 110:3
kills the soul, 107:10
persecution; denying the truth, 94A:2
[in] prayers, 114:5
life:
see also conduct of life
constantly be on the watch (for death), 97:3
see also death
gift of God, 127:3
great effort spent to live a little longer, 127:2
greediness for living, 107:10
living according to merely human standards, 97:2
longing to see good days, 108:4, 5, 6
meaning of long life, 108:3
person’s life not to be measured by possessions, 107:4
temporal and eternal: Martha and Mary, 104:4
tribulations (fear and grief), 124:2
vaporous, 124:1
wealth and, 105A:1
light:
eyes of the mind, 127:6
radiance is coeternal with its begetter, 118:2
load: Christ’s load lifts; does not weigh down, 112A:6
loaves and fishes (miracle; Jn 6), 95:13; 130:15
loins girt, 108:12, 7
Lord’s Prayer:
forgiveness of sins, 114:5; 114A:5; 135:8
Lord’s Supper:
faith of those present, 112:4
love not the world, nor worldly things, 112:6
Lot’s wife, 96:10
love:
bread as, 105:6
see also charity
created riches, 137:10
defect: soul loving something less than its maker, 142:3
discipline and, 114A:5
dissipation, the prodigal son, 96:2
[to love the] eternal, give up the temporal, 125:7
forgiveness, woman with bad reputation, 99:35
gift of God (St Paul), 105:5
God above everything else, 136B:3
[to love] God, let God dwell in you, 128:4
good shepherd gives life for sheep, 138:1
letting go (love of the world), 125:11
loss of self for loving things outside self, 96:2
lovers of the world; despisers of God, 96:5
loving spouse for something other than self, 137:9
many different sorts of, 96:1
martyrdom and, 138:2
neighbor as self, 128:5
new commandment (Jn 13), 126:15
nobody comes unless the Father drags him, 131:2
only its creator can satisfy the soul, 125:11
reward: “I will show myself to him,” 142:78
“set love in order toward me,” 100:2
shown by keeping the commandments, 142:7
treat all except Christ as worthless, 142:6
two commandments fulfill the law, 125:10
you don’t love yourself if you love iniquity, 128:5
lust:
absent in paradise, 128:8
avaricious in, 107:8
see also coveting
do not go through with lusts of the flesh, 128:613
flesh against spirit; spirit against flesh, 128:711
peace wanted by the chaste man, 128:10
reigning in your mortal body, 128:12
sin inside the heart, 98:5
warfare, especially for young people, 128:11
world, flesh, ambition, 96:7

M

Maccabees, mother of the, 100:2
mammon of iniquity:
make friends with, 113:16
mammon (Hebrew word), 113:2
worldly wealth (all), 113:4
Manichees: deny the resurrection, 116:4
mankind:
angels to be judged by, 112A:13
do not let man prevail, 110:2, 3
see also image of God
lavish gifts of the creator, 130:4
what is man? 110:2
marriage:
chastity of husband and wife, 132:2
excuse of one invited to a dinner (parable), 112:6
instituted by the Word, 123:2
ranking of unmarried persons, 96:10
Mary and Martha (the better part), 103:16
both lives are praiseworthy, 104:4
busy about many things; result, 104:6
feeding the Lord; being fed by him, 103:3
life of Mary: stand fast and run, 104:5
Martha, Martha (repeated), 103:3
Martha’s complaint, 104:1
Mary’s choice in the hereafter, 103:6
one has precedence over many, 104:3
one thing necessary, 103:4
present/future life represented, 104:4
reclining at table, 104:67
reprimand (?) for Martha, 104:2
rest will come, through toil, 104:7
two kinds of life, 104:17
virtues in Martha’s role, 104:7
why Mary’s choice is better, 103:5
Word of God; Word made flesh, 104:3
martyrs:
buying the kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
eye of faith for the future, 113A:4
John the Baptist, 94A:16
meaningless, without charity, 138:2
witnesses to Christ, 128:3
Mary and Martha, see Martha and Mary
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
seed of Abraham, 130:3
see also virgin birth
mask (persona): Virgil’s Jupiter, 105:10
materialism:
believe only in things sensed, 112:3
Matthew, Saint (the publican), 105A:1
Maximin, Bishop, 140:1
mercy:
almsgiving, 106:4
crown of, 131:8
Son of God becoming man, 144:34
wasting Christ the savior, 109:1
Messiah:
Jesus and the Samaritan woman, 101:2
milk: mothers make, 117:16
mind: image of God, 145:2
miracle(s) of Christ:
actions like words of sacraments, 136A:1
Christ raised three from the dead, 139A:12
dead (three) raised by the Lord, 98:17
faith, 126:4, 5
fig tree (fruit out of season), 98:3
Lazarus’ life restored, 98:4, 5, 7

Volume III/4
learn from Jesus, not power, but to be humble, 142:11
life restored, daughter of ruler of synagogue, 98:4
loaves and fishes (Jn 6), 130:15
performed alone, 136B:3
reason for Christ's actions, 98:3
seven loaves feed 4,000 people, 95:3
sight given to man born blind (Jn 9), 136:16; 136A:14; 136B:1; 136C:1
souls of men, 98:1
spiritual understanding of, 98:3
water into wine (Cana), 123:2
yourself as amazing miracle, 126:4
mirror image, 117:12
money, love of, 107A:4
mortality:
  death, our punishment, 97:2
glass vessel, 109:1
Moses:
  Christ's coming foretold by, 113A:2
  fast, for forty days, 125:9
  five books; five arcades (John 5), 125:2
  "if you believed Moses…", 129:9
  part of Jesus played by, 137:6
  veil placed over their hearts (2 Cor), 125A:3
mountain:
  stone hewn from, without hands, 147A:4
mud (humanity):
  Christ's spittle (healing man born blind), 136A:1
mystical body:
  Christ suffers when body suffers, 137:2
  Christ, the gate; the shepherd, 137:3
  Christ the head; Church the body, 129:4; 133:8
  see also Church
  "for I was hungry…", 137:2
head and body: references in the Psalms, 129:5
  head speaks for the body, 129:6
  many parts form one body, 138:5
New Testament testimony, 129:6, 9
Old Testament testimony, 129:5
seed of Abraham; one Christ, 144:5
sick members in, 137:1
spiritual faith, 143:4
unity of its members, 137:1
we too are him, 133:8
[the] whole Christ (head and members), 116:6

N

Nathanael:
  "in whom there is no guile," 122:5
  under the figtree, 122:16
  "you will see angels of God…,", 123:34
needs:
  human services: Mary and Martha, 104:3
number, see forty; seven
Numidia, 94A:6

O

obedience:
  commandment kept out of fear, not love, 145:3
  willingly done; tasting sweetness, 145:3
oil press, 113A:11
old age:
  eventuality of, 109:1
  wish for a long life, 108:3
original sin:
  blind in the heart, 136:1
  ensured that all are born blind, 135:1
  figtree (Luke 13) as symbol of, 110:1
  "let the children come…," 115:4
  selflove, man's first ruin, 96:2
  sight given to man born blind (Jn 9), 136:1
  world made bad by first sin; remade by Christ, 96:6
outer darkness, 125A:4
oxen:
  bought five yokes: excuse of one
  invited to a dinner (parable), 112:3, 5

P
parables:
  - forgiving the two debtors, 99:35
  - invited to the dinner, 112:1
  - Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:114; 113B:14
  - prodigal son, 112A:214
  - servant entrusted with master’s money, 125:8
  - servant whose debt was cancelled, 114A:2
  - sower went out to sow, 101:3
  - wedding garment, 95:47

Passover:
  - Jesus passed along, in order to provide food, 103:6

pastoral work:
  - seeking from God something besides God, 137:9
  - shepherd, hired hand, thief, 137:515

patience:
  - example of Christ, 113A:14

patriarchs:
  - buying the kingdom of heaven, 105A:1

Paul, Saint, Apostle:
  - first Jacob, later Israel, 122:6
  - knew flesh of Christ according to the spirit, 143:3
  - [on] martyrdom and charity, 138:2
  - name: from Saul to Paul, 101:1
  - Old Covenant and new Church, 112A:8
  - persecutor (Saul) rises up as preacher (Paul), 116:7
  - Saul, the persecutor, struck down, 105A:2
  - “Saul, why are you persecuting me?” 122:6; 123:4
  - sower of words, 101:1

peace:
  - “peace be to this house” (evangelizers), 101:5, 11
  - seek/pursue peace, 108:7
  - wanted by the chaste man, 128:10

Pelagians, 131:9, 10
Pelagius, 115:3

people of God:
  - both Jacob (this world) and Israel (hope), 122:4

perfection:
  - no one dare be proud of having attained it, 142:14
  - sell all; follow Christ, gentle and humble of heart, 142:14
  - sell what you have; give to the poor, 142:1314
  - signified by the number seven, 95:2

persecution:
  - early Church at Jerusalem, 116:6
  - martyrdom for truth, 94A:2
  - temptation to deny Christ, 94A:2
  - two worlds: one persecuted, one persecuting, 96:68
  - worldly gain, 94A:4

Peter, Saint, Apostle:
  - confessor of love (after the denial), 111:2
  - denial of Christ, 111:2; 137:3; 142:13; 147:1; 147A:1
  - feed my sheep, 146:2; 147A:1, 2
  - good shepherd, 138:4
  - himself going to be crucified, 147:3
  - kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
  - “Peter, do you love me?” 137:3, 4; 137:10; 138:4; 146:1; 147:2; 147A:1, 2
  - rock, 147:3
  - sinner, 135:8

petition:
  - God is more eager to give, than we to receive, 105:1
  - pray, that your joy may be full, 145:6
  - until now, nothing asked in my name, 145:1, 6

Pharisee(s):
  - beware the teaching of, 129:2
  - Jesus at table; woman with bad reputation, 99:18
  - occupy chair of Moses, 137:6
  - prayer: Pharisee and publican, 115:23
  - pride, 136A:2, 3
  - thornbush, 137:13
  - washing the outside; faith is inside, 106:1

Philip, Saint, Apostle:
  - eunuch baptized by, 99:11

Volume III/4
“Lord, show us the Father,” 125:3, 145:6
“who sees me, sees the Father,” 142:6
philosophers: know, but do not honor God, 141:14
pool (Jn 5):
only one person cured, 125:3
stepping down into, 125:6
unity: only one person cured, 125:6
water’s disturbance, passion of Christ, 125:3
where the sick used to lie, 125:1
pool of Siloam, 135:1; 136A:1
poor:
Christ in the needy person, 113B:4
harvest (reward) for attention to, 102:5
porters of temporal goods used for eternal gain, 114A:4
relief from one’s abundance, 107A:2
rich man a beggar, without God, 105A:2
possessions:
happiness, 113:6
having nothing, and possessing all things, 107A:1
person’s life not to be measured by, 107:4
poverty, see poor
power:
learn from Jesus, not power, but to be humble, 142:11
praise:
seven times a day, 95:2
silence and, 114A:1
prayer:
see also ask/seek/knock
do what we say, e.g. forgive, 114:5
faith not to falter, 115:1
imperfection, 135:6
knowing what to pray for, 105A:1, 2
see also petition
Pharisee and tax collector (publican), 115:23; 135:6;
136:2; 136A:2, 3; 136B:2
prayer perishes when faith falters, 115:1
troubled times; God is present, 112A:5
you are God’s beggar, 123:5
preach(ers; ing):
Christ’s instructions to evangelizers, 101:5
see also evangelize
preaching God for God’s sake, 137:10
predestination:
[to] eternal life, 111:1, 4
Gentiles in the one fold, 138:5
presumption:
law there to terrify the presumptuous, 145:3, 5
price:
of kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
of Word of God, 117:1
pride:
beginning of all sin, 123:1
cure: humility of Jesus, 123:1
grow proud, lose what you have received, 131:5
head swollen by, 142:5
heart exalted against God, 142:2
humanity’s false innocence, 125:2
humility of Christ seen unworthy by the proud, 124:3
manor bought: excuse of one invited to a dinner (parable), 112:2
mortality and, 97:2
parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113A:6
philosophers attribute God’s gift to themselves, 141:2
prayer: Pharisee and publican, 115:23
salutary fear: parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:1
swollen head is heavy load, 142:10
proclaiming: “fare well,” 101:9
prodigal son (parable), 112A:214
all that is mine is yours, 112A:1314
Christ as the older son, 112A:14
come in and join the feast, 112A:11
denying (not relying on) himself, 96:2
dissipation, 96:2
father running to meet him, 112A:6
Gentiles as younger son, 112A:2
gone away from himself; returns to himself, 96:2
Jews and Gentiles, 112A:8, 1013
Sermons Volume 4, 94A-147A

Jews as elder son, 112A:2
let Christ be proclaimed, 112A:4
meaning of the return, 112A:4
presents on his return, 112A:7
prince of demons, 112A:3
property squandered, 112A:2
return to heart in anger, 112A:5
son, you are with me always, 112A:13
promise:
  God put Himself in debt by making promise, 113A:5, 7, 9
  God's word to the Jewish nation, 113A:6
  lie (?) when unable to carry out, 133:2
  see also prophecy(ies)
property:
  avarice and, 107:8
  being possessed by one’s own, 107A:4
  innocent possession of, 125:8
  possess, but don’t be possessed by it, 125:7
prophecy(ies):
  all fulfilled in Christ, 136C:3
  [re] Christ and the Church, 113A:12, 5, 9
  Christ’s spittle (healing man born blind), 136A:1
  promises; fulfillment, 110:4
prophets:
  buying the kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
  earth represents (healing man born blind), 136C:2
  on physical appearance of Christ, 95:4
protector, our God, 130:5
providence, divine:
  no apparent control over things, 125:5
publicans: kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
punishment:
  chastisement by the Father, 113A:4, 14
  how God punished sin, 117:5
  law kept out of fear of, 145:3
pure of heart:
  blessed, see God, 136C:1
purity:
  see also chastity; lust
cleansing hearts by faith, 106:1
Jesus at Pharasee’s table; woman with bad reputation, 99:2, 13
purse:
  meaning of, 101:6
  not to be carried by evangelizers, 101:5
R
reapers and sowers, 101:1
reclining at table, 104:67
redemption:
  Adam and Eve; Christ and Mary, 123:2
  Christ, bread from heaven, 130:2
  crucifixion necessary for, 122:4
  debts forgiven daily, 134:6
  deliverer from slavery of sin and death, 134:4
  Samaritan (figure); beaten man still being cured today, 131:6
  reform, see conversion
religious conditions:
  veil placed over hearts, 137:6
renunciation:
  taking up one’s cross, 96:4
repentance:
  anger with self, 112A:5
  bear fruit worthy of, 110:5
  dead come back to life, 98:6, 7
  digging trench around figtree, 110:1
  have God as Father by turning back, 142:4
  hope for the sinner, 136A:2
  John the Baptist, 109:1; 121:3
  parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113A:3
  scripture readings, 125:1
rest:
  see also eternal rest
  sabbath: our rest in God’s rest, 125:4
resurrection (of the dead; of the body):
  Christ as guarantee of, 97:4
  God created persons; He can repair them, 127:14, 15

Volume III/4
good people, to life; bad, to judgment, 127:15
hope fulfilled, 144:6
judgment day, 127:14
[of] mind, inner self, soul, 127:7
obedience of heart, 127:11
soul (for weal), body (for woe), 127:8
unbelievable (except for who’s doing it), 127:15
revenge:
intent on getting one’s own back, 123:1
Rhadagaisus, 105:13
rich and poor:
meeting on the road of life, 107A:5
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 113A:114; 113B:14
see also wealth
Rome:
uin of, attributed to Christians, 105:12, 13
S
sabbath:
ban on work taken literally by Jews, 125A:1
Jesus healing on, 136:3
“my Father works…” 125A:14
our rest in God’s rest, 125:4
sacramental baptism, see baptism
sacrifice:
sacrifices for sins, called sins, 134:5
saints:
each a temple of God; all together, one
temple, 136B:3
offices duly performed for, 103:5
salvation:
few are saved, 111:3
gift of God, 131:5
keeping eight (but not two love)
commendations: worthless, 125:10
narrow gate, 111:3
proclaiming the gospel, 101:9, 10
united (mystical body) with the one
who came down, 144:5
work in fear and trembling, 131:3, 5
salvation history:
“come to know that the Lord is great,” 111:2, 3
Samaritan (takes beaten man to inn), 131:6
schismatics, 146:2; 147A:1, 4
scorpion: hope and, 105:7, 8
scripture:
expounding, as breaking bread, 95:1
repeated readings [aloud], 125:1
some clergy explain wrongly, 137:7
security:
God our protector, 130:5
only its creator can satisfy the soul, 125:11
seed:
sower went out to sow, 101:3
worrying about life and death, 101:3
self:
forehead of the inner self, 107:7
selfdenial:
followers of Christ, 96:1
prodigal son, 96:2, 3
taking up one’s cross, 96:2
universal Church, following Christ, 96:9
selfimportance (puffed up), 142:12
selflove:
getting lost through, 96:1
man’s first ruin (original sin), 96:2
selfreliance:
lie (without God), 110:2
selfworth:
loved by Christ; become worth loving, 142:5
senses:
allegorical interpretation: five yokes of
oxen, 112:3
eyes (sight) have first place, 112:7
servant (parable):
entrusted with master’s money, 125:8
seven (number):
Church signified by the number, 95:2
signifies totality, 114A:1
sexual ethics:
universal following of Christ, 96:9

sexual organs:
Adam and Eve: covered in shame
(after sinning), 110:1
first man covered with fig leaves,
122:1

shame:
Adam and Eve (after sinning), 110:1

sheepfold (i.e. Church), 137:4

shoes:
evangelizers: “take off your shoes”
(meaning), 101:7

sick:
arcades, where the sick used to lie (Jn
5), 125:1

silence: praise goes on in, 114A:1

Siloam:
Christ’s healing man born blind,
136A:1
man had not yet washed the face of his
heart in; 136:2
the word, “One Sent,” 135:1; 136A:1;
136B:1; 136C:3

sin:
adversary is God’s word, 109:3
angry God will not search out,
113A:14
be angry and do not sin, 113:2
catechumens’ fear of future sins,
97A:3; 4
committed; “young man, get up,”
128:14
committing sin makes one slave of sin,
134:3
confessing, without shame, 113B:3
cure, belief in Christ, 143:1
“death, where is your sting?” 131:7
effects; failing to reprove, 114A:5
fallacy: sin greatly so as to be forgiven
more, 99:4, 5
fig tree (John 1) stands for, 122:1
see also forgiveness of sins
forgive us our debts, 135:7
four stages; habit, 98:6
God both hates and loves the sinner,
142:4

God does/does not listen to sinners,
135:68; 136:2; 136A:1, 2; 136B:2;
136C:4
habitual, 98:5; 139A:2
(in) heart, but not in deed, 98:5
Holy Spirit: challenge world re sin,
justice, judgment, 143:15; 144:16
“if we say we have no sin…,” 135:8
intended, but not actually done,
128:14
intent plus the deed, 139A:2
intent still secret in the heart, 139A:2
“Lazarus, come out,” 128:14
living conforming self to the dead,
136:6

see also pride
punish yourself, 136A:3
rebuking sinners, 142:3
redemption from slavery of, 134:4
reigning in your mortal body, 128:12
see also repentance
saying “we have no sin,” 114:4
scripture has shut everything up under
sin, 136:5
shouts of censure for bad habits, 98:6
sinners loved, so that they may repent,
97A:1
sinners: meaning of three dead persons
restored to life, 98:5
sinners: orphans, the humble, the poor,
136C:4
this life is not without sin, 135:7
three kinds of death (three raised from
the dead), 139A:12
three types of sinners, 128:14
transgression of law added to sin,
125:2
“turn your face away…,” 136A:2
unbelief in Christ; challenge by Holy
Spirit, 144:1
weight of habit; person stinking,
128:14
who sinned: man born blind or his
parents? 136:1
see also wickedness
worry re past sins, 97A:2
see also wrongdoing
your faces will not be put to shame,
143:2

sincerity:
Sermons 94A-147A

Volume III/4

apostles have the peace they preach, 101:11
foxes have holes (in the heart), 100:1
sing:
new song (Church) to the Lord, 116:7
skenopegia (festival of booths), 133:18
slavery of sin, 134:3
snares, 142:1
Sodom, 98:5
Son of God:
Arian heresy, 117:6
became man, while remaining God, 127:9
begotten always, 127:4, 5
begotten, not made, 118:1
blasphemy: the Son is another substance, 139:4
cannot do anything of Himself…, 126:115
coeternal with the Father, 117:14; 118:2
emptied himself…, 136:6
equality to God as robbery, 117:13
equality: will of power, power of will, 135:5
equality with the Father, 126:12; 140:2, 5
Father begot what he himself is, 135:4
from the womb… (Ps 110), 135:4
image of the Father, 117:12
see also Jesus Christ
no first or afterward re the Father, 117:12
not learn my greatness, but my humility, 117:17
Son of man and, 127:9
Wisdom of the Father, 118:2
see also Word of God
world did not know him, 121:1
Son of man:
[is] above in person, below in his people, 123:4
Arian position: doing works he was sent to do, 135:2
authority to do judgment, 127:9, 10, 14
equality with the Father, 127:9; 135:23
Jacob’s ladder, 122:6
likeness of flesh of sin, 134:4, 5
made into sin for us, 134:5
marvelous exchange: He became man, 121:5
mediator in the middle, 121:5
Son of God and, 127:9
whatever the Father does (Son likewise), 135:3
Song of Songs:
bride of Christ, 138:6
bridegroom and bride (Church), 146:2; 147A:2
sacred bridal chamber, 138:7
soul:
do not forget all his recompenses, 131:7
lie kills the soul, 107:10
miracles performed on, 98:1
resurrection of body and soul, 127:8
self forgotten, by loving the world, 142:3
soul serves God; flesh serves the soul, 128:5
wealth of the soul: full of God, 107A:3
sowers and reapers, 101:1
speaking with tongues:
after receiving the Holy Spirit, 99:10
speck in brother’s eye, 114A:6
spirit: word used in many ways, 128:9
spiritual goods:
God’s treasure chests, 113A:11
true wealth cannot be lost, 113:5
spiritual life:
charity is alms for your soul, 106:4
Martha and Mary: stand fast and run, 104:5
much material wealth, still God’s beggar, 123:5
see also soul
spiritual marriage:
“tell me where you graze your flock,” 138:6, 910; 147A:3
“unless you know yourself,” 138:8; 147A:4
spiritual realities, materialistic terms, 117:4, 7
steadfastness, in prosperity or adversity, 94A:6
stewards:
    share what they receive, 101:4
stones:
    as children to Abraham, 121:3
    Jacob anointed the stone, 122:2
storerooms:
    storing one’s abundance; avarice, 107A:2
strangers:
    Christians in this world, 111:4
straw and gold (the just and the wicked), 113A:11
substance: divine persons, 139:2
sun:
    analogy of Incarnation, 120:2
    worry re rising/setting, 100:3
symphony: concord of voices, 112A:9
T
take up one’s cross, see cross
talents:
    gifts of God also received by bad people, 138:3
taxcollector:
    justified, rather than the Pharisee; 136B:2
    prayer of Pharisee and, 115:23; 136A:2, 3; 136B:2
    “standing a long way off,” 136A:2
teaching:
    learn/live and feed others, 105:3
temple of God:
    the Holy Spirit in the holy faithful, 99:9
temporal goods:
    asking for, in name of Christ, 145:6
    bless the Lord at all times, 105:8
    end of earthly kingdoms, 105:10
    give alms, or lose hereafter, 114A:4
    give up love of, to love the eternal, 125:7
    good things of earthly life, 127:1
    hope in earthly things, 105:13
    loving, to one’s ruin, 125:9
    loving/coveting worldly goods, 112:6
    persecution for worldly gain, 94A:4
    riches held in common by all, 142:8
    seek life, seek good days, 108:5
    stand fast, in prosperity or adversity, 94A:6
    striving hard for this life, 127:2
    use for eternal gain, 114A:34
    vain delights of mortals, 142:7
temptation:
    remaining in God’s word, 134:2
    succeeds as faith fails, 115:1
ten commandments:
    lute of ten strings, 125:9
thanksgiving:
    pride in saying grace, 115:3
theology:
    Martha and Mary (the better part), 104:2
thirst:
    “I am thirsty,” means “I desire your faith,” 99:3
Thomas, Saint, Apostle:
    (dis)belief in the risen Christ, 112:4, 5; 145A
threshingfloor, 111:3
time:
    change, 117:10
    coeternal/coeval creatures, 117:1012
    scorpion, 105:7
    yesterday, tomorrow, long life, 124:4
tithing:
    Jewish practice, 106:3
    judgment and charity in, 106:3
Tobit:
    advice on almsgiving, 125A:4
    blind of eye; light of heart, 125A:5
tongue: curbing from evil, 108:7
Torah: five books; five arcades (John 5), 125:2
treasure: where the heart is, 107A:6; 114A:3
tree:
fixes roots, to grow upward, 117:17
good/bad fruit from, 107A:1
tribulation, see troubles
Trinity:
see also godhead
meaning of the three loaves (Luke 11), 105:3
one activity, one eternity, etc., 126:10
one God in three persons, 103:4
Son “cannot do anything of Himself…,” 126:115
troubles:
bless the Lord at all times, 105:8
pray: God is present, 112A:5
tribulations of this world, 113A:11
truth:
analogy of feeding/reclining at table, 104:67
deliverer, 134:2
dying for, 94A:2
fight to the death for, 94A:5
“If I bear witness to myself…,” 128:1
John the Baptist, martyr for, 94A:1, 3
loyal Christian living, 94A:2
philosophers “hold truth down in iniquity,” 141:13
unbelievers:
dead come alive in faith, 127:7
[as] dead people, 100:2
deliberate choice, 140:6
Holy Spirit challenges world for, 144:1
lovers of the world, 144:2
parable of Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:3
wounds of unbelief (Christ), 116:1
understanding:
and faith, 139:1; 140:6
first believe, then understand, 126:1, 2
ungodliness:
Christ died for the ungodly, 142:5
philosophers “hold truth down in iniquity,” 141:13
ungodly: devil’s body, 144:6
unity:
see also Christian unity
go out, if you do not know yourself, 138:8; 147A:4
one flock, one shepherd, 137:6
one whole people, end of this age, 122:5
only one person healed (pool, Jn 5);
Church signified, 125:6
[a] people or a mob, 103:4
Peter represents unity of all shepherds, 147:2
usury: alms from, 113:2
values:
God in one’s spirit vs gold in one’s pocket, 107A:7
poor in material things, rich spiritually, 123:5
temporal/eternal goods, 145:6
veil placed over hearts, 137:6
Virgil: earthly kingdoms, 105:10
virgin birth:
divine power of Son of God, 126:5, 6
faith of the virgin, 121:5
stone hewn from mountain without hands, 147A:4
virtue: God’s indulgence (grace), 100:4
vocation:
disciples chosen by the Lord, 100:3
providence: the craftsman knows where to put you, 125:5
way, truth, and life, 141:14; 142:114
wealth:
bodily, is superfluous, 107A:3
[on] earth, they are not riches, 113:5
fine clothes: parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:2
lose it, in order not to be lost, 113:4
mammon of iniquity, 113:26
see also poor
praying for riches, 105A:1, 2
riches of the flesh (material things), 107A:2

Sermons 94A-147A
spirit of Abraham, 113A:6
treasures of the wicked, 114A:3
wrongfully acquired, 113:3
wedding, at Cana, 123:1
wedding garment (parable of man invited), 95:47
    charity meant by the garment, 95:7
dreadful punishment, 95:5
    many signified in the one man thrown out, 95:6
whore, 142:2
wickedness:
    fight not to do the things you would, 128:10, 13
    lover of iniquity hates his own soul, 125:8
    slaves together, under iniquity, 134:3
    tried in goldsmith’s furnace, 113A:11
    you don’t love yourself if you love iniquity, 128:5
widow: Elijah sent to, for her good, 136B:4
wife: chastity demanded of, 132:2
will:
    conscience: adversary to sin, 109:3
    God prepares will for faith, 136B:4
wisdom:
    avarice and eternal wisdom, 107:10
    [as] “divine hen,” 105:11
    keeping to self (in a purse), 101:6
    leaven hid in the flour, 111:2
    radiance of eternal life, 117:11
woman:
    ill for eighteen years, 110:2
    Jesus at Pharasee’s table; woman with bad reputation, 99:113
womb: Son begotten from Father’s own substance, 135:4
Word of God:
    abiding what he was, assuming what he was not, 124:2
    all made through him; himself not made, 125:3
    almighty, 119:6
    analogy of flowers and grass, 113B:2
    became flesh, 134:6
devout confession of ignorance regarding, 117:5
everywhere whole and entire, 120:2
flesh of Christ as his clothing, 119:7
form of all things, 117:3
give yourself, if you want to buy, 117:2
hunger to grasp the unchangeable Word, 117:3
in the beginning…, 117:3; 118:1, 2; 119:2; 120:1; 124:3; 126:13; 135:4; 136C:1; 145A
listen to the Word as flesh, 117:16
nothing hidden from, 120:2
price for buying the Word, 119:1
reason for becoming flesh, 119:5
seeing the Word’s own act of seeing, 126:15
see also Son of God
Word that abides, 119:3
word(s) about the Word, 120:3
work:
    God governs creation, doesn’t stop working, 125:4
    God serves us, 125A:5
    Martha and Mary (the better part), 104:2, 3
    “my Father is working…” 125:4, 6
    vine and branches: the Father is the landworker, 125A:5
    virtues in Martha’s role, 104:7
works of mercy:
    Martha and Mary (the better part), 104:2, 3
world:
    awhoring away from the Lord, 142:2
    beauty/goodness of created things, 96:4
    believes only what it can see, 143:4
    called from love of the temporal, 108:1
    complaining about the devil, 143:4
    created things and eyes of faith, 126:3
    fasting from love of, 125:7
    letting go (love in the heart), 125:11
    looking for good days in, 108:5, 6
    love of, makes adulterer of the soul, 142:3
    lovers of the world; despisers of God, 96:5

Volume III/4
made bad by the first sin, 96:6
possessions not to be loved, 125:7
reconciled to God, 96:8
rejoice: Christ has conquered, 97:4
six ages have passed, 125:4
two worlds: one persecuted, one
  persecuting, 96:68
unbelievers, bad people called
  “world,” 121:1
worldly gain/goods, see temporal goods
worship of idols, see idols
wrongdoing:
  bad example of clergy as excuse for,
    137:7
  saying but not doing (bad example),
    137:6
  transgressions of the law, 125:2
  unfaithful (bad) lay people, 137:7
  what they (clergy) say, do; what they
do, don’t follow, 137:7, 8, 13

Z

Zacchaeus, 105A:1; 113:3
zeal for God:
  not according to knowledge, 129:2;
    131:10
Index from

Sermons 148-183

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 148-183 are on the New Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/5  Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-007-0, 6 x 9 in., 374 pp., 1992

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:1 183, 4
1:2 179A, 3
2:2 152, 5
3:4-5 153, 11
3:5 163, 8
3:6 151, 5
3:7 151, 5
17:12 169, 3
22:16 180, 2
22:18 168, 1

Exodus
2:11 160, 3
3:14 156, 6
8:19 155, 3
20:4 179A, 3
20:7 179A, 3
20:12-17 179, 3
20:16 170, 5
20:17 152, 5; 169, 8; 170, 2
20:19 155, 6
31:18 155, 6
33:20 170, 9

Leviticus
12:3 169, 3

Deuteronomy
5:12 179A, 3
6:4 179A, 3
31:6.8 177, 11
32:39 169, 10

Joshua
1:5 177, 11
5:2 169, 3

1 Samuel
17:45 153, 11

Job
1:21 177, 4
7:7 163B, 4
14:4 LXX 181, 1

Psalms
1:2 149, 4; 153, 10
3:3 158, 9
5:3 169, 17
6:2-3 163, 7
8:5; 144:3 163, 12
10:3 153, 6; 163B, 5
13:3 159, 4
14:1 162, 1
16:5 156, 17
17:15 158, 7
18:1 150, 9
18:36 169, 15
18:43-44 158, 5
19:1-3-4 163, 5
19:3-4 171, 5
19:4-3 162A, 11
19:9 161, 9
23:3 177, 2
24:1 149, 3
24:10 160, 3
25:9 157, 2
26:2 159, 1
27:1 182, 5, 6
27:4 169, 16, 17
27:9 156, 11
27:14 157, 1; 170, 9
30:11-12 163, 3
32:4 175, 4
34:2 155, 4
34:5 176, 5; 182, 6
34:8 159, 4
34:15-16 161, 2
34:21 173, 1
36:3 156, 1
36:6 155, 8
36:9 150, 9; 158, 7; 159, 4
37:4 159, 3
Sermons 148-183

38:9 159, 1
40:4 156, 7
41:3 175, 9
41:4 153, 10
41:8 172, 1
43:1 158, 6
44:8 155, 4
45:2 161, 12
49:6 156, 7
51:4 170, 3
51:4-5 170, 4
51:8 179, 2
56:4 154, 12
56:7 169, 3
56:11.4 156, 8
57:1 165, 9
57:6 162B, 1
59:10 174, 4, 176, 5
69:4 155, 7
69:9 163B, 6
69:20 172, 3
71:1-2 160, 1
71:2 160, 1, 7
73:27-28 162, 3, 177, 9
73:28 156, 7
73:28-27 179A, 4
78:39 162, 2
82:6 166, 2
82:7 166, 2
85:7 163, 4
85:12 153, 10, 169, 8
91:2-3 150, 9
91:2-3 178, 1
92:5 165, 5
92:5-6 165, 5
94:12 150, 9, 153, 1
95:2 176, 5
95:6 176, 5
95:6.2 176, 1
96:1 163, 3
96:1-2 163, 4
96:1-5 163, 5
100:3 176, 5
103:5 177, 9
103:10 171, 5
110:4 180, 2
111:10 156, 1, 169, 3
112:6-7 173, 3
116:11 166, 1, 3
116:15 173, 1
119:21 160, 3
119:29 152, 5
119:68 153, 10
119:85 153, 10, 154, 12
121:1-2 155, 8
121:4 171, 5
123:3 179A, 1
127:1 169, 11
127:2 179, 3
130:1-2 154A, 4
132:16 169, 11
142:5 157, 1, 161, 2
143:1 170, 6
143:2 170, 6, 7, 8, 179A, 1
144:15 150, 9
150:6 182, 3

Proverbs
3:12 157, 3
10:26 153, 10
21:20 LXX 149, 4
25:21 164A, 2

Song of Songs
2:6 159, 4

Wisdom
1:11 161, 5, 180, 8
2:1 150, 7
2:1-8 150, 6
2:2-5 150, 6
2:10 150, 7
8:1 162A, 3, 174, 1
8:21 160, 7
9:15 163B, 4

Sirach
2:16 157, 1
10:15.14 162, 4
12:4 164A, 3
12:4-6.7 164A, 1, 3
18:30 151, 3, 154, 8, 155, 1, 9
24:21 170, 9
30:24 161, 6
31:8.10 178, 7

Isaiah
25:8 151, 2, 155, 2
26:13 LXX 169, 15
35:10 158, 8
40:6 161, 1
40:6.8 153, 9
42:14 180, 8
53:1 156, 5
53:9 152, 9
57:8 LXX 177, 9
58:7 179, 7
58:9 163, 7, 12
66:24 150, 10

Jeremiah
17:5 150, 8
23:24 174, 1
31:31-33 155, 6

Daniel
13:35 156, 15

Hosea
13:14 151, 2, 3, 155, 2

Joel
2:32 169, 11

Volume III/5
### Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>158, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>174, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>179, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>179A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11-12</td>
<td>163B, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>149, 11, 12, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>155, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>179, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33-37</td>
<td>180, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:40</td>
<td>167, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:43</td>
<td>149, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>156, 2, 164A, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>149, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-4</td>
<td>149, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>149, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-14</td>
<td>181, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>155, 9, 163, 9, 163B, 3, 179A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>152, 2, 182, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>162, 3, 171, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>159, 9, 163B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>159, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>179, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>154, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-27</td>
<td>179, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>179, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>162A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>174, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>175, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>164, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>159, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>156, 8, 161, 5, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:39</td>
<td>159, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>154A, 5, 163B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>164, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>164, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>157, 2, 164, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>155, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:11-12</td>
<td>165, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:23-24</td>
<td>154A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26-28</td>
<td>154A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13-16</td>
<td>183, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14-16</td>
<td>183, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15-17</td>
<td>168, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>183, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16-17</td>
<td>158, 6, 162A, 4; 183, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17</td>
<td>158, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>149, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21-23</td>
<td>183, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24-27</td>
<td>155, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16-17</td>
<td>150, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15</td>
<td>168, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>160, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:34</td>
<td>173, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>168, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>158, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-25</td>
<td>183, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>155, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>175, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>156, 2, 169, 11, 176, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>168, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>174, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>154A, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>169, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>153, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td>163, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>153, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>175, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:27</td>
<td>164A, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38-37</td>
<td>179A, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>159, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:24</td>
<td>163, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27-29</td>
<td>171, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:35</td>
<td>179A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38-42</td>
<td>169, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41-42</td>
<td>179, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:42</td>
<td>179, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>163B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>155, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26</td>
<td>155, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4-5</td>
<td>161, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16-19</td>
<td>178, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>178, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>179, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:16</td>
<td>162B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>179, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>175, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>174, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17-18</td>
<td>179A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>178, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21</td>
<td>178, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:32</td>
<td>169, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>163, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>169, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>175, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>174, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>174, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>174, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>174, 2, 6; 175, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:35-36</td>
<td>154, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-25</td>
<td>154A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>152, 5; 155, 3, 4, 14; 163, 6; 163A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>151, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>151, 8; 154A, 2; 179A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>154, 15; 155, 14; 155, 15; 163, 12; 163A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>154, 17; 154A, 6; 163A, 3; 170, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>151, 8; 152, 1, 2, 5; 154, 7, 9, 16; 17; 155, 1; 156, 10; 163, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>152, 3; 155, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1-2</td>
<td>155, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>152, 3, 5, 7, 10, 11; 155, 6; 156, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2-3</td>
<td>152, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>152, 1, 5, 11; 155, 7, 8; 183, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3-4</td>
<td>152, 1, 9; 155, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>155, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4-7</td>
<td>155, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>155, 11; 156, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>155, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>155, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>155, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>155, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>155, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>156, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>156, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>156, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>156, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16</td>
<td>156, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:17</td>
<td>156, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>158, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>157, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>158, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>158, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29-31</td>
<td>158, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>174, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30-31</td>
<td>158, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
<td>158, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>157, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35-36</td>
<td>158, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35-37</td>
<td>158, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>165, 6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>156, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>165, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30</td>
<td>169, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30-32</td>
<td>169, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:32-33</td>
<td>169, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1-3</td>
<td>169, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>160, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2-3</td>
<td>160, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3-4</td>
<td>156, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>160, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>169, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>168, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19-21</td>
<td>162A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>154, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>162A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>155, 8; 165, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:34-35</td>
<td>158, 2; 168, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:35</td>
<td>158, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
<td>158, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>157, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>179, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>149, 19; 164A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9-10</td>
<td>179A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>169, 10; 179A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>149, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>150, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>174, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>174, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>160, 1, 2, 4; 168, 3, 8, 169, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>160, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>160, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>160, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>166, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6-7</td>
<td>152, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>163, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17</td>
<td>161, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>174, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>179, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>154, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>160, 1, 2; 163, 11; 168, 3; 176, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>179, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>155, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>162, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>151, 4; 161, 3; 162, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>179, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>161, 1, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15-18</td>
<td>162, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15-20</td>
<td>162, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>162, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>179A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>162, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>161, 11; 168, 3, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:34</td>
<td>161, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>169, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:26-27</td>
<td>178, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>169, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25-28</td>
<td>149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>149, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>149, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>164, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30-32</td>
<td>148, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26-27</td>
<td>162A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>157, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>162A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>162A, 1; 167A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31-13:1</td>
<td>158, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>162A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>169, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>170, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>158, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>168, 7; 176, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9-10</td>
<td>168, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21-22</td>
<td>154, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>165, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>163, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>158, 9; 177, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td>180, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>150, 6; 7; 157, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33-34</td>
<td>157, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33-34</td>
<td>157, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>4:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:15-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:7-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:13-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:17-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:18-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>2:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>1:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:15-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>10:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td>2:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>1:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:15-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Abba, Father, 156:15, 16
Abraham:
children of the faith of, 168:1, 3
two sons (two covenants), 152:7
Adam and Eve:
avarice, 177:9
fig leaves, 174:4
naming birds and beasts, 151:5
pride, 174:2
putting aside lying, 166:2-4
recognizing in newborn babies, 174:9
sin against Christ, 170:3
adoption:
children of God, 166:4
sonship by, 156:15
adultery, 161:1, 8, 12
lust in heart, 179:7
Africa, 162A:10
alms:
five foolish virgins, 149:12
given to everyone, 164A:2
given to whom? 164A:1
secret giving, 149:12-13
tomorrow we die, 150:7
universality of almsgiving, 164A:1-4
wishing to give, with stolen property, 178:4
Ananias (means sheep), 175:8
angels:
hospitality; entertained unawares, 179:3
justice and perfection of, 154:3, 4
anger:
anticipate divine anger, 176:5
be angry and sin not, 179A:7
animals:
Peter's vision (Acts 10), 149:6
sacrificial flesh, 149:3, 4
anxiety: walk securely in Christ, 170:11
apostles:
human imperfections, 154:6
number twelve, 149:10
Areopagis, 150:2
arguing with those who contradict, 178:2
Arian question, 183:3, 4, 5
Arles, 162A:8
Athens, 150:1-2; 156:7
Augustine, Saint:
habit of swearing, 180:10
avarice:
see also greed
be avaricious in love of God, 177:9
burden, 164:5
enslaved by cupidity, 177:3
heart affected by, 177:1
horrible to say "Our Father," 177:2
insatiable, 177:6
prodigal son, 177:9
root of all evil, 177:1, 2
slave of, 177:2
we brought nothing into this world, 177:1-11
weighed down by, 177:3
B
babies, see infants
baptism of infants, 165:7; 176:2
baptism:
all sin forgiven; infirmity remains, 179A:6; 181:3
buried with Christ, into death, 169:16
debts canceled by, 155:9
guilt canceled by, 151:5; 152:3
passing from second man to first man, 174:9
beatific vision:
faith, hope, love in, 158:9
faith, in order to arrive, 159:1
God will be all in all, 158:9

beauty:
elegance of the heart, 161:12
faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5

belief and doubt:
see also faith
 scoffers, believers, doubters, 150:2

Bible:
see also word of God
Spirit of God assists in understanding, 152:1

birds: feathers, 164:7

bishop(s):
must be strong in sound doctrine, 178:1-11
orphans’ guardians, 176:2
visitation; anointing, 176A

boasting:
all we have, we have received, 160:2
cross of Christ, 165:3
the Lord, 160:1-7

body and soul:
see also human body; soul
Epicurean philosophy, 150:6
happy/blessed life, 150:5

born again, 182:3
boxing match, 154A:3
building: hearing/doing word of God, 179:8

burden(s):
avarice and laziness, 164:5
bear one another’s burdens, 163B:2, 3, 4; 164:1-15
come all who are overburdened, 164:6
distinguishing between, 164:2
each to carry his own, 163B:2, 3; 164:1-15
poverty and riches, 164:9
sins as, 164:4
two kinds, 164:3

C
Caecilian, trial of, 164:12
Caiphas, 162A:3
calling, 158:1-9
Canaanite woman, 154A:5
Catholic Church:

see also Church
Holy Spirit; speaking in all languages, 162A:11
spread everywhere, 149:6; 162A:12
centurion’s faith, 179:6
character: passing judgment on, 178:1, 3
charity:
see also alms; love
Christ found in the poor, 178:4
debt of, 149:1
chastity: fulfillment of vow, 148:2
children of God:
earning right to, 174:2
grace; avarice, 177:2
heirs, 156:17
made godlike by adoption, 166:4
children: Lord’s prayer: forgive our debts, 181:7

Christian life:
confessing in word and deed, 183:13
doings of the flesh and, 156:9-10
following; forging ahead, 169:18
persecution, 167:2
struggle against princes and powers, 167A:1
struggle; how long? 163:7
walk securely, without anxiety, 170:11
warfare before triumph, 151:2

Christians:
Jewish observances re meat, 149:5
motivation in becoming Christians, 150:4

church:
see also Catholic Church; Mystical Body
doctrine of Christ, 149:7
bride of Christ, 183:10, 11
called “Catholic,” 162A:10
cleansing, 181:2
cut off from the whole, 162A:10
Donatists, 162A:9
Israel; the Passover, 155:5-6
linen sheet (Peter’s vision), 149:9
members have stains and wrinkles, 181:3
members with lesser/greater gifts, and charity, 162A:6
Peter representing, 149:7
Peter’s vision (Acts 10), 149:6
return, and be grafted in, 162A:12
sort of people not belonging to, 149:4
Sermons 148-183

speaking in all languages, 162A:11; 175:3
spread through all nations, 162A:10
circumcision, 149:7; 156:15; 158:6; 168:2
eight day, 169:3, 12
hidden, 160:6
knife or stone, Christ, 160:6; 169:3
Old Testament sign, 160:6
serving the Spirit of God, 169:1
stands for justice, 169:2
trust in the flesh, 169:3
cloven hoof, 149:4
commandment(s):
see also law; ten commandments
believe in Christ crucified, 160:3
directed toward life, 153:10
eternal life, 150:10
holy, just and good, 152:7, 11; 153:12;
154:1; 155:4; 163:10; 169:6, 7
offending through, 152:6
sin through, 153:11
compassion: universal, 164A:3
concupiscence, 151:4
condemnation: communicating
unworthy, 164:11
conception:
healing, 181:8
conscience:
glory is God in, 163B:6
hope and a good conscience, 158:6
mind versus flesh, 154A:3
pricked to the heart, 175:4
sacrificial meat, 149:3
secure, 177:4
consent:
bad desires, 151:7, 8
evil desires, 152:2-3, 154A:4; 155:1
lust, 154:12; 155:2, 13
consolation and grief, 172:1, 3
conversion: those who killed Christ,
175:4
Cornelius, 149:8
cornerstone, 156:15
courage: faith, 163A:1
covenant: old and new, 152:7; 155:6
coveting:
see also desire; greed; lust
forbidden, 170:5
law against, 152:5, 6
ridding self of, 151:5
creation:
good, but unequal to the creator, 182:3
made in wonderful ways, 177:9
Crispinus, trial of, 162A:8
cross:
boasting in, 165:3
climb the tree (like Zacchaeus), 174:3
glory in the cross of Christ, 160:4, 5
lift up your hearts, 165:4
width, length, height, depth of,
165:2-5
curing, 160:7
dangers, in Christian living, 167:2
darkness, 182:5, 6
David, King, 162A:2
Christ prefigured by, 175:8
David and Goliath, 153:11
death:
asleep (the word), 172:1
helped by works of mercy, 172:1-3
love with spiritual affection, 172:3
prayers for the, 172:2
preceding merits, 172:2
defeat:
deserts of sin, 155:7
death as prince of, 152:9
fast, pray; tomorrow we die, 150:7
fear of, soul and body, 161:5
holy ones are precious in God’s sight,
173:1
hope in future life, 157:6
infant children, 165:7, 9
law of sin and, 152:3, 5, 7; 153:3
living according to the flesh, 156:8
love life, if afraid of death, 161:7
natural horror of, 172:1
original sin and, 173:2
personal end of the world, 170:10
preserve life in, 165:9
saddened; heathens, 173:3
sadness and consolation, 173:3
sin as, 153:13
soul deserts the body, 173:2, 3
spirit is alive, 173:1
sting of sin, 163:11
swallowed up in victory, 154:8
temporal, not a severe punishment,
148:1
undying, 160:1
unavoidable, 161:7

Volume III/5
Volume III/5

where, death, is your sting? 151:7; 154:8, 12, 17; 155:1, 2; 163:7, 9, 10; 169:13; 179A:5; 182:5
who will deliver from the body, . . . , 154:15, 16, 17; 155:15; 163A:3; 179A:7
wise according to the flesh, 155:11
without death, human body is good, 155:15
wretched man that I am. . . , 163:12
deceivers and flatterers, 163B:5
deeds, law of, 152:5
deformity: faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5
delight(s):
  flesh and mind, 159:6
good and evil, 169:8
heart; truth, 179:6
in justice, 159:2, 5
in law of God, 179A:7
in the Lord, 153:10
lawful and unlawful, 159:2
love and, 159:3
Spirit of God in you, 155:14
unlawful lust, 155:9
demons:
  believe and tremble, 158:6; 162A:4; 183:13
  faith of, 168:2
  only believe; do not love, 162A:4
depth, 165:5, 9
desire:
  consenting to evil desires, 152:2-3; 154A:4
  prayer for understanding, 152:1
  for riches, 177:6, 7
despair:
  justice will be realized, 170:9
  Paul’s word to the sick, 176:4
devil:
  see also demons
doughter of Canaanite woman, 154A:5
evangelization, 183:6
  eny, 170:3
  hating, 149:18
  never ordered to love, 149:16
  passing blame to, 163B:5
  prince of death, 152:9
  prince of this world, 170:4
  Samaritan parable, 171:2
  struggle against powers, 167A:1
  struggle with, 158:4
  world in captivity, 163:3
Dionysius the Areopagite, 150:2
discipline, 164:11; 164A:3; 178:5
disease: dropsy, 177:6
dishonesty: sale of property, 148:1
doctor, not needed by the healthy, 156:2; 175:5
dog: Jesus and the Canaanite woman, 154A:5
Donatists, 162A:1, 162A:7, 8, 9, 10, 12;
  164A:1, 10, 13-15; 182:9, 10; 183:11
drunkenness, 151:4
duty: each to carry his own burden,
  163B:2
E
earnest, or pledge, 156:16
eating: Jewish observances re meat, 149:5
Elizabeth, 169:6
end of the world: last day, 170:10
enemy:
  coals of fire on his head, 149:19
  command to love, 164A:2
  hate/love; old/new covenants, 149:15, 16, 18
  overcoming, 151:3
  praying for, 167A:2
  envy, 170:3
Epicureans, 150:3, 5, 6, 7-9; 156:7, 10
eternal life:
  blessed life, 150:10
  calm assurance in praying for, 154A:6
  desire directed to nothing else, 170:10
  prayer; perseverance, 154A:6
  two dwellings: fire and kingdom, 161:4
eternal punishment, 148:2
fear of adulterer, 161:8
eternity: nothing compares with good things of, 173:1
eucharist: eating and drinking unworthily, 164:11
Eunomians, 182:7; 183:6
faith: all good things come from God, 168:3
  arriving at the final vision, 159:1
F
faith:
  all good things come from God, 168:3
  arriving at the final vision, 159:1

dionysius the areopagite, 150:2
discipline, 164:11; 164A:3; 178:5
disease: dropsy, 177:6
dishonesty: sale of property, 148:1
doctor, not needed by the healthy, 156:2; 175:5
dog: Jesus and the Canaanite woman, 154A:5
Donatists, 162A:1, 162A:7, 8, 9, 10, 12; 164A:1, 10, 13-15; 182:9, 10; 183:11
drunkenness, 151:4
duty: each to carry his own burden, 163B:2
edemon(s):
  believe and tremble, 158:6; 162A:4; 183:13
  faith of, 168:2
  only believe; do not love, 162A:4
  depth, 165:5, 9
desire:
  consenting to evil desires, 152:2-3; 154A:4
  prayer for understanding, 152:1
  for riches, 177:6, 7
despair:
  justice will be realized, 170:9
  Paul’s word to the sick, 176:4
edevil:
  see also demons
doughter of Canaanite woman, 154A:5
evangelization, 183:6
  envy, 170:3
  hating, 149:18
  never ordered to love, 149:16
  passing blame to, 163B:5
  prince of death, 152:9
  prince of this world, 170:4
  Samaritan parable, 171:2
  struggle against powers, 167A:1
  struggle with, 158:4
  world in captivity, 163:3
believing without having seen, 158:5, 8
Christ asleep in the boat, 163B:6
courage, 163A:1
demons and saints, 168:2
demons believe, and tremble, 158:6
gift of God, 168:8
gift of God's mercy, 168:1-8
having, not having charity, 162A:1, 4
hope of eternal salvation, 170:8
in/visible things, 159:3
Jesus and the Canaanite woman, 154A:5
justice and, 158:4; 169:9
justice given by God for, 156:4
justice in faith in Christ, 170:7
mercy and faithfulness, 168:3
obtained from God, 169:12
parents and infants, 174:8
peace, charity come only from God, 168:3
pray for those who have not yet come to believe, 168:8
pray in faith, to obtain faith, 168:5
promise to those who believe, 163:11
promise, and doer, 156:2
tears dried by joy of, 172:3
walking by faith, not sight, 158:8
will prepared receptacle for, 173:2
walking by faith, not sight, 163:3
striiving with the mind, 154A:1
struggling against the mind, 163A:2
thinking as enmity of God, 155:10
thinking of, is death, 156:6
trusting in lust, 155:12
falsehood, see lie; swearing
fainting, 150:7
Father: Abba, Father, 156:15, 16
fear:
authority to kill both body and soul, 161:8
chaste, slavish, 161:9
looks to punishment, 162A:4
less of temporal things, 161:7
may lead to love, 161:8
more charity; less fear, 161:8-9
pedagogue of the law, 161:8
slave of charity, 156:14
feathers on birds, 164:7
fidelity, beauty of, 159:7
flatterers, 163B:5
flaw:
see also lust; sin; spirit
condemnation: Christ, 155:2, 3
conscience and the mind, 154A:3
consenting to desires of, 152:2-3
debtors to, 156:1-17
delight/consent in evil, 154:14
delights of, 159:6
fighting against the mind, 154A:2;
154A:4
in God I will hope, 154:12
infirmity, 155:9
law of God weakened through, 155:7
law of, vs law of mind, 163:12
led by lusts of, 151:2
life from the soul, 156:6
lusts against spirit, 155:15; 163A:2
pleasing God not possible in, 155:12
pleasures; blessedness, 156:7
.presumptuously relying on, 153:8
.prisoner, 154:11
.putting one's trust in, 169:4
.restored after resurrection, 169:12
.serve God in spirit, 169:1
.serving the law of sin, 151:8; 154:9;
155:1, 2
signifies "man," 153:8
.sins, the law working in our members,
153:1; 154:14; 154A:1; 155:3
small good, 156:6
Son of God in likeness of, 152:1-11
soul, the life of the body, 161:6; 18:8
.Spirit of God dwelling in you, 155:13
struggling with, 158:4
struggle with spirit, 163:6; 163A:2
thinking as enmity of God, 155:10
.thinking of, is death, 156:6
.trusting in lust, 155:12
.warfare: putting its doings to death,
156:9-10
wise according to, is death, 155:11
.works manifest, 162:1
.works of, 163:2
.foolish man: building on sand, 179:8
.foolish virgins: give us some of your oil,
149:12; 163B:6
.foolishness: false wisdom, 150:9
.foot, thorn in, 162A:5
.forgiveness:
.pardoning others, 179A:7
.forgiveness of sin:
.body of Christ, 149:6, 7
.Christ's blood shed for, 152:10
.contract with God: as we forgive, 181:8
cross of Christ, 181:7
.forgive us our debts, 181:6-8

Volume III/5
Sermons 148-183

fornication, 161:1
shunned, 162:3
sin against one’s own body, 162:1-4
universal and specific, 162:4
whole person absorbed in, 162:2
forswearing, 180:1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 8, 10
found things must be returned, 178:7-9
free will:
  grace and, 156:13; 165:1-9
  help from the Holy Spirit, 156:12
  lusts of the flesh, 155:13
  not all needed to do God’s will, 165:1
  freedom: promise to faithful slave, 159:5
future life:
  hope for, 157:6
  life following death, 150:7

g
Gentiles:
  body of Christ, 149:7
  grafted; wild olive, 162A:9
  Jesus and the Canaanite woman, 154A:5
  Peter’s vision (Acts 10), 149:6, 8
gifts of the Holy Spirit, 162A:4
glorification, 158:1-9
glory:
  cross of Christ, 160:4, 6
  swearing “by your glory,” 180:5
God:
  see also Holy Spirit; Son of God;
  Trinity
give to God what belongs to God, 168:5
glory, in your conscience, 163B:6
how magnificent are his works, 165:5
life of the soul, 156:6; 161:6; 180:8
light of, 162A:3
makes space for himself in us, 163:1
mercy; chastising the world, 171:5
one spirit: attaching self to God, 179A:4
presiding in judgment, 162A:7
remote by unlikeness, 171:3
seeing the face of, and living, 170:9
serve God in spirit, not in flesh, 169:1
supreme good, 156:6
thirsting for, 158:7
unsearchable ways of, 155:8
gold:
  avarice, 177:10
  flee from, 177:3
  going after, 178:7
  love of, 179A:4
  not preferred to justice, 159:6
  good and evil:
    deliver us from evil, 182:4
    evil in loving self, 179A:4
    good life now, eternal life later,
      154A:6
    good that I will; bad that I do,
      151:1-8; 152:1; 154:2, 8, 9, 13;
      154A:1-6; 156:1
    happy life, 150:4
    human error and weakness, 182:6
    malice and misery, 167:1-4
    one with charity cannot live bad life,
      162A:4
    overcoming evil with good, 149:19
    sun rises on the good and the bad,
      164A:3, 4
warfare of holy people, 151:7
warfare: spirit and flesh, 152:4
wolf among sheep, 178:10
good will: God’s calling came first, 176:5
  good works:
    see also Alms
cmdand to the rich, 164:8
dependence on God, 156:13
done by charity alone, 165:4
happiness in, 150:4
left knowing what right is doing,
  149:15
let works shine before men, 149:11-14
motive: fear or love, 156:14
praise as motive, 163B:5
result of love, 156:5
rich in, 177:10
grace:
  abounding, 163:10; 170:2
  changed for the better by, 163:1
  children of God; avarice, 177:2
death and children, 165:9
defeating lust of the flesh, 163A:3
deliverance from body of this death,
  154A:1, 2, 6; 163:12; 163A:3;
  179A:7
faith and, 156:5
free will and, 165:1-9
has not been idle, 168:7
hope, 151:8
justice and, 169:11
man set free by, 174:2
medicine, 156:5
Sermons 148-183

merit, 169:3; 170:5
perfected in weakness, 163:8
power of the Spirit, 165:2
reality of, 156:13
saved through faith, 169:3
where sin abounded, 155:4
grafting the wild olive, 162A:9
gratitude: ungrateful for good deeds, 164:8
greed:
see also avarice
impurity of, 163:2
left hand of the spirit, 149:15
root of all evil, 179A:5
taming, 178:6
grief:
and consolation, 172:1, 3
heart cured by, 173:2
guilt:
canceled by baptism, 152:3
degrees of, 179A:5
guilty tongue from guilty mind, 180:2

H

habit:
opposing bad habits, 151:4
stronger, 180:12
Hagar, 152:7
hands: left knowing what right is doing, 149:15

happiness:
see also delight; joy; pleasure
bodily pleasure, 150:5; 156:7
desires of a happy person, 150:10
Epicureans and Stoics on, 150:5, 8-9; 156:7
good and evil, 150:4
human search for, 150:5
joy and laughter, 150:10
Paul vs the philosophers, 156:7
philosophers and Christians, 150:4; 156:7
virtue; blessed life, 150:9
hardheartedness, 178:3
harlot, 161:1, 2; 162:1, 2
hate: do good to those who hate you, 164A:4
healing: run to Jesus to be healed, 176:5
health:
Donatus, 162A:7
human nature wounding itself, 156:2
members of the body, 162A:6
precious, 162A:6
heart:
delight of, 179:6
evil thoughts in closet of, 177:11
inner beauty, 161:12
lift up your hearts, 169:16; 176:6; 177:8, 9
moor yourself above, 177:8
nothing concealed from God, 179:6
sinning in, 165:6
height, 165:4
heresy:
all deny Christ’s coming in the flesh, 183:13
denial that Christ came in the flesh, 182:2, 3, 7; 183:1-15
hoarding, 178:2
Holy Spirit:
body, the temple of, 161:2, 6; 162:1
bringing life to mortal bodies, 155:15
charity of God, 156:14
cleansing what he touches, 162A:3
director in doing good things, 156:13
do not believe every spirit, 182:1
dwelling in you, 155:13
finger of God, 155:3, 5; 156:14
fruits of, 163A:4
gift: speaking in all languages, 162A:11
gives life, 152:7
good for those led by, 156:11-12
law of the Spirit and life, 152:5, 7
led by the Spirit, 151:2
lie punished by, 148:1
love of God poured in our hearts, 156:5; 163:1; 169:10, 15
love the fruit of, 163A:4
Mary’s conception, 153:14
Pentecost, 155:6; 156:14
pledge of, 170:10
power of grace, 165:2
receive this rich guest, 169:15
refuge in assistance of, 163:11
sets some hearts prophesying, 162A:3
sons of God are led by, 156:10

Volume III/5
Spirit of God; Spirit of Christ, 155:13
honesty: things found must be returned, 178:7-9
hope:
being in the spirit, 153:9
consolation on the journey, 158:8
faith and eternal salvation, 170:8
faith working through love, 158:7
grace, 151:8
head of body of the Church, 157:3
hope that can be seen, 157:1-6; 158:8
joy saved by, 157:4
lift up your hearts; the cross, 165:4
love and a good conscience, 158:6
place in God, not in self, 165:1
hospitality:
angels entertained unawares, 179:3
done unto Christ, 179:3
human characteristic, 174:1
Mary and Martha, 179:3
ministering to bodily needs, 179:4
human body:
as supreme good, 150:7
body of death, 151:5
dead because of sin, 155:14
God's creature, 180:8
members each have proper duty, 162A:5
soul the life of, 180:8
temple of the Holy Spirit, 161:2, 6; 162:1
human condition:
carnal and spiritual, 154:7-8
fault; punishment; mortality, 171:3
plight: law of sin in members, 154A:1; 155:3
human life: shortness of, 154:15
human nature: wounding itself, 156:2
humility:
Christ crucified, 160:3
Christ's way of the cross, 174:3
do good to the humble, 164A:3
humble sinner better than proud just man, 170:7
learn from Christ, 164:7
lying for sake of, 181:4
pride in cross of Christ, 160:5
Saul turned into Paul, 168:6
Saul/Paul, 169:5
sitting as sign of, 179:3
valleys: apostles after Pentecost, 175:3
hunger: absent in heaven, 179:6
husband and wife:
quarreling, 152:4
struggle with good and evil, 154A:4
idols, 163:1
imitation of Christ, 167A:2
immortality, 155:15; 169:12; 179:4; 182:5
mankind and angels, 154:4
no lust remaining, 151:8
imperishability, 169:12; 179:4; 182:5
incarnation:
flesh assumed on behalf of flesh, 155:7, 8
form of servant added, 183:5
mission to the human race, 174:2
Son of God emptied himself, 183:5
infants:
considered as orphans, 174:9
crying by the newborn, 167:1
dead because of sin, 165:7, 9
Infant baptism: original sin, 165:7; 176:2
Jesus is Christ to the baptized, 174:7
newborn burdened with first man's sin, 174:9
prophecy: life of toil or fear, 167:1
sin, 165:7
sin contracted from parents, 181:1
sinning in the womb, 165:8
Israel: Passover; the Church, 155:5-6
Jerusalem, 169:5; 183:14
preaching the gospel began from, 162A:12
Jesus:
see also cross; incarnation; mystical body; redemption; resurrection asleep in the boat/heart, 163B:6
breath come down from heaven, 179:5
breaking the hold of sin; A dam, 151:5
bridegroom of the Church, 183:10, 11
burdens: learn from me, 164:7
came to save sinners, 174:1, 6, 8; 175:1-9; 176:1, 2
can you drink the cup. . . , 160:5
Christ for all believing infants, 174:7
confessing that he came in the flesh, 182:3, 6; 183:1-15
cross; forgiveness of sin, 181:7
crucified; a stumbling block, 174:3
daughter of Canaanite woman, 154A:5
denies on his promises, 158:2
deny the Incarnation, 182:2, 7
did not reckon it robbery, . . . , 183:5
doctor comes for the sick, 175:5
doctor; passion and death, 175:2-3
Father, forgive them, 175:3, 4
first day: head of the Church, 170:10
forbearance with sinners, 176:4
forgiveness of sins, 149:6
glory begotten from the Father, 174:2
head of the body, 161:1
immoveable, yet running, on the cross, 167A:2
knife of circumcision, 160:6
let this cup pass from me, . . . , 160:5
likeness of the flesh of sin, 183:12
love of enemies, 149:16
made "sin" for us, 152:10, 11: 155:8
mediator of God and men, 156:5; 174:2
nature in its purity, 174:2
near to us, 171:2, 5
necessary that he suffer and rise, 183:11
neighbor to us, 171:3
passion and death: his Father's will, 170:4
patience in his passion and death, 157:3
perfection of the law, 160:7
poor people and, 164A:4
poverty; became poor, 169:2
present everywhere, 171:1, 3
recognizing in those reborn, 174:9
resurrection: hesitation of disciples, 162A:10
sacrifice for sin, 152:11; 155:8
Samaritan: guardian of the weak, 171:2
sees you, wherever you go, 161:2
sin absent in, 170:3
sin condemned by, 152:10
sinless, 152:9
Son of God made sin for us, 152:10
Son of man, Son of God, 174:2
sons of Zebedee and, 160:5
speaks the truth, put on Christ, 166:2-4
surpassing eminence of, 169:6
tax paid by, 155:7
treasure: knowing Christ crucified, 160:3
trial a matter of patience, not guilt, 170:3
true Passover, 155:5
virtue; delight, 150:9
world; became poor, 169:2
watches men struggling with conscience, 154A:3
way of the cross; humility, 174:3
weeping for Lazarus, 173:2
welcoming him into our hearts, 174:5
witnessing by leading good lives, 183:15
word both human and divine, 174:1
Jews:
boasting about the law, 156:4
broken off from the Church, 162A:9
laws on eating meat, 149:3-5
left on the mountains, 175:1
new covenant rejected by, 160:1
tribes remaining attached to temple, 169:5
zeal, not according to knowledge, 160:2, 7; 169:10
John the Baptist, 182:5; 183:10
joy:
laughter and, 150:10
rejoice in the Lord, 171:1-5
saved by hope, 157:4
world or the Lord, 171:1, 4
Judas, 152:10
judgment:
character of others, 178:1, 3
entering into, with your servant, 170:6
God presiding in, 162A:7
mercy and, 170:6; 179A:1, 6
no one justified in God's sight, 179A:1
trial of Crispinus, 162A:8
justice:
angelic, 154:4
boasting in divine, 160:1
circumcision stands for, 169:2
conduct self with reproach, 169:6, 7
delight should prevail, 159:5
divine, 155:8
enjoyable sweetness of, 159:7
establishing one's own, 160:2
faith and, 158:4; 169:9
faith in Christ Jesus, 170:7

Volume III/5
fulfilled through the Spirit, 152:9
given by God, for faith, 156:4
gold and, 159:6
grace and, 169:11
human will and God’s justice, 169:13
hungering for, 179:7
ignorant of the justice of God, 160:2, 7
Jesus justifies the ungodly, 160:7
law and, 170:1-11
law of God and, 156:2, 3
love lacking, 169:9
love of, 178:11
love; the interior senses, 159:4
martyrs, perfect lovers of, 159:8
measure ourselves by, 170:7
nations seize hold of, 169:8
performing to be seen by men, 149:14
required to love, 159:2
resurrection of the dead, 170:7
wishing to establish one’s own, 169:10, 11
justification, 158:1-9; 159:1-9
meaning of, 158:4
no living person justified in God’s sight, 170:8
progress and growth, 158:5
resurrection of Christ and, 169:13
thanks for, 159:9

K
keys: Peter and Paul, 149:7
killing and eating, 149:2, 5
kindness: universal, 164A:3
kingdom of God:
  immoral persons excluded from, 161:3
  kings, 149:17
knock and it will be opened, 163B:2

L
lamb of God, 152:9
laziness: burden of, 164:5
length, 165:4
lepers: ten cleansed, 176:1
letter kills, 163:10
libido, 162:2
lie (liar; lying):
  see also perjury
    confessing sin for sake of humility, 181:4
  every man a liar, 166:1-4
  fear of lying, 181:4
mouth that kills the soul, 161:5
punished by the Holy Spirit, 148:1
putting aside lying . . . , 166:1

composed by Spirit of God, 155:3
degrees of seriousness, 179A:2
dread, 166:4
duty, 163:12
given through Moses, 153:2, 3
goodness of, 170:2
guilty of a point; guilty of all, 179A:1-8
help needed in fulfilling, 156:4
Holy, 154:1, 4; 163:10; 169:6, 7
judged by law of liberty, 179A:2
justice and, 170:1-11
justified in us, 155:9
laid down for transgression, 156:4
law of mind vs law of sin, 179A:7
law of sin and death, 152:3, 5, 7;
  153:12; 154:1; 155:3, 4
lawful use of, 156:3
lawsuit, 167:3, 4
leading to Christ, 156:3, 4
letter and life, 152:7
lust in, 154A:2
mind struggles for; flesh against, 154A:2
not to cure; to prove sickness, 170:2
old: sacrifices offered for sin, 152:11
part of the promise, 156:2
Paul’s coming to Christ, 169:7
pedagogue, 156:3
power of sin is the law, 163:10
reduced to ten commandments, 179A:3
secular; trial of Caecilian, 164:12
so delinquency might abound, 163:10
spiritual, 154:6
symbolic sign of future realities, 149:3
tablets of the heart, 155:4, 6; 156:14
weakened through the flesh, 155:7

Sermons 148-183
life: blessed and eternal, 150:10
light:
  deliver us from darkness, 182:5
  need of enlightenment, 182:5
linen sheet (Peter’s vision), 149:9-10
listening:
  humility, 179:2
  Mary and Martha, 179:3-6
  preacher listening inwardly, 179:7
  reward or punishment, 162A:9
living stones, 156:13
Lord’s Prayer: forgive us our debts, 181:6-8
love:
  being loved, 174:4
  branch bearing fruit, 162A:7
  charity and faith, 168:2-3
  charity: fullness of the law, 179A:3
  charity is free, 156:14
  commandment: love God with whole heart, 149:18
  commandments (the first three), 179A:3-4
  deeds worthless without charity, 169:15
  enemies; the devil, 149:16, 18
  faith, hope, and love, 158:7
  faith or prophecy, without charity, 162A:1, 2, 3, 4
  faith works through, 172:2
  fan the spark of, 178:11
  fear may lead to, 161:8
  fruit of the Spirit, 163A:4
  fullness of the law: charity, 169:10
  gift of God, 156:5
  giving one’s life for a friend, 183:14
  God as reward of, 158:7
  God loved only by virtue of God’s gift, 169:14
  good works as result of, 156:5
  greatest virtue, 158:9
  health of the members of the body, 162A:6
  hope and a good conscience, 158:6
  imitation of Christ, 167A:2
  justice; invisible beauty, 159:8
  law of charity, law of Christ, 163B:2
  less fear, more charity, 161:8-9
  looks to reward, 162A:4
  love, and do whatever you wish, 163B:3
  love God, and others for his sake, 179A:8
  loving selves badly, 179A:4
  members of the body; analogy, 162A:5
  most important commandments, 171:2
  neighbor, 149:18
  neighbor included in God loved wholly, 179A:3-4
  neighbor (seven commandments), 179A:3-4
of God: what is a good life, 154A:6
offending against charity; guilty of everything, 179A:5
our connection with the head, Christ, 162A:5
  perfect, casts out fear, 161:9
  persons with lesser/greater gifts and, 162A:6
  poured into our hearts by the Spirit, heart, 163:1
  power of dishonest love, 161:10
  right hand of the Spirit, 149:15
  root of all good works, 179A:5
  rooted/founded in charity, 162A:7; 165:2
  rule: lone one who is by nature better (God), 179A:4
  sharing in Christ’s suffering, 169:14, 15
  single-minded pursuit of, 158:6
  spiritual affection for the dead, 172:3
  testing our love for God, 178:11
  things one delights in, 159:3
  unwilling to do what is displeasing, 161:9
  who will separate us from Christ, 158:9
width of charity, 165:4
wings of charity, 164:7
without charity I am nothing, 162A:3
lust:
  see also flesh
  adultery in heart, 179:7
  conquered by, 153:9
  consent to, 151:7; 152:3; 155:1
  deny lust its weapons, 163A:2
  do not carry through, 163:1, 6; 163A:1-4
  do not go after lusts, 151:3-4, 6, 8; 153:5-6, 9, 13; 154:1; 155:9
doing by desiring, consenting, or accomplishing, 154:10
fight against, 163:12
mosaic law, 153:6
origin, 151:5
pleasure, 153:10
repressed by fear, 169:8
slay lust in yourself, 163A:4
walking according to the flesh, 155:9, 10
willing is not accomplishing, 154:12
you shall not lust, 154:3, 8, 9, 10; 163:10; 169:8
lying, see lie

M
make-up; body ornaments, 161:11
malice: makes days evil, 167:1
man (theology):
created without our knowing it, 169:13
saved human beings, 176:5
Manichees, 151:3; 152:4, 6; 153:1, 2, 5; 155:11; 163A:3; 170:2; 182:1ff; 183:1
mankind:
moderation prescribed for, 156:2
no boasting in, 160:1
marriage, 161:11
Mary and Martha, see Mary and Martha
martyr(s):
hope, 158:8
martyrdom not heroic if death is not bitter, 173:2
perfect lovers of justice, 159:8
perfection, 159:1
pleasing God, 155:12
praying for, an insult, 159:1
true martyr: charity, 169:15
Mary and Martha:
eating the one listened to, 179:5
listening to word of Christ, 179:3-6
Mary, enjoying truth, 179:5, 6
reward for Martha's part, 179:4
the better part, 169:17
what Mary chose was growing, 179:6
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Holy Spirit coming to, 153:14
virginity of, 170:3
materialistic thoughts, 177:10
meat: eating; Peter's vision, 149:2-3
meekness:
hear and rejoice, 155:4
hope, patience, 157:2
mercy:
draw upon the Lord's mercy, 170:6
faith as gift of God, 168:1
grant us your salvation, 163:4
judgment and, 170:6; 179A:1, 6
obtained, in order to be faithful, 168:3
merit:
al owed to Christ, 176:6
grace, 169:3; 170:5
winning, for the dead, 172:2
mind:
beaten by the flesh, 154A:2
conscience and the flesh, 154A:3
delights of, 159:6
law of, vs law of flesh, 163:12
mastery over the flesh, 155:2
members fighting against law of, 155:14
serving the law of God, 151:8; 154:9; 155:1, 2; 156:10
misery, 167:1
mistakes: Donatists, 164:14
moderation, 156:2
money:
lovers of self, 179A:4
sufficient for present needs, 177:3, 5, 11
whatever is spent, it's the Lord's money, 179A:8
mortality: journey, 177:3
Moses, 155:6
law of, see law
seeing the face of God, 170:9
mystical body:
bodies are members of Christ, 161:1-12
head is in heaven, 162A:5
health of members of, 162A:6
hope in head of the body, 157:3
sing to the Lord a new song, 163:4

N
Nathanael, 154A:5; 174:4
neighbor:
command to love, 149:18; 179A:3-4
Samaritan parable, 171:2
new covenant:
sing to the Lord a new song, 163:4
Sermons 148-183

O
oath: see also swearing by your glory (an oath), 180:5 demanded, or freely offered, 180:10 God swears, 180:2, 3 swearing no oath at all is safe, 180:4 using oaths, 180:6

obedience: fear as motive, 169:8

olive tree, 162A:9

original sin:
conceived in iniquity, 170:4 contracted sin, 170:2 death and, 173:2 death passed into all; infants, 165:9 infants, 181:1 infection from Adam, 176:2 infirm descendants, 156:2 law of, 151:5 newborn burdened with first man’s sin, 174:9 passed through to all men, 153:14 pride: the serpent, 163:8 sin through the commandment, 153:11 their eyes were opened, 151:5 whole race contained in Adam, 175:1

orphans: bishops as guardians of, 176:2

P
pagan: do not rob a pagan, 178:5

pardon:
forgive, and be forgiven, 179A:1 self cheated by not pardoning, 179A:7

Passover, 179:6
see also Pentecost

Israel and the Church, 155:5-6

patience:
hope in future life, 157:2 repentance, 149:18 resurrection of Christ, 175:3 tribulation, 159:1 wisdom, 153:1

Paul, Saint:
see also Saul

bodily activity, 162:1 circumcision, 169:5 conversion, 175:8 debate with philosophers, 150:5 first of sinners, 175:5-7; 176:3

flesh and spirit, 154:7 formerly a persecutor, 149:14
goal in flesh of, 163:8 horrified at his own justice, 169:10 humbled, 154:6 infirmity of body, not spirit, 169:10


peace:
carry the feathers of, 164:7 faith and, 168:2

goal of all good desires, 168:2-3

Pelagians, 153:1; 154:1; 155:1; 156:13; 158:1; 163A:3; 165:1; 169:1; 174:1; 176:1; 181:1-8; 183:12

Pentecost:
Church speaking in all languages, 175:3 fire and sound, 155:6

perfection:
angelic, 154:4
growing in charity, 179A:5 martyrs, 159:1 not to lust, 154:8

presumptuous, 170:8 progress in justification, 158:5 travelers, 169:18

perjury, 180:2, 3 none unpunished, 180:8 punished by God, 180:13 self-destruction, 180:11

persecution:
loyal Christians, 167:2 praying for persecutors, 149:17

perseverance:
calling on God for, 168:5 Jesus and daughter of Canaanite woman, 154A:5 prayer; eternal life, 154A:6 standing as sign of, 179:3

Peter, Saint:

Volume III/5
blessed for his belief, 158:6
Church represented by, 149:7
faith is the rock, 183:14
faith of, 168:2
sin of, 175:5
vision (Acts 10), 149:1-10
you are the Christ, 183:3, 4, 13, 14
Pharisées, 169:5; 170:10
philosophers: foolish; proud, 160:3
Photini ans, 182:7, 183:8
piety: journey, 177:7
pleasing: dis/pleasing God/others, 163B:5
pleasure:
  bodily, 150:5; 156:7
  chasing; lust, 153:6
  delight in the senses, 159:2
  happiness; the philosophers vs Paul, 156:7
  lust, 153:10; 155:1
  temporal, 157:5
pledge, or earnest, 156:16
plunderer, 178:2, 4, 9
poor:
  Christ is found in, 178:4
  peers of the rich, 177:7
poverty:
  burden of riches, 164:9
  Jesus emptied himself, becoming man, 169:2
praise:
  flatterers or deceivers, 163B:5
  let every spirit praise the Lord, 182:3
  motive for good deeds, 163B:5
  praise of God, 153:10
prayer:
  Christian prays and is heard, 175:3
  minor sins cleansed by, 179A:6
  pray always, 163:12
  pray to obtain faith, 168:5
  to God the Father, 183:15
  tomorrow we die, 150:7
preaching:
  danger to preacher, 179:1
  do what they say, not what they do, 179:10
  listening inwardly, 179:7
pride, 179:2
predestination, 158:1-9
presence of God:
  wholly there for all and each, 179A:4
  pride:
  apostatize from God, 162:4
beginning of all sin, 162:4
cross of Christ, 160:5, 7
doings of the flesh and, 156:10
flattering self, 175:9
humble sinner better than proud just man, 170:7
justice from one's own law, 169:9
original sin, 163:8
Paul the apostle, 154:5, 6
riches and, 177:7
separation from the Church, 162A:9
solid rock of truth versus, 179:2
will taken over by, 174:2
priesthood: oath: eternal priesthood, 180:2
priests: vest selves with justice, 169:11
prodigal son:
  returning to himself, . . . , 179A:4
promise:
  all things locked up under sin, 163:11
  trust in, 158:2
prophecy:
  false prophets, 182:1, 2
  having, not having charity, 162A:1, 2, 3
  touched by the Spirit, 162A:3
prophets:
  Samuel, the most distinguished, 162A:2
punishment:
  death as, 148:1
  fear of, 156:14; 161:8, 9, 10; 169:8; 178:11
  going unpunished as, 171:5
mortality, 171:3
redeeming the time, 167:1, 3-4
redemption:
  Christ came to save sinners, 175:1, 5, 7; 176:1.2
  necessary for God to be human, 174:1
  love of enemies, 149:19
repentance:
  patience, 149:18
  prodigal son; return to beauty, 177:9
  switch from the ninety-nine to the hundred, 175:4
  tears as a requirement, 175:2
resurrection (of Jesus):
Sermons 148-183

Christ gave a sample of, 175:3
eternal day promised by, 169:3
recognize power of Christ's, 169:12
resurrection of the body, 154:16, 17;
154A:4
resurrection of the dead:
belief in, 173:2
justice; conformed to Christ's death, 169:16
justice from faith in Christ, 170:7
Paul's preaching at Athens, 150:2
rich(es); rich people:
being and wanting, 177:5, 6, 7
burden of poverty, 164:9
command: be rich in good works, 164:8
crime: being hardhearted, 178:3
even, in whatever circumstances, 177:7
placing hopes in uncertainty, 177:8, 9
poor as peers of, 177:7
putting up new, larger barns, 178:2
stinginess, 178:3
storing up treasure, 177:5
ture rich are the rich of God, 177:7
within, 177:4
robbery, see theft

S
sabbath: observance commanded, 179A:3
Sabellians, 183:7
sacrifice: animals; Jewish law, 149:3
saints:
battle; warfare, 151:7
faith of, 168:2
justice of the mountains, 155:8
salvation:
Christ came to save sinners, 174:8
faith and hope, 170:8
for nothing you will save them, 169:3
grace of faith, 169:3
proclaim day from day, 163:4
proclaim his glory among the nations, 163:5
Samaritan:
Christ, guardian of the weak, 171:2
victim aided by, 179A:7
Samuel, 162A:2
Saul, King, 162A:2; 169:6
persecutor of David, 175:8
Saul (later Paul), 162A:3
cured by Christ, 175:9
kicking against the goad, 158:1
Paul as first sinner, 175:7, 8
persecutor into apostle, 175:9
persecutor obtained mercy, 168:4
persecutor of the Church, 149:17;
169:8, 9
prefigured in King Saul, 175:8
turned into Paul, 168:6
why are you persecuting me? 169:9;
170:9
wolf among sheep, 175:8
savior, not needed by the healthy, 156:2
schisms, 183:10
secret: nothing concealed from God, 179:7
self: invisible riches, 161:11
self-love: find yourself in loving God, 179A:4
senses:
delight in bodily, 159:2
love; the interior senses, 159:4
servile work, 179A:3
severity, or truth, 171:5
shame, 174:3
Adam and Eve, 151:5
sheep:
sheep of the house of Israel, 154A:5
lost, 173:2
midst of wolves, 175:8; 178:10
sight, see Beatific Vision
Simeon, 163:4
sin:
see also conscience; consent;
forgiveness of sin; fornication;
guilt; original sin
abounding, 170:2
be angry and sin not, 179A:7
body dead because of, 155:14
Christ is denied by deeds, 183:10
Christ the cleanser of, 174:4
condemned by Jesus, 152:10
dead; hidden, 153:9, 13
dead as deserts of, 155:7
death as sin, 153:13
deceiving ourselves re non-sinfulness, 162:9
delight in, 159:6
doctor needed by the sick, 176:2
don't break the Lord's nets, 164:11
drag on the spirit, 152:5

Volume III/5
each accountable for his own sins, 163B:2
forgive us our debts, 181:6-8
grace and, 155:4
if we say we have no sin. . . , 181:1-8
immoderate use of God's gifts, 149:2
infants and, 165:7
Jesus as sacrifice for, 155:8
Jesus is without sin, 170:3
Jesus, the Lamb of God, 152:9
law of mind vs law of sin, 179A:7
law of sin and death, 152:3, 5, 7;
153:12; 154:1; 155:3, 4
lust: power to reign, 155:1, 2
mind vs flesh, 151:6
minor sins cleansed by prayer, 179A:6
no one can live without, 181:1
not I, but sin living in me, 154:11
not treated according to our sins,
171:5
outside the body, 162:2
pardon: 164:4
passions of sins which come through
the law, 153:1, 3-4, 8
power of sin is the law, 163:10
proneness to, 151:1
sacrifices (old law), 152:11
scripture locked up all things under,
163:11
sickness: cry for the doctor, 170:5
sinning in heaven, 165:6
sins as burdens, 164:4
slave of sin, 156:12; 161:9
sting of death, 151:7; 179A:5; 182:5
thoughts are also deeds, 170:3
transgression, 170:2
sinners:
all offend against charity, 179A:5
almsgiving, 164A:3
considerate treatment of, 164A:4
excluded from kingdom of God, 161:3
frown of the Lord on, 161:2, 3
humble sinner better than proud just
man, 170:7
Jesus came to save, 174:1, 6, 8
lying turns you into thing avoided,
181:5
praised in desires of soul, 163B:5
world, 170:4
sitting: humility, 179:3
slave:
"again in fear," 156:14
faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5
runaway from avarice, 177:3
Sodom, 161:4
Son of God:
see also Jesus Christ; Trinity
confessing his coming in the flesh, 183:4
demons confess, out of fear, 183:13
eemptied himself, 169:2
handed over for us all, 157:2
in likeness of flesh, 152:1-11
in the beginning. . . , 183:4
sonship by adoption, 156:15
soul:
see also body and soul; heart; mind
a great good, 156:6
condition: not God, 182:4
death of the body, 173:2, 3; 180:8
death of, to be feared, 161:5
fear one with authority to kill, 161:8
gives life to flesh, 156:6
God as life of, 156:6
God the life of, 161:6; 180:8
God's creature, 180:8
stench of dead soul, 180:8
spirit(s):
and flesh: discord, 152:4
lusts against flesh, 155:15; 163A:2
recognition, as coming from God,
182:2, 3
struggle with flesh, 163:6; 163A:2
spirits: test whether they are from
God, 182:1-8
walking according to the Spirit, 155:9
Spirit, Holy, see Holy Spirit
spiritual life:
see also Christian life
acted on, and active, 156:11-12
being led, one must follow, 156:13
give God the credit, 175:9
go before his face in confession, 176:5
only God gives growth, 152:1; 153:1
prayer to God the Father, 183:15
standing: perseverance, 179:3
stealing, see theft
Stephen, Saint, 149:16; 168:4
stinginess, 178:3
Sloths, 150:3, 5, 8-9; 156:7, 10
stumbling, 169:10
suffering: sharing in that of Christ,
169:13, 14
swearing:
see also oath

Sermons 148-183
above all do not swear, 180:1-14
Augustine’s habit, 180:10
binding thing named to God, 180:7
calling God as witness, 180:3
God punishes the deceiver, 180:13
God swears, 180:2, 3
great sin to swear falsely, 180:3
infected with evil, 180:12
meaning of “above all,” 180:9, 12
prune it from your tongue, 180:11
put a stop to, 180:14
truth, a narrow ledge, 180:3
yes, yes; no, no, 180:10
swindler, 167:4
sycamores, 174:3

T

talk, evil, 157:1-2
tax, paid by Christ, 155:7
temple:
building, in the baptized, 163:2
living stones, 156:13
tribes (Jews) remaining attached to
temple, 169:5
temporal and eternal:
hope, things not seen, 157:1, 5
temporal goods:
abundance for our enjoyment, 177:8
affection for, 177:2
fear of loss, 161:7
give; receive eternal things, 177:10
loving and lustful, 162:4
woman bent double, 1628
temptation:
deliver us from evil, 152:2
Paul on, 154:7
watching by spiritual people, 163B:4
ten commandments:
one love fulfills all, 179A:3
reduced to two, 179A:3
thanksgiving:
predetermined and justified, 158:3
thief:
grabbing what does not belong to you, 178:6
plunderers, 178:2, 4, 9
self harmed by his action, 179A:7
wishing to give alms with stolen
property, 178:4
thorn in foot, 162A:5
time: price paid for, 167:3

Timothy (apostle), 177:7
tolerance:
carrying each other’s burdens, 163B:2
discipline and, 164:11
tongue: guilt for a guilty mind, 180:2
Torah, see law
treasure: where your heart is, 177:5
trials:
Caecilian, 164:12
Crispinus, the Donatist, 162A:8
Trinity:
see also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus
Christ; Son of God
baptism in name of, 149:10
God alone suffices, 177:9
persons, 156:6
Son alone was judged, 170:3
unchangeable, 182:3
trust: in God, not in one’s own strength,
153:11
trustworthiness, 159:5
truth:
delight in, 153:9
evil preachers of, 179:10
happy life, 150:10
irreligious mind hates truth, 156:1
Mary and Martha; Mary enjoying
truth, 179:5, 6
pride opposed by, 179:2
put on Christ, 166:2-4

U

ugliness: faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5
uncleanness: Peter’s vision, 149:8
understanding, 169:3, 8
desire for is itself a prayer, 152:1
irreligious mind and truth, 156:1
unity:
Christ’s love of, 183:10
one king; one kingdom, 179A:8

V

vice:
acquired by habit; born with guilt,
151:5
harmful to one in which it occurs,
155:10
thinking of the flesh, 155:11
virginity: fulfillment of vow, 148:2
virgins, 161:11
Volume III/5

five foolish virgins, 149:12; 163B:6
love of, 161:12
virtue:
  abundance is praiseworthy, 177:4
delight in, 150:9
vows: fulfillment, 148:2

W
walk by the Spirit, 163:1-12; 163A:1-4
walking, 169:18
  according to the flesh, 155:9, 10; 156:5
water:
rivers of living water, 160:2
  whoever drinks will never thirst, 170:9
width, 165:4
wife, see Husband and wife
will:
  see also free will
justice of God and, 169:13
  prepared receptacle of faith, 173:2
taken over by pride, 174:2
wisdom:
  chewing the cud, 149:4
crying and laughing, 175:2
disposes all things sweetly, 174:1
drink me, thirsty still, 170:9
patience, 153:1
treasure in knowledge of Christ
  crucified, 160:3
witnessing:
  Christ’s coming in the flesh,
  183:14-15
wolf, among sheep, 175:8; 178:10
woman bent double, 162B
word of god:
bad to hear and not do, 179:9
deptths of meaning, 156:1
does, not hearers only, 179:1-10
earnest hearers of, 179:1
faithful and worthy of total
  acceptance, 176
hearing; building upon rock, 179:8
hearing, I rejoice, 179:2
life; no word making a sound, 169:17
quick to hear, slow to speak, 179:1, 2
works of mercy:
death helped by, 172:1, 2
duty, 179A:2
works of the flesh, 162:1; 163:2; 163A:4
world:
  chastised; mercy of God, 171:5
  cleaving to, 162:3
  crucified to you, 160:4
  enemy of God, 162:3
  promises of, 157:1
  rejoice in, 171:1, 4
  sinners, 170:4
  struggle with, 158:4
temporal and eternal concerns, 157:5
universal lust, 162:4
vice of loving it, 177:3
worship:
  creator who can recreate, 176:5
go before his face in confession, 176:5
invitation to, 176:1
wrongdoing:
dealing with one caught in, 163B:1-6

Z
Zacchaeus, 174:2-6
Zachary, 169:6
zeal, 169:5, 10
Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Sermons 184-229Z are on the Liturgical Seasons.

Includes:

**Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People**
*(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))*

Volume III/6  Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-050-6, 6 x 9 in., 357 pp., 1993
### Old Testament

#### Genesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>214, 2, 5; 223A, 1, 2; 225, 1; 229G, 6; 229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>223A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-5</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-5</td>
<td>223, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>225, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>229S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25-26</td>
<td>229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>224, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>228B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>224, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>229G, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>224, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>224, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:25-29</td>
<td>229F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:26</td>
<td>229F, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:9</td>
<td>218, 12; 223C, 1; 223F, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Exodus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>223A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>223A, 5; 229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>223E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>210, 8; 229M, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Deuteronomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>215, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Kings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:29</td>
<td>196A, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>223A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>216, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>210, 5; 223E, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>218, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>213, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10-11</td>
<td>200, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>185, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>223B, 2; 223C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>189, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>229G, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>223K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3-4</td>
<td>223I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:5</td>
<td>213, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>194, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:7</td>
<td>216, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>210, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:28</td>
<td>221, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:43-44</td>
<td>204, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:45</td>
<td>229F, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>200, 1; 201, 1; 202, 4; 203, 1; 204, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>204A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>187, 4; 188, 2; 192, 3; 194, 4;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195, 3</td>
<td>192, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5-6</td>
<td>192, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12-13</td>
<td>216, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:10</td>
<td>216, 8; 229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17-18</td>
<td>210B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17-19</td>
<td>210B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:26</td>
<td>216, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:28-29</td>
<td>210B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:6</td>
<td>216, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:10</td>
<td>194, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:3-4</td>
<td>216, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:8-9</td>
<td>194, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:10</td>
<td>216, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:13</td>
<td>216, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:6</td>
<td>229O, 1; 229P, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:7</td>
<td>229O, 1; 229P, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1</td>
<td>218, 2; 194, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:5</td>
<td>204, 2; 225, 4; 229B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12</td>
<td>216, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12-14</td>
<td>193, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:14</td>
<td>193, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:10</td>
<td>224, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:6</td>
<td>223H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7-9</td>
<td>213, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:8</td>
<td>216, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:8-9</td>
<td>225, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>212, 1; 216, 9; 217, 1; 217, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:11</td>
<td>216, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/6

53:8 184, 3; 188, 2; 195, 1; 196, 1; 215, 3
58:3-5 205, 3
58:5 206, 3
58:7 217, 5; 229S

Jeremiah
9:24 185, 2
16:19 203, 3
17:16 229B, 1
31:31 196A, 2
31:31-32 196A, 2
31:33 212, 2

Ezekiel
18:23 223, 2

Hosea
4:5 LXX 223D, 2

Micah
5:1 200, 3

Habakkuk
3:18 223D, 1

Malachi
1:11 228B, 1
4:2 208, 2

New Testament

Matthew
1:18 225, 2
1:23 187, 3
2:2 199, 2; 201, 1
2:2.6 204A, 1
2:5 201, 2, 3
2:5-6 200, 3
3:18-19 210, 2
5:6 194, 4
5:8 214, 9
5:10 218, 4
5:14 226, 1
6:5 229B, 1
6:9 229L, 2
6:12 208, 3; 211, 1; 220, 3; 229, 3; 229E, 3
6:13 223E, 1
7:3 211, 2
8:11 203, 3
8:11-12 201, 2; 218, 7
9:13 200, 4
9:15-17 210, 4
10:23 202, 2
13:17 210, 4
13:45 212, 1
15:21-28 229P, 1
16:15-19 229P, 1
16:18-19 229N, 2
16:19 214, 11
17:20 223H
18:18 229N, 2
21:43 218, 7
22:30 213, 10
25:13 223D, 3
25:21 198A, 2
25:34 229B, 2
25:34-41 196, 3
25:35 197, 5
25:40 229K, 1
26:28 228B, 3
26:36 229P, 4
26:41 223C
26:70.72 229F, 1
27:25 229N, 3
27:40-43 229E, 1
28:6 229L, 1
28:19 215, 8
28:20 229K, 2

Luke
1:5 192, 2
3:35 192, 2
8:34 218, 2
8:38 215, 5
11:9 204, 3
12:14-17 229W
12:37 187, 4
14:30 229H, 1
14:34 186, 2
14:38 222, 1; 223B, 1; 223E, 1; 223K

Mark
3:35 192, 2
8:34 218, 2
8:38 215, 5
11:9 204, 3
12:14-17 229W
12:37 187, 4
14:30 229H, 1
14:34 186, 2
14:38 222, 1; 223B, 1; 223E, 1; 223K

Sermons 184-229Z
### Sermons 184-229Z

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:2-9</td>
<td>203, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>229Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:43-48</td>
<td>229K, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:45-46</td>
<td>229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:60</td>
<td>223J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:62</td>
<td>216, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>184, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35-36</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29</td>
<td>203, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>218C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24.32</td>
<td>229O, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29</td>
<td>229C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:22</td>
<td>210, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>190, 2, 214, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:37-38</td>
<td>223A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>214, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:31-32</td>
<td>210, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>229O, 1; 229P, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61-62</td>
<td>229O, 1; 229P, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21</td>
<td>229N, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>218, 11; 229E, 1, 2; 229G, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38</td>
<td>191, 2; 229J, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38-39</td>
<td>229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>229J, 1; 229J, 2, 5; 229K, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:41-42</td>
<td>229J, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:44-45</td>
<td>229J, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:44-46</td>
<td>229J, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:45-46</td>
<td>229J, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46-47</td>
<td>229J, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>229J, 4; 229J, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:49</td>
<td>229J, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>188, 2; 194, 2; 196, 1, 3, 212, 1; 214, 5; 217, 5; 218C, 1; 223A, 1, 2; 225, 1; 226; 229, 1; 229G, 6; 229P, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>229E, 4; 229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>225, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.14</td>
<td>187, 3; 215, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>187, 1, 2; 190, 2; 196A, 1, 212, 1; 223A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>188, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>216, 4; 229R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>218, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>210, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>185, 2; 186, 1; 188, 2; 194, 2; 195, 3; 213, 3; 218C, 1; 229, 1; 229E, 4; 229G, 6; 229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14.1</td>
<td>186, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>185, 3; 195, 3; 213, 3; 214, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>229N, 1; 229P, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>214, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18-21</td>
<td>217, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>2200, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>218, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>215, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>185, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:30</td>
<td>194, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22</td>
<td>199, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>215, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>229E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>217, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>214, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>223C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>228B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>223A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>193, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:57-58</td>
<td>225, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:58</td>
<td>217, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>229N, 3; 229O, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>187, 4; 194, 3; 212, 1; 229G, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>218, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>223E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>185, 2; 190, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>194, 3; 229G, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>194, 3; 229G, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>194, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>187, 4; 229G, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>213, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>215, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>214, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:8-10</td>
<td>192, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>214, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:20</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>217, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>217, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:19</td>
<td>218, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:19.22</td>
<td>201, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:20</td>
<td>218, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:23-24</td>
<td>218, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>218, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30</td>
<td>218, 12; 223F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:2</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>229K, 1, 2; 229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:6</td>
<td>229M, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>229M, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15</td>
<td>229O, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:16</td>
<td>229O, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15-17</td>
<td>229N, 1; 229P, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-15</td>
<td>229O, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>214, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37-38</td>
<td>229E, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/6

2:37.41  229H, 3
2:41  229G, 5
4:32  229G, 5
7:47-48  217, 4
7:56  213, 5
8:21  218, 9
9:4  229K, 1; 229N, 3
17:31  229H, 3

Romans
1:1-3  186, 3
1:3  198A, 1
1:17  189, 2
1:18  197, 1
1:19-20  197, 1
1:21-22  197, 1
1:23-24  197, 1
1:25  197, 1
2:10.9  229F, 2
4:25  196A, 1; 220, 1; 221, 1; 223B, 2; 223D, 1; 229D, 1
5:1-2  185, 3
5:5  193, 2; 212, 1; 218, 9; 229M, 2
5:6.10  215, 5
5:8  215, 5
5:10  218A, 1
5:20  229M, 2
6:4  210, 3; 228A; 229A, 1; 229E, 3
6:9  217, 6; 220, 1; 223C
6:9.11  223B, 1
6:10  228A
6:19  216, 2
7:7  210, 8
7:7.11  229M, 2
7:18  193, 2
7:18.22-25  193, 2
7:23  193, 2
8:3  184, 2; 185, 1; 228B, 2; 229H, 1
8:24-25  215, 1
8:29-31  229E, 3
8:32  229D, 1
8:34  223C
10:3  185, 2; 189, 2
10:9-10  214, 1
10:10  215, 5
10:13  213, 1
10:14-15  213, 1
12:1  218, 7
12:1  205, 1
12:9  216, 5
13:10  229M, 2
13:12  221, 4
13:13  229B, 1
13:12-13  190, 1
13:13-14  205, 1
14:8  215, 7

1 Corinthians
1:12  229O, 3
1:13  197, 3; 229O, 3
1:24  212, 1
1:26  200, 4
1:27  200, 4; 223F, 2
1:31  185, 2, 3
2:2  215, 5
2:8  213, 4; 229J, 4
2:9  206, 2; 215, 2; 216, 5
2:11  217, 2
3:11  215, 1
3:17  214, 10
3:37  197, 3; 224, 3
3:7  197, 3
4:7  229B, 4
5:7  220, 1; 221, 1; 229C, 1
5:7.8  229C, 1
5:8  228B, 5
5:17  212, 1
6:15  217, 4; 224, 3;
6:19  214, 10; 217, 4
7:5  209, 3
9:24-27  216, 6
9:25  216, 6
10:13  223, 2; 223E, 1
10:17  227, 228B, 4; 229A, 1
10:20  198, 3
10:4  229P, 1
11:24  228B, 3
11:27  227
11:27-29  228B, 4
12:7-8  229T
12:8-10  229T
12:27  213, 8; 229A, 1
13:1-3  229U
13:3  218, 4; 229J, 3
13:4  209, 1
13:12  229G, 3
14:20  220, 1
14:23  229G, 6
15:27  218, 6
15:8-9  218A, 2
19:4  223G, 2

2 Corinthians
3:2-3  229M, 2
3:5-6  229M, 2

Sermons 184-229Z
### Volume III/6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermons 184-229Z</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews 3:5</td>
<td>213, 9; 229E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews 1:1</td>
<td>228B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews 2:7</td>
<td>229G, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews 10:1</td>
<td>228B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews 11:6</td>
<td>215, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James 1:2</td>
<td>223E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James 1:17</td>
<td>185, 2; 222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James 4:6</td>
<td>218C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter 2:6</td>
<td>204, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter 2:9</td>
<td>198A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter 3:18</td>
<td>223B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter 5:5</td>
<td>218C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter 5:8</td>
<td>210, 5; 222, 1; 223F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter 1:19</td>
<td>210, 6; 223D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 1:8</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 1:8-9</td>
<td>213, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 2:1-2</td>
<td>213, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 2:8-9</td>
<td>211, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 2:19</td>
<td>2290, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 2:15-16</td>
<td>219, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 3:15</td>
<td>211, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 3:2</td>
<td>194, 3; 210, 7; 216, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 4:20</td>
<td>229N, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 5:20</td>
<td>217, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation 5:5</td>
<td>223C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation 5:9</td>
<td>212, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation 7:9</td>
<td>229M, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 184-229Z

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprung)

A
abstinence: restraining our lusts, 207:2
A dam and Eve:
  devil’s seduction, 224:2
  formation of Church and, 218:14
  Incarnation (humility) compared with, 188:3
  Mary: earth, 189:2
  woman who sold us death, 184:2
adultery: devil’s whispers, 224:2
alleluia, 229:2
alms:
  enclose in heart of a poor man, 209:2
  give to the poor, 198:3
  giving and forgiving, 206:2
  works of necessity, 211A:2
angels:
  ascension of Christ, 214:9
  authority of the scriptures, 229R
  Christ and, 213:1
  Epiphany, 202:2; 203:1
  equality with, 213:10
  eternal day, 187:1
  fallen; humans to replace, 229H:2
  humans; equality, 229G:3
  Jacob wrestling with, 229F:2
  life from Word of God, 196:3
  praise Christ, 194:2
  sleepless, 221:3; 223J
  worship flesh of Christ, 225:2
see also Annunciation
anger:
  hatred and, 211:1
  stored in the heart, 208:2
animals: human soul and, 229V
animosities, 209:1; 210:12
Anna (widow; prophetess), 196:2
Annunciation:
  born of the Holy Spirit; the creed, 215:4
  Holy Spirit named by angel, 225:2
  repetition of the symbol, 213:11
  sins of past destroyed by, 223E:2
  stay close to good people, 223J:1
  warnings against evil, 224:1-3
  see also catechumens
beatific vision: body and soul united, 212:1
Bede, Saint, 197, 229A
belief:
  Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
  style of life; salvation, 196:2
believers:
  one soul and one heart (Acts 4:32), 229G:5
  see also faith
Bethlehem, 200:3; 200:2; 201:2; 202:1
bible, see gospel; Old Testament; scripture(s)
bishops: listening to, 196:4

died in the flesh, not in soul, 229G:6
disbelief in resurrection, 229F:1
Epiphany: the heavens, 204A
head and body of Christ, 229I:2
head seen but not the Church, 229J:6
Jews, 229F:2.3
mountains of God, 223H
number believing in miracles of, 229G:5
shepherds, 229N:3
speaking in tongues, 229E:2
Arians:
  converts, 229O:4
  deny Son of God, 229G:2-4-5
avarice: self-denial and, 208:2

B
baptism (including the “newly baptized”):
  analogy: making bread, 227
  born again, 228:1; 228B:1
  buried with Christ, 229A:1
  called “infants,” 229A:1
  darkness to light, 223:1
  dying and buried with Christ, 229A
  Easter distinguished from, 210:2
  eve of John the Baptist’s day, 196:4
  fasting; eve of Easter, 210:2
  first “askers,” now “infants,” 228:1
  forgiveness of all sins, 229E:2
  John’s and Christ’s, 210:3
  put off old man; put on new, 216:2
  rejecting the old life, 215:1
  repetition of the symbol, 213:11
  sacrament of Christ’s resurrection, 210:3
  signed with sign of Christ, 213:9
  sins of past destroyed by, 223E:2
  stay close to good people, 223:1
  warnings against evil, 224:1-3
  see also catechumens
beatific vision: body and soul united, 212:1
Bede, Saint, 197, 229A
belief:
  Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
  style of life; salvation, 196:2
believers:
  one soul and one heart (Acts 4:32), 229G:5
  see also faith
Bethlehem, 200:3; 200:2; 201:2; 202:1
bible, see gospel; Old Testament; scripture(s)
bishops: listening to, 196:4
blessedness: future life, 211A:2
boastfulness: suffering for, 229J:3
body:
  awaiting redemption of, 198A:2
  members of Christ, 217:4
  outer self, 218A:3
  quickened by spirit (soul), 193:1
  spirit inhabits, 223A:4
  temple of the Holy Spirit, 214:10; 217:4
body of Christ:
  Donatist heresy, 218B:2
  God’s temple, 217:4
  love of the head for, 197:5
  one loaf, one body, 229A:1
  unity, the harmony of charity, 229A:2
  see also Church
boredom: eternity, 229B:2
bread:
  making, 229:1; 229A:2
  sacraments; the infantes, 227
  sign of unity, 229:2
  see also Church
B
Caesar: taxes for, 229W
Calvary (the word), 218:3
Canaanite woman: Gentile; humility, 203:2
catechumens:
  analogy of threshing-floor, 229:1
  from humiliation to communion, 229:2
  love what you will be, 216:8
  parents; rebirth, 216:8
  people being created; praise God, 216:7
  sermon to the competentes, 216:1-11
  symbol imparted to, 212:2
  see also Church
Christianity:
  distinction: belief in future life, 215:6
  fulfilled what old law foretold, 229C:2
  resurrection, the distinctive mark of, 229H:1; 229H:3
Christmas:
  birthday of Christ: rejoice, 184:2
  Christmas Day sermons, 184-196
  day consecrated by eternal Day, 188:2
  day contains mystery of Christ’s light, 190:1
  glory to God ..., 193:1
  shortness of the calendar day, 192:3
  see also Incarnation; Jesus Christ: nativity
Church:
  analogy, the creation, 229V
  belief; the creed, 213:8
  body of Christ, 213:8; 223G:1
  Catholic among heresies, 229O:3
  Christ found a whore, made a virgin, 213:8
  disciples saw head, believed about body, 229J:5
  disciplines’ belief in, 229I:2
  dry land, 229S
  firmament, meaning authority, 229R
  forgiveness of sin, 213:9
  formation: Adam and Eve, 218:14
  Gentiles; celebrating Epiphany, 204:2
  great sacrament: Christ and Church, 228B:4
  head and body; disciples and us, 229I:2
  see also Church

Sermons 184-229Z
Jesus, the bridegroom, 229J:5
keeping vigil, 223D:2
keys of the kingdom, 229N:2
one body, one shepherd, 229N:3
Peter, do you love me? 229N:2
right side of fishing boat, 229M:1
rock of Peter’s confession of faith, 229P:1
royal priesthood, 198A:1
Saul, why persecute me? 229K:1; 229N:3
spreading through the world, 229I:4
three kinds of life in, 196:2
threshing-floor, 223:2
unity, 210:8
virgin and mother, 188:4; 191:3; 192:2; 195:2; 213:8
your mother the light, 222
see also body of Christ
circumcision:
Christian symbolism, 229D:2
humility of Jesus, 196A:1
received by Christ, 210:3
sign; truth in Christ, 196A:1
spiritual justification, 196A:1
two boats (first catch of fish), 229M:1
commandments: whoever loves me..., 194:4
communion:
bread which hung on the cross, 228B:2
fear and trembling, 228B:2
heretics, testimony against themselves, 229:2
invitation to receive, 223F:3
parable of vineyard workers applied, 229E:4
receive worthily, 228B:3-5
receiving unworthily, 227; 228B:4
we are changed into body of Christ, 228B:3
see also eucharist.
compassion: animosities, 209:1
concubine, 224:3
conscience:
God’s dwelling place, 223I
sign of peace, 227
conversion:
empty poisons from the heart, 216:6
humility; hidden sins, 216:10
pursuit by God, 216:11
strip the old self, put on the new, 218A:3
turned into members of Christ, 216:5
threshing, 229:1 (and note 4)
cornerstone, 199:1; 200:4; 201:1; 204:2,3
creation:
each work seen as good, 229V
God made all from nothing, 214:2
God speaks, it happens, 223A:2
God the Father almighty, 213:2
God’s doing, 229H:3
in the beginning, 214:2; 223A:1; 225:1
man as microcosm of, 229V
order of darkness and light, 221:4
perceived through things made, 197:1
see the world, and love God, 223A:1
Trinity, 223A:3
wisdom of God, 223A:1
creed:
believe in Church; forgiveness of sin,
213:8; 214:11; 215:9
believe in Jesus Christ, 213:3; 215:3
believe in Jesus crucified and buried, 214:7
believe in the Holy Spirit, 213:7; 214:10
born of the Holy Spirit, 214:6; 215:3,4
Christ will come to judge, 213:6; 214:9
crucified under Pontius Pilate, 213:4
crucified, died and was buried, 213:4;
215:5
giving back of the, 215:1-9
God the Father almighty, 213:2; 215:2
handing over of, 212:1-2; 213:1-11;
214:1-12
he ascended into heaven, 213:5; 214:8;
215:7
repentance by those to be baptised, 213:11
resurrection of the body, 213:10; 214:12
rose again on the third day, 213:5; 214:8;
215:6
symbol not to be written down, 212:2
written on people’s hearts, 212:2
cross:
constant and holy dedication to, 218B:2
glory in, 205:1
lesson for patience, 218C:4
pride in cross of Christ, 218C:2
shame, 215:5
take up, control your mortality, 218:2
Cyprian: orator, 197:2

D
Damascus, 202:2
darkness:
creation, 226
devil and, 222
hate, 211:2
left by the newly baptized, 223:1
let there be light, 229T
newly baptized, now light, 225:4
thief in the night, 229B:1
throw away works of, 221:4
David, 207:2
day:
day which the Lord has made, 226
Easter; made by the Lord, 229B:1
reckoning time, 221:4
deacons: seven ordained, 229I:4
death:
death; resurrection of Christ and, 233:1

day of, uncertain, 210:7

Volume III/6
Volume III/6

desire to live, 229H:2
inevitable, 229H:2,3
no reason to fear, 229H:3
not found “in the beginning,” 229G:6
sleep as semblance of, 221:3
soul estranged from God, 212:1
soul withdraws when body dies, 218C:3
demons:
beasts of the forest, 223I
morals of those serving, 198:3
desire: secret, hidden thirst for God, 229S
devil:
adversary; fast and pray, 210:5,6
conquered by Christ crucified, 229N:1
fall of man, 229H:2
good use from bad works of, 214:3
hereditary debt to, 229E:2
Jews and the crucifixion, 223I
pride, 197:1
princedom; darkness, 222
prowling like roaring lion, 222; 223F:2
renouncing, 216:6
robbery to be equal to God..., 229G:3
self-transformation, angel of light, 197:4
struggle against, 219; 222
whispered suggestions of, 224:2
devotion: examples, 210:3 (and note 12)
disciples: common people chosen, 197:2
disease: doctor’s enemy (sin), 229E:3
dogs: scraps from tables, 218A:2
Donatus; Donatists, 197:4; 202:2; 218B:2
donkey: attending at the manger, 189:4
drunkenness: darkness, 225:4
dry land: soul thirsting for God, 229S; 229U; 229V
duty: pay Caesar, pay God, 229W

easter:
annual celebration, 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual passover, 220
daily celebration of the Pasch, 229D:2
day which the Lord has made, 229B:1-2
days after signify age to come, 211A:1
joy, 229B:2
particular day: baptism, 210:2
Passover and, 210:3; 229C:1
renewing memory of mercy, 207:1
sermon for the newly baptized, 224:1-3; 228
sermon on sacraments, 228B:1-5; 229H:3
sermon to infantes, 225:1-4; 226; 227; 228
see also Lent; Paschal mystery
easter vigil:
nannual solemnity, 223C; 223D:1; 223G:1
everlasting vigil, 223G:1
godless also keep this vigil, 219
light in our hearts, 221:2
mother of all holy vigils, 219
mustard seed; mountains of God, 223H
night illuminated by, 221:1
passover, 221:1
re-enacting the resurrection, 220
reason for, 221:4
reminder of death and resurrection, 223B:1
renewal of memory, 223F:1
two kinds of sleep, 223K
watch and pray, 219; 223F:3; 223L; 223M
watch while Christ slept in tomb, 223B:2
eating: self-indulgence, 205:2; 209:3; 210:11
Egypt: idols, 197:1
Elijah: fasting, 205:1; 210:9
Elisha: dead child restored to life, 196A:2
Elizabeth:
descendant from Aaron, 198A:1
infant leapt in her womb, 196:2
enemies: praying for, 211:6
Epiphany:
Jesus worshiped by the Gentiles, 199:1; 204:2
Jewish shepherds; Gentile Magi, 199:3; 201:1; 203:1; 204:1
king of the Jews, 201:2
manifestation to the Gentiles, 200:1; 201:2; 204:1
seven sermons, 199-204A
star in the East, 199:2,3; 200:1
whole world summoned to faith, 203:3
Word spoken from a star, 202:2
Esau, 207:2; 208:1
eternal life:
attaining: have a good temporal life, 229H:3
body and soul united, 212:1
Christ risen is our refuge, 229H:3
end we have in view, 223G:2
forgiveness of sin needed, 213:9
good days, one day, 217:6
joy: the Holy Spirit, 210:7
resurrection and, 229H:3
vigil; tirelessly awake, 223B:2
see also heaven
eternity: boredom, 229B:2
everlasting vigil, 223G:1
incomprehensible, 215:2
seeking, 229H:2
eucharist: body and blood of Christ the priest, 228B:1
bread of angels, 194:2
Christ the priest, 228B:1
daily sacrifice, 216:3
heavenly bread, made from produce of all, 216:3
knowledge of the newly baptized, 228B:1
mystery of unity, 229A:2

Sermons 184-229Z
real presence, 227 (note 9); 229:1
sacrament because of God's word, 229:3
sermon owed to "infants," 228:3
this is my body; this is my blood, 228:3
unity: one loaf, one body, 229A:1
you are what you receive, 227
see also communion
Eunomians: converts, 229O:4
Eve, see A dam and Eve
evil, see good and evil
evolution: bad and good, 223:1; 228
exorcism, 218B:2
eye: beam (speck) in, 211:1
faith:
beliefs contained in the creed, 212:1
believe in order to understand, 212:1; 214:10
229G:4
blessed, if we believe in Christ, 229F:3
day and night, 229T
defined for us, 229H:1,3
distinguishing, 228:4
first believe, then call on name of the Lord, 223:1
gift from God, 229F:1
head and body of Christ/Church, 229I:2
just person lives by, 189:2
love and, 212:2
praiseworthy (the empty tomb), 229L:1
reason and, 210:2
risen again, by faith, 196A:2
some believe; not all have faith, 229F:1
stop touching me; believe at higher level, 229L:2
touching Christ with the heart, 229L:2
touching Jesus, 228X:1-2
watch and pray, 229E:1
way to eternal bliss, 204A
what Mary believed came about, 215:4
see also creed
fall of man:
darkness; sleep, 223K
devil; incarnation, 229H:2
weaker used to bring down the stronger, 210:2
fasting:
condemning God's creatures as impure, 208:1
expensive kinds of food, 208:1
frugality and, 207:2
humbling of the soul, 210:4
Lenten, 205:1-3
overcoming temptations, 207:1
perpetual, 207:3
placating God, 210:9
reason for, 210:5
ritual impurities, 209:3
temptation and, 210:3
wing of loving kindness, 206:2
wing of prayer, 206:3
worthless without kindness/mercy, 207:1
festivals: false feast day, 198:1
fever, 229E:3
fifty (number), 210:8
firmament: allegorical meaning of, 229R; 229T;
229U; 229V
fish: symbol; sacraments, 229U
fishermen:
right side of boat, 229M:1-3
two catches (pre/post-resurrection), 229M:1-3
flesh:
curbing pleasures of, 205:1
devil's whispers, 224:2
lusting against the spirit, 193:2
Florus, 197; 229A
forgiveness:
as almsgiving, 206:2
Christ crucified, 208:2
give us our debts, 211:1-6
good works: alms, 210:12
pact with God (as we forgive), 211:1-6
readiness to forgive, 211:5
someone you have not harmed, 211:5
wing of prayer, 205:3
forgiveness of sin:
baptism, 229E:2
blood of the new covenant, 228B:3
Calvary, 218:3
creed, 213:9; 214:11
grace; faith, 212:1
light made, 226
Lord's Prayer, 229G:3; 229E:3
water from the side of Christ, 228B:2
fornication:
devil's whispers, 224:2
harlot, 216:5
forty (number), 205:1; 210:8
four (number), 203:3; 210:8
future life:
expectation of resurrection, 223B:2
hope; forgiveness of sin, 213:9

G
generosity: pleasure in, 209:3
Genesis, creation in, see creation
Gentiles:
gathered from among..., 198:2
grafting the wild olive, 201:2; 218:7
Jewish hostility to, 204:2
life style, 198:2-3
Magi representing, 199:3; 201:2; 202:1;
204:1
mercy of God towards, 218A:2

Volume III/6
ungodliness, 197:1
see also Magi

God:
above my soul, 223A:4
appearances (Old Testament), 223A:2
Father almighty, 213:2; 214:2; 223:2
Father is Christ’s God, 229L:2
Father, the fieldworker, 213:10
He who is, 229T
human inadequacy to think about, 229G:2
maker of body and spirit, 223A:4
name: he who is, 223A:5
name: I am who am, 223A:5; 229T
nothing better than, 223A:2
pagan asks: where is your God? 223A:4
proof of existence of, 197:1 (and note 4)
right hand of the Father, 214:8
shown in his works, 223A:4
unchangeable good, 223A:3
willingly, whatever he is, 214:4
wrath, 197:1
see also creation; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ
godliness: form; power, 229U; 229V
gods, see idols
good and evil:
example, 223:1; 228
God makes good use of the bad, 214:3
husks and grains, 223:2
pride as source of evil, 197:1
unforgiving, 210:12
wakeliness of evil, 223J
works of iniquity, 211A:2
good example:
exhortation to the newly baptized, 228:1,2
good life:
do what you can do, 229H:3
reward for, 229H:3
good luck, 198:2,3
good news: spreading, 202:4
good works:
alms and forgiveness, 210:12
Christ life, 229D:1
do good in a bad place, 217:5
Lenten, 206:1
mercy; light, 229S
works of necessity, 211A:2
see also charity; mercy
goodness: be what others should imitate, 228:2
gospel: lights in the firmament, 229T
grace:
forgiveness of sins, 212:1
Jesus joined to the eternal Word, 185:3
(and note 5)
members of Christ; Son of God, 224:1
thousands believe with one heart, 229G:5
grain: threshing-floor, 223:2
gratitude: thanks: we have our hearts above, 229:3

greed:
food, 208:1
self-indulgence, 210:11
Greek language, 218:6
Greeks: term for nationalities, 229F:2

H
hair: not one will perish, 214:12
happiness: seeking, 229H:2
hate:
anger growing into, 211:1
darkness, 211:2
heart:
aim in prayer, 207:3
circumcised in, 196A:1
lift up the heart, 227; 229:3; 229A:3
pure of heart shall see God, 188:1
sleep of, 223K
spiritual power in prayer, 210:9
symbol (creed) written on, 212:2
heaven:
glorified body in, 213:10
happiness, 229N:3
holy, holy, holy, 211A:2
Jesus ascended to, 229K:2
numbers (Rev. 7:9), 229M:2-3
offered for sale to you, 216:3
peace in, 229M:1
see also eternal life
heavens (stars):
apostles as, 204A
birth and death in, 229H:2
declare glory of God; Magi’s star, 200:1; 202:4
wicked spirits lurking in, 222
Hebrew language, 218:6
heedlessness: animosities, 209:1
heretics:
deny Christ; attack the Church, 218B:2
grafted from wild olive (Donatists), 200:4
lack power of sacraments, 229U
only the Father is true God, 217:3
receiveing communion, 229K
want “sheep” for themselves, 229O:3
Herod:
fearful, 200:2
persecution of infants, 199:2; 202:2
high priest, 198A:2,3; 228B:2
holy of holies, 198A:2
Holy Spirit:
approach and be enlightened, 225:4
both drink and light, 225:4
chiasm; anointing, 227
creed, 212:2; 213:7
getting drunk on, 225:4
hope and, 210:7
Incarnation and, 225:2
knows the things that are God’s, 217:2

Volume III/6

Sermons 184-229Z
manifestation given to each, 229T
number seven (gifts), 229M:2-3
progression; creed, 214:10; 215:8
promise of, and justice, 192:3
Son of God born of, 214:6; 215:3
Spirit of Father and Son, 212:1
thousands believe (Acts 2:41), 229G:5
true God, 217:2

hope:
Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
in God, not self, 229:3
joy; eternal happiness, 210:7
life in heaven, 192:1
patience, 215:1
place in truth, not in Paul, 197:4
resurrection of Christ and, 229H:3
resurrection of the body, 212:1
shelter of God's wings, 213:1
style of life; salvation, 198:2
watch and pray, 223E:1

hospitality; good works, 217:5

human condition:
birth and death, 229H:2
constant danger of sin, 211:1
imitate the good; put up with the bad, 223:2
life of Christ and, 229H:1
trial of life on earth, 210:5

see also body

humility:
Christ conforming himself to the dead, 196A:2
Christ teaches by word and example, 218C:4
Christ's circumcision, 196A:1
comparison: Adam/Eve and the Incarnation, 188:3
death on a cross, 223H
dogs into human beings, 218A:2
Gentiles; Epiphany, 203:2
life in this world, 206:1
liturgical celebration; Lent, 206:1
pleasure in being generous, 209:3
reward of, 216:10
shown in birth of Son of God, 184:1
watch and pray, 223I

husks; threshing-floor, 223:2
hyssop; symbolism, 218:11

Idols:
humans as, 229G:3
images of perishable man, 197:1
pagan gods, 223A:4
pagan temples, 217:4
Samaria; the Magi, 202:2
worship; God's truth changed to lie, 197:1
worship of elements, 197:6

ignorance: circumcision not made with hands, 229D:2
image: Caesar and God, 229W
imitation:
choose a good life, 228:2
good people of God, 224:1; 228
immortality:
A braham, Isaac, and Jacob, 223A:5
eternally praising God, 211A:2

Incarnation:
born of the Holy Spirit; the creed, 215:4
born so that weakness might become strong, 190:4
both sexes honored by the Lord, 190:2
divine pity, 229H:1
divine/human natures coupled in womb, 195:3
divinization of humanity, 192:1
flesh assumed; not changed into flesh, 184:1
flesh attached to the Word, 186:1
form of a servant, 194:3; 212:1; 229G:3
form of God remains hidden, 187:4
fruit of spiritual marriage, 184:2
greatness of, 225:2
invisible one made visible, 190:2
made death possible for the Word, 229G:6
made from his mother (whom he made), 186:1
mercy, 207:1
paradoxes, 192:1
rejoice in this grace, 185:3
truth sprung from the earth, 185:1; 189:2
without father/mother, 184:3
Word did not cease to be God, 187:3,4
Word of God become man, 186:2
Word of God could die because of, 218C:1
see also Jesus Christ: nativity

individuality: each thing has its own region, 229H:2
infancy: state of growth, 229H:1
intelligence: spoken words (language) and, 187:3
Israel: blessed in few, limping in many, 229F:3

Jacob:
blessing Judah, 223C
both blessed and lame, 229F:3
called Israel, 229F:2
Christ's death and, 218:12
wrestling with angel, 229F:2

Jesus Christ:
ascension:
ascending does not mean withdrawal, 229K:2
creed, 214:8; 215:7
lift up your hearts, 227
seated at God's right hand, 213:5
stop touching me..., 229K:1-2
wish: "where I am, my people may be," 217:5,6
born king of the Jews, 201:1,2
both sheep and goat, 228B:2
bride, the Church, 229J:5
charity; the undivided garment, 218B:2
circumcision; humility, 196A:1; 210:3
commanded to love Christ, 229N:1
cornerstone, 199:1; 200:4; 201:1; 204:2,3
crucified, he conquered the devil, 229N:1
cure of our inner eyes, 195:3
death, see passion and death below
denying, means denying life, 229H:3
divinity did not hide humanity, 229E:1
divinity announced by shepherds/magi, 185:1
divinity concealed, 184:3
Emmanuel (name), 187:4
eternal Day; temporal day, 185:2
eternal one born in time, 195:3
form of a servant, 186:2
greatness and humility of Christ, 187:1
harmony with the resurrection, 223D:2
human word; divine Word, 187:2
humility of God, 184:1
ox and ass at manger, 190:3; 204:2
paradoxes: maker of man, made man, 191:1
peace on earth, 185:3
speechless infant and Word, 190:3
star in the East, 199:3; 200:1
see also Christmas; Incarnation; virgin birth
our high priest forever, 228B:2
paradoxes; beliefs, 214:7
passion and death:
anger and, 208:2
annual solemnity, 223B:1
blood and water from side, 218:14
burial and resurrection, 221:1
Calvary, 218:3
carrying the cross, 218:2
Christmas Day sermons, 184-196
creed, 213:3
day from day, 189:1
day of time; eternal day, 190:3
divinity announced by shepherds/magi, 185:1
divinity concealed, 184:3
Emmanuel (name), 187:4
easter; temporal day, 185:2
eternal one born in time, 195:3
greatness and humility of Christ, 187:1
harmony with the resurrection, 223D:2
human word; divine Word, 187:2
humility of God, 184:1
Lent: suffering again for us, 206:1
lessons from his lowness/highness, 206:1
our high priest forever, 228B:2
paradoxes; beliefs, 214:7
passion and death:
anger and, 208:2
annual solemnity, 223B:1
blood and water from side, 218:14
burial and resurrection, 221:1
Calvary, 218:3
carrying the cross, 218:2
Christ brought us life, 218A:1
Christ died, but in the flesh, 229G:6
Christ died in his human nature, 218C:1
contrasts; their crimes, our salvation, 218B:1
creed, 213:3
dead with a bowed head, 218:12
death by his own power, 218:12
each deed signified something, 218:1
Father, forgive them..., 229E:2; 229G:5
fruit lost without rising, 229J:2
garments divided, 218:8
godhead did not die, 229G:6
good conferred on us by, 214:3
Good Friday, 218:1-15
his holy ones endowed with life by, 218C:1
humility: death on a cross, 223H
innocent, he suffered for the guilty, 218C:2
inscription in three languages, 218:6
Jesus consented, was not conquered, 223C
Jewish unbelief, 218B:1
king of the Jews, 218:5-7
liturgy renews the event annually, 220
love shown in, 229E:1
Mary and John, 218:10
meaning of, 218:1
never absent from altar or mind, 218B:1
paradoxes, 220
sermons 184-229Z

Volume III/6

Christmas Day sermons, 184-196
creed, 213:3
day from day, 189:1
day of time; eternal day, 190:3
divinity announced by shepherds/magi, 185:1
divinity concealed, 184:3
Emmanuel (name), 187:4
easter; temporal day, 185:2
eternal one born in time, 195:3
greatness and humility of Christ, 187:1
harmony with the resurrection, 223D:2
human word; divine Word, 187:2
humility of God, 184:1
Lent: suffering again for us, 206:1
lessons from his lowness/highness, 206:1
our high priest forever, 228B:2
paradoxes; beliefs, 214:7
passion and death:
anger and, 208:2
annual solemnity, 223B:1
blood and water from side, 218:14
burial and resurrection, 221:1
Calvary, 218:3
carrying the cross, 218:2
Christ brought us life, 218A:1
Christ died, but in the flesh, 229G:6
Christ died in his human nature, 218C:1
contrasts; their crimes, our salvation, 218B:1
creed, 213:3
dead with a bowed head, 218:12
death by his own power, 218:12
each deed signified something, 218:1
Father, forgive them..., 229E:2; 229G:5
fruit lost without rising, 229J:2
garments divided, 218:8
godhead did not die, 229G:6
good conferred on us by, 214:3
Good Friday, 218:1-15
his holy ones endowed with life by, 218C:1
humility: death on a cross, 223H
innocent, he suffered for the guilty, 218C:2
inscription in three languages, 218:6
Jesus consented, was not conquered, 223C
Jewish unbelief, 218B:1
king of the Jews, 218:5-7
liturgy renews the event annually, 220
love shown in, 229E:1
Mary and John, 218:10
meaning of, 218:1
never absent from altar or mind, 218B:1
paradoxes, 220

Sermons 184-229Z
Sermons 184-229Z

Passover; Christ the lamb, slain, 229C:1
Paul relies on humility of Christ, 218C:2
pierced with lance; cancelled our sins, 228B:2
proclaim Christ crucified, 218C:2
reliving in memory, 218B:1
suffering for sinners, 218C:2
suffering foretold, 229J:4
symbolism of undivided garment, 218B:2
tunic without seam, 218:9
two thieves crucified with Jesus, 218:4,13
vivarium on a sponge, 218:11
see also cross
Philip: show us the Father..., 229G:2
praised by angels and humans, 194:2
prays as man, 217:1
prefigured; high priest, 198A:2,3
prefigured in Passover lamb, 229C:1-2
price paid for our redemption, 196:2
privilege: with him in his lifetime, 210:4
prophecies about place of birth, 200:3
resurrection:
anticipation of our own, 223D:2
baptism and newness of life, 229A
belief in; Easter sermon, 229F:1-3
circumcised in the heart by, 196A:1
Christ, from region of death to region of life, 229E:1
denied by pagan and Jew, 215:6
distinctive mark of Christian faith, 229H:1-2
fear of death removed by, 229G:1
gospel readings, 229i:1
John entered tomb, and believed, 229L:1
many of his crucifiers came to believe, 229F:1
passion’s fruit lost without, 229J:2
sacrament, model of new life, 229E:3
woman at the empty tomb, 229L:1
joy fifty days after, 210:8
see also Easter; Easter Vigil
resurrection: post-resurrection appearances:
apostles, 229J:4
bodily or spiritual, 229I:1
disciples after the resurrection, 229I:2
Jews as first witnesses, 229F:3
Peter, do you love me? 229H:1-2
spirit only? 229J:2
stop touching me..., 229K:1-2
thought to be spirit, not body, 191:2
touch/eating as proofs, 229J:1-3
touch (man, before the ascension), 229L:2
touch not (woman, until ascended), 229L:2
two catches of fish explained, 229M:1-3
why are you troubled? 229J:2
secret places of the heavens, 198A:2
seed of David, 198A:1
Simeon; good neas, 217:6
sinless, 229P:4
teachings of his passion/resurrection, 213:5
tempted with bread, 208:1
touched in faith better than in the flesh, 229K:1-2
treasures of wisdom and knowledge, 194:3
true flesh, 229J:1
true God, 217:1
truth and mercy, 218A:2
two births of, 184:3; 189:4; 190:2; 196:1
woman touching hem of his garment, 229L:2
Word, soul and flesh: a single whole, 214:7
works of mercy done for (in his life), 229Z
see also body of Christ; Christian life;
creed; Incarnation; Son of God; Word of God

Jews:
believing and unbelieving, 229F:2
blindness; compared with the Magi, 200:3
circumcision by Christ, 196A:1
criminal responsibility for the crucifixion, 223C
crucifixion; conversion at Pentecost, 229H:3
descent from Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, 201:2
forgiven for the crucifixion, by believing, 229E:2
hardness of heart, 202:3
humility of Christ and, 196A:2
Jesus, king of the Jews, 218:5-7
kill Christ to remove his memory, 223B:1
losses, since Christ came, 201:2
mental blindness re Messiah, 204:3
Passover; dreaming, 229C:1
pride; not submitting to justice of God, 185:2; 189:2
prophecies not seen in Jesus, 229J:4
prophecies of the passion; unbelief, 218B:1
reaction to the resurrection, 229E:1
reward/punishment by God, 214:3
stubborn: tablets of stone, 229M:2
unbelievers, and the Magi, 199:2; 202:3
John, Saint, Apostle:
entered empty tomb, and believed, 229L:1
Mary entrusted to, 218:10
John the Baptist:
birth; time of year, 194:1
pagan festival on birthday, 196:4
Joseph (the name), 218:15
joy:
Christian life, 229B:2
Christmas Day, 184:2
descent from Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, 201:2
fifty days after the resurrection, 210:8
hope of eternal happiness, 210:7
represented by number fifty, 210:8
Judah, 214:3; 229:3
Judgment day:
Christ will come to judge..., 213:6; 214:9; 223C
joy, 229B:2
threshing-floor, 223:2
unworthy reception of communion, 228B:4
Juno, 197:6
justice:
  conscience, 223I
  looked forth from heaven (the nativity), 185:2; 192:3
  pride of the Jews, 185:2; 189:2
justification:
  faith, 185:3
  spiritual circumcision, 196A:1
keys of the kingdom, 229N:2
kindness: fasting and, 207:1
kindom of God:
  eternal, 229D:2
  see him, love him, praise him, 211A:2
  kingdom of heaven, see heaven
kings: filial fear of Christ, 200:2
kiss: sign of peace, 227; 229:3
knowledge:
  gift of the Spirit, 229T
  treasure hidden in Christ, 194:3
language:
  intelligence and spoken words, 187:3
  words in the mind, 225:3
Latin language, 218:6
law: knowledge of, 197:1
Lent:
  alertness in, 208:1
  aims to be increased during, 208:2
  chastising the body, 208:3
  Christ suffering for us again, 206:1
eight sermons, 205:221A
  fasting before baptism, 210:2
  fasting wrongly, 210:10
  forty days, 205:1
  humbling of our souls, 210:8
  humbling ourselves, 206:1
meaning of, 210:1
occasion for new enjoyments, 207:2
  penances other than fasting, 205:2
self-indulgence, 210:11
this life signified in, 205:1
whole world celebrates, 209:1
why we fast before Easter, 210:4
life:
  desire for, 229H:2
  stages of life, 216:8
  style; soul’s three sentiments, 198:2
  uncertainty, 229H:3
years added to, subtracted from, 229H:2
light:
  allegorical meaning of, 229R; 229T; 229U; 229V
  armor of, 190:1
  Christ as, 223D:2
  Church as, 222
  creation; good, 223:1
  newly baptized, 225:4
  sins forgiven, 226
  we who were once in darkness, 195:3
  see also day; darkness
liturgy: Christ-events made present by, 220
Lord’s Prayer:
  communion and, 229:3
daily baptism, 213:9
  forgive us our debts, 211A:2
  handing over of, 213:1 and note 8
love:
  believe; proclaim, 194:1
  each is questioned: do you love me?  229N:2
  faith and, 212:2
  God’s love of sinners, even to die for them, 215:5
  head for his body, 197:5
  keeping the commandments, 194:4
  loving the sheep means loving the shepherd, 229N:1
  new commandment; life in yourselves, 228B:3
  other gifts worthless without, 209:3
  Pentecost, 227
  Peter, do you love me?  229N:1; 229O:1; 229O:3; 229P:3
  reaching kingdom of heaven, 228:2
  see creation, and love God, 223A:1
  style of life; salvation, 196:2
  unity in body of Christ, 229A:2
  watch and pray, 223E:1
  see also charity
lover: weeping, 223A:4
lust: flesh against spirit, 193:2; 205:1
M
Magi:
  Epiphany, seven sermons, 199-204A
  first Gentiles to know Christ, 203:1
  firstfruits of the Gentiles, 202:1; 203:3; 204:2; 204A
  gifts: gold, frankincense, myrrh, 202:2
  going back by a different way, 202:4
  Herod and, 200:2
  Jewish blindness and, 200:3
  Jewish unbelievers and, 199:2
  Pilate and, 201:2
  questioning the Jews, 201:2; 202:3
  worship the light, 223D:2
  see also Epiphany
magicians (Magi), 200:4
Manichees, 229J:1,2
mankind:
divinization: purpose of the Incarnation, 192:1
image and likeness of God, 229V
microcosm: all God’s works contained in, 229V
marriage:
chastity in, 192:2; 210:9
virginity and, 188:4
married women, 196:2
martyrdom:
grilled fish as symbol, 229J:3
martyrs:
faith in the resurrection, 229H:3
suffered out of charity, 229J:3
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Church and; the creed, 213:8
earth; Adam, 189:2
entrusted to John, 218:10
Jewishness, 229F:2
mother of God, 214:6; 215:3
priestly/royal ancestry, 198A:1
star of the night, 223D:2
virgin mother, and the Church, 192:2
virginal chastity, 225:2
virginity, 188:4; 191:2,4; 195:2; 196:2
with child of the Holy Spirit, 225:2
see also Annunciation; Jesus Christ: nativity; virgin birth
Mary Magdalen:
resurrection; the empty tomb, 229L:1-2
stop touching me..., 229L:2
Mass:
consecration, 229A:1
explanation, preface onward, 229:3
prayer: lift up your hearts, 227
preface; the words explained, 229A:3
master and slave; asking pardon, 211:4
Methusalem, 228B:1
mercy:
Christ’s mission, 207:1
fasting and, 207:1
good works; light, 229S
prayer for, 223A:6
will and ability to do good, 193:2
Messiah:
holiness desire to see, 210:5
Jewish misunderstanding of time of coming, 199:2
prophesies; the Jews and Christ, 202:3
mind:
body inferior to, 223A:2
words/language in, 225:3
miracles:
Majus star, 199:3
number believing in apostles, 229G:5
moon: light, 229T
morality: Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
mortality: God: I am who am, 223A:5
mortification: chastising the body, 208:1
Moses:
burning bush, 229T
fasting, 205:1; 210:9
name of God, 223A:5
staff; law, 196A:2
mountains: apostles as, 223H
murder: whoever hates his brother, 211:2
mustard seed: fervor of humility, 223H
mystery: stretching effect, 225:3
N
nations: totality of, 218:6
nativity, see Jesus Christ: nativity
need:
give in order to receive, 206:2
works of necessity, 211A:2
neophytes: thousands converted (Acts 2:37), 229H:3
Neptune, 197:1
New Covenant, 196A:2
New Year’s Day:
four sermons, 196A-198A
pagan celebrations, 196:4; 198:1
newly baptized, see baptism
Nicodemus (the name), 218:15
night:
children of light, 223K
spiritual gifts; light, 229T
ungodly living, 229B:1
nonbelievers, see unbelief
numbers:
four and twelve, 203:3
four, ten, forty, fifty, 210:8
kingdom of heaven (153, 17, 10, 7), 229M:2-3
O
Old Testament: desire to see Messiah’s coming, 210:4
original sin:
Eve and the nativity, 184:2
need for rebirth, 189:3
P
pagans:
Gentile practices, 198:2-3
good luck celebrations, 198:2,3
origin of rites, 197:1
see also idols
Parasceve, 221:4
pardon:
asking for, 211:4,6
friendly approach is way of asking, 211:4

Volume III/6
Pasch (the word), 229C:1
Paschal mystery:
  anniversary of Christ’s passion, 210:2
Passover:
  broken legs of thieves on cross, 218:13
  celebrated by Christ, 210:3
  Easter and, 221:1; 229C:1
  prefiguring Easter, 229C:1-2
patient: cross as lesson for, 218C:4
Patr MMPians, 229G:3
Paul, Saint:
  knows “sheep” belong to Christ, not himself, 229O:3
  refused to be worshipped, 197:3
  Saul, why persecute me? 229K:1; 229N:3
peace:
  fraternal concord, 211:1
  holy kiss, 227; 229:3
  infant Jesus, 199:1
  people of good will, 193:2
  unity as bond of, 228B:5
penance:
  Lenten works, 205:2
  see also Lent
Pentecost:
  charity, 227
  speaking with tongues, 229I:3
  works of Holy Spirit, 229I:3
people:
  imitate good people, 224:1
  make bad use of good nature, 214:3
  men as gods, 229O:3
  see also mankind
perfection: end we have in view, 223G:2
persecution:
  gospel reaching ends of the world, 229I:4
  Jerusalem; Stephen, 229I:4
person: thoughts, where one properly is, 217:2
Peter, Saint:
  baptism of tears, 229O:1; 229P:4
  Church founded on, 229P:1
  Church to be recognized in, 229P:1
  denials; presuming on his own strength, 229P:3
  do you love me? 229N:1-2; 229O:1;
    229O:3; 229P:2
  do you love me more than these? 229O:2;
    229P:2
  his apostolate has strengthened us, 210:6
  miracle at Pentecost, 229I:3
  passion of Christ and, 223E:1
  repent and be baptized, 229E:2
  three times you will deny me, 229O:1
  threefold denial, threefold confession,
    229O:2; 229P:1
  wept bitterly; 229P:3
Philip: show us the Father..., 229G:2
pleasure:
  curbing the flesh, 205:1
  going after lusts, 210:11
Lent: revising without reducing, 207:2
  self-restraint, 208:2
Pontius Pilate, 201:2; 214:7; 215:5; 218:7
poor: seeing God in the needy, 206:2
praise:
  angels/humans praise Christ, 194:2
  catechumens, a people being created, 216:7
  eternal life, 211A:2
  human words inadequate for, 188:1
prayer:
  as alms, 207:3; 209:2
  chaste, 207:3
  fasting as wing of, 206:3
  Lenten practice, 206:1
  lift up the heart, 229A:3
  Lord be with you, 229A:3
  made fit for almsgiving and fasting,
    207:3
  overcoming temptations, 207:1
  persistence, 223J
  placating God, 210:9
  pure heart; spiritual power, 210:9
  reason for, 210:5
  two wings: giving and forgiving, 205:3
preaching: nets of the word, 229M:1
predestination: saints, 229S
preface (of Mass), 229A:3
pride:
  beware; hidden sins, 216:10
  darkened minds, 197:1
  devil, 197:1
  evil deeds stem from, 197:1
  hard ground softened by grace, 229O:1
  Simon Magus, 197:3
  wish to be adored, 197:4
purity: all is pure, to the pure, 208:1
Q
quarrels:
  fasting from, 205:3
  forgiveness, 211:5,6
  heedless; animosities, 209:1
R
Red Sea, 213:9
redemption:
  God died for human beings, 218C:1
  innocent blood blots out sins, 229E:2
religion: bands of faith, 223G:1
reparation:
  gift; hard ground softened, 229O:1
Peter’s example, 229P:4
reptiles of living souls, 229U

Sermons 184-229Z
resurrection of the body:  
  bodily redemption, 198A:2  
  creed, 213:10  
  distinguishes our life of faith, 215:6  
  hope, 212:1  
  judging the living and the dead, 223C  
  model of, 223D:2  
  risen again, by faith, 196A:2  
  wages of faith, 229E:4  
  we shall be God’s possession, 213:10  
  revenge: being avenged, 211:6  
  rock: drink from spiritual rock, 229P:1  
  Sabellians, 229G:3-5  
  sacraments:  
    blood from side of Christ, 218:14  
    Easter sermon, 227; 228B:1-5; 229:1-3  
    four corners of the world, 218:8  
    meaning of tunic without seam, 218:9  
    power of, is charity, 229U  
    received with devotion, 210:3  
    reptiles of living souls, 229V  
    sacramental character, 229V  
    signs, 229:1  
  sacrifice: old covenant refers to new covenant, 228B:2  
  saints:  
    Christ speaks in, 197:5  
    predestined, 229S  
  salvation:  
    believe and confess; the symbol, 214:1  
    calling on name of the Lord, 213:1  
    confession unto, 213:2  
    consequences: if Christ had not been born, 185:1  
    good news; day from day, 190:4  
    hope for what we are to receive, 213:1  
    joy in cause of, 218B:1  
    Simeon; good news, 217:6  
  Samuel: idolatry, 202:2  
  scriptural(s):  
    authority of, 229R  
    lights, firmament (allegorical meaning), 229S  
    seat (usage of the term), 214:8  
  self-control: living souls, 229V  
  self-denial:  
    avarice and, 208:2  
    deposit in treasury of heaven, 210:12  
  self-indulgence:  
    dead souls, 229V  
    seeking new forms of, 210:11  
  sermons: role of, 216:1  
  seven (number): Holy Spirit, 229M:2  
  sex:  
    Lenten abstinence, marriage rights, 205:2; 206:3; 207:2; 208:1; 209:3; 210:9  
  sexes: creation of, 190:2  
  shame:  
    animosities, 209:1  
    ashamed of me before men..., 215:5  
    forehead as dwelling place for, 218C:4  
  sheep:  
    one flock, one shepherd, 229O:3  
    Peter, feed my sheep, 229N:1; 229O:3; 229P:1,4  
  shepherd: Epiphany, 199:3; 201:1; 203:1,2; 204:1,2  
  Shimei, 214:8  
  shouting, 205:3  
  Simeon, 190:4; 196A:1; 217:6  
  Simon Magus, 197:3; 229U; 229V  
  sin:  
    against nature, 214:3  
    baptism and forgiveness of, 213:9; 229E:2  
    Christ the appeasement for, 213:6  
    constant danger of, 211:1  
    disease; doctor's enemy, 229E:3  
    friends with sins, 229E:3  
    God these people he wished to make good, 229F:1  
    God's Image worn down by, 229W  
    punished by God, 214:2  
    put your members to death, 216:5  
    turning back to, at heart, 223E:2  
    see also redemption  
  sisters (religious): spiritual marriage, 184:2  
  sleep:  
    of body; of heart, 223K  
    daily death, 221:3  
    necessity, 221:3; 229H:2  
  Solomon: temple, 217:4  
  Son of God:  
    Arian heresy, 229G:2  
    begotten without beginning, 196:1  
    births of his divinity, humanity, 214:6  
    co-eternal with the Father, 195:1; 229L:2  
    creed: I believe in Jesus..., 213:6  
    crucified; the creed, 213:4  
    day from day, 217:6  
    emptied himself, 213:4  
    equality with the Father, 212:1; 214:5  
    Father is greater than I, 229G:4  
    form of a servant, 215:4  
    human nature changed for the better, 186:2  
    humanity (flesh) added to divinity of, 186:1  
    in the beginning, 225:1  
    paradoxes, 188:2; 215:3  
    praise; equal to the Father, 188:1  
    same as God is himself, 217:7  
    seed of David, according to the flesh, 186:3  
    servant, less than the Father, 229G:4  
    Word made flesh, 186:2  
    see also Jesus Christ; Word of God  
  soul:
believing, hoping, loving, 198:2
death, 221:2
finding you yourself, 223A:4
immortal, 212:1
inner self, 218A:3
life of, 212:1
living souls, 229V
memory of, 197:1
perception of, 197:1
sower: parable, 216:3
spirit:
body inhabited by, 223A:4
flesh lusting against, 193:2
known in its work, 223A:4
only spirit knows the person, 217:2
show me your spirit, 223A:4
Spirit of God, see Holy Spirit
spiritual life:
growth in, 216:9
serve creator, not creature, 216:3
spouse: Christ on the cross, 218:11
stars:
fate: Magi’s star, 199:3
light, 229T
Stephen, Saint:
Christ seated at God’s right hand, 213:5; 214:8
first martyr, 204:3
martyrdom, 229I:4
temple, 217:4
suffering: motive: boast or charity, 229J:3
sun:
Christmas: festival day, honoring its Creator, 190:1
light of day, 229T
Psalm applied to birth of Christ, 192:3
worship, 197:1
Susanna, 196:2
symbol:
rule of faith, 213:2
usage of the word, 214:12
see also creed
T
taxes for Caesar, 229W
Telus, 197:6
temptation:
ability to endure, 223E:1
beyond our capacity, 223:2
fasting, and struggle against, 210:3
fire of trials, 229A:2
human life on earth, 223E:1
overcoming by alms, fasting, prayer, 207:1
watch and pray, 223B:1,2; 223C; 223E:1; 223G:2
ten (number), 210:8
ten commandments:
number (ten), 229M:2
worldwide, 210:8
thanks, see gratitude
thirst: allegorical meaning, 229S; 229V
threshing-floor:
Church as, 223:2
grain into bread, 229:1
time: year representing the whole of, 198A:2
transubstantiation:
bread and wine, body and blood, 229:1; 229A:1
God’s action, 229:3
Trinity:
creation: in the beginning, 223A:3
equality of persons, 214:10; 215:8
heresies, 229G:3-4
humanity of Christ: still three persons, 186:1
inseparable divinity, 217:1
one God, 221:2; 213:7; 217:4; 229G:5
three persons, 229G:3
threefold unity, 215:8
truth:
changed into lie (idols), 197:1
hold down, in iniquity, 197:1
sprung from earth (the nativity), 185:1; 189:2; 192:1,4; 193:2
will set you free, 193:2
twelve (number), 203:3
U
unbelief/unbelievers:
darkness; night, 190:1; 222
divinity of Christ, 191:2
Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
Jesus: true God, true man, 184:1
sleep of the heart, 223K
understanding:
believe in order to understand, 212:1; 214:10; 229G:4
unity:
analogy: bread and wine made one, 229:2
body of Christ, 210:8; 227
bond of peace, 228B:5
one loaf (eucharist), one body, 227; 229A:1
spiritual love for, 218B:2
universe:
birth and death in, 229H:2
creation of, 223A:1
work of Father and Son, 184:1
usury, 228:1
V
values: not a hair of our heads will perish, 214:12
vices:
fasting from, 207:3
offering incense to demons, 198:3
vigils:
Paul’s urging, 221:2
reason for, 221:3
watch, enjoined by the Savior, 223D:2
see also Easter vigil
vinegar: Christ on the cross, 218:11
vineyard workers (parable), 229E:4
virgin birth: 184:1, 2; 186:1; 188:2,4; 189:2,4; 190:2,3; 191:4; 192:1; 193:1; 194:4; 195:3; 196:1; 201:1; 213:6; 215:3
virginity:
  chosen state, 191:3
  marriage; virgins; Mary, 188:4
virgins:
  chaste, 208:1; 209:3; 210:9
  Christ, husband in your hearts, 191:4
  consecrated; nuns, 191:3,4
  humble, 196:2
  you too are Christ’s mothers, 192:2

W
  wakeful watchers, 223G:2
weeping: relief in, 223A:4
where, 224:3
widows:
  chaste, 208:1; 209:3
  dedicated continence, 192:2
wine: made into unity (eucharist), 229:2; 229A:2
wisdom:
  folly of God is wiser than human, 218B:1
  gift of the Spirit, 229T
  God created all things in, 223A:1
  treasure hidden in Christ, 194:3
  wise in worldly affairs, 184:1
women:
  honored in the Incarnation, 190:2
  looking after Christ, 229Z
  resurrection; the empty tomb, 229L:1
Word of God:
  all things made through, 223A:1
  analogy: spoken (voiced) words, 187:3
  assumed flesh, to be seen, 225:3
  begotten; all things made through, 214:5
  emptied himself, taking form of servant, 186:3; 187:4; 196:1; 196A.1
  enclosed in Mary’s womb, 225:3
Epiphany, 202:2
  equality with the Father, 212:1
  eternal day, 188:2
  first begetting of, 196:1
  food and bread of angels, 196:3
  God said to the Son..., 223A:3
  human birth; our rebirth, 189:3
  human body and soul assumed by, 214:6,12
  human words cannot explain, 188:1
in the beginning, 188:2; 215:3; 226;
  229E:4; 229G:6
power, seen in the Incarnation, 187:2
remains forever, 187:3,4
  took flesh, but did not leave Father, 223A:2
unchangeable, 212:1
Word was God, 225:1
see also Jesus Christ; Son of God
words:
  go out (spoken), don’t depart, 223A:2; 223A:5
  inadequate for praising God, 188:1
  sounded, do not leave mind, 225:3
works of mercy:
  anger stored in the heart, 208:2
  done for Christ (in the flesh), 229Z
works of necessity, 211A:2
word:
  God can make good use of bad, 214:3
  rejecting the delights of, 216:2
wise in affairs of, 184:1
worship of elements of, 197:6
wrongdoing: watchfulness, 223G:2

Volume III/6
Index from

Sermons 230-272B

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 230-272B are on the Liturgical Seasons.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/7 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-059-9, 6 x 9 in., 336 pp., 1993

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.

New City Press of the Focolare
www.newcitypress.com
orders@newcitypress.com 1-800-462-5980
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Kings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1-5</td>
<td>19:10.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11, 20:24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:8</td>
<td>4:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>231, 4; 260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:1-17</td>
<td>231, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>264, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12-17</td>
<td>264, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>259, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 23:7</td>
<td>270, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 5:6-12</td>
<td>250, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16-21</td>
<td>250, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua 5:2</td>
<td>231, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10.18</td>
<td>260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>272B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>261, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>260C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>256, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>246, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>231, 4; 260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>231, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>257, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>260C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>265A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>260C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1-2</td>
<td>260C, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-8</td>
<td>260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>260C, 4; 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:5</td>
<td>260C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>242A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:43-44</td>
<td>255, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:3-4</td>
<td>260E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>262, 3; 269, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>233, 1; 258, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>264, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:10</td>
<td>270, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>246, 5; 265F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:1</td>
<td>254, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9-10</td>
<td>252A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sermons 230-272B
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>265D, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:5</td>
<td>232, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:6-7</td>
<td>233, 2; 255, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7-8</td>
<td>255, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7-9</td>
<td>233, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:6</td>
<td>255A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:9</td>
<td>231, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:10</td>
<td>256, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>248, 3; 250, 3; 251, 2; 252A, 4; 270, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>254, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:2</td>
<td>265, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>254, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:10</td>
<td>265E, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:11</td>
<td>267, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:12:20</td>
<td>233, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:3</td>
<td>263, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:5:11</td>
<td>262, 4, 5; 265E, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:11</td>
<td>233, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:18</td>
<td>261, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:9</td>
<td>231, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>255, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:1</td>
<td>265E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:4</td>
<td>226, 3; 243, 8; 254, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:6</td>
<td>252A, 6; 260C, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88:5</td>
<td>231, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:1</td>
<td>261, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:9</td>
<td>261, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:11</td>
<td>242, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1</td>
<td>255A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97:9</td>
<td>265E, 2, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98:1</td>
<td>255A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>250, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:2</td>
<td>265, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:4</td>
<td>264, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:40</td>
<td>255A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:2-3</td>
<td>263A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:3</td>
<td>266, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109:7</td>
<td>254, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:24</td>
<td>258, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:10</td>
<td>248, 5; 250, 3; 270, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:6-7</td>
<td>265, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:7-8</td>
<td>262, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113:2-3</td>
<td>265, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113:3</td>
<td>267, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>231, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>260E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>254, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:13</td>
<td>254, 6; 255A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:22-23</td>
<td>258, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:24</td>
<td>230; 258, 1; 260D, 1; 265A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:26</td>
<td>258, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:1:29</td>
<td>259, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:5:3</td>
<td>250, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:96</td>
<td>269, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:4</td>
<td>262, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:8</td>
<td>256, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134:1</td>
<td>243, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:5</td>
<td>266, 1, 7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16, LXX</td>
<td>252A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiasticus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>254, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>269, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>255, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>241, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>255, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>248, 5; 252A, 6; 270, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10</td>
<td>255, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:4</td>
<td>250, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>254, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>266, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>244, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:19</td>
<td>260C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>265D, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:11</td>
<td>250, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>255, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>265B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1, LXX</td>
<td>260A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>265, 2; 265D, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/7

New Testament

Matthew
3:12 260D, 2
4:2 252, 10
5:8 261, 4
5:12 270, 4
5:17-18 251, 3
5:17 263A, 4; 270, 3, 4
5:19 251, 4; 270, 7
5:20 251, 4
5:25 251, 7
5:42 239, 5
6:9 252A, 6
6:10 265, 3
6:12-14 256, 1
6:12 261, 10
6:13-19 232, 3
6:25-16 251, 3
7:7 260D, 2
7:13 260C, 7
7:21 269, 4
8:29 236A, 4
11:28-30 272B, 7
11:30 252, 3
12:28 272B, 4
13:47-50 251, 3; 252, 2; 252A, 3
16:13-14 236A, 3
16:13-17 234, 3
16:13-16 265B, 3
16:15-18 236A, 3
16:15-16 270, 2
16:16 236A, 4; 254, 7; 257, 3
16:16-18 244, 1
16:17 254, 7; 270, 2
16:17-18 270, 2
16:18 236A, 3
16:21-22 257, 3
16:21-23 232, 4; 254, 7; 270, 2
16:23 257, 3; 270, 2; 272B, 1
17:20 246, 3
19:28 262, 4
22:1-10 270, 7
22:10 250, 2
22:27-40 248, 4; 261, 8; 265, 9
22:40 249, 3; 250, 3
23:2-3 251, 3, 4
23:3 269, 4
23:8 270, 1
24:13 250, 2, 3
25:31-41 251, 2
25:34 250, 3; 251, 4; 252A, 4; 265, 3
25:35 261, 10; 263A, 1
25:35,38,40 236, 3
25:40 239, 7
25:41,34 248, 3
25:41 265, 3
25:42 261, 10
25:46 235, 4; 261, 10
26:64 265B, 3
27:25 234, 3
27:40 263, 2
27:42 236A, 4
28:1 260C, 5
28:9 236A, 2; 243, 1
28:20 239, 7; 261, 11; 263, 3;
263A, 2, 4; 265A, 7; 265B, 3

Mark
1:17 249, 1; 250, 1, 2; 252A, 2
1:25 234, 3
2:17 240, 1
2:22 267, 2; 272B, 1
4:23 264, 2
4:25 252, 12
5:22-28 245, 3
5:28 244, 3
5:28-31 243, 2
10:8 263A, 3
10:38 260C, 5
10:45 265F, 1
11:9 258, 1
14:34 261, 7; 265A, 7
14:34 265D, 3
14:38 256, 1
16:2 260C, 5
16:7 236A, 4
16:12 239, 2
16:16 233, 1, 4, 5; 234, 3

Luke
1:35 233, 4
3:17 252, 5
5:1-7 270, 7
5:4 252, 2
5:4-5 252A, 2
5:4.7 249, 1
5:5 248, 2
5:6-7,10 248, 2; 250, 2
5:45 250, 2
6:37-38 259, 4
8:45-46 244, 3; 245, 3

Sermons 230-272B
### Sermons 230-272B

| 8:46 | 243, 2 | John | 1:1 | 232, 5; 245, 4; 261, 2, 8; 264, 4; 264, 5 |
| 10:20 | 263A, 2 | 1:1-2 | 238, 2 |
| 10:41-42 | 255, 6 | 1:1-3 | 244, 3 |
| 11:3 | 242A, 3 | 1:1-3.14 | 244A, 1; 253, 5 |
| 11:9 | 270, 1 | 1:1-3 | 261, 4; 265E, 2 |
| 11:20 | 272B, 4 | 1:1-3 | 264, 4 |
| 11:23 | 260A, 3 | 1:3 | 239, 6 |
| 11:41 | 261, 10 | 1:4 | 232, 5 |
| 12:13 | 265, 11 | 1:1-5 | 261, 6 |
| 13:7-9 | 254, 3 | 1:10-11 | 252, 10 |
| 13:13-15 | 265, 11 | 1:14 | 232, 5; 237, 1, 4; 242A, 1; 258, 3; 261, 7, 8; 264, 5, 6, 7; 265A, 7; 265D, 7 |
| 13:19 | 246, 3 | 1:29 | 272B, 3 |
| 13:29 | 270, 3 | 1:51 | 265B, 3 |
| 13:34 | 265, 11 | 3:8 | 266, 7 |
| 17:6 | 246, 3 | 3:13 | 263A, 1, 2, 3; 265B, 2 |
| 18:25-27 | 247, 3 | 3:16 | 265B, 4 |
| 20:36 | 255, 7 | 3:27 | 265D, 6 |
| 23:35 | 236A, 4 | 4:14 | 239, 1; 260E, 2 |
| 23:39-42 | 232, 6 | 4:24 | 265A, 3 |
| 23:42 | 234, 2; 236A, 4 | 5:19 | 261, 7 |
| 23:43 | 232, 6 | 6:51 | 265B, 4 |
| 24:1 | 260C, 5 | 7:37-39 | 270, 2; 271 |
| 24:5-6 | 236A, 4 | 7:39 | 265, 8; 267, 1 |
| 24:11 | 232, 2; 236, 2 | 8:3-11 | 272B, 5 |
| 24:15-16 | 236A, 2 | 8:31-32 | 241, 5 |
| 24:16 | 235, 2; 239, 2 | 8:34 | 270, 5 |
| 24:16-19 | 232, 3 | 8:36 | 241, 5 |
| 24:17-21 | 234, 2 | 8:44 | 232, 4 |
| 24:17 | 235, 1 | 9:16 | 238, 1 |
| 24:18-19 | 236, 2 | 10:16 | 265, 11 |
| 24:18-20 | 236A, 3 | 10:18 | 232, 5 |
| 24:20-21 | 236, 2 | 10:30 | 237, 4; 261, 7; 264, 2, 4; 265A, 6, 7; 265D, 3 |
| 24:21 | 232, 5, 6; 235, 2; 236A, 4 | 13:34 | 269, 3 |
| 24:26 | 236, 2 | 13:36 | 253, 3 |
| 24:29 | 235, 3 | 13:37 | 253, 3 |
| 24:32 | 234, 3 | 14:1 | 264, 2 |
| 24:36-39 | 242, 1 | 14:2-3 | 239, 2 |
| 24:37 | 273, 1; 265D, 1 | 14:2-3 | 239, 2 |
| 24:37-38 | 237, 3 | 14:8-9 | 264, 2 |
| 24:37-39 | 238, 2; 244, 2; 246, 4; 245, 2 | 14:9 | 264, 4 |
| 24:38-39 | 265D, 2; 268, 4 | 14:21 | 260A, 1 |
| 24:39 | 237, 3; 242, 6; 261, 7; 264, 6 | 14:23 | 261, 5 |
| 24:41-43 | 242, 2 | 14:28 | 264, 2, 4 |
| 24:44-46 | 238, 3; 268, 4 | 14:25-28 | 265A, 1 |
Volume III/7

14:28 265A, 6
14:30 265D, 4
14:30-31 265D, 4
15:16 246, 5
16:6 265A, 6
16:7 267, 1; 270, 2
19:30 238, 2
20:2 244, 1; 245, 1; 246, 2
20:8-9 244, 1; 245, 1; 246, 2
20:15 246, 3; 246, 3
20:16 246, 3
20:16-17 244, 2
20:17 243, 1, 2; 244, 3; 245, 1, 2; 246, 3, 5; 265F, 2
20:19 247, 1
20:22 265, 8
20:25 258, 3
20:25-29 239, 7
20:27 258, 3
20:28 245, 2
20:29 259, 1
21:6 248, 3; 250, 3; 251, 2; 252, 1, 2; 252A, 3, 4; 270, 7
21:6.8.11 249, 1
21:11 250, 3; 251, 3; 252, 1, 8; 252A, 5; 270, 7
21:15-17 253, 1, 2
21:19 253, 3
21:20-22 253, 4
21:22 253, 5
21:23 253, 4
29:28 258, 3

Acts
1:6 265, 4
1:7 265, 4, 5
1:7-8 267, 3; 268, 4
1:7-9 265E, 4
1:11 265, 2
1:12 265, 6, 8, 12
1:19 265, 6
1:19-11 245, 2
1:11 265D, 6; 265F, 3
2:1-3 252, 10
2:2-4 269, 1; 271
2:3-4 266, 2
2:13 266, 2; 267, 2
2:27 242A, 2
3:15 236A, 4
4:19-20 260E, 1
4:32 260D, 1; 272; 272B, 2
4:34-35 252, 3

8:21 260A, 2
8:26-38 266, 4
9:4 239, 7; 260, 1; 263A, 1
9:15 256, 2
10:9-15 266, 6
10:20 266, 6
10:28 266, 6
13:37-38 265E, 3

Romans
1:3 246, 5; 272B, 2
1:17 260D, 1
1:18-21 241, 1
1:21-23 241, 3
2:3 232, 1
4:15 270, 3
4:17 260C, 6
4:25 231, 2; 236, 1
5:3-5 265, 10
5:5 265, 10; 269, 2, 3; 270, 4
5:12 255, 4
5:19 236, 1; 260A, 1
6:9 260C, 5
7:22-23 256, 1
7:23 242, 11; 256, 1
7:24 256, 1
7:24-25 256, 2; 272B, 3
7:25 256, 2
8:3 233, 4; 246, 5
8:9 269, 3
8:10-11 256, 3
8:15 269, 2
8:17 265F, 3
8:24 255, 5
8:32 255, 4
9:23 265, 6
10:9 234, 3
10:17 260E, 1
12:11 234, 3
12:12 263A, 4
13:10-9 269, 3
11:25-26 260C, 6
11:33 260C, 6
13:7-8 259, 6
13:12-14 260A, 1
13:13 230
13:13-14 230

1 Corinthians
1:11-13 268, 4
1:12-13 269, 3
| 3:2  | 231, 4  |
| 3:3-4 | 260C, 6 |
| 3:4  | 255, 5  |
| 1 Thessalonians |  |
| 5:5  | 230    |
| 2 Thessalonians |  |
| 3:2  | 265, 2  |
| 2 Timothy |  |
| 2:8  | 234, 3  |
| 2:19 | 265, 2  |
| 3:5  | 260A, 2; 269, 3 |
| 3:6  | 265D, 2 |
| Titus |  |
| 1:16 | 269, 4  |
| 3:5  | 261, 10 |
| Hebrews |  |
| 1:1  | 252, 1  |
| 4:4  | 252, 10 |
| 10:20| 255, 6  |
| James |  |
| 1:2  | 260C, 7 |
| 2:14 | 234, 3  |
| 19   | 234, 3  |
| 4:6  | 270, 4  |
| 1 Peter |  |
| 1:19 | 272B, 3 |
| 2:2  | 260A, 1 |
| 2:21 | 269, 3  |
| 5:5  | 270, 6  |
| 5:8  | 263, 2  |
| 1 John |  |
| 3:2  | 260A, 1; 264, 6 |
| 3:16 | 253, 2  |
| 4:20 | 265, 9  |
| 4:16 | 260C, 1 |
| 4:18 | 270, 4  |
| 5:20 | 265A, 7; 265B, 4, 5 |
| 5:21 | 265A, 7 |
| Jude |  |
| 19   | 265, 11; 269, 3 |
| Revelation |  |
| 1:7  | 265D, 6 |
| 3:5  | 248, 3  |
| 5:5  | 263, 2  |
| 14:14| 248, 3  |
| 14:41| 270, 7  |
| 20:6| 231, 2  |
| 21:2 | 252, 7  |

**Sermons 230-272B**
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Abraham:
seed of: Christ and us, 263A:2
Adam and Eve:
A dam became a living soul, 256:3
A dam was not a son of man, 233:3
Eve’s report on the serpent listened to, 232:2
sin entered world by one man, 255:4
adoption:
my Father and your Father, 265F:2
spirit of sonship, 269:2
adultery: Christ and the woman found in, 272B:5
Aeneas (Virgil), 241:5
afflictions: glory in, 265:10
agapes: serving at, 259:5
alleluia (the word):
harmony in singing, 256:1
heaven’s bliss, 256:1
hope, 255:5
new song, 255A:1
praise God, 243:8, 252:9, 254:5, 255:1, 255:15
praise with voice and heart, 257:1
traveler’s song, 255:1
almsgiving: remedy for sin, 261:10
angels:
ascension: Jesus will come again, 265F:3
eating when given hospitality, 242:2
feeding on Word of God, 237:4
joy, 252:12
people of God to be associated with, 264:6
rich men and equality, 255:7
salvation, 233:4
will separate good from bad (last judgment), 251:3
animals: men and beasts you will save, 233:2-3, 255:4
Arianism, 237:4 (and note 11)
apostles:
see also disciples

B
Babel, tower of, 271
babies: death; at what age will they rise again? 242:4
bad example, see example
bad life, see sin, wrongdoing
baptism:
baptized, but without faith or love of Christ, 260A:2
good results: good lives, 255A:2
octave of Easter rounding off the sacrament, 259:2
receiving the Holy Spirit, 269:2,3
requires living with the risen Christ, 260A:4
sacramental character, 260A:2 (and note 7)
white garments; significance, 260C:7
baptism: infantes
born again; Easter octave, 260C:2
called faithful, live faithfully, 260D:2
clothed yourself with Christ, 260A:1
day which the Lord has made, 258:2
eight saved in the Ark (analogy), 260C:2
God for Father, Church for mother, 260C:1
made new in image of our maker, 259:2
urged not to lead bad lives, 260:1
urged to live good lives, 255A:2
warning re vanity, falsehood, chaff, 260C:6,8
white robes not to be laid aside, 260C:7
energy:
knowledge of God through, 241:2
resurrection, after ugliness of the cross, 254:5
risen body, 243:7
Beezlebub, 272B:4
behavior: praise God not only with voice, 254:8
believing, see faith
Bible:
obscure in, 270:1
prudent understanding of scriptures, 265A:8
big head, proud head, 266:8
birds: rearing chicks, 264:2
bishops: one master, 270:1
blessed: no need of anything in heaven, 255:7
bodies:
see also body and soul; human body; soul
heavenly and earthly bodies (Plato), 241:8
lighter, heavier; relative speed, 242:10
body and soul:
see also human body; soul
animated bodies, 242:11
questioned by the philosophers, 241:2
soul's role in body, 267:4
body, human, see human body
body of Christ (church), see mystical body
bride: Church as, see Church

C
cadaver (the word), 241:2
calling: weak chosen to confound the strong, 250:1
camel: eye of a needle, 247:3
captivity: who took captivity captive? 261:10
Cataphrygians: schism, 252:4
catechumens: knowledge of the eucharist, 232:7
Catholic Church:
see also Church
four corners of the world, 252:10
spread through the whole world, 238:3
charity:
see also love
gift of the Holy Spirit, 265:10
giving and forgiving, 259:4
heaven put up for sale, 259:5
hality and friendliness in, 259:5
what you did to the least of ..., 239:7
chastity: exhortation to the newly baptized, 260:1
children of God: living good lives, 231:4
choice: freedom of chaff to become wheat, 257:6
Christian life:
see also baptism: infantes; faith
account for whole life is owed to God, 259:6
adoption: common God in heaven, 265F:2
baptism: putting on Christ, 260A:1
belonging to one big family, 265F:3
beware of fraud, lies, etc., 260:1
calling Jesus "Lord" requires deeds, 269:4
die in order not to die, 231:3
direct thoughts to eternal happiness, 259:1
hospitality to strangers, 236:3
infantes urged to live good lives, 255A:2
lead good lives among the bad, 249:2
leading good lives: day which the Lord has made, 230
live by what is his; he died with what is ours, 265D:7
love a burning torch, 234:3
made co-heirs by the Son, 260D:2
one soul and one heart in God, 272
partners in Christ's eternity, 260C:6
risen with Christ, 231:3
seek the things that are above, 265C:1
tables of the law enjoined for, 272B:5
Church:
see also mystical body
ark of planks that cannot rot, 264:5
bride and groom, 238:1,3
bride of Christ, 238:3; 265:6; 265E:5
called kingdom of heaven, 251:3
can be overloaded, but not sunk, 252A:2
Sermons 230-272B

Christ the rock on which it is built, 244:1; 270:2
Christian sinners swamp the boat (Church), 248:2
cutting selves off from, 268:2
day which the Lord has made, 258:1
Donatists lacking in, 260A:3
deeded by Christ with unity, 268:4
fishing: nets hold both good and bad, 270:7
foretold by speaking in all tongues (Pentecost), 266:2
glory of Christ, 262:5; 265E:5
glory over all the earth, 262:5
good and bad members in, 250:2; 264:5; 270:7
hear, daughter, and see, 267:3
Jesus’ last words: you shall be my witnesses ..., 265E:4
Mary Magdalen representing, 245:4
mercy in, 259:4
net cast into the sea, 251:3
number fifty, 252:11
only good people in it, after our resurrection, 252A:2
peoples from the Jews and the nations, 258:1
promise: it will not be destroyed, 265E:1
rejoice in added members, 260C:1
represen# by catch of 153 fish, 252:7; 259:2
represented by the Ark, 260C:2
seeking material advantages in, 252:6
separation from unity of, 268:2; 269:2
two catches of fish signifying, 248:1-2; 251:1
unity, see unity
whoever has the Spirit is a member, 268:2
working in its saints, 267:4
you shall be witnesses to me, 265:6
circumcision:
evangelization of the Gentiles, 252:3; 266:6,7
flesh and heart, 260:1
sign, 231:2
commandment: end of every consummation is love, 268:3
compassion: weakness of the weak, 264:3
condemnation: hope for eternal salvation, 233:5
confirmation: fire of the Holy Spirit, 272
conscience: good conscience; peace of heart, 270:5
continence: fidelity to vow of, 260:1
Cornelius (centurion), 266:6,7; 269:2
cornerstone:
builders rejected Christ, 258:1
Jesus as, 252A:2
Jews and Gentiles, 252:3
covetness: commandment against, 250:3; 252A:6
creation:
creator’s gift of himself, 259:3
God rested on the seventh day, 270:5; 260C:4
importance of unity in, 268:3
maker of all becomes made among all, 239:6
meaning of eighth day, 259:2
sixth/seventh days, 251:5; 259:2; 270:5
creator:
forsaking the creator, 260C:4
loving, rather than the creator, 261:4
cross:
see also crucifixion
moustrap for the devil, 263:2; 265D:5
way to heaven, 260C:5
we are put right on his cross, 236:1
wise ones of the world as believers, 272A

D
crucifixion:
see also cross
Christ mocked on the cross, 263:2
cross a classroom; tree the chair he teaches from, 234:2
demonstrates downfall of our old self, 233:2
faith of the good thief, 232:5-6
obedient unto death, 264:3,4
pagan belief in, 234:3
ugliness gave birth to beauty, 254:5
Word of God, 258:3
cruelty: experience of, 259:3
cupidity: desire to divide, 265:11
curse: let his prayer be treated as sin, 254:4
darkness:
day which the Lord has made, 258:2; 260D:1
evil works in, 261:6
human heart, 258:3
Spirit of God; the newly baptized, 258:2; 260D:1
day: walk honorably, as in the day, 230
deacons: seven added to the apostles, 266:4
dead:
cadaver: body without soul, 241:2
God’s power to raise the dead, 240:2
souls’ desire (pagan) to return to bodies, 241:5
souls “shunted back to other bodies,” 240:4; 241:4
dead:
deacon: seven added to the apostles, 266:4
death:
death will go on living in the damned, 233:5
deliverance from body of, 256:1-2
eternal, after death in time, 231:2
flesh, not spirit, 265D:3
hope in the risen Christ, 261:1

Value III/7
Jesus emptied himself; chose worst kind of death, 264:3
no bad death, if you lead a good life, 249:2
punishment for fault of sin, 231:2
sin, the father of, 231:2
sin the sting of, 256:2
swallowed up in victory, 233:5; 265B:5; 265D:5
we die of necessity: Christ of sheer goodness, 265E:3
who took captivity captive? 261:10
Word of God accepted our death, 232:5
debtor: God's promises, 254:6
deceit: flatterer, 266:8
delight:
content having God alone, 255:7
two kinds of life (Mary and Martha), 255:6
deliverance (prayer), 256:1-2
deluge:
Easter season, see ascension; Pentecost; resurrection
eating: why the risen Christ ate, 242:2
Elijah:
fifty days fast, 264:5; 270:3
supported by widow woman in Zarephath, 239:3
waited on by birds, 239:3
Emmasus:
disciples' nonrecognition of Jesus, 232:3,5; 235:1-3; 236:2; 236A:2,4; 238:2,7
disciples not walking on His way, 235:2
heart-warming feeling, 234:2,3
recognition in breaking the bread, 232:7; 234:2; 235:3; 238A:2;
recognition restored through hospitality, 235:3; 239:2
their eyes were held ..., 235:2; 236A:2; 239:2
end of the world:
Jesus: it is not for you to know..., 265E:4; 267:3; 268:4
shore, the two catches of fish, 251:3
eternal life; eternity:
see also future life; heaven
born again in baptism, 260:1
difficulties tolerated for sake of, 260C:3
exhortation to the infantes, 260B:1
Jesus is the true God, 265B:4
Jesus makes us heirs to, 265B:5
narrow road to, 260C:7
number eight, 260C:3; 4,6
represented by first and eighth day, 260C:5
seek felicity, not equality, 261:2
word of God, 239:1
eucharist:
body and blood of Christ, 272
one bread, one body, 272
recognition of the sacrament, 232:7
sacrament of unity, 272
unworthy if not holding bond of peace, 272
evangelization:
disciples sent to ends of the world, 233:1
Mark and Luke chosen as evangelists, 239:1
M ark and Luke as evangelists.
no person is "unclean," 266:6
Philip and the eunuch, 266:4; 269:2
words gone to ends of the world, 269:1
example:
choose the one to imitate, 260D:2
infantes, avoid bad example, 260B:3
leading others to their ruin, 260D:3
exodus: desert journey a model for the infantes, 260B:1
experience: factor in virtuous acts, 259:3
eyes:
mind of more value, 265C:2
nothing dearer than, 265C:1,2

E
earth: diversity of weights in elements, 242:8
Sermons 230-272B

F

faith:
ability to defend the faith, 240:1
belief without seeing, 259:1
believe (here) in Christ incarnate, 264:6
believe in order to be purified, 261:4
believing what we cannot see, 231:1
building up; the post-resurrection forty days, 265:1
built up by the Lord's absence, 235:4
Christian belief, not demonic, 234:3
comes from hearing, 260E:1
depti of the heart, 265C:2
doubting Thomas; complete fullness of faith, 231:2
eyes of the heart, 263:3
flesh and divinity of Christ, 264:5
flesh of Christ necessary for the faithful, 264:5
God's promises will come about, 242:12
grain of mustard seed, 246:3
I believed, therefore I spoke, 260E:2
Jesus present with us if we believe, 232:7
miracle: whole world believing the unbelievable, 272A
nets cast into the sea, 252:2
Pentecost: astonishment at speaking in tongues, 266:2
praise for those who do not see, yet believe, 239:6
proclaiming; eloquence not demanded, 260E:2
progress; measure allotted to each, 232:1
required for understanding, 272
salvation offered for, 233:1
seriousness seeks by believing, 261:2
touching signifies faith, 243:2; 244:3; 246:4
false pretenses, 269:4
falsehood, see lie
family life; older brothers and sisters, 260C:1
fasting; forty days, 252:10,11
represents pains of contest, 263A:4
vanity of present age, 263A:4
fat head, proud head, 266:8
fear:
afraid of being charged with being afraid, 232:8
cast out by perfect love, 270:4
chaste and servile, 270:4
gift of the Spirit, 250:3
of the Lord: beginning of wisdom, 248:5
wisdom, gift of the spirit, 270:5
feasting: promise of age to come, 263A:4
fidelity: called faithful, live faithfully, 260D:2
financier: giving less, giving back more, 239:5
finger of God, 272B:4,5
fire: radiance co-eval with it, 265A:5
fish:
boat in danger of sinking, 251:1
catch of 153 fish, 248:3-5; 250:3; 251:3,5; 252:7-8; 270:7
first catch, significance, 248:2; 250:2,3; 251:1; 252A:1,4
fishing all night; nothing caught, 252:1
nets breaking, 249:1; 250:3; 251:3; 252:1,2; 252A:5; 270:7
nets cast, 248:2,3; 249:1-2; 250:2; 251:1; 252:7; 270:7
nets cast to right-hand side, 248:3; 249:1; 251:2; 252:7; 252A:3,4; 270:7
second catch, significance, 248:3; 250:3; 251:2-252:7
supernumeraries, 270:7
two boats stand for Jews and Gentiles, 248:2; 252:2,4
two catches, 248:1; 249:1-2; 250:2; 251:1-2
fishermen: chosen as disciples, 250:1
flattery:
beware of one who flatters, 266:8
oil of the sinner, 266:8
flesh:
see also body and soul; human body:
resurrection of the body
addicted to fleshly desires, 255:7
Christ can make heavenly body out of, 264:6
delights of, and souls after death, 241:4
likeness of the flesh of sin, 246:5
make no provision for lusts of, 230
mortality of, 260A:4
floating, 242:8-9
flour: Elijah's miraculous jar, 239:3
food: represents hope of peace, 263A:4
fools: what falls from a height (philosophy)
sinks all the deeper, 241:3
forgiveness: mercy, 259:4
forgiveness of sin:
God's accord, 251:7
grace achieves, 270:3
Jesus undid the fault of sin, 240:3
forty, see number 40
four, see number 4
fruit: barren fig tree, 254:3
futility of, 242:8-9
future life:
see also heaven; resurrection of the body
feasting on promise of, 263A:4
fifty days after Easter; significance, 243:8
having much, requiring nothing (temporal), 255:2
hope of blessedness, 233:1
philosophers on souls after death, 241:4
G
genealogies: "sacraments" in, 272B:2

Volue III/7
Gentiles:  
cornerstone; joined to the Jews, 252:3  
evangelization of the uncircumcised, 252:3;  
266:6,7  
giving, see charity  
glory:  
Church the glory of Christ, 262:5  
enjoy the glory of God, 255:6  
God:  
see also creation; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ;  
Trinity  
beautiful and unchangeable, 241:2  
enjoy his glory, 255:6  
faithful, when in temptation, 256:3  
great in power, not in size, 265A:3  
having God alone; miss other things that  
we enjoy? 255:7  
his presence is never withdrawn, 252:10  
Jesus’ words: my God and your God, 246:5  
knowing him: question the beauty of the  
earth, 241:2  
makes accord by forgiving sins, 251:7  
praise of, 252:9  
promises make him our debtor, 254:6  
something to know (Paul), 261:3  
goodness:  
choose good people to imitate, 260D:2  

H
hand, fingers of, 272B:4
happiness:  
all want happy lives, 231:4,5  
bad lives and, 250:2  
complete and perfect, 252:12  
ever found in this life, 231:5  
pagan philosophy, 241:5-6  
never weary of good health, 255:3  
purity of this life, 231:4  

heart:  
avarice in, 261:5  
burning, on road to Emmaus, 234:3  
Christ isn’t absent if held in the heart,  
263:3  
circumcision of, 260:1  
darkness in, 238:3  
faith in depths of, 265C:2  
inner gazing at Son of God, 264:2  
light of truth in, 230  
never weary of good health, 255:3  

Good Thief:  
faith of, 232:5-6, 236A:4  
remember me when ..., 232:6; 236A:4  
good works:  
exhortation to, 261:9  
give example through, 269:4  

grace:  
day which the Lord has made; 260D:1  
fulfilling the law, 270:3  
guilt and the law, 272B:3  
Holy Spirit given, 270:6  
Holy Spirit working in us, 250:3  
new wineskins, 272B:7  
grain and chaff, 252:5-6  
greed: earthly values, 265C:1  
guilt:  
grace and the law, 272B:3  
letter of the law, 270:3  

signified by “right-hand side,” 270:7  
your living a good life makes me rich, 232:8  
gospels: wisdom dispensed in, 252:10  

health:  
goodness, 230A:2  
good works:  
exhortation to, 261:9  
give example through, 269:4  
God’s way of finding doers of good, 239:4  
obtaining God’s mercy, 259:3  
recognition of Jesus in, 239:7  
goodness:  
choose good people to imitate, 260D:2  
fear of leading bad lives, 249:2  
perseverance in, 250:2  

Sermons 230-272B
what does man have better than heart?
265C:1

heaven:
see also resurrection of the body
blessed; no need of anything, 255:7
beyond the least or greatest in kingdom of, 251:4
meditate on, 263A:2
must accept indignity of the cross, 260C:5
neither has eye seen, nor ear heard, 236:3
nether has eye seen, nor ear heard, 236:3
put up for sale: give to the poor, 259:5
question: earthly body in a new earth, 232:6
will of the Father, 269:4

evangel: enfeebles herself for chicks, 264:2,5
heresies: fishing nets broken, 250:2; 251:1; 252A:1
Holy Spirit:
see also Pentecost
capacity for, and fulfilling the law, 270:3
carnal person does not receive gifts, 267:2
carnal person does not receive gifts, 267:2
effects one soul and one heart in God, 272B:2
equality in the Trinity, 264:7
filled with; charity, 272B:7
finger of God, 249:3; 272B:4
first coming, without laying on of hands, 266:6
fruits produced by the Spirit, 260A:3
gift of tongues, 267:2
gifts: from wisdom to fear, 270:5
given by the apostles, 266:3,4
given sometimes without human minister, 266:4
given to Christians in grace, 272B:3
given twice by Christ, 265:8
given twice by Christ, 265:8
help in keeping the commandments, 248:5;
251:6,7; 252A:6
law and, 251:6; 252A:6
letter of law brought to life by, 270:3
life to our mortal bodies, 256:3
number seven, 270:3
Pentecost, 265:8
power to say “Jesus is Lord,” 269:4
promised at the ascension, 268:4
recieved from earth (brother), from heaven
(God), 265:5
received through humility: repelled through
pride, 270:6
receiving, at baptism, 269:2
receiving, at baptism, 269:2
rivers of living water, 270:2; 271
sent to remove fleshly yearnings, 264:4
seven gifts of, 250:3; 252A:6
sevenfold qualities, 249:3; 251:5,6; 252A:6
signs of presence of, 269:2
virgin birth and, 233:4

whoever has the Spirit is in the Church,
268:2
why given twice, 265:9

hope:
Christ is alive; how can hope be dead in
you? 235:2
Christ’s resurrection, 265:2
death and the risen Christ, 261:1
disciples walk to Emmaus; lost hope, 232:5; 234:2; 235:2-3; 236:2; 236A:4
Good Thief’s faith, 232:6; 234:2; 236A:4
joy, 255:5
placing hopes in man, 265D:7
resurrection of Jesus, 231:2
risen with Christ (not yet in fact), 260A:4
shelter of your wings, 255:6

hospitality:
Emmaus disciples recognize Jesus, 235:3;
239:7
stranger treated as Christ himself, 236:3

human body:
see also body and soul; flesh; resurrection
of the body; soul
beards and nipples, 243:6
beauty now, how much more after
resurrection, 243:7
constant need of restoration, 243:8
dead because of sin, 256:3
dead because of sin, 256:3
interconnection and design of parts, 243:4
Porphyry’s view: to be shunned, 241:7
some parts for use; others for elegance,
243:6
spirit quickens all the parts, 268:2
visible beauty, 243:4

who created/shape it all? 242A:2

human condition:
angious and worrying, 256:1
before Christ came: heavy hearts, 231:4
being born and dying, 233:4
Christ shared our toil, pain, death, 231:5
death, the lot of all, 231:2
sin the cause of evil straits, 240:5
time of gladness; time of sadness, 254:1-5
work now, future payment, 233:1

human reproduction: a daily miracle, 242A:2

humane acts, 259:3
humaneness: uniting effect, 259:5

humans:
bad human worth more than any animal, 255:3
compares a human being buried; and seedled,
242A:2
distinction: men and sons of men, 255:4
divided: light (eternity), dark (damnation),
260D:1
soul and flesh, 265D:3

humble:
dug ditch a sign of, 254:3
Jesus exalted because of, 265E:2

necessary in giving, 259:5
Volume III/7

receiving the Holy Spirit, 270:6
way toward Christ’s exaltation, 260C:5

I
idols: philosophers, 241:3
ignorance: pagan souls in heaven, 241:5
immortality:
imperishability, 256:2; 259:3; 264:6
mortals must put on, 242A:3
philosophers on, 240:4
true health, 255:7
Incarnation:
accepting flesh, divinity unchanged, 264:4
believe (here) in Christ incarnate, 264:6
born a mortal for the sake of mortals, 233:4
faith in, necessary for all, 264:5
likeness of the flesh of sin, 233:4
purpose, 262:1
Son of God came in order to die, 232:5
Word made flesh, 261:7
Word of God; complete human soul, 237:4
infantes, see baptism: infantes
inheritance: brothers dividing, 265:11
interest rates, 239:5
irreligious people: gifts lavished on, 255:3

J
Jerusalem: witnesses in, 265:6
Jesus Christ:
see also Christian life; Incarnation; Son of
God;
Son of Man; Word of God
ancestry includes both sinners and just
men, 272B:2
appeared openly as man, remained hidden
as God, 261:7
ascending to “my Father and your Father,“ 246:5; 265F:2
ascension, see A Ascension
Behold the Lamb of God, 272B:3
born of compassion, 265E:3
both God and man, 253:5; 258:3
bride and bridegroom, 238:1,3
called lion and lamb, 263:2
came disguised to be judged; will come
openly to judge, 263:1
chosen to be guest/stranger on this earth, 239:2
Church is the glory of, 265E:5
contrasts in life of, 239:6
cornerstone rejected by builders, 258:1
creator of man; created as man, 244:3
creature too, as man, 246:5
descended without, ascended with, a body, 263A:3
difference from other human beings, 265E:3
divinity; in Peter’s letters, John’s gospel, 253:5
divinity took on humanity, 265B:2
emptied himself; form of a servant, 246:5;
264:3,7; 265A:7; 265E:2; 265F:1;
270:2
equal to the Father, 244:3,4; 264:2,3,7
exalted above all gods (prophetic psalm), 265E:4
exalted because he humbled himself,
265E:2
far above us in divinity; close in assumed
infirmity, 242A:1
fasted forty days, 263A:4; 270:3
Father is greater than I, 265A:6,7
fountain of life, 233:2
fulfiller of the prophets, 232:3
glorified, 270:2
God above us: man among us, 265A:2
he was life for us, we were death for him,
232:5
how he is God, 261:2
human affection for, 270:2
humbled himself, 272A
hunger and thirst, 255:2
I and the Father are one, 265A:7; 265D:3
imitate his compassion, 264:3
in heaven and also with us, 265F:3
Incarnation, see Incarnation
judge the living and the dead, 262:4
judge visible to both just and unjust,
265F:3
Judgment day, 265:3
last words: you shall be my witnesses..., 265E:4
less (as man) than the Father, 264:4
less than the angels (Ps 8:5), 265A:6
life events, 262:4
life-giving spirit; contrast with Adam,
256:3
life of the world, 265B:4
Lord of the prophets, 234:2
loving Christ fulfills both commandments,
261:8
materialistic thought: only a man, 243:2
mediator between just God and unjust men,
240:5
miracles: no rational explanation, 247:2
mission, passion, death, 231:5
my God and your God ..., 265F:1,2
my soul is sorrowful ..., 265D:3
 needy in his members, 239:7
not robbery to be equal to God, 244:3,4;
265E:2
our brother in form of servant, 265F:1
our brother, our Lord, 265F:2
penalties for our sins taken on by, 240:3

Sermons 230-272B
present everywhere in divinity, 264:2
present in heaven and with us, 263A:1
promises to those who love him, 260A:1
punishment (death) for our sin shared by,
   231:2
say “he is Lord” in your deeds, 269:4
see him spiritually (not with bodily eyes), 265A:6
seed of Abraham, 263A:2
show us the Father, 264:2
sinlessness, 246:5; 265D:4
skill as teacher, 265:5
someone touched me ..., 244:3; 245:3
Son of God by nature, 265E:3
Son of God poor for our sake, 239:6
Son of man; Adam only a man, 233:3
speaks by sounds and deeds, 252:1
suffers yet when his members suffer,
   263A:1
take away true flesh, there is no true
suffering, 238:3
testament for unity of the Church, 265:7
thinking of Christ in a merely human way,
   272B:1
thinking of him in a more spiritual way,
   264:2
thought of only as a man (Photinus), 246:4
touched by woman with issue of blood,
   245:3
touching him means believing in him,
   243:2; 244:3; 245:3
touching the man; failing to believe he is
   God, 244:3
twice glorified; twice gives the Holy Spirit,
   265:8
two natures; communicatio idiomatum,
   265B:3
what he says as God, as soul, as flesh,
   261:7
whole Christ is man and God, 261:7
woman found in adultery; he wrote on the
   ground, 272B:3
Word, human spirit, human flesh, 238:2;
   253:5; 265D:3
Word of God, 237:4
Jesus Christ: passion and death
   see also crucifixion; resurrection
   corruption could not affect him, 265E:3
death without sin, 233:4
disciples think of him only as prophet,
   236:2; 236A:2
folly to philosophers, 240:5
he chose of his own authority to die, 232:5
he died in the flesh, not in divinity, 242A:1
his disciples fell away from hope, 236:2;
   236A:4
necessary for Christ to suffer, 265D:3
passion read from Matthew’s gospel, 232:1
Peter’s reaction to foretelling, 270:2
reason for dying, 265D:4
salvation accomplished, 265A:1
sign of miseries of this life, 233:1
signifies time we are living now, 254:5
today you shall be with me in paradise,
   232:6
will of the Father, 265D:4
Word of God had nothing with which to
die, 265D:7
worst kind of death chosen by Jesus, 264:3
Jews:
apostles as Jewish, 258:1
belief that Christ was crucified, 234:3
believers in Christ shared their goods,
   252:3
boats; two casts of nets, 252:3
forty years in the desert, 264:5
Pentecost, 272B:2
John, Saint:
rumor: he is not to die, 253:4
running to Christ’s tomb, 244:1; 245:1
joy:
fleshly addiction, 255:7
heavenly, 252:12
hope, 255:5
Judas: curse; let his prayer be treated as sin,
   254:4
Judgment day:
see also end of the world; Second Coming
come, blessed of my Father, 252A:4
future judgment to be presence of Christ,
   265:3,8
Jesus visible to both just and unjust, 265F:3
live as though he were coming today, 265:4
mercy now, separation later, 250:2
promise will be kept one day, 265E:1
we are not to pass, before final judgment,
   243:5
Jupiter, 241:7
just man: correcting out of mercy, 266:8
justice:
endowment with; doing good works, 251:7
more than that of scribes and Pharisees,
   251:4
Judgment: Christ died for our sins, 236:1
Pelagian error, 260D:1
K
kindness: road to reach God, 259:4
kingdom of God:
flesh and blood shall not gain possession,
   264:6
Jesus invites us to live with him, 231:5
Volume III/7

judgment day, 265:3
kingdom of heaven, see heaven
kingdom of Israel, 265:3, 4
knowledge:
    puffs up; charity builds up, 270:3

L
lamb: Passover, 272B:2
law (Mosaic law):
    see also ten commandments
five books, 272B:3
fulfilled by grace, 270:3
given on day of Pentecost, 272B:6
given to Jews in fear, 272B:3
guilt and grace, 272B:3
hearts of stone; hearts of flesh, 272B:5
letter kills; Spirit brings to life, 250:3;
251:6; 270:3
obeying for fear of punishment, 251:6;
270:4
plainly shown to philosophers, 241:1
summary: two commandments to love,
269:3
transgression, without the Spirit, 250:3
wisdom dispersed in, 252:10
word commanding one thing; you doing
another, 251:7
word of the law as opponent, 251:7
laying on of hands, 266:4, 5, 6; 269:2
lead, floating, 242:9
leisure: good use of, 259:6
lending: interest rates, 239:5
Lent:
    forty day fast, 270:3
    forty days stand for temporal difficulties,
243:8
time of sorrow, 254:5
Leontius, Saint, 262:2
lie:
    every man a liar, 232:3; 254:1; 257:2-3
every man (Adam) a liar, 260E:2
falsehood: only thing man truly owns,
254:7
man speaks from what is his own, 232:4
life:
    desire for a long, bad life, 232:8
two kinds: delight and need, 255:6
light:
    day which the Lord has made, 230; 258:2;
260D:1
shines in darkness, 261:6
truth illustrated from example of, 265A:5
loan: extortionate rates of interest, 239:5
Lord’s day: sabbath, 260C:5
Lord’s prayer: daily purification, 261:10
love:
    see also charity
burning torch, 234:3
creator, not creature, 261:4
fear God with chaste love, 270:4
filled with the Spirit: charity in us, 272B:7
gift of the Holy Spirit, 270:4
heirs; added members in the Church,
260C:1
Jesus present with us, 263A:1
loving Christ fulfills both commandments,
261:8
new commandment, 269:3
one charity, two commandments, 265:9
owe nobody anything, except to love one
another, 259:6
Peter, do you love me? 253:1
two commandments; Holy Spirit given
twice, 265:9
two principal commandments, 248:4; 250:3
unity of the Church, 265:11
use second commandment to gain the first,
265:9
Luke, Saint, evangelist, 239:1
lust: fire consuming, 271

M
Manichees:
    risen Christ as spirit, 237:1-4; 238:2;
265D:1-2
schism, 252:4
mankind:
    see also humans
creation of humans from one man, 268:3
M ark, Saint, evangelist, 239:1
marriage: faithfulness in, 260:1
M artha and M ary:
    M artha busy with many things, 255:6
    M ary chose the better part, 255:5
    M ary learning and praising, 255:2
martyrs: witness-bearing, 260E:2
Mary, Blesse V irgin:
    M ary believed and conceived, 233:4
    virgin represents unity, 268:3
    virginity preserved, 231:2
M ary Magdalene:
    Christ mistaken for gardener, 246:3
    resurrection; the Church, 245:4
M ary (sister of Lazarus), see M artha and M ary
materialistic people, 242:1; 243:2
mercy:
    Holy Spirit, 252A:6
    multiplicity of your mercy, 233:2
    show mercy, receive mercy, 259:3
    two sorts: giving and forgiving, 259:4
military service, desertion from, 260A:2
mind:
    more value than eyes, 265C:2
use to believe in Word of God, 265C:2

Sermons 230-272B
Sermons 230-272B

miracles:
  making difficulties with God's working, 247:3
  materialistic attitude, 242:1
  no rational explanation, 247:2
  whole world believing the unbelievable, 272A
morality, distinguished by, 234:3

Moses:
  fast for forty days, 264:5; 270:3
  head and members, 268:4
  head, body, bride, 238:3
  many members, 263A:2
  members of body of Christ, 272
  none but Christ descended/ascended, 263A:2
  we see; apostles could only believe, 242:12

nature:
  beauty is confession of God, 241:2
  daily course as miracle, 247:2

need(s):
  bodies after the resurrection, 243:6
  busy with many things, 255:6
  needy, see poor
neighbor:
  loving, by loving Christ, 261:8

Noah's Ark:
  clean and unclean animals, 264:5
  Easter octave, 260C:2
  number 3: suggests the creator, 252:10
  number 4: temporal realities, 252:10; 263A:4; 270:3
  number 7:
    the seventh day of creation, 251:5; 252:10; 270:5,6,7
    weeks after the resurrection, 268:1
  number 8:
    eight saved in the ark, 260C:2
  eternity represented by, 260C:3,4,6
  number 10:
    fullness of wisdom, 252:10; 264:5
    law signified by, 252A:6; 263A:4; 270:6,7
  number 12, 268:1
  number 17: seven added to ten, 249:3; 250:3; 251:5; 252A:6; 270:7
  number 40: four times ten, 252:10,11,12; 259:2; 263A:4; 270:3
  number 50: meaning of, 252:8,10; 252:11,12; 254:5; 259:2; 260C:6; 270:3
  number 120, 267:1; 268:1
  number 153: 248:3,5; 249:3; 250:3; 251:3,5; 252:7,8,11; 252A:5,6; 259:2; 270:7

O
  obedience: cling to the one who redeemed you, 260B:3
  oil:
    Elijah's miraculous flask, 239:3
    oil of the sinner, 266:1,7-8
  original sin: evil inheritance, 242A:3

P
  pagans: belief in Christ crucified, 234:3
  parable: barren fig tree, 254:3
  Paraclete, see Holy Spirit
  pardon: mercy, 259:4
  Passover:
    Jews and Christians celebrate, 272B:6
    look for lamb among goats and sheep, 272B:2
  numbers in celebration of, 272B:6
  patriarchs: temporal dispensation, 252:10
  Paul, Saint:
    Saul, why are you persecuting me? 239:7; 260D:1; 263A:1
    seeking to know God, 261:3
  peace:
    heart; spiritual vacation, 270:5
    hope of, 263A:4
  penitents' corner, 232:8
  Pentecost:
    Church speaking in tongues of all nations, 266:2; 267:3; 268:1; 269:1; 270:6; 271
    come only after Christ had gone, 270:2
    disciples as new wineskins, 266:2; 267:1; 272B:1
    feast of weeks, 270:6
    fiftieth day, 270:1,3; 272B:2
    giving of the law and, 272B:3
    Holy Spirit sent after ten days, 270:6
    hundred and twenty persons, 267:1; 268:1
    Jews celebrate, 272B:2
    law/Holy Spirit received on, 272B:4,6
    number 50, 259:2; 260C:6; 270:6
    these men are drunk..., 266:2; 267:2
    vigil of, 266:1-8
  perfection: God's commandments, 249:3
  perseverance:
    leading good lives, 250:2
    salvation, 250:3
  Peter, Saint:
    asked three times: Do you love me? 253:1
    blessed for truth-telling, 254:7
    both truthful and liar, 257:3
    crucified, 253:5
    failure at passion of Jesus, 231:1

Volue III/7
foretelling of Christ's passion, 270:2
future martyrdom indicated, 253:2
get behind me, Satan, 232:4; 270:2; 272B:1
his denial: fear of dying, 253:3
his tears: his rising again, 253:3
human affection for Christ, 270:2
love, 234:3
man who spoke the truth; also a liar, 254:7
not to know time of Christ's return, 265:4,5
power given only from on high, 265D:6
rock (Rocky), 244:1; 265D:6 (and note 9); 270:2
running to Christ's tomb, 245:1
sheep and lambs entrusted to, 253:2
vision of dish with unclean animals, 266:6
walking on the sea, 247:2
who do you say that I am? 236A:2,3
You are the Christ ..., 232:3,4; 234:3; 236A:4; 244:1; 265B:3; 270:2
Pharisees: justice of, 251:4
Philip (deacon) and the eunuch, 266:4-5
philosophers: folly of wisdom of this world, 240:5
fools for calling themselves wise, 241:3
hope of happy life, 241:6
inexcusable not to glorify God, 241:1
on state of souls after death, 240:4
spoken to by God, through works of the world, 241:1
Photinian schism, 252:4
Plato, 241:6,8; 242:7
pleasure: souls after death; delights of the flesh, 241:4
poor:
  God often makes his servants beggars, 239:4
  Son of God poor for our sake, 239:6
  using wealth to help, 259:5
Porphyry, 241:6-8
possessions;
greed, 265C:1
  held by the heart, 265C:1
power:
  boasting about powers, 265D:7
  clothed with power from on high, 265D:6
praise:
  see also alleluia
  praise God with voice and behavior, 254:8
prayer:
  deliver us from evil, 256:1-2
  every day we are petitioners, 256:1
  preaching: witnessing, 260E:2
predestination: light and dark, 260D:1
pride:
almsgiving; welcoming strangers, 239:4
Holy Spirit repelled by, 270:6
no cures in the five arcades, 272B:3
Priscillianists, 238:2 (see note 5)
property:
coveting your neighbor's, 252A:6
sold; shared; distribution made as needed, 252:3
prophets:
Church not foreseen by, 242A:1
wisdom dispensed in, 252:10
providence: transgressions against the law, 250:3
punishment: fear of, 270:4
purification: struggle for, 261:9
purity: pure of heart will see God, 261:4
Pythagoras, 241:6
reception
if truly sorry, don't go on doing it, 232:8
sadness according to God, 254:2
reprobation: predestination, 260D:1
rest.
sabbath, 270:5
resurrection (of Christ):
apostles' initial disbelief in, 245:1; 246:1
baptism into the risen Christ, 260A:4
belief that body had been stolen, 246:2
believers now are better than disciples then, 236-2, 236A:2
death of the flesh was real, 265D:3
demonstrates newness of our life, 231:2
disciples believed what Mary told them, no more, 244:1
disciples' unbelief in, 231:1; 232:2
example for us, 263:1
faith based on, 233:1
faith distinguished from pagans and Jews, 234:3
female sex first to report, 232:2
good news brought to the disciples, 236A:4
gospel accounts do not contradict, 240:1
grace for us only if we lead good lives, 232:8
his resurrection is our renewal, 231:2
hope in, 261:1
John's gospel, 246:6
looked for dead, he showed himself alive, 246:3
Manichee teaching, 265D:1-2
miracle, 272A
our justification, 236:1
people unwilling to believe, 264:6
power of God Almighty, 240:2
praise it rather than be astonished, 265:2
R
religious conditions: pray/sing for the Easter octave, 260C:7
reproach
not to know time of Christ's return, 265:4,5
reading from all four gospels, 231:1; 232:1; 234:1; 236A:1; 239:1; 240:1; 246:1; 247:1
report of, regarded as nonsense, 232:2
sign: blessedness of future life, 233:1
sign: circumcised on eighth day, 231:2
two catches of fish, 249:2; 250:2; 252:1; 252A:1
undoing the penalty of sin: death, 240:3
variations in evangelists' accounts, 235:1
wavering apostles as "Manichees," 237:1-3
what in him rose again, 242A:1
why he wished his own flesh to rise again, 242A:1
women report the empty tomb, 232:2
resurrection (post-resurrection appearances): belief peculiar to Christians, 241:1
body will be without deformities, 240:3
Christ died/die for our sake, 262:1
Church indicated, after our resurrection, 252A:2
conversation with Mary Magdalen, 246:3
disciples' weakness as reason for, 264:2
do not touch me ..., 243:1; 244:2-4; 245:2-4; 246:4
doubting Thomas, 258:3
Emmaus, see Emmaus
faith in reality of his body, 242:12
faith, purpose of the forty days, 265:1
feel and see, 237:3
fitting for Christ to show his scars, 259:1
flesh: from embarrassment to embellishment, 240:3,5
forty days with the disciples, 263A:4;
264:5; 268:4; 270:3
Jesus ate to reassure disciples, 242:2
perfections of risen body, 241:7
philosophers on, 241:8
presence in the flesh necessary, 264:5
proof that he was risen with some body, 265B:1
Rabboni: only Christ could say Mary, 246:3
risen Christ thought to be a spirit, 237:1-4;
238:2
room entered through closed doors, 247:1-3
see only the man; don't see the Word, 245:4
Thomas the unbelieving disciple, 245:2
understand that I am equal to the Father: do not touch, 245:2
why are you troubled/disturbed? 237:3;
238:2; 242:1; 244:2; 246:4; 265D:2;
266:4
why Jesus kept scars of his wounds, 242:3
wish that he remain in the flesh, 264:2
wish to confirm that his body was risen, 243:3
resurrection of the (human) body:
age of infants when they rise again, 242:4
attitudes toward the body, 242A:3
beauty in human body, 243:7
believe: death will die in those saved, 233:5
bodily functions, 243:8
body there, without bodily needs, 242A:3
Christ's will that we believe in, 243:3
compassion of Christ; allay doubts of people, 264:4
daily evidences, 242A:2
defects in the human body, 242:3
denyed by some, 242A:1
earthly body in heaven, 242:5,7
functions of various parts of risen body, 243:3
holy days of Easter season; significance, 243:8
more perfect recognition of others, 243:5
private parts of body, 243:3
share in Christ's glory, 263A:2
spirit weighed down with sin, 265A:2
spiritual bodies, 242:11
thoughts will only be good, honorable, true, 243:5
true beauty, 243:7
two catches of fish, 248:1
visibility of thoughts and entrails, 243:5
why Christ wished his own flesh to rise again, 242A:1
rich: angels, equality, and the rich, 255:7
ridicule: fear of, 260E:2

S

sabah:
Jesus in the tomb, 231:2
Lord's day, 260C:5
observer is one who does not sin, 270:5
seventh day, 260C:4
spiritual vacation, 270:5
sacraments:
Donatist errors, 269:3
Jesus' use of, 252:1
one thing seen; another understood, 272
sadness:
forty days of Lent, 254:5
fruitful, 254:4
human condition, 254:1
like dung: right place; wrong place, 254:2
worldly (dung), 254:4
safety:
Christ's mercy does not pass away, 233:2
vain is the safety of men, 233:2
saints:
Church working in, 267:4
number 153, 248:4; 250:3; 251:2
number seven added to ten, 252A:6
splendor and merits of, 259:2

Volue III/7
salvation:
  Jesus became flesh to save us, 233:4
  men and beasts you will save, 233:2-3
  oil of, 266:7
  repentance leading to, 254:2
  whoever believes and is baptized, 233:1-5; 233:5

Samaria, 266:4; 269:2

sanctification: days of creation, 270:5
scandal: Church overwhelmed by, 270:7

schism:
  no fear of (no.153), 252A:5
  torn fishing nets, 248:2; 249:2; 250:2; 252:4,11; 252A:2; 270:7

scribe: justice of, 251:4

scripture, see Bible

Second Coming:
  believers and nonbelievers, 235:4
  Christ on his final coming, 265B:3
  Christ will come as true man and as God, 265:2
  disciples eager to know the time, 265:3,4
  sight then, reward of faith now, 235:4
  seed(s): marvels of nature, 247:2
  seven, see number 7
  sheep: Peter, feed my sheep, 253:2
  shepherd: divides sheep from goats, 251:2
  sick: cravings, 253:7
  sight: reserved for end of the world, 260E:1
  Simon the magician, 266:3,4

sin/sinners:
  see also temptation
  all belong to the man (Adam), 255:4
  attitude toward minor sins, 261:10
  cause of all evils, 255:4
  Christ died for our sins, 236:1
  daily remedies for, 261:10
  deserving of punishment, 259:3
  desire for a long, bad life, 232:8
  entered this world by one man, 255:4
  father of death, 231:2
  flattery: oil of the sinner, 266:8
  heavy hearts: children of men, 231:4,5
  (note 11)
  incarnation: likeness of the flesh of sin, 233:4
  Jesus came to bear our sins, 272B:2
  leading bad lives; not in fact alive, 231:3
  licking dirt of the earth, 231:4
  oil of the sinner, 266:3,7-8
  servile work on the sabbath, 270:5
  sting of death, 256:2
  struggle for purification, 261:9
  singing:
    leading good lives, 230
    reasons for, 256:3
  solemnity: celebration; name, 267:1
  Son of God:
    see also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Word of God
    begotten without time, 244:4
    expounding his begetting, 244:4
    sons of men: distinction, 255:4

soul:
  changeable, 241:2
  immortal, 240:4
  Plato on heavenly/earthly bodies, 241:8; 242:7
  previous lives (philosophers on), 240:4; 241:4
  speed: related to weight, 242:10

spirit: life, 256:3

spiritual life:
  see also Christian life; heart
  alive with the Holy Spirit, 267:4
  Christ enters hearts in his divinity, 264:4
  progress in goodness, 256:3

stars: bodies, 241:8

Stephen, Saint: Jews accused of opposing the Spirit, 252:4
  stranger: welcome; Christ was a stranger, 239:4

supernumeraries, 252A:4

T
  tears: Peter's rising again, 253:3
  temple of God: ruining, with drunkenness, 252:12
  temporal goods: seeking material advantages in the Church, 252:6
  temptation:
    exhortation to infants, 260C:7,8
    God is faithful, helps us not to perish, 256:3
    standing up to, 260B:2
    watch and pray, 256:1
  ten commandments:
    see also law; number 10
    God helps fulfillment, with his Spirit, 248:5; 249:3; 251:7
    number forty, 270:3
    seven refer to man, 248:4; 250:3
    tablets of stone; finger of God, 249:3
    three refer to love of God, 248:4; 250:3
  tenner (wages), 252:11; 259:2
  Theogenes, Bishop, 272B:2
  Thomas, Saint, Apostle:
    day which the Lord has made, 258:3
    touch and see... 239:7; 245:2
    thoughts: heart not hidden after resurrection, 243:5
  threshing floor:
    chaff, 260C:6,8; 260D:2
    grain and chaff, 252:5-6; 259:2
    only grain of wheat (not to be thought), 260C:8
  time:
    ages in fleeting course of, 259:2
future events; rest, 252:12
number 40, 270:3
sevenfold course of, 260C:3
whole of, seen as forty days, 264:5
tongues, speaking in:
Church prefigured in, 271
Church unity seen in, 268:1
gift of the Spirit, 267:2; 269:1,2
presence of the Spirit, 270:6
speaking in all tongues, Pentecost, 266:2
unity in all languages, 265:12
torch, burning, 234:3 (and note 11)
tower of Babel, 271
tranquillity, see peace
Transfiguration: Christ, Moses, and Elijah, 252:10
transmigration of souls, 240:4
Trinity:
equality of persons, 264:7
Father and Son are co-eval, 265A:4
number three, 259:2
truth:
lit as example of, 265A:5
made true with divinity; with love, 263A:1
set free by, 241:5

U
ugliness:
let this be a time of fertility, 254:5
way (dung) to thing of beauty, 254:2
unbelief/unbelievers:
reaction when Christ comes again, 235:4
risen Christ’s wounds heal wound of unbelief, 242:3
understanding: faith required for, 272
ungodliness: wrath of God revealed against, 241:1
unity:
see also tongues, speaking in
charity in the church, 265:11
Christ endowed the Church with, 268:4
Christ our head; we his body, 263A:2
Christ’s gift of, 265:8
Christ’s last will and testament, 265:7
Church gathered from all tongues, 270:6
commended (fourfold) by Christ, 265:7,12;
by Christ, 268:4
false pretenses, 269:4
fruit of the Spirit, 260A:3,4
fused by fire of love, 271
one bread, one body, 272
one individual the sign of, 266:2
one soul and heart in the Lord, 260D:1
power of piety, 269:3
seek the coagulant, 265:6
speaking in tongues, 265:12; 268:1; 269:1
Spirit; bond of peace, 269:2
strength of every multitude, 272B:2
value: human race from one individual, 268:3
worldly setting self apart from, 269:4
universe: eternal (Porphyry), 241:7

V
values:
bad human worth more than any animal, 255:3
heart, eyes, 265C:1
Virgil: the underworld, 241:5
virgin birth:
Christ’s coming different from ours, 233:4
conceived by faith, 246:5
miracle: no rational explanation, 247:2

W
wealth:
trusting in God’s providence, 259:5
unrest related to, 259:5
your living a good life makes me rich, 232:8
weights, diversity of elements, 242:8,10
wife: glory of the husband, 265E:5
wineskins, 266:2; 267:1; 272B:1,7
winnowing: threshing floor, 252:6; 259:2

Wisdom: see also philosophers
dispensed in a temporal manner, 252:10
disposes all things sweetly, 255:3
fear of the Lord, 248:5; 270:5
folly: wisdom of this world, 240:5; 241:3
gift of the Spirit, 250:3
submission of creature to creator, 252:10
totality of (number ten), 264:5

Witness-bearing:
Church to extend to ends of the earth, 265:6
must proclaim what we have heard, 260E:1-2
power given from on high, 265D:6
woman: glory of man, 262:5
disciples react to report of resurrection, 223:2

Word of God:
see also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Son of God
crucified, 258:3
death not found in, 265D:3
feeding angels, 237:4
fishing nets, 248:2; 252:2
fountain of water; eternal life, 239:1
had nothing with which to die, 265D:7
in the beginning ..., 261:2; 264:4
one with the Father, 237:4
Volume III/7

sent to this world; fishing analogy, 252:3
thinking of Jesus as, 264:2
use mind to believe, 265C:2
words cannot express reality, 237:4
words: power to explain, 237:4
works of mercy: Christ seen in strangers, 236:3
world:
  animated entities (Porphyry), 241:7; 242:11
  four-cornered; fourfold, 263A:4; 270:3
  God and the philosophers, 241:1
  Peter’s vision of the dish, 266:6
  possessed by the eyes, 265C:1
worldliness:
  celebrations, 252:12
  Church members, 270:7
  doing business with Donatists, 252:5
  gifts of the Spirit not received, 269:3
  hold selves in check, 263A:4
  sadness, 254:4
  separated from unity; Spirit, 269:4
  ship almost sunk by, 252:4
wrongdoing:
  see also sin
  imitating the false faithful, 260:1
  warning not to imitate bad Christians, 251:2
y
  yoke: my yoke is easy, 272B:7

Sermons 230-272B
Index from

Sermons 273-305A

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Sermons 273-305A are on the Saints.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/8 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-060-5, 6 x 9 in., 368 pp., 1994

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
<th>Volume III/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:1 290, 2; 291, 2; 293, 5</td>
<td>Sermons 273-305A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:21-22 291, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1 284, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5 284, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:6 305A, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:18 295, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:27 279, 1; 9; 299C, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:13-14 293E, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>19:18 278, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>31:18 291, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>29:29 279, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td>12:13 291, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees</td>
<td>7:27 300, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>1:21 299E, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4 293, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:28 299D, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>1:2 303, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:1, 4 280, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:4 295, 6; 299C, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:8 295, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5 300, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:6 305, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8 292, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4 296, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:4 275, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:3-4 298, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:5 299D, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:4 299, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:7 279, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:1 299E, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:1-2 299B, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:3-4 299B, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:4 295, 1, 5; 298, 1; 299, 1, 12; 299C, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:5 291, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:4 299, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:11 299D, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:15 276, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27:4 284, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29:1 298, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:6-7 284, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:7 284, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31:19 284, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:11 301, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:2 284, 3; 283, 1; 274, 1; 275, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:5 284, 1; 306B, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:8 274, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:12 297, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:13-14 297, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:9 275, 2; 284, 1; 299D, 5; 299E, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37:35-36 301, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37:39 301, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42:5, 11 305, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43:1 285, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43:1 274, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>44:22 299F, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:5 298, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48:8 299D, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:6 290, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:1 295, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:3 299, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51:8 292, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sermons 273-305A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51:9.3</td>
<td>278, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:2</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:5</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:5-6</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:10-11</td>
<td>277A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:4</td>
<td>279, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:5.11</td>
<td>279, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:11</td>
<td>292, 4; 299F, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:1</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:5</td>
<td>283, 1, 3, 4; 284, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:8</td>
<td>283, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:11</td>
<td>299, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:9</td>
<td>279, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:21</td>
<td>300, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70:3</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71:4-5</td>
<td>277A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71:5</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>288, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1</td>
<td>293D, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1-3</td>
<td>301, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:13</td>
<td>301, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:16-17</td>
<td>301, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:25</td>
<td>301, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:9</td>
<td>293, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:9-10</td>
<td>302, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:1</td>
<td>279, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:11</td>
<td>290, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:13</td>
<td>284, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:19</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:10-12</td>
<td>302, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:13</td>
<td>280, 6; 294, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>289, 1; 290, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12-13</td>
<td>299, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:15</td>
<td>276, 4; 286, 3; 275, 3; 298, 3; 299E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:14</td>
<td>299E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:4</td>
<td>297, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>297, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:17-18</td>
<td>293, 4; 293D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>279, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:1</td>
<td>297, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>289, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>295, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>299F, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5.9</td>
<td>286, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>279, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:1-2</td>
<td>304, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>284, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>273, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>295, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>285, 6; 295, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>285, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>298, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>273, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>298, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>292, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>301A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>301, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>294, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>298, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1-9,6</td>
<td>292, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>299E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>277, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>283, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>277, 4, 6; 284, 4; 299, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>292, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:28</td>
<td>284, 4; 286, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:24</td>
<td>299, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:5</td>
<td>276, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13-14</td>
<td>293E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:16</td>
<td>279, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:4</td>
<td>293, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:3</td>
<td>290, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:3-5</td>
<td>293D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5-8</td>
<td>288, 2; 289, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:8</td>
<td>289, 4; 301, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>299C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:3</td>
<td>279, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>274, 1; 279, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7-8</td>
<td>299, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:12</td>
<td>285, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:5</td>
<td>293B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>296, 13; 299D, 7; 305A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2</td>
<td>279, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7-8</td>
<td>279, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>295, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:13</td>
<td>284, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:37</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-18</td>
<td>296, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28</td>
<td>286, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>292, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III/8
Volume III/8

New Testament

Matthew
1:21 293, 11; 299, 6
3:11 287, 1
3:14 292, 4; 293, 12
1:15 292, 4
1:8 277, 15; 288, 5
5:12 302, 1
5:14 289, 6; 295, 5
5:14-16 289, 6
5:17 300, 3
5:37 292, 6
6:12 278, 6, 9
6:12 278, 10
6:13 302, 16; 304, 2
6:20 296, 11
6:21 296, 7
7:11 286, 5
7:17 292, 5, 7
10:19-20 276, 2
10:20 275, 1; 277A, 2; 299, 3
10:28 277, 6; 299A, 2
10:30 273, 1
10:33 277, 2
11:11 287, 1; 288, 2; 290, 1; 292, 2; 293, 4; 293B, 1, 2, 3; 293C, 1, 2; 293D, 1, 2, 3; 293E, 3

Mark
1:2 290, 1
1:3 288, 2
1:7 287, 3; 288, 2
2:17 278, 2; 278, 5; 293, 11
2:18 293, 6; 293D, 2
2:22 295, 7
4:25 283, 2, 3
8:36 303, 1
10:17 294, 9; 301A, 3, 5
10:21 301A, 5
10:28 301A, 2, 4
10:38 299, 3
12:31 299, 7
12:34 297, 3
14:67 286, 2

Luke
1:13 291, 3
1:18 290, 4; 291, 5; 293, 1; 293B, 4
1:20 290, 4; 293, 1; 293B, 4
1:28 291, 4; 293B, 4
1:34 290, 4; 291, 5; 293, 1; 293B, 4
1:35 287, 4
1:37 289, 1
1:42 291, 4
1:43 293D, 5
1:53 290, 6, 7
1:66 291, 2; 293B, 4
2:14 299D, 4
2:25 277, 17
2:29-30 293A, 2
3:6 277, 16
3:10-11 302, 15
3:11 299D, 3
3:13 302, 15
3:14 302, 15
3:16 292, 8
4:3.6 284, 5
4:13 284, 5
5:31 279, 11
6:44-45 302, 10
7:26 288, 2
10:27 299D, 3; 301A, 6
10:27-29 299D, 2

Sermons 273-305A
### Sermons 273-305A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>299D, 2</td>
<td>1:20-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>283, 4</td>
<td>1:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299E, 2</td>
<td>1:21-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299E, 2</td>
<td>1:21.26.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>273, 1</td>
<td>1:22-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299F, 1</td>
<td>1:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>296, 11</td>
<td>1:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289, 5</td>
<td>1:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301A, 2</td>
<td>1:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301A, 5</td>
<td>1:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279, 11</td>
<td>1:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 2</td>
<td>2:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290, 6</td>
<td>2:19-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290, 6</td>
<td>2:19-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290, 7</td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279, 12</td>
<td>3:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 4</td>
<td>3:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293D, 4</td>
<td>3:14-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 4</td>
<td>3:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305, 2</td>
<td>3:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277, 2, 14</td>
<td>3:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 6</td>
<td>3:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>284, 3</td>
<td>3:29.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293A, 6; 293B, 2; 3</td>
<td>3:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293C, 1, 2; 293D, 3</td>
<td>3:30.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293D, 5</td>
<td>3:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 6</td>
<td>3:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 7</td>
<td>3:36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294, 14</td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290, 7</td>
<td>3:5.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277, 1, 5</td>
<td>3:5.28-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294, 14</td>
<td>3:5.28-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293D, 1</td>
<td>3:5.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289, 4</td>
<td>3:5.33.35-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289, 4</td>
<td>3:5.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300, 5</td>
<td>3:5.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305A, 7</td>
<td>3:5.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302, 14</td>
<td>8:7.10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302, 14</td>
<td>8:8.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293D, 3; 294, 15</td>
<td>8:8.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300, 1</td>
<td>8:8.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290, 2</td>
<td>10:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>285, 5, 6</td>
<td>10:17-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300, 4; 305, 2, 3</td>
<td>10:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293D, 4</td>
<td>10:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293E, 1</td>
<td>11:43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295, 2</td>
<td>11:44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295, 2</td>
<td>12:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305, 2</td>
<td>12:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305, 2, 4</td>
<td>12:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275, 1</td>
<td>12:42-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>286, 1</td>
<td>13:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301, 4</td>
<td>13:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>285, 3; 295, 3; 296, 1; 297, 1, 2</td>
<td>13:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>286, 2; 295, 3; 299, 7</td>
<td>13:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301A, 5</td>
<td>14:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>288, 5</td>
<td>14:8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277, 16</td>
<td>14:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293E, 1, 3</td>
<td>14:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>284, 3; 295, 8; 299F, 4</td>
<td>15:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299, 8</td>
<td>15:13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>277, 16; 287, 1; 288, 5; 289, 3; 293, 3; 5; 293A, 3; 293B, 2; 293C, 1; 305A, 9</td>
<td>1:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>288, 4; 293A, 5</td>
<td>1:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277, 13; 288, 2; 290, 2; 291, 3; 293B, 1</td>
<td>1:2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 5</td>
<td>1:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199B, 1; 279, 7; 288, 1; 293, 5; 293A, 3; 293D, 2; 293E, 1</td>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299F, 2</td>
<td>1:4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293B, 3</td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289, 4</td>
<td>1:6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289, 4, 6; 293C, 2; 293D, 5</td>
<td>1:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>296, 11</td>
<td>1:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292, 7</td>
<td>1:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290, 5; 291, 2; 292, 4; 293, 5; 293A, 5; 293C, 5; 293B, 2; 293D, 3; 293F, 2</td>
<td>1:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293D, 3</td>
<td>1:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289, 5; 292, 8; 293, 6; 293C, 2; 293D, 3</td>
<td>1:16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15:15 293D, 3; 296, 7  
16:33 276, 1  
19:10-11 299E, 2  
19:28 300, 4  
19:30 300, 4  
19:37 277, 16  
20:22-23 295, 2  
20:29 301A, 1  
21:15 299A, 1; 299B, 1  
21:15-17 295, 4; 296, 3; 299, 7  
21:17 285, 5; 296, 4; 299A, 1; 299B, 1, 2  
21:18 296, 8; 297, 2; 299, 8  
21:18-19 285, 3; 296, 3; 299, 7; 299B, 2  
21:19 299B, 1

Acts of the Apostles  
1:11 277, 17  
2:13 299B, 3  
4:12 294, 4  
9:1-4 295, 6  
9:21 279, 1  
9:4 297, 4; 299, 6; 299C, 1, 2  
9:4-5 297, 1; 295, 6  
9:11-16 295, 6  
9:13 299C, 3  
9:13-16 279, 2  
9:15 299B, 5  
9:15-16 299C, 3  
9:16 297, 4  
10:28 294, 19  
13:25 293D, 1  
14:10-14 273, 8  
22:10 279, 1  
26:14 295, 6; 297, 10

Romans  
4:3 305A, 3  
5:6 293, 5  
5:12 293, 8; 293, 12  
5:12 294, 15; 299, 8  
5:16 294, 7  
7:23 297, 6  
8:3 273, 9; 294, 13  
8:18 279, 4; 277A, 2; 296, 6; 297, 11; 305A, 9  
8:29 281, 2; 299E, 5  
8:30 306B, 3  
8:31-32 305, 4  
8:32 301, 5  
8:34 285, 5  
8:35 299D, 5; 299F, 4  
8:35-37 297, 6  
8:37 299D, 5  
9:5 293, 7  
9:16 297, 6; 298, 5; 299B, 5  
10:2 296, 14  
10:4 299B, 1  
10:10 279, 7; 299, 2  
10:10-11 279, 9  
10:15 299C, 2  
11:1 299C, 3  
11:6 293, 8  
11:20 293D, 5  
11:33 294, 7  
11:33-36 294, 7  
11:34-33 285, 3  
12:3 297, 6  
12:21 302, 10  
13:1 302, 13  
13:3 302, 12  
13:4-5 302, 11  
13:13 293A, 6  
14:1 279, 11  
16:19 299, 12

1 Corinthians  
1:13 295, 5  
1:24 279, 7  
1:25 305A, 6  
1:31 275, 1; 277A, 2  
298 293D, 2; 299, 4; 305, 9  
298 298, 3; 299D, 1; 301, 8; 301A, 6; 302, 7  
2:12 283, 3  
3:1-2 299C, 3  
3:7 278, 7, 10  
3:17 278, 7, 10  
4:5 279, 10  
4:7 283, 6; 290, 7; 293, 8; 299, 3, 5; 305A, 2  
4:16 294, 15  
6:9-10 294, 4  
6:11 294, 4  
6:13 305A, 7  
6:15 301A, 8  
6:19-20 278, 7  
7:14 294, 18  
7:25 298, 5; 299B, 5  
7:29-31 301A, 4  
10:1-4 295, 1  
12:12 294, 10  
12:23 275, 3  
12:26 280, 6  
12:27 299C, 2  
13:9-10 288, 5  
15:8 299B, 5  
15:9 279, 5; 295, 7; 298, 4; 299B, 5; 299C, 4  
15:9-10 297, 5; 299B, 5; 299C, 4  
15:10 299C, 4  
15:21-22 293, 8, 12  
15:22 293, 11  
15:24-28 293C, 2  
15:26 305A, 7  
15:44 277, 7, 15  
15:52 277, 11
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>277, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-54</td>
<td>299, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-55</td>
<td>278, 5; 305A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55-56</td>
<td>299, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:57</td>
<td>298, 5; 299B, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>305A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>305A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-16</td>
<td>273, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-16</td>
<td>300, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>296, 7; 297, 11; 299C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>277, 8; 299, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>279, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>293C, 2; 293D, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-03</td>
<td>299, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>301A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26-29</td>
<td>299C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>292, 6; 305A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Galatians</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>301, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>294, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>289, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ephesians</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>305, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>294, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>302, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>281, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>293B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>299B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>277, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>284, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Philippians</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23</td>
<td>299E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-27</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>298, 3; 305A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-25</td>
<td>305A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>276, 1; 283, 4; 284, 3; 297, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>293E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>288, 5; 279, 8; 292, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>304, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>281, 1; 288, 5; 293E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-9</td>
<td>293E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>280, 4; 284, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>277, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-15</td>
<td>277, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>304, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>277, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>293A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colossians</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>290, 2; 293, 5; 293E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>304, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-4</td>
<td>296, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>293, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>293A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Thessalonians</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>278, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>296, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>296, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Timothy</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>280, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>279, 10; 297, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-16</td>
<td>278, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>277, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>304, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>293, 7, 8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>294, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>292, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-9</td>
<td>299D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-8</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>299D, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Timothy</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>278, 1; 284, 3; 299C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>299, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>301, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-2</td>
<td>299A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>297, 5; 298, 3; 299, 8; 299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>299, 3; 299B, 5; 299C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>298, 5; 299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>298, 4; 5; 299, 4, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4-8</td>
<td>298, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hebrews</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>286, 5; 296, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>James</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>296, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-17</td>
<td>284, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>299E, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>289, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>302, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Peter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>299E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>284, 6; 299B, 1; 304, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/8

3:13 297, 10; 304, 4
3:18 294, 16
5:5 289, 3
5:8 275, 1; 284, 5

1 John
1:8-9 301, 3
2:16 284, 5
2:19 285, 6; 295, 5
3:2 288, 5; 305A, 9
3:16 304, 1

Jude
19 285, 6

Revelation
1:7 277, 16
1:8.17 299B, 1
1:17 298, 1
14:04 304, 2
19:10 273, 8
21:17 293A, 3
22:13 299, 2

Sermons 273-305A
Sermons 273-305A

INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
A braham:
Jesus, the creator of, 290:2
people born from, 300:1
rich man and Lazarus (parable),
299E:3-5
washed feet of angels, 277:9
we are children of Abraham, 305A:3
willingness to sacrifice, 299E:5
abstinence: fasting; fending off death,
305A:8
accomplishments: boast in the Lord,
277A:2
actions, as treasures, 292:7
A dam and Eve:
A dam as robber, 293E:2
A dam died, 299:12
bite of the serpent, 294:13
Christ and A dam, 289:2
fault, not of nature, 294:14
M ary and Eve, 289:2
adultery:
secret adulterer, 292:7
woman taken in adultery, 302:14
A emilius: martyr, 285:1, 4
A frica: Scillitan M artys, 299D:1 (and
Note 1); 299E:1-5; 299F:1-5
A gnes, Saint, 273:6; 286:2
A mbrose, Saint:
martys Gervase and Protase, 286:4
A nanius:
baptism of Paul, 292:5; 295:6; 299C:3
name means sheep, 299C:3
Saul (Paul) and, 279:2, 4
ancestry: forfeiting by degenerate
behavior, 305A:3
angel(s):
See also Annunciation

birth of John the Baptist, 293B:4
glory and felicity of, 280:5
human beings share characteristics of,
299F:2
human equality in the resurrection,
277:4
John the Evangelist awe-struck by,
273:8
least, greater than human beings,
293D:3
peace on earth, . . ., 299D:4
spiritual bodies, 277:9
Word of God seen by, 293A:5
words at the Ascension, 277:17
anger: be angry and do not sin . . ., 296:12
animals:
death and, 297:3
human senses compared with, 277:5
human share in life of, 279:8
human temporal life and, 299F:2
A nnunciation:
angel sent to M ary, 293B:4
Hail, full of grace, 290:5; 291:4, 6
How shall this come about . . ., 287:4;
290:4, 5; 291:5
M ary’s response to angel, 290:4, 5;
291:5; 293:1
A ntioch: basilica dedicated to the
M accabees, 300:6
A ntiochus, King, 300:6, 7; 301:2, 3, 4
A pocalypse, see Revelation, Book of
apostasy:
denying Christ; denied by Christ,
277:2; 299D:6
apostles:
See also John; Peter, etc.
asked people to pray for them,
305A:10

Volume III/8
celebration of feasts of, 298:1
chosen, 295:2
great because disciples of Christ, 293:6
lamps, 289:6
make progress by loving them, 295:8
memorials, in Rome, 296:6
merits; sufferings, 299A:2
ordained by Peter, 298:1
preaching, See evangelization
rams of the sheep, 297:3; 298:1
speakin in tongues of all nations, 299B:3
applause, 301A:9
Augustine, Saint:
smallness of his congregation, 298:2
authorities:
bishops intervening with, 302:17
permit what pertains to them, 302:21
authority:
Pelagians, 294:2, 5, 17
Pilate and Jesus, 299E:2
supreme, 299E:2
avarice, see greed
babies:
See also baptism of infants
contract contagion of the ancient death (Cyprian), 294:19
contracted some guilt from first parents, 294:12
infant salvation, 293:11
infants too need liberator, 293:10
Jesus as Savior of, 293:11
none is clean in Christ's sight, 293:11
baptism:
Christ's sheep, 295:5
Donatists, 292:2, 5-6, 8
eternal life and non-baptized persons, 294:3
forgiveness of sin, 278:11
John's, Christ's, 293:3; 293B:3
offspring of baptized person is not born baptized, 294:16, 18
salvation, 292:4
source of John's baptism, 293D:4
spiritual regeneration, 294:16
unless one is born again, 294:8, 9, 16
with Holy Spirit and with fire, 293B:3
baptism of infants:
against the Pelagians, 294:1-20
assisted by another's faith, 294:12
babies called "the faithful," 294:14
before the eighth day, 294:19
Christ a benefit to unbaptized babies, 294:17
Cyprian on, 294:19
infants believe with faith of their parents, 294:17
Paul's teaching, 294:4
perish if not baptized, 294:18
salvation, 294:2, 4-8
share in common life; believe by means of others, 294:12
whoever believes has eternal life, 294:14
Barnabas, Saint, 273:8
beauty:
eternal life, 302:7
made from our ugliness, 285:6
Benjamin:
blessing of, and Paul's conversion, 279:1
ravenous wolf, 299C:3
birds: flight compared with human speed, 277:7
birthday: Church celebrates only two, 287:1; 290:2; 292:1
bishops:
congregation needs prayers of, 305A:10
feed Christ's sheep, 296:13
intervention with authorities, 302:17
blasphemy: denying Christ, 299D:6
body and soul:
See also human body
closest to soul is your own flesh, 299D:5
healthy/perishable body weighs down soul, 277:6
life: soul remains after death, 301A:3
perishing body weighs down the soul, 277:4; 284:4; 299:9
soul can/cannot die, 273:1
soul dies when abandoned by God, 273:1
body of Christ, see Mystical Body
brazen serpent: figure of Christ, 294:13
Bulla Regia, 301A:7
business, honesty in, 302:16

Cacus, 273:6
Caesar: honor to, as Caesar, 299E:2

Sermons 273-305A
Sermons 273-305A

capital punishment: executioner, 302:13
Carthage, 301A:7
Castus: martyr, 285:1, 4
catechumens:
  sign of the cross, 301A:8; 302:3
Catholic Church:
  beauty of, 285:6
  prayers for, include each member, 273:2
cause: choose a good and just cause, 275:1; 285:7
Cerberus, 273:6
change: anything visible is changeable, 301:8
charity:
  See also love
  help your neighbor reach God, 296:13
  our “food” in heaven, 299D:7
childbirth:
  rich and poor equally naked, 289:6
children:
  See also parent and child
  loved more than riches, 299E:5
  purpose of marriage, 278:9
children of God:
  power to become, 292:7
  what we shall be has not yet appeared, 305A:9
Christ, see Jesus Christ
Christian life:
  being put to death all day long, 299F:4-5
  charity; care for the sheep, 296:14
  example given by Christ, 304:3
  following Christ (other than as martyrs), 304:3
  imitate Christ, 294:15
  live as foreign expatriates, 301:8
  minds corrupted from chastity in Christ, 299:12
  not for the sake of temporal goods, 302:3
  prerogative to suffer temporal evils, 296:10
  providing rations at the right time, 292:8
  rich and poor, come and buy, 299F:3
  risen with Christ, 304:3
  victory through Christ, 297:6; 298:5
  ways of following Christ, 304:2
Christians:
  all are Christ’s disciples, 301A:2
  cross of Christ on forehead, 302:3
  moral social action, 302:19
Church:
  See also Mystical Body
  blood of the martyrs as seed, 286:3
  city set on a hill, 295:5
  divisions in the flock, 285:6
  dove, a name for, 295:2
  grows with persecution, 295:6
  grudging its profits, 296:15
  keys of the kingdom of heaven, 295:2
  mother of the Maccabees and, 301:1
  Peter as representing the whole, 295:2
  Peter: feed my sheep, 295:4-5
  right of sanctuary, 302:22
  seeded with blood of the martyrs, 301:1
  strength and weakness; Peter, 295:3
  treasures: the poor, 302:8
  unless you know yourself, 285:6
  woman who touched Christ’s hem, 299C:5
church and state:
  bishops intervening with authorities, 302:17
circumcision:
  carnal act, 294:16
  spiritual (Cyprian), 294:19
clergy: false distinction with laity, 301A:8
clothing: necessities, 299D:3, 4, 7
common good:
  city: stinking flames and smoke; 293B:5
condemnation:
  word used for “judgment,” 294:14
  condemned man: lynching case, 302:13
  confession:
    See also witness-bearing
    believers ashamed to profess, 279:7
    mark of the just, 301:2
    sin out in the open, 295:2, 3
  congregation: prayers of the bishops needed, 305A:10
  conscience: after death, 301A:3
  consolation: our consolation abounds through Christ, 305A:5
  continence:
    against pleasure, 283:1
    gift of God, 283:2, 3
  conversion/converts:
    Donatists; let them be admitted. . ., 296:15
    forced, 296:15
  Paul’s example, 279:10

Volume III/8
corpse:
insensible, 299E:2
miracles of the martyrs, 275:3; 277:1
correction:
correct the unruly . . . , 296:14
God loves those he corrects, 296:12
courage:
love; endurance, 299E:1
martyrs’ source not themselves, 285:1
praying for, 305A:5
creation:
all things made through the Word,
293:5; 293A:3; 293E:1; 299B:1
in the beginning, the Word, 290:2
rightly ordered by God, 301:4
criminals:
obduracy of, 274
right of sanctuary, 302:22
Crispina, 286:2
crooks take refuge from crooks, 302:22
cross:
catechumens, 302:3
Christ’s lampstand, 289:6
glory in nothing but the cross (Paul), 289:6
mark: sacramental character, 302:3
sign of the, 301A:8
crown of justice, 296:5; 297:5; 298:4, 5;
299:4, 5; 299A:2; 299B:5
crucifixion:
See also under Jesus Christ
three crosses, three causes, 285:2
customs men, 302:15
Cyprian, Saint:
on original sin, 294:19
place of martyrdom, 305A:4
trumpet of martyrs, 305A:2
dermonstration:
See also judgment day
unbaptized infants, 294:7
dances: memorials of martyrs, 305A:4
David, King:
figure of Christ, 299B:4
persecuted by Saul, 279:5; 299B:4;
299C:4
sin forgiven, 291:5
death:
torments of the, 280:5
worship by pagans, 273:3
dead:
See also immortality; resurrection of
the body
A dam as source of, 293:8, 9
bad man has to be mourned twice
over, 302:18
being put to death all day long,
299F:4-5
bitter fear removed by bitter tears,
297:1
bitterness passes to sweetness, 299E:2
carefree, if we have lived innocent
life, 299E:1
choose not to die forever, 279:9
crucifixion of, 305A:8
doing everything possible to postpone,
280:3
dread of dying, 302:4
faith enough not to fear, 273:1
fear not those who kill the body,
299E:2
fear of dying eternally, 279:9
hope in the Lord, 305:4
horror of, implanted in nature, 280:3
human will shrinks from, 296:8
lay down one’s life for friend, 299:8
life of soul and conscience remain,
301A:3
mother of all necessities, 305A:7
not having anything to live on, 299F:2
original sin, 299:8
reassurance of the risen Christ, 297:2
rich man and Lazarus (parable),
299E:3-4
sin as cause, 299:10
souls troubled at approach of, 305:4
swallowed up in victory, 278:5
temporal and eternal compared, 279:9
thoughts while waiting to suffer, 298:3
threat of persecutors, 301A:5
where death does not die, 301A:3
where is your victory, 305A:7, 8
why are you sad, my soul . . . , 305:4
denying Christ, 286:2; 299D:4, 6; 299F:2
denied by Christ (if you deny Christ),
277:2
desires:
God regards not what we have, but
what we want, 301A:4
detachment:
give up all possessions, 301A:5
give up the whole world, 301A:4
whoever does not renounce all...,
301A:2
devil:
See also serpent
bad king serpent with 20,000 men,
301A:2
creeping as dragon, roaring as lion,
305A:2
defeated by the martyr Vincent, 275:1
escape from, if heart is always in
Christ's keeping, 305A:2
false martyrs and, 275:1
first sinner, 294:15
God brings good out of his
wickedness, 301:4
man made partner of his pride, 293E:2
overcome by A gnes, 273:6
overcome by Perpetua, 281:2
overcoming machinations of, 274
serpent (Eve's) is not dead yet, 299:12
souls grown cold under, 273:4
temptation of Christ, 284:5
temptation of the sick, 286:7
threat re riches, 299D:4
tormented by martyrdom of V incent,
275:2; 276:3
trusting in, rather than in God, 278:2
ultimate punishment due to, 299:12
disbelief: rich man and L azarus (parable),
299E:4
disciples: whoever does not renounce
all...,
301A:2
discipline: God loves those he corrects,
296:12
doctor:
needed by the sick, 278:2
obey prescriptions of, 278:3
submit to, until cured, 278:4
Donatists, 285:6; 292:8
afraid for one's property, 296:14
birth of J ohn the B aptist, 292:1
case of one seeking admission, driven
away, 296:14, 15
feed my sheep...,
295:5
misconceptions about baptism, 292:2,
5-6, 8
penance, 296:15
dove: name for "church", 295:2
dragon: trampled by Perpetua, 280:1

E
E lijah, Saint, 277:1
taken up bodily, 299:10, 11

Elizabeth, Saint:
barren woman conceives the herald,
289:1, 2
endurance:
See also courage; martyrs; patience
love and courage, 299E:1
patience in martyr's suffering, 277A:2
power of, 305A:5
Enoch: taken up bodily, 299:10, 11
error: toleration, 294:20
eternal life:
See also heaven; salvation
advance to love of, 302:2
baptized babies counted among
believers, 294:14, 17
belief in Christ, 294:11
cherish; change; be instructed, 302:9
desire for heavenly joys, 304:4
eye has not seen...,
299D:1
fix gaze on things that are not seen,
296:7
God himself, 302:7
leave house or parents or...,
303:2
little done for the sake of, 302:4
love it, as temporal life is cherished by
its lovers, 302:2
love things that last forever, 299A:2
make light of temporal necessities,
299D:6
no place for the wicked in, 301:6
no sickness, no death, 305A:8
no works of necessity there, 305A:7
non-baptized persons, 294:3
one thing I have sought...,
284:4
outside kingdom of heaven, 294:2, 3,
8
Pelagian teaching, 294:5-6
perpetual felicity, 282:1
promised to be blessed and eternal,
297:8
reward: in persecution or in peace,
303:2
to live is Christ, to die is gain, 305A:5
what good must I do, 301A:3
work to be done for, 297:4, 8
eternal punishment:
choosing temporal life as cause, 297:8
resurrection of judgment, 277:2
rich man and L azarus (parable),
299E:4
E ulogius (deacon): martyrdom, 273:3, 7
evangelization:
preach the word; press on...,
299A:1, 2

Volume III/8
their sound has gone forth... words gone to the ends of the earth, 298:1
Eve, see Adam and Eve
evil, see good and evil
executioner: capital punishment, 302:13
eyes: see through intervals of space and place, 277:14
speed of rays of, 277:10

F
faith:
Abraham, 299E:5
belief in a man who was killed, 279:8
crown of justice due to those keeping, 298:5
doing battle, 274
fear of death and, 273:1
gift to believe and to suffer, 276:1
given by God, 283:4
grain that dies in the ground, 305:1
guarded and kept by Paul, 297:7
help in keeping, 299C:5
if you believed Moses... 300:5
Jesus' dying and rising again, 279:9
kept by God's mercy, 298:5
necessary for salvation, 294:11, 14
obtained mercy, that I should be faithful, 299B:5
Peter, I have prayed... 299C:5
ready for martyrdom, 303:2
tests of, other than persecution, 301A:5
tower and resources; planning, 301A:2
we haven't seen him, yet we believe, 301A:1
whoever loses his life for my sake... 303:1

fall of man:
See also original sin
Eve and the serpent, 289:2
redemption and, 289:2
falsehood:
defeated, 296:14
truth against, 301A:2
fasting: fending off death, 305A:8
Faustus: conversion of, 279:11, 12
fear: one with power to cast into gehenna, 299E:2
feet of Christ: evangelizers trample on, 299C:2
Felicity, St:
child born prematurely, 281:3
Christ victorious in, 281:1
martyrdom, 280:1, 4
perpetual felicity, 282:1
wife and mother, 282:2
food:
necessities, 299D:3, 4, 7
power and wisdom; living bread, 305A:7
forgiveness:
forgive our debtors, so God may forgive us, 278:13
quickly forgive those who wrong us, 278:14
forgiveness of sin:
blood of Jesus shed for, 294:11
indulging human body immoderately, 278:10, 14
never despair of pardon, 278:1; 299:6
promise of salvation and, 278:11
twin precepts of charity, 278:6
free will: falling into sin, 278:2
friend: necessities of life, 299D:1-3, 6
Fructuosus, Bishop: martyrdom, 273:2, 6, 7
fruit of trees, 292:5, 7
future life:

glory compared with present sufferings, 277A:2
ignorance re life after death, 301:3
now, and after the resurrection, 280:5
what will not be there we can say, 305A:9

G
Gabriel (angel):
announces both John and Jesus, 290:2
Gauls: burning of Rome, 296:9
gentle people: hear and rejoice, 274
Gervase: martyr, 286:1
discovered, 286:4 (note 9)
gifts: Father has good things for those who ask, 286:5
glory:
cross of Christ, 289:6
divine and eternal, 274
heavens proclaim work of his hands, 299B:3
pray in weakness, rejoice in glory, 305A:10
sufferings of the present time and, 296:6; 297:11
temporal sufferings and, 279:4
gluttony, 305A:8
goats, 285:5, 6

God:
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity; Wisdom
blessed are the heart-pure... 277:16
exalted above the heavens, 279:3
fountain of life/light, 284:1
gifts from divine judgment, 285:3
as goldsmith, 301:4, 6
incorporeal, 277:13, 18
inscrutable judgments, 294:7
needed to maintain good health, 278:3
not circumscribed by space and place, 277:14
omnipresence, 301A:1
soul dies when abandoned by, 273:1
unchangeable, 301:8
unity and trinity, 293:7
unseen by glorified bodies, 277:13
weakness of God is stronger than men, 305A:6
will, See will of God
wrath to be feared, 302:20
godless(-ness; ungodly):
confounded by Spirit speaking in martyrs, 276:2
envy glory of the saints, 273:5
frequently honored, 302:3
not passed on to eternal values, 301:3
place for, in future life, 301:6
sufferings now and in eternity, 275:2
worldly prosperity of, 301:7, 8
godliness: wisdom, 299D:2, 3
gods:
martyrs not worshipped as, 273:7
ordinary Christians compared with, 273:6
pagan worship of the dead, 273:3
goldsmith, 301:4, 6
good and evil:
attribute evil to ourselves, 293D:5
bad tree, bad fruit, 292:7
Christian social action, 302:19
common to both the godly and ungodly, 302:3
deliver me from the evil man, 297:9, 11
deliver us from evil, 302:16

God makes good use of bad men, 301:4
man as source of evil, 297:9
overcome evil with good, 302:10
place of the wicked in this world, 301:4
raging against bad people, 302:10, 16, 18
treasures of the heart, 292:7
whoever loves iniquity hates his own soul, 299D:6
good fortune:
danger of being corrupted by, 301:8
good news:
strength to those who proclaim, 299:3
Good Samaritan: parable, 299D:2
Good Thief:
purchased paradise, 285:2
remember me... 285:2
good works:
let them be rich in, 299D:4
soldiers, police, etc., 302:15
works of necessity, 305A:7
goodness:
attribute to God, 293D:5
honor: civil rulers, 299E:2

H
hope:
cursed is everyone who hopes in man, 295:5
trust not in your own powers, 283:3
human beings: Christ suffered for all, 304:2
human body:
See also body and soul bodies as prisons, 277:3
caring for, 277:4
eternal life earned for the flesh, 277:3
health; harmony of its elements, 277:4
indulging immoderately, 278:10, 14
mooring rope, 298:3
not submitting to soul’s bidding, 277:6
put on imperishability, 305A:7
sins against temple of God, 278:7
human condition:
Christ took on our weakness, 305:4
God made man upright, 284:4
immoderate self-indulgence, 278:14
more devastation: gospel preached but ignored, 296:11
shown in Christ’s life, 279:8
true/false happiness, 302:2
human life, see death; life

Volume III/8
Sermons 273-305A

humility:
  following Christ, 304:3
  God exalts the humble, 279:6
  Jesus baptized by John, 292:3, 4
  John the Baptist, 289:3; 290:3
  lampstand, 289:6
  listening, 292:8
  Pharisee and the tax collector, 290:6, 7
  hungry: filled with good things, . . , 290:6, 7

I

idolatry: extinguished by those willing to die, 296:5
ignorance: admission of, 301:3
immolation: St Paul, 299:3, 8; 299A:2; 299B:5; 299C:4
immortality: See also resurrection of the body
  body puts on imperishability, 299:9, 10
  eternal life, 305A:8
  mortal bodies, 277:4
  our “clothes” in heaven, 299D:7
  promised to martyrs, 286:5
impiety: rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3
Incarnation:
  Christ emptied himself, . . , 281:1
  did not think it robbery, . . , 293E:2
  form of a servant, 279:8; 288:5; 292:3; 293E:3; 304:3
  God willing to be born mortal, 273:9
  hold fast to the Word, 289:3
  Word became flesh, 293:5; 293B:2; 299F:2
  Word received flesh, something to die from, 299F:2
  worthy one came to the unworthy, 293:5
  infants, See babies; baptism of infants
  interest: profitable return on master’s money, 279:12

J

Jacob: blessing his sons, 279:1
James (deacon), St: martyrdom, 284:1, 6
Jesus (son of Nun), 293:11
Jesus (the name): in Latin means savior, 299:6
Jesus Christ:
  See also Christian life; Church;
  Incarnation; Mystical Body; Son of God; Word of God
  Alpha and Omega, 299B:1
  ashamed of the name of, 279:8
  authority to lay down his life, 305:2-3
  baptism by John; humility, 292:3, 4
  baptism means salvation, 292:4
  “before Abraham I am,” 290:2
  believers ashamed to confess, 279:7
  both Word and voice, 293D:3
  Christ in Paul was enduring sufferings, 299C:4
  conversion of Faustinus, 279:11, 12
  crucifixion:
    Jews dismissed him, . . , 285:2
    Jews given reassurance of pardon, 301A:4
    robber who scoffed, 285:2
    robbers on either side, 285:2
    tearing of the veil, 293:2
    days (growing longer) of his birth, 289:5
    death of John the Baptist and, 293B:3
    denying Christ, 277:2; 286:2; 299D:4, 6; 299F:2
    departed visible, will return visible, 277:17
    did not love his life in this age, 305:2
    died for Peter; Peter later died for him, 286:2
    as doctor, 278:2
    done to death in the flesh, . . , 294:16
    exalted on the cross, 288:5
    example for martyrs, 273:1
    flesh, just like ours, 273:9
    foretold by the prophets, 289:3
    from his fullness we have all received, 289:5
    gentle and humble of heart, 274; 279:3
    glory of martyrs, 305A:2
    good odor of Christ, 273:5
    greater than John, 293E:1
    grew, raised up on the cross, 293A:6; 293C:1
    hand of the Lord, 291:2
    handed over by Judas and by God, 301:5
    heretics cloaked in name of, 292:6
    humanity, 279:8
    humility, 304:3
    “if you are the Christ,” . . , 293:4
    ignorance re woman who touched his hem, 299C:5
Sermons 273-305A

imitated by the martyrs, 280:6
John and, see John the Baptist, Saint
Jordan river; start of his public work, 288:2
deliver on judgment day, 299:4
king of martyrs, 276:1
life through Christ, 293:9
martyrs as witnesses to, 299F:1
mediator, not as God but as man, 293:7
mortality in Christ, 294:13
name: Savior, 293:11
no benefit to unbelievers, 294:17
nobody has gone up to heaven. . . , 294:9, 10
nothing/nobody more necessary than, 299D:6
obedience, even to death on a cross, 304:3
omnipotence; patience, 304:3
our one advocate, 285:5
passion and death:
dying as an act of power, 300:4
given example to us, 299B:1
“Father, forgive them” . . . , 279:3;
foretold to his disciples, 296:2
given vinegar to drink, 300:4
he gave up his spirit, 300:4
humility most apparent on the cross, 279:3
I myself went to sleep, 305:3
"I thirst," 300:4
"It is accomplished," 300:4
"Let this cup pass" . . . , 296:8; 299:9, 284:6; 302:3
must be lifted up. . . , 294:11, 13
Old Testament prophecy fulfilled, 300:3, 4
Pilate being cured by Christ, 299E:2
profit for those following him, 304:2
Son handed over by the Father, 301:5
soul troubled as death approaches, 305:2, 4
"today you shall be with me" . . . , 285:2
veil of temple torn away, 300:4
without fault, he bore our penalty, 299:8
person of the Word, 288:5
post-resurrection appearances only to disciples, 284:6
pre-Christian witnesses, 300:1
prince of martyrs, 299E:2
proclaiming the Word is voice of the
Word, 288:4
rations for his beasts, 292:8
resurrection:
authority to take life up again, 305:3
Christ openly proclaimed after rising, 300:5
false witnesses, 299E:4
ignored, 299E:4
reassurance re death, 297:2
salvation in humility of, 285:4
seeing Christ in his humanity, 277:17
seeing him with eyes of the flesh, 301A:1
shed his blood; pledged us to do the
same, 299:3
shepherd, 285:5
silent re his (concealed) divinity, 299:4
simultaneously in heaven and on
earth, 294:9
sinless, 294:11
Son of God on earth; Son of Man in
heaven, 294:9
sufferings/consolations abound in us, 305A:5
teaching during his temptation; his
passion, 299E:2
testimonials given by John the Baptist, 290:1
thinking of him as man, 293E:3
triple temptation, 284:5
ture God, true man, 305:2
ture light, enlightening every man. . . , 289:4
unity; one person, 294:9
verbs “was, is and will” and, 293E:2
we must not keep quiet about, 299B:3
"Who touched me?" [we should be the
one. . .], 299C:5
“whoever has seen me has seen the
Father,” 288:5
wholly man and wholly God, 293:7
wished to be baptized by a man, 292:4
witness to himself (re John the
Baptist), 293:4
Word preceded John (the voice), 288:4
Jews:
apostles give reassurance of pardon, 301A:4
confusion over John, 293D:4
forfeited their ancestry (Abraham), 305A:3
many believed in Christ, 289:3
not daring to confess Jesus publicly, 286:1

Volume III/8
rejected Christ, 301A:1
veil placed over their hearts, 300:3
John, Saint, Apostle:
awe-struck by angel, 273:8
friendship of high priest, 299C:1
prepared for martyrdom, 296:5
John the Baptist, Saint:
admirer John; Christ profits, 291:1
angel’s announcement, 291:1
announced by angel, 291:1
as the Christ, 288:2; 289:3, 4; 292:2
baptism: where is it from...?, 293:4
Behold the lamb of God..., 293B:2
birth announced by angel, 293B:4
birth; comparisons with Christ’s birth,
287:3, 4; 293A:2; 293C:1
birthday of (feast), 279:13; 287:1-4;
288:1-5; 289:1-6; 290:1-7;
291:1-6; 292:1-8; 293:1;
293A:1-6; 293B:1-5; 293C:1-2;
293D:1-5
born with sin, 293:12
boundary between Old/New
Testaments, 293:2
burning and shining lamp, 293D:1
compared with Christ, 289:1
day of birth; daylight diminishing,
288:5; 289:5; 293:1; 293A:6;
293D:5
death; comparison with Christ’s,
293B:3
diminished (beheaded), 293A:6; 293C:1
disciple of Christ, in secret, 293D:3
disciples of, 292:2; 293:6; 293D:2
feast: superstitious midsummer rituals,
293B:5
friend of the bridegroom, 288:2;
292:8; 293A:4; 293B:5; 293D:3
greatness of, 287:1; 288:2; 289:5;
292:2; 293A:4
greeted Christ in the womb, 293:12
he must grow, I must diminish, 288:5;
293A:6; 293B:2; 293C:1; 293D:5
herit already leaping in the womb,
289:5
humility, 289:3; 290:3; 293:3
I am not the Christ, 289:5; 292:2;
293:3; 293D:1
I ought to be baptized by you...?, 293:12
imitation of, 293D:5
lamp bearing witness to the day,
293A:4; 293D:1; 2
lamp, compared with light (Christ),
289:4, 5, 6
measure of a man, 293A:3
miraculous birth, 289:1
more than a prophet, 288:2
named by Zachary, 293B:4
none has arisen greater than, 288:2;
289:3; 290:1; 291:2; 293D:1, 3;
293:4, 6; 293A:3; 293B:1, 4;
293C:1, 2
not one of Christ’s disciples, 292:2;
293D:2
not worthy to undo...?, 293:6;
293A:4; 293B:1-5; 293C:1, 2
one coming after, greater than me,
293D:3
one who is less, is greater...?, 293D:1,
3
outsider believed as witness, 293:6
plays role of all voices, 288:5
preaching humility and repentance,
293A:4
prepare the way...?, 289:3; 293:3
purpose, 293A:3
reason for honoring birthday of, 288:1
sign and sacrament of all voices,
288:4
special role of, 288:1
superior over all other prophets,
293A:2
testimonials given by Christ, 290:1
testimony to the Incarnation, 293:6
unique merit of, 293A:2
voice before the Word, 293A:5
voice in service of Christ the Word,
288:1, 4; 293A:2; 293B:2; 293C:1
voice of one crying, 288:2; 289:3;
290:4; 292:4; 293:2; 293A:5;
293B:2; 293C:1; 293D:2
what will this child be...?, 291:2
who are you...?, 289:3
witness to Christ, 289:5; 290:3
witness to the light, 289:4; 293B:3
Zachary and Elizabeth, 291:3
Jordan river, 288:2
Judas:
baptisms by, 295:5
betrayed Christ, 299B:3; 301:5
deal and, 284:5
judging others:
leave what you can’t see to God,
296:14
Pharisee and the tax collector, 290:7

Sermons 273-305A
Sermons 273-305A

Judgment Day:
See also crown of justice; resurrection of the body; Second Coming crown of justice, 297:5
do we really want Christ to come? 299:4
eternal life; eternal fire, 277:2
God (Jesus) will come openly, 299:4
heaven or hell; no middle place, 294:3
living and dead to be judged, 294:3
resurrection of life; -of judgment, 277:2
whoever does not believe . . .. 294:14
why of suffering, not what, 285:2
Juno, 273:6
Jupiter, 273:3, 8
justice:
form of humility, 292:4
heart believing unto, 299F:2
human attributes, without justice, 290:7
social order, 302:19
victory of martyrs, 275:1
justification:
belief in one who justifies, 292:6
born again, 294:16

K
kindness: Good Samaritan, 299D:2

L
ladder: martyr Perpetua, 280:1
laity:
false distinction with clergy, 301A:8
members of Christ's body, 301A:8
lampstand: glory in, 289:6
language: word and voice, 288:3
last things:
understanding of the, 301:8
Latin language: Jesus coined salvare and salvator, 299:6
Lawrence, Saint:
birthday of, 302:1-22; 303:1-2; 304:1-4; 305:1-4; 305A:1-10
character of, 305A:1
cooked; turn me over . . .., 303:1
day of triumph, 304:1
devotion to, 305A:1
frames of charity, 304:4
imitation of Christ, 304:1
let us follow in his footsteps, 303:2
office of deacon, 304:1
powerful merits of, 302:1
praised by authorities, 302:12
treasures of the Church, 302:8; 303:1
law: taking the law into their own hands, 302:21
Lazarus:
... come forth . . .., 295:2
loose him and let him go . . .., 295:2
Lazarus and the rich man (parable), 299E:3-5
lethargy, 302:2
liar:
avoiding torture, 280:4
mouth that lies kills the soul, 301A:5
Liber, 273:3
life:
See also Christian life; eternal life; future life; heaven; temporal life
good days are made by us, 297:9
one long process of dying, 305A:8
people tested by affairs of every day, 301A:5
pleasant, but not heaven, 299A:2
preferring temporal to eternal, 297:8
preserving this life of ours, 305A:6
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-4
seeking good days, 297:9
shortness of, 301:8
short-lived, but sweet, 280:3
temporal; tyrannous power of love, 280:4
time: conception, birth, growth, etc., 277:11
to be loved; to be chosen, 297:4, 8
troubles, evils in, 297:8
ugliness in, 302:2
value of deferment of death, 280:3
whoever loves his life in this age . . .., 305:2
years subtracted from lifespan, 299E:1
light:
eternal, 299D:5
fountain of life, 299E:3
lips: confession made unto salvation, 299F:2
listening: humility, 292:8
Lord's prayer: sins of exceeding the limits, 278:10
love:
all things work together for good, 299E:5

Volume III/8
choose innocent life, 299E:1
courage: endurance, 299E:1
earthly loves, nothing compared to
God's love, 301A:6
genuine charity, 304:4
God's gift, 297:1
love that which you reach by loving
(God), 299E:1
love yourself by loving the Lord,
301A:6
make progress by loving martyrs,
295:8
only question: Do you love me? 296:3
Peter: more than these. . ., 299B:1
Peter's example: right way, wrong
way, 296:1
proof: imitating his example, 304:2
shown by loving God's profits, 296:13
spirit of God, 283:3
twin precepts for forgiveness of sins,
278:6
two commandments, 299D:2; 301A:6
wound of is health-giving, 298:2
love of neighbor, 299D:2; 301A:6
self-love as obstacle to, 278:8
lovers: chaste and unchaste, 299E:1
lust: triumph over tyrannous power of,
280:4
lynching case, 302:13, 15

M

Maccabees:
basilica in Antioch, 300:6
Christian martyrs, 300:2, 5
imitate them in your heart, 300:6
martyrs, 300:1-7; 301A:1-9
mother of the seven martyrs, 300:6-7
mother's wonderful example, 301:1
mother's words to youngest son, 300:6
suffered for the law of Moses, 300:2
theater spectacles and, 301A:7
three boys in furnace (Daniel) and,
286:6; 301:2
Marianus, Saint: martyrdom, 284:1, 2, 6
marriage:
friendship, 299D:1
having children as purpose of, 278:9
immoderate enjoyment in, 278:9, 10
Marseilles, martyrs of, 283:1-4
martyrdom:
borne, not loved, 299:8
crown received for willingness, 296:5
devoting one's life to God, 305A:2
earned by despising the world, 299B:1
exhortation: renounce everything. . .,
301A:5
feed my sheep (by not refusing to die),
296:3-4
gift of God, 286:1
given by God; not to be sought, 286:5
in fact, or in fellow feeling, 296:5
pain of the sickbed, 286:7
Paul's sacrifice to God, 299A:2
take away light/life; still have eternal
light/life, 299D:5
martyrs:
See also Maccabees; also names of
particular martyrs
advocates for us, 285:5
attitudes toward compared, 280:2
blood owed to Christ, 299:3
bodies in Rome, 296:6
celebrate; imitate their holiness,
299A:1
Christ the strength of, 299E:1
Church commends itself to their
prayers, 284:5; 297:3
confessing Christ with greatest
constancy, 300:5
constancy and patience come from
God, 277A:2
courage not from themselves, 283:1;
285:1
crowned for going God's way, 305A:4
deaths precious in sight of the Lord,
299E:2
delight in spectacle of, 280:2
did not despise their bodies, 277:3
distinguished by cause, not
punishment, 275:1
dying for the truth (Peter and Paul),
295:1
eloquence cannot sufficiently praise,
284:1
endurance by the Lord's indwelling,
276:1
endure pain and death for sake of
Christ, 280:4
eternal life earned for the flesh, 277:3
faithful, 294:1
false, 275:1
feasts instituted for faith to imitate,
305A:1
feasts of the apostles and, 298:1
follow by imitating, 302:1
Sermons 273-305A

following Christ’s example, 273:1; 304:2
following them, in affection, 280:6
fruits of dying, 299E:1
glory even in this world, 276:4
God’s care for mortal remains of,
275:3; 276:4
good odor of Christ, 273:5
grace not only to believe but to suffer,
283:4; 284:3
Greek word for “witnesses”, 299F:1
hate if they are themselves
worshipped, 273:8
honor for, 285:7
huge crops from grain sown by, 305:1
human, just like us, 273:9
imitate Christ in laying down lives,
280:6
imitation, 285:4; 302:9
imitation: choose a just cause, 283:4;
285:7
immortality promised to those
imitating, 286:5
Jesus teaches submission, 299E:2
lovers of eternal life, 302:7
made by cause, not by punishment,
285:2
made victorious by justice, 275:1
make progress by loving them, 295:8
Marseilles, 283:1-4
members of body of Christ, 280:6
memorials of, 305A:4
motivation, 275:1; 299D:1
not worshipped as gods, 273:7
overcoming with help of the Lord,
275:1
patience a gift from God, 284:1, 3
patience; obduracy of criminals and,
274
persons of all ages, either sex, 305A:2
persuasion of vanity (judge), 299F:2
praise by civil authorities, 302:12
pray that we imitate their virtues,
299F:4
present life exchanged for life, 280:3
pre-Christian, 300:1
proclaimed Christ more effectively
after death, 286:3
reading the Passions of, 301A:7
rejoicing and glorifying God in, 273:7
reward in heaven, 302:1
some feasts more important than
others, 305A:1-10
Spirit of the Father speaks in, 275:1;
276:2
spiritual delights; not feeling bodily
pains, 280:4
suffer for Christ’s sake, 284:3
sweetness of this world and, 297:3
temporal benefits through prayers of,
302:1
t heir blood as seed for the Church,
286:3; 301:1
told: confess Christ and you will be
punished, 299F:3
tortured, they still conquer, 299D:5
venerate martyrs; worship their God,
273:9
victory by the grace of God, 305A:2
virtue of patience, 283:1
who shall separate us from charity of
Christ? 299D:5
witnesses, even after death, 286:1
witnesses to truth of another life,
299F:1
women as weaker sex, 282:2, 3
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
See also Annunciation
Elizabeth compared with, 289:2
hungry he has filled with good things...,
290:6
Jesus as the hidden Word, 289:3
motherhood a matter of grace, 291:6
virgin's vow accepted, 291:5
Mary (mother of St Marianus), 284:2
Mass: martyrs' names in, 284:5
mediation:
human race reconciled with God,
293:8
Jesus wholly man, wholly God, 293:7
mercy:
causes pain for a time, 278:5
prescription often painful, 278:4
Mercury, 273:3, 8
merit:
apostles/martyrs, 299A:2
God’s gift, 299B:5; 299C:5
grace and, 293:8
our merits are God’s gifts, 297:6; 298:5
Messiah:
how was he going to come? 293:5
Jews clothed in confusion, 293:4

Volume III/8
Sermons 273-305A
temporal; eternal fire, 283:1
threat, 283:1
palm: emblem of victory, 275:2
parables: Good Samaritan, 299D:2
parent and child, 299D:1
fatherly loving-kindness, 302:1
mother of the Maccabees, 301:1
passing on, 301:8
pastoral work: correct the unruly..., 296:14
patience:
against pains, 283:1
enduring bad things bravely, 276:1
gift of God, 283:2, 3, 4
God the source of, 283:1, 3, 4; 284:3
martyr's patience comes from God, 277A:2
obstinate insensitivity and, 283:4
perfect gift..., 284:1
preceded by good cause, 283:4
putting up with every evil, 304:4
resources; building a tower, 301A:2
unchangeable fountain, 284:1
will of God, 296:8
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
Ananias and, 279:2; 292:5; 295:6; 299C:3
belief out of necessity, 279:10
both sheep and shepherd, 299C:3
brought to Ananias, 279:2, 4
calling of, 278:1-14
Christ did not grow gentle with, 279:4
Christ in Paul was enduring sufferings, 299C:4
cornerstone, 279:10
crown of justice, 297:5; 298:4, 5; 299:3, 6; 299A:2; 299C:5
delivered from his evil self, 297:10
foremost sinner, 299:6
granted to believe in and die for Christ, 297:6
groaning under load of perishing body, 299:9
hem of Christ's garment, 299C:5
I have fought the good fight..., 299:3, 5; 299A:2; 299B:5; 299C:4, 5
I obtained mercy..., 299:6
I worked harder than all..., 299B:5; 299C:4
immolated, 299:3, 8; 299A:2; 299B:5; 299C:4
jealous (of the serpent) of his followers, 299:12
last joins the first, 299:2; 299C:1
least of the apostles, 299B:5; 299C:5
longing to be with Christ, 298:3
love for eternal things, 299C:3
love; martyrdom, 296:5
martyrdom celebrated with Peter, 299:2
martyrdom on same day (not year) as Peter, 299A:1
name of humility, 279:5
name: Saul for pride; Paul for humility, 299B:4
not worthy to be called apostle, 297:5; 298:4; 299B:5; 299C:4
persecutor of Christ, made into preacher of Christ, 278:1; 295:6; 299C:3
preacher: dividing the food, 299C:3
prophetic blessing of Benjamin, 279:1
ravenous wolf, 299C:3
read him and love him, 298:2
Saul; see also under Saul (later Paul) sees his death as sacrifice, 299:3
significance of the name, 279:5
Stephen and, see Stephen, Saint
struck blind, 279:1
struck down; converted, 299B:4
sufferings of, 295:7; 299C:3
unwilling to die, 299:9
weary, he remains on our account, 305A:5; 6
what he must suffer..., 279:4
willing/unwilling to die, 299:8
word means "little", 295:7; 299C:4
peace:
angels' message, 299D:4
eternal, 299D:7
Pelagians:
baptism of infants, 294:1, 2
on cause of death, 299:11-12
kingdom of heaven; eternal life, 294:5-6
on original sin, 294:15, 16, 18
Pentecost:
disciples receive Holy Spirit, 299B:2-3
filled with the Holy Spirit, 301A:4
Peter shown to be first of the apostles,
299B:2
people of God:
Christian before Christ, 300A:1
tested by Antiochus, 301A:4
perfection: God everything in everyone,
293C:2
Perpetua, Saint:
Christ victorious in, 281A:1
devil overcome by, 281A:2
devil tempts father of, 281A:2
dragon trampled on by, 280A:1
martyrdom, 280A:1, 4
perpetual felicity, 282A:1
wife, 282A:2
persecution:
Antiochus, 300A:6
cannot kill those who remain faithful,
299D:5
Christians renounced their
possessions, 301A:4
Church grows with, 295A:6
contrasts in, 303A:2
do not bring us into temptation, 304A:2
good odor of the saints, 273A:5
hidden, in any period, 305A:2
lovers of the good, who can hurt
you . . ., 304A:4
never wanting for Christians, 305A:5
Paul, weary of living, 305A:5
soldering; constancy, 303A:2
threats used, 301A:5
perseverance:
cherish eternal life, 302A:9
simplicity, 301A:2
Peter, Saint:
before/after Pentecost, 284A:6
bishops join in feeding Christ’s sheep,
296A:13
boasting: he would lay down his life,
295A:3
buried in Rome, 296A:12
Christ foretold his denial; his death,
299A:7
Church represented by, 295A:2
denial (threesome) of Christ, 286A:2;
296A:2
denied Christ when he was feeble,
299A:7
do you love me? (three times), 285A:3;
295A:4; 296A:3, 4; 299A:7; 299A:1;
299B:1
drank from the rock, Christ, 295A:1
fear and love compared, 297A:1
feed my sheep, 285A:5; 6; 296A:1, 3-4,
12; 299A:7; 299A:1; 299B:2
First and Last apostles, 299B:1
First joins the Last (Paul), 299A:2;
299C:1
get behind me, Satan. . ., 296A:2
hurt when asked if he loved Jesus,
299B:1
I have prayed that your faith fail not,
299C:5
keys of the kingdom of heaven,
295A:2
looked at by Jesus, with mercy, 284A:6
love confesses, what fear denied,
299A:1
loved Christ when in good health,
299A:7
martyr for Christ, 286A:2
martyrdom borne, not loved, 299A:8
martyrdom celebrated with Paul,
299A:2
martyrdom for sheep committed to
him, 295A:5
martyrdom on same day (not year) as
Paul, 299A:1
martyred to preserve his sheep, 296A:4
memorial meant to stir us to love,
296A:7
merit: he fed the Lord’s sheep, 299A:1
mysteries of grace and judgment,
285A:3
only apostle to walk on the sea,
299C:1
Pentecost; first of the apostles, 299B:2
presumptuous self-reliance, 285A:3;
286A:2; 295A:3; 296A:2; 299B:1
pre-eminence in the Church, 295A:2
promised more than he could fulfill,
296A:1
read him and love him, 298A:2
rock (“petra”), 295A:1
sheep (Church) to be fed, 295A:4-5
shepherd, 285A:5
strength and weakness; the Church,
295A:3
sufferings of, 295A:7
taught how to love, 296A:3
told that he will be reluctant to die,
297A:2
upon this rock. . ., 295A:1
we have left everything. . ., 301A:4
wept over his presumption, 285A:6;
295A:3

Sermons 273-305A
when you are old another will gird you... 296:8; 297:2, 3; 299:7, 8; 299B:2
willing/unwilling to die, 299:8
witnessing to Christ, 286:2
not worshipped, 273:7
would follow Christ rather than die, 297:3

Peter and Paul, Saints, Feast of, 
Pharisee: prayer; the tax collector, 290:6, 7
Philip, Saint: show us the Father... 288:5
piety: Abraham, 299E:5
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3
Pilate: authority to put to death, 299E:2
pity: human unworthiness, 293:5
pleasure: continence against, 283:1
promise, 283:1
Pluto, 273:3
policemen, 302:15
polytheism: dead worshipped, become gods, 273:3
poor: bones of the rich and, 289:6
health and, 277:4
not having anything to live on, 299F:2
treasures of the Church (Lawrence), 302:8; 303:1
possessions: greed overcome, 301A:2
how to possess your wealth, 299E:5
persecuted Christians, 301A:4
taking to underworld, 301A:3
you haven't given up all, 301A:5
poverty: big desires, 301A:4
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3
praise: let the gentle hear and rejoice, 274
martyrs and civil authorities, 302:12
prayer(s): all need each other's prayers, 305A:10
asking and not receiving, 286:5
memorials of martyrs, 277:1
Pharisee and tax collector, 290:6, 7
poured out for whole body of Christ, 273:2
precession:
Peter's self-reliance, 285:3, 4; 286:2; 295:3; 296:2; 299B:1
pride: Pharisee and the tax collector, 290:6, 7
property: Donatists afraid for, 296:14
prophets:
desire to see Christ in the flesh, 293A:2
killing of, 305A:3
many have wished to see... 288:2
woe to scribes and Pharisees, 305A:3
Protase: martyr, 286:1
remains discovered, 286:4 (note 9)
prudence: whoever does not renounce all...
301A:2
Psalm 19: explanation, 299B:3
publicans, 302:15
punishment:
See also eternal punishment
all that is due sinners; instead we have redemption, 299:6
given death to drink, 299:8
innocent infants, 294:6
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3
Sodom and Gomorrah, 302:20
rage: against bad people, 302:10, 16, 18
redemption:
Christ came to save sinners, 299:6
Christ has no sin... 294:11
Christ, likeness of the flesh of sin, 294:13
Christ suffered for all, 304:2
fall of man and, 289:2
prophets of Old Covenant, 293A:2
saved from our sins, by grace, 278:1
repentance:
Father rejoices over one person repenting, 279:11
preached by John the Baptist, 293A:4
severe with self, so that God may be lenient, 278:12
resurrection of the body:
See also spiritual body
all in tombs come forth, 277:2
conformity to Christ's glorious body, 277:12
disbelief by worldly philosophy, 277:3
firm belief in, 277:15
health and, 277:5
imperishability, 277:4
Jesus as source of, 293:8, 9
joys of those risen again, 280:5
martyrs in eternal life, 302:7
no doubting our immortality, 277:18
speed; twinkling of an eye, 277:11, 12
victory over death, 299:9

Revelation, Book of:
Enoch and Elijah in, 299:11

rich(-es):
bones of the poor and, 289:6
denying Christ for sake of, 299D:4
health and, 277:4
sent away empty, ... , 290:6, 7
wrongly/eminently emptiable rich man, 290:7
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-5
right of sanctuary, 302:22
riotous behavior, 302:19

Rome (the city):
bodies of martyrs in, 296:6
burning of the city, 296:9
city afflicted in early Christian times, 296:9
feast of St Lawrence, 305A:1
sack of the city, 296:10

S
sacrifice:
offered only to true God, 273:4
pledged to offer ourselves like Christ, 299:3

saints:
See also martyrs
bodies: memorials; reminders to pray, 277:1
deaths of, precious to the Lord, 275:3; 276:4
deaths precious in sight of God, 286:3; 298:3; 299E:2
glory envied by the ungodly, 273:5
good odor of Christ, 273:5
only 'John’s' birthday celebrated, 292:1
souls of the just are in hand of God, 298:3

salvation:
baptism of infants, 294:2, 4-8
baptism of Jesus, 292:4
can you drink the cup ... , 299:3
Christ is the “salvation of God,” 277:16
confession with the lips, 299F:2

Eve’s fall, restored by Mary, 289:2
faith in Christ necessary for, 294:11, 14
forgiveness of sins, 278:11
God our protector, 301:1
gospel offered to us for, 301A:1
grace, 299:6
how flesh will see the salvation of God, 277:16, 17
humility of Christ, 285:4
sanctification and, 294:18
those offering salvation without Christ, 294:4
three young men in furnace (Daniel), 301:2
what does it profit a man ... , 302:5
sanctification: by word of God and by prayer, 294:18
sanctuary, right of, 302:22
sandal strap, 290:3; 291:1; 292:8
Saul (later Paul):
appropriate name, 299B:3
breathing slaughter, thirsting for blood, 299B:4; 299C:1
God did not then give him his due, 298:4
ravenous wolf (Benjamin), 279:1
significance of the name, 279:5
Stephen and, see Stephen, Saint
why are you persecuting me, 279:1, 4, 10; 299:6; 299C:1; 295:6
Saul, King:
persecutor of David, 279:5; 299B:4; 299C:4
sin not forgiven, 291:5

savings: accumulating for children, 299E:5

scents: good odor of Christ, 273:5
Scillitan martyrs, 299D:1-7; 299E:1-5
scolding at Jesus, 285:2

Second Coming:
fire will go before him, 299:4
he first came in humility; second in authority, 299:4
Jesus will come as he was seen going, 277:17
one judged will come to judge, 279:7
self-indulgence:
damaging God’s temple in yourself, 278:9
love of neighbor wounded by, 278:8

senses: human/animal compared, 277:5
Sermons 273-305A

sin from, 294:13
trampled by Perpetua, 280:1
knows the will of God, 296:11
profitable return on master’s money,
279:12
service: voice serving word(s), 288:3, 5
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego,
286:6; 296:5; 301:2
shame:
believer not defending Christ, 299D:6
believers ashamed to confess, 279:7
salutary shamelessness, 279:7
sharing: let the one who has two shirts . . .,
302:15
shepherds: laying down one’s life for the
sheep, 296:5
sick:
Christ came to heal, 279:11
healing; restoring to life, 278:2
martyrdom of the sickbed, 286:7
tie on the charm ("muti"), 286:7
sight: speed of reaching the object,
277:10
Simon:
departure from world put off, 288:2
recognition of the Christ, 293A:2
saw the Child in his heart, 277:17
Simittu: exhortation to imitate, 301A:9
simplicity: unshakable in perseverance,
301A:2
sin:
See also forgiveness of sin
against God, or against human beings,
278:7
antidote for all, 278:6
be angry and do not sin . . ., 296:12
Christ calls sinners to health, 278:5
Christ’s likeness of the flesh of,
294:13
death caused by, 299:10
devil as author of, 294:15
difference between grave and light
sins, 278:12
drawn into by pleasure or pain, 283:1
equally ready to confess, 301:2
evil: sinning against self, 278:8
forgiveness of, by the Lord’s prayer,
278:10
free choice; falling into death, 278:2
if we say we have no sin . . ., 301:2
Jesus saves people from, 293:11
light sins can sink us by their very
numbers, 278:12
pernicious sweetness, 278:5
sinner has irritated the Lord, 296:12
sting of death, 299:9, 10
turning God’s gift to your own
undoing, 278:9
whose sins you forgive . . ., 295:2
woman taken in adultery, 302:14
sinners:
envious of, 301:7, 8
God’s patience with, 301:4
only punishment is owed to, 299:6
sleep, 305A:8
social action: warn, persuade, teach,
correct, 302:21
social order, 302:19
Sodom and Gomorrah, 302:20
soldier: doing good, 302:15
Son of God:
See also Jesus Christ; Word of God
coequal with the eternal, 292:3
did not think it robbery . . ., 288:5;
292:3
equality with the Father, 277:13;
293E:2
Father is greater than I, 293E:1;
293E:3
omnipresence of, 277:13
Son of Man, see Jesus Christ
soul, see body and soul
South Wind, 273:4
space: God in, 277:13, 14, 18
speaking in tongues of all nations,
299B:2-3
spectacles: theater, 301A:7
speed:
eye’s rays, 277:10
human body unable to obey will,
277:6, 7
spirit:
changeable, 301:8
let us try to turn bodies into spirit,
277:18
spiritual body:
angels, 277:9
ease and speed of movement, 277:7
human curiosity regarding, 277:13
marvelous agility, 277:12
risen Christ passing through closed
doors, 277:8, 12
spiritual life:
See also Christian life; heart; prayer
fix gaze on things that are not seen,
296:7
overwhelmed by weight of tiny sins,
278:12

Volume III/8
progress in true piety; grace grows, 293C:2
savor the things that are above, 296:7
Stephen, Saint:
imitation of, 284:6
name means crown, 299C:1
ordained by Peter, 298:1
Saul (Paul) at stoning of, 278:1; 279:1; 299:6; 299B:4; 299C:1
persecuted by Saul, 298:1
strangers, 299D:1
suffering:
See also death
Christ teaches how to suffer, 284:6
Christ's example, 284:6
Christ's sufferings abound in us, 305A:5, 6
compared with future glory, 277A:2
confidence in one's own powers, 276:1
cup is bitter, but it cures, 299A:2
debtor takes the cup of salvation, 299:3
enduring, we are rescued from our enemy, 277A:2
fear of pain, 279:9
future glory and (Paul), 279:4
future glory will be revealed, 296:6; 297:11
gift to believe and to suffer, 276:1
hand of doctor operating, 278:5
reward for, 299C:3
share that of apostles/martyrs, 299A:2
sun:
movement of, 277:9
rises on the good and the wicked, 292:4
superfluous goods:
despised by martyrs, 299D:4
unwilling to give away, 302:5
talents:
boast in the Lord, 277A:2
gifts of God, 283:3
tax collector: Pharisee; prayer, 290:6, 7
temple: only for true God, 273:4
temple of God (human body):
damaging by self-indulgence, 278:9
God will ruin whoever ruins this temple, 278:10
sins against the human body, 278:7
temporal goods:
Christian prerogative to suffer evils, 296:10
gifts of God, 286:5
good things don't make people good, 301A:3
good things given to bad people, 301:7
how to possess your wealth, 299E:5
life in common with beasts, 299F:2
nothing compared to God's love, 301A:6
 pagan attitude toward, 296:10
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-4
storing up treasure only on earth, 305A:5, 296:11
superfluous goods, 290D:1, 3
things that can be seen, 299A:4
think lightly of things that pass away, 299A:2
temporal life:
cherished by its lovers, 302:2, 4
folly of loving, 302:6
mist that vanishes, 302:7
ready to beg just to live a little longer, 302:5
things people do out of love for, 302:4
we become Christians not for sake of this life, 302:3
temptations: daily trials, 301A:6
ten commandments:
seven for love of neighbor, 278:6
three for love of God, 278:6
thanksgiving: thanks for little things, 283:3
theater:
Christians at, 301A:8
Maccabees compared with, 301A:7
Simittu, 301A:9
Theogenes, Saint, 273:7
three boys in furnace (Daniel), 286:6; 296:5
Maccabees and, 301:2
time:
passing on to eternal life, 301:8
runs out on you, 299E:1
what is long, if it has an end, 301:8
toleration: questions not firmly settled by the Church, 294:20
torture:
lies in order to avoid, 280:4
V incent's martyrdom, 277A:1
treasure:
  of the heart, 292:7
  storing up only on earth, 296:11
  where your heart is, 296:7
tree: fruit of, 292:5, 7
Trinity:
  firm belief in, 277:15
  immortal, invisible, imperishable, 277:15
  one God, 293:7
  persons true and genuine, 293E:2
trust: all things work together for good, 299E:5

U
ugliness: beauty made from, 285:6
unbelievers:
  Christ no benefit to, 294:17
  man sanctified by believing wife, 294:18
ungodly, see godless
unity: commended to all (when Christ spoke to Peter alone), 295:4

V
values:
  denying Christ for superfluities, 299D:6
  eye of the heart, 299D:4
  interior riches, 299E:5
  lovers of money, 299F:5
  passing on to eternal values, 301:3
  superfluities and necessities, 299D:1, 3
vanity: martyrdom and, 299F:2
victim: Paul set apart as, 298:3
victory: palm as emblem of, 275:2
Vincent, Saint:
  calmness of the one suffering, 275:2
  contrasts: our sharing in his victory, 277A:1
  corpse invincible, 277:1
  Dacian’s rage over martyr’s body, 277:6
  endurance only with divine help, 276:2
  martyr, 274; 275:1-3
  martyrdom, 277:1-18
  miracles performed over body of, 275:3
  pain in limbs; serenity in words, 275:1
  taking care of the body by not sparing it, 277:8
  tortures made beautiful by justice, 277A:1
  victorious only in Christ, 276:1
  worldwide fame, 276:4
  worthy to be crowned, 277A:2
violence: taking part in a mob, 302:11
virgin birth:
  born by his own authority, 305:3
  preceded by John’s marvelous birth, 291:1
  womb as bridal chamber, 291:6
  virginity, consecrated, 304:2
  virtue(s):
    good things that make people good, 301A:3
    imitate holiness of martyrs, 299A:1; 299F:4
    impossible to be defeated, 303:2
    unconquerable, with genuine charity, 304:4
vocation: eternal life, not temporal success, 296:9
voice:
  diminishes, with progress toward the Word, 288:5
  not every voice is a word, 289:3
  wisdom and, 288:5
  word and, 288:3, 4; 293:3; 293B:2; 293C:1; 293D:3

W
walking, 305A:8
weakness: Peter before Pentecost, 284:6
wealth: possess with faith; don’t be possessed by it, 299E:5
well-being:
  See also health
gospel offered to us for, 301A:1
  necessities of life, 299D:1-3, 6
  neighbors, 299D:3
  temporal life, in common with beasts, 299F:2
widows, 304:2
will: judged by God, 301A:4
will of God:
  accommodate yourself to, 296:8
city of Rome afflicted, 296:9
  hidden, before the gospel was preached, 296:11
  his plans kept to himself, 296:7

Volume III/8
known by his servants, 296:11
patience, 296:8
servant becomes friend, 296:7
wind: north/south winds, 273:4
winnowing grain, 305:1
Wisdom:
  disposes all things sweetly, 277:13
  gift to speak good things wisely, 276:1
godliness, 299D:2, 3
mother, 305A:6
necessities of life, 299D:2
need of voice and, 288:5
source, 299D:3
when you die for my sake. . ., 299F:5
Witness bearing:
  believe, but ashamed to confess, 279:7
  confessing him to the death, 286:1
denying Christ is to bear false witness, 299F:2
false witness will not go unpunished, 299F:3
miracles of departed saints, 275:3
true and false, 286:1
wolf: Saul as, 279:2
woman taken in adultery, 302:14
women:
  females called “women” in Hebrew language, 291:4;
martyrdom (the “weaker sex”), 282:2, 3; 286:2; 299E:1; 305A:2
word(s):
  abiding in the heart, 288:3, 4
every word is a voice, 289:3
  service of the voice, 288:3, 5
voice and, 288:3, 4; 293:3; 293B:2; 293C:1; 293D:3
Word of God:
  See also creation; Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Son of God
  born in the flesh, 287:2
can be said to grow in us, 288:5
in the beginning. . ., 277:13; 288:4;
  291:2; 290:2, 5; 293:3; 293A:5;
  293B:2
  293E:1; 293F:5
John as voice of, 288:2
made flesh, 290:5
voice: John the Baptist, 293:3
voices (prophets, etc.) sent by, 288:4
world:
  attack on soldiers of Christ, 276:
  blame because gospel is ignored, 296:11
crucify yourselves to, 289:6
indifference to allurements of, 304:3
pleasure, curiosity, pride, 284:5
rather seek the things that are above, 304:3
spirit of this world, 283:3
wounds of love, 298:2
wrath of God, 302:20
Z
Zachary:
  angel Gabriel came to him, 291:3;
  293B:4
prayer answered, 291:3
punished by dumbness, 290:4; 293:2;
  293B:4
reply expressed doubt and lack of hope, 291:5
response to angel, 290:4, 5; 291:5; 293:1

Sermons 273-305A
Index from
Sermons 306-340A

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 306-340A are on the Saints.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/9
Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-068-1, 6 x 9 in., 340 pp., 1994

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE
(prepared by Matthew Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:27 335C,12
3:4 335B,1
3:5 340A,1
3:19 335B,5
22:15-18 307,3
49:27 333,3

Leviticus
19:18 319,4

Deuteronomy
6:16 313E,4
32:39 312,3

1 Samuel
17:43 335K,5
17:45 335K,6

Job
7:1 318,2
22:29 313A,4

Psalms
23:1-2 334,1
3:8 335B,4
4:7 339,6
5:12 313,4
11:5 336,2
12:2 308A,7
16:2 331,2
16:4 335L,4
16:5 334,3
16:10 336,3
17:4 306,10
17:13-14 313,4
18:1 335E,6

18:32 317,5
19:9 335G,1
22:26 332,2
25:15 306C,5
27:4 337,3
27:12 335A,1
27:14 339,6
30:1 336,3
30:3 336,3
30:11 326,1; 336,4
30:11-12 336,3; 336,5; 337,2
32:5 323,4
32:11 335,1
33:13 315,5
33:20 306A
34:1 306C,3
34:2 312,1; 313A,5; 313C,1
34:5 306B,6; 336,2
34:14 339,2
34:20 313C,2
35:1-3 313,3
36:6 335D,3
36:6-7 306D,2
36:7 306D,2; 306D,4; 335D,3
36:7-9 335D,3
36:8 335D,1
36:8-9 306A
36:9 306,5; 306,6
37:11 312,1
37:39 335D,3; 335D,4
39:6-7 335C,7
40:17 306A
42:2 337,3
43:1 325,2; 327,1; 327,2; 335,2; 335G,2
44:22 331,2; 331,5; 335C,5
45:2 306B,5
52:8 313F,1
54:4 334,1
57:5,11 335E,2
57:7 333,1

Sermons 306-340A
## New Testament

### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>306A,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>313E,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10:7</td>
<td>313E,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-10</td>
<td>306A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>312,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>325,2; 335G,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>306C,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11-12</td>
<td>340A,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>306C,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>338,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>317,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15-16</td>
<td>338,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>317,4; 338,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>339,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33-37</td>
<td>307,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>308,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>306,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44-45</td>
<td>317,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>338,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-12</td>
<td>315,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>308A,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>335E,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>335M,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19-21</td>
<td>311,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>339,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>340A,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>308A,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>313E,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:29</td>
<td>313E,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>335A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19-20</td>
<td>328,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>335E,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>306B,5; 315,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27-28</td>
<td>306B,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>313E,7; 335F,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33:32</td>
<td>306B,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>306B,4; 313,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:39</td>
<td>331,1; 331,2; 335F,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>308A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>326,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17</td>
<td>321,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>312,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>335K,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>340A,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13</td>
<td>306D,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15</td>
<td>306D,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>306D,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16-17</td>
<td>335E,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21-23</td>
<td>335E,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>330,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>330,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24</td>
<td>330,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>306C,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>330,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>340A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>306,6; 306,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:29</td>
<td>326,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:21-22</td>
<td>340A,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>329,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:23</td>
<td>340A,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:29-30</td>
<td>335L,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37-39-40</td>
<td>313B,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>312,6; 340A,9; 340A,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:13</td>
<td>317,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>319,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:31-33</td>
<td>335L,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>337,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-41</td>
<td>328,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:28</td>
<td>306D,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:39</td>
<td>329,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>340A,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4</td>
<td>313E,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>309,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>307,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>311,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>306,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:44</td>
<td>340A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:44-45</td>
<td>340A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:45</td>
<td>340A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:23</td>
<td>335L,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>319,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:12</td>
<td>340A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>313D,3; 335B,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:58</td>
<td>315,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>309,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:29-32</td>
<td>340A,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>306,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>306B,5; 306C,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>308A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>340A,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>313E,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:46</td>
<td>340A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>335B,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>334,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>340A,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>306,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>335C,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25-26</td>
<td>308A,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:12-14</td>
<td>339,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17-19</td>
<td>330,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>335C,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21-23</td>
<td>339,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:2</td>
<td>308A,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:2-4</td>
<td>308A,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5-7</td>
<td>308A,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8</td>
<td>308A,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9-14</td>
<td>308A,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:24-25</td>
<td>308A,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:36</td>
<td>319,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 306-340A

21:14-15 335E,5
21:15 313,2
21:16-18 335A,3
21:18 333,1
21:19 333,1
21:19 335E,6
22:13 335E,3
22:33 340A,8
22:57 335E,3
23:24 313E,4
23:34 313B,4; 315,8; 316,3; 317,2; 317,3; 317,5; 317,6; 319,4; 319,5;
23:39-41 327,2
23:42 327,2; 328,1
23:42-43 335C,12
23:43 327,2
23:46 316,3; 319,5
24:39-44 340A,11
24:47 340A,11

John
1:1 334,2
1:1-3 335K,4
1:10 313A,2
1:12 306,2
1:14 325,1; 334,2; 335I,1; 335K,4
1:16 308A,2
1:19-22 308A,2
1:23 308A,2
1:29 306D,5
1:33-34 308A,4
2:19 315,2
3:2 316,3
3:27 332,3; 333,6
3:29 308A,2
3:30 307A,1
5:14 335L,3
5:19 340A,5
5:28-29 306,5; 335K,2
5:29 306,5; 335F,2
5:38 308A,1; 308A,6; 308A,7
6:1-6 308A,1; 308A,8
6:41 333,1
6:44 333,6
6:51 340A,9
8:36 340A,3
8:44 340A,9
10:16 340A,11
10:18 313E,5
10:30 340A,5
11:51 315,2
12:24 335E,2
12:24-25 329,1
12:25 330,2
12:26 319,3

Acts of the Apostles
2:37-38 316,3
4:32 308A,7
4:34-35 313B,3
6:8 316,1
7:1 319,1
7:51-52 315,5
7:51-52 317,5
7:51-54 316,2
7:55 314,1; 316,2; 319,2
7:56 315,5
7:58 315,6; 316,3; 319,2; 319,3
7:58-59 315,5
7:59 315,7; 316,3; 319,4; 319,5
7:59-60 314,2; 317,5
7:60 317,4; 319,5
9:1-4 316,4; 317,6
9:4 316,5
9:15 332,4; 333,3
10:13 313B,3

Romans
1:1 316,5
1:17 335M,5
2:4 339,7
2:4-6 339,3
2:5 315,7
3:4 335E,4; 339,2
5:6 339,6
6:8 335I,1
5:20 333,1; 335I,4
6:6 336,5
6:9 335H,1
6:9-11 336,5

Volume III/9
Volume III/9

1 Corinthians
1:1 316,5
1:1-2 319A; 335,1; 335E,5
1:2-3 333,3
1:2-9 328,6; 331,3; 339,6
1:12 333,6; 335E,6
1:13 333,3
1:13-14 335,3
3:10-11 333,1
3:17 332,4; 337,2
4:5 306,8
4:7 332,3; 333,1; 333,6; 335E,6
4:16 306B,2
4:9-11 335L,4
7:4 332,4
9:24 326,1
9:26-27 340A,2
10:4 317,5
10:20 335D,3
11:29 308A,6
13:1 306B,7
13:12 337,5
14:20 340A,1
15:9 315,6; 315,7
15:10 306B,2; 315,6; 333,5;
340,2
15:21-22 335B,1
15:28 334,3; 337,2
15:43-44 335L,3
15:53 337,2
2 Corinthians
1:1 316,5
2:15-14 313C,2
2:15-16 312,3
4:5 340A,3
4:13 306D,1
5:1 337,5
5:19 325,1
5:10 309,5
6:1 340,3
6:10 326,1; 335C,10
8:9 339,4
12:7 306C,7
12:8-9 306C,7
12:10 335D,5
Galatians
2:2 313E,5; 330,4
6:2 340,1
6:3 333,6
6:14 317,4; 330,4; 338,2
Ephesians
2:2 309,5; 335D,4
2:8-9 333,6
2:14 337,1
5:8 312,2; 335E,5; 336,2
6:12 335D,3; 335D,4
6:14-17 313,3
Philippians
1:6 333,6
1:22-24 335K,2
1:29 333,6
2:9 336,3
2:12-14 337,4
2:13 333,4
2:21 340A,4
3:12 306B,2
3:13 306B,2
3:13-14 306B,2
3:15 306B,2
3:21 337,2
4:1 319A
Colossians
2:3 335C,12
3:1-2 337,4
4:3 340,4
1 Timothy
1:13 333,2; 333,4
1:17 312,6
2:2 306C,8
3:1 340A,6
3:2 340A,7
3:4-5 340A,7
3:6 340A,2
4:8 319A
2 Timothy
2:20 340A,9
3:1-2 330,3

Sermons 306-340A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume Numeral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>315,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>333,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>333,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>312,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>335H,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>335M,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>306B,3; 318,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>333,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>313A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>337,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>306C,1; 337,1; 337,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>319,4; 325,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>335B,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>332,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>335C,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>335E,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>309,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>313A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>328,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>313A,2; 335B,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>306C,6; 311,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>335C,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>329,1; 332,2; 340A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>335G,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>313C,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>306,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>314,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>306D,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>335E,3; 335E,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>319,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:6</td>
<td>306,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:8-9</td>
<td>319,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX
( prepared by Joseph Sprug )

A

A braham:
God’s oath to, 307:3
Lazarus on bosom of (parable), 339:5
Acts of the Apostles:
reading starts on Easter Sunday, 315:1
A dam and Eve:
A dam the deserter: to dust you shall go, 335B:5
Eve, beginning of sin, 336:5
human; not sons of men, 306D:3
serpent took away belief in death, 335B:1,2
threatened with death, 318:2
adders: brought out by charmer, 316:2
adultery:
fear of detection, 306B:5
heart denying the truth, 318:2
Susanna’s struggle, 318:2
Africa: Christ’s Church in, 340A:11
almsgiving: Cyprian on, 313C:2
ambition; worldly pride, 313A:2,4
A men: said to pledge every day, 334:2
A ncona: miracles at, 322:2; 323:1,2; 324
angel(s):
desire for power of (but not justice of), 335H:1
devil’s use in tempting, 313E:4
John (in Revelations), 319:7
martyrs triumphing among, 335C:11
wisdom, 335K:4
anger:
conquering, 315:10
dangerous enemy, 315:9,10
God listening to prayers, 306C:7
A pocalypse: glory of martyrs in, 335E:3
apostasy: fear for the body, not the soul, 335F:2
apostles: prepared to suffer, by belief in Christ, 311:2
ark:
built of squared planks, 306B:3; 306C:2; 335E:1
armor: weapons used by martyrs, 313:3-5
Ascension: let hope go ahead; lift up your hearts, 330:2
Augustine, Saint:
anniversary of ordination as bishop, 339:1-9; 340:1-4
apology for his sermon, 313:1
apparition; miraculous cures, 322:2; 323:2
bishop’s labors, 339:4
habit of swearing gotten rid of by, 307:5
lookout (bishop’s role), 339:9
See also bishop
authority: bishops, 340A:3
avarice:
loving/hoarding money; mean, 335C:3,7
troubled in vain, 335C:7

B

B abylon, 313B:2,3
baptism:
flock come up from the washing, 313B:3
See also catechumens
beasts: salvation of, 306D:2
beatitudes: martyrdom and, 306A
beauty: love what is good, 335C:13

Sermons 306-340A
Sermons 306-340A

Benjamin: a ravenous wolf, 333:3
birthday: celebration of, 313D:1
bishop:
  admonished to be a servant, 340A:2
  bad bishops; if bad, they are not bishops, 340A:6:8
  better to have neither wife nor children, 340A:7
burden and dangers of office, 339:1
burden: his subjects, 340:1
called bishop, but not really one, . . ., 340A:4
children according to the spirit, 340A:7
desiring the good work of, 340A:6
do what they say, . . ., 340A:9
duties; Augustine’s experience, 339:4
fawning on; vs cursing, 340A:8
good shepherd, 340:2
good; bad, 340A:8
help by prayer and obedience, 340:3
humble and eager obedience, 340:3
leaders, 340A:8
lighten my burden: lead good lives, 339:4
listen to Christ; humility, 340A:4
ministering Christ, for Christ’s sake, 340A:9
name of an office undertaken, 340A:1
ordination of, 340A:1-12
patience, 340A:8
pray for each other; bishop and the faithful, 340:3
pride to be avoided, 340A:1
responsible for self and subjects, 339:1
seeking the name, or the real thing, 340A:6
servant of the people, 340A:1,3
tru ministers, 340A:9
watchman, or lookout; concern for salvation, 339:2
blessings: choose, cherish, gather, 306C:8
blood: robes made white in blood of the Lamb, 306D:5
body and soul:
  God the upholder, 335F:2
  invisible soul; visible flesh, 335K:1
See also flesh; soul
branch: belongs to the vine, 340A:10
bread:
  eternal in the Father; daily in time, 333:1
give us this day . . ., 335E:6
strengthens the heart of man, 333:1
brid: adorned with virtues, 332:4
burden: carry one another’s burden, 340:1

C
Caecilian, Bishop of Carthage, 340A:12
Caesar: pay to Caesar, . . ., 308A:7
Caiaphas, 315:2
Carthage:
  Donatist/Catholic conference (411), 340A:12
  martyrs, 313B:2
  Saint Cyprian, 310:2,3
catechumens: exhortation to enroll for baptism, 335H:3
cause:
  Lord, distinguish my cause . . ., 325:2
  martyrdom and, 306A
  martyrs: distinguish my cause, 335:2
  suffering for a just cause, 306:2
  White Mass (martyrs), 306:2
change: by living good lives you will change the times, 311:8
chapel: place to honor martyr; worship God, 318:3
charity:
  cement making house of God, 336:1
  city that came down from heaven, 332:4
  common delight in wisdom, 335C:2
  courage of true charity, 335C:4
  covers multitude of sins (lies), 335E:4
  expands, the greater the number possessing it, 340A:12
  lay down one’s life for one’s friend, 332:3
  love of living rightly, 335C:2
  perfect charity casts out fear, 335G:1
  prefer Christ to the world, 335:2
  restless, not slothful, 313F:1
  who will separate us from charity of Christ, 335:1
chastity:
  love of, 332:4

Volume III/9
should be found in faith and mind,
children:
  bishops; compliant; discipline, 340A:7
children of God:
  led by the Spirit of God, 335J:4
  power to become, 306:2
Christ, see Jesus Christ.
Christian combat:
  invisible foe; see with eyes of faith, 335K:3
Christian doctrine:
  entwined itself: good trees, bad thorns, 340A:10
Christian life:
  battle with the flesh, 335J:2
  being put to death all the day long, 335C:5
  care not to be caught unawares, 309:5
  Christ is nowhere an exile, 309:2
  Christ's athlete; both weak and strong, 335D:3
  I live now not I...., 330:4
  imitate endurance of martyrs, 328:8
  imitate our fellow servants (apostles, etc.), 325:1
  joy in those making progress, 319A
  lose temporal life for God's sake, 313D:2
  servants become friends, 316:1
  struggle with temporal/eternal goods, 339:9
  taking on the whole world, 313A:2
  walking (analogy), 306B:1,3
  way straight and narrow, 313A:1
  without Christ enemy would swallow us alive, 335F:2
  See also martyrs; temple of God; world
Christianity: God liberating the nations, 315:4
Christians:
  Christian, a name of grace, 340:1
  hated by the world, 313G:2
  we ourselves are house of God, 336:1
Church:
  breaking away from; Judas, 313E:3
  Christ sowing seed; Church springing up, 335E:2
  Christ the head; we are his members, 336:5
  great hope after seeding by martyrs, 306C:1
  living stones, 306C:1
  made from pierced side of Christ, 336:5
  multitudes spread far and wide, 306C:1
  one flock, one shepherd, 340A:11
  pride for eminence given in, 340A:2
  progress; sword representing eloquence, 335K:5
  seed: blood of the martyrs, 335E:2
  spread throughout nations, 340A:11
  teeth to rival those of the enemy, 313B:3
  See also mystical body
Circumcellions: Cyprian and, 313E:7
  claymore (sword), 313:4,5
  cliff-jumpers, 313E:5,7
  combat: guard against allurements, 335K:6
  commandments: attaining eternal life, 306:6,7
  conduct of life:
    battle; God's amphitheater, 335K:3
    deception in, 306:9
  See also Christian life
  conscience: battle over ways of loving, 335J:4
  consultation: imparting or seeking counsel, 309:6
  conversion:
    all evil deeds wiped out, 339:7
    do not be slow to turn...., 339:7,8
    of life: denying oneself, 330:3
    Paul on, 312:3
    corruption: possessed by gold, 311:9
    courage: Stephen the martyr, 315:6
    creator: salvation of man and beast, 306D:2
    creatures:
      cast off your moorings from; to creator, 313A:2
      imitate the creator, 315:8
    crime: charges against testimony of martyrs, 335A:1
    Crispina, Saint: martyr, 313G:3
cross:
  judgment seat, 335C:12

Sermons 306-340A
Sermons 306-340A

lampstand, 317:4
Peter's passion foretold, 340A:3
take up your cross... 330:2
word as scandal, 330:4
crown: martyrdom; St Stephen, 314:2
cup: can you drink the cup which... 340A:5
cupidity: dancing in time to, 311:7
curiosity: lust of the eyes, 313A:2,3
curse: mother curses son, 322:2
cypress berry, 313C:2
Cyprian, Saint:
altar of God made out of, 313A:5
birthday of, 312:1-6; 313:1-5;
313A-313F
Church rejoices over this martyr, 309:1
Circumcellions and, 313E:7
conversion, 311:7; 312:2-3
date of birth, 310:1
despise the world, 311:3
eloquence, 312:2,4; 313D:1; 335K:5
exile and return, 309:2
fame for his sufferings and writings, 310:4
final exchange with proconsul, 309:6
God stood by him, 313:5
God's handiwork, 313:2
good odor of Christ... 313C:2
greatness of his faith, 313E:2
his martyrdom as just cause, 313D:4
his soul a claymore in hand of God, 313:5
his teaching, living, and dying, 313C:2
imitation of Christ in his passion, 313E:5
immortal life attained by self-denial, 313D:1
judging: take counsel for yourself, 313D:4
last words, 309:6; 313D:4
life before conversion, 312:2
lived as he taught, 313D:1
living as one who knew he would die, 313E:1
many persecutors later came to believe, 313B:4
martyr followed in Christ's footsteps, 309:3
martyr's glory spread to whole Church, 310:3
meaning of the martyr's "table," 310:2
meek and mild person, 312:1
merits and glory of, 313A:1
multitudes raging against/praising him, 313B:1
outstanding by his teaching and example, 312:6
praise for, 312:6
preparing to shed his own blood, 309:4
reading of his passion, 313A:3
remembered his pastor/bishop role, 309:4
sent into exile, 313E:6
sermon on birthday of, 309:1-6;
310:1-4; 311:1-15
sermon on eve of birthday, 308A:1-8
take counsel for yourself, 309:5
temptations overcome by, 313A:4
tempted by the devil, 309:5
tongue insufficient to praise him, 313:1
truly to be praised in the Lord, 313A:4
verdict: "thanks be to God," 313E:6
vine branch that has been pruned, 313E:6
won God's favor as bishop; as martyr, 313E:1
words and example, 313D:4
works; writings, 313C:2

D
damnation:
evil hearing on judgment day, 335L:3
fear the second death, 335B:5
dancing: rowdiness in holy places, 311:5,6
darkness: now light in the Lord, 336:2
David, King:
armed with grace (milk can), 335K:5
five smooth stones, 335K:3
rash oath broken, rather than commit murder, 308:2
deacon:
Greek/Latin/English terms, 319:3
Stephen, the first martyr, 315:1
where I am, my deacon shall be, 319:3

Volume III/9
dead: anniversaries of just/holy persons celebrated, 335L:1

dead:

attitude to, taught by Christ, 335B:1
body and soul, 335B:5
destroyed by the Lamb, Jesus, 311:1

fear not those who kill the body, 335B:2

fear of sin, 335B:5
good for the good; bad for the bad, 335B:3
individual laying the body aside, 335K:1

just man will be at rest, 335M:1,2
living with awareness of, 313E:1
making light of, 335B:5

martyrs discover death by speaking, 306D:1

no fear if you die for God, 313D:3
our day of is unknown, 306D:4
Paul's attitude toward, 335K:2
Peter, when you are old, ... , 335B:3
power of a human to decide kind of end, 306:2

precious is the death of his saints, 306:1; 313A:5; 318:1; 321:328:1; 329:1,2; 335E:2; 335L:4
risking for sake of lust, 335B:4
running/driven to our last day, 306D:4

separation of invisible soul; visible flesh, 335K:1
Tabitha restored to life, 313E:8
transitory; permanent, 335B:5
unless the grain of wheat falls, ... , 329:1, 335E:2

warning to sinners, 339:2
will to die is abhorrent to nature, 335B:1

See also future life; life; martyrs
dedication of a church:
cemented by charity, 336:1
Christ the foundation and cornerstone, 337:1
faith; beauties of the dwelling, 337:1
God's Church built and dedicated in us, 336:1

house of our prayers, 336:1
joy after hard labor of construction, 337:2
lampstands, 338:2
Psalm 30: prophecy of Christ's passion, 336:3

three sermons, 336-338
demon(s):
conquered by martyrs, 312:5
listened to (went into pigs), 306C:7
mother curses son, 322:2
sacraments of, 335D:3
deny yourself, 313D:2
despair: perishing by/of, 339:3,7
devil:

benefits (martyrs) bestowed on us by, 315:9
challenges soul to single combat, 335K:3
children of unbelief and, 335D:4
Cyprian and, 313D:4
escape from, 335A:3
fear not, but beware of him, 335D:4
God listened to (re Job), 306C:7

judgment of the devil, 340A:2
martyrs conquer, 335D:3
our adversary never sleeps, 328:8
prince of the power of this air, 335D:4
sick man and, 335D:3
struggle against principalities and powers, 335D:4
struggle is not against flesh and blood, 335D:3
suffering, 328:4
temptation of Christ, 313E:4
tempter of the martyr Cyprian, 309:5
unclean spirits try to seduce people, 335D:4

witnesses of, 335A:1
See also demon; serpent; temptation
disciples:
asking to sit at Christ's right/left hand, 340A:5
chosen from the world, 313G:1
dispute: which is to be the greatest, 340A:1
Domitian, Saint: sermon on a just man, 335M:1-5
Donatists:
bishops in Carthage (411), 340A:12
Sermons 306-340A

branches that have been cut off, 313E:6
Cyprian and, 313E:2,3,4
tempted by the devil, 313E:5
drunkeness (holy; spiritual):
plenty of God's house, 335D:1,3

E
elegence: Church fighting Goliath,
335K:5
end of the world:
humans will be equal to angels,
335L:3
enemy:
commanded to love, 317:1,3
gentleness toward, 315:9
loving one's enemies, 306:8; 314:2
martyrs' love of their enemies, 317:2
will not do you any harm, 315:9
eternal life:
as "long" as I live, . . ., 335B:2
eager desire for, 335H:1
feasting as symbol of, 339:5
good works lead to, 337:5
happiness factors, 306:7
holding on to life without end, 331:1
immortal life attained by martyrs,
313D:1
kingdom will have no end, 306:7
love for the kingdom of God, 332:1
martyrs trade temporal life for,
313C:1
obtaining, 306:6
parable: workers starting at different
hours, 335M:5
pray tirelessly; perfect love of charity,
340:3
preparing for, 311:15
reward of life well lived in time,
306:9
rich man's fear of death, 306:6
seeking; keep the commandments,
306:7
torment; eternal death, 306:5
whoever loses soul for my sake . . .,
313C:1; 313D:1
Eucharist: whoever eats and drinks
unworthily . . ., 308A:6
Eulalia, Saint: feast of, 313G:1:3

Eve, see Adam and Eve.
Evodius (bishop), 323:3
example:
follow Christ and St Stephen, 315:8
imitating one leading a bad life,
340A:9
perform good works openly, 338:1
exile: Christ cannot be forced to leave a
place, 309:2

F
faith:
apostles prepared to die for Christ,
311:2
church building is made by believing,
336:1
dedication of a church, 337:1
dying without anxiety, 309:6
freely acknowledging, 306B:7
God dwelling in us, 337:5
greatness of Cyprian's faith, 313E:2
heaven taken violently by storm,
314:1
imitate faith of martyrs, 306:10
just man lives by faith, 335M:5
make light of things that are seen,
306D:2
martyrs, 311:1
outweighs gaining the whole world,
311:2
precious death of the Lord's saints,
306:1
prepare a great jar; God will fill it,
339:6
salvation; grace, 333:6
faithfulness: show love for martyrs by,
331:5
faithlessness: net of the persecutors,
313B:2
false witnesses: trial of Jesus, 315:2
fault-finders: objections against God,
311:12
fear:
abiding forever, 335G:1
always being afraid, 306:7
ashamed of Christ before men,
306B:7
chaste, 335G:1
dread of the scoffer, 306B:6
dying without, 313E:1
fear for the soul, not for the body, 335F:2
panic, 335E:3,4
perfect charity casts out fear, 335G:1
running away, in the mind, 306B:7
snare of, 306C:5
temptation; transformation, 313A:2
torment of the heart, 306:7
feasting:
  invitation; symbol of eternal life, 339:5
  invite the poor, not your friends, 339:6
fighting: advice on how not to do battle, 335K:6
flesh:
  beauty of, 335C:4,6
  christian battle, 335J:2
  evils arising from appetite for pleasure, 313A:2
  godless man is only earth, 335D:3
  put to death the deeds of, 335J:4
forgiveness:
  Lord’s Prayer, 315:10
  Stephen the martyr, 314:2
  forgiveness of sin:
    Christ’s blood shed for, 335I:1
    repent, and be baptized . . ., 316:3
    this is my blood which will be shed . . ., 306D:5
    fountain of life, 306:5,6; 306A; 335D:3
free will:
  boasting about good works, 333:6
  fear the things you do willingly, 3358:5
friend: love God in your friend, 336:2
future life:
  choose now where we are going, 335L:3
  eye has not seen . . ., 328:6
  glory remains hidden, 306:1
  much to be desired, 335H:1
  See also heaven
G
  gain and loss, 318:2
  Gervase, Saint:
    remains of martyr come to light, 318:1
gift(s):
  you [God] have no need of my goods, 331:2
gift(s) of God:
  all things received from God, 335M:4
  all we have, we have received, 335E:6
  believe: they are lavish and plentiful, 339:6
  what eye has not seen . . ., 331:3,4
  glory: martyrdom vs glories of this earth, 335C:11
  God:
    anger/graciousness; listening to prayers, 306C:7
    ashamed of being unworthy of God’s love, 336:2
    Father: lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,6
    fountain of life, 306A
    his works speak; God keeps quiet, 313D:2
    indifference to human affairs, 311:12
    invisibly beautiful, 335C:13
    look for nothing else from God, except God, 331:4
    loved for his own sake, 336:2
    mercy of, extends to saving of beasts, 306D:2
    oaths sworn by, 307:3
    promise: I am present, 306C:7
    providence, 311:12; 333:5
    reward of the good: himself, 331:4
    unless the Lord were among us . . ., 335F:2
    godless: pastures of the just, 306C:4
    gold:
      good in itself; bad if use is bad, 311:9,11,13
      suffering by lovers of, 331:5; 335:2
      Goliath, killed by David, 335K:5
    good and evil:
      bad use of gold, 311:9,11,13
      cup of salvation; paid back good for evil, 333:4
      godless weakened by evil, 306C:3,4
      good things common to good/bad people, 311:11-12
      judgment day and the life led, 335K:2
      love of wickedness; hate your own soul, 336:2
      malice (the word), 336:1
See also heaven
G
  gain and loss, 318:2
  Gervase, Saint:
    remains of martyr come to light, 318:1
  grace:
    hope of, 335B:3
  grace of God:
    give thanks to God, 335K:6
    grace to be infused, 335M:3
    grace to be infused by prayer, 335M:3
    grace to be infused by prayer, 335M:4
  Greek:
    the word, 311:7
  Gressus, Saint, Bishop:
    remains of martyr, 318:1
  Gressus, Saint, Bishop, Bishop of Dalmatia:
    remains of martyr, 318:1
  Gregory the Great:
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Gregory the Great, Pope:
    gratitude, 311:7
    listen to prayer, 335M:4
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Gregory of Nazianzus:
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Gregory of Nazianzus, Bishop:
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Gregory of Nazianzus, Bishop of Cappadocia:
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Gregory of Nazianzus, Bishop of Cappadocia, Bishop:
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Gregory of Nyssa, Bishop:
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Gregory of Nyssa, Bishop of Cappadocia:
    thanksgiving, 335K:6
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
    octoechos, 314:2
  Great/fast:
    octoechos, 314:2
    Octoechos,
objections against God’s providence, 311:12
people are harmed by other people, 311:8
Stephen and those who stoned him, 317:1
sun rises on just and unjust, 317:1,2
use of the tongue (speaking), 311:11
wanting all to be good, except self, 339:4
willing slaves for iniquity, 306B:4
wish to lead long life badly, 339:7
See also world
good example, see example
Good Thief:
changed his cause on the cross, 335C:12
faith of, 328:7
greatness of, 328:7
Lord, remember me. . ., 327:2; 328:1
this man is the Holy One. . ., 328:7
good works:
desiring to be a bishop, 340A:6
gift of capacity for, 333:6
good use of gold, 311:9,13
hiding, for fear of being mocked, 306B:6
house of faith and hope, 337:5
human praise not to be a consideration, 338:3
lamp as symbol of the person, 338:2,4
let your light shine. . ., 338:3,4
made into dwelling place for God, 337:5
Paul: keeping the faith, 333:5
perform openly; for example, not admiration, 338:1
performing your justice before men. . ., 338:3
priding yourself on your free will, 333:6
seeking praise for self; for God, 338:4
Son of God as reward, 339:6
store up to repay God, 339:3
temporal and earthly means, 337:1
whatever we do comes from God, 335:4
goodness:
all good comes from supreme good, 335E:6
by living good lives you will change the times, 311:8
God is keeping great goods for the good, 339:6
love what is good, 335C:13
who can harm lovers of. . ., 335C:5
grace:
blessed is one whose helper is God, 335B:5
gift from heaven, 332:3
good works are God’s gifts, 333:5
law is powerless without, 335K:4
Saint Paul on, 306B:2
saved through faith, 333:6
symbol: five stones in milk can, 335K:5
without me you can do nothing, 333:6
grain: crop harvested from seed sown by Christ, 335E:2
grapes: gather grapes from thorns, 340A:10
gratitude: for gifts of God, 313B:1
greatness: whoever wishes to be greater . . ., 340A:2
greed:
dancing in time to cupidity, 311:7
enduring hardships for, 335C:3
living without, 313E:1
love of sinning, 335C:2
making light of death, 335B:4
preacher’s words fall on deaf ears, 335C:10
snare of, 306C:5
temptation; transformation, 313A:2
H
hair:
not one hair on your head will perish, 333:1
your hairs are numbered, 334:1
handicapped: invite the poor to the feast, 339:6
happiness:
certainly and assuredly eternal life, 306:7
common aim of all people, 306:3
defining the happy or blessed life, 306:4
eternal life, 339:5
genuine knowledge of another’s heart, 306:9
life (scriptural usage), 306:5, 6
truth added to life, 306:9
harvest: great hope after seeding by Martyrs, 306C:1
hatred: for Christians, 313G:2
healing: healer loves what he wants to make well, 335I:5
health:
diviners and astrologers, 335D:3
martyrs’ making light of, 306D:4
precious for rich and poor, 306:4
precious (in this world), 306A
seeking not to be blamed, 306D:4
heart:
believing unto justice, 306D:1
compunction, 336:5
conspiratorial; enemies of Jesus, 308A:7
happiness: knowledge of another’s heart, 306:9
lift up your heart, 331:3
simple: crafty, 308A:7
where your treasure is... 311:15
heaven:
making music to God... 335B:3
married will live like angels, 335L:2
martyrs: having nothing, possessing all, 326:1
shut against the human race, 314:1
what we receive from the heavenly city, 332:4
hell: soul snatched from the underworld, 336:3
heretics:
falsely calling themselves Catholic, 313E:4
hate those in the Church, 313G:2
not martyrs, 313E:7
sufferings: not martyrs, 327:1
Herod, King: John the Baptist and, 307:1-5, 308:1-5
holiness:
anniversaries of holy persons celebrated, 335L:1
example of holy persons to be imitated, 335L:1
holy places: abuses in celebrations; dancing, 311:5
Holy Spirit:
attribute good things to God, 335J:4
came down on Jesus in form of dove, 308A:4
given us to know things given by God, 335E:6
speaking in martyrs, 328:3
hope:
crying out to God, 313F:1
curse, to be without hope, 313F:1
cursed be everyone placing hope in man, 335B:5
disappointment with commonplace hope, 313F:2
for what we cannot see, 313F:1
free from snare of the hunters, 306C:5
God: land of the dying, 313F:3
hope which is seen... 306B:1
land of the living, 313F:3
lift up your hearts, 330:2
martyrs, 335D:1
natural stages of human hope, 313F:2
perishing of, 339:7
reality, 313F:1-3
rest not on bishops; not on the rest of men, 340A:9
salvation, 336:2
shelter of God’s wings, 335D:3,4
under cover of God’s wings, 306D:2,4
wait in patience, 336:5; 337:3
worldly hopes: entertaining never stops, 313F:2
house of God, see temple of God.
human acts: responsibility for, 335J:4
human condition: gifts of God, 331:3
humans: sons of men distinguished from men, 306D:3
humiliation: just man falls seven times, 306C:3
humility:
bishops, listen to Christ, 340A:4
drink the cup of humiliation, 340A:5
Jesus did not come down from the cross, 340A:5
seating prepared for others by the Father, 340A:5
Sermons 306-340A

sharing the Lord’s table, 340A:5

teacher by word and example, 340A:5

husband and wife: authority over wife’s body, 332:4

I

idols: Cyprian on, 313E:7

image of God: vain that he is troubled..., 335C:7

imitation:

Cyprian’s teaching and suffering, 313C:2

if anyone wishes to come after me..., 330:1

lowly should imitate the sublime, 315:8

martyrs as models, 325:1

immortality: desire for, shared with the godless, 335H:1

incarnation:

all found to be His enemies (sinful), 317:2

necessary in order to shed blood, 335I:1

Word joined man to God, 313E:1

Word made flesh, 334:2

inheritance:

Christ to be our possession, 334:3

unity in the Church, 340A:11,12

Jesus Christ:

acknowledge him in the presence of men, 335F:1

Adam compared with (regarding life and death), 335B:1

ashamed of Christ before men, 306B:7

authority challenged by Jewish enemies, 308A:7

birth of Stephen compared with, 317:3

birthday (feast) of Stephen and, 314:1

born after John the Baptist, 308A:3

bread come down from heaven, 333:1

chose martyrs out of this world, 313G:1

crucifixion:

between two robbers, 327:2; 331:2; 335:2; 335C:12

many Jews later came to believe, 313B:4

See also Good Thief

death, see below: passion and death.
denial of Christ as great sin, 318:2

denying; fear, 335F:2

disciples ask to sit at his right/left hand, 340A:5

doors; side pierced by the lance, 311:3

eternal life in following, 313D:1

everything the Father has is mine, 335E:5

example of suffering, 319:4-5

first appearance and ministry, 335K:5

foundation and cornerstone of church building, 337:1

good works for the sake of, 338:2

greater witness than John, 308A:8

healing the sick, 335I:5

hidden treasures of wisdom and knowledge, 335C:12

his enemies confused through John the Baptist, 308A:2,7

Holy Spirit bears witness to, 308A:4

hope of eternal salvation, 313E:1

humanity: likeness of the flesh of sin, 336:4

humility commended; acknowledge his divinity, 306D:3

humility; emphasis, 306D:3

I am the living bread..., 340A:9

image of God, 308A:7

imitation proposed, 325:1

incarnation, see Incarnation.

Lamb who destroyed death, 311:1

lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,6,8

lesson from his sufferings and resurrection, 335H:1

man (every man a liar?), 335M:3

martyr of martyrs, 334:2; 335G:2

martyrs pressed to deny Christ, 313B:2

miracles, and his Jewish enemies, 308A:7

my soul is sad... 313D:3

my wish: where I am they also shall be, 319:3

never “of this world,” 313G:1

our way to life and truth, 306:10

passion and death:

Volume III/9
blindness (they know not what they do), 317:2
Christ hung between two robbers, 309:3
disciples dismayed, 328:1
every of Jews, 308A:7
false testimony; prophesying truth, 315:2
get behind me, Satan, 330:4
heart of Christ pierced, 335H:1
learn from his sufferings, 335H:1
let him come down from the cross, 340A:5
like a sheep led to slaughter. . ., 315:3
love for sinners, 335I:2
many blood sacrifices of old law and, 335I:4
necessary for the Christ to suffer, 340A:11
Peter: far be this from you. . ., 335E:5
Psalm 30, a prophecy, 336:3
pull down this temple. . ., 315:2
Stephen’s martyrdom and, 315:2-3
wish that we be delivered from sin, 335I:3
you have torn up my sacking. . ., 336:4
portion of my inheritance, 334:3
rising, dies no more, 336:5
rock on which man builds, 337:1
saint of saints, 335E:2
saved by knowledge of, 335F:2
sets his table before you, namely himself, 332:2
seven last words:
Father, forgive them, 313E:4; 315:8; 316:3; 317:2,3,5,6; 319:4,5
Father, into your hands. . ., 316:3
today you shall be with me. . ., 327:2; 335C:12
sinlessness, 335B:9
sold by Judas, 336:4
Stephen’s vision of, see Stephen, Saint
suffered for us, leaving an example, 325:1
teacher of humility, 340A:5
teaching: separation to be avoided, 313E:3
tempted by the devil, 313E:4,5
trial; he remained silent, 315:3
Trinity revealed at baptism of, 308A:5
who do men say that I am. . ., 306D:3
willed to die and rise again, 335H:1
you would have no authority over me. . ., 313D:4
See also Christian life; son of man
Jews:
hatred of Christians, 313G:2
liberation of their nation, 315:4
many who killed Christ later came to believe, 313B:4
open enemies of Christ, 308A:6,7
rebuked by Christ, out of love, 317:5
resurrection of Christ; conversions, 336:3
Stephen’s vision; Jews blocked their ears, 316:2
John the Baptist, Saint:
authority for baptizing, 308A:7
beheading of, 307:1-5; 308:1-5
friend of the bridegroom, 308A:2
greatness of, 308A:3
He must grow. . ., 307:1
held by king to be a holy man, 307:1
lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,8
oath of the king, 307:1-5
one who is less. . ., 308A:3
strap of whose sandal. . ., 308A:2,3
thought to be the Christ, 308A:2
voice crying in wilderness, 308A:2
Joseph of Egypt: struggle against sin, 318:2
joy:
meaning of “receive my spirit,” 319:2
travelers, 306B:1
Judas:
hanged himself, 313E:4
Satan entered his heart, 313E:4,5
sold Christ, 336:4
tolerated to the bitter end, 313E:3
judgment day:
cannot avoid by being afraid, 335K:2
Christ, judge of living and dead, 316:1
come, blessed of my Father. . ., 337:2
Sermons 306-340A

fall into judgment with the devil, 340A:2
prepare now for what is to come, 328:5
resurrection of life; -of the judgment, 306:5
sheep and goats, 328:5; 335L:3
souls will burn with body, 335F:2
just man:
  anniversaries celebrated, 335L:1
  falls seven times, 306C:3,4
  held in eternal memory, 335L:3
  lives by faith, 335M:5
  pastures of the just, 306C:4
justice:
  beauty of, 306B:4,5
  confronting riches, 335:1
  enmity with Christ: leading unjust life, 308A:6
suffering on account of justice, 335G:2
test of values, 335C:13
will of God abides forever, 335C:13
willing slaves of justice, 306B:4

K
kindness: good works, material and spiritual, 338:1
kingdom of God (- of heaven):
  no deceit; no disappointment, 306:8
  not of this world, 306C:6
  see/hear St Cyprian in a greater Church, 310:4
sinners shall not gain possession, 335I:4
  unless one becomes as a child. . ., 340A:1
kiss of peace, 313E:3

L
lamb:
  Paul and Stephen as, 316:5
  robes made white in blood of the Lamb, 306D:5
lamp:
  nobody lights a lamp. . ., 317:4
  prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,6,8
  put on lampstand, 338:2,4
Lawrence, Saint: miracle at shrine of, 322:2
Lazarus: resting on Abraham’s bosom, 339:5
Lazarus: risen, will die again, 335H:1
lepers: cleansed by Christ, 306A
liar:
  every man is a liar, 328:2,3; 335E:3,4,5; 335M:2,3,4; 339:2
  lies on account of money, 330:3
  panic, 335E:3
life:
  Christ the way, 306:10
  conversation between persecutor and martyr, 335B:3
deny God; retain temporal life, 313D:2
die eternally for love of staying alive, 335E:3
elements of, 335B:3
entrusting one’s life to creator, 306C:1
full of tears, 313D:3
great variety of modes of, 306:3
happiness implied (in scriptural use), 306:5,6
holding on to, 331:1
however bitter, joy if you could live forever. . ., 311:14
lose life by saving it; find it by losing it, 306C:1
love of temporal; -eternal, 335A:2
natural stages of human hope, 313F:2
passing, 313D:2
proper disregard for, 335H:1
wish to lead long life badly, 339:7
See also death; eternal life; happiness; soul
light: you were once darkness. . ., 336:2
listening: God; demons, 306C:7
long: as long as I live (i.e. forever), 335B:2
Lord’s Prayer:
  forgive us our debts. . ., 315:10
  our daily bread, 333:1
  petition for eternal things, 306C:8
loss and gain, 318:2
love:
  commandment, 332:1
  dedication of a church, 337:1
denying self, 330:2
earthly object, 311:4

Volume III/9
existence wanted for object loved, 335:3
extent of command to love one another, 332:2
Father is not in one who loves the world, 313A:2
greatest unhappiness: duty to love life of misery, 311:14
ignoring self, 330:3
lay down your life for your friends, 332:2
lose soul for loving it, 331:1
loving freely; looking for reward, 340:2
lust for the world, 311:6
martyrs’ love of their enemies, 317:2
Peter’s confession, 340A:3
praise and, 306C:5
rescue from ruins of our old selves, 336:1
right order of, 335C:13
run toward God by affections, 306B:1
spiritual love in good works, 337:5
two commandments, 313B:3
two kinds: greedy and dear, 335C:2,3
value of object loved, 335A:2
what God has prepared for those who love Him, 331:3,4
when you are evil, you love yourself, 336:2
world; things of the world, 306C:6
love of God:
making light of death for, 335B:4
risking death for, requires God’s help, 335B:4
lust:
consent; or fight the desire, 335:3,4
in love with uncleanness, 306B:4
making light of death, 335B:4
martyrdom of John the Baptist, 307:1
world; the flesh, 306C:6

M
malice (the word), 306:1
mammon of iniquity, 335C:8
man: head of the woman is man, 332:4
martyrdom:
forbidden to offer one’s self, 313E:5
sick persons and, 328:8
way smoothed by many walking on it, 306:10
martyrs:
assurance given to, 333:1; 335F:1
assurances that God is for us, 334:2
battle inside, won outside, 335J:1
benefiting themselves in dying for Christ, 331:2
birthday of, 335-335I
blood is seed of the Church, 335E:2
body remains come to light, 318:1
cause, not punishment, makes a martyr, 306:2; 306A; 325:2; 327:1,2; 328:4; 328:7; 335:2; 335C:5; 335G:2
celebrate feasts by imitating virtues, 311:1
celebrating festivals of, 311:6
chain (love of staying alive) burst, 335E:3
demons conquered by, 312:5
die in order not to sin, 318:2
difficult to imitate sufferings of, 313A:1
dying they discovered life, 335B:1
drain on plenty of God’s house, 335D:1,3
due for punishment: receive my spirit, 315:6
dying they discovered life, 335B:1
dearthly feelings removed by God, 313:4
Eight: Twenty, and companions, 313G:3
every man a liar, 335E:3,4
exhortation to imitate, 335H:2
faith proven, 329:1
farmers/sowers compared with, 335A:2

Sermons 306-340A
Sermons 306-340A

feasts celebrated; imitate their example, 325:1
fixed in our memories, 313C:1
follow Christ in his passion, 328:1;
330:1
following footsteps of martyrs, 306:10
friends of Christ, 332:1
glory after the resurrection, 328:6
glory; book of the Apocalypse, 335E:3
glory: first rank in the Church, 306B:3
glory ignored by the world, 335C:1
glory related to bitter death, 338B:3
God, distinguish my cause. . ., 335:2
grace to suffer for Christ's sake, 332:3
Greek/Latin/English terms, 319:3
heavenly reward, 315:9
Holy Spirit speaking truth in, 328:3
honored, not worshipped, 335H:2
hoping for things that last forever, 306A
if God is for us. . ., 334:1
imitate faith in life of, 306:10
imitation; spectacle, 313A:3
improper celebrations at shrines of,
335D:2
in love with life, 335B:2:4
judge me, O God. . ., 327:1
killed after confessing the faith,
306D:2
killers "offering a service to God,"
313G:3
lie not in their mouths, 335E:3:4
lose life by saving it; find it by losing
it, 306C:1
love for Christ as way and life, 306:10
love of (eternal) life, 335A:2
love of their enemies, 317:2
love the causes of their sufferings,
335:2
love them by imitating endurance,
328:8
many evils endured by, 327:1; 328:4
may their merits never be wanting,
335D:5
meaning of "birthdays" of, 310:1
merits and, 331:5; 335:2
narrow road widened by, 306C:1
no earthly glory compares with,
335C:11
overcame through Christ, 335J:1
paradoxes, 313C:1
peace earned by endurance, 326:1
perfect charity casts out fear, 335G:1
perseverable body reaps imperishability,
306D:1
patience tested and proved, 335C:1
as paving stones, 325:1
praise them; God is praised, 313:2
pressed to deny Christ, 313B:2
quarry to teeth of the enemy,
313B:1,2,3
relying on self, not at all, 335:1
repaid God; cup of salvation, 329:2
reward loved by: praising God,
335B:2
swords made white in blood of the
Lamb, 306D:5
secular rewards, 335A:2
seductions of the world, 335:1
seek the invisible rewards of, 335C:12
share the merits of, 335D:3
show love for, by being faithful, 331:5
slaves twice over (made and bought),
335I:5
sought relief from Christ, 335F:2
sow in tears, reap in joy, 313D:3
spread gospel by shedding blood,
318:1
squared timbers of which ark was
made, 335E:1
strong and brave in the faith, 306D:2
suffer persecution for sake of justice,
325:2
taught by Jesus, not to fear death,
335B:2
temporal health made light of by,
306D:4
temporal well-being scorned by, 319A
temptation to retain temporal life,
306D:4
tested, 306C:1
their bodies too changed to ashes,
335F:2
threatened with death, 318:2
true way to celebrate feasts of, 317:1
truthful; but "every man is a liar,”
328:2,3
upholder of my soul: the Lord, 334:1
will made ready by the Lord, 333:1
with us, they rejoice in heaven, 325:1
witnesses; died for truth, 328:2
worldly delights and terrors, 318:2
See also Stephen, Saint
Massa Candida, See White Mass.
meekness: blessed are the meek . . ., 312:1
Melchizedek: the Lord has sworn . . ., 307:3
mercy:
   guard and increase God’s gifts, 333:7
   not dealt with according to our sins, 333:2
Paul: I obtained mercy, 333:4
merit: God is crowning his own gifts, 333:5
messiah: witness of the Holy Spirit, 308A:4
milk: grace, 335K:4
miracles:
   blindness cured by prayers of Stephen, 320-322
   body trembling cured, 322:2
   cure of Palladia, 323:4
   infant restored to life at Uzalis, 324
   Stephen worked, in name of Christ, 316:1; 319:1
misers:
   exhortation to, 335C:10
   martyrs and, 331:5; 335:2
money:
   deposit with the almighty, 335C:9
   love of, 330:3; 335E:3
   make friends of mammon of iniquity, 335C:8
parable: servant “invested” master’s money, 339:4-5
moneylenders, 335E:3
morality:
   struggle with temporal/eternal goods, 339:9
   things, to be good, require good people, 311:11
Moses:
   chair of Moses, 340A:10

Stephen compares M. with Christ, 315:3
mother and son:
   he attacks her: she curses him, 322:2
   mother’s milk, 335K:4
   mouth: confession unto salvation, 306D:1,2
   music: I will make music to God . . ., 335B:2
mystical body:
   believe in Christ, the head, 308A:8
   chosen from the world, 313G:1
   head and members, 336:5
   living stones, 337:1
N
nakedness: endurance, 335:2
Nicodemus, 316:3
O
oath(s):
   broken by King David, 308:2
   Christ’s teaching on, 307:2,4
   God made witness to, 307:4
   habit, 308:5
   rash, 308:1,5
   swearing falsely, 307:2,4; 308:2,4,5
   swearing when challenged to do so, 308:3
   occult temptation, 318:3
Old Law: David’s “five smooth stones,” 335K:3
original sin:
   death caused by, 335B:1
   enormity of the calamity, 318:2
   heaven shut against the human race, 314:1
   pride: you shall be like gods, 340A:1
P
pagans: hatred of christians, 313G:2
pain:
   living in, not to live at all, 306:5,6
   malice (the word), 306:1
   Palladia: miraculous cure of, 323:4
   panic: I said in my ecstasy, 335E:3,4
pardon: promised if I change my ways, 339:7
parents: due honor to be paid to, 323:1
pastoral work: planter and waterer, 340:3
patience: Christ on the cross, 340A:5
gain possession of your souls, 336:5; 337:3
martyrs tested and proved, 335C:1
possess your souls in, 335A:3
repen, e; God’s prompting, 339:3,7
waiting for the Lord, 339:7
White Mass, 306C:5
Paul, Saint, apostle:
attitude toward death, 335K:2
choice of the name (“little”), 315:7
chosen instrument; he will divide the food, 333:3
on conversion, 312:3
due for punishment, 315:6
example for Christian life, 306B:2
glory only in the cross, 330:4
good in the flesh; headaches, 306C:7
good works are God’s gifts, 333:5
I have fought the good fight, . . ., 333:2,5
Jacob’s blessing on Benjamin, 333:3
lamp for the world, 317:4
not listened to, 306C:7
not worthy to be called apostle, . . ., 315:6
paid back good works by grace of God, 333:4
servant “by the will of God,” 316:5
true witness instead of false one (Saul), 333:4
worked harder (“grace of God with me”), 306B:2
See also Saul
peace:
enemy of; not a disciple of Christ, 313E:3
my peace I give you . . ., 313E:3
praying for, 306C:8
penance: price of pardon, 326:1
Pentecost: Jewish converts, 313B:4
perfection:
Saint Paul on, 306B:2
shedding blood in struggle against sin, 318:2
Perpetua (martyr), 335A
persecution:
ceased; temptations continue, 335D:3,5
quarry to teeth of the enemy, 313B:1,2,3
suffering on account of justice, 335G:2
those who denied Christ were freed, 335F:2
persecution: winnowing at time of, 311:10
Peter, Saint, apostle:
arise, kill, and eat . . ., 313B:3
before the cock crows . . ., 340A:8
blessed are you . . ., 335E:5
convinced of the truth; ready to die for it, 311:2
do you love me [asked three times] . . ., 340A:3
fault (denials) wiped out by weeping, 330:4
fear of death, 330:4
fear perished; love conquered, 335E:3
feed my sheep, 340:2
feed [i.e. suffer for] my sheep, 340A:3
good health as patrimony of, 306:4
if you have God, you have all, 311:15
invite to the feast, 339:6
Pharisees: whatever they say . . ., 340A:9
pleasure:
Christian rejection of, 313A:1,2
love of, 335C:3,4
lust of the flesh, 313A:2
theater, 313A:3
Pontius Pilate, 313D:4
poor:
contribute to “deposit box” for, 339:3
despised by the rich, 311:13
good health as patrimony of, 306:4
if you have God, you have all, 311:15
invite to the feast, 339:6
persecution: time of testing, 311:10

Volume III/9
power: benefit; disadvantage, 306C:6
praise:
always in my mouth, 306C:3
because of love, 306C:5
concern for sort of life of those who
praise, 339:1
Donatist bitterness, 313E:6
God is praised when martyrs are
praised, 313:2
motive for good works, 338:3,4
right order of, 335C:13
prayer:
attain eternal bliss: pray tirelessly,
340:3
gracious God listens; angry God does
not, 306C:7
intercession of Paul and Stephen,
316:5
make requests whose granting you do
not fear, 323:1
struggle with temporal/eternal goods,
339:9
value of saints' prayers, 313E:8
preacher: words fall on deaf ears (of the
greedy), 335C:10
precious in sight of God is the death of
his saints, 306:1; 313A:5; 318:1;
321: 328:1; 329:1,2; 335E:2;
335I:1,4
presumption: perishing by, 339:3
pride:
Christ came to cure by example,
340A:5
eminence given in the Church, 340A:2
good works and, 335J:4
origin and cause, 340A:1
shame in continuing to be proud,
340A:5
spirit of this world, 333:6
worldly ambition, 313A:2,4
Primus (martyr), 335A
procrastination: slow to turn to the Lord,
339:8
prodigal son:
denying himself, 330:3
returning to himself. . ., 330:3
prophecy: Christ proclaimed through all
nations, 328:5
Protase, Saint: remains of martyr come to
light, 318:1
repentance:
real estate: greed, 335C:8
reality:
cause of all realities, 308A:5
hope and, 313F:1-3
redemption:
blood of just one victim, 335I:4
blood shed for His enemies, 317:2
Christ's "grand exchange" on the
cross, 329:1
gift to sinners: Christ's death, 339:6
one price was paid to acquire us,
340A:11
passion of Christ and, 313E:5
Son of Man came to serve, 340A:3
what shall I pay back to the Lord. . .,
335M:4; 340:2
while we were still sinners. . ., 335I:1
relics:
bodies of martyrs come to light, 318:1
place indicated by preceding signs,
318:1
sermons 306-340a
objections against ways of God,
311:12
unless the Lord guards the city. . .,
333:5
Psalm 30:
Christ the head; we are his members,
336:5
prophecy of Christ's passion, 336:3
punishment:
existence in, is not life, 306:6
malice (the word), 306:1
martyrdom and, 306A
martyrs deprived of temporal goods,
335C:5
mother's curse, 322:2
resurrection to the judgment, 335F:2
wrong cause and, 325:2
Quadratus (martyr), 306B:1-7; 306C:1-8;
306D:1-5
significance of the name, "square,"
306C:2
real estate:
greed, 335C:8
reality:
cause of all realities, 308A:5
hope and, 313F:1-3
redemption:
blood of just one victim, 335I:4
blood shed for His enemies, 317:2
Christ's "grand exchange" on the
cross, 329:1
gift to sinners: Christ's death, 339:6
one price was paid to acquire us,
340A:11
passion of Christ and, 313E:5
Son of Man came to serve, 340A:3
what shall I pay back to the Lord. . .,
335M:4; 340:2
while we were still sinners. . ., 335I:1
relics:
bodies of martyrs come to light, 318:1
place indicated by preceding signs,
318:1
repentance:
Judas: repentance without hope,
313E:4
patience of God drawing toward, 339:3, 7
responsibility: for good or evil things we do, 335J:4
servant "investing" master's money, 339:4-5
resurrection (of Jesus): disciples thought he was a phantom, 340A:11
lesson for us, 335H:1
resurrection of the body: case of seven men with same wife, 335L:2
judgment day, 328:5
married will live like angels, 335L:2
to life; to judgment, 335F:2
truth of; Sadducees, 335L:2
rich and poor: Lazarus resting on Abraham's bosom, 339:5
rich men: fear of death, 306:6
good health precious for, 306:4
if you have God not, what have you got? 311:15
rejoicing in earthly possessions, 306:6
wealth scorned in time of persecution, 311:10
riches, see wealth.
Rome: showpeople in, 313A:3
tombs, 335C:11
ruler: let him rule himself, 313A:4
sacking: you have torn up my... 336:4
sacrifice: many blood sacrifices in old law; new law just one, 335I:4
you will live; said by both pagans and martyrs, 335D:5
saints: looking out for people, 335K:4
precious is their death... , 306:1; 313A:5; 318:1; 321; 328:1; 329:1.2; 335E:2; 335I:1.4
square (quadrated) construction, 306C:7
value of prayers of, 313E:8
salvation: common to man and beast, 306D:2
eager to work; fear and trembling, 337:4
eternal, not temporal, 306D:2
hope in protection of God's wings, 335D:3, 4
perishing by despair; by presumption, 339:3
receive the cup of salvation, 329:2
saved through faith, by grace, 328:5
temporal and eternal, 319A
trust not in the sons of men... , 335B:4
sanctification: lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:18
upon him my s. shall flower, 308A:5, 8
willing slaves of justice for, 306B:4
Saul, King, persecutor of David, 315:7
Saul (later Paul): conversion into Paul, 315:7
cruelst of persecutors, 333:2
deserved to be damned; he obtained mercy, 333:2
Paul compared with, 333:3, 4
prayed for by Stephen, 316:4
ravenous wolf, 333:3
stoning of Stephen, 315:7; 316:3, 5
why are you persecuting... , 316:4, 5; 317:6
See also Paul
scribes: whatever they say... , 340A:9
self: come back to yourself, 330:3
crucified with Christ, 336:5
love yourself; deny yourself, 330:2
right and wrong love of, 330:3
self-denial: denying oneself, 330:3
don't do your own will, 330:4
self-examination: Paul’s teaching on, 306B:4
self-importance, 313A:4
self-indulgence: spendthrift, 335C:3
self-knowledge: ignorance of self, 340A:8
self-love: last times; dangerous times, 330:3
leaving God out of our life, 330:3

Volume III/9
Volume III/9

neglecting God, 330:3
sensual: lover of, also wishes for wisdom, 335C:4,6
serpent: sin, you will not die the death. . ., 335B:1,2
servant:
  bishop as servant of the people, 340A:3
  parable: one who “invested” master’s money, 339:4,5
  whoever wishes to be greater. . ., 340A:2,3
seven times (just man falls), 306C:3,4
shame:
  ashamed of being ashamed, 306B:6
  unworthy of God’s love, 336:2
shepherd: good only by God’s grace, 340:2
shorn ewes, 313B:3
showpeople: status in pagan Rome, 313A:3
shows and spectacles: lust of the eyes, 313A:3
shrines: improper celebrations at martyrs’ shrines, 335D:2
sick:
  Christ came to make them well, 335I:5
  martyr on his sickbed, 335D:3
  practicing martyrdom, 328:8
  shelter of God’s wings, 335D:3
  temptations, 328:8
  unlawful amulets/charms, 335D:3,5
silence: ashamed of Christ before men, 306B:7
sin:
  conversion: all evil deeds wiped out, 339:7
  desire: consent, 335J:2,3,4
  evils we do come from ourselves, 335J:4
  fight against, fought by all Christians, 335J:2
  greedy love: love of sinning, 335C:2
  inner self killed by, 335B:5
  let us not look back, 335I:2
  loving badly; living badly, 335J:3
  only thing that is really our own, 306B:2
  persuaded to sin; you won’t die, 335B:2
  self crucified with Christ, 336:5
  shedding blood in struggle against, 318:2
  See also forgiveness of sin; original sin
singing: lovers sing, 336:1
sinner:
  Christ’s enemies, 308A:6
  gift of Christ’s death, 339:6
  God threatens the godless, 339:9
  Jesus died for, 335I:2
  precious for price paid for them, 335I:1
  shall not gain possession of the kingdom, 335I:4
  warning: dying you shall die, 339:2
slander: blessed shall you be. . ., 340A:8
slaves:
  of justice; of iniquity, 306B:4
  martyrs as, 335I:5
Son of Man:
  came not to be served but to serve, 340A:3
  Jesus’ preference, 306D:3
souls of men: distinction between men and, 306D:3
soul:
  chains (worldly values) binding the soul, 335E:3
  death of; and death of the body, 335B:5
  love it; lose it, 313D:2
  one who finds his soul will lose it, 335F:2
  snatched from the underworld, 336:3
  subject to God, 335E:6
  suffering the loss of, 330:3
  whoever has lost, will find it, 331:2
  whoever loses his soul will lose it. . ., 313C:1, 313D:1, 331I:1, 330:2
  See also body and soul
sowers: martyrs and, 335A:2
spectacles and shows: lust of the eyes, 313A:3
spiritual life:
  God will satisfy all desire, 334:3
  nothing but God is enough for us, 334:3
  seek martyr’s invisible rewards, 335C:12
  See also Christian life; soul square: Quadratus, 306B:3

Sermons 306-340A
Sermons 306-340A

square block: overthrowing, 306C:2,4
squared timbers, 335E:1
Stephen, Saint:
  acts of, in canonical scripture, 315:1
  birth compared with that of Jesus, 317:3
  birthday compared with 25 December, 314:1
  chosen by the apostles, 316:1
  conciliatory to his audience, 319:1
  discovery of his body (remains), 319:6; 323:2
  do not hold this sin against them, 315:5,7; 319:5
  fellow servant, 319:7
  followed example of Christ, 315:8
  good lamb followed the Lamb, 319:4
  imitated Christ in suffering, 319:5
  joined to Christ by dying, 314:1
  kneeling, he prayed for his killers, 316:3; 319:4
  lamp for the world, 317:4
  legend of stone which struck sailor’s elbow (ankon), 323:2
  love him in Christ, 316:1
  love of his enemies, 317:6
  martyr follows his Master, 317:6
  merit of his faith, 317:1
  miracle at Uzalis, 324
  miracles at Ancona; 323:1,2
  miracles in name of Christ, 316:1; 319:1,6
  miraculous cure of blind man, 320-322
  ordained deacon, 315:1
  palm of martyrdom from mother Church, 317:6
  passion of Christ and, 315:2-3
  patient in death, 317:5
  place (chapel) to honor Stephen; worship God, 318:3
  power of his prayers, 319:6
  prayed for those stoning him, 319:4
  preceded his ordinators to martyrdom, 316:1
  proclaiming from the rooftops, 315:3
  rebuke of the Jews, 317:9
  receive my spirit. . ., 315:5,6,7; 316:3; 319:2
  relics, 317:1; 318:1
  Saul at stoning of Stephen, 316:3
  sermons on the martyr Stephen, 314-324
  sleep of peace (his death), 317:5
  spoke at length at his trial, 315:3
  standing, while praying for himself, 315:6,7; 316:3; 319:4
  stone tablets; teaching the law, 315:5
  vision of Christ, 314:1; 315:5; 316:2; 317:5; 319:2
  where Christ received his spirit, 319:3
  stones: five smooth stones (David), 335K:3
  suffering:
  - being put to death all the day long, 335C:5
  - Christian endurance of, 313A:1,2
  - cup of salvation, 329:2
  - devil; boasting, 328:4
  - just cause, 306:2
  - keeping to hard ways, 306:10
  - Paul’s “goad in the flesh,” 306C:7
  - they will come back with exultation. . ., 335A:3
  suicide: mother who cursed her son, 322:2
  Susanna: struggle against sin, 318:2
  swearing, see oath.
  sword: understanding God’s weapons, 313:4

T
Tabitha (widow), 313E:8
Table: Cyprian’s place of martyrdom, 310:2
Teeth: flock of shorn sheep, 313B:3
Temple of God:
  - bishop as, 340A:8
  - Christ, our foundation, 337:4
  - Christians as, 337:2
  - dwellers in the house of God, 337:3
  - house not made by hands, 337:5
  - living stones, 337:4
  - purity in, 332:4
  - temporal goods:
    - bad people; God’s providence, 311:12,13
    - beg God to grant what is best for us, 306C:8
    - frequently we sin against God, 334:3
    - given to bad and good alike, 339:6
    - loss of all possessions, 318:2

Volume III/9
love of earthly things, 311:4
martyrs deprived of, 335C:5
temptation(s):
ceaseless, 335D:3,5
contests with, never lacking, 306C:5
just man falls/rises seven times, 306C:4
persuaded to sin; you won’t die, 335B:2
struggle against sin, 318:2
when persecution no longer rages, 318:3
testing: persecution as time of, 311:10
temptation(s):
testing: persecution as time of, 311:10
thanksgiving:
for God’s mercy; guarding and increasing his gifts, 333:7
theater: shows and spectacles, 313A:3
thorns: gather grapes from thorns, 340A:10
time:
asking for more time; piling bad days on bad days, 339:7
creation: Father, Son and Spirit, 308A:4
time does not harm people, 311:8
tongue: bad use of (blasphemy), 311:11
torment: eternal death, 306:5
travelers:
joy, 306B:1
perfection on the, 306B:3
treasure:
where no thief can approach: heaven, 335C:8
where your heart is... 311:15
Trinity:
from what moment is the Father... 308A:4
persons; brightness of a fire (analogy), 308A:4
procession of persons, 308A:4
revealed at Christ’s baptism, 308A:5
what Father does, Son does... 340A:5
truth:
Christ the way to, 306:10
denial is adultery of the heart, 318:2
dying for wrong cause, 325:2
martyrs as witnesses, 328:2
paid as reward of truthfulness, 306:9
prophesying without knowing it, 315:2
Tutuslymeni, 308:5
Twenty Martyrs: birthday of, 325-326
U
uncleanness: love of, 306B:5
unity:
cherished, 313E:3
Cyprian and, 312:6
one inheritance, 340A:11,12
Utica: martyrs of, 306:1; 311:10
Uzalis: miracles reported at, 322:2, 324
V
Valeriana, Saint, 325:1
values:
defeat the delights of the world, 335:1
God is teaching you to desire better things, 311:13
lose better things by loving the inferior, 335C:4
right order of love, 335C:13
victims: people harmed by other people, 311:8
Victoria (martyr), 335A
Victoria, Saint, 325:1
vigils: abuses in celebrations; dancing, 311:5
vine and branch, 340A:10
virtue:
good things only to be found in the good, 311:11
imitate martyrs, 311:1
vision: Jews envious of Stephen, 316:2
vocation: disciples chosen from the world, 315G:1
vomit, 318:2
W
wages: parable: workers starting at different hours, 335M:5
wait for the Lord, 339:6,7
walking: analogy; Christian life, 306B:1, 3
wealth:
because you have asked, you have received... 311:13
disadvantage to many people, 306C:6
Sermons 306-340A

earthly possessions, 306:6
facing dangers for acquisition, 335:2
good/evil related to usage, 311:13
 justice confronting riches, 335:1
 rich people despising the poor, 311:13
 transfer it where you can’t lose it, 335C:9
 weapons:
 understanding God’s weapons, 313:4
 used by martyrs, 313:3,5
 White Mass (martyrs of Utica), 306; 306A; 306C:1; 311:10
 wicked:
 future life of torment, 306:5
See also sinners
 wickedness, see good and evil.
 wife: authority over her body, 332:4 will
 of God:
 choose justice; it abides forever, 335C:13
 faith in, not questioning, 318:1
 Paul as God’s servant, 316:5
 wisdom:
 angels, 335K:4
 beauty of, 306B:4; 335C:4
 dear love; common delight in wisdom, 335C:2
 heaping up treasure, 335C:7
 praise w. by the way you live, 311:4
 sensual pleasure and, 335C:4
 witness bearing:
 keeping quiet out of fear, 313E:7
 testimony of martyrs called crime, 335A:1
 woman: taken from the side of man, 336:5
 Word of God: in the beginning. . ., 334:2; 335K:4
 See also Jesus Christ; Son of God
 words: rations provided by Augustine the bishop, 339:4
 work: reward: crown of justice, 333:2
 world:
 Christians, despise the world, 311:3
 crucified to me and I to the world. . ., 317:4
 Father is not in one who loves the world, 313A:2
 fear, with view to future life, 335M:1
 gaining the whole world. . ., 311:2
 hatred of christians, 313G:2
 loved in spite of bitterness, 311:14
 made by God; it did not know him, 313A:2
 martyrs and the seductions of, 335:1
 overcome by martyrs, 318:2
 passes away. . ., 311:6
 rulers; people who love the world, 335D:4
 spirit of pride, 333:6
 what does it profit a man. . ., 330:3
 whoever loves the world. . ., 311:6
 worship: God of the martyrs, 335H:2

Volume III/9
Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 341-400 are on Various Themes.

Volume III/10 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-028-5, 6 x 9 in., 527 pp., 1995

Includes the following works:

On Christian Discipline
(De disciplina christiana)

On the Sack of the City of Rome
(De excidio urbis Romae)

On the Creed to Catechumens
(De symbolo ad catechumenos)

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Matthew Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

**Old Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Genesis</th>
<th>Exodus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>342; 379; 380; 380</td>
<td>20:13-15-16 366,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>380,4; 384,3</td>
<td>32:32 352,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>398,2</td>
<td>Numbers 20:12 352,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>384,3</td>
<td>Deuteronomy 32:49-50 352,4; 352,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>370,1</td>
<td>Joshua 1:5 366,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>341,12; 349,3; 362,16</td>
<td>Judges 13:25 364,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>341,6</td>
<td>14:14 364,2; 364,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>366,6</td>
<td>14:18 364,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>346C,1</td>
<td>14:19-20 364,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>359,1; 362,16</td>
<td>16:2-3 364,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>363,2</td>
<td>16:25 364,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:32</td>
<td>397,2</td>
<td>16:30 364,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:8-9</td>
<td>359,3</td>
<td>2 Samuel 12:13 352,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:9</td>
<td>364,3; 375A,1</td>
<td>Tobit 4:17 361,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:19 362,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Judith 16:3 363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Job 1:8 398,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:9 385,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:21 343,10; 346A,6; 359A,6; 398,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:9 397,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 341-400

2:9-10 359A,6
2:10 343,10; 397,3; 398,10 23:5 366,6
7:1 359A,6
7:1-2 351,1 23:6 346C,2; 366,7; 366,8
9:24 363,2 24:7-8 377,1
14:16-17 397,4 24:8 372,2; 377,1
22:29 351,1 25:10 366,4
31:33 392,3 30:1 380,6
38:11 359A,6 30:10 380,5
40:16 365,5 31:20 362,2
Psalms
1:1 372,3 31:24 351,4
1:2 371,4 32:4 352,2
2:7-8 358,1 32:9 348A,4; 383,1
2:8 359,4 33:6 384,3
2:9 366,6 34:1 359A,6
2:10-11 347,1 34:2 348,2
3:5 375B,2; 375B,2 34:5 379,5
4:4 392,4 34:8 366,3
6:7 350A,1 34:9 366,2
7:1 359A,5 34:12 346C,2
8:2 375,1 34:13-14 346C,2
9:9 381,1 34:14 389,5
10:3 359,2 34:18 351,1
11:5 368,2; 368,5 35:12 383,1
11:5 LXX 387,1; 399,4 37:1-2 350A,3
11:7 341,9; 394,1 37:10-35-36 388,1
13:3 365,2 37:27 389,5
16:2 389,6 39:6 390,2
16:5 359,4 41:4 397,5
16:7 365,1; 365,1; 365,2; 365,3; 365,5 41:8 375B,2
17:15 384,1 45:2 351,5; 372,2; 375A,2
18:11 371,2 45:7 366,6
18:28 380,7; 344,7 45:13 365,1
18:29 361,16 46:10 362,31
18:43 375C,6 49:16-17 359,2; 359,3
19:1 375,1 50:1 358,3
19:1-14 373,1 50:21 351,7
19:1-14 359,1 51:3 351,7
19:3-4 375A,1 51:5 351,2; 391,1
19:4-5 372,2 51:9 352,1
19:5 361,16; 372,2; 372,3; 377,1 51:9; 3.16-17 351,12
19:6 369,1 51:12 384,3
19:9 348,4 51:13 381,1
20:4 394,1 51:17 347,2; 351,9
22:6 380,2 57:5.11 360,1
23:1 366,2 59:10 366,7
23:2 366,3 60:4 351,8
23:3 366,4 69:4 361,16
23:4 366,5; 366,6

Volume III/10
72:8-11  358,3  
72:9  358,3  
73:28  368,5; 385,5  
73:28,27  385,6  
75:7  398,10  
76:5  345,1; 366,4  
76:11  355,6  
77:2  375C,2  
78:25  400,1  
81:10  382,1  
84:3  343,1  
84:4  362,31; 366,8  
84:5-6  347,2; 351,1  
84:10  346C,2; 355,2  
84:10,5  351,1  
84:11  366,2  
85:11  362,16  
90:5-6  359,9  
94:8  348A,4  
94:18  343,10; 352,6  
94:22  380,5  
96:2  370,3  
102:27  394,1  
104:20-21  351,4  
106:20  365,2  
107:43  355,6  
108:12  365,5  
110:7  372,3  
111:10  347,1  
112:10  361,14  
113:7-8  381,1  
115:3  398,2  
115:17  365,1  
116:10  362,5; 399,13  
116:12  398,6  
116:12-13  375B,2  
116:15  399,13  
116:16-17  394,1  
118:14  380,5  
118:24  371,1; 375B,8  
119:19  359A,8  
119:73  348A,4  
119:79  358,4  
119:96  358,4  
119:103  366,3  
120:5-7  351,3  
120:7  358,1  
121:1  379,7  
121:2  379,7  
124:1-2  375B,1  
126:5  358A,1  
126:6  358A,1  
130:1-4  351,12  
133:1  355,6  
138:6  351,1  
139:7  351,12  
139:7-9  352,7  
141:2  342,1  
141:5  391,3  
142:5  347,3  
144:11-15  359A,14  
144:15  359A,14  
145:2  382,1  
146:4  361,5  
146:6  398,2  
148:5  380,3  
148:6  363,3  
148:8  399,11  
151:12  341A,3  
152:9  392,5  
154:8  392,5  
154:16  348,1  
158:3  351,12; 363,2  
159:9  397,1  
162:2  350B,1  
162:25  359A,11  
162:27  391,3  
163:18  347,3  
163:24  355,6  
164:2  344,2  
164:2:15  364,4  
165:21  391,4  
165:3  391,6  
165:4  396,2  
165:4:20  389,5  
165:6:12  391,5  
165:7:26  369,2  
165:7:27  361,16  
165:8:1  361,16; 370,3; 377,1  
165:8:16  391,5  
165:8:20-21  365,3  
165:8:21  348A,4  
165:9:15  348,4; 351,3; 363,2; 400,2  

Proverbs

2:4  399,11  
3:12  341A,3  
4:8-9  392,5  
9:8  392,5  
14:26  348,1  
18:3  351,12; 363,2  
20:9  397,1  
22:2  350B,1  
25:21  359A,11  
27:16  391,3  

Ecclesiastes

1:18  347,3  
5:4  355,6  

Song of Songs

2:4  344,2  
2:15  364,4  

Wisdom

2:1-6  391,4  
2:8  391,6  
2:10-12;13;19-21  391,4  
4:13  396,2  
4:20  389,5  
6:12  391,5  
7:26  369,2  
7:27  361,16  
8:1  361,16; 370,3; 377,1  
8:16  391,5  
8:20-21  365,3  
8:21  348A,4  
9:15  348,4; 351,3; 363,2; 400,2
Sermons 341-400

| 10:4  | 366,8 |
| 10:21 | 352,9; 369,2 |
| 13:4.3| 384,1 |

Sirach
1:22 347,1
1:26 347,1
2:1:4-5 397,3
2:14 357A,2
3:30 389,5
5:7 352,9
5:11, vul 6 380,5
6:18 391,6
8:2 351,12
10:9 351,4
10:13 346B,3
15:9 365,1
21:1 351,12; 389,6
21:20 351,5
24:21 366,3
25:1 359,1; 359,9; 359,9
28:24 399,9
29:12, vul 6 376A,3
29:12 lat 389,5
30:18 361,6
51:28,23 399,1

Isaiah
1:3 369,1; 375,1
1:16 341,13
5:2 376A,2
7:14 370,3
8:14 352,5
9:2 362,24
10:23 345,7; 399,2
11:2-3 347,2
16:13,LXX 363,2
40:6 359,9
40:6-8 341A,1; 391,6
40:8 366,1
52:7 351,4
53:1 363,2
53:2-3 375A,2
53:3 375A,2
53:4 366,2
53:7-8 375A,1
53:8 369,2; 372,1; 375A,2; 398,8
58:4-5 400,7
61:1 384,3
61:10 341,11
63:1 372,2

66:5 357,4
66:5,LXX 357,4

Jeremiah
17:5 344,1; 365,2

Ezekiel
3:18 387,1
28:3 397,1; 397,5
33:11 382,5

Daniel
4:27 389,3; 389,5
6:4 384,2
6:13 384,2
9:20 397,1
10:11 391,5
13:5 343,1
13:22 343,4
13:22-23 343,1; 359,3
13:45 343,1
13:49 343,1
13:55 343,1
13:59 343,1

Hosea
6:6 386,1

Micah
5:2 373,4

Malachi
3:1 351,8
4:2 366,6

New Testament

Matthew
1:1 371,1
1:18-20 343,3
1:23 369,1; 370,3
2:2 374,2
2:3-5 374,2
2:5 375,1
2:5-6 373,3
2:9 375,1
3:7-8 351,2
3:11 379,3
4:17 351,2
5:3 346A,6; 347,3
5:4 346A,6; 347,3

Volume III/10
Sermons 341-400

Volume III/10

5:5 347,3
5:6 347,3; 400,1
5:7 347,3; 351,12; 359A,11; 389,5
5:8 346,2; 347,3
5:9 347,3; 358,6
5:10 347,3
5:11-12 356,15; 383,1
5:14 379,6; 380,7
5:14-15 380,7
5:15 379,6
5:15-16 380,7
5:20 359A,16
5:22 347,3
5:24 400,7
5:25-26 387,1
5:35 341,4; 366,3
5:44 354,3; 382,3
5:44-45 382,1; 386,1
5:45 357,4
6:2 382,1
6:9 357,4; 398,16
6:12 351,6; 352,7; 354A,1; 383,1; 386,1; 388,1; 393,1; 398,15
6:12-13 348A,1
6:13 352,7; 359A,6; 359A,5
6:13,12 376A,3
6:20 345,2; 389,4
6:21 345,5
6:23 365,2
6:24 398,4
6:34 351,4; 369,1
7:2 367,2
7:3 387,2
7:13-14 366,4
7:21 351,9
8:8-12 342,4
8:11 362,30
10:16 353,1
10:22 346C,1
10:28 348,4
10:37 349,7
10:37-38 344,2
10:39 344,6
10:42 359A,11; 359A,12
11:11 379,1; 379,3; 379,6; 380,7
11:28 362,28
11:28-30 343,4
12:7 386,1
13:17 370,3
13:47-48 362,2
13:44-46 399,2
15:17 389,3
16:2 352,4
16:16 375C,5
16:18 346B,3; 358,5; 398,14
16:19 351,12; 392,3
16:26 368,1
16:27 341,4
18:7 347,3
18:11 373,3
19:5-6 341,12
19:12 354A,1
19:16-17 346,1
19:21 346A,4
19:23 346A,4
19:28 351,8
22:8 372,2
22:29-30 362,18
22:30 384,3
22:37 399,5; 399,6
22:37-40 366,4
22:37-39 350,2; 350A,1; 399,3
22:39 399,5
23:35 397,2
23:42-13 351,8
25:26-27 376A,3
25:26-30 351,4
25:31-41 354,2
24:26 398,12
25:34 351,8; 389,5
25:34-35 346,1; 394,1
25:34-35-40 389,4
25:33-37-40 359,6
25:35-40 345,4
25:37-40 390,2
25:40 352,7; 359A,11
25:40-45 399,8
25:41 344,4; 349,7; 398,12
25:46 346,1
26:38 375B,3; 375B,6; 375B,7
26:39 344,3; 375B,2; 375B,3
28:18-19 384,3; 384,3
28:20 366,5; 395,2
3:24-25 384,2

Mark

1:2 351,8
1:17 400,11
1:25 365,1
2:11 362,14
2:17 351,10

Sermons 341-400
Sermons 341-400

Luke
2:11 372,1 15:32 344,6; 360,1
2:14 359A,12 16:3-7 359A,9
2:26 370,2; 370,3 16:8-9 359A,10
3:7-9 389,6 359A,15
3:10-11 389,6 10:8 362,16
6:30 350B,1; 350C,1; 359,3 10:14 353,1
6:37-38 376A,3; 389,6 10:21 345,6
6:37 347,3 12:30-31 368,5
6:38 350B,1; 350C,1; 390,2 12:31 352,7; 385,1; 387,2
7:31-34 355,4 12:26-27 362,18
7:15-14 379,5 14:36 347,3
11:10 343,10 15:34 398,10
11:24-26 385,9 15:32 344,6; 360,1
11:25-26 383,2 16:3-7 359A,9
11:26 353,2 16:8-9 359A,10
12:4 348,4 16:9 359A,11; 359A,12; 359A,13;
12:13 359,3; 359,4 359A,15
12:13-14 400,13 16:19 345,1
12:13-15 358,1; 359,3 16:22 397,5; 399,13
12:14 359,3 16:24 367,2
12:16-20 359,3 16:25 367,2
12:28 398,13 17:21 346A,3
12:33 359A,14; 390,2 17:27 361,19
12:33-34 390,1 18:14 343,2; 351,1; 351,1; 351,1
12:35-36 361,19 18:27 346A,5
12:47-48 397,8 18:38 349,5
13:32 375,1 18:39-42 349,5
14:10 355,2 19:8 359A,16
14:11 351,1; 354,8 19:10 382,2
15:13 362,4 19:19 359A,11
15:24 388,1 20:36 341,11; 362,18
John
1:1 341,4; 341,6; 349,6; 359,9; 369,2;
1:1-2 375B,4; 375B,6; 379,4; 380,3;
1:1-3 380,4; 380,6; 381,1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>379,6; 380,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>379,6; 380,7; 381,1; 381,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>342,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>342,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>342,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>342,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11-12</td>
<td>348,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>342,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>342,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-14</td>
<td>341,3; 341,12; 341A,1; 342,1; 346A,2; 362,13; 369,2; 373,5; 374,3; 375C,5; 375C,5; 380,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>380,2; 380,3; 380,4; 380,5; 380,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>382,2; 379,3; 379,5; 379,7; 380,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>375B,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17-27,33</td>
<td>379,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>379,6; 380,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>375A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>362,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>375B,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>379,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:30</td>
<td>380,6; 380,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>366,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22</td>
<td>375,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>398,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24-29</td>
<td>362,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>344,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33-35</td>
<td>342,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35</td>
<td>379,6; 380,7; 389,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:27</td>
<td>366,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:41</td>
<td>364,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:52</td>
<td>359,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:55</td>
<td>366,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:58</td>
<td>369,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>346,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:39</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>366,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>366,3; 394,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>361,16; 375B,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18-17</td>
<td>375B,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>341,6; 371,2; 399,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:39-43</td>
<td>352,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:44</td>
<td>352,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>361,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:25</td>
<td>368,2; 385,8; 368,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>385,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>350A,1; 358,4; 400,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:34-35</td>
<td>350,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>346,1; 346,2; 375C,5; 398,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>362,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:27</td>
<td>400,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>341,6; 371,2; 384,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30-31</td>
<td>361,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>385,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>362,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15</td>
<td>398,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>362,30; 365,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12</td>
<td>382,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>359,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:31</td>
<td>364,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15-16</td>
<td>375C,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>375C,1; 375C,4; 375C,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:24-29</td>
<td>361,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:25</td>
<td>375C,1; 375C,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:25-27</td>
<td>375C,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:27</td>
<td>375C,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28-29</td>
<td>375C,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15-17</td>
<td>352,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>344,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>378,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28</td>
<td>351,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37</td>
<td>352,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37-38</td>
<td>352,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:31-35</td>
<td>356,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>355,2; 398,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:47-48</td>
<td>398,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:59-60</td>
<td>386,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:60</td>
<td>382,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>361,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1-4</td>
<td>345,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1-5</td>
<td>382,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>341,12; 354,1; 361,14; 362,18; 395,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>364,2; 382,4; 400,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27-28</td>
<td>369,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>362,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:3</td>
<td>360,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:14</td>
<td>382,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>383,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>361,6; 363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>359A,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-6</td>
<td>352,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-4</td>
<td>351,9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 341-400

4:3 363,2 4:16 351,11; 355,1
4:5 363,2 5:7 375A,1
4:25 350,1; 361,13 5:9-10 351,10
5:5 358,4; 378,1 5:11-13 351,10
5:6 375A,2 6:7-8 351,5
6:4 363,2 6:9-11 351,8
6:9 344,7; 361,8; 362,7; 398,9 6:13 389,3
6:9-10 362,12 6:15-16 349,3
6:19 353,2 6:17 375B,4
6:23 346B,3 6:19 398,13
7:23 365,5 6:20 371,4
7:23-25 351,2; 362,14 7:3-4 392,4
8:3 361,16; 361,17; 375C,7 7:5-6 351,5
8:6 341,7; 362,14 7:9 354A,1
8:10-11 362,24 7:29-31 346A,6
8:13 362,14 7:32-33 351,5
8:24 359A,4 8:1 358,6
8:24-25 359A,1; 362,4; 395,1 9:24 361,13
8:32 363,2; 375B,6 9:26-27 400,5
8:35 394,1 10:1 352,3
10:3 363,2 10:1-4 352,3
10:4 347,3 10:1-6,11 363,1
10:10 398,1 10:3 352,3
11:20 348,2 11:33-36 384,3
11:33-36 384,3 10:4 352,5; 358,5
12:10 354,5 10:6 352,3
12:20 359A,11 10:10-9 346C,1
13:2-3 358,6 10:11 350A,2
13:9-10 399,5 10:13 397,9
13:10 350,1 10:20-21 366,6
13:12-13 366,5 11:1 364,6
14:4 351,10 11:3 341,12
1 Corinthians
1:11-12 364,4 11:29 393,1
1:12 379,7 11:31 351,7
1:12-13 358,3 12:23-25 354,4
1:13 358,5; 379,7 12:24 398,13
1:24 370,3 12:26 361,14
1:25 363,3 12:27 341,11
1:31 363,4; 380,6; 381,1 12:31 350,3
2:8 342,1 13:4 354,6
2:9 362,4; 362,29; 389,3 13:6 353,1
2:7 376A,2 13:8 350,3; 352,4
3:10-12 362,9 13:9 346,2
3:11 362,9 13:10 346,2
3:16-17 353,2 13:12 346,2; 362,29; 362,31
3:17 363,3; 398,14 13:13 359A,3; 359A,4
4:5 351,4; 351,10 13:15 362,9
4:7 380,6; 391,5 14:1 359A,3
4:9 356,1 15:8-10 400,1

Volume III/10
| 15:24.28 | 363,2 |
| 15:32 | 361,1; 361,7; 361,8; 361,18; 361,21 |
| 15:32-34 | 391,3 |
| 15:32-33 | 361,4 |
| 15:32-34 | 362,2 |
| 15:33 | 392,6; 399,9 |
| 15:33.32 | 361,5; 361,14 |
| 15:35 | 362,17; 362,24 |
| 15:36-38 | 398,13 |
| 15:39-40 | 362,21 |
| 15:40-42 | 343,4 |
| 15:47-50 | 362,15; 362,17 |
| 15:49 | 362,16 |
| 15:50 | 362,13; 362,14; 362,17; 362,19; 362,24; 362,27 |
| 15:50-51 | 362,21 |
| 15:50.53 | 351,8 |
| 15:52 | 362,19; 362,26 |
| 15:52 | 362,9; 362,20; 362,20 |
| 15:52-53 | 362,21 |
| 15:53 | 362,24; 362,28; 363,2 |
| 15:53-55 | 362,22 |
| 15:54 | 351,3; 363,3 |
| 15:54-55 | 362,21 |
| 15:55 | 351,6; 359,2 |
| 12:7-9 | 354,7 |
| 12:21 | 351,12 |
| 13:3 | 399,15 |
| 13:5 | 363,3 |
| 13:7 | 348A,3 |
| 12:24.28 | 363,2 |
| Galatians | 3:13.14 |
| 3:29 | 352,3 |
| 4:4 | 398,8 |
| 4:16 | 392,4 |
| 4:19 | 362,18 |
| 4:25-26 | 346B,1 |
| 5:14 | 351,8; 387,3 |
| 5:17 | 400,4; 400,5 |
| 5:19-21 | 351,9 |
| 5:21 | 351,7; 351,7; 351,8; 351,8 |
| 5:22 | 376A,2 |
| 5:24 | 363,4 |
| 6:10 | 358A,1 |
| 6:14 | 352,6 |
| 2:3 | 400,5 |
| 2:14 | 358,4; 363,2; 373,1; 375,1 |
| 2:20 | 369,1 |
| 3:16-17 | 346,2 |
| 3:18 | 365,1 |
| 3:19 | 346,2 |
| 4:8 | 372,2; 375B,8 |
| 4:9-10 | 375B,7 |
| 4:13 | 341,1 |
| 4:26 | 392,4 |
| 5:5-7 | 351,8 |
| 5:8 | 380,7 |
| 5:14 | 362,24 |
| 5:27 | 341,13 |
| 5:29 | 344,4; 368,1; 368,3; 400,4 |
| 5:31 | 362,16 |
| 5:31-32 | 341,12 |
| 6:12 | 362,14 |
| 6:19 | 358,6 |
| 2 Corinthians | 2:3 |
| 3:18 | 362,31 |
| 4:4 | 365,2 |
| 4:13 | 373,1 |
| 5:4 | 344,4; 351,3 |
| 5:5-6 | 344,4 |
| 5:6 | 359A,8; 362,22 |
| 5:6-7 | 346B,1; 379,5 |
| 5:7 | 346,1; 346,2; 351,3; 362,28 |
| 5:7-8 | 362,29 |
| 5:10 | 351,7 |
| 5:20 | 393,1 |
| 6:1 | 353,2 |
| 6:10 | 350A,4 |
| 7:1 | 346,2 |
| 8:9 | 375B,1 |
| 8:10 | 389,3 |
| 8:21 | 355,1 |
| 9:6 | 358A,1 |
| 9:7 | 351,4 |
| 9:10 | 352,7 |
| 11:2 | 372,2 |
| 11:2-3 | 341,5; 364,4 |
| 11:3 | 361,5 |
| 2:6 | 341,12 |
| 2:6-7 | 361,16; 380,3; 380,4 |
| 2:6-8 | 341,12 |
| 2:7 | 341,4; 341,6; 359,9; 362,16; 371,1; 375B,2; 375B,6 |
| 2:7-8 | 361,17 |
| 2:8 | 346A,5; 354,9; 371,3; 372,1 |

Sermons 341-400
Sermons 341-400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bible Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8.7</td>
<td>377,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>380,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-6</td>
<td>360,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>400,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>341,13; 362,4; 400,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>400,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>362,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>359,9; 376A,2; 383,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>345,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>346A,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>351,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>366,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>359A,2; 359A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>365,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>397,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>351,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>341,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>341,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>341,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>362,16; 362,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>362,15; 395,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>362,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>350A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>346,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>350A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>362,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>359,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>394,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>350,1; 358,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>360,1; 380,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>381,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>356,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>348A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>367,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>391,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>345,1; 350A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18-19</td>
<td>346,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>398,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>362,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>362,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>387,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>355,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>341,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>384,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>397,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>348A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>359A,11; 389,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>346A,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>385,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>351,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>385,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>398,10; 398,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>353,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>352,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>351,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>365,3; 400,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>382,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-3</td>
<td>353,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>353,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>387,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>351,1; 351,9; 363,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>346B,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>351,6; 388,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>351,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>346,2; 362,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>351,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>387,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8-16</td>
<td>350,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>348,1; 348,2; 350A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>375A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>397,1; 397,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>375A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>397,9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III/10
INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Abraham, 362:10; 363:2; 367:1; 375C:7; 397:5
asks God to spare the city, 397:2
blessing of, 377:1
faith, 351:12
fatherhood, 352:3
promise to, 346A:2; 359:5
rich man and Lazarus, 367:2; 399:13
Adam and Eve:
all descendents = brothers and sisters, 399:3
all die in Adam, 361:16
Christ was before them, 375C:7
death inherited from, 343:2
earthly, 362:15
Eve's sin; virgin birth, 369:3
first fashioning of man, 370:1
first man was from earth... 362:17
hiding from face of the Lord, 351:3
Job and his wife, 397:3; 398:10
mortality; skins, 362:11
punished: work and sweat, 346C:1
punishment of death, 400:5
temptation by serpent, 343:10
adultery:
devil not charged with, 354:4
forsake creator for creature, 385:6
husband or wife, 392:3
lawful use of marriage and, 400:6
sick at heart if you fall into, 392:5
advice: giving/receiving, 389:3
affliction, See Suffering.
Agnes, Saint, 354:5
alleluia: eternal life, 362:29
alms:
cheerfulness in giving, 351:4
Christ the receiver of, 359A:11
ensuring that prayers are heard, 357:5
to everyone who asks, 359:3
give to one who wishes you well
(beggar/Christ), 399:7
give what you have, receive what you
don't have; 350B:1; 350C:1
give without a qualm, 390:2
great profit from, 367:3
lighten your load; give some to the poor, 399:8
poor will transfer gifts to heaven, 389:4
reaching Christ through the poor person, 345:2
resort to fraud, theft, etc., 359A:13
reward for giving, 376A:3; 389:3
selective giving, 359A:11
sin extinguished by, 389:5
sins redeemed by, 350B:1; 350C:1
stop giving if you dare, 389:3
store up treasures in heaven, 390:1-2
warning on reluctance in giving, 367:1
wings to our prayers, 358:6
Amalek, 352:6,7; 353:2; 363:3
amen:
eternal life, 362:29
word of consent, 348A:3
angels, 341:11; 392:1; 398:2; 400:1,2,3
adapting to mortals; eating, 362:11
almsgiving and, 390:2
appearance, as flesh, 362:17
eating; as humans, 362:11
fell because of pride, 354:9
human functions on earth, 362:10
life after the resurrection, 362:19,27,28
messengers, 351:8
true wealth had by, 359A:13
anger:
hate and, 387:2
parents and children, 387:2
animals:
fight for their lives, 368:4
friendship in, 385:3
humans and pleasures of the flesh, 400:2
humans compared with, 341A:2
love in, 385:2
love of their offspring, 349:2
prone; faces to the ground, 399:5
sleeping and waking, 361:10
Anna (widow), 370:2; 391:6
Antiochus, 343:2
Apollinarists, 375B:7
apostles:
Christ chose unlettered fishermen . . ., 381:1
fishers of men, 400:11
light of the world, 379:6
new covenant, 350A:2
Pentecost, 352:2; 365:4
source of learning of, 381:1
words extend to ends of world, 359:1; 375A:1
apostolate: hunters of men, 400:11
Arcadius, Emperor, 397:7
Arians, 375B:7
Father and Son = two gods, 398:4,5
objection answered, 380:4
Trinity, 384:1-3
understanding Christ in scripture, 341:1-13
Word of God not created, 380:3
Arius, 364:4; 400:11
ascension:
Christ, king of glory, 377:1
confess: he is seated at the right hand . . ., 375C:5
love, he is still with us, 395:2
will fixed in heaven, 395:1
atom (the word), 362:20
Augustine, Saint:
affairs of community members, 356:3
anniversary as bishop, 383:1-3
asks forgiveness from those he offended, 383:3
caught, made a priest, 355:2
clergy in common life, 356:14
clothing, 356:13
confession of faith, 362:5
debtors pardoned, 383:2
dread of episcopate, 355:2
monastery in bishop’s [his] house, 355:2
nephew of, 356:3
preaching as service, 355:7
Aurelius of Carthage, Bishop, 355:5
A uses (Jesus Nave), 352:4
avarice, See Greed.

B
Baalim, 365:2
baptism:
See also Catechumens; Infantes; John the Baptist
birth into new life, 351:3
buried into death; Red Sea, 363:2
confessing belief in resurrection, 362:7
devil, sins, and the baptized, 363:2
God as father; Church as mother, 398:1
keep unspoiled to the end, 398:15
life lived in hope, 363:3
newly born babies, 391:1
newness of life, 393:1
panic in Constantinople, 397:7
passing through the [Red] sea, 352:3,6
Red Sea crossing as type, 363:2
repentance before, 351:2; 352:2
sacrament violated by doing evil, 393:1
Spiritual birth, 376A:1
unveiling of the newly baptized, 376A:1
water signed with Christ’s cross, 352:3
Barnabas (priest), 356:15
beasts, See Animals
beautitudes:
gifts of the Spirit and, 347:3
praise of the commandments, 366:3
beauty:
charity, 365:1
in God’s eye, 391:6
beggar, 367:1
attitude, 389:3
bishops and, 355:5
Christ in, 389:4
Christ knocking on your door, 389:3
dreaming of wealth, 345:1
God treats us as, 350B:1; 350C:1
wishing people well, 399:7
behavior: grave sins, charity, and change, 388:2
Bethlehem, 373:4; 375:1

Volume III/10
Bible:
interpretation; St Paul, 363:1
vast treasure; many commandments in, 399:2
words of scripture depend on love, 350:2
bishops:
beggars and, 355:5
conference with Donatists, 359:5
duty to correct sinners, 387:1
funeral sermon, 396:1-2
help them by prayer and fasting, 358:6
hositable kindness, 355:2
pastoral responsibility, 393:1
blasphemy:
falls back on blasphemer, 341A:2
say something against God, and die, 397:3,4
blessedness: means to, 399:6
blessings: Pelagian thought, 348A:3
blind: do not see, still avaricious, 399:10
boastfulness, 366:2
boasting: of tamed bodies, 351:4
bodies: heavenly/earthly, 362:21
body and soul:
See also Flesh; Human body; Soul
body as burden for the soul, 400:2
combined, make one human being, 371:3
flesh the servant, soul the superior, 368:1
marriage of flesh and spirit, 400:5
mortality, 375B:7
soul possesses things through body, 362:14
whole person of Christ, 375B:17
Boniface, legacy of, 355:5
books: memories as, 398:1
bread: heavenly bread, 389:1
bride and bridegroom (in Isaiah), 341:11,12
brotherhood: relations with Donatists, 357:4
brothers: concord difficult, 399:1,2
building: foundation, 362:8
burial, 361:5

C

calumny: God’s servants, 356:15
camel: eye of needle, 346A:5
carthage, 359:5
catechumens:
  hastening toward baptism, 366:1
  imitation of good people, 392:6
  sermon on the creed, 398:1-17
  sins remain, until baptized, 398:16
Catholic Christians, 346B:2,3
Catholic Church:
baptized into, 366:6
commending, 358:2
creed, 398:14
defense of, 358:1
Donatist convert’s address, 360:1
drawn away from, 346B:2
Eucharistic sacrifice, 366:3
Cecilian, 358:3; 395:5,6
celibacy:
Daniel represents, 397:1
vow of, 343:4; 392:2
Centurion: Lord, I am not worthy, 342:4
chaff, 400:10
change: life after the resurrection, 362:19,21
charity:
See also Alms; Love
beauty, 365:1
boasting re acts of, 389:3
builds up; knowledge not puffed up, 354:6
evil deeds redeemed by, 388:2
fleeting and mortal, 349:7
gifts of God useless without, 349:1
go, sell all that you have, . ., 345:6
greatest, relative to faith and hope, 359A:3
indifference to temporal things, 345:1
manifestations of, 350:3
performing acts of, 389:1-6
praise of, 350:3
salvation for the persevering, 351:8
slaves of, 362:1
victory of truth is charity, 358:1
Charybdis, 365:5
chastisement: just and unjust together, 397:1
chastity:
  conjugal or celibate, 392:2
  consecrated, 370:2
  husband and wife, 392:3,5
  Joseph of Egypt, 343:6,8; 359:3
  love it in yourself, 343:7
  married and virginal compared, 343:4
  motivation, 354:3
  pride in, 354:8
  religious life, 354:3
  spiritual beauty, 343:7,9
  suffering for sake of, 343:8
Susanna an example of, 343:1
virginal integrity, 354:9
chattels (the word), 399:6
cheapness, 348:2
cheerfulness: giving alms, 351:4
cherub, 349:9
children: disappointment, 346C:2
love of, 365:2
loved in a worldly way, 349:2
children of God: authority to become, 342:4-5
docter sin, 351:6
everlasting peace, 347:3
what we shall be. . ., 362:31
choice, freedom of, 348A:3,4
Christ, See Jesus
Christian life: be sober and do not sin, 362:2
becoming Christian, for sake of life to come, 366:8
Christ as man = our way, 375C:5
Christ, rising from the dead, dies no more, 398:10
come, follow me (distress, abuse, etc.), 345:6
conduct worthy of the bridegroom, Christ, 341:13
confirmed by good works, 358A:1
constant cry: deliver us from evil, 359A:5
cry out with our behavior, 349:5
discipline, mercy, delight, 366:6
each thinking the other superior, 354:2
fear being without Christ, 349:7
finding life by losing it, 345:2
treachery, 363:2
hidden with Christ, 362:23
idleness on the journey, 346A:1
Jesus in heaven, and in hearts of believers, 362:9
paths of justice, 366:4
life is Christ, 400:4
life is Christ's, 344:1-2
life is Christ's, 344:6,7
life is Christ's, 344:8
life is Christ's, 344:9
life is Christ's, 344:10
life is Christ's, 346A:1
life is Christ's, 346A:2
life is Christ's, 346A:3
life is Christ's, 346A:4
life is Christ's, 346A:5
live in Christ's divine nature, 375B:5
lost life, 343:1
no more forgiven, 398:10
old self = Adam, 376A:1
one mind and one heart, 349:8
pastures; the shepherd, 366:3
paths of justice, 366:4
pilgrims led by Word of God, 346A:1-8
qualities; good soil, 399:1
rebirth in Christ, 370:4
risen, seek the things that are above, 362:15-16,23
roads instructed to walk on, 366:4
rules for, 351:4
sower and seed, 399:1
sower sows regardless of conditions, 399:14
storm at sea faith is sleeping, 361:7
travel the right road, 346B:2
truth will set you free, 346:2
Christanitv: resurrection as foundation of, 361:2
whole world flourishing in, 361:8
Christians: all are brothers and sisters of Christ, 371:4-9
concord among, 359:4,9
discipline; Christ the teacher, 399:1
name, 380:8
vessels empty of good works, 353:2
Christmas: second nativity of Christ, 371:1
Church: analogy: husband and wife, 341:12
apostles raise up seed for deceased brother Christ, 380:8
body of Christ, 364:3
bride without stain or wrinkle, 341:13
bridegroom (Christ), 372:2
built by Christ, 346A:3
built on rock, 358:5
Christ and Church make one Christ, 341:12
Christ and; two in one flesh, 362:16
Christ cherishes, 400:4
Christ preached by body of Christ, 354:1
Christ the head of, 364:2
Christ the teacher; body is the school, 399:15
concord with brothers, 359:5,9
creed, 398:14
desiring Christ (like husband/wife), 361:19
devil still promising knowledge, 341:5
enemies inside the body, 354:2
forgiveness of sin; keys, 351:9,12
fullness, the whole Christ, 341:1
head and body, 341:11,12
head has gone ahead to heaven, 362:8

Volume III/10
head is savior of the body, 354:1
heavenly; angels as fellow citizens, 341:11
hell shall not defeat it, 398:14
heresies and schisms, 346B:3
house of discipline, 399:1-16
love your mother, but not above the Church, 344:2
members will go where head ascended, 398:17
Noah's ark, 361:21
outside enemies, 354:2
practice of repentance, 351:5
prophecies concerning, 346A:2
rock; not to be overcome, 346B:3
sharing the inheritance, 358:5
shepherd is Christ, 366:3
spiritual presence of Christ, 375C:6
spread throughout the world, 358:3; 359:5
threshing floor, 376A:2
unity is undefeated; 359:6
universality of, 358:2
whatever you loose . . ., 352:8
church buildings, 359:9
clergy:
Augustine's way of life, 356:1-15
commitment to holiness, 355:6
criticisms; Augustine ready to answer, 356:12
imitating morals of bad clergy, 351:11
poverty; common life, 355:6
private property, 355:6
protect way of life and reputation, 356:1
status of those not keeping Augustine's rules, 355:6
way of life, 355:1-7
clothes; Augustine's community, 356:13
cloud; threat to Constantinople, 397:7
coeval beings, 398:8
color, 341:7,8
commandment(s):
See also Love
der, is charity, 350:1; 358:4
keeping = leading a good life, 399:2
keeping, to attain life, 346:1
one: charity is fulfillment of the law, 399:5
pastures (metaphor), 366:3
praise; the beatitudes, 366:3
pray for help in keeping, 348A:1,4
two greatest, 350A:1
whoever loves me . . ., 362:31
common life:
Acts of the Apostles, 355:2; 356:1,2
Augustine's deacons, 356:8
clergy and property, 356:14
clothing, 356:13
donations to common fund, 355:6
gifts to community, not to individuals, 356:13
hypocritical possession of property, 356:14
community life, See Common life
competentes, 392:1
complaining, 341A:3
conceit:
God saving us from, 354:7
swollen emptiness, 354:8
temptation, 354:7
concubinage, 392:1
conduct, See Life
confession:
public, 392:2; 398:15
restraint, 351:6
weeping, blood of the spirit, 351:7
weeping, vale of tears, 347:2
conscience:
examination of, 348:2
night, fog-bound, 365:5
reputation and, 355:1
consolation: human beings, 396:1
Constantinople: panic over threatened destruction, 397:7
contemplation: bliss of heaven, 362:30,31
continence:
mature life; religious life, 354:4
religious life, 354:3
vow of, 392:1
contracts, 378:1
conversation, 399:9
conversion:
See also Repentance
change desires if you would change your life, 345:7
correct self before judgment day, 346A:7
converts: Donatist's address, 360:1
correction: duty, 387:1

Sermons 341-400
Sermons 341-400

counsel:
- forgiveness, 347:3
- trials and scandals, 347:3

courage:
- fear of God, 348:1
- hunger and thirst for justice, 347:3

creation:
- all made through the Word, 342:1; 380:3,6
- he commanded, and they were created, 380:3
- heaven, earth, and all that is in them, 398:2
- in the beginning. . ., 380:4
- resurrection in, 361:10

creatures: dread of losing some good, 348:4

creed:
- believe in the Holy Spirit, 398:13
- crucified and was buried, 398:7
- forgiveness of sins, 398:15
- God the Father almighty, 398:2
- holy Catholic Church, 398:14
- judge the living and the dead, 398:12
- only Son, our Lord, 398:3
- resurrection of the flesh, 398:17
- seated at the right hand, 398:11
- sermon to catechumens, 398:1-17
- suffered under Pontius Pilate, 398:7
- words gathered from scripture, 398:1

Crispina, 354:5

crops: examples of resurrection in, 361:9

cross:
- evening sacrifice, 342:1
- learning from, 363:4
- Samson, outstretched arms, 364:6
- sign of Christ's work, 398:9
- stretch self on; remove wrinkles, 341:13
- temptation and, 353:2

crucifixion, See Jesus: crucifixion

cruelty, self-indulgence and, 391:4

cupidity, See greed

damnation:
- eternal death, 351:7
- I was hungry and . . ., 389:5,6

Daniel (prophet):
- humility of, 397:1
- made captive, 397:2

man of desires, 391:5

prophetic spirit: Susanna, 343:1

represents holy celibates, 397:1

darkness: John the Baptist, 379:5

David, King, 351:12; 393:1; 394:1

dead:
- argument that no one has ever returned from, 361:6,7,8
- bodies turn to dust, 361:12
- Jewish customs, 361:6
- memory in the tomb, 396:2
- pagan customs, 361:6
- praise not the Lord, 365:1

dead:
- avoiding; delaying, 343:2
- awaiting the human body, 362:11
- Christ slew death by his death, 359:2; 375B:8
- delaying, 359A:8
- delivered from, by death of Christ, 361:14
- depart to bliss if you have led good life, 399:13
- dying blind, re possessions, 399:10
- falling asleep in death, 365:2
- fear of, 344:5; 359A:8; 399:12
- inherited from Adam, 343:2
- iniquity is real death, 368:3
- judgment awaits, 367:1
- learning to die a good death, 399:13
- let us eat and drink. . ., 362:2; 391:3
- let us fast and pray. . ., 361:18,21
- love can eliminate pain of, 344:3
- making wills when death approaches, 361:5
- man clothed in purple and fine linen, 399:13
- my soul is sorrowful. . ., 375B:3
- necessity: all men must die, 344:3;
- 375B:1
- poor man at rich man's gate, 397:5
- redemption from the second death, 344:4
- resurrection of the body preceded by, 362:23
- shadow of = road of sin, 366:5
- skins suggesting, 362:11
- sorrow for, but not despair, 396:2
- spiritual, 362:23
- swallowed up by life (heaven), 344:4;
- 362:21,22
- sympathy for, 361:5
- two sorts: physical; judgment day, 344:4
unbelief, 344:6

decay: worm of, 362:23
delight: table of, 366:6
deliver us from evil, 359A:5
demons: Magi and, 374:1,3
desire(s):
contrary: earthly vs heavenly, 344:1
matter more than living well, 345:7
wishes of spirit put before flesh, 344:3
despair:
adding to sins out of, 352:9
Judas, 352:8
learn from Paul's conversion, 381:1
sorrow for the dead; contradicts faith, 396:2
devil:
all ages tempted by, 391:1
attacks on doers of good works, 389:4
builds nest in empty space, 354:8
defeated by Peter and Paul, martyrs, 381:1
defeating stratagems of, 346B:4
dragging us to the second death, 344:4
false charges by, 385:5
fasting and, 400:3
father of the godless, 352:3
heresies and, 348A:5
never charged with sexual sins, 354:4
overcome by humility, 351:6
pagans and, 400:10
paradise of the Church, 341:5
rebuked, 365:1
rescued from, by the Lord, 385:9
serpent lying in wait for you, 366:7
sin and the soul, 366:4,5
sins and the baptized, 363:2
sins fighting for, 363:2
suggests Son is less than the Father, 341:6
young people and, 391:3
difficulties: hard times, 346A:7,8
disagreement, 387:1
discipline: Church as house of, 399:1,3
family life, 400:5
rejection of, 399:1
rod of, 366:6
word origin, 399:1
dispositions of souls, 341:8
dissension, 357:3, 358:4
distress, See Suffering
divine things: immaterial and whole everywhere, 341:2
divorce, 392:1
Donatists, 357:4; 358:4
classification at Carthage, 359:5
convert's address, 360:1
dispute and concord with, 359:1-9
many win, by acknowledging defeat, 359:7
personal characteristics, 359:8
wrangling with, 359:4
Donatus, 358:3; 364:4; 400:11
doors: ask, seek, knock, 389:2
doubt: Moses; born at the rock, 352:5
drunkenness, 400:6
dwellings: called seats, 398:11

e
early Church: one heart and one soul, 398:4
earnest (the word), 378:1
earth:
creation, incarnation, ascension, 395:2
richness from rotting, 361:11
Easter, 375B:1-8
eating: human necessity, 362:11
education: why people go to school, 399:12
Egypt:
See also Red Sea
care for the dead, 361:12
eight martyrs, 356:10
Eleusinus, 356:15
Emmanuel, 370:3
end of the world:
final harvest, 361:10
resurrection of bodies, 362:25
enemies:
asking God to punish, 382:5
duty to do good to, 359A:11
love of, 357:1; 368:5; 382:1,3; 383:1; 386:1; 387:3
pray for, 354:3
pray: Lord, kill my enemy, 382:5
win the fight: pray for enemies, 382:5
envy:
daughter of pride, 354:5,6
diabolical vice, 399:7
pride; gives birth to malice, 353:1
Epicureans, 348:3
Epiphany:
Jews point out Christ to Gentiles, 374:2

Sermons 341-400
Magi and the star, 374:1, 2
manifestation of the Lord, 373:1-5; 374:1-3; 375:1
error:
defeated by, 358:1
detest for, 359:5
Esau, 361:16
eternal life:
See also Heaven
acquired by faith and loyalty, 344:5
amazement at prospect of, 342:5
baptism and, 393:1
die in hope of, 375B:1
dwell in house of the Lord, 366:8
efforts to attain, 368:3
everlasting wealth vs temporal goods, 350B:1
go, sell all you have. . ., 346A:4
hating one’s soul “in this age,” 368:2
hope for; the nativity, 370:1
kingdom prepared for you . . ., 346:1
knowing God and Jesus Christ, 365:1
love of, compared with love of this life, 344:5
need of, 359A:6
neglecting its worth, 345:2
only one good (eternal) day, 346C:2
praise God without ceasing, 362:31
prepared for, 362:7
property which cannot be divided, 359:2
really deserves name of life, 346:1
received by some, 351:7
rest; knowing God and Jesus, 362:30
reward of a good life, 399:13
route to, 366:7
same for married and virginial chastity, 343:4
true health or well-being, 385:8
whoever hears my word . . ., 362:25
wishing to have, without dying, 399A:8
words of those without hope, 391:4
yearning for, 359A:2
excommunication: formal judgment, 351:10
exodus: journey through desert/life, 363:3

F
faith:
believing is touching, 375C:5
conviction of things which cannot be
seen, 359A:4
evil persuasion; faith is asleep, 361:7
finding your life/soul in, 344:6
ground of things hoped for, 359A:3
heart purified by, 346:2
hold on to, for sake of eternal life, 344:5
hope supports, 359A:4
life hidden with Christ in God, 346:2
love while we believe what we cannot
see, 359A:2
maturity, 370:4
no praise for, if Jesus were visibly
present, 359A:3
persons presented for baptism, 351:2
pilgrimage through life, 346:1-2
pray that it not fail; Pelagian heresy,
348A:2
presence of Jesus in all Christians, 361:7
resurrection according to the spirit,
362:25
resurrection of the dead, 361:2
rewarded for belief without sight,
359A:3
rich by believing, 399:10
risen again with Christ, 362:15
see now through a mirror . . ., 346:2
sluggishness and, 359A:2
texts on sight and faith, 346:2
unless I touch him . . ., 375C:2, 4
value; reward for keeping faith, 345:7
waken Christ abiding in you, 361:15
walking by; arriving by sight, 346:2
walking with; not yet by sight, 362:4
way to possession, 359A:3
we have believed so we also speak,
362:5
weak; spurns God’s advice, 389:4
fall of man:
See also original sin
Christ seeking that which was lost,
375B:5
Job on mystery of, 351:3
false witnesses: Susanna; Daniel, 343:2

Volume III/10
family: discipline in, 400:5
farm at Victoriana, 356:15
fasting:
  almsgiving and, 390:1
  delight in higher life, 400:2
  devil’s tempting, 400:3
  final goal and, 400:7
  helping bishops, 358:6
  moderation, 400:2
  purpose, 400:7
  taming the flesh, 400:3
  value of, 400:1-13
Faustinus (deacon), 356:4
fear:
  alarm, if one fears nothing, 348:2
  Christ’s agony in Gethsemane, 344:3
  devil tempts with, 346B:4
  dread of losing some creaturely good, 348:4
  eternal fire, 362:9
  growing less, as we approach heaven, 348:4
  old covenant, 350A:2
  one with power to kill both body and soul, 348:4
  two kinds: cast out by love; or abiding forever, 348:4
fear of God:
  chaste, abiding forever, 348:4
  frequently pressed in scripture, 347:1
  gifts of the Spirit, ending in wisdom, 347:2
  love and, 348:1-4; 349:7
  nothing lacking, 366:2
  praying for temporal goods, 354:7
  sin and, 352:9
  spiritual progress and, 348:1
  wisdom as beginning of, 347:1
Felicity, Saint, 394:1
fidelity: Susanna an example of, 343:1
fire:
  brightness: coeval, 398:8
  eternal, 362:23
  three things: motion, light, heat, 384:2
  flattery: oil of the sinner, 391:3
flesh:
  See also Body and soul; Human body
  all flesh is grass, 341A:1; 391:6
  body (the word) and, 362:17
  gains possession of the godless, 362:14
  iniquity perpetrated through, 399:4
  marriage with spirit, 400:5
mortal; decay, 362:17:18
  nobody ever hates his own, 400:4
  nourished on earthly food, 400:4
  nourishing and cherishing, 400:4
  servant of the soul, 368:1
  spirit and (Manichee), 400:4
  stretched over wood to make a drum, 363:4
  struggle with, 344:1
floorboards, 365:5
Florence (basilica), 359:9
food:
  earthly; heavenly, 400:1,2
  words as, 341:2
forgiveness:
  asking for pardon, 386:1
  Augustine asks, of those he offended, 383:3
  Augustine pardons his debtors, 383:2
  forgive us our debts . . ., 351:6; 352:7; 383:3; 386:1; 388:2
  gift of counsel, 347:3
  Lord’s Prayer; from the heart, 386:2
  lose nothing when you pardon, 352:7
  pardon for what is not lawful (marriage), 354A:1
  and you will be forgiven, 376A:3; 389:6
forgiveness of sin:
  Church; the loosing of Lazarus, 352:8
  creed, 398:15
  forgive us our debts, 393:1; 398:15
  keys of the Church, 351:9,12; 392:2
  three ways: baptism, prayer, penance, 398:16
  what you loose on earth . . ., 392:2
fornication, 349:3; 392:1,3,5
foundation:
  head of a building, 362:8
  foxes, 364:4
freedom:
  of choice: Pelagian thought, 348A:3,4
  true life will set you free, 346:2
friendship:
  based on habit or reason, 385:3
  gratuitous love, 385:4
  wounds from friends, 391:3
fruit of the Spirit: ten fruits, 376A:2
funeral:
  sermon for bishop's funeral, 396:1-2
  service to charity, 396:2
future life:
  See also Heaven; Hell; Resurrection
  Amen and Alleluia, 362:29
Sermons 341-400

desire created for, 341:13
happiness, 359A:6
hope of our heart, 395:1

G

generosity: giving alms, 367:3
gifts: common life, 356:13
gifts of the Holy Spirit:
beatitudes and, 347:3
chain; steps in the heart, 347:2
climb from fear of God to wisdom, 347:2
seeking and obtaining, 365:5
giving alms, See Alms
glory:
Christ, king of glory, 377:1
eye has not seen..., 384:1
Father and Son glorified, 380:7
sight and faith, 346:2
transformed from glory to glory, 362:31
what have you that you have not received, 380:6

God:
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus; Son of God; Trinity; Word of God
angry; placated, 341A:3
Arian notion of, 341:7; 398:4,5
attributes, 341:8
blasphemies against, 341A:2
can’t flee from him; can flee to him, 351:12
clinging to, is good, 368:5
Father almighty, 398:2,5
Father and Son have one will, 398:3
Father, when he coddles; or corrects, 397:3
glory of, 359:6; 380:6
human terms used for, 341:9
immortal spirit, 375B:4
infinite riches of, 366:2
just, 341:9
mercy of, 354:9
mercy; sinners running from, 381:1
not of the dead, but of the living, 362:18
omnipotence, 361:18
patience, leading to repentance, 351:7,12
possession of = true wealth and happiness, 359A:14
power, 341:10
reached by humility, 351:1

saaints in hidden place of God’s countenance, 362:3
surpassing all things, 384:1
to be followed, but he can’t be seen, 371:2
treats us as we treat beggars, 350B:1; 350C:1
we come to, by our desires, 344:1
with you on the road, 366:5
worth more than earth and heaven, 345:7
godlessness:
charity found in, 349:2
temporal goods, 350A:3
gods: pagan worship, 400:9
gold: love of, 368:4
golden rule: treatment of others, 353:2
good and evil, See goodness; Wickedness
Good example:
eulogy of a bishop, 396:2
exhortation re bad Christians, 376A:2
imitate martyrs, not bad clergy, 351:11
imitate the good, beware of the bad, 376A:3
young men; young women, 391:5,6
good times, 346C:2
good works:
Christians as empty vessels, 353:2
conceit over, 389:3
confirmation of Christian life, 358A:1
devil and, 389:4
grumbling and regret, 389:4
life after the resurrection, 362:28
mercy present in all, 358A:1
not needed in heaven, 358A:2
rising in, 362:23
showing yourself as example of, 355:1
goodness:
cry out to Christ with our behavior, 349:5
discipline (learning) of a good life, 399:1
encouragement from, 396:1
fruit of the Spirit, 376A:2
learning to die a good death, 399:13
seed reaching good soil, 399:14
gospel: depends on charity, 350A:1
grace:
before/behind us, through life, 366:7
boasting about things received, 351:4
dependence on, 365:5
Paul as chosen vessel, 364:2
prayer and, 348A:4

Volume III/10
sin and freedom; Pelagian thought, 348A:3
Susanna’s chastity, 343:1
grain: final harvest; end of the world, 361:10
granaries: places set apart, 362:3
greed:
See also Hoarding
blind person, 399:10
cupidity makes man old, 350A:1
depths hidden from our eyes, 399:10
desire to be repaid double, like Job, 398:10
devil tempts with, 346B:4
division of the inheritance, 359:3
happiness of the rich, 359A:6
insatiable forever, 367:1
life lost on account of avarice, 344:7
old people, 391:2
poor man going into eternal fire, 346A:4,6
praising the Lord, 398:10
saying sharing means less for all, 399:6
suspicion of avarice, 351:5
grumbling, 346C:1

H

hair:
relative value of, 364:6
Samson, 400:8
happiness:
assurance, 346C:2
future life, 359A:6
implies not lacking anything, 359A:6
Lord, not money, confers bliss, 399:6
money does not bring bliss, 399:10
seeking, 346B:2
temporal: wealth, 359A:7,14
worldly, 359A:5
harlot, 349:3; 364:2,3,5
hate:
anger and, 387:2
brotherhood, 357:4
murderer, 387:2
healing: grateful to God for, 397:5
health:
lost by Job, 359A:6
of mind, 348:3
well-being in this world, 385:7,8
heart:
believing unto justice, 398:1
buried in earth (where treasure is), 345:5
contrite repentance, 351:12
faces look upward; hearts downward, 399:5
humility, 357:5
humbled; fear and trembling, 347:3
Jesus in hearts of believers, 362:9
lie, without charity, 365:1
lifted up = love God with whole heart, 399:5
prosperity corrupts, 359A:17
purified by faith, 346:2
tears of repentance, 346:2
where your treasure is. . ., 345:5; 389:4
heaven:
almos; store treasures in heaven, 390:1-2
banking treasure in, 345:3
blessed are the poor in spirit, 346A:6
blessed; persecuted on account of justice, 347:3
burden of wealth; and access to, 367:3
conditions for entering, 346A:4
contemplation of the truth, 362:30,31
everlasting blessedness, 368:6
everything is “on the right,” 398:11
eye has not seen. . ., 384:1
granary, 390:1
home country, 378:1
Jerusalem (heavenly), 346B:1
little ones, in spirit, 353:1
live so we can say: pay what you promised, 395:2
longing for, 344:4
man perfected in every respect, 362:31
never satisfied satisfaction, 362:29
parable of the scribe, 362:3
pledge of eternal life, 378:1
poor transfer our gifts to, 389:4
rich man entering, 346A:4,6
surpasses world’s promises, 346B:4
treasure found in a field, 399:2
treasure in, where no thief can get, 359A:14
true riches, 345:5
tirgnal daughters in, 354:9
wages; reward in, 382:1
what the kingdom can be bought for, 359A:12
works of mercy not needed in, 358A:2
Sermons 341-400

worth more than any patrimony, 345:5
heavens: glory of God, 359:1
heifer, 364:3
hell:
  chaff in, 376A:2
  earthly pains compared with, 397:4
  fear fire of gehenna, 349:7
  gate of; beginning of sin, 348B:3
  sins will perish with you, 388:2
Heraclius (deacon), 356:7
Hercules and Juno, 400:9
heresy (-ies; -etics):
  catching foxes, 364:4
  devil and poison of, 348A:5
  devil's work, 346B:4; 400:10
  emerged from Church, 398:14
  foretold, 346B:3
  hate peace, 357:3
  Samson, 364:4
  slandering the Church, 357:4
Herod, King, 373:2,3; 375:1
hidden places: saints in God's countenance,
  362:3
Hippo, deacon of, 356:6
hoarding:
  family duty as excuse for, 399:8
  old people, 391:2
holiness:
  clerical commitment, 355:6
  fear of losing, by pride, 354:4
Holy Innocents, 373:3; 375:1
Holy Spirit, 350A:3; 351:12; 352:2; 359:1;
  361:8, 14; 362:16; 365:3; 366:6;
  371:2; 372:2; 375C:7
  baptism in, 379:7
  comfort in difficulties, 363:2
  earnest of eternal life, 378:1
  effect of presence of, 378:1
  God, 398:13
  John the Baptist, 379:1
  life given to mortal bodies, 362:24
  promised, 365:4
  temple of, 398:13
honor: let man diminish, God increase,
  380:8
hope:
  accursed are those who hope in man,
  344:1
  Christian, 359A:1
  consolation, 396:1
  creator of heaven and earth, 358:3
  faith supported by, 359A:4
  for perishable things, 391:3
  place in Christ, not in man, 379:7
  resurrection of the dead, 361:2
  sluggishness and, 358A:2
  thing hoped for, 395:1
hospitality: bishops, 355:2
house: two meanings, 342:3
human beings:
  animals compared with, 341A:2
  consolation in, 361:1
  dominion over other creatures, 398:2
  face looking upward, 399:5
  four ways of fashioning, 370:1
  image of earthly/heavenly man, 362:17
  price of the Lord's incarnation, 371:4
  refusal to acknowledge status as, 341A:2
human body:
  See also Body and soul
  animated by the soul, 348:3
  authority over, 392:3
  constant renewal and refreshment, 362:11
  created by God, 398:13
  hating, 368:1
  mortal body called flesh, 362:24
  one member suffers, all suffer, 361:14
  parts in agreement, 400:8
  perish, weights down the soul, 351:3
  strength and energy, 362:11
  subject to decay, 362:17
human condition:
  afflictions and distress, 346C:1
  Christ the healer not to be blamed for,
  346A:8
  earthly; heavenly, 362:15
  fight: love of God vs love of the world,
  344:1
  Jesus as remedy for, 380:2
  men fell among thieves, 341A:1; 366:2
  painful healing, 346A:8
  struggle with flesh, devil, world, 344:1
  well-being in this world, 385:7,8
human nature:
  goodness; understanding, 365:2,3
  humankind; or Humans, See Human beings.
humility:
  See also Conceit; Pride
  beggar receiving gift, 389:3
  birth and death of Christ, 398:6
  confessing before the Church, 351:12
  exaltation not in temporal goods, 351:1

Volume III/10
Volume III/10

exhortation to, 354:5
fasting of the heart, 357:5
God reached by, 351:1
human being made into beast, 341A:2
imitation of Christ, 341A:1
Incarnation, 371:3
Jesus seeking little ones, 370:3
man humble in infirmity, 380:7
married persons vs chaste and proud, 354:4
no wishing people evil, 353:1
overcoming the devil, 351:6
practically the only Christian discipline, 351:4
refusal to be humbled, 351:7
run away, to God, 341A:3
sins erased by, 383:1
such is the kingdom of heaven, 353:1
thinking of others as excelling, 354:5
what have you that you have not received, 380:6; 391:5
whoever exalts himself, . ., 351:1
hunger:
  bodily renewal, 362:11
  justice as life's business, 400:1
husband and wife:
  See also Marriage
good example re chastity, 392:4,5
jealousy, 392:3
love, 385:6,8
Paul's instructions to wives, 392:3
sexual desires, 361:19
two in one flesh; the Church, 341:12
virtue; reputation, 343:5
hypocrites:
  common life, 356:14

I

ideas:
  perception, 341:2
idolatry, 362:23
image of God:
  gold compared with, 368:4
  mind cannot be comprehended, 398:2
imitation:
  exhortation to the newly baptized, 376A:2
morals of bad clergy, 351:11
immortality:
  hope for, 362:12
  mortal thing puts on, 362:21
promise of, 359:9
imperishability, 363:3
incarnation:
  came to earth, lifted earth to heaven, 395:2
  Christ came to save the lost, 382:2
  emptied himself, 341:4
  form of a servant, 341:4, 6; 344:3, 359:9;
  361:16,17; 362:16; 371:1;
  375B:5,6; 375C:4; 377:1; 380:3, 4
  God and man together, 341:11
  God humbled for sake of man, 371:3
  God's purpose for mankind, 371:2
  how God and man can be mixed together, 371:3
  a human that human beings might follow, 380:2
humility of Christ, 341A:1-2
Jesus brought divinity, took on mortality, 361:16,17
likeness of the flesh of sin, 375C:7
making humans into gods, 344:1
obedient unto death, 372:1
one spirit with the Word, 375B:4
paradoxes, 371:1
Son is subject to the Father, 371:2
two nativities of Christ, 371:1; 372:1
Word did not cease to be God, 341:3
Word was made flesh, 342:1,5; 362:13;
  369:2
Word of God, 375B:4
world did not know him, 342:3
infantes:
  exhortation to, 353:1-2
  temptation, 391:1,3
infidelity, 392:3
inheritance:
  coveting, 355:4
  division of, 358:2; 359:3,4
  earthly; lawsuits, 400:13
  Lord is my portion; no litigation, 359:4
  Lord's is not to be divided, 400:13
  sharing with Donatists, 358:5
iniquity, See Wickedness; Wrongdoing
injustice:
  insatiable greed, 367:1
innocence:
  boasting of good practices, 351:4
  model of holy infancy, 353:1
interest rate, 390:2
Isaiah:
  gifts of the Spirit, 347:2
Sermons 341-400

J

Jacob, 361:16

Januarius (priest), 355:3; 356:1,11

jars: places set apart, 362:3

jealousy: love, 357:1

Jerusalem:

Christ the foundation, 362:8

earthly/eternal, 363:3

home country, 346B:1

mother of us all, 346B:1

spiritual mountain, 347:2

Jesus:

See also Arians; Incarnation; Son of God; Son of Man; Word of God

alms given to Christ, 359A:11

ascension, See Ascension

bridegroom and giant, 372:2

choosing his apostles, 381:1

Christ as doctor; healing may be painful, 346A:8

Christ as God: our home country, 375C:5

church and, See Church

commands; promises, 382:1

creed says all that has to be said, 398:12

crucifixion, See below: Jesus: Crucifixion

death taken from us, he gave us life, 375B:5

descended into hell, 364:5

everlasting innocence, 375A:1

first place in our hearts, 362:9

fraternal concord in, 359:9

from his fullness we have all received, 380:7

God and man, at the same time, 341:3; 371:2,3; 379:2,3

grew, while John the Baptist diminished, 380:8

healer; Samaritan, 365:3

healing may be painful, 346A:8

heavenly man (no sin), 362:16

his own people did not receive him, 342:4

humble in glory, 380:7

humility, 341A:1-3; 375A:1

I will exalt you, Lord, 380:6

Jews and Christians contrasted, 375:1

John and, See John, Saint, A postle; John the Baptist

life-saver in torrent of our lives, 372:3

light of the mind, 366:5

light which enlightens every man..., 380:7

loved more than our dear ones, 349:7

loving and blessing him, 365:1

manna and Christ, 352:3,4

mediator and head of the Church, 341:1,4

mediator between God and humanity, 361:16

model: his death and resurrection, 344:7

mortality assumed to give us immortality, 361:16

name: every knee should bow, 380:5

obedient unto death, 354:9

one who descended also ascended, 362:16

only (!) Son of God, 398:3

parable of the soine, 362:3

parable: rich man and Lazarus, 367:1-3

parable: unjust steward, 359A:9-10,16

passing by, stopping, standing still, 349:6

passion, See below: Jesus: Passion and death

pastor and provider, 366:3

Paul: God and man, 341:4

physician, 374:3

poor, to make us rich, 375B:1

poor people and, See Poor

praised, to make Christians despair, 361:15

presence in beauty and divinity, 361:7

pre-A dam; pre-A braham, 375C:7

pre-eminence of, 380:6

Red Sea: baptism/blood of Christ, 353:2

resurrection, See Resurrection of Christ

rock rose, and became mountain, 352:5

rock was Christ (Paul), 352:3

Sadducees and, 362:18

Samaritan: guardian, 366:2

Samson’s deeds compared with, 364:5

seeking little ones, 370:3

sent as savior, 354:1

shepherd, 366:3

soul; heresies, 375B:7

stone of offense (Isaias), 352:5

sufferings endured by, 397:9

teaching his disciples, 362:5

touched by faith, 375C:6

touching his disciples, 362:5

true God and true man, 375A:2; 375C:7

true light, 379:5,6

Volume III/10
two births: one eternal, one in time, 380:2
understanding Christ in scripture, 341:1-13
unlawful to kill Christ, 364:6
whole Christ: Word, soul, flesh, 375B:6
woman touched hem of his garment, 375C:6
worldwide fame, 380:6

Jesus: crucifixion:
See also Jesus: passion and death
Christ's work to be done, 398:9
contrasts on the cross, 392:2
creed, 398:7
power of the nails, 365:5
priest is the victim, 342:1
rock struck by Moses; figurative meaning, 352:4
veil of temple torn, 352:6

Jesus: divinity:
emptied himself... , 361:16
equal to the Father, 341:4,8,6; 371:2; 398:3
first nativity, from the Father, 372:1
foretelling his own coming, 379:2
God: coequal and eternal, 341:1
growing in divinity, 380:6
heavenly Jerusalem, 362:8
hidden manner, 398:8
life events still present in the Word, 349:6
prophecies concerning, 346A:2
seated at Father's right hand, 398:11
transfiguration, 362:12; 371:2
wisdom of God, 347:3
Word equal to the Father, 341:12

Jesus: humanity:
beauty and strength, 372:2
birth and death, 398:6
body and soul, 375B:7
child recognized by Simeon, 370:3
our brother, 359:2
Photinus: only a man, 375C:5
true flesh, 362:13
Word remains forever, 362:7

Jesus: nativity:
See also Incarnation
all ages rejoice in, 370:2
all ages witness to, 370:4
awaited by the prophets, 370:3
everal begettting of the Word, 369:2
everal born in time, 369:1
exult for joy, 370:4
foretold by prophets, 371:1
fullness of time, 398:8
humble and sublime, 398:6
marvelous birth, 372:1
ox and ass, 375:1
pagans and prophecy, 373:4; 374:2
praise, love, and worship for, 369:3
shepherds and angels, 373:1
testimonies to birth, 369:1
two nativities, 371:1

Jesus: passion and death:
Christ suffered and died, 399:15
creed, 398:7
death of Christ made meaningless, 365:4
death swallowed up by, 362:22
deliver us from death, 361:14
events in life of Christ, 349:6
fruits of, 350:1
Gethsemane: feelings and fears, 344:3
how the Word could die, 375B:4
humiliation of, 398:2
I myself went to sleep... , 375B:2
imitate Christ praying: forgive them... , 382:5
Jesus died, and came back to life, 361:16
Jesus slew death by his death, 359:2
Jesus speaking as human, as divine, 375B:3
Jesus, sign of alien sins, 361:16
Jews killed Christ, 398:15
Jews' part in, 375B:2
John the Baptist's death and, 380:8
lamb (enduring), lion (devouring death), 375A:1
martyrs and, 375B:1
people who carried it out, 391:4
salvation for those who wish it so, 344:4
table of delight, 366:6
triumph over death, 375B:8
weigh whole earth's suffering against Christ's, 397:9
will of the Father, 361:16
willing to die; power not to die, 362:12

Jesus: types
camel as a type of, 346A:5
Moses as type of, 363:2
Samson as type of, 364:3
Solomon as figure of, 358:3
typified by obedience of Moses, 352:6

Jesus: Words of:
because I was hungry... , 389:5,6; 394:1
Sermons 341-400

behold, I am with you... 395:2
blessed are the peacemakers, 358:6
come, blessed of my Father, 394:1
Father, forgive them... 382:2,5; 386:2
Father is greater than I, 341:6; 371:2
I am the bread of life, 389:6
I am the living bread, 352:3; 364:3
I and the Father are one, 399:15
I have the power to lay down my life... 362:12; 375B:2,3
I will be with you... 366:5
I will make you fishers of men, 400:11
it is not the healthy... 351:10
let this cup pass... 344:3; 375B:3
my God, my God, why... 398:10
my soul is sorrowful... 375B:3
new commandment I give you... 350:1; 358:4
not everyone who says to me... 351:9
Peter, do you love me... 352:5
someone touched me, 375C:6
take up your pallet... 362:14
to everyone who asks, give, 350B:1; 350C:1; 359:3
way, truth, and life, 346:1,2
what do you wish done for you... 349:5
whatever the Father does... 398:5
whatever you did for one of the least... 389:4,6; 390:1
whoever eats this bread... 389:2
whoever exalts himself... 351:1
whoever loves father or mother... 349:7
Jesus Nave (A uses), 352:4; 382:1
Jews: ceremonies for the dead, 361:6
Christ not defeated by, 375B:2
conquered by Romans, 374:2
fasting, 400:7
first invited to wedding feast, 372:2
killed the performer of miracles, 370:3
milestones, 373:4
reject Christ, 342:4
repentance enjoined upon, 351:2
sabbath, 362:28
salvation from, 375:1
Job:
example of, 343:10; 359A:6
merits of martyrs and, 397:4
patience, 397:3,4; 398:10
poor man's patrimony, 359A:6
received double what he had lost, 398:10
represents good, married people, 397:1
say something against God, and die, 397:3
suffering as test, not punishment, 397:4
sufferings of, 397:3
this life as a trial, 351:3,4
tribulations accounted to him as justice, 397:3
victorious on his dunghill, 359A:6
wife of, another Eve, 397:3
wife's evil suggestion, 398:10
worship God for nothing, 385:5
John, Saint, Apostle:
wisdom of, 388:2
John the Baptist, Saint:
among those born of women... 379:1,3,6
baptism by, 379:7
birth preceded that of Jesus, 380:1
birthday, 380:1-8
bridegroom's friend, 379:3,7; 380:6
burning and shining lamp, 379:6
Christ compared with, 342:2
death of, compared with Christ's death, 380:8
difference between light and lamp, 379:5
garment of camel's hair, 346A:5
he is coming after me, 380:3,5
he was made before me, 380:5,6
his father deprived of speech, 379:1
I am not worthy... 379:6; 380:1,6
Jesus; testimony about each other, 379:3
Jesus took precedence over, in honor, 380:5
John was, and was not, light, 379:6
lamp, burning and shining, 380:7
lamp; not the true light, 380:7
light shining in darkness, 379:5
mountain, 379:7
mystery of, 379:1
necessary for him to grow... 380:6
passed people on to Christ, 379:7
repentance, 351:2
speaking in role of human race, 380:6
thought to be the Christ, 342:2
witness to the light, 342:2; 379:2,5;
380:7
Jonah, 361:20
Joseph of Egypt, 343:6,8; 359:3
Joseph, Saint: suspicions about Mary, 343:3
Joshua, 382:1

Volume III/10
Judas: despair, 352:8
judgment Day:
accountability: the unjust steward, 359A:11
charity the subject of, 388:1
Church as saving ark, 346A:3,4
come, blessed of my Father, 351:8;
354:2; 398:12
conversion before, 346A:7
everything will be judged, 388:1
generosity to the poor, 399:5
go into eternal fire..., 389:5; 398:12
John’s testimony, 362:25
judged for treatment of the poor, 345:4
kindhearted father as judge, 359A:11
last trumpet, 362:20
punishment reserved for the wicked, 397:2
receive the kingdom..., 346:1
redemption from the second death, 344:4
resurrection of life; of judgment, 362:26
take possession of the kingdom, 399:5
we shall be changed, 362:19
when you failed to do it for one of least, 399:8
with the measure you mete out..., 367:2
just man:
Abraham deals with God to spare the
city, 397:2,5
human standards, 397:5
praying standing up, 386:2
justice:
attribute of God, 341:9
courage; hunger and thirst for justice, 347:3
devil and youth, 391:3
Epicurean philosophy, 348:3
fasting and, 400:7
filled with (in heaven), 400:1
God seeking those with divine standards, 397:2
heaven for those persecuted for justice’s sake, 347:3
hunger and thirst for, 400:1
idea of, 341:2
observe, if wisdom is desired, 347:1
paths, Christian life, 366:4
ransom from the second death, 344:4
resurrection according to the spirit, 362:24
K
kindred: love of, 385:2
kingdom of God:
always being bought; always for sale, 359A:12
entering; salvation, 351:8
flesh and blood will not possess, 351:8
Paul on those who will not possess, 351:8
same for married and virginal chastity, 343:4
kingdom of heaven, See Heaven
knowledge:
gift of the Spirit, 347:3
puffed up, 354:6
unable to express, 362:4
L
laity: daily sin and repentance, 351:5
lamp: putting it under a bushel, 379:6
last day, See Judgment day.
laughter, 351:5
law (Mosaic; O.T.):
charity, the fullness of, 350:1
depends on the two great commandments, 350A:1
fulfillment in charity, 399:5
why the law was given, 351:1
lawsuits and litigation, 351:5; 400:13
Lazarus and the rich man (parable), 367:1-3
Lazarus (brother of Martha and Mary):
loosed; raised up, 352:8
rose and died, 398:9,17
leaders: Noah represents, 397:1
leaves, 361:11
legacies:
Augustine’s policy, 355:4
Boniface (case), 355:5
wrangling over, 355:3
leisure: heavenly man, 362:31
Leporius (priest), 356:10
lethargy: old man in, 400:12
life:
See also Christian life
all in this world passes, 359:9
being born; born again, 376A:1
cycles, 361:10
desires matter more than living well, 345:7
Sermons 341-400

eat/drink; this life is the only one, 361:1,4,5,7,8,14,18,21
efforts to live a few more days, 344:5; 345:2
exile from the Lord, 362:4
finding, in order to lose, 344:6
four ways for humans to come to exist,
370:1
gathering and sowing (analogy), 344:6
hunger and thirst for justice in, 400:1
journey through, 346B:1-4; 363:3
longing to see good days, 346C:2
losing, in order to find, 344:6,7
loving death more than life, 399:13,15
short; long, 396:1
strangers in this world, 359A:2
temporal, valued so highly, 345:2
this life is death, compared to eternal life, 346:1
torrent; Christ as life-saver, 372:3
trial and temptation (Job), 359A:6
walking by faith, 351:3
whoever loses, . . , 344:7
light:
darkness (sinner) does not comprehend, 342:1,2
John the Baptist, 342:2
money and, 399:10
you were once darkness. . ., 380:7
Lord’s Prayer:
See also Forgiveness of sin
forgive us our debts, . . , 352:7; 383:1
Our Father = brotherhood, 357:4
pray sincerely: forgive me as I forgive, 386:1
love:
See also charity
anger and, 387:2
animals, 385:2
bad way: neglecting God, 344:2
beautiful, 365:1
blessedness and, 399:6
bringing Catholics and Donatists together, 358:4
charity the subject of last judgment, 388:1
Church more than parent, 344:2
covers grave sins, with change of behavior, 388:2
covers multitude of sins, 387:3
creatures; tear your heart from, 385:5
desire or sight, 359A:2
each page of scripture tells of, 350A:1,3
efforts for longer earthly life, 344:5; 345:2
eliminating pain of death, 344:3
fine appearance is dead without love, 365:1
God first; then self; then neighbor, 368:5
grace of charity, 349:1
growth; perfection, 368:4
human love can be bad or good, 385:1
iniquity: hating one’s own soul, 368:9
jealousy, 357:1
kindles hope, 359A:4
lawful human kinds of, 349:2,4
lawful; various grades, 385:2
looks to stop sins being committed, 383:1
love me, and you have me, 357:3
love people on account of God, 385:4
many souls made into one; early church, 398:4
motives, 368:4
multiple roles of, 350:3
mutual love is not enough, 386:1
new commandment, 350:1; 358:4; 400:8
new covenant, 350A:2
objects lower than the person, 368:4
old man, 385:4
order of true charity, 368:5
peace, 357:2
perfect charity casts out fear, 348:1-2; 385:1
perfected by contemplation, 359A:4
possesses length and breadth of scripture, 350:2
poured out in our hearts, 358:4; 378:1
reaching the perfection of, 368:5
right kind must drive out wrong kind, 368:3
right order; progress, 368:4
road of Christian life, 346B:2
something which you can’t see, 385:4
summary and shortened word:
commandments, 399:3
three sorts of charity, 349:1
two greatest commandments, 350A:1
two paths; one road, 366:4
unlawful human love, 349:3
unlawful; incompatible with divine love, 349:4

Volume III/10
whoever loves his soul, . . ., 368:1-5
whole scripture teaching in one word, 350:1
wish to love? love wisdom, 391:5
wishing object to be safe and well, 385:6
love of God:
  bringing love of harlot into your heart with, 349:4
  Christ to be loved more than our dear ones, 349:7
divine charity, 349:4
exhortation to love Christ, 349:5
fear of God and, 348:1-4
fight: love of God vs love of the world, 344:1
forsake creator for creature is adultery, 385:6
freely is God to be loved, 385:4, 6
God to be loved more than parents, 344:2
love me as much as you love money, 399:11
love one I cannot see, 385:4
only God is loved in other human beings, 385:3
pray for this love to be given, 349:5
reward as motive, 385:5
whoever loves father or mother . . ., 344:2
whole heart, soul, and mind, 348:2
love of neighbor:
  begins with self, 368:4
  concord with Donatists, 359:9
  correct your love, or eschew all company, 399:4
enough for fulfillment of the law, 399:5
envy and, 399:7
hating your brother; not loving yourself, 387:2
if I speak with the tongues . . ., 350:3
life for one’s friend, 385:8
love of self and, 348:2
love one another, 385:1-9
two wings of charity, 352:7
understanding of term neighbor, 399:3
upright kind of love, 348:2
your neighbor as yourself, 385:1; 387:2; 399:3-5
Lucifer, 394:1
lust, 343:7; 365:5
husbands, 392:5
John the Baptist, 380:8
trample on; desire eternal life, 346B:4

M
M agi, 373:1-5; 374:1-3; 375:1
M ammon of iniquity, 359A:10-11, 13, 15
man, See human; temple of God
M ani, 364:4
M anichees, 375C:3; 400:4
manna:
  figure of Christ, 352:3, 4
unable to free from death, 352:3
marriage:
  See also Husband and wife
  chastity in, 343:4
  conjugal rights, 354A:1
  continence, 394:4
  lawful love, 385:2
  married couples, 392:1-6
  moderation in sexual relations, 351:5
  post-resurrection, 362:18
  time is short; world is passing, 346A:6
married people: Job represents, 397:1
married women:
  rejoice, Elizabeth, 370:2
  Susanna’s example, 343:4, 5
martyrs:
  confession of faith, 394:1
  death by wild beasts, 399:13
  follow behavior of, 351:11
  holy innocents, 373:3; 375:1
  hope in God, 344:1
  indifference to temporal things, 345:1
  love of their souls, 368:3
  merits; Job, 397:4
  Perpetua and Felicity, 394:1
  precious in eyes of the Lord, 399:13
  repaid Christ’s dying for them, 375B:1,2
  unless the Lord had been in us . . ., 375B:1
women at Thuburbo, 345:1, 6
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
  Christ took flesh from, 375B:5
  descended from Adam, 386:2, 16
  example for women, 391:6
  saved from false suspicions, 343:3
Mary Magdalen: Mary, Rabboni, 375C:1-3
Maximian (Donatist convert), 360:1
medicine: well-being in this world, 385:7
meek: beatitude, 347:3
meekness: dealing with Donatists, 357:4
men: chastity, 343:7

Sermons 341-400
Sermons 341-400

mercy:
  beatitude, 347:3
  before/behind us, through life, 366:7
  blessed are the merciful, 389:5
  God spared city of Rome, 397:6
  judgment and mercy, 359A:11
  offering a sacrifice and, 386:1
  paths of justice, 366:4
  rich man and Lazarus, 367:2
  share in others' sorrows, 358A:1
  sinners running from mercy of God, 381:1
  staff of, 366:6
  value of, 358A:1-2

merit:
  conceit over, 366:2
  works of mercy, 389:6

Messiah:
  miracles, 380:2
  necessary that his coming be foretold, 380:2

metropolis (the word), 346B:1

mind:
  corruption, 341:5
  food for, 400:2
  miracles: messiah, 380:2
  moderation, 400:6
  monastery: established by Augustine (bishop), 355:2
  monastic life: God as common estate of, 355:2

money:
  See also Wealth
  dishonestly made, 359A:15
  happiness and, 399:6,10
  love of, 399:4; 399:11
  moneylender to God, 350B:1; 350C:1; 390:2
  moon, 361:10

moral conditions:
  bad conversations as corrupting, 399:9
  superfluous luxuries; pleasures, 346A:7

mortality:
  See also Death
  evil condition of, 347:3
  human body, 375B:7
  liability to perish, 351:3
  sin as origin of, 361:17
  skins used by Adam and Eve, 362:11
  Moses: burning bush, 362:18

  Christ typified by obedience of, 352:6
  dies on the mountain; figurative meaning, 352:5
  doubting re water from rock, 352:4
  exodus, 363:4
  old covenant, 350A:2
  praying with arms outstretched, 352:6; 363:3; 382:1
  servant of God, 352:3
  spoke through veil, 352:6
  type of Christ, 363:2

mountain:
  Moses dying; Christ (rock) rising, 352:5
  mourning: beatitude, 347:3

mystical Body:
  bride and bridegroom, 341:11
  Christ the head, 341:4
  head ascended; body will follow, 395:2
  holy people, royal priesthood, 351:7

nature: examples of resurrection in,
  361:9-11

Nebuchadnezzar, King, 343:2; 389:3
needle: camel going through eye of, 346A:5
neighbors, 399:3,4
new covenant: foretold in figures or symbols, 350A:2

New Testament: charity prefigured in the Old, 350A:2
Nineveh, 346A:3; 351:12; 361:20
Noah: represents good leaders, 397:1
Noah’s ark, 346A:3; 361:19,21; 373:4
Novatus, 400:11

obedience: Christ’s work and reward, 398:9
old age: temptations in, 391:2
old man:
  lethargy, 400:12
  love of, 385:4

Old Testament:
  N.T. charity prefigured in, 350A:2
original sin:
  See also Adam and Eve
  contracted from parents, 362:16
  effects, 398:2
  lust against the flesh, 400:5
  remission of, 351:2

Volume III/10
Volume III/10

seeds of death, 391:1
Our Father, See Lord's Prayer.
overeating, 351:5
P
pagans:
devil and, 400:10
fasting, 400:7
resurrection and, 361:14
scoff at resurrection idea, 361:4
sin and Christians, 352:9
unity, 400:9
pain:
decay and, 362:23
free of, 348:3
temporal and eternal, 397:4
parable:
man clothed in purple and fine linen, 345:1
paradise: house of the Lord, 366:8
pardon, See Forgiveness
parents:
angry with children, 387:2
begetting children, 369:2
God to be loved more than, 344:2
passion of Christ, See Jesus: Passion and death
passions: perishable things, 391:3
pastures: words of God as, 366:3
patience:
enduring earthly happiness, 359A:7
gaining possession of our souls, 359A:7
imitation of Christ, 353:2
Job, 397:3, 398:10
necessity of, 359A:2
perfect work, 392:9
sermon at Tuneba, 359A:1-17
tolerating the present, 359A:17
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
conversion of, 360:1
expenses, 351:5
friend of the bridegroom, 379:7
on hope, 395:1
I am the last/least... , 400:1
interpretation of scripture, 363:1
not yet perfect, 400:1.2
Pelagian thought and, 348A:3
penance:
changing one's life, 393:1
during time of good health, 393:1
life before and after, 393:1
public, 351:9
reconciled at last moment, 393:1
sexual sins, 392:2
penitents:
change your behavior, 392:6
unworthy communions, 352:8
Pentecost:
apostles after, 365:4
earnest of eternal life, 378:1
fasting after, 357:5
Peter, the apostles, 352:2
people of God:
overcome all things, 363:3
perfection:
if you wish to be perfect... , 346A:4
not one just man to be found, 397:5
Paul's striving for, 400:1.2
Perpetua, Saint, 394:1
Peter, Saint, Apostle:
buying the kingdom, 359A:12
courage from risen Christ, 352:5
doubt re Christ crucified, 352:4
I have prayed that your faith fail not, 348A:2
preaching, after Pentecost, 352:2
repentance, 351:12
when you get old... , 344:3
you are the Christ... , 375C:5
Peter and Paul, Saints: birthday of, 381:1
comparisons, 381:1
did not suffer on same day, 381:1

Sermons 341-400
Sermons 341-400

philosophers: know all, but God, 365:2
Phocas, Saint, 375B:6
Photinus, 375C:5; 400:11
piety: gift of the Spirit, 347:3
pity: Stoics, 348:3
places set apart; hidden, 362:3
pleasure:
earthly delights, 400:2
justice and, 348:3
love of, 348:3
moderate and temperate, 400:6
pledge (the word), 378:1
plow/land: examples of resurrection in, 361:9
poor:
See also Alms; Rich
Augsutine’s clergy, 355:6
bishops and so many needy, 355:5
buying the kingdom of heaven, 359A:12
Christ begs in the poor needy, 345:2
conceit, 346A:6
doing ourselves a favor by helping, 389:3
find Christ on earth in the poor, 345:4
Job: poor man’s patrimony, 359A:6
judgment on generosity to, 389:5
Lord, when did we see you hungry, . . ., 345:4
losing for giving to the poor, 376A:3
many are on fire with greed, 346A:4,6
porters to transfer our wealth to heaven, 389:4
poverty is no guarantee of heaven, 346A:6
praises of the rich, 345:1
true riches, 345:5
poor in spirit:
blessed, 346A:6
gifts of the Spirit and, 347:3
possessions:
See also Property; Wealth
have nothing that is superfluous, 350A:4
hold on to what you can’t leave behind, 359:2
love of, 357:2
praise of God:
A/leluia, 362:29
contemplation; heaven, 362:30
eternal life, 362:31
insincere, 365:1
mouth, not from the heart, 365:1
my guide, my protection, 366:2
patience, not avarice, as ground of, 398:10
prayer:
almsgiving = prayers heard more readily, 357:5
asking for what God himself commends, 354:7
cry out to the Lord, 351:12
doing nothing; leaving all to God, 348A:4
granted for what God thinks is important, 354:7
helping bishops, 358:6
Jesus prays in and for us now, 382:2
knocking on the Lord’s door, 389:2
Pelagian heresy, 348A:1
role of grace in, 348A:4
standing up; kneeling (St Stephen), 386:2
presence of God: living in, 396:1
pride:
beggar receiving gift, 389:3
beginning of every sin, 346B:3
diabolical vice, 399:7
effects, 353:1
envy and, 353:1; 354:5,6
fall of angels; and of religious, 354:9
fear of losing holiness, 354:4
healing, 380:2
high things: cannot hide, 351:1
reluctance to confess sins, 351:6
salutary examples, 381:1
thinking highly of one’s self, 348:2
treatment of others and, 353:2
virginity and holiness, 354:9
wishing people well, 399:7
priests: Augustine’s community, 356:9
See also Common life
promised land:
Moses would not lead to, 352:4,5
symbolic, 352:4,5
property:
litigation, 358:2
private property, 355:6; 356:4,5,7,10,11
prophets:
depend on the two great commandments, 350A:1
many were killed, 397:2
salvation as purpose of, 371:2
Word of God speaking through, 346A:2
prosperity:
envy, 399:7
heart corrupted by, 359A:17
prostitute, 349:2
providence:
  confidence in God’s protection, 366:2
  good things received; endure bad things, 398:10
  good things, bad things, from the Lord, 397:3
prudence: parable: unjust steward, 359A:10
public penance: major sins, 392:2; 398:15
purehearted:
  blessed, 346:2
  gift of understanding, 347:3
quarreling among Christians, 400:10
ransom: first/second deaths, 344:4
rebuke: wise man or fool, 392:5
reconciliation: fasting and, 400:7
Red Sea:
  baptism of Christ; his blood, 353:2
  crossing, followed by long journey, 352:6
  Egyptians, 363:2
type of baptism, 352:3; 363:2
redemption:
  Esau and Jacob (analogy), 361:16
  God so loved the world, ... 375B:6
  humans freed from sin, 398:2
  innocent blood, price of our souls, 341A:1
  means of dying taken from man, 375B:5
  ransom from the second death, 344:4
  Samson’s death as type of, 364:6
regret, See Repentance
religion: people must not follow another
   human being, 380:2
religious life:
  See also Common life
  continence; chastity, 354:3
criticisms by the world, 354:3
good that a proud religious fall, 354:9
  humble/proud religious, 354:8
reconciliation:
  contrite and humble heart, 351:12
daily practice, 351:4; 352:7
daily sins, 351:5,6
death, 352:8
deeds of charity as fruits of, 389:6
died, and come back to life, 388:2
distress of sorrow, 352:2
  hearts crushed, 347:2
  I have sinned, ..., 393:1
  necessary approach to baptism, 352:2
Ninevites, 361:20
patience of God leading to, 351:7,12
penance for grave sins, 351:7
  produce fruits proper to, 389:6
Psalm 51, 352:1
regret for perishable life, 351:3
sacraments of the faithful, 351:2
sorrow and, 351:1
  three kinds, 351:2
  true penance, 393:1
  value of, 351:1-12; 352:1-9
wrath of God appeased, 361:19
reproving self and others, 387:1,2
reputation:
  conscience and neglect of, 355:1
  protection of, 356:1
responsibility:
  one to whom more is entrusted, 359A:11
resurrection of Christ:
  Christ rose and ascended, 362:10
  Christ rose in his human body, 361:17;
  362:10,14
  Christ the lion, devouring death, 375A:1
  hope for our resurrection, 362:17
  model for his body, the Church, 361:3
  objections on the dead returning, 361:8
  readiness to be a human being, 375B:4
  reward of Christ’s work, 398:9
  without death, 398:9
resurrection of Christ: appearances after:
  Christ entered room through closed
doors, 376:1
  Christ was handled/felt by disciples,
  359A:3; 361:8
do not touch me, ..., 375C:1,4,5
  doubting Thomas, 361:13
  feel and see, ..., 362:14
  reality of the body, 362:12
  seeing Christ eating, with your vision,
  362:11
  Thomas’ touching, 375C:1,2,4
  thought they were seeing a spirit, 375C:3
touch and see, ..., 375C:2
  touch me as I ascend, 375C:4
Sermons 341-400

we have seen the Lord... 375C:1
why are thoughts coming up... 375C:3
wounds, 375C:2
resurrection of the body (- of the dead):
against the claim: only spiritual, 362:22
bestowal of honor and glory, 344:1
blessed are those who believe, 361:13
creed, 398:17
death hearing voice of Son of God,
362:26
denied by nonchristians, 361:3
Egyptian belief in, 361:12
end of the world, 362:25
ensure the way you rise again, 344:4
equal to the angels, 341:11
examples from nature, 361:9-11
faith in, 362:6
flesh and spirit, 362:24-25
flesh in same form in which Christ appeared, 362:27
flesh will be carried by soul, 362:14
future life, 361:2
head and members, 362:27
heavenly body, 362:21
hope for, 362:10,26
idea that only Christ can rise again,
361:14,17
imperishability, 362:18,19,22,24
individual differences, 343:4
Jewish belief in, 362:18
John’s gospel, 362:25-26
kind of life to which the dead rise,
361:2,3,19
let us fast and pray, 361:21
life of the angels, 362:27,28
life of the just after, 362:1
many think only the soul will rise, 362:6
marriage and, 362:18
nature of the change, 362:21
not all shall be changed, 362:19,21
objection: flesh and blood shall not gain... 362:13-21,24
omnipotence of God, 361:18
Paul on life after, 362:19,24
peace and quiet, 362:28
perfect health, 348:3
previously risen in spirit, through faith,
362:23
promised to all, 361:17
promised to Christians, 362:10
punishment of the wicked, 362:23
relation of flesh to soul, 362:14
Sadducees, 362:18
spiritual and bodily, 362:24
time; twinkling of an eye, 362:20
truth of the doctrine, 361:2,4
what sort of bodies... 362:7
what will not be in life of, 362:28
wicked and the good, 362:23
resurrection according to the spirit,
362:24-25
rich and poor:
See also Poor
gaining rich through another’s poverty,
359:2
meeting on road of life, 350B:1
mutual need, 367:3
one overloaded; one traveling light,
399:8
walking road of life together, 399:7
rich people:
conceit, 346A:6
despair: camel and eye of needle,
346A:5
entering the kingdom of heaven,
346A:4,6
find riches and lose repose, 345:5
happiness; greed, 359A:6
hoping in this world, 350A:4
lay hold of true life (Paul), 346:1
parable of man clothed in fine linen,
345:1
parable: Lazarus and the rich man,
367:1-3
parable: many crops; build new barns,
359:3
Paul’s letter to Timothy, 345:1
possess nothing, without God, 350B:1;
350C:1
security lacking, 359A:6
rich young man:
sell; give all to the poor, 389:4
riches, See Wealth
right hand of God, 398:11
rock: water from; Moses’ doubting; figure,
352:4
Rome:
chastised rather than destroyed, 397:8
city spared in saints who died there,
397:6
correction by inspiring terror, 397:8
sack of city, 397:1-9
rule of faith: called the symbol, 398:1

Volume III/10
sabbath, 362:28
sacraments of the faithful, 351:2
sacrifice: mercy and, 386:1
Sadducees, 362:18,27
sadness: comfort, 354:9
saints:
  freedom from perishable decay, 362:23
  you will hide them . . ., 362:3
salvation:
  Christ as doctor; healing may be painful, 346A:8
  Christ as helper and protector for, 363:2
  Christ building his Church (ark), 361:21
  Church as ark, 346A:3,4,6
  cup of martyrdom, 375B:2
  entering the kingdom of God, 351:8
  Jesus the savior, 370:3
  persevering in iniquity, 351:8
  purpose of law, prophets, incarnation, 371:2
Samaritan: Jesus as guardian, 366:2
Samson:
  blinding, 364:6
  Christ represented by, 364:3
  Christ’s deeds compared with, 364:5
  heretics represented by companion, 364:4
  image of the cross, 364:6
  mystery revealed by Christ, 364:6
  prophetic, 364:2
  riddle; just man, 364:2,3
  strength in his hair, 364:2,6
Saul:
  See also Paul; Saint; Stephen, Saint
  cruel persecutor of the Church, 345:4
  raised up as Paul, 382:4
  stoning of Stephen, 382:4
  why are you persecuting me . . ., 341:12;
    345:4; 361:14; 362:18; 382:4;
    395:2
scandal:
  gift of counsel, 347:3
  persevere through, 346C:1
  public penance, 351:9
  schism, 346B:3,4; 358:4; 400:9
  scripture, See Bible.
Scylla, 365:5
seasons:
  life cycles, 361:10
  spiritual life, 350A:3
security: rich people lacking in, 359A:6
self:
  love self first; then neighbor as yourself, 399:5
  rightly loving one’s self, 348:2
  self-control, 348A:4
  God-given, 348A:4
  self-indulgence, 365:3
  service of God: prepare for trials and
temptions, 397:3
Severus, Bishop, 356:3
Severus (deacon), 356:5
sex:
  earthly desire, 362:16
  moderation; married people, 351:5
  unlawful relations, 392:2
shame: love of money, 399:11
shepherd: giving life for his sheep, 366:3
shipwreck: fund to insure against, 355:5
Sicca Venerea, 348A:1
sight and faith, 346:2
silence: God praised by, 341:9
Simeon, 370:2,3,4
sin:
  beginning: gate of hell; pride, 346B:3
  boasting of tamed body, 351:4
  cannot be without, 366:1
  carelessness in avoiding, 351:6
  charity and future sins, 383:1
  children of God do not sin, 351:6
  confessed even by a just man, 397:5
  correct self before judgment day, 346A:7
  covered by almsgiving, 389:5
  daily repentance, 351:5,6
  daily wash of light sins, 388:2
  deserves death, 361:16
  despair, 352:9
  devil and the baptized, 363:2
  disgraceful for Christians to sin, 371:4
  earthly desires, 362:16
  engulfed in sins, 365:5
  fear of eternal death, 399:13
  fighting for the devil, 363:2
  forgiving, See Forgiveness of sin.
Sermons 341-400

grace and power to avoid; Pelagian, 348A:3
grateful for God's healing, 397:5
glorying in the Church, 388:2
guard against, 359:9
if we say we have no sin... 388:2
in iniquity was I conceived, 391:1
knowledge of evil of past sins, 347:3
love covers multitude of, 387:3
no dread for past sins, 353:2
or one is clean in God's sight, 351:2
no one is allowed in Gehenna, 388:2
pagan calumny against the Church, 352:9
redeemed by almsgiving, 350B:1; 350C:1
repentance for grave sins, 351:7; 352:8
Samson and, 364:3
sealed as in a bag (Job), 397:4
shadow of death, 366:5
soul turned from God by, 366:4
soul without sin, 397:5
venial; life cannot be free of, 398:15
war on God, 365:1
works of the flesh, 351:9

sinners:
Christ came to save, 381:1
darkness does not comprehend light, 342:1
running away from God's mercy, 381:1
suffering; blaming God, 341A:3
threatened, 352:9
skins: suggest death, 362:11
slander: enduring, 357:4
slave(s):
Augustine's community, 356:3,7
entrusting gold to, 345:3
masters and, 361:21
Valued and chastised, 400:5
sleeping; death, 361:10
snakes, 385:2
Sodom: destruction of, 397:2,6,8
Solomon, King, 398:13
figure of Christ, 358:3
Son of God:
coeternal with the Father, 398:8
died and was buried, 375B:6
Father begot what he himself is, 398:3
form of a servant, 362:16
omnipotent, 398:5
Son of Man:
authority to judge, 362:26
domicile remains in heaven, 362:16
less than the Father, 341:6
sons of God, See Children of God.
sorrow:
repentance and, 351:1
share in, by mercy, 358A:1
soul:
See also Body and soul
alive when animated by God, 348:3
fear of losing, 368:1
hating, 368:1
thinking as giving birth, 369:2
whoever loves his soul will lose it, 368:1-5
wrong kind of love for, 368:2
sowing: reward, 358A:2
sparrow finds a house, 343:1
sparrows, 385:2
Spirit:
death according to the, 362:23
flesh and (Manichee), 400:4
marriage with flesh, 400:5
resurrection according to the, 362:23

spiritual life:
See also Christian life; gifts of the Holy Spirit; grace; heart; love; prayer
analogy of seasons, 350A:3
analogy: seed and harvest, 362:2
bread for our souls, 389:1
delight in higher life, 400:2
gifts of the Holy Spirit, 347:2
giving up evil = a kind of death, 362:23
living in God's presence, 396:1
put to death by deeds of flesh, 362:14
role of fear of God in, 348:1
trials in service of God, 397:3
when the unclean spirit goes out..., 385:9
starvation, 362:11
Stephen, Saint, 375B:6
do not hold this against them..., 382:3; 386:2
example of, 382:3
first martyr, 382:1-5
forgiveness by, 386:2
prayer won Paul's conversion, 382:4
Solomon built... 398:13
Stoics, 348:3
strength:
Volume III/10

arms of God’s servant Moses, 352:6
Samson, 364:2,6
seat of; loins, 365:5
stretch: remove wrinkles, 341:13
suffering:
afflictions and distresses of world, 346C:1-2
blaming God, 341A:2
complaints; blaming Christ/Christians, 346A:8
corrected by, 397:4
hard times, 346C:1
let patience have a perfect work, 397:9
poor man at rich man’s gate, 397:5
sharing the afflictions of Christ, 341:12
temporal reward, 398:10
trials and temptations, 343:9
undeserved; just person, 397:9
unwilling to be cured (by Christ), 346A:8
what have I done to you [God], 341A:2,3
what we suffer; how we suffer, 397:3
sun: analogy of the Trinity, 384:2
sunlight: money and, 399:10
Susanna:
chastity and fidelity, 343:1-2; 359:3
example for married women, 343:5; 391:6
suspicions: evil- right-minded, 343:3
symbol (rule of faith), 398:1
Tartarus, 367:1
tax-collector: humility, 351:1
temple of God:
charity dwelling in; 350:1
holy, 363:3
Holy Spirit in the baptized, 398:13
wrongdoing; effects, 353:2
temporal goods:
See also Rich people; Wealth
concord between brothers, 359:2
Daniel’s example, 391:5
exaltation of the humble, 351:1
happiness, 359A:5
hopes on fleeting things, 345:7
martyrs and contempt of, 345:1-7
more danger than distinction, 354:2
pray for, in moderation, 354:7
prosperity of godless people, 350A:3
repeal to part with a ruined world, 345:7
renouncing the world, 368:3
road of Christian living, 346B:4
stop loving earthly prosperity, 346A:8
wealth; abundance, 359A:14
why people go to school, 399:12
temporal life, See Life
temptation:
bead what one is able to bear, 397:9
cure of the cross, 353:2
devil uses fear or greed, 346B:4
lead bad lives now, 341:6
no age free from, 391:1,3
Pelagian heresy, 348A:1
watch and pray. . ., 348A:2
why devil tempts us, 385:5
terror: God spared city of Constantinople, 397:7
theft; resort to, for giving alms, 359A:13
Theodosius, Emperor, 392:2
Thomas, Saint: Apostle, 361:13; 375C:1,2,4
threshing floor, 364:3; 397:9; 400:10
Thuburbo, women martyred at, 345:1,6
time:
coeval; coeval, 398:8
divisions, 362:20
graces: unjust steward, 359A:16
tolerance: necessity of, 359A:5
tombs: dead persons’ ashes, 361:12
treasure:
found in a field, 399:2
where your heart is, 389:4
tree:
every tree that does not bear. . ., 389:6
full of leaves; full of fruit, 342:4
life cycles, 361:11
wild olive, 342:4
trials: prepare your soul for, 397:3
Trinity:
See also God
Arian heresy, 384:1-3
Christ in, 375C:7
divine unity is three, 384:1
equality in all qualities, 341:8,10
Father and Son glorified, 380:7
inexpressible and boundless, 384:1
procession of Father and Son, 369:2
scriptural texts supporting, 384:3
Son equal to the Father, 341:10
Word in, 375A:2
truth:
  enmity from proclaiming, 392:3
  finding fault with, 387:1
  food in heaven, 362:30
  paths of justice, 366:4
  victory of, is charity, 358:1
  Word of God, 346A:2
turtle-dove finds a nest, 343:1
twelve: totality, 351:8

unbelief:
  blind Samson, 364:6
  darkness is unbelievers, 342:1
  death as, 344:6
  imitating fathers who ate manna and died, 352:3
  night seeking night (Thomas), 375C:2
  resurrection to judgment, 362:26
understanding:
  bless the Lord, 365:2,3
  commanded to understand, 348A:4
  from nature = heresy, 365:2
  gift from nature, 365:4,5
  gift of grace, 365:2
  gift of the Holy Spirit, 365:4
  hearts cleansed of false values, 347:3
  learning the commandments, 348A:4
  seeking and obtaining, 365:5
  wisdom reached from, 347:2
ungodliness: conversion, 346A:3
union with Christ: ascension, 395:2
unity:
  body of Christ, 400:8
  bringing Catholics and Donatists together, 358:4
  brothers in the inheritance, 358:4
  early church, 398:4
  evangelization and, 400:10
  joy in its coming, 357:3
  litigation with Donatists, 359:4
  pagans and schismatics, 400:9
  property: concord between brothers, 359:2
  unjust steward (parable), 359A:9-10,16
urbanus, Bishop, 348A:1
usury: mammon of iniquity, 359A:15

vale of tears, 347:2
Valerius, 355:2
values:
  See also greed; temporal goods; Wealth
  all flesh is grass, 341A:1
  inner prosperity, 354:2
  inwardly rich, 359A:6
  learn to go for true riches, 345:5
  love of self, 368:4
  turn thoughts from earth to heaven, 350A:4
vanity: improper love, 348:2
vice: chain of effects, 353:1
victoriana, farm at, 356:15
virgin birth:
  desired event, 370:3
  Eve’s sin and, 369:3
  sublimity of, 398:6
virginity:
  mind and body, 341:5
  pride and holiness of, 354:9
  virgins, dedicated, 355:6
virtue:
  good wives, 343:5
  splendor of, 343:9
  vows: holy commitment, 355:6
Vulcan and Mars, 400:9
waking up, 361:10
war: horrors, 346C:1
water: rock struck by Moses; figurative meaning, 352:4
wealth:
  See also Greed; Money; Rich
  burying in earth; depositing in heaven, 345:3
  entrusting gold to slave (God), 345:3
  exclusion from heaven, 346A:6
  expended to live longer, 344:5
  hard labor for love of money, 399:11
  heart is where treasure is, 345:5
  mammon means gold, 359A:13
  overloaded rich man, 399:8
  Psalm 144: true/false riches, 359A:14
  rich man and Lazarus, 367:2; 399:13
  rich will not take it with him, 359:3
  riches sought for sake of life, 345:2
true wealth vs mammon of iniquity, 359A:13
truly rich = rich inwardly, 359A:6
uncertainty of riches (Paul), 345:1
wickedness:
bad conversations corrupt morality, 399:9
blinded by, 391:4
Christians become devil’s angels, 376A:3
duty of correction, 387:1
loving iniquity = hating yourself, 399:4
loving your soul in iniquity, 368:2
widow:
two coins bought the whole kingdom, 359A:12
rejoice; Anna, 370:2
wife, See Husband and wife
will:
Christ could be tempted, 344:3
freedom of choice, 348A:3,4
wisdom:
blessed are the peacemakers, 347:3
choose instruction, and keep finding... 391:6
disposes all things sweetly, 370:3
fear of God, 347:1
found by those who love her, 399:11
love of; by young men, 391:5
observe justice, 347:1
preference for, 343:9
self-control, 365:3
unfailing light of the mind, 347:2
witness-bearing:
confessing from and in the truth, 362:7
I will exalt you, Lord, 380:6
we are proof that gospel is true, 346B:3
witnesses, See False witnesses
women:
examples for young women, 391:6
martyred at Thuburbo, 345:1,6
Susanna, See Susanna
Word of God (second person of the Trinity):
abides forever, 341A:1; 391:6
agreement with, while in this life, 387:3
all things were made through him, 379:4,7
Arians; not created, 380:3
everywhere, 341:2
found truthful in all things, 346A:2
in the beginning, 341:2,3,4,7; 341A:1; 371:1; 375A:2; 375B:4,5; 379:4;
380:2; 380:3,4,5,6; 388:2
iniquity as enemy of, 387:1
leader of Christian pilgrims, 346A:1-8
life events of Jesus and, 349:6
no death, no blood, in the Word, 375B:4
opponent of the wicked, 387:1
praised by all, 377:1
suffering, 375B:6
wholly in the Father; in the womb, 341:2
word of God (the bible):
abides forever, 366:3
words:
all reaching all listeners, 341:2
God’s shortened words on earth, 399:2,3
work:
commanded, 382:1
food that does not perish, 366:3
works of mercy:
barren of, 389:6
life after the resurrection, 362:28
not needed in heaven, 359A:2
sorrow and, 359A:1
world:
criticisms of religious life, 354:3
despised by martyrs, 345:7
friendship with = enmity with God, 385:6
love of, 354:2
two ways of understanding, 342:3
well-being in, 385:7,8
worm will not die. . ., 362:23
worry: challenge: worship God for nothing, 385:5
wrinkles, 341:13
wrongdoing: cheating their own souls, 353:2

Y
youths, 391:1-6
characteristics, 391:3
Daniel’s example for young men, 391:5
despair, 391:3
perversity, 391:3

Z
Zacchaeus, 359A:12,16
Zechariah, 370:4
Index from
Sermons (newly discovered)

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, introduction and editorial consultant François Dolbeau, John E. Rotelle, editor
Volume 11 contains 30 Sermons discovered since 1990.

Includes:

Dolbeau Sermons
(Sermones (Dolbeau))

Volume III/11 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-103-9, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

#### Old Testament

**Genesis**
- 1:3-31: 110A, 5
- 1:24: 198, 19
- 1:26: 159B, 5; 159B, 6; 198, 26
- 1:26-28: 90A, 6
- 1:31: 72, 18; 359B, 7
- 2:2: 110A, 5
- 2:9: 359B, 7
- 2:17: 341, 13; 359B, 7
- 2:24: 159A, 9; 341, 20; 341, 22
- 3:3: 359B, 7
- 3:4: 341, 13
- 3:19: 360B, 7
- 6:11-23: 114B, 1
- 12:3: 114B, 6
- 14:18-19: 198, 38
- 22:18: 114B, 6; 159B, 16; 299A, 9; 360A, 2; 360A, 4
- 25:23: 341, 23
- 27:29: 341, 23
- 30:37: 341, 25
- 49:9: 218, 12

**Exodus**
- 3:14: 162C, 6
- 3:14-16: 341, 17
- 20:12: 159A, 6
- 20:13-17: 159B, 14
- 20:17: 130A, 11; 283, 2
- 21:24: 110A, 8
- 22:20: 359B, 14
- 23:23-24: 360A, 11
- 34:11-14: 360A, 11

**Leviticus**
- 24:20: 110A, 8

**Deuteronomy**
- 5:16: 159A, 6
- 6:13: 159A, 8
- 6:16: 159A, 8
- 8:3: 159A, 8
- 10:20: 198, 46
- 13:3: 341, 7
- 25:4: 29, 9
- 32:9: 341, 23
- 33:9: 159A, 6

**Judges**
- 6:38: 360A, 3
- 6:39: 360A, 3

**1 Samuel**
- 21:6: 198, 50

**Tobit**
- 4:15: 130A, 7
- 12:12: 198, 48

**Job**
- 1:21: 114B, 11

**Psalms**
- 1:1: 198, 43
- 2:6: 218, 5
- 2:7: 218, 6
- 3:9: 20B, 9
- 4:2: 72, 18
- 4:3: 72, 12; 198, 8
- 4:4: 72, 8
- 4:5-6: 72, 10
- 4:6: 72, 9; 72, 16
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>72, 12</td>
<td>208, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-3</td>
<td>72, 12</td>
<td>159B, 9; 360A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>72, 13</td>
<td>283, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>72, 14; 72, 15; 72, 18</td>
<td>341, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>28A, 2</td>
<td>62, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>110A, 6; 130A, 8</td>
<td>62:11-12 341, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>110A, 6; 130A, 8; 130A, 9</td>
<td>66:13-14; 110A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>110A, 3</td>
<td>68:8 130A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>341, 16</td>
<td>68:9 130A, 11; 130A, 8; 130A, 9; 130A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>72, 9 110A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>110A, 7</td>
<td>69:22 218, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>110A, 7</td>
<td>72, 11 299A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>110A, 7</td>
<td>73:27 159A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>110A, 7</td>
<td>73:27-29 159A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>72, 9</td>
<td>77:2 72, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>82:1 298, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
<td>82:6 360B, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>130A, 10</td>
<td>82:6-7 360B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>130A, 10</td>
<td>82:7 360B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>130A, 10</td>
<td>84:10 130A, 1; 130A, 9; 130A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>85:4 130A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>85:12 130A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>86:15 352A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>130A, 10</td>
<td>87:5 341, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>91:13-12 159A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>91:13 359B, 14; 359B, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>130A, 10</td>
<td>94:4 29, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>94:8 348A, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>95:2 298, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>283, 1</td>
<td>101:1 352A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>283, 1</td>
<td>103:2-3 130A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>103:2-4 90A, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>103:5 90A, 14; 130A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>106:47 198, 1; 198, 4; 198, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>109:3 341, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>110:4 374, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>110:7 374, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>111:10 306B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>115:4-7 360A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>115:4-8 360A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>115:4-8 360A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>115:5-8 218, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:3-4 238, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:10 28A, 1; 28A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:11 28A, 2; 28A, 6; 198, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:12 28A, 1; 28A, 2; 130A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:12-13 28A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:13 28A, 1; 28A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:15 28A, 4; 359B, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>116:15 28A, 4; 359B, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>118:1 306E, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>118:8 306E, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>118:13 306E, 1; 306E, 11; 306E, 2; 306E, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>118:22 306E, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td>119:23 306E, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 7:28  | 198, 33 | 119:67 159B, 2; 159B, 3; 159B, 4; 159B, 4;
### Sermons - Newly Discovered

| 119:71  | 159B, 8       | 2:3   | 218, 6       |
| 119:73  | 159B, 4; 159B, 8; 238, 15 | 2:17-19 | 360A, 8       |
| 120:7   | 198, 45      | 2:20  | 360A, 8       |
| 132:9.16 | 162C, 1     | 7:14  | 299A, 7       |
| 133:1   | 360C, 4      | 10:23 LXX | 90A, 2       |
| 140:8   | 299A, 3      | 11:2-3 | 198, 51      |
| 143:2   | 162C, 3      | 11:10 LXX | 360A, 2       |
| 144:15  | 72, 14       | 14:13.14 | 198, 14; 198, 22; 198, 27 |
| 146:5   | 114B, 10     | 26:10 LXX | 72, 18       |
| 146:6   | 110A, 5; 198, 13; 198, 18 | 40:6.8 | 293A, 12       |

### Proverbs

| 23:1-2 LXX | 28A, 4 | 43:18 | 374, 21   |
| 23:3       | 28A, 5 | 43:18-19 | 374, 20   |
| 23:4       | 28A, 6 | 43:19-20 | 374, 21   |
| 23:5       | 28A, 7; 28A, 8 | 43:20-23 | 374, 21   |
|            |        | 43:23-24 | 374, 21   |
|            |        | 43:24    | 374, 22   |
|            |        | 43:25-26 | 374, 23   |
|            |        | 46:8     | 90A, 9, 90A, 10 |
|            |        | 53:4,12  | 198, 7    |
|            |        | 53:8     | 284, 8    |
|            |        | 57:19    | 72, 8     |
|            |        | 58:9     | 208, 2    |
|            |        | 58:1-2   | 198, 39   |
|            |        | 61:10    | 341, 19   |
|            |        | 66:1     | 360B, 7   |
|            |        | 66:1-2   | 198, 11   |

### Ecclesiastes

| 3:5       | 354A, 11 | Jeremiah |
|           |         | 6:14     | 72, 8     |
|           |         | 8:11     | 72, 8     |
|           |         | 10:2     | 360A, 10  |
|           |         | 10:3-4   | 360A, 10  |
|           |         | 10:9-5.11| 360A, 10  |
|           |         | 10:12    | 360A, 10  |
|           |         | 10:12-15 | 360A, 10  |
|           |         | 10:16    | 341, 23; 360A, 10 |
|           |         | 16:19    | 299A, 7; 360A, 9 |
|           |         | 17:5     | 198, 44   |
|           |         | 17:16 LXX| 208, 10   |
|           |         | 17:16    | 283, 3    |
|           |         | 31:31    | 374, 17   |
|           |         | 31:31-32 | 374, 17; 374, 18 |

### Song of Songs

| 1:7       | 198, 14   | Ezekiel |
| 2:17      | 374, 20   | 18:21    | 352A, 7   |
| 4:6       | 374, 20   | 18:21-22 | 352A, 8   |
| 4:8       | 352A, 2   | 18:32    | 352A, 8   |

### Wisdom

| 1:11      | 162C, 5   | Daniel  |
| 5:3-6     | 198, 43   | 3:17-18 | 306E, 8   |
| 5:6       | 198, 53   |         |           |
| 5:8-9     | 198, 43   |         |           |
| 8:1       | 29, 7     |         |           |
| 8:21      | 283, 8; 348A, 14; 354A, 12 |         |           |
| 9:15      | 159B, 8; 159B, 15 |         |           |
| 10:2      | 159B, 5   |         |           |
| 12:19     | 198, 63   |         |           |
| 14:11     | 299A, 7; 360A, 6 |         |           |
| 14:13-13  | 360A, 6   |         |           |

### Sirach

| 2:5       | 238, 11   | Joel |
| 2:14      | 238, 11   | 2:32   | 348A, 5   |
| 4:28      | 306E, 6   |         |           |
| 5:7       | 352A, 7   |         |           |
| 10:13     | 198, 33; 360B, 17 |         |           |
| 10:13.12  | 159B, 11  |         |           |
| 39:15-16  | 298, 2    |         |           |

| 1:16      | 341, 21   |         |           |
| 1:16-18   | 359B, 11  |         |           |
Sermons - Newly Discovered

Jonah
3:10 114B, 2

Zechariah
13:1-2 360A, 7

Malachi
4:2 198, 43

New Testament

Matthew
1:23 299A, 7
2:2 374, 7
2:3-5 374, 15
2:12 374, 23
5:3 114B, 11; 114B, 12
5:4 114B, 11
5:6 23B, 5
5:8 360B, 13; 360B, 15; 360B, 20; 374, 1
5:10 283, 6; 359B, 17
5:14 341, 18; 360A, 7
5:16 72, 9; 198, 56
5:23 359B, 22
5:23-24 359B, 21; 359B, 23
5:30 159A, 7
5:35 341, 19
5:37 354A, 9
5:38 110A, 8
5:44 110A, 8
5:45 198, 43; 348A, 9
5:46 159B, 4
6:1 72, 9
6:9-12-13 348A, 11
6:12 110A, 8; 198, 56; 354A, 12
6:32-33 72, 16
7:7 114B, 9
7:12 130A, 7
8:12-11 218, 7
8:29 130A, 5
9:12 159B, 11
10:28 299A, 3; 299A, 4
10:38 114B, 8
10:40 359B, 9
11:11 293A, 3; 293A, 14
11:15 23B, 5
11:28 198, 9
11:29-30 142, 4
13:17 293A, 2
15:17 130A, 1
16:16 130A, 2; 130A, 5; 348A, 3
16:17-18 130A, 2
16:26 159A, 12
16:27 341, 11
18:32 159B, 8
19:4-5 354A, 3
19:5 159A, 9
19:5-6 341, 20
19:6 354A, 5
19:12 354A, 7; 354A, 11; 354A, 12
19:17 72, 18
19:17-19 130A, 4
19:23-28 341, 3
20:22 28A, 3
21:2-3 359B, 11
21:43 218, 7
22:11 198, 52
22:36 90A, 1
22:37 90A, 4; 90A, 9; 90A, 11
22:37-40 90A, 3
22:39 90A, 4; 90A, 7
22:40 90A, 4
23:13 341, 24
23:35 341, 19
25:21 198, 15; 198, 53
25:21.23 72, 15
25:34.41 198, 4; 341, 6
25:41 23B, 9
25:41.24 360B, 22
28:20 159A, 1

Mark
1:15 352A, 1; 352A, 2; 352A, 3;
1:24 14A, 3; 130A, 2
1:25 130A, 2
1:27 20B, 6
2:26 198, 50
3:11 130A, 2
3:34-35 359B, 9
4:25 283, 8
6:38 198, 51
8:7 198, 51
8:8 198, 51
8:34 218, 2
10:9 159A, 7; 159A, 8
10:19 306E, 11
10:30 341, 3
10:43-44 359B, 9
10:44-45 359B, 9
10:45 359B, 10
12:7 341, 24
12:7-8 360A, 3
12:10 306E, 3
12:14-17 71, 12
13:31 110A, 5
14:12 359B, 10
14:38 348A, 12

Volume III/11
# Sermons - Newly Discovered

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume III/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>198, 50</td>
<td>1:3, 1:5, 198, 40, 341, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>341, 25</td>
<td>1:3, 110A, 1, 130A, 10, 159B, 9; 198, 61; 293A, 3; 341, 19; 341, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:36</td>
<td>198, 50</td>
<td>1:3, 110A, 1, 130A, 10, 159B, 9; 198, 61; 293A, 3; 341, 19; 341, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>114B, 11; 306E, 6</td>
<td>1:8, 341, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td>28A, 3; 293A, 2</td>
<td>1:9, 72, 17; 341, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:51</td>
<td>359B, 9</td>
<td>1:11, 218, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:52</td>
<td>306E, 1</td>
<td>1:12, 341, 18; 360B, 6; 360B, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>23B, 7; 110A, 5; 354A, 11</td>
<td>1:14, 114B, 5; 198, 44; 198, 61; 293A, 5; 341, 10; 341, 11; 341, 20; 374, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3-34</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
<td>1:18, 348A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>159A, 8; 198, 46</td>
<td>1:22-23, 293A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:9-11</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
<td>1:26, 293A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
<td>2:4, 218, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>130A, 2; 130A, 5</td>
<td>3:29, 293A, 4; 341, 21; 359B, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>360C, 4</td>
<td>3:30, 293A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>359B, 9</td>
<td>3:36, 130A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>4:14, 198, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>29B, 2</td>
<td>5:35, 341, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:25-28</td>
<td>130A, 4</td>
<td>6:27, 130A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>360B, 12</td>
<td>6:28-29, 130A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>359B, 22</td>
<td>6:29, 14A, 3; 14A, 5; 130A, 4; 130A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>198, 2</td>
<td>14A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:52</td>
<td>341, 24</td>
<td>15:12, 130A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:1-5</td>
<td>110A, 2</td>
<td>15:17-18, 130A, 12; 360C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>110A, 4</td>
<td>16:10, 130A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:14-15</td>
<td>110A, 5</td>
<td>16:10, 130A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>159A, 6; 159A, 8</td>
<td>16:10, 130A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:26-27</td>
<td>159A, 2</td>
<td>17:20-27, 130A, 7; 360B, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>90A, 10</td>
<td>17:27, 28A, 2; 360A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:17-18</td>
<td>90A, 10</td>
<td>18:10-14, 28A, 8; 198, 39; 341, 13; 359B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>359B, 6</td>
<td>18:10-14, 28A, 8; 198, 39; 341, 13; 359B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>142, 3</td>
<td>18:18-25, 28A, 8; 198, 39; 341, 13; 359B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:20-27</td>
<td>114B, 1</td>
<td>18:19, 72, 18; 341A, 6; 354A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:26-27</td>
<td>114B, 8</td>
<td>18:22, 341A, 6; 354A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:26</td>
<td>114B, 9; 114B, 10</td>
<td>18:26, 14:8, 14A, 4; 72, 10; 90A, 14; 198, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:27</td>
<td>114B, 10</td>
<td>19:10, 14A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>110A, 1</td>
<td>19:10, 14A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:36</td>
<td>350B, 15; 198, 15; 341, 19</td>
<td>20:36, 14A, 4; 72, 10; 90A, 14; 198, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:34</td>
<td>198, 9</td>
<td>21:34, 14A, 4; 72, 10; 90A, 14; 198, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:24</td>
<td>360C, 4</td>
<td>22:24, 14:9-10; 198, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>198, 56; 218, 11; 360B, 18</td>
<td>23:24, 198, 11; 341, 13; 359B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>359B, 19</td>
<td>24:46, 198, 11; 341, 13; 359B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>359B, 21</td>
<td>24:47, 198, 11; 341, 13; 359B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>198, 44; 198, 55; 293A, 3; 293A, 10; 341, 11; 341, 13; 341, 14; 341, 5; 348A, 3; 359B, 8</td>
<td>1:1-2, 293A, 5; 341, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>293A, 5; 341, 5</td>
<td>1:1-2, 293A, 5; 341, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons - Newly Discovered

Acts of the Apostles
2:11 110A, 1
2:37 360B, 10
2:37-38 352A, 4
2:38 360B, 18
3:12-13 198, 13
4:32.35 198, 9
7:49-50 198, 11
8:21 218, 9
9:4 341, 20
14:15 198, 13; 198, 18; 359B, 12
14:18 198, 13
15:1 162C, 8
15:9 360B, 7; 360B, 13; 360B, 15;
360B, 19; 360B, 27
17:28 198, 29
18:25 198, 15
19:3 293A, 11
23:3 198, 55

Romans
1:3 198, 50; 198, 60
1:8 198, 38
1:18 198, 30
1:18-20 198, 32
1:19-20 198, 30
1:20 198, 38
1:21 198, 58
1:21-22 198, 32
1:21-23 198, 33
1:23 198, 34; 198, 37
1:23-24 198, 33
1:24-27 208, 6
1:24-25 198, 34
1:25 198, 35
2:3 291, 1
2:3-6 291, 1
2:4 208, 6
2:24 198, 56
3:4 281, 2
3:23 374, 22
3:26 130A, 3
4:5 130A, 3
4:15 159B, 14
4:25 198, 53; 360B, 19
5:3-5 72, 9
5:5 130A, 8; 130A, 11; 218, 9;
283, 2
5:8-9 348A, 1
5:9 348A, 4
5:14 218, 14
5:20 159B, 14, 374, 23
6:9 198, 49
7:7 130A, 11; 283, 2; 283, 3
7:9 283, 2
7:12-13 198, 14
7:22-25 348A, 10
7:24-25 198, 36
7:25 348A, 1; 348A, 8
8:3 110A, 7
8:6 2081198, 46; 341, 14
8:17 198, 42; 238, 10
8:23 341, 18
8:24-23 198, 44; 198, 53
8:26 208, 1
8:31 159A, 1
8:32 159B, 9; 159B, 15; 348A, 3
8:34 72, 8; 198, 54
8:35 130A, 5; 159A, 7
8:35-36 159A, 1
8:37 159A, 5
8:38-39 159A, 3; 159A, 10
10:4 14A, 2
10:13 130A, 12; 348A, 5
11:1 218, 6; 341, 24
11:2.1 218, 7
11:18 218, 6
11:32 159B, 1; 159B, 2; 159B, 5;
159B, 13; 159B, 14
11:33-36 159B, 1
11:34-35 352A, 5
11:36 198, 59; 293A, 8
12:12 360A, 9
13:1 359B, 13
13:8 90A, 4
13:9 90A, 13
13:9-10 90A, 4
13:10 90A, 13; 130A, 5
15:8-9 218, 6
15:12 360A, 2
15:27 218, 6; 341, 24

1 Corinthians
1:12 360B, 4
1:13 130A, 3; 198, 15; 198, 52
1:20 341, 24
1:24 360A, 10
1:27 341, 24
1:27-28 198, 59; 341, 4; 360B, 24
1:31 299A, 2
2:8 341, 24
2:9 198, 27; 208, 9; 208, 10;
72, 15; 283, 5; 341, 5; 360B, 2;
360B, 3; 360B, 4; 360B, 6;
360B, 11; 360B, 15; 374, 1
2:12 283, 8
2:12.14-15 238, 6
2:13 110A, 3
2:15 110A, 3
3:3 360B, 5
3:4 360B, 4

Volume III/11
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>130A, 6; 90A, 14; 306E, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>130A, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>198, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7-6</td>
<td>198, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>28A, 6; 341, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3-4</td>
<td>354A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4-5</td>
<td>354A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5-7</td>
<td>354A, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5-8</td>
<td>354A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>354A, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>162C, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>162C, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27-29</td>
<td>354A, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28</td>
<td>162C, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>354A, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29-32</td>
<td>114B, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29-33</td>
<td>354A, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:31-32</td>
<td>198, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>23B, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>29, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>198, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>198, 63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19-20</td>
<td>198, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>198, 3; 23B, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:31</td>
<td>198, 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>341, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>110A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:25-26</td>
<td>198, 57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27-30</td>
<td>130A, 1; 341, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>218, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>162C, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>130A, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>198, 13; 23B, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>359B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:25-26</td>
<td>198, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td>20B, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50</td>
<td>110A, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>20B, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>159A, 4; 360A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15,14</td>
<td>23B, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>23B, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>23B, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>283, 4; 23B, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7</td>
<td>159B, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>360A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>198, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>198, 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>198, 52; 341, 21; 359B, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>159A, 10; 341, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>198, 44; 198, 46; 198, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>130A, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-9</td>
<td>20B, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>130A, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-10</td>
<td>20B, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>130A, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>130A, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>114B, 12; 162C, 5; 198, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>348A, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>198, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>162C, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>20B, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3-4</td>
<td>162C, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>162C, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>162C, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>162C, 3; 162C, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11-13</td>
<td>162C, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-14</td>
<td>162C, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>162C, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>162C, 13; 162C, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>198, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>283, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>352A, 2; 162C, 6; 341, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>198, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>341, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>198, 48; 360A, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>218, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>359B, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-21</td>
<td>293A, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>130A, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>360C, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>28A, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>198, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>198, 26; 198, 37; 23B, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>29, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>306E, 3; 360C, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>341, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>306E, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>198, 42; 306E, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>341, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>198, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>28A, 2; 198, 26; 306E, 8; 360C, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>198, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>341, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>198, 43; 341, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>341, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2-3</td>
<td>159A, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>198, 26; 306E, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17-18</td>
<td>198, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>341, 11; 341, 14; 359B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>159A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>29, 11; 341, 20; 359B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>198, 5; 198, 44; 198, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>341, 11; 341, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III/11

Sermons - Newly Discovered
### Sermons - Newly Discovered

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>130A, 10; 130A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>159A, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Colossians**

1:18 | 341, 19 |
1:24 | 341, 20 |
2:3:10 | 198, 62 |
2:8 | 198, 21 |
2:8-10 | 198, 10 |
2:10 | 341, 19 |
3:1 | 110A, 6 |
3:1-2 | 110A, 3 |
3:17 | 198, 56 |
4:3 | 198, 57 |

**1 Thessalonians**

2:7 | 341, 22 |
4:17 | 198, 53 |

**2 Thessalonians**

2:9 | 198, 62 |

**1 Timothy**

1:5 | 359B, 16 |
1:13 | 299A, 6 |
1:15 | 348A, 1 |
1:16 | 352A, 8 |
2:5 | 198, 44; 198, 52 |
3:2 | 162C, 2 |
3:16 | 29, 12 |
5:22 | 348A, 14 |
6:10 | 159A, 3; 198, 33 |
6:16 | 198, 39; 360B, 3 |
6:17 | 114B, 12 |
6:18-19 | 114B, 13 |

**2 Timothy**

2:20 | 198, 12 |
2:21 | 360B, 28 |
3:5 | 359B, 17 |
4:1 | 299A, 4 |
4:2 | 90A, 11 |
4:6 | 299A, 4; 299A, 6 |
4:6-7 | 299A, 4 |
4:7-8 | 299A, 6 |
4:8 | 159B, 2; 299A, 9 |

**Titus**

1:12 | 198, 34 |
1:15 | 159B, 13 |
1:16 | 306E, 11 |
3:5 | 341, 21 |

**Hebrews**

1:14 | 198, 48 |
5:6 | 198, 43 |
7:25 | 198, 53 |
12:4 | 306E, 2; 306E, 6 |

**James**

1:5 | 348A, 14 |
2:13 | 90A, 14 |
2:19 | 130A, 2 |
4:2-3 | 114B, 14 |
4:3 | 110A, 3 |

**1 John**

1:5 | 28A, 2 |
1:8 | 198, 55 |
2:1-2 | 198, 55 |
2:2 | 198, 43; 198, 56; 198, 57 |
2:16 | 12, 15 |
3:16 | 28A, 3; 28A, 4; 198, 6; 359B, 19 |
4:16 | 90A, 12 |
4:17-18 | 198, 4 |
4:18 | 130A, 5; 360B, 1 |
4:20 | 90A, 5 |

**Revelation**

1:4 | 198, 51 |
18:6 | 299A, 8 |
19:10 | 198, 16; 198, 24 |
20:14 | 306E, 9 |
21:17 | 293A, 3 |
22:9 | 198, 16; 198, 24 |

---

**Volume III/11**
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
body and soul; creation, 29:7
compared with human beings, 374:3-4,6
love in, 90A:6
physically superior to man, 360B:9; 374:6
providence, 29:9
sacrifice of, 374:20
sharing; created goods, 374:2
souls of, 198:25; 360B:9; 374:6
taming of beasts, 360B:9
treatment of their offspring, 159B:4

anointing:
bishops and the faithful have in common, 162C:2
early customs, 198:50,53

A apocalypse:
angel abiding in the South, 198:14,46,48
John writes to seven churches, 198:51

apostles:
See also disciples
asked people to pray for them, 198:57
believing in, 130A:3
crucifiers sought advice of, 360B:18
fishermen, 341:4; 360B:24
Israelites, 341:24
mediators, 198:57
poor men chosen to be, 341:3
sacrifice of, 374:20
sharing; created goods, 374:2
souls of, 198:25; 360B:9; 374:6
taming of beasts, 360B:9
treatment of their offspring, 159B:4

authorities:
books of the Bible, 374:10
crucifixion of Christ, 159B:9,10
God is over all authorities, 359B:13
right order of, 359B:13
slave and master, 159B:7

B

Babylon:
Babylonian captivity, 114B:6
repaid double by Jerusalem, 299A:7,8
baptism, 90A:14; 130A:7
See also catechumens
Donatists, 198:45
drunken as minister, 293A:16
eretic as minister, 293A:16
heretics and rebaptism, 293A:13-15
John's and Christ's compared, 293A:11
minister: apostles; John's disciples, 293A:15
validity in relation to minister, 293A:14
way of repentance, 352A:4

Barnabas: called "Jupiter", 198:13
basin with water, 360A:3
beasts, See animals.
beauties: God's promises, 360B:13
beauty:
finding God, 360B:8,9
ordered nature, 29:4,6
seek the creator, 198:31

bees, 29:10
belching, 341:5
belief:
See also faith; unbeliever; unbelievers
believing him / believing in him, 130A:5

Gentile vs Christian, 198:3,4
learned and unlearned believers, 360B:25
lyin, 28A:2

Volume III/11
repent and believe; mercy, 352A:1
sight and, 360B:20
believe me (expression), 130A:3
believing:
sentiment of the soul, 198:2
Bethlehem, 198:60; 374:14
village, 341:4; 348A:7
bible:
authority of authors of books, 374:10
canonical scriptures and other authors, 162C:15
deception in canonical scriptures, 162C:14
divine testimonial, 360A:4
Donatist betrayal of, 360A:4
hidden meanings locked up in, 341:22
promises in, as autograph, 299A:7
sacramental meanings in, 341:22
scriptures open to the public, 198:20
statements whose meaning is closed, 341:22
treat like God speaking, 162C:15
understanding Christ in Scripture; 3 ways, 341:1-26
birds, 90A:6
bishops:
authority, 359B:12
benefits conferred by God through, 359B:5
burden of solicitude, 359B:12
called priests, 198:49
challenge of being Christians, 162C:2
criticism, 162C:3
decret; pretence, 162C:4
just lives, 162C:1
love and obedience, 359B:23
mediators (Donatism), 198:52,55
members of body of Christ, 198:53
obedience to, 359B:9
overseers, 162C:2
serving as slave, 359B:10
slaves serving in love of Christ, 359B:1
blessings: Pelagian emptiness, 348A:13
blindness, 23B:8; 360B:14
bliss, 72:10
blood: sacrifice, 374:20
bodies:
color, 341:15
equal in one thing, less in another, 341:14
body and soul:
See also flesh; heart; human body;

mind; spirit
body:
looking for divinity in, 198:27
spirit and, 198:25
time and space, 198:28
trunk without a head, 341:19
Christ the savior (doctor) of, 348A:4
doubting about the soul, 374:9
God and greatness of soul, 360B:9
lose soul here; find it in eternal life, 159A:12
loving iniquity = hating soul, 90A:8,12
order, 29:10
perception; bodily eyes and spirit, 374:6,7
perishing, body wears down the soul, 159B:15
soul:
in command, 29:4
craves to stay with flesh, 159A:12
as garment, 159A:4
as leader of the flesh, 159A:13
seen through its works, 374:9
works of greatness, 360B:9
body of Christ, See Church; mystical body.
bread:
Christ as, 130A:1,7
good for healthy person, 360C:3
of life: healing by, 130A:7,12
living; healing, 130A:12
brevity, 130A:2
great minds, 90A:3
brothers:
dwelling together as one, 360C:4,5
when your brother has something against . . . , 359B:21-23
bullfight, 90A:11
burial:
catechumens and the baptized, 142(appendix):1

C
Caecilian, bishop, 359B:22
Caesar: image on coin, 72:12,13
cajoled, 159A:2,5,10,11
calendar, 306E:8
Calvary, 218:3
came:
eye of a needle, 114B:9-10; 341:3
type of Christ, 114B:10

Sermons - Newly Discovered
caring:
  service to the sick and the weak, 359B:23
  caritas and caro, 360C:1
caro and caritas, 360C:1
Carthage, 359B:1
  caritas and caro, 360C:1
  womb of mother Church, 352A:3
Catholic Church, 359B:16
  unity; division, 159B:18
cause: suffering for, 283:6
Chaldeans, 198:58
change, 72:15; 198:27
  body and spirit, 198:25
delay in conversion, 352A:5
  seeking the unchangeable, 360B:12
catholic: 360C:4
  losing the soul of, 299A:3
  mother of obedience, 359B:17
  obedience and, 359B:12
  son in (vs slave), 198:12
  Spirit of God, 283:8
  what we love with is charity, 90A:12
    who will separate us from . . . , 159A:1-2,7
  Zacchaeus and the poor widow, 114B:11
charms, 306E:7
chastisement:
  companions of Daniel, 306E:9
  chastity, 159A:10
  Church as bride of Christ, 360A:11
    pardon for infirmity (in marriage), 354A:7
  reforms of bishop Aurelius, 359B:5
  think of Mary’s virginity, 159B:13
children:
  loved by parents, 159B:4
children of God:
  adoption, 341:18
  right to become, 360B:6,15
choice:
  See also will
  implied by commands to do good, 348A:14
  power of, 348A:10,13
  sufficiency of free choice (no grace), 348A:13
chrisms: anointed with, 198:51
  Son of man came to serve, 359B:10
  worthy of our head and bridegroom, 341:21
Christianity:
  human race converging on, 360B:25
  names being written in heaven, 360A:7
  pagan converts, 299A:8
  repent and believe, 352A:3
  slaves to each other, 359B:8-9
  soldiers for God, 283:4
  suffering for Christ, 159A:5
  values of Gentiles and demons and, 198:3
  winnowing the good and bad, 299A:9
  worldwide, 159B:17
Church:
  ark, 114B:2

Volume III/11
blood and water from side of Christ, 218:14
blood of the martyrs, 299A:7; 360B:19
boat pitching in storm, 198:54
body of Christ and its members, 198:51,52,55; 341:19
body of the one priest, Christ, 198:49
bride, preserve your chastity, 360A:11
bridegroom and bride, 341:20
Christ the head of, 159B:13; 198:43,44
Christ, head of the corner, 306E:3
Christ and: two in one flesh, 341:20
city of the great king, 341:19
compassion for non-christians, 198:8
completeness of a perfect man, 341:2
cornerstone, 306E:3
discord in; be reconciled . . . , 359B:21
established on rock, 341:12
filling the whole world, 198:51
fulness: head and body, 341:2
great sacrament: Christ in the Church, 198:43
head intercedes for members, 198:57
holiness: head and body, 341:2
incarnation and, 198:43
Jesus, the mediator, as head of, 341:10,11
live worthy of our head and bridegroom, 341:21
martyrs shed blood in and for, 359B:19
maternal solicitude of, 360C:6
members: Abel to the end of time, 341:19
mother, 198:42
no stain or wrinkle, 341:21
outside the holy of holies, 198:54
persecution foretold, 114B:6
promise of universality, 299A:7,8,9; 360A:5
promised by God, 159B:16
Psalm 45:10, 360A:1
reckoned as pile of sand, 306E:6
saints made into body of Christ, 360B:19
secular advantages in, 198:12
serpent would seduce from paradise of, 341:13
suffering in the body, 341:20
supreme reign promised, 299A:7
temple of God, 198:48
two sorts of people (re idols), 360A:8
unity, 198:42
unity of Christ, 159B:17
unity: hear and see, 360A:3,4
universality foretold, 299A:7,8,9; 360A:5
whole Christ, head and body, 341:19
whole, not a part, 159B:17
worldwide, 360B:21
Cicero, 218:7
Circumcellions, 198:45; 299A:3
circumcision, 162C:6; 218:6; 306E:3; 374:15
salvation and (Paul vs Peter), 162C:7-14
Timothy and Titus, 162C:10-11	pagan vs christian times, 23B:13-15
clergy:
ulterior motives; hired servants, 198:12
clouds:
heavens dripped from face of God, 130A:8
color:
in bodies, 341:15
many colors of the queen’s gown, 360A:2
columns in a church, 198:10
commandment(-s):
bearing false witness, 306E:11
distinguish occasions or situations, 159A:6
imposed so God may be served, 359B:7
inquiry re the great commandment, 90A:1
just and holy and good, 159B:14
keeping, 130A:11
loving badly, 90A:13
one is sufficient: love your neighbor, 90A:12-13
rich man told by Christ, to keep, 130A:4
suited to situations, 159A:6
common life, 198:48
compassion:
Church and non-christians, 198:8
crucifixion of Christ, 159B:9
divine, 360B:17
concept, 293A:6
confession:
  boasting of iniquity, 283:7
  mercy of God, 29B:7
  place yourself before yourself, 29B:5
  praise of God, 29B:2,6
  self-punishment, 29B:1,3,4
  two meanings of, 29B:1ff
confirmation, 198:51
congregation:
  of gods, 23B:2
  quiet and orderly, 198:11
conjugal rights, See husband and wife.
conscience, 114B:12; 162C:3; 283:7; 306E:2; 360A:2
  charity, 359B:16
  humiliation for sin, 159B:3
Constantine, council at, 359B:2
Constantine, emperor, 359B:22
contemplation:
  longing to dwell in house of the Lord, 360B:12
continence, 283:1
  last days, 114B:13
conversion:
  Christian consulting astrologer on, 360B:27
  emperor gained through fisherman, 360B:24
  Jews and pagans, 374:15
  leading good lives, 360B:28
  Magi “returned in another way”, 374:23
  praying for pagans, 198:8
  putting off the day of, 360B:27
  worldwide, 360B:25
conversion of life:
  God as healer, 130A:7,9
  repent and believe, 352A:2,7
  temptation to delay, 352A:5,7
  turning to God, 130A:12
  urgent appeal for, 114B:3
  cornerstone, 14A:2
  rejected, 360E:3
  covenant, 159A:6
  proof from Jeremiah, 374:17
  why God changed, 374:22
covetousness: Jews, 159B:14
  See also greed
creation:
  all created things are body or spirit, 198:25
  all things are good through God, 72:18
  creatures(-s), 159A:10; 360B:21
  everything made seen as very good, 359B:7
  foremost place in, 341:18
  God’s power and wisdom, 360A:10
  good things in are not enough, 374:2
  heavenly bodies, 360B:8
  images standing for creatures, 198:34
  maker; worker; creature, 159B:5,7
  man and beast; one God, 29:7
  not God; this is the work of God, 360B:8
  omnicient Wisdom, 29:7
  one prohibition: God as master, 359B:7
  order has upward/downward limits, 374:2
  order in, 374A:11
  order of natures in, 159B:7
  seek the creator, 198:31
  six days, 110A:5
  transcending; see the creator, 198:37
  vexing God by making idols, 360A:6
  whole range of, found in humans, 198:44
  wonderful words (Jn 1:1-5), 341:3
  wonderful works of God, 374:11
creator:
  all things were made through him . . . , 341:19
  forms and enlightens, 198:25
  idolatry: forgotten creator, 198:17
  letting go of, for creatures, 198:35
  maker of man, made man, 23B:1
  as master: do not touch this tree, 359B:7
  religious service paid to, 198:21
  seeking the, 198:31
  seeking throughout life, 341:7
  simply spirit, 190:25
  time and space, 198:28
  Cretans, 198:34
cross:
  clinging to, for sake of life, 348A:4
  death through, 159A:5
  drawn to, 159A:5
  following Christ, 218:2
  led by the one who hung on it, 341:25
  nations conquered by, 360B:26
  signing with, 110A:4
  stretch yourself on, 341:21

Volume III/11
tower of Siloam, 110A:4
crowned by kings, 360B:24
crown, See eternal life; salvation.
crow’s caw, 360B:27
crucifixion: savagery, 159A:5
cupidity, See greed.
cures, 283:6; 348A:4
cup of suffering, 299A:5
doctor and patient, 374:8,16
magic, 306E:7
curiosity, 198:37; 360B:16
Cyprian, Saint, 198:60; 359B:16
orator, 341:4
shrine of, 359B:5

damnation:
fear of, 130A:11,12
what does it profit you if . . . , 159A:12
danger, 299A:3
Daniel:
companions of, and the Maccabees, 306E:9
humiliation, 306E:9
darkness, 28A:2; 341:18
eyes shut, 306E:5
unbelief, 198:26
wrestling; devil, 306E:8
David, King, 130A:11
both king and priest, 198:50
herding sheep, 198:60
loaves of proposition, 198:50
seed of Abraham, 159B:16
tribe of, 198:60
daystar, 341:18
death:
Church mourning for, 360C:6
incarnation and, 348A:1
mourning for, 142(appendix):2
rising from: miracle, 374:11
death, 283:3; 359B:9
accepting the cup of salvation, 28A:3
bodily; spiritual, 110A:3
cling to the cross, 348A:4
constant companion of mortals, 360B:6
deliver me from body of . . . , 348A:10
fear of, eliminated by the resurrection, 360B:19
finding reward in, 283:4
first sin as cause of, 359B:7
handed over to, 306E:9
inheritance and, 90A:6
liberation from, 198:44
origin; the serpent, 159B:10
parents pass on mortality, 198:42
precious in the eyes of the Lord . . . , 28A:4; 359B:16
punishment for sin, 198:40; 348A:2
rejoicing in God’s presence, 20B:10
sin and, 110A:7
soul as garment, 159A:4
sting of, 20B:10
uncertain day of, 352A:9
we must lay down our lives for our brethren, 359B:19
delight, 360B:9
brothers dwelling in unity, 360C:4,5
deluge:
day of judgment and, 114B:1
demons, 198:8,13,33,37,63; 299A:7; 360B:22
See also devil
belief in God, 130A:2,5
faith of, 14A:3
fallen angels, 198:26
gentile sacrifice to, 198:34
honoring, 374:18
Magi and, 374:13
nations believe in, 198:2
pleasures taken by, 198:3
Roman gods, 198:34
seeking the society of, 238:11
worship of idols, 238:8,9
desire, 90A:14; 360B:14; 374:1
See also greed
bad, 110A:3
earthly, 360B:7
evil, 130A:11
giving up what one hankers after, 341:3
God as unsatisfying, 198:33
handed over to sinner by, 299A:3
Holy Spirit and, 341:7
indecent desires, 20B:6
knocking at our door, 159A:3
longing to dwell in house of the Lord, 360B:12
satisfied with good things, 130A:12
seeking non-good things, 72:16
soul bowed down by, 110A:6
despair, 198:44; 20B:8; 238:7
danger of, 352A:8,9
perishing out of, 352A:6
sinners, 352A:6
weeping for pagans, 198:8
devil, 142[appendix]:2; 198:4.37; 359B:11.13.17.21; 360A:1; 360B:21
blaming, for my sin, 29B:7
boasting: better than Christ, 198:41
dominion of, 110A:6,7
fallen angel, 198:26
false martyrs and, 359B:16
false mediator,
198:38.40.44.46.56.58.61
feared as serpent or as lion, 359B:15
feminine cunning, 159A:7
forsaking, 374:21
getting people thrown out of Church,
348A:15
iniquity of, not abhored, 198:41
judgment day, 341:6
martyrs wrestling with, 306E:2,8
pride, 198:28.29; 360B:5,6
redemption and, 299A:2
renouncing, 352A:2
request granted, re Job, 20B:7,8
sacrilegious rites and, 198:47
spurning, 198:42
temptation of Christ, 159A:8
throne in the North, 198:14
tries to cast us out of Church,
341:12.13
unjust and immortal, 198:39
wish to be worshipped, 198:22
works in sons of unbelief, 23B:10
worship, 198:24
you will not die the death . . . , 341:13
devotion, 198:46
more fervent when opposed, 198:7
 orderly congregation, 198:11
dignity, 29:6; 360A:1
disagreements, 360C:1
discernment:
canonical scriptures, 162C:15
God and the gods, 23B:6
good and evil, 23B:15
power to make, 23B:9
disciples:
argument: who is the greater . . . , 360C:4
common people, 198:60; 360B:24
uneducated, lowly chosen for,
360B:24
untying the foal on which Jesus rides,
359B:11
you are the light . . . , 341:18
discipline:
end to which we are directed, 14A:1
law, 14A:2
of the secret, 360A:3
disease: cured with its contrary, 341:4
disgrace, 159A:4
dishonesty:
poison that slew the first man,
359B:23
divination, 360A:7; 374:12
diviners, 23B:1.10
divinization:
desire for, 23B:3
incarnation and, 23B:1
doctor and patient:
blindness, 374:8
frantic patients, 360B:18
prescription of medicines, 374:16
dog(-s):
children’s bread thrown to, 218:6
dog-heads, 198:34
Donatists, 159B:17; 198:52.55; 359B:4; 360C:1.5
appeal for reconciliation, 359B:21
as martyrs, 198:45
betrayal of the scriptures, 360A:4
circumcellions, 299A:3
misinterpretations of, 293A:13
testimonies of scripture against,
360A:1-11
Donatus:
baptism in name of, 293A:16
loved before Christ, 198:45.55; 283:7
dragon, 359B:13.14
drunkards, 198:9
heretics and; salvation, 293A:16
drunkenness, 360B:16
persistance in, 293A:16

E
early Church:
preachers were all Jews, 341:23
ears:
hearing and the mind, 159B:6
earth:
created goods, 374:2
seek the creator, 198:31
Tellus: Mother Earth, 198:19
transcended, 198:27
eating, 14A:1

Volume III/11
Egypt, 114B:6
idolatry, 198:33
monstrous gods, 198:34
elements: idolatry, 198:21,23,63
Elijah, 130A:3
Elizabeth (cousin of Mary), 198:50
ezeloquence, 374:4
emperor(-s), 359B:13,15; 360B:24
conversion of, 341:4; 360B:24
insulting the image of, 23B:7
pride in their temples (Rome), 360B:26
end:
directed toward; discipline, 14A:1
reaching, 14A:3
end of the world, 114B:14
Paul on marriage, 354A:3
Paul’s advice to the unmarried, 354A:10
enlightenment:
Christ as true light, 341:18
pagan, 341:26
Epiphany, 374:23
annual celebration, 374:1
equality, 341:14,17
Esau, 341:23
eternal life:
See also heaven; salvation in the Son of God, 14A:5
cross-eyed faith, 159A:12
enduring pain; martyrs, 283:3
eye has not seen . . . , 20B:9
God’s cure, and the attaining of, 348A:4
God’s promise, 360B:1
heaven you are and to heaven . . . , 360B:7
longing to dwell in house of the Lord, 360B:12
prayers of petition, 20B:3
promise of, 299A:7
reward for believing, 130A:4
reward for following Christ, 341:3
seeing and believing, 14A:5
spiritual crown, 299A:1
work for bread that does not perish, 130A:1
eternal punishment, 360B:1
association with demons, 23B:9
everlasting fire, 198:4
eternity:
immune to decay (ark), 306E:3
Evil, See Adam and Eve.
evil, See good and evil.
example:
entering a church, 198:11
good lives and conversions, 360B:28
good works, 162C:1
exile, 159A:4
existence:
real things perceived by spirit only, 374:7
extravagance, 114B:14
eye(-s), 198:31
cleansing, 360B:3,4,6
curing in order to see (belief), 360B:14
if you fix your eye on him . . . , 28A:7
light of the body, 360B:10
of a needle, 114B:9-10; 341:3
shutting; darkness, 306E:5
sight and the mind, 159B:6
spirit sees what eyes cannot see, 374:6,7

ej
faith, 90A:1; 218:9; 341:5,26; 360B:21
See also belief backed by works, 28A:5
believing, you obtain what Christ commands, 130A:11
believing what is not seen, 159B:15; 360B:16
blessed are those who do not see . . . , 341:3
blessed to believe on hearing, 360B:20
counted as justice, 130A:3,12
cure for blindness of spirit, 374:8
demons and Christians, 14A:3
eternal life, 14A:5
fear re keeping, 299A:4
fulfillment of ancient prophecies, 360B:20
fulfillment; God’s gifts (N.T.), 360A:1-2
God’s promises (O.T.), 360A:1-2,4
good works follow, 352A:2
good works follow, 352A:2
grace to believe, 28A:3
heart cleansed by, 360B:7,13,15,19,27
Jesus, king of the Gentiles, 218:7
Jesus prayed that Peter not fail, 348A:12
Jesus revealed in the O.T . . , 198:38
Jews of the Old Testament, 198:32
justice begins with, 374:1
love obtained by, 90A:14
loving one we cannot see, 360B:11
loving the reward of, 374:3
must not waver from God's promises, 159B:16
openly manifest, 360A:3
painful to live by, 360B:16
price for, is God himself, 72:17
reaching the end; believing, 14A:3
rejected, but protected by God, 360A:5
senses: hearing and sight, 360A:1,2
sight follows after, 360B:15
unfeigned, 359B:16
wish to see before believing, 360B:14
word celebrated in public, 360A:3
work of God: believing, 14A:3,5; 130A:1-4
faithful, the, 198:53
challenge of being Christians, 162C:2
false evidence, 306E:11
falsehood, 28A:2
farmers, 198:19,21
fasting, 198:56
attitudes towards, 198:7
becoming more like Christ, 198:5
conversion of bad Christians, 198:9
January the first, 198:6
joy and, 198:9
not difficult, 198:6
pagan festive days, 341:26
prayer and almsgiving, 198:8
soul humbled with, 198:5
suffering for Gentiles, 198:6
fate, 29B:6
father and son: son in evil ways, 159B:4
fear, 306E:11
crushed by, 360A:8
kicking at our door, 159A:3
last days, 114B:13
law; divine laws, 360A:8
love and, 130A:5,11
perfect charity and, 198:4
Peter's denial of Christ, 299A:2
servant of charity, 198:4
slave in, 198:12
fear of God, 360B:1
chaste; not servile, 130A:5,11
flood (Noah), 114B:1
feast days:
drunken celebration of, 198:9
fever, 306E:7
fig tree:
barren (parable), 110A:2
fire, 238:12
Vulcan (god), 198:23
fish:
seasoning with oil, 198:51
flattery, 162C:1
flesh, 198:27,49,62; 283:1
caritas and caro, 360C:1
Christ crucified, 159B:10
closeness to the soul, 159A:4
conflict with, 348A:10
feebleness of, 159A:4
fleshly desires, 360B:4
ideas according to, is death, 341:14
soul as leader, 159A:13
soul craves to stick to, 159A:12
trumple on, 299A:5
wellbeing, 299A:3
foal:
animal on which no one had ever sat, 359B:11
Jesus riding, into Jerusalem, 359B:11
food:
asking God to swallow it for us, 348A:14
dividing; partaking, 341:9
fools, 198:32
there is no God . . . , 374:9
forgiveness, 198:56
encouragement to sin, 352A:6
eye for an eye, 110A:8
your brother has something against . . . , 359B:21-23
fornication, 159A:10; 354A:5
idolatry as, 360A:6
fountains, 28A:1
free choice, See choice.
freedom:
secure, 159A:4
temporal goods, 159A:3
fuller's road, 341:21
fullness of the times, 352A:2,3,4
funerals, 142(appendix):2
future:
  prophetic prediction, 374:12
future life:
  desire created for, 341:21
  striving for, 360B:5

G

Gabriel (angel), 198:47,48
Gattus, 348A:7
Gehenna, 198:4
gentiles:
  beasts of the fields (metaphor),
    374:21
  beliefs, hopes, loves, 198:3,4
  fasting for, 198:6
  gathered from among the nations,
    198:2,7
  pleasures taken by, 198:3
  pride, 159B:14
  sacrifice to demons, 198:34
  sacrilegious rites, 162C:6; 198:36
  ungodliness, 198:30
Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3

gifts:
  created goods, 374:2
  God pays back good things for bad things, 28A:1
  good luck presents, 198:2,4
  repaying God, 28A:8
  ungrateful to God, 283:8
  what do you have that is not received . . . , 306E:5
  wisdom: knowing the source of,
    283:8
  gladiators, 352A:6
  glory, 283:4,5
  do all for glory of God, 198:56
  God alone, 198:47
  seeking one’s own, 299A:2
  goats: sackcloth, 198:5
  godless(-ness), 72:18; 348A:12; 374:14
  Babylon, 299A:8
  conversion, 352A:8
  fasting from, 198:5
  justification, 130A:3; 360B:21
  redemption and, 352A:1

godliness:
  angels and, 360B:21
  merit; God’s words, 341:6

power of, 359B:17
God:
  See also divinization; image of God;
    Jesus Christ; love for God; Son of God; Trinity
  anger with, and pity for, us, 159B:4; 198:22
  attributes; equality in each Person,
    341:15,17
  authority over all authorities,
    359B:13
  belief in one God, 130A:2
  blessed are the heart-pure,
    360B:13,15,20; 374:1
  changeable goods contrasted with,
    360B:12
  creator, See creation; creator.
  difference re those made into gods,
    238:2
  displeasure of the perverse, 352A:9
  dividing up, by qualities, 341:14,15
  dwelling in us, 306E:4
  enough for a soul, 198:33
  existence known through actions,
    374:9
  eyes of; and human conscience,
    162C:3
  faithful, 198:63
  Father, 198:42
  glory of, 72:9
  glory to be given to, 198:14
  good for himself, by himself, 72:18
  good of all goods, 72:18
  good that makes us good, 374:5
  human attributes applied to, 341:16
  humankind not needed by, 306E:4
  if you fix your eye on him . . . , 28A:7
  jealousy, 360A:11
  justice, 341:16
  knowledge of, and salvation, 198:29;
    360B:11
  light of minds, 360B:3
  love and fear of, 360B:1
  love for humankind, 23B:1
  love for man, his creature, 29:12
  love inseparable, 130A:5
  made debtor by his promises, 352A:5
  manifest, 198:32
  master: beneficial to us, not to him,
    359B:7
  maternal solicitude of, 360C:6
  mercy, 198:30
  mercy: not granting some prayers,
20B:1,3  
my Father and your Father . . . , 341:18

name is holy, 348A:11

nature and mercy of, 341:17

nearness to us, in Christ, 198:62

no need for his creatures, 359B:7

no need for sacrifices, 374:20

not enclosed in material shape, 159B:5

nothing can be said worthy of God, 341:16

notion of God’s consisting of parts, 341:14

one; three Persons, 198:48

only God can show himself, 374:8

our goodness not needed by, 341:19

pagan attitude toward God’s promises, 360A:5

patience, 20B:6

pays back good things for bad things, 28A:1

perception of the omnipresent, 348A:3

pity for those locked under sin, 159B:1,2,5,13

power and justice identical in, 341:17

power and mercy, 341:6

price of faith; love, 72:17

promises and their fulfillment, 159B:16; 299A:7

promises and threats, 360B:1

promises: true to his word, 374:1.3

promises: what eye has not seen . . . , 360B:11; 374:1

qualities absent in, 341:17

refuge in days of evil, 360A:9

repenting (metaphor), 341:16

satisfaction only from God, 90A:14

seeking, 374:4.8

created things are not God, 360B:10

learn to be ignorant of God, 360B:11

seen through his works, 374:9

show us the Father, 14A:4

single good thing, 72:18

sinners humbled by, 159B:2

soul’s greatness and, 360B:9

substance of, 341:17

suffering; possibility, 348A:3

supreme authority, 198:63

sweet when he is believed in, 159B:15

thinking of, in material terms, 341:8.9

time and space, 198:28

total excellence, 341:16

truthfulness, 28A:2

unchangeable, 159B:6; 360B:12

understanding: recapitulation, 341:20

unfinding; unknowing, 360B:7-8

wisdom and knowledge, 159B:1

word conceived in the mind, 293A:8

See worship.

wrath of, 198:30,32

gods, 23B:1

See also idolatry; paganism

asking, what they really are, 23B:4

blind, 23B:8

caricature, 23B:3

claiming to make, 23B:3

creature made, 360A:6

demons masquerading as, 198:3

discernment by God, 23B:6

Egypt; monstrous gods, 198:34

fallacy: calling them the powers of God, 198:47

false gods; soul as adulteress, 360A:6

foolish worshiping, 360B:23

gifts of the Magi, 374:13

humans as better than, 23B:5

Jacob and false gods, 360A:10

lying, 23B:5

miracles worked by apostles, 198:13

ordered to offer sacrifices to, 359B:13

pagans hiding their gods, 299A:8

personal cults; sacrilege, 198:47

Roman; demons, 198:14

vanishing from face of the earth, 360A:10

gold, 23B:8,11,12; 72:10,17; 90A:8,14; 360A:10; 374:5,7

goldsmith, 23B:11,12

good and evil:

Christ suffered for all, 29:11

discernment, 23B:15

disobedience as root of evil, 359B:8

drawing back from evil, 72:9

eternal fire; eternal God, 72:18

evils in Christian times, 23B:13-15

final reward, 29:11

gifts given to all people, 374:4

hidden punishment; unreal success, 29:8

highest good found in heart, 72:13

human race as one huge invalid, 114B:15-16

indiscriminate lot, 29:8

Volume III/11
loving iniquity means not loving self, 90A:7,8,12
motive: enjoyment, 130A:7
northern/southern spirits, 198:14
obedience and disobedience, 359B:7
pain and iniquity, 283:7
pleasure in iniquity, 29B:5
pride as root of all evils, 159B:11
providence and, 29:1,2
tree of the knowledge of, 359B:7
whoever loves iniquity . . . , 198:8
winnowing; threshing floor, 299A:9
good fortune, 360B:22
Good Friday, 218:1-15
good luck presents, 198:2,4
good will, 130A:8
good works, 341:26; 359B:18
believing without, 352A:2
conversions and, 360B:28
credit given to self, not God, 198:56
divine example, 162C:1
fervor in, 198:56
intention: glory of God, 72:9
praise God for, 29B:6
promised reward, 72:11
rest without end, 110A:5
rich people, 114B:13
sacrifice of justice, 72:9,10,11
seeking, with my hands, 72:9
serving the weak, 360C:4
goodness:
See also temporal goods
be what you hope for, 352A:5
God's goodness and ours, 341:19
God; good by which we become
good, 374:5
gospels:
bond: God in debt, 352A:5
last days, 114B:14
grace, 28A:1,3,6,8; 29:12; 29B:7; 130A:9,11; 198:36; 218:9; 283:2; 360A:3; 360B:5,24
commendation of, 374:23
denial of need of (by Pelagius), 348A:5,8,10
forgiveness of sin, 374:22
free will (Pelagian view), 348A:9
more abounding than wrongdoing,
159B:14
repentance, 110A:7
sinners and, 352A:3
sufficient, 20B:2
temptations and free choice, 348A:13
third period of time, 110A:5
grapes: marvelous growth, 374:11
gravity: weight of love, 283:5
greed, 23B:15; 159A:3; 114B:10; 306E:11; 374:1
banquets of the Lord, 28A:5,6
desire for more than enough, 198:33
Judas, 159B:9
no end to cupidity, 114B:14
poor people, 114B:11
root of all evil, 198:33
Greek language, 218:6
Greek "voice", 293A:7,8
fear, 142(appendix):1,2
guilt, 198:61
I have sinned . . . , 29B:7
punishment for sin is our due, 159B:3

H
habit: struggle with bad habits, 348A:10
Hadrian, temple of, 360B:26
hair, 360B:5
hands, 29:5
happiness:
eternal, 114B:16
last days, 114B:13
hard times, 114B:14
head, 29:5
healing, 90A:14; 130A:7; 299A:3; 360B:16
conversion as, 130A:7,9,12
cup of suffering, 299A:5
heavenly bread, 130A:12
self-healing, 306E:5
sin; God's work, 348A:2
health, 29:5,6; 72:18; 374:5
everlasting, 20B:9
human; false salvation, 20B:9
lust for, 283:3
petitions for, 20B:9
restoration of, 360B:17
resurrection of the body, 20B:3
hearing, 23B:5
heart, 90A:12; 130A:11; 162C:14; 198:58
abominations done away with,
360A:8
attachment to law of God, 29B:3
charity, 359B:16; 360B:11
cleansed by faith, 360B:7,13,15,19,27
cleansing the inner eye of, 360B:3,4,6
conversion, 130A:12
devotion; burning, 198:7
earth yielding its fruit, 130A:8
expanded by charity, 360C:1
fear and love in, 360B:1,11
fire of love, 198:8
grown cold, 198:27
haughty rich, 114B:12
highest good found in, 72:13
humble, 198:33
iniquity in eye of, 360B:17
Jesus: gentle and humble . . . , 142(appendix):4
lift up, or hearts, 159B:18
lifted up, 110A:6
purification of, 360B:13,15,19,27
raised, 299A:5
sacrifice, 114B:2
silence as voice of, 341:16
temple of prayer, 198:11
unclean desires of, 198:33,34
weighed down, 198:9
where God's spirit rests, 198:11
heaven, 110A:6; 198:26,53; 283:1
See also eternal life

come, you blessed of my Father . . . , 341:6
drunks and heretics in the kingdom, 293A:16
eye of a needle . . . , 114B:9; 341:3
heavenly bodies, 360B:8
people written in, 360A:10
reward must be worked for on earth, 374:3
rich people entering, 114B:9; 341:3
shut against the proud and greedy, 114B:11
suffering in, 341:20
throne, 360B:7
Hebrew language, 218:6
hell, 283:1
Hera (Juno), 198:21
heresy:
foretold, 360B:21,22
persistance in, 293A:16
Son is less than the Father, 341:13
spreads, when ignored, 348A:8
heretics, 198:15
entering heaven, 293A:16
savaging the sheep, 299A:3
seeing, they fail to believe, 360A:5
universal Church and, 299A:9
Herod, King, 110A:2,3; 374:14
Hippo, 348A:7; 360C:2
Hippocrates, 360B:17
hired servants (in Church), 198:12
holiness, 359B:5
grace from God, 162C:1
loving God's glory, 198:15
holy of holies, 198:53
Holy Spirit, 352A:4; 110A:7; 360B:18
bishops; obedience, 359B:12
buying, for money (Simon), 198:15
canonical scriptures, 162C:5
council at Jerusalem, 162C:9
desires hearts of lovers, 341:7
figure: seven loaves, 198:51
human discernment; judging, 23B:6
love poured into our hearts,
130A:8,11; 283:2
received from God, 283:8
rod of the plane tree (Jacob's), 341:25
seven operations (gifts) of, 198:51
Spirit gives life; letter kills, 283:2
home country, 198:59,61
honor, 159A:4
private, personal honor (pride), 198:46
risk to the one doing the honors, 198:15
Honorius, Emperor, 360B:26
hope, 72:9,10,11; 198:53; 283:5; 348A:4
360A:3,9
believe and, 130A:3
Donatists, 198:45
dwelling singly in, 72:16,18
Gentile vs Christian, 198:3,4
God's promises, 159B:16
goodness, 352A:5
humility; hope in God, 198:44
last days, 114B:14
misplaced; danger, 352A:7
perishing out of, 352A:6
riches, 114B:12
salvation, 360B:16
sentiment of the soul, 198:2
strength and firmness of purpose, 159A:12
wrong way, 352A:9
hospitality:
sharing Christ's suffering, 28A:4
human acts:
we too have a part to do, 348A:14

Volume III/11
human beings (humans; humankind):
See also image of God
angels to be, 159B:15
animals compared with, 374:3-4,6
better than the gods made by, 23B:5
creating; resuscitating, 374:11
discernment; gift of the Spirit, 23B:6
fashioned and shaped by God,
159B:15
invalid; Christ the doctor, 114B:15
man/woman not created evil,
159B:10
parts and powers (God’s work), 29:7
pride of place, in creation, 29:7
providence and, 29:7
sort of people we ought to be, 29:3
speech-making capacity, 374:4
Spirit of God and, 23B:6
taming by God, 360B:9
human body:
See also body and soul
beauty of, 29:6
greatness of God shown in, 90A:2
pairs in, 29:6
private parts, 29:6
proper self-love, 90A:7
skin covering, 29:6
slave of the mind, 159B:7,8
wonderful order in, 29:5-6
human condition:
See also death; incarnation; life; mortality
being men; being gods, 360B:5,6
born for distress, 299A:1
ever you are . . . , 360B:7
enduring trials and suffering, 23B:11
fleshly minded, 360B:4
God comes with mercy and compassion, 360B:17
lesson of the oil press, 23B:15
need for God, our supreme good, 359B:7
totally lacking in health, 348A:4
whole man is weak, sick, wounded, 348A:3

humility, 208:8; 28A:4; 29B:3; 114B:13; 159A:5; 198:32,56; 218:6; 360B:16,17,21,24,26
A dam acknowledges his sin, 159B:2
Christ as cure for evils of pride,
159B:11,13,15
Christ purifies/saves the humble, 198:38
cup of, rids swelling of pride,
159B:13
fasting and, 198:5
godfearing, 360B:7
God’s throne, 360B:7
holding on to, 198:15
Holy Spirit and those who sincerely love God, 341:7
home country, 198:59,61
hope in God, not in man, 198:44
human status of Christ, 198:60
imitation of Christ, 360B:17
incarnation and, 341:4
John the Baptist, 293A:3,4
mortality and, 360B:5
pagans ashamed to learn, 198:13
persevering in, 198:38
rejecting personal honoring, 198:46
self-sufficiency, 198:36
treated as of no account, 198:60
way to the heights, 360C:4
hunger, praising God, 159B:15
husband and wife:
betrothed to one husband, 359B:15
decision-making, 354A:4
not do not defraud one another . . . , 354A:6
man should leave father and mother . . . , 159A:9
pardon for lack of sexual restraint, 354A:7
Paul on conjugal rights, 354A:4-5
sex for sake of begetting children, 354A:9,12
sin in conjugal rights, 354A:8
two in one flesh, 341:20,22
wife, 72:17
wives’ rights re sexual abstinence, 354A:5
hypocrisy, 28A:6
hyssop, 218:11
idea, 293A:7
idolatry (idols), 162C:6,8
See also gods; paganism
banishing the name of, 360A:7
Church has two sorts of people, 360A:8
defender/worshiper of, 360A:9,10
destruction foretold, 114B:6

Sermons - Newly Discovered
Egypt, 198:33
Exodus on dealing with, 360A:11
false explanation, 198:16
fathers gain possession of lies, 360A:9
gods made by man, 23B:3
gold and silver, 360A:9
humans become like dumb gods, 23B:5
human-shaped, 198:34
images, 198:17
Jews, 159B:14
mockery of idols, 23B:9
notice will be taken of idols, 360A:6
numina of idols, 23B:8
origin, 198:7
pagan priests, 198:16
promise re idols of the nations, 299A:7
prophecy:
end of, 360B:21
idols to be done away with, 360A:5
sensible view of good pagans, 198:10
sign for thing signified, 198:17
silver and gold, 23B:8
temptation and, 23B:10
vanity of worshipping, 198:35
Vincent (martyr) refuses to offer incense to, 359B:13,20
wooden gods, 23B:4
worship of false gods, 360B:6
worshipers converted, 360A:8
worshipping gods represented by idols, 23B:8
ignorance, 198:13
false knowledge of God, 360B:11
illiterate persons, 110A:1
illness, See sickness
image of God, 374:6
created goods and, 374:2
disparaging self as sacrilege, 23B:7
eye has not seen . . . , 72:15
his light stamped in us, 72:12
human mind, 159B:5,6; 360B:9
idols and, 360A:6
love; conformed to the creator, 90A:6
vast difference: human mind, 360B:9
images (idols):
idolatry, 198:17,34
invisible realities, 198:17
sacrilegious, 198:28
worship, 198:35
imagination, 90A:12; 159B:5
imitation:
servants of God, 20B:8
immortality, 29:2; 198:39,41; 354A:1; 359B:9; 360B:23
God and Church as parents of, 198:42
obedience as root of, 359B:8
original justice, 359B:7
impatience, 283:7
impiety, 198:33; 360A:4,8
impurity:
desires of the heart, 198:33,34
incarnation:
began to be man; did not cease to be God, 341:10
bodily/spiritual creation, 198:61
Christ came to die for us, 7
concealed (O.T.), 341:24
form of a slave, 159A:5; 359B:8
God's love for humankind, 29:12
human nature received from a human nature, 341:10
humility of Christ, 159B:9; 198:60
Jacob's three rods, 341:25
made shareholders in immortality, 114B:15
purpose: deification of man, 23B:1
savior/mediator took on flesh, 198:43
virgin (terminology), 162C:6
Word became flesh, 198:44; 293A:5
incense:
coming to Christ with, 374:19
gift of the Magi, 374:18
sacrifice (Isaiah), 374:21
infidelity: destructive, 114B:2
inheritance, 90A:6; 159A:7
iniquity: denying God, 306E:11
injustice: denying Christ, 306E:10
intellectual life:
angels and humans, 198:26
intelligence, 23B:5; 374:5
gift, 283:8
irreligion:
falling away from God, 90A:10; 198:9,46
Isaiah: abolition of old ways, 374:20
Isis: temple of, 198:33
Israel, 374:13

J
Jacob: 218:12
Christ prefigured by, 341:23
Esau and, 341:23

Volume III/11
false gods and, 360A:10
inheritance of, 360A:10
seed of Abraham, 159B:16
Jacob's rods, 341:23-24
Jerome, Saint: Pelagius and, 348A:6
Jerusalem, 110A:6; 198:48; 348A:7
Babylon repaid double by, 299A:8
council; apostles and Jewish sacraments, 162C:8-9
godliness, 299A:8
Jesus Christ:
See also redemption
ark still being constructed by, 114A:7
atonement, 198:57
before his mother was created . . . , 130A:10
before the prophets who foretold him, 293A:2
belief in, from the beginning of the world, 360B:19
believing in, 14A:3; 130A:2ff
believing in, is loving him, 130A:5-6
See also faith:
birth date; day increasing, 293A:12
birth, death, resurrection, 29:11
birth of John the Baptist compared with, 293A:2
blaming, for bad times, 114B:14
both our way and our destination, 130A:6
bread (he called himself), 130A:1
bread; peace, 360C:5
bridegroom, 198:43; 341:19,20
burning desire for, 198:7
camel as figure or type, 114B:10
Christ (the name) comes from chrism, 198:51
crucifixion, 159B:9
Father handed over the Son, 159B:9,15
two others crucified with, 218:4
cup of our salvation, 28A:3
devil compares himself with, 198:41
dining at his table, 28A:4
displeasing to our pride, 360B:17
divine and human generation of, 359B:9
divine and human natures, 341:2
divinity, 341:5
Catholic faith, 359B:8
divinity and humanity, 341:10-18
humanity; Mary, 218:10
parable of tenants and vineyard, 341:24
doctor administers cup of suffering, 299A:5
doctor for the human race, 114B:15
divine and humanity, 341:10-18
equal to God . . . , 341:11,18
end of the law, 14A:2
entering secret places of heaven, 198:53
equal to the Father, 198:49; 341:20
father is greater than I . . . , 341:13
flesh; mother, 159B:10
foretold (the Word) his own future, 114B:6
form of a slave, 29:11; 198:4,10,44
fullness of the godhead, 198:10
god's promises (prophecies), 299A:7
head of the body, 341:19
heretical view: his manhood simulated, 159B:12
high priest, 198:43
himself the doctor and the medicine, 374:23
himself the priest and the sacrifice, 374:23
his lot is his inheritance, 159B:18
holiness of holies, 198:53,54,57
human affection, 218:10
humanity; whole man, 198:44
humiliated, 360B:26
humility, 159B:11,13; 198:38
assumed human nature, 159B:9
base-born things of the world, 198:60
hold on to, 159B:15
remedy for our pride, 360B:17
I am the way . . . , 306E:10
I and the Father are one, 28A:8
See incarnation.
interceding for us in holy of holies, 198:53
kingship, 360A:2
law-maker and gospel sower, 159A:6
learn from me: my yoke is sweet . . . , 142(appendix):4
less/greater than John the Baptist, 293A:3
living bread, 360C:3
long-suffering, 352A:7
Lord of the feasting, 341:5
lowliness chosen by, 341:4
lowliness, to ease our imitating him, 360B:17
made himself a slave, 360C:4
Mary at Cana: my hour . . . , 218:10
mediator, 198:36,38; 198:52,57; 341:20
death shared with humans, 198:39,40
healing the proud, 198:41
priesthood, 198:49,57
trustworthy, 198:40
wonderful change effected by, 198:39
mercy, 90A:2
miracles, 198:62
Cana, 374:11
visible words, 110A:1
mother of, 359B:9
my Father and your Father . . . , 341:18
my God and your God, 341:18
my teaching is not mine . . . , 130A:10
nations for his heritage . . . , 218:6
nativity:
born of a virgin, 341:25
happenings foretold, 374:15
Herod and the Magi, 374:14
See also Magi
nearness to us, 198:62
necessary to suffer, die and rise again,
359B:19
no one prays for, 198:54
no prayers needed by, 198:54
nobility conferred on place by, 341:4
obedience, 359B:8
obedience to his Father, 359B:9
obedient unto death, 359B:8
our bread, our peace, 360C:3
our way, our goal, 360C:4
pagans and heretics disgusted by,
159B:12
parents of, 198:60
passion and death:
broken legs of the two thieves, 218:13
carrying his cross, 218:2
for Christians, before Christians, 198:5
death with bowed head, 218:12
Father, forgive them . . . , 218:11;
360B:18
garments divided, 218:8
Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3
handed over to sinners, 299A:3
he did not deserve to die, 198:40
humility, 218:12
I thirst, 218:11
increased by dying, 218:15
inscription in three languages
It is accomplished . . . , 218:12
king of the Gentiles, 218:7
king of the Jews, 218:5,6,7
Mary entrusted to John, 218:10
meaning of, 218:1
model for his followers, 359B:19
myrrh as sign of, 374:18
power and authority, 218:12
price paid for whole earth, 159B:17
psalm 22; gospel, 159B:17
side pierced with a lance, 198:5
tunic without seam, 218:9
tunic woven from the top, 159B:18
underserving of death, 110A:7
vinegar on a sponge, 218:11,12
patience of the true doctor, 360B:18
poor, for our sake, 114B:7
prefigured by Jacob, 341:23
prefigured by king and priest, 198:50
presence called on, as witness,
359B:1
priesthood and kingship, 198:51
priesthood prefigured in O.T . . ,
198:53
proof of love and caring, 29:11
prophecy: all kings and nations will
serve him, 299A:7
propitiation for our sins, 198:55
proud abhor mortality of, 198:40
psalm 22 referring to, 341:1
purpose in his coming; the lowly,
198:59
questioned re putting away one’s
wife, 354A:2
reconciles us to the Father, 198:38,48
See also redemption
resurrection:
fear of death and, 360B:19
his own power, 159B:10
revealed in prophecy, 198:32
revealed in the Old Testament,
198:38
riding donkey’s foal into Jerusalem,
359B:11
seed of David, 198:50
separation from, by cajolery or
savagery, 159A:2

Volume III/11
serve one another (example), 359B:9
serves by giving orders, 359B:10
sinless; without blemish, 198:49
slave of the Father, 359B:9
slave to us, 359B:9
See Son of Man; Son of God
suffered by his own will and
authority, 159B:10
suffering not deserved, 159B:10
suffering, of his own free will, 218:1
tempted by the devil, 159A:8
temporary light, 341:18
truth, 114B:6; 159B:12
understanding Christ in Scripture; 3
ways, 341:1-26
1st way, 341:3-9
2nd way: as God and man, 341:10-18
3rd way: whole Christ, head and body, 341:19ff
identification of the 3 ways, 341:2
viewed as a liar, 159B:12
washed his disciples' feet, 360A:3
whole Christ, head and body, 341:19
women and, 198:10
Word before/after: John the voice,
293A:10
See Word of God.
Word of the Father, 130A:10
Jews:
claim to be just, 374:22
conquered by Romans, 374:15
conversion to Christ, 374:15
converts to Christianity, 162C:6-9
denial of Christ, 218:7
Gideon's fleece, 360A:3
nonbelief, 14A:5
pride; sunk in iniquity, 159B:14
propagation of the race, as duty, 359A:11
sacraments of, 162C:6
saved (O.T.) by faith in Christ, 198:32
wrath of God, 198:30
Job, 198:38,63; 208:7
John, apostle and evangelist:
angel of the Apocalypse, 198:14,16
gave up all to follow Christ, 341:3
leaning on Christ's breast, 341:5
never claimed to be mediator, 198:55
uneducated, 341:5
John the Baptist, 114B:10
among those born of woman . . . , 293A:3,14
baptism as transitory, 293A:11
baptisms: voice before Word,
293A:15
baptizing in water for repentance, 293A:4
birth of, 293A:1-15
birth of Jesus compared with, 293A:2
diminished; beheaded, 293A:12
friend of the bridegroom, 293A:4
He must grow . . . , 293A:12
I am the voice . . . , 293A:5
light, 341:18
measure of a man, 293A:3
mistaken for the Christ, 293A:4
not asked to deny Christ, 306E:10
purpose of his coming, 293A:3
re-baptism, 293A:13-15
superiority over other prophets,
293A:2
unique merit: he saw the Christ,
293A:2
Word before/after the "voice", 293A:10
Joseph, Saint, 198:50
Joseph of Arimethea, 218:15
joy, 29:2; 72:10; 159B:15; 162C:1;
299A:1; 359B:23
fasting and, 198:9
Judah, 218:12
Judas, 293A:15
greed, 159B:9
handing Christ over . . . , 159B:9
judgment:
discernment, 238:6
eating and drinking unworthily, 238:6
flood (Noah) and, 114B:1
herald and judge, 293A:16
readiness for, 114B:8
suitable words: come; go . . . , 341:6
Juno (image), 198:20-21,63; 360B:23
Just people:
temptation allowed, 208:8; 198:63
justice, 198:38
attributed to God, 341:16
color of, 341:14
distinguished by the mind, 159B:6
doing good as sacrifice of, 72:9,10,11
faith counted as, 130A:3
faith, the beginning of, 374:1
fornication and, 159A:10
law and, 130A:10,11
law; faith, 130A:12
love of, 90A:12; 306E:1
not having my own . . . , 130A:10,11
perception of, 374:7
persecution for the sake of, 359B:17
providence and, 29:8
seeking first, 72:16
something to be put on, 162C:1
whole perceived by more than one, 341:9
whole product of our lives, 374:1
justification:
Christ the justifier, 130A:3,6
free will as cause, 348A:8,9
help from God not needed, 348A:9
humiliation for sin, 159B:2
I am, I am the one . . . , 374:23
learning of, 159B:8,10,13
not by our own powers and merits, 348A:4
progress in, 159B:15
purification, 198:41

K
killing: body and soul, 299A:3
kingdom of God:
repent and believe, 352A:2
seek justice first, 72:16
kings:
al on earth shall worship Christ, 299A:7
submission to Christ, 360B:24
knocking, 28A:5; 114B:9; 159A:3
ask and you shall receive . . . , 360B:12

L
languages:
different voices (sounds), 293A:7-8
God (the word) in four languages, 293A:8
many colors of the queen’s gown, 360A:2
work of the soul, 360B:9
last day, See judgment day,
last times, See end of the world.
Latin language, 218:6
Latin “voice”, 293A:7,8
law:
Christ as the end of, 14A:2
discipline, 14A:2
eye for an eye, 110A:8
fear of damnation, 130A:11
figure: five barley loaves, 198:51
holy, 159B:14
jealous teachers of, 341:24
justice from, 130A:10
love of God and neighbor, 90A:2,4
nursemaid, 283:2
periods of, 110A:5
salvation and Mosaic law, 162C:9
truth and, 198:30
used to tempt, 159A:7
wrongdoing abounding, 159B:14
leadership:
soul and the flesh, 159A:13
learning:
unteachable pagans, 198:13
letter kills, 283:2
levity, 283:5
life:
See also conversion of life
infested by highwaymen, 114B:3
lust for, 283:3
presumption re sudden death, 142(appendix):2
safety in time, 299A:3
shortness and uncertainty of, 360B:6
way pointed out by Christ, 114B:5
light, 28A:2; 198:28; 360B:14
daystar, 341:18
image of God stamped in us, 72:12
neither has eye seen . . . , 360B:7
relative perception of, 341:6
spiritual, 159B:5,6
lion, 218:12; 359B:13,14,15
literature: pagan authors, 23B:14
liturgy:
prayers addressed to the Father, 198:49
loaves and fish, 198:51
Lord’s Prayer:
forgive us our debts, 110A:8;
348A:11
Pelagian view of petitions, 348A:11
Lot: in Sodom, 306E:1
love, 198:53; 218:9
ardor’s effects, 90A:9

Volume III/11
being incorporated, 130A:6
believing in . . . , 130A:5
charity, 90A:12,13
charity eliminates weakness, 299A:2
commandments: fulfilling one fulfills other also, 90A:12
compendium of the whole law, 90A:2
cornerstone for conversions, 299A:2
driven by, 114B:16
faith obtains what the law commands, 90A:14
father and son; inheritance, 90A:6
fear and, 130A:5,11
fear and perfect charity, 198:4
fullness of the law, 130A:5
Gentile vs Christian, 198:3,4
genuine; chaste, 198:3
genuine only if both God and neighbor are included, 90A:13
going into Christ, 130A:6
gravity; weight, 283:5
great commandment: God and neighbor, 90A:1ff
heart on fire, 198:8
lay down our lives for our brethren, 359B:19
maternal, 360C:6
mutual, 299A:3
obedience to bishops, 359B:23
paying the marriage debt, 354A:13
poured out in our hearts, 283:2
pray for conversions, 198:8
sentiment of the soul, 198:2
love for God:
angels and, 359B:16
believing before we see, 360B:11
great commandment, 90A:1-4
Holy Spirit and the humble, 341:7
limitless, 90A:9
must be free, 72:17
reward: eye has not seen . . . , 360B:2,3; 374:1
testing by the Lord, 341:7
true love of self, 90A:7
whole heart, mind and soul, 90A:9,11
love of neighbor:
first commandment fulfilled by, 90A:4
love, 90A:13
natural love, 90A:6
presupposes love of self, 90A:7
preventing wrongdoing, 90A:12,13
start from, to arrive at God, 90A:5
ten commandments, 90A:4
L u c e, 360A:9
l u s t, 20B:6; 23B:15; 72:15; 352A:6; 110A:6; 159B:14; 198:9,27; 283:2,3; 360B:7
conquerer of, 354A:10
paying the marriage debt, 354A:13
lying:
claiming credit, 28A:5,6
deceitful life, 28A:6
false evidence is denying Christ, 306E:11
God repays good for evil, 28A:2
idolatry, 360A:9
man-made gods, 23B:5
panic: every man is a liar, 28A:2,6
M

Maccabees:
companions of Daniel and, 306E:9
M agi:
conversion: they returned in another way . . . , 374:23
gifts: gold, frankincense, and myrrh, 374:13,18
gifts offered to false gods, 374:13
incense as gift, 374:18
knowing that the star was Christ’s, 374:13
led by power of Christ, 374:12
need to ask where Christ was born, 374:14
magic, 198:36,41,63
curing by, 306E:7
Pharaoh’s magicians, 198:38
public/private rites, 198:28
man (the word), 348A:8
Manichees:
humility of Christ and, 159B:12
M appalia, 359B:5
marriage:
See also husband and wife
better to marry than to burn, 354A:12
divine institution, 348A:3
foregoing, 354A:2
good of, 354A:1-13
kinship obligation (O.T.), 354A:11
last times; sexual abstinence, 114B:13; 354A:3
Paul on, 162C:14
question re putting away one’s wife, 354A:2

Sermons - Newly Discovered
Sermons: Newly Discovered

sexual abstinence (O.T.), 354A:11
sinfulness question, 354A:8
spiritual, 159A:10
unrestrained sexual desire in,
354A:9,12
what God has joined . . . , 159A:8
wife's case against in-laws, 159A:9
martyrdom:
cause, not the penalty, 359B:17,18
husband fears wife as Eve, 159A:13
put to death all the day long, 159A:1
seeking one's own glory, 299A:2
tests of obedience, 359B:13
wife fears husband as serpent,
159A:13
martyr(-s):
born for a crown, 299A:1
Christ's disciples, 360B:19
commemorated in mysteries, 198:12
commend ourselves to their prayers,
306E:1
confession of faith, 299A:8
denying Christ, 306E:10
devil makes false martyrs, 359B:16
false and true, 359B:16,17,18
God listens to, 198:11
good will, 306E:6
hidden; peace, 306E:6
hired servants and, 198:12
honoring, 198:46; 299A:1
improper celebrations of, 198:9
king [Herod] fell by having just man
killed, 306E:10
loved as exemplar, 198:3
lust for life, 283:3
memorial shrine, 198:47
patience, 283:1,4
persecutions foretold, 360B:24
persecutor promises, 20B:10
precious in the eyes of the Lord . . . ,
359B:16
promised victory, 299A:7
psalm 118: like a pile of sand . . . ,
306E:1,2,6,11
renown of, 306E:1
shed blood in and for the Church,
359B:19
solemn feast days, 306E:8
tempted by family, 159A:7
threat of financial ruin, 159A:4
ture and false compared, 359B:20
veneration of, 198:12
victorious over pleasure and pain,
306E:1
wit, 198:24
women, 159A:11
worship of (accusation), 198:47
wrestling; shedding blood, 306E:2,6,9
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
entrusted to John, on Calvary, 218:10
faithful chastity; undefiled virginity,
341:25
honor of the female sex, 159B:10
Jesus, before his conception, 130A:10
royal/priestly line, 198:50
seed of Abraham, 159B:16
virgin birth; and birth of John the
Baptist, 293A:2
virginity:
chaste mind, 159B:13
Jacob's balsam tree, 341:25
Word of God in womb of, 341:8
material bodies (in creation), 159B:5
materialism, 90A:12
Maximinus, Bishop:
conversion of, 360C:2
meal: paying back, 28A:7
mediator(-s), 198:57
devil as, See devil.
necessity, 198:37
ture and false, 198:38
medicine, 374:16
application of contraries, 341:4
meek: blessed, 114B:11
Melchizedek, 198:38; 374:19
memory, 360B:9
gift, 283:8
Mercury (god), 198:24,63; 299A:8;
360B:23
mercy, 90A:5,14; 198:45; 218:6; 360B:17
Christ's will that no one perish,
352A:1
God's blessing on his people, 20B:9
judgment day, 341:6
punishment for sin, 159B:3
rich man entering heaven, 341:3
sinners and, 352A:6
washing of rebirth, 341:21
merit, 360A:3
apostles Peter and Paul, 299A:4
earning by our prayers, 348A:4
God's words to godly and ungodly,
341:6
Peter and Paul, 299A:1,6
suitable words on judgment day,
341:6

Volume III/11
Sermons - Newly Discovered

Volume III/11

Messiah:
cornerstone rejected, 306E:3
demons’ belief in, 130A:2,5
recognized, Jews would not have killed him, 341:24
scriptures fulfilled in Jesus, 374:15
Michael (angel), 198:47
migraine, 23B:10
military service, 283:4
mind, 23B:5; 29:5,7; 198:28
body as slave of, 159B:7,8
changeable, 159B:6
genuine conception of, 360B:10
God’s light, 360B:3
great good, 374:5
hearts raised up, 198:27
image of God, 360B:9
inner eye; inner light, 360B:10
members fighting against law of,
348A:10
senses and, 159B:6
senses of, corrupted, 341:12
spiritual, 159B:5,6
surpasses all bodily things, 360B:12
virginity of, 341:12
word conceived in, 293A:11
worship, 198:17
miracles:
Christ’s, as visible words, 110A:1
Christ’s disciples, 360B:19
daily, in nature, 374:11
either done or spoken, 374:12
nature’s obedience to Christ, 359B:9
Paul, Barnabas, and Peter, 198:13
prophetic prediction as, 374:12
woman bent double for eighteen years, 110A:1
miser, 360B:21
misfortune, 130A:7
money:
love of, 159A:3,4
money-grubbers, 360A:9
monster, 198:53
moon, 374:9
temple to, 198:17
worship, 198:17
moral conditions:
one-christian values, 198:3
morality:
Gentile vs Christian, 198:3
mortality, 23B:1
See also death; immortality
end is coming, 354A:1
healing of, 360B:20
humility and, 360B:5,6
Moses, 130A:10; 162C:6; 198:38; 341:22
covenant, 374:17
five books of, 198:51
Mother Earth, 198:19
mothers:
lacking love for children, 341:22
mountain of pride, 198:59,61
mourning, 360C:6
murderers, 359B:17
music, 360B:2
myrrh, 374:18
mysteries:
Christian; not secret, 198:20
mystical body, 130A:1
N
nations:
begotten through the gospels, 341:23
festival (New Year), 198:1
(i.e. Gentiles), See Gentiles.
inheritance of Christ, 341:24
parable: tenants of the vineyard, 341:24
subjection to Christ, 218:6
tied in devil’s chains, 359B:11
varieties of; Jacob’s sheep, 341:23-25
wilderness as metaphor for, 374:21
nature:
God’s providence, 29:9
miracles performed constantly, 29:10;
374:11
obedience, 359B:9
orders in (spiritual/material), 159B:5,7
seek the creator, 198:31
Neptune:
cult of, 198:18,21,35,63; 360B:23
new covenant, See covenant.
New Year:
pagan celebration, 198:1,6,43
Nicodemus:
name: victory and people, 218:15
Niniveh, 114B:2
nipples (in males), 29:6
Noah, 114B:1,2,8
christian life, now, 114B:7,8
Church as, 114B:2
crow and dove, 360B:27
squared timbers, 306E:3
North:
cold and darkened spirits, 198:14,27
dominion of the devil, 198:27
numbers:
five loaves, two fish, 198:51
seven loaves, 198:51
three, six, eighteen, 110A:5
numidia, Primate of, 359B:2
numina of idols, 23B:8
nursemaid, 283:2
nut(-s):
Jacob's rod, 341:25
weighing, 341:22

obduracy, 283:7
obedience, 359B:1-11
be the foal carrying the Lord, 359B:11
command to do an evil thing, 359B:13
daughter of charity, 359B:12
distinguished from disobedience, 359B:7
example of Christ, 359B:8
faithful in small matters, 359B:6
martyrdom, 359B:13
mind and body, 159B:8
reforms in Carthage, 359B:5
right order of, 359B:13
slaves of the foal while leading the foal, 359B:11
oil press, 23B:15
old age: passage of time, 360B:5
olive tree, 23B:15
oppression, 23B:15
Optatus: baptism of, 293A:14
orators:
fishermen (apostles) and, 341:4
order:
examples in creation, 374:9,11
finding God, 360B:9
human reason; divine Wisdom, 29:10
limits in created order, 374:2
providence and, 29:2-3
organ music, 360B:2
original sin:
suffering and, 23B:11; 159B:7
Orosius (priest), 348A:6
oxen, 29:9

p
pagan(-s; -ism):
See also gods; idolatry
better educated; idols, 198:16
disbelief in prophecies, 360A:5
evils in Christian times, 23B:13-15
false gods, 23B:3
festival days; pleasures, 198:8
good and bad pagans, 198:10
New Year celebration, 198:1
origins, 198:27
re miracles worked by Paul and Barnabas, 198:13
sacrilegious rites, 198:36,41,47
struggle against, 198:58

parents:
apparent conflict in commandments, 159A:6
God as Father; Church as mother, 360C:6
honour father and mother . . . , 159A:6
natural and supernatural, 198:42
punishing children they love, 159B:4
Parnesian (Donatist), 198:52

Passover:
disciples preparing for, 359B:10
lamb's bone not to be broken, 218:13
pastors: just lives, 162C:1
patience, 352A:6
Christ's example, 218:1
definition, 283:7
love of, 283:8
martyrs, 283:4
pain, 283:1
religion refined by, 29:8

Volume III/11
rewarded, 360B:1
source, 283:6
tribulation, 72:9
Paul, Apostle, Saint:
See also Peter and Paul
affection, 341:22
baptisms of John and, 293A:13,15
believing in, 130A:3,6
called "Mercy", 198:13
commends himself to be prayed for, 198:57
on conjugal rights, 354A:4-5
crown, reward for God's own gifts, 299A:6
crown of justice, 299A:9
death of, 359B:16
father's love; mother's love, 341:22
fill up what is lacking . . . , 341:20
holiness of, 354A:4
hope in God, not in himself, 198:44
I am already being immolated . . . , 299A:4
I have completed the course . . . , 299A:6
I have fought the good fight . . . , 299A:4
letter to the Hebrews, 306E:2
letters to seven Churches, 198:51
on marriage, 162C:14
merits of, 299A:4
nurse caressing her children, 341:22
possibility of lying, 162C:13-14
praise of, 20B:2
prayer on the goad in his flesh, 20B:2,3,7;
130A:9
rebuke of Peter called deceit, 162C:4,5,13-14
rejects being worshipped instead of Christ, 198:15
vision of, 159B:1
wanted God in him to be loved, 198:53
watch against the dragon, 359B:15
withstood Peter to his face, 162C:3-14
Paul (previously Saul):
acts against Christians, 299A:6
obtained mercy . . . , 299A:6
laid low by voice from heaven, 299A:6
persecutor made into preacher, 299A:6,8
why are you persecuting me . . . , 341:20
Peace, 072:8; 198:45; 306E:6;
359B:20,21
bond of, 306E:3
good will, 114B:11
hunger for, 360C:3
preaching, 299A:3,4
reward of good works, 72:9
seeking, on earth, 72:10
Pelagianism:
blessings empty of meaning, 348A:13
Pelagius, 348A:1
absolved by bishops of Palestine, 348A:6,7,15
denial of need of grace, 348A:5,8,10
Pentateuch, 198:51
perfection: 14A:1; 130A:12; 306E:1,2
charity vs fear, 198:4
nothing to be taken to task for, 162C:3
sell all that you have . . . , 114B:9
perishing, 90A:9
Perpetua and Felicity (martyrs), 159A:11
persecution, 159A:12; 198:26
beatitude, 283:6
Catholic emperors, 359B:15
Christians confessing Christ, 299A:8
foretold, 360B:24
martyrs, 306E:7
not for sake of justice, 283:6
persecutors:
giving in to, 299A:3
promises to martyrs, 20B:10
perseverance, 23B:11; 198:61
Peter, Apostle, Saint:
belief in Son of God, 130A:2,5
Church prayed for P. in chains, 198:57
death of, 359B:16
emperor at tomb of, 360B:26
fisherman, 198:60
forcing gentile Christians to judaize, 162C:7-14
honored by emperors, 360B:26
humility in accepting Paul's rebuke, 162C:3
inner infirmity, 299A:5
Israelite, 341:24
Jesus prayed that his faith not fail, 348A:12
miracle worked by, glorified Christ, 198:13
Paul "withstood him to his face", 162C:3,4

Sermons - Newly Discovered
rebuke by Paul called deceit, 162C:4,5,13
threefold confession of love, 299A:2
tomb in Rome, 341:4
warning about the lion, 359B:15
you are the Christ . . . , 348A:3
Peter and Paul (feast of):
birthday of, 299A:1-9
merits; equal value of their suffering, 299A:1
same date; different year, 299A:1
petitions, See prayer
philosophers, 238:14
self-sufficiency, 198:36
philosophy:
led astray by, 198:10,21,29
piety, 29:3
pigs, 198:33
pity, 359B:13
divine; for those locked under sin, 159B:1,2,5,13
punishment and, 159B:4
Plato, 198:59; 218:7
pleasure:
allurement of, 306E:1
bad Christians, 198:9
continence, 283:1.3
demons and Gentiles, 198:3
despair and, 352A:8
law and, 283:2
pagan festival days, 198:8
seeking, 72:16
self-control, 283:8
temptations, 283:7
poor and rich, See rich and poor
poverty: voluntary; virtue, 341:3
power: yours is the power . . . , 341:6
praise, 130A:7; 283:1
confession as, 298:2,6
seeking, 72:9
prayer(-s), 360C:2
angels present them to God, 198:48
ask and you will receive, 360B:12
clean place (heart; church) where you pray, 198:11
delivery from affliction, 306E:10
earthly petitions, 110A:3
fasting and almsgiving, 198:8
goad in Paul’s flesh, 208:2,7; 130A:9
God listens even if he appears not to, 208:1,3
inner room (heart), 198:11
leisure for (by the married), 354A:6
need for grace, 348A:14
Pelagians abolish need of, 348A:9
petitions against our best interests, 208:1,6
petitions for material goods, 348A:9
request for, 299A:3
seek the things that are above, 110A:3
sincerity, 198:56
preaching:
perseverance in, 299A:3
in season, out of season, 299A:4
precious objects, 374:7
presumption, 198:44,52
pride, 114B:7,11; 198:37,41,62; 360B:16,17,24,26; 374:22
beginning of every sin, 360B:17
calling themselves wise . . . , 198:38
children and parents, 159B:4
Christ concealed himself from the proud, 198:32,33
cured by humility of God, 341:4
delight in being honored, 198:46
devil, 198:22,28,29; 360B:5,6
fallen angel, 198:14
falsely claiming to be wise, 198:32,33
first of all sins, 159B:5
fountainhead of all diseases, 159B:13
home country; mountain of pride, 198:59
lowliness repugnant to, 159B:12,13
mind flogged by its slave, the body, 159B:7
overthrowing, 341:4
praise self, accuse God, 298:6
rich people and, 114B:12
root of all evils, 159B:11,13,15; 198:33
slave and master, 159B:7
spirit of this world, 283:8
swollen with, 159B:13
vanity of, 198:43
worship desired by the proud, 198:44,46
would outstrip Christ, 198:44
priest(-s; -hood):
bodily blemish, 198:49
in charge of Churches, 198:53
Christ prefigured in O.T . . , 198:53
commended himself for prayers (O.T.), 198:54
order of Aaron; of Melchizedek, 374:19
procrastination, 352A:5,7; 360B:27

Volume III/11
prodigal son:
  returning to himself . . . , 90A:10
promises, 374:3
  See also God; promises
  fulfillment, 299A:7
tempting, 283:7
vast list of, 299A:7
propagation (Old Testament), 354A:11
properties:
  fear of losing, 299A:2
prophec(-y; -ies):
  all has its end in Christ, 374:20
  Christ revealed in, 198:32
  examples of fulfillment, 360A:5
  fulfillment related to faith, 360B:20
  heaven thunders in, 360A:8
  little remains to be fulfilled, 114B:3
  one true sacrifice, 374:16
  pagan disbelief in, 360A:5
  prediction as miracle, 374:12
  vast list of God’s promises, 299A:7
prophets:
  believing in, 130A:3
  Christ revealed through, 198:38
  desire to see the Messiah, 293A:2
  knowledge of God, 198:29
  last days, 114B:15
  redeemed by Christ, 293A:2
  spoke of near/distant future, 114B:6
  Word of God speaks through, 114B:5
prosperty, 110A:6; 114B:14
pride, See pride.
providence:
  animals; God cares, 29:9
  denial of, 29:1, 2, 12
  disordered human affairs, 29:3
  faith in, 29:11
  good and evil people, 29:1, 2
  governing human beings, 29:7
  justice and, 29:8
  order in nature/creation, 29:2, 2-3, 10
  scriptural assertion, 29:9
prudence, 20B:11
proper season (preaching), 299A:4
Psalms 22:
  modeled on person of Christ, 341:1
Punic “voice”, 293A:7, 8
punishment, 90A:14; 130A:8
  confession of sins, 298:1
  mercy and pity in, 198:4
  penalty for all sins, 198:33
  some sins are also punishments, 198:33
purification of soul, 198:27, 28
purification, 198:49, 58
  See also justification
  Church and, 198:42
  devil and, 198:38, 44
  mediators, 198:37, 44
  philosophers and, 198:36
purity:
  blessed are the heart-pure, 360B:13, 15, 20; 374:1
  Pythagoras, 198:36, 59
Q
Quadratus:
  foursquare, 306E:8
  martyr and saint, 306E:1
  meaning of his name, 306E:3
questioning:
  teaching by, 299A:2
race (athletic): end stone, 14A:2
rain; voluntary rain, 130A:8, 9, 11
reason, 29:4, 10
reconciliation: forgiveness, 359B:21-23
redemption, 90A:14
  See also heaven; Jesus Christ;
  Messiah; salvation
  blood given as price of, 299A:2
  blood of the Just One, 110A:7
  Christ came to save sinners, 348A:1
  Christ died for us, 198:2; 28A:4;
  348A:2
  flesh of sin, 110A:7
  fullness of the times, 352A:2
  God did not spare his own Son,
  352A:1; 348A:3
  mercy and judgment, 352A:1
reforms:
  bishop Aurelius in Carthage, 359B:5
  repentance, 359B:23
  baptism and, 352A:4
  catechumens, 352A:3
  fullness of the times, 352A:4
  God’s patience leading to, 20B:6;
  29:1
  John the Baptist, 293A:4
  mercy and judgment, 352A:1
  perish without, 110A:2, 3, 4
  produce fruits worthy of, 110A:5
  said of God metaphorically, 341:16
Sermons - Newly Discovered

self-punishment, 29B:1
sinners drawn to, 352A:6
taking religion seriously, 352A:3
whole human race exhorted to,
110A:7
research, 162C:15
resurrection of the body: 90A:14; 198:53
heavenly bodies, 159B:15
hope for, 159B:9
perfect as angels, 198:15
perfect health, 20B:3
resuscitation, 374:11
retirement, 283:4
reward:
everlasting life, 341:3
good and evil, 29:11
hidden punishment, 29:8
leaving all and following Christ, 341:3
seeing God face to face, 374:1
tempting pleasures, 283:7
work of God (believing), 130A:4
rich and poor, 23B:15; 28A:6,7
See also almsgiving.
both good and bad people may have riches, 374:4
burial custom, 142(appendix):1
difficult for rich to enter heaven,
114B:9-10
good works by the rich, 114B:13
parable of Lazarus, 142(appendix):3
poor in spirit, 114B:11,12
pride, 114B:12
rich man sad re giving up all, 341:3
salvation; damnation, 114B:11
sell all you have . . . , 114B:12
Rome (Romans), 218:6; 348A:11;
360B:25,26
emperors; Peter, 341:4; 360B:26
gods, 198:34
Jews conquered by, 374:15
root of Jesse, 360A:2
roots: plant growth, 374:11
S
sabbath, 162C:6
curing on, 110A:5
sacking (or sackcloth), 198:5
sacrament(-s), 198:42
burial of catechumens,
142(appendix):1
celebrated in secret, 360A:3
figure: Christ's divided garments,
218:8,9
initiation: power to change way of
life, 374:19
pierced side of Christ, 218:14
symbolic; locked up meanings,
341:23
sacrifice: 306E:7
blood, 374:20
body of Christ, 374:19
contrite heart as, 114B:2
convicting, not purifying (O.T.),
374:22
doing good; justice, 72:9,10,11
God displeased with animal victims,
374:21
incense, 374:18,21
Isaiah on new ways of: 374:20
just blood to be shed (Isaiah), 374:21
nor have I craved the fat . . . , 374:22
old gives way to one true sacrifice,
374:16
pagan, 162C:6
practiced (O.T.) but not understood,
374:20
prayer, 110A:3
total change (from O.T.), 374:16,19
why God changed, 374:22
sacrilege, 198:28,36,41,47; 306E:7
insulting God's image, 23B:7
safety: time and eternity, 299A:3
saints, 198:53
precious in the eyes of the Lord . . . ,
359B:16
sufferings of, 359B:15
veneration: grounds, 359B:16
winnowing, 299A:9
wit, 198:24
salvation, 198:58,63; 359B:11
See also eternal life; heaven;
judgment day; redemption
Christ came for all people, 360B:24
circumcision and (Paul vs Peter),
162C:7-14
crown of justice, 299A:6,8
drunks and heretics, 293A:16
eternal safety, 299A:3
everlasting health, 20B:9
every age called to, 360B:25
faith in Christ (O.T. & N.T.), 198:32
health and, 20B:9
hope, 360B:16
knowledge of God and, 198:29
Magi and, 374:13

Volume III/11
need of God's mercy, 198:30
observance of Mosaic law, 162 A:9
our own powers and merits, 348 A:2
paying back, cup of, 28A:1,3
repent and believe, 352 A:2
Sarah (wife of Abraham), 114 B:6
savagery, 159 A:2,5
scandal, 14A:2
foretold, 114 B:6
schism, 198:15,42
beginning of evil of, 360 B:4
foretold, 360 B:21,22
scripture, See bible.
seasons: seek the creator, 198:31
sea:
cult of Neptune, 198:18,35
parts, 341:8
seek the creator, 198:31
transcended, 198:27
second coming:
flood (Noah) and, 114 B:1
secrecy:
pagan vs christian mysteries, 198:20
security:
false sense of, 114 B:1,14
seduction, 159 A:2
moral conditions, 198:3
Roman gods, 198:34
seed:
in your seed shall all the nations . . . , 360 A:4
wonder of, 374:11
self-control, 348 A:14
pleasures and, 283:8
self-esteem:
spirit of this world, 283:8
self-image:
disparaging self as sacrilege, 23B:7
self-love, 90 A:4
commandment, 90 A:7
self-sufficiency, 198:36; 348 A:10
senses, 72:15
created spirit and, 198:25
deceived, 198:62
faith and, 360 A:1
immaterial mind and, 159 B:6
inner self, 23B:5
lookout for body's health, 29:5
material bodies, 159 B:5
mind and body, 341:12
mind gives orders to body, 159 B:8
prayer; inner room, 198:11
thought and, 360 B:7
useless if spirit is missing, 374:6
serpent:
devil as, 359 B:15
Eve and, 341:12
senses of mind corrupted by, 341:12
service:
care of the sick and the weak, 359 B:23
serving, 359 B:9
seven (number), 198:51
sex:
See also husband and wife
abstinence as punishment, 354 A:12
abstinence in the last times, 354 A:3
master of movements of the flesh, 354 A:10
paying the marriage debt, 354 A:13
shade: Jacob's plane tree, 341:25
shanties: singing, 198:11
sharing, 114 B:13; 198:11
sheep and shepherd:
recognizing voice of shepherd, 299 A:2
sheep (metaphor for people)
bought and plundered, 299 A:2
feed my sheep . . . , 299 A:3
holocausts, 374:21
Jacob's rods, 341:23-25
sickness (the sick):
care of, 359 B:23
Church's care for, 360 C:6
diagnosis, 360 B:17
illness, 130 A:7,12
ministering to, 360 C:5
patient and doctor, 299 A:5
patient with variety of disorders, 159 B:11
sight:
earned by faith, 360 B:20
eyes and heart, 360 B:3,11
eyes of the mind and, 374:6
faith and, 159 B:15
faith first, then sight, 360 B:15
sense of, 198:27
sign(-s):
Gideon's fleece, 360 A:3
gifts of the Magi, 374:18
idolatry, 198:17,21
silence:
motive: desire for this life, 299 A:3
voice of the heart, 341:16
words in the mind, 293 A:7
Siloam, tower of (18 men killed),
110A:2,4,7
silver, 23B:8,11
Simeon, 28A:3
my eyes have seen . . . , 293A:2
Simon:
would exalt himself by miracles, 198:15
simplicity:
dwelling singly in hope, 72:16,18
sin:
anger with oneself, 72:9,10
bars the way to God, 198:40
cannot go unpunished, 29B:3
carelessness and negligence, 352A:6
Christ (not John) is our advocate, 198:55
collision, 29B:2; 198:36
daily remedy, 110A:8
death and, 110A:7
denying Christ, 306E:10
despair, 352A:6
drawn to; driven to, 283:1
energetic avoidance of, 198:56
forgiveness as encouragement to, 352A:6
See also forgiveness of sin
God says: I have kept quiet . . . , 159B:2,3
good slave made into son, 198:12
good masters, 198:4
hating to continue in, 352A:3
I clothed myself in sacking . . . , 198:5
left to myself, I fall, 306E:2
locked under God’s pity, 159B:1
look at; overlook, 29B:4
living to continue in, 352A:3
never not able to, 348A:13
punishment for, 114B:15
responsibility for, 29B:7
separates from God, 198:39
some sins are also punishments, 198:33
struggle against, 306E:11
surrender to, 306E:10
wanting God to turn his face from, 299:4
ways of falling into, 306E:1
wrestling against, 306E:6,9
Sin, Mount, 374:17
singing: feelings; ear of God, 198:1
sinner(-s), 28A:6
before I was humbled . . . , 159B:2,3
Christ ran the way of, 198:43
God’s justice and mercy, 159B:3
handed over to, by desire, 299A:3
suffering, 283:1
size: scale; perception, 360B:3
sky:
parts, 341:8
seek the creator, 198:31
transcended, 198:27
slave(-s), 114B:12; 306E:4
body as slave of mind, 159B:7,8
Christians as, 359B:8-9
earning freedom, 198:4
good slave made into son, 198:12
punishment by good masters, 159B:4,8
serves for master’s benefit, 374:20
serving out of love, 198:12
smell, sense of, 23B:5; 159B:6
Sodom, 306E:1,6
soldiering, 198:50
soldiers: reward, 283:4
Son of God:
became son of man, 23B:1
begotten, one with the Father, 28A:8
demons’ belief in, 130A:2
equal, or less, in attributes, 341:15,17,18
equal to the Father, 359B:8
form of a servant, 14A:4
God with, 198:44
identity with the Word, 341:6
present in our minds, 293A:6
work of God: believing, 14A:3,5
Son of Man:
came to serve, 359B:10
Father is greater than I . . . , 341:13
service: laying down his life, 359B:10
soothsayers, 23B:10; 360B:22; 374:12
soul:
dispositions of souls, 341:15
purification needed, 198:27,28
rational or irrational, 198:25
seeing, 198:31
sentiments: believing, hoping, loving,
Sermons - Newly Discovered

Volume III/11

198:2
7 time and space, 198:28
soundness, 198:2
South:
spirits shining brightly, 198:14, 27
space: body and spirit, 198:28
Spain, 348A:6
speaking: unbelievers, 28A:1
speeches:
eto quote given to good people and
bad, 374:4
spells and charms, 306E:7
spirit:
blindness cured by faith, 374:8
body and, 198:25
changeable life, 198:25
created and uncreated, 198:25-26
cup curing diseases of, 299A:5
formation and enlightenment, 198:25
perception through senses, 348A:6, 7
sees things invisible to bodily eyes,
374:6
spirits:
northern/southern regions (metaphor),
198:14
spiritual life:
See also Christian life; faith; heart;
humility etc.
earthly cares and, 110A:6
goldsmith's furnace, 23B:12
heart where God's spirit rests, 198:11
indifference to, 360B:17
seeing invisible things, 348A:3
soundness in, 198:2
voices diminish, with progress,
293A:12
spiritual powers, 198:62
spiritual things (in creation), 159B:5
spiritual warfare, 198:50
spirituality:
death and, 110A:3
distinguishing between all things,
110A:3
hearts grown cold, 198:27
inner self; senses, 23B:5; 360B:6
sponge: treachery, 218:11
sports fans, 90A:8, 9
squared (Quadratus), 306E:3
stars: worship, 198:17
statues, 23B:14
Stephen, Saint:
Saul at stoning of, 299A:6
stones: humans as, 23B:7
storm: Church as boat in, 198:54
straw, 23B:12
stumbling, 14A:2
suffering, 198:64
cause (motive) and, 283:6
cup curing diseases of spirit, 299A:5
fitting for sinners, 20B:1
glory of, 359B:17
God; possibility, 348A:3
greed: giving more than you are.
28A:5
human condition, 23B:11
justly, 20B:6
Paul and the afflictions of Christ,
341:20
pride the root cause of all, 159B:11
punishment for the first sin, 159B:7
returning Christ's hospitality, 28A:4
right/left side of Christ crucified, 218:4
sun, 360B:8; 374:9
image of, 198:17
worship, 198:17, 35
superfluities, 114B:16
superstition, 359B:11
pagan view of Christians, 198:10
synagogue of gods, 23B:2

t
T

talents, 374:4
tax collector, 29B:3
tellus:
cult of Mother Earth, 198:19, 21, 63
temples:
God has no need of, 306E:4
Roman emperors, 360B:26
temporal goods, 90A:14
earthly desires, 360B:7
earthly happiness, 114B:16
flesh and blood petitions, 110A:3
folly to worship pagan gods, 360B:23
good fortune, 360B:22
good with which we can do good,
374:5
judgment day, 29:11
keeping silence for sake of, 299A:3
looking for, 72:12, 14
pleasant life, 299A:5
possessed by both good and bad
people, 374:4
prayers of petition, 20B:3
praying for, 348A:9
soul overloaded by desire for, 110A:6
worldliness, 159B:18
temptation:
  allowed by God, 20B:8
  by angel, 198:48
  beyond what one can bear, 198:63
  consent, 306E:1
  dealing with (squared off), 306E:3
  denying Christ, 306E:10
  devil speaks from human shape, 23B:10
  falling into, 306E:2
  Job and the devil, 20B:7; 198:63
  lead us not into . . . (Pelagius), 348A:11
  power to overcome, by will alone, 348A:11
  procrastination, 352A:5
  watch and pray . . . , 348A:12
  Thagaste, 359B:2; 360C:2
  thanksgiving: gratitude, 348A:14
  theaters, 198:3,9; 359B:23; 360B:16; 374:5
  Thomas, Apostle, Saint, 14A:5
    I will not believe . . . , 159B:12
  threshing floor, 299A:9
  Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3,7
  throne: be heaven: carry God’s throne, 360B:7
  time, 283:4
    aging; old age, 360B:5
    body and spirit, 198:28
    now is the day of salvation, 360A:7
    six (the number), 110A:5
    three periods of, 110A:5
  Timothy: circumcised by Paul, 162C:10-11,12
  Titus: circumcision, 162C:10-11,12
  treachery: compassion and, 159B:9
  treasure chest, 72:13
  trials: arena; weakness, 306E:7
    endure all for Christ’s sake, 159A:1
    tribulation, 20B:9,11; 72:9
  Trinity:
    contemplation of, 341:7
    God is the end, 14A:4
    Jacob’s three rods as sign, 341:24
    love of, 341:7
    persons of, 341:7
  trust: his yoke is sweet . . . , 142(appendix):4
  temple of God, 306E:4
  truth, 110A:3; 114B:3,6,12; 162C:14,15;
    198:25,53; 198:53; 23B:13; 29:12;
    341:5,19; 374:23
  See also lying
    believing in him, 130A:5
    God called to witness (Paul), 162C:5
  holding down, in iniquity, 198:30,32,35
  holding God’s truth in a lie, 198:36,38
  hope in God, 198:44
  keeping quiet, 360C:5
  law and, 198:30
  soul turned away from God, 198:27
  straying from way of, 198:43
  tunic, woven from the top, 159B:18; 218:9
unbelief, 218:7
  damnation-worthy, 360B:20
  devil and, 198:26
  devil at work in sons of, 23B:10
  locked up under sin of, 159B:1,2,5,13,14
  pagans and heretics, 360A:5
  providence and, 29:8
  time when none will remain in, 360B:28
  unbelievers, 29:12
  darkness, 198:26
  deserting faith and Church, 198:42
  mercy and judgment, 352A:2
  miracles and, 374:12
  speaking, 28A:1
uncleanness:
  self-purification, 198:36
understanding:
  commanded to have, 348A:14
  great minds, brief statements, 90A:3
  inner light, 360B:10
  unlike horse and mule . . . , 348A:14
ungodliness, 341:6; 359B:20; 374:5
  devil’s gang, 360A:1
  wrath of God, 198:30,32
unity, 360C:2,3,5
  Donatists, 360C:5
  forced into, 360C:1,5
  goodness of, 360C:5
praised as a good thing, 360C:5
tunic, woven from the top, 159B:18; 218:9
Urbanus, bishop of Sicca, 348A:11

V
vanities, 23B:13; 114B:15; 198:2,8,13,43
veteran (military), 283:4
vice, 29:3,4; 283:6
vigils:

reforms of bishop Aurelius, 359B:5
Vincent, Saint

death of, 359B:16
obedience tested, 359B:13,20
ordered to offer incense to idols, 359B:13,20
true martyr, 359B:13,20

vineyard:

parable of the tenants, 341:24
Virgil, 374:15

virgin (Hebrew word), 162C:6
virgin birth, 341:25
virginity: body and mind, 341:12
virtue, 283:6

vocation:

weak/foolish chosen to disconcert . . . , 341:4

voice, 341:9
human words and voices, 293A:6-9
word and (John and Jesus), 293A:5
Vulcan (god), 198:23

W
walking, 159B:8
water: torrents, 198:43
weakness:

charity eliminates, 299A:2
martyrs and, 306E:2
need for slaves, 306E:4
perfection by God, 130A:8-9,12
power perfected in, 208:2; 130A:12
wealth, possessed by, 114B:10
weaving, 14A:1
wedding garment, 198:52; 359B:19
weight, 283:5
whole and parts, 341:8-9
wickedness, 23B:15
widow, 159A:10
wife, See husband and wife.
wild olive, 218:7
will:

of God, 110A:6
insufficient, without grace, 348A:13
making self just, 348A:8,9
wings of eagle, 28A:8
wisdom:

color of, 341:14
depth of God’s riches, 159B:1
enjoined to have, 348A:14
foolishness of worldly wisdom, 341:24
hearts raised up, 198:27
knowing where one’s gifts are from, 283:8
light of, 198:61
proper season (preaching), 299A:4
proud calling themselves wise, 198:38
wit, 198:28
witnessing: actions and words, 306E:11
wit:

enlightenment, 198:24
worship of, 198:17,24

woman (women):

disturbance in church, 359B:3
honored through the virgin Mary, 159B:10
role in Christ’s life, 159B:10
subordinate to man; equal in sex, 354A:4,5
weaker flesh, 354A:5
wood: gold and, 23B:8
Word of God, 130A:10; 159B:9
abides forever, 293A:12
abides; voice passes away, 293A:11
attempting to divide, 341:9
begotten, 341:5
both with the Father and in Mary’s womb, 341:8,9
breathes with the Holy Spirit, 341:7
emptied himself, 341:11,13; 359B:8
equal to the Father, 341:20
grasping, 293A:6
identity with the Son, 341:6
in the beginning . . . , 198:55;

293A:3,5; 341:3,5,10,11; 348A:3
nature of, 341:5
speaks through patriarchs and prophets, 114B:5
words:

denying Christ, 306E:11
receiving, as food, 341:9
conceiving, 293A:6,7
human words and voices, 293A:6-9  
voice and (John and Jesus), 293A:5  
words of God (prophecy; scripture; etc.):  
pleasure in, 360B:28  
work, 283:4  
heavenly reward, 374:3  
six days of creation, 110A:5  
work of God (believing). See faith.  
works of mercy, 90A:14  
paying the marriage debt, 354A:13  
stretching out your hand, 28A:5  
world:  
base-born things of, 198:60  
threshing floor, 360A:3  
village over against the disciples,  
359B:11  
worldliness:  
spirit of this world, 283:8  
worship:  
See also idolatry  
due to God alone, 198:22  
false gods; true God, 238:3  
God specifies how to, 374:10  
many gods; praise, 360A:6  
one true God, 359B:16  
pagan seduction, 198:46  
praying/singing together in church, 
198:11  
sacrifice, 374:16  
spirit and truth, 198:11  
ungrateful to God for his gifts, 283:8  
wooden gods, 238:5  
worshiping all that clings to God,  
198:46  
wrestling:  
darkness; devil, 306E:8  
wrinkle, 341:21  
wrongdoing, 159B:3  
X  
Xanthippus, Primate of Numidia, 359B:2  
Y  
yoke: sweet; burden light,  
142(appendix):4  
Z  
Zacchaeus, 114B:11; 198:20  
Zachary, 198:50  
Zion, 341:19
**Index from**

**Homilies on the First Epistle of John**

Translation, notes and introduction by Boniface Ramsey (series editor), Daniel E. Doyle, OSA and Thomas Martin, OSA, editors

Saint Augustine's ten homilies on the *First Epistle of John* are among his greatest and most influential works. John and Augustine both develop the same central theme of love exploring its meaning and implications.

**Volume III/14**

**Homilies**

**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-289-0, 6 x 9 in., 173 pp., 2008  
**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-288-3, 6 x 9 in., 176 pp., 2008

**Includes:**

**Tractates on the First Letter of John**  
*(In epistulam Johannis ad Parthos tractatus)*

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:26</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
<td>56:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 2:24</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
<td>56:4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 16:9</td>
<td>X, 10</td>
<td>56:4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:14</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
<td>73:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 2:10</td>
<td>IV, 3</td>
<td>73:28, X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:7</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
<td>78:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:8</td>
<td>III, 7</td>
<td>82:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 6:3-4</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
<td>101:1-2, IX, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 10:3</td>
<td>X, 7</td>
<td>102:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 13:3</td>
<td>X, 6</td>
<td>110:3, IX, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 16:2</td>
<td>VIII, 14</td>
<td>116:12, IV, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 16:4</td>
<td>III, 11</td>
<td>116:13, IV, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:9</td>
<td>IX, 5</td>
<td>119:85, X, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 22:27</td>
<td>II, 2</td>
<td>119:96, X, 5, X, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:9</td>
<td>IV, 7</td>
<td>119:165, I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 30:11-12</td>
<td>IX, 4</td>
<td>121:6, I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 32:7</td>
<td>VI, 3</td>
<td>132:6, I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 32:9</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
<td>139:7, VI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:2</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
<td>139:8, VI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:4-5</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
<td>147:7, IV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:9</td>
<td>IX, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:16-17</td>
<td>VII, 6</td>
<td>5:16-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 9:18</td>
<td>VI, 11</td>
<td>9:18, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 16:22</td>
<td>VI, 11</td>
<td>16:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach 1:16</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
<td>1:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach 1:24-25</td>
<td>IX, 4</td>
<td>1:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach 10:15</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
<td>10:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 1:12</td>
<td>IX, 6</td>
<td>2:2, I, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 41:1</td>
<td>VII, 10</td>
<td>53:2, IX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 45:2</td>
<td>IX, 9</td>
<td>61:10, I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah 17:5</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
<td>17:5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Homilies On The First Epistle Of John**
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

Ezekiel
36:20 VII, 6
Zechariah
12:10 IV, 5

New Testament
Matthew
4:3 II, 14
4:4 II, 14
4:6 II, 14
4:7 II, 14
4:9 II, 14
4:10 II, 14
5:6 VIII, 9
5:8 IV, 5; VII, 10
5:14 I, 13
5:16 VIII, 2
5:19 VI, 14
5:44 I, 11; IX, 3
5:45 IX, 3
5:46 VIII, 4; IX, 3
5:48 I, 9
6:1 VI, 3; VIII, 2
6:3 VI, 3
6:10 IX, 2
6:14-15 VII, 3
8:29 II, 8; X, 1
9:12 VIII, 10
10:41-42 V, 5
12:34 III, 8
16:14-18 X, 1
16:19 X, 10
19:6 I, 2
22:40 X, 7
23:3 VI, 14
23:8-9 III, 13
24:23 I, 8
25:34 III, 11; IV, 5
25:41 III, 11; IV, 2; IV, 5

Mark
1:24 X, 1
16:15 IV, 2

Luke
8:8 VII, 10
10:20 II, 13
19:9 V, 5
20:18 III, 6
23:34 I, 9; V, 4; VII, 3; VIII, 10
24:27 III, 7
24:46 X, 8
24:46-47 III, 7
24:47 II, 2; X, 8
24:49 II, 3

Acts of the Apostles
1:6 X, 9

Volume III/14
| 1:7-8 | X, 9 | Galatians | 1:22-24 | VIII, 2 |
| 1:8 | X, 9 | 2:20 | VII, 7 |
| 2:4 | II, 3 | 5:6 | X, 1 |
| 9:4 | X, 3; X, 9 | 6:2 | I, 12; X, 4 |
| | | 6:4 | VI, 2 |

### Romans

| 1:17 | IV, 8 | Ephesians | 3:8 | VIII, 2 |
| 1:24 | VI, 8 | 3:17 | II, 9 |
| 1:25 | II, 11 | 4:2-3 | I, 12 |
| 2:21 | VI, 14 | 5:8 | I, 10 |
| 3:4 | I, 6 | Philippians | 1:21-24 | V, 4 |
| 5:5 | VI, 8; VII, 6; VIII, 12 | 1:23 | IX, 2 |
| 5:8-9 | IX, 9 | 1:23-24 | IX, 2 |
| 8:24 | VIII, 13 | 2:6 | IV, 5; IX, 9 |
| 8:24-25 | IV, 7 | 2:7 | IX, 9 |
| 8:26-27 | VI, 8 | 3:12-13 | IV, 6 |
| 8:32 | VII, 7 | 3:13-14 | IV, 6 |
| 8:35 | IX, 4 | 1 Corinthians | 1:13 | II, 4 |
| 13:8 | V, 7 | 2:9 | IV, 5; VII, 1 |
| 13:10 | V, 7; X, 5 | 3:6-7 | III, 13 |
| | | 4:3 | VI, 2 |
| | | 4:15 | V, 7 |
| | | 7:7 | VIII, 8 |
| | | 8:1 | II, 8 |
| | | 11:29 | VII, 6 |
| | | 12:26 | III, 4; X, 3 |
| | | 12:27 | X, 3 |
| | | 13:2 | V, 6 |
| | | 13:3 | VI, 2; VIII, 9 |
| | | 13:4 | V, 8 |
| | | 13:8 | IX, 1 |
| | | 15:9 | VIII, 2 |
| 2 Corinthians | 1:12 | 1 Thessalonians | 2:7 | IX, 1 |
| 6:11-12 | VI, 2 | Colossians | 3:5 | IX, 2 |
| 6:14 | I, 5 | 3:9-10 | I, 10 |
| 11:29 | I, 12 | 4:3 | I, 8 |
| 12:7-9 | VI, 6 | 1 Timothy | 1:5 | X, 5 |
| 12:15 | V, 4; VI, 2; VI, 5 | 6:10 | VIII, 6 |
| | | Titus | 1:16 | III, 8; VI, 13 |
| | | Hebrews | 12:6 | VIII, 7 |
| | | James | 13:1 | VIII, 3 |
| | | 2:19 | X, 1 |
| | | 1 Peter | 3:13 | IX, 4 |
| | | 4:8 | I, 6; V, 3 |
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

A bel, V,8
A braham, I,13; II,5; III,6; IV,10
actions. See deeds
A dam, II,5; IV,3, 11; V,2; V,11,6
adultery, II,9; IX,6–7
advocate: Christ as, I,1–7
Africa, I,2, 8, 12–13; II,3; X,8
See also Donatist schism
age, I,5; III,1; IX,9
the Alleluia, V,7; VIII,1
ambition, II,10–14
amor/amare, VIII,5
See also love
angels, I,1–3; II,14; III,9; IV,5, 5; VI,13; IX,10; X,2
of the devil, I,5; III,11; IV,2; VI,6
Hagar and, X,10
righteousness of, IV,3, 9
anger, VIII,10–11; X,7
See also enemies; hatred
animals, II,11; III,11; V,11; VIII,14; IX,1
See also specific animals, e.g., swine
man’s power over, VIII,6–8
anointing, III,5–6, 12–13; IV,1–2, 6, 12
See also baptism
antichrists, III,3–10; VI,12–14; VII,2–3, 6
apostles, I,8, II,13; VII,2
See also disciples; Paul; individual
names: specific topics
the eleven, II,1
the twelve, I,12
Arians, II,5; VI,12
arrogance, I,6; V,7
See also pride
ascension of Christ. See under Jesus Christ:
ascension of
authority: of God, X,9
See also power
avarice, V,5; VII,6; X,4–5, 9; IX,1
baptism, I,5; II,9; III,1; IV,8, 11–12; V,6–7;
V,10–11; VII,6
See also anointing; sacraments
rebaptism, VII,7
beasts. See animals
beauty; IV,11–12; IV,5; IX,9; X,7
love and, IX,9
believers. See Christians
betrayers:
the Father vs. Judas as, VII,7
traditores, X,10
birth, new. See rebirth
blasphemy, III,9; X,8
blindness, I,13; II,3; V,7
blood, IV,3
See also eucharist
cleansing, of the Son, I,5, 8–9; II,10;
III,7; V,14; V,5, 12
body, human, III,11; IV,9; V,6; X,5, 9
bodily age, III,1; IX,9
body of Christ (Church as), I,1–2; III,4;
V,10–11, 13; X,3, 8–9
See also Church
body of Christ (eucharist). See eucharist
bread, Prologue; I,1; III,1; VIII,9
See also eucharist
breaking of, II,1–2
Man does not live by bread alone,
II,14
breasts, III,1; IX,1
bride and bridegroom, I,2; II,2, 11; III,7;
IX,11
See also marriage
bride of Christ, II,2; IX,11

Volume III/14
brotherly love, I,12; V,3, 7–10 passim; V,1, 2, 4; V,III,3–4, 12; X, 3–8
See also fellowship; heart; love
and love for enemies, VIII,4, 10; X,7
Cain, V,8
Caritas. See charity
Cataphrygians, VI,12
Catholic Church, VII,11; X,7
See also Christians; Church; unity;
specific topics
Catholic Christians, II,3
and Christ’s inheritance, III,7
Donatists and, I,12–13; II,3; III,5, 7; VII,11
universality of, I,8, 12–13; II,2–3;
III,7; VI,10; VII,11; X,8, 10
chaff, III,5, 10; V,13; VI,11
charity (caritas). See love
charity (helping the poor), VI,1; VII,10;
VIII,5
See also deeds; mercy; works
chastity, VIII,1; IX,9
chaste soul, IX,2
children, II,4, 7, 12; III,1, 3; VIII,10; IX,1
correcting, VII,11
God’s, IV,5; V,7, 12
choice. See will
Christ, III,6; X,1
See also Jesus Christ
Christians, II,1, 4; IV,4, VII,2
See also brotherly love; Church; faith;
fellowship; specific topics, e.g.,
equality
Catholic, II,3
as co-heirs of Christ, II,9; VII,11; XIV, X,3
faith of, VII,3; X,1–2
living a Christian life, IV,4, 6; V,7, 12;
VII,8, 14; X,1
in name only, IV,4; V,12; VII,6
sinful, I,11; III,9; VII,6
sons of God, II,14; IV,4; IX,3; X,3–4
Church, I,2; V,3; VI,14; VII,10; VIII,2;
X,3, 10
See also body of Christ; Catholic
Church; Christians; schism; unity
beginning of, II,3
as bride of Christ, II,2; IX,11
love for, X,6
as mother, III,1
Upon this rock I shall build my
Church, X,1
wicked members leaving, III,4
commandments, I,9–10; V,8; VI,4–5, 8, 14; X,3–4, 7
See also law
the new commandment, I,9–12
passim; V,2–3; VI,1, 4; VIII,4, IX,11; X,1–8 passim
community. See brotherly love; fellowship
concupiscence, II,14; IV,3, 11; VII,10; X,6
See also desire of the flesh/eyes
confession of faith, I,3; II,3; III,10; IV,3;
V,12–13; VIII,9; IX,10
demons and, II,8; X,1–2
Donatists and, III,7–8
Peter and, V,4–5
in words vs. deeds, VIII,14
confession of sin, I,6; IV,3; V,13; VIII,2
confidence. See love and, VI,4; IX,2–4
congratulations, I,11; III,6
See also flattery; praise
conscience, III,10; VI,2–3, 6; VII,9; IX,2, 4; X,5
correction. See discipline
creation, I,4; II,5, 11
See also world
the creator, I,2; II,11–12; VII,6, 10
See also God
creature: creator and, II,11–12
the cross, I,9; VII,3
cupidity, II,13; VII,9, 11
curiosity, II,13
Daniel, I,13; III,9; VIII,7
darkness, I,4–5, 10–13; II,3, 7; V,7; VIII,14
See also hatred; sin
David, VII,6; IX,5; X,5
death, III,12; IX,2; X,5–6, 9
of an enemy, I,9
from death to life, I,9; IV,11; V,10
lack of love as, V,10
resurrection of the dead, III,4; VI,13
swallowed up in victory, IV,3
deeds, III,8–9; V,12; VI,1–3, 13–14;
VII,7–8; X,1
See also works
evil, II,13; V,8
faith and, VIII,14

Homilies On The First Epistle Of John
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

demons, I, 11, 13; II, 8, 13; VI, 7; X, 1–2, 7
See also angels of the devil
faith of, II, 8; X, 1–2
prayer of, VI, 7
denial of Christ. See under Jesus Christ:
denial of
desire, holy, IV, 6
desire of the flesh/eyes, II, 10, 12–14; VII, 10
death, I, 5; II, 6–7, 11, 14; IV, 1–3; V, 8; VII, 2
See also angels of the devil; demons;
eternal fire; evil; serpent; sin
Cain as from, V, 8
children of, V, 7–8
as the enemy, II, 14; IV, 3
imitation of, IV, 10
and Job, VI, 7
sacraments of, II, 13
sin and, IV, 10–12; V, 2; VI, 7
dilectio/diligere, VIII, 5
See also love
disciples, I, 3; II, 1–3; III, 2; IV, 2; V, 4–5;
VII, 7; VIII, 10; X, 9
See also apostles; individual names;
specific topics
discipline, VII, 8, 11; VIII, 9; X, 7, 10
discourse: praise for, X, 5
disease. See sickness
dissolving, VI, 14
division in the Church. See schism
doctors. See physicians
Donatist schism, I, 8, 12; II, 3–4, 8; VI, 10;
VII, 11; X, 10
See also schism
and betrayers (traditores), X, 10
as breach of charity, VII, 11
as geographically limited, I, 8, 12–13;
II, 2–3; III, 7; X, 8, 10
ideals of, I, 8
and martyrdom, V, 12
re-baptism, VII, 11
and the sacraments, II, 3; III, 5; VII, 11
Donatus, II, 3–4
See also Donatist schism, above
dove, VII, 11
drunkenness, II, 11; III, 9; IV, 4
ears, I, 13; IV, 9; VI, 12; VIII, 2
earth. See creation; world
Easter week, Prologue; I, 13; II, 1–2; IV, 4;
IX, 2
the Eleven, II, 1
See also apostles
Elijah, V, 5: X, 1
“end,” the term, X, 5–6
enemies
See also hatred
as false friends, X, 7
love for, I, 9–11; VIII, 4, 10–11; IX, 3,
9; X, 7
prayer for, I, 9; IX, 3
sins as, IX, 2
souls of, healing, VII, 11
wishing good for, I, 9; VII, 10
enemy, Satan as, II, 14; IV, 3
enjoyment. See joy; pleasure
enlightenment, I, 4, 6; IV, 8; X, 6
envy, V, 8, 10; VIII, 8
equality
See also under Son: as equal to the
Father
among people, VIII, 5, 8
eror, II, 1; VII, 4, 11
See also heresy; schism; sin
eternal fire, III, 11–12; IV, 2, 5; IX, 5; X, 9
See also hell
eternal life, I, 3, 5, 12; III, 11–12; V, 3;
VIII, 14
See also heaven; immortality
and answering of prayer, V, 6
enemies and, V, 10; VIII, 10–11
wishing for others, VIII, 5, 10
eternity, II, 5, 10
See also under God: as eternal
eucharist, I, 2, 9, 12; II, 1, III, 5; VII, 6;
VII, 10
See also sacraments
the wicked and, VII, 6
Eunomians, VI, 12
Eve, IV, 3
evil, I, 7, 12; VI, 7; IX, 2, 5; X, 6
See also devil; sin; specific topics,
eg., lies
charity and, II, 8
deeds, II, 13
desires, VIII, 6
The face of the Lord is over those who
do evil, IX, 7
greatness of, VIII, 14
left hand, VI, 3
love of the world as, II, 9

Volume III/14
Volume III/14

returning evil for, VIII, 11
root of, VIII, 6
will, III, 8
evil humors, III, 4–5
eyes, I, 1–4; IV, 5, 9; VI, 2, 10; VII, 10; VIII, 1;
IX, 10
See also blindness
desire of, II, 10; 12–14; VII, 10
Enlighten my eyes, X, 6
of flesh, X, 5
faith, II, 1; IX, 2; X, 1, 5, 10
See also confession of faith
of Christians vs. demons, X, 1–2
of heretics, X, 1–2
and love, X, 1–2
and purity, IV, 9
and righteousness, IV, 8
and salvation, VIII, 13
the Father, VII, 6; X, 5
See also God; specific topics
Judas, comparison to, VII, 7
fathers; fatherhood, II, 5–7
disciplinary love of, VII, 11
fear, IX, 4–9
avarice and, X, 4
of being seen, VIII, 2
beneficial, I, 7
chaste, IX, 5–9, 11
and judgment day, IX, 2, 6
of the Lord, IX, 2
love and, IX, 2, 4–8; X, 2
of punishment, IX, 5; X, 2
and righteousness, IX, 4
of slander, III, 10
two fears, IX, 6
wickedness and, II, 8; IX, 6–8
and wisdom, IX, 2
feast days; IX, 1
fellowship, I, 3, 5, 9
See also brotherly love
fire, eternal. See eternal fire; hell
flattery, III, 6; VII, 8, 11; VIII, 9; X, 7
See also congratulations; praise
flesh
See also body, human; mortality;
Word of God
of Christ, I, 12; II, 2–3
desire of, II, 10; 12–14
love, fleshly, VIII, 5; IX, 1
struggle with, IV, 3
forgiveness:
Father, forgive them, I, 9; V, 4; VII, 3, 10
love and, VII, 1
of others, VII, 1, 3; VIII, 10–11
of sin, I, 5–7; II, 4–5, 8, 10; V, 1, 6; IX, 7
forgiveness, IX, 10
free will. See will
friendship, VIII, 5; IX, 9; X, 7
fruit, I, 4; III, 8, 11, 13; IV, 1; V, 8, 10; X, 7
firstfruits, II, 2
good, VI, 4, 6
fulfillment:
the end of, X, 5–6
of the law, V, 7
of works, X, 4
Gehenna. See eternal fire
gentiles, VIII, 2
gift of the Holy Spirit, IX, 11
glory: glorification, III, 4; V, 10–11; VI, 2;
VII, 7; VIII, 2
of Jesus, VI, 13; X, 3
God; IV, 6; IX, 1
See also creator; Father; Holy Spirit;
love; Son; specific topics, e.g.,
truth
abiding in us, V, 4; 12; VI, 1; VIII, 12,
14; IX, 1
authority of, X, 9
as complete, VIII, 14
as eternal, II, 5, 10, 14; IV, 5, 9
as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, VI, 6;
X, 5
image of, IV, 9; VIII, 6; IX, 3
as invisible, VII, 10
as light, I, 4–5
power of, II, 6
as reality, VII, 10
worship of, III, 10
gods: I have said that you are gods, I, 14
gold, II, 11; III, 11; IV, 5–6; X, 4
See also riches
good deeds. See deeds; works
goodness; good people, I, 12
See also under Christians: living a
Christian life; righteousness
love and, X, 7
the wicked as scoffing at, IV, 4
gospel, II, 3; IV, 2; V, 2, 7; VI, 10; X, 10
See also preaching; specific topics,
e.g., love

Homilies On The First Epistle Of John
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

grace, VI, 5–7; V III, 14; IX, 9
grain, I, 6; III, 5, 10; V, 13; VI, 11
greed. See avarice
Greek language, I, 2
growth, I, 13; II, 8–9; III, 13; IV, 1

Hagar, X, 10
hand:
  imposition of, VI, 10
  right vs. left, VI, 13
hatred, V, 3–4, 7–8; VI, 11; IX, 10–11
  See also enemies
  as darkness, I, 3, 13; V, 7
  Do not be surprised ... if the world hates us, V, 9–10
  and faith, X, 2
  and flattery, X, 7
  as murder, V, 10; IX, 11
health, IX, 10; X, 5
  See also physicians; sickness: healing of Christ's body, III, 4
  physical, VI, 5, 7–8; VIII, 10–11; IX, 4; X, 5
  spiritual, V III, 13–14
heart, Prologue; II, 8; III, 13; V, 6–7; VI, 13; VIII, 1, 11; IX, 5
  See also love
Christ in, III, 13
  desires of, III, 8
  the devil and, IV, 1
  ears of, I, 13; VI, 12; VIII, 2
  eyes of, I, 1
  fear and, IX, 4
  healing of, I, 1
  love in, V, 10; 12–13; VI, 1–5, 8–10; VII, I; VIII, 12; IX, 2
  Love the Lord ... from your whole heart, X, 7
  our heart has been enlarged, X, 6–7
    pure (clean), III, 1–2; IV, 5–6; X, 5
  seeking God with, VII, 10
  strengthening of, II, 1
  teacher of, III, 13
  they oppressed my heart, III, 4
  heaven, VI, 3, 14; VIII, 11; X, 10
  See also creation; eternal life;
    immortality; Jesus Christ: ascension of
    Christ in, I, 3; II, 3
heavenly members, IX, 2
  keys to the kingdom, X, 10
  one head in, VI, 10
  your names are written in heaven, 
    II, 13–14
hell, III, 11–12; IV, 2, 5; VI, 13; IX, 5; X, 9
  See also eternal fire
heresy: heretics, II, 1–2; III, 4, 7; VI, 2, 11–13, 12; X, 1
  See also schism
  how heresies come about, I, 8
holiness, IV, 3; VIII, 1
  Donatists and, I, 8
  holy desire, IV, 6
  holy days, Prologue: IV, 4
Holy Spirit, II, 9; III, 13; VIII, 6; X, 5, 9
  See also Pentecost; specific topics,
    e.g., rebirth
  charity in our hearts through, VIII, 1–11;
    VII, 6; V III, 1, 12; X, 8
  as dove; VII, 11
  gift of, IX, 11
  as God; VII, 6; X, 5
  as living water, VI, 11; VII, 5
  power of, III, 12; IV, 10; X, 9
  hope, I, 5–7; II, 10; IV, 2–7 passim; VI, 1, 13;
    VIII, 11–13 passim; X, 5, 9
  and Christian life, IV, 4
  faith, love and, IX, 2
  and purity, IV, 7
  and reality, IV, 2; VIII, 13
  horse and mule, VIII, 6
humility, Prologue; I, 6; 8; II, 7; III, 6; V II, 2; VIII, 2
  of John, I, 8
humors, III, 4–5; V II, 11
husbands. See bride and bridegroom;
  marriage
idols: idolatry, I, 11, 13
illness. See sickness
image of God, IV, 9; VIII, 6; IX, 3
immortality, II, 10; IV, 3; VIII, 7, 13
  See also eternal life; heaven
infants, I, 5; III, 1; IV, 11–12; VI, 10
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
Israel, III, 6; VII, 1; X, 9
  See also Jews
Jerusalem, III, 7; VIII, 5; X, 2, 8–10 passim
  Church referred to as, II, 2–3

Volume III/14
Volume III/14

Jesus Christ
See also faith; savior; Son; Word of God; specific topics, e.g., forgiveness of sin and Adam, IV, 11 as advocate, I, 7–8 ascension of, II, 1–2, 10; III, 2; V, 5; VIII, 10; IX, 1; X, 3, 9 beauty of, IX, 9 belief in, X, 1, 10 denial of, III, 6–8, 10; V, 4; VI, 12–14; VII, 2–3 as Jewish, I, 13 killing of, I, 9; II, 1, 3; V, 3; VIII, 10 Old Testament as predicting, I, 1; X, 8 power of, I, 9, 13; VII, 3; VIII, 6 as propitiator, V, 9; I, 7–8 reason for, IV, 11–12 risen, II, 1–2; III, 2; V, 4 as stone, I, 13; III, 6 temptation of, II, 14 as truth, III, 6; V, 3; X, 1 Jews, I, 13; II, 3, 6; IV, 10; VI, 5 See also Israel Job, IV, 3; VI, 7 John: as "beloved disciple," I, 8 humility of, I, 8 joy, I, 3, 5; V, 3; II, 3; IV, 4; X, 8 Judas, VII, 7 judgment day, II, 1; III, 3; V, 5; V, 3; VIII, 1; IX, 2–4 fear of, IX, 2, 6 keys to the kingdom of heaven, X, 10 killing (murder), V, 8; IX, 10 See also under Jesus Christ: killing of; martyrdom hatred and, V, 10; IX, 11 kingdom of heaven. See heaven knowledge, II, 8 languages, II, 3. See also tongues; specific languages, e.g., Latin the last hour, III, 1, 3–4 Latin language, 6; II, 3; V, 3 See also specific words and topics, e.g., anti-christs law, I, 12; II, 2; V, 7; IX, 11; X, 4–7 See also commandments; Old Testament fulfillment of, V, 7 left hand, VI, 3 lies; lying, I, 5–6; IX, 10; III, 6–8; IV, 2–3, 12; V, 1; IX, 10 life, I, 1, 9 See also eternal life; rebirth from death to life, I, 9; IV, 11; V, 1, 10 font of, VI, 11; VII, 6 He who does not eat the flesh of the Son shall not have life, I, 12 love and, V, 10–12; VI, 1–3, 13; VII, 2–7 new, I, 5; II, 5 sin and, I, 6–7 temporal, VII, 1; VIII, 10; IX, 2 Word of, I, 1, 4 light, I, 2 See also enlightenment darkness and, I, 4–5; 10–13; VIII, 14 God as, I, 4–5 He who says he is in the light, I, 11 truth and, I, 6; VI, 10 likeness of God. See image of God lions, VIII, 7 Lord's Prayer, VII, 1 love (charity), Prologue; V, 12; V, 3, 12; IX, 2; X, 3–8 See also brotherly love; commandments: the new commandment; God; heart; specific topics, e.g., deeds and beauty, IX, 9 for the Church, X, 3 and confidence, IX, 2–4 disciplinary, VII, 11 Donatist schism and, VII, 11 Do you love me?, V, 4–5, 11; VII, 9 for enemies, I, 9–11; VIII, 4, 10 envy vs., V, 8 and equality, VIII, 5, 8 and evil, II, 8 and faith, X, 1–2 and fear, I, 2, 4–8; X, 2 fleshly, VIII, 5 forgiveness and, VII, 1 genuine, V, 14 goal and manner of, V, 12 for God, I, 9; II, 8–9, 14; VII, 7, 9; IX, 5, 10; X, 3–8 God as, VII, 4–5, 7, 10; VIII, 14; IX, 1–2, 10; X, 5
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

of God for us, VII, 7, 9; VIII, 10; IX, 9–10
as God ("love is God"), V, 6; IX, 10
the greatest, V, 11–12; VI, 1–2, 13; VII, 2, 7
as harsh, VII, 8, 11; X, 7
Holy Spirit and, VI, 8–11; VII, 6; VIII, 1, 12; X, 8
and judgment day, IX, 2–4
and knowledge, II, 8
lack of, V, 10
and the law, V, 7; X, 4–7
and life vs. death, V, 10
for love, IX, 10
love, and do what you want, VIII, 12
maintaining, VII, 11
for neighbor, V, 7; VII, 11; X, 7
perfect, I, 9; V, 4–6; 11–12; VI, 1–3, 13; VII, 2, 7; VIII, 10, 12; IX, 4
scripture and, V, 13; VII, 4–5
and sin, I, 6; V, 2–3
and tolerance, I, 12
two loves, II, 8–14 passim
and unity, I, 12
wicked people and, VII, 6
and works, VIII, 9; X, 4
for the world, II, 8–14; V, 9; VII, 3; IX, 10
lust. See concupiscence; desire of the flesh

Maccabees, VIII, 7
Macedonians, VI, 12
magic, II, 13
man. See specific topics, e.g., animals:
man's power over
man-man and man-God, IV, 11
mark, V, 6
marriage, I, 2; II, 2; III, 7
See also bride and bridegroom
wives, adulterous vs. chaste, I, 6–7
martyrdom, I, 2; V, 4–5; 11; VIII, 7, 9
the Donatists and, VI, 2
Mary, the Virgin, I, 1–2; II, 13; II, 5
Mary Magdalene, III, 2
men, II, 6–7; III, 2
mercy, I, 9; II, 10; V, 12; VIII, 1, 5, 9–11
See also works
works of, VIII, 1, 5
milk, III, 1; IX, 1
miracles, II, 13–14; VI, 10; VIII, 10
moderation, II, 12
moon, I, 4, 12–13; II, 11; IV, 5
morality: Donatists and, I, 8
mortality, II, 10; III, 11; IV, 3; V, 5; VIII, 7, 13; IX, 9; X, 5
See also flesh
Moses, II, 1–2, 5–6
mother:
charity as, I, 11; II, 4; IX, 1
Church as, III, 1
mother of Jesus, II, 5
mountain; mountains, I, 8, 13; II, 2; III, 6; X, 5
mule, horse and, VIII, 6
murder. See killing
mystery. See sacrament (mystery)
neighbor, love for, V, 7; VII, 11; X, 7
See also brotherly love
new life, I, 5; II, 5
the "new man," I, 10
New Testament, V, 3
See also gospel; scripture, sacred;
specific names, topics, and events
nonbelievers, X, 7
North Africa. See under Donatist schism:
as limited to North Africa
Novatians, VI, 12
numbers, II, 3
offering, V, 5, 8–9; VII, 9
"old man" and "new man," I, 10
Old Testament, II, 1; V, 7
See also law; scripture, sacred;
specific names, topics, and events
as predicting Christ, II, 1; X, 8
paganism, I, 11; III, 13; V, 12
particular sin. See under sin: particular
the Pasch, I, 5
patience, IV, 7; VIII, 7; IX, 2
Paul, II, 4; V, 2, 5–10 passim; VIII, 2
See also specific topics
transformation from Saul, VIII, 2; X, 3, 9
peace, Prologue; I, 12–13; VI, 10; VIII, 5; IX, 8; X, 4, 10
pearl, V, 7
penance; penitence, II, 2; III, 7; X, 8, 10
Pentecost, II, 3; VI, 10–11; VIII, 10
perfection. See under specific topics, e.g.,
love; righteousness

Volume III/14
persecution, II,6; III,2; VIII,10; IX,3–4; X,10
See also martyrdom
Do not be surprised ... if the world hates us, V,9–10
by Saul (Paul), VIII,2; X,3, 9
Peter, I,12; II,4; V,4–5, 11; VII,9; VIII,5; IX,4
confession of, X,1
Do you love me?, V,4–5, 11; VII,9
physicians, I,8; VIII,11; IX,4
See also health; sickness
Christ as, II,1; IV,4; V,5; VI,1; VIII,2, 10, 13; X,1
pipes, two, IX,5, 8, 9
pleasure
See also joy
in God, IX,5, 10; X,6
sin and, IV,4; IX,6–7
worldly, II,11–12; X,4, 6
the poor. See poverty
poverty, V,5; VI,1; VIII,10; VIII,5
power, II,13; IV,3, 9
of Christ, I,9, 13; VII,3; VIII,6
of God, II,6
of the Holy Spirit, III,12; IV,10; X,9
of man over beasts, VIII,6–8
of the sacrament, III,12; IV,10
praise, III,9; VIII,1, 6, 9; IX,1; X,5–6
See also congratulations; flattery
"A lilelua," VIII,1
human, VI,2–3; VII,2; VIII,2, 9; X,5, 7
prayer, I,9; II,13–14; IV,2; VI,6–8; VII,1; IX,3
of demons, VI,7
for enemies, I,9; IX,3
preaching, II,2–3; III,7; IV,2; V,2; VIII,10, 14; X,8, 10
pride, I,6; II,13–14; IV,3; 10; VII,2; VIII,6–9; X,10
knowledge and, I,8
princes of darkness, I,5
prophecy, gift of, VII,6
prophets, II,1; V,5; X,1
false, II,13; VI,12
King Saul as, VII,6
law and, II,1–2; X,7
propitiation, I,7–8; V,9
prudence, VIII,6, 8
psalms, II,1–2; IX,5; X,5
Punic language, II,3
punishment, VI; IX,5; X,2
See also discipline; eternal fire
purity, III,2; IV,7, 9; VI,3; X,5
Donatists and, I,8
"the pure victim," VII,9
reality, IV,2; VIII,13
God as, VII,10
reason; the rational mind, VIII,6
rebaptism, VII,11
rebirth, II,5, 9; III,1; IV,11–12; V,1–8, 12;
VI,5, 9; VII,4
regeneration, I,5
remission of sins, II,2; III,7; X,8, 10
resurrection of Christ, III,2; V,4; VI,13
resurrection of the dead, III,4; VI,13
riches, II,13; V,5; VIII,10
See also gold
righteousness, I,8; IV,3; VIII,6; IX,3–4,
9–10
of angels, IV,3
Beware of practicing your righteousness in the presence of men,
V,1; VIII,2
confession of sin and, I,6, 8; IV,3;
V,1–2
faith and, IV,8
fear and, IX,4
of God, I,6–8; IV,3, 9, 11; IX,9; X,5
He who receives a righteous person, V,5
human, I,9; II,1, 12; IV,3, 8–9; V,7–8;
VI,7
perfect, IV,3; IX,4
the unrighteous, IX,9–10; X,4, 6
right hand, V,1
risen Christ, II,1–2; III,2; V,4
root; rootedness, I,3; 9; III,12; V,10; VI,12,
4, 6, 8; IX,8
deeds and, VII,8–9; X,7
running, X,1
sacrament (mystery), III,7, 13; V,13; VI,6
sacraments, III,5; IV,12; V,6, 13; VI,10–11;
VII,6
See also baptism; eucharist
Christ as, III,6
of the devil, II,13
Donatists and, II,3; III,5; VII,11
power of, III,12; IV,10

Homilies On The First Epistle Of John
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

sacred scripture. See scripture, sacred
sacrifice, V, 8–9
"the pure victim," VII, 9
saints, I, 8; VI, 6, 8
salvation, II, 9; III, 1; 9; IV, 2; 7; V, 2–5
passim; VI, 3–8 passim; VIII, 13; X, 1
and fellowship with God, I, 5
and sacred scripture, II, 1
seeking our brother’s, VI, 4
sanctification, I, 8
Sarah, X, 10
Satan. See devil
Saul, King, VII, 6; VIII, 2
Saul (Paul), VIII, 2; X, 3, 9
See also Paul
savior, Christ as, VIII, 13
See also Jesus Christ, Son
scandal, I, 12; VII, 5; IX, 11
schism, I, 12–13; II, 1–4; III, 4, 7, 9; VI, 2, 11–14
See also Donatist schism; error; heresy
scripture, sacred, II, 1–2; III, 1; V, 2
See also New Testament, Old
Testament, specific topics
love in, V, 13; VII, 4–5
and salvation, II, 1
seducers, VII, 11
seed, I, 13; II, 9; V, 13
of God, V, 2, 7
serpent, III, 2; VI, 7
seventy men, I, 12
sexual intercourse, I, 13; II, 12
sickness, V, 5; VI, 5, 8, 11, 13; VIII, 2; X, 5, 9
See also health; physicians
healing, II, 14; IV, 5; VII, 7; VIII, 11, 13;
IX, 10; X, 8
signs, II, 13; IV, 2; VI, 10
sin, I, 5–8; V, 3; VIII, 6
See also confession of sin; darkness;
evil; forgiveness; wickedness;
specific topics, e.g., envy; hatred;
pride
beginning of every, VIII, 6
in the Church, III, 9
definition of, V, 3
the devil and, IV, 10–12; VI, 2; VI, 7
Everyone who has been born from
God does not sin, V, 2, 7
freedom from, IV, 11–12
God’s love for sinners, VIII, 10

If I had not come, they would not have
sin, VI, 5
love and, I, 6; V, 2–3
particular, V, 2–3; VI, 5
pride and, VIII, 6
propitiation for, I, 7–8; V, 9
and rebirth, V, 1
remission of, I, 2; III, 7; X, 8, 10
root of, V, 2
wickedness and, IV, 8
slaves: slavery, VII, 11; VIII, 14
blood of Christ and, I, 5
Christ in form of, IV, 5; IX, 9
slave dealer, VII, 7
sluggish people, IX, 1
sobriety, IV, 4; VIII, 1
the Son, I, 3–5; IV, 9; 11; V, 2; VII, 2, 7, 9;
VIII, 14
See also God; Jesus Christ; savior;
specific topics, e.g., eucharist
abiding in, III, 11
as alive forever, II, 1
co-heirs of, II, 9; VIII, 14; X, 3
commandments and, VI, 9
confession of, III, 10; VIII, 14; X, 1
demons confessing, II, 8; X, 1
denial of, III, 10
as equal to the Father, II, 1, 5; III, 2;
IV, 5, 9; VI, 12; IX, 9
eyeternal origin of, II, 5
Peter confessing, X, 1
sons, I, 5–6
of God, II, 14; IV, 4; IX, 3; X, 3–4
soul, V, 3–4; VI, 2, 5, 11; IX, 2, 4, 6, 9; X, 7
of angels, IV, 3
beauty of, IX, 9
chaste, IX, 2
at death, X, 9
healing of enemy’s, VII, 11
and mortality, III, 11
stretching of, IV, 6
and temporal wellbeing, I, 9
speech. See discourse; words
Spirit, Holy. See Holy Spirit
spirits:
breath, IX, 5
Do not believe every spirit, VI, 11–14
prophetic, VII, 6
of truth and error, VII, 4
stealing, VI, 14; VII, 10

Volume III/14
Stephen, V,4
stone: Christ as, I,13; III,6
strangers, VII,6
suffering, X,9
of Christ, I,4; II,1–2; X,8
if one member suffers, III,4; X,3
sun, I,2; II,3, 11; III,12; IV,5; IX,3
swine, V,17

teacher:
evicted, VIII,8
inner, III,13
temptation, II,13–14; IV,1; VI,17; VIII,7
of Christ, II,14
theater, II,13
threats, III,11–12; VI,13
time, II,5, 10
See also eternity
last times, III,10
tolerance, I,12
tongues, speaking in, II,3; VI,10
tongues, two, IX,5
traditores, X,10
Trinity, VII,6; X,5
See also Father; God; Holy Spirit; Son
truth, I,5
Christ as, III,6; VII,3; X,1
God alone as truthful, I,6
and light, I,6; VI,10
the rational mind and, VIII,6
spirit of, VII,4
the twelve, I,12
See also apostles
ugliness, IX,9
unbelievers, X,7
uncleanness, I,8; IV,4; IX,2, 6
unity, I,3; II,3–4; III,7; VI,10; VIII,1; IX,11;
X,7–8
and division, V,12, 13
love and, I,12
universality. See under Catholic Church:
universality of
victim: “the pure victim,” VII,9
virgin, chaste soul as, IX,2
the Virgin Mary. See Mary, the Virgin
virtues, VIII,1
vision. See eyes
water, III,13; V,5; V,8, 11; VII,6
See also baptism
the term, VI,11
weakness, II,6; IV,4; VI,6–7
wealth. See gold; riches
wickedness, I,5–7; II,12; III,5; IV,10; V,1;
2; VII,7–8; IX,9
See also evil; sin
Church, wicked members leaving,
III,4
fear and, II,8; IX,6–8
prayer and, VI,1
and sin, IV,8; V,2
spiritual qualities of, IX,2
will (free choice), III,1, 5, 8–9; IV,7; VII,2;
7; VIII,1; IX,2
Adam and, IV,3
will of God, II,10, 14; VIII,7; IX,2
winnowing, III,5, 10
wisdom, I,4; IX,2, 4
witnesses, I,2–3; III,12–13; X,9
wives, IX,2
See also bride and bridegroom;
marrige
women, III,2
adulterous vs. chaste, IX,6–7
wood, VIII,10
Word of God, III,1-2; IX,4
See also Jesus Christ; scripture, sacred
made flesh, I,1-4, 7-9; II,5; IV,3-5;
V,5; VI,12-14; VII,2-3; IX,9;
X,3, 8
scripture, V,2
things contrary to, III,9
words: and deeds, VI,1–3, 13–14; VIII,14;
X,1
works, VI,13; VIII,9; X,4
See also: deeds; mercy
concealing, VIII,2, 9
fulfillment of, X,4
heavenly members and, IX,2
in keeping with the time, VIII,3
love and, V,9; X,4
past, X,1
root of, VII,8–9; X,7
world, II,12; IV,4; V,9
See also concupiscence; creation
Do not be surprised ... if the world
hates us, V,9–10
love for, II,8–14; V,9; VII,3; IX,10
pleasures of, II,10–12; X,4, 6
temporal things, II,10
the term, II,12; V,9

worship: of God and not Christ, III,10
“Your Charity,” I,3; III,7; IV,5, 12; V,6, 8;
VI,6; VIII,10, 11; IX,1, 5
“Your Holiness,” Prologue; IX,1

Volume III/14
Index from
Expositions of the Psalms 1-32

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor,
Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz
As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the *Expositions of the Psalms* can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/15 Homilies/Expositions

Paperback: 978-1-56548-140-4, 6 x 9 in., 466 pp., 2000
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-126-8, 6 x 9 in., 462 pp., 2000

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms
*(Enarrationes in Psalmos)*

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the psalm)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Job</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td>1:9-11</td>
<td>II, 29, 7; III, 32, 12; IV, 30, 12; II, 32, 3; II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3 7, 19</td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>IV, 30, 12; II, 32, 3; II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-5 7, 19</td>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>III, 32, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17 II, 29, 15; II, 29, 17</td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>II, 29, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24 10, 10; 18, 10</td>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>II, 29, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4 II, 29, 17</td>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>II, 29, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14 7, 4</td>
<td>3:14 1, 6, 9, 11</td>
<td>8:19 8, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19 7, 4; 10, 7; II, 30, 7; III, 32, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6 II, 31, 2</td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>II, 32, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16-18 III, 30, 9</td>
<td>3:4(3) 7, 18</td>
<td>2:28 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>II, 21, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>III, 30, 8; II, 32, 3; II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>III, 32, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14 1, 6, 9, 11</td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>III, 32, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leviticus</strong></td>
<td>3:4 7, 18</td>
<td>3:6 3, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:15</td>
<td>3:6 3, 1</td>
<td>3:7 6, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II, 32, 12</td>
<td>3:7(8) II, 31, 18</td>
<td>4:7 7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deuteronomy</strong></td>
<td>4:7(6) 8, 10</td>
<td>5:2(1) III, 32, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>5:5(3) 6, 7; II, 26, 8</td>
<td>5:7(6) III, 32, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, 4; 6, 1</td>
<td>6:3(2) 7, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>6:5(4) 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, 12</td>
<td>7:13(12) 9, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Samuel</strong></td>
<td>7:15-17(14-16) 5, 10</td>
<td>8:5(4) 5, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12 18, 6</td>
<td>9:17(16) 7, 17</td>
<td>10:3(11:2) 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:33 3, 1</td>
<td>9:20-21(19-20) 9, 29</td>
<td>11:9(12:8) III, 30, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10,18 II, 25, 5</td>
<td>10:3(11:2) 8, 9</td>
<td>13:5(14:4) IV, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15(16):5 5, 1; III, 32, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15(16):5.6 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15(16):7 1, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15(16):7,8</td>
<td>7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15(16):9</td>
<td>7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16(17):13-14</td>
<td>7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17(18):9</td>
<td>8, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11-12(18:10-11)</td>
<td>7, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:29(18:28)</td>
<td>7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2(19:1-4)</td>
<td>III, 32, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7(19:6)</td>
<td>II, 25, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28(22:27)</td>
<td>III, 30, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22(23):5</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24(25):9</td>
<td>II, 31, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24(25):15</td>
<td>II, 31, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):9</td>
<td>III, 32, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):14</td>
<td>II, 29, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:21(31:20)</td>
<td>9, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31(32):9</td>
<td>II, 29, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:9(34:8)</td>
<td>5, 15; IV, 30, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:19(34:18)</td>
<td>6, 10; II, 31, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):3</td>
<td>III, 32, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):13</td>
<td>II, 29, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:4(36:3)</td>
<td>II, 31, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:7(36:6)</td>
<td>3, 4; 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:7-11(36:6-10)</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:9(36:8)</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12(36:11)</td>
<td>1, 4; 18, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):4</td>
<td>II, 32, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):27</td>
<td>II, 31, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):34</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:10(38:9)</td>
<td>III, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6(40:5)</td>
<td>III, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5(41:4)</td>
<td>II, 31, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42(43):1</td>
<td>II, 25, 6; IV, 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43(44):22</td>
<td>9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8(45:7)</td>
<td>II, 29, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50(51):7(51)</td>
<td>II, 31, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:11(51:9)</td>
<td>II, 26, 16; II, 31, 9; III, 32, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:15(51:13)</td>
<td>II, 31, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52(53):17</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:6(53:5)</td>
<td>7, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:6(53:4)</td>
<td>IV, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55(56):12</td>
<td>II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56(57):12</td>
<td>9, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:11(59:10)</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:9(63:8)</td>
<td>3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:10(65:9)</td>
<td>1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:3(69:9)</td>
<td>III, 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1,11,2</td>
<td>II, 31, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):7</td>
<td>II, 31, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):28</td>
<td>5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:9(73:8)</td>
<td>8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:3(80:2)</td>
<td>5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:14(83:13)</td>
<td>III, 30, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:5(84:4)</td>
<td>II, 26, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:8(84:7)</td>
<td>II, 26, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88:16(89:15)</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:2(92:1)</td>
<td>II, 31, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93(94):15</td>
<td>IV, 30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):5</td>
<td>18, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:26-27(102:25-26)</td>
<td>18, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:28(102:27)</td>
<td>II, 26, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111(112):10</td>
<td>III, 32, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112(113):1.3</td>
<td>II, 21, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B:1(115:1)</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117(118):13</td>
<td>II, 30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):53,158</td>
<td>III, 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):133</td>
<td>18, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):155</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):3-4</td>
<td>7, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):5</td>
<td>III, 32, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):7-8</td>
<td>II, 30, 8; II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140(141):4</td>
<td>II, 31, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:6(142:5)</td>
<td>5, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>III, 32, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>II, 31, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>II, 31, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:32, LXX</td>
<td>7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:26, LXX</td>
<td>11, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:26</td>
<td>II, 26, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>IV, 30, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5, LXX</td>
<td>7, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>5, 7; I, 26, 13; III, 32, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>II, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1,3,5,4</td>
<td>IV, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1,3,8,9,5</td>
<td>II, 29, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3,8,9</td>
<td>II, 32, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-9</td>
<td>6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>2, 4; 6, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:25,26</td>
<td>9, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>II, 26, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15,14</td>
<td>7, 4; 18, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:19-21</td>
<td>7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9, LXX</td>
<td>8, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14,13-14</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:13, LXX</td>
<td>III, 32, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:13</td>
<td>4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:4</td>
<td>8, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6-8</td>
<td>1, 3; II, 30, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:10</td>
<td>7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10</td>
<td>II, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:5, LXX</td>
<td>III, 32, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>II, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2</td>
<td>9, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:25</td>
<td>17, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3, LXX</td>
<td>6, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>9, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>III, 32, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>6, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3.9.6</td>
<td>II, 30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>9, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>9, 27; 11, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-9</td>
<td>11, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>1, 4; 5, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>II, 32, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, 26, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>18, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>5, 7; 14, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48-45</td>
<td>7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>7, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:31</td>
<td>II, 31, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>II, 32, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>10, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>11, 6; 11, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>3, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35.37.38</td>
<td>II, 29, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>6, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>9, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>11, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>II, 29, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>8, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>8, 13; II, 30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37-38</td>
<td>II, 32, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>II, 25, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>II, 25, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:26</td>
<td>6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>II, 21, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>17, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30-35</td>
<td>II, 30, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

12:49 II, 25, 7
13:5 17, 16
15:24-32 18, 6
18:8 III, 32, 29
18:9-10 II, 31, 11
18:13-14 II, 31, 11
18:28 7, 8
19:23 III, 32, 2
22:31-32 II, 26, 5
23:46 II, 29, 3
24:39-46 III, 32, 7

John
1:1 II, 21, 7
1:1-5 II, 21, 3
1:14 6, 5
1:15 9, 4
1:17 II, 31, 9
1:18 II, 31, 9; III, 32, 19
2:9 II, 25, 3
3:2 27, 3
3:18 9, 1
4:10 1, 3
5:22 7, 8
5:24 9, 1
5:35 7, 8
6:27 5, 15
6:31 5, 15
7:37 1, 3
7:39 7, 6
8:15 III, 32, 2
8:34 7, 18
8:36 9, 1
8:44 16, 11; 17, 46; II, 26, 18
8:56 II, 26, 21
9:24 I, 21, 7
9:28 9, 8
10:14 3, 5
10:17-18 3, 6
11:48 13, 6
11:50 20, 12
12:32 III, 32, 2
13:2-27 3, 1
14:46 4, 8; 5, 3; II, 26, 20; II, 31, 18
14:27 10, 6; 20, 3; 28, 11
15:51 II, 30, 4; III, 32, 18
15:15 5, 9; 7, 1
16:12 5, 7
16:33 23, 7
17:1 19, 2
19:6 17, 48; I, 21, 14; II, 21, 14
19:10 II, 29, 7
19:11 9, 6; II, 29, 7; III, 32, 12
19:23 II, 21, 19
19:30 II, 30, 11
20:17 7, 1
20:25-27-29 II, 21, 17
20:29 8, 6
21:18-19 II, 30, 3

Acts of the Apostles
1:7 6, 1
1:25 III, 30, 13
1:26 III, 30, 13
4:32 4, 10
7:60 7, 5
8:20-21 III, 30, 14
9:4 II, 26, 11; II, 30, 3; II, 32, 2
10:13 13, 4; III, 30, 5

Romans
1:17 II, 32, 4
1:24 II, 26, 7
1:28 6, 6; 6, 8
2:5 6, 3
2:9 11, 4
2:15,16 5, 13
3:23 II, 30, 6; II, 31, 7
3:28 II, 31, 6
3:29 II, 31, 2
4:3 4:3-4 II, 31, 7
4:4 II, 31, 7
4:5 II, 30, 6; II, 31, 6; II, 31, 7
4:5-6 II, 31, 7
5:3 9, 2
5:3-5 4, 2; II, 31, 25
5:10 5, 17
5:14 6, 2
6:12 9, 8
6:21 6, 13; II, 30, 5
7:22-25 II, 30, 6
7:24 II, 31, 17
7:24-25 3, 8; II, 30, 13
7:25 3, 10; 6, 7
8:23-25 II, 31, 20
8:25 4, 2; 4, 9; 9, 33
8:29 7, 1
8:33-31,32 5, 17
8:34 2, 7; II, 29, 1
8:35-38-39 7, 14
10:2 II, 30, 6
10:3 27, 8; II, 30, 6; II, 30, 13
10:4 4, 1; 12, 1; 13, 1; II, 30, 1
11:3-4 II, 25, 5; III, 30, 7
11:25 7, 6
11:26 13, 8
11:33-34 7, 1
11:36 5, 3

Value III/15
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>III, 32, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>II, 31, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>III, 32, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9-10</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>II, 31, 5, 13:12, 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>III, 32, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>III, 30, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>7, 4; II, 31, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>8, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>8, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>II, 21, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11-12</td>
<td>II, 29, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>II, 29, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-15</td>
<td>1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>II, 29, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>5, 8; 9; 12; 10, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>3, 3; II, 25, 11; II, 31, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>III, 32, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>II, 31, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>III, 32, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>II, 32, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>II, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>III, 30, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29-30, 8-9</td>
<td>III, 32, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>II, 31, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:27</td>
<td>8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td>II, 26, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-55</td>
<td>II, 29, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Galatians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>9, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>II, 31, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II, 31, 5; II, 31, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>II, 25, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>9, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ephesians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>III, 30, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17</td>
<td>9, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15-16</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>II, 25, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>6, 8; II, 25, 3; III, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26-28</td>
<td>II, 25, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, 25, 11; II, 26, 20; IV, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>II, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>10, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 29, 1; IV, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>II, 31, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Philippians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>II, 21, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>III, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>II, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Colossians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>II, 26, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Thessalonians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>III, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>6, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Thessalonians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>9, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>9, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Timothy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7:8</td>
<td>6, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Timothy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>II, 32, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12-13</td>
<td>II, 29, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>II, 31, 26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32**
### Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>James</th>
<th>1 Peter</th>
<th>2 Peter</th>
<th>1 John</th>
<th>Revelation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>II, 29, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>7, 19; III, 30, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:22</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 25, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>5, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>9, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>6, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>II, 29, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>II, 31, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>7, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volue III/15
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the psalm number.
More than one “Exposition” is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2)
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

abandonment:
  by father and mother, 26(2):18
  by the world, 26(1):10
Abel, 8:13
Abessalon, 9:1
  called “a father’s peace”, 3:1
  figure of Christ, 3:1
  Judas and, 7:1
Abraham:
  children of, 19:9
  Church prophesied in sacrifice of, 30(3):9
  embrace of, 25(2):10
  faith; Paul’s teaching, 31(2):2,3
  father, because we imitate his faith, 30(3):9
  justification, 31(2):5
  pride before God, 31(2):2
  seed (prophecy), 30(3):9
  son offered as sacrifice, 31(2):3
Absalom, See Abessalon.
accusation:
  bad Christians, 30(3):11
  false, 26(2):21
  actor, 32(2):1
Adam and Eve, 6:1; 8:10; 21(1):4; 25(2):2
  banished from paradise, 29(2):15
  devil and, 29(2):7,17
  earthly man, 9:4
  Eve deceived by serpent, 18(2):2
  fall of, 18(2):13
  imitation of, 30(1):20
  Job and his wife, 29(2):7
  no joy in presence of God, 29(2):16
  old man, 2:8
  as the “one lost sheep”, 8:12
  seeds of immortality in, 29(2):7
  time since, 30(2):8
  type of Christ, 29(2):8
adoption, 31(2):20
  by God, 26(1):10
  right of inheritance, 32(2):4
adultery, 30(2):7; 31(2):2; 32(2):6
adversity, 32(2):5
affections: purging, 17:38; 25(1):3; 25(2):7,9
Africa, 21(2):2,24,26,28
age of the age, 9:7
Ahithophel, 7:1
allergy, 8:13
alms: motives, 32(3):22
altar, 25(2):10
altogether (the word), 18(2):10
altruism: living for the sake of others, 30(3):5
ambition, 8:13; 20:13
Amen, 32(2):4
and: biblical usage, 4:4
angels, 8:13; 23:10; 25(2):3; 32(3):20
  equality with, 32(3):16
  food from heaven, 30(2):9
  holy souls, 8:12
  oxen as metaphor for, 8:12
  praise of, 26(2):12
  Principalities and Powers, 8:12
  wish to be like, re death, 30(2):13
  of wrath, 7:12
anger, 6:8; 7:3,12; 9:25; 20:10; 24:7; 26(2):16; 30(1):10
See also God: anger
  blinded by, 30(3):4
  churned up by storm of, 9:30
  emotion, 2:4
  fury and, 6:3
  gift of life and, 29(2):15
  God omnipresent, 30(2):8
  God turning his face away, 26(1):9
  hatred and, 30(3):4
  positive use of, 4:6
  provoked, 29(1):6
  rise up in, 7:7
  sun set on your wrath, 25(2):3,4
anguish, 21(1):12
animals: souls, 29(2):2
Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

animosity, 32(3):29
anointing, 26(1):1
    proper to all Christians, 26(2):2
Antichrist, 9:19, 22, 23, 27, 28
anxiety, 31(2):6,21
Apolinarian heresy, 29(2):2,3
apostasy: last sin lying in wait, 18(1):14
apostles, 1:3; 7:15; 28:2; 32(3):20
    arrows, 7:14
    casting lots to replace Judas, 30(3):13
    filled with the Spirit, 18(2):5
heavens, 32(3):6,7
    Holy Spirit sent to, 9:7
martyrs, 29(2):2
    message, 18(2):4
money and, 30(3):14
persecuted, 32(3):9
    spoke in languages of all peoples, 32(3):7
words go to ends of earth, 18(2):2
arise (the word): meaning: become inaccessible, 7:7
ark: Church as, 28:10
arm (the word): meaning: power, 9:32
arrogance, 19:7
arrow:
    divine love, 7:14
    instrument of death, 7:15
    of the wicked, 10:2
    art, 9:7; 26(2):12
    ass, 31(2):22
atheism: fool says in his heart..., 31(2):25
attachment: temporal goods, 29(2):9
Aurelius (bishop), 21(2):31
awe: holiness and, 2:9
Babylon, 26(2):18,19
Bagai, 21(2):26,31
banquet: table prepared for, 22:5
baptism:
    all baptized are Christ’s property, 21(2):31
    anointing, 26(2):2
    Donatists, 10:5
    foretaste of future blessing, 26(2):2
    mercy of God, 18(2):2
    rebaptism, 10:6
    regenerating water, 22:1:2
    unity, 30(4):3
    water of, 31(2):18
battle, 17:35
beasts of the field, 8:13
beatitudes, 11:7
beauty, 7:19; 32(3):25
    Church as God’s house, 25(2):12
    creature and Creator, 14:4
    eye of the heart, 32(2):6
    God the source of, 29(2):18
    house (Church), 25(1):8
    old, bent person, 32(2):6
    praise for created things, 26(2):12
righteousness, 32(2):6
risen from the dead, 20:6
strength added to, 29(1):8
wisdom of God, 32(2):7
bed: psalmist usage, 6:7
behavior:
    blessing God, 25(2):14
    rule of, 8:2
unhappiness and, 30(2):13
being: God’s knowledge, 1:6
believer, 32(2):4
    one mind and one heart, 4:10
    shame for past sins, 30(2):5
belly: as inner life, 30(3):4
Bible:
    See also words of God
    authority of, 10:2
    both Testaments called “heavens”, 8:7
    bow and arrows, 7:14
cloud, 10:10
    eyelids of God, 10:8
    heavens as metaphor for scriptures, 8:9
    investigating and understanding, 8:7,8
    mysteries of scriptures revealed, 28:9
    perverse understanding of, 7:15
    scripture as God’s speaking, 3:6
    senses of, 32(3):25
    understanding by the weak, 21(2):15
    unity foretold in, 30(3):8
    variety of interpretations, 18(2):4
bird, 18(2):1
    metaphor for the proud, 8:13
bishops: Donatist, 21(2):31
    bitterness, 30(3):12; 31(1):4; 32(3):10
    blackbirds, 18(2):1
    blasphemy, 10:11; 30(4):4; 31(1):3
    blessedness, 2:9,11; 31(2):7
    blessing, 20:4,7; 23:5; 25(1):12; 31(2):18
    deeds and words, 25(2):14
God indwelling, 5:17
    praise God, 32(2):3
    Gentiles, 7:6
    habitual sin, 5:6
    Israel, 13:8
    bloodthirsty person, 5:8
boasting, 7:3,4; 8:13; 11:4; 23:10; 25(2):11;
    31(1):11; 31(2):2,6,8,11,25,26
body and soul:
    See also human body; soul
    better part is the soul, 32(2):16
    body wears down the soul, 4:9; 11:9
    single unit, many members, 30(2):4
bones, 30(1):11
    grown old, 31(2):13
    strength, 6:4
    strong churches, 30(3):5
born again, 4:8
bow: holy scriptures as, 7:14

Volue III/15
Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

Volume III/15

bread, 13:5; 32(3):29

come down from heaven, 5:15

brethren: as Christians, 32(3):29

bribe, 14:5

bribing a judge, 25(2):13

praise as, 25(2):13

Bridegroom, 18(2):2

Church’s love of, 18(1):10

virgin’s womb, 18(1):6; 18(2):6

brigands, 14:3

brokenhearted, 32(3):11

brother: fraternal love, 18(2):6

building:

gold, silver and precious stones, 29(2):9

wood, hay and straw, 29(2):9

bull-calves, 21(1):13; 21(2):13

Caecilian, 10:5,6; 30(3):12

Caesar: render to…, 4:8

calm seas, 9:29

carnal desire, 7:11

carnality, 32(3):29

Carthage: basilica, 31(2):1

Catholic Church, 10:4; 29(2):3

remains whole, 21(2):19

sinners in, 10:5

Catholic faith, 5:3; 10:3

Catholics: scriptures and, 7:15

cattle, 8:1,10,12,13

censuring, 30(1):14

certainty, 8:6; 10:5

chaff, 25(2):5,6,12

chains, 2:2

evil thoughts as, 9:21

chalice, 22:5

change, 9:2; 31(2):18

change, 9:7

charity, 30(1):8,9; 30(2):2; 32(3):21,28,29

See also love

fullness of the law, 31(2):5

refraining from doing harm, 31(2):5

self possessions, give to the poor, 6:12

ten commandments, 32(2):6

throne of Christ, 21(2):19; 30(3):13

unity and glory, 30(3):1

chastisement: hidden judgment, 9:1

chastity, 18(2):2

children:

milk and solid food, 8:5

salvation, 10:3

sin, 16:13

spiritual life, 22:4

things not revealed to the wise, 18(1):8

tribulation; goodness, 9:20

understanding of eternal things, 8:8

children of God, 6:12; 10:6; 11:8-9; 18(2):3;

29(2):8; 30(3):1; 30(4):5

See also adoption

choice, 30(3):13

chosen, 17:27

Christian life, 13:1

bad Christians, 30(3):6

being straight, 32(2):3

directions for the way, 26(1):11

living among vices, 6:9

living as Christ taught, 32(2):2

prosperity and, 25(2):4

see Christ reflected in self, 32(2):2

straight and narrow ways, 26(1):11

teach me your ways, 24:4

witnessing, 30(4):7

Christian name: high dignity of, 7:9

Christianity: rejection of, 2:2

Christians:

See also Christian life; persecution

accusations against, 30(3):11

called ‘brethren’, 32(3):29

fear of tyrants, 18(2):14

fragrance of Christ, 7:15

grace and, 31(2):2

living evil lives, 25(2):14

raw recruits, 26(1):1

sheep, 21(2):31

slander against name of, 10:4

unity forms one person, 29(2):5

Church, 6:10; 10:12; 15:5; 16:1; 17:17; 19:3;

21(1):15,23,26; 25(1):1; 27:5

See also Mystical Body; persecution;
temple

ark, 28:10

attacks and slanders on, 10:4

beauty of God’s house, 25(1):9; 25(2):12

body of Christ, 21(2):28

bones, 30(3):5

bribes and, 25(2):13

bridegroom’s tent, 18(2):6

Christ as Head and body, 18(2):10

Christ as shepherd of, 22:1-2

Christ rules over Zion, 2:5

Christ speaks in person of, 24:1-3; 30(2):4

Christ the spouse of, 9:6

comprehensiveness of, 8:13

critics of, 30(3):11

dedication of the house, 29(2):6

Donatist teaching, 10:1

each member praises God for gift(s)

received, 28:9

ecclesiastical court, 25(2):13

endurance, 20:5

enemies of, 24:19; 29(2):11

establishment, 8:3

everyone as neighbor, 25(2):2

fear of condemnation, 6:3

foreshadowed (Peter’s dish), 30(3):5

glory dwells in, 25(1):8

God hears, 5:4

God’s indwelling, 9:12

good and bad people in, 25(2):6
great assembly, 21(2):26
groaning, 30(3):5
harmed by bad Christians, 30(2):10
Head and body: whole Church, 9:14; 17:2
heard by God, 5:17
hunger of, 30(3):5
immortality, 23:2
inheritance in God, 5:1
inner cry of, 5:2
joy in receiving mercy, 5:8
judge seated on throne, 9:6
laboring and humble, 24:16-18
light of, 10:2
love growing to perfection, 16:5
love of the Bridegroom, 18(1):10
many members, one body, 30(2):4
many see, and flee from, 30(3):8
moon and stars, 8:12
moon (metaphor), 8:9; 10:3
mountain, 2:5
mutual service, 10:7
nets full of good/bad fish, 10:5
oppressors of, 29(1):2
our mother, 26(2):18
passion of Christ and, 21(2):4
Paul as representing, 21(2):2
people leading bad lives in, 30(3):6
Peter’s dish full of living creatures, 30(3):5
pilgrimage, 26(2):18
pre-eminence from the Head, 3:9; 29(2):2
present wherever God is praised, 21(2):24
proclaimed, 30(3):9
prophecies regarding, 30(3):8
Abraham’s sacrifice, 30(3):9
found among all nations, 30(4):9
renewing the body of, 29(1):1
sacrifice in his tabernacle, 26(2):12
sadness turned to joy, 29(1):12
saved in hope, 9:15
slaughter and eat..., 30(3):5
souls driven out of, 30(3):11
spiritual torments, 29(2):8
spread throughout the world, 30(3):8
stormy sea, 9:29
strains toward heaven, 29(2):10
teeth of, 3:7
tent, 30(4):8
threshing-floor, 25(2):5
toiling on earth, 30(2):3
two in one flesh, with Christ, 30(2):4
victorious, praises God, 26(2):13
war against the devil, 28:1
whole Christ speaking, 17:51
whole world as, 23:2
wicked people in, 25(2):5
winepress, 8:12
woman and the ointment, 21(2):2
Zion, 9:12

churches:
   establishing, 1:3
   fruit bearing, 8:3
   preachers and the Holy Spirit, 7:6
   stars, 8:9
   weakening of faith in, 7:7
   winepress, 8:1
Circumcisions, 10:5
circumcision: flesh and heart, 6:2
city, 30(4):9
devil rules in, 9:8
clemency, 32(2):12
clothing: first robe, 29(1):12
clouds: as prophets, 10:10
collusion, 25(2):9; 30(1):14
commandments(-s), 6:9; 12:7; 5:8; 10:12;
   all must submit to, 8:5
   charity toward God and neighbor, 32(2):6
   finishing the, 31(2):8
   hatred of, 7:9
   keeping, 18(1):12-13; 25(2):3
   observing, 32(1):2
   perfection, 31(2):5
   psaltery (ten strings), 32(2):6
   soul and life, 25(1):9
   sweetness tested, 18(2):12
ten, 32(2):6
commiseration, 31(2):9
complacency, 32(3):10
compliance, 25(2):9
compunction: for sin, 29(2):22
concupiscence, 9:15; 17:33; 32(1):16
condemnation, 9:24
Church’s fear of, 6:3
confession, 29(1):5; 30(1):12; 30(4):10;
   31(2):18
   drawing near to God, 31(1):6
   faith and justification, 30(4):7
   for ever, 29(2):22
   heard before it is spoken, 31(1):5
   praising God, 7:19
   refusing, 31(1):10; 31(2):13
   of sin or of praise, 29(2):19
   understanding and, 31(1):8
   what God has done for you, 29(2):22
   wholehearted, 9:2
conjunction: biblical usage, 4:4
conscience, 5:11; 7:4,9; 9:9,23; 10:3,5;
   25(2):5,10,13; 29(2):22; 30(3):7;
   30(4):4,8; 31(1):2,4; 31(2):1,11,12
   gaze of God on, 18(1):15
   good; must both believe and work, 31(2):5
   hope and, 31(2):5
   narrow gate, 30(4):8
   no fleeing from, 30(2):8
   self-accusing, 5:13
   constancy, 32(3):23
contemplation, 26(2):8
ecstasy and, 30(2):2
glory of God, 2:5
joy of the Lord, 26(2):16
safety, 26(2):9
uncaring about temporal things, 30(2):2
unchangeable good, 26(2):8
conversion (moral):
all the ends of the earth, 21(2):30
apostasy, the last sin, 18(1):14
changing for the better, 26(1):2
difficulties in way of, 6:6
discipline, 9:1
God ready and waiting, 6:5
King of glory will enter, 23:7
lay aside the old self, 25(2):1
mercies of God and, 32(2):10
pride in, 18(1):15
prodigal heretic, 18(2):6
purification, 9:1
repentance, 4:7
shamed into, 30(2):5
spiritual regeneration, 8:10
subdue the servile and brutish, 2:8
turning to God, 4:4
converts:
all ends of the earth, 21(1):28
Church “eats” them, 30(3):5
corruption, 29(1):11
counsel: adverse circumstances, 12:2
courage, 26(1):14
deceived by, 32(1):17
court: ecclesiastical, 25(2):13
coveting, 32(2):6; 32(3):16
creation:
all holy, spiritual creation subject to
Christ, 8:12
beauty of, 7:19
good works, 18(2):3
he spoke and they were made, 32(1):9; 32(3):12
image and likeness of God, 18(2):3
subject to God, 2:4; 32(3):12
varied beauties of, 26(2):12
wonders of, 26(2):12
word and wisdom of God, 18(2):3
Word of God and, 32(3):16
Creator:
material and spiritual universes, 32(1):6-9
creator(-s):
crippled, 17:46
cross:
 enemies of, 8:8
 sign, 32(3):13
 turned to resurrection-joy, 19:4
 crucifixion, 8:2
 disgrace, 30(4):5
 Isaac as prefiguring, 30(3):9
cry: inner cry of the Church, 5:2
cup: lovely portion, 10:11
curse, 9:25; 31(2):9; 32(2):3
solemn oath, 7:3
 teeth, 3:7
Cyprian, 32(3):1,9
damnation, 9:1; 18(2):2; 21(2):5; 29(2):8; 31(2):5
danger: temptations, 26(2):22
Daniel, 21(2):6
blindness of mind, 6:8
God’s hiding place, 17:12
hating one’s brother, 30(3):4
nature: non-existence, 7:19
providential order, 7:19
sin; night, 5:4
unbelievers, 30(4):2
Christ as Lord of, 9:35
figure of Christ, 3:1
meaning of “David”, 17:1
psaltery, 4:1
day:
joyfulness, 1:2
message to succeeding day, 18(2):4
death: come back to life…, 32(3):29
See also immortality; incorruptibility; mortality
arrows as instruments of, 7:15
blasphemy and, 10:11
Christ and fear of, 30(2):3
Christ’s battle with, 23:8
Christ’s fear not in himself but in us, 30(2):3
defeat of, 29(2):11
devil and, 30(2):14
dying; fearing, 30(2):12
fear of, 21(2):4; 27:6-7; 29(1):12
first the soul, then the body, 30(2):12
gates of, 9:14
health, and fear of, 6:3
human constraint, 30(2):13
I long to die and be with Christ…, 30(3):5
mindful of, 6:6
parents: natural and divine, 26(2):18
pierced no more, 29(2):22
preferable to pain, 30(1):11
reign of, 6:2
Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

rescue from, 26(2):22
sin as, 6:6
sleep, 3:5; 12:3-5
snares of, 17:5
sorrows of, 17:5
sword as metaphor for, 21(2):21
wage due to sin, 31(2):7
walk in shadow of, 22:4
wayward desires, 9:14
where is your sting…, 29(2):12
deceit, 9:25,27; 11:2,14;3; 16:2; 23:4
definition, 5:8
pure, 11:7
saying evil things, 5:12
deception, 11:5
dedication: of the foundation, 29(2):11
deer, 28:9
defeat, 26(2):5
deliberation: words of God, 11:7
delight, 7:9; 9:17; 15:10; 26(2):8,9
art and the artist, 26(2):12
empty, 22:5
food of truth, 5:15
good and bad, 9:15
heart’s desire, 32(2):6
inappropriate objects of, 7:11
objects of, 4:8
deliverance, 17:51
prayer for, 21(1):20-22
demons, 21(2):5
See also devil
gifts related to worship, 26(2):19
desert: world as, 28:8
32(3):10
bodily subdued, 6:13
carnal longings, 6:7; 26(1):2
carnal or spiritual, 24:2
corrupt, 13:2
earthbound, 6:5; 7:17; 26(2):16; 29(2):13
end of all longings, 26(2):14
evil, 18(1):14
flesh, 17:40
gates of death, 9:14
good and bad, 7:11
happiness and, 32(3):16
intensity of, 6:13
inward promptings, 7:11
law of sin, 3:10
longings tearing the soul apart, 6:5
loving what God wants us to love, 26(2):7
rich ravaged by, 29(2):17
self-indulgent, 9:8
sevenfold cycle of days, 11:9
_temporal goods, 4:9
will of God and, 32(2):2
despair, 4:8; 5:17; 26(1):14; 31(2):5; 32(2):4
death, 7:2; 3; 8:13; 10:6; 12:3-5; 16:11; 17:46;
29(2):8,11; 30(1):9; 31(2):17,26;
32(1):16; 32(3):12
Adam and, 29(2):17
ancient enemy, 30(2):14
anger of God against, 7:5
battle with, 14:1
Church at war against, 28:1
dominion over the poor, 9:28
enemy; envy, 30(4):2
ever and heaven, 30(4):2
fall of, 18(2):13
father according to this world, 26(2):18
God’s permission needed, 26(2):5
Job and, 21(2):5,8; 29(2):6; 32(3):12
Job’s wife and, 30(4):12
killed Job’s children, 29(2):7
lion, 21(2):22
persecutes the soul, 7:4
power as God permits, 32(3):12
power given to called “God’s hand”,
29(2):7
praying against, 7:5
predestination, 3:10
ruler of the ungodly, 26(2):20
rules in cities, 9:8
testing us by bodily pain, 21(2):5
trap, 30(2):10
turning back the enemy, 9:4
devotion, 11:7
diapsalma, 4:4; 9:20
dignity, 31(1):11
disapproval, 25(2):8
disciples, 20:4
call to perfection, 9:4
called sons or brothers, 7:1
death of, 21(2):28
filled by Holy Spirit, 8:3
orphans, 9:31
sheep among wolves, 32(3):8
tested, 10:12
32(3):10
moral conversion and, 9:1
disease, 1:6
distress, 30(1):10; 30(2):16; 30(3):1,2;
31(2):19,23
deliverance from, 24:22
refuge in, 31(1):7
sorrow and, 30(3):3
tested by, 16:3
Dives and Lazarus, 6:6
doctrine: one, 31(2):18
dogs, 9:14; 21(1):17,21; 21(2):21
dominion: terror, 9:28
Donatists, 10:1; 10:6; 18(2):5;
21(2):24,28,29,32; 30(3):8;
32(3):28,29
bishops, 21(2):31
claim to preserve scriptures, 21(2):30

Value III/15
Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

heart, 26(2):15
inner and outer, 21(1):4
lift eyes to God, 31(2):21
face of God, 31(2):9

shine over your servant, 30(1):17; 30(4):3
sinner not wanting to see, 29(2):16
faith; 4:7; 8:5; 8:7; 9:7; 10:5; 12:3-5; 14:1;
17:12,20,21,22,31,33; 21(1):32; 25(2):3;
32(2):4
Abraham as father, 30(3):9
Abraham: Paul’s teaching, 31(2):2,3
becoming a faithful person, 32(2):9
belief in God’s promises, 32(2):9
born anew by, 10:8
children, 10:6
Christ’s name upon us, 32(1):21
confessing, 30(4):7
earning the grace of, 32(2):9
falling-off, worldwide, 30(1):1
fear: Peter walking on water, 30(4):10
finding, on earth, 7:7,8
gifts of God, 10:6
God dwelling in the heart, 9:12
God’s forgiveness and, 31(2):7,8
good actions before, 31(2):8
good works and, 31(2):4,6,7,8
heart and, 22:4
Holy Spirit and, 32(1):6
intention directed by, 31(2):4
joy in God’s protection, 26(1):5,6
justification and, 19:9; 31(2):2,6
merit and, 32(1):4
my light and my salvation, 26(2):4
perseverance, 7:7
possibility of, 18(1):3
righteousness and, 31(2):2,3,24
rooted in history, 8:8
rule of, 9:6
sacraments, 9:14
sacrifice of Abraham, 31(2):3
things beyond experience, 8:6
understanding and believing (Isaiah), 8:6
unity and truth, 26(1):4
value of works done in, 32(1):4
weakening of, 7:7
When Son of Man comes, 31(2):11
whole world, 26(2):13
will to love and, 31(2):5,6
works by choosing to love, 17:25;
31(2):5; 32(2):9
works done in, 32(3):2
false allegations, 26(1):12
falsehood, 4:8; 24:5; 25(2):1,3
See also lie
love of, 4:4
repayment for, 27:4
temporal world, 18(1):6
fame, 9:24
famine, 32(1):19; 32(3):2
present life as, 32(3):25
free will and, 31(2):16
stars and, 31(2):16
favoritism, 32(2):12
30(1):8,9,12,13,23; 30(3):6,7
abiding for ever in love, 18(1):10
beginning of wisdom, 24:12
being beside oneself, 30(2):2
Christians and, 18(2):14
death and, 22:4
devil and, 30(2):10
eccasy of, 30(2):3
Holy Spirit, 18(2):10
inner dread, 30(4):10
judgment day, 6:8
loss of temporal goods, 13:6
love and, as motive, 32(2):6
obedience and, 32(2):6
perfection casts out, 5:17
Peter walking on water, 30(4):10
purity and, 18(1):10
reverent, 32(3):11
security of heart, 26(2):6
snare, 31(2):21
suffering and, 30(2):3
terror and, 30(2):10
beginning of wisdom, 14:4
every region of the earth, 32(3):12
God’s elective love, 32(1):18
humiliation, 30(4):12
inheritance, 24:13
nothing else, 32(3):10
presence of the Church, 21(2):24
pure, not servile, 18(2):10
salvation and, 5:9
strong divine support, 24:14
sweetness, 30(1):20; 30(4):6
feet, 17:34
guided into open spaces, 30(2):15;
30(3):1,2
fidelity: becoming a faithful person, 32(2):9
fig tree: no fruit on, 31(2):9
finished (the word), 31(2):5
fire, 6:3; 17:3; 18(1):11; 20:10; 21(1):15;
29(2):10
come to set fire on the earth, 25(2):7
Holy Spirit, 18(2):7
purging, 25(1):3; 25(2):7
saved by, 29(2):9
silver tried by, 11:7
testing the heart, 16:3
trials, 21(2):5
firmament, 18(2):3
tells works of God’s hands, 18(2):3

Value III/15
the word, 32(3):7
first robe, 29(1):12
fish:
  both good and bad in nets, 8:13  
  numerous; weighing down the boats, 
  30(2):10
fishermen: catch bursting the nets, 30(3):2
flattery, 13:4; 24:3
bribe, 25(2):13
lie, 5:12
flesh, 17:20,37,40,47; 18(2):4; 26(2):21; 
  31(2):9; 32(1):16; 32(2):4
  carnal sensibilities, 26(2):4
  corruptible, 29(1):4
  delight; weakness, 6:7
  devil and, 12:3-5
  eternal life, 29(2):19
  giving in to, 7:9
  grass, 30(2):12
  hope, 15:9
  indulgence, 8:13
  law of sin, 6:7
  parents, 26(2):18
  pleasure, 8:13
  salvation of all flesh, 29(2):1
  sorrows of, 17:5
flight, 3:1
flood(-s), 28:10
  keep us from God, 31(2):18
flood-waters, 31(2):18,19
food, 30(3):12
  adult, 22:5
foot:
  distinguishing, 10:10
  foot, 25(1):5; 25(2):9
footprints, 17:37
forbearance, 7:3
forbidden tree, 9:14
forgiveness:
  Christ as example of, 7:3
  prayer for, 18(2):13
  forgiveness of sin, 24:10,11,18; 29(2):22;
    31(2):7,8,10,21; 32(1):5
  confession needed, 7:19
  glory of God proclaimed in, 18(2):2
  God forgives before confession is out, 
    31(2):15
  grace and, 31(1):1-2
  mercy, 32(2):11
  praying for, 31(2):17
  preached in name of Christ, 32(3):7
  secret sins, 18(2):1
  forgotten, 30(1):13
  fornication, 18(1):10
  fortitude, 11:7; 30(1):4
  foundation, 29(2):10
  dedication of, 29(2):11
  four (number): human body, 6:2
free will, See will.
freedom, 30(1):8
  real enemy, 30(2):14
  spacious, 4:2
friend: life given for, 19:5
fruit, 20:11; 30(3):6
fruit-bearing, 8:3
winepress, 8:1
fury: anger and, 6:3
future goods: eye has not seen…, 9:14
future life:
  doubts or despair, 4:8
  names in scripture, 30(4):8
games, 30(2):6
gates: everlasting, 23:7,9
gem, 18(1):11; 18(2):11
gender: male and female in word ‘man’, 
  26(2):23
generation, 7:9
  human and divine, 9:24
gentiles, 7:1-6; 9:1;13:3,8; 17:13,17,45, 50; 
  49:5; 30(3):5; 30(4):9; 32(3):3
  mortality, 21(1):28
gentle ones, 31(2):23
gift(-s):
  demon worship and, 26(2):19
  faith and, 10:6
  mark of God’s mercy, 32(2):11
  offer refused, 32(3):2
  spiritual, not taken away, 26(2):5
  temporal, taken away, 26(2):5
  thank God for, 31(2):10
  to those who ask, 9:14
  varied, in members of Christ’s body, 
    32(3):21
grim, 32(1):16; 32(3):23
hidden, 7:3
hidden tree, 9:14
Holi:
  admiring, 5:17
  enmity and, 5:17
  fear and, 5:17
  force and, 5:17
  God and, 5:17
  hate and, 5:17
  hearer and, 5:17
  image of, 5:17
  love and, 5:17
  misbelief and, 5:17
  mystery and, 5:17
  name and, 5:17
  purpose and, 5:17
  reason and, 5:17
  sayings and, 5:17
  teaching and, 5:17
  thought and, 5:17
  wisdom and, 5:17
  word and, 5:17
gladness: singing, 32(2):8
glory, 1:1; 7:4; 8:8; 9:29; 15:5,10; 17:4; 19:8; 
  22:2; 29(1):12; 30(3):1
  Church as dwelling place, 25(1):8
  confessing God’s name, 19:6
  God indwelling, 5:17
  God’s dwelling place, 25(2):12
  Head of the body, 30(1):6
  heavens; saints, 18(2):2
  need of, 30(2):6
  resurrection, 20:6
  revealed in Christ, 16:14
  singing, 29(2):22
  suffering, 31(2):25
  to God’s name, 18(2):2
  work of God’s hands, 18(2):3
gluttony, 10:10; 13:4
  goats, 8:13; 9:9; 29(2):21
God:
  almighty, 32(2):2
  always before my eyes, 15:8
  anger and long-suffering, 7:12
  anger, 2:4,10,11; 6:3; 9:22,30; 26(2):19
loving wrongfully, 26(2):7
praying for, 7:5
turning his face away, 26(1):9
anthropomorphisms, 9:33
arrows of divine love, 7:14
beauty of wisdom, 32(2):7
being of, 18(2):3
better than the soul, 32(3):16
blessing, in the churches, 25(2):14
cannot be defeated, 26(2):5
cannot deny himself, 32(2):9
carious or beating, 32(2):3
charged with injustice, 31(2):25
corr tube for human affairs, 9:29
contemplation, See contemplation.
declaration against, 31(2):16
denying, 13:2
devil’s power and, 26(2):5
divine plans; enduring from age to age, 32(3):14
hearing, 16:9
I AM WHO I AM, 1:6; 9:11
impure souls and knowledge of, 12:1
incomprehensible to human thought, 17:11
indwelling, 17:7
inheritance, 32(2):3
invoking, 30(4):4
judge seated on throne, 9:6
judgments, 9:23; 18(2):11
just teacher, 24:9
justice, 7:12; 10:11; 19:9; 30(2):6
confession of, 7:19
ignorance of, 30(2):6
knowledge, 31(2):25
and being, 1:6
of individual actions, 32(3):19,22
knowledge of
hope and, 9:11
liberator, 30(2):6
light of, 4:8; 17:29; 26(2):15
longing for vision of, 26(1):4
lordship now and hereafter, 27:9
magnificence, 8:8
manifold mercy, 32(2):5
mercy, 8:10; 24:8; 32(1):5
mercy and judgment, 24:10; 31(2):1,11; 32(3):2
mercy now and for ever, 22:6
mighty in battle, 23:8
mother nourishes us, 26(2):18
name:
joy in, 19:8
knowledge of, 9:11
poured out like ointment, 30(4):9
nature: non-existence and, 9:11
not the same to everyone, 32(3):17
omnipresence, 30(2):8; 32(2):5
opposition to, 32(2):1
our inheritance and our possession, 32(3):17
our mother, 30(2):9
plea heard, 16:6
pleasing to oneself, 32(2):1
pleasure in, 32(2):6
power(s) of, 9:7,29,32
praise and thanksgiving to, 17:48
presence of, 5:2; 8:10
protector, 26(1):5; 27:8; 30(1):3,5; 30(2):8
pure way to, 17:31
refuge for the poor, 9:10
remembering, 9:13
reserving himself for us, 32(3):16
secret plans, 7:5
seeing face-to-face, 15:10

Volue III/15
Volume III/15

seeking the face of, 23:6
seen with a pure heart, 5:5; 26(2):15
sees into secrets, 9:29
shame, and trust in, 30(2):6
shut out of heart, 30(4):12
simplicity, 18(2):3
source of all that is good, 29(1):12
speaking, 9:33
speaks from heart of the Just One, 17:14
spiritual rebellion against, 18(2):15
steadfast love and truth, 24:10
strength and beauty from, 29(2):18
sweetness of, 30(4):7
temple of the Lord, 10:7
tests for love of, 5:4
things, which hinder seeing, 5:17
thoughts about, 30(2):6,7
thoughts of his heart, 32(3):14
trusting in God in, 20:8
turning away his face in anger, 26(2):16
utterances tried in fire, 17:31
weight of God's hand, 31(2):14
willing subjection to, 9:11
wisdom: hidden things, 9:2,3
works, visible and invisible, 9:2

goodness:
born again, 4:8
delight in, 26(2):8
delight in the good, 4:8
goods:
temporal, seen; eternal, not seen, 9:14
grain, 8:1
grape: metaphor, 8:1,2,13
grapeskins, 8:2,13
gratitude, 30(2):2
honor and, 30(2):9
sip of wine, 8:1
gold, 18(2):7,11; 21(2):5; 32(3):16
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10
grace and guilt: My grace is sufficient…, 31(2):10

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
gaping throat, 13:4
love of the world, 31(2):5
temptation, 30(2):10
grief, 9:25; 12:2; 26(2):1
guardian: Samaritan (the word), 30(2):8
guidance:
path of righteousness, 22:3
staff, 22:5
guile, 32(3):2
consciousness of, 31(1):3-4
desire and, 29(2):6
law and, 30(2);6; 31(2):17
habit:
overcoming bad habits, 30(2):13
sinner and blindness, 5:6
hair-shirt, 29(2):21
hairstyle, 32(2):7
hands:
embracing truths, 25(1):6
eternal power, 16:13
hand-washing, 25(2):10
behavior and unhappiness, 30(2):13
desire something better than self, 32(3):16
desired by all, 32(3):15
first robe, 29(1):12
having (or not having) what is loved, 26(2):17
home in heavenly city, 32(1):12
justice and, 32(3):15
material things and, 32(3):16
possessing God, 32(3):18
possessing/being possessed; God, 32(3):15
seek in your own soul, 32(3):16
submission to God, 32(1):11
worldly: false, 30(1):7
harm:
charity and, 31(2):5
ever person has to do, 29(2):6
malice, 32(3):12
harmlessness, 7:8
harp, 12:6
harvest: great: workers few, 11:6
haste: prayer for, 30(2):8
hate, 17:41; 24:19; 25(2):3; 30(4):2; 32(3):12
anger and, 30(3):4
darkness, 7:19
hay, 29(2):9
head: pre-eminence over other members, 29(2):2
healing, 6:4; 29(1):3-4; 30(2):8; 31(2):12,13
Christ prays for, in our name, 29(2):12
illness leading to, 15:4
health, 1:6; 6:4; 7:10; 32(2):5; 32(3):21
fear of death and, 6:3
keeping the commandments, 18(2):12
hearing:
presence of God, 5:2
understanding, 25(2):11
heart, 4:4; 10:12; 16:2,14; 18(1):11; 20:14;
32(2):4; 32(3):27
affections of, 9:17
agreement of, 24:21
always in God’s sight, 18(1):15
aspirations in, 16:10
believing in, 26(1):5
bitterness, 32(3):10
broadening, 4:6
bruised, 31(2):11
circumcision, 6:2
clean of, and seeing God, 26(2):15
confession heard, 31(1):5
contrition, 28:5
court of the Lord, 28:2
crooked and twisted, 31(2):25
crying to God in, 30(4):10
delight in, 7:11; 32(2):6
denying God, 13:2
desire, 19:5
empty, 5:11,12
enlarged, 26(2):8
enlargement: God poured into heart, 4:2
enlivened by fire of love, 17:13
evil master, 18(2):14
evil thoughts, 18(2):13
eyes of, 12:3-5
eyes of, seeking God’s face, 26(2):15,16
faith in God indwelling, 9:12
fear, 26(1):3; 26(2):5
firmness of, 18(2):3
flee to God in, 30(4):8
forgotten in, 30(1):13
fruitful, 10:10
full of riches, 21(2):27
gaining insight in seeing, 30(2):13
God and preparation of, 9:33
God enlarges, 4:2
God hears voice of, 31(2):15
God lives in, 17:7
God saves the upright, 7:11
God speaks to, 26(2):15
guileless, 31(2):9
heavy-hearted, 4:3
hiding hope in, 30(4):7
holiness, 10:5
home for God, 30(4):8
impiety forgiven, 31(2):15,16
individually fashioned, 32(1):15; 32(3):21
inner cry of, 5:2

Value III/15
inner riches, 30(4):12
inner sight, 18(2):9
intentions: good or evil, 8:1
invoking God into, 30(4):4
inward parts, 7:9
judgment, 9:9
learn of me..., 13:4
life of faith, 22:4
like melting wax, 21(1):15; 21(2):15
meditation of, 18(2):16
prayer from, 4:5,6
praying silently in, 3:4
praying within, 4:8
pure heart sees God, 5:5; 23:4
purging fire, 25(1):3; 25(2):7
purity of, 17:21
right of, 32(2):2
righteousness of, 31(1):11; 31(2):25
seeing of, 26(1):14
simplicity, 4:9
singing in, 12:6
song of the, 32(2):8
speaking evil in, 27:3
speaking truth in, 14:3
storm; Christ asleep in, 25(2):4
strengthened, 30(2):1; 30(4):13
sudden enlarging, 4:2
taste for good things, 30(4):6
testing by night and fire, 16:3
thoughts of God’s, 32(3):14
tribulations, 24:17
widened and sanctified, 28:2
will not fear, 26(2):5
will of God in, 32(2):4
heaven, 9:9; 25; 10:12; 19:9; 23:7,9; 31(2):7,21
Church strains towards, 29(2):10
entering, 18(2):5
envy of devils, 30(4):2
eternally living, 30(2):13
fear of loss, 13:6
firmament, 18(2):3
for ever with our Head, 26(2):11
interpretations, 18(2):4
love for kingdom of, 7:14
reigning with Christ, 21(2):31
reward, 26(1):12
tent-living as preparation for, 30(4):8
treasure of the heart, 7:9; 32(3):11
wish to reach without dying, 30(2):13
word understood as just person, 10:7
heavens (sky, stars, etc.), 18(1):2
established by word of God, 32(3):4,5,8
highest; unknowable, 32(3):6
metaphor for both Testaments, 8:7
proclaim glory of God, 18(2):5
righteous represented by, 32(1):6
rolled up like scroll, 8:7
saints, 18(2):3
scriptures, 8:9
tell out the glory of God, 32(3):20
understood as books, 8:8
weak humans become, 32(3):8
work of God, 8:7,8; 18(2):3
heavy-hearted, 4:8
hell, 15:10; 17:6; 30(4):4
fear of, 32(2):6
punishments in, 6:6
punishments: bellies of cattle, 8:1
help: prayer for, 21(2):20-22
heresy, 24:16; 29(2):2; 30(3):8; 30(4):8
heretics, 10:4; 18(2):5,6,12; 21(2):24,29; 31(2):11
common aspects of, 10:6
confess Christ, 18(2):11
enemies of faith, 8:6
enemy-cum-defender, 8:6
false prophets, 7:7
God and the poor, 10:8
persecutions, 9:27
providence and, 9:20
hidden things, 8:6; 9:2,3,4,9,35; 14:35; 18(1):8
hiding, 30(4):8,10,12
high priest, 26(2):10
history, 8:5,8
holiness, 10:5; 17:26; 29(1):5
awe, 2:9
confession of impiety, 31(1):6
nowhere to be found, 11:2
holocaust, 19:4
holy souls, 8:13
altogether (the word), 18(2):10
apostles and, 9:7
Christ glorified, 7:6
converts the soul, 18(2):8
disciples filled with, 8:3; 30(4):9
faith stabilized by, 32(1):6
fear granted by, 18(2):10
finger of God, 8:7
gifts received from, 28:9
godhead, 5:3
mind consumed by, 4:7
purging fire, 25(2):7
scriptures and, 8:8
sending of, 18(2):7
speaking in tongues, 18(2):10; 30(3):14
tongues like fire, 18(2):7
trust in, 18(1):2
work one with that of the Son, 32(3):5
home: tent and, 26(2):6; 30(4):8
honesty: accomplice to dishonesty, 32(2):12

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
honeycomb, 18(1):11
backward to faith; forward to charity, 31(2):5
Church in stormy seas, 9:29
conscience and, 31(2):5
devil and, 3:10
do not hide your hope, 30(4):7
eternal things, 19:8
fear and, 30(2):3
good things as object of, 4:8
good works, 31(2):6
human, 30(3):12
humanity of Christ and, 3:10
morning, 29(2):16
patience, 4:2
salvation, 9:15
security of heart, 26(2):6
sinner and, 26(2):10
siners, 24:6
sweetness, 32(1):17
temporal goods, 17:8
that which is seen, 5:4
this world, 30(4):12
horn of salvation, 17:2
horse, 31(1):9; 31(2):22,23
breaking in, 31(2):23
salvation and, 32(1):17; 32(3):24
worldly distinction (figure), 32(3):24
house:
component parts, 29(2):10
dedication of, 29(2):6,8,9
desire to dwell in, all days of life, 26(2):8
dwelling in God's house for ever, 26(2):17
dwelling, 26(2):8
living for ever in house of the Lord, 26(3):4; 26(2):8
name-plate, 21(2):31
human acts:
God's knowledge of, 32(3):19
human being(s):
body and soul, 29(2):2
called oxen, 8:12
God's temple, 5:8
hope in, 10:5; 30(3):12
image of earthly man, 8:10
image of God, 29(2):2; 32(2):4
made by word of God, 18(2):3
one with Son of Man, 32(3):19
persons as gold, 18(1):11
trust in, 25(2):12
human body:
become better by the soul, 32(3):16
living sacrifice, 32(1):2
members individually formed, 32(3):21
movements of, 32(3):22
number four; qualities, 6:2
organs do different jobs, 32(3):21
parts attributed to God, 9:33
sown as animal; risen as spiritual, 26(2):4
human condition, 25(2):2; 26(2):1
constraints; limitations, 30(2):13
plenty, 29(2):17
temptations, 29(2):8
weak become strong, 32(3):8
human race:
churches and, 8:5
fallen, 26(2):8
humankind:
noblest work of God, 18(2):3
old and new, 8:10
vaunting itself, 9:34
humiliation, 31(2):25
Christ came because of pride, 18(2):15
giving humility, 31(2):14
gives pleasure in secret, 18(2):16
grace to the humble, 18(1):8
horns of unicorns and, 21(2):22
judge for the humble, 9:34
no one who exalts himself... 31(2):11
rich people, 21(1):30
hunger, 32(3):27
Hushai (friend of King David), 7:1,3
hymn: highest heavens, 32(3):6
hypocrites, 11:5
idols, 30(1):18
ignorance, 24:7
denying God, 13:2
hearts of others, 30(2):13
image of God, 32(2):4
degrading, 29(2):2
elements of, 29(2):2
mercy of God and, 32(2):11
soul as, 32(3):16
Word of God and, 32(3):16
imitation, 30(3):12
imitation of Christ, 21(1):30
poor people, 21(2):27
immortality, 4:9; 26(1):4; 27:6-7,8; 29(1):1; 30(2):10
Church, 23:2
earthly satisfactions, 26(2):16
temporal goods and, 23:4
impious, 9:8; 20:10; 31(2):9,17,25
confessed, 31(1):6
heart, 31(2):16
impious person, 31(2):6,24

Volue III/15
Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
figures of: David and Abessalon, 3:1
glorification, 4:4; 7:6; 8:11; 23:1,8
Godhead, 29(2):2
guardian, 30(2):8
Head and body, 17:51; 18(2):10
Head raised above our enemies, 26(2):11
heart: wisdom in scriptures, 21(2):15
hunger and thirst, 29(2):3
integrity of his nature, 29(2):2
like a lens, 16:8
weakness, 29(2):4
will, 32(2):2
humiliation and exaltation, 7:6; 8:11; 21(1):7
hunger, 9:1; 20:8; 31(2):18; 29(2):7
I am the vine…, 32(3):18
I am the way…, 31(2):18
I was hungry…, 29(2):22; 32(2):11
inheritance, 15:5,6
intercedes for us, 21(2):3; 23:9
Jerusalem, 30(4):9
Judas and, 3:1
judge of his enemies, 20:9
king, 15:1; 21(1):29; 21(2):30; 32(2):1
king and priest prefigured, 26(2):2
king of all powers, 23:10
knowledge of glory, 23:10
knowledge of day of judgment, 6:1
law: way, truth, and life, 26(2):20
light and salvation, 26(2):3
Lord-Man, 11:4; 23:7
lost sheep and, 8:12
love for: cling to Christ, 30(2):10
love surpassing all knowledge, 8:5
made himself as staff for us, 32(3):17
magnificence, 8:4
mediator between Father and humankind, 29(2):1
mediator, 27(1):30(1):2
message to apostles, 18(2):4
miracles; disbelief, 27:1
mountain, 3:4; 10:1
mountain-like greatness of love, 14:1
name acknowledged among the nations, 2:3
name of, 6:12
name: wonderful in whole earth, 8:4,13
nativities: born without intercourse, 21(2):7
nativities: star, 18(2):2
noble birth and humility, 28:6
non-recognition as punishment, 27:5
not what I will…, 31(2):26
obedience, 20:8
obedient unto death, 31(2):18
our anger and, 25(2):3
our foundation, 29(2):9
passion and death:
abandonment, 21(1):2
annual commemoration of, 21(2):1
believers and mockers, 21(2):1
excellence of the Word of God, 3:3
expedient that one should die, 20:12
Father, if it is possible…, 31(2):26
fear and, 30(2):3
fruit of the, 21(2):23
garments as his sacraments, 21(2):19
garments divided, 21(2):19
gloating of his enemies, 29(2):4
hanging on the cross, 21(1):1
hostility to, 21(2):8
humiliation, 8:11; 21(2):8
Into your hands…, 30(2):11
Jews and, 10:12
let this cup pass from me…, 21(2):4
mockery, 21(1):8-9; 21(2):9
psalm 21, 21(2):2
saddened by, 31(2):26
scorned before; honored after, 21(2):16
sorrowful to point of death, 30(2):3
stabbed on the cross, 29(2):22
they numbered all my bones, 21(2):18; 30(2):11
weakness, 29(2):4
why have you forsaken me…, 21(1):2;
21(2):3,8; 30(2):11
wickedness, 7:9
willing sleep of death, 3:5
Passover celebrated annually, 21(2):1
patience, 3:1; 7:12
pity on his people, 11:6
possessions held in common with, 21(2):31
power, 9:32
prays for his creatures, 19(7):29(2):4
prays for our healing, 29(2):12
preachers as tongue of, 21(2):16
presence of our Head with us, 26(2):11
priest and sacrifice, 26(2):2
priesthood: established in heaven, 19:10
prophecy: Abraham’s sacrifice, 30(3):9
prophet addresses, 19:1
raging against, 2:1
ram as symbol of, 30(3):9

Volue III/15
rebuked by the heathen, 9:7
reconciling world to himself, 9:6
redemption, See redemption.
relief of the destitute, 11:6
resurrection body, 32(3):7
Christ intercedes for us, 29(2):1
flesh healed by, 29(2):12
Handle me and see…, 29(2):3
Head and members, 29(2):14
human Christ and prospect of, 30(2):3
morning, 29(2):16
prayer for, 20:5; 29(1):9-10
rejoicing and gladness, 29(1):6
resurrected body, 32(3):7
Thomas and, 21(2):17
returning on high, 7:7,8
revelation in glory, 16:14
righteousness, 25(2):3; 30(4):5
run to, to evade God, 30(2):8
sacrifice, 2:7; 19:10
salvation, 9:15
scorn for, 30(1):19
scorned (Head and members), 30(4):5
separation from love of, 23:10
shepherd, 22:1-2
silence of, 7:1
sinlessness, 18(1):8; 29(2):1; 30(2):6
son of man, 9:35
speaking in the psalms, 30(2):11
speaking within Paul, 4:8
speaks in person of the Church, 24:1-3
spiritual understanding of, 12:1
spiritual way, 1:1
stone rejected by the builders…, 30(2):10
strength, 20:14
suffering of, 21(2):8,28,29; 30(4):12
taunted, 30(4):7
teaches how to live, 32(2):2
temporal riches renounced by, 30(4):5
temptation of, 8:13; 9:4; 23:10; 30(2):10
testimonies of prophets and evangelists,
24:10
to the end…, 30(2):1
tunic woven from the top…, 21(2):19;
30(3):13
two comings of, 9:1
united to eternal Word, 27:2
voice cuts through frenzy of the people,
28:7
voice has splendid results, 28:4
voice humbles the proud, 28:5
weakness of others carried by, 31(2):26
who is my mother…, 9:31
whole, See Mystical Body
wicked attack on, 16:9-12
will give knowledge of himself, 26(1):1
wills what Father wills, 32(2):2
without me you can do nothing…, 30(2):4
woman and the ointment, 21(2):2
word in desert of the world, 28:8
you would have no power over me…,
32(3):12
Jews, 8:2; 13:8; 17:48,49; 29(2):11; 30(4):9;
crucifixion of Christ and, 21(2):1
king sought by, 17:1
passion of Christ and, 10:12
perfect justice, 30(2):6
righteousness, 30(2):13
second coming and, 9:1
sons of men, 13:3
temporal goods, 19:9
Job, 12:3-5
devil and, 21(2):5,8; 32(3):12
devil given power to test, 29(2):7
humiliation, 30(4):12
inner richness, 30(4):12
tested, 29(2):6
type of Christ, 29(2):8
wife of, 30(4):12
John, Apostle, 21(2):27
John the Baptist, Saint, 7:8; 29(2):2
joking: as lie, 5:7
journey, 16:5
free will and, 26(2):17
spiritual, 5:11
joy, 6:11; 7:9,11,19; 17:37; 18(1):6,12;
31(1):7,11; 31(2):19,20,24,26;
confess praise to God, 29(2):19
contemplation, 26(2):8,9
dance and, 32(2):1,2
eternal, 26(2):7
faith in God’s protection, 26(1):5,6
fear and, 32(3):11
future rejoicing, 9:3
glory of God, 5:16; 30(1):6
good and bad rejoicing, 19:8
heart, 18(1):9
inexpressible, 26(2):13
inner source, 30(4):12
meaning of “by day”, 1:2
mercy and, 5:8
morning, 29(2):16
present, 26(2):14
rejoicing in suffering, 4:2
resurrection of Christ, 29(1):6
sacrifice of, 26(1):6; 26(2):12
sadness turned to, 29(1):12
seeing face of God, 15:10
shout of, 32(2):8
silence and, 26(2):12

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
song, 4:1
sought within, 4:8
jubilation: singing to God, 32(2):8
Judas, 25(2):13; 30(3):13
Abessalon and, 7:1
betrayal by, 3:2
foreshadowed by Abessalon, 3:1
night speaking to night, 18(2):4
received eucharist, 10:6
wisdom deserted mind of, 3:1
woman and the ointment, 21(2):2
Judea, 17:13; 30(4):9
judge:
  bribing, 25(2):13
  keeping God in mind, 25(2):13
  seated: three possible interpretations, 9:6
  judgment(s; judgment day), 6:10; ); 9:1; 13:5;
  16:2; 20:9; 25(1):2
  anger, 6:8
  contravention of truth, 25(2):13
  darkness; fear, 6:8
  delayed, 9:20
  divine, 16:8
  double-edged sword, 7:13
  dread of, 29(1):12
  earth; spiritual persons, 2:8
  eighth day, 6:2; 11:1
  entrusted to the Son, 7:8
  final; preparation, 9:2
  goats separated from sheep, 30(2):5
  God does not err, 25(2):12
  God judges in tranquillity, 6:3
  God loves, 32(1):5; 32(3):2
  God’s gift of righteousness, 7:8
  God’s sweet judgment, 18(1):11
  good separated from wicked, 25(2):6
  hidden and open, 9:1
  I was hungry …, 32(2):11
  justice and equity, 9:9
  life is short, 6:13
  love and long for, 18(1):11
  making God’s our own, 9:5
  martyrs and, 9:13
  mercy and, 32(2):10:11
  nations in God’s sight, 9:19
  no one knows…, 6:1
  proper recompense for each, 29(2):8
  repaying evil for evil, 7:8
  rich claimant, 32(2):12
  seat prepared, 9:9
  second coming of Christ, 6:1; 24:10
  secret; here and now, 9:1
  sword brandished openly, 9:8
  thief in the night, 6:1
  two hinted at in scripture, 9:1
  unfair, 32(2):12
  ungodly, 1:5
  unity and, 18(2):10
  unjust; taking bribes, 25(2):13

word that I have spoken…, 32(3):2
Juno, 26(2):19
just: constancy, 29(2):8
justice, 2:10; 3:4; 9:8; 16:14; 17:9; 32(2):4
anger and, 2:4
conniving with injustice, 32(2):12
God cannot act unjustly, 31(2):25
good and bad people, 25(2):4
happiness and, 32(3):15
judgment and, 9:9
let the unjust be confounded, 24:4
perfect; Jews, 30(2):6
plural usage, 10:11
repaying evil by, 5:10
sacrifice of, 4:7
would-be kindness to a poor person, 32(2):12
justification, 5:17; 7:5; 9:7
Abraham and faith, 31(2):5
Christ’s blood, 18(2):2
confessing faith, 30(4):7
faith, 19:9
God’s work, 30(2):6
good works and, 31(2):2,3,8
Kadesh, 28:8
killing, 9:26
kindness, 5:17
kindness: punishment and, 18(2):2
king(-s), 9:23
  anointed, 26(2):2
  faith of, 32(3):13
  humble, 20:8
  power, 32(3):23
  understanding of, 2:9
kingdom of God: within, 4:9
knock, 9:14
  expedient, 6:1
  God tests to make us know, 6:1
  promise of, 8:6
  sorrow and, 29(2):8
  zeal and, 30(2):6
lamentation, 29(2):16
lamp, 7:8; 17:29
land of the living, 26(1):13; 26(2):22
languages:
  all people in unity, 18(2):10
  apostles heard in all, 32(3):7
last judgment, See judgment.
law, 17:46; 24:12; 31(2):23
blessing and commandment, 26(2):20
charity as fullness of, 31(2):5
Christ the end of, 13:1
daring request, 26(2):20
discerned or imposed, 1:2
freedom from guilt, 30(2):6
love as fulfillment of, 17:11

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

Volue III/15
members and mind in conflict, 30(2):6,13
mercy and Christ, 26(2):20
mind and flesh, 6:7
of God: of sin, 4:6
oppressed by, 31(2):17
righteousness, 31(2):1
ritual observances, 6:2
sin; rebellion, 26(1):6
suit, 25(2):13
unhappiness, 26(2):7
mercy and Christ, 26(2):20
mind and flesh, 6:7
of sin; rebellion, 26(1):6
way to God, 26(1):11
world history, 29(2):16
written by finger of God, 8:7
La
z
arus: and Dives, 6:6
Paul’s conversion and, 9:2
leaves, 1:3; 31(2):9
left hand, 19:7
Levites, 15:6
liberty, 30(1):9
lie (lies; lying), 25(2):2; 26(1):12,13;
32(3):24
concealing the truth, 5:7
destructive, 5:7
duplicity of heart, 5:7
estranged sons, 17:46
fear of dying and, 30(2):12
flattering, 5:12
helpfulness as motive, 5:7
motivation, 5:7
nonbeing, 5:7
silence about the truth, 5:7
types with no great blame, 5:7
life, 17:15
given for friend, 19:5
given to us sinners, 29(2):15
long, 30(2):8
shortness of, 6:13
sweetness of, 9:20
temporal, preservation, 5:7
will of God, 29(2):15
light, 7:8; 8:10; 9:3; 20; 16:8; 25(2):14
See also enlightenment
countenance of God, 4:8
creation of, 7:19
discernment, 30(4):3
humankind, 29(2):1
mind and truth, 5:6
moon and Church, 10:3
withdrawn, 29(1):8
lightning, 17:13
lion, 16:11; 21(1):22; 21(2):14
death, 21(2):22
violence and deceit, 9:27
lips, 11:4; 30(4):5
listening: words of God; hard work, 32(3):1
living bread, 4:9
long-suffering, 9:18
Lord’s Prayer:
Deliver us from evil, 26(2):10
thy kingdom come, 7:8
lots: casting, 30(1):16; 30(3):13
lottery, 30(3):13
love, 3:7; 6:9; 17:33,37; 18(1):9; 23:9; 24:17;
25(1):11-12; 26(1):9
See also charity
actions prompted by, 31(2):5
beginning to do good, 31(2):9
burning with, 26(2):7
care for what you choose to love,
31(2):5,6
choose the Lord for, 30(4):11
duty to love a bad person, 30(4):2
emptiness and falsehood, 4:4
empty pleasure, 9:15
faith and the will, 31(2):5
faith and works, 32(2):9
faith works through, 17:25
faree, 30(4):11
fear and separation, 18(2):10
fear and, as motive, 32(2):6
fear that abides for ever, 18(1):10
foot of the soul, 9:15
for good things alone, 4:8
fraternal, 18(2):6
fruitful delight, 9:15
goods worthy of, 4:8
greatness of Christ’s love, 14:1
grown cold, 30(3):2
heart brought to life by, 17:13
longing, 32(3):17
means of coming to God, 17:11
obedience and, 32(2):6
object God wants us to love, 26(2):7
object worthy of, 26(2):7
perfect, 17:34
perfecting of Church’s love, 16:5
praiseworthy, 32(2):6
progress in love of God, 5:4
repentance and, 17:9
rightly ordered, 9:15
root, 9:15
safety: remains whole, 21(2):19
seeking God’s face, 26(1):8; 26(2):16
separation from love of Christ, 23:10
tested, 5:4
things unworthy of, 30(4):11
things we work for, 7:16
threefold way, 6:2
trust, 32(3):28
Turn away from evil…, 31(2):6
two commandments, 32(2):6
unhappiness, 26(2):7
unity, 18(2):13
unwilling to serve God, 18(2):15
whole body builds itself up, 10:7
willing service, 32(1):2
worldliness, 8:1
wrong; God refuses to give, 26(2):7
lovers, 26(2):8
delivered to, 26(2):7
for power, 30(3):14
love of the world, 31(2):5
submitting to, 30(2):14
luxuries, 9:14; 29(2):13
lying, See lie (lying).
lying down, 5:5
lyre: description, 32(2):5
Macarian era, 10:5
Macarius, 10:5,6
magic, 9:24
magicians, 30(4):12
malice, 17:10
desire to do harm, 32(3):12
misery and, 32(3):15
man:
biblical: man and son of man, 8:10
earthly, 8:10
man (term): both genders in, 26(2):23
manful action, 30(4):13
marriage, 32(3):29
two in one flesh, 30(2):4
Mars, 31(2):16
martyrs, 3:9
crowned in secret, 29(2):6
death likened to eclipse, 10:4
done to death all the day long, 9:13
carly Church, 10:4
gloating over, 29(2):5
handed over to persecutors, 26(2):21
judgment day, 9:13
love as motive, 32(2):6
memorials of, 32(3):9
worth proved, 29(2):9
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Word of God in womb of, 21(2):10-11
material things: happiness and, 32(3):16
materially-minded, 32(3):29
Matthew, Apostle, 21(2):27; 30(3):13
Maximianists, 21(2):31
medicine: two functions, 7:10
meditation, 18(1):15
meech: God as teacher, 24:9
memory:
mind’s “stomach,” 30(1):10
winepress, 8:2
mercy, 5:17; 6:7; 7:8,10; 12:6; 17:21,43,51;
18(2):2; 21(2):5; 23:5; 24:5,6;
25(1):2,3,11; 25(2):5,8; 26(2):14;
30(1):8,10,22; 30(2):7,16; 30(4):9,10;
31(1):10; 31(2):9,16,18,23; 32(1):14;
32(3):2,19,24,28,29
Blessed are the merciful…, 32(2):11
Church’s joy in receiving, 5:8
divine, 16:6-7
earth is full of…, 32(3):3,4,7,8
fear and, 30(2):3
God and my day of troubles, 26(2):10
God and the brokenhearted, 6:10
God remembers man, 8:10
grace and, 31(2):1
inner cry, 26(1):7
judgment and, 32(2):10,11
law and Christ, 26(2):20
motherly, 30(2):9
now and for ever, 22:6
present time as season of, 32(2):10
presumption and, 31(2):1
sin and, 24:11
sins forgiven, 32(3):7
taking counsel, 12:2
trust in, 32(1):18,22
30(3):13; 31(2):9,10,22
faith and, 32(1):4
grace and, 24:8; 30(2):6; 31(2):1
holliness of saints, 31(1):6
judging, 24:10
judgment day, 6:2
mercy and, 25(1):3
shouting about, 31(2):13
unworthiness, 18(2):3
Mesopotamia, 10:5
message: day to succeeding day, 18(2):4
Messiah: human being expected, 9:35
milk, 8:10; 22:5; 30(3):12
nursing mother, 30(2):9
solid food and, 8:5,10
milksop, 30(3):12
mind, 3:3; 9:29; 26(2):21
blindness, 6:8
escape (usage), 3:1
habit of, 8:2
Holy Spirit and, 4:7
law of God, 6:7
law of sin and, 4,6
light of truth and, 5:6
light seen with, 4:8
love as its place, 6:9
obedient to law of God, 26(1):6
three (number), 6:2
miracles, 17:15; 30(3):14
mirror, 10:11; 11:2
miser: invoking God, 30(4):4
miseries, 4:9; 32(3):4,15
misfortune, 31(2):20
right-hearted people, 31(2):26
mockery, 2:3, 6:12; 24:3
model: human, 30(3):12

Value III/15
money:
- buying God’s gift with, 30(3):14
- invoking, 30(4):4
- trust in, 30(2):12

moon:
- Church; allegory, 10:3
- cycles, 9:7
- darkened, 10:4
- eclipse, 10:4
- lunar month, 10:3
- metaphor for the Church, 8:9
- synagogue, 10:12

morality:
- See also conversion
- pagan philosophies, 31(2):18

Morocco, 21(2):28

- gentiles, 21(1):28
- Incarnation and, 18(1):7
- sackcloth, 29(2):21

Moses, 6:2; 8:7

mother: God as, 30(2):9

mountain, 2:5; 10:1; 17:8
- Christ as, 3:4
- Church, 3:9
- greatness of Christ’s love, 14:1
- holy place, 23:3

mourning, 6:11

mousetrap, 9:15, 28

mouth, 16:4
- reined, 31(2):22
- mule, 31(1):9, 22, 23

multiplicity and singleness, 4:10

music, 32(2):8

musical instruments, 32(2):5

mysteries: hoarded riches, 32(1):7

mystical body (risen Christ = Head; members = the Church):
- anger in, 30(3):3
- Bridegroom and bride, 30(3):1
- building up, 30(1):4
- Christ the Head, 3:9
- hold out for the Lord, 26(2):23
- human will of Christ and, 32(2):2
- members identified with Christ, 32(2):2
- one Christ, 30(2):4
- particular gifts of each member, 32(3):21
- people divided from, 32(3):29
- scorned, 30(4):5
- speaking as one, 30(2):3
- temptation, 30(2):10
- unity, 30(3):8
- we are Christ’s body, 29(2):22
- whole Christ, 26(2):2; 30(2):3; 30(3):1
- Why are you persecuting…, 30(2):3

name-plate, 21(2):31

names: meanings of, 7:1
- Nathanael, 31(2):9; 32(3):19
- nation(-s), 32(1):10
- blessed in possessing God, 32(3):18
- gathered, 32(1):7
- meaning: sinners and the ungodly, 9:32
- salvation of all, 2:7
- need, 29(1):7
- theft and, 32(3):15

neighbor:
- embracing all, 11:3; 14:3
- harming, 14:5
- love of, 31(2):5
- pagan and Christian, 25(2):2

Neptune, 26(2):19

New Covenant, 21(1):32; 31(2):17; 32(2):8

New Testament, 8:2; 17:46

night, 6:7
- creation, 7:19
- evil (metaphor), 5:5
- spiritual darkness, 5:4
- testing the heart, 16:3
- tribulation, 1:2

nipples, 30(3):12

Noah, 31(1):6

Noah’s Ark, 8:13

non-existence: not being known, 1:6

nothingness, 7:19

number(-s):
- eight, 6:2
- four, 6:2
- seven, 6:2
- three, 6:2

Numidia, 21(2):26

nurse, 30(3):12

oath: solemn, 7:3

obedience, 32(2):5

obedience: fear and love as motives for, 32(2):6

oil, 4:9
- head anointed with, 22:5
- underneath water, 29(2):10

ointment:
- fragrance of the Lord, 21(2):2
- Your name …, 30(4):9

old age, 31(1):3; 32(2):6

old person: repentance, 4:7

Old Testament, 6:2; 17:46

oppressors, 26(2):21, 22

order, 7:15
- pattern of our labors, 9:29
- seeking its proper place, 29(2):10

orphans, 9:31, 34

ownership, 32(3):18

name-plate, 21(2):31

wills (law), 21(2):30

ox, 8:12, 13; 31(2):22

pain: tortured by enemy, 30(1):11
pantomime, 30(4):11
paradise, 24:5
parent(-s): procreation, 26(2):18
parrots, 18(2):1
Passover, 20:3
path: lover finds it wide, 30(2):15
patience, 4:2; 7:3; 31(2):20; 32(1):20; 32(3):26
Paul:
  Christ spoke within him, 4:8
  conversion contrasted with raising of
  Lazarus, 9:2
  denied what he prayed for, 26(2):7
  Donatus and, 30(3):12
  ecstasy: carried off to third heaven,
  30(2):2
  on faith of Abraham, 31(2):2
  I live my own life no longer…, 9:5
  prisoner of law of sin, 31(2):17
  represents the Church, 21(2):2
  suffering, 31(2):26
  warning against enemies, 30(4):2
  would die and be with Christ, 21(2):4
peace, 3:1; 4:8; 9:14; 15:4; 30(3):1
divine tranquility, 6:3
everlasting: temple, 29(1):1
My peace I give to you …, 10:6; 28:11
not promised in this world, 28:11
path to, 16:5
promised to self, 30(2):10
silence, 9:8
Pentecost, 30(4):9
perdition, 17:43
perfection, 7:4,5; 32(2):4
  advance toward, 5:9
  Christ’s disciples called to, 9:4
  Church’s love, 16:5
  churches; praise, 8:5,6,8
  contemplation, 26(2):9
  devil and the soul, 7:2
  as “end,” 4:3; 30(2):1
  fear and, 5:17
  grace, 26(2):2
  keeping the commandments, 31(2):5
  living in the world, 30(3):5
  not repaying evil for evil, 7:3
  qualities, 14:5
  walking unstained, 14:4
perish:
  because of sin, 9:32
  for ever, 26(2):4
  unknown to God, 1:6
persecution, 6:13; 7:14; 8:3; 9:13; 10:4; 19:5;
  30(2):10; 30(3):5; 32(3):13
  all those devoted to God, 29(2):8
  apostles, 32(3):9
Body of Christ, 3:9
  Christians living bad lives, 30(4):3
  escape from, 7:9
  phases, 9:27
  resisted by love alone, 9:15
  teeth of sinners, 3:9
persecutors, 7:2,6; 26(2):22; 30(1):10; 30(4):5
  appear to triumph, 29(2):6
perseverance, 17:22,25; 24:17; 30(3):2;
  32(3):26,27
  faith, 7:7
  grace and free will, 26(2):17
  hold out for the Lord, 26(2):23
  holding out courageously, 26(1):14
  perversity, 17:27; 31(2):25
  pessimism, 4:8
  pestilence, 1:1
Peter, Apostle, Saint, 3:7; Peter, 13:4;
  21(2):27
  dish full of living creatures, 30(3):5
  future passion foretold, 30(2):3
  prayer that his faith not fail, 26(2):5
  walking on water; fear, 30(4):10
Pharaoh, 5:7
Pharisees, 31(2):9,10-12,14
philosophers:
  denying God, 13:2
  enemies of faith, 8:6
  lovers of wisdom, 8:6
physical things:
  seeking their own place, 29(2):10
  piety: mercenary, 25(1):10
  pigs, 9:14; 21(2):5
  Pilate, 32(3):12
  power to put to death, 29(2):7
pilgrimage: Church, holy Jerusalem, 26(2):18
  pilot, 31(2):4
pit:
  earth-bound desires, 7:17
  going down into, 29(2):13
  pity, 29(2):20; 32(3):19
place: mind and body, 6:9
pleasing: human approbation, 25(2):8
pleasure, 8:13; 9:10,14; 15:5; 26(2):8
beasts of, 8:13
  earthly, 5:5; 17:19
  empty, 9:15
  evil; inward parts, 7:11
  follows thought, 7:11
  in God, 32(2):6
God knows the heart, 7:9
God’s purging fire, 25(2):7
immortality and, 26(2):16
transgressions, 18(1):13
vanity, 30(2):12
worldly, 6:7
plenty: human condition, 29(2):17
poison, 7:15; 13:4
poor:
banquet of, 21(1):27
beatitude, 9:27
blessed are the poor in spirit, 11:6
Christ, relief of the destitute, 11:6
cry of, 9:14
cry of, not forgotten, 9:13,14
forgotten by God, 9:29
God has heard, 9:33
God helps, 11:6
God looks upon, 10:8
imitation of Christ, 21(2):27
long-suffering, 9:18
praise God, 21(2):27
prayer of the, 21(1):25; 21(2):25
riches that last forever, 21(2):27
satisfied, 21(2):27
spiritual orphans, 9:31
woman and the ointment, 21(2):2
possessions:
common unity with Christ, 21(2):31
happiness and, 32(3):15
work and, 7:16
posterity: heirs, 21(1):31-32
potsherd, 21(1):16
poverty:
holy, 9:10
spiritual goods lacking, 11:6
power, 1:1; 5:13; 9:24
Christ and Pilate, 29(2):7; 32(3):12
eternal, 16:13
lust for, 30(3):14
wicked over the good, 32(3):11
praise, 7:19; 10:14; 10:6;
21(1):4,23,24,26,27; 21(2):5,28; 25(1):7;
beauty of created things, 26(2):12
befits the upright, 32(2):4
bless the Lord always, 32(2):3
brides, 25(2):13
confession of, 7:19; 29(2):19,22
dance for joy, 32(2):1
directed to God, 21(2):26
ductile trumpets, 32(3):10
forever and ever, 26(2):7
from mouths of infants, 8:5,6,8
name of the Lord, 21(2):31
presence of the Church, 21(2):24
rich and poor, 21(2):27
uniting will to God’s will, 32(2):1
when things go wrong, 32(2):3
with lyre and psaltery, 32(2):5
prayer, 32(3):29
behind closed doors, 3:4; 4:6
Christ intercedes for us, 19:7
Christ who is God, 29(2):1
cry inside yourself: God hears, 30(4):10
crying to God for wrong thing, 21(1):3
for forgiveness, 18(2):13
God hears voice of my weeping, 6:11
God’s listening, 4:5
heart, 4:6
for help, 21(2):20-22
I will look for your face…, 26(1):8
inner cry, 26(1):8
invoking God, 30(4):4
make haste…, 30(2):8
need; will pass away, 26(2):14
poor people praying, 21(1):25
promise of understanding and protection, 31(2):22
saints in Body of Christ, 3:9
silent shouting, 3:4
Therefore you heard…, 30(1):23
preacher(-s; -ing), 32(3):20
apostles; highest heavens, 32(3):6
filled with the Holy Spirit, 7:6
motivation, 11:7
never stops, 32(3):7
profitless, 30(3):5
seeing no good coming to his people,
30(3):5
throng, 28:3
tongue of Christ, 21(2):16
precious stones, 18(1):11; 20:4
predestination, 30(1):16; 32(3):14
devil and his angels, 3:10
present time: season of mercy, 32(2):10
promises, See winepress.
presumption, 6:1; 31(2):1,13
relying on self, 25(2):11; 31(2):10
trust in one’s own strength, 32(1):16,18
pride, 2:9; 3:10; 6:12; 8:8,13; 9:4,34; 11:2,4;
30(3):7,14; 30(4):3,5,10,12,13;
31(2):1,2,10,12,19,22,24; 32(2):10;
32(2):4
Abraham before God, 31(2):2
birds (metaphor), 8:13
Christ came in humility, 18(2):15
despising others, 31(2):11
giant, 32(3):23
great transgression, 18(2):15
inner man, 1:4
kingdom of, 1:1
pleasing the public, 18(2):16
punishment, 18(2):2
rebellion against God, 7:4; 18(2):15
unicorns, 21(2):22
you will be like gods, 7:5
priest: anointed, 26(2):2
prodigal son, 18(2):3; 24:5
progress, 25(2):5
property:
baptized persons belong to Christ,
21(2):31
prophecy:
  Church in the future, 30(4):9
  future mixed with the past, 3:5
  martyrs and, 32(3):9
  marvellous deeds of God, 9:3
  prophetic statements, 5:13
  secrecy, 7:1
  works done in faith, 32(3):7
prophets:
  clouds, 10:10
  obscure teaching, 17:12
  revelation, 17:16
  speak more of the Church than of Christ, 30(3):8
  Christian life and, 25(2):4
protection, 16:8; 17:3,11,36; 26(2):4; 31(2):22
  temple of God, 26(2):9,14
  under God’s wings, 8:10
providence, 7:19; 8:6; 9:7; 31(2):18
  ability to do harm, 29(2):6
  chance and, 9:2
  doubts about, 9:2
  enduring bad things, 29(2):7
God sees me on my day of troubles, 26(2):10
  guided my feet into open spaces…, 30(2):15; 30(3):1
  heretics and, 9:20
  ordered pattern of our labors, 9:29
  pressure from God’s hand, 18(1):11
  punishment and, 10:11; 30(4):12
  sacrifices and, 32(2):10
  salvation, 7:1
  secret economy of, 29(2):6
  sinners and, 7:15; 10:11
  temporal gifts and, 26(2):5
  things given and withdrawn, 32(2):5
psalms, 17:50
  Christ speaking in, 30(2):1,4; 30(2):3; 30(3):1
  good things of God seen inwardly, 30(4):6
  join in thrust of verses, 30(4):1
  our voice and God’s, 26(2):1
  shift from second to third person in, 31(2):18
  songs, 4:1
psaltery, 4:1,4
  sounding-board, 32(2):5
  ten commandments and, 32(2):6
psychology:
  sense of freedom in Mystical Body, 30(3):1
  punishment, 2:11; 7:12; 9:1; 10:11; 16:12;
  abandonment to evil as, 5:10
  anger of God, 7:5
  emotion in the soul, 6:3
  fear of, 18(2):10
  final, 9:29
  God’s justice and power, 2:4
  harm as, 29(2):6
  hell, 6:6
  kindness and, 18(2):2
  power given to devil, 26(2):5
  proud people, 18(2):2
  repentance as, 4:6
  unable to recognize Christ, 27:5
  purification: hidden judgment, 9:1
  purity, 17:25; 23:4; 25(1):6
  fear and, 18(1):10
  without deceit, 11:7
racecourse, 18(1):6
  rain:
    bestowed in common, 32(3):16
    falls on good and bad alike, 10:10
  ram: Abraham’s sacrifice, 30(3):9
  reason., 29(2):2; 31(2):2
  rebuke, 32(2):7
  recompense, 31(2):7
  rectitude, 31(2):25
  judgments, 25(2):13
  redemption, 2:7; 3:8; 18(2):16; 21(2):28;
  God bent down to earth, 30(2):7
  joyful in glory of God, 30(1):6
  thankfulness for, 30(1):1
  refuge, 30(1):4; 30(2):8
  sins besetting the heart, 31(1):7
  rejoin, See joy.
  repentance, 7:8; 8:10; 18(2):13; 28:5;
  32(2):10; 32(3):7
  anger for past sins, 4:6
  God’s patience invites us to, 7:12
  love and, 17:9
  preaching, 28:3
  sacrifice, 4:7
  sadness, 7:19
  self-inflicted punishment, 4:6
  will of God, 5:17
  repetition: truth, 18(2):2
  reproof, 6:3; 17:13,36
  reputation, 9:24; 17:6; 30(3):14
  responsibility, 31(2):18
  rest, 4:9
  resting: dying, 3:5; 4:5
  resurrection of the body, 3:10; 10:3; 15:9;
  27:6-7
  flesh and eternal life, 29(2):19
  hope for, 26(2):4
  retribution: timing, 30(4):12
  revenge, 9:30; 30(4):12
  reverence, 2:9
  endurance and, 32(3):26-27
Choose the Lord as your love…. 30(1):24; 30(4):11
ecstasy, 30(2):2
heavens proclaims glory of, 18(2):2,3
merits and holiness, 31(1):6
message, 18(2):4
prayer; Body of Christ, 3:9
scorned, 9:28
sharing lot of, 30(3):13
shortage of, 11:2
singing to the Lord…. 29(2):14
singleness of mind, 4:10
suffering, 30(2):3
terrible things done to, 9:20
salvation, 3:2; 6:13; 7:8,12; 8:6,8; 13:5;
17:42,47; 20:2; 21(1):6; 21(2):4;
32(2):4; 32(3):17,23
all flesh, 29(2):1
all nations, 2:7
analog, 8:10
children, 10:3
Christ and, 11:6
confession (witnessing), 30(4):7
despair, 5:17
fear of God, 5:9
from Christ alone, 3:8,9
God’s saving design, 32(1):10-15
grace, 18(2):3; 30(3):13
gratis, 30(2):6
hate for message of, 26(1):2
horse and, 32(1):17
human resources, 32(1):16-17
humanity of Christ and, 8:5
Israel, 19:5
men and women and beasts, 8:10
mercy for all who want to be reborn, 32(1):13
only God saves, 32(3):24
providence, 7:1
rejoice in, 19:6,15
righteousness and, 30(1):24
Save me in your mercy, 30(4):3
sin and, 21(1):2
victory, 19:7
works while asleep, 32(3):3
Samaritan: the word, 30(2):8
sanctuary: high priest only one to enter, 26(2):10
Sarah (wife of Abraham), 30(3):9
Satan, 8:13; 9:26
See also devil
Saul, King:
meaning of “Saul”, 17:1
Why are you persecuting me…. 32(2):2,3
scandal, 29(2):8; 30(2):6; 30(3):7,8
schism, 25(2):6; 30(3):8; 30(4):8
scorn, 30(1):12; 30(3):6

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
scourge, 31(2):26
scripture, See Bible.
sea, 18(2):3
pathways of, 8:13
waters confined, 32(3):11
waters gathered, 32(1):7; 32(3):10
seasons: four, 6:2
second coming of Christ, 6:1
known to no one, 9:35
sword, 7:13
secrecy, 7:1,3
secret:
God sees into, 9:29
understanding, 32(3):22
seed: dying, 19:5
seekers: shown what is sought, 9:14
seeking God, 21(1):27
seeking: living in house of the Lord, 26(1):4
self:
accusation, 5:13
conversion: the old self, 25(2):1
examination, 31(2):12
image: trashing yourself, 32(2):4
indulgence, 29(2):9
knowledge: insight into the heart, 30(2):13
reliance: presumption, 25(2):11
senses:
head and members, 29(2):2
rejoicing in sensations, 9:3
gates of death, 9:14
sensuality, 29(2):13
Sermon on the Mount, 11:6
serpent, 1:1
Eve deceived by, 18(2):2
fear only God, 32(3):12
servant, 30(2):2
let face of God shine over, 30(1):17
spare from faults of others, 18(2):13
serving: refusal to serve, 18(2):15
seven (number), 6:2
sex, 7:9
shade, 32(3):25
shame, 6:12,13; 24:2,20; 30(1):18; 30(2):3
calling on God, 30(4):4
Christian living, 30(4):7
eternal, 30(2):5
fear of, 30(4):4
temporary: profitable, 30(2):5
trust in God, 30(2):6,10
sheep, 3:7; 8:13; 9:9
Adam as the "one lost", 8:12
among wolves, 32(3):8
Christ's property, 21(2):31
Christians as, 21(2):31
metaphor for angels, 8:12
slain martyrs, 32(3):9
shepherd: Christ as, 22:1-2
shining, 30(4):3
shipwreck, 31(2):4
shouting, 31(2):13
prayer as, 3:4
sickness, 7:10
silence, 7:3,7; 9:25; 31(2):15
ingoing and, 31(1):5
crying in the heart, 30(4):10
My bones grew old…, 31(1):3; 31(2):13
peace, 9:8
prayer in the heart, 3:4
rejoicing remains, 26(2):12
sense of wonder, 7:1
silver: tried by fire, 11:7
similes, 8:1
Simon (Maugus; the magician), 9:24; 30(3):14
simplicity, 4:9
sin(-s), 4:8; 6:4; 7:3; 9:8; 17:6,26,28; 21(1):6;
See also conversion; repentance; sinner
alien nature as cause, 7:19
angry because of, 30(3):3
blindness, and habit of, 5:6
body dead because of, 26(1):6
children, 16:13
Christ made our sins his own, 21(2):3
Church's sinfulness, 10:1
compunction, 29(1):12
confession of, 29(2):19
covered, 31(2):13,15
darkness, 5:4; 6:13; 7:19
Donatists, 10:5
elements of, 8:13
ensnared by other people's, 18(1):14
Father, forgive them, 18(2):13
fear and refraining from, 32(2):6
God turning his face away from, 26(2):16;
29(1):8
good and evil in, 25(2):11
impunity, 31(2):1,8
inheritance, 4:6
law of, in my members, 30(2):6
love of, 5:6
mercy, 24:11
pleasurable myopia, 12:3-5
poison, 20:4
pride as starting-point, 7:4
punishment for, 7:15,16
put to death, 32(1):7
rebellion against God, 7:16
refusing to confess, 31(2):10
responsibility for, 7:19
salvation and, 21(1):2
saved from death of, 3:8
set free from, 6:13
silence about, 31(2):13
slave of, 32(2):6
source of, 18(1):14
sting of death, 6:6

Value III/15
Turn your face away from..., 31(2):9,12; 32(3):19
twofold liability, 18(2):13
unpunished, 31(2):23
wall, 17:30
who is free from..., 31(2):12
singing, 32(1):3; 32(2):4
diapsalma, 4:4
happiness, 29(2):16
joy, 7:19
jubilation, 32(2):8
mind and voice, 18(2):1
not confined to words, 32(3):2

Sing him a new song..., 32(2):8


See also conversion

bows bent, 10:2
breaking the arm of, 9:32
Christ died for us, 7:10
church members, 30(3):2
consummated, 7:9
daring to hope, 26(2):10
darkened moon, 10:4
darkness, 26(2):20
deserves to die, 29(2):21
disgusted by, 30(3):3
down into the pit, 29(2):13
earth (the word), 10:7
enraged at the sight..., 32(3):9
flattered and deceived, 9:21
good works and, 31(2):7
hope, 24:6
judged for sin, 9:32
light and, 25(2):11
meaning of "nations", 9:32
mixed in with the good and holy, 8:13
negative example, 9:20
prosperity, 19:7
providence, 7:15; 10:11
provoke the Lord, 9:22
punishment deserved by, 29(2):15
punishment meted out secretly, 9:1
punishment reserved for, 9:15
source for refusing to confess, 31(1):10
self-recognition, 31(2):9
slave of sin, 7:18
snares rained on, 10:10,12
teeth of, 3:7;9
torture of, 9:16
transgression of law, 2:4
trapped, 9:15
truth as bitter to, 5:15
turned toward hell, 9:17
types of, 8:13
ungodly and, 1:5
will be weakened and perish, 9:5

sitting down: as compliance, 25(2):9
sky, 32(3):16
slander, 10:4; 14:3
sleep, 4:9
death, 3:5
salvation at work, 32(3):3
snakes: poison, 13:4
snare, 9:28; 10:10; 24:15; 31(2):21
soldiers: tent-companions, 14:1
soldiers: tents, 30(4):8

Son of God:
See also Jesus Christ; Word of God

coming in humility, 13:7
eternal generation of, 2:6
eternally born of the Father, 18(1):7
hidden things/judgments of, 9:1,3,4,9,14,35
Holy Spirit as breath of his mouth, 32(3):5
judge seated on throne, 9:6
judgment entrusted to; 7:8; 18(1):11
king, 5:3
light, 10:3
nations as heritage of, 21(2):30
power and wisdom, 8:6
revelation of the Father, 18(1):8
set above the angels, 8:11
today I have begotten you, 21(2):30
two comings of, 24:10
visible things on, 9:35
Son of Man, 9:19
children of men as one with, 32(3):19
glorified, 17:8
Word in his holy temple, 10:12
song, 32(1):3

psalms, 4:1
sons of men:
image of heavenly man, 8:10
the Jews, 13:3
sorrow, 4:2
distress and, 30(3):3
knowledge and, 29(2):8
life imperiled by, 30(3):5

soul, 7:8; 26(2):21
See also body and soul; spiritual life
abandoned by light of truth, 9:23
anger and, 30(4):10
animal and human, 29(2):2
apparently dying, 21(1):31
constraints, 30(2):13
destroying, with the ungodly, 25(1):9
devil persecutes, 7:4
driven out of Church, 30(3):11
dwelling place, 9:15
emotion, 6:3
enemy of the perfect soul, 7:2
foot of: love, 9:15
God rescues, 6:5
guard from enemies of, 24:20
hating one’s own, 10:9
image of God, 32(3):16
intensity of desire, 6:13
light, 7:8
lingering in good things, 24:13
longings; suffering, 6:5
loved when squalid, 26(2):10
rendered to God, 4:8
seek happiness in your own, 32(3):16
support; strength, 6:4
weeping of, 6:7
sound: went forth throughout the world..., 18(2):5; 32(3):7
sovereignty, 21(1):29
sparrow, 10:1,4,5,6,12
speech:
    insufficient for praise, 26(2):12
    none goes unheard, 18(1):4-5
    speaking, 16:4
spirit, 18(2):4; 26(2):4
    See also angel; Holy Spirit; soul
    angelic creations, 8:12
    Christ and our spirit, 3:10
    entrusted to power of God, 30(1):6
    grief of, 12:2
    slave and free in, 1;2
    spiritual beings, 23:10
    troubled, 24:11
spiritual goods, 12:6
    blessing with eternal gifts, 26(2):19
    eternal, 13:6
    lacking in, 11:6
    land of the living, 26(2):22
    love of, 4:8
spiritual life:
    accepting instruction, 2:10
    carnal still, 8:10
    eyes not yet pure, 12:1
    inner and outer eyes, 21(1):4
    inner life, 1:4
    journey, 5:11
    marvellous things happen invisibly, 9:2
    opposite dangers, 31(2):1
    seeking face of God, 23:6
    soul wrestling with diseases, 6:4
    temporal goods and, 23:4
    turning away from the world, 9:10
    winning God's favor, 32(2):10
    wisdom of God, 18(1):3
spirituality: judges of earth, 2:8
spite, 14:4,5
springs of water, 17:16
stability, 14:5
star(-s):
    birth of Christ, 18(2):2
    fate and, 31(2):16
    human conduct and, 31(2):16
    individual churches as, 8:9
state: evil characteristics, 9:8
stealing, 32(2):6
Stephen, Saint, 7:5
storm:
    Church in, 9:29
    temptations, 25(2):4
straw, 29(2):9
    added to beauty, 29(1):8
    bones, 6:4
    for war, 17:40
    from the breath of his mouth..., 32(3):4,5
girded with, 17:33
God the source of, 29(2):18
suffering and, 21(2):16
weak humans become heavens, 32(3):8
suffering, 27:6-7; 30(1):12
See also tribulation; trouble bearing manfully, 29(2):8
Christ glorified by, 32(3):9
Christ's sacrifice, 19:10
divine dispensation, 29(2):6
fruit of passion of Christ, 21(2):23
glory in, 31(2):25
heart stretched by, 32(3):10
improvement by, 21(2):5
passage from death to life, 9:1
Paul on, 31(2):26
profitable, 19:5
rejoicing in, 4:2
stronger by, 21(2):16
triumphant cheerfulness in, 31(2):26
undeserved, 31(2):25
sun, 9:15
    bestowed in common, 32(3):16
    Christ called, 10:3
    light of the moon, 10:3
    righteousness, 29(2):16
    rises on good and bad, 32(2):5
tent pitched in, 18(2):6
    wisdom of God, 6:8
Susanna, 3:4; 21(2):6
sweetness, 30(4):6,8
fear of God, 30(1):20
sword:
    metaphor for death, 21(2):21
    misguided opinions, 9:8
    second coming of Christ, 7:13
sycophants, 9:21
sympsalmist, 4:4
synagogue, 21(1):10,11
    moon as, 10:12
    table: banquet, 22:5
tares, 29(2):8
taste: palate of the heart, 30(4):6

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

Value III/15
Volume III/15

tax collector, 31(2):10-12,14
teachings: variegated, 31(2):18
tears:
drenching, 6:7
evening, 29(2):16
sowing; reaping, 6:11
teeth:
biblical usage, 3:7
shorn sheep, 3:7
temperance, 12:6
temple:
dedication; everlasting peace, 29(1):1
holy, 9:12; 10:7
many members, one structure, 10:7
protection in, 26(2):9,14
temple of God, 7:5; 26(1):4; 27:2
Word-in-man in, 10:12
worship in, 5:9
temporal goods, 4:9; 17:25; 21(1):3; 30(3):11
attachments, 29(2):9
Christ’s renunciation of, 30(4):5
consolation from God, 26(2):19
despised by the poor, 9:31
eternal goods and, 30(4):6
eternal life and, 18(1):11
eternity and, 23:4
fear of loss, 15:3; 18(1):10; 26(2):16
gifts of this world, 9:26; 26(2):5
given by God, 26(2):19; 32(2):5.
God gives; God takes away, 32(2):5
good and bad joy in, 19:8

greed for, 11:9
holy poverty, 9:10
hope in, 17:8
love of, 9:11
metaphor: pathways of the sea, 8:13
pleasure, 7:11
riches, 9:3
seeking what is inferior to you, 32(3):15
turning people away from God, 11:9
unhappiness re loss of, 30(4):12
vain things, 30(2):12
will of God and, 32(2):2
worship and, 26(2):19

all human life on earth, 29(2):8
danger, 26(2):22
deliverance, 17:30
fire of, 29(2):9
providence and, 32(2):9
storm: Jesus is asleep, 25(2):4
test, 17:23-24
whole body of Christ, 30(2):10
tent, 14:1; 26(1):5; 29(1):1; 30(1):21
bridgroom’s, 18(2):6
hidden sanctuary, 26(2):10
home and, 26(2):6; 30(4):8

terror: dominion, 9:28
test, 10:8
by night and by fire, 16:3
God tests to make us know, 6:1
harm as, 29(2):6
power given to devil, 26(2):5
suffering as, 21(2):5
temptation, 17:23-24
Thamugadi, 21(2):26
thanksgiving:
always on our lips, 21(2):5
for redemption, 30(1):1
sacrifice of, 26(2):12
song of the soul, 12:6
theft: driven by necessity, 32(3):15
Thomas, Apostle: 
unless I put my finger..., 21(2):17
thorn, 31(2):15
thought:
evil: chains, 9:21
God not understood by, 17:11
pleasure follows, 7:11
three (number): mind, 6:2
threshing-floor, 8:1,13; 9:17; 25(2):5,6,12;
30(4):3
threshing-time, 30(3):3
throat: open grave, 5:12
thron: judge seated on, 9:6
thunderstorms, 17:13
time, 30(1):14
changeableness, 6:2
cycles of, 9:7
cyclic, 30(3):11
fullness of, 31(2):17
seasons for mercy and judgment, 32(2):10
stretches seem long, 30(2):8
today and eternity, 2:6
when time is righteousness, 31(2):18
timidity, 18(2):3
today: eternity and, 2:6
toil, 9:25;30, 24:18; 26(2):1
tolerance, 25(2):5
tongue, 9:25; 11:4; 30(2):3
Holy Spirit, 18(2):10
wrangling, 30(4):8

torment, 9:27; 30(1):12

torture: persecution, 32(3):13
touch, 29(2):2
tranquillity: God judges in, 6:3
transgression(s)
see also sin
memory of, 24:6
understanding, 18(2):13
trap, 30(1):5; 30(2):10
error and terror, 30(2):10
treasure-house: hidden recesses of God,
32(3):11
tribulation, 17:31; 26(2):22; 31(2):25
see also trouble

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
conclusion of sins, 29(2):19
fire of, 29(2):9
helper in, 9:10
holding out for God in, 29(2):8
impurities refined by, 30(4):12
meaning of “by night”, 1:2

Tricliae, 32(3):29

Trinity, 29(2):1

See also
Son of God
hints at (in Paul), 5:3
no disparity of will in, 32(2):2
one God, 5:3
witness of the Lord, 18(1):8
worship of, 32(3):5

Tricliae, 32(3):29

Trinity, 29(2):1

See also
Son of God
hints at (in Paul), 5:3
no disparity of will in, 32(2):2
one God, 5:3
witness of the Lord, 18(1):8
worship of, 32(3):5


See also suffering: tribulation
God as cause, 9:20
God’s correcting hand, 32(2):3
hidden in God’s tent, 26(2):10,11
rejoicing in, 31(2):26

trust:
failing; earthly goods, 30(2):12
in God, 2:11; 10:5,6; 23:10; 24:2,20;
30(1):2,7,15,20; 30(2):10,12;
30(3):12; 31(1):10
Holy Spirit, 18(1):2
in fellow humans, 10:5,9; 25(2):12
love, 32(3):28
in one’s own strength, 31(2):1
in self, 26(2):17
shame and, 30(2):5
you are my God…, 32(3):17

truth, 4:7; 6:7; 7:8; 8:9,10,12; 9:8,15;
18(1):13; 21(2):2; 24:5; 25(2):1;
32(3):29
bitter to sinners, 5:15
blessedness, 4:3
characteristics, 30(2):6,7
concealing, 5:7
embracing, 25(1):8
faith in the Lord, 26(1):4
forest of the world, 30(4):9
heretics and, 9:20
incorporeal, 24:10
judging in contravention of, 25(2):13
light and the mind, 5:6
philosophers as enemies of, 8:6
preachers of word of, 32(3):6
proclaiming as hard work, 32(3):1
professed outwardly, 14:5
repetition, 18(2):2
rule of, 30(4):8
silence about, 5:7
soul abandoned, 9:23
speaking in the heart, 14:3
spoken unwittingly, 14:3

vanished, 11:2
troumoil, 32(1):8
twins, 3:7

unbelievers, 32(2):1
darkness, 26(2):20
fear, 32(3):10
understanding, 15:7; 18(1):13;
31(2):9,13,21,22
believing and (Isaiah), 8:6
confession and, 31(1):8
devoid of, 31(1):9
good will and, 31(2):8
hearing as, 25(2):11
praise of, 26(2):12
singing with, 18(2):1
sound of praise, 25(2):11
subjection to giver of, 2:9
vision of something secret, 32(3):22
words of God, 11:3

underworld, 15:10
ungodly, 5:14; 6:2,10,12; 7:5,7,10,13,19;
9:5,7,8,20,24,25,29,30,32; 10:9,12;
16:13; 17:4,9; 18(2):3,2; 21(1):16; 24:8;
25(4):5,10; 25(2):5,9,12; 29(2):8;
34(2):18,26
darkness, 30(4):2
destroying my soul, 25(1):9
devil as ruler of, 26(2):20
dust, 29(1):10
judgment, 1:5
punishment, 5:17
unhappiness, 30(4):12
unicorns, 21(1):22
the proud, 21(2):22
union with God, 30(3):5

goal, 17:36

unity, 32(3):21
body of Christ, 30(3):8
building up the body of Christ, 30(1):4
charity and glory, 30(3):1
Christians, 29(2):5
discord, 30(3):1
Donatists and, 21(2):31
established in, 4:10
faith in the Lord, 26(1):4
foretold in scripture, 30(3):8
judgments and, 18(2):10
language of, 18(2):10
love of, 4:10; 18(2):13
one sign, one baptism…, 30(4):3
tunic of Christ, 21(2):19
violation of God’s temple, 10:7

universe:
material and spiritual; Creator, 32(1):6-9
usury, 14:5

values: emptiness or truth, 4:3
vain, 4:3; 7:3,4; 9:3; 30(2):12
twist regard for, 30(2):12
human help, 19:7
Venus, 31(2):16
verbs: tenses, 3:5; 14:5
victime, 3:10; 7:4; 9:8
living among enemies, 6:9
victory, 32(2):4

Church praises God, 26(2):13
over death, 26(2):14
vigils, 32(2):5

vine, 30(3):6
vinegar, 8:2
violence, 9:27,28
virgins, 31(2):17

virtue:
   bones as, 31(2):13
   presumption and, 31(2):1
   trust in, 32(3):2
vomit, 30(3):6
vows:
sacrifice to God, 21(2):27
suffering, 21(2):28

wages: grace and, 31(2):7
walkers, 31(2):4
walking: grace and free will, 26(2):17
war, 14:1
washing: drenching and, 6:7
west, 21(2):2
watching, 9:12
water, 29(2):10
   Book of Revelations, 1:3
   channel of truth, 31(2):18
   poured out like, 21(1):15
   regenerating (baptism), 22:1-2
   tree by running waters, 1:3
weakness, 19:7; 24:2,18; 25(2):3; 30(2):3;
   30(4):10; 31(1):3; 31(2):10; 32(2):2;
   32(3):8
borne by Christ, 7:20
heart, 26(2):8
   humanity of Christ, 29(2):1
   sufficiency of grace, 26(2):7
wealth, 6:12; 18(1):11; 29(2):8; 32(2):5
hope in riches, 9:11
truly poor, 21(2):27
wedding-feast, 19:3
weeping, 26(2):14; 29(1):6
   evening, 29(2):16
weights: two kinds of, 29(2):10
wheat, 4:9; 25(2):6
whip, 31(2):23
wicked, 17:23-24,42; 29(2):13
   as bad animals, 32(3):24
   devouring God's people, 13:5
   groaning over their pride, 29(2):8
hate for the commandments, 7:9
repayment for, 27:4

will to do harm, 29(2):6
will:
   attached to evil deed, 32(2):6
   faith, love and work, 31(2):6
   fate and free will, 31(2):16
   fit to will of God, 31(2):26
   follow the path: seek peace, 26(2):17
   free, 18(2):15
   grace and free will, 26(2):17
   sinful, 25(2):11
   strength of, 31(2):1
   willing what God wills, 32(2):2
will of God:
   casting lots, 30(3):13
   repentance, 5:17
   strength and beauty from, 29(2):18
   subject to, 32(2):2
   united with, 32(2):1
will (in law), 21(2):30
wind: discernment, 25(2):12
wine: matures with age, 8:2
winepress, 8:13
   churches and, 8:1
   fermentation of the word of God, 8:2
   martyrdom, 8:3
winnowing, 10:4
   winnowing-time, 25(2):5
wisdom, 4:2; 8:8; 9:7; 16:14; 21(1):3;
   26(1):11
abides for ever, 32(1):11
beauty of God, 32(2):7
children and the Holy Spirit, 18(2):8
Christ the human, 1:3
   fear as beginning of, 24:12
   fear of God, 14:4; 30(4):6
   God; hidden things, 9:2
   heart of Jesus, 21(2):15
   Holy Spirit, 18(1):3
   Incarnation, 30(2):9
   law, 26(2):20
   light of, 29(1):6
   lower realities and, 32(2):5
   matters hidden from the wise, 8:6; 18(1):8
   safe to lean on…, 32(3):17
   secret places of, 9:16
   sun as, 6:8
   tree of life…, 32(3):17
   words of God, 11:7
witnesses: unjust, 26(2):21
witnessing:
   confess your hope…, 30(4):7
   denying God by conduct, 30(3):3
   wizards, 30(4):12
   wolves, 32(3):8
woman: term for married and virgins,
   31(2):17
womb:
   Jewish people, 21(1):10
   maternal, 21(1):10,11
wonder: silence, 7:1
Word of God, 18(1):3
    Christ united with, 27:2
    equal to the Father, 29(2):2
grape (metaphor), 8:2
humility of the Passion, 3:3
    in the beginning…, 9:35; 21(2):3,7; 29(2):1
Incarnation, 29(2):2
pause in thought of, 32(3):14
souls watered by, 10:10
womb of Mary, 21(2):10-11
word(-s) of God, 1:3
    See also Bible
listening as hard work, 32(3):1
never pass away, 25(2):13
purified seven times, 11:7
straight, 32(1):4
unwilling to hear, 32(3):2
words: pleasing to God, 18(1):15
work, 32(3):23
cycle of toil, 7:16
    In the sweat of your face…, 32(3):1
profitless, 30(3):5
revealed by fire, 29(2):9
travail with injustice, 7:16
works, 30(3):13
evil, 10:11
led astray by, 20:11
of mercy: food refused to the hungry
    Christ, 30(2):5
Paul’s teaching on, 31(2):6
performed in faith, 32(2):9
valued if done within faith, 32(1):4
    without me you can do nothing…, 30(2):4
world, 21(1):22
abandoned by, 26(1):10
desert, 28:8
faith of, taken stock, 26(2):13
foundations, 17:16
great assembly, 21(2):26
kingdom of Babylon, 26(2):18
light of truth in, 30(4):9
living in, by the perfect, 30(3):5
love of the world, 13:2; 18(2):3; 31(2):5
luxury and wickedness, 29(2):13
renunciation of, 23:7
struggle against rulers of, 30(4):2
three ages of, 29(2):16
war on falsehoods of, 18(1):6
whole world is God’s Church, 23:2
world history:
time of the law: time of grace, 29(2):16
worldliness, 6:12; 29(2):9; 30(4):2
crucified to the world, 9:31
good people sifted out, 8:1
horse as figure of, 32(3):24
love and ostentation, 30(4):11
love of, 8:13
turned away from God, 9:10
worm: I am a worm…, 21(2):7
worship, 25(2):2; 26(2):16; 32(3):18
heart widened and sanctified, 28:2
one God, 32(3):5
rich people, 21(1):30
temporal gifts and, 26(2):19
wound, 31(2):12
wrongdoing, 1:3; 5:14; 6:3; 17:23-24
refusal to withdraw from, 9:15
yoke, 24:9
youths: rebuke, 32(2):7
zeal, 17:35
    informed by knowledge, 30(2):6
Zion, 13:8
    Church, 2:5
gates of, 9:14
image of the Church, 9:12

Volue III/15
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 33-50

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/16 Homilies/Expositions

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-147-3, 6 x 9 in., 462 pp., 2000
Paperback: 978-1-56548-146-6, 6 x 9 in., 462 pp., 2000

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms
(Enarrationes in Psalmos)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

*(prepared by Michael Dolan)*

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 1:20</td>
<td>49,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 1:26</td>
<td>38,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 2:17</td>
<td>37,5; 37,26; 41,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 2:24</td>
<td>II,34,1; 37,6; 40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 3:5</td>
<td>35,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 4:10</td>
<td>39,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 4:15</td>
<td>39,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 22:12</td>
<td>I,36,1; 43,19-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 24:2-3</td>
<td>44,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 25:23</td>
<td>40,14; 46,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 25:27</td>
<td>44,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 32:28</td>
<td>49,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis: 49:10</td>
<td>44,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus: 3:14</td>
<td>38,7; 38,22; 49,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus: 12:46</td>
<td>II,33,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus: 23:7, LXX</td>
<td>II,36,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy: 13:3</td>
<td>I,36,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy: 25:5</td>
<td>44,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy: 32:39</td>
<td>50,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel: 21:11</td>
<td>I,33,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel: 21:12-15</td>
<td>I,33,2; II,33,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel: 12:1-4</td>
<td>50,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel: 12:13</td>
<td>50,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel: 16:10</td>
<td>50,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings: 19:8</td>
<td>49,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Kings: 2:23</td>
<td>46,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit: 4:16</td>
<td>35,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job: 1:11</td>
<td>I,34,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job: 1:12</td>
<td>II,33,4; II,36,10; 37,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job: 2:10</td>
<td>I,34,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job: 9:24</td>
<td>III,36,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job: 14:4-5, LXX</td>
<td>50,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job: 15:26</td>
<td>45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job: 37:22, LXX</td>
<td>47,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 1:1</td>
<td>35,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 1:1-2</td>
<td>39,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 1:2</td>
<td>III,36,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 1:4</td>
<td>I,34,9; 43,23-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 1:6</td>
<td>I,36,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 2:6-9</td>
<td>47,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 2:9</td>
<td>44,18; 47,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 2:10-11</td>
<td>47,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 2:11</td>
<td>50,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 3:1</td>
<td>I,33,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 3:2-3(1-2)</td>
<td>I,34,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 3:5(4)</td>
<td>42,4; 44,33; 47,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 3:6(5)</td>
<td>40,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 5:13(12)</td>
<td>I,34,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 6:8(7)</td>
<td>39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 8:4(4)</td>
<td>35,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 10:2(11:1)</td>
<td>35,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms: 12:5(13:4)</td>
<td>37,22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14(15):5</td>
<td>III,36,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15(16):2</td>
<td>I,34;12; 49,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15(16):5</td>
<td>I,34;12; I,36,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16(17):13-14</td>
<td>I,34.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-4(18:3)</td>
<td>39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-26</td>
<td>44,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18(25-26)</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:45</td>
<td>(18-44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:45</td>
<td>44,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:45-18:44</td>
<td>45,6; 47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2,5</td>
<td>49,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5(19:4)</td>
<td>39,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6(19:5)</td>
<td>44,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7(19:6)</td>
<td>45,13; 50,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13-14</td>
<td>19:12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:15(19:14)</td>
<td>35,17; 37,16; 39,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2(22:1)</td>
<td>II,34.5; 37,6; 37,27; 40,6; 41,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2-3(22:1-2)</td>
<td>43,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:5</td>
<td>43,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:8(22:7)</td>
<td>43,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:14</td>
<td>40,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17(19)</td>
<td>22:16-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23(22:22)</td>
<td>37,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:27(22:26)</td>
<td>44,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28(22:27)</td>
<td>47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:30(22:29)</td>
<td>48,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23(5)</td>
<td>35,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:9(63:8)</td>
<td>43,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23(24):3-4</td>
<td>47,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23(24):7,9</td>
<td>47,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24(25):1</td>
<td>41,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24(25):7</td>
<td>35,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24(25):9</td>
<td>II,36.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26(9)</td>
<td>47,11; 49,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:2(4)</td>
<td>38,6; 41,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:2(7)</td>
<td>44,18; 50,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:12</td>
<td>40,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:14(14)</td>
<td>II,36;4; 41,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:23(31:22)</td>
<td>II,34.6; 37,12; 41,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:32(32)</td>
<td>44,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31(32):9</td>
<td>II,33.5; 42,6; 46,9; 1,48,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32(33):5</td>
<td>35,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2(34:1)</td>
<td>35,16; II,48,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:16(34:15)</td>
<td>39,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:17(34:16)</td>
<td>39,2; 50,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):3</td>
<td>38,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:7(36:6)</td>
<td>41,13; 41,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:10(36:9)</td>
<td>41,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12(36:11)</td>
<td>38,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):2</td>
<td>II,48,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):23</td>
<td>49,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):37</td>
<td>1,36,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:7(39:5-6)</td>
<td>II,48,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:5(40:4)</td>
<td>38,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:18(40:17)</td>
<td>40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:5(41:4)</td>
<td>42,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42(43):1</td>
<td>49,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42(43):5</td>
<td>II,33,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:4(44:6)</td>
<td>45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44(45):23</td>
<td>1,34,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44(45):5</td>
<td>43,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:11(45:10)</td>
<td>47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47:0(46:1)</td>
<td>49,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49(50):16</td>
<td>III,36,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49(50):21</td>
<td>III,36,12; 39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49(50):23</td>
<td>39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:5(51:3)</td>
<td>44,18; 49,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:10(51:8)</td>
<td>38,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:11(51:9)</td>
<td>44,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:18-21</td>
<td>(51:16-19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:19(51:17)</td>
<td>41,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:4(52:2)</td>
<td>I,34,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:7(55:6)</td>
<td>38,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:23(55:22)</td>
<td>39,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:5(61:12)</td>
<td>49,21; 50,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:7(57:6)</td>
<td>50,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:3(61:2)</td>
<td>39,28; 49,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:12(62:1)</td>
<td>44,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63:7(64:6)</td>
<td>41,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2-3(67:1-2)</td>
<td>39,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69(670:5)</td>
<td>49,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):11</td>
<td>45,10; 47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1</td>
<td>44,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):16-17</td>
<td>41,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):26</td>
<td>I,34,12; I,36,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):28</td>
<td>43,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:3(77:2)</td>
<td>II,48,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77(78):24-25</td>
<td>I,33,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:17(80:16)</td>
<td>38,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):1</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):6-7</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:11(84:10)</td>
<td>I,48,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:8(84:1)</td>
<td>41,11; 42,4; 43,9; 50,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:9(85:8)</td>
<td>38,16; 49,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:18(85:7)</td>
<td>39,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86(87):4</td>
<td>44,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90(91):13</td>
<td>39,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:15(92:14)</td>
<td>III,36,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93(94):20</td>
<td>38,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):2</td>
<td>44,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):4-5</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):5</td>
<td>47,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100(101):5</td>
<td>II,34,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:38</td>
<td>(102:27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107(60:5)</td>
<td>47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109(110):4</td>
<td>I,33,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111(112):7</td>
<td>35,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B(115):8</td>
<td>46,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):3-4</td>
<td>45,4; 49,22; 50,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):6</td>
<td>38,17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/16

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Proverbs
2:11 III,36,5
3:11-12 37,23
10:26, LXX II,48,8
17:6, LXX I,48,3
18:3 35,10; 39,3
19:17 III,36,6
21:20 III,36,5

Song of Songs
1:3 37,9; 44,22
2:2 47,8
2:5, LXX 37,5
4:8, LXX I,33,10
6:9,5 44,26
8:6 47,13

Wisdom
2:15 III,36,12
2:20,18 I,48,11
2:24 50,9
5:3-4 II,48,4
5:8-9 III,36,10
9:15 35,1; 37,10

Sirach
10:14 37,8
15:9 47,2; 49,29

Isaiah
1:18 50,12
2:2 45,6
2:3 45,12; 47,5
3:14 49,11
6:3 49,4
14:13-14 47,3
23:1, LXX 47,6
26:13 39,28
26:18 47,5
29:13 III,36,12; 37,17; 39,18; 45,6;
II,48,1
42:14, LXX II,36,12; 49,6
48:22 38,16
52:5 II,34,10
52:15 47,7
53:2 43,16; 44,3
53:7 37,20
53:7,5 40,13
53:9 37,19
54:5 46,9
57:16-17 42,3
58:1 46,7
58:7 42,8; 49,13
58:9,10,7 42,8
65:24 42,8

Jeremiah
1:10 50,11
2:29 42,7
9:1 38,20
10:11 47,15
17:16 III,36,13
23:24 39,27; 49,18
31:33 45,6

Baruch
3:38 47,15

Ezekiel
36:20 II,34,10

Daniel
2:35 45,12

Hosea
6:6 44,27; 49,12

Jonah
3:9 50,11
## Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

### Micah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>45,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>45,12; 47,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:7-9</td>
<td>46,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>III,36,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>II,34,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II,33,15; 35,14; II,48,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>35,15; I,36,5; 39,21; 42,4; 44,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>II,34,13; 43,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>44,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>44,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35</td>
<td>39,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>II,36,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48-45</td>
<td>39,4-49,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>44,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-2</td>
<td>49,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>II,33,8; 35,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19-21</td>
<td>44,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>38,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>II,48,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>40,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I,33,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13-14</td>
<td>43,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>II,34,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>39,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>38,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>38,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>46,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11-12</td>
<td>38,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>I,36,11; 46,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>38,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>44,27; 49,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>41,11; 42,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:24-25</td>
<td>40,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>II,36,3; III,36,13; 40,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>III,36,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>44,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>49,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
<td>II,33,16; I,48,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>44,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48</td>
<td>44,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:28</td>
<td>40,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>39,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>45,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>44,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>37,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>44,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16-23</td>
<td>II,34,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>39,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>39,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22,23</td>
<td>I,34,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>39,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:19</td>
<td>45,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>44,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10</td>
<td>43,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4-6</td>
<td>37,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>44,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:14</td>
<td>46,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>44,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>43,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21,28</td>
<td>49,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>44,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>II,36,8; 37,16; 39,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9</td>
<td>II,33,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:38</td>
<td>40,1; 40,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16</td>
<td>37,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16-17</td>
<td>II,34,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>II,34,11; 37,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:29-30</td>
<td>43,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:42-46</td>
<td>I,33,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-3</td>
<td>III,36,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>39,15; I,48,5; 49,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:13</td>
<td>37,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>37,14; 39,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13</td>
<td>I,36,7; 39,1; 39,3; 41,11; 42,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:19</td>
<td>39,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:22</td>
<td>39,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:23</td>
<td>39,1; 49,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:35</td>
<td>III,36,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:40</td>
<td>I,36,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>38,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26-27,30</td>
<td>38,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>35,5; I,36,10; III,36,9; 44,24; I,48,6; II,48,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34,35</td>
<td>49,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34,41</td>
<td>39,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34,41,46</td>
<td>III,36,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-35,37,40,49,11</td>
<td>44,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-38</td>
<td>44,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>I,36,2; 49,11; 49,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35-36</td>
<td>40,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35-37,40</td>
<td>III,36,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>38,12; 40,11; 48,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>35,5; I,36,11; 37,3; 44,24; I,48,6; II,48,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41,34,46</td>
<td>I,48,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:42</td>
<td>I,36,2; 37,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:42-43</td>
<td>37,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:44-45</td>
<td>37,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:26</td>
<td>I,33,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:28</td>
<td>II,34,11; 40,6; 42,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:37</td>
<td>46,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:42</td>
<td>II,34,11; 44,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:46</td>
<td>II,34,5; 37,6; 37,27; 41,17; 49,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:10</td>
<td>44,23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume III/16

**Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28:13</td>
<td>II.36,17; 37,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>II.34,12; 46,7; 47,14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mark**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>49,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>35,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>40,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:33</td>
<td>44,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:38</td>
<td>39,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>44,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>42,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>46,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>49,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Luke**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>I.33,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>50,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>I.34,12; 39,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>III.36,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>49,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-9</td>
<td>46,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>45,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27-29, 30,34-37</td>
<td>I.48,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26</td>
<td>II.48,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>44,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>II.48,1; II.48,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>III.36,8; I.48,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:52-53</td>
<td>44,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>41,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24-32</td>
<td>44,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>I.48,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>I.48,9; I.48,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24</td>
<td>38,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:28</td>
<td>I.48,14; 49,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11,13</td>
<td>39,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>49,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>41,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:18</td>
<td>45,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:35-36</td>
<td>43,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:36</td>
<td>43,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21</td>
<td>II.34,11; 40,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:28,31</td>
<td>40,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>39,25; 44,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:38</td>
<td>46,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:42</td>
<td>39,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>II.33,24; I.34,14; 39,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:18-21</td>
<td>II.34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46-47</td>
<td>49,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I.33,6; 35,1; 44,3; 49,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>46,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-14</td>
<td>44,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>44,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I.34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>I.34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>I.48,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>I.33,6; 44,3; 49,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16,9</td>
<td>35,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>44,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>35,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:47</td>
<td>44,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:47-51</td>
<td>44,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19,21</td>
<td>40,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>35,9; 50,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II.34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>50,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22,27</td>
<td>I.48,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:41</td>
<td>II.33,15; II.48,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:53</td>
<td>I.33,8; II.33,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54</td>
<td>II.33,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54,56</td>
<td>40,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37-38</td>
<td>45,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>45,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4-5</td>
<td>50,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7,10-11</td>
<td>50,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>42,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33</td>
<td>46,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>40,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:39</td>
<td>46,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>44,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48</td>
<td>35,17; II.36,17; II.48,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27-28</td>
<td>39,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>II.33,7; 40,10; 42,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20,21</td>
<td>II.48,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>49,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>III.36,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:48,50</td>
<td>40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:51</td>
<td>40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>39,18; 42,4; I.48,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>37,11; 38,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8-9</td>
<td>45,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>37,11; 44,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>II.34,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>37,11; 37,15; 43,16; I.48,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30,31</td>
<td>50,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:20</td>
<td>40,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>I.36,1; 38,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td>47,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:36</td>
<td>47,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>40,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>49,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:19</td>
<td>46,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>II.34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>I.48,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>49,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:29</td>
<td>II.48,5; 49,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15-17</td>
<td>37,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17</td>
<td>II.36,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts</td>
<td>1:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:37-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:13-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:28-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:22-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:22-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:23-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:24-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:23-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:24-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1 Corinthians | 1:10 | 40.9 |
|              | 1:12 | 35.9 |
|              | 1:13 | 35.9; 44.23; 46.5 |
|              | 1:22-25 | II,33.4 |
|              | 2:6 | 44.20 |
|              | 2:8 | 47.1 |
|              | 2:15,14 | 49.27 |
|              | 3:1-2 | I,36.1; 38.3; 49.27 |
|              | 3:2 | 44.20 |
|              | 3:6-7 | 35.9 |
|              | 3:9,10,6 | I,36.2 |
|              | 3:15 | 37.3 |
|              | 4:1 | 35.9 |
|              | 4:3 | III,36.19; 41.13 |
|              | 4:7 | 47.4 |
|              | 4:9 | 39.9 |
|              | 4:15 | 44.23 |
|              | 4:16 | III,36.2; III,36.20; 39.6 |
|              | 5:7 | 39.13 |
|              | 5:8 | 39.14 |
|              | 6:1 | II,36.20 |
|              | 6:3 | 49.10 |
|              | 9:24 | 39.11 |
|              | 10:1-2 | I,33.3 |
|              | 10:3 | I,33.3 |
|              | 10:4 | I,33.3 |
|              | 10:11 | I,33.3 |
|              | 10:12 | 41.12 |
|              | 13:3 | 43.21; 47.13 |
|              | 13:12 | I,33.10; 35.14; I,48.5 |
|              | 14:20 | 44.1; 46.2 |
|              | 15:22 | 35.12 |
|              | 15:50 | 50.19 |
|              | 15:53 | 50.19 |
|              | 15:53-54 | 35.6 |

| 2 Corinthians | 2:15 | 37.9; 44.22 |
|              | 4:16 | 38.9 |
|              | 4:17-18 | II,48.9 |
|              | 5:1 | 38.21 |
|              | 5:6 | I,48.5 |
|              | 5:6-7 | 37.15 |
|              | 5:6-9 | 38.21 |
|              | 5:10 | III,36.13 |
|              | 5:13 | 44.20 |
|              | 5:17 | 38.9 |
|              | 6:1 | 47.8 |
|              | 6:10 | I,48.3; II,48.5 |
|              | 8:9 | 39.28; 40.1 |
|              | 9:6 | III,36.7 |
|              | 9:7 | 42.8 |
|              | 10:10 | 49.27 |
|              | 10:12 | II,34.10 |
|              | 11:2 | 49.9 |
|              | 11:2-3 | 39.1 |

Volume III/16
Volume III/16

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>II,33,17; III,36,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9-10</td>
<td>45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>38,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>III,36,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>II,36,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>40,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>49,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>37,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>49,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>49,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>I,33,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I,36,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>37,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>41,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>III,36,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>44,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>37,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>47,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>41,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I,34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>45,12; II,48,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>I,48,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:30</td>
<td>37,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td>II,34,1; 40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>37,6; 44,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I,34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>49,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>44,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>44,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>I,33,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12-13</td>
<td>39,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12-14</td>
<td>38,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12-14</td>
<td>38,6; 38,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>39,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>38,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II,48,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>46,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>49,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>40,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>39,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>I,36,3; 43,5; II,48,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>I,36,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>39,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>49,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>37,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>II,36,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>39,3; 50,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13,16</td>
<td>45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>49,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>47,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>40,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>III,36,20; 39,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>I,48,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>44,28; 44,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>39,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>44,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>47,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II,36,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>II,36,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>39,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>39,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>I,34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5-6</td>
<td>37,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>II,36,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>45,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>44,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>49,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>37,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II,48,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>38,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>II,36,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>I,33,10; II,36,8; 37,15; 43,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>I,34,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>49,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>43,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>44,23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2).
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Aaron, 33(1):5,6,7; 33(2):2
abandon (-ed; -ment)
  God’s apparent decision, 43:3
  Lord has taken me up, 45:11
Abessalon, 33(1):2; 50:15
Abimelech, 33(1):3,4,6,7; 33(2):2,2
  his children imitate his faith, 46:11
  Lazarus and the rich man, 48(1):10; 48(2):1
  promised offspring, 46:11
  self-knowledge, 43:19-20
  tested by God, 36(1):1
  two sons (=covenants), 33(1):3
Absalom, See Abessalon.
abyss, 35:10,18; 41:15
accusation: false, 34(1):11; 38:3
Achis, King of Gath, 33(1):2,4,7,8,11; 33(2):2,2 ???,12
acrobat, 39:9
actor, 39:9
  iniquity derived from, 50:10
  sleep, figure of Christ’s death, 40:10
  adoption, 41:14
  adultery, 49:25; 50:2,10
  adulteress, Jews try to trap Jesus, 50:8
adversity, 50:4
affection, 33(1):9; 33(2):2,16
  for sin, 35:1
  subordinate to the will, 44:23
affliction, 36(3):7
Agabus, 36(2):6
alms, 36(3):6,7; 44:27,28; 48(1):9,16; 49:12
  fasting, good will, 42:8
  pride and, 44:29
altar: I will go in to God’s altar, 42:5
Amaelek, 43:10
Ananias, 36(2):5
ancestors, 48(2):11
  source of joy, 43:16
  those who fear God and, 33(2):11
  Why stand here gazing up . . ., 49:5
anger, 33(2):5; 36(1):9; 36(2):2; 37:7
animals (-s), 46:1
all belong to God, 49:17
gentle, 33(2):5
  good things given to by God, 35:13
  privileges of human beings and, 35:12
  sacrifice prefigured the one s., 35:12
salvation, 35:11,12
  subject to human beings, 48(1):16
anointing: kings and priests; locality, 44:19
  oil poured on stone by Jacob, 44:20
  your God has anointed you, O God, 44:19
ants, 36(2):11
  industry: summer and winter, 41:16;
  48(1):12
anxiety, 36(3):12; 37:3; 41:12; 45:3; 50:18
Apocalypse, 49:9
apostasy, 50:18
apostles, 35:8; 36(2):20; 44:32; 45:4,7,8; 46:4; 47:14
  Christ shouted through, 48(1):2
  Christ’s neighbors, 37:17
  churches begotten by, 44:23
  fearful at Christ’s passion, 37:17
  first Christian community, 44:28
  friends of the Bridegroom, 35:9
  Lord, show us the Father, 38:6
  raised offspring for Christ, 44:23
  their sound went forth throughout . . ., 39:10
  twelve thrones, 49:9
Arius, 35:9
armies, 43:10
armor: spiritual and invisible, 34(1):2
arrogance, 45:13
as if (usage), 48(2):5
Augustine, Saint:
confesses his bad life, 36(3):19
slander against, 36(3):19
avarice, 36(3):11; 38:12
Augustus, 44:25
Bagai, 36(2):20,22
Baldman, 44:1
Baptism, 36(3):19; 41:1; 43:15; 44:23; 47:8
forgiveness of sins, 41:12; 45:4; 50:10
life after, 50:1
repetition of, 36(2):23; 39:1; 44:11
sins after, 48(2):1
Barnabas, 33(2):19
Bathsheba, 50:2
Battle, 35:6
beard: saliva dribbling down, 33(1):11
strength, 33(1):11; 33(2):4
beatific vision: face-to-face clarity, 43:5
beauty, 36(2):13; 39:8; 49:4
derivation, 34:11
inner face: conscience, 44:29
justice as supreme b., 44:3
of justice, 41:7; 44:14
Word made flesh, 44:3
bedhead, 40:5
beggar, 36(3):1,2,5; 42:8; 48(1):3; 48(2):5
being:
I AM WHO AM, 38:7,22
non-being and, 38:22
when to say something is, 38:7
believer, 41:5
God knows my heart, 39:17
Lord, who is like you, 34(1):14
righteous, 39:6
Word, 41:7; 44:14
belly, 43:23-24,25
Bible:
opening roofed-over texts, 36(3):3
ruminating on, 36(3):5
sudden changes of speakers in, 44:8
two Testaments in agreement, 49:4
words laden with mystery, 46:1
birds:
born from water at God’s command, 49:18
knowledge about all birds, 49:18
bishop: successors of apostles, 44:32
blasphemy, 34(2):2; 36(1):9; 36(3):3; 44:9;
50:15
blessed: on earth and in heaven, 40:3
blessing, 48(1):17
good will, 36(2):14
harvest, 36(3):7
temporal goods, 48(2):8
blind(-ness), 36(1):5; 36(2):8; 40:9; 43:14
carnally-minded persons and, 38:3
healed man cursed by Jews, 39:26
spiritual: eyes clogged by many sins, 39:21
blood: Cain, 39:13
plural usage (Greek), 50:19
shedding, 44:27
boasting, 38:18; 43:9; 49:31
What have you that you did not receive, 47:4
body and soul:
See also human body; soul
ruled and ruler, 41:7
soul weighed down by body, 38:10; 38:3;
41:10
whole human person, 37:11
body of Christ, See Church
bones, 37:6; 41:18
humbled bones will dance for joy, 50:13,14
Lord, who is like you, 34(1):13,14
safeguarded, 33(2):24
term = the righteous of the Lord’s body,
34(1):14
bow (as ambush), 45:13
Word, 48(2):10
righteousness, 48(2):8
word of God, 36(3):5
breast, 33(1):6; 38:3; 49:27
praying and, 34(2):5
symbol of secrecy, 34(2):5
bride:
beauty (Song of Songs), 44:26
Queen has taken her place . . ., 44:24
Bridegroom:
beauty, 44:3
children of Korah, 41:2; 46:2
friend of, 50:13
synagogue as mother of, 44:12
Word of God, 44:7
brother: slandering his brother, 49:27
bruises, 37:9
building:
ispection of trees used for, 45:3
plan, 44:4
business, 35:5; 36(1):2; 38:3
Caecilian, 36(2):19,21,22
Caiphas, 40:1
Cain, 40:14; 48(2):11
cursed and banished from earth, 39:13
calf, golden, 34(2):15
Calvary, 46:2,3
Korah, 41:2; 43:1; 44:1; 45:1
calves, sacrifice of, 50:23
Canaanite woman, 37:1; 44:27
Carthage, 36(2):19,20; 44:23; 47:6

cataracts, 41:13,14
catechumens, 41:1


celeration, 41:9; 43:13
centurion:

asks Christ to heal his servant, 46:12
I am not worthy
sacred, 38:18
certainty: prophets and future events, 43:8
human condition beset with uncertainties, 38:19


courage, 36(1):3
change, 38:22; 41:12; 44:2
charioteer, 33(2):6; 39:9,11
always still owing, 36(3):18
Bear one another’s burdens, 39:4
chilling; blazing, 37:14

Christ receives when given to the poor, 36(3):6
help for least of Christ’s brothers, 37:6; 48(1):16
I was hungry and you fed me, 44:27
law and growing cold, 38:5
running to Christ with, 33(2):10
chastening, 37:3
chastisement, 38:17,18
chastity, 33(2):6; 50:5
cheating, 49:26
making friends from sinful mammon, 48(1):12
childlikeness, 44:1; 46:2
children:

follow parents’ example, 48(1):14
growing up in faith, 30:24
heirs, 48(1):14
mourn over death of, 37:24
storing up wealth for, 38:12
children of God, 33(1):10; 43:5; 47:8; 49:2
inheritance of, 36(2):8
key: God as lovable, 49:2
wraps used by God on, 36(3):9; 40:6
choice: ceases on judgment day, 36(1):1
chosen, 44:20
Christ (the word)
meaning = anointed, 44:19
Christian life:
brothers of Christ, 48(1):8
Christ, the end of our journey, 45:1
Christ’s way, 36(2):16
falling occurs in the heart, 44:16
hidden with Christ in God, 36(1):3; 39:28; 48(2):3
I live my own life no longer, 49:31
love and fear as guides, 39:20
made new by imitating his passion, 37:27
narrow path, 43:17
not I, but Christ lives in me, 39:27
obey the commandments, 36(1):8
ourselves as weapons in, 34(1):2
paths of the ungodly, 36(2):7
proclaim; suffer; glorify, 39:15
seeking: imitate Christ’s sufferings, 37:18
sell all you possess . . ., 49:8
sufferings of Christ and, 36(2):16,17
traveler and lodger, 38:21

Wait for the Lord, 36(3):14
Christians, 45:7,8; 47:8
begotten children, 44:23
children of Korah, 41:2
elder shall serve the younger, 46:6
enemies of Christianity, 43:6-7
fear of proclaiming aloud, 39:16
Gentile origin, 44:12
good seed, 42:2
persecuted, 34(2):8
subordinate to apostles, 46:5
taunted, 43:10
See also Catholic Church; persecution
almsgiving, 44:28
apostles and, 44:32
ascension of Christ and, 49:5
betrothed to one husband, 49:9
beware the foot of pride, 35:18
bones = the righteous, 34(1):14
bride of Christ the Bridegroom, 44:3,33
bride: I am wounded with love, 37:5
Christ speaks in person of his body, 37:6; 40:1
Christ: Head and body, 34(2):1
Christ’s voice in his members, 34(1):1; 39:5; 40:6
city founded upon a mountain, 44:33
creation: the second day, 47:1
cursing, 48(2):10
daughters of Tyre, 44:28
earth where blood has been received, 39:13
enemies ask: When will his name disappear, 40:1,7
Eve, mother of the living, 40:10
everyone magnify the Lord, 33(2):6
gleaming white robe of Transfiguration, 50:12
good and evil mingled in, 34(1):10
growing/filling the entire world, 47:2
holy milk at breast of, 38:3
integrity, 49:9
Jacob’s ladder and, 44:20
land of the Lord, 36(1):4
leaders, 39:6
lesson learned from its Head, 44:15
love the unity of, 33(2):6
lying witnesses against, 36(2):18

Volume III/16
members, hold fast to the Head, 40:8
members: all the righteous since world
began, 36(3):4
mouth and belly, 43:25
one body, one voice: Christ, 34(2):1
persecuted, 34(1):14
saints as garments of, 44:22
Saul, why are you persecuting me, 37:6
single voice with Christ, 37:6
sins of Christ’s body, 37:6
sleek old age, 36(3):4
sound gone forth through all the earth, 39:15
speaker, as a single body, 41:1
spread through the nations, 36(3):4; 44:30
suffering in Head and body, 37:16
suffering of Christ as example for, 34(2):1
suffers what Christ suffered, 40:8
temple of the King, 44:31
temptations, 41:19
tent, 41:9
two in one flesh (with Christ), 37:6; 40:1; 44:12
voice of Christ’s body, 34(1):1
weakness of Christ’s body, 37:22
widespread through all nations, 36(3):4
City of God, 45:10; 47:2,3,4,7
Cleanliness, 33(2):8
clothing: sweet scents, 44:22
clothes, 35:8,12; 36(2):12; 45:15
God thundered from, 45:10,13
come (the word): meaning: believe, 45:12
commandment, 39:21; 40:4; 41:3; 45:6, 47:9; 49:6,9
earthly promises, 34(1):7
harmony with, 42:5
pain as God’s precept, 38:17
compassion, 33(1):9; 49:22
complacency, 50:4
compunction, 30:11
conduct, 38(3):50:15
confession:
everlasting, 44:33
gift of the Spirit, 30:16
praise of God, 34(2):10
secret sins, 37:16
shame, 39:16
sins purged by, 42:7
beauty of, 44:29
consolation, 36(2):10
dare to approach God, 33(2):11
guilty, 45:3
nothing more interior than, 45:3
sin and God’s absence from, 45:3
witness, when God is judge, 37:21
consolation: comfort from material things,
36(2):10
conversion, 40:9
contemplation, 38:6; 43:16
to live in the Lord’s house, 41:5
conversion (moral), 36(2):11; 49:28
dishonesty in searching, 35:3
Forgetting what lies behind, 39:3
God’s word and correcting life, 49:1
impious people, 50:18
name of Christ, 40:13
numbers beyond reckoning, 39:10
old self into a new self, 44:2
opportunity for, 39:28
persecution and, 34(1):8
praise God for, 39:26
converts, 43:22; 44:23
cornerstone, 47:3,5
correction, 48(2):9; 49:30
covenant:
Abraham’s two sons, 33(1):3
new, 45:6,10
Old and New, 35:12
coveting, 37:7,28; 41:3; 48(1):3
creation:
absolutely gratis, 43:15
all good found in Creator, 44:4
all present in Word of God, 44:5
all things belong to Creator, 49:17
birds, 49:18
Church as work of the second day, 47:1
Come and see the deeds of the Lord,
45:12
God’s wisdom in the Word, 49:18
in God we have all that was made, 34(1):12
love Creator in creature, 39:8
Maker is to remake his work, 38:17
second day: the firmament, 47:1
signs of things to come, 47:1
Take your scourges away, 38:16
Creator: finding God, 41:7
cross:
everlasting, 44:33
instrument of healing, 43:14
insult to, 46:2
new sacrifice, 33(1):6
tree of salvation, 39:15
crowds: not to be imitated, 39:7
crucifixion:
See also under Jesus Christ
abolished as human punishment, 36(2):4
abomination, 37:26
drummed, 33(1):9
legs of the two thieves broken, 33(2):7
old nature crucified with Christ, 40:6
three men on crosses, 34(2):1
cruelty: mothers; doctors, 33(2):20
Cyprian, Saint, 36(3):13
damnation, 43:18; 48(1):6,7; 50:5
dance, 47:11
Daniel (prophet), 42:4; 44:33; 45:12; 47:2
darkness, 33(2):10; 36(1):6; 47:1; 48(2):4
David, King, 33(1):2,4,6; 33(2):2; 33(2):2;
34(1):1,4,9; 37:2; 46:8; 50:2,3,6
See also Saul, King
Against you alone have I sinned, 50:9
animal sacrifices, 50:21
conceived in iniquity, 50:10
cursed, 50:15
feigned insanity, 33(1):2,3,8; 33(2):4,12
just punishment of, 50:15
Nathan’s parable, 50:8
type of the Church, 50:22
Your sin is forgiven, 50:11,15,18
day(-light), 47:1
as prosperity, 41:6,16
death:
  bodily concerns, 48(2):7
  sleeper, rise from the dead, 45:12
  spirits; grave-cults, 48(1):15
defed, 38:16
  carnally-minded persons and, 38:3
  fear of speaking, 38:4
  humiliated, 38:4
  50:19
  bowed down to the very end, 37:10
called ‘sin’, 34(2):3
certainty of, 38:19
corporal and spiritual, 48(2):2
curse inflicted on first parents, 37:26
day of, is hidden, 34(1):14
devil, lord of, 50:9
Earth you are . . . , 47:13
fear of, 48(1):6
making-alive is promised us, 40:3
mortal body carried with us, 37:5
nearness of your own last day, 36(1):10
pain: sinners and the righteous, 33(2):25,26
punishment due to flesh, 50:10
shepherd of unbelievers, 48(2):2,3,4
soul troubled by imminence of, 42:7
temporal goods left behind, 48(2):7
untimely extinction, 48(1):11
when he sees the wise dying, 48(1):11
when you die, you will not be dead, 36(3):15
You fool . . . this very night . . . , 48(2):1,7
debt: anxiety, 45:3
condign punishment for debtor, 45:3
decadence, 50:24
deceit, 39:26
deer:
  longs for springs of water, 41:1,10
  rest their heads on each other, 41:4
  snakes killed by, 41:3
delight, 36(1):4,12; 39:3; 41:3,10; 50:13
deliverance, 48(2):5
Christ accused of having, 48(2):4
gods of the heathen, 49:2,6
You are the Son of God, 49:2
depth (the word), 41:13
36(3):13; 38:6; 39:3; 41:3,5,6; 42:2
all is before God, 37:14
earthly, 50:15
eternal, not temporal, goods, 43:2
for incorruption, 50:19
humans and animals, 35:12
Make known to me my end, 38:10
despair, 30(2):11; 50:5,7
36(3):5,13,15; 37:3; 38:15,18,21,22;
39:3; 40:9; 41:10,18; 44:1,25; 45:7;
47:3,9; 50:4
See also demon; Satan; serpent
children of, 44:12
corrupting the mind, 39:1
death and, 48(2):2
decays by praising Christ, 40:4
earthly needs and, 40:4
human enemy, 40:4
lord of death, 50:9
persecutions of the Church, 40:1
roaring lion, 49:29
ruler of this world, 34(1):4
temporal prosperity and, 40:4
worship in present life, 40:3
Diana, 45:7
Dido, 47:6
dignity, 48(1):16
Head and body of the Church, 37:6
disciples:
crucifixion and loss of hope, 46:7
man whose sight was restored, 39:26
discipline, 49:24; 50:24
disease, 47:4
dishonesty, 33(2):14
dissimilarity, 34(2):6
distress, 36(2):16; 37:13
divinization, 35:14
doctor, See physician.
Donatists, 33(2):7,19,22; 36(3):18,19,20
Donatus, 33(2):7; 35:9; 36(2):22,23
donkey: gentleness, 33(2):5
dream, 48(2):5,7
drum: crucifixion, 33(1):9; 33(2):2
drunkenness, 35:14
dust, 34(1):9; 43:25
dwelling, 48(1):2
ears: Let anyone . . . listen, 48(1):2
earth, 45:15
  hands of the ungodly, 36(3):13
earthlings, 48(1):3
  he has summoned all the earth, 49:3
land of the dying, 36(3):11
trembled with rising of Christ, 36(2):17
eat, 48(1):3
ecstasy, 34(2):6; 37:12
Egypt, 43:2; 46:6
elect: numerous, 47:9
Elijah, 33(2):17
Elisha: children jeered at, 44:1; 46:2
emptiness, 38:10,11
end of the world: Woe betide those . . . , 39:28
endurance, 33(2):24; 39:28; 42:3,5; 43:1,17; 45:1
people who hate, 36(2):1
suffering and, 36(2):6
enemies, 40:13; 41:18; 42:4; 43:10,11,13; 44:16; 49:26
commanded to love, 39:21
confounded and awed, 34(1):8
curse, 43:14
empty accusations by, 37:25
enjoined to pray for, 34(1):8; 37:4
gloating, 37:22-23
God will toss them like straw, 43:6-7
hate without reason, 37:25
invisible warfare, 34(1):4
Let them be thrust back . . . , 39:26
loving to limit of strength, 39:4
some flatter, some insult, 39:26
united in conspiracy, 40:9
enigma, 48(1):5
enlightenment:
Arise, sleeper, rise from the dead, 48(2):4
entertainments, 39:9
envy, 49:26
of the prosperous, 36(1):9
secret, 36(1):9
wicked people, 36(1):3
Esau, 46:6
eternal fire
threats of, 49:7
beatitude, 36(2):4
kingdom we are to receive, 36(3):6
One thing I have begged . . . , 41:5
promise: May the Lord keep him safe, 40:3
eternal punishment:
weeping and gnashing of teeth, 36(1):11
eucharist:
bread of angels, 33(1):6
How can this man give his flesh to eat, 33(2):12
hunger: salvation, 33(1):6,10
scandal, 33(1):8
Evil, 40:10; 47:9; 48(1):6
See also Adam and Eve
evil-doer: does harm to self, 34(1):11
example:
children and parents, 48(1):14
lap of the great, 50:3,5
preachers, 36(3):20
existence: true being, 38:7
extinction: death seen as, 48(1):11
eye, 41:7
disease, 39:21
sight, 36(3):15
wanton glances, 50:3
anger and, 36(1):9
believing we shall come to see, 44:25
tongue: Christ goes to sleep, 44:25
brought to life by, 49:5
centurion's trust, 46:12
children growing up in, 50:24
children of Abraham, 46:11
Christ dwells in heart through, 45:5
cleansing the heart, 44:25
diversity of languages, 44:24
embarrassed to proclaim in public, 39:16
forgetting: Christ goes to sleep, 34(1):3
head for a fall, 38:14
healing, before Christ, 36(3):4
heaven and, 48(2):2
inheritance to last forever, 36(2):8
interior eyes, 36(2):8
invisible, 38:10
jeering at believers, 48(2):3
Jesus and the stormy sea, 34(1):3
Justice hidden in my heart, 39:17
listen first, see later, 47:7
made new by, 39:18
moving mountains, 45:6
righteousness and, 36(1):6; 39:27; 50:18
seeing good in others, 33(2):15
Show us the Father, 37:11
spiritual armor, 34(1):2
support for the heart, 33(2):24
united with God, 33(2):9
wavering: too difficult, 40:4
you see if you believe, 45:12
faithful, the:
God's tent on earth, 41:9
living stones, 44:31
numbers beyond reckoning, 39:10
sons of men, 48(1):3
false accusations, 40:8
by enemies, 37:25
made against Christ, 36(2):17; 37:19
family: oppositions in household, 44:11
famine, 33(2):17
fantasies, 37:11
fasting, 43:16
almmsgiving related to, 42:8
lunching on prayers, 42:8
temptation of Christ, 34(2):3
father:
  household opposition, 44:11
  son and, 50:24
fear, 41:14; 47:6; 50:13
  chaste, 38:10
  face of God, 50:16
  justice; guide, 39:20
  of proclaiming, 39:16
  of saying something bad, 38:4
  Peter’s heart, 39:23
  righteous will fear and be afraid, 39:6
  source of sin, 58:2
  suffering, 36(2):17
  those who kill body, not the soul, 36(3):13
fear of God:
  Christ teaches, 33(2):18
  lacking in sinners, 35:2
  Lord’s angel will deliver, 33(2):11
  nothing lacking to those who fear, 33(2):14
  feast day, 41:9
  feet, 38:2
  charity, 33(2):10
Felician of Musti, 36(2):20,22
fight, 35:6
  finished (the word), 45:1
fire, 34(1):11; 37:3; 40:12; 49:7
  I have come to set fire . . ., 45:13
firmament
  children of, 47:1
  people worthy to be named, 47:1,8
  first-born: rights of, 46:6
fish: one hundred and fifty-three, 49:9
flattery, 39:26; 49:1,26
fleece, 45:10
flesh:
  cravings of, 36(1):5
  infirmity, 40:5
  no power to speak, 42:6
  persecutors, 36(3):13
  thigh as, 44:13
  Two in one flesh (Church), 40:1
Florentius of Hadrumetum, 36(2):20
food, 50:19
foolishness, 33(2):4; 39:8
foot of pride, 35:17,18
forbearance, 38(2):1
forgiveness: cool refreshment, 38:22
  forgiveness of sin, 41:12
  bad conscience, 45:3
  catechumens, 41:1
  Christ as blasphemer, 36(3):3
  hidden; unseen, 50:11
  hope, 50:5
  praise God for, 39:26
  trust in God, 33(2):26
  fortiitude, 42:3
Fortunatus, 36(2):20
fountain of life, 41:2
freedom, 34(1):15
  frogs, 45:10
fruit(-s), 48(2):4
funeral: grandiose, for rich man, 48(1):13; 48(2):1
furnace, 36(3):9
the three young men in, 33(2):22
future:
  all things are present with God, 49:18
  certainty of outcomes, 43:10
  meaning of in store, 36(3):15
  prophets refer to as if past, 43:8
  prudent provision for, 48(1):12
  speaker sees as present, 49:12
future life:
  See also eternal life; heaven
  bodily needs in, 50:19
  face-to-face with God, 43:5
  glory; inheritance, 36(2):8
  God correcting a person in this life, 50:15
  God’s promise, 40:3
  reward, 36(2):16
Gaius Seius, 33(2):13
generations: ancestors and children, 48(1):15
  generosity, 36(2):13
gentiles, 33(1):7; 33(2):2,10; 35:8; 43:12; 44:16,25; 45:6,8,10,15; 46:3,5,9; 47:3,6,14
  companions of the north, 47:3
  first to understand the prophets, 47:7
  Tyre as symbol of, 44:27
gentle people, 36(1):12
  gentleness, 33(2):5; 44:15
  gifts:
    from Christ, 36(2):14
    God has given what you are to return to him, 44:9
    God the author of all, 45:15
    temporal and eternal, 35:7
    treasures in heaven, 44:27
    what was not received from God, 44:7
    withdrawn by God, 34(1):6
    future; inheritance, 36(2):8
    hope, 37:5
    sufferings, 36(2):9
    way of Christ’s lowliness, 37:16
  gluttony: Esau, 46:6
goal: future life, 38:6
God:
  See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity; ungodly
  acknowledged in her houses, 47:4
  all things past and future are with God, 49:18
  anger, 37:3,5
  armor of, 34(1):2
  attributes, 34(1):7; 35:13

Volume III/16
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

author of all his gifts, 45:15
avenger, 49:28
Be still and see that I am God, 45:14
cares for all equally, 45:9
calling near to, 34(2):6
carriage in place, 45:9
everything found in Him, 36(1):12
care of all his gifts, 45:15
coming near to, 34(2):6
carriage in place, 45:9
counting fault with, 44:17
counting God, 45:16
counting God, 45:16
forgetting, 49:29
glory, 39:4
God’s anointing of God, 44:19
goodness of, 41:12
gracious countenance, 45:9
hearts far from, 48(2):1
his speaking is eternal, 44:5
hunger, 49:19
invisible realities of, 41:2,8
judgment(-s), 47:11
justice and mercy, 35:10; 44:18
justice of his wrath, 37:7
unerring judgment, 34(1):9
unfathomable abyss, 41:14
of wrongdoing, 42:7
king has desired your beauty, 44:26,27
king you are marrying, 44:26

knowledge:
knows us; yet he tests us, 36(1):1
of things before they were created, 49:18
secret and supreme, 49:18
light and spring, 41:2
love for us, 34(1):12
I will show myself to him, 37:11
loyalty required by, 49:15
mercy, See mercy
miraculous interventions, 43:4
no beginning; new for us, 39:4
nothing comparable to, 34(1):13
omnipresence, 43(2):6; 39:27; 44:20; 49:18
our food and drink, 50:19
petition for temporal goods, 43:2
possessed for our enrichment, 34(1):12
possession; possessed, 36(1):4
power manifested, 45:9; 49:18
praising God by doing all things well, 34(2):16
prayer to, See prayer.
promises deferred, 39:2
refuge and strength, 45:2-3,4,7,13
reign over all nations, 46:10
seeking a reality above the soul, 41:8
seeking Him in material creatures, 41:8
seen by the pure of heart, 42:4
seen only with the mind, 41:7
silence of, 34(2):12
soul athirst for, 41:5
spoke only one Word, 44:5
strikes and heals, 50:11
supporter, 45:11,13,15
taunt: Where is your God, 41:6,10,19
testimony: I am your God, 49:14
the true “is”, 38:7
thinking of, as depraved, 44:17
throned in human hearts, 45:9;
46:10
tongue and scribe’s pen, 44:6,10
united with, in faith, 33(2):9
watching the wicked, 33(2):21; 35:3
godless, 47:3
persecution of the righteous, 34(1):14
seed will perish, 36(3):10
gods, 46:9,13
distinction among them, 49:2
God as maker of; 49:1
God as source of terror to, 49:2
shall die as mortals die, 49:2
stone, 41:6
gold, 36(1):12; 44:24
refined from straw, 36(1):11
Goliath, 33(1):2,3,4,10
good and evil:
See also sin; wickedness
fear of finding one’s own iniquity, 35:3
found in all worldly activities, 36(1):2
God’s bounty shared by all people, 42:2
innocence of evil, 46:2
intention related to, 39:26
mingled in the Church, 34(1):10
paths: broad or narrow, 39:6,7
people: just and unjust, 36(2):1
restrain tongue from evil, 33(2):18
threshing-floor, 47:9
turn from evil; do good, 33(2):19;
36(3):8
good example: good lives, 50:1
good fortune: praise God for, 48(2):9; 50:15
good thief, 34(1):14; 39:15
good will, 35:1
ladders and wings, 38:2
treasure of the poor, 36(2):13
good works, 36(1):8; 41:9; 46:10;
48(1):9,16; 48(2):3; 49:22,31
All nations, clap your hands, 46:3
Do good, and live in the land, 36(1):4
honor of God; in public, 44:29
pride, 44:29
rich in, 44:28
weary of doing, 36(3):2,7
works of the godless will perish, 36(3):10
goodness
fallen silent even for good words, 38:4
imitation of the good, 39:6
thank God for, 49:30
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

gospel: beauty of, 49:4

governing: lowly status as subject to, 48(1):2

grace, 35:10; 36(1):3; 38:2; 42:7; 43:26; 44:7,17; 45:10,11,13; 47:3,4,8; 49:9,31; 50:18

bedews your lips, 44:7,8,10,17

confessing weakness, 38:18

given gratis, 49:31

gnirous worship, 43:15,16

heaven = the concern of, 44:8

grass, 48(2):3

gratitude, 36(2):13; 39:3

grave-cults, 48(1):15

greatness, 38:8; 39:6

greed, 34(1):12; 38:11; 48(1):2

loves unity, 39:28

source of sin, 38:2

unchecked, 39:7

groaning, 34(2):6; 37:13,14; 43:2

grumbling, 48(1):1

guile, 49:26,27

guilt, 36(2):3; 39:6

hair, 38:12

hands: Clap your hands . . ., 46:3,9,12

earthly; non-worshipers, 48(1):1

earthly; true, 36(3):14

eternal, 36(2):16

everlasting confession, 44:33

God went up amid shouts of joy, 46:7

love of good days, 33(2):17

prayers heard, 33(2):8

resurrection and, 36(1):9

temporary, 48(1):1

ungodly people, 36(1):3; 39:6; 36(3):14

happy day (expression), 43:19-20

harmony, 49:30

peace: bedroom of the heart, 35:5

precious jewels of virtue in, 33(2):15

proclaiming with the lips only, 39:15

rumination in, 46:1

secrets of, 43:19-20,21

true wealth in, 37:24

uplifted, 35:16; 50:15

virginity of, 39:1

heat, 50:23

heathens, 49:6

heaven, 35:12; 36(3):6; 38:18,21; 43:15; 44:8; 49:5,13,22

beg to live in Lord's house forever, 38:6

dwelling fixed in, 48(2):3

faith and, 48(2):2

God has blessed you, 44:8

how to put money in, 38:12

Lay up for yourselves treasure in, 38:12

meaning: all saints, 49:11


treasure in, never fails, 36(3):8; 44:27

heavens, 41:7

proclaiming justice, 49:13

word = 'peoples', 49:11

heal, 48(1):6

heirs: include extra brother in heaven, 48(1):14

hell, 33(2):25; 41:14; 48(2):2,4,7,8

help: from direction of mountains, 35:9

heretical nuns, 44:31

heretics, 35:9; 39:1; 45:12; 47:10; 49:3,9

Hermon, 41:12

Herod, 47:5

hidden things, 45:1

Volume III/16
holocaust, 49:15,16; 50:21,23

definition, 49:15

sacrifices done away with, 39:12,13

37:9; 40:3; 41:11; 45:8; 48(2):1; 48(2):11;
49:4,5; 50:10,16,17

miracles and, 45:4

sevenfold gifts of, 49:9

homes: tents and, 48(1):15

honor, 48(2):11

37:5,15,28; 38:9; 39:6,15; 41:10,19; 42:2;
43:8,16; 46:7; 48(2):5; 48(2):5; 49:1;
50:19

children of God, 49:2

disconcerted in bad times, 36(2):9

for what we do not see, 38:13

future happenings, 43:15

pregnant woman as symbol of, 39:28

present and future, 40:3

simply ask for God himself, 39:7

illusion, 36(2):9

lodged in God, 36(2):9

set in human beings, 36(3):20

shelter of God’s wings, 35:13 uncertainty,
38:19

horse, 33(2):5

house: Distribute its houses, 47:14

household: oppositions within, 44:11

human being(-s):

becoming like foolish beasts, 48(2):11

called “gods” (deified), 49:2

called angels, 49:11

Christ as only a human, 40:1

conceived in iniquity, 50:10

depth, 41:13

duty: live according to God’s will, 48(1):1

gifts given to, 36(2):13

humility re gifts, 38:18

live on word of God, 36(3):5

not neglected on earth, 40:3

sons of men, 35:12

within; spiritual, 48(2):11

imitation:

crowds on broad road, 39:7

Do what they tell you . . . , 49:23

immortality, 33(2):8,9,19; 35:6; 37:5,11;
40:1; 44:15, 44:21; 47:1; 48(2):2;
49:19; 50:19,22,23

impunity: David’s sin, 50:18

war against God, 45:13

imposters, 36(1):2

Incarnation:

flesh from Abraham’s stock, 47:15

flesh to die for us, 39:5

future; accomplished, 50:17

God with flesh, 46:8

God-Man, human for our sake, 36(2):15

likeness of sinful flesh, 49:5

Son leaving Father, 44:12

Word united with flesh, 44:3

incest, 36(2):20

incorruption, 50:19

infant baptism, 50:10

infinity, 36(2):16

inheritance: coheirs, 49:2

Christ slays the devil (Goliath), 33(1):4

Christian’s business to be lowly, 33(2):23

confessing one’s sins, 34(2):3

disciplined by, 38:18

God comes down to the humble, 33(2):23; 39:20; 50:21

hearing with, 44:25

holding fast to Christ, 33(1):10

meekness, 33(2):5

unwilling to be praised, 33(2):5

wholeness, 35:17

hunger, 33(2):19; 42:1; 49:19

hymn, 43:13

good word from the heart, 44:9

song of praise, 39:4


hyssop, 50:12

identity: discover who we are, 46:2

Idithun, 38:12,3,4,6,10,11,13,17,18,22

idolaters, 34(2):1,5,8,14

45:10


bad will, 35:4

pardoned and, 35:3

sin/mercy, 50:6,7

illiteracy: book of the world, 45:7

illusions, 37:11

image of God, 38:11

coming close to God, 34(2):6

humans and animals, 48(1):16

mind or reason, 42:6

not neglected on earth, 40:3

sons of men, 35:12

within; spiritual, 48(2):11

Martin Luther, 47:22

mediator, 33(1):8

mercy, 35:3

nothing compared with HIM WHO IS, 38:9

nothing identical to Man, 44:4

nothing like God, 44:4

nothing new, 36(2):13

nothing like God, 36(2):13

nothing new, 36(2):13

nothing compared with HIM WHO IS, 38:9

privileges; and animals, 35:12

two types: Adam and Christ, 35:12

human body:

endued with health, 37:11

dead because of sin, 39:20; 42:7; 50:10

redemption of, 37:5

human condition, 42:2

displeasing things as self-made, 44:9

living in uncertainty, 38:19

suffering; strength from the Lord, 36(2):17

humiliation, 42:3

belly sticking to the ground, 43:23-24,25

both punishment and grace, 38:17

defeat, 38:4

fallen silent, 38:4

humility, 38(2):1; 41:12; 46:2,13; 48(1):3;
50:13

blessing the Lord, 33(2):3,4

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Volume III/16
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

kingdom prepared for you, 36(3):14
inheritance, 36(2):8; 46(6); 48(2):9
iniquity, 39:1,21; 40:8; 42:3; 44:18; 48(1):6
attachment to, 35:1
blood (usage of term), 50:19
blot out my iniquity, 50:6,14
derived from Adam, 50:10
eating, 48(2):8
self-destroying, 34(1):11
insanity, 33(1):8
instruction: hated, 49:24
insult, 34(2):8,9,11; 39:26; 43:15; 48(1):11
integrity, 36(1):2
intention:
good works, 44:29
liability for punishment, 40:9
morality of spoken words and, 39:26
people not good, but with good intentions, 39:26
preparing self to sin, 50:3
interest on loans, 36(3):6; 38:5
interpretation, 36(1):2
invisibility, 38:10
invoke (the word), 41:13
is (the word), 38:7
Isaac, 36(1):1; 36(3):1; 46:13
Israel, 33(2):6; 36(3):12; 46:3; 49:11,14,19
crippling of, 44:20
God’s plan for, 43:2
god given to, 34(1):7
one who guards, 43:22
ivory palaces, 44:23
Jacob, 43:5; 46:13; 49:14
elder shall serve the younger, 46:6
man without guile, 44:20
name changed to Israel, 44:20
oil poured on stone by, 44:20
thigh, 44:20
Jacob’s ladder, 38:2, 44:20
jealousy, 33(1):2; 33(2):6; 44:22
Jerusalem, 33(1):5; 36(1):9,12; 36(3):4; 47:3
beauty of Christ’s gospel, 49:4
Let the walls be rebuilt, 50:22
Vision of Peace, 50:22
witnesses to Christ in, 49:5
Jesus Christ, 34(1):1; 35:9,12; 38:9; 42:5; 44:10,18; 48(1):2
See also Bridegroom; Christian life;
Church; Incarnation; Second Coming;
Son of God; Son of Man; Word of God
accept the needy and poor man, 40:1,2
all nations are his subjects, 44:14
Angel of Great Counsel, 33(2):11
Anyone who knows himself to be without sin, 50:8
apostles and, 35:9
Arise, Lord, help us, 43:26
ascension, 45:1; 46:7,10
Church entrusted to us, 49:5
asleep, arise, 43:22; 45:5
beautiful [fifteen descriptors], 44:3
beauty of, 43:16; 49:5
came to save sinners, 49:31
carried in his own hands . . . , 33(2):2
century and, 38:18
chrism (the word), 44:19
Church and, See Church.
claims all sin as his own, 37:16
Come, children, and hear me, 33(2):16
compassion; affection, 33(1):9
confessing the name of, 43:21
cornerstone, 47:3
crucifixion, 33(2):24; 39:15
bones not broken, 34:1,14
come down from the cross, 49:5
Jews and, 48(1):5
Jews did not recognize Christ, 49:5
King of the Jews, 46:4
mocking the cross, 46:2,7; 48(1):11
seandal to the Jews, 44:3
why have you forsaken me, 49:5
David prefigured, 33(1):4
David’s Lord, 33(1):6
death, See below: passion and death
deceitful praise by devil, 40:4
Destroy this temple . . . , 40:12
divine deliverer, 40:2
divinity:
contemplation of, 40:2
godhead lies hidden in, 40:1
hidden God of gods, 49:5
same as the Father, 44:15
Do not weep over me, 40:12
drawing near to the light, 33(2):10
dwells in hearts through faith, 45:5
empty accusations against him, 37:19
enemies ask: When will his name disappear, 40:1,7
enemies plan killing him, 40:10
enemy seeking his life, 39:24
enobled in God’s presence, 45:4
false witnesses against him, 36(2):17
Father, forgive them . . . , 39:25
feigned friends of, 37:17
following Christ, 39:6
foremost place in the book, 39:14
foundation, 47:4
fout of life, 35:15
future judge subjected to judgment, 50:9
Gentiles and, 33(1):7
Gifts to humans, 36(2):14
God and man, 44:19
God born from the human race, 44:13
God of gods, 49:1
God of the whole earth, 46:9

Volume III/16
Volume III/16

gods, if any, were made through, 49:1
Good Teacher, 44:4
He [Moses] wrote about me, 47:1
Head of all the righteous of all time, 36(3):4
headstone of the corner, 39:1
hold fast to his body and blood, 39:13
Hosanna, Son of David, 33(2):5
humanity:
death and, 34(2):3
his death was no sham, 37:26
ignorance of Christ, 34(2):2
phantom flesh, 37:26
praying as proper to, 34(2):5
raised the human up to heaven, 40:2
seed of David, 46:8
surpassing all other humans, 44:7
ture flesh inherited from Adam, 37:27
humility, 33(2):7; 50:12
obedience unto death, 33(1):9
this is my body, 33(1):10; 33(2):2
hunger and thirst, 34(2):4
hungry for our sake, 49:19
I am needy and poor, 39:27
I am the light, 42:4
I am the living bread, 33(2):15
I am the truth, 39:18
I am thirsty, 34(2):4
I am with you throughout all days, 46:7; 47:14
I announced the news . . . 39:10,11
immolated as our passover, 39:13
innocence, 40:14
jeered at, 46:8
judge, 44:29
King of glory, 47:1
kingship not of this world, 47:5:15
knowledge of last day, 36(1):1
Korah, 41:2
lawgiver, 50:8
leader and his followers, 39:25
leaving his mother, the Jewish race, 44:12
led like a sheep to the slaughter, 44:15
life through, 48(2):2
lion, 49:29
Lord most high and terrible, 46:4
mediator between God and man, 36(2):20
members in him: My God, my God, why . . . 40:6
miracles, 39:15; 47:5
mountain in prophecy, 45:6
name: Anointed God, 44:21
new Adam; life-giving Spirit, 37:15
not put to shame, 33(2):10
our eternal life with, 48(1):10
passion and death
bones not broken, 33(2):24
Christ’s ‘ignorance’ of, 34(2):2
come down from the cross, 34(2):11; 40:13; 44:1
crucified in weakness, 37:27
disciples lose hope, 46:7
Father, forgive them . . . 44:15
glory of martyrs, 40:1
godhead did not die, 40:2
green wood, 40:12
guards claim disciples removed his body, 36(2):17
Head and his body, 37:6
imitation of, 48(1):3
Jews and, 37:11
led like sheep to slaughter, 38:3
My God, my God, why . . . 34(2):5; 37:6,27
My soul is sorrowful, 40:6
Peter’s denial, 37:17
proof: he is only human, 40:1
psalm 37, and gospel accounts, 37:6
scourged, 40:6
silence at his trial, 37:20
Peoples will fall under your assault, 44:16
power and wisdom of God, 46:10
power of, 40:13
to come down from cross, 34(2):11
to lay down his life, 33(2):7
to raise his own flesh, 40:12
to take up life again, 34:10
Whom do you seek . . . 34(2):3
praying, 34(2):5
present in his members, 40:11
priest, 36(2):20
proclaims, suffers, is glorified, 39:15
promises kept by, 44:15; 47:7
prophecies made by, 39:1
propitiation for our sins, 33(2):26
psalms = voice of Christ, 37:6
resurrection, 40:12; 43:26; 47:1
earth trembled, 36(2):17
flesh arose, 49:5
soldiers guarding his tomb, 37:19
risen among the pagans, 43:22
robe gleaming white like snow, 50:12
rock, 39:3
sackcloth; fasting, 34(2):3
salvation comes from the Jews, 47:11
seen today as only a man, 40:1
sharing in his suffering, 36(1):9
sheep voiceless before its shearer, 37:20
silence of, 49:6
43:2; 44:7; 50:9
sinners and, 48(2):1
sleeps when faith is forgotten, 34(1):3
speaking in person of his body (Church), 37:6

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

stone rejected by the builders, 44:20
suffering and, 49:5
suffering undeservedly, 50:9
suffering: as example, 36(2):4
teacher, 33(2):16; 36(1):1
Tell my brothers . . ., 44:23
There was no one to seek my soul, 39:24
This is our God, 47:15
touching, restraining, inspiring us, 49:3
trust in, 38:12
trusting in the least of his followers, 40:11
truth, 38:12
trusting in the least of his followers, 40:11
truth, 37:11
Unto the end, 45:1
Way, Truth, and Life, 42:4
Weakened (for a time), 40:14
what Christ did for us, 36(2):15
Whosoever has seen me, Philip, 45:1
whole life as beautiful, 44:3
why have you forsaken me, 41:17; 43:2
will come as judge with mighty power, 37:20
You [Christ] have a demon, 35:17; 48(2):4
48(2):4
See also circumcision; Israel
Christ as, 44:12
Christ’s kinfolk, 37:17
converts, 45:6
Crucifixion of Christ and, 33(2):10; 40:1,13; 46:2; 48(1):5;
defeated by their own evil, 34(1):11
did not recognize Christ, 45:12
faithlessness, 46:12
gave Christ evil for good, 44:7
hate for Christ, 37:25
kill Christ for sake of national place, 40:12
loose of kingdom, 39:28
promised land, 44:8
rooted out from city, 40:12
salvation (Christ) comes from, 47:11
saw no beauty in Messiah, 44:3
signs: circumcision and unleavened bread,
39:13
try to trap Jesus, 50:8
victories over powerful forces, 43:2
47:9; 48(2):9
John the Baptist, 35:9,18; 46:11; 49:11; 50:13
Jordan (river), 41:12
journey, 34(1):6
joy, 33(2):9; 35:14; 36(2):8; 38:2; 39:11;
43:16,19-20; 45:8; 48(2):5
bones will dance for joy, 47:11; 50:13
Clap your hands . . ., 46:3
eternally present face of God, 41:9
God gladdens my newness, 42:5
in prayer, 34(2):6
leaping for joy, carrying their sheaves,
36(3):7
Judah: name means “confession”, 47:11
Judas, 34(1):10; 36(2):2; 40:8,9,11; 49:9
judge: appointment of, 36(2):22
attention to punishment, 44:18
judgment day, 36(1):3,7,10; 36(3):6; 43:15;
44:24; 47:9; 48(1):5
abyss, 35:10
certain people will share in judging, 49:8
certainty as fact; uncertainty as time,
36(1):1
choice ceases, 36(1):1
Come, you whom my Father has blessed,
49:13
certain people will share in judging, 49:8
certainty as fact; uncertainty as time,
36(1):1
choice ceases, 36(1):1
44:25; 45:6,10,12; 46:5,6,7; 47:2-3;
48(2):4
See also circumcision; Israel
Christ as, 44:12
Christ’s kinfolk, 37:17
converts, 45:6
Crucifixion of Christ and, 33(2):10; 40:1,13;
46:2; 48(1):5;
defeated by their own evil, 34(1):11
did not recognize Christ, 45:12
faithlessness, 46:12
gave Christ evil for good, 44:7
hate for Christ, 37:25
kill Christ for sake of national place, 40:12
loose of kingdom, 39:28
promised land, 44:8
rooted out from city, 40:12
salvation (Christ) comes from, 47:11
saw no beauty in Messiah, 44:3
signs: circumcision and unleavened bread,
39:13
try to trap Jesus, 50:8
victories over powerful forces, 43:2
47:9; 48(2):9
John the Baptist, 35:9,18; 46:11; 49:11; 50:13
Jordan (river), 41:12
journey, 34(1):6
joy, 33(2):9; 35:14; 36(2):8; 38:2; 39:11;
43:16,19-20; 45:8; 48(2):5
bones will dance for joy, 47:11; 50:13
Clap your hands . . ., 46:3
eternally present face of God, 41:9
God gladdens my newness, 42:5
in prayer, 34(2):6
leaping for joy, carrying their sheaves,
36(3):7
Judah: name means “confession”, 47:11
See also heaven.
kingdoms, 45:10,13
knock(-ing), 33(1):1,4,7; 39:27
knowledge:
ability to bear, 36(1):1
divine and human, 49:18
tests: God causes us to know, 36(1):1
Korah:
children of, 41:2;
43:1,6-7,10,16,17,19-20; 44:1;
45:1,4,7; 46:2,7; 47:1
the name, 46:2
ladder, 38:2
angels ascending and descending, 44:20
lamb, 38:3; 44:6
land:
Church as Lord’s land, 36(1):4
eternal, 36(3):11
inheritance of the gentle, 36(1):12
Jewish people, 44:8
language(-s), 50:19
tongues express one faith, 44:24
last day, See judgment day.
law, 38:10; 40:14
Christ brings law to perfection, 45:1
experience the sweetness of, 45:1
mind vs. members, 44:7
promised land and, 45:1
put into hearts, 45:6
reflecting night and day, 36(3):5
Word of God and, 50:8
Lazarus and the rich man, 33(2):25; 38:22;
48(1):10; 48(2):1,7
leaping across, 38:1;
23,5,6
learning: learner is humble, 50:13
leave, 39:13
leisure, 36(1):2
leaves, 46:6
letter and spirit, 33(1):7
life:
Christ’s power over death, 40:10
daily pleasures, 48(1):10
human = just a few days, 36(2):16
longing for good days, 33(2):17
make known to me the number of my days,
38:5-7,9,10,22
promised in present and in future, 40:3,5
shortness of, 35:13; 36(3):1
successive stages of, 38:9
travel; no settling down, 34(1):6
37:12,15; 38:6,14
creation of, 47:1
drawing near to Christ, 33(2):10
one reality with truth, 42:4
lily, 47:8
lion, 39:12; 40:4; 44:6; 49:29
listen(-ing), 33(1):1,4; 33(2):16; 48(1):2,3,5;
49:14,23; 50:5
delight and gladness, 50:13
hear first, then see, 44:25
only when you are God’s people, 49:14
rumination in the heart, 46:1
loans: interest on, 36(3):6
righteous persons, 36(3):6
lodger, 38:21
longing, 38:6
As a deer longs . . . , 41:1,10
contemplation of the Lord forever, 41:5
for invisible realities of God, 41:8
Lord’s Prayer:
brothers to Christ, 48(1):8
Forgive us our debts, 38:14
Lot (and wife), 33(1):5; 36:13
love, 37:11; 39:20; 44:28
appropriate, 39:28
bride of Christ wounded with, 37:5
carnal, jealousy, 35(2):6
Creator in the creature, 39:8
debased, 33(2):6
enemies, 39:1
God’s saving help postponed, 34(2):9
grown cold = silence of the heart, 37:14;
39:1
holocaust = wholly on fire, 49:15
I am wounded by love, 44:16
paired commandments: God and
neighbor, 33(2):10
runners’ course, 39:11
strong as death, 47:13
within, 44:29
loyalty: all that God requires of us, 49:15
Lucilla, 36(2):19
lung: as pride, 50:12
lust, 33(2):6; 35:10; 39:3; 41:3; 50:3,5,24
lying, 38:4
lyre: and psaltery, 42:5
Maccabees, 33(2):22; 36(3):9
Majorinus, 36(2):19
malediction, 40:9
malevolence, 39:26
malice, 34(1):11; 49:26
man, 33(1):3
manure, 49:7
Marratius, 36(2):20
marriage, 35:5; 44:1
martyrdom: motive or pain, 34(2):13
37:3; 39:1; 40:4; 41:19; 43:1; 47:13
celebrate birthdays of, 39:16
confessing the name of Christ, 43:21
falling asleep they arouse Christ, 43:22
growth of the Church, 40:1
mighty gentleness, 44:15
number of, 49:9
passion of Christ and, 40:1
soul does not die, 40:2
swallowed up alive, 34(2):15
unconquered souls, 36(3):13
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 34(2):3; 47:15; 50:10
Massa Candida, 49:9
material goods: longing for, 35:13
materialism: things of the spirit and, 38:3
Matthias, Apostle, 49:9
Maximian (i-ists), 35:9; 36(2):19,22,23
condemnation of, 36(2):20,21,22
council proceedings against, 36(2):20
medicine, 37:5
meditation, 36(3):5
meekness, 33(2):5
Melchizedek, 33(1):5,6,7; 33(2):2
mercy, 33(1):9; 35:12,14; 36(3):6; 39:2,19,20;
40:6; 41:15,16; 42:2; 43:15; 45:13; 46:13;
49:7,28; 50:1,6,11
Christ’s wounded members, 39:20
Do not sit in judgment . . . , 42:7
God postpones the last day, 36(1):1
God’s justice in this world, 36(1):2
God’s manifold mercies, 35:11
heaven and earth, 35:7,8
immense, 50:14
love God for his mercy, 44:18
recipient of, as neighbor, 48(1):14
sacrifice and, 44:27
sinning knowingly and, 50:6
merit, 36(3):6; 48(2):3; 49:9,31
Messiah, 35:13; 44:3; 50:13
metaphor: tongue and pen of a scribe, 44:6,10
midacl, 36(1):7
milk, 33(1):6; 38:3
millstone, 36(1):2
mind, 44:6; 49:28
childish cast of, 46:2
devil corrupting, 39:1
fixed on God alone, 48(2):4
gift, 36(2):13
governs body, 41:7
image of God, 42:6; 48(2):11
understanding and, 42:6
miracles, 35:8; 43:4; 45:4,15
misery, 38:4
misery, 39:5
misfortune, 41:6,9; 49:22
mockery, 46:2,7; 48(1):11; 48(2):4
money, 48(2):4
See also wealth

good use = lending to Christ, 48(1):9
keeping it safe, 48(1):12
money-lenders, 36(3):6; 38:11
moral standards, 50:24
mortality, 37:5; 42:2; 50:10
Moses, 36(2):12; 36(3):20; 40:13,14; 47:1;
48(1):5; 49:9,14; 50:8
mother:
apparent cruelty of, 33(2):20
breast milk, 33(1):6

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Volume III/16
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

obedience, 41:9; 49:23
occasions of sin, 50:3
oil: visible and invisible, 44:19
old age, 36(2):16; 36(3):1,9
Old Covenant, 38:9
Old Testament:
earthly blessings desired in, 35:13
promise re temporal goods, 34(1):7
prophecies, 40:14
olive, 46:13
original sin: forbidden fruit, 47:9
Through one man sin entered . . . , 50:10
overcoming: two kinds of people, 34(1):8
ownership: God as owner, 49:18
greed, 39:7
pagans, 39:16; 40:1,14; 41:2,6; 43:12,22; 48(2):1
pain, 34(2):13; 37:4; 42:5
body’s distress, 42:6
corrective, 40:6
God’s precept, 38:17
keeping silent from good words, 38:4
love and, 37:5
relief on bed of, 40:5
scourging, 37:24
silence from good words, 38:4
Pancratius of Badias, 36(2):20
parable, 48(1):5
paradise: today you will be with me, 39:15
paralysis: inner person, 36(3):3
pardon, 35:3; 50:8
party, 41:9
passions: control, 39:9
pastimes, 40:5
path: narrow or broad, 39:6,7; 43:17
Paul, apostle, Saint, 35:8,9; 39:3; 43:1,21; 44:20,22,32; 45:7; 46:5; 47:6,14; 48(1):3
Barnabas and, 33(2):19
bound in Jerusalem, 36(2):6
glorious in his preaching, 44:22
good days, 33(2):17
slandered, 49:27
taken up to third heaven, 37:12
throat on judgement day, 49:9
blood of the heart, 35:5
delight in abundance of, 36(1):12
everlasting, 33(2):23
husband and wife, 33(2):8
none in my bones, 37:6
seek; pursue, 33(2):19
sin and, 45:3
Why do you disquiet me, 33(2):19
peoners, 36(3):16
penance: ashamed of, 50:8
penitent, 47:5; 50:15
penitential psalm, 44:18
Pentecost, 45:8; 49:4

perfection:
being: I AM WHO AM, 38:22
knowing one cannot be perfect, 38:14
like your Father in heaven, 49:28
not reached in this life, 38:13,14
perish, 44:22; 48(1):12,13; 48(2):4
unjust will perish entirely, 36(3):16
works of the godless, 36(3):10
Perpetua, Passion of, 47:13
being heard in time of, 33(2):22
bones not broken, 34(1):14
cause of right, 43:1
cause of the right, 34(2):13
Church: Head and body, 34(1):8
conversion and, 34(1):8
devil and the Church, 40:1
God as our ally, 34(1):4
God’s help is slow in coming, 34(2):9
God’s love and, 34(2):9
guilt, 36(1):3
never ceases, 39:1
ongoing, 34(2):8
persecutors, 36(3):13
swallowed up by, 34(2):15
perseverance, 36(1):7; 39:1,11; 41:11; 44:25; 50:19
Perseverantius of Theveste, 36(2):20
personification, 43:19-20
perversion, 48(1):1
Do you love me, 37:17
fear in his heart, 39:23
fear; denial of Christ, 37:17
hidden weakness, 41:13
rescue by angel, 33(2):22
walking on water, 39:9
would run ahead of Christ, 39:25
petition: carnal, 36(1):5
time for temporal goods, 43:2
Pharaoh, 33(1):3
Pharisae, 39:20,27; 48(1):5; 49:30
apparent cruelty of, 33(2):20
does what he sees is necessary, 34(2):13
love for the sick person, 47:4
piety, 46:13
pilgrim(-age), 38:21; 41:9,10; 42:2; 49:22
pit of misery, 39:3
piety, 50:6
plan (building), 44:4
planter (Paul), 35:9
Pomponius of Macri, 36(2):20
poor:
animal sacrifice and, 49:20
 generosity of the, 36(2):13
 prayers (borrowed money), 36(3):6
 promises for present labors, 48(1):10
 shall eat and be satisfied, 48(1):3
 sons of men, 48(1):3
 possessions, 48(2):5
 choosing God = having all, 34(1):12
 content with the necessary, 39:28
 Go and sell all you possess, 43:25
 master of or mastered by, 48(1):2
 pain of not possessing, 37:5
 potter, 38:17
 poverty: bless the Lord, 33(2):3
 cry out as a poor person, 33(2):11
 help for the needy, 36(1):2
 power: God, stretch out your hand, 34(1):7
 Praetextatus, bishop of Assuras, 36(2):20
 praise, 44:33
 bless the Lord at all times, 33(2):3, 4; 35:16; 48(2):10
 confession as, 34(2):10
 doing everything well, 34(2):16
 extends to ends of earth, 47:10
 forever and ever, 41:11; forever, 43:9
 glory to God, 39:4
 God extremely worthy of, 47:2
 God's house, 41:9
 leading good lives as, 47:10
 mercenary, 48(2):9,10
 mouth of a sinner, 47:2; 49:29
 open my lips . . ., 50:20
 righteousness, 50:23
 sacrifice of, 49:21,22,23,30,31
 seeking, 35:5
 sing a new song to the Lord, 39:4,13
 situations negate praise of God, 49:30
 spurious, 39:26
 thanksgiving, 44:9
 times of good fortune, 48(2):9
 when benefits are received, 48(2):10
 prayer, 36(1):8; 36(2):13; 44:33; 49:21
 See also praise
 crying out from a deep place, 39:3
 desire is continuous, 37:14
 Do not turn your face away, 50:14,16
 fallen silent when love stops, 37:14
 Go into your private room . . ., 35:5
 grown slack, 49:22
 happiness, when heard, 33(2):8
 the heart as private room for, 33(2):8
 interior desire never ceases, 37:14
 joy in, 34(2):6
 listen for my weeping, 38:20
 manipulating God, 39:4
 necessary petition: Send forth your light . . ., 42:4
 not heard, 33(2):9
 poor persons, 36(3):6
 profit to us, not to God, 39:4
 seeking things extraneous from God, 33(2):9
 temptation and, 34(2):3
 two wings: fasting and almsdeeds, 42:8
 waited and waited for the Lord, 39:2
 within me, 33(2):8; 34(2):5; 41:17
 preacher, -er, -ing, 35:8
 begetting children by, 44:23
 example to the faithful, 36(3):20
 pregnancy: symbol of hope, 39:28
 prelates: workers in the field, 36(1):2
 presence: of Abimelech, 33(1):7
 of God: keeping guard over conduct, 38:3
 pride, 33(1):4; 9:10; 33(2):4; 35:10,17,18;
 37:8,10; 38:18; 39:6,20,25; 41:12;
 44:29; 46:13; 47:6; 48(1):3; 48(2):2;
 50:4,12
 priest(-hood) Jewish, 39:13
 Levitical, 36(2):20
 order of Melchizedek, 33(1):5
 Primian, 36(2):19,20,21,23
 prize, 38:6, 8, 14; 40:11
 probation, 36(1):11
 proclamation: lips in opposition to heart, 39:15,17
 procreation: sexual union required, 44:4
 prodigal son, 47:3
 professions: integrity in, 36(1):2
 profit (money-lenders, 36(3):6
 promise:
 bones of Christians guarded, 33(2):24
 God delivers, 39:12
 not abandoned on earth, 40:3
 only what gospel promises, 39:28
 perfect accomplishment of, 39:12
 prophecies in scripture, 39:28
 property: all belongs to Creator, 49:17
 sold: proceeds given to apostles, 46:4
 prophesy(-ies; -ets), 33(1):7; 44:2
 banishing of wars, 45:13
 Church heard the promises, 47:7
 future as if already past, 43:8
 Nathan’s purpose, 50:8
 promises in scripture, 39:28
 requests phrased as desires, 34(1):8
 salvation, 37:28
 prosperity, 36(2):16; 41:6,16; 43:2,17
 danger to the soul, 50:4
 devil and, 40:4
 protection, 33(2):13
 providence:
 care, comforting, correcting, 39:27
 created beings as medium for, 43:5
 God does not abandon on earth, 40:3
 God helps through human agency, 34(1):6
 God’s plan for Israel, 43:2
 hear God in good words, 49:23
 purpose in Israel’s history, 43:2
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

steps directed by the Lord, 36(2):15
temporal needs and, 34(1):7
provocation, 34(1):11
prudence, 36(2):11; 48(1):12
psalms:
Christ speaks in, 39:5
listening to Christ in, 34(1):1
opening page of the book, 39:14
resurrection of Christ, 47:1
Songs of Ascents, 38:2
who is speaker in, 37:6
psaltery, 42:5; 48(1):5
punishment, 34(1):10; 37:5
banished from the face of God, 49:7
God turning toward sins, 50:14
as grace, 38:17
justice, 50:7
liability related to intention, 40:9
owing to us, 49:31
sin demands p., 44:18
purity, 39:21; 42:4,7; 44:25
Quintasius of Capsa, 36(2):20
rain, 39:27; 42:2; 45:10; 46:13
reality, 35:14,15
rebuke, 37:3,25; 38:2; 49:24,28
redemption, 33(2):26
bodies and, 50:19
by Christ alone, 48(1):8
cost of redeeming one’s soul, 48(1):9,13
seeking God, 34(1):15
reflection, 35:14
mind sees itself through itself, 41:7
refuges, 45:2,4
relaxation, 40:5
religion:
God as our allotted portion, 34(1):12
having appearance only, 47:13
honoring God with lips; heart far away, 37:17
remembering, 35:12; 37:2,11
repentance, 33(2):1; 36(1):2; 39:19,23;
48(2):4; 49:6,7,28; 50:1
rest, 36(1):1; 37:2,14; 48(2):6; 49:22
resurrection of the body, 34(2):1
equality with an angel, 36(1):10
hope for bodily pleasures, 43:16
vision reserved for, 43:5
retention: holding on to today, syllable, etc., 38:7
retirement, 36(2):16
retribution: judgment day, 36(2):2
reward, 36(3):9
doing bad things and, 33(2):18
earthly, 35:13
goal of following Christ’s way, 36(2):16
intention and, 40:9
rich, 33(2):14; 48(1):9
See also Lazarus and the rich man
blessed in this life, 48(2):8
death and Lazarus, 33(2):25
earthlings, 48(1):3
grandiose funerals for, 48(1):13; 48(2):1
poor and rich neighbors, 39:28
poor man who lay at rich man’s gate, 36(2):7
truly needy, 33(2):15
trust in God, not wealth, 44:28
righteous(-ness), 33(2):15; 35:3; 36(2):26; 48(1):12;
38:5,8,18; 39:3,9; 42:3,7,43:25; 44:17;
46:6; 48(2):3,4
believers, 39:6
bread as, 48(2):8
child of righteous parents, 36(3):1,2
Christ the Head of all since world began,
36(3):4
dominion over the wicked, 48(2):4,11
faith and, 36(1):6; 39:7,10; 50:18
heart, 35:16; 39:15
hunger and thirst for, 48(2):8
invisible enemies, 34(1):5
justice and, 39:19
measure of, 33(2):26
nothing derogatory in our lives, 34(1):4
pain of losing, 37:24
painful death, 33(2):25
persecuted, 34(1):14
person as God’s sword, 34(1):2
praise God always, 34(2):16
sacrifice, 50:23
scepter of righteous rule, 44:18
semblance of, 49:30
spirit is life through, 40:3
strengthened, 36(2):4,6
throne of Wisdom, 46:10
troubles of the, 33(2):23
usury, 36(3):6
vindication, 34(2):14
will possess the earth, 36(3):11
wisdom, 36(3):12
river: joy to God’s city, 45:8
rock, 39:9,25; 44:6
Roman law, 39:13
Rome, 44:23
Romulus, 44:23
root, 48(2):4
ruler(-s), 44:17
running, 33(2):10; 38:6,8; 39:11; 41:2,3
Sabbath, 37:2,5,10
never ceasing to pray, 37:14
remembering, 37:5,9,10,12,13,15
sackcloth, 34(2):3,4,5
sacraments, 33(1):8
flowing from Christ asleep on the cross,
40:10
good lives and receiving, 47:8
sacred scriptures, See Bible.

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

sacrifice, 39:12,13; 50:7
Aaron (animals); 33(1):5
animal as symbolic, 50:21
Christ (his body and blood), 33(1):5
cross, 33(1):6
good things are within (spiritual), 50:21
inner; within me, 41:17
mercy and covenant, 44:27; 49:12
myself as victim to immolate, 49:21
New Covenant, 49:16
no fault found with, 49:15
of praise, 49:21,22,23,30,31
old superseded by the new, 39:13
prefigured in Old Covenant, 49:16
slaughter animals for the poor, 49:20
troubled spirit, 49:15
Sadducees, 43:16
sadness, 39:2; 41:18; 48(2):5
sin as cause, 42:3
wicked people and, 36(1):3
saint(-s), 36(3):9,11; 47:10; 49:11
Church of Christ, 47:1
garments of the Church, 44:22
God speaks through, 44:5
heaven: word = all saints, 49:11
mocked, 48(2):4
tabernacles of God, 44:23
Your right hand will conduct you . . ., 44:15
Salem (later Jerusalem), 33(1):5
saliva, 33(1):11; 33(2):4; 38:3
salvation, 33(1):10; 33(2):13; 34(1):5,6,7,12;
36(2):8,11; 37:3,5; 38:20;
39:6,15,16,18,26; 40:9,14; 44:7,22; 47:5;
48(2):5; 50:3,19
animals, 35:11,12
body and blood of Christ, 33(1):6
certain as if already accomplished, 43:8
confession of the Good Thief, 34(1):14
given birth to spirit of, 39:28
gladdness of, 50:17
good person is pitted against evil, 36(2):1
hope and, 41:11
Jacob, 43:5
prophets, 39:26
remnant, 33(1):7
Samaritan: man who fell among robbers,
48(1):14
sacralization, 45:8
Satant: the word, 39:25
Saul, King, 33(1):2; 33(2):2; 50:4
Saul (later Paul), 36(2):2,5; 50:11,12
arrow (word) turned him into Paul, 44:16
Why are you persecuting me, 44:20
scandal, 33(2):14
schisms(-atics), 40:9; 49:9
scourging, 37:23,24
sea, 45:6,15
seasons: changing, 41:16
second coming of Christ, 45:12
Christ will not come in silence, 49:28

Our God will come openly, 49:6,11
seed: good seed, 42:2
sowing, 36(3):7,14
seeking, 39:24,26
self: soul is troubled when turned to, 41:12
self-control, 50:3
self-indulgence, 38:5
self-love, 44:9
senses, 36(2):13; 38:16; 41:7; 49:9
sensuality, 34(1):9
serpent, 47:9; 48(1):1
servant: parable of lazy steward, 38:5
serving fellow-servants, 38:4
sexual intercourse, 50:10
shame, 33(2):10,11; 43:10
doing penance, 50:8
face to face with yourself, 49:28
sheep, 48(2):2,3; 50:8
shield, 34(1):2; 45:13
shows (entertainment), 39:9,10
Christian martyrs, 39:16
sick, 50:1
disarranged all his bedding, 40:5
time passes slowly for, 36(1):10
sign: miraculous, 45:12
Peter walking on water, 39:9
silence, 33(2):8; 49:6,26
fear of committing sin, 38:4
God will come openly, 49:6
quiet re something I should have said, 38:4
sins with the tongue, 38:3
soft sound from above, 42:7
vacillation, 38:5
Simeon, 39:18
similarity, 34(2):6
sins(-s), 35:10; 37:1,9,10; 41:18
See also confession; conversion;
forgiveness of sin; repentance;
sinner
acting in ignorance, 50:6,7
affection for, 35:1
all spring from greed or fear, 38:2
attachment to, 36(1):1
bodily members at disposal of, 41:9
chastisement for, 38:17
choosing to be bitten by snake, 41:3
Christ seems to take all as his own, 37:16
concur simply by approving, 49:25
consent, 50:3
corruption a result of, 50:19
death and, 34(2):3; 50:10
deceiving ourselves, 38:14
depth calls to deep, 41:14
defending, 35:10
despair, 50:5
doing wrong knowingly; great mercy,
50:6
enslaved for law of sin, 35:6
falling; rising again, 50:3
fear of committing; silence, 38:4

Volume III/16
God turning toward = punishment, 50:14
God’s absence from conscience, 45:3
great sins guarded against, 39:22
grieving for, 37:24
harm to self, not to God, 50:15
hate for, 35:6; 50:2
human nature, 44:18
humble confession of, 34(2):3
intention, 50:3
Jesus and propitiation for, 33(2):26
Jesus asked to judge adulteress, 50:8
lesser folk and the great, 50:3, 5
many bloods (plural), 50:19
more numerous than hairs of my head
myself punishing my sin, 50:7
Nathan’s parable, 50:8
no peace in my bones, 37:6
occasions of, 50:3
only thing not received from God, 44:7
patron saint for, 50:3
peace and, 45:3
perseverance in, 35:6
pleasing to unclean spirit, 50:16
punishment by God, 44:18
sadness caused by, 42:3
secret, 35:17
self-justification, 50:13
slaves to, 40:6
spiritual blindness, 39:21
suffering for, 40:6
take serious thought for, 37:24
Turn your face away . . . , 44:18; 50:16
unconcern about small sins, 39:22
unwitting; small mercy, 50:6
Wash me more and more . . . , 50:7
weighed down by number of, 39:20
whip = medicine against, 37:24
with open eyes, 50:1
sincerity, 39:13, 16
arms crushed, 36(2):4
bonds on interest, 36(2):13
commended; supported, 49:25
conscience: cure, 45:3
determination to do wrong, 35:2
earthlings, 48(1):3
elder shall serve the younger, 46:6
fallen; foot of pride, 35:18
fear of being rebuked, 35:2
God foresees judgment day, 36(2):2
God strikes and heals, 50:11
God will blot out their memory from earth, 50:14
I will make you as white as snow, 50:12
imitation of, 35:18
perishing, 36(3):14
praise in mouth of, 49:29
praise of, 39:26
receives praise, 39:26
seeks to kill the just, 36(3):12, 13
strangers to God, 47:8
sword piercing their own heart, 36(2):3
taking stand against God, 38:3
teaching, by ex-sinner, 50:18
tents of, 48(1):2
tolerating, 36(3):17
unaware of God watching, 35:3
uses in present world, 36(1):11
washed white as snow, 44:26
will perish, 36(2):10
wretched death of, 33(2):25, 26
sky, 47:1
slander, 36(3):19; 49:27
slave: property of master, 49:17
ugly but faithful, 33(2):15
sleep, 40:10
smoke, 36(2):12; 36(3):14
snake, 39:1; 40:4; 41:3
snow, 50:12
sojourning, 38:21
son: severed from father, 44:12
Son of God:
See also Jesus Christ; Word of God
begetting of, 44:5
equal to the Father, 35:1
Nathanael’s confession, 44:20
once rich, became poor, 39:28
one nature with the Father, 49:2
Word and, 44:5
Son of Man:
body is on earth, 44:20
judgment through, 48(1):5
our immortality and, 44:21
sons of men belong to, 48(1):3
song: epithalamia, 44:3
new hymn to our God, 39:13
Songs of Ascents, 38:2
sons of men (biblical usage), 35:12; 48(1):3
soothsayers, 40:1
sorrow: pain of the soul, 42:3, 6
soul:
See also body and soul; spiritual life
blessed during lifetime, 48(2):8
caring for, 34(1):6
disquiet in, 33(2):19
God’s weapon, 34(1):2
king’s daughters, 44:23
made by God, does not die, 40:2
My soul is sorrowful . . . , 42:7
poured out above myself, 41:8, 10
power to kill one’s own soul, 36(2):3
price of redemption, 48(1):9, 13
rewards and punishments, 37:11
righteous; chair for Wisdom, 46:10
salvation, 48(2):5
seeking Christ’s life (good way; bad way), 37:18
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

separation from God = death, 48(2):2
sorrows, 41:10, 19
sword to defeat the devil, 34(1):7
troubled when it turns on self, 41:12
Why are you sorrowful, 42:6, 7
sounding-chamber, 42:5
sour grapes, 48(2):8
sovereignty, 44:17; 48(1):2
speak(-er; -ing), 48(1):5
changes in sacred scripture, 44:8
fallen silent because of fear, 38:4
mouth to speak with, 38:16
wait to hear from God before s., 38:4
spectacle (shows), 39:9
speech:
  sound; fading away, 44:6
tongue, 50:19
spider, 38:18
spirit:
carnally-minded persons and, 38:3
existing, but not material, 50:17
good things of the, 33(2):15
heat; ardent in s., 50:23
new and upright, 50:15
troubled, 41:17; 49:15; 50:21
spiritual life:
ascetical practices, 41:9
beginning to live for God, 48(2):4
danger in prosperity, 50:4
inner thirst, 41:2
inward paralysis, 36(3):3
nourishment for the soul, 35:1; 38:3
running, 38:9
soul close to God, 34(2):6
weary of well-doing, 36(3):2
springs, 41:5
stealing, 36(1):12
steps, directed by the Lord, 36(2):15
Songs of Ascents, 38:2
steward: parable: entrusted with master's money, 39:1
still: Be still and see that I am God, 45:14
stone (-s), 39:1
anyone who trips over, 45:12
 grew to be a mighty mountain, 45:12
pagan god, 41:6
worfship of, 46:9, 11
storm, 45:5; 49:13
strangers: children of wicked people, 48(1):14
leaves their wealth to strangers, 48(1):14
parents and children, 48(1):14
straw: gold refined from, 36(1):11
strength, 37:15
beard as symbol of, 33(1):11; 33(2):4
from God or self, 45:3
refusal to be strong, 38:18
relying on one's own, 34(1):15; 48(1):7, 8, 9; 49:22
vicious, 38:18
stumbling-block, 49:27
suffering, 36(1):6; 39:16; 42:5; 44:15
acceptance of, 42:8
call upon God in, 49:22
Christ came to suffer, 49:5
Christ's life; Christian life, 36(2):16, 17
Church suffers what Christ suffers, 40:8
done to death all the day long, 43:1
drinking the bitter cup of, 48(1):11
glory in, 36(2):9
Head and body, the Church, 37:16;
imitating sufferings of Christ, 37:18
inflicted by Saul (later Paul), 36(2):5
inner person, 37:15, 16
inward from self; outward from others, 37:16
motive of martyrs, 34(2):13
must will Christ's suffering to be ours, 37:16
promised share with Christ, 36(1):9
renown as motive for, 43:21
sin/corrective pain, 40:6
temporal, 36(2):16; 48(2):9
voluntary, 34(2):1
summer, 41:16
Susanna: prayer by, 34(2):1; 5
swallowing, 34(2):15
swiftly (the word), 44:6
sword, 36(2):3
God loosening his sword, 34(1):4
made from servant's soul, 34(1):7
word as, 44:11
sylable: holding on to, 38:7
synagogue: as mother of Christ, 44:12

tabernacle, 41:9
Tarshish (Tarsus), 47:6
taste (in art), 34(2):2
tax, 49:29
tax-collector, 39:20; 49:31
teacher, 36(1):1; 50:13
tears: daily diet, 41:7
delicious, 41:6
temple: living stones, 44:31
one stone formed from many, 39:1
veil rent asunder, 45:1
temporal goods, 48(1):17; 48(2):9
as blessings, 48(2):8
bless the Lord, 33(2):3
charitable, 36(3):13
entire concern for, 38:3
desire for gains, 38:3
desire for blessings (O.T.), 35:13
desire for God, 38:3
tears of, 48(2):7
gifts of God, 55:7

Volume III/16
God and temporal needs, 34(1):7
happiness, 48(2):1
petitioning God for, 35:12; 43:2
uncertainty of wealth, 45:2
wallowing in, 34(1):12
wicked people flourishing, 36(1):3
worship and, 43:16
devil’s evil suggestions, 48(1):6
Get behind me, Satan, 34(1):8
God as disinterested in us, 48(2):6
law too hard to keep, 40:4
prayer in, 34(2):3
tense (verbs):
prophets and future events, 43:9
tent (-s), 41:9,10,17; 42:4; 44:3; 45:10; 48(1):2,15
test (-s):
coming to know oneself, 44:9; 49:21
thirst, 44:15,20
Thomas, Apostle:
Because you have seen . . ., 49:5
My Lord and my God, 48(2):5; 49:5
threat, 41:15
threshing-floor, 34(1):10; 36(3):19; 45:10; 47:8,9,14; 49:8
threshold, 33(1):10; 33(2):2
throne: of Wisdom, 46:10
stands for ever and ever, 44:17
time:
holding on: today; yesterday, 38:7
number of my days, 38:7,9,10,22
present days as true being, 38:7
quick passage of, 44:10
slow passage of, 36(1):10
Timothy: advice against pride, 48(1):9
title, 33(1):2
Tobit, 41:7
tolerance, 50:24
tomb, 48(1):15,16
tongue:
My tongue is the pen of a scribe, 44:6,10
restrain from evil, 33(2):18
sinning with, 38:3
words, 34(2):3; 50:19
torrent, 35:14,15
tortiousness, 44:17
torture, 39:16; 49:7
bones remain unbroken, 33(2):24
trap, 34(1):11; 50:8
treasure: heart and, 48(2):2
storing in heaven, 38:12
tree, 34(2):2; 36(3):9; 48(2):3,4; 49:11
tribulation, 34(1):1; 39:28; 41:16; 45:3,4; 49:22; 50:4
Trinity, 35:1; 49:1,2; 50:17
trouble (-s), 33(2):23; 36(3):17; 42:5; 43:2,3,17; 49:22
trust, 48(1):3,8
blessed trust, 33(2):13
defense: trust in God, 37:21
deliverance by God, 43:3
human agents, 35:9
in God, not self, 41:12
in Truth, 35:13
in wealth or in God, 48(1):9
truth, 33(2):6; 34(2):6; 35:14; 37:11; 38:3; 39:13,18; 40:8; 41:3,18; 42:2; 44:15,19; 45:13; 46:3; 50:11
Christ speaks through us, 34(2):12
enemies of, 36(2):12
gods and, 49:2
must hear before speaking, 38:4
one reality with light, 42:4
promised, given, 39:12
soundness of mind, 39:8
trust in, 35:13
unutterable reality, 35:14
unto child of, 38:3
Tyre:
daughters of, as Church, 44:28
symbol of Gentiles, 44:27
Tyrian maidens, 44:27,28
ugliness, 44:3
unbelief (-ievers), 47:3
children of the devil, 44:12
prophecies of Christ and, 39:1
understanding, 41:2,9,13,18; 47:7; 48(1):16; 49:22
children of Korah, 43:2,6-7,10,16,17,19-20
failure; refusing, 35:1,4
image of God, 48(2):11
like a horse or mule, 42:6; 48(1):16
meditation of my heart, 48(1):4
Sing psalms with, 46:9
spiritual, 33(1):7,8
Whoever sees me sees the Father, 44:3
union with God:
misery: not yet one with God, 49:22
body of Christ as one single person, 39:28
charity and, 33(2):19
cornerstone, 47:5
gown as symbol of, 44:24
Head and body (Church), 40:1
King’s temple, 44:31
one in saying *My God, my God . . .*, 40:6
promote: magnify the Lord, 33(2):7
two Testaments in agreement, 49:4
Unto the end (term), 45:1
usury, 36(3):6
values, 48(2):11
earthly, 36(3):9
false, 48(1):13
vice, 41:3
Victorinus of Leptis Magna, 36(2):20
Victorinus of Munatiana, 36(2):20
vindication, 34(2):13,14
vineyard, 35:8; 36(1):8; 37:28; 46:13
virgins:
five wise, five foolish, 49:9
innumerable, 49:9
long to please the king, 44:30
pleasing the Bridegroom, 44:32
virtue, 41:9
power of charity, 47:13
*Set your hearts on*, 47:13-14
vision: face-to-face, 48(1):5
wages, 35:13
parable of vineyard, 37:28
war, 42:4; 45:13
warped beam, 44:17
warriors, 43:4; 44:13
waste: of God’s gifts, 44:9
water:
longing for a drop from Lazarus, 48(1):10
rivers of living water, 45:8
way: salvation among the nations, 39:18
weakness, 33(2):4; 38:18; 41:13; 45:13; 49:5; 50:3
body of Christ, 37:22
donkey of the Lord, 33(2):5
wealth, 33(2):14; 48(1):7,8,9
desire riches in Christ’s name, 48(1):17
give away: claim eternal interest, 36(3):6
leave their wealth to strangers, 48(1):14,15
riches taken away as test, 34(1):6
sinfulness and, 48(1):12
spiritual, 33(2):15
storing up: for children, 38:12
weapon, 38:15; 45:13,14
evangelical, 45:13
ourselves as, 34(1):2
wedding: clothes, 44:1,23
invited guests as the bride, 44:3
weeds, 42:3
weeping, 38:20
well-spring: fountain of life, 41:2
wheat, 34(2):10
whips, 36(3):9; 37:24; 40:6
wicked (-ness), 42:2
ancestors, 48(2):11
following behind, 34(1):8
good fortune, 41:9
happy: flourishing, 36(1):3
hate for, 35:6
seen as prospering, 48(2):6
will: human affections and, 44:23
will of God:
Christ’s example, 39:14
cling to God, 43:25
conformity with, 35:16; 44:17
discerning, 36(3):2
duty of humans is to obey, 48(1):1
just persons, 36(3):5
living and dying, 34(1):14
peoples seek to bend to their own lusts, 44:17
power of the enemy and, 36(2):4
rightly directed, 36(1):12
wills (law): testator and adjudicator, 39(3):18
wind, 34(1):9
wings like a dove’s, 48:2
winter, 41:16
day of tribulation, 48(1):12
present time as, 36(1):3
wisdom, 41:3; 15; 44:25; 50:23
Christ as Wisdom of the Father, 36(1):1
divine, 33(2):6
God’s throne, 34(1):2
*Let those who are perfect be wise . . .*, 38:14
*My mouth shall speak wisdom*, 48(1):4
righteous person as throne of, 46:10
*righteous will muse on*, 36(3):12
never ceases to be spoken, 44:5
soul as weapon, 43(1):2
unseen, hidden secrets of, 50:11
when he sees the wise dying, 48(1):11
wives: cross-grained, 33(2):8
woman: bent over for eighteen years, 37:10
wonderful feats, 39:9
Word of God:
all of past, present, future are in Word, 44:5
all works of God are in the Word, 44:5
Bridegroom, 44:7
creation and, 49:18
*In the beginning . . .*, 33(1):6; 44:3,20; 46:8, 49:1; 50:17
never ceases to be spoken, 44:5
seeing face to face, 33(1):10
words:
*arrows sharp and very powerful*, 44:16
blunting or belching, 44:9
good words by one leading bad life, 49:30
morality related to intent, 39:26
sword, 44:11
*You have thrown my words behind you*, 49:24
words of God (scripture):
arrows, 37:5
bread as, 36(3):5
effective in conversion of life, 49:1
in the heart, 36(3):12

Volume III/16
Volume III/16

works: praise offered to God, 44:9
works of mercy: justice and, 49:12
world (-liness), 40:5
active involvement in, 36(1):2
as meaning 'sinners', 34(1):4
chosen way, 48(2):4
illiterate can read book of, 45:7
swallowing, 34(2):15
universal, 36(2):19
wound: love and pain, 37:5
writing, 34(2):3
written word: abiding, 44:6
wrongdoer(-s; -ing), 49:26
enslaved to, 33(2):14
God sees what he must reproach, 42:7
wound themselves, 36(2):3

years, 38:7
youth: symbol of newness, 42:5
Zacchaeus, 49:13,21
zeal, 47:2
Zion, 47:3,6,7,12,13; 49:4; 50:22

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 51-72

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/17  Homilies/Expositions

Paperback: 978-1-56548-155-8, 6 x 9 in., 518 pp., 2001
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-156-5, 6 x 9 in., 518 pp., 2001

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms

(Enarrationes in Psalmos)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

*(prepared by Michael Dolan)*

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Job</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 70, 16</td>
<td>55, 20, 71, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>67, 11</td>
<td>72, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>66, 9</td>
<td>53, 3, 55, 19; II, 68, 15; 71, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>II, 70, 6</td>
<td>1, 70, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>66, 9</td>
<td>2:9, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>52, 4; II, 68, 11</td>
<td>2:10, 55, 20; I, 70, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>II, 68, 1; 71, 17</td>
<td>9:24, 4, 51, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>52, 4</td>
<td>14:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>I, 68, 9; II, 70, 6</td>
<td>51, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>71, 12</td>
<td>2:7, 60, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>54, 21</td>
<td>2:8, 60, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:7</td>
<td>67, 19</td>
<td>2:11, 51, 13; 65, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>I, 58, 9</td>
<td>3:6(5), 56, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>71, 19; 72, 1</td>
<td>3:9(8), 69, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:2</td>
<td>72, 1</td>
<td>4:3(2), 61, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>57, 5; 61, 7</td>
<td>4:6-7, 53, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>54, 21</td>
<td>5:5(3), II, 58, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:8</td>
<td>59, 10</td>
<td>5:13(12), 67, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td></td>
<td>6:8(7), 54, 5; 54, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>52, 5</td>
<td>7:9(8), I, 70, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>II, 58, 5</td>
<td>10:6(11:5), 61, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:7(12:6), 54, 22; 67, 17; 67, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:19</td>
<td>53, 1</td>
<td>12:4(13:3), 62, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Kings</td>
<td></td>
<td>13:5(14:4-5), 55, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:29</td>
<td>I, 70, 19</td>
<td>13:14(6), 52, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td></td>
<td>15:16(2), 65, 19; 69, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>57, 1</td>
<td>15:4(16:3), II, 58, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16:17(8), 67, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17(18):1, 51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17:26-27, 72, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17:29(18:28), 52, 5; 65, 19; 66, 4; 69, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:30(18:29)</td>
<td>72, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:45(18:44)</td>
<td>71, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2(19:1)</td>
<td>67, 11; 71, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2.4-5</td>
<td>67, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7(19:6)</td>
<td>54, 25; I, 58, 10; 65, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13-14</td>
<td>72, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1(20:1)</td>
<td>65, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9(20:8)</td>
<td>65, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2(22:1)</td>
<td>I, 58, 2; I, 68, 7; II, 68, 11; I, 70, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2-3(22:1-2)</td>
<td>53, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:13(22:12)</td>
<td>II, 58, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:16(22:15)</td>
<td>69, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17(22:16)</td>
<td>67, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:29(22:28)</td>
<td>67, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23(23:6)</td>
<td>60, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:10(25:10)</td>
<td>60, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:15(25:15)</td>
<td>67, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:7(26:6)</td>
<td>67, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:9(26:9)</td>
<td>71, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4(27:4)</td>
<td>67, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10(27:10)</td>
<td>I, 58, 18; 67, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:12(27:12)</td>
<td>63, 15; 65, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:9(29:1)</td>
<td>72, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:3(30:3)</td>
<td>II, 58, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:21(31:20)</td>
<td>II, 68, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:4(32:4)</td>
<td>57, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:9(32:9)</td>
<td>54, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:4(34:1)</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:8(34:8)</td>
<td>51, 18; 54, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:16(35:16)</td>
<td>57, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:18(35:18)</td>
<td>67, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:4(36:4)</td>
<td>51, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:7(36:6)</td>
<td>67, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:8(36:8)</td>
<td>62, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:10(36:1)</td>
<td>61, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12(36:11)</td>
<td>61, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:15(37:15)</td>
<td>53, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:14(38:14)</td>
<td>68, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:12(39:12)</td>
<td>60, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:2(40:2)</td>
<td>61, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:8(41:8)</td>
<td>55, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:8(41:7)</td>
<td>54, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:10(41:10)</td>
<td>67, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:3(42:3)</td>
<td>61, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:4(43:1)</td>
<td>53, 4; 71, 3; 71, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:11(46:10)</td>
<td>I, 70, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:12(49:12)</td>
<td>54, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:23(50:23)</td>
<td>53, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49(50):23</td>
<td>II, 68, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50(51):23,14</td>
<td>64, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51(52):7</td>
<td>I, 58, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51(52):8</td>
<td>53, 2; 61, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52(53):1</td>
<td>66, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52(53):4</td>
<td>51, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52(53):6</td>
<td>II, 70, 2; II, 70, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:15(55:19)</td>
<td>61, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55(56):12</td>
<td>I, 70, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56(57):1</td>
<td>55, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56(57):4</td>
<td>63, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57(57):4</td>
<td>63, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58(59):15</td>
<td>59, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58(59):14-15</td>
<td>67, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60(61):2</td>
<td>54, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60(61):13</td>
<td>61, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61(62):10</td>
<td>53, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63(64):7</td>
<td>56, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65(66):6</td>
<td>64, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65(66):7</td>
<td>II, 68, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67(68):30</td>
<td>58, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70(71):20</td>
<td>67, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):11</td>
<td>I, 58, 5; 61, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1-3</td>
<td>57, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1-3-16</td>
<td>53, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):16-17</td>
<td>57, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):28</td>
<td>II, 70, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75(76):4</td>
<td>67, 10; 67, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75(76):12</td>
<td>64, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76(77):17</td>
<td>59, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76(77):18</td>
<td>59, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78(79):10</td>
<td>59, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83(84):6</td>
<td>67, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84(85):8</td>
<td>61, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84(85):10</td>
<td>71, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84(85):12</td>
<td>67, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85(86):11</td>
<td>II, 70, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86(87):5</td>
<td>61, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86(87):13</td>
<td>I, 70, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90(91):4</td>
<td>67, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90(91):7</td>
<td>II, 68, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91(92):5</td>
<td>53, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91(92):13</td>
<td>53, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):2</td>
<td>I, 58, 13; 67, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):1</td>
<td>66, 6; 67, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:28(102:27)</td>
<td>60, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103(104):16</td>
<td>71, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103(104):18</td>
<td>I, 70, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104(105):18</td>
<td>61, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107(108):5</td>
<td>71, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109(110):1</td>
<td>67, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109(110):7</td>
<td>57, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111(112):10</td>
<td>61, 5; 69, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113:14.1(115:13)</td>
<td>71, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114:4.1</td>
<td>57, 4; I, 58, 6; 67, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III**
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

New Testament

Matthew

1:20 57, 5 19:6 55, 3
3:2 59, 4 19:21 51, 14
3:17 71, 11 19:24 51, 14
4:19 64, 9 19:25 51, 14
5:3 71, 3 19:26 51, 15
5:3.5 II, 68, 14 21:43 51, 5; 62, 18; 64, 1
5:6 62, 3; 64, 8; 67, 31; 69, 7 22:12 61, 6
5:12 54, 6 22:13 57, 4
5:13 59, 2 22:14 61, 6; 61, 10
5:14 67, 23 22:16 57, 3
5:16 65, 3 22:17 57, 14
5:17 67, 11 22:19.18 57, 11
5:44 69, 3 22:21 57, 11
5:44-45 II, 70, 6 22:29-30 65, 1
5:45 54, 4; 62, 14 23:39 51, 10
6:1 65, 3 22:42-45 54, 3
6:2 51, 12 23:2 64, 8
6:2.1 65, 3 23:2-3 51, 4
6:9-12 54, 14 23:3 51, 6; 61, 8
7:5 54, 7 23:23 71, 4
7:12 51, 10 23:23-24 II, 58, 2
7:23 61, 8 23:37 II, 68, 16
9:11 I, 58, 7 23:37-38 II, 68, 10
9:12 I, 58, 7; 61, 13; I, 70, 1 24:12 52, 1; 59, 10; 60, 6; 69, 2
10:5-6 71, 9 24:12-13 56, 6
10:16 57, 10 24:13 52, 1; 59, 10; 60, 6; 60, 9
10:23 I, 68, 19 24:13-12 61, 11
10:25 51, 1 25:27 71, 16
10:28 51, 9; 54, 6; 54, 7; 59, 10; 25:31-33 53, 3
10:34 59, 3 25:34 63, 19; 67, 4
11:28-29 54, 13; I, 70, 18 25:34.41 52, 4; 61, 6; 64, 2
11:30 59, 8; 67, 18 25:40 67, 2; 67, 25; 69, 3
12:4 55, 3 25:41 51, 12; 57, 17; II, 58, 6;
12:9 I, 58, 6; 67, 16; I, 68, 9 63, 19
12:34.33 57, 3 25:42 65, 20
12:37 72, 30 26:38 55, 6; 63, 18
12:39-40 65, 6 26:39 63, 18
13:29.30 64, 16 26:61 65, 7
13:43 60, 8 26:64 67, 2; 67, 33
13:47-50 64, 9 27:6 63, 11
14:30 54, 5; 54, 10 27:24 56, 12
15:24 71, 9 27:25 I, 58, 5; 63, 8
15:24-28 I, 58, 15 27:40 52, 3; 54, 12
16:18 54, 5; 60, 3 28:20 56, 1; 69, 1; II, 70, 4
16:22.17 II, 68, 5 28:30 69, 7
16:22.17.23 69, 4 3:27 I, 68, 9
16:22.23 62, 17 5:17 64, 9
16:26 51, 9; 64, 13; 72, 24 5:31 61, 10
18:7 I, 68, 7; 69, 2 9:23 II, 68, 4
19:11 I, 68, 7; 69, 2 9:49 59, 9
19:21 I, 68, 18; 67, 23 11:28.29 57, 12
19:24 51, 14 11:33 57, 12
19:25 51, 14 12:7 II, 70, 1
19:26 51, 15
21:43 51, 5
22:12 61, 6
22:13 57, 4
22:14 61, 6; 61, 10
22:16 57, 3
22:17 57, 14
22:19.18 57, 11
22:21 57, 11
22:22-29 65, 1
22:29-30 51, 10
22:39 54, 3
23:2 64, 8
23:2-3 51, 4
23:3 51, 6; 61, 8
23:13-15 II, 68, 7
23:23 71, 4
23:23-24 II, 58, 2
23:37 II, 68, 10
24:12 52, 1; 59, 10; 60, 6; 69, 2
24:12-13 56, 6
24:13 52, 1; 59, 10; 60, 6; 60, 9
24:13-12 61, 11
25:27 71, 16
25:31-33 53, 3
25:34 63, 19; 67, 4
25:34.41 52, 4; 61, 6; 64, 2
25:40 67, 2; 67, 25; 69, 3
25:41 51, 12; 57, 17; II, 58, 6;
25:42 65, 20
26:38 55, 6; 63, 18
26:39 63, 18
26:61 65, 7
26:64 67, 2; 67, 33
27:6 63, 11
27:24 56, 12
27:25 I, 58, 5; 63, 8
27:40 52, 3; 54, 12
27:42 67, 30
27:63-66 63, 15
28:20 56, 1; 69, 1; II, 70, 4
Mark

1:11 I, 18; 67, 23
3:27 I, 68, 9
5:17 64, 9
5:31 61, 10
9:23 II, 68, 4
9:49 59, 9
11:28.29 57, 12
11:33 57, 12
12:7 II, 70, 1

Volume III17
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume III17</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:10</td>
<td>67, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:23</td>
<td>67, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>67, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:31</td>
<td>56, 12; 63, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:36</td>
<td>53, 3; 59, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>56, 12; 57, 3; 67, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:15</td>
<td>55, 2; 56, 2; 62, 19; 63, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>56, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21-22</td>
<td>I, 58, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:22</td>
<td>55, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>61, 9; I, 68, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>I, 58, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:25</td>
<td>63, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>56, 10; 63, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:29</td>
<td>63, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>I, 68, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>67, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37</td>
<td>63, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:38</td>
<td>I, 58, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:51</td>
<td>I, 70, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:57</td>
<td>57, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:59</td>
<td>I, 70, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:60</td>
<td>I, 70, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>52, 1; 54, 3; 55, 3; 67, 25; 67, 36; 69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6.5</td>
<td>57, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>I, 58, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>67, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>55, 1; 56, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>67, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>II, 68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>57, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>57, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>57, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24, 28-29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>57, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>I, 70, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21-22</td>
<td>I, 70, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>I, 70, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>II, 58, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28-29</td>
<td>67, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>51, 17; 67, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>I, 70, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5-5</td>
<td>56, 15; 57, 22; 59, 10; 60, 4; I, 70, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>67, 11; 67, 24; I, 70, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>67, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>61, 7; 71, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>II, 58, 6; 67, 11; 67, 24; 67, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>62, 2; I, 70, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>71, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>63, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>57, 10; 69, 4; I, 70, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>67, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-25</td>
<td>I, 70, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>69, 7; II, 70, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>57, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>I, 70, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>67, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>67, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>II, 70, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-25</td>
<td>II, 70, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>60, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>61, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>61, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
<td>61, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>64, 22; 65, 7; 67, 37; I, 68, 10; II, 70, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>62, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4-5</td>
<td>61, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>67, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8</td>
<td>67, 43; 71, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>57, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>61, 21; II, 68, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:21-23</td>
<td>I, 58, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22-23.20</td>
<td>61, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>I, 58, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>II, 58, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:25</td>
<td>67, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>I, 70, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>I, 70, 1; I, 70, 4; I, 70, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>54, 1; 55, 1; 59, 2; 60, 1; 64, 6; 65, 1; 67, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>51, 9; 59, 11; 67, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2.1</td>
<td>72, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>67, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:18</td>
<td>65, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19-21</td>
<td>65, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>67, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:22-23</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>65, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:24.18</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:24.18-20</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>65, 1; 65, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-34</td>
<td>53, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>65, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>57, 22; 67, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>61, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>67, 11; 67, 24; I, 70, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>62, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>I, 68, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-9</td>
<td>71, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

1:12      | 71, 5        |
1:12-13   | 69, 5        |
1:13      | 54, 24; 71, 5 |
Volume III/17

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

2 Corinthians

1:9  64, 10
1:12  53, 8

Galatians

1:8  71, 5
2:20  65, 7; I, 68, 10
3:13  II, 58, 5
3:15-16  54, 21
3:16  71, 19
3:21  I, 70, 19
3:21-22  I, 70, 19
4:4  72, 16
4:9  62, 9
4:19  52, 1, 57, 5
4:24  67, 11
4:24  67, 12
5:6  67, 41
5:22  71, 18
6:1  51, 13
6:14  67, 23; II, 68, 4; I, 70, 19
6:16  67, 12; 67, 43
6:17  54, 8

Ephesians

2:2-3  67, 27
2:3  57, 20
2:6  55, 3
2:9-10  I, 70, 19
2:14-15,17  71, 1
3:14,17,18-19  51, 12
3:20  69, 8
4:7-10  67, 25
4:10  67, 42
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:11-12</td>
<td>67, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>64, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>57, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>54, 4; I, 58, 6; 59; 2; 61; 7; 65, 15; 62, 4; II, 70, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>64, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>II, 68, 1; 71, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td>54, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>I, 70, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>54, 4; 61, 13; I, 70, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>59, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>I, 58, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17-19</td>
<td>51, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>54, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>54, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>I, 68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>63, 13; I, 68, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>I, 58, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>I, 68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>56, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>51, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12, 13, 15</td>
<td>65, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>67, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>55, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>67, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>65, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>67, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>69, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>57, 10; 65, 22; 69, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>69, 8; 72, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>64, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>64, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>67, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>67, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>62, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>62, 2; II, 70, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>53, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>51, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>59, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>57, 10; 61, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>62, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7-8</td>
<td>62, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14, 15</td>
<td>54, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>59, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>51, 17; 55; 12; 55, 14; I, 58, 12; 72, 4; 72, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-15-16</td>
<td>I, 70, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>67, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>67, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>62, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>61, 16; 72, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-18</td>
<td>51, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18-19</td>
<td>72, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6-7</td>
<td>67, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>54, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>54, 8; 55, 4; 69, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>54, 27; II, 68, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>69, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>67, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>61, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>II, 58, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>67, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>55, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>67, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>61, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>I, 68, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>II, 70, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>59, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>67, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>51, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>67, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>51, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>67, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>II, 68, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2)
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.
Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semi-colon.
Biblical texts/words are in italics.

abandon, 70(1):12
Abel, 61:4,6,7
Abimelech, 51:5; 59:1
Able, 64:2
abortion, 57:5,6
above (after leaping), 61:1
Achis, King, 51:5; 59:1
Adam and Eve, 55:20; 56:11; 58(1):2,14; 60:8; 68(1):2,9; 68(2):11; 70(1):2,3,5,12; 70(2):1,6,7,10; 71:1,6
adoption, 66:9; 70(2):10
adultery, 57:17
affection, 54:8; 56:6
again (word usage), 70(2):10
Ahimelech (priest), 51:3,5
aliens, 55:9
alive, 54:16
allophyli, 55:1,3; 59:11
alone, 70(1):20
always, 70(1):8
ambassadors, 67:40; 71:6
angel(-s), 51:16,14; 56:10,17; 61:21; 62:6; 63:1,67:43; 70(2):5,12
anger, 54:7,16,21,22; 55:13; 58(2):6; 59:3,6
animal, 54:3; 58(1):16
ant, 66:5
Anathcharaf, 68(2):13
Antiochus, 68(2):3
anthomiasia, 67:15
apostles, 54:11; 55:5,9; 56:1; 63:16; 64:5,12; 66:8; 67:34,40
offspring of rams, 64:18; 72:4
Arabia, 71:17
Arians, 52:4; 54:22; 67:39
ark, 54:13
arrogance, 65:5
arrow, 56:12; 59:6; 63:6,14,15
Asaph, 72:4,16
asp, 57:8,9,10,14
astrology, 57:4; 61:23; 72:22

athletic events, 57:7
authority, 67:17
autonomy, 70(2):7
avarice, 51:14; 57:2
baby, 64:15
Babylon, 51:6; 54:12; 61:6,7,8,10; 64:1,2,3,4,6,8
back: permanently bent, 68(2):8
Bagai, Council of, 57:15
baptism, 57:5,12; 61:9; 65:17; 72:5
repeating, 54:16,22,26
barn, 63:19
Bashan, 67:31
basilicas, 57:15
beatitude, 62:6
beauty, 55:20; 58(1):18; 64:8
bed, 62:15
Beelzebub, 55:8; 68(1):12
beggar: stealing, 72:12,13
being: gift of, 58(2):11
believers, 61:5; 62:1; 68(1):2
Beloved, 67:16
Bible:
agreement of the two Testaments, 67:19
authority of, 67:17
discernment, 54:22
letters from God, 64:2
meanings lie hidden in, 67:39
parallelism and repetition in, 71:2,3
property of the Jews, 56:9
summed up in power and mercy, 61:20
use of similes, 57:7
wild animals distorting the scriptures, 67:38
birth, 52:1; 65:12
bitterness, 54:8
blessedness, 51:15
blessing(-s), 55:16; 67:12; 72:4
Bless the Lord in the churches, 67:35
growing by, 66:1
May God bless us, 66:9

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

power to proliferate, 66:9
temporal, 66:2-4
blind, 65:5,10
blood money, 63:11
blotted out, 68(2):13
boast, 51:7,17; 68(2):4; 69:5; 70(1):1,20; 71:3; 72:15
body and soul, 68(1):3
See also human body; soul
derivation: manifest or hidden, 68(2):3
fear not those who kill the body, 69:1
fragility, 62:4
soul dies if God leaves, 70(2):3
thirst for God, 62:7,8
whole man one with the Word, 56:5
body of Christ, See Church; Mystical Body of Christ.
books: Jews as slaves for Christians, 56:9
bow, 59:6; 63:6
bamble, 57:20
bread, 68(2):16,17
Bread of the Presence, 51:3
breast: treasure in, 55:19
bull, 54:22; 58(2):4; 67:39; 72:11
burden, 61:3; 67:18
byword, 68(1):15
Caesar, 55:2; 57:3,11
Caiaphas, 68(2):10
Cain, 58(1):21; 61:6,7; 64:2; 71:18
calf’s head (and Moses), 61:9
Calvary, 51:9; 68(1):9
camel, 51:14
Canaanite woman, 58(1):15; 67:32
canticles, 67:1
captive(-ivity), 64:1,2,8; 67:25-28; 70(1):2,5; 70(2):1,2,6
charity, 54:3,10; 55:3,19; 56:1; 57:22; 59:9,10; 62:5,17; 64:2,4; 67:11,18; 70(2):3
exceeds all other virtues, 54:19
fruit of the Spirit, 71:18
lacking, it profits me nothing, 71:3
observance of law, 67:24; 71:15
pride in good works, 71:3
root, 51:12
charms, 57:7
chastisement, 70(2):10
chastity, 57:22
childbirth, 61:4
childhood, 62:6
children, 64:15
growing; span of life, 65:12
inheritance, 60:7
obedience, 70(1):2
procreation, 70(2):6
children of God, 67:23
gift of the Spirit, 52:5
transformed children of men, 52:6,7,9
choice: power of, 53:2
chosen, 67:16; 68(2):2
many are invited, few are chosen, 61:6
one chosen and taken up, 64:7
will dwell in your courts, 64:8

Christian life, 54:8; 69:4
See also spiritual life
building on rock, 57:23
guarding againsterror, 58(2):1
He established my soul in life, 65:15
I strain to what lies ahead, 57:10
incorporation into Christ, 60:3
keeping Christ in mind, 54:10
no one to seek my soul,…, 69:3
old self destroyed, new built, 61:7
proclaim your life, 55:14
share in divinity of Christ, 58(1):7

Christianity:
books belonging to Jews, 58(1):22
of all nations, 58(1):17
Christians:
See also Church; Gentiles; persecution
charge brought against, 68(2):4
hated for no reason, 68(1):9
charged, 61:5
incorporated into one, 61:6
insulting openly, 69:2
Jews and the increase of, 58(2):2
life promised to Christ, 62:20
motivation, 62:6
name held in honor, 71:16
whole Christ, 58(1):5
will abide till end of time, 70(2):4

See also persecution
abide till the end of the world, 70(2):4
beautiful house, 67:16
body contemplating the head, 55:4
body in its entirety, 68(1):11
body: past, present, future members, 62:2
built on Peter, the rock, 54:5
Christ as both head and body, 54:3; 56:1; 58(1):2; 63:1; 65:1; 68(1):1
Christ as voice of his body, 57:3
Christ suffering here, 52:1,2
city set on mountain, 57:9
comes up washed white, 67:17
conscience, 54:12
crying from the ends of the earth, 60:3

Volume III17
Do you know yourself? 66:4

dove, 67:20-21
fellowship in, 66:4
God's chariot, 67:24
God’s power and mercy, 61:20
here until the end of time, 60:6
holy and faithful members, 67:25
I am needy and poor, 69:7
I am poor and sorrowful, 68(2):14
I will that where I am, 67:41
impostors in, 55:9
Isaiah addresses, 58(1):11
joy, 52:9
Lazarus as type of, 69:7
members form one person in Christ, 60:1,4; 69:1
members: all who believe, 56:1
mystery: two in one flesh, 71:17
one body under one head, 63:17
One only is my dove, 67:17
participates in Truth, 57:6
persecuted, See persecution
prefigured by David, 51:1
presence of Christ through, 67:2
resurrection and, 71:10
service: building up body of Christ, 67:21
suffering birthpangs, 52:4
suffering: head and body, 62:2
sufferings of Christ in, 61:4
thirst, 61:10
truth abides in, 57:6
unity, 56:13; 60:2; 64:7,14; 67:11
universal, 65:2; 71:12
voice of Christ's body, 68(1):8
whole person: head and body, 69:3
why are you persecuting me, 67:25,36
will abide with the sect, 71:8,10
will rule from sea to sea, 71:11
you know my folly, 68(1):10
your right hand upholds me, 62:17

Circumcellions, 54:26; 57:15
circumcision, 58(1):21; 67:19
citizen, 51:6; 61:8; 64:2
built by Cain, 61:7; 71:18
unrest, 54:12

Cleopas, 68(1):8
clergy: the word: chosen by lot, 67:19
clouds, 56:17; 64:14; 67:33,43,44
Come and see, 65:4
command(-ment), 58(2):2; 7: 59:4; 68(1):13
Do not touch.... 70(2):7
holy: help from God, 67:24
love of Christ, 55:17
love one another, 56:1
two loves, 67:18

commerce, 70(1):17
commun life, 67:7
compunction, 57:20; 67:7
concupiscence, 64:4
condemnation, 58(2):6; 61:22
conduct, 58(2):1; 62:13,15; 67:7,8,19
Do not do to another, 57:1,2
exploiting others, 64:9
judgment and, 57:2
right reason, 72:21
confession, 55:19; 58(1):13,15; 58(2):4;
66:8; 68(1):19; 68(2):20
Bend down your ear to me, 70(1):4
Let the peoples confess, 66:6
made in faith, 67:36
May the Lord be magnified, 69:6,7
sad before, 66:7
secret: beneath my tongue, 65:21
sing a new song, 66:6-7
confusion, 59:9; 64:2; 67:31
conscience, 52:7; 53:8; 54:12; 55:19; 56:14;
57:1.2; 58(1):12; 65:14; 66:7; 68(2):4;
70(1):14; 72:11
consent, 64:4; 68(1):18,19; 68(2):7; 70(1):6
consolaton, 54:10; 67:6; 68(2):5
consummate, 56:2; 58(2):5,6,7
contemplation, 64:3; 68(2):19; 71:13
content: present life as, 61:13
conversion, 55:15; 58(2):2; 59:5; 61:23;
67:31,32,40; 70(2):2.3
correct your heart, 63:19
good city continuously being formed, 61:7
in the evening, 58(1):15; 58(2):7
narrow way, 57:10,11
stripping off old self, 53:3; 57:10; 61:7
convert(-s), 64:6; 65:14; 67:5
zeal of, 58(1):16
cold relief, 65:17
corner-Church, 58(2):10
cornerstone, 58(2):7
correction, 51:13; 54:4,8,9; 67:39; 68(1):13;
72:20
corruptibility, 62:6
corruption, 52:3,4,5; 54:25; 68(2):3
counsel, 54:15
covenant, 54:21; 67:19
coveting, 62:5
cows, 54:22; 67:39
crawling things, 68(1):5
creation, 61:18; 62:1; 68(1):5; 70(1):15;
70(2):6; 71:8
contemplation of, 67:21
God’s blessing, 66:9
goodness of, 70(2):6
Creator, 57:3
creature, 67:13
criminal, 66:7
crop:
God grants the increase, 66:1
multiply its growth, 64:15
cross, 54:12; 59:9; 67:23,32; 68(2):4
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

crossed over, 72:13
crown, 64:16
crucifixion, See under Jesus Christ customs, 64:6
damnation, 61:20; 64:5; 72:26
Daniel, 51:4
son of Jesse, 72:1,3
day, 70(1):16
height of the day, 55:5
daylight, 62:15
death, 65:6; 67:8,14; 70(2):10; 71:17; 72:10
Christ and, 58(2):4
devil's dominion, 71:7
fear of, 54:7
forgetting God's law, 58(1):21
Let us eat and drink, 70(1):9
name is "Request," 51:2
our only persecutor, 51:1
Saul (the name), 51:5
soul dies if God leaves, 70(2):3
swallowed up in victory, 65:18
death, 54:8; 55:9; 56:5; 61:15,16
deliverance, 68(2):3
hidden or manifest, 68(2):3,10
three young men in fiery furnace, 68(2):3
demon, 62:7; 72:6
derision: Where is your God?, 61:14
desert, 54:12; 62:3,8,9; 64:17; 67:9,12; 72:5
inner place of the soul, 54:9,10
desert fathers, 54:9
desire, 54:8,16; 57:10; 58:1-2; 59:11; 61:16; 62:5,14; 63:17; 64:2,3,8; 67:20; 72:11,29,31,32,33
ear: how asp shuts its ears, 57:10
earth, 71:9,11
inebriated, 64:14
earthquake, 67:11
crasy, 67:36
Edom, 59:1,2,3,11,13; 62:3,5,6,8,13
Edomites (the word), 51:4
Egypt, 64:2; 67:9; 67:40; 69:9; 72:3
Elisha, 70(1):19
embarrassment, 70(1):14
Emmaus, 63:17; 68(1):8
emperors, 65:4
end (the word), 54:1
end of the world, 64:9,17; 70(1); 6; 70(2):4,12; 71:11
ends of the earth, 60:2,3,7
endurance, 54:8,16
Egypt, 64:2; 67:9; 67:40; 69:9; 72:3
Elisha, 70(1):19
equally divided, 68(1):22
deliverance from, 68(2):3
Do not kill them, 58(2):2
fear of, 54:6
God's gifts to, 66:3
let them be confused, 69:3
praying for, 58(1):21
temporal goods, 72:6
two: one to love; one to shun, 54:6
wishing well, 70(2):6
envy, 53:3; 58(2):5; 63:18; 72:9
episcopacy, 67:39

discernment, 52:5; 54:22; 65:19
distinguish my cause, 53:4
two cities, 64:2
disciple(-s), 59:2; 71:9
Christ’s choice of, 65:4
crucifixion of Christ and, 63:17
sorrow for the crucifixion, 68(2):5
disobedience, 70(1):2
distress, 59:2; 68(2):1; 69:2,5
disturbance, 56:11
divinity: sharing in, 52:6
doctor, 70(1):18; 70(2):1
documents, 57:6
Doeg, 51:3-4,9,11,12,13,15,16,17,32
dogs, 58(1):15; 58(2):7; 67:32
Donatists, 54:22; 57:15; 67:39
Donatus, 54:17,20,21; 69:5
dove, 54:8,9; 67:17,20
body of Christ, 67:21
dream-wealth, 72:26
drought, 67:31

demon, 62:7; 72:6
derision: Where is your God?, 61:14
desert, 54:12; 62:3,8,9; 64:17; 67:9,12; 72:5
inner place of the soul, 54:9,10
desert fathers, 54:9
desire, 54:8,16; 57:10; 58:1-2; 59:11; 61:16; 62:5,14; 63:17; 64:2,3,8; 67:20; 72:11,29,31,32,33
carnal, 64:4
evil cravings, 57:17,18,19,20
rich and poor, 51:14
despairs, 55:20; 70(1):1
despair, 51:7
accuser, 71:8,14,15
humans as tools of, 55:4
humiliated by Christ, 71:7
Jesus tempted by, 60:3
as lion; as dragon, 69:2
power, 61:21
strong, 58(1):6

Volume III17
God it is who helps me, 61:13
In God we shall fight bravely, 59:15
finished, 56:2
fire, 57:17,19,20; 59:2; 61:11; 63:19; 64:4; 65:16,18; 69:5
firmament, 71:18
flattery, 61:2; 69:5; 72:12
fleece, 71:9
flesh, 55:9; 57:10; 59:19; 64:3,7; 65:1; 66:6; 67:1,12,13,34,35; 68(1):18; 70(2):11; 71:10
ad thirst for God, 62:6,7,9
fragile, 62:10
material supports of, 62:10
means “human being”, 56:5
promise of resurrection, 62:6
sackcloth, 68(1):15
They will be two in one flesh, 68(2):1
to you all flesh will come, 64:5
flood, 68(1):3
flourishing, 53:2,3,4
folly, 68(1):10
food, 51:10; 53:1; 54:15,24; 64:14
foot, 67:31
foreigners, 53:6,7; 55:3; 16,20
foresight, 53:2
forgiveness:
Judgment Day, 52:4
refusal to forgive, 54:14
fortified place, 70(1):5
fortitude, 63:12; 64:11; 67:8,9,36
foxes, 62:19;20
fraud, 72:24
freak, 70(1):9
free will:
sacrifice of praise, 53:10,11; 70(2):1
serving God willingly, 70(1):2
freedom, 67:36; 72:11
friend, 59:8
fruit: earth has yielded its fruit, 66:8
fruitfulness, 59:9
fullness of time, 72:16
furrows, 64:15
future life, 71:21
immortality, 65:1
Galatia, 66:6
gall, 68(2):6
gate, 68(1):16
Gath, 55:3
generation, 60:8
Gentiles, 51:5; 56:17; 57:14; 58(1):10; 58(1):2,21; 58(2):7,8,10; 59:8,10,12; 60:3; 64:6,14,17; 65:1,4,10,14,15; 67:9,10,12,26,40,41; 68(2):20; 71:17; 71:9; 72:2,6
Gideon, 67:32; 71:9
gift(s), 58(2):11; 63:18; 67:38; 72:3
bestowed on us by God, 71:3

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72
Christ receives what his members receive,  67:25
of God, 55:7; 67:21
good and bad received from God, 62:14
bad, 71:13
sacrificial, 55:19
what creature does, God himself does, 52:5
Gilead, 59:9
gladiator, 70(1):1
Gilead, 59:9
gladiator, 70(1):1
glory, 56:13; 61:7; 61:12,13; 65:3,4,14; 67:23;
70(1):18
glue, 62:17,18
goats, 65:20
God:
See also
Jesus Christ; Son of God; Trinity;
Word of God
anger, 55:13; 57:20
attributes, 55:8
awesome works of, 65:5
care, 72:21,22
countenance, 68(2):15
covered by the shade of your wings, 60:6,7
denying existence of, 52:2,3
discontented with, 70(1):14
enemy of, 54:4
Father = most sublime reality, 58(1):10
Father as king, 67:15
foreknowledge, 68(2):13
forgetting God, 64:2,15
fortified place, 70(1):5
goodness of, 65:5; 70(2):8; 71:19
He alone works wonders, 71:20
heard by? be poor, 68(2):18
heart; anger, 54:22
hints dropped by; understanding, 72:1
hold fast; possess; worship, 55:16
I know that you are my God, 55:16,17
injustice of, 70(1):14
invisible works of, 67:9
judgment, 57:20
knowledge questioned, 72:17-18,20,21
merit, 52:5
mercy, 58(2):11
name held in honor, 71:16
not knowing everything, 52:5
omnipotence, 72:2
omnipresence, 67:7
Only once God has spoken, 61:17,18,19
pervasive imitator of, 70(2):6
presence. See presence of God.
profound, 64:13
protector, 70(1):5,7
providence. See providence.
Show us your face, 66:4
steadfast love and truth, 60:9
stronghold and refuge, 61:3; 70(1):5
substance, 68(1):5
surrendering to, 61:2,11
two things heard: power and mercy,  61:17
wanting authority over, 70(2):2
Who is like you, 70(2):6,7
Who will see them, 63:12
you will not march..., 59:13
godhead, 52:6; 56:4
godlessness, 54:4; 56:7,14; 57:21; 61:9;
67:21; 72:20
gold, 61:11
honesty and, 57:2
wisdom as, 71:17
good and evil, 51:6,8
See also iniquity; malice; sin; wickedness
Adam’s experimentation with evil,
70(2):1
gifts of God, 55:16
God can contrive good from evil, 61:22
God gives goods to all, 66:3
paradise tree, 70(2):7
two cities; Jerusalem and Babylon, 61:8
weeds among the wheat, 64:16
God, 68(1):9
good things: from house of God, 64:8
good works, 51:15; 59:10; 60:5; 62:13,15;
66:7,34; 70(1):19; 70(2):1
boasting about, 65:12
hiding; self-glorification, 65:3
Let your deeds shine, 65:3
love, not fear, as motive, 67:13
motive, 65:3
of godless persons, 67:41
puffed up by, 71:3
rich in, 72:26
visibility of, 67:1
goodness, 65:22
all derives from God, 70(2):6
cause as commendable, 68(1):9
gift from whom all goods derive, 52:5
good things and gifts, 58(2):11; 62:14
held within the heart, 53:3
holding fast to God, 72:34
power to behave well, 52:6
praise God’s name, 53:10
progress in, 54:9
tested by bad people, 54:4,9
gospel, 59:11; 66:10; 67:11; 68(2):4
grace, 57:4; 58(2):6; 61:7; 62:3,12; 65:5,14;
66:1; 67:8,9,10,17,21,25,29;
68(1):2,17; 68(2):3;
70(1):1,2,5,6,15,18,19,20; 70(2):4,5
abounding more than sin, 67:11
angels and, 70(2):5
gratuitous, 67:12; 70(1):1; 70(2):1,2
milk a symbol of, 67:22
returning to God, 70(2):1
grafting (wild olive) , 72:2
grain, 63:19; 69:1
grapes, 55:3,4,7,9

Volume III17
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

grass, 51:12; 53:2,3,4,9,11; 71:18
gratia (the word), 53:10
greed, 55:17; 62:18; 67:20
grieving, 68(2):5

guardian, 68(2):11
guide: Lead me in your way, 70(2):3
guilt, 51:11; 67:12,43; 72:24

hair, 51:9
hands, 57:21
right hand, 72:30
lifting up, 62:13,14

earthly, 61:6
God is my portion, 72:32
Old Testament promise, 67:20
present world, 55:16
temporal, 53:7

hard sayings, 54:24
harmony, 54:11,15; 72:21
hate, 54:5,7; 61:5; 68(1):9
healing, 57:9,10,11; 58(2):11; 59:4; 63:18
health, 61:13; 70(2):1

hearing: not hearing the words of God, 57:7

heart, 52:5,6,8,11; 53:8,10; 54:22; 55:19;
57:13; 58(2):1; 59:13; 61:14,16,18; 62:5;
63:11; 65:2; 70(1):19; 70(2):1; 72:7
darkened, 57:18,19
distance of, 55:2
ears shut, 57:8
Father and Son, 63:18
God as cause of ideas in, 52:5
image of God in, 57:3
iniquity in one’s own, 65:22
justified, 72:19,20
law written in, 57:1,2; 58(2):2
Lift up your hearts, 68(2):8
private, inner place, 51:10
Serve not only where it shows, 70(1):2
shut against other hearts, 55:9
sin committed in, 57:4
song in, 64:3
straightforward, 72:8
suffering and, 56:15
treasure in, 53:3,10

upright of, commended, 63:19

heaven, 51:6,9,16; 53:2; 54:3; 55:6; 59:7;
60:6; 61:6,11,12; 62:2; 64:3; 67:42; 72:31
citizen’s rights in, 52:5
dragnet cast into the sea, 64:9

kingdom of, 51:4
mercy and truth from, 56:10
rich getting in to, 51:14
heavens, 56:17; 67:10,11,21; 70(2):6
Hebrew language, 59:2
heel, 55:10

height of the day, 55:5
hell, 57:21; 68(1):3; 70(2):2
help: rise up and come to meet me, 58(1):9

hen, 58(1):10; 62:16
herb, 71:18
heresy(-etics), 52:4; 54:19,20,22; 56:13;
57:6,15; 59:2; 60:5; 65:2,5; 67:39;
68(1):11; 68(2):6
Herod, King, 62:19
hidden life, 53:3,5; 53:4
hiddenness, 55:9
hills, 64:17; 71:5,6,7
holocaust, 64:4; 65:18,19
Holy of Holies, 64:6

holy people: God’s chariot, 67:24
holy place, 67:7,24,33
desire, 62:11

I appeared before you, 62:9
Holy Spirit, 54:11; 56:3; 57:17; 58(1):15;
58(2):4; 59:10; 60:4; 62:1; 63:15;
64:14; 67:24,25; 68(2):7; 71:3,15
Annunciation, 67:21
baptism of Christ, 71:11
cause of our searching, 52:5
diverse manifestations of, 67:17
gift of charity, 67:18
knowledge of God’s gifts, 52:5
law fulfilled through, 67:11
overshadowing, 67:21
homeland, 61:7; 62:14
honesty, 57:2; 70(1):17; 72:18,24
honey, 51:18
honour, 61:13; 71:10

Father and Son, 68(1):13
hooves, 68(2):16

hope, 54:3,13; 55:3,7,9,19,20; 57:22; 59:10;
60:4; 60:5; 61:13,14,16; 62:1,6; 64:3;
65:12; 67:6,20,29; 68(2):8,21;
70(1):1,7,8; 70(2):3,11,12
all placed in God, 72:34
all the ends of the earth, 64:9
consolation, 65:1
disciples lose, at death of Christ, 68(1):8

My eyes grew weary, 68(1):8
temporal happiness, 53:7

horns, 68(2):16

house, 55:1; 60:6; 67:7
human beings, 68(1):5
earthly/heavenly man, 70(1):2
animals and, 54:3

bounds crossed over, 72:13
fields, hills, and desert, 64:17

flesh as, 56:5
kingly and priestly body, 51:3
led as gifts, 71:13
trials to others, 55:4
human body:
decomposed: whole in God’s sight, 62:6
fragility of, 62:6
God dwelling in, 66:1,66:1
human condition, 54:3; 61:3,18; 67:29; 72:26
earth you are…, 71:12

misery and mercy, 56:17
rich or poor, 72:13
humankind: separation from, 54:9
hunger, 58(1):15; 70(2):6
hymn, 60:1; 64:3, 18; 72:6
three elements required, 72:1
hypocrisy, 57:3, 11
Idithun, 61:1, 11, 14, 16, 17, 18
idolatry, 62:1, 4; 65:21
image of God, 54:3; 57:1; 59:2; 66:4; 70(2):6
imagery, 66:10
imitation, 55:20; 60:9; 67:36
craftiness of snakes, 57:10
of Christ, 56:1
leaders, 71:5
immorality, 51:14; 55:6; 60:8; 64:4; 68(1):3; 71:8
reconciliation and, 71:1
imperfections, 54:8
impiety, 64:6; 65:1
incense, 65:20
incest, 59:10
incurruptibility, 62:10; 64:4; 65:18
inferiority, 54:6
infirmities, 58(2):8
inheritance, 60:7; 62:10; 67:31
allotted portions, 67:20
in the middle, 67:19
Testaments as, 67:19
depths = pit, 68(2):1
everly enveloped in, 72:11
folds of fat, 72:12
heap further iniquity upon..., 68(2):12
injustice, 51:10; 54:13; 58(1):21; 61:21
innocence, 61:22
insensitiveness, 55:6
insult, 68(1):12, 13; 68(2):4
intelligence, 72:4, 25
invoking, 52:8
Isaiah, 51:5; 68(1):5
Israel, 52:9; 54:16; 64:17; 65:10; 67:12, 40, 43; 71:9
Israelites, See Jews.
Jacob, 52:9; 59:8
javelins, 54:24
jawbones of the lions, 57:14, 15
Jebus, 61:7
Jeremiah, 64:1, 2
Jericho, 54:13; 60:8
Jerusalem, 51:7, 9; 61:7, 8; 62:16; 64:1, 2, 8; 66:9, 12; 72:3
See also Zion
Babylon versus, 61:6, 7
festivals, 61:10
heavenly city, 61:4; 62:6; 64:1
Jews' loss of the city, 68(2):10
sign or figure, 61:7
Jesse, 72:1, 3
Jesus Christ:
advent foretold, 61:4
angels minister to, 56:10
antonomasia (usage) in O.T., 67:15
arm of the Lord, 70(2):4, 5
ascended on high; took captivity captive, 67:25-27
ascended to his Father, 58(1):10; 70(2):10
baptism of, 58(1):7; 71:11
blessed in name of, 66:9
bride made for him on cross, 56:11
buried (covered himself with a cave), 56:4
called 'David', 55:1
came so those who see may become blind, 65:5
Come to me, all you who labor..., 54:13
come to set fire to earth, 59:3
coming as judge, 52:4
crucified as man, not God, 56:4
crucified by human beings, 56:12
crucifixion, 55:5; 65:6
see also passion below
fear as cause, 52:9
his blood be upon us, 58(1):5
robbers on sides of, 68(1):9
third or sixth hour, 63:5
this is not God,' 52:3
David as, 55:3
death, See below; passion and death
Destroy this temple, 56:8; 65:7
devil and, 68(1):9; 71:14, 15
divinity, 56:3; 63:10; 67:39
denied, 52:3, 4, 9
godhead hidden, 65:5
humanity and, 58(1):2, 10
Do not cling to me..., 58(1):10
driving traders from the temple, 70(1):18
death of all our striving, 56:2
death of the law, 54:1; 55:1; 56:2; 64:6; 65:1; 67:1, 23
exalted to the heavens, 56:13
example, 56:2; 63:3; 67:30
false evidence against him, 65:7
fasting, 68(1):14, 16
Father is greater than I, 63:13
Father, forgive them..., 54:12

Volume III17
figures: Solomon as ‘peacemaker’, 71:1
first-born from the dead, 71:8
foretold his future suffering, 68(2):5
forgiveness, See forgiveness of sin.
form of a servant, 63:13
fullness of the Godhead, 67:23
future coming of, 67:42
glorified after death, 57:16
glorified through weakness, 53:4
glory and power, 62:11; 71:12
God’s equal, 58(1):10
godhead hidden in heart of, 63:13
He will drink from the torrent, 57:16
head of every man, 57:10
heart of, 63:18
how he is our hope, 60:4
human and divine, 56:1
human heart, 63:14
humanity, 62:11; 64:7; 70(2):10
suffering, 55:15

temple of the godhead, 65:7
united to the Word, 67:23
used for miracles and sufferings, 56:16

I am the way…, 66:5
I am thirsty, 61:9
I and the Father are one, 62:11
I have the power…, 65:7
If anyone is ashamed of me, 68(1):12
Jewish ritual purity, 57:13
justice reigns in, 71:7
keeping gaze fixed on, 54:9
kingship, 55:2; 57:3; 59:2; 60:8; 61:6; 64:4; 67:15; 71:2
light of the prophets, 58(2):2
light of the world, 54:25
loves = keeping his commandments, 55:17
mockery, 67:3
My God, My God…, 58(1):2

Peter’s fear, 55:15
perfection of the law, 70(1):20
power and wisdom of God, 67:37
power to lay down my life, 56:11
prefigured by David, 53:1; 54:3; 59:1,3
pride and the law, 50:2
prophecies about, 58(1):22; 62:1; 72:1
resurrection, 56:4,8; 10; 58(2):4,10; 63:15; 67:2,5; 68(2):5; 70(2):1

arise, psaltery and lyre, 56:16
sacraments from side of Christ, 56:11
temple veil torn, 64:6; 70(2):9
Weep not for me…, 68(2):5
why have you forsaken me, 68(1):7; 68(2):11; 70(1):12
winepress, 53:4

savior of his body (the Church), 55:3
secret heart of, 63:13
seed of Abraham, 71:19

set fire to the earth, 59:2
sinful woman washes his feet, 66:8
sinner, 58(1):8; 63:6; 68(1):10
sovereign over all, 61:4

speaking through the prophets, 56:13
storm at sea; Christ asleep, 54:10

sufferings, 61:4; 64:13

Crucify him!, 58(2):3
death’s dominion defeated, 51:1,2; 71:8,17
disciples lose hope, 68(1):8
divinity hidden in, 56:4
Father, forgive them…, 54:12; 68(2):5; 69:3
foretold in the psalms, 58(1):2
free choice, 67:30

gall and vinegar, 68(2):6
God praying to God, 56:5
God’s plan, 61:22
guards posted at grave, 63:15; 65:8
hands lifted up on cross, 62:13
I lay down to sleep, 56:12
King of the Jews, 55:2; 56:3; 57:3; 58(1):1; 59:2; 62:19,20
mockery, 67:3

My God, My God…, 58(1):2

Peter’s fear, 55:15

perfection of the law, 70(1):20
power and wisdom of God, 67:37
power to lay down my life, 56:11
prefigured by David, 53:1; 54:3; 59:1,3
priest and victim, 64:6
prophecies about, 58(1):22; 62:1; 72:1
resurrection, 56:4,8; 10; 58(2):4,10; 63:15; 67:2,5; 68(2):5; 70(2):1

arise, psaltery and lyre, 56:16
death’s slayer, 51:1,2
lies about, 58(1):3
martyrs’ exemplar, 55:9

my Lord be magnified, 69:6,7
mercy and truth, 56:10
mocked, 54:12; 56:4; 59:9; 63:16; 65:7; 67:30; 70(1):11

mountain, 57:9; 67:23
My peace I give to you, 71:1
My soul is glued to you, 62:17
My soul is sorrowful, 55:6; 63:18
My yoke is kindly…, 59:8

obedience, 71:6

pasch, 68(1):2
passion and death, 54:10,18; 56:2; 58(1):3; 59:9; 62:17; 63:1,7-14,16; 65:7; 68(1):3,6,7; 69:1
Christ speaking in the psalms, 68(1):1,2
come down from the cross, 54:12; 56:4; 59:9; 63:16; 65:7; 67:30; 70(1):11

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72
suppressing the name of, 58(1):3
tempted by the devil, 60:3
This is a hard saying…, 54:23
to you all flesh will come, 64:9
tower, 60:5,15
truth, 57:6
universal passion of, 61:4
unknown by contemporaries, 68(1):13
walking on water, 54:5
way, 57:1
way in the desert, 62:8
way, truth, life, 55:20; 66:5; 70(2):3; 72:16
who touched me?, 61:10
whole Christ: head and body, 58(1):2,5
Without me you can do nothing, 67:23
You are my beloved Son, 67:23
Are we blind?, 65:5
Babylonian captivity, 64:1; 70(1):2
blindness of, 68(2):10
Christians and the O.T., 72:5
crucifixion of Christ and, 55:2; 56:4,12; 58(1):1,10,15; 58(2):4,5,7; 63:4,13; 64:1; 65:2,5; 68(2):6; 70(1):12
Do not kill them, 58(2):2
Egyptian domination; figure, 72:5
fear of temporal losses, 62:18
Jerusalem empty of, 68(2):10
nation as fleece, 71:9
prophecies about Christ and, 58(1):22
punished; homeland lost, 64:1
remnants, 58(1):21
Romans and, 58(1):21; 58(2):2
scattered throughout all nations, 56:9
self-satisfaction, 65:2
survival of, 56:9; 58(2):2
temporal deliverance (from Egypt), 72:3
temporary visitation, 72:3
true wheat, 64:17
ungrateful, 63:3
Joah, 59:1,2; 60:19
Joh, 55:19; 68(2):15; 70(1):14,16; 71:3; 72:30
John the Baptist, 57:12; 61:4; 67:23
Jonadab, 70(1):2; 70(2):1
Jonah; sign, 65:6,7
Jonathan, 67:19
Jordan river, 71:11
Joseph in Egypt, 51:4; 61:5
Joshua, 72:3
joy, 53:8; 54:2; 57:22; 58(2):10; 59:1; 62:1; 63:17,18; 64:13,17,18; 65:2,12; 66:10; 66:7; 67:6,24; 72:7
Judah, 59:10; 67:36
Judas, 51:3; 55:9; 61:22; 63:11; 65:7; 68(2):11
Judea, 64:17; 65:2; 68(2):20
judgment, 71:7
actions and words, 57:2
entrusted to the Son, 71:2,3
justice and, 71:4,7
come, you who are blessed, 63:19
forgiveness for everyone, 52:4
judge cannot be hoodwinked, 58(2):5
just person, 61:13; 64:17; 69:3
sadness and the crucifixion, 63:17,18
special privileges, 66:4
justice, 57:1; 58(1):13; 63:11; 61:16,22; 70(1):4,16; 71:2,3,4,7
actions and words, 57:2
if you truly speak…, 57:2,3,4,9,11
judge on judgment day, 58(2):5
peace and, 71:5,6
standards, 61:21
thrust for, 62:6
widow and unjust judge, 65:24
justification, 64:13; 65:2; 67:41
kinds, 72:27
killing, 61:22; 69:3
See also death; murder
kindness, 51:10,13; 57:1
kingdom: earthly and heavenly, 51:4; 72:3
kings, 56:3; 67:21,38; 69:4; 71:13,14
bad, in Jerusalem, 61:8
earthly; heavenly, 55:2
knowledge: of something before it is created, 61:18
Korah, 51:9
languages, 54:11
laughter, 51:13
law, 58(2):7; 65:14
attitudes toward, 58(2):2
charity and observance of, 67:24
Christ and perfection of, 70(1):20
forgetting, is to be killed, 58(1):21
fulfillment, 57:9; 71:15
judged by, 70(1):6
let them never forget, 58(1):21
letter alone, 70(1):19
masculine character of, 59:10
material reward for keeping, 65:1,2
Maximianists, 57:15
memory and conduct, 58(2):2
mercy and judgment, 71:4
Mount Sinai, 67:11
perfecting the, 67:11
pool with five porticos, 70(1):19
weakening, 67:11
well versed in, 65:4
written in the heart, 57:1,2
Lazarus (brother of Martha and Mary), 67:8; 70(2):3
Lazarus (parable of rich man), 51:14; 69:7; 72:13

Volume III17
leaders: imitation; obedience, 71:5
leaping, 61:1,2,11,14,18,19
Lebanon, 71:18
leisure: holy, 70(1):18
liar, 51:11; 52:4
licentiousness, 52:3; 69:2
lie, 58(1):3; 65:6,7,8
life, 62:12,13
See also
Christian life
days are short, 60:8
fatigue, weariness, decay, 62:6
I have made my life known, 55:14
motivation, 55:14
precarious, 72:15
span of, 65:12
successive stages of, 62:6
time of travel, 55:9
who will give me wings?, 54:8
lion-cubs, 56:10
lions, 57:13
lips, 58(2):3,4; 70(2):12
listening, 53:5; 58(2):1; 61:1; 65:21
literature, 70(1):19
lodger, 60:6
lodgings, 54:16
looking back, 69:9
Lord’s Prayer:
Deliver us from evil, 54:3
Forgive us our debts, 54:14; 66:7
Give us today our daily bread, 55:7
Thy kingdom come, 66:10; 71:17
loss, 66:3
Lot, daughters of, 59:10
Lot’s wife, 69:9
love, 54:9; 55:2; 56:1; 61:4,3,7; 65:20; 67:41
chaste, 52:8; 72:32,33
command to love enemies, 54:4,5,6
dove a symbol of, 54:8
favorable glance, 65:22
God’s steadfast love, 60:9
Jerusalem vs. Babylon, 64:2
love for God, 70(1):1, 72:34
love of many will grow cold, 52:1; 69:2
lover, 54:8; 72:1
Luciferians, 67:39
lure, 67:22
lust, 57:18,22; 62:18; 70(2):1; 72:27
lyre, 56:16; 70(2):11
Maccabean brothers, 68(2):3
Macedonians, 67:39
Maeteth, 52:1
magician, 57:4
malice, 51:7,8,10,13; 56:4,14; 63:3;
68(2):11,12; 70(1):1
Mammon, 53:2
Manasseh, 59:9
Man, 67:39
manna, 67:9
marriage: true love in, 55:17
marrow, 65:20
Marsians, 57:7
martyr, 51:9, 18; 52:9; 56:6,14; 58(1):5;
59:5,6,9,13; 61:4; 63:1,15; 67:36;
68(1):3,9; 69:4,5,9; 71:13
Christ as exemplar, 63:3; 69:1,2
deliver my soul from fear, 63:2
God working within them, 59:13
imitation of, 69:4
martyrdom, 67:31
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 56:3; 57:5; 58(1):2;
62:1; 67:21, 70(2):10
Mary Magdalen, Saint, 58(1):10, 68(2):5
material goods, See temporal goods
Matthias, Apostle, 67:19
maturity, 64:15
Maximianists, 57:15
medicine, 57:15; 57:9,10
members of Christ, See Church.
mercy, 54:4; 56:10,17; 57:13;
58(1):19,20; 58(2):11; 59:3; 60:9;
61:2; 62:12,13; 68(1):17; 70(1):1;
70(2):12; 71:15,16
God pleading to God for, 56:5
heard spoken by God, 61:17,20
persevere in prayer, 65:24
sweetness of, 68(2):1
trust in God, 51:16,17
withholding from the unjust, 58(1):21
merit, 51:17; 55:17; 58(2):2; 65:4,22;
67:10,21,41; 70(2):1,2,5
Mesopotamia, 59:1,2,3
Messiah, 54:3; 57:12; 65:4; 72:3
midday, 54:18
middle (Scriptural use), 67:19
milk: symbol of grace, 65:22
mind: law of members opposes, 69:7;
70(1):2; 70(2):1
miracle, 65:6
Elisha and dead child, 70(1):19
humanity of Jesus, 56:16
raising of Lazarus, 70(2):3
mire, 68(1):18
misery, 68(2):5
misfortune, 55:19; 65:17
Moab, 59:10
mockery, 65:5
money, 51:14,15; 52:9; 53:2,10; 57:2; 64:13
moneylending, 54:14
monotheism, 59:12; 62:1
morn, 60:8; 71:8,10,11
morning, 54:18; 64:13
mortality, 60:8; 61:7; 65:12,13; 68(2):18; 71:10
Moses, 61:9,18; 64:6; 65:6; 67:9,15;
70(1):19; 72:5
mother, 58(1):10
mountain(-s), 71:5,6,18
For there the Lord will dwell to the end,
67:23
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

lush, 67:22
poor as, 67:23
preachers as, 64:10
saints as, 67:23
Sinai, 67:11
strength, 64:10
mouth, 58(2):3,4
God smashed their teeth, 57:11,15
mud, 68(1):4-5
murder, 57:4; 69:3; 71:16
musical instrument, 56:16
mustard seed, 68(1):1,3
mutability: moon as image of, 60:8
mystery(-ries), 70(2):9
Mystical Body of Christ, 67:16
members before Christ’s advent, 61:4
one person comprises many, 64:9
Naphtali, 67:36
Nazareth, 65:4
nations:
   all on god’s way, 66:5,6
   all will be Christian, 58(1):17
   guided, 58:6
   troubled, 64:12
   nature, 68(1):5
   Nebuchadnezzar, 61:8; 68(2):3
   necessity, 61:16
   need, 68(2):17; 72:12
   filled; withdrawn, 62:10
   needy. See poor.
   negotiatio, 70(1):18
   negotium, 70(1):18
neighbor: commandment to love, 51:10
   net, 64:9
New Covenant, 67:36; 72:1,6,30
New Testament, 67:20,35
right, 62:15; 64:13; 70(1):16
Noah, 67:19; 68(1):1
north, 59:10
Novationists, 54:22
obedience, 63:16; 70(2):1,7
Adam and Christ, 71:6
   to leaders, 71:5
occupations, 62:12
ocean, 21:11
old age, 65:12; 70(1):11; 70(2):4
Old Testament, 72:3,6,30
old man: beauty in righteousness, 64:8
Old Testament: earthly happiness and, 67:20
olive tree, 51:16,17; 58(1):21; 65:5
grafting the wild olive, 72:2
original sin, 57:2,18; 61:7; 68(2):11; 70(1):6,15
   children of wrath, 57:20
death came through Adam, 68(1):2
orphans, 67:7
      olym, 70(1):19
oven, 65:20
pagans, 52:4; 54:11; 56(9):14; 62:1; 64:6;
   65:21; 69:2; 70(1):6
pain, 55:6; 60:3; 62:2; 63:18
parable, 57:7
   killing the heir, 70(2):1
rich man and Lazarus, 72:13
widow and unjust judge, 65:24
paradise, 70(2):7
parallelism, 71:2,3
pardón, 64:6
parents and children, 54:7; 62:14
partridge, 54:27
parturition, 52:1
Paeecha, 68(1):2
Passover, 59:10; 68(1):2,3
past, 57:10
patience, 61:11; 67:20,39; 70(1):6,7
   patriarchs, 61:4; 65:5; 68(1):1; 72:2
Paul, Saint, 67:12,36; 68(2):4; 70(1):1
   See also Saul (later Paul)
   birthpangs; pregnant with charity, 52:1
conversion, 58(1):12
   distressed by trials, 54:8
   God’s mercy to, 58(1):12
   I am the least..., 72:4
   persecutor converted, 55:12,14
   sting of the flesh, 53:5; 58(2):5
   sufferings, 56:15
   peace, 54:19; 64:2,3,4; 71:1,10,11
   enjoyed by sinners, 53:3; 72:10
   justice and, 71:5,6
   Pelagius, 58(1):19
   people of God: mixture, 71:7
   perfection, 54:1; 55:20; 56:2; 69:8
   consummation, 58(2):5
   perjury, 70(1):17
   persecution, 52:7; 54:8; 55:4; 59:5,6;
   62:17,18; 63:1; 64:11,12; 65:16; 67:12;
   68(1):1,4,9; 68(2):11; 69:2,3,4
   Christians more numerous after, 62:20
   flattery and, 69:5
   men of blood, 58(1):5
   persecutors defeated, 61:5
   perseverance, 52:1; 54:9; 56:6; 59:10; 60:6;
   64:4; 65:15; 67:6
   giving thanks, 60:10
   holding out, 60:4
   prayer and mercy, 65:24
called “Satan”, 55:15; 69:4
carnal affection for Christ, 62:17
   walking on water, 54:5
   Pharisees, 57:11,13; 61:13; 70(1):4
   Philip, Apostle, 58(1):10
   Photinus, Bishop of Sirmium, 67:39
   physician, 58(1):7
   pilgrim, 64:1
   pillar of cloud, 67:9
   pt (iniquity), 68(2):1
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

helped within, 53:8
hidden deliverance of, 68(2):3
hopes withheld from world, 53:7
reign eternally, 60:8
sainthood, 59:2
salt-pits, 59:2
salvation, 51:1; 55:15; 58(2):7,11; 60:3;
61:12,13; 66:5,6,7; 67:31; 68(1):17;
66(2):15; 69:6; 70(1):4,18; 71:15,18
gratia, 70(2):1
proclaiming all day long, 70(1):16
You will save them for nothing, 55:12
Samaritan, 61:9; 68(2):11
sandal, 59:11
satisfaction, 64:8
Saul (later Paul):
conversion, 58(1):15; 72:4
persecutor of Christ, 52:1; 67:36; 69:3;
70(1):4
Saul, King, 51:1-3; 53:1; 56:3,4; 58(1):3;
59:1
savagery, 57:8,14
scales, 61:16
scandal, 59:10; 60:6; 68(2):6
a thousand shall fall, 68(2):13
Woe to the world…, 69:2
sham, 54:16,19,20; 64:9; 71:12
scouring, 72:10,13
sea:
treasures, 66:9
stir up the depth, 64:11
symbol of this world, 64:9
turbulent, 64:12
turns into dry land, 64:11; 65:11
Second Coming of Christ, 62:1; 63:15; 69:9
sects, 71:12
security, 70(2):3
seed, 59:9; 64:17; 68(1):3
seeking God, 52:5; 53:11; 69:3,6
Seius, Gaius, 70(1):14
self-congratulation, 69:8
self-exaltation, 61:2
self-knowledge, 55:2; 58(1):9
self-refutation, 57:11
self-reliance, 58(1):18
self-seeking, 54:19
sensuality, 69:2
separation, 54:9,16
Septuagint, 67:16
sheep, 59:9; 64:17; 68(1):3
seeking God, 52:5; 53:11; 69:3,6
Seius, Gaius, 70(1):14
self-congratulation, 69:8
self-exaltation, 61:2
self-knowledge, 55:2; 58(1):9
self-refutation, 57:11
self-reliance, 58(1):18
self-seeking, 54:19
sensuality, 69:2
separation, 54:9,16
Septuagint, 67:16
sheep, 69:6; 70(1):5

Volume III17
shepherd, 69:6
ship: at anchor, 64:3
shoulders, 59:8; 67:18
shout, 64:18; 65:2; 68(1):7
shows, 57:7
sickness: avoiding illness, 70(2):1
sign, 59:1, 6; 68(2):6; 72:6
Jerusalem as, 61:7
seeking, 65:6
silence, 66:6
silver, 54:22
silversmiths, 67:39
Simeon, 66:5
similes, 57:7; 66:10
simplicity, 66:3
sin, 59:5; 63:9, 16, 22; 68(1):18; 71:14
See also conversion; iniquity; wickedness
abounding, 67:11
chains of, 57:4
debt, 71:16
defending as injustice, 58(1):14; 68(1):19
devil gains control through, 72:5
God's patience with, 63:19
habitual; no shame, 52:2
hardship because of, 68(1):12
holding God responsible for, 58(1):14
punishment, 58(1):13
refraining for sake of riches, 72:18
responsibility for, 58(1):19
springs from another sin, 57:4
struggle against, 67:8
thrown into confusion by, 59:4
unjust dealing, 58(1):12
wounds, 68(2):11
Sinaí, Mount, 67:11, 24, 26
singing, 64:3
confession, 66:6-7
hymn element, 72:1
living for God, 67:5
unending ages, 60:10
sinner(-s), 53:3, 9, 54:5, 58:2, 18; 61:2, 5, 13; 63:18; 64:6, 8; 67:3, 8, 31, 37; 70(1):4, 14, 18, 19; 70(2):3
alternation of the womb, 57:5, 6
confessing sinfulness, 68(2):1
death's tool, 58(1):6
envied, 57:17; 72:9, 10
eye of the heart lost, 57:18
falling into hands of, 68(1):19
forgiving, 55:10
God is judging now, 57:22
prosperity, 72:23
rescue me from hand of, 70(1):6
righteous will wash their hands, 57:21
say in heart: God does not exist, 52:7
wealth of, 72:18
You will save them for nothing, 55:12
Jews as book-bearers, 56:9
Serve not only where it shows, 70(1):2
sleep, 56:11; 62:4, 67:17
midst: Old and New Testaments, 67:20
sling, 54:26
snake, 68(1):5
fury like venom of, 57:7, 8, 11
imitate craftiness of, 57:10
snare, 56:14
Sodomites, 69:2
solidarity: head and body, 62:2
solitude, 54:8, 9, 10, 15
Solomon, King, 67:23; 71:3, 17
name = 'peacemaker', 71:1
Son of God, 63:3
crucified, 68(2):12
dead, 68(1):6
death foretold in Book of Wisdom, 56:4
emptied himself, 58(1):10; 68(1):9
Father saved him from the dead, 56:8
form of a servant, 65:5, 10; 68(1):4
powers; king, 67:15
radiance of the Father, 71:8
Son of Man, 52:6; 63:3
song, 64:2, 66:6
psalms, 67:1
sorrows, 55:5, 63:17
soul, 55:5
See also body and soul
thirst for God, 62:5-6, 9
beauty in power and wisdom, 58(1):18
Bless the Lord…, 66:1
dead and, 54:7
established in life, 65:15
filled; feast, 62:14
great things God has done for, 65:21
killing by leading astray, 54:26
life of the body, 70(2):3
my soul stood fast, 55:11
nourished with wisdom, 62:14
proper food of, 62:7
provoking, 70(1):14
raised to life, 70(2):3
redeemed, 70(2):12
sleep and, 62:4
supports of, 62:10
spirit, 64:6
represented by psaltery, 70(2):11
spiritual life:
See also presence of God
ascending; making progress, 58(1):10
blessing, 66:1
fear as flight from, 67:2
God who is at work in you, 67:24
invisible works of God, 67:9
Seek the Lord, and your soul will live, 68(2):17
yield to heart of God, 63:18
spirituality:
animal body comes first, 61:7; 70(2):1
inner riches, 55:19, 20

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72
risen in faith, hope, charity, 70(2):10
spoils, 67:16
state: earthly, will perish, 61:8
Stephen, Saint, 57:8; 58(1):5; 69:3; 70(1):4,14
steward, 53:2
storm, 54:5,10,13
stranger, 57:13
straw, 61:11
streams, 64:14
61:11; 63:2; 65:13; 67:42,44; 69:5;
70(1):1,11,19
guarding as God’s, 58(1):18,19
preparing mountains, 64:10
study, 67:39
stumbling-block, 65:10
stupidity, 51:16; 53:2
substance, 68(1):4-5
suffering, 54:4,6,10; 56:5; 57:21,22; 59:9,10;
60:5; 63:1; 65:16; 67:36; 69:5; 70(1):14
He did not allow my feet to slip,
keeping the commandments, 68(1):12
lacking in sufferings of Christ, 61:4
my heart is ready, 56:15
pagan view of, 56:14
right-hearted people, 63:18
solidarity: we in Christ; Christ in us, 62:2
willing, 68(1):3
summer, 66:3
sun, 57:19; 62:14; 66:4; 70(2):6; 71:8,19
sunlight, 72:7
superiority, 55:5
surrender to God, 61:2,11
name of God, 51:18
swindling, 72:18
sword, 56:12; 63:4
two-edged, 58(1):16
synagogue, 72:4,29
temporal values, 72:6
Syria, 59:8

tail, 57:10
taken up, 71:10

timbrel, 68:16;17

taste: sweetness of God, 51:18
teaching, 59:2
tears, 55:14; 58(1):9

teeth, 63:4
God smashed their teeth, 57:11,15

temple, 67:38
Christ’s body, 65:7
fashioned from orphans and widows, 67:7
good things of, 64:8
Jerusalem, 64:1
veil torn at death of Christ, 64:6; 70(2):9
we are God’s temple, 64:8
temporal goods, 51:9,16; 53:5,7; 57:10; 64:8;
68(2):10; 71:18; 72:31,33
beast-like craving for, 72:29
blessings: God alone gives them, 66:2-4
carnally-minded, 61:15
despising earthly things, 72:20
fear regarding, 63:16
gifts of God, 53:10
invoking God for, 52:8; 72:23
mortal advantages, 58(2):5
praise of God for, 72:4
randomly distributed, 66:3
reward for keeping the law, 65:1
worship for the sake of, 72:6
temptation, 55:11; 58(1):4; 60:3,6,7; 61:20,22;
62:17; 63:1; 64:13; 68(1):1;
69:5; 70(1):5; 72:5
test, 65:16; 67:39; 69:5
Testaments (inheritances), 67:19
thanksgiving: perseverance in, 60:10
thief, 72:12
thigh, 72:1
thirst, 61:9; 62:3,8,14; 66:1; 67:35;
68(1):14
Thomás, Apostle, Saint, 63:17; 68(1):8
thorns, 57:20
thoughts, 67:1
threshing-floor, 54:19; 71:9
time/71:8,19
titles, 67:19
toadstool, 51:7
Tobit, 57:21; 70(1):14
today, 60:8
tongue, 63:4; 64:6; 67:32,38; 70(2):12; 72:30
exalt God with, 65:21
offending with, 55:10
reduced to weakness, 63:15
torture, 66:7
tower, 60:5; 61:3
tower of Babel, 54:11,15
trade (commerce), 70(1):17,19
transfiguration: our bodies, 67:44
trap, 64:13; 68(2):7
treachery, 63:5
treasure, 54:6; 55:19

treatment of others: Do not do to another,
57:1,2

tree: paradise, 70(2):7
trial, 55:2,20; 69:9
humans as tools of devil, 55:4
tribulation, 53:11; 54:2,4,10; 55:4,9,13;
59:5,6,7,10; 63:18; 65:16,20; 67:24;
68(2):1
tribute to Caesar, 57:11
Trinity, 54:22; 59:2; 67:15,39; 68(1):5
trouble, 55:13; 59:6,14; 62:10; 64:13; 65:16;
68(1):1; 68(2):2,18; 70(1):14; 70(2):9
trust, 63:17; 64:10; 69:6
cast your care upon the Lord, 54:24
human resources, 54:27
truth, 56:1; 56:10,17; 57:1,5,6,10,20,21;
58(1):15; 60:9; 61:16; 64:6,14,15;
67:12; 68(1):17; 70(1):20

Volume III17
building on rock, 57:23
heard in the heart, 57:2
twelve thousand, 59:2
twelve, 59:2

unanimity: tower of Babel and, 54:11
underworld, 54:16; 68(2):7
understanding, 53:7; 54:3
image of God, 54:3
refused, 51:10
all one soul in charity, 62:5
many churches, one Church, 64:14
one chosen and taken up, 64:7
one flock and one shepherd, 71:9
Unto the end, 54:1; 55:1; 56:2; 65:1

Valley of Shelters, 59:8
Valley of the Salt-Pits, 59:2,7
values, 53:3; 62:14,18; 71:17
veil, 64:6; 70(2):9
vengeance, 57:22
vessels: wrath and mercy, 58(1):20; 58(2):2
vice, 68(1):5; 70(1):9
vigil, 62:4
vindication, 58(2):6
vine: turns sour, 55:3
vigor, 66:14; 68(2):6
vocation, 52:5; 59:2
vows, 55:19; 62:20; 64:4; 65:19

wakefulness, 62:4
warning: many invited, few are chosen, 61:6
watchfulness, 62:4; 64:3
water, 65:17
let anyone who is thirsty, 64:14
streams of living water, 64:14
waving, 61:23
wax, 57:17,19
weakness, 54:8; 56:1; 58(2):6; 67:12; 70(1):5,11
ostentatious use of, 72:26
sinners, 72:18
wedding feast, 58(1):11; 61:6
wheat, 64:16
wheel, 59:12
wickedness, 54:11,16; 55:9; 67:8; 70(1):6
many churches, one Church, 64:14
God’s allowing evils, 54:4,9
God’s allowing evils, 61:22
prosperity, 53:3
widow, 67:7
parable of the unjust judge, 65:24
wife: love, 53:10

wind: four winds, 59:2
wine, 55:7
wine-drinkers, 68(1):16
winepress, 55:3
wings, 54:8; 67:17
winnowing, 51:6,12
winter, 66:3
wisdom, 53:5; 58(1):18; 64:15; 66:4; 67:18
fear of losing, 52:9
gold, 71:17
knowing oneself as nothing, 70(1):1
soul nourished by, 62:14
thirst for, 62:6
witness, 59:9,13
witnessing: swallowed alive, 63:2
woman: childless; seven husbands, 65:1
womb: alienated from, 57:5,6
Word of God, 58(2):10; 65:7; 66:3
God was in Christ, 67:23
in the beginning, 54:3, 64:7; 70(2):10
Only once God has spoken, 61:17,18,19
riches of wisdom and knowledge, 61:19
wars, 57:6
seeking praise for, 55:7
treated with loathing, 55:8
words of God:
The Lord will give his word, 67:14
work:
good workers, 70(1):19
preaching with power, 67:14
works of mercy, 51:9,13
works, 70(1):18
world, 59:2; 63:9,16; 68(1):9
athirst, 65:11
city, 58(1):15
Edom as, 62:3
enemy, 54:6
good things in, 51:18; 62:14
love of Babylon, 64:2
lovers of darkness, 54:4
sea as symbol of, 64:9
two kinds of people in, 51:6
unstable beings in, 65:11
worldliness, 64:7
worldly distinction, 53:3
worldly-minded, 51:15
worship, 58(2):7; 64:6; 65:20
fall prostrate before him, 71:12
freely offered, 55:20
gratis, 52:8; 71:7
reward for, 55:17
wounds, 68(2):11
wrath, 68(2):9
vessel of, 58(1):20
written texts, 70(1):19

year, end of the, 64:16
years: God’s time, 60:8
yoke, 67:26
youth, 70(2):3
renewal of, 66:10; 70(1):11
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

Zachariah, 61:4
Zalmon, Mount, 67:17,21,22
zeal, 54:16,19; 68(1):13; 70(1):1
Zebulun, 67:36

Zion, 61:4; 68(2):20; 71:7; 72:34
watching-post, 64:3
Ziphites, 53:1-8,11
Zobah, 59:1,2,3

Volume III17
Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the *Expositions of the Psalms* can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

**Volume III/18**

**Homilies/Expositions**

**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-166-4, 6 x 9 in., 510 pp., 2002  
**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-167-1, 6 x 9 in., 510 pp., 2002

**Includes:**

*Expositions of the Psalms*  
*(Enarrationes in Psalmos)*

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>6:16</th>
<th>II, 90, 7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>87, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:49</td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:52</td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:4</td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>85, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>75, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Kings</td>
<td>2:23-24</td>
<td>83, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td>4:7.11</td>
<td>96, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>82, 14; 89, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>73, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>73, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>77, 10; 77, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:3</td>
<td>77, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:10</td>
<td>77, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:23</td>
<td>73, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>19:2</td>
<td>85, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>1:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verses</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6(5)</td>
<td>II, 88, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9(8)</td>
<td>87, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3(2)</td>
<td>81, 3; II, 88, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-4(2-3)</td>
<td>76, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4(3)</td>
<td>II, 88, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6(5.4)</td>
<td>74, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7(6)</td>
<td>89, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3(1)</td>
<td>83, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3(2)</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4(3)</td>
<td>I, 88, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9B:10(10:10)</td>
<td>93, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10(9)</td>
<td>83, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3(11:2)</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6(11:5)</td>
<td>93, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6(12:5)</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13(1)</td>
<td>89, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14(1)</td>
<td>73, 25; 74, 9; 87, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5(14:4-5)</td>
<td>76, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15(1)</td>
<td>73, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16(1)</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16(6)</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16(10)</td>
<td>85, 17; II, 88, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16(11)</td>
<td>85, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17(2)</td>
<td>77, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17(15)</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:42(18:41)</td>
<td>76, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2(19:1)</td>
<td>95, 6; 96, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2.4.5(19:1.3.4)</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2.5(19:1.4)</td>
<td>81, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3(19:2)</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5(19:4)</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6(19:4-5)</td>
<td>II, 90, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6(19:5)</td>
<td>87, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2(22:1)</td>
<td>85, 1; 87, 14; II, 90, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:14(22:13)</td>
<td>95, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17(19)</td>
<td>84, 3; II, 90, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23(5)</td>
<td>74, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24(4)</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25(9)</td>
<td>96, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25(10)</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):4</td>
<td>77, 42; 85, 8; 85, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):9</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):14</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27(28):5</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31(32):4</td>
<td>73, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31(32):5</td>
<td>73, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:6(34:5)</td>
<td>75, 1; 91, 6; 94, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13(34:12)</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:15(34:14)</td>
<td>84, 12; 98, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:19(34:18)</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):3</td>
<td>85, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:5(36:4)</td>
<td>74, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:9(36:8)</td>
<td>73, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:9-10(36:8-9)</td>
<td>93, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:11(36:10)</td>
<td>86, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):4</td>
<td>74, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):24</td>
<td>86, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):25</td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:5-6(39:4-5)</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:3(40:2)</td>
<td>87, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:13(40:12)</td>
<td>85, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6(41:5)</td>
<td>II, 88, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4.11(42:3.10)</td>
<td>73, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:8(42:7)</td>
<td>87, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:11(42:10)</td>
<td>77, 5; 77, 39; 85, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:4(45:3)</td>
<td>78, 13; 92, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:4-5(45:3-4)</td>
<td>78, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:7-8(45:6-7)</td>
<td>82, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8(45:7)</td>
<td>I, 88, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:11-12</td>
<td>(45:10-11)</td>
<td>86, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:5(46:4)</td>
<td>92, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:12(85:11)</td>
<td>98, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:13(21)</td>
<td>(49:12)</td>
<td>73, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:50(3)</td>
<td>82, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:6(30:21)</td>
<td>74, 9; 93, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:50(23)</td>
<td>94, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:4(12)(51:2.10)</td>
<td>78, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:5(51:3)</td>
<td>75, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:11(51:9)</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:18(19)</td>
<td>(51:16)</td>
<td>95, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52(53):1</td>
<td>73, 25; 74, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:6(53:4)</td>
<td>85, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:2(57:1)</td>
<td>85, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:5(57:4)</td>
<td>85, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:7(57:6)</td>
<td>87, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:8(57:7)</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:11(58:10)</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:11-12(59:10)</td>
<td>87, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10(62:9)</td>
<td>80, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:11(63:10)</td>
<td>II, 88, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65(66):7</td>
<td>75, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65(66):13-14</td>
<td>94, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2-3(67:1-2)</td>
<td>76, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:22(69:21)</td>
<td>78, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:24(69:23)</td>
<td>73, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):8</td>
<td>77, 26; 79, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):9</td>
<td>82, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):11</td>
<td>73, 6; 76, 17; 94, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):18</td>
<td>1, 90, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1-3</td>
<td>73, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):7</td>
<td>77, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):12-13</td>
<td>73, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):18</td>
<td>93, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:23(73:22)</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:23(73:22-23)</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
<td>Corresponding Page Numbers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:24(73:23-24)</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73(74):6</td>
<td>79, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77(78):8</td>
<td>77, 1; 79, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77(78):51-54</td>
<td>77, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78(79):6</td>
<td>86, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:6(80:5)</td>
<td>78, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):1</td>
<td>94, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):6</td>
<td>83, 11; 84, 9; 85, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):6.1</td>
<td>96, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:5(84:4)</td>
<td>85, 23; 86, 9; 93, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85(86):9</td>
<td>94, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93(94):3.4</td>
<td>75, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93(94):14</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):1</td>
<td>97, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):5</td>
<td>76, 15; 85, 12; 94, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):12</td>
<td>79, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100(101):1</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101(102):7</td>
<td>83, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:27-28</td>
<td>89, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:28(102:27)</td>
<td>76, 8; 77, 19; I, 88, 29; 89, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102(103):14</td>
<td>75, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103(104):26</td>
<td>I, 88, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103(104):29-30</td>
<td>75, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105(106):1</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105(106):47</td>
<td>77, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106(107):1</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107(108):1</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110(111):10</td>
<td>77, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111(112):7</td>
<td>95, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:7(112:6-7)</td>
<td>91, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113(114):4</td>
<td>93, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B:1(115:1)</td>
<td>95, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B:11(115:1):2</td>
<td>I, 88, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B:11(115):4</td>
<td>80, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):3-4</td>
<td>83, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):8-9</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):11</td>
<td>91, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117(118):18</td>
<td>78, 8; 96, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117(118):19</td>
<td>85, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117(118):22</td>
<td>78, 3; 94, 8; 98, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):18</td>
<td>89, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):34</td>
<td>77, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):53</td>
<td>76, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):133</td>
<td>77, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):1</td>
<td>75, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):2</td>
<td>75, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125(126):6</td>
<td>83, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128(129):1</td>
<td>87, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129(130):3</td>
<td>78, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131(132):6</td>
<td>95, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131(132):11</td>
<td>II, 88, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137(138):6</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):7</td>
<td>I, 88, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):7-8</td>
<td>94, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):8</td>
<td>81, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142(143):2</td>
<td>78, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144(145):3</td>
<td>I, 88, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146(147):7</td>
<td>75, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>89, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Corresponding Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>85, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>77, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>77, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>93, 23; 93, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:23, LXX</td>
<td>96, 5; 98, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>85, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:32, LXX</td>
<td>92, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>77, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ecclesiastes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Corresponding Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Song of Songs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Corresponding Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I:3</td>
<td>II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:4</td>
<td>73, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>80, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>77, 44; 94, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>94, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5, LXX</td>
<td>73, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wisdom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Corresponding Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7-8</td>
<td>74, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>79, 13; 80, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>87, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>75, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5.8</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-8-9</td>
<td>74, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>75, 11; 80, 14; 96, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6.8.9</td>
<td>75, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>75, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>78, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sirach**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Corresponding Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>79, 5; 83, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>77, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>78, 15; 89, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>82, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>73, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26</td>
<td>87, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:29</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

27:12 73, 19
31:10.9 93, 1
39:15-16(20-21) 78, 17

Isaiah
1:2 81, 1
1:3 77, 2
2:2 87, 10
3:12 85, 23
5:3 80, 12
5:6 76, 19
5:6.7 I, 88, 7
5:7 79, 10
9:2 87, 6
10:22 94, 7
26:11 96, 6
26:13, LXX 78, 3; 85, 21
29:13 94, 2
34:4 93, 6
40:6 96, 7
40:6.7 77, 40
40:6-8 91, 8
42:14 82, 2
42:14, LXX 93, 9
48:22, LXX 86, 9; 96, 19
52:7 87, 13
53:1 77, 32; 85, 15; 89, 12; 97, 1
53:2 83, 11
54:1 78, 6
54:5 78, 6
56:10 81, 4
57:1 81, 4
57:16.17 76, 10
57:16-18 76, 11
57:21, LXX 96, 19
58:1 80, 6
58:7 83, 7
61:10 74, 4
64:5.6 77, 30
65:2 78, 2; 87, 10
66:1 II, 90, 8; 98, 3; 98, 9
66:2 73, 24; 92, 6
66:24 80, 20

Jeremiah
1:10 I, 88, 3
7:12 77, 36
10:11 98, 2
16:19 94, 13
31:31-32 73, 23
50:23 97, 6

Daniel
2:35 98, 14
9:5.7 91, 4
9:23 73, 8

Micah
4:1 87, 10

New Testament
Matthew
3:3 84, 16
3:9 II, 88, 4; II, 90, 6; 94, 15
3:14-15 II, 90, 6
4:3 II, 90, 6
4:6 II, 90, 7
4:7 II, 90, 7
4:10 98, 9
5:3-10-12 93, 7
5:5 85, 23
5:6 85, 23
5:8 73, 25; 83, 11; 84, 9;
85, 21; 97, 3
5:14 I, 88, 13
5:44 78, 14; 93, 28
5:45 77, 22; 78, 14
5:45.48 94, 2
6:1.2.4 76, 4
6:5 93, 7
6:21 93, 5
7:7 74, 11
7:23 87, 8
7:28-29 93, 7
8:20 II, 90, 7
8:25 93, 25
9:13 95, 7
9:15 83, 2
10:25.24 85, 19
10:28 79, 13; 87, 2; 96, 17
10:30 96, 17
11:12 86, 6
11:25 78, 17
11:28 80, 9
11:28.29 93, 15
11:29 81, 3; I, 90, 1
12:28 II, 90, 8
12:29 73, 17
12:39-40 85, 23
12:40 87, 9

Volume III/18
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume III/18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td>96, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:20-21.6</td>
<td>I, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>93, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>77, 3; 78, 2; 78, 3; 81, 2; 84, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>87, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>79, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>74, 4; II, 90, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>80, 1; I, 90, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:27-28</td>
<td>II, 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>77, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>85, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:21-22</td>
<td>77, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:26-27</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:30</td>
<td>82, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9</td>
<td>81, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:38</td>
<td>79, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:38-39</td>
<td>94, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18-20</td>
<td>77, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:9</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:13-15</td>
<td>87, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:27-28</td>
<td>I, 90, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>II, 88, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>96, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:42</td>
<td>95, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26-27</td>
<td>75, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:32-33</td>
<td>I, 90, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:32-34.41</td>
<td>80, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>79, 13; I, 90, 10; 98, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-35.41</td>
<td>95, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34.41.46</td>
<td>85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>I, 90, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.34.41</td>
<td>II, 90, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.37-40</td>
<td>86, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.38.40</td>
<td>75, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>79, 13; 85, 21; I, 90, 11; 91, 12; 93, 25; 96, 6; 98, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:37</td>
<td>87, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38</td>
<td>87, 2; 93, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>93, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:64</td>
<td>I, 88, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40.42</td>
<td>92, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:42-43</td>
<td>87, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>94, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td>95, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>97, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21-22</td>
<td>95, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>95, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:33</td>
<td>95, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:71</td>
<td>92, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:38</td>
<td>85, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>92, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td>96, 1; 97, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>92, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>98, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>94, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>77, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>97, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:58</td>
<td>II, 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17-20</td>
<td>91, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>94, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>84, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>II, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:47</td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48.47</td>
<td>78, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>79, 13; 96, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>79, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>II, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>83, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>75, 8; 82, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>77, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>77, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24-26</td>
<td>85, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:32</td>
<td>75, 16; 83, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10-14</td>
<td>74, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>85, 2; 93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>73, 17; 84, 14; 93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>84, 14; 1, 90, 6; 93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>75, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>75, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:38</td>
<td>77, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:11</td>
<td>95, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>85, 20; 87, 4; 93, 8; 96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:18-21</td>
<td>96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>73, 19; 85, 21; II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>85, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>75, 1; I, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>I, 88, 13; 93, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>76, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>73, 2; 98, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>I, 90, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>81, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>77, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:47</td>
<td>73, 1; 75, 2; 87, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:51</td>
<td>94, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>85, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>85, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>77, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:36</td>
<td>87, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>77, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>73, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>83, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>92, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:29</td>
<td>89, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:41</td>
<td>84, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44-66</td>
<td>87, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51</td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54</td>
<td>98, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:61</td>
<td>98, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:64</td>
<td>98, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>92, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37</td>
<td>77, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37-38</td>
<td>97, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37-39</td>
<td>92, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:38</td>
<td>77, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>77, 13; II, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>84, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34-35</td>
<td>87, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:39</td>
<td>84, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>91, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48</td>
<td>73, 19; I, 90, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:58</td>
<td>92, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24-29</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:39</td>
<td>80, 3; 93, 28; 96, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>I, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>86, 3; I, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9.21</td>
<td>95, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>86, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>77, 3; 78, 3; 96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18-17</td>
<td>86, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:48</td>
<td>73, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4-10:13-14</td>
<td>92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>95, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>76, 15; 79, 9; 85, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8-9</td>
<td>85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8.21</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>76, 1; 81, 2; 84, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>84, 9; 85, 21; II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>77, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>77, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:33</td>
<td>92, 8; 96, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>85, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>73, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>73, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:15</td>
<td>75, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21-22</td>
<td>80, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30</td>
<td>86, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:37</td>
<td>85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28-29</td>
<td>76, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15-17</td>
<td>II, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>89, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>89, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>96, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>92, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29.27</td>
<td>II, 88, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37-38</td>
<td>73, 22; 93, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:38</td>
<td>77, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>98, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19-20</td>
<td>92, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>92, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:49</td>
<td>II, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>77, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>75, 14; 86, 3; 87, 15;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II, 88, 3;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II, 90, 5; I, 90, 9; 91, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5.6</td>
<td>75, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>73, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>96, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:35</td>
<td>96, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1.18</td>
<td>96, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>96, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:18</td>
<td>96, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:46</td>
<td>I, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13-14</td>
<td>96, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>84, 9; II, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:18</td>
<td>79, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>77, 30; 80, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3-4.5-6</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>82, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29</td>
<td>75, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>91, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>77, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>98, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>85, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>II, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>77, 7; 86, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume III/18**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>96, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>85, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>83, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>75, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>83, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8-9</td>
<td>77, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>83, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>84, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>83, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>75, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>84, 10; 85, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>75, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>77, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>84, 9; 91, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>II, 88, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
<td>II, 88, 4; II, 88, 4; II, 88, 14;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>93, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>75, 1; 81, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6-8</td>
<td>73, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7-8</td>
<td>84, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20-21</td>
<td>93, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>79, 3; 94, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>73, 17; 77, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3.2</td>
<td>I, 88, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>76, 1; 77, 7; 84, 2; 96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13-15</td>
<td>87, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>96, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>73, 1; 77, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1-2</td>
<td>78, 2; 94, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2.1</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>77, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>87, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19-21.18</td>
<td>79, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>II, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:24</td>
<td>94, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>81, 2; 81, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25-26</td>
<td>73, 13; 79, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>91, 6; 96, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>83, 6; 91, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:21</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>79, 2; 98, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>76, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>93, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-9</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-10</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

1:12-13 | 75, 8 |
1:20 | 82, 9; 87, 10 |
1:23-24 | 76, 16 |
2:6.13 | 73, 19 |
2:9 | 83, 10; 85, 12; 86, 1 |
3:1 | 73, 19; 77, 17 |
3:1-2 | 97, 7 |
3:3-6 | 97, 7 |
3:6-7 | 75, 8 |
3:10-15 | 80, 20 |
3:11 | 79, 12; 81, 5; 86, 3; 92, 1 |
3:17 | 78, 4; 82, 10; 94, 6 |
4:5 | I, 88, 7 |
4:7 | 85, 4; 87, 13; 91, 6; 95, 15 |
4:13 | II, 88, 12 |
4:14-15 | 77, 11 |
4:21 | II, 88, 2 |
6:3 | 85, 22; 86, 4; I, 90, 9 |
6:7 | 80, 21 |
6:14 | 85, 4 |
6:17 | 77, 8 |
7:29-32 | 95, 14 |
7:40 | 75, 16 |
8:4 | 96, 11 |
8:5-6 | 94, 6 |
9:11 | 80, 4 |
9:26-27 | 75, 18 |
10:1-2 | 80, 8 |
10:1-4 | 77, 2 |
10:4 | 80, 22; 93, 4 |
10:5 | 77, 2 |
10:5-11 | 77, 3 |
10:11 | 89, 1 |
10:13 | 79, 6; 93, 27; 94, 9 |
10:18 | 82, 5 |
10:20 | 95, 5; 96, 11 |
12:8-10 | 83, 11 |
12:11 | 77, 32 |
12:17-19.20-21.16 | 87, 8 |
12:27 | 73, 16; 87, 8 |
13:9-10 | 93, 6 |
13:12 | II, 90, 13; 93, 23 |
15:10 | 83, 16 |
15:46-49 | 73, 2 |
15:53 | 96, 17 |
15:53-55 | 84, 10 |
15:58 | 92, 1 |

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
### Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
<th>Philippians</th>
<th>Colossians</th>
<th>1 Thessalonians</th>
<th>1 Timothy</th>
<th>2 Timothy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>2:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>2:19-20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-8</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-7</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-10</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Volume III/18
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
<th>Volume(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:19-21</td>
<td>80, 14</td>
<td>II, 90, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>85, 19</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>83, 16; 93, 19</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>87, 15</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>2 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>76, 4</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>83, 3</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>77, 10</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>93, 17</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6-7</td>
<td>93, 28</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>84, 14; II, 88, 3</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>84, 14</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>83, 8; 84, 9; 86, 9; 97, 3</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>78, 12</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>87, 1</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>79, 2; 98, 4</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>77, 7</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:16</td>
<td>II, 90, 13</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5-6</td>
<td>77, 15</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>78, 11</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>91, 10</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>87, 1</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>86, 3</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>77, 42</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>78, 14; 92, 4</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>93, 23</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>93, 24</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>93, 4</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>80, 11</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>96, 12</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:11</td>
<td>80, 1</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2)
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.
Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semi-colon.
Biblical texts/words are in italics.

Aaron, 76:22
punishment of, 98:10,12
Abba, 78:3
Abel, 77:9
Abraham, 73:1; 75:9; 77:44; 78:2; 79:3,12; 81:1; 82:5; 85:1; 88(1):5; 92:6
children of the promise, 84:4
humble amid his riches, 85:3
promised inheritance, 88(1):29
rich man and Lazarus, 85:3,18
acquaintances, 87:8
actions: seeking God by, 76:4
activities: necessity, 83:8
Adam, 73:18,25; 75:1; 83:7; 85:1; 92:6; 93:19; 97:1,6
death and, 84:7; 89:9
initial letters, 95:13
adultery, 75:16; 83:4
affliction: prayer in time of, 80:10
Africa, 85:14
Ahab, King, 77:28
Alléluia, 83:8
almsgiving, 76:4; 96:18
Go and sell all..., 80:1
altars, 83:7
Amalek, 82:7
Ammon, 82:7
ancestors, 77:11
angel(-s), 76:4; 77:5; 78:1; 79:3; 85:12,24; 88(1):3; 88(2):9; 89:3; 90(1):12; 90(2):7,8; 95:7; 96:12
See also cherubim; devil
anger, 73:4; 75:4,10,11; 76:10,11; 77:1,16, 17,18,22,30,37; 78:8,9,11,14; 79:5; 80:19; 82:12; 84:5,7; 87:7,15; 89:11,14; 92:4; 94:15; 96:6; 98:3,4
anguish, 83:5,6
animals, 81:1
Anna, 78:2
Apollinarians, 85:4
apostasy, 90(1):8,9
apostles, 79:9; 86:4; 81:5; 86:2,3; 87:8; 88(1):7; 90(1):9; 90(2):8; 92:7; 93:18; 94:7; 95:5,14; 96:8
as mountains, 75:7,8
pillars, 74:6
twelve, 86:4
words to the ends of the earth, 88(1):3
Arians, 80:13
ark of the covenant, 77:35,36
arrogance, 73:6; 74:2; 80:1; 93:15
arrow, 76:20; 77:9; 90(1):8
Asaph, 73:1,11,14,21,22,23; 76:1,16; 77:2,3,4; 78:3; 79:1,7,9; 80:2; 81:1; 82:1
Assyria(-ns), 79:1,10; 82:8
asterisks, 89:17
attachment, See temporal goods
authority, 85:21
avarice, 96:15
awe, 75:17; 77:12
babbling, 76:6,7,9,11,13,14,16
Babylon, 78:3; 86:6,7,8; 92:5
baldness, 83:2; 84:2
baptism, 75:15; 77:2,13; 80:8; 85:4; 86:4; 90(2):6; 96:13
creation: fifth day, 80:2
putting on Christ, 95:2
Barabbas, 81:5; 96:12
basilisk, 90(2):9

Volume III/18
baskets, 80:9
battle, 77:10
beasts, 73:12, 22
beatitude, 86:9
beauty, 84:9; 91:13; 92:2; 96:19
Benjamin, tribe of, 77:41; 78:2; 79:3
bible, See New Testament; Old Testament.
birds, 90:1:5
biting, 73:16
bitterness, 85:7
black people, 73:16
blasphemy, 80:1; 88:2:14; 91:10; 93:7; 96:9
blessedness, 83:8
blessing, 88:2:14
blindfold, 89:17
blindness, 73:13, 80:7; 81:2, 5; 88:2:8
boar, 79:11
body and soul
See also flesh; resurrection of the body;
soul
body weighs heavily on soul, 78:15; 83:9
pain, 83:7
bow and arrow, 77:9, 34
Bread: living on bread alone, 90:2:6
breakers (disasters), 87:7, 15; 92:7, 8
bronze serpent, 73:5
building, 95:2
burial, 78:6

Caesar, 94:2
Cain, 77:22
calf’s head (idol), 73:16
Calvary, 83:2; 84:2; 87:1
Canaan, 73:2
cantor, 87:1
captivity
law of sin in my members, 84:4
spiritual liberation, 84:5
carnally-minded, 73:19; 97:7
Carthage, 98:14
catechumen, 90:1:6
Catholic Church, 83:15; 95:10; 98:14
cedar on Lebanon, 91:13, 14
cedars, 79:9
change, 76:12; 79:1
charity, 77:10; 81:7; 83:8; 87:1; 91:1; 93:29; 95:5, 15; 96:20
See also love
fullness of the law, 98:3
good works = one work, 89:17

root of all goodness, 90:1:8
tolerating sinners, 98:12, 13
chastisement, 79:5; 91:18; 93:16, 24; 98:13
fathers and children, 93:17
mercy and, 88:2:2
chastity, 75:16
cheer, 91:5; 94:1
cherubim, 79:2; 98:3, 4
childbearing, 83:7
children, 73:2
careasing; punishing, 98:14
chastising when there is hope, 93:17
children of God, 81:1, 6; 84:9; 88:1:7
choir, 87:1
choosing: now is the time for, 74:14
chosen people, 77:18
Christian life
See also pilgrimage; spiritual life;
temporal goods
beauty and strength, 92:2
behave like other people? 93:20
Christ as foundation of, 80:21
Christ enshrined in us, 88:1:5
Christ’s second coming and, 97:9
desire to live better, 90:1:4
fasting in, 98:5
God as Father, Church as Mother,
88:1:14
hardships in, 91:8
hen gathers her chicks, 88:2:14
imitating Christ, 90:1:1
labor as lot of, 93:23-24
leading us in Christ, 85:15
leaping over temporalities, 76:1
Make known your Christ, 89:12
my people did not listen, 80:16
proclaiming Christ, 96:10
progress in, 98:13
squared stone (model), 86:3
water of contradiction, 80:11
Christian warfare, See spiritual warfare
Christians
See also persecution
authentic Jews, 75:1
David’s children, 88:2:2
early community, 93:8
enduring reproaches, 88:2:12
fools, 75:11
Church, 73:5, 16; 77:3, 17, 32, 41; 78:3, 4, 7, 13, 17; 80:11; 81:1; 82:1; 85:14, 22;
86:4, 6; 88:2:12; 92:7; 93:8, 18, 22;
94:14; 95:14
black people in, 73:16
body of Christ, 73:16; 83:5
Christ as head and body, 79:1; 90(2):1  
Christ speaking in body of, 87:13; 91:10  
disgraceful living in, 85:19  
established forever, 77:42  
God’s city, 98:4  
head and members, 87:3; 88(1):5; 90(1):9  
living stones, 86:3  
members are Christ’s throne, 88(2):5  
Mother, 88(2):14  
as olive press, 80:1,2  
one head and one body, 74:4  
passion; blood of martyrs, 85:1  
real Jewry, 75:1  
true Judah, 75:1  
truly poor, 87:15  
unity, 75:8; 83:7  
wine presses in, 83:1  
youth/old age of, 91:11  
Zion, 75:3  

churches: called islands, 96:4  
Circumcellions, 95:10  
circumcision, 74:12; 75:1  
crusade, 80:1  
City: beloved Zion, 86:1  
Church: God’s city, 98:4  
See also Jerusalem; Zion; etc.  
civilians, 90(1):10  
cloud(-s), 76:19; 88(1):7,8; 95:14; 96:5,8; 98:10  
coins, 93:24; 94:2  
comfort, 76:6  
commandments, 74:12; 75:16; 77:8,12; 83:10; 84:9; 85:21; 91:5,7  
good life, 93:30  
Old and New Covenants, 73:2  
ten plagues and, 77:27  
community: God as our common possession, 84:10  
compassion, 93:18  
conciliation, 76:7  
concurrence, 83:10; 93:25; 96:7  
conduct of life: judgment and justice, 98:7  
confession (of sin and/or of praise), 73:22; 74:9; 75:3,4,5; 76:18; 80:11; 85:23; 87:10; 93:15; 94:10  
beauty and, 95:7,8  
calling upon God, 74:2  
cleansing; emptying, 74:3,4  
God’s goodness, 74:3  

Prepare a way for the Lord…, 84:16  
reflection and, 75:14  
sacrifice, 95:9  
time for choosing, 74:14  
truth will spring from, 84:14,15  
two kinds: praising and groaning, 94:4  
wrongdoing; good works, 91:3  
congregation, 73:1,5; 76:1; 77:3,4; 80:2; 82:1  
conscience, 73:23; 76:18; 80:10; 83:3; 91:2; 96:16  
consent, 75:5; 83:7  
consolation, 76:5,10; 85:24; 93:22; 94:14  
contemplation: virtue of, 83:11,13,14,15  
Zion, 75:5; 77:41  
conversion, 73:25; 75:15; 84:8  
God’s anger and, 79:5  
Let your face shine, 79:4  
of life, 84:15; 88(1):6; 89:4; 94:9  
Lord, show us your face, 79:14  
Cornelius, 96:2,12,13  
cornerstone, 78:3; 79:2; 86:2,3,5; 98:14  
corporal, 78:5,8  
courts: one day within…, 83:14  
Covenant, 77:10,33; 88(1):28; 88(2):4; 89:2  
see also New Covenant  
image of God, 73:2  
material promises, 73:1  
overturned; Jewish losses, 88(2):7  
promises, 73:23  
sacred signs, 73:2  
creation, 73:19,20; 79:14; 85:1,12; 88(1):12; 89:3; 90(1):1  
fifth day: creatures from waters, 80:2  
first-fourth days of, 93:3  
human beings, 88(2):9  
six days, 89:5  
sixth day, 92:1  
crime, 80:1; 83:8  
cross, 73:6; 75:10; 87:1; 95:2,10  
glory; inscription, 80:11  
crucifixion, 87:7  
see also Jesus Christ: passion; also under Jews  
cup: in the Lord’s hand, 74:11,12  
Cyprian, Saint, 80:4,23; 85:24  
Daniel, 91:4  
darkness, 73:16,23; 76:4; 77:31; 80:14; 85:4; 87:6,12; 93:6; 96:5,18  
David, King, 75:1,15; 77:9,41,44; 78:1; 85:1; 88(2):7,9; 96:2  
Christ and, 88(2):6  
seed shall abide forever, 88(2):5  
day, 76:4; 87:2,9; 89:15; 90(1):7  
See also creation  
fourth day of week, 93:3
spiritual persons, 73:19
daylight, 92:6
death, 85:17, 24; 87:5
  work your wonders for, 87:10, 11
death, 77:3; 78:15; 81:4; 82:9; 87:5; 89:6, 7
earthly desires, 79:14
  faith and, 96:17
  fear of, 74:6; 90(2):4
  none will never see death, 88(2):10, 11
  physical excess and, 84:10
  serpent and, 73:5, 25
  Who will deliver me..., 84:4
deptor, 85:18
deceit, 90(2):7
deity, See God; gods
delight, 74:1; 75:5; 76:6, 7; 84:15; 85:6, 7; 98:5
delinquencies, 74:6
demons, 73:8, 15, 16; 74:12; 80:18; 90(2):8; 94:6; 95:5, 6; 96:11, 12, 14
desert, 77:14; 94:13
desire, 75:5; 83:3, 5, 6, 8, 9, 14; 84:9; 89:15
carnal, 83:1, 7; 97:7
  harm in evil, 93:1
  running, 83:4
  source of sin, 79:13
despair, 83:16
detachment, 95:14
devil, 73:16, 22; 75:4; 76:7; 77:28; 81:6; 82:8; 84:10, 11; 85:9; 88(1):11, 12; 90(1):1, 2, 3, 4, 12; 90(2):3, 6, 9; 93:3, 19, 20, 28; 96:6, 11
  See also demons; Satan
  battle against, 97:7
  consumed, 73:16
  effects ascribed to, 77:30
  evil angels, 77:28; 82:18
  fault; desires; sin, 80:18
  hammer of the whole earth, 97:6
  pagans and, 73:16
dignity, 74:14
  disasters, 87:7
  disciples, 90(2):6
  coveting distinction, 90(2):7
  death of Christ and, 73:5
  fear of death, 74:6
  miracles, 91:3
  rivers flowing from, 92:7
  discussion, 83:8
  disgrace, 78:16
  disgust, 76:5, 7
  displeasure, 87:7
  distress, 93:24
  doctor, 85:9, 18; 87:10
Donatists, 85:16; 88(2):14; 95:2, 10
Donatus, 75:7; 85:14
door, 95:3
dragon, 73:15, 16; 88(1):11
dregs, 80:12
drum, 80:4
drunkenness, 98:5
earth, 89:3; 92:1, 2, 8
called a “sea”, 76:20
  flesh as, 84:13
  footstool, 98:9
  foundations of, 81:5
  human pride, 82:14
  melted by sin, 74:6
  sweetness from God, 84:15
  will not be shaken, 92:5, 8
  earthly goods, See temporal goods
Edomites, 82:7
Egypt, 73:5; 77:11, 23
  plagues, 77:25-30
  symbol of this world, 77:12
election, 77:24
Eli (priest), 77:35
Elijah, 90(1):1; 90(2):6
Elisha, 83:2; 84:2
embarrassment, 76:6
Emmaus, 96:2
emphasis, 74:3
end: cancel it at the end, 74:1
  end of the world, 73:5; 78:17; 82:12; 87:15
  even to the end, 73:4, 12
  Will you be angry to the very end, 78:8
enemy(-ies), 76:7; 78:9, 14; 79:5; 80:19; 82:7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14; 88(1):23, 24; 88(2):13, 14; 91:10, 11, 12; 93:19, 28, 29; 96:6, 17
  consorting with, 96:15
  eliminated by prayer, 98:5
  loved by God’s holy ones, 78:14
  punishment of, 73:9-10
  sacraments fed to, 80:22
enigmas, 77:1, 3, 4, 5, 7, 26
entertainments, 80:23
Ephraim, 77:9, 41; 79:3
Epicurus, 73:25
Esau, 77:9; 78:10; 88(2):6
established, 77:7
eternal life, 85:21; 93:17
  labor for, 93:23-24
  length of days, 90(2):12
eternal punishment, 77:22; 80:20
eternity, 76:8; 79:3; 91:8; 10; 92:6
all days present at once, 89:15
eternal day, 83:4
generation to generation, 88(1):5
heavenly days, 88(1):29
thousand years like yesterday, 89:5
Etham, 73:18
Ethan the Israelite, 88(1):1,5
Ethiopians, 73:16; 86:6
evildoers, See sinner(-s)
ewes, 77:44
exaltation, 88(1):17,18,20
excess: as cause of death, 84:10
Exodus, 77:26
eyes, 87:8
face, 82:11; 83:13
faith, 73:17,21; 74:1; 75:1,2; 77:1,2,8,
9,10,13,21,45; 80:11; 88(1):24; 89:12;
90(1):10,11; 90(2):9,11; 91:1; 93:29;
96:1,7
all day long I spread out my hands…, 87:10
believe in one we do not see, 97:3
Christ sleeping, 93:25
cleansing hearts by, 88(2):7,14
creatures born anew in, 84:7
death and, 96:17
eyes of the heart, 90(2):13
kinship with Abraham, 84:4
one heart, 74:4
prayer and, 77:15
sole work comprising all other, 89:17
unclean heart and, 73:25
faithfulness (or fidelity), 87:11,12,13;
88(1):2,3,9,10,15,25; 97:3
See also promise(-s)
fasting, 86:9-98:5
Father, blame for our sins, 91:3
father, call no one your father, 77:11
chastising children, 93:17
fear, 76:2; 77:7,10; 82:3; 87:15; 90(2):8; 93:1;
96:18
gladness and, 85:16
noontime demon, 90(1):7
of human criticism, 90(1):4
source of sin, 79:13
feet, 73:1; 90(2):8
washing, 92:3
finger of God, 90(2):8
fire, 77:17,27; 79:13; 80:21; 82:12; 96:6,7
lightning, 96:8
sword and, 96:7
firmament, 93:6
flesh, 78:15; 83:7; 84:7
as “clouds,” 88(1):7
earth as, 84:13
God’s tent, 90(2):5
horn and, 97:7
law of sin, 75:4,5
moon and, 88(2):5
Unless you eat my flesh…, 98:9
flute-player, 96:10
foolish hearts, 75:9
fools: Christians as, 75:11
footsteps will leave no trace, 76:21
footstool: worship, 98:9,10,14
forest, 82:12,13
forgiveness of sin, 74:5; 83:16; 84:5; 89:14
propitious God, 98:11
fornication, 83:4
fortitude, 83:11
forty (number), 94:14
foundation, 81:5
Zion, on mountains, 86:2
fountains, 73:17
foxes, 80:14; 90(2):7
freedom, 96:11
frost, 77:27
fury, 87:7
future, 78:1; 84:3,6; 93:12
future life, 85:24
See also eternity; heaven; hell; Judgment Day
Gebel, 82:7
Gentiles, 73:5,6,13,14,16,25; 74:12; 75:1;
76:17,21; 77:17,22,32,33; 78:2,3,4,13;
79:3,8,10,11; 80:11; 81:5; 84:1,11;
86:2,6; 88(1):3,8,10,26; 88(2):7,8;
94:8,13; 96:2,9,13
gentleness, 89:10; 93:16; 96:5
giants, 87:10
gifts, 73:3; 75:17
spiritual/carnal benefits, 80:4
what have you not received, 81:2; 85:4;
87:13
girdle/girding, 92:3,4
gladness, 76:13; 85:16; 86:9; 96:19
glory, 82:2; 83:16; 85:14; 93:24; 95:3,6,8,9;
96:12,17
God always at work, always at rest, 92:1

Volume III/18
anger, See anger.
asleep, 77:39
beyond all utterance, 85:12
blame for our sins, 91:3
can say only what he is not, 85:12
care for human affairs, 74:8
desire for; longing for, 83:3; 85:8
eternal, 89:3
everywhere secret, out in the open, 74:9
feared, 84:11
flesh as tent for, 90(2):5
forgetfulness, 87:5
Gentiles’ ignorance of, 75:1
goodness of, 74:3; 78:14; 83:17
great and terrible, 88(1):8
greater than the mountains, 75:7
hand of, as power, 74:11
I AM WHO AM, 80:15; 89:3
invoked, he comes, 74:2
jealous wrath, 78:8
joy in him alone, 76:13,14
judge, 74:9
justice, 77:28
king, 73:14
long-suffering, 91:10
love for us: caressing or threatening, 91:1
mercy, See mercy.
no favoritism in, 96:13
no injustice in, 91:14
omnipresence, 75:17; 81:2; 86:3; 94:2
omniscience, 98:3
our common possession, 84:10
patience, 80:19; 93:9,19
physician, 85:9
power to punish, 89:11
praise for, in this world, 78:17
presence of, 74:9
promises made by, 88(2):1,2,4,6,8; 90(1):7; 90(2):10; 94:15; 96:1; 97:3
propitious, 98:11
providence, See providence.
punishment, See punishment
put to the test..., 77:15
refuge, 83:3; 89:3; 90(1):10; 93:27
right hand of, 89:12
seeking him, or seeking through him, 76:2,3,4
silent re sinful acts, 93:9
swears an oath, 88(1):4
sworn in my holiness..., 88(2):6
terrible among the kings of earth, 75:18
thoughts of, 93:14
throne of his people, 88(2):5
all who preach gospel, 96:10
his saints, 92:6
unchangeable substance, 89:3
vengeance, 93:7
why have you cast us off, 73:4
works wonders of body and soul, 76:16
worship, See worship
yearning for, 76:4
godless, 96:5,17
gods, 80:13,14; 81:1,2,6; 84:9; 85:12; 90(1):3; 94:6; 95:5,6; 96:12,14; 98:2
gold, 76:9; 93:24
good and evil, 77:10
See also devil; sin; sinner; temporal goods
conquer evil with good, 78:14
God’s awareness of our acts, 93:9,11
good use made of bad creatures, 77:28
hearts pure or wicked, 73:23
judgment and justice, 98:7
love and hate, 96:15,16
malice as scourge of good people, 93:25
people, round earth (metaphor), 92:5
repay no one evil for evil, 78:14
shame re being good, 93:21
soul filled with evils, 87:3
good fortune, 74:8
See also temporal goods
praise God’s mercy, 91:4
good works, 77:8,45; 83:7; 87:9,10; 92:2; 97:5
clothing the naked, 92:1
created for, 91:6
God at work in us, 89:16; 91:3
one work: charity, 92:1
rest, 92:1
goodness
living by the commandments, 93:30
opportunity to act wrongly, 93:1
righteous people, 93:28
shame and, 93:21
gospels: four, 96:13
grace, 73:2,20; 75:14; 77:2,11; 81:1,2; 83:9,16; 84:4; 85:4; 87:3,10,12; 88(1):16,17; 93:15
ascents in the heart, 83:10
conversion and, 77:24; 84:8
powers conferred through, 83:11
grapes, 83:1,6
grass, 89:6; 91:8,9,14
greatness, 95:4,6
greed, 79:13; 90(2):12
guilt, 84:7; 90(2):8; 98:12
habit, 75:4
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
Hagar's people, 82:7
hail, 77:26
hair, 96:17
hands, 77:45
  hands outstretched, 76:4
  symbol of work, 98:14
happiness, 73:2; 89:6; 93:25; 94:3; 96:20
hardship, 91:7,8; 93:2,17
hate, 78:14; 82:3; 84:15; 96:12,15
healing, 75:15; 83:10; 84:1; 85:9; 93:2; 97:4
  trust: healed for God, 97:1
health: praying for, 85:9
heart, 77:4,10,15,21,22; 79:10; 80:8,21; 83:7; 84:9,10; 85:7,9; 87:10; 90(2):13; 91:6; 93:2,6,16,18,29,30; 96:10
  ascents in the heart, 83:10
  awake Christ in, 93:25
  bedroom, 74:9
  blessed are the pure…, 83:8
  circumcision of, 74:12; 75:1
  desires of, 80:17
  do not harden your hearts, 94:12-13
  foolish, dismayed, 75:9
  gladness seen by eye of, 96:19
  heart-bruised persons, 74:2
  innocence of, 77:45
  many confess; one belief, 74:4
  meditating in, 76:9
  pure or wicked, 73:23,25
  raised by love and will, 85:6,7
  rebukes; hardness, 75:10
  rectitude of, 93:19
  Sabbath in, 91:2,7
  singularity, 83:4
  speak sinfully against God, 74:9
  straight with God, 77:40
  straightforward, 96:18,19
heaven, 74:12,14; 77:17,33,40; 78:17; 80:20; 83:7; 85:9,17; 86:9; 90(2):8,13; 93:6; 98:3
  foundations of, 81:5
  praise:love for ever, 83:8
  price of, 93:24
  spiritual city, 86:5
  heavens, 95:3,5,12,29; 96:10
  apostles as, 88(1):3
  confess God's wonderful works, 88(1):6
  hell, 85:17,18; 88(2):10; 93:20,21
  Heman, 87:1
  hen gathers her chicks, 88(2):14; 90(1):5
  heretics, 80:14; 83:7; 90(2):9; 98:14
  Hermon (mountain), 88(1):13,17
  Herod, King, 75:1
  Holiness: right to say I am holy, 85:4
Holy Spirit, 73:5; 75:18; 77:8; 11,39; 84:2; 92:7; 95:2,6; 96:1,13,20; 97:8
  finger of God, 90(2):8
  fullness of love, 90(2):8
  sword of the Lord, 92:3
  tongues of fire, 96:7
home, 83:7
honey, 80:22
honor, 95:7
hope, 73:5; 74:1; 77:12,31,45; 83:6,7,9; 84:9; 85:4; 88(1):1; 89:15; 90(1):7,12; 90(2):2,3,4; 91:1,2; 92:1; 93:27
horn, 74:14; 97:7
house: blessed those who dwell in, 83:8
  constructed for the Lord, 95:1,2,3,5,9,10,13
  human beings, 89:3; 96:12
  created as servants, 89:16
  not created in vain, 88(2):9
human condition, 85:7; 96:6
  See also life
  distress in this world, 96:20
  land of the dead, 85:24
humility, 74:1; 75:13; 77:3,12,28; 79:13; 80:7; 84:14; 85:1,2,3; 87:7; 90(2):7; 92:6; 95:9,10
  children of God, 81:6
  confession and, 93:22
  God will stoop down…, 93:16
  Lord, be merciful…, 74:10
  poor in spirit, 93:24
  pride in good deeds, 93:15
  refusal: mounted horses, 75:10
  showing itself, 93:16
  strength, 92:3
hunger, 85:24
hurry, 83:3
hypocrisy: whitewashed wall, 95:3
Idithun (leaper), 76:1,4,5
idol (-atry), 73:16; 76:15; 77:34,40; 80:13,14,15; 88(1):3; 88(2):14; 96:11,14; 98:2
image of God, 73:2; 75:3; 92:1
immortality, 78:15; 83:8; 84:7,10; 96:17
Incarnation, 84:9; 98:3,9
  Christ emptied himself, 90(2):2
  He emptied himself…, 74:5
  humility in becoming human, 93:15
  nature of a slave, 82:2
  one man, one God, 90(2):5
  sixth age of this world, 92:6
  Son of God; Son of Man, 85:1
  Word made flesh, 90(1):5

Volume III/18
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

Volume III/18

inheritance (God’s people), 78:2,3,10,11; 79:10; 81:7; 85:14; 96:15
iniquity, 84:5; 89:8; 92:5; 93:1,20; 98:12
injustice: damage to author of, 96:6
innocence, 77:45; 93:1
possession of good things and, 83:17
insult, 88(2):12; 92:4
intelligence, 77:45
invoking God, 85:8
irreligion: far away from God, 94:2
Isaiah, 96:19
Ishmaelites, 82:7
islands: churches as, 96:4
Israel, 75:2,3; 76:17; 77:1,2,7,33,35,44; 78:3; 79:9; 80:18; 81:1; 82:5,9; 83:12; 84:3; 86:5; 88(1):3,7; 88(2):7; 97:3
Israelites, 73:1,16; 76:22; 77:3,10,12; 81:1; 83:3; 87:3
belief in Christ, 78:2
ture: no guile, 75:2
Jabin, 82:9
Jacob, 77:7,9,41,44; 78:10; 80:3; 82:6; 83:12; 84:4; 86:5; 97:3
See also Esau; Israel
thigh, 76:22; 79:3
twelve sons of, 75:1
Jericho, 86:6; 88(2):5
Jerusalem, 73:7,8; 85:14; 78:4,6,7; 83:8,44; 86:6,7; 90(1):5; 93:6
destruction of, 78:2
heavenly, 86:2
twelve gates, 86:4
Jesus Christ, 73:2,6,16; 77:8,9,13,26,41,43; 83:13; 84:9; 86:4,8
See also Incarnation; Second Coming of Christ; Son of God; Word of God
accused of sin, 73:21
ascension: hands of angels, 90(2):8
baptized, 90(2):6
beauty and strength = his raiment, 92:2
Before Abraham came..., 92:6
bridegroom, 84:2; 90(2):5,13
burial: three days and nights, 87:9
Church and, See Church.
confess to your great name, 98:6
cornerstone, 86:2,3,5; 94:8; 96:2; 98:14
covenanted and, 88(1):28
cried: Stir up your power, 79:3
crucified: belief, 90(2):13
David and, 75:1; 85:1; 88(2):6
death of, See below: passion and death. destroy this temple..., 85:22
divinity hidden, 87:8
divinity: humility, 85:1
door: shepherd, 86:3,4; 90(1):1; 95:3
day of God, 76:1; 77:7; 79:1; 84:2
enemies enumerated, 82:7
feet of the Lord, 90(2):8
figures of
bald man, 83:2; 84:2
Rahab, 86:6
Samson, 80:11,14
food to be consumed, 73:16
footprints not recognized by Jews, 76:22
gentle and humble of heart, 88(1):1; 93:15
Giant of giants, 87:10
gifts to the poor and, 75:9
God dispelling his mercy from, 88(2):3
God of gods, 83:11
god’s arm, and right hand, 97:1,2
god’s inheritance, 78:3; 79:10; 81:7; 85:14; 88(2):3
God’s Way found in, 76:15
good works “all day long,” 87:9
hands of angels, 85:22
harsh words spoken against, 90(1):4
hen gathers her chicks, 88(2):14; 90(1):5
humanity, 88(1):22; 90(2):1
true flesh, 93:19
humility, 81:6; 88(1):11
I am the light of the world, 84:8
I am the living bread, 84:9; 90(2):6
I and the Father are one, 76:1
I have come to set fire..., 96:7
I was hungry..., 86:5
I will show myself..., 89:15
Israelite belief in, 78:2
Joseph of Egypt and, 76:17; 80:7
judge, 81:7; 85:21; 93:8
judgment, 80:7
justice of God, 97:2
king of kings, 88(1):27
King of the Jews, 80:11
kingship, 96:4
leader in song and suffering, 87:1
Learn of me..., 81:3
light of the world, 88(1):13
mediator, 90(2):1
miracles, 90(2):6
Young man, arise..., 97:1
My soul is sorrowful..., 87:3
Old Testament goods and, 77:7
our king and our God, 75:1
our root, ascended, 91:13

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
passion and death, 84:13; 87:8,9; 89:7; 90(2):1; 93:8; 96:6
Come down from the cross, 92:4
Crucify him, 85:19
Father, forgive them..., 85:20; 87:4; 93:8; 96:2
Father, if it is possible..., 93:19
his death as pledge, 96:17
It is accomplished, 86:5
My God, my God, why..., 85:1
prophecy, 78:1; 87:1,7
time on the cross, 87:9
weakness prefigured, 93:19
physician, 74:7; 77:23; 84:1
pledge of the bridegroom, 90(2):13
power and wisdom of God, 76:16; 83:11
power to lay down my life..., 88(2):10,11
praise to the Father, 94:4
preaches among Gentiles, 76:21
preaching Christ dead and risen, 79:7
Precentor, 87:1
prefigured in rock, 77:2
promises made by God, 88(2):1-2,6; 92:8; 96:16
reign, after the resurrection, 98:2
resurrection, 85:22; 89:10; 90(2):4,8; 91:8; 96:3
savior of his body, the Church, 88(1):5
seated upon the cherubim, 98:3
seeking, 98:9,10
servant of the circumcised, 78:3; 88(1):3
sign of contradiction, 88(1):10
silent when charged by Pilate, 82:2
snake as symbol of death of, 73:5
soul filled with evils, 87:3
speaks as head and in his body, 74:4; 87:13
stone or rock, 77:13
sufferings lacking in, 86:5; 87:15
sun, 93:4
teaching with authority, 93:7
tempted, 90(1):1,2,3,12; 90(2):1,6
testimonies, 92:8
This is the heir, 79:10; 81:4
transformed to eternal life, 88(2):13,14
Truth has sprung up..., 84:13,14
unworld, 85:17
Unless you eat my flesh..., 98:9
washing disciples’ feet, 92:3
Way, Truth, Life, 79:9; 84:2; 85:15; 90(1):4
when his land was restored, 96:2,3
Who do people say I am, 88(1):7,8
Who will be like you..., 82:2
Whoever sees me ..., 81:2; 84:9; 85:21
why are you persecuting me, 75:14; 86:3,5; 87:15; 88(2):3; 90(1):9; 90(2):5; 91:11
will come as judge, 73:11
worthy of praise, 95:4,6
Jews, 73:8,13,15; 74:12; 75:1; 77:3; 79:9; 81:6; 88(1):7; 94:7; 97:3
See also covenant; law; Old Testament
begging for land, 84:11
blessings taken away from, 73:2,3
captivities, 84:4
Christ and the law, 85:19
Christians as, 75:1
contempt for Christ, 82:2
conversions, 78:2; 93:8; 94:7; 96:2
crucifixion of Christ and, 75:1; 77:44; 78:2; 81:4,5
disinherited, 84:4
dead and buried in desert, 94:13
kingdom taken away, 75:1
porticoes of Solomon, 83:10
right to be called “Jews”, 75:1
righteousness, 73:18
Sabbath, 91:2
twelve tribes, 75:1
Job, 77:28; 90(1):2; 93:19; 96:12; 97:6
John the Baptist, 78:2; 80:14
Jordan river, 79:9
Joseph, Saint, 78:2
Joseph of Egypt, 74:3; 75:1; 76:17; 77:41; 79:2; 80:7,9
joy, 75:5; 76:6,13; 80:3,22; 83:6,7,12; 84:8; 86:9; 88(1):16,17; 93:24; 94:2,3; 95:13,14; 96:1
sensuous, 96:19
shout for, 94:5,6; 97:4
Judah (tribe of Israel), 75:1,3,10; 77:41,42
Judas, 73:8; 78:9; 93:28
Herod the Great, 78:2
Joseph, Saint, 78:2
Joseph of Egypt, 74:3; 75:1; 76:17; 77:41; 79:2; 80:7,9
joy, 75:5; 76:6,13; 80:3,22; 83:6,7,12; 84:8; 86:9; 88(1):16,17; 93:24; 94:2,3; 95:13,14; 96:1
sensuous, 96:19
shout for, 94:5,6; 97:4
Judah (tribe of Israel), 75:1,3,10; 77:41,42
Judas, 73:8; 78:9; 93:28
Judea, 77:44; 78:2; 96:2,13
judgment, 96:5
God’s anger and jealous wrath, 78:8
God’s impartiality, 96:13
good and evil, 98:7
righteous, 74:5,7
justice, 74:5; 77:27; 78:14; 81:3; 83:11,16; 93:18,29; 95:7; 96:5; 97:2
confession of sins, 84:16
good and evil, 98:7
pathway for God, 84:16
justice and peace have kissed, 84:12
justification, 84:15
kingdom of God, 80:20
Volume III/18

kings, 73:6; 75:18
tribe of Judah, 75:1
Kishon, 82:9
kiss: justice and peace, 84:12
knock, 74:11; 93:1
knowledge: fullness of, 79:2; 98:3
Korah, 83:2,5; 84:2; 87:1

Laban, 82:6
lamp, 76:4
land of oblivion, 87:12
language, 76:8
last judgment, See Judgment Day
law (O.T.), 74:12, 77:2,3,7,10; 80:16; 81:3; 89:17; 90(2):8
Christ and the Jews, 85:19
firmament for us, 93:6
of members opposes law of mind, 83:9,10; 84:4
porticoes of Solomon, 83:10
stumbling over; guilt, 90(2):8
Lazarus: rich man (parable), 85:3,18
leap(-er; -ing), 76:1,9,11,12,16,13; 83:7
leprosy, 73:13
Levi, 75:1; 77:41
lie, 91:6; 93:5
life, 96:17
brevity and wretchedness, 89:9
conversion and, 84:8
esteemed as nothing, 89:6
knowing one is alive, 73:25
span: 70/80 years, 89:9,10
temptation, 76:4
weariness, 76:10
light, 75:7; 88(1):1,13,19; 91:6; 96:18,19; 98:4
lightening, 76:20; 77:27; 96:8
lion, 90(2):9; 93:1
listening, 98:15
bend your ear..., 77:3
hearken to my law..., 77:5
lords, 82:14
Lot, 82:7,8
Lot’s wife, 75:16; 83:3,4
love, 77:6; 79:13,14; 83:3; 86:1; 88(2):14; 90(2):5,8; 93:28; 96:15,16
ascent in the heart, 83:10
desire to love God, 85:8
faith working through, 89:17
fullness of knowledge, 79:2
hearts seeking God, 77:21
justice and peace, 84:12
new song, 95:2

one’s life for one’s friend, 90(2):13
raise up your hearts, 85:6
lust, 95:2
lyre, 80:5; 91:5
Maccabees, 78:3,8; 90(2):11
magnificence, 95:7
malevolence, 96:11,12,17
malice, 93:28
Manasseh, 79:3
Manichees, 80:13,14
manna, 77:17,21
marriage, 75:16
martyr(-s; -dom), 74:12; 78:2,3,4,6,8,14; 79:7; 80:21; 85:1,24; 87:1; 88(1):10,27; 88(2):11; 89:14; 90(1):8,10; 90(2):9; 93:19,29; 96:18; 98:2
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 75:1; 78:2; 84:11,13;
86:7; 88(1):5; 88(2):9
Matthias, 90(1):9
Maximian, 75:7
meditation, 76:14; 93:6
molech, 87:1
memory, 75:15
mercy, 74:5; 76:11,15; 77:22; 78:11; 83:16;
84:1,7,8,9,12; 88(1):1,3,9; 89:17; 91:11;
93:9; 94:4; 95:15; 97:3; 98:6,15
body of Christ cries for all day long, 85:5
chastisement and, 88(2):2
faithfulness and, 87:11,12,13; 88(1):9,15
proclaim in the morning, 91:4
merit, 85:2
Messiah, 84:11
metaphor, 90(1):6; 93:4
middle: truth in, 75:17,18
Midian, 82:9
mind: intention, 77:34
miracles, 76:20; 90(1):1
in body and in soul, 76:16
preaching the risen Christ, 79:7
temptation, 90(2):7
misery, 87:6
misfortune, 77:29; 83:5; 91:7; 93:2; 96:11
Moab, 82:7
mockery, 78:7; 90(1):4; 90(2):2
money, 84:8
moon, 73:19; 80:6; 93:5
symbol of mortality, 88(2):5
morning, 91:4
mortality, 84:7
moon as symbol of, 88(2):5
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

punishment, 89:9
Moses, 73:5,13, 16; 76:16,22; 77:11,22,41; 88(1):24; 89:1,2,17
punishment of, 98:10,12
mother: Zion, 86:7
Mount Zion, See Zion, Mount
mountain(-s), 82:12,13; 88(1):13; 89:3
apostles as, 75:7,8
foundations of Zion, 86:2
leap for joy, 97:9
melted away like wax, 96:9
musical instruments, 97:6
mystery, 93:1
Unless you eat my flesh..., 98:9
Mystical Body of Christ
If the body were all eye..., 87:8
See also Church

Nathanael, 78:2
nations, 85:13,14; 88(1):10; 90(1):10; 94:9; 95:3
nations: educating, 93:13
waters as, 76:18
necessity, 83:8
neediness, 85:3
nest, 83:7,8
New Covenant, 88(1):4; 89:13
faithful to, 77:21
heavenly promises, 73:3
number eighty, 89:10

New Testament: hope for eternity, 89:10
night, 73:19; 76:3,4; 87:2; 90(1):7; 90(2):2; 91:4
Noah’s ark, 86:3	noon: heat, 90(1):8
noontime demon, 90(1):8; 90(2):2
numbers
15, 70, 80, and 150; 89:10
spiritual meaning in, 89:9
nun who marries, 75:16; 83:4
oath, 88(1):4; 94:15
obedience, 77:10
oblations, 95:15
oil, 80:1; 83:3
oil-press, 80:17
old age, 89:9; 91:11,14
Old Covenant, See Covenant.
Old Testament, 74:12; 77:7,8
fear of God in, 84:11
New foreshadowed in, 84:4
promises, 73:22
rewards in, 89:12

olive press, 80:1,2,7
olive tree, 94:7; 95:13
olives, 83:1
Oreb, 82:9

pain: body and soul, 87:3
as teacher, 93:23,27
palm tree, 91:13,14
patience, 77:18,22; 83:6; 84:9; 85:7,21;
90(1):1; 91:10; 93:3,5,12; 96:6
patrimony, 73:5; 75:1; 89:9
patriarchs, 73:5; 75:1; 89:9
patrimony, 96:16,17
Paul, Saint, Apostle, 73:21; 76:4; 77:17; 78:2;
83:16; 86:2; 87:3; 90(1):9; 93:19; 96:12
abiding memory of the persecutor, 75:14
beauty and fortitude, 92:2
judge, 86:4
running, 83:4
sting of the flesh, 90(2):6; 97:6; 98:13
peace, 75:3,4,5; 76:8; 84:10; 86:9; 92:6; 97:1
peace and justice have kissed, 84:12
Pentecost, 96:2
people of God, 84:11
perfection, 79:12; 88(2):5
persecution, 78:4; 88(2):3; 89:14;
90(1):2,8,9,11; 90(2):2; 94:8; 96:4;
97:8; 98:5
perseverance, 88(2):6; 96:20
Peter, Saint, 73:16,22; 76:4; 83:3; 88(1):7,8;
90(1):1; 90(2):8; 92:3,7,8; 93:22,23;
94:7; 96:2,8,12,13
dish let down by four linen cloths, 96:13
Pharaoh, 75:10
Pharisee, 74:10,12; 85:2; 86:6; 93:7,15
Philip, Apostle, 76:1
Philistines, 82:7
philosophers, 88(2):5
pig, 79:11
Pilate, 73:8; 75:1
pilgrims (-s; -ages), 83:5; 85:11,16; 86:1,9;
89:15
pillars: apostles as, 74:6
pity, 98:12
plagues (Egypt), 77:25-30
pleasure, 73:25; 74:1; 75:3; 76:15; 84:10; 86:9
plural nouns, 78:10
poor: desire for wealth, 83:3
gifts to, as to Christ, 75:9
God as refuge for, 83:3
poor in spirit, 73:24
porticoes of Solomon, 83:10
possessions: attachment to, 80:21
potter, 93:23
poverty (virtue), 85:3
power(-s), 77:28; 83:11; 93:1; 95:7
arm of the Lord, 76:17
hand of the Lord, 74:11,12
praise, 73:24; 78:17; 83:8; 86:9; 88(1):6; 91:4; 94:1; 95:4; 96:
eternal life, 85:24
tongue’s noblest function, 94:4
prayer, 89:4
Bend down your ear..., 85:2,3
body of Christ cries for mercy all day long,
enduring, 83:6
entreaty, 89:14
fix my prayer in your ears, 85:10
hands outstretched, 76:3
for health and salvation, 85:9
I lifted up my soul, 85:7
Look into the face..., 83:13
motive in calling upon God, 85:8
must ask in faith, 77:15
not hearing, not granting, 87:15
Son and God not separated in, 85:1
telling God what he already knows, 78:1
time of affliction, 80:10
Turn back, O Lord..., 89:14
voice directed to God, or to things, 76:2,3
why have you rejected..., 87:14
preach (-ed, -ing), 74:5; 75:7; 76:19; 80:5; 88(1):5,6,7; 95:3,12; 96:8,10
predestination, 81:5,6; 84:3; 88(2):4
pregnant women, 95:14
presence of God, 81:2
present time, 76:8
presumption, 80:20; 85:3
pride, 73:24; 74:1; 75:18; 77:3; 79:10; 82:14; 84:8; 85:3; 87:10; 88(1):11,17; 90(2):7; 93:8,15,21; 94:7; 95:10; 96:8
etheal, 81:6
in moral life, 77:27
sinners raise selves skyward, 93:16
virginity, 75:16
priest: Moses, Aaron, Samuel, 98:10,11
princes, 86:8
procreation of children, 80:21
Prodigal Son, 77:24
promise(-s), 73:2,3,5; 74:1,13; 75:5; 81:1; 88(2):1-2,4,6
faith in, 73:25
Old Testament, 73:22
promised land, 74:12; 75:1; 77:3,16,22,23,30,33; 79:8; 84:4; 98:12
property, 80:21
goods held in common, 83:4
prophecy, 73:17; 75:1; 77:9; 78:1,9,14; 80:11; 82:9,12; 84:2,3,6; 85:1; 89:6,15; 96:1
prophets, 77:2,26; 79:9; 81:3,5; 84:10; 86:2,3,4; 88(1):7,20; 88(2):6; 89:2,94:7; 98:1
proselyte, 93:10
prosperity, 73:1,2; 74:1; 83:5; 85:16; 91:7,8; 93:16,24,27
See also temporal goods
protection: security under his wings, 90(1):5; 90(2):2
providence, 84:3
deep designs, 91:8,9
God’s use of bad people, 73:8; 77:28; 93:25,27
Where is your God, 77:39
prudence, 73:25; 83:11
psalms, 78:1,9,17
discern Christ’s presence in, 98:1
fifteen “Songs of Ascents,” 89:10
psalm-players, 91:5
references to Christ, 90(2):1
superscriptions, 87:1
salvation, 80:5; 91:3,5
punishment, 74:8; 75:4; 77:29,40; 78:13
See also chastisement
caring and, 98:13
disinheritance as, 88(2):2
fire, 96:6
God’s power, 89:11,12
putting up with wicked people, 98:12
sevenfold (number), 78:16
whipped as God’s children, 88(2):7; 91:8; 93:28
purification, 88(2):7
purity, 77:27
blessed are the pure of heart, 85:21
rain, 76:20; 80:1; 88(1):12; 98:14,15
raised up, 77:7
reading, 85:7; 90(2):1; 93:6
Red Sea, 80:8,15
redemption, 76:17; 93:28; 95:5
reflection: confession and, 75:14
religious condition: God is as we are, 74:9
remnant, 73:1; 77:23; 78:2
repentance, 73:22; 78:4,14; 80:20; 93:8,9,15; 98:6
repetition, 74:3; 87:2; 94:5
rest, 83:3; 92:1; 93:23,24,29; 94:15
resurrection of the body, 84:7; 87:5; 88(1):5; 88(2):5; 89:10; 90(1):8; 96:17; 98:2
body (flesh) will be made perfect, 88(2):5
philosophers’ denial of, 88(2):5
sign of, 85:23
revenge, see vengeance
reward: eternal, 89:12
hope for future, 93:12
rich man and Lazarus, 85:3,18
rich people, 75:9; 85:3
righteousness, 73:18,24; 77:8,10; 83:16; 84:13,14,15; 88(1):15,17; 93:2,19; 96:18
river(s), 73:17; 88(1):26
clap their hands, 97:8
speaking, 92:7
rock, 80:22; 92:3
Rome, 86:8
ruler, 75:18
running: desire as, 83:4
Sabbath, 80:2
tranquility, 91:14
within our hearts, 91:2,7
sacraments, 73:2; 77:2; 80:20
fed to the Lord’s enemies, 80:22
sacrifice, 74:12; 95:9
daily renewal, 73:15
most pleasing oblations, 95:15
sadness, 76:7; 85:24; 91:5; 93:19
saints, 74:1; 75:10; 78:15; 85:22; 86:3; 87:15; 88(1):6,7; 97:8
feet of the Lord, 90(2):8
God’s throne, 92:6
metaphors for, 93:4
prayer of, 87:14
splendor, 92:6
salvation, 73:2,14,25; 79:9; 84:1,9; 85:9; 87:10,13,15; 93:28; 95:3; 96:2; 97:2
fire, 96:6,7
near to those who fear him, 84:11
poverty in need of, 78:12
Samson, 80:11,14; 88(1):10
foxes’ tails, 80:14
Samuel: punishment of, 98:10,12
Satan, 73:16; 84:4; 96:12
blame for our sins, 91:3
Saul, King, 77:41
Saul (later Paul), 75:14
schism, 75:8
scourge, 90(2):5
scriptures, 90(2):1
sea, 77:13; 88(1):10,11; 91:8; 92:7; 94:9; 95:12; 97:8
earth as, 76:20
your way is in the sea, 76:21,22
Second Coming of Christ, 82:2; 95:14
See also Judgment Day
seeking, 76:2,3
God for his own sake, 77:21
hands outstretched, 76:4
hurried, 83:3
senses: God’s messages sent through, 77:5
Septuagint, 87:10
serpent, 73:25
servants, 78:9; 79:4; 89:16
serving God, 73:1
seven (number), 78:16
Severus, 95:1
shame, 85:23
sheep, 76:22; 77:3,24,44; 94:11
one flock and one shepherd, 78:3
shield, 90(1):6
Shiloh, 77:35
shout for joy, 97:4
signs, 74:12
Moses, 73:13
no prophet now, 73:11
Old Covenant, 73:2,16
soothsayers, 73:8
will of God made known by, 77:5
silence, 76:8,9,10
speaking against God, in the heart, 74:9
Simeon, 78:2; 96:1; 97:2
Simon the Magician, 90(2):7
sin, 73:16; 77:7; 78:12; 83:10; 85:18; 92:5
See also confession; forgiveness; good and evil; iniquity; pride
anger = punishment for, 78:8
blaming Satan, fate, God for, 91:3
burnt up and dug out, 79:13
consciousness of, 83:3
considered “tiny,” 93:9
correction from, 88(2):4
covered, 84:5
earth melted by, 74:6
every sin is a lie, 91:6
fault; devil, 80:18
God’s silence, 93:9
ignorance and, 90(1):7; 90(2):2

Volume III/18
motive for refraining from, 93:2
ownership of, 84:15
punishment for, 78:11
as pursuing Egyptians, 80:8
reigning in the body, 75:5
renouncing, 80:19
slave of, 87:5
two sources: desire and fear, 79:13
sing (-er; -ing)
body of Christ, 83:5, 6, 7
precentor and succentor, 87:1
to sing is to build, 95:2
sinner(-s), 73:1, 19; 74:2, 12, 14; 75:14, 15; 76:7; 77:7, 24; 83:16; 85:9; 88(2):3; 88(2):7; 89:11; 90(1):11; 90(2):2; 91:7, 9; 93:5, 23, 27; 95:7
attitude towards God and sin, 93:11
evildoers, 93:7, 11
gloat: God ignores our sins, 93:9, 11
God holds back vengeance, 74:9
God wants to spare the wicked, 93:18
Lord, be merciful to me…, 90(1):6
no joy for the wicked, 96:19
pit is dug for, 93:15, 16, 17, 29
prosperity, See temporal goods.
pride, 93:15
putting up with, as punishment, 98:12
tolerance; pity, 98:12, 13
wrongdoers, 93:7, 15
Sisera, 82:9
skin: whiteness, 73:13
snake, 90(2):9
death and, 73:5
healed by gazing at, 73:5
staff turned into, 73:5
Sodom, 77:29; 83:3
soldiers, 90(1):10
Solomon, 77:26; 83:10; 88(2):6; 95:1
Son of God, 84:13
form of a servant, 77:43; 85:1, 4; 87:2
hidden in the crucified Christ, 79:4
omnipresence, 75:17
time and, 74:5
unique, 88(1):7
Son of Man, 79:12
song, 94:3
Sing a new song…, 97:1
song of ascents, 83:10
sorrow, 76:6
sharing, 93:9
soul: See also body and soul
dead, 87:11
filled with evils, 87:3
God contained in peaceful soul, 92:6
harmed by iniquity, 93:1
lie in the mouth kills, 79:13
sower, 90(1):8
sparrow, 83:7
speaking in tongues, 96:13
spirit, 77:10; 79:14
gives life, 98:9
searching one’s own, 76:9, 13, 14
spiritual life
See also Christian life; grace; heart
change wrought in me, 76:12, 13
likeness to God, 94:2
looking back, 83:4
miracles wrought in souls, 76:16
prepare self for trials, 83:1
weapons; flesh, 97:7
weariness, 91:1
spiritual warfare, 75:4; 76:7; 80:11; 83:9; 84:10
squabs, 83:7
staff: turned into snake, 73:5, 16
stars, 83:3, 5, 6, 29
Stephen, Saint, 78:2
stones, 95:2; 96:11
storm, 80:11
straw, 96:7
strength, 73:18; 89:10; 92:2, 3, 4, 6
suffering, 83:6; 85:19; 86:5; 87:3; 89:11, 14; 92:8, 19
God accused of being unjust, 74:8
as test, 77:29
summer, 73:20
sun, 73:19; 77:22; 80:14; 88(2):5; 90(1):8; 93:4, 5; 98:14
sunlight, 96:18, 19
sweetness, 84:15; 85:11, 24; 85:7
sword: fire and, 96:7
syllables, 76:8
symbols, 77:3, 26, 27
synagogue, 73:1; 77:2, 3; 81:1, 2; 82:1
Tabor (mountain), 88(1):13, 17
talking, 76:7
tares and wheat, 98:12
tax collector, 74:10, 12; 85:2
Lord, be merciful to me…, 84:14; 93:15
teaching, 93:13
tears, 83:10
teeth, 77:44
temperance, 83:11
temple, 73:11; 74:2; 78:4, 10; 82:10; 92:6; 95:1, 2
temporal goods, 73:2,14,22,23; 75:9; 77:20; 85:9,11; 89:13; 91:7,8
See also prosperity; rich; wealth
attachment to, 73:3; 80:21; 83:3; 86:9
bitterness of, 85:7
coveting, 89:4
crying out to God, 76:2,3
earth swollen with pride, 81:7
deearthly desires, 79:14
evildoers prosper, 93:1
good fortune of wicked people, 80:19; 91:14
hardships of good people, 93:2
innocence and, 83:17
number seventy, 89:10
sinners flourish; the just struggle, 93:16
triumph; wicked exult, 93:9
wicked flourish; successes, 93:12
worldly happiness, 91:1
temptation, 82:11; 83:3,5; 84:10; 85:16; 89:4; 90(1):7,8; 93:21,27; 94:9
due measure of, 79:6
forty days (symbol), 94:14
life as, 76:4
Tent of the Testimony, 77:7
testamentum, 82:6
testimony, 77:7
thanksgiving, 91:1
theatre, 80:23
thief, 86:6
thigh, 92:3
thoughts, 76:8
God’s thoughts; our thoughts, 93:14
threshing-floor, 92:5; 93:20
throne
members of Christ’s body as, 88(2):5
soul of a just person, 98:3
thunder, 76:20
time, 89:3,5; 91:8
confession, 74:14
days and years, 89:15
mystery of, 76:8
night watch, 89:5
six ages of, 92:1,6
Son of God; Son of Man, 74:5,7
Titus (Roman emperor), 78:2
Tobit, 96:18
today, 76:8
toleration: tares (wicked) and wheat, 98:12
tombs, 87:11
torrents (words of God), 73:17
torture, 90(1):8,10; 90(2):2
tranquillity, 91:14
trap, 90(1):4; 90(2):2; 93:26
treaty, 82:6
trials: ignominy, 92:2
tribulation, 82:7; 90(2):11; 93:3,27; 97:6
Trinity, 81:2; 84:9; 85:21; 86:4
God who works his wonders alone, 76:16
trouble, 85:11
day of, 76:3
life of, 76:4
praise God’s truth, 91:4
trumpet, 80:6
trumpets, ductile, 97:6
trust: healed for God, 97:1
truth, 75:7; 84:12; 88(1):9,25; 90(1):6,10; 91:6; 95:15
belongs to all, 75:17,18
proclaim in the night, 91:4
Truth has sprung up..., 84:13,14,15
turtledove, 83:7
twelve (number), 86:4
Tyre, 82:7; 86:6
unbelief/unbelievers, 73:21; 76:4; 77:14,19,30; 78:2; 81:7; 87:6,10,13; 88(1):15,24; 90(2):11; 96:7,9
understanding, 73:1,11,13,14
understanding hands, 77:45
underworld, 85:17; 87:3,4; 88(2):10
unicorns, 77:42; 91:11
unity, 91:11; 95:2
valley of weeping, 83:10,11,12,15
vanities, 77:40
vengeance, 78:13,14,16
victory, 88(1):23
vine brought out of Egypt, 79:8-9
vineyard, 88(1):7; 93:12
violence, 86:6
virgin birth, 73:25; 98:14
virginity, 75:16; 90(2):9
virtue: four essential virtues, 83:11
voice, 76:2
vows, 75:16; 83:4
wall, 79:10
whitewashed, 95:3
watchfulness, 76:7
water of contradiction, 80:11
waters: nations, 76:18
peoples, 80:11
waves (sufferings), 87:7; 92:7; 96:4
weakness, 97:6; 98:13
  prefigured by Christ, 93:19
wealth, 81:5; 85:3,11
  trust in; desire for, 83:3
  villainous possession of, 83:17
weeds, 98:12
weeping: ascents in the heart, 83:10
wheat: fed on richest wheat, 80:22
  tares (parable), 98:12
wheel, 76:20; 82:11
whipping, 88(2):7; 91:8,14; 93:17,28
wicked, See sinner(-s)
wickedness, 80:17
widow: parable: appeals to judge, 78:14
will, 73:21; 83:3
  raise up your hearts, 85:6
  will of God, 77:5; 93:18; 98:12
wind, 82:11
  four winds, 86:4
wine, 83:3
  both pure and mixed, 74:11,12
  wine press, 83:1,5,6,8,9,11,13,19; 85:5
wings, 88(2):14; 90(1):5,6
wisdom, 89:13,14; 90(2):2; 93:12; 96:5
  honey from the rock, 80:22
  you will be hungry again, 85:24
wolf, 93:1
Word of God, 93:6
  See also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Son of God
  all things made through, 73:19
  bread of angels, 77:17
  in the beginning… 73:19; 80:13; 85:1
  words of God, 73:17
metaphors: arrow; rain, 76:20
work, 77:4; 80:9; 85:24; 92:1; 93:12,23,24; 98:14
works of mercy, 85:24
world, 83:5; 88(1):26; 93:25; 94:2
  A.D.A.M: four quarters, 95:15; 96:13
  Egypt as symbol of, 77:12
  evil: loving and fearing, 79:13
  foundations moved, 81:5
  four quarters, 86:4; 96:13
  I have overcome..., 92:8
  joy in, 93:24
  night as, 76:4
  sixth age of, 92:6
worldliness, 91:10; 96:19
world-rulers (devil), 76:7
worship, 76:15; 77:20; 93:4; 94:10; 96:12
  See also idol
  by all nations, 85:13,14
  footstool, 98:9,14
wrongdoers, See sinner(-s)
year, 89:15
Zacchaeus, 75:9
Zalmunna, 82:9
zeal, 88(1):17
Zebah, 82:9
Zeeb, 82:9
Zion, Mount, 73:5; 83:12; 86:5; 96:13; 98:4
  Church as, 75:3
  contemplation, 75:5; 77:41
  foundations on mountains, 86:2
  my mother, 86:7,8
Zoan, 77:12,28
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 99-120

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the *Expositions of the Psalms* can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/19

Homilies/Expositions

**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-196-1, 6 x 9 in., 558 pp., 2003

**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-197-8, 6 x 9 in., 552 pp., 2003

Includes:

**Expositions of the Psalms**

* (Enarrationes in Psalms)*

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume III/19

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>III, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>I, 103, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6.26</td>
<td>II, 101, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>109, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>102, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>I, 103, 1; XVIII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 103; IX, 118, 4; XI, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>IX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>IV, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>IV, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>IV, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19.18</td>
<td>102, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>104, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>III, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>I, 113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:10</td>
<td>119, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16-18</td>
<td>109, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>I, 113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>I, 113, 2; XXVIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>II, 101, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>II, 101, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>I, 103, 3; 104, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14.15</td>
<td>II, 101, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>104, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>105, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>108, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>120, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:31-32</td>
<td>105, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:17, LXX</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>109, 20; V, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I, 101, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-4</td>
<td>109, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>109, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>109, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>109, 9; 119, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>109, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>IV, 103, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11-12</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4(3)</td>
<td>105, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Leviticus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22:4-6</td>
<td>119, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Deuteronomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>102, 12; III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:35</td>
<td>102, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:39</td>
<td>I, 101, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:49</td>
<td>I, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8, LXX</td>
<td>100, 12; IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>104, 40; XI, 118, 6; XXVI, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>120, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>IV, 103, 7; 120, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:33, LXX</td>
<td>IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4-5, LXX</td>
<td>IV, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:24-25, LXX</td>
<td>IV, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:7</td>
<td>IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6(5)</td>
<td>I, 101, 8; 102, 10; 120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5(4)</td>
<td>III, 103, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>111, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>7(6-7)</td>
<td>105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>3(2)</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4(3)</td>
<td>XX, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>8(7)</td>
<td>102, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>5(4)</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>3(2)</td>
<td>102, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4(3)</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>7-8(6-7)</td>
<td>109, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>7-9(6-8.5)</td>
<td>109, 19, 109, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2(11:2)</td>
<td>III, 103, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>6(11:5)</td>
<td>100, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>7(12:6)</td>
<td>106, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>16(6)</td>
<td>104, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>16(6)</td>
<td>108, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>17(4)</td>
<td>II, 101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>2(18:1)</td>
<td>104, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>4(18:3)</td>
<td>104, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>29(18:28)</td>
<td>IV, 103, 2; 109, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>34(18:33)</td>
<td>III, 103, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>37(18:36)</td>
<td>XXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>3(19:2)</td>
<td>120, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>6(19:5)</td>
<td>109, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>11(19:10)</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>2(22:1)</td>
<td>108, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>12(22:11)</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>17-19</td>
<td>II, 103, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>19(22:18)</td>
<td>I, 113, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>23(22:22)</td>
<td>108, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>27(22:26)</td>
<td>106, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>29(22:28)</td>
<td>102, 26; III, 103, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>23(5)</td>
<td>III, 103, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>24(1)</td>
<td>I, 103, 17; XXI, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>25(1)</td>
<td>XXIII, 148, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>25(3)</td>
<td>XXIV, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>25(10)</td>
<td>III, 118, 3; VI, 118, 4; XIX, 118, 3; XXIX, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>25(15)</td>
<td>XVI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>27(4)</td>
<td>110, 9; XV, 118, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>27(9)</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>28(5)</td>
<td>109, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>29(1)</td>
<td>I, 113, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>29(5)</td>
<td>III, 103, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>7(30:6)</td>
<td>IV, 118, 5; XXVI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>12(30:11)</td>
<td>107, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>21(30:19)</td>
<td>109, 8; XIX, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>21(30:20)</td>
<td>99, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>32(1-2)</td>
<td>III, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>32(7)</td>
<td>105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>32(8)</td>
<td>XXXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>32(9)</td>
<td>IV, 103, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>3(9)</td>
<td>II, 101, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>2(34:1)</td>
<td>106, 1; XI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>3(34:2)</td>
<td>104, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>34(6)</td>
<td>VI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>34(6)</td>
<td>99, 5; 104, 3; XXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Voulume III/19**
### Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>99, 8; 99, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>120, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>I, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5, LXX</td>
<td>I, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>III, 103, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>XXIV, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>100, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>III, 103, 19; 120, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>111, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>I, 101, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9.6</td>
<td>120, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>II, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>102, 9; 111, 2; 119, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>II, 101, 2; 119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26(33)</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>XV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>99, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>102, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>V, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24-32</td>
<td>II, 101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>114, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 8; XXVII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6.4</td>
<td>102, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26</td>
<td>II, 113, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>120, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:19-21(14-16)</td>
<td>117, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:20-21</td>
<td>IV, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>XIX, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>II, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16-18</td>
<td>IV, 103, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>119, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>I, 103, 11; XXVI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9, LXX</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>109, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10, LXX</td>
<td>109, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:4</td>
<td>I, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6</td>
<td>III, 103, 9; 105, 19; 106, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6.8</td>
<td>102, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:11, LXX</td>
<td>104, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:4</td>
<td>112, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:8</td>
<td>I, 101, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:8</td>
<td>114, 3; 117, 19; XXVI, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:20-21, LXX</td>
<td>112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:11</td>
<td>119, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>IV, 103, 12; 108, 29; 115, 1; XVIII, 118, 1; XXXII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>I, 101, 16; I, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>III, 103, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>109, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:11, LXX</td>
<td>III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1</td>
<td>II, 101, 6; II, 101, 7; 112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:5</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:6.7</td>
<td>104, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:15, LXX</td>
<td>112, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16-18, LXX</td>
<td>I, 101, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:3</td>
<td>105, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:9</td>
<td>I, 101, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:1</td>
<td>108, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10</td>
<td>I, 101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2</td>
<td>II, 103, 10; IV, 103, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:27</td>
<td>II, 113, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>V, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td>104, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-33</td>
<td>XI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ezekiel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18:4</td>
<td>108, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:22</td>
<td>XV, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:11</td>
<td>I, 101, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:16</td>
<td>V, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:27</td>
<td>XV, 118, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:15-16</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>117, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Hosea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:5, LXX</td>
<td>XXI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Joel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>114, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Micah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:15-19</td>
<td>I, 113, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Voulueme III/19**
### Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>109, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Haggai

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>X, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Zechariah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>109, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Malachi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10-11</td>
<td>106, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>109, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>109, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>108, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>I, 101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>IV, 103, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>114, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>100, 9; I, 101, 5; I, 103, 17; III, 103, 14; 105, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>102, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>99, 5; I, 103, 4; 109, 8; 109, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10.6</td>
<td>I, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>102, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>XXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14-16</td>
<td>XXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>105, 3; XII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>III, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:34</td>
<td>102, 11; 108, 4; VII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>99, 5; III, 103, 21; 120, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:46</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48.44-45</td>
<td>100, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>XII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19.24</td>
<td>XII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>I, 103, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 2; 120, 7; 120, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>I, 103, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>III, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 103, 19; III, 103, 18; III, 118, 2; XIX, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>III, 118, 2; XIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:22-23</td>
<td>XII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>II, 101, 14; 105, 15; XII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>XII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>100, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>XIV, 118, 2; XXIX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>XIV, 118, 2; XXIX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>100, 7; I, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>III, 103, 21; XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>104, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>114, 7; VII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11-12</td>
<td>I, 101, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19.20</td>
<td>IV, 103, 14; 115, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>XIII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25</td>
<td>100, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>I, 101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>120, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:39</td>
<td>102, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41</td>
<td>102, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41-42</td>
<td>102, 13; III, 103, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>120, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>99, 16; 104, 1; IV, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>I, 113, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-30</td>
<td>114, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>120, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td>IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>119, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:41-43</td>
<td>109, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:3</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>III, 103, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15-18</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>108, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>102, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>II, 101, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:3.4.6</td>
<td>III, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10.11</td>
<td>III, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>I, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16-17</td>
<td>117, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>XIX, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>111, 4; 119, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:24-26</td>
<td>110, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>100, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>102, 4; 115, 5; 119, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22-23</td>
<td>III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:27</td>
<td>III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:30</td>
<td>109, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:32-33</td>
<td>109, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:38</td>
<td>115, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:21</td>
<td>115, 8; XXXI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse(s)</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37-39-40</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 2; XII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>102, 25; I, 103, 10; XII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:42</td>
<td>109, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:43-45</td>
<td>102, 8; I, 103, 2; XXVI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:31-35</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>I, 101, 8; 108, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:38-37</td>
<td>II, 101, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:14</td>
<td>II, 101, 9; II, 101, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:17</td>
<td>I, 101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:35</td>
<td>I, 103, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:37-39</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:40-41</td>
<td>99, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:43</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>1, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21.23</td>
<td>115, 1; 115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:25.30</td>
<td>108, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26</td>
<td>99, 10; 115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26.27</td>
<td>I, 101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>109, 15; 111, 5; I, 113, 9; 120, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34.41</td>
<td>VI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>111, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:45</td>
<td>108, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>109, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38</td>
<td>100, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38.39</td>
<td>III, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>100, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:25</td>
<td>108, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40</td>
<td>I, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40.42</td>
<td>100, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:19</td>
<td>III, 103, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>99, 17; II, 101, 8; I, 113, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mark**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>100, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>VII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>102, 8; 117, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>III, 103, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>III, 103, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24</td>
<td>120, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>100, 6; 108, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:69</td>
<td>III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Luke**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:34-35</td>
<td>104, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>I, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I, 103, 8; III, 103, 20; XXIII, 118, 1; 119, 1; 120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>I, 101, 1; 119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.10</td>
<td>III, 103, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Voulume III/19**
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

Volume III/19

1:1.14 108, 29
1:3 II, 101, 1; II, 101, 10;
II, 103, 5; XVIII, 118, 1
1:9 120, 4
1:10 II, 103, 8
1:12 II, 103, 11
1:12-II, 118, 6
1:14 I, 101, 1; II, 102, 23;
III, 103, 20;
XXIII, 118, 1; 119, 1;
120, 6
1:16 120, 4
1:18 109, 16
1:47 102, 15
2:19 108, 23; 111, 1
3:36 I, 101, 11
4:7 108, 19
4:13 105, 13
5:21 108, 23
5:24 114, 7
5:29 XIX, 118, 4
5:33-36 XXII, 118, 3
5:35 XXIII, 118, 1
5:43 105, 37; 117, 21
6:29 104, 7
6:41 I, 101, 5; III, 103, 14
6:61 I, 113, 11
7:24 XXVI, 118, 1
7:37 I, 113, 11
7:37-38 X, 118, 6
7:37-39 II, 103, 3;
II, 103, 10
7:39 108, 26
8:7 102, 11
8:12 XXIII, 118, 1
8:25 109, 13
8:28 XXII, 118, 3
8:31-32 99, 7
8:35 XXI, 118, 2
8:44 102, 4; II, 103, 11
8:56 104, 10
8:58 104, 10
9:39 106, 8
9:41 105, 5
10:47-7 I, 110, 7
10:16 II, 113, 2
10:18 III, 103, 21; III, 103, 23;
108, 22
10:20 108, 4
11:44 II, 101, 3
11:48-52 105, 37
12:25 102, 3
12:31 105, 36
12:43 115, 1; 115, 2
13:1 120, 6
13:27 III, 103, 12
13:34.35 XII, 118, 5
13:36 III, 103, 9
13:36 14:6 II, 101, 7; 105, 5;
14:8.9.26 106, 4; III, 118, 3;
14:9 IV, 103, 18; 109, 14
14:10 109, 13; 109, 14
14:21 109, 12
15:5 III, 103, 14
15:5.1 I, 103, 11
15:13 102, 3
15:14 109, 8; III, 118, 3
15:22 102, 10
15:26 102, 10
16:7 108, 26
16:8 109, 8
16:9 109, 8
16:10 109, 8
16:12 VI, 118, 1
16:32 109, 13
16:33 102, 7
17:3 109, 15
19:6 108, 3
19:10-11 III, 103, 22
19:22 108, 18
19:28 108, 19
19:37 109, 12
21:17 104, 1
27:1 Acts XX, 118, 4
1:7 I, 103, 11
1:9 109, 12
1:11 114, 2
2:21 108, 19
2:37 108, 19
2:38 109, 11
3:21 109, 4
7:60 108, 4
9:4 100, 3; III, 103, 7;
10:13-15 III, 103, 2
10:13-15 109, 8
17:28 99, 5
Romans
1:3 109, 4
1:17 109, 8
1:20 I, 103, 5
1:21-22 112, 1
1:23 105, 19
1:24 106, 14
1:25 II, 113, 4
1:28 105, 25
2:3-4 100, 2
2:4 102, 16
2:5-6 100, 2; 102, 16
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8-11</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>XXIV, 118, 7; XXV, 118, 1; XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28-29</td>
<td>I, 113, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>II, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>108, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20-21</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 5; XXVIII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22-24</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>X, 118, 5; XXII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>108, 4; 110, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>III, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9-12</td>
<td>I, 113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13-16</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>102, 15; XXIV, 118, 7; XXV, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>104, 11; XIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>117, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 103, 9; I, 103, 10; II, 103, 3; XXI, 118, 8; XXVI, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>IV, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>102, 15; 106, 10; 110, 3; X, 118, 5; XI, 118, 4; XXV, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>102, 10; 120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-13</td>
<td>III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20:22</td>
<td>115, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9-10</td>
<td>VII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15-17</td>
<td>II, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>102, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>106, 6; 106, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>114, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>114, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8-11</td>
<td>114, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>106, 1; XII, 118, 3; XIV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-25</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>114, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>109, 8; II, 113, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>104, 3; XV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>114, 2; VI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33</td>
<td>117, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6-7:27</td>
<td>II, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7-8</td>
<td>X, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>XXVIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14:18</td>
<td>110, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>105, 36; VII, 118, 2; X, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>110, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:29</td>
<td>II, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30-32</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>XV, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8-10</td>
<td>118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>II, 101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>108, 32; 109, 4; VI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>114, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>114, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>XXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>II, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25-26</td>
<td>109, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>VI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 3; XIX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>I, 103, 16; 104, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>IV, 103, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>II, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>102, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>102, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>IV, 103, 9; XXXI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7-8</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>XIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>XX, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>I, 101, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>II, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-9</td>
<td>III, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>II, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>III, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>119, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>IV, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>I, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>III, 103, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>XII, 118, 5; XIII, 118, 1; XXV, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>110, 3; XV, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>120, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>109, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>119, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

3:29 100, 3; 104, 5; I, 113, 2
4:4 XXVI, 118, 7
4:5 I, 101, 14
4:6 XIV, 118, 2
4:19 I, 101, 8
4:21-22.24 119, 7
4:24 I, 103, 13
4:25 110, 8
4:26 110, 8
4:27 II, 101, 6; II, 101, 7
5:2 III, 103, 7
5:2 99, 7; III, 103, 9; 115, 6
5:15 100, 9
5:17 106, 6
5:24 XXV, 118, 6
6:3 116, 1
6:9 111, 3
6:14 XXV, 118, 6

Ephesians
2:2 III, 103, 23; 105, 36; 117, 4
2:3 I, 101, 11; 102, 17; I, 103, 6; 112, 6
2:8-10 116, 6
2:9-10 110, 3
2:10 IV, 103, 14
2:14 119, 9
2:15-16 117, 17
2:19 VIII, 118, 1
2:19-22 111, 1
3:14-19 I, 103, 14
3:17 120, 7
3:19 XIV, 118, 4
3:20 XIX, 118, 2
4:2-3 99, 9
4:10 XII, 118, 7
4:13 I, 101, 2
4:17 XVIII, 118, 3
4:17-18 XVIII, 118, 3
4:23 XVIII, 118, 3
4:26 III, 103, 19
5:8 I, 103, 6; II, 103, 2; 112, 6; 120, 4
5:25-24 III, 103, 4
5:27 I, 103, 7
5:32 XXIX, 118, 9
6:12 117, 4

Philippians
1:18 115, 1
1:23 100, 6; 114, 8
1:23-24 112, 4
2:6 I, 103, 5
2:7 IV, 103, 8
2:7-8 I, 103, 5
2:8-11 109, 20
2:9-10 109, 7
2:12-13 102, 29; IV, 103, 16;
XXXI, 118, 8
2:13 105, 3; XV, 118, 9;
XVI, 118, 2
2:21 115, 1
3:13-14 II, 118, 2
3:16 II, 118, 2
3:20 112, 4; 114, 8; X, 118, 1
4:17 102, 12; 106, 13

Colossians
1:13 105, 36
3:1-2 IV, 103, 11
3:1-3 XII, 118, 1
3:4 XX, 118, 1

1 Thessalonians
3:5 XXVI, 118, 2
4:16-17 I, 103, 11
5:2 120, 3
5:4-5 120, 3
5:5 120, 3

2 Thessalonians
2:3-4,8-12 105, 37
3:2 115, 1; VIII, 118, 1
3:14,15 100, 8

1 Timothy
1:5 102, 25
1:7 XXII, 118, 4; 119, 9
1:9-11 XI, 118, 1
1:13 I, 103, 6; 112, 6;
VII, 118, 2
1:13-16 100, 2
1:17 109, 10
2:5 IV, 103, 8; 104, 10
5:18 102, 12; III, 103, 9
6:10 110, 8; XI, 118, 6
6:16 VI, 118, 2

2 Timothy
2:8,9 109, 4
2:9 115, 2
2:16 XX, 118, 1
2:19 104, 34; 106, 13;
106, 14; 120, 14
2:26 105, 36
3:1-2 106, 14
3:7 XI, 118, 3

Voulueme III/19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume/Verse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>100, 6; 102, 7; VII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>XVI, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>106, 8; XV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>III, 103, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>I, 103, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-5</td>
<td>112, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>VII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>XXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-7</td>
<td>II, 101, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11.14</td>
<td>XVI, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13-16</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>XVII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>XVII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>I, 118, 3; II, 118, 1; III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>II, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>I, 113, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>106, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>104, 3; 109, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>I, 118, 3; II, 118, 1; II, 118, 2; II, 118, 3; III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-25</td>
<td>IV, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>106, 8; XV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-6</td>
<td>111, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>XVII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>114, 2; XXVII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>III, 103, 20; III, 103, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>106, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:15</td>
<td>117, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2)
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.
Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semi-colon.
Biblical texts/words are in italics.

Aaron, 104:18,20; 109:17; 113(2):8,9
abandonment: forsaken by God, 118(4):5
Abba! Father! 106:1; 113(1):5; 117:3
Abel, 118(29):9
Abraham (includes “faith” of; “seed” of, etc.):
100:3; 101(2):14; 103(3):5; 104:5,6,7,8,9,33,34,36; 105:5,28; 109:17; 112:8; 113(1):2,5,10; 118(10):3; 118(29):4; 119:7
accountability, 103(1):19
acedia, 106:6
admiration, 118(12):2
adoption, 118(12):1
adulterous woman (gospel), 102:11
adversaries, 118(26):2
Africa, 120:13
Alas, 119:7
aliens, 118(8):1
allegory, 103(1):13
Alleluia, 104:1; 110:4; 113(1):5; 117:2,23
duplication of, 105:1; 106:1
alms, 102:12; 103(3):10
alphabet, 118(32):8
always, 118(13):4
Ananias, 108:17
animals, 101(1):11; 102:3,8; 103(3):4,18; 103(4)2
figures of all nations, 103(3):2
speech and, 113(2):2
anointing, 104:10; 108:26
anxiety, 118(12):4
apostles, 101(2):15; 103(2):7,8; 103(3)5,12,16; 113(1):3; 117:3
bones of Christ’s body, 101(1):4
rams, 113(1):8
twelve (the number), 103(3):2
appetite: mind and body, 118(8):4
arrogance, 100:11; 118(2):1
avarice, 110:8; 118(1):1; 118(11):6
avenger. See revenge
Baal, 105:25
baptism, 113(1):4
figure: Red Sea crossing, 106:3
prefigured, 105:10
sins washed away by, 118(3):2
barrenness, 112:8
beatitudes, 118(1):3
confession and, 103(1):4,6
beauty, 118(31):3
willing to become beautiful, 103(1):4
bees, 117:7
beggar, 106:14
Beginning, 109:13,14
belching, 102:8
Bible: charity’s role in, 103(1):10
God’s use of mortal things, 103(1):8
signed copy of God’s promises, 109:1
single Word heard in all scriptures, 103(4)1
sky = holy scripture, 103(1):9
See also words of God
birds, 101(1):7,8; 103(3)5
bishops, 103(3)12
blasphemy, 103(4)8
blessing, 108:30; 111:6; 117:2
name of the Lord, 117:21,22
why the soul should bless the Lord, 102:1-3,29
blind (-ness), 99:5; 109:5,11
boasting, 118(25):6; 118(32):3
body and soul: body as “floor,” 118(10):2
creation of, 118(18):1,2
flesh vs. spirit, 114:8
soul as alien, 118(8):1
See also flesh; soul
bones, 101(1):4
booty, 118(31):2
boredom, 106:6
bosom, 109:16
brazier, 103(3):5
bread, 101(1):5; 103(3):12,14
breath, 103(4):13,14
bulls, 106:14
Catholic Church, 99:12; 119:9
disturbing faults of bad people, 99:12
division, 101(1):1
enlarged heart, 118(11):1
exceedingly wide, 118(21):8
higher regions of the scriptures, 103(1):9; 103(2):3
lover's meditation, 118(19):4
spacious freedom, 118(14):2
walked continually in..., 118(14):2
works as assets, 102:12
Taste for things that are above, 103(4):11
See also Mystical Body of Christ; persecution
circumcision, 103(3):7; 113(1):2
clergy, 99:12,13
clouds, 103(1):11,19
canals, 119:5
camels, 104:6,7,8,9
capacity, 101:15
caravans, 110:6
Caesar, 115:8
Canaan, 104:6,7,8,9
canals, 110:6
Catholic Church, 99:12; 119:9
disturbing faults of bad people, 99:12
division, 101(1):1
enlarged heart, 118(11):1
exceedingly wide, 118(21):8
higher regions of the scriptures, 103(1):9; 103(2):3
lover's meditation, 118(19):4
spacious freedom, 118(14):2
walked continually in..., 118(14):2
works as assets, 102:12
Taste for things that are above, 103(4):11
See also Mystical Body of Christ; persecution
circumcision, 103(3):7; 113(1):2
clergy, 99:12,13
clouds, 103(1):11,19
canals, 119:5
believing in, 118(17):4
chatter about, 118(6):4
guarded, 118(31):7
slaying your words..., 118(5):1,4; 118(7):1
hearer and doer, 118(4):3
I understood better than elders, 118(22):4
love God by keeping, 118(8):2,3; 118(16):3,4,6
love of, 118(14):4; 118(26):8; 118(27):3; 118(31):6
love: exceedingly wide, 118(22):1
most earnestly ordained..., 118(4):1,2,5
praise and, 105:3
proud people turn from, 118(9):1
running with hearts enlarged, 118(10):6;
118(11):1,2,5; 118(14):4
thoroughly explore, 118(24):3
understanding, 118(22):8
walked continually in wide freedom,
118(14):2
will and, 118(4):2; 118(11):5
common good, 105:34
compassion, 102:20; 111:4; 114:5
conceit, 118(2):1
concupiscence, 106:5; 118(8):3; 118(10):2
condemnation, 118(28):1
conduct of life, 102:28
accountability, 103(1):19
act according to learning, 118(27):8
excess and deficiency in, 118(4):1
justice and judgment, 105:4
quiet vs. clamor, 99:10
coney, 103(3):18
confession (of sin and/or of praise), 101(2):7;
103(3):18; 104:1; 105:2; 110:2,3,6;
117:1,2,14; 118(2):1; 118(4):4; 118(10):3;
118(16):5
beauty and, 103(1):4,6
Enter his gates..., 99:16
made with the lips, 118(6):1; 118(13):2;
118(32):6
sweetness of the Lord, 106:2
conscience, 100:4
consent, 118(3):1
contemplation, 119:2
contrition: conversation with God, 103(4):18
conversion (of moral life): 106:6; 109:2; 111:3;
119:5
humility: reconstruction, 109:19
Jordan River as symbol, 113(1):7
youthful before God, 118(5):2
converts: pagans incorporated as “eaten,”
103(3):2
coots, 103(1):18; 103(3):16,17,18
correction, 118(26):9
 covenant (old and new interrelated), 104:6-7,36;
105:28; 105:35; 110:5; 118(11):1
allegory: old and new, 119:7
generation to generation, 101(1):19
grace hidden in, 118(26):8
younger sons (Abel, etc.), 118(5):3
See also New Covenant
covetousness, 103(3):16; 118(8):3; 118(11):6
cowardice, 115:4
cows, 106:14
creation, 101(2):12
effortless operation, 103(1):7
exceedingly good, 102:8
God’s “hands,” 118(18):1
He made us…, 99:15
human body and soul, 118(18):1,2
magnificence of, 103(3):25; 103(4):2
pointers to God, 103(1):1
shout for joy over, 99:5,6
spiritual meaning of the material,
103(3):2
subject to creator, 115:6
temporal changes in, 105:35
visible and invisible, 118(27):1,2
Crispina, Saint, 120:13
cross, 103(1):14; 118(26):4
crown, 102:7,8
cup of salvation, 102:4,6
curse, 108:20,21
damnation, 105:2
darkness, 99:5; 100:12; 117:4; 119:7
daughters: like a lily..., 99:8,12
David, King, 103(1):9; 104:10; 107:2;
109:3,7,16; 118(22):3
daylight, 118(21):3
days: dwindled like smoke, 101(1):4
dead, awareness of the living, 108:17
unbelievers as, 118(7):1
death, 109:20; 118(5):3; 118(9):3; 118(10):2
Christ’s victory over, 102:10
fear of, 100:6
last enemy, 102:8
like a thief in the night, 120:3
My soul is sorrowful..., 100:6
perish without God’s creative power,
118(18):3
provision for relatives, 108:17
soul delivered from, 114:6,7
uncertainty, 101(1):10
deceit: guileful tongue, 119:4,5
defilement, 118(1):1,2
delight, 118(17):3
deliverance, 118(32):2
demons, 103(3):22; 105:37; 113(2):3
denarius, 110:4
desire, 102:6,8,9,10; 118(3):1,2; 118(8):3,4,5;
118(9):1; 118(20):2; 118(25):7; 118(29):1
See also longing: yearning
devil, 100:12; 103(2):11; 103(4):6,7,8,9,10,11;
105:36; 106:14; 108:8,18; 111:5; 115:3;
117:4; 118(11):6; 118(12):4; 118(16):4;
118(26):4; 119:5; 120:8,11
See also demons
discernment: religious vocation, 99:11-12
discipline, 102:14; 105:26,33; 118(17):2,3,4
disease, 102:5
disgust, 106:11
disloyalty, 100:5
divinization, 109:1; 118(16):1,6
divorce, 103(3):4
drugs, 102:5
Donatists, 101(2):9; 119:9
doorkeeper, 103(4):10
dove, 102:16
dragon, 103(4):9,10,11
dust, 101(1):15,16; 103(4):13
eagle, 102:9,10
earth, 103(3):12; 103(4):11; 105:5; 112:6; 113(2):11,12; 118(2):2,4
creative work fills, 103(4):3-4
destruction by fire, 101(2):13
drenched with grace, 103(3):8
doorkeeper, 103(4):10
Easter, 110:1
eating: sharing meals, 100:8,9
ecclesiast, 115:3
egotism, 112:1
Egypt, 104:15,16,19-28,39; 105:6,7,20; 106:3
symbol of this world, 113(1):3
Elijah, 102:12; 103(3):11; 110:1
Emmanuel, 109:6
end of the world, 101(2):9; 103(3):5; 109:15
endurance, 118(20):4; 118(26):2
enemy (-ies), 99:5,8; 102:11,14; 105:36; 108:4,8,18; 109:10,11; 111:7; 117:4; 118(16):4; 118(28):2
love your enemies, 118(7):4
praying for, 118(9):2,3
envy, 100:9; 104:17; 118(12):5
Epiphany, 107:1
eror: temptation, 106:4,6
Esther, Queen, 118(29):8
right hand as symbol of eternal goods, 128:10,18
state of vision, 109:15
eternal punishment, 109:11
eternity, 101(1):12; 101(2):9,10,15; 102:22; 106:2
symbol: “long life,” 120:10
evangelization, 105:36
Eye, 103(4):6
example: refusing to imitate, 100:7
excess, 118(4):1
exhaustion, 118(20):1
exhortation, 118(1):1
exile, 119:6
Exodus, 104:28-33; 105:7-9; 113(1):3
eye: filled with light, 118(12):2
prayerful desire, 118(20):2
face, 103(4):12,13; 104:3; 118(11):3; 118(31):8
commanding the sea and the waves, 103(4):4
hand of your right hand, 120:11,12,13
law of, 118(22):1
refusing to bear witness, 115:2
righteousness and, 109:8
temporal goods and, 120:9
ways of God summed up in, 118(3):3
false accusations, 118(27):7
falsehood, 115:1
fasting, 110:1
fathers, 118(31):3
God at work in you, 103(4):16
words of God, 118(3):1,2
fear of God, 104(2):2; 102:18; 110:5,8,9; 111:1,2,3; 118(12):3; 118(17):1; 118(19):2; 118(25):6,7; 118(31):8; 119:2
feet, 114:2,3,5,8; 118(16):2; 118(23):1; 120:5,14
fetters, 101(2):1; 104:14
fiery, 110(2):13; 103(1):15,16; 103(2):4; 104:13
first-fruits of all their toil, 104:27
flies (plague), 104:22
flood (biblical), 103(2):6,7
floor, 118(10):1
food, 103(4):11,12; 119:2
unclean; Peter’s vision, 103(3):2
forgiving, 111:4
form, 103(1):5
forty (number), 110:1
foundation, 118(25):3; 118(29):9
four (number): four temptations, 106:4
free will, See will
freedom, 118(22):1
will of God and, 110:2
frogs (plague), 104:21
frost, 118(20):3
future, 103(2):7; 104:11; 108:7; 109:12; 113(1):4
foretold by past events, 113(1):1
God’s promises, 109:1
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

gates, 99:16; 117:15
generation, 99:17; 108:14; 118(21):2
*generation of generations*, 101(2):10,11,12
104:33; 108:18; 109:11; 110:6;
113(1):4,10; 117:3; 118(22):1; 118(25):2
gentleness, 114:6
gifts, 104:34; 118(14):2; 118(17):2; 118(27):4;
120:3
benefits received, 118(10):6
*every good gift comes from the Father…*,
118(4):2
God rewards his own gifts, 118(7):3
motives for, 102:13
recompense, 115:4

See also providence
dwells in high places …, 112:7
eternity as substance of, 101(2):10
forgetfulness, 118(15):1
gifts common to the good and the bad,
103(1):9
goodness of, 117:2,3,5; 118(27):2
greatness of love for us, 103(1):13
holy, 103(1):3
inexpressible, 99:6
inscrutable ways, 118(6):1
knowledge of, 103(1):3
long-suffering, 102:16
magnificent works of, 103(1):3; 103(3):25;
103(4):2
*most high above all nations*, 112:3
mouth (= word), 118(6):2
mysterious acts of power, 105:9,11
omnipresence, 99:5; 102:28
omniscience, 100:7
patience; forbearance, 100:2,13; 102:16
power as “hands,” 118(18):1
remember his wonderful deeds, 110:4
rests in his holy ones [the humble], 112:4
right hand has proved its might, 117:11
rock melted into pools of water, 113(1):11
seen with the heart, 99:5
servants of, 103(1):15,16
sin: forgetting his wonderful works,
105:6,7,13,20
substance of, 109:12
sun, 120:12
supreme good, 102:8
swearing: As I live…, 109:17
testimonies, 118(1):2; 118(11):6;
118(22):3; 118(27):2; 118(28):1;
118(29):2
*See also covenant; law; promise;
testimonies*
transcendence, 113(1):14
unchanging in his eternity, 113(1):14
voice of, 99:1
world failed to recognize…, 103(1):8
*See also commandments; justice; law;
love; mercy; providence; Son of
God; Trinity; will of God; etc.*
godless, 118(1):3; 118(21):3; 120:3
gods, 113(2):1
gold, 113(2):5
good and evil, 99:5; 119:9
choice, 102:8
Christians, 99:12
*eye for an eye*, 108:4
falling away from good, 118(20):1
God makes good out of evil, 104:17
God’s patience with evil, 100:2,13
good news from bad person, 100:10
happiness desired by all, 118(1):1
if you turn your face away…,
103(4):12-13
love repaid with hatred, 108:6
one will be taken, the other left, 99:13
repayment for God’s gifts, 102:3,5
responses (six), 108:4
returning good for evil, 115:4;
118(7):1,2,4
sun rises over all, 120:12
supreme good: keeping God’s law,
104:34; 105:5
sweetness, 118(17):1
temptations, 99:11
*See also sin; temptation*

good works, 103(1):14,19; 103(3):13; 104:2;
111:3; 118(12):2,4; 118(24):2; 120:2
grace, 102:15,19,20,23,24; 103(1):6;
103(2):10; 103(3):5,8,13; 104:7;
105:28,36; 109:2; 118(4):2,3; 118(5):4;
118(10):5; 118(11):4; 118(13):1;
118(15):2; 118(16):6; 118(17):2,4;
118(19):7; 118(25):1,2,6; 118(26):1,7;
118(27):3,9
grass, 101(1):5,12; 102:9,22; 103(3):9,10,12;
104:26; 105:19
greed, 118(11):6
Greek language, 118(14):2
grief, 101(1):6
groaning, 101(1):2; 101(2):1,2; 103(3):12
guardian, 120:6,7,12,14
Haggai, 111:1
hail (plague), 104:23
Ham, land of, 104:15
hand(s), 108:29; 118(18):1

Vouleme III/19
filled with goodness, 103(4):12
hand of your right hand, 120:7
left hand; right hand, 120:8,9,10,11,12,13
power, 120:11
happiness, 105:34; 117:10; 118(14):5,12; 120:8,9
hope for, 118(1):3
seeking God with whole heart, 118(1):2
united in the way, 118(1):2
harts (deer), 103(3)18
hate, 104:17; 108:6,7; 118(1):1
healing, 102:6,15; 105:37; 106:11; 109:3; 118(18):4
health, 100:12,13; 103(3)13,14; 104:17; 106:12;
108:32; 111:3; 113(1):5,6; 118(1):2,3;
118(19):7,119:2,5,9
ascents in, 119:1,8; 120:1,3
Blessed are the pure of heart, 103(1):4
cry, in prayer, 118(1):2
depraved, 100:6
enlarged; running, 118(10):6; 118(11):2,5;
118(14):4
God is seen with, 99:5
guests in, 100:11
house, 100:4
laws written upon, 118(11):1
straight; bent, 100:6
straightforwardness of, 118(4):5
heaven, 102:26; 103(3):3; 111:3; 112:4,5;
113(2):11,12; 118(1):3; 118(21):1
God's promises, 109:1,2
God's words without reading, 119:6
heavenly seeds; harvest, 112:6
people in, called "lowly," 118(10):6;
118(11):1,2,5; 118(14):4
honeycomb, 118(22):7
hope, 99:8; 100:2,13; 101(1):5; 101(2):1,14;
102:6,23; 103(1):14; 103(4):17; 104:3;
108:9; 109:8; 111:6; 113(2):8; 114:12;
117:5; 118(10):4; 118(12):1; 118(13):3;
118(15):2; 118(19):2
do not disappoint me..., 118(24):4,5
future happiness, 118(1):3
God's promises, 109:1
hoped above measure, 118(20):1
prayer and, 103(1):19
protection of your wings, 120:5
hospitality, 100:4
house, 100:4
householders, 120:3
human beings:
animals and, 113(2):2
nature of, 103(1):15
work of God, 102:13
See also image of God
human body: creation of, 118(18):1,2
human condition, 114:4
course of mortal life, 109:20
God's promises, 109:1,2,3
remember that we are dust, 102:21,24
human sacrifice, 105:31
humiliation, 118(1):2; 118(15):2,4,5;
118(17):5,9; 118(21):4; 118(23):3;
118(30):1
humility, 101(1):18,19; 103(3):9; 103(4):16;
106:15; 112:3,4; 118(2):1; 118(17):8;
118(19):7; 119:1,2; 120:1,4
hunger, 104:11,38; 106:4,6,9
hymns, 99:16; 102:2,28
hypocrisy, 99:13; 118(2):1
I AM WHO AM, 101(2):10,12,14; 103(1):3;
104:4
idolatry, 105:21,25,26,30; 113(2):1,2,3,4,6,7
image of God, 101(1):11,15; 102:3; 103(4):2
immortality, 99:8; 101(2):14; 114:8
Incarnation, 99:6; 100:3; 101(1):1; 102:21;
109:12; 118(12):5
inheritance, 105:3,33,34; 117:13; 118(23):7;
119:7
iniquity, 100:4,9,13; 118(3):3; 118(24):1,6;
118(26):9; 118(27):6
innocence: stainless path, 100:4
intolerance, 99:9
intoxication, 103(3):13
Isaac, 104:7,8,9,36; 112:8; 119:7
Isaiah, 119:2
Ishmael, 119:7
Israel, 104:5,15; 118(22):1; 120:6
Jacob, 101(2):5; 105:4,8,9,36
vision of ladders, 119:2
jealousy, 118(12):5; 118(28):2
Jerusalem, 101(2):6,8; 104:5; 105:22; 108:18;
109:10,11; 110:8; 115:6,9; 116;
118(1):1; 118(15):6; 119:6,7
Jesus Christ, 103(4):10; 107:1; 111:6;
118(12):1,5; 118(28):2; 120:6

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
are you able to drink the cup..., 119:1
Ascension clouds used as chariot, 103(1):11
why stand here gazing..., 109:12
asleep (dies) on the cross, 102:10
beauty: ugliness, 103(1):5
Before Abraham came to be..., 104:10
birth of, 109:16,17; 118(21):2
bridegroom and bride, 101(1):2
charity beyond knowing, 103(1):14
child and elders in temple, 118(22):3,4
Church and, See Church
confessing, 117:1
cornerstone, 105:36; 111:1; 117:17-18,22
crucified, 100:9; 101(1):8; 101(2):7;
103(3)25,2; 118(3)2; 119:2
See also below: passion and death
David's son, and lord, 109:3,4,5,6,7
dismantle this temple..., 111:1
disturbed the people, 102:15
Do not turn your face away..., 101(1):3
dominion in midst of foes, 109:11
enemies of, 101(1):9-10; 108:4,5,18 fair of
form beyond all..., 103(1):5
Father, forgive them..., 108:5
figures (names; metaphors) for, 103(1):13;
103(3)20,22; 119:1
disciple, 109:13
I am not alone, 109:13
do not leave me, 118(29):7
Father, if it is possible..., 100:6
let him come down from the cross, 103(1):5
like a lengthening shadow..., 108:25
my soul is sorrowful..., 103(3)11;
108:24
no fair form or seemliness..., 103(1):5
patient suffering, 108:5
prophecy, 113(1):4
salvation of all peoples, 105:37
sun knew its setting, 103(3)21-22
peace, 119:9
persecutors like bees, 117:7
poverty, 101(1):1,2; 103(3)11
Power of God, 109:14
power to be at his right hand, 120:11,12
praise pretended, really cursing, 108:3
priesthood, 109:17,18
prophecy re betrayal by Judas, 108:1
render to Caesar, 118(31):1
resurrection, 101(2):7; 103(3)23,24; 120:6
rock, 102:9; 103(3)5,6,17; 113(1):12
salvation of God, 118(13):1
Savior, 118(32):5
sceptre of power, 109:13
seated at Father's right hand,
Servile status, 118(22):3
share in our mortality, 118(16):6;
118(19):6
sinful woman approached his feet, 100:8
sinlessness, 118(17):9; 118(22):5
solid food, 119:2
storm calmed by, 108:5; 120:7
stream of life, 109:20
suffering and exaltation, 104:40; 117:18;
120:1
suffering and the divine nature, 101(1):2
transient acts performed by, 109:5
two natures, one person, 101(1):2
understanding God's testimonies,
118(6):3
victory over the world, 102:7
what do you think of Christ..., 109:6
whoever has seen me..., 109:14
You would have no power over me..., 103(3)22
See also Christian life; Church;
Incarnation; Son of God; Word of God
enemies of Christ, 108:1,18
Esau or Jacob, 113(1):2
forty years in desert, 101(2):15
his blood be upon us, 108:20
Judas and, 108:20
persecution by, 108:19
priesthood of Aaron, 109:17
rivers turned into desert, 106:13
Job, 100:12; 103(3):22; 103(4):7-9; 118(11):6; 118(12):4; 118(23):7; 118(25):7; 120:2
Jubilation, 99:4,10,11
Judas, 103(3):12; 108:19,20,22; 115:1; 118(7):1
devil and, 108:8,33
Jews and, 108:20
may his days be few, 108:10
personifies Christ’s enemies, 108:1,18
punishment, 108:17
Juno, 113(2):4
justice, 102:11,25; 108:7; 111:4; 114:5; 118(6):1,118(12):4;
118(15):5; 118(16):5; 118(22):6;
118(26):1,2; 118(29):6; 118(30):2,4,8;
118(32):6
judgment day, 101(1):17; 109:12; 111:5;
118(20):4; 118(29):6
come, take possession of the kingdom, 113(1):9; 118(6):2; 120:11
Where is their God…, 113(1):13
Juno, 113(2):4
just person: reward or gifts to, 102:12,13,14
justice, 102:11,25; 108:7; 111:4; 114:5;
118(6):1,1; 118(8):3,4; 118(9):3;
118(10):2,3,5; 118(11):1; 118(26):1,2;
118(28):1,7; 118(29):7
forming right judgment, 105:4,5
give me life, 118(12):5
God’s ways of, 118(11):2; 118(15):6,8;
118(16):6; 118(17):6,29; 118(20):3;
118(21):5,6; 118(23):8; 118(24):5,6;
118(26):5; 118(27):8; 118(28):4;
118(29):1; 118(30):3; 118(32):3
God’s wonders, 118(10):4
meditating on, 118(6):4,5
passionately wanted, 118(8):5; 118(9):1
teach me your ways…, 118(5):4
justification, 110:3; 118(3):3; 118(19):7;
118(22):2
Kedar, 119:7,8
kingdom (of God), 102:26, 109:15; 118(29):9
kings: anointing, 104:10; 109:18
knowledge, 118(11):3; 118(17):3,4
profitable, 118(17):2
refusing to know someone, 100:7
ladders (Jacob’s vision), 119:2
Jewish, 99:13
lamb, 103(3):22; 108:26
lamentation, 101(1):6
lamp, 118(23):1,3
land: slain by bloodshed, 105:31
lapsed Catholics, 106:14
law, 118(7):4; 118(11):1,2,3; 118(13):4;
118(15):7,8,9; 118(17):3; 118(22):2,6;
118(26):7; 118(27):2; 118(28):5;
118(29):7; 118(30):2; 118(31):3,5
all day I ponder, 118(22):1
consciousness of sin, 118(25):5
duties of God’s people, 104:35
eternal law of God, 103(4):9
faith: works, 118(10):5
flagrant violations, 118(25):5
great person into little one, 118(27):3
keeping, 118(46):1
meditation on, 118(19):4; 118(32):5
remembering but not loving, 118(11):2
sin = breaking God’s law, 118(1):3;
118(2):1,2,3; 118(3):1,3
sin abounding, 118(25):1
supreme good: keeping God’s law, 104:34
unwilling obedience, 118(1):2
where there is no law…, 118(24):7;
118(25):1,4
written on stone; on earth, 102:11
See also commandments
Lebanon (mountain), 103(3):15
Lent, 110:1
lie: every human being is a liar, 115:3,4
life, 118(19):4; 118(21):5
according to your word, 118(10):3
freeness of my days, 101(2):8,9,12
length of days [eternity], 120:10
My days have slipped away…, 101(1):12
narrow path, 118(11):5
redeemed from corruption, 102:6
repayment for God’s gifts, 102:3,5,7
reward asked for, 118(30):7
See also Christian life; conduct of life
light, 103(2):6; 104:3; 118(12):2; 118(18):4;
118(23):1,3; 120:4,5
lion, 103(3):22; 103(4):6; 108:26
lion cubs, 100:12; 103(3):22,23
litigation, 118(24):3
locusts, 104:25; 108:25
lodgers, 118(8):1
longing, 118(4):2; 118(8):3; 118(10):2;
See also desire

Lord’s Prayer, 104:1
do not bring us into temptation, 118(15):2
forgive us our debts, 103(1):19; 118(3):2;
118(19):7
hallowed be thy name, 103(1):3
love, 100:12; 103(1):1,14; 104:1,3; 108:4;
117:23; 118:3; 118(22):1; 118(23):8;
118(27):3; 118(28):2,3.; 118(31):3; 119:5
bear with one another…, 99:9
because he first loved us, 118(27):5
because he will hear my pleading, 114:1
enemies and persecutors, 118(9):3
first must learn to love self, 118(8):2
fullness of the law, 118(26):8
God; self; neighbor, 118(11):6; 118(27):6
good works and, 103(3):4
heart set on something, 100:5
holy vs. carnal, 103(1):13
loving love itself, 118(8):3,4
mercy and, 102:11
proof of God’s testimonies, 118(6):3
two commandments, 118(8):2,3; 118(12):5;
118(14):2; 118(21):8; 118(22):2;
120:12
lust, 118(8):4; 118(10):2
magnanimity, 112:4
magnificence, 103(1):3; 110:3
man (vir, the word), 118(5):2
manna, 101(1):5; 104:31
mercy, 99:17; 100:9; 102:12; 19,21,24;
104:34,40; 105:2,7,21,35,36; 107:1;
108:19,28; 111:4; 114:5; 118(5):3;
118(7):2; 118(10):6; 118(11):6; 118(13):1;
118(14):1; 118(15):5; 118(19):3;
118(20):5,7; 118(29):6,8; 118(30):4,7
fear of God and age, 102:9
his mercy endures forever, 117:3
judgment and, 100:1,2,3,12,13; 102:14
love and, 102:11
truth and, 113(1):13; 116; 118(3):3
merit, 113(1):14
Messiah, 109:3,4
metaphors, 103(3):22
See also subhead figures under Jesus Christ
midnight, 118(16):5
midway (the word), 103(2):11
milk, 119:2
mind, 101(1):1; 118(8):4; 118(18):4;
118(26):1
ministers, 109:1
mirror, 103(1):4; 118(4):3
Mishnah, 118(20):5
monastery, 99:11,12
money, 103(3):12; 118(11):6; 118(12):2;
120:9-2; 120:12,13
Church within time, 103(3):19
morning star, 109:16
mortality, 103(4):10; 109:20
skin as symbol of, 103(1):8
Moses, 101(2):10,15; 102:15; 103(1):8;
104:20; 105:21,28; 110:1; 113(1):11;
118(21):2; 118(26):4,8; 118(31):8;
120:6
motivation: false preachers, 115:1
mountains, 103(2):7,8,9,10,11; 103(3):5,7,18;
103(4):16; 113(1):1,8; 119:1; 120:4
mouth, 113:2,3; 118(6):2; 118(23):4; 120:8
mysteries, 103(2):1
veiled in Old Testament, 113(1):4
Mystical Body of Christ, 101(1):3;
118(19):1,7,118(30):4
nails, pierce with, 118(25):6
Nations: animals in Noah’s ark as, 103(3):2
trees of the plains, 103(3):15,17
natural law, 118(25):4
nature: witness to the creator, 118(27):1,2
need(-y), 101(1):3; 102:6,12,13; 103(3):10;
108:24; 113(1):14
neighbor, 118(8):2
Neptune, 113:2,4,5
neuter pronouns, 118(15):9
New Covenant, 110:8; 118(11):1
night, 100:12,13; 118(15):7,8; 118(29):3,4;
120:3,12
nimis, 108:32; 118(4):1
Noah, 101(2):11; 120:3
Noah’s ark: animals as figures of all nations,
103(3):2
oath, 109:17; 118(23):2
obedience, 118(7):3; 118(22):8
old age, 102:9; 112:2; 120:10
Old Testament: mysteries veiled in, 113(1):4
See also covenant; prophets; psalms; etc.
also Abraham; David; Moses; etc.
onagers, 103(3):4
original sin, 101(1):5,11; 102:17; 103(2):11;
118(17):5,7; 118(22):8; 118(25):5

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

Voulume III/19
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

era of promises, 109:1
reward due to, 103(3):10
stones in Zion, 101(1):15
symbolic meaning for Christians, 113(1):4
welcoming, 102:13
protection, 120:12,13
providence, 104:11,28,37,39,40
Psalm 56 (59 and 107), 107:1-2
Psalm 118:
letters of Hebrew alphabet, 118(32):8
profundity of, 118(32):8
stanzas of eight, 118(21):2
psalms, 103(4):17
alphabetical, 118(32):8
head/body of Church in, 118(22):3
interconnected, 113(2):1
mysteries revealed in, 113(1):1
titles of, 105:1
understanding: stainless path, 100:4
punishment, 118(25):7
purity, 103(1):3
blessed are the pure of heart…, 109:8
quails, 104:31
rain, 103(1):11; 103(3):7; 104:23
ram (figure), 103(3):3
raven, 102:12,16
Rebecca, 118(28):4
recompense: modes of, 118(7):1
Red Sea, 104:16,29; 105:7,9-11; 106:3
redeemption, 110:7; 118(25):2
peoples worldwide, 106:3; 120:12
relationships: Bear with one another…, 99:9
religious life, 99:10-12
perseverance, 99:12
spiritual way of life, 103(3):16
religious practice: duties of God’s people, 104:35
remorse, 114:8
reparation, 102:3,3,7
repentance, 102:16; 108:19; 118(27):9
rest: turn round, my soul…, 114:6
resurrection of the body, 101(2):14; 102:7,9;
103(1):11
retribution, 118(7):1
revenge, 102:11
reward, 118(22):2; 118(23):8
God rewards his own gifts, 118(7):3
sought for good works, 111:3; 118(14):5
winning praise, 118(12):2
right hand, 108:8,33
righteousness, 99:5; 100:2,4,9; 103(3):14,19;
103(4):14; 105:27; 106:10; 109:8; 111:3,7;
117:15; 118(10):6; 118(11):1; 118(15):7,8;
118(22):1,2; 118(25):5,6; 118(27):2,9;
118(28):5
ritual vessels, 113(2):6
rock, 102:9; 103(3):5,6,17,18,22
roof, 101(1):7
running: hearts enlarged, 118(10):6;
118(11):2,5; 118(14):4
sacraments, 103(1):9,14
sacrifice, 103(4):3; 106:13; 117:22
free-will offerings of mouth, 118(23):4
self-dedication, 115:8
saints, 101(2):11; 118(6):2; 118(12):2;
118(13):4; 118(20):1; 118(29):5,8;
118(30):2; 119:7
God carried in bodies of, 101(2):14
God looks on them, still on earth, 112:5
happiness of, 117:10
heavens as, 101(2):14
power of intercession, 105:21
sin and, 118(2):1; 118(3):1
splendor of, 109:15
salvation, 104:40; 105:36,37; 110:2,6;
115:5,8,9; 117:9,16,19-20,23;
118(13):1,2; 118(20):1; 118(21):6;
118(24):4; 118(31):6,8; 119:3; 120:6
Sarah, 101(1):2; 112:8
Saul, King, 103(1):9; 104:10
Saul (later Paul), 108:19; 109:18; 118(7):2
scandal, 118(31):5; 119:6; 120:12,13
schism, 103(3):5; 105:17; 106:14
scriptures, See Bible
sea, 103(2):6; 103(4):6,9
seed, 113(2):9
seeking, 118(1):3,118(29):1
self-control, 110:1
self-knowledge, 118(8):2; 118(17):2
self-seeking, 105:34
servants, 99:10; 101(2):15; 102:28; 103(3):10;
104:17; 109:12; 115:1:2
service, 103(3):10; 104:40
seven (number), 118(31):4
seventy (number), 111:1
shame, 108:31; 118(12):4; 118(14):3;
118(19):7
Shechem, 107:1
sheep, 118(32):7
shepherd, 99:15
ship: church as, 106:7,13
figure of church buildings, 103(4):5
storm peril, 106:12
Shout with joy, 99:3-4,5,6,8; 102:8
sickness, 102:6
silence: believers not bearing witness, 115:1,2,4
silver, 106:14
Simeon, 101(1):1; 104:13; 105:5; 118(20):1
Simon Magus, 103(1):9
simplicity, 106:13
sin, 104:17; 118(24):4
abounding, 102:15; 118(26):7
advent, 105:31

Voulume III/19
consciousness of, 118(27):3; 118(28):5
deletion of, 108:15
forgiving, See forgiveness of sin.
if we say we have no sin, 118(2):1; 118(3):1
outside the law, 118(25):1,2,3
prayer effaces, 108:9
sin that dwells in me, 118(2):3; 118(3):1
we sinned with our fathers, 105:6
will to, lives on, 118(25):7
See also commandments; confession; forgiveness; law; temptation
Sinai (Mount), 118(11):1
sinners, 100:2,3,4,12; 101(1):9,10; 101(2):3;
102:1,16,28; 103(3)18; 105:2,18;
118(15):6; 118(16):6; 118(29):6; 119:5;
120:5
curse: may sinners disappear..., 103(4)19
do not give to a sinner, 102:13
future retribution, 108:7
God wills to pardon, 110:2
heaven promised to, 109:2
justification of, 110:3
remorse, 111:8
ropes of, 118(16):4
salvation, 118(30):3
unjust thoughts, 118(24):6
skin, 103(1):8
sky, 103(1):18
Bible’s higher regions, 103(1):9; 103(2):3
higher regions covered with water,
103(1):9,10
as protector, 102:18,19
rolled up like a scroll, 103(1):8
stretched out like a skin, 103(1):7,8; 103(2):2
slander, 118(26):3,4; 118(27):3
slave(-s; -ry), 99:7; 103(3)9; 115:6; 118(17):1;
118(21):2
sleep, 120:6,7
smoke, 101(1):4; 103(4)16
snake: church to watch for head, 103(3)5
soldiers, 118(31):1
solitary places, 101(1):7
solidity, 99:9
Solomon, 118(22):3
Son of God:
form of servant/slave, 101(1):1,2;
103(1):5,6; 103(4)8; 109:12,14
fulfilling God’s promises, 109:3
taught/begotten by Father, 118(22):3
See also Jesus Christ; Word of God
Song of Ascents, 119:1,7; 120:1
soul:
corruptible body weighs down,
102:6,9,10
filled to satiety, 105:15
inward powers, 102:2
pilgrimage, 119:8,9
saved from persecutors, 108:33
stuck to the hard floor, 118(10):1
wind as allegorical representation,
103(1):13
See also body and soul; spirit
sparrow, 101(1):7,8; 103(1):18; 103(3)6,17
speaking:
do not wonder what you are to say,
115:4
mouths spoke empty words, 120:8
See also mouth; tongue
spines (suggest sinners), 103(3)5
Spirit(s), 99:5; 103(1):15,16; 103(2):4;
118(17):1; 118(22):1
spiritual life:
ascend, 119:3
birds as symbol, 103(3)5
cleansing the heart, 99:5
discipline, 106:4-12
hold fast to God, 118(10):2
holy love vs. carnal love, 103(1):13
make me whole, 118(29):2
rest: soul’s activity, 114:6
solid food, 119:2
soul constantly in your hands,
118(23):5,6
temporal vs. eternal goods, 120:10
See also Christian life; flesh; heart; soul
spiritual warfare, 112:5
springs, 103(3):2; 118(27):9
star, 109:16
Stephen, Saint, 103(1):16; 108:4,19
steward: three duties (figure), 101(1):7
stones, 101(1):15,16,17,18; 102:11
storm, 106:12,15
straightforwardness, 111:3
streams, 103(2):11; 103(3):3; 109:20
strength, 101(2):6,7; 103(4)14; 104:3,29;
107:1; 109:12,14,15; 115:3,5; 117:9;
118(4):5; 118(10):4,6; 118(23):7;
118(26):2; 118(27):3; 118(31):8
sun, 103(3)19,20,21-22; 113(2):5; 120:12,13
suspicion, 118(12):4,5; 118(13):4
swearing, 109:17
sweetness, 118(17):1,2,3,6,7; 118(19):2;
118(22):7; 118(23):4
sword, 104:13
symbols: future/past/present, 113(1):3,4
undivided state of birds, 103(3)5

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
tales, 118(20):5
talkativeness, 118(6):4
teaching, 118(17):3; 118(27):8
tears, 118(27):9; 118(28):1
Tellus (goddess), 113(2):4
temperance, 110:1
temple: holy; people of God, 111:1
restoration (prophecy), 111:1
temporal goods, 102:10; 103(3):9; 104:37; 105:7,22; 111:6,7; 114:4; 118(11):6; 118(12):2; 119:7
faith and, 120:9
left hand as symbol of, 120:8,9
sticking fast to earthly things, 118(10):1-2
use for God’s sake, 104:40
temptation, 99:11; 100:12,13; 102:5; 103(3):22; 103(4):4,6,8; 118(8):1; 118(10):2; 118(15):2; 118(26):2; 120:11,13,14
error and hunger, 106:4
four (significant number), 106:4-12
pastors ruling a church, 106:7
thirst, 103(1):17; 118(27):5
thorns, 99:8; 102:17
thoughts, 118(24):6
thousand (perfect number), 104:7
threshing-floor, 100:12; 119:9
throne: established in heaven, 102:26
time: created thing, 101(2):10
fulness of time, 101(1):14; 118(26):7; 118(29):4
morning star, 109:16
tithes, 105:6
tongue: life and death in hands of, 120:11
treasure, 111:7
trees, 104:24
tribulation, 100:12
Trinity, 101(2):13; 120:12
analogy: man begs for three loaves, 102:10
Beginning, 105:13
See also God; Son of God; Word of God
trouble, 101(1):3
turtle-dove, 101(1):8
twelve (number), 103(3):2; 108:10
ugliness, 103(1):4,5,6
unbelief, 112; 118(7):1; 118(8):18; 114:7
refusal to believe, 118(3):3
unbelievers outnumber others, 115:1
understanding, 100:11; 106:15; 110:9; 118(17):3; 118(18):3,4; 118(19):1; 118(22):3,4,8; 118(26):6; 118(32):1,2
give, and I shall live, 118(28):7
given to “little ones,” 118(27):3
law of God and, 118(11):4
ungodly, 101(1):15
unity, 102:15; 106:14; 113(2):10; 118(3):3; 118(16):6; 118(22):3; 119:7,9
unrighteousness, 102:13
vainglory, 118(29):1
valley of weeping, 119:1; 120:1,2
valleys, 103(2):10
vanity, 118(12):1,2,3; 118(16):2
Venus, 113(2):4
vice, 106:6
vineyard, 103(1):3
virgin birth, 101(1):1,8; 109:6,16
virginity, 99:13
virtues, 103(1):3; 109:14
vocation: spiritual way of life, 103(3):16
Vulcan, 113(2):4
wandering, 106:9; 108:12
washing of hands, 118(22):4
water(s)
charity of the Spirit, 103(1):9
leaping spring; eternal life, 113(1):11
mountainous waves, 103(2):9
peoples as, 106:12
rivers of living water, 103(1):10; 118(10):6
They shall flee before your rebuke, 103(2):8
will overtop the mountains, 103(2):7
way, 118(31):8
duties of God’s people, 104:35
God led them astray, 106:14
law of the Lord, 118(1):1; 118(2):1,2,3; 118(3):1,3
straightening one’s paths, 118(5):4
waywardness, 118(1):1
wealth, 101(1):1; 103(3):17
whip(-ping), 102:20; 114:5; 118(13):3; 118(31):3
whitewashed wall, 103(1):6
wicked(-ness)
communicating with charity, 103(1):9
hate wisdom, 118(29):1
malevolent persons, 118(24):3
wife, 118(12):3
will (of God), 100:6; 101(1):11; 102:6; 105:34,35
act created by God, 118(11):6
freedom can override, 110:2
keeping the commandments, 118(11):5
preferring one’s own, 111:4
wills (testaments), 108:17
wind, 102:23; 103(1):12,13

Voume III/19
wine, 103(3):13,14
wine skin, 118(20):3
wings of the winds, 103(1):12,13; 103(2):2
winnowing, 119:7
wisdom, 101(2):2; 104(2):2; 103(1):8; 103(4):2; 104:14; 112:2; 118(1):2; 118(22):2,7,8; 118(29):1, 120:10
wise persons, 106:15
witness-bearing, 118(9):2; 118(23):7; 118(30):5,6
failure to speak, 115:1
I believed, therefore I spoke, 115:2
womb, 109:16
word, 118(20):5
Word of God:
everywhere, 103(1):8
In the beginning..., 101(1):1; 103(3):3; 109:6; 118(13):2; 119:1,2; 120:6
light, 118(23):1
reigning as God with God, 109:10
See also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Son of God
word(s), 104:19
initial letters, 103(3):22
words of God (holy scripture):
bread for the soul, 101(1):5
exulting over, 118(31):3
fear of, 118(31):1,2
healing, 106:11
lamp for my feet, 118(23):1
sharp arrows..., 119:5
work, 103(3):24
works: faith and, 118(22):1
law of, 118(10):5
of mercy, 111:4,5; 112:6,8
world: abandonment by God, 118(4):5
carnal servitude, 113(1):6
renouncing, 113(1):3
worship, 113(2):1,5; 118(11):6
wrongdoing: difficulty in right action, 106:5
yearning, 118(4):2; 118(20):1,2
youth (person), 102:9,10; 118(5):2
Zachaeus, 103(3):11
zeal, 118(22):2; 118(30):6
Zechariah, 111:1
Zion, 101(1):14,15,17,18; 103(3):3; 109:10,11
meaning: “Look-out Post”, 101(2):4
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 121-150

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/20 Homilies/Expositions

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-211-1, 6 x 9 in., 536 pp., 2004
Paperback: 978-1-56548-210-4, 6 x 9 in., 536 pp., 2004

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms
(Enarrationes in Psalmos)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume III/20

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:8 150, 2
1:9-10 135, 7
1:22 127, 15
1:28 137, 8
2:24 138, 2; 140, 3; 142, 3; 150, 2
3:19 121, 9
3:20 126, 8
6:3 145, 10
15:6 148, 17
18:27 147, 24
22:18 147, 16, 147, 17, 147, 18; 147, 28
25:23 134, 8; 136, 18

Exodus
3:6 137, 6
3:13 121, 5
3:14 121, 5; 127, 15; 130, 12; 134, 4; 134, 6; 143, 11
3:15 121, 5; 134, 12
7:15 135, 7
33:13 138, 8
33:20, 22-23 138, 8

Deuteronomy
25:4 145, 13
32:35 137, 15

Judges
6:37 137, 9

6:39 137, 9

1 Samuel
15:29 131, 18

Job
1:21 138, 17; 144, 4; 144, 22
2:9-10 133, 2
2:10 144, 18
7:1 122, 7
7:2 LXX 142, 16
28:28 135, 8
30:19 147, 24

Psalms
1:1 123, 7
1:1-2 150, 2
1:4 142, 12
1:6 141, 6; 141, 9
2:1-2 144, 17
2:8 122, 2; 126, 8; 126, 13
3:6(5) 131, 15; 138, 2
3:9(8) 145, 9
4:3(2) 139, 13
5:4-5(3) 142, 14; 143, 11
6:6(5) 138, 11
6:8(7) 149, 1
7:4-5(3-4) 130, 9
7:15(14) 139, 13
9B(10):13 123, 9
10:2(11:1) 124, 5
10:6(11:5) 134, 16; 140, 2
11:9(12:8) 139, 13
12:5(13:4) 139, 12
14(15):5 128, 6

Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

Volume III/20
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1</td>
<td>146, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1-3</td>
<td>124, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):11-13</td>
<td>124, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):16</td>
<td>138, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):20</td>
<td>131, 8; 147, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:4(75:3)</td>
<td>140, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:7-8(75:6-7)</td>
<td>141, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75:5(76:4)</td>
<td>124, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75:6(76:5)</td>
<td>131, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75:12(76:11)</td>
<td>132, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:3(77:2)</td>
<td>137, 18; 142, 15; 143, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77(78):25</td>
<td>143, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:8(7)</td>
<td>127, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:2(81:1)</td>
<td>143, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):1.6</td>
<td>134, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):1.6-7</td>
<td>135, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):2</td>
<td>135, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:19(83:18)</td>
<td>143, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:3(84:2)</td>
<td>126, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:5(84:4)</td>
<td>121, 3; 131, 10; 133, 1; 141, 19; 144, 8; 145, 7; 147, 3; 148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:6(84:5)</td>
<td>126, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:7(84:6)</td>
<td>126, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:11(84:10)</td>
<td>146, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:13(85:12)</td>
<td>142, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86:4(87:3)</td>
<td>142, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86(87):5</td>
<td>142, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87:5(88:4-5)</td>
<td>142, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):1</td>
<td>149, 2; 149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):4-5</td>
<td>135, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100(101):1-2</td>
<td>150, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:27-28</td>
<td>121, 6; 138, 8; 146, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:28(102:27)</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:103:14</td>
<td>142:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:104:24</td>
<td>135, 6; 142, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:104:30</td>
<td>142, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109(110):4</td>
<td>131, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109(110):7</td>
<td>123, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111(112):10</td>
<td>137, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112(113):3</td>
<td>149, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112(113):7-8</td>
<td>140, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113(115):1</td>
<td>142, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113(115):17</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):3-4</td>
<td>136, 5; 137, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):15</td>
<td>140, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):67</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):71</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):2</td>
<td>123, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):3-4</td>
<td>139, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):4</td>
<td>143, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):1</td>
<td>124, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):1-2</td>
<td>124, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):2</td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):4</td>
<td>126, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121(122):2</td>
<td>123, 4; 124, 3; 136, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121(122):3</td>
<td>124, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122(123):4</td>
<td>131, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125(126):4</td>
<td>147, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125(126):6</td>
<td>127, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126(127):2</td>
<td>127, 10; 138, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126(127):4</td>
<td>127, 2; 132, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129(130):3</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132(133):1</td>
<td>133, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132(133):3</td>
<td>133, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):2</td>
<td>126, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):7-10</td>
<td>142, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:6(140:5)</td>
<td>141, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140(141):10</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:6(142:5)</td>
<td>145, 7; 145, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142(143):6</td>
<td>148, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143(144):11-14</td>
<td>136, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143(144):15</td>
<td>136, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:4-5</td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>144, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16, LXX</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>130, 2; 139, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3, LXX</td>
<td>126, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:27-28, LXX</td>
<td>137, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30, LXX</td>
<td>137, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8</td>
<td>140, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:23, LXX</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6, LXX</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>129, 1; 142, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9, LXX</td>
<td>149, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:20, LXX</td>
<td>141, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:2</td>
<td>144, 1; 144, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ecclesiastes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>141, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>122, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>141, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Song of Songs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5, LXX</td>
<td>139, 14; 143, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8, LXX</td>
<td>134, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>121, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wisdom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>138, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>134, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>122, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>122, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>142, 3; 148, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-8</td>
<td>122, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>142, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>147, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>127, 16; 141, 19; 145, 6; 147, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>146, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>Sirach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>125, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>130, 7; 130, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>130, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:36</td>
<td>147, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30, LXX</td>
<td>149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>141, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:30</td>
<td>143, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26</td>
<td>138, 26; 142, 13; 144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:25</td>
<td>138, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:5</td>
<td>132, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>126, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5.6</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>126, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>130, 2; 139, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>150, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>128, 4; 128, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:13, LXX</td>
<td>131, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:6</td>
<td>131, 28; 146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>135, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1</td>
<td>134, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:7</td>
<td>130, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:3</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>124, 4; 131, 16; 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>134, 24; 144, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>142, 13; 144, 11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III/20
### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>137, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7-9</td>
<td>131, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>128, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>150, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>141, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>122, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>122, 12; 125, 6; 131, 24; 139, 17; 144, 22; 145, 17; 147, 20; 148, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>123, 2; 130, 8; 139, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>124, 10; 127, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>145, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>146, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>129, 5; 140, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>128, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>132, 8; 132, 13; 138, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2-4</td>
<td>142, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>136, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5-6</td>
<td>141, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>147, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>129, 3; 129, 4; 140, 18; 142, 6; 147, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>145, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:33</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>139, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>145, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>149, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>128, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>138, 26; 141, 6; 146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11-12</td>
<td>134, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>130, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>129, 12; 142, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16-28</td>
<td>140, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19-20</td>
<td>141, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>141, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>139, 16; 141, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:24</td>
<td>126, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>130, 10; 141, 4; 141, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:29-31</td>
<td>145, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>145, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:32</td>
<td>141, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>141, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>143, 17; 149, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:42</td>
<td>125, 12; 140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11</td>
<td>140, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
<td>134, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17</td>
<td>128, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>147, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>137, 2; 141, 19; 144, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>139, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>125, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48</td>
<td>127, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48-50</td>
<td>127, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24-25,27-28</td>
<td>149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25,26-27</td>
<td>139, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>128, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:30</td>
<td>147, 19; 149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:36</td>
<td>149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:37-38</td>
<td>149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:39</td>
<td>128, 7; 128, 12; 128, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10-11</td>
<td>125, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td>125, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:19-20</td>
<td>125, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16-17</td>
<td>138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>126, 4; 138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>126, 4; 138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24</td>
<td>149, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:23-26</td>
<td>137, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>138, 2; 140, 3; 149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:40</td>
<td>149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11-12</td>
<td>149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>136, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16-21</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>136, 13; 144, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:20</td>
<td>136, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>136, 13; 149, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:23</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:24</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:26</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>121, 9; 126, 5; 144, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>123, 7; 126, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22-23</td>
<td>126, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:27</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>137, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>130, 2; 139, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>125, 15; 140, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>128, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:9</td>
<td>127, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:26</td>
<td>125, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:37</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td>131, 13; 138, 14; 141, 16; 147, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12-13</td>
<td>139, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13</td>
<td>131, 13; 138, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:14</td>
<td>134, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:23-24</td>
<td>147, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:35</td>
<td>122, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:40</td>
<td>132, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:40-41</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:8</td>
<td>147, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:9</td>
<td>147, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:10</td>
<td>147, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:11</td>
<td>147, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25:21.23</td>
<td>139, 15</td>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>121, 9; 146, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:30</td>
<td>139, 15</td>
<td>16:10.12</td>
<td>136, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>141, 4; 141, 10; 144, 15; 145, 20</td>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-35.37.40</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
<td>16:24.28</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.37.40</td>
<td>140, 7; 148, 17</td>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>145, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>138, 7; 141, 10; 144, 12; 148, 11; 149, 15</td>
<td>16:29-31</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41.34</td>
<td>129, 10</td>
<td>16:31</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:43-45</td>
<td>149, 10</td>
<td>17:34</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:34</td>
<td>138, 21</td>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>131, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>144, 19</td>
<td>18:4-5</td>
<td>131, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4</td>
<td>146, 20</td>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40-42</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
<td>18:12</td>
<td>146, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>125, 2; 140, 7; 147, 18; 148, 17</td>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>126, 10</td>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>140, 26</td>
<td>18:27</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:47</td>
<td>127, 7</td>
<td>20:35-36</td>
<td>144, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>134, 3; 134, 4</td>
<td>20:37-38</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:26-27</td>
<td>136, 13</td>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>141, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
<td>22:1-33</td>
<td>138, 21; 138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17</td>
<td>130, 3</td>
<td>22:44</td>
<td>140, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td>140, 2</td>
<td>22:62</td>
<td>138, 21; 140, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>140, 2</td>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>124, 7; 132, 8; 134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>142, 9</td>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>125, 11; 134, 11; 139, 8; 149, 9</td>
<td>24:21</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>147, 24</td>
<td>24:29</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25.21</td>
<td>137, 12</td>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>146, 17</td>
<td>24:44</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37-38</td>
<td>143, 7</td>
<td>24:45-46</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>143, 8</td>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>147, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>134, 4</td>
<td>24:46-47</td>
<td>147, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>125, 5; 140, 8</td>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>147, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:41-47</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:26</td>
<td>141, 9</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>123, 2; 124, 4; 130, 10; 144, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:7</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>130, 9; 148, 7; 149, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>130, 8; 146, 10</td>
<td>1:1.3.14</td>
<td>134, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>130, 8; 146, 10</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>139, 3; 149, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>125, 15</td>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>141, 15; 142, 16; 143, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:35</td>
<td>125, 15</td>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>121, 5; 123, 2; 129, 7; 130, 9; 148, 8; 149, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>125, 5</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>123, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>132, 5; 133, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>150, 3</td>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>131, 14; 131, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
<td>1:47</td>
<td>121, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>123, 9; 131, 12; 138, 9</td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>126, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>138, 5</td>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:20</td>
<td>138, 5</td>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>131, 14; 133, 1; 139, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
<td>3:30</td>
<td>132, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>126, 5; 135, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:41</td>
<td>131, 24; 143, 10</td>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>132, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
<td>5:35</td>
<td>131, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III/20**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51</td>
<td>138, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:56</td>
<td>135, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33</td>
<td>148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>142, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:39</td>
<td>131, 20; 148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>121, 3; 131, 14; 133, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48</td>
<td>136, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48.49</td>
<td>125, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:49</td>
<td>136, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:50</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:39</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>126, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11-12</td>
<td>141, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>138, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>138, 3; 142, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34-35</td>
<td>135, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24-25</td>
<td>140, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>147, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>140, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>138, 8; 140, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:36</td>
<td>140, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>123, 2; 138, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>134, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>127, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>139, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>138, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>140, 3; 142, 8; 147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30.31</td>
<td>137, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:31</td>
<td>142, 8; 147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1.5</td>
<td>145, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>130, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:32</td>
<td>138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:33</td>
<td>123, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>126, 4; 148, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>140, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28</td>
<td>139, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:38</td>
<td>131, 17; 138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:45</td>
<td>132, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>131, 5; 132, 2; 132, 6; 132, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:42</td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:49</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:51</td>
<td>132, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:60</td>
<td>132, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>122, 1; 123, 1; 138, 2; 140, 3; 140, 7; 141, 11; 142, 3; 147, 26; 148, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>139, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>124, 4; 131, 16; 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>133, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>137, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>140, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>136, 5; 138, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>138, 20; 139, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>133, 1; 143, 2; 147, 14; 150, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>146, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>138, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>133, 1; 143, 2; 147, 14; 150, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>126, 7; 130, 4; 131, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>125, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>140, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>134, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>140, 15; 141, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-24</td>
<td>147, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>139, 11; 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>134, 12; 140, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>140, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>134, 12; 147, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>143, 6; 145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>127, 16; 143, 6; 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22-20</td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>134, 18; 140, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-24</td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-25</td>
<td>145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>125, 2; 127, 5; 129, 10; 144, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>142, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>146, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>124, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>147, 24; 147, 26; 150, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>143, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>144, 2; 145, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>134, 8; 136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>126, 8; 136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>131, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>142, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>124, 6; 142, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>139, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume III/20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>140, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2:1</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17-18</td>
<td>134, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>147, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25-26</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:32</td>
<td>138, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>147, 7; 147, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>127, 5; 127, 10; 131, 16; 145, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>140, 2; 143, 2; 143, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume III/20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>124, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>126, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-28</td>
<td>149, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>140, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>130, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>127, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>127, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>130, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>124, 6; 132, 4; 134, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>145, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>134, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>121, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>121, 4; 122, 4; 126, 3; 130, 1; 137, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>147, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-4</td>
<td>141, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>148, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>147, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>145, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>121, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>121, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>121, 10; 149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29-32</td>
<td>147, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:31-32</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>147, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>135, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5-6</td>
<td>134, 9; 135, 3; 135, 9; 145, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>134, 16; 146, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>145, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9-10</td>
<td>126, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>121, 9; 146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:26-27</td>
<td>140, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>136, 21; 140, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>134, 21; 143, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>147, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>135, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:31</td>
<td>146, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:32</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>121, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>147, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-10</td>
<td>135, 8; 146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-11</td>
<td>143, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>142, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:21-17</td>
<td>130, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>127, 3; 138, 2; 140, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31-3:1</td>
<td>146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1:3</td>
<td>121, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2-3</td>
<td>146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>130, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>130, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>127, 16; 147, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>129, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26-54-55</td>
<td>148, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>124, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>128, 4; 128, 8; 145, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33</td>
<td>145, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33-34</td>
<td>128, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:41-42</td>
<td>150, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:46</td>
<td>136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:47-49</td>
<td>136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50</td>
<td>136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:51</td>
<td>126, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>140, 16; 145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>123, 4; 125, 14; 127, 16; 143, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume III/20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>140, 13; 149, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>134, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>139, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>141, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>131, 1; 134, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>148, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6.7</td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>150, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>127, 5; 138, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>142, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>125, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>141, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>147, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>126, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Volume III/20

### Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

| Bible References | Volume III/20
|------------------|---------------------
<p>| 12               | 144, 19             |
| 12:7             | 130, 7              |
| 12:7-9           | 130, 7              |
| 12:8-9           | 146, 1              |
| 13:4             | 150, 4              |
| 12:7             | 124, 7              |
| 12:8-9           | 136, 8; 139, 4; 141, 14; 142, 16; 143, 4; 143, 18 |
| Galatians        |                     |
| 1:10             | 121, 12             |
| 1:15-16          | 138, 18             |
| 1:22-24          | 141, 7              |
| 2:20             | 142, 3, 149, 13     |
| 3:6              | 148, 17             |
| 3:10             | 142, 3, 147, 28     |
| 3:21             | 129, 3              |
| 3:21-22          | 143, 2              |
| 3:27             | 131, 27; 142, 3     |
| 3:29             | 134, 7; 142, 3      |
| 4:7              | 122, 5              |
| 4:10-11          | 126, 2              |
| 4:19             | 126, 8; 147, 14     |
| 4:27             | 134, 26             |
| 5:17             | 134, 12; 140, 16; 143, 5; 143, 6; 147, 20 |
| 5:18             | 143, 6              |
| 5:19-21          | 143, 6              |
| 6:1              | 129, 4              |
| 6:2              | 129, 4; 132, 9      |
| 6:4              | 140, 13; 147, 11    |
| 6:9-10           | 125, 11             |
| 6:14             | 121, 12; 149, 8     |
| Ephesians        |                     |
| 2:1-3            | 136, 8              |
| 2:2              | 141, 14; 148, 9     |
| 2:8              | 142, 10; 144, 10    |
| 2:8-10           | 132, 18             |
| 2:9              | 142, 10; 144, 10    |
| 2:10             | 142, 10; 144, 10    |
| 2:14             | 124, 10; 126, 2     |
| 3:17             | 122, 4              |
| 3:20             | 147, 22             |
| 4:2-3            | 143. 2              |
| 4:27             | 141, 3              |
| 5:8              | 136, 8; 139, 4; 139, 14; 139, 18; 141, 14; 142, 16; 143, 4 |
| 5:14             | 131, 8              |
| 5:27             | 132, 9; 147, 23     |
| 5:29             | 140, 16             |
| 5:30             | 127, 3              |
| 5:31-32          | 138, 2              |
| 5:32             | 142, 3              |
| 6:5              | 124, 7              |
| Philippians      |                     |
| 1:1              | 121, 13             |
| 1:23             | 138, 18             |
| 1:23-24          | 145, 17             |
| 1:24             | 141, 18             |
| 2:6              | 121, 5; 126, 5; 130, 9; 138, 3 |
| 2:7              | 138, 3              |
| 2:7-9            | 126, 5              |
| 2:12             | 142, 10             |
| 2:13             | 142, 10             |
| 2:15-16          | 146, 9              |
| 3:5              | 147, 25             |
| 3:6              | 147, 25             |
| 3:9              | 124, 6; 142, 5      |
| 3:10             | 150, 4              |
| 3:12             | 142, 6              |
| 3:13-14          | 149, 8              |
| 3:13             | 130, 14             |
| 3:13-14          | 130, 14             |
| 3:15             | 130, 14             |
| 3:19             | 145, 12             |
| 3:20             | 141, 15; 142, 7     |
| 4:7              | 131, 10             |
| Colossians       |                     |
| 1:24             | 142, 3              |
| 2:3              | 135, 8              |
| 3:1-3            | 122, 1; 142, 7      |
| 3:3              | 121, 12; 122, 8; 139, 17; 141, 15; 141, 17 |
| 3:3-4            | 148, 16             |
| 3:4              | 122, 9              |
| 4:2-4            | 140, 1              |
| 1 Thessalonians  |                     |
| 4:16             | 143, 14             |
| 4:16-17          | 143, 9              |
| 5:6-7            | 131, 8              |
| 2 Thessalonians  |                     |
| 3:2              | 139, 1              |
| 1 Timothy        |                     |
| 1:5              | 140, 2              |
| 1:13             | 147, 26             |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Books of the Bible</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>147, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>125, 6; 141, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>131, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>131, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>145, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-10</td>
<td>136, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>132, 4; 136, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>131, 26; 132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18-19</td>
<td>136, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>123, 5; 126, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>127, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>132, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>125, 6; 141, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>130, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>122, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>139, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>143, 7; 143, 8; 147, 12; 147, 13; 147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>144, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>146, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>121, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>127, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22-23</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>130, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>142, 14; 143, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>148, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>138, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>122, 8; 139, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>129, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>138, 26; 141, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>149, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>127, 7; 149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6</td>
<td>149, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:15</td>
<td>147, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III/20**
Volume III/20

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.
Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semicolon.
Biblical texts/words are in italics.

Aaron, 132:7
Abel, 128:2; 142:3
Abraham, 121:5; 128:2; 131:13; 134:6,7,25; 137:6; 139:3; 142:3; 143:18; 147:16,17,28; 148:17
Absalom, 142:2
actions, See human acts.
Adam and Eve, 122:6; 125:15; 126:7; 133:2; 132:10; 137:13; 142:6,16
Christ and his Church, 127:11
Christ foreshadowed by Adam, 138:2
Church prefigured by Eve, 126:8; 138:2
Eve: curse God, and die, 133:2
adoption, 136:1; 137:13
advice as gift, 125:13
affections, 121:11; 123:1; 138:18; 134:18,19; 145:15
affluence, See wealth.
agonisticì, 132:6
Alleluia, 148:2; 149:2
almsgiving, 125:12; 136:13; 146:17; 147:13
Amorites, 134:20; 135:9
amphitheatre, 147:21
angels, 122:4; 126:3; 128:12,13; 130:9; 134:5,8; 135:3; 137:3,4; 141:14; 146:2; 148:10
anguish: I have found anguish..., 137:12
animals, 144:13; 145:13; 148:3
anthropomorphism, 130:12
Antichrist, 128:13
apocrypha, 130:7
apostasy: persecutions and, 140:23
apostles, 121:9; 122:4; 126:2,9,10,11,12; 132:2; 138:20; 142:6; 143:18; 144:2
born from the prophets, 126:11; 127:2
bridegroom’s children, 142:2
Church and, 127:12
friends become exceedingly honorable, 138:23
heavens, 143:12
powers; miracles, 130:5
Aristotle, 140:19
Arius, 124:5; 149:4
ark, 127:13; 128:2; 130:1; 131:15; 147:4
arrows, 126:9,13; 127:2; 139:14
ashes, 147:24
ass: symbol of God’s people, 126:11
astrology, 128:9; 140:9
authority, 124:7
avarice, 128:4,5; 136:9; 143:5
baby(-ies), 130:9,13
Babylon, 121:4; 125:3; 136:1-14,20,21,22; 138:18; 147:5,7,26; 148:4; 149:13
baptism, 131:14,27,28; 134:21; 135:8,9; 138:8; 142:3; 145:9,16
barren woman, 127:2
Bashan, 134:20
Bathsheba, 126:2
beard, 132:7,8,9,12
beasts, 134:18
beatific vision, 147:5,24
beatitude, 135:1; 139:2; 150:8
beauty, 138:29; 144:13,15; 148:15
bed, 132:4
beggars, 125:12; 140:12
being: absolute, 121:6
Being-Itself, 121:5; 134:4
bellow, 150:7
Bible: all books as one book, 150:2
double-edged sword, 143:17
letters from home, 149:5
obscure passages in, 146:12,13
two testaments (number 15), 150:1
See also psalms; words of God
birds, 127:15
bishops, 126:3; 128:4
blessing, 128:13; 132:1,2; 133:3
brothers who live in unity, 132:13

Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150
Come now ..., 133:1
blindness, 145:17
body and soul, 141:19; 145:3,4,5
See also human body; soul
bone: not hidden from you [God], 138:20,21
strength, 138:20
bread: nourishment from milk, 130:9,11
bread of sorrow, 127:10
breadcrums, 147:25
bride and bridegroom, 122:5; 147:18
brood of vipers, 131:13
brothers: dwell together in unity, 132:1,5,7,10; 133:3
like oil flowing down upon the beard, 132:7,9
burden: law to bear one another's burdens, 129:4,5; 132:9
Caecilian, 149:4
Cain, 142:3
calling, 150:3
canaan, 134:20
captivity, 125:10; 147:5; 148:4
carnally-minded, 136:18
cartwheel, 132:12
Catholic Church, 130:9; 140:18; 145:16; 149:3
cattle, 146:18
cave, 141:17
centurion, faith of, 134:7
chart, 121:8
change, 121:6, 131:18
charity, 121:10,12,13; 125:12; 127:13; 128:13; 131:13,26; 132:12; 138:14; 140:2; 141:18; 142:5; 143:7; 147:13,14,23; 149:2,11
dwelling God, 133:1
dwell together in unity, 132:1,2
fullness of the law, 140:2; 141:7; 143:2,16
if I have no love, ..., 146:10
law: bear one another's burdens, 129:4; 132:9
one with Christ, 140:3
unconquered, 132:8
See also love
chastity, 147:4
children, 127:15; 131:19
children's children, 127:16
increase and multiply, 137:8
inheritance of the Lord, 126:9
of God, 135:8, 139:18; 147:14,23; 150:1
choir, 149:7; 150:7
chrism, 149:6
Christian life, 121:12
contempt, 122:8
daily closer to Christ, 138:21
ever Church: common ownership, 131:5
focus on gifts entrusted to you, 130:13
hear Christ speaking in our voices, 140:3
I live my own life no longer..., 142:3
lead me in the eternal way, 138:30
long for Christ's friendship, 131:6
nailed to cross with Christ, 140:5
pilgrimage, 122:2
rise before the light, 126:4,5
sadness and, 138:20
show me the way..., 142:15
sides of your house, 127:11
straining to what lies ahead, 130:14
temptation; trial, 122:7
union with the Word, 130:10
worldly happiness and, 126:7
See also Church; spiritual life
Christians, 134:18; 136:17; 149:6
Christ's mother, 127:12
confession of Christ's name, 140:26
Jews as elders, 136:18
Church, 121:5; 122:4,5; 123:5; 125:9; 131:15,21; 132:12; 136:20; 137:1; 146:19; 147:16,18;20; 149:3,4; 150:2
body joined to Christ the head, 139:2
body, temple, house, city, 131:3
born from side of Christ, 126:7
both below and on high, 137:4
bride and bridegroom, 147:18
choice: member or enemy, 139:2
Christ builds his own house, 126:2
Christ prays when members pray, 140:7
Christ the head of, 132:7
Christ's apparel, 147:23
Christ's body is holy, 138:2
Christ's brothers, sisters, mother, 127:12
commingling of the wicked and the good, 128:8
Eve as type of, 126:8
God's house, 131:10,13
heart of the, 140:7
Jesus, head of his body, 142:3
labor pains for her children, 126:8
members as feminine, 147:10
members of his body, 127:3
mixture of good and bad members, 138:29,31
mother of heretics, 130:11
numbers beyond reckoning, 128:2
persons from O.T. and, 128:2
rulers, 132:4
sinners in the midst of, 138:26
symbol: priestly garments, 132:9
tongues of every nation, 147:19
two in one flesh, 138:2
two types in, 134:16
two will be in the field, 132:4
unity, 121:9,13; 141:7
unity: tearing apart bond of, 138:26,27
very often have they attacked me, 128:2,3,6,7
whole personified, 134:7
widowed state, 131:23; 145:18
wife and children as identical, 127:12
wife of Christ, 127:11
Zion, 128:10
Church year, 148:1
Circumcellions (Circellions), 132:3,6
city, 121:4,12; 126:13; 138:26
clouds, 134:13,17; 146:15
colds, burning, 139:14,15
cold, 125:10; 147:22,26
comfort, 125:4
commandments, 146:16
God's paths, 139:9; 141:6,7
love in keeping, 139:18
reward for keeping, 131:19
ten-stringed psaltery
common life, 131:5
Communion of saints, 126:3; 147:10
compassion, 121:11; 122:1
confession, 121:8; 138:26; 140:9; 142:12;
146:14
door to restrain my lips, 140:6
fills earth and heaven, 148:15
God's mercy and truth, 135:4
mercy and, 135:4
not made by dead person, 142:13
sins or praise, 135:1; 137:2; 139:9; 141:19;
144:13
works of the Lord, 144:13
conscience, 125:8; 129:2; 140:13,14; 147:11,12;
149:11
counsel, 128:4,10; 139:1
contempt, 122:8,10; 139:1
continence, 149:15
court of life, 122:9; 133:2
confession, 121:8; 138:26; 140:9; 142:12;
146:14
door to restrain my lips, 140:6
fills earth and heaven, 148:15
God's mercy and truth, 135:4
mercy and, 135:4
not made by dead person, 142:13
sins or praise, 135:1; 137:2; 139:9; 141:19;
144:13
works of the Lord, 144:13
conscience, 125:8; 129:2; 140:13,14; 147:11,12;
149:11
counsel, 128:4,10; 139:1
contempt, 122:8,10; 139:1
continence, 149:15
conversion of life, 125:2,139:10,14; 144:11
from evil to good, 124:10
converts, 134:22,23; 149:13,14
cords; symbol of sin, 130:2; 139:9
rectification, 140:13,14,17; 149:13
coaches, 149:11
courage, 137:12; 138:21
covenants, 131:20
old and new, 149:1,12
coveting, 147:10
craftsmen, 149:13
creation, 134:13,14,15; 140:10; 142:10; 144:6,7,8;
145:12,14; 148:7,8; 149:6,16; 150:2
confession; goodness of God, 135:4
do not despise works of your hands, 137:18
everything is good, 125:6
everything made through him, 139:3
exceedingly good, 134:3
God alone does wonderful deeds, 135:4,5
groaning in travail, 125:2
he made whatever he wanted, 134:10
heavens made by God's intelligence, 135:6,8
intricate; supremely ordered, 144:13
love God's work; hate sinful work of
men, 139:2
praising God, 128:5
works of the Lord, 144:13
creatures, 125:5; 148:9,13
minute, 148:10
real existence, 134:4
sing hymns of praise, 144:13
Crispina, Saint, 137:3,14,17
crucifixion, 149:8
See also under Jesus Christ.
curia, 121:7
curse, 132:13; 133:2
cymbals, 150:8
dance: refusing to, 128:1
Daniel, 132:5
darkness, 136:8; 138:15,16,17,18; 139:4;
140:10,11; 141:14; 142:8,16; 143:4
David, King, 128:13; 131:2-4,18,19,27;
139:3; 142:16; 143:1,12; 144:2
daylight, 133:2
death, 138:26
miracle: raising the dead, 130:6
dead, 123:4,5,13; 125:4,14; 129:1,8; 141:18;
143:9; 145:7; 148:4,11
abolished in Christ, 130:11
fallen asleep, 147:11
fear of, 138:21; 140:20,21
last enemy, 127:16
power of love, 121:12
soul cannot be killed, 130:10
See also immortality; resurrection of the
body; soul
debt: You will repay my debt, Lord, 137:16
debt-collectors, 146:17
deer: crossing a strait, 129:4
delight, 138:14; 140:15; 146:3
demons, 130:1; 135:3
Deo gratias, 132:6
depths, 129:1; 148:9
desire, 121:1; 122:1,4,12; 134:12; 137:9;
143:6; 146:1; 147:10
betrayed by, 139:12
devil's door, 141:4
deathly, 141:17
despair, 144:11,24
detachment, 138:18
devil, 121:8; 125:2; 126:2; 127:16; 128:13;
130:7; 131:3,14; 132:6; 133:1; 134:20;
135:9; 136:7,8,9,10; 139:4,7,8,11,12;
140:20; 141:3,4,14,15; 142:7,16;
143:1,2,4,5; 144:19; 148:2,9; 149:6,10;
150:3
dew of Hermon, 132:11

Volume III/20

Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

disappointment: God’s special love, 127:1
disasters, 136:7
disciples, 149:8
  multitude of, 138:24
terrified during Christ’s passion, 138:22
discipline, 124:7; 140:16; 148:11
disgrace, 122:9,10
divinization, 130:10
divorce, 149:15
Donatists, 131:14; 145:16; 147:18
Donatus, 124:5; 132:6; 149:4
dove, 127:13; 130:5; 138:15
dragons, 148:9
draught-horses, 132:12
drum, 149:8; 150:7
dust, 142:12
duty: vicarious fulfillment of, 121:10
dwelling, 122:4
ear, 130:6
early Church, 131:5
  unity, 132:2,12
earth, 144:13; 147:22; 148:9
  established upon the waters, 135:7
  waterless, 142:11
Easter: time before and after, 148:1
eating, 125:7; 146:2
Edom, 136:18,19
Egypt, 134:14,18,19; 135:8
Egyptians, 123:6; 128:2
elect, 140:8,9,10,12,24
Elijah, 129:9
Elisha, 129:9
embarrassment, 141:9
Emmaus, 147:17
emotions, 135:3
emperor, 148:2
emptiness, 143:11
encouragement, 121:2
end of the world, 142:14; 147:3,4
endurance, 138:20; 139:14
enemies (ies), 133:1,13; 137:14; 139:7,10;
  141:14; 142:4,16; 143:5
  body of Christ (Church), 139:2
charity not conquered by, 132:8
  God’s hand is worse than anger of, 137:13
  love them; hate their sins, 138:27,28
Enoch, 128:2
envy, 124:2; 139:8
Ephrathah, 131:11
episcopus, 126:3
Esaü, 136:18
escape, 123:3,4,8
eternal life, 121:11; 122:8; 123:4; 127:7,15;
  129:6; 130:1,15; 134:6; 136:9,15; 138:30;
  143:18; 149:1; 150:3
desire for Jerusalem, 136:22
  present life given precedence, 140:24
  seeing God face to face, 130:14
  sell all you possess…, 136:13
See also heaven
eternal punishment, 138:7; 141:4
eternity, 121:6; 137:16; 143:18; 144:2;
  145:20; 148:8; 149:12
Eucharist: Christ as nourishment, 130:11
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
  example, harmful, 139:4
Exodus, 135:9
eye, 130:6,8
  eye of a needle, 132:4
faith, 122:4; 124:2,4; 136:10; 139:1;
  144:10; 145:19; 146:6; 149:4,11
  asleep, 147:3
  believing in Jesus means loving, 130:1
  guarded; growth, 138:18
  health in Christ’s body, 130:8
  hearts cleansed by, 123:2
  milky diet of, 130:11
  riches for a believer, 143:18
  salvation; grace, 137:18
false accusation, 128:4; 138:26
fathers, 127:12
fear, 129:3; 135:3; 141:4; 147:4
  charity casts out fear, 127:7; 149:15
  devil’s door, 141:4
  motivated by, 127:7
  second coming of Christ, 147:1
fear of God, 127:1,8-9,15; 138:19; 144:23;
  146:20; 150:1
feet, 140:8
Felix (martyr), 127:6
fidelity: may I be struck dumb…, 136:17
fingers, 143:3,6,9
fire, 128:8; 148:10,11,12
focus, 146:17
fish (153 caught), 150:1
fishing, 138:27
fisculus, 146:17
fleas, 148:10
flesh: versus spirit, See under law
food, 145:17
fool, 122:5,8; 129:5
forbearance, 144:11
forgiveness, 143:7; 147:13
  forgiveness of sin, 129:3,6,12; 136:1;
  144:24; 147:18
  woman drying Christ’s feet, 140:8
fortune, illusory, 129:1
foundation, 121:4
fraud, 143:5
free will, 134:11
fruit of the womb, 126:8

Volume III/20
fruit: eat the labors of, 127:4,10
fullers, 132:9
future: God and, 125:10
future life, 147:4,148:1
See also heaven; hell; immortality
garment, 147:23
gate: Christ as, 126:13
baric streams, 147:9,20
generation, 144:6
generosity, 125:12
gentiles, 126:11; 134:8,22,24; 145:18
Gethseman, 148:10
Gideon, 137:9
gifts, 130:8; 144:22; 146:10
giving: motivation, 125:11-12
gladiator, 147:3; 149:10
glorification, 150:3
glory, 131:28; 138:20; 142:18; 146:19;
149:10,11
 gnat, 148:10
God: abiding in himself, 122:4
abundance of your sweetness, 144:9,10
all-powerful, 134:12
alone does wonderful deeds, 135:4,5
being of, 121:5,6,12
blamed; praised, 128:5
caring, 145:13,14
change and, 131:18
cursed by one’s life, 133:2
death of, 148:8
disciplinary scourge of, 138:15
early deeds as “face” of, 138:8
earthly kin, 127:12
fleeing from, 138:12,13
forbearing toward sinners, 144:11
future acts and, 125:10
glory, 137:6,10
God of gods, 135:2,9
goodness, 134:3,4,5; 144:3,5,6,8
greatness of, 130:4
humans find riches in, 124:2
I AM WHO AM, 121:5,12; 127:15; 130:12;
134:4,6,143:11
joy: prospect of seeing God, 130:8
justice, 144:21
keeps faith for ever, 145:15
knowledge of, 141:6
knowledge too wonderful for me, 138:9
lovable and terrible, 144:8
love shown in Christ’s death, 146:4
Manichee teaching, 140:10
master and mistress, 122:5
Moses and, 138:8
my mercy, 143:7
my rest for ever and ever, 131:22
my support and deliverer, 143:9
name of, 121:5
omnipresence, 138:10-13; 142:16
peace, 124:10
personal, 139:10
possession, 145:11
power of, 144:8; 146:11
promises, 148:8
repenting, 131:18
seeing Him Who Is, 121:8
speaks in his own substance, 138:8
speaks through his scriptures, 127:9
submission to, 143:6
taunt, where is your God, 127:10; 130:12
understanding cannot be reckoned,
146:11,13
wonderful and terrible, 138:19
works of, 144:7,9; 147:2
you have stretched out your hand…,
137:13
See also creation; Holy Spirit; Jesus
Christ; Trinity
godless, 142:5; 145:10
godliness, 143:18
gods, 134:9; 135:2; 144:17; 145:12
gold, 123:9,10; 145:4
Goliath, 143:1,2
good and evil, 121:14; 134:16; 142:4,10;
145:19; 148:2
conversion of life, 124:10
good cannot separate from the wicked,
138:26,27,31
members of the Church, 128:8
rejoicing over evil, 139:12
roots of all evils, 139:1
unrighteous persons, 139:4
good example, 123:6
good people: luminaries in this world, 146:9
good Samaritan, 136:7
good works, 123:13; 131:20; 132:4;
142:10,15; 143:9,11; 146:2; 147:6
children’s children as, 127:16
credit God for, 137:18
rich in, 136:13
grace, 130:14; 132:10; 133:2; 140:15;
142:5,10,18; 143:2,3; 144:10; 146:6;
147:26; 150:1
new song, 143:16
pride in gifts from God, 130:7
saved, through faith, 137:18
glass, 128:11; 12; 146:16
greed, 123:10; 131:26; 136:9; 147:12
groaning, 131:10
guardian: bishop as, 126:3
guile, 121:8; 123:6; 138:6
gyration, 139:13
Haggai, 147:5; 148:4; 149:12
hail, 148:10,11,12
handicapped, 125:12
hands, 143:3,6,9
good works, 142:15
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

left and right, 136:15,16,17; 137:14; 143:18
power, 149:12
happiness, 122:2,8; 126:7; 127:9; 136:5,16,22;
137:14; 143:18; 147:4
harmony (music), 150:7
harps, 136:6,10
harvests, 149:3
harvesters: angels, 128:12,13
hate, 139:2; 140:14
men of blood
perfect hatred
healing, 144:22; 146:7,8
health, 122:3; 126:6
coordination of all members, 130:6
seeking, in body of Christ, 130:8
hearers (parable of the seed), 128:1
heart, 123:9; 128:1; 129:2; 129:4; 130:2; 131:4;
132:6; 134:4,16; 138:18; 139:15; 142:9; 143:18;
145:1; 148:17; 149:11; 150:8
ascent in, 122:3; 126:6
bruised, 146:5,6,7,8
crocked; perverted, 146:7
cursing in, 132:13
inner mouth, 125:5,7,8
lift up your hearts, 130:13; 141:15
purified by faith, 130:8
spiritual holocaust, 137:2
straightforward hearts, 124:2,9,10
striking (bruising) our breasts, 146:7
test me, O God, 130:4
unrighteous thoughts, 139:5
virgin at heart, 147:10
wrung with pain
heat, 147:22
heaven, 121:3,4; 122:1,3,4,6; 124:3; 130:8;
132:13; 136:9; 141:4; 142:7,12; 147:27;
149:5
praising/loving God, 147:3
see, love, and praise God, 147:8
heavens, 135:5; 143:5,9,10:50,2
apostles are, 143:12
just persons, 121:9
saints, 135:3
hell, 123:12; 127:3,15
heresies, 134:5,5; 130:9,10; 138:26; 141:9; 145:16
Hermón, Mount, 132:11
hills, 124:10,10; 126:6
holiness, 130:13; 131:28; 144:10
holocaust, 130:4; 137:2
holy of holies, 132:7
Holy Spirit, 125:10; 126:2; 127:8; 130:5;
132:7,8; 135:3; 139:14; 141:5; 142:18;
143:7; 144:1; 146:6
gifts of, 143:3
god, 143:6
new creation, 142:12
seven-fold action, 150:1
home, 141:17
honesty, 123:9
honor, 123:9
hope, 122:1; 123:2,3,10; 124:4,6; 125:2,4;
126:7; 127:5,10; 129:2,3,6,8,9,10,11,
12; 130:15; 131:16,19,24; 138:12,20;
139:14; 141:12; 142:14; 146:11,19,23;
145:2,3,7,9; 146:20; 147:3; 148:1;
149:11
horn: symbol of exaltation, 131:27
horse, 145:4; 146:19
hospitality, 140:8
house, 141:15
house of the Lord, 121:3,14; 126:3
human actions: by their fruits,..., 149:2
God's eyes are upon the righteous,
137:11
human beings
benefits conferred by Christ, 136:9
bodies as servants, 145:5
both foolish and wise, 147:11
do not despise works of your hands,
137:18
God's care for, 148:8
goodness of humankind, 134:4
value of, 143:10
human body, 121:6; 147:23
animal; spiritual, 136:18
corruption, 141:18
flesh is from earth, 146:13
See also immortality: resurrection of the
body; soul
human condition, 122:6,11,12; 125:3; 129:1;
138:16; 140:15; 146:8; 148:4
emptiness, 143:11
fashioned by God in the womb, 138:7
humiliation, 134:20; 138:4; 141:13; 146:14;
147:27
humility, 121:8; 123:13; 126:4,5; 130:7;
137:10
bruised hearts, 146:5
false, re learning, 130:12,14
God looks on the lowly, 137:11
pursuit of wisdom, 130:12
rise after sitting down, 127:10; 138:4
sacrifice: heart, 130:4
ture perfection, 130:14
truly poor, 131:24
hunger: Blessed are those who hunger..., 131:24; 145:17
husband and wife, 143:6; 149:15
chaste fear, 127:8
hymn, 148:17
hypostatic union, 130:10
I AM WHO AM, 121:5; 127:15; 130:12;
134:4,6; 143:11
ice, 147:2,25,26; 148:10,11,12
idipsum, 121:5

Volume III/20
idolatry, 123:5
idols, 134:23,24; 135:3
image of God, 129:1; 147:7
immortality, 122:1; 127:16; 140:16; 146:6; 148:8
imperfection: beheld by God, 138:21,23
Incarnation: Word made flesh, 130:9
incorruptibility, 141:18; 147:20
increase: kinds and modes, 137:8
iniquity, 124:10; 147:8
increasing mightily, 138:14
love of, 140:2
night, 131:8
See also good and evil; sin
injury, 145:15,16
innocence, 125:8; 139:4
insult, 122:9,10
intelligence, 148:3
intention, 125:5,7
interior life: affection of heart, 141:2
enter within, 139:15
irreligion, 136:6,15
Israel, 126:3; 128:2,3; 129:12; 134:7,22,25; 145:11; 146:4; 147:28; 148:17; 149:4,6
meaning of the word, 124:10
name, 121:8
testimony to, 121:8
tribes of, 121:7,8
Jacob, 126:8; 134:6,7,8,9,22; 136:18; 137:6; 143:18; 145:11; 146:4; 147:27,28
Jeremiah, 147:5
Jerusalem, 121:2,3,4,9,11; 122:4; 124:3; 125:1,3,9; 126:3; 127:3,15; 134:26; 136:1,2,7,12,15,19,20,21; 138:18,29; 142:3; 146:4,8,9,11; 147:6,7,8,9,15,18,20,22,26,28; 148:4; 149:5
built like a city, 124:4
goal of ascent, 121:7
meaning: vision of peace, 124:10; 127:16
restoration in prophecy, 147:5
Jesus Christ, 125:4,5,6; 126:3,11; 129:1,2,3; 130:2,7; 132:9; 134:4; 135:9; 136:22; 137:9; 139:2,7; 141:4; 143:1,12; 144:5; 145:9; 146:17; 147:3,13; 148:7,16; 149:10,14
Abraham’s seed, 148:17
anointed, 131:28; 149:6
beautiful, 127:8
believing in, means loving, 130:1
bread for us to eat, 138:1
bride and bridegroom, 122:5
called to mind, 138:23,24; 139:17; 143:22; 148:8
David and, 143:2; 144:2
died as man; rose as God, 130:10
disciples: he is only a man, 138:22
divinity, 138:2,3
divinity invisible to human eyes, 138:8
end of the law, 139:3
equal to the Father, 130:5
eternal way, 138:30
Father, forgive them…, 124:7; 132:8
feet (place of worship), 131:13,14
figures (Solomon’s temple), 126:2
firmament of his strength, 150:4
form of God, 121:5
foundation stone, 121:4
gate, 126:13
get behind me, Satan, 126:4; 138:22
God is Father and Lord, 138:3
godly, 130:9
goodness, 134:5
humanity, 134:5; 139:18
I confess to you, Father…, 137:2; 141:19; 144:13
I was hungry, and you fed me, 140:7
I will that where I am…, 126:4
left hand; right hand, 143:18,19
light, 132:11
living bread come down from heaven, 131:24
master and slave, 124:7
mediator, 134:5
My grace is sufficient for you, 130:7
not peace but a sword, 143:17
one with the Father, 142:3
passion, 126:4; 129:7; 138:4; 146:4; 147:16; 148:8; 150:3
agony in the garden, 140:4
disciples terrified by, 138:22
doing my Father’s will, 142:8
I am all alone…, 140:25,26
let this cup pass from me, 144:19
my soul is sorrowful…, 142:9
peace, 124:10
post-resurrection appearances, 138:8,25; 147:17
power to lay down my life, 138:21
prays in the Church, 140:7
prefigured by David, 142:2
priest and victim, 130:4; 132:7; 149:6
prophesied about (psalm 1), 150:2
psalms: his words in all, 131:5
resurrection, 129:6,7,9; 131:15; 138:4,21,23,25; 140:25; 147:17,18; 148:1; 150:4
rock, 140:19
Samaritan, 125:15
sanctifying power, 131:28
Saul, why are you persecuting me? 122:1; 130:6; 138:2; 140:3; 141:11; 142:3; 148:17
second coming, 143:14; 147:1,3
sinless, 137:16; 140:3
Son of God; son of man, 138:22
spiritual generation of, 139:3
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

suffering still, in the Church, 142:3
transfiguration, 147:23
victim, 149:6
washing of his feet, 125:5
way, truth, and life, 123:2; 125:4; 141:9
Who is my mother, ...? 127:12
wisdom’s lamp, 138:14
Without me you can do nothing, 130:6
woman drying his feet, 140:8
world did not know him, 141:15
See also Christian life; Church; Mystical Body of Christ; Son of Man; Word of God

Jews, 134:7,22; 138:18; 148:17
blinded for their pride, 138:8
book-bearers for Christians, 136:18

remnant saved, 131:17
See also Israel

Job, 132:5; 133:2; 138:17; 144:4,18,19
John, Apostle, Saint, 144:9
John the Baptist, 131:14,27; 139:15; 140:26

just, 145:15
mysteries; significance, 143:2

lawgiver, 129:3

Lazarus, 126:7; 129:9
lead, 145:4
learning; false humility, 130:12
lies; lying; root of every bad action, 139:13
life, 143:11
anguish, 137:12
confusion, 125:3
hours, days, years, 121:6
shouting, 148:2
sojourner on earth, 148:11
sought by persecutors or by lovers, 141:11
stages, 127:15
temporal and eternal, 136:15
light, 124:4,5; 126:4,7; 138:16,17; 139:4,14;
141:11,14; 149:4,11,14
lightning, 134:43; 143:13
listening, 139:15
longing, 123:2; 126:1,12; 136:2,22; 143:19;
145:1,18; 147:4,17; 148:1

Lord’s Prayer
Forgive us our debts [trespasses]... , 129:3,4,5,12; 140:18,19; 142:6;
143:7
Thy kingdom come, 147:1
Lot, 128:2
love, 123:2; 124:6; 134:11; 136:2; 137:2;
141:15; 144:1; 145:5,20; 147:3,15;
148:15; 149:5
ascending / descending, 122:1
believing in Jesus means loving, 130:1
city’s strength, 121:12
commandments and, 139:18
commending God to you, 149:4
death suggests power of, 121:12
disappointments and, 127:1
experience of anguish, 137:12
fear and, 149:15
God is charity, 149:4
holy / impure, 121:1
interior life, 139:15
powerful; duty, 121:10
suffering for, 141:7
two commandments, 121:1; 125:15;
140:2
See also charity
lust, 134:12
lyre, 146:14; 150:6

Maccabees, 137:14; 148:11
maid: God our mistress, 122:5
Manichees, 123:14; 140:10,12; 146:13
manna, 130:9

Volume III/20
marriage, 127:1; 138:2
martyrs, 123:3, 7, 13; 125:2; 127:2, 5, 16; 129:11; 132:9; 134:24; 137:14, 17; 139:12, 16; 140:10, 20, 26
precious in sight of the Lord, 140:21
prophets as, 140:26
rich crop (early martyrs), 140:21
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 131:15; 148:17
Mary, Virgin, 131:15; 148:17
Mary, Virgin of Nazareth, 130:2, 8
Mary, Virgin of Sion, 131:15
Mary, Virgin of Zion, 131:15
Massa Candida, 144:17
master: slave and, 124:7, 8
Maximianus, 124:5
meek, 146:12
melt, 147:26
mercy, 125:14; 129:12; 134:21; 137:5, 16, 17; 139:18; 140:13; 143:7; 144:4, 11, 12; 147:12; 150:3
corporal / spiritual works of, 121:9, 10
eternal; every verse in this psalm, 135:1
God's law, 129:3
merit and, 123:14
motive for confession, 135:4, 9
peace and, 125:11
supreme over judgment, 143:8
works of mercy, 125:11; 130:13; 147:12, 13
merit, 123:14; 134:8; 139:18
merit and, 123:14
mind, 121:6; 145:5
miracles, 130:5, 6; 143:13
pride in, 130:8
raising the dead, 130:6
miser: blames God, 128:5
misfortune: God strengthens all who are falling, 144:18
mist, 147:24, 25, 26
mockery, 145:19; 147:11
monasteries: brothers dwell together in unity, 132:2
money, 131:25; 146:17
moneylenders, 128:6; 140:12
monks: agonisti, 132:6
Circumcellions, 132:3
spurious, bōgus, 132:4
moon, 135:8; 142:3
morning, 142:14, 15
mortality, 145:17
Moses, 121:5; 123:14; 128:2, 6; 134:14; 138:8; 147:16, 17, 18, 25
See also law; Pentateuch
mother: baby in arms of, 130:13
mountains, 124:4, 5; 143:12; 146:17
love; hope, 124:6
represent great persons, 124:5; 132:12; 146:16
mouth, 149:11
defiled by what comes from, 125:7
filled with joy, 125:6
heart, 125:5, 7, 8; 137:2
murder, 125:7
murmuring, 144:19
musical instruments, 150:5, 8
mysteries, 126:2; 147:2
Christ and the Church, 142:3
in holy scripture, 140:1
Mystical Body of Christ, 122:1; 123:1; 125:13; 127:3; 130:1, 3; 140:3; 142:3; 148:17
faith and health of, 130:8
gifts given to each member, 130:6
perfect man, 138:2
two speak with one voice, 138:21
unity, 147:25
See also Church
names, 130:8; 146:10; 148:14
Nathaniel, 121:8
nations, 147:28
need, 125:13; 141:10; 147:12
New Covenant, 123:34; 138:28; 143:16; 150:1
night, 131:8; 138:14, 16, 17, 19; 142:15; 143:11
Noah, 128:2; 132:5; 147:1
nonbelievers, 134:16
numbers (symbolism)
3, 4, 7, 10, 15, 40, 50, 150, 153, 150:1
5, 147:10
70, 147:5
Numidia, 149:3
Og, king of Bashan, 135:9
oil, 127:13; 132:7, 8; 140:13; 147:11, 13
Old Testament: hidden meanings in, 143:1
oleaster, 134:17; 147:28
olive, 127:13
olive-press, 136:9
olive tree, 134:7, 8
one alone (monos), 132:6
organ, 150:7
original sin, 132:10
orphans, 145:18
ossium, 138:20
ownership: common; early Christians, 131:5
ox(en), 126:11; 145:13, 14
pagans: killed by conversion, 149:13
pain, 122:6
parables (of sown seed), 128:1; 139:4; 149:3
pardon, 144:11
parents: children and, 136:21
Pasch, 138:8; 140:25
past, 125:10
patience, 138:27
patients, 147:2
Paul, Saint, apostle, 126:2; 140:21; 142:6; 147:14, 25; 149:8, 13
greatness of, 124:6
inner strength, 138:20
livelihood, 146:16
manual labor, 125:15
mysteries revealed to, 130:14
shipwrecked, 123:9
sine of the flesh, 130:7; 144:19; 146:1
synagogue as mother of, 138:18
weak and on fire, 141:19
peace, 121:11,12,13; 124:5,10; 126:2; 127:16;
130:14; 134:26; 136:2; 143:9,18; 147:15,20,28; 149:2
blessed are the peacemakers, 127:13
mercy and, 125:11
work of, 147:16
Pentateuch: five stones, 143:2
Pentecost, 132:2; 138:8; 147:19
people of God, 147:10
perdition, 139:16; 145:19
perfection, 130:14; 132:9
persecution, 123:5,7; 127:16; 128:2,3; 132:7,8;
136:19; 137:14; 138:20,27; 139:16; 140:22-24; 141:5,6,11,14,16; 142:7;
145:16
perseverance, 131:13; 133:1; 134:2; 138:14;
139:11; 141:6
Peter, Saint, apostle, 126:4; 130:6; 138:8,21,22;
140:21,24,26; 141:8
Pharaoh, 134:18;
Pharisees, 140:8
Physician, 144:22
pig(-s), 130:1; 141:1
pleasure, 124:10; 126:12; 127:16; 131:8;
136:6,9; 138:15; 147:4; 148:15
pledge, 122:5; 127:8; 146:6,11
poor person[s], 121:1; 125:13; 136:14; 146:17
praise, 128:5; 131:10; 134:5,6,8,9,11; 139:2;
140:11; 142:6; 144:1-7,10,22,25; 145:2,4,5,6,7,8; 146:1,2,3,4; 147:3,6-9;
13,15; 148:1,5,8-10,12,17; 149:11; 150:3,4,7,8
beneficial for us, not for God, 134:1,2,4,5
bless God at all times, 138:16
prayer, 147:7
all one in Christ, 122:2
call upon him in truth, 144:22
Church’s prayer, 139:2
concluding prayer, 150:8
God’s ears are open to, 137:11
good and right things asked for, 144:19
hear me quickly, 137:8,12
I have cried to you …, 140:4
lemark me, 137:7,8,12
I have cried to you …, 140:4
let your ears be open, 142:5
out of the depths…, 129:1,2
pour out, before him, 141:1-5;
rise like incense before you, 140:5
secret, 141:3
soon to be very popular, 140:18,19,20
supplication, 141:2
temple, 130:13
to you I have stretched out my hands,
142:11
whole life is entreaty, 139:10,11
with outstretched hands…, 143:11
You know my paths, 141:8
preachers: clouds as, 134:17
preaching, 134:16
preaching at the gate, 126:13
predestination, 136:21; 147:23; 150:3
presumption, 138:21; 144:11
pretense, 121:8
pride, 121:3,11; 122:3,9,10; 128:9,11;
130:5,8,12,14; 131:14; 136:13; 137:11;
138:19,27; 139:8,15; 140:18; 141:9;
142:6; 146:19; 147:26
do not turn your face away, 142:13
gifts from God, 130:7
private ownership and, 131:7
rich and poor, 131:26
Starting point of every sin, 139:13
temptation re wisdom, 130:8
priests, 130:4
prison: lead my soul out…, 141:17,18,19
Proculian, 149:4
Prodigal Son, 123:9; 131:12; 138:5,7,9
promise: God is faithful in all his words,
144:17
temporal and eternal, 149:12
property (ownership), 131:3,5
prophecy: future as though it were past, 125:10
speaking in tongues, 130:5
prophets, 147:16,17,18
apostles born from, 126:11; 127:2
Christ speaks through, 138:2
full of Christ, 142:2
martyrs, 140:26
property (ownership), 131:3,5
propitiation, 129:3
prosperity, 138:16
 Providence, 131:4; 138:1; 142:13; 145:14;
148:12
all creatures do God’s bidding, 148:10
submission to, 124:2

Volume III/20
prudence: avoiding evil, 135:8
seek not what is above you..., 130:13
psalms, 134:5,8; 145:8; 146:1,2; 147:2; 148:2
150 (symbolism), 150:1,13
find Christ and self in, 142:3
five books, 150:2
hear Christ’s words in, 131:2
sets of fifty, 150:3
See also Song(-s) of Ascents
psaltery, 146:2,14; 149:8; 150:6
punishment, 141:18
fear of, 127:8; 149:15
purity, 125:5
blessed are the pure of heart, 130:8; 139:18
commandment of charity, 140:2
rain, 132:10; 134:17; 146:16; 148:10
ravens, 146:18
Red Sea, 135:9
redemption, 125:1; 129:12; 134:18; 136:7; 138:2; 143:17; 147:16,18,24; 149:9
reincarnation, 146:18
reappearance, 136:3; 147:24; 150:3
reproof, 149:13
respect, 124:7; 136:3
resurrection of the body, 125:14; 126:7; 129:6,7,9; 131:16; 141:13
retribution: bargaining with God, 130:9,13
revenge: You will vindicate me, 137:15
reverence, 135:8; 142:13
reward, 126:8; 131:19; 134:11; 135:1; 138:18; 141:1; 142:6; 143:11; 146:1
rich: difficult to get into heaven, 146:16
humbly and, 131:26; 132:4
sell all you possess..., 136:13
tested by attitude towards the poor, 124:2
rich and poor, 125:13; 129:16; 131:7,24; 136:14; 139:17; 147:5; 147:12,17
See also poor; rich; wealth
righteousness, 121:8; 122:11,12; 124:6; 125:8; 129:2,4; 130:8,17; 140:18; 142:3,5,13; 144:22, 146:17; 147:20; 148:16; 150:3,4
rivers, 125:10
robber, 128:6,8; 130:3; 146:20
roots, 139:4
rills, 124:7
ruminating, 141:1
running, 121:2; 130:14
Sabbath, 150:1
sacraments, 127:11
sacrifice, 134:11; 140:14; 146:5; 147:12,17; 149:6
humility of heart, 130:4
sadness, 136:3; 138:20
saints, 122:4; 123:3; 124:5; 134:11; 135:3; 144:14,15,18; 147:14; 148:17; 149:3,4, 10-12,16; 150:4,5,8
See also martyrs
salvation, 124:5; 131:27; 136:13; 144:23; 145:9; 149:9
fear and trembling, 142:10
grace, through faith, 144:10
name written in heaven, 130:8
temporal and eternal, 137:14
Samaritan, 125:15
Satan, 130:7,14
Saul, 131:2,18
Saul (later Paul), 149:13
scandals, 147:9
schism, 124:10; 138:29,31
scourging, 122:10
sea, 135:7; 138:12
nonbelievers represented by, 134:16
seats sat in judgment, 121:9
seeds, 125:11; 126:14; 128:7,14; 139:3
self, 122:3
self-discipline, 140:16
self-image, 139:2
self-love, 131:6; 139:18; 140:2
self-righteousness, 140:9
Selfsame, 121:5,6,8; 146:11
senses, 146:13; 147:10
bodily unity, 130:6
Septuagint, 135:3
servant, 134:1,2; 142:6; 146:16
God as our master, 122:5,6
sexual pleasure, 146:2
shackles, 149:15
shadow, 142:16; 143:11
shaker / shaken, 126:10,11; 127:2
shame, 141:9
shipwreck, 123:9
Sihon, 134:20; 135:9
silence, 139:15
Simon (magician), 130:5
sin, 125:9; 127:7,9; 136:7; 138:15,16; 140:6,11,13; 143:11; 145:2; 146:20; 149:1
many small, daily sins, 129:5
coveting and punishing, 146:7
cords as symbol of, 130:2; 139:9
dwells but does not reign, 143:6
excuses sought for, 140:3,11,24
hating, 139:2
loving the world, 141:15
melting away, 125:10
slave of, 142:8
turn your face away..., 122:3
uncovered, 129:5
works of the flesh, 143:6
See also confession; repentance; sinners
singing, 123:2; 146:2; 147:5; 148:17
love for this world, 136:17
presence of angels, 137:3
sinners, 124:2,8; 127:11; 128:7,8; 129:1; 139:4; 140:9,13,14,18; 144:11; 145:19; 146:3,12,18, 147:7,26
add sins to sins, 139:9
break the necks of..., 128:9
confessing, 145:12
death of this world, 142:8
God will destroy all, 144:24
loss of will to confess, 142:13
presumption or despair, 144:11
scourged by their own sins, 130:2
slain: alienated from God, 138:26
sitting, 126:5; 138:4
sky, 146:15
slave: master and, 124:7,8
sleep, 131:8,9
snake, 139:6
snow, 147:7,26; 148:10,11,12
Sodomites, 128:2
soldiers, 131:10; 136:3
monks as, 132:6
Solomon, 126:1-2
Son of Man, 145:9; 149:3
Song(-s), 136:8,11; 137:10
new song, 149:1,2,3
singing in a foreign land, 136:13
Song[s] of Ascents (or Steps) (psalms), 121:2; 122:1,3; 123:1; 124:1,3; 125:1,15; 126:6; 129:1; 131:1; 150:1
Song of Songs, 143:17
sons: hope for the future, 131:19,20
sorrow, 126:6; 127:10
soul, 146:18
bird escaped from net, 123:12
inner strength, 138:20
mind counsels, 145:5
persecutors and, 141:11,14; 142:7
suffering when flesh is killed, 130:10
thirsts for the living God, 142:11,12
transcending itself, 130:12
wind as, 137:4
sounds, 150:8
sowing and reaping, 125:11,14
sparrow, 123:12; 124:5
speaking: demanded by duty, 139:15
quick to hear, slow to speak, 139:15
speaking in tongues, 130:5
“speed of speed,” 147:22
spirit, 141:5,6; 142:12; 145:10
lacks against the flesh, See under law
spiritual life
affections; riches, 121:11
enemy plotted to trip me up, 139:7
flesh under control, 143:6,9
goal of our ascent, 121:7
good faith, 123:9
growth in, 131:1
growth: milk to solid food, 130:12
heaven as foundation of, 121:4
horn: symbol of exaltation, 131:27
imperfection and fear, 138:21
possession of my inmost parts, 138:18
straightforward people, 139:18
test me, O God, 138:29
transcend self to reach God, 130:12
unspiritual persons and the Spirit of God, 127:1
spiritual warfare, 127:16; 136:8; 139:5,11,14; 143:3,4,5,9,10,18; 147:20
standing, 134:2
stars (heavenly bodies), 121:6; 135:8; 146:9,10
stealing, 125:7
Stephen, Saint, 132:8; 147:25
stones, 121:4
strength, 144:18; 148:16
substance, 123:9
suffering, 140:25; 149:27,28
fill up what is lacking..., 142:3
fruits of, 138:20; 139:14
life hidden with Christ, 139:17
summer, 148:16
sun, 135:8; 142:3; 144:3; 148:16
Sunday, 150:1
superfluities, 147:12
Susanna, 125:8; 137:2
swallowed alive, 123:5,6
tale: baleful, 143:17
tongue: double-edged, 149:12
synagogue, 127:12
tabernacle: Church as, 131:10,12
talkative person, 139:15
tares, 149:3
teaching, 139:15
tears: bread to me day and night, 127:10
temperance, 146:2
temple: buyers and sellers in, 130:2,5
Christ prefigured (Solomon’s temple), 126:2
early Church, 131:5
God’s temple is yourselves, 126:3; 130:1; 137:4
holy: yourselves as, 122:4; 137:4
living stones, 121:4
protected by God, 127:9
temporal goods, 123:5; 124:1; 127:1,2,9,15, 16; 129:8,11; 131:24,26; 136:3,5,9,16; 138:18; 140:24; 142:7; 143:18,19; 146:19; 147:3; 149:1,12
temptation, 124:1; 129:4; 134:20; 136:22,22; 141:17; 143:6,11
weakness of soul, 122:6
tents (tabernaculum), 131:10
thanksgiving, 134:2
theater, 147:8
thief, 125:7

Volume III/20
thirst, 142:12
thoughts, 148:2; 149:2
threshing-floor, 137:9
thrive, 137:4
time, 147:5
creation, 122:4
seven-day rhythm, 125:3
years failing, 121:6
thieves, 146:17
tongue, 140:18

gladness, 125:6
heart's, 125:8
vipers' venom, 139:6
torrents: winter rivers, 125:10
trap, 123:12,13; 141:9
treasure: earthen vessels, 141:1
trees, 148:3
tribes, 121:7
tribulation, 136:5

Trinity, 130:11; 135:6; 139:18; 140:2; 142:17
will, 140:12
will of God, 140:2; 142:17

winter, 148:16

wisdom, 121:9; 126:4; 130:14; 135:6; 136:7; 138:8; 141:4,15; 146:14; 147:22; 149:14,15
false humility, 130:12
light for the blind, 145:17
witnesses: not afraid, 140:20,21

world, 131:24; 147:10
joy in, 127:10
work, 125:3; 142:10; 148:3
eat the labors of your fruits, 127:4,10
my words have prevailed, 140:20
he continues to speak to us, 130:14
hidden meanings in, 143:1
my words have prevailed, 140:20
creator of, 141:15
threshing-floor representing, 137:9
wicked persons called, 141:15
worm, 148:10
worship, 130:1; 137:4; 145:11
worth, 143:10

years, 121:6

Zacchaeus, 125:11,12; 128:1; 146:16
zeal, 138:27; 142:5,147:21
Zebedee, sons of, 126:5
Zechariah, 147:5; 148:4
Zion, 125:3; 127:15; 128:10,13, 131:21,22; 132:12; 134:26; 136:1,2,4,5,14,17,20,22; 142:3; 145:20; 149:5,6,8